REVIEW DRAFT
for
January 2027
ODOT Highway Design Manual

Oregon Department of Transportation

Highway Design Manual

Delivery & Operations Division | Roadway Engineering Section

Preface

ODOT is an Equal Employment Opportunity and Affirmative Action Employer.

This information can be made available in alternative format by contacting 503-986-3568.

ODOT does not discriminate on the basis of disability in admission or access to our programs, services, activities, hiring and employment practices. Questions: 1-877-336-6368 (EEO-ODOT) or through Oregon Relay Service at 7-1-1.

Oregon Department of Transportation

Engineering & Technical Services Branch

Roadway Engineering Section

555 13th Street NE

Salem, Oregon 97301

503-986-3568

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Engineering/Pages/Roadway.aspx

Notes to Reviewers

There are no revisions proposed to the Appendices. However, Appendix M (Digital Design Packages) and Appendix N (Digital Design Quality Control) will be retired. Relevant requirements for digital design packages are included in Part 1100. Quality control is addressed though the Statewide and Region Quality Plans.

Highlighted changes for the 2027 HDM include:

- Liabilty neutral language
- Expanded content for Part 700
- Incorporation of content from the ODOT Bicycle & Pedestrian Design Guide (Appendix L) into Part 800 and Part 900
- Addressing questions and comments from the 2025 HDM

All proposed revisions are show as "Track Changes" according to the following:

- Added Text
- ~~Deleted Text~~

Review comments can be submitted using the form on the ODOT Highway Design Manual website. Follow instructions contained on the form for submitting comments.

Table of Contents

Part 100 Design Policies and Procedures

Part 200 Geometric Design and Context

Part 300 Cross Section Elements

Part 400 Roadside Design

Part 500 Intersection 1 Design

Part 600 Interchanges and Grade Separations

Part 700 Public Transportation and Guidelines

Part 800 Pedestrian Design

Part 900 Bikeway Design

Part 1000 Design Exceptions

Part 1100 3D Design

Part 1200 Other Technical Disciplines

Part 1300 Deliverables

Part 100 Design Policies and Procedures

DRAFT

Section 101 Introduction

This section provides background information on design standard policies, processes, and design standard identification. Information is presented on the appropriate design standards relevant to the project work type. Work types are defined to assist the designer in applying the proper standards.

General information is provided concerning design processes and different design strategies, such as ODOT's Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD), where six urban contexts have been established to provide design flexibility. Originally developed in 2020 as a standalone document, the BUD has now been incorporated into the Highway Design Manual (HDM). Intended for most urban context areas, the six urban context design criteria are not to be used for interstate highways or other limited-access freeways, Oregon Highway plan designated expressways with interchanges, or similarly operating grade-separated arterials. See Section 214 for addition information about use of urban context design criteria where urban expressways are a mixture of both grade-separated interchanges and at-grade intersections. Additional design guidance is provided for ODOT urban and rural freeways (including interstate highways), rural expressways, and rural arterials, collectors, and local routes.

Other parts of the HDM are broken down into specific design guidance such as geometric design, cross section elements, elements of design, pedestrian design, bicycle design, etc. The parts are separated to address the various transportation modes that serve different types of users, such as pedestrians or bicycles, and discuss the standards that apply when designing these facilities. This format allows the HDM to be more flexible to incorporate future changes into the standards. Future additions might include subjects such as autonomous vehicles or robotic delivery services on sidewalks.

Both FHWA and ODOT recognize information found in resources outside federal or Oregon DOT publications. Some of these include publications from other state DOTs, guides developed by national organizations like the National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO), the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE), and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), as well as information provided by many other transportation engineering resources. While outside resources may be utilized for information purposes, the Oregon Highway Design Manual is the deciding factor for design of highways, roads and streets on the Oregon state highway system.

101.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within some parts of this manual is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown.

DRAFT

Table 100-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 100-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 101.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 101.2 and 101.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 101.3 and 101.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of

methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

101.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 101.4).

101.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 101.4).

101.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

Section 102 Definitions

The following are definitions of words and phrases used in the HDM. Other definitions may be in the individual parts to which they apply. These definitions do not necessarily apply outside

the context of the HDM. The Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction along with ODOT manuals and guidance may also provide definitions for terms used in the HDM, but those definition do not necessarily apply to the HDM. Definitions provided in the HDM are applicable to the HDM.

Unless otherwise defined in this document, the terms used in the HDM are defined according to American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO) A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (7th edition; 2018) which ODOT has adopted and incorporated into the HDM. Oregon Administrative Rules (OAR) and Oregon Revised Statutes (ORS) have specific definitions for legal regulations that are specific to Oregon Law and may not be in alignment with the HDM definitions.

These definitions are used to identify the ODOT applicable standards and sections for the design and construction on right of way. Construction of these facilities can be funded with various specialized funding programs with terms that are not synonymous with these definitions. Eligibility for funding is determined by the program definitions, rules and manager.

1R/3R Record of Decision - Documentation to determine whether the 1R or 3R standard applies to a paving project.

AASHTO Green Book - Formally titled A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and *Streets, 2018* is a publication for the new construction of facilities. Adjustments to the guidance for preservation type projects is not considered in this publication.

ADA Ramp - An asset in the ODOT FACS-STIP inventory used for tracking sloped connections to the pedestrian facility including but not limited to a concrete or asphalt walkway. The ADA Ramp may be for example a curb ramp, an accessible cut through, radial driveway curb cut, a signalized driveway, a blended transition, or end of walk transition to the shoulder on the state highway system. Curb cut, curb ramp and sidewalk ramp are synonymous terms in this document.

Context Sensitive Solutions - A planning and design approach to advance programs and projects in a collaborative manner and in a way that fits into the community and environment.

Blueprint for Urban Design - Formerly an interim and companion document to the HDM and other ODOT design manuals to provide updated urban design guidance until the related design manuals are updated. The policies of the BUD are incorporated into this manual.

DRAFT

Certified Local Public Agency - A local agency that has achieved or maintains certification per the processes in Section B of the ODOT Local Agency Guidelines for Certified Local Public Agencies. https://www.oregon.gov/odot/LocalGov/Pages/LAG-Manual.aspx

Climate Friendly Area - A climate-friendly area is an area, per Oregon Administrative Rule Chapter 660 Division 12, where people are able to meet most of their daily needs without relying upon a car. They are urban mixed-use areas that contain, or are planned to contain, a mixture of high-density housing, jobs, businesses, and services. These areas are served, or planned for service, by high quality pedestrian, bicycle, and transit infrastructure to provide frequent and convenient connections to key destinations within the city and region.

Design Exception - Approval authorized by the State Roadway Engineer to deviate from a design criteria standard. Design Exceptions are submitted on the Design Exception Request Form (see HDM Part 1000).

New Construction - Projects with improvements that construct facilities where no previous public right of way existed (i.e., virgin horizontal alignments and 4R projects).

"On or along the State Highway" - Facilities for public use that are adjacent to the state highway road system regardless of who has public ownership, public easements, or intergovernmental agreements of the underlying property where the facility resides.

Performance-Based Practical Design - A design approach grounded in performance management using appropriate performance-analysis tools considering both short and long-term project and system goals while addressing current project purpose and need. Engineering judgment is used to build improvements from existing conditions to meet project and system objectives.

Practical Design - A systematic approach to deliver the broadest benefits to the transportation system, within existing resources, by establishing appropriate project scopes to deliver specific results.

Reconstruction - Fully rebuilt projects on established and existing public right of way with alterations to the facility.

DRAFT

Relocation - Project that replaces a segment of the existing highway facility with a newly constructed facility in a different location. A temporary detour is not considered relocation.

Urban Design Concurrence Form - Form to determine project context, define project design criteria, and document project design decisions for projects.

Urban - Relating to, or characteristic of a town or city.

Urban Context - Relates to all nearby built and natural features, as well as social, economic and environmental factors impacting a location. Urban context is based on existing and future land use characteristics, development patterns, and roadway connectivity in an area. For purposes related to the Highway Design Manual, urban context is not limited to places within the current Urban Growth Boundary (UGB).

Urban Design - For the HDM, the term applies to urban contexts relating to land uses that broadly identify the various built environments along ODOT roadways.

Section 103 Acronyms

1R - Resurfacing

1R(+) - 1R project with additional work items added by other funding

3R - Resurfacing, Restoration, Rehabilitation

4R - Reconstruction, Resurfacing, Restoration, Rehabilitation

AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials

ADA - American with Disabilities Act

APM - Analysis Procedure Manual

BDM - Bridge Design Manual

BUD - Blueprint for Urban Design

CC - Commercial Center

CFR - Code of Federal Regulations

CLPA - Certified Local Public Agency

CSS - Context Sensitive Solutions

DAP - Design Acceptance Package

DRAFT

1	DSL	-	Department of State Lands (Oregon)
2	ETSB	-	Engineering and Technical Services Branch (ODOT)
3	EOR	-	Engineer of Record (see also POR)
4	FACS	-	Features, Attributes, and Condition Survey
5	FHWA	-	Federal Highway Administration
6	GIS	-	Geographic Information System
7	HCM	-	Highway Capacity Manual (TRB)
8	HDM	-	ODOT Highway Design Manual
9	HSM	-	Highway Safety Manual (AASHTO)
10	IAMP	-	Interchange Area Management Plan
11	IMR	-	Interchange Modification Request
12	ITE	-	Institute of Transportation Engineers
13	LAG	-	Local Agency Guidelines
14	LCDC	-	Land Conservation Development Commission
15	LPA	-	Local Public Agency
16	MASH	-	Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (AASHTO)
17	MUTCD	-	Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices
18	NACTO	-	National Association of City Transportation Officials
19	NCHRP	-	National Cooperative Highway Research Program
20	OAR	-	Oregon Administrative Rule
21	ODOT	-	Oregon Department of Transportation
22	OHP	-	Oregon Highway Plan
23	ORS	-	Oregon Revised Statute
24	OTP	-	Oregon Transportation Plan
25	OTTCH	-	Oregon Transportation Traffic Control Handbook
26	POR	-	Professional of Record (see also EOR)
27	PBPD	-	Performance-Based, Practical Design
28	PROWAG	-	Public Right of Way Accessibility Guidelines
29	RECP	-	Resident Engineer – Consultant Projects
30	ROW	-	Right of Way

DRAFT

S.C.O.P.E. - Safety, Corridor Context, Optimize the System, Public Support, Efficient Cost
SF - Single Function
SHPO - State Historic Preservation Office
STA - Special Transportation Area
STIP - State Transportation Improvement Plan
SRE - State Roadway Engineer
STE - State Traffic Engineer
SUE - Subsurface Utility Exploration
TPM - Transportation Project Manager
TPR - Transportation Planning Rule
TRB - Transportation Research Board
TSP - Transportation System Plan
UBA - Urban Business Area
UDC - Urban Design Concurrence
UGB - Urban Growth Boundary
V/C - Volume to Capacity

Section 104 Design Guidance

104.1 Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD)

In addition to ODOT's Practical Design philosophy and multi-modal transportation design, the BUD and its context and majority of content was an interim document bridging the gap between its inception and the update of the HDM. The BUD content is incorporated into this HDM update.

The BUD content now included in the HDM applies to urban land use contexts that broadly identify the various built environments on or along the state highway. The key concepts introduced by the BUD are that urban design:

1. Includes urban context in addition to the existing highway classification.
2. Highlights and provides flexibility.
3. Introduces performance concepts with Practical Design as Performance-Based, Practical Design.

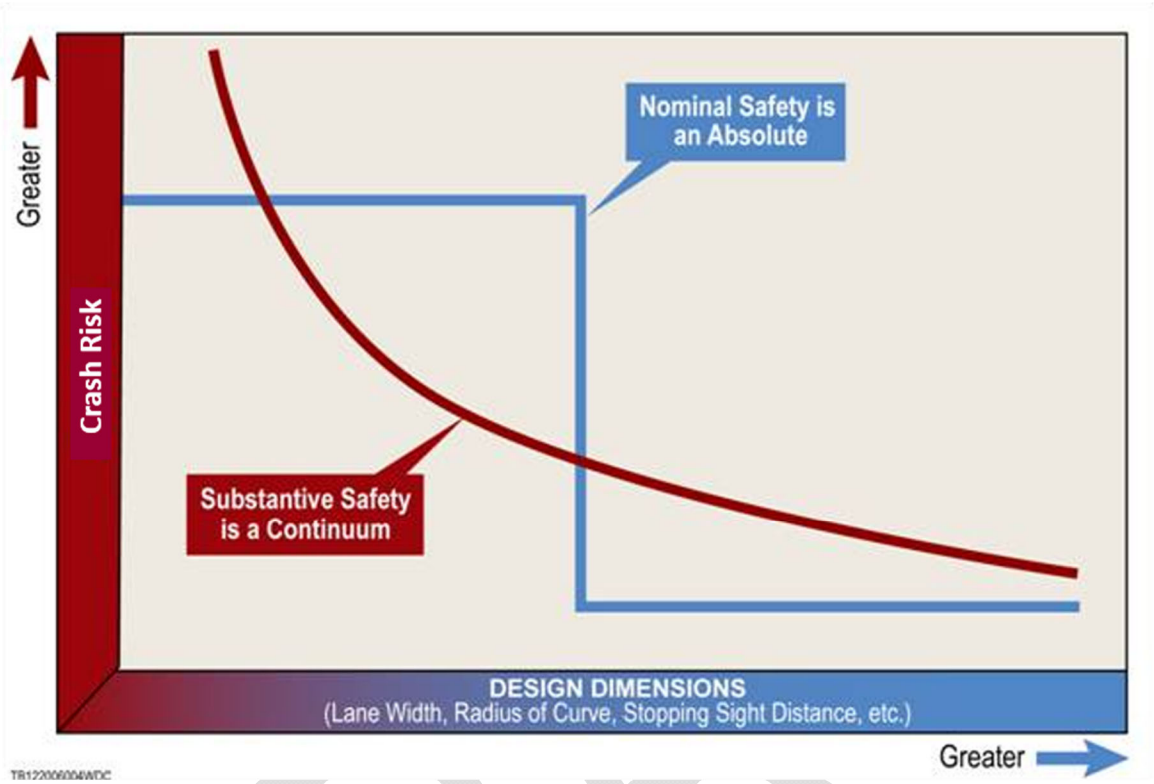
DRAFT

4. Starts at the highest level of protection for pedestrians, bicyclists, and other users of the pedestrian and transition cross-section realms (Cross-section Realms, see Section 107).
5. Provides a focused design documentation process.

Urban contexts defined in the HDM are based on existing and future land use characteristics, development patterns, roadway classification and connectivity, along with overall community goals and aspirations of an area. Urban context is not limited to places within the current Urban Growth Boundary (UGB), nor is it confined to city or town limits. Urban context is also not defined by federal limitations on population density determinations of what is considered as an urban area. The urban planning principles, design principles, and guidance focus on all roadways within the HDM-defined urban contexts, except interstate highways and limited-access freeways, Oregon Highway Plan designated expressways with interchanges, or other similarly operating arterials. While the HDM urban design guidance does not apply to the main line or ramps of a limited access interstate highway, freeway, expressway/arterial with interchanges, it does apply along the crossroad between, and leading up to, the ramp terminals and urban contextual design criteria can be applied to complete the local network. For design consistency, the crossroad between the interstate or freeway ramp terminals and depending on channelization operations, sometimes a distance further, whether state owned or part of the local network, is considered part of the interchange. As such, continuity of the local network and context needs to be maintained in relationship to the operational needs of the main highway. Although the crossroad of an interstate or limited access freeway (expressway) may be located in an urban context, the intended mobility and high-level operation of the interstate or limited access freeway (expressway) has priority. Ramp traffic affected by operation of the crossroad cannot backup onto the main line of the interstate, freeway or expressway and cause a potential safety issue. However, design and operation focused on the crossroad that allows some queuing on the ramp is an acceptable trade-off to accommodate and balance the urban modal needs on the crossroad.

DRAFT

Figure 100-1: Comparing Nominal and Substantive Safety



(Source: NCHRP Report 480 – TRB 2002)

Figure 100-1 depicts nominal safety (subjective safety) and substantive safety (objective safety) in relation to crash risk and design dimensions. Nominal safety is safety that relies on the perception of the user. This assessment will vary between observers and will depend on their perspectives. Substantive safety is safety that can be measured or quantified independent of the observer. Design guidance has evolved over the years to be more context sensitive and to integrate flexibility, but these features are often underutilized. Additionally, design guidance now considers the various modal needs of a transportation system. This evolution reflects the shift from nominal safety (subjective) to substantive safety (objective). Transportation professionals strive to use guidance and standards to support evolving needs and provide a safe and efficient network.

In an effort to incorporate updated guidance from national perspectives and tailor it to meet the needs of the Agency and local contexts, ODOT founded the Urban Design Initiative. The initiative provides principles and guidance that can be used for both planners and engineers in order to allow flexibility to meet the modal needs of the users in urban communities.

The ODOT Urban Design Initiative recognized that ODOT's earlier urban design needs and guidance were not strategically aligned. The Main Street Handbook (1999) informs planners but does not reflect the most recent evolution of modal guidance. Additionally, planners and designers needed consistent tools that supported the recently adopted modal plans, such as the

Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan and Public Transportation Plan. A bridging document, the BUD met these identified needs and is incorporated into the HDM.

ODOT has taken a performance-based approach to project development and delivery that supports decision-making from planning through design. Identifying the desired project outcomes, while understanding the urban context and identifying the primary roadway users, can guide practitioners in determining appropriate performance measures to evaluate the trade-offs of various design decisions. Completing these steps early in the project flow can guide the planning phase and refine the range of alternatives considered. Reviewing and confirming project goals throughout planning, design, and construction validates that the chosen alternative, reflects the original project goals and serves the intended users.

> Performance-based design is an approach that emphasizes the outcomes of design decisions as the primary measure for design effectiveness.
> *NCHRP Report 785*

Understanding and executing a performance-based approach enables project teams to make informed decisions about the performance trade-offs of alternative solutions. This is especially helpful when developing solutions in fiscally and physically constrained environments. National activities and associated publications, such as FHWA Performance-Based Practical Design initiatives and NCHRP Report 785: Performance-Based Analysis of Geometric Design of Highways and Streets have resulted in a framework for how this approach can be executed within a project. As demonstrated in the AASHTO Green Book, this approach will continue to shape how practitioners deliver projects in a variety of contexts and stages of project flow.

Tort liability and risks are often seen as impediments to appropriately adapted flexible designs, given urban context. There is a misperception that "designing to standards" inherently improves safety performance and eliminates risks of lawsuits. Practitioners need to understand fundamental elements of tort liability to make informed decisions and learn how to manage risk by documenting the project evaluation and decision-making process. NCHRP Legal Digest 57 provides additional information on tort liability related to design guidance and standards.

Documenting the decision-making process when selecting the design for new or reconstructed roadways or preservation projects is an effective way to manage risk. This includes documenting design considerations and evaluated alternatives based on clearly outlined project goals. The guidance provided in the HDM allows for a diverse range of potential designs. Therefore, for urban projects, the discretionary decisions of project teams must be documented as part of ODOT's urban design concurrence documentation. The intent of the urban design concurrence documentation is to provide the justification and evidence necessary to manage tort liability. In many cases, it is beneficial to not only document what the project is accomplishing, but to also document what isn't being done or can't be done with the specific project and why. This is particularly important on preservation type projects where project scope is limited. As previously noted, the Roadway designer is responsible for the final

compilation of the Urban Design Concurrence document. The Urban Design Concurrence (UDC) document is located on the Highway Design Manual website.

104.2 Emerging Framework for Geometric Design

The 2012 version of the HDM incorporated ODOT's Practical Design philosophy by establishing appropriate project scopes fitted to specific project purpose and need. The Practical Design S.C.O.P.E. Values (Safety, Corridor Context, Optimize the System, Public Support, and Efficient Cost) are still valid today for the current version of the HDM. In addition to ODOT's Practical Design philosophy and multi-modal transportation design, the BUD, and its context and design content, has been incorporated into the HDM. The HDM gathers the advancements of multi-modal designs that have been developed since the 2012 HDM and highlights the opportunities for continued flexibility in ODOT's current design criteria in an effort to produce effective outcomes for each facility based upon the urban context and design flexibility to accommodate community needs.

On a national level, FHWA is also looking at performance-based design by modifying the controlling criteria from the thirteen controlling criteria established in 1985 to two controlling criteria for low-speed roadways (< 50 mph design speed) and ten controlling criteria for high-speed roadways (>=50 mph design speed). FHWA determined that all the criteria contained in the design standards are important, but that not all the criteria affect safety and operation to the same degree. FHWA noted that State DOT's can determine their own level of documentation needed based upon laws and practices. Additional information on controlling criteria can be found in Part 1000, Design Exceptions.

104.3 National Guidance Policies and Documents

ODOT regularly evaluates planning and design guidance from other national associations and organizations for incorporation into the information provided in the HDM. Practitioners follow the direction contained within the HDM and recommend changes to be considered from the following sources as needed:

- American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO)
- Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)
- Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE)
- National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO)
- National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP)
- U.S. Access Board

Section 105 How ODOT Uses National Guidance

Federal law dictates the role of national standards for highway facilities in https://www.ecfr.gov/current/title-23. Title 23 CFR Part 625 requires that each state have standards for new construction (4R) and preservation (3R) of highways that account for applicable federal requirements including design exceptions. It identifies the AASHTO Green Book as the national design standard for NHS highways unless FHWA approves a substitution. The ODOT HDM is approved by FHWA for use in Oregon as the standard for ODOT highways and transportation facilities. The following are examples of how ODOT stays up to date with and incorporates national design guidance.

105.1 Design Flexibility

In addition to 23 CFR Part 625, section 1404 of the FAST Act, which amends 23 United States Code (USC) section 109, provides requirements as well as direction for flexibility and access for other modes of transportation in the design process. The revised requirements for flexibility and other modes from 23 USC 109 under section c (1) have been or will be incorporated into 23 CFR Part 625 with the next update to the CFR.

Title 23 CFR Part 655 requires that every state follow a national standard for uniformity in the use of traffic control devices and identifies the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) as the FHWA approved source. Oregon adopted the federal manual with a state-specific supplement to the MUTCD. Similar federal requirements exist where a national standard manual is recommended and a state-specific substitute manual is optional. Some examples of these include standards for bridge and illumination design.

23 CFR Part 658 establishes the National Freight Network and provides guidance to states for freight vehicle size and weight allowed to utilize the national network without special permits. It also provides guidance on what can and cannot be restricted concerning freight vehicles operating on the national freight network. Appendices A, B, and C of 23 CFR Part 658 should also be evaluated along with the ODOT Freight Mobility Manual when determining modal integration for a project.

The United States Department of Transportation (USDOT), led by Congressional action, developed federal policy and directives for states to take action on flexibility in design and addressing flexibility on the core National Highway System (NHS) routes. Additionally, the Fixing America's Surface Transportation (FAST) Act requires designs for projects on the NHS to consider all factors in 23 USC 109(c)(1), including cost savings that can be achieved by using flexibility in current design guidance. Based on this support for improved pedestrian and bicycle facilities and flexibility within current design standards, numerous national organizations produced innovative design guides and resources intended to supplement the

DRAFT

adopted standards. ODOT issued a letter of support that encourages engineers, planners and designers to reference the growing library of resources that help "…provide a safe, efficient transportation system that supports economic opportunity and livable communities for Oregonians…" and "…to be at the forefront of the integration of sustainable intermodal transportation…to help form sustainable solutions to today's ever-increasing intermodal transportation challenges…". The design resources referenced in ODOT's letter were those produced by AASHTO, NACTO, and ITE. Since these memoranda, the FHWA grew its library of publications that help encourage and support walking and bicycle use for all ages and abilities. A list of these publications can be found on the FHWA Bicycle and Pedestrian website.

Recent federal requirements and guidance have provided the ability to use flexible design to meet project goals and outcomes when integrating design for all road users. Incorporating guidance from innovative sources provides opportunities for enhanced facilities to accommodate specific needs. However, some documents are good on the concepts of what, but do not provide details on the how to actually design the elements into a roadway cross-section. As a result, while these innovative documents are a source of information and allowed with provisions as stated in the FAST Act, Section 1404(b), the final design must still meet state and/or federal design criteria when federal funds are being used. This is particularly true for roadways on the National Highway System, whether locally owned, state owned or federally owned. For questions relating to specific design criteria requirements for projects on local jurisdiction roadways, contact the ODOT Engineering and Technical Services Branch (ETSB) for information.

105.1.1 Innovative Concepts

In order to solve urban transportation issues through innovation, some concepts may conflict with requirements in the adopted highway standards. There is a process outlined by FHWA to enable innovation by experimenting with new ideas. Through the experimentation process, design standards can evolve, or new standards can be created. When innovative practices are acceptable to ODOT, standards and manuals to support these practices can be updated. FHWA provides a design deviation approach that provides further flexibility with the reduction in number of controlling criteria. However, approval for design deviations or concurrence is still processed at the state level. Federal regulation sets required criteria for design, but still provides flexibility for state jurisdictions to apply their own criteria as well and ODOT uses federal guidance when applying both federal regulations and specific state criteria.

105.1.2 Use of the Highway Safety Manual

In 2015, the Fixing America's Surface Transportation (FAST) act was passed to authorize federal funds for Federal-aid highways, highway safety programs, and public transit programs. It endorsed the use of federal funds for design flexibility outlined in Section 1404. Section 1404(a)

of the FAST Act also required the Secretary of Transportation, when developing design criteria for the NHS, to consider the Highway Safety Manual (HSM), published by AASHTO. The HSM is not a design standard, but it presents a variety of methods for quantitatively estimating crash frequency or severity at various locations. It is a foundational manual in the long-term effort to improve the state of the practice for safety prediction tools. The HSM is a key safety reference influencing the development of national design policy. Additionally, the increased use of improved safety production tools in the planning and design process allows improved analysis of safety performance among design alternatives.

105.1.3 Americans With Disabilities Act

Another example of national requirements and guidance that ODOT uses are regulations concerning the Americans with Disabilities Act. 28 CFR Part 35 prohibits discrimination on the basis of a disability under the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 in state and local government services. The ADA Amendments Act of 2008 broadened the scope of protection under the ADA in the definition of what a disability is, such that extensive analysis is not required. Various resources exist that provide guidance and best practices for implementing accessible pedestrian facilities. ODOT has incorporated national guidance and best practices under the ADA to optimize and provide better access for individuals. State and local governments are required to make transportation facilities and services accessible, even when explicit standards for ADA design criteria on transportation infrastructure are still emerging and evolving.

105.1.4 Participation in National Research, Committees and Organizations

While there are fundamental underlying physics and engineering principles that form the foundation for roadway design, it is an ever-evolving practice. There are often innovation and creative ideas, concepts, and techniques emerging for solutions to evolving challenges. ODOT stays up to date with the changing trends through participation in research projects at both the state and national level, with staff participating on AASHTO and NCHRP technical panels providing review and input. Participation on these panels provides access to current national and international practices. New publications, documentation, and information are reviewed for applicability to Oregon. Publications vetted through AASHTO and included in the Federal Register are generally adopted for use. Other national publications may be considered, when appropriate, as supplemental reference guidance to ODOT and AASHTO design criteria.

Section 106 Approval Processes

106.1 Design Standards

ODOT's Chief Engineer, through delegated authority from the Oregon Transportation Commission (OTC) is responsible for the approval of design standards.

106.2 Design Exceptions

The Chief Engineer has sub-delegated the approval of exceptions to design standards to the State Roadway Engineer. Most design exceptions require signature by both the Engineer of Record (EOR) and State Roadway Engineer as this is an Engineering Report. Design exceptions may also require approval by FHWA. Design exceptions and the design exception process are addressed in Part 1000 of the HDM.

106.3 Urban Design Concurrence Document

The BUD established the Urban Design Concurrence document form to determine project context, define design criteria, and document design decisions. Authority for approval of the Urban Design Concurrence document (UDC) will reside in the Region Technical Center. ***The Region Technical Center Manager provides final approval of urban design concurrence with collaborative input from Region planning, traffic, roadway, and maintenance.*** Generally, the designer for roadway geometrics is responsible for the final compilation of the UDC. However, the Region Technical Center Manager may assign document compilation to another design team member if deemed more appropriate for a project.

The document is a collaborative effort of the scoping and project development teams. The intent is for the form to be more of a living document throughout the planning, scoping and project development stages that aids in creating project business cases, project charters, scoping concepts and project narratives. It is important to maintain the UDC with project documentation through the various stages of a project. If a UDC is initiated with planning activities it should be included with documentation of those studies or plans (TSP, Facility Plans, etc.) and is provided for inclusion of project business cases ~~and,~~ project charters and scoping activities~~.~~ (Not all planning activities will initiate a UDC~~. In this case,~~). When a UDC is initiated at project scoping~~. A~~ a "draft" UDC is included as part of the final scoping documents to document scoping decisions that led to the concept design.

The Context and Modal Integration sections of the document can be started in the region planning section prior to scoping. ~~However, final~~Final project context determination is a collaborative effort of the scoping and project development teams when creating the ~~draft and~~

final UDC. Pertinent background information from Transportation System Plans, Corridor Studies or other planning documents is included to aid the scoping team in defining project concepts. At the end of project scoping, the draft or concept Design Decisions portion of the Urban Design Concurrence document is filled out identifying the scoping concept design for the project.

At project initiation, the project development team will utilize the draft or concept UDC for understanding of project goals and as a starting point for the final design. The project development team verifies that the concept UDC still covers the project goals and design needs in the event there have been significant changes in the project area since the scoping team finished the concept design. If changes have occurred, the UDC is updated to reflect those changes to ensure project goals and outcomes defined in scoping are met. Or, if the original goals and outcomes can no longer be met, the form is used to document why. Once the scoping concept design decisions are verified or modified as needed, the project team can move forward with project development and finalize the Urban Design Concurrence document to be submitted with the Design Acceptance Package. The UDC establishes the project design cross-section. Any deviations for the allowable design ranges will often still need a Design Exception.

~~By ODOT directive and with the exception of interstate roadways, freeways, expressways or arterials with interchanges, every urban project requires a design concurrence document.~~ Every urban project, including rural communities, requires an Urban Design Concurrence document (UDC). The exception to this requirement is for interstate freeways and other grade-separated facilities such as expressways or arterials with interchanges. In these cases, a UDC will only be required for the highways they connect to if they are altered. The UDC is required on development/permit projects when roadway cross section element widths are being changed. Development/permit project UDC forms are completed by the region technical center.

The project category will determine the amount and extent of the information provided in the final concurrence document. Projects with limited scope like 1R or 3R paving projects, targeted safety projects or Single Function projects, etc. will have limitations when filling out some portions of the Urban Design Concurrence document. However, even on these limited scope projects, project teams need to identify and include opportunities to upgrade and improve existing conditions for all users of the roadway system. When initially determining project scope within the limits of a project category, it is a good idea to start by answering the question, “What is an appropriate design for this roadway section and project?”, rather than the more typical and limiting question, “What do we have to do?"

Although an Urban Design Concurrence document is required by policy on all urban projects, realistically there may be some projects of such limited scope that do not affect the roadway cross-section where completing the Urban Design Concurrence document has no effect on project outcomes. In these cases, the Urban Design Concurrence ~~Document is superfluous to the project and~~document adds no significant value for documentation.

DRAFT

In these rare instances, an Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Request can be submitted for potential approval by the State Roadway Engineer. The request form, Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo, is available on the Highway Design Manual website. It is provided as a template that can be added to region letterhead, filled out and submitted to ETSB Roadway Engineering Section . If approved by the State Roadway Engineer, the exemption memo is submitted with the Design Acceptance Package in lieu of the Urban Design Concurrence document.

There is a minimal number of project types where the Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo would apply. Examples of project types that could apply include ITS projects, bridge preservation category projects, bridge rail screening projects or other project types that have limited, specific scope and do not affect the roadway cross-section. For more information on the applicability of the Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo, contact the Senior Urban Design Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

106.4 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation

The 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation form (ODOT form number 734-5244) is used as part of a formal process for determining whether a paving preservation project will be designated 1R or 3R. This document is filled out at project scoping and reviewed and validated at project initiation. The 1R/3R Record of Decision Documentation Form is approved by the Pavements Manager, the Region Traffic Manager, and the Region Roadway Manager. For more information, see 116.1.1.

106.5 FHWA Emergency Relief Program - Betterments

The FHWA Emergency Relief (ER) program is intended to assist the States and local agencies in repairing disaster damaged highway facilities and returning them to their pre-disaster condition. In-kind restoration is the predominant type of repair. Emergency relief fund and betterments for assisting states in repairing damaged highway facilities require approval from FHWA. Approval requires detailed justification. 118.2 23 USC Section 120(e) and FHWA website Special Federal Funding provides additional information on emergency relief and betterments. Work with the regional FHWA office to determine and document eligibility of emergency relief sites to describe and agree on the damage, scope of work to be performed, and estimated cost. For more information, see 118.2.

106.6 Record Retention

All project design documents are subject to ODOT record retention policies and schedules. For more information regarding these policies, see the Department of Transportation Highway Division Record Retention Schedules.

106.7 EOR Requirements for Projects

ODOT requires all plans, Professional of Record (POR) sheets, and design exceptions be in electronic (PDF) format. Requirements for the Engineer of Record are established by Oregon State Board of Examiner for Engineering and Land Surveying (OSBEELS) and are to be followed by engineers serving in this role on ODOT public work projects. ODOT uses digital seals and signatures for electronic documents as allowed by administrative rule OAR 820-025-0001. ODOT Engineering and Technical Services Directive TSB21-01(D) provides ODOT requirements for use of digital seals and signatures on technical documents. See Figure 100-2, Figure 100-3, and Figure 100-4 for seal format according to OAR 820-025-0001. See Figure 100-5 for an example of a digitally signed engineering seal, provided by OSBEELS.

Figure 100-2: Engineering Seals from OAR 820-025-0005

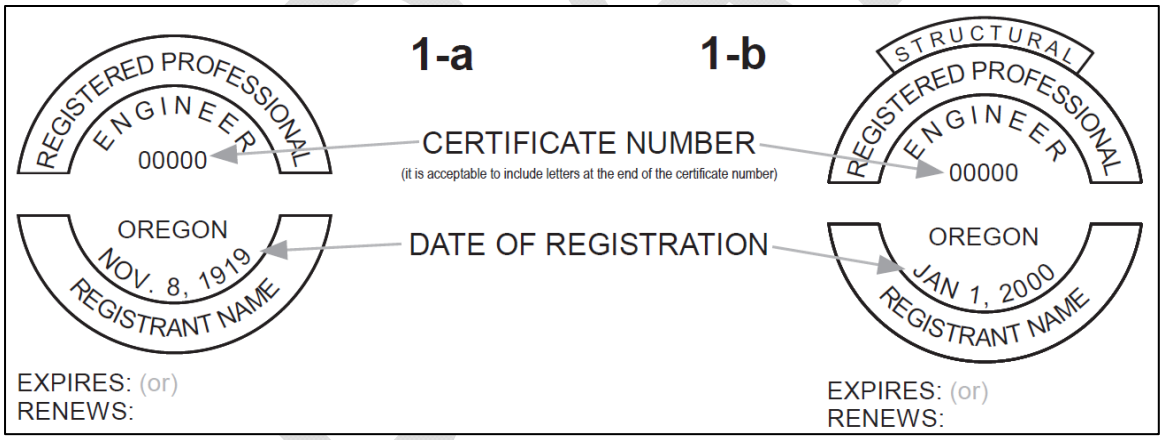


Figure 100-3: Land Surveyor and Photogrammetrist Seals from OAR 820-025-0005

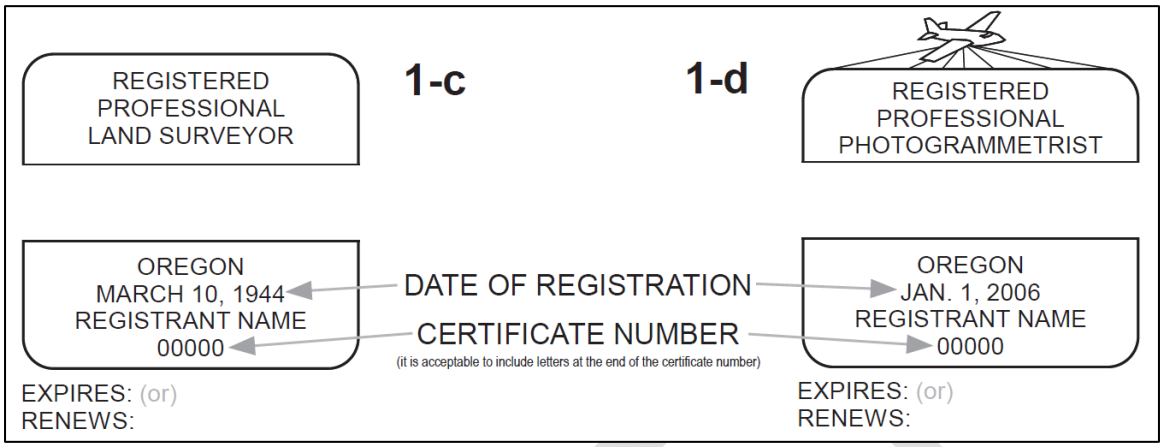


Figure 100-4: Water Right Examiner and Traffic Engineer Seals from OAR 820-025-0005

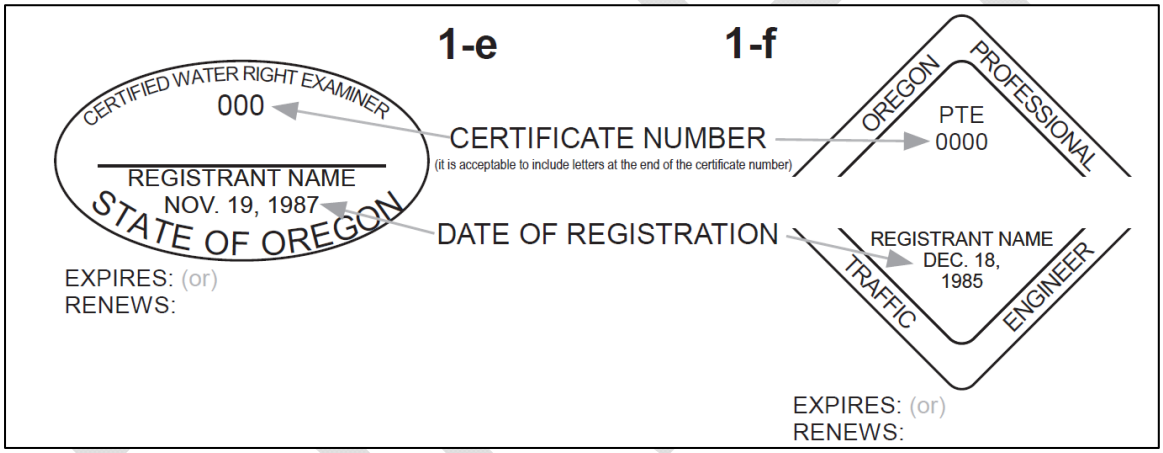
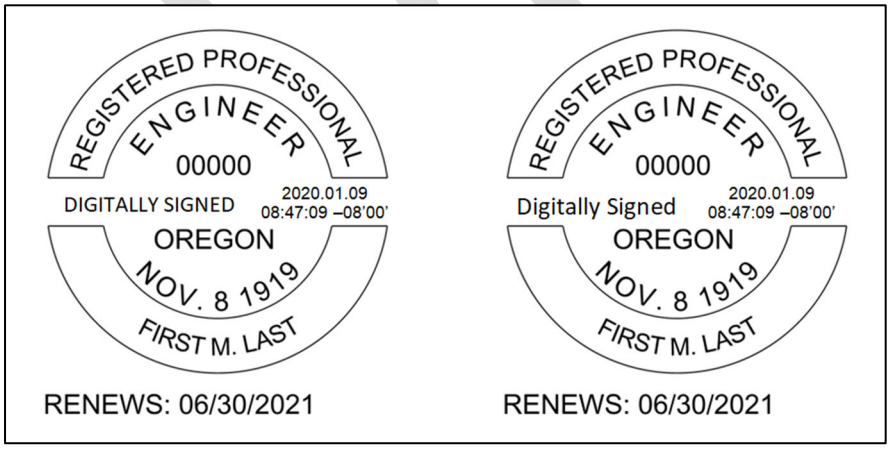


Figure 100-5: OSBEELS Digital Seal Examples



Section 107 Design Flexibility

107.1 Introduction

While there are fundamental underlying physics and engineering principles that form the foundation for roadway design, it is an ever-evolving practice. Innovation and creative ideas, concepts, and techniques continually emerge for solutions to evolving challenges. In the early 1990s, ODOT developed a formal process to involve interested parties to foster collaboration and provide inclusion and local insights into project development from roadway users. In the mid-1990s, ODOT embraced context sensitive solutions (CSS) design, which later became context sensitive and sustainable solutions (CSSS or CS3). The 1999 Oregon Highway Plan (OHP) (including amendments) established roadway segment designations to differentiate contexts in urban locations. The official segment designations include Special Transportation Area (STA), Urban Business Area (UBA), and Commercial Centers (CC). The 2003 HDM created an urban design chapter to specifically address design for the roadway segment designations described in the 1999 OHP as well as for non-designated context segments that include Urban Suburban Fringe, Developed Areas, and Traditional Downtown/Central Business Districts. In addition to the segment designations, the 1999 OHP also categorized roadway sections into state-determined classifications. These classifications include Interstate Highways, Statewide Highways, Regional Highways, and District Highways.

In 2010, ODOT established its Practical Design strategy. That strategy provided a foundation for thought and processes to achieve more focused improvements at a lower cost. Practical Design was, at that time, the next logical step in the evolution of ODOT's approach to program and project development and delivery. It provided a platform to be more deliberate in our efforts to provide the underlying goal of developing the "Right Projects, at the Right Time, at the Right Cost, and in the Right Way".

Performance-Based Practical Design is the next step in the evolution of roadway design from a contextual basis. Performance-Based Practical Design takes the concepts and principles of Practical Design and incorporates performance information to emphasize outcomes of design decisions as the primary measure for design effectiveness. Understanding and executing a performance-based approach enables project teams to make informed decisions about the performance trade-offs of alternative solutions. This is especially helpful when developing solutions in fiscally and physically constrained environments. ODOTs approach to Performance-Based Practical Design fits with national design trends. National activities and associated publications, such as FHWA Performance-Based Practical Design initiatives and NCHRP Report 785: Performance-Based Analysis of Geometric Design of Highways and Streets have resulted in a framework for how this approach can be executed within a project. In addition, the AASHTO Green Book is moving toward FHWA backed Performance-Based Practical Design principles. ~~ODOT is on the leading edge of this transition with the~~

DRAFT

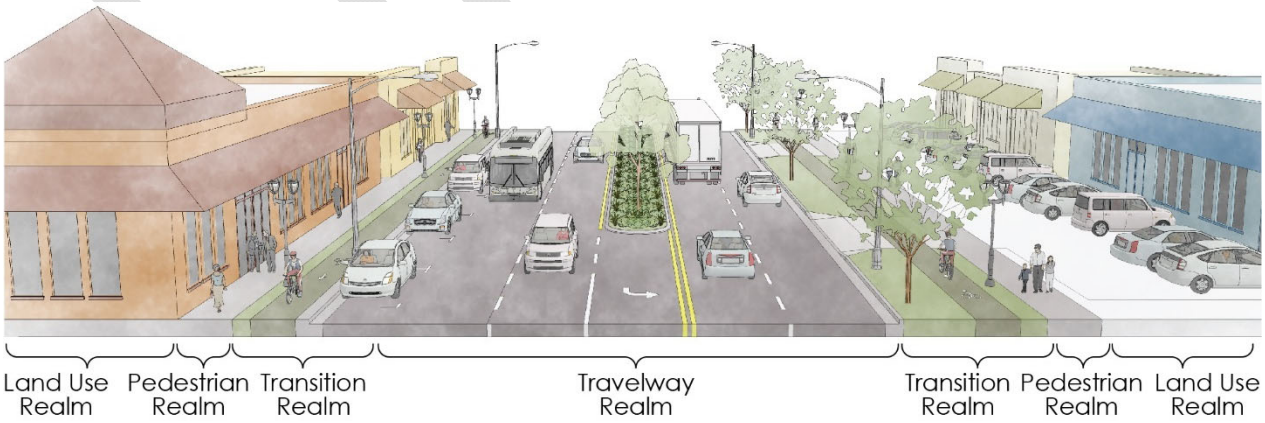
~~development of the Blueprint for Urban Design and the subsequent inclusion of that information into the 2023 HDM.~~

Practical Design and its evolution to Performance-Based Practical Design afford the design flexibility to creatively design solutions to meet project needs and goals by focusing on outcomes. Engineering judgment is a key component when applying flexibility to designs to achieve appropriate solutions. Guidance throughout the HDM is intended to aid designers in making choices where trade-off decisions inherent to flexible design need to be made. An important aspect to decision making required in Performance-Based Practical design is utilizing multi-disciplinary teams that provide varied viewpoints and information to the project. The multi-disciplinary teams should include not only engineers, but also planners, landscape architects, active transportation staff and others pertinent to decisions that will affect project goals and outcomes.

When applying the Performance-Based Practical Design principles and determining appropriate trade-offs across a project cross-section, having a methodology to evaluate impacts to design elements is important. Dividing the cross-section into areas based on element functionality within those areas is one way to analyze potential individual element impacts caused by trade-off decisions in relation to the cross-section as a whole. As such, the "realm" concept was established. These realms include the following and are shown in Figure 100-6:

- Land Use Realm
- Pedestrian Realm
- Transition Realm
- Travelway Realm

Figure 100-6: Example of Cross-Section Realm



Context is a key factor in roadway design. Context includes the adjacent land use context as well as the context of the road itself. The highway has an intended function that is also integral to its context. The federal functional classifications as well as the ODOT classifications and the OHP segment designations all provide input in evaluating the roadway context. The overall

context to be considered in the project design process includes the land use context and the determined roadway context, both from the perspectives of existing land uses as well as future planned land uses. Municipal and local community input is important in the context discussion as well. The Blueprint for Urban Design established six contexts for design that are listed below:

- Traditional Downtown/Central Business District
- Urban Mix
- Commercial Corridor
- Residential Corridor
- Suburban Fringe
- Rural Community

107.2 Practical Design

The 2012 version of the HDM incorporated ODOT's Practical Design philosophy by establishing appropriate project scopes fitted to specific project purpose and need. There are five key values that help form the foundation of Practical Design. These values support ODOT's mission of providing a safe, efficient transportation system that supports economic opportunity and livable communities for Oregonians. These "S.C.O.P.E." values provide a basis to be kept in mind when working through the project development and design process.

1. **Safety** - Overall system safety will not be compromised. The goal is to make the system as safe as practical. This does not mean settling for a lower level of safety, but instead, continue to make choices about safety and use sound engineering judgment when making safety decisions (i.e., look for high value add-ins with minimal cost). Individual projects may look different. But every project will either make the facility safer or will maintain the existing safety level for that facility.
2. **Corridor Context** - Practical Design takes the S.C.O.P.E. concept across a system, down to a corridor level, and applies it to each project. A corridor approach should be used in establishing or evaluating design criteria, and then be applied consistently throughout the corridor. Roadways should respect the character of the community, include the current and planned land uses, and work within the intended corridor use. The unique features of the project and how this "fix" fits with other parts of the corridor and with the natural and surrounding built environment should be considered.
3. **Optimize the System** - Adopting more of an asset management approach to managing pavements, bridges and roadway safety features allows the assessment of the current state of an individual infrastructure asset, and then to develop specific maintenance, repair, rehabilitation and replacement strategies that optimize the life-cycle investment in that particular asset. This, in turn, can allow available funding to be allocated on a

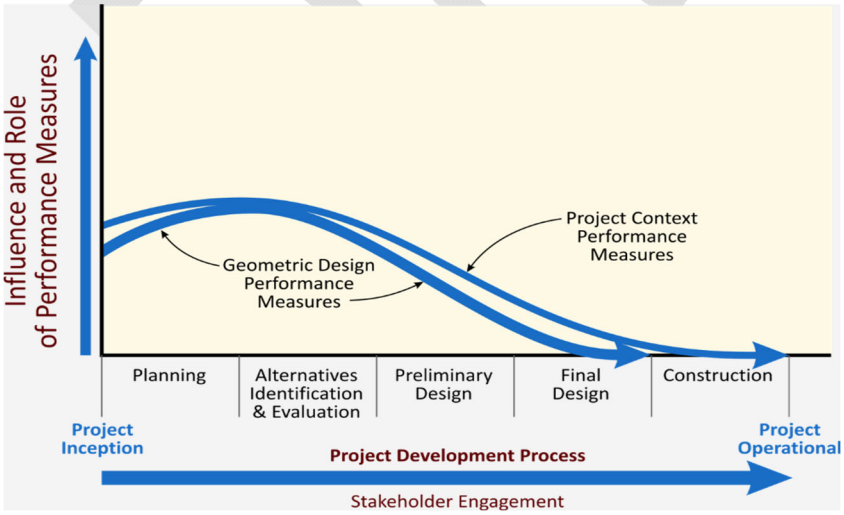
priority basis to those assets and/or combination of assets that ensure that the entire highway system is optimized for safety, mobility and financial investment. This optimization for safety, mobility, and financial investment will involve balancing the trade-offs between these competing goals.

4. **Public Support** - ODOT recognizes that public trust is a cornerstone of success and strives to work in partnership with the local communities in making system improvements visible to the traveling public. Working with locals provides opportunities for the community to shape the chosen solution, and consider the needs for pedestrians, bicyclists, public transit users, freight and mobility. When working with community interests, it is essential to have clarity about the project purpose, need and alignment of the proposed project with the overall plan for Oregon's transportation system.

5. **Efficient Cost** - ODOT has limited funds to apply to projects and strives to stretch these funds as much as possible and to develop projects that meet the desired purpose but is open to considering incremental improvements. Practical Design requires applying the appropriate standards to the critical elements in order to meet the project specific purpose and need. This allows for a redistribution of funds that were previously used on other items that may not have been as high of a priority on one project, to be used where they will produce the most benefit to the system. Practical Design stresses making the best strategic decisions that benefit the overall system.

107.3 Performance-Based Practical Design

Figure 100-7: Role of Performance Measures within the Project Delivery Process



Source: NCHRP Report 785

Performance-Based Practical Design builds on the 2010 Practical Design Strategy utilizing the five base S.C.O.P.E. principles outlined previously in conjunction with performance metrics established for project outcomes. Aligning the two strategies emphasizes delivering projects that benefit the transportation system. Thereby, utilizing existing resources to establish appropriate project scopes that include different perspectives and discuss pertinent project information early in the project development flow. This helps establish clear project objectives and problem statements that focus on both short-term and long-term desired outcomes. More information about the use of context and performance-based design can be found in subsequent parts and sections of this document.

107.4 Context and Roadway Classification

> Performance-based design is an approach that emphasizes the outcomes of design decisions as the primary measure for design effectiveness.
> *NCHRP Report 785*

There are many definitions of urban and rural. For this document and for ODOT urban project design, the focus is on land use context in relation to determined roadway context and classification. Urban design practices have been an evolving process. The 2012 ODOT HDM melded the Context Sensitive design principles of the 1990s with the 2010 ODOT Practical Design strategy of S.C.O.P.E. It prescribed design requirements categorized by the context of the highway. The 2012 HDM mirrored the design guidance in the AASHTO Green Book chapters for urban and rural. The next step in the progression of urban roadway design is performance-based design. National design guidance, including the eighth edition of the AASHTO Green Book, is moving toward integrating performance-based design that encompasses a focused approach to determine appropriate design with flexibility that better aligns roadway function and user needs based on the context. Performance-based design provides a framework for evaluating trade-offs and creating designs that meet the desired outcomes of a project to address all roadway user concerns. This type of approach is being adopted in many other states as well. Through the development of the Blueprint for Urban Design, ODOT is incorporating performance-based design into HDM criteria and accepted practices with this document. Performance-Based Practical Design is a refinement to, and the next step of, ODOT's continued practice of Context Sensitive Practical Design.

Depending on the decided context of a highway, the ODOT criteria for various design elements is different. Design elements potentially affected by context include the width of travel lanes, turn lanes, shoulders and medians, superelevation rates, maximum degree of curvature, maximum grade, bicycle facility and pedestrian facility type and size, presence of on-street parking, and vertical clearance.

When determining the context of a roadway section, roadway federal functional classification, state classification, adjacent land use, roadside context, roadway segment designation, and to some extent, traffic volume and number of lanes is considered. Traffic volume, speed, and lane

configuration along with classification are indicators of how a roadway section is being used and sets expectations for road users, as well as expectations for adjacent businesses – both existing and future.

With the increasing emphasis on active and public transportation, social equity, and climate impacts, defining context is even more important for urban design. Therefore, more differentiation within the previously established context categories was needed. As an example, the context defined in the OHP and 2012 HDM as "Urban/Suburban Fringe" covers a variety of cross-section types and potentially various land use or roadside context configurations. Creating greater differentiation in contexts based on more specific parameters along a section of roadway that affect its use can provide flexibility. It also helps prioritize design elements to better address user and community needs, rather than a "one-size-fits-all" approach. This is the basis for performance-based design, which focuses on the outcomes of the design decisions as the primary measure of design effectiveness.

107.5 Design Standard Policy

The HDM represents ODOT's implementation of federal guidance, including the AASHTO Green Book, NCHRP, TRB research documents, ADA, and PROWAG. ODOT uses three sets of design criteria: ODOT4R/New, ODOT 3R, and ODOT 1R.

The standards selected for design of all projects are presented, with some modifications, from the following references:

2025 ODOT Highway Design Manual

2014 ODOT Hydraulics Manual

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018 (AASHTO Green Book)

Roadside Design Guide (AASHTO, 2011)

A Policy on Design Standards – Interstate System. (AASHTO 2016).

Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (AASHTO 2012)

Guidelines for Geometric Design of Low-Volume Roads (AASHTO 2019)

Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities (AASHTO 2021)

2010 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design

Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines

Highway Drainage Guidelines (AASHTO 2007)

The applicable ODOT standards are defined in Table 100-3~~Table 100-3~~.

Section 108 Local Agency Guidelines

Some projects under ODOT roadway jurisdiction traverse across local agency boundaries. Some local public agencies (LPA) have adopted design standards and guidelines that may differ from ODOT design standards. Although the appropriate ODOT design standards are to be applied on ODOT roadway jurisdiction facilities, the designer should be aware of the local agency publications and design practices, which can provide additional guidance, concepts, and strategies for design.

The Local Agency Guidelines (LAG) manual for Certified Local Public Agencies (CLPAs) outlines guidance in delivering federal-aid projects including ADA requirements. Certified Local Public Agencies are agencies that have undergone a process to become certified to deliver projects utilizing federal funds. These agencies when certified have established processes that have been reviewed by ODOT's local program manager in coordination with FHWA to deliver projects with federal funding. CLPAs submit design exceptions and concurrences for projects on or along the state highway through the ODOT established process. LPAs have three options in delivering projects with federal-aid funding including:

1. A CLPA delivers its own project through the certification program;
2. An LPA contracts with a Certified LPA to deliver the project; or
3. An LPA contracts with ODOT to deliver the project.

As noted above, any projects on the state highway system shall follow the standards and guidance in the HDM. Figure 100-8 and Figure 100-9 provide flowcharts to help determine when general design standards and accessibility design standards apply on local public agency projects. Local agencies may have more stringent requirements that must be adhered to when projects overlap jurisdictions. Both agencies' requirements need to be met. In addition to the Design Standards Matrix in Table 100-3~~Table 100-3~~, the LAG manual provides additional guidance on appropriate standards.

The LAG manual addresses projects where local agencies deliver projects on ODOT facilities. Local projects funded through ODOT-managed selection processes may be led by local agencies and are expected to be designed and constructed to reflect the original project proposal. ODOT retains decision-making authority for projects on state-owned roadways, including those projects led by local agencies. For local-led projects, ODOT's funding agreements require local agencies to submit final cost, as-constructed drawings, and other documents to confirm the project selected was what was ultimately constructed. Local agency projects on ODOT's system may only be led by certified agencies with ODOT approval to lead delivery. For projects not on ODOT's system or delivered by ODOT, the local agency is responsible for design decisions, but ODOT can aid the local agency in decision-making as an interested partner.

DRAFT

Figure 100-8: Application of General Design Standards on LPA Projects

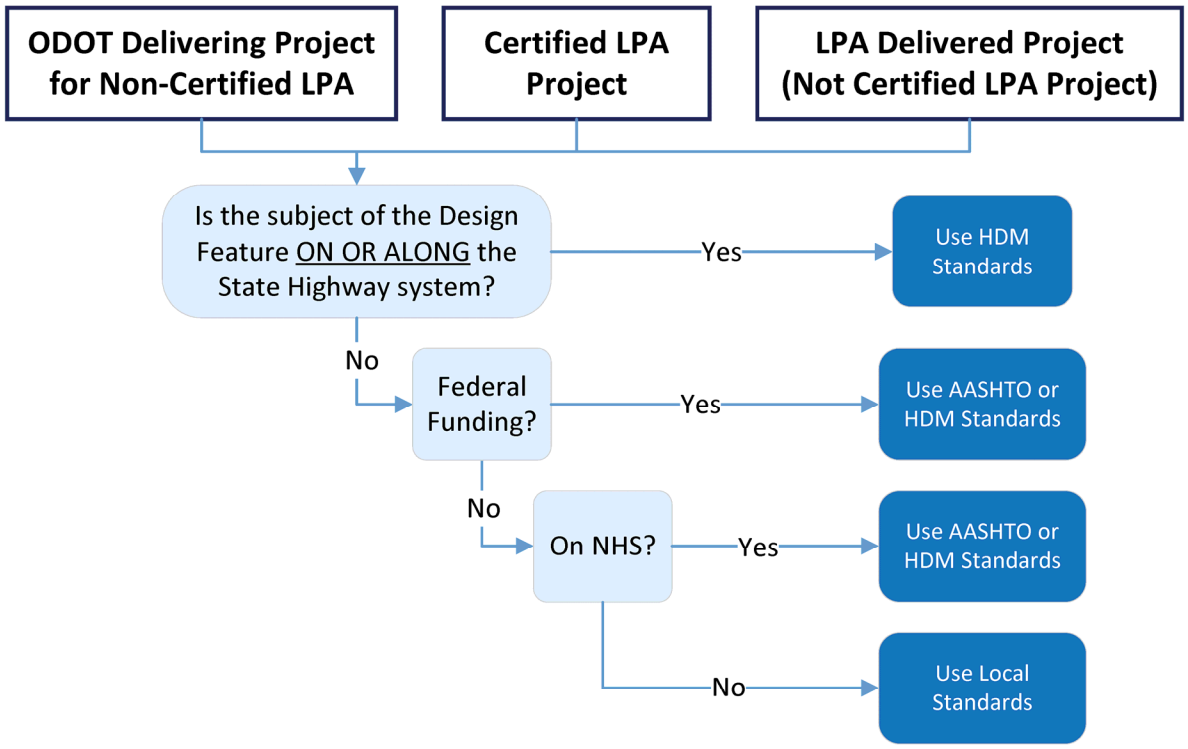
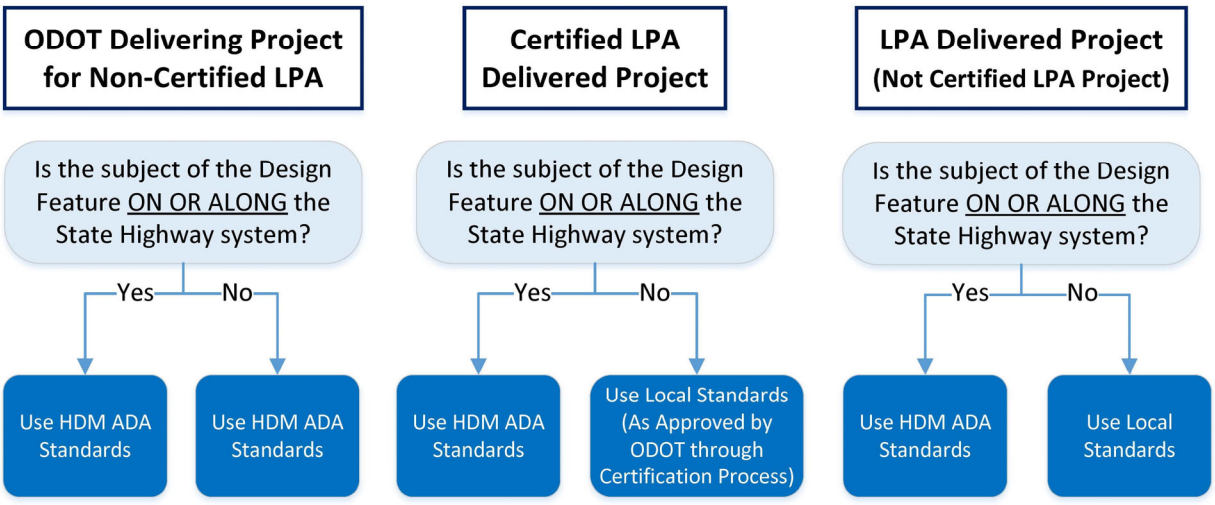


Figure 100-9: Application of Accessibility Design Standards on LPA Projects



Section 109 Plans, Programs, and Policies

109.1 Introduction

The authority and need to develop projects are established through various plans, programs and policies that outline the primary responsibility of ODOT to provide a safe, efficient, and integrated multi-modal transportation system for the mobility and accessibility of people and goods. In meeting these plans, programs and policies, ODOT shall consider appropriate alternatives for meeting statewide needs. For every project, a number of alternatives, including the no-build alternative, will be evaluated in arriving at the appropriate solution. This section only provides an overview of the project selection and development process. For more detailed information on project development, refer to ODOT's project delivery guidance, operational notices, bulletins, and directives.

109.2 Planning and Project Development

ODOT project development and delivery are organized by ODOT project delivery guidance, which includes both program and project development elements. Transportation planning (part of program development) includes development of the Oregon Transportation Plan and modal/topic plans that provide Oregon's strategic transportation vision and policies. Statewide policy plans also provide guidance and direction for developing more refined transportation system plans.

City and county Transportation System Plans (TSPs), which include the state system within their boundaries, describe existing conditions, identify roadway classification and transportation needs over a 20-year period, and develop priorities for transportation system improvements within a defined geographic area. Generally completed by local cities or counties, TSPs evaluate needs across all modes of transportation and may include portions of whole transportation corridors. Program Managers may consider projects identified in TSPs for inclusion in a future Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP) and should refer to transportation planning documents to help with context and objectives for transportation improvements.

Transportation Policy Planning is high level and includes:

1. Oregon Transportation Plan
2. Oregon Highway Plan and other modal/topic plans
3. Strategic vision, high level policy planning
4. A framework to help prioritize investments for all modes of transportation

DRAFT

5. Identification of strategic objectives and outcomes from management and investment decisions

Transportation System Planning includes:

1. City, county, regional, or MPO TSPs
2. ODOT facility plans such as Interchange Area Management Plans (IAMPs), refinement plans, access management plans, scenic byway plans, etc.
3. An assessment of future transportation system needs and recommended solutions
4. Prioritized investment strategies and projects
5. Transportation Management systems used to evaluate highway assets and assist in the selection of projects
6. Planning work and documents for all modes of transportation, including pedestrians, bicyclists, micro-mobility users, ride-share participants and public transit riders
7. Projects that are prioritized for inclusion in the STIP

The Transportation Planning Section is responsible for managing the statewide policy planning process and the Regional Planning Units are responsible for managing or informing the system planning process. Local Transportation System Plans (TSPs) must follow state statutes when addressing the state highway system within their communities. OAR 366.215 dealing with freight mobility on the state highway system and ORS 374.329 dealing with transfer of state freight routes to local jurisdiction need to be incorporated when writing TSPs. The Federal Register 23 CFR Part 658 would also apply to National Freight Network roadways within a local TSP. In order to accommodate freight mobility, planning efforts should also consider the types and frequency of permitted freight loads through a corridor.

The following are key policies, rules, and statutes that uniquely inform urban design and will be highlighted in later portions of this document:

1. Bicycle and Pedestrian Bill (ORS 366.514)
2. Freight Reduction in Carrying Capacity Review (ORS 366.215) (OAR 731-012)
3. Transportation Planning Rule (TPR) (OAR 660-012-0060), including Section 8 and Section 10 related to Multimodal Mixed-Use Areas (MMA)
4. Oregon Highway Plan mobility standards/targets
5. Oregon Highway Plan, Policy 1A – Classification
6. Highway segment designations (OHP Policy 1B)
7. Special Transportation Areas (STA), Urban Business Areas (UBA), Commercial Centers (CC)
8. Practical Design Strategy (Appendix D of the HDM)

DRAFT

9. Applicable Oregon Land Use Law and rules (ORS 197, OAR 660, Division 12, 24, 22)

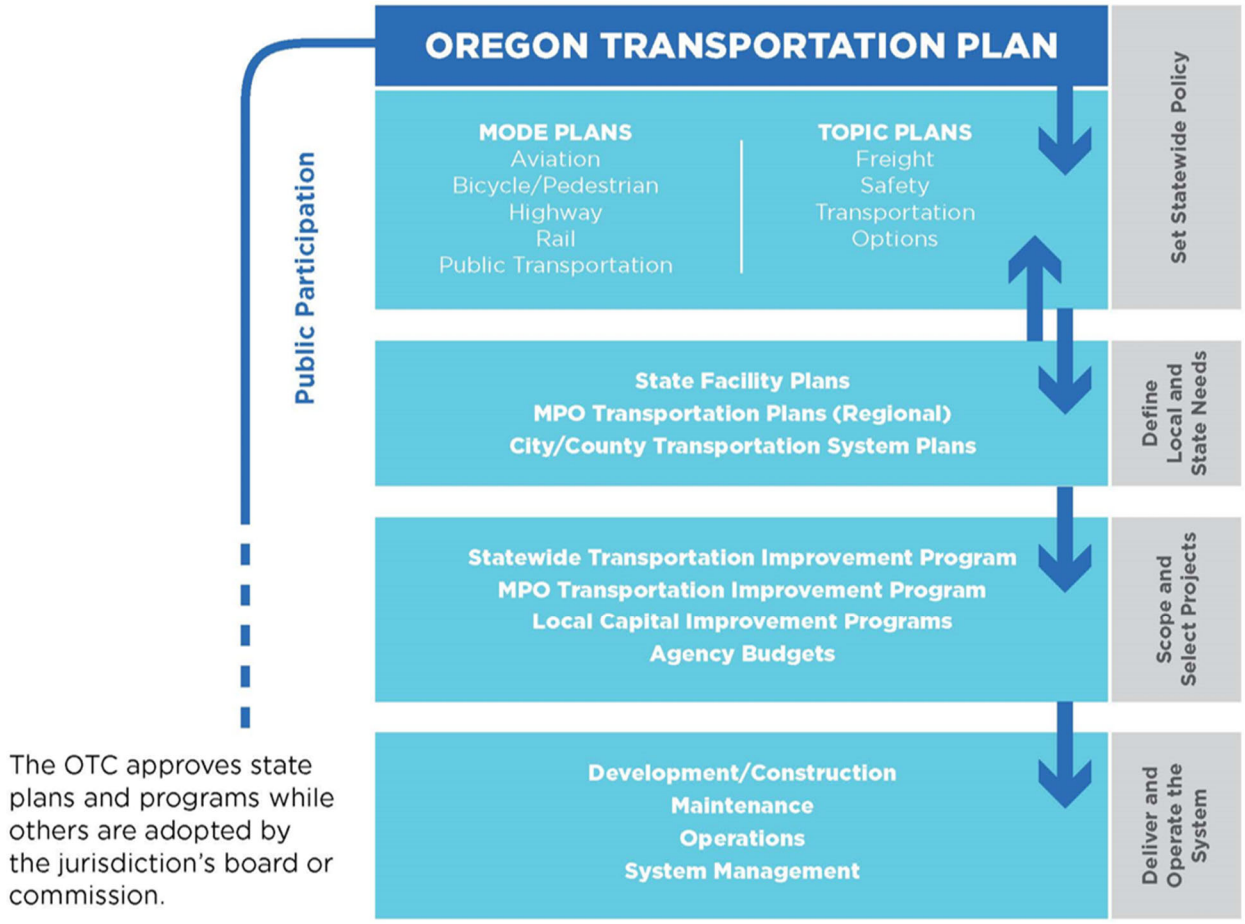
ODOT has the following statewide planning documents that have been adopted by the OTC and provide basis for project development:

1. Oregon Transportation Plan
2. Oregon Highway Plan
3. Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan
4. ODOT ADA Transition Plan
5. Oregon Freight Plan
6. Oregon Rail Plan
7. Oregon Transportation Options Plan
8. Oregon Public Transportation Plan
9. Oregon Transportation Safety Action Plan
10. Oregon Aviation Plan
11. Statewide Transportation Strategy

DRAFT

Figure 100-10 provides an overview of ODOT integrated transportation planning.

Figure 100-10: ODOT Integrated Transportation planning



109.3 Oregon Transportation Plan

The State Transportation System Plan is composed of the Oregon Transportation Plan (OTP), mode and topic plans, and facility plans. Oregon's statewide policy plans articulate the transportation system and focus ODOT's investments to maintain and improve that system, often by informing system management, project selection, and subsequent planning and design guidance. Oregon's transportation planning documents ultimately derive from and implement the goals and policies of the OTP. It establishes a vision and policy foundation to guide transportation system development and investment. The OTP and its mode and topic plans guide decisions by ODOT and other transportation agencies statewide and are reflected in the policies and decisions explained in local and regional plans. The OTP's influence on project delivery is primarily from its investment scenarios, which inform how Oregon should prioritize transportation investments across all modes that implement OTP goals in response to current

and future funding levels. Most modal and topic plans have similar scenarios and investment guidelines to help inform project investment decisions.

109.4 Mode and Topic Plans

ODOT uses two categories of statewide plans to implement the OTP: mode and topic plans. Policies and strategies in these plans often lead to further mode or topic studies, planning and design guidance, and guidance for project selection. ODOT's modal plans reflect four distinct transportation systems: highway, bicycle and pedestrian, rail, and public transit. The Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan (OBPP), for example, guides the state through efforts such as prioritizing projects, developing design guidance, collecting important data and other activities that support walking and biking in Oregon. Similarly, the Oregon Highway Plan (OHP) defines the state highway system and establishes policies for managing and enhancing that system. Both plans inform project delivery primarily by structuring how ODOT prioritizes investments in that mode, and by informing further planning and technical guidance developed by ODOT.

ODOT's topic plans recognize that some challenges and opportunities apply to all modes and require coordinated action outside of any one modal plan. For example, the Transportation Safety Action Plan (TSAP) prioritizes a set of actions to produce a safer transportation system across all modes. The TSAP evaluates safety in planning and design considerations while also informing how ODOT structures its safety project selection process. Similarly, the Oregon Freight Plan's (OFP) policies and strategies improve freight connections to local, state, tribal, regional, national, and international markets. The OFP is a resource designed to guide freight-related operation, maintenance, and investment decisions across all modes. Topic plans inform and focus ODOT's investment priorities (like modal plans) but do so with respect to Oregon's entire transportation system rather than for specific modes. ODOT's topic plans include the Oregon Statewide Transportation Strategy (which includes a 2050 vision for greenhouse gas emission reduction), Transportation Options, as well as the TSAP and OFP.

109.5 Local Plans

Mode and topic plans are statewide plans that are part of the OTP. These plans refine and apply OTP policy to specific modes or topics and guide state, regional, and local investment decisions for the parts of the transportation system that they address. Like the OTP, the goals, policies, and strategies of mode and topic plans are further refined in other regional and local plans such as facility plans, local transportation system plans, and other documents.

ODOT planners participate in ODOT scoping and project delivery teams and are responsible for communicating expectations from local plans for projects in urban areas. On development-funded projects, developers are expected to construct projects and frontages consistent with local TSPs and ODOT standards. Local plans include:

DRAFT

- Transportation System Plans (TSPs)
- Local Streets Plans
- Transit Development Plans (Transit Master Plans)
- Safe Routes to School Action Plans
- Facility Plans
- Streetscape Plans
- Active Transportation Plans (ATPs)

ODOT's multiple plans and programs help to identify transportation needs and determine which transportation projects will be developed and constructed. These plans and programs in concert with the Regions and Area Commissions on Transportation (ACTs) help guide the setting of priorities for the Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP).

109.6 Statewide Transportation Improvement Program

The Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP) is the Oregon Department of Transportation's capital improvement program for state and federally funded projects. The STIP is developed in coordination between ODOT, Federal and local governments, Area Commissions on Transportation, Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPO), Tribal governments, and the public. The STIP is adopted by the Oregon Transportation Commission (OTC) and approved by FHWA and Federal Transit Administration (FTA) as required.

The STIP is a staged, multi-year program of multimodal transportation projects. It is consistent with the statewide transportation plan and planning processes as well as metropolitan plans and transportation improvement programs (TIPs). STIP cycles currently renew every three years. Typical project types include Safety, Operations, Bridge, Active Transportation, Pavement Preservation and Modernization STIP projects.

The STIP lists projects that are funded by different programs. Typical funding programs through the STIP include the following: (The following list is not all-inclusive. Check the STIP website for complete list.)

1. Fix-It Program - Includes all the capital funding categories that maintain or fix ODOT's portion of the transportations system. Fix-It needs are derived from a statewide asset management system. Projects that are eligible for Fix-It include: State-owned bridges; highway pavement; culverts; seismic mitigation; salmon (fish passage); bicycle and pedestrian facilities on state highways; and site mitigation and repair.
2. Enhance Highway Program - Enhance Highway programs enhance or expand the transportation system. This includes improving interchanges, new bridges on new alignments, and adding lanes on highways.

3. Safety Program - Safety program projects reduce deaths and injuries on Oregon roads. This includes the All Roads Transportation Safety Program (ARTS), which selects projects that will make roads safer for all transportation modes using the roadway.
4. Public and Active Transportation Program (Non-Highway Program) - Program provides direction on three sub-categories on non-highway funding including: Public Transportation; State Highway Fund bicycle and pedestrian; and non-highway discretionary such as curb ramps, active transportation, passenger rail, community paths, safe routes to school, and other transportation options.
5. Local Programs - Local program direct funding to local governments so they can fund priority projects including Metropolitan planning, Transportation Management Areas, Congestion mitigation and air quality, Surface transportation block grant program, Immediate Opportunity Fund, and Transportation and growth management.
6. Other Functions Program - Includes allocations for workforce development, statewide planning and data collection, and administrative programs provided for by federal resources.

While all STIP project should follow a decision-making process, it is imperative that urban design projects have a documented decision framework. The following is a general decision-making framework for the performance-based design approach to developing urban STIP projects.

1. Review previous corridor studies or project plans to understand the urban context and modal expectations.
2. To the extent possible when no prior applicable plans and studies are available, establish project goals and document the urban context and modal expectations. Collaboration through a multidisciplinary project team can help support these activities.
3. Verify during the scoping process that the conceptual design meets project goals and desired outcomes and fits the urban context.
4. Confirm during the final design stage that the design decisions align with the project goals, urban context and expected user needs.
5. Prior to construction, confirm that the final design meets the original project goals and desired outcomes. Include clear documentation of design decisions, particularly if they do not align with the guidance for the identified urban context.
6. Establish an approach for monitoring the project.

Any changes to prior decisions are evaluated against the original intent of the project, and justification is provided for evaluation by a multidisciplinary project team.

DRAFT

109.7 Transportation Planning Rule

In Oregon, transportation planning is governed by Oregon Administrative Rule 660, Division 12. This is also known as the Transportation Planning Rule (TPR). This rule establishes requirements for local agencies to develop, adopt and implement Transportation System Plans as well as corresponding policies for a jurisdiction's land use code. This rule was revised in 2022 to incorporate Climate-Friendly and Equitable Communities (CFEC) rulemaking which mandates that local jurisdictions within metropolitan areas prioritize transportation projects to meet climate goals, improve equity outcomes for underserved populations and support multimodal transportation and land use. At least one performance standard used for land use decision-making must support transportation options that avoid principal reliance on the automobile. CFEC rulemaking requires cities and counties within metropolitan areas that have more than 5,000 in population to designate Climate-Friendly Areas. During project development, see the local jurisdiction's Transportation System Plan for policies and requirements applicable for Climate-Friendly Areas and Metro Region 2040 centers as well as UGB-wide requirements for street parking, the pedestrian system network, the bicycle system network, the public transportation system and the street and highway system. If a project will not build improvements in a manner authorized by the TSP, the needs of the project shall be evaluated whether they could be satisfied in a manner consistent with the TSP or if the TSP could be amended. Financially-constrained project lists within CFEC-compliant TSPs must demonstrate that implementation of the project list will as a whole not increase VMT per capita on a household basis. Jurisdictions may receive exemptions from the sections of the TPR. See Sections 805 and 912.2 for specific application to Pedestrian and Bicycle facilities.

DRAFT

Section 110 Design Standards Identification and Selection

ODOT recognizes the following roadway project types along with the requisite design criteria and standards:

- 1R - Resurfacing
- 3R - Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation
- 4R - Resurfacing, Restoration, Rehabilitation, and Reconstruction
- AASHTO

The following sections provide a brief description of each of the sources of design standards currently in use by ODOT. These standards give design criteria primarily for the state system. These standards are dependent on the highway's functional classification (See Appendix A) and the work type.

It is important to note that in addition to the standards described below, considerable reference information is available in other publications. A listing of these references is given in Section 121 and is considered supplemental to the design criteria given elsewhere in this manual. Procedures for deviating from these standards and guidelines are outlined in Part 1000, Design Exceptions.

Projects may include a variety of design criteria. Utilizing a flexibility in design approach to projects, coupled with different funding sources available that may also be bundled for economy, it is possible to have projects that involve several types of design standard requirements.

For example, a grind and inlay preservation project that includes new multimodal design elements such as a new separated multi-use path. In this specific instance, preservation standards such as 1R or 3R would be used for the preservation grind and inlay portion of the project and 4R standards for the separated multi-use path. The designer will need to work with the project team to determine the project elements and then select the appropriate standard.

110.1 Work Types

The standards used to develop roadway geometric and non-geometric details generally have a major effect on the overall project cost. The type of work, location of the project, and type of roadway facility are all factors that must be taken into consideration when making that selection.

DRAFT

When determining the appropriate design standard for use in project development, work types can be divided into the categories listed below. Funding may come from a number of funding programs such as Fix-It, Enhance, Safety, Local Programs or a combination of funding programs. It is the type of work that determines the design standard to use and not the funding type. It is possible to have a preservation project that the base funding is "Fix-It" and "Public and Active Transportation" program funding is included to install bicycle features such as a buffered bike lane. In this case 1R or 3R standards would be used for the preservation aspect of the project and 4R standards would be used as the base standard for the buffered bicycle lane. The project context and existing features may provide justification for using existing non-standard design features when it is determined to be an appropriate design through the design exception process. Further discussion of the specific categories is included in subsequent sections.

ODOT recognizes the following general highway work types:

1. Modernization [New Construction/Reconstruction]
2. Preservation
    a. Resurfacing
    b. Interstate Maintenance
    c. Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation
3. Safety Improvements
4. Operations
5. Maintenance
6. Miscellaneous/Special Programs
    a. ADA Program
    b. Grant Project
    c. Property Development Permit Projects
    d. Emergency/Natural Disaster
7. Local Programs (AASHTO)

DRAFT

Table 100-2: Potential Applicable Design Standards

Work Type	1R	3R	4R	AASHTO
Modernization			✓	
Preservation: Resurfacing	✓	✓		
Preservation: Interstate Maintenance	✓	✓		
Safety Improvements		✓	✓	
Operations		✓	✓	
Maintenance	✓	✓	✓	
Misc./Special Programs: Grant Project			✓	✓
Misc./Special Programs: Property Development Permit Projects		✓	✓	
Misc./Special Programs: Emergency/Natural Disaster		✓*		
Local Programs			✓**	✓

✓* - Emergency/Natural Disaster projects may not be required to comply with all 3R design standards, as the main goal of these projects is to reopen compromised sections of highway, and projects are often designed to, at a minimum, meet design standards of the pre-emergency condition. However, it is important that permanent repairs should incorporate current design standards that do not materially change the function or character of the facility.

✓** - On or along the state highway

Work types can fall under a variety of design standards. See Table 100-2 for potential design standards that typically apply to each work type.

Other disciplines utilize other design standards that must also be determined during project development. Coordination with all disciplines involved with a project is critical to overall project success.

110.2 ADA Requirements for Paving Projects

An ADA ramp may require reconstruction when paving alterations occur adjacent to the ADA ramp. This requirement applies to all projects under the Interstate Maintenance, 1R, 3R, 4R, and

SF standards. See ADA Ramp Triggers at Bridges Section 110.2.2 when paving by a bridge structure. **Reconstruct ADA ramps when all of the following conditions apply:**

- **ADA Ramp is triggered by adjacent pavement alterations according to Section 110.2.1, Section 110.2.2, or Maintenance Operational Notice MG100-107 in Appendix H.**
- **ADA Ramp is listed as "Missing" or having a "Poor" functional condition in the ODOT ADA Ramp inventory.**
- **ADA Ramp does not have a year listed in the "Settlement Remediation Year" data field in FACS-STIP.**

When the paving limits incorporate portions of the private approach and impact the pedestrian access route, radial driveway curb cuts are triggered for accessibility upgrades. Contact the Statewide Asset Specialist for additional information or to verify evaluation of ADA Ramps.

Pavement treatments are described in Maintenance Operational Notice MG 100-107 in Appendix H and in Section 1.2.10 of the Bridge Design Manual, which describe alterations versus maintenance surfacing treatments. For example, a chip seal alone is not an alteration paving treatment however when multiple surface treatments are combined it may result in an alteration. Paving alterations are not limited to just asphalt roadbeds and include other surfacing materials such as reinforced concrete sections. Utility trench work is typically not considered a paving alteration; consultation with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section is recommended.

110.2.1 ADA Ramp Triggers with Paving Alterations

Paving alterations change the usability of the roadway facility, which includes pedestrian crosswalks. Paving alterations include reconstruction, rehabilitation, resurfacing, widening, and similar work while maintenance activities are treatments which are applied to seal and protect the road surface and improve friction for the vehicular use. Refer to MG100-107 in Appendix H, which outlines when paving work is considered an alteration requiring ADA ramps to be addressed.

The requirement to provide curb ramps is intended to ensure that people with disabilities can access pedestrian walkways that cross a curb. The following illustrations show the curb ramp triggers based on various paving scenarios commonly encountered with projects. Curb ramps must be constructed and completed at the time the work or construction activity is triggered, or prior to the alteration work. Curb ramp reconstruction for a triggered ADA ramp often involves geometric revisions and reconstruction of the second curb ramp at the existing corner as it may have interdependent features.

DRAFT

Figure 100-11: Example 1 - 1R Paving Scenario Existing Conditions and Requirements

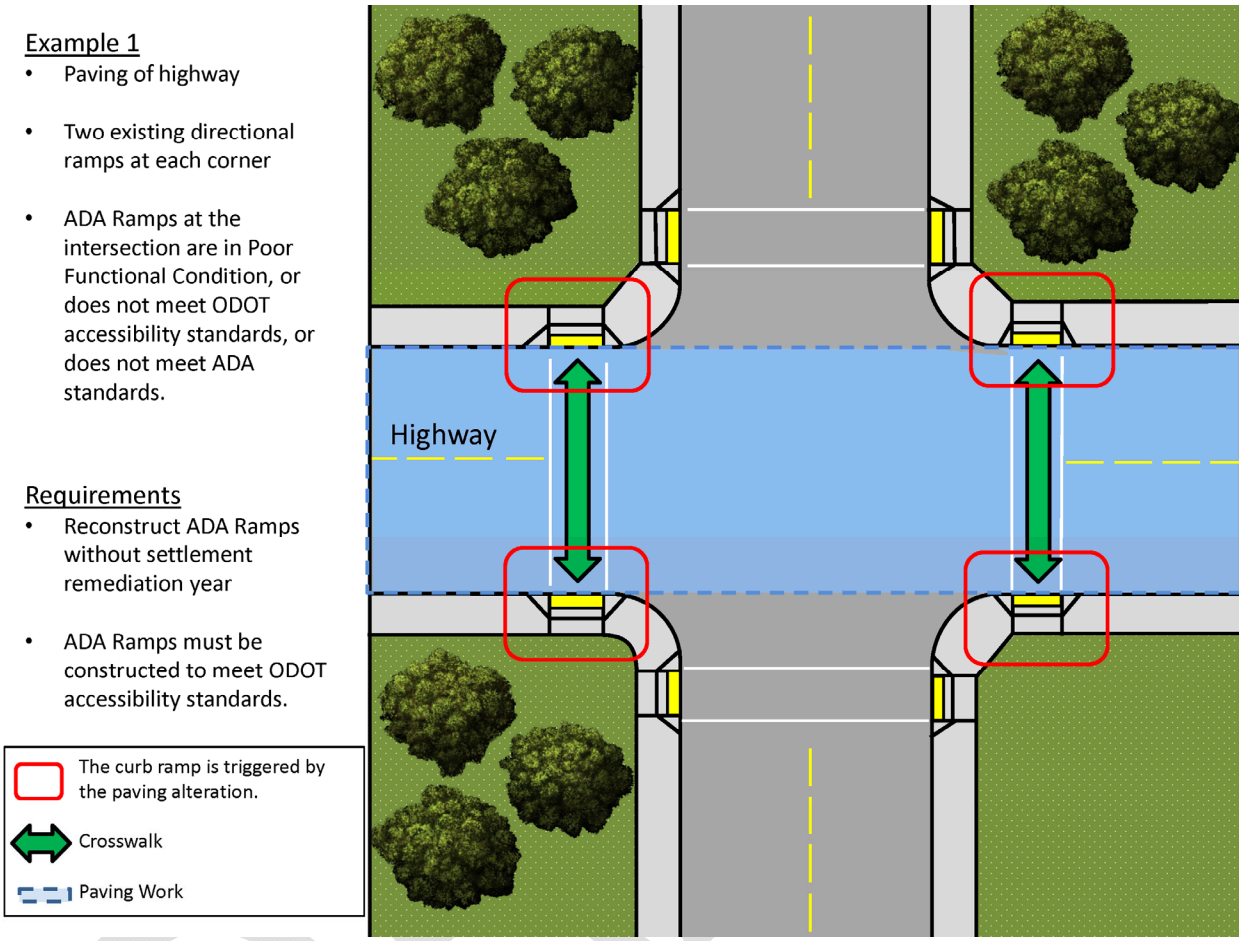


Figure 100-12: Example 2 - 1R Paving Scenario Existing Conditions and Requirements

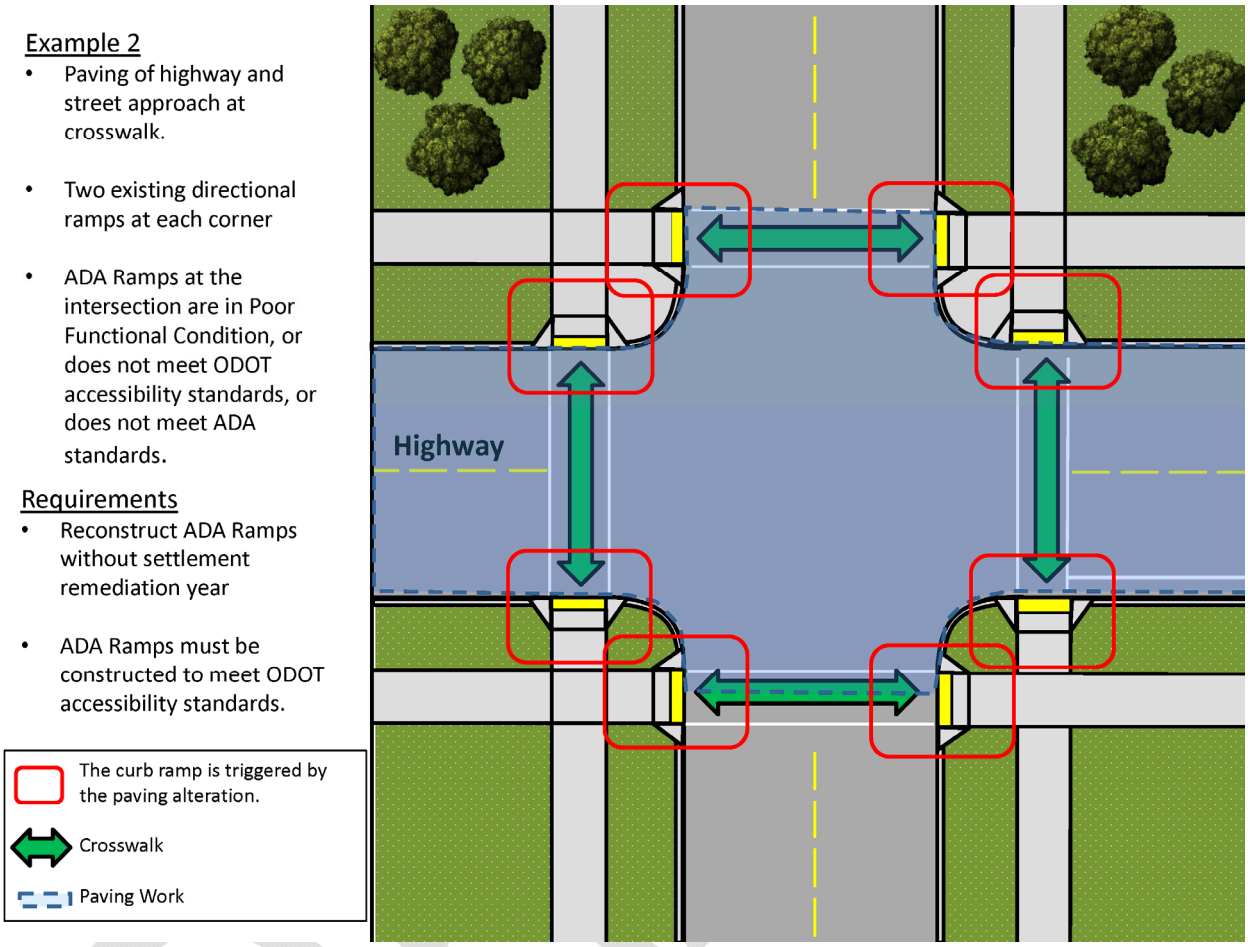


Figure 100-13: Example 3 - 1R Paving Scenario Existing Conditions and Requirements

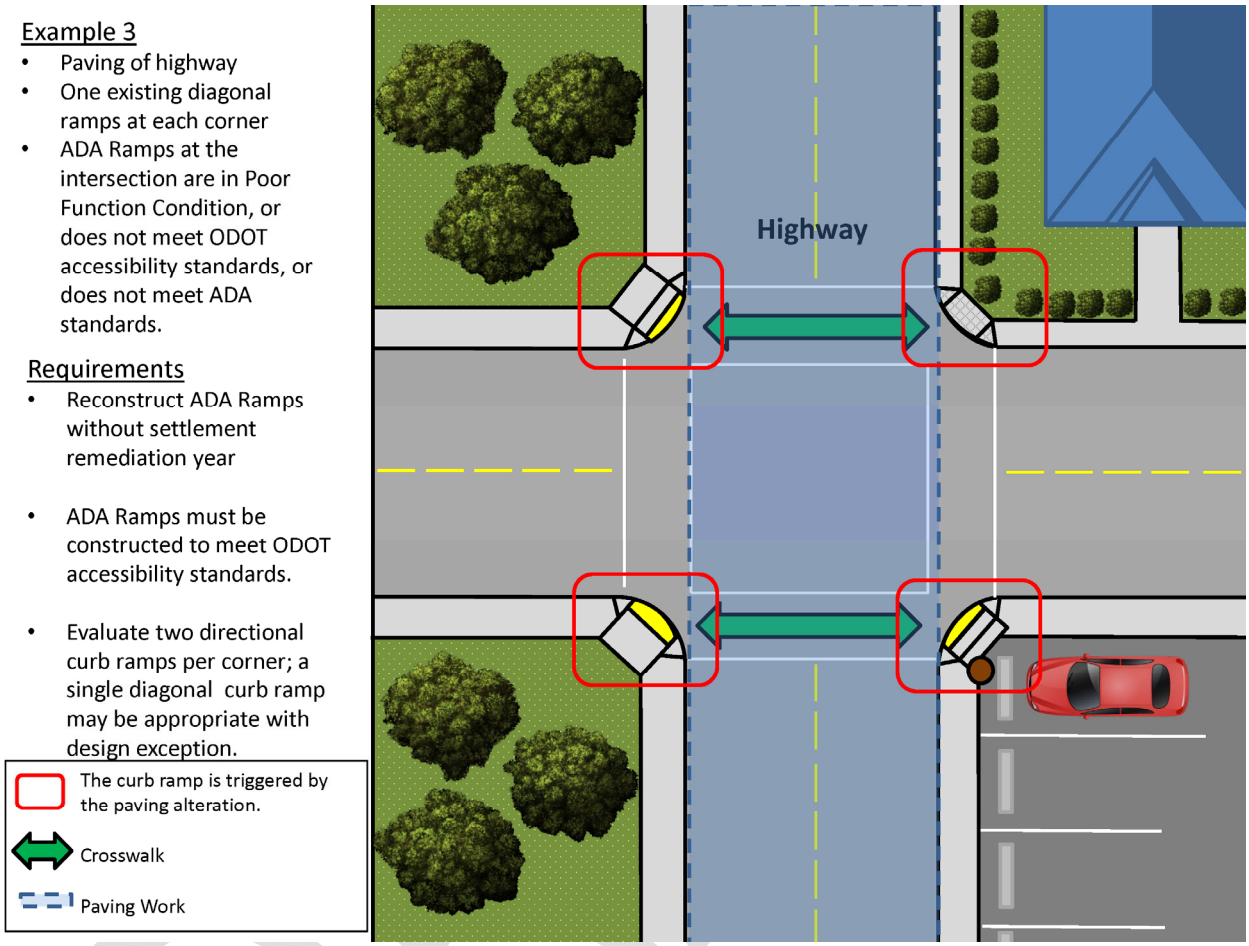


Figure 100-14: Example 4 - 1R Paving Scenario Existing Conditions and Requirements

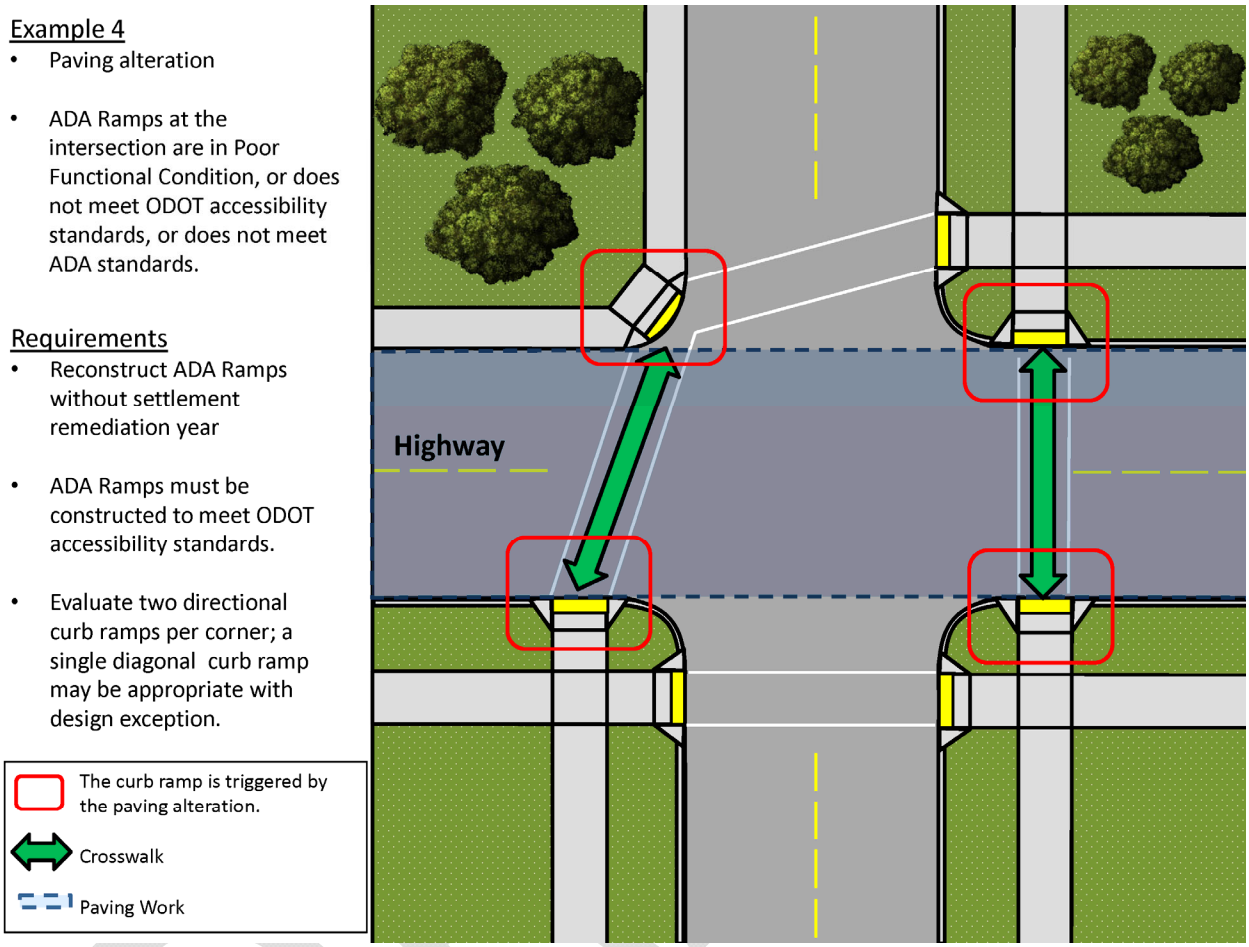


Figure 100-15: Example 5 - 1R Paving Scenario Existing Conditions

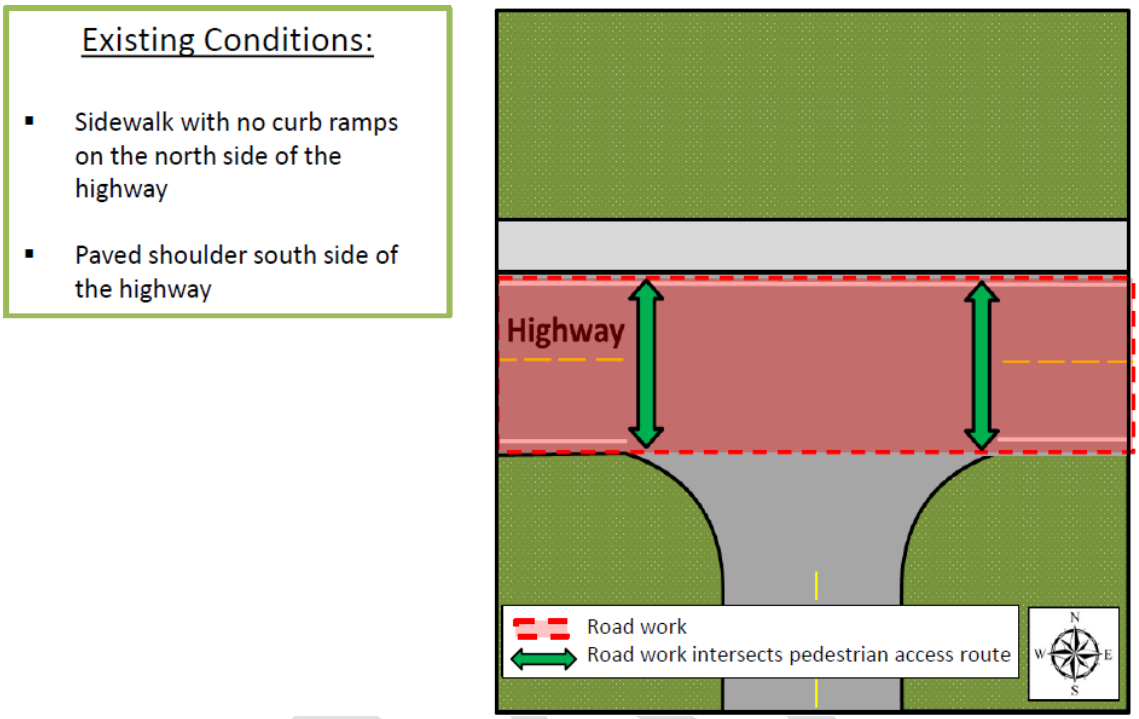


Figure 100-16: Example 5 - 1R Paving Scenario Requirements

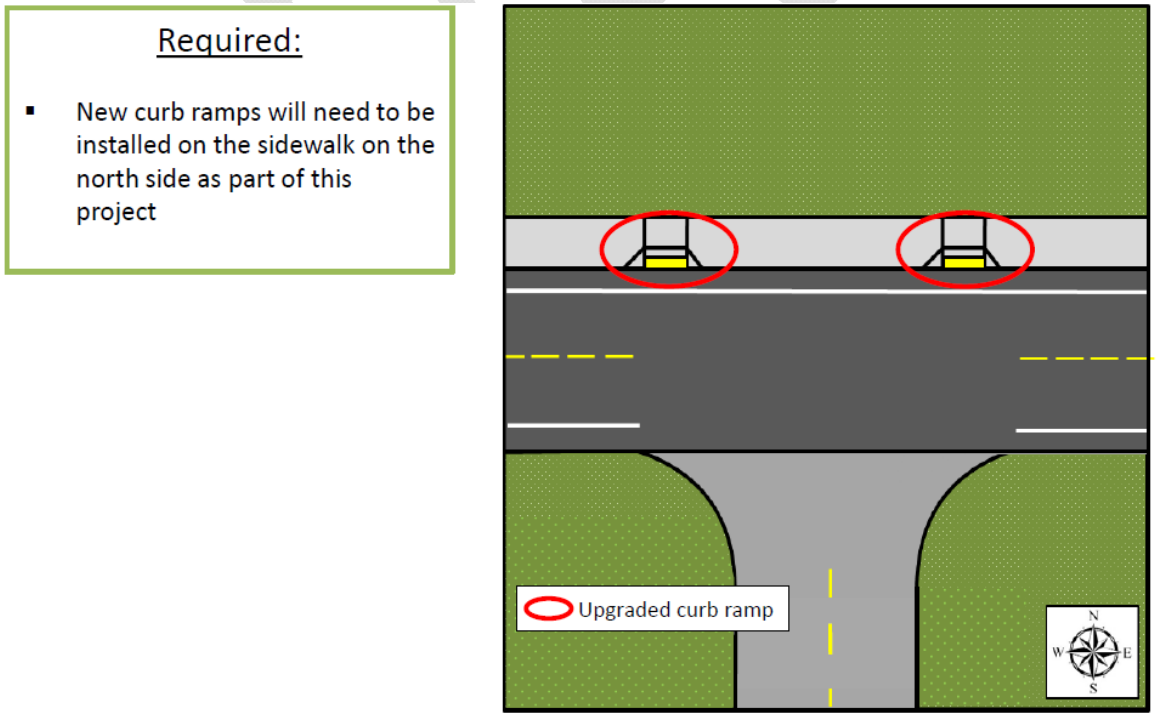


Figure 100-17: Example 6 - 1R Paving Scenario Existing Conditions

Existing Conditions:

- Paved shoulder north and south sides of the highway

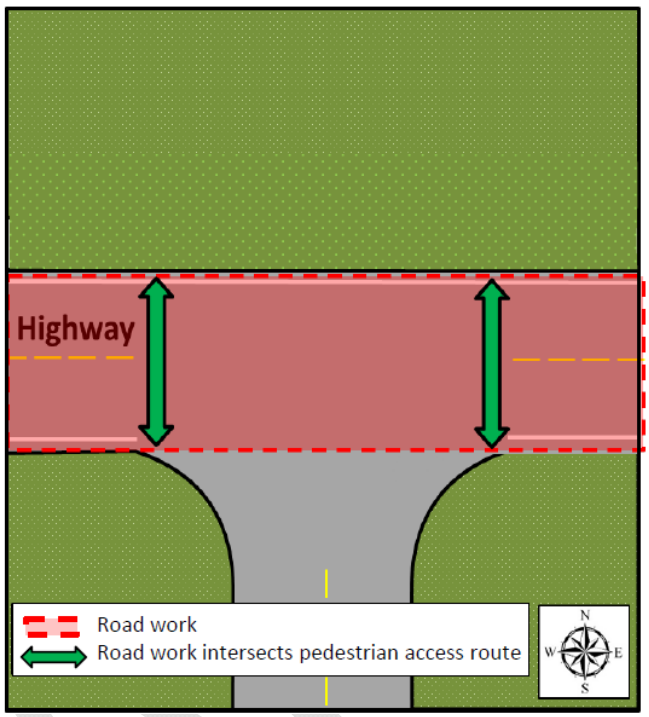
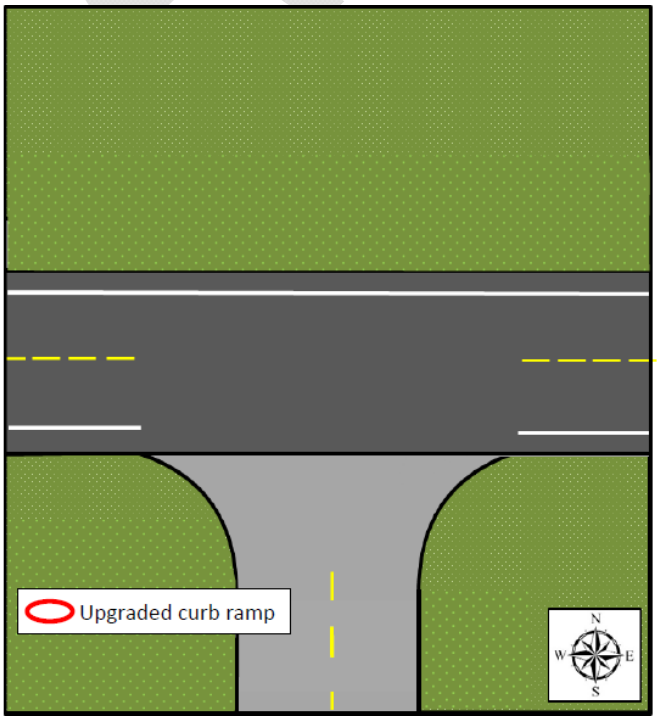


Figure 100-18: Example 6 - 1R Paving Scenario Requirements

Required:

- No curb ramps need to be installed on this project



110.2.2 ADA Ramp Triggers at Bridges

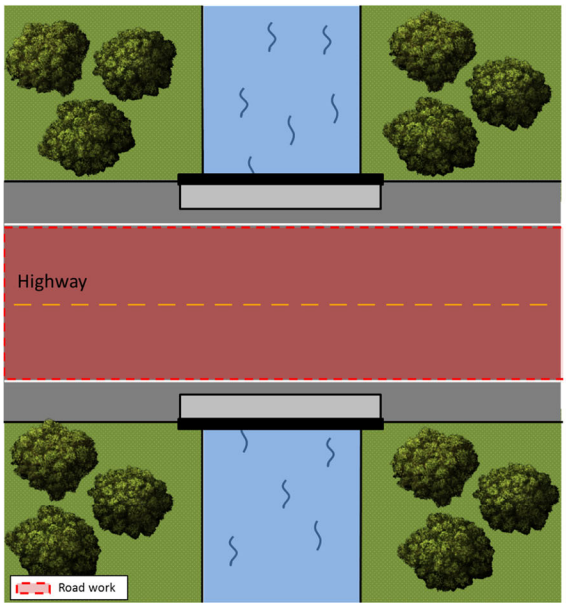
Bridges provide a facility for both vehicular and pedestrian travel to cross over features such as a waterway or another transportation facility. Where walkways are not present, pedestrian travel may be expected on or along the roadway except where prohibited. Pedestrians travel in the shoulder or in the roadway when there is no walkway provided. Ensure the paving does not degrade the existing pedestrian usability and maintain a clear continuous route in the shoulder where there is no available walkway, see example figures below.

The sidewalk of a bridge is a facility that, when provided, must be accessible and usable to the greatest extent feasible by people with disabilities, regardless of whether the bridge is in an urban or rural setting. To determine whether the adjoining surface of a bridge rail is a walkway or a bridge safety curb (brush curb), refer to the Bridge Design Manual Section 1.2.10 Safety and Accessibility. Many existing bridges were constructed preceding accessibility requirements and may have only provided a narrow pedestrian sidewalk surface without a sloped end connection. Point constraints less than 32 inches do not negate the primary use for pedestrian activity and walkway determination. Some bridge rails have been altered to provide safety improvements for vehicular departures, and therefore reduced the available walkway width on bridges. Refer to Section 800 for geometric design requirements for walkways at bridge approaches and curb ramp design.

Usability of a bridge walkway can be affected when projects involve resurfacing a walkway, reconstructing a walkway, or altering (retrofitting) the bridge railing. These types of alterations provide opportunity to improve accessibility for pedestrians. The following illustrations show the curb ramp triggers based on various paving scenarios commonly encountered with projects with bridges. Curb ramps must be constructed and completed at the time of the alteration work when the construction activity occurs, or prior to the alteration work. If existing ADA ramps are not included in the inventory, utilize the curb ramp assets numbering conventions for bridges as shown on the Exhibit A: Curb Ramp Location and Numbering on the ODOT Asset webpage.

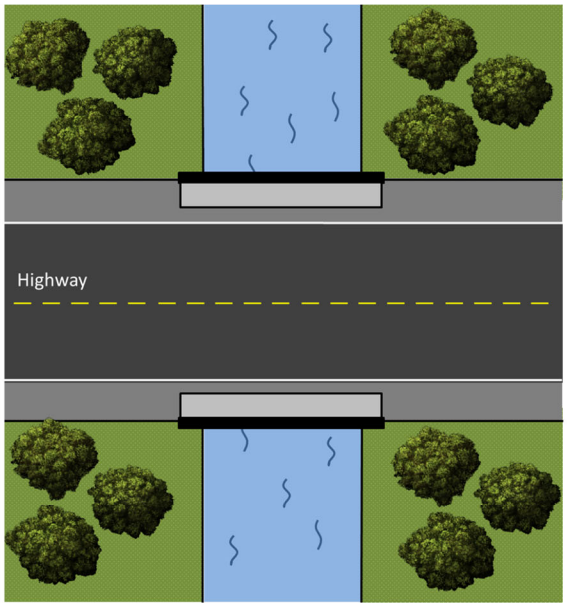
DRAFT

Figure 100-19: Example 1 - Paving in Lane ADA Ramp Triggers



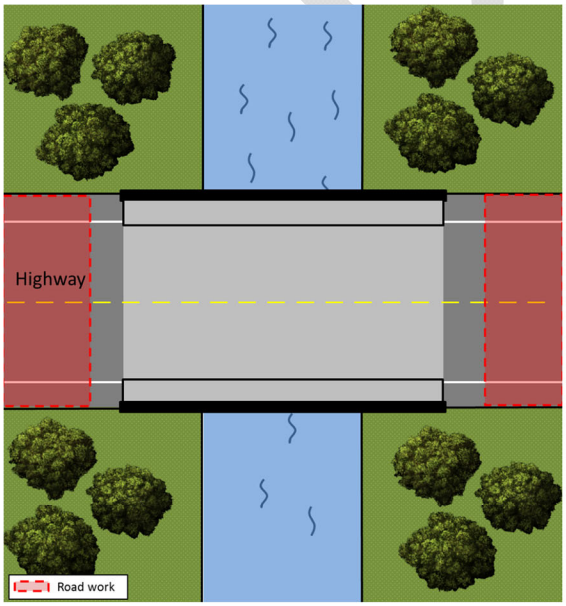
Project: Paving between fog lines through intersections.

Existing Conditions: Roadway with paved shoulder. Bridge with sidewalks.



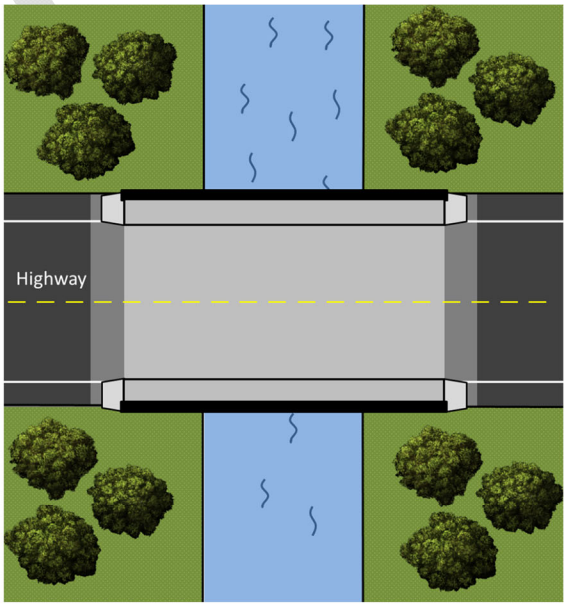
Required: Compliant curb ramps at all street crossings. Curb ramps are not required to be upgraded for the sidewalk on the bridge.

Figure 100-20: Example 2 - Full Width Paving Near Bridge Approach ADA Ramp Triggers



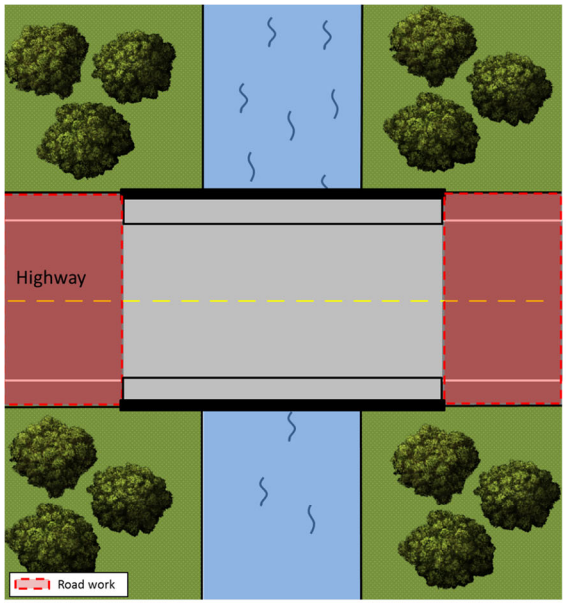
Project: Full-width paving on highway surrounding bridge.

Existing Conditions: Roadway with paved shoulders. Bridge with sidewalks.



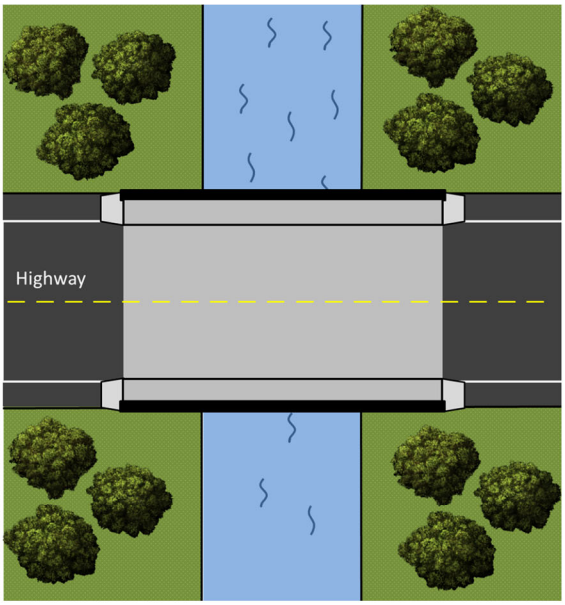
Required: Compliant curb ramps to the sidewalks on the bridge.

Figure 100-21: Example 3 - Full Width Paving to Bridge End ADA Ramp Triggers



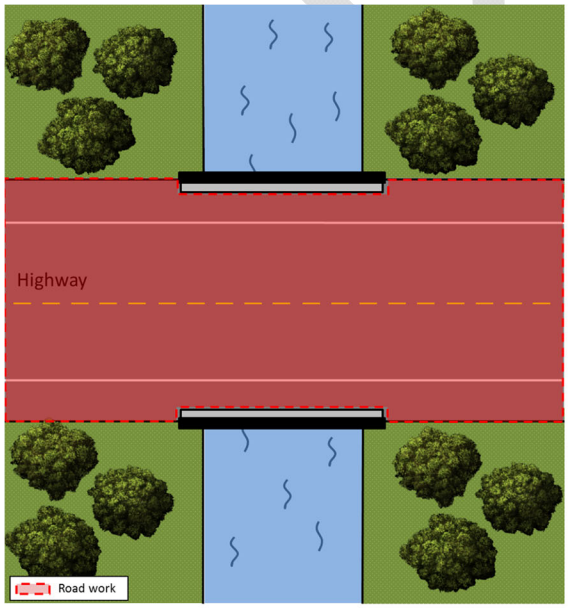
Project: Full-width paving to edge of concrete bridge deck.

Existing Conditions: Roadway with paved shoulders. Bridge with sidewalks.



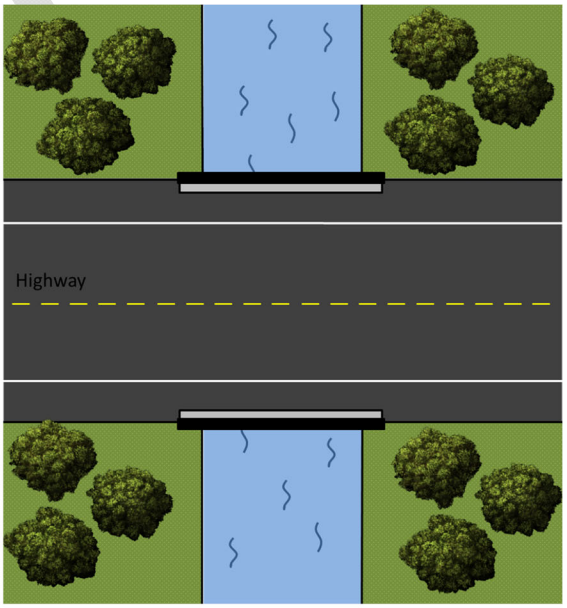
Required: ADA ramps to bridge sidewalks.

Figure 100-22: Example 4 - Full Width Paving Over Bridge with Safety Curb



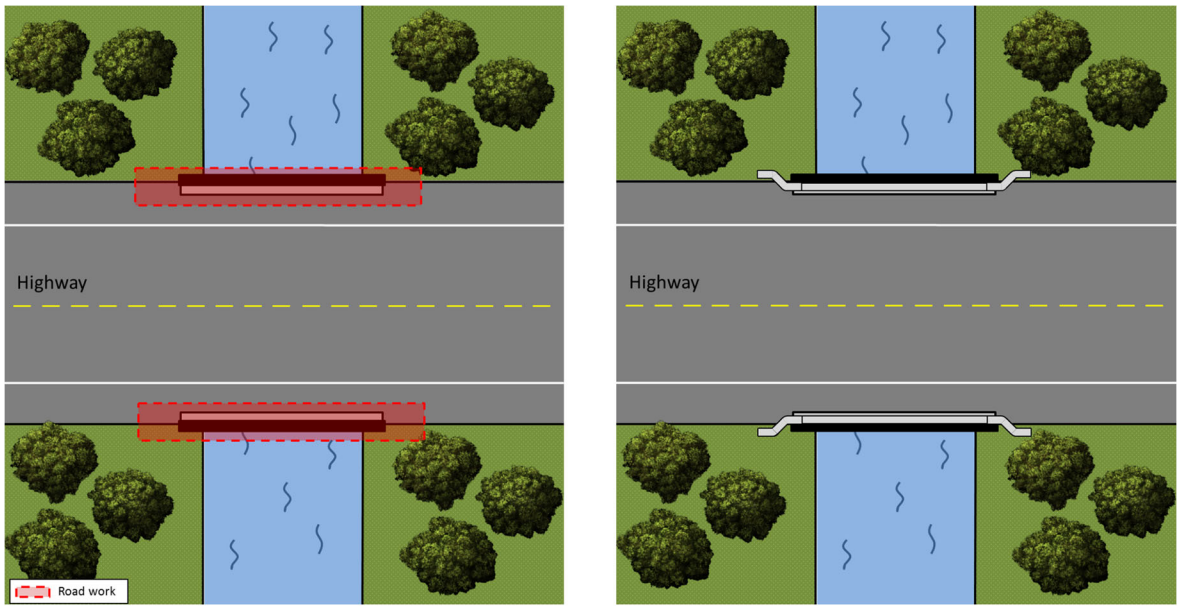
Project: Full-width paving over bridge.

Existing Conditions: Roadway with paved shoulders. Bridge without sidewalks.



Required: Ensure the pedestrian access is maintained along shoulder.

Figure 100-23: Example 5 - Bridge Rail Retrofit



Project: Rail retrofit or replacement on bridge.

Existing Conditions: Roadway with paved shoulders. Bridge without sidewalks.

Required: Ensure that pedestrian access is available along shoulder.

110.3 ADA Requirements for Transit Projects

Transit services provide a critical public service for people to complete a trip destination. Transit service stops require a clear accessible area to board and exit the vehicle. Accessible routes must be provided from the transit stop to features including benches, shelters, ticket stations, parking lots and public buildings. Accessibility requirements apply to all projects under the Interstate Maintenance, 1R, 3R, 4R, and SF standards where transit alterations occur or are newly constructed.

Transit stop alterations change the usability of the facility, which includes pedestrian access and pedestrian circulation. Transit stop alterations include a change to or addition of a transit stop, or a part thereof. Alterations included but are not limited to the following construction activities:

- Reconstruction of the existing transit stop
- Adding a new transit shelter
- Adding a new bench, fare vending machine, or a transit sign that identifies a stop or route
- Reconfiguring the interface of a transit stop with the street or sidewalk network such as floating bus stop

- Adding prepared surface for boarding and alighting
- Rearranging transit stop elements, such as benches or fare vending machines.

Normal maintenance such as painting or replacing damaged items are not alterations.

Technical requirements for accessibility are discussed further in both Part 700 and Part 800 of this manual. **A boarding and alighting area is required for each accessible transit vehicle entry/exit at a sidewalk or street-level transit stops.** Where an alteration occurs, compliance with the associated accessibility standards of the altered or added element is required to the maximum extent feasible. **In alterations and new construction, boarding and alighting areas and boarding platforms shall be connected to existing pedestrian circulation paths by pedestrian access routes.**

110.4 ADA Parking with Resurfacing

An alteration occurs when the parking area is resurfaced or reconfigured. Surface patching and restriping over existing markings is considered maintenance and does not trigger upgrades to the accessible parking stalls. **When a parking lot or on-street parking is reconfigured or resurfaced, accessible spaces must be provided meeting the standards to the maximum extent feasible.** Evaluate accessible space requirements with projects to meet program access requirements for government agencies, and review the ADA Transition Plan and CQCR's for accessible parking improvements to be included in the project. Accessible parking standards are discussed in Part 700. Lots reserved exclusively for interstate truck (tractor trailers) in rest areas are exempt from requiring accessible spaces when they are in reserved parking areas of the facility.

Section 111 ODOT 1R Standard

With agreement from FHWA, the ODOT 1R standard is intended to preserve the highway paving with single lift overlays or inlays that are considered non-structural. As such, these projects meet the FHWA definition of "alterations". See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving alterations. Generally, no specific pavement design life is considered, but it is intended to provide at least 8-years of service. Since these are considered alterations and not reconstruction projects, the Oregon statute ORS 366.514 (Bike Bill) requirements are not triggered. However, shoulder widening and other bicycle related design items can be added to 1R projects if other funding alternatives are used and the addition of the design items does not delay the project.

In addition to bicycle design elements, safety analysis and inclusion of safety improvements or safety countermeasures is an important aspect of the 1R program. The replacement of safety items such as guardrail, guardrail terminals, concrete barrier, impact attenuators, and signs may

also be included in the 1R project if funding other than Preservation funding is used and the added work will not delay the scheduled bid date. Additionally, any existing safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced by the 1R project. As noted above in the project requirements, Section 110.2, all projects that include resurfacing (except for chip seals) are to install or upgrade curb ramps.

Where additional funds are available, additional work can be added to a 1R project. In this case, the project is considered to be a 1R+ project. The additional work would generally use the 4R standard. 1R projects may include minor restriping, such as narrowing travel lanes from 12 feet to 11 feet to upgrade bicycle facilities. Major restriping, such as a road diet, is not appropriate for a 1R project without additional funds.

111.1 Scoping Requirements

To ensure the intent of the program is met in addressing pavement and safety needs, adequate advance information is needed to assure adequate statewide decisions are made with consistency. If additional funding sources are anticipated through scoping, they should be identified with the final scoping documents.

1. 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation Form
    - This form steps the scoping team through the scoping process. Parts of the form are filled out by different sections including Pavements, Traffic, and Roadway.
    - Use of this form provides a statewide uniform approach to determining the project design standard – 1R vs 3R – that will be applied to a pavement preservation project.

111.2 Project Initiation Requirements

At project initiation, the 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation form must be reviewed and validated to ensure the project will be developed under the appropriate design standard.

111.3 Paving Criteria – 1R Projects

1. A paving project is initially designated 1R based on the appropriate paving treatment. 1R pavement treatments are defined as a single lift overlay or inlay and are considered as non-structural pavement preservation according to agreement with FHWA. For preservation design life expectation see ODOT Pavement Design Guide (ODOT PDG) Section 7.1 and other related guidance in the ODOT PDG.
    - Pavement Services is the final authority regarding the pavement design.

DRAFT

2. Where less than approximately 5 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay, the project may be designated 1R.
3. Where up to approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project may be designated 1R; however, this requires the approval of a design exception.
4. Where more than approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project must be designated 3R.
5. As an exception to this rule, a grind and inlay plus an overlay may also be considered for development under the 1R standard; however, this would be uncommon and requires the approval of a design exception.
6. Where the appropriate course of action is not clear based on the percentages noted above, include ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff in the discussion.
7. Chip seals are 1R projects and subject to the requirements of the 1R standard. Chip seals alone are not paving alterations resulting in ADA Ramp work as described in Section 110.2 and MG 100-107 in Appendix H.
8. Requirements for Unprotected and Unconnected Bridge Ends - 1R Projects:

On 1R paving projects, any bridge rail with unprotected ends or unconnected transitions exposed to traffic must be mitigated. Provide an end treatment meeting the current standard, or a design exception must be obtained. (Note: In very specific, one-way roadway locations a protected bridge rail trailing end may not be required. Contact the Senior Roadway/Roadside Design Engineer in ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for guidance.) ~~For possible funding options, contact the~~The Senior Roadway / Roadside Design Engineer ~~in the ODOT Technical Services Roadway Engineering Section~~can also be contacted for possible funding options.

- Unprotected ends – Where the end of the bridge rail is exposed with no end treatment such as a transition to guardrail or a crash cushion.
- Unconnected transition – Where there is no crashworthy transition between the end of the bridge rail to the guardrail or other barrier.

111.4 Roadside Safety Hardware Requirements for 1R Projects

The FACS-STIP tool is used to access roadside safety hardware data and other inventory data used for scoping 1R projects.

ODOT has adopted the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH 2016) as the standard criteria for assessing and crash testing roadside safety hardware. Existing safety hardware evaluated under the previous standard – NCHRP 350 is allowed to remain in service in most cases on 1R projects.

Pre-NCHRP 350 hardware may be upgraded if additional funding is available (1R+). Existing roadside safety hardware that is left in service must be adjusted as necessary to maintain functionality. See Part 400.

111.5 Curb Ramp Requirements for 1R Projects

See Section 110.2 for project requirements related to curb ramp reconstruction.

111.6 Preservation (1R vs. 3R)

The term preservation is often used as a catch-all meaning. Improvements to extend the service life of existing facilities, and rehabilitative work on roadways are preservation types of projects. In general, preservation projects add useful life to the road without increasing the capacity, and may include:

1. Pavement inlays and/or overlays (including minor safety and bridge improvements)
2. Interstate Maintenance (IM) Program (pavement preservation projects on the Interstate system)
3. Re-establishing an existing roadway
4. Resurfacing projects

The pavement preservation category of projects on state highways uses the ODOT 3R Urban, Rural, Freeway, or 1R standard depending upon the highway classification and location. Generally, preservation projects preserve and extend the service life of an existing highway typically by at least 8 years. 1R preservation projects are focused primarily on improving pavement condition and restriping markings. They are usually considered non-structural, and a specific design life may not be intended. 3R Preservation projects may include small portions of modernization activities as part of the project such as affecting subgrade, re-basing, adding a turn lane, or minor curve modifications. ***As long as these elements do not account for over 50 percent of the project length, the appropriate ODOT 3R standard is to be used, otherwise the project is treated as modernization and the appropriate ODOT 4R/New standard shall be used.*** As discussed earlier, the different funding sources may allow a combination of design standards to be used with the appropriate design standard being used for the specific work type. ETSB Roadway Engineering Section can assist regarding the appropriate standards to use for projects that involve multiple work types.

DRAFT

There are cases where the designer needs to be aware of funding limitations as they relate to preservation type projects and safety features. This information is more fully discussed later in this section.

111.7 Preventive Maintenance

Preventive Maintenance is a planned strategy of cost-effective treatments to an existing roadway system and its appurtenances that preserves the system, retards future deterioration, and maintains or improves the functional condition of the system without significantly increasing the structural capacity. An example of Preventive Maintenance is a chip seal project.

Preventive maintenance projects are often done through maintenance forces, and they preserve and extend the service life of existing highways and structures. Preventive maintenance projects are subject to ODOT 1R design standards, and generally maintain existing lane and shoulder widths. However, even these projects can evaluate the existing cross-section and with restriping, can reconfigure the cross-section to make improvements for multimodal considerations.

Section 112 ODOT 3R Design Standards

The 3R standard is intended to preserve and extend the service life of existing highways and enhance safety using cost-effective solutions. Service life is extended with structural rehabilitation without complete reconstruction.

ODOT 3R Design Standards are found in several Parts of the HDM. ODOT 3R design criteria are located in Parts 200 and 300, which contain information dealing with pavement widths, horizontal curvature, superelevation, and other design areas specific to this type of work. The 3R requirements are similar to TRB Special Report #214, but with additional guidance in respect to context, performance-base design, and design flexibility. Guidance from other research such as NCHRP Report 876, Guidelines for Integrating Cost-Effectiveness into Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation (3R) Projects may be applicable. ODOT 3R standards have been developed for both Urban and Rural areas and are arranged according to functional class. 3R type projects located on designated expressways are to use the appropriate urban or rural arterial 3R standard.

DRAFT

112.1 Preservation (Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation)

As stated above, 3R are projects that preserve and extend the service life of existing highways and enhance safety using cost-effective solutions. Improvements include extending pavement life by at least 8 years, safety enhancements, minor widening (minor widening considered to be widening at spot locations, widening at curves, etc.), improvements in vertical and horizontal alignment, improvement in superelevation, flattening of side slopes and removal of roadside hazards. The scope is influenced by factors such as roadside conditions, funding constraints, environmental concerns, changing traffic and land use patterns, surfacing deterioration and crash type and rate. 3R projects are not constructed with the intent of improving highway mobility; however, it is sometimes an incidental benefit of improving the riding surface and improving safety.

This category includes but is not limited to the following types of work: overlay projects with or without minor widening to shoulders or travel lanes, Latex Modified Concrete (LMC) overlays, widening for curb, and extending tapers. Also included in this class are projects with site-specific vertical or horizontal curve corrections, and left turn channelizations, when included in an overlay project for safety purposes. Scarifying existing surfacing, rebasing and repaving is considered as 3R if the scope of the job does not require the original subgrade to be altered. All project widening in this category is limited to less than a full lane width except when channelization is incorporated.

Due to the variance in project scopes, the application of 3R standards will typically involve substantial engineering judgment compared to 4R projects where, in general, design elements are being brought up to current standard. Project scope of work, purpose and need, and alternative analysis all combine to determine trade-offs in respect to 3R projects and must be included in the decision process of determining which design elements are affected. All projects shall strive to meet all of the 3R design requirements. However, with the primary focus of 3R projects preserving and extending the pavement life and the associated accessibility improvements such as curb ramps, not all projects are able to improve all project elements. In respect to engineering judgment, the use of design exceptions with appropriate justification may be an appropriate tool in designing 3R projects.

When preservation projects are being considered for 1R, the 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation process will be used to determine if the preservation project will be a 1R project, a 1R+ project, or a 3R project. Once this determination has been made the appropriate design standards are to be used.

As discussed above, engineering judgment will be involved in some preservation projects as it is possible for 3R projects to have some 4R design elements, such as vertical and horizontal curve correction, adding a bike lane, sidewalk, walkways and curb ramps. **Those 4R elements are to meet the 4R standards. Depending on the project specifics, it may be more appropriate**

DRAFT

from a design flexibility and context perspective to request a design exception to the 4R requirements.

Section 113 ODOT 4R/New Design Standard

The ODOT 4R/New standard is intended to be used to either reconstruct or newly construct infrastructure. Reconstruction involves removal of base material and may involve changes to vertical or horizontal geometry of the highway.

Generally, these standards are found in the HDM, starting in this Part 100 and running through the remaining document. The ODOT 4R/New standards give specific values for use in all areas of design. It is intended that all design values given in the ODOT 4R/New standards are to be within the values or ranges given in the AASHTO Green Book. That publication is to be referenced, when a particular design detail is not covered in the ODOT 4R/New standards. ODOT 4R/New standards have been developed for both Urban and Rural areas of the state and are further defined by freeways, expressways, and arterial standards.

The ODOT 4R/New standards also contain the following specific requirements which are not included within the AASHTO Green Book:

1. ODOT requires use of spirals. Use spiral lengths given in the HDM, as appropriate.
2. Superelevation runoffs match the ODOT spiral length
3. ODOT requires construction minimum vertical clearances
4. For vertical clearance on Local Agency jurisdiction roadways, see Part 300
5. Use ODOT specific design speeds. See Section 207.10 Speed, Context, and Design.
6. Use a performance-based and context-sensitive design approach to ODOT's six urban contexts

The ODOT 4R/New standard is applicable to projects that are considered either new construction or reconstruction as defined in the AASHTO Green Book.

New construction projects are projects constructed in a new location with new alignments where no existing roadway is present. Other New construction projects may include major additions such as interchanges and safety rest areas or rebuilding an existing facility with major vertical or horizontal alignment changes. Other modal new construction projects can include multi-use paths and off-road bicycle facility options. Very little of ODOT's work is new construction as most of the highway infrastructure is in place. ODOT primarily maintains, preserves, and enhances existing highway corridors. New construction projects generally improve transportation safety, address gaps and deficiencies in the multimodal transportation network, add capacity to the highway system to facilitate existing traffic and/or accommodate projected traffic growth thereby enhancing the corridor. New construction projects can also

DRAFT

include new construction activities such as construction of a new segment of highway on new alignment. Other modal projects on state highways and bridges such as light-rail, bus-rapid transit, streetcar, and alike can be considered new construction or reconstruction projects. Rural new construction projects typically achieve a 20-year service life for pavements. A 30-year pavement service life is required for urban corridors, bridge approaches, grade constrained underpasses, and railroad crossing.

Reconstruction projects upgrade the facility to acceptable geometric standards and as a result, often provide a greater roadway width. The improvements may be in the form of additional lanes and/or wider shoulders and produce an improvement in the highway's mobility. Reconstruction projects normally include, but are not limited to, the following types of work:

1. Altering the original subgrade
2. New, or replacement of, Structures or bridges, and similar projects.
3. Addition of Lanes including:
    a. Through Lanes
    b. Passing and Climbing Lanes
    c. Turn Lanes
    d. Acceleration and Deceleration Lanes
    e. High Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) lanes
    f. Reconfiguring cross section with striping or managed lanes (4R only when adding lanes, striping reconfiguration can also be achieved with 1R and 3R projects.)
4. New alignments/New or upgraded facilities, including pedestrian, bicycle and transit facilities
5. Highway reconstruction with major alignment improvements or major widening
6. Grade separations and Interchanges
7. Widening of bridges to add travel lanes
8. New safety rest areas and viewpoints
9. Parking lot, park-n-ride, transit center/hub, and similar projects
10. Port of entry and weigh station facilities
11. Vehicle charging stations
12. Truck escape ramps
13. Median crossovers
14. Tolling infrastructure and facilities

DRAFT

15. New multi-use/shared use path

See the 2018 AASHTO Green Book, Section 1.7 for additional information on the definitions for New Construction, Reconstruction, and Construction Projects on Existing Roads.

When the 4R requirements cannot be achieved, a design exception is required (see 106.2 and Part 1000).

113.1 Single Function Projects (4R)

Single Function projects are 4R projects with a limited scope of work. Single Function projects do not require non-related substandard features of the roadway to be addressed. For example, if a guardrail upgrade qualifies as a Single Function project, it is not necessary to address other substandard features on the roadway, such as lane and shoulder width, horizontal and vertical alignment, etc.

Design exceptions are only required on the element or component that is modified or altered within the 4R single function project. See specific or applicable sections throughout the HDM relating to each element or component. See Part 1000 for the design exception request process.

Single Function 4R projects include projects that do not permanently impact the travel lanes or shoulders of the highway (boundaries of the roadway realm). Generally, projects that only include work outside the edge of pavement will qualify for as a 4R single function project. For example, guardrail only projects are outside the edge of pavement. Culvert replacement projects may involve work within the roadway, however, will not permanently impact the travel lanes, and can be single function projects. These projects address a specific need. Another example of a single function project with work within the roadway is a rockfall mitigation project that also involves work to reopen the roadway, as long as the work within the roadway is restoring pre-slide conditions. The scope of work is limited to features that are directly impacted as a result of addressing the specific need. For example, a signal upgrade at an urban intersection may impact the sidewalk and trigger the need to provide necessary accessibility upgrades. In no case shall safety, operations, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded as a result of a single function project. **Each feature constructed in a single function project must be built to the applicable standard for new construction.** Resurfacing projects are not single function projects (see 110.2.1).

ADA Program specific projects are technically not classified as Single Function, rather a very limited scope. While they are focused on a single overall objective, they have specific requirements that need to be met that often goes beyond the intent of the Single Function category. For practical purposes, ADA Program specific projects can be considered similar to Single Function projects in that they do not need to address all elements across the roadway section in the scope of improvements and substandard roadway features are not addressed. ADA Program specific projects focus needed accessibility upgrades.

DRAFT

Section 114 AASHTO Design Standards

These standards are contained in the AASHTO Green Book. AASHTO standards are specifically for use in the design of new construction and reconstruction projects, when the project is located on routes under local jurisdiction and federally funded. The FAST Act, Section 1404(b) provides for additional flexibility by providing for the use of other design guidance documents in conjunction with the AASHTO Green Book on locally owned NHS roadways where it is applicable.

As stated in the preface of the book, the AASHTO Green Book is not intended as a policy for 3R projects, traffic engineering, safety, and preventive maintenance-type projects that include very minor or no roadway work. The reader is referred to NCHRP Report 876 and related references, for guidance in the design of 3R projects. However, for local agency urban preservation type projects utilizing federal funding, the local agency has the choice of using the ODOT 3R standard or AASHTO's Green Book in conjunction with other recognized guidance provided by provision from the FAST Act, Section 1404(b).

AASHTO's Green Book policy is organized in a system so the roadway's functional classification and volume determines which part of the policy applies to that roadway. The AASHTO policy includes chapters in which general design controls and elements are discussed as they apply to all types of functional classifications and provide groundwork to understanding basic design concepts. These chapters cover highway functions, design controls and criteria, elements of design, and cross section elements. The policy also gives specific design information for at-grade intersections, grade separations and interchanges.

Chapter 1 of the 2018 AASHTO Green Book continues to embrace design flexibility and performance-based design for projects as part of the project development process, and introduces definitions of the following work types:

1. New construction
2. Reconstruction
3. Projects on existing roads

The "projects on existing road" definition addresses projects "that do not change the basic roadway". Although not defined, these types of projects are very similar to 3R projects in respect to the following considerations:

- Maintaining the existing roadway if the roadway in question is performing well or,
- Making spot improvements to address crashes or,
- Making operational improvement for specific needs, or
- Making cost-effective design improvements that would be expected to reduce crashes.

DRAFT

Chapter 1 of the 2018 Green Book, 7th Edition, also introduced a context classification system that characterizes roadways by their surrounding environment and how the roadway fits into the community. This is very similar to the approach ODOT has taken, initially in the 2003 Highway Design Manual (OHP Highway Segment Designations) and further developed in the Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD). The next update of the AASHTO Green Book, the 8th edition, will be a wholesale change from previous versions and will fully incorporate these concepts throughout the revision. The remainder of AASHTO's 2018 Green Book policy covers design details as they relate to specific functional classifications. AASHTO Green Book policy provides design direction for the following classifications:

1. Rural and Urban Freeways
2. Rural and Urban Arterials
3. Rural & Urban Collector Roads and Streets
4. Local Roads and Streets including Special Purpose Roads

It is imperative that any user of the AASHTO Green Book study and understand the concept of functional classification. The 2018 AASHTO Green Book gives an explanation of this in Chapter 1 (Highway Functions) and the above-mentioned discussion on roadway context. Part 1200 of this manual outlines additional information dealing with traffic studies and functional class in urban areas and how it relates to design. There may be occasions, due to functional class definitions, that an urban setting may have a rural functional classification. In these situations, the designer should consult with the Region Roadway Manager.

Functional Classifications have been established for all state highways by the ODOT Transportation Development Branch. Appendix A contains a list of resources for determining route functional classification. The functional classification should also be checked against the functional classification contained in a local TSP. Design specifics cannot be accurately selected from the AASHTOs Green Book without the correct functional class being known. When determining context, functional classification is balanced with land use classification. A functional classification of a roadway through a rural town might be considered as a rural arterial, since the town may not reach the minimum defined population density to be considered urban under federal classification guideline. However, the land use classification may be more urban with adjoining properties being commercial and retail businesses centered around a core. In this case, an urban context would be appropriate for design criteria decisions, balancing the functional roadway classification with the urban feel and needs of the adjacent land use.

Section 115 Design Standards for Special Cases

Depending on the work to be done that does not fall within one of the above design standards, the design standard for the project needs to be decided as a special case for that project. That

decision should be made by the project development team and approved by the State Roadway Engineer and/or the State Traffic Engineer.

115.1 Combined Projects Standards or Types

A project may have more than one design standard applied to different segments where it is appropriate and fits the purpose and need of the project scope. A project scope may include intersection improvements, while other portions may be limited to preservation paving. Many times, projects are combined for programmatic, scheduling, contracting or efficiency purposes, while still maintaining separate design standards.

115.2 Routine Maintenance

Routine Maintenance consists of work that is planned and performed on a routine basis to maintain and preserve the condition of the highway system or to respond to specific conditions and events that restore the highway system to an adequate level of service. Routine maintenance activities are typically performed by the district maintenance offices.

115.3 Bridge

Bridge design categories determine the design criteria and requirements for projects on bridges. These categories include Modernization, Retrofit, Preservation, or Maintenance. These categories and related design criteria and requirements are defined for bridge projects and found in the Bridge Design Manual (BDM).

These categories operate independently from the roadway design standards identified in Section 110 and Section 113. A project involving bridges will have both a roadway design standard and at least one bridge design category. For projects initiating outside of Bridge Program, the bridge design category may be based on the work required by the roadway design standard; however, the bridge design category must still be determined. Non-structural overlays of bridge decks that meet the definition of an alteration per FHWA are considered a permanent modification to the traveled way, and trigger the requirements specified in 110.2.2 (ADA) and 111.3 (Paving Criteria – 1R Projects).

Roadway design standards and other agreements govern work outside of the bridge footprint, including approach slabs, drainage features and bridge rail transitions.

DRAFT

115.4 Safety

Safety projects address the statewide prioritized crash locations and corridors, including the Interstate system, in order to reduce the number of fatal and serious injury crashes. The All Roads Transportation Safety (ARTS) Program has been developed to address the safety needs on all public roads in Oregon. The ARTS Program is data and safety driven to achieve the greatest benefits in crash reduction and is blind to jurisdiction.

Safety projects typically fall into two categories, systemic and hot spots. Systemic projects are those that typically use low-cost safety measures that have been proven to reduce fatal and serious injury crashes. Systemic projects focus on intersections, roadway departures, and bicycle and pedestrian.

Examples of systemic projects include:

1. Installation of curve warning signs
2. Reflective backplates on signals
3. Delineation
4. Rumble strips
5. Countdown pedestrian timers
6. Bicycle and Pedestrian projects such as pedestrian lighting and bicycle lanes.

Hot spot projects are those that have been identified as having a higher than normal crash occurrences. Typical hot spot project locations are segments of roadways or intersections. Examples of hot spot projects include:

1. Left turn channelization
2. Installation of climbing lanes or passing lanes
3. Curve realignments
4. Installation of traffic signals
5. Installation of roundabouts
6. Conversion of a signal to a roundabout

With the Department's limited resources and performance-based, practical design approach, safety projects focus on providing solutions in a prioritized manner to solve the highest-level issues first. For example, the primary intent of a left turn channelization project may be to reduce rear-end crashes but may not address non-standard shoulder and lane widths or install a right turn lane where right turn criteria have been met. These safety projects are focused on a specific improvement that require mitigation but do not require addressing other non-standard features that are unrelated to the specific safety issue identified in the project scope. Limited safety funding is not intended to be used to upgrade features where there is no identified safety issue.

DRAFT

As with all projects, the Practical Design Goals and S.C.O.P.E. Values are applied to safety projects. As outlined by Practical Design Goal #3 (design projects that make the system better, address changing needs, and/or maintain current functionality by meeting, but not necessarily exceeding, the defined project purpose and need and project goals) safety projects may focus on specific prioritized safety issues, providing an incremental improvement while improving and/or maintaining safety. As with all projects, engineering judgment and the use of the design exception process are a vital element of the development of safety projects and help efficiently focus specific funding to projects where it is needed.

The design standard selection on a safety project will be determined on a case-by-case evaluation from discussion between region traffic and roadway staff and ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff based on project context and location specifics. Generally, safety projects use 4R standards for the elements affected. However, because safety projects are focused on particular concerns at prioritized crash sites, engineering judgment is necessary when evaluating roadway cross-section elements and safety treatments for proposed improvements. Table 100-2 lists applicable standards for project types.

In order to provide the greatest improvement in relation to the limited funding available, roadway elements that are directly related to the scope and focus of the safety issue being addressed will be improved. It may be acceptable to leave in place existing non-standard roadway elements that do not directly affect the project focus, providing that doing so does not degrade the roadway section or create additional safety concerns. For safety projects that involve channelization, Figure: 500-19 Left-Turn Channelization provides alternative guidance on shoulder width. Safety projects that are considered Single Function 4R include traffic signals, illumination, signing, delineation, pavement marking, removal of fixed objects, pedestrian crossing improvements and continuous rumble strip projects that do not include significant additional pavement. Regardless of which standard is selected, design exceptions may be necessary to meet the project S.C.O.P.E. values and should be evaluated early in project scoping.

115.5 Operations

Operations projects increase the efficiency of the highway system, leading to safer traffic operations and greater system reliability. These types of projects include:

1. ITS: Intelligent Transportation System (includes ramp metering, variable message signing, incident management, emergency response, traffic management operation centers, and mountain pass and urban traffic cameras)
2. TDM: Transportation Demand Management (includes rideshare, vanpool, and park and ride programs)
3. Rockfalls and Slides (chronic rockfall areas and slides; not emergency repair work)

DRAFT

4. Signals, signs, channelization, and other operational improvements such as restriping and minor widening.

Many of the operational work type projects involve installation of system management equipment and operation improvement items such as ramp meters, response equipment or signs and signals. These installations would all use standard equipment. Operational projects such as rockfall and slide projects would use the Single function category, which includes 4R standards for new/reconstructed elements as this type of project is intended for safety enhancements and not an improvement in roadway width or highway mobility. Operational projects that include channelization or widening will also use 4R standards for new/reconstructed elements. The overall project standard of 3R vs 4R depends on the scope of work.

115.6 Development Review ~~and~~ / Permitted Projects (Non-STIP)

Development review projects ~~are those land development projects with associated traffic~~ that ~~may impact~~affect ODOT ROW are permitted through the ~~safety and operations of state transportation facilities.~~Maintenance District office. Development review projects may impact traffic, safety and operations, mobility, ~~ODOT facilities,~~ access to the state system, local street network~~, safety,~~,, pedestrian and bicycle facilities, rail, ~~etc. Development review projects~~signals, illumination and more. Even when they do not have direct connection to state highways, they may result in improvements on state highway frontage when required by the final land use decision issued by the local jurisdiction. Permitted projects vary in scope from minor driveway approach construction and sidewalk infill to larger impacts, such as ~~sidewalks,~~ bike lanes, right and left turn channelization, and intersection traffic control ~~such as~~ (roundabouts or signals/signal modifications) as part of the ~~mitigation alternatives~~conditions of approval.

Integrating new development into and along the existing infrastructure and transportation system creates the need for continuous collaboration. This type of project requires the development review team to review existing plans, prior studies, and/or other information about the project location to verify that the improvements associated with the development meet the code requirements and long-term needs for the area. ODOT staff reviewing development related projects should review the TSP and corridor plan, if available, to understand the urban context, goals and desired outcomes for the project area, and future right-of-way needs. In most cases, it will not be feasible to conduct a planning process as part of the development review, but project teams will be able to follow the decision-making framework in this chapter to document assumptions and decisions. **Development review projects use the 4R Standard~~.~~ for all new or reconstructed elements.** Depending on the scope of work, the 4R Standard may expand to existing elements that are not reconstructed. For example, an interchange modification to support a new development may result in new centerline geometry

and traveled way modifications that elevate it to 4R for all elements. Conversely, a sidewalk infill with driveway reconstruction would not alter the traveled way, so only the items within the construction limits would need to follow the 4R Standard. Since the traveled way isn't altered in the sidewalk infill example, existing objects within the clear zone would be documented through a 3R clear zone design exception instead of a 4R design exception. However, if the project also restriped the highway resulting in reduced offsets to existing fixed offsets, a 4R clear zone DE would be required.

Development Review projects generally do not require the design life V/C requirements (Table 1200-2) to be met as the project mitigation ~~will determine~~often determines the needed improvements on the state highway system. However, more extensive projects such as intersection and interchange modifications or local agency delivered projects that come through Maintenance District offices for a permit may trigger them. Consult with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section when unsure if the design life requirement is triggered. In many development review instances, there will be limitations on developer requirements for cross-section improvements. These limitations often restrict work to half-street improvements and improvements only along the developer's available frontage in order to meet permitting requirements. If the selected design does not align with adopted plans or current standards for the urban context, ODOT staff should document design decisions and seek agreement from the multidisciplinary project team.

115.7 Miscellaneous/Special Programs

These are projects funded through special programs such as grants that do not easily fit into other work types. The design standard selection on these projects will be determined on a case-by-case evaluation based on project context and location specifics. There are times when 3R standards or Single Function 4R guidelines are appropriate. Projects that provide greater roadway width, add capacity, affect curb placement, or improve the level of mobility are to use 4R standards. Examples of these special programs may include bicycle and pedestrian grants, fish passage and culvert improvements, and immediate opportunity funds.

Examples of special programs are the ADA Program and CQCR construction projects. The ADA Program Projects are a special case with application of design requirements and processes that deviate from 1R,3R, 4R, and SF standards under a technical bulletin for the program. When CQCR accessibility accommodations described in Part 800 result in a stand-alone construction project, they are a special case with an incremental improvement to the transportation system requiring coordination with the State Roadway Engineer. **When the ADA Program provides funds to a STIP project to complete curb ramp reconstruction because it is in the same vicinity, the project will follow the applicable roadway standards under 1R, 3R, 4R, or SF and follow all normal STIP processes and requirements.**

Section 116 Design Standard Selection

The following matrix shows which design standards are applicable for federally funded projects based on work type, and if the project involves a state route or local agency road.

Table 100-3 Design Standards Selection Matrix

Work Type	Interstate State Highways	Urban State Highways	Rural State Highways	Urban Local Agency Roads [1]	Rural Local Agency Roads [1]
Modernization	ODOT 4R/New [2] Freeway	ODOT 4R/New [2] Urban	ODOT 4R/New [2] Rural	AASHTO/ or Other Federally Recognized Criteria	AASHTO/ or Other Federally Recognized Criteria
Preservation	ODOT 3R Freeway	ODOT 3R Urban	ODOT 3R Rural	AASHTO [3] Or Other Federally Recognized Criteria	ODOT 3R Rural [4]
Preventive Maintenance[5]	1R	1R	1R	NA	NA
Safety-Operations-Miscellaneous/ Special Programs	ODOT Freeway [5]	ODOT Urban [5]	ODOT Rural [5]	AASHTO/or Other Federally Recognized Criteria	ODOT 3R Rural

1. For projects on a local jurisdiction route, the local authority may, at its option, use either the appropriate AASHTO Green Book standard or, with approval, select a standard of their own choice. Federal-aid projects must still comply with all applicable federal laws and regulations (e.g., ADA and historic preservation) when selecting standards for design. This discretion is given by ORS 368.036.and by provisions of the FAST Act, Section 1404(b), AASHTO standards are preferred to be used for all local agency jurisdiction roadway projects on the National Highway System (NHS). However, the FAST Act, Section 1404(b) provides guidance on flexibility and the use of other appropriate design guidance that can be used in conjunction with AASHTO design criteria, with approval.
2. Limited scope modernization projects may use Single Function 4R standards – determined on a case-by-case basis.
3. The local agency has the choice to use the AASHTO Green Book, other federally recognized criteria or ODOT 3R Urban design standards. Local Agencies may use AASHTO for Vertical Clearance requirements on Local Agency Jurisdiction Roads.

4. Federally funded Preventive Maintenance work, which includes Chip Seals and Thin Overlays, will be required to follow 1R standards. Preventive Maintenance projects and/or 1R Projects are not applicable to LPA Preservation Projects unless on the State Highway System. The local agency has the choice to use the AASHTO Green Book, other federally recognized criteria or ODOT 3R Rural design standards. Local Agencies may use AASHTO for Vertical Clearance requirements on Local Agency Jurisdiction Roads.
5. The appropriate ODOT 3R standard may be used for some projects. Selection is case-by-case. Designer to confirm appropriate standard with Region Roadway Manager.

116.1 1R/3R Design Standard Selection

This section provides information on the process used to determine if a project uses 1R, (1R+), 3R, or 4R standards. 1R+ projects are 1R projects that include additional items outside the scope of pavement preservation paving. The initial design criteria determination is based on the project being either preservation or modernization, so ensure that ODOT Pavement Preservation was contacted during the Project Initiation phase. Some projects, due to funding and project elements, may consist of a combination of preservation and modernization projects. ***In those cases, 4R standards are to be used for the modernization portion of the project.*** For example, a paving preservation project includes enhance program funding to install a bike lane or a separate bike path. The bicycle design element of the preservation project will use the 4R standard.

The following guidance applies to all freeway, expressway, rural arterial, and urban arterial state highway projects. Once the design standard has been determined, subsequent parts of the HDM provide the design standards. As discussed earlier in this section, Single Function projects use 4R design criteria and are not required to use the 1R/3R record of decisions documentation procedures outlined below.

116.1.1 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation

The 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation document (ODOT Form 734-5244) is used to determine what standard will be used to develop a preservation project. It is populated at project scoping and verified at project initiation. The form is turned in at DAP for all 1R projects. ***If a combination project has both preservation and modernization elements over the same section of roadway, and over 50 percent of the project length is determined to be modernization, the project is considered a 4R project.*** If a combination project has both preservation and modernization elements, but those elements are on separate segments of the project, both standards can be applied to the project. The record of decisions document provides both a pavement assessment and safety assessment to determine if a project uses the 1R, 1R+, or 3R standards. The form is completed by multiple disciplines, including Pavements, Traffic, and

Roadway. A 1R project is typically a pave only project with some specific design elements that must be upgraded to current standards. These mandatory upgrades include items such as unprotected and unconnected bridge ends and installing or upgrading curb ramps. Any asset information that needs review is addressed in the document and is noted in the roadside inventory requirements discussed later in this Section. A 1R+ project is a 1R project that includes additional work that is not required for a 1R project. The additional work, or "+" element of the preservation project may look to upgrade other project assets and will typically use other asset funding sources to add additional elements to the project. These elements may be other safety elements or improvements such as bike lanes or channelization. Since 1R projects include paving, restriping will be needed as a 1R cost. Assessing the existing striping and the possibility of restriping to improve access for alternative modes is often a no cost inclusion to the project and is recommended. It is advantageous to utilize project resources to make incremental improvements where it is feasible, providing the inclusion is cost neutral and does not delay the project. The 1R standards are located in 110.2.1.

As discussed above, the procedures of the Record of Decisions Documentation document will determine if the preservation projects will use the 1R, or 3R standards. The decision document is to be filled out at project scoping and then revisited at project initiation and becomes part of the permanent project documentation. There may be occasion where, due to either pavement assessment, safety assessment changes, or other project impacts, the project may change from a 1R to a 3R, and the designer will need to use the appropriate standard. For all urban projects, including preservation, the Urban Design Concurrence document is to be filled out after the Record of Decisions Documentation document and is addressed below.

116.1.2 1R/3R Record of Decision and Urban Design Concurrence Document for Urban Projects

For all urban projects, including preservation projects, the Design Concurrence document is filled out after the 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation document. The Urban Design Concurrence Document is also filled out at both the project scoping phase and again at the project initiation phase. As both documents include a section addressing the design criteria or category to use, consistency can be maintained in respect to which standards are to be used on a specific project. The Urban Design Concurrence document contains planning summary, general project information, project context information and results in a specific design standard to use. In respect to this section, completing the design concurrence document determines if the project will use the 1R or 3R preservation design standards or other design standards, such as 4R or 4R/Single Function.

Both the 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation and Urban Design Concurrence Document documents are to be consistent in the selected project design standard. If the project uses the 1R standard, the design guidance for 1R standards is addressed in 110.2.1. If the project is

determined to use 3R standards, the following roadside inventory requirements are to be followed. As discussed earlier in this Section, projects that use the 4R standards are to use the roadside inventory requirements below.

Section 117 Project Delivery Process

The ODOT Project Management Office (PMO) provides guidance material that outlines the program development and project development processes that are part of the project delivery process. The guidance material provides program development information such as system management, business case development, scoping teams, practical design, and draft and final STIP development. It also provides information on the project development milestones including project initiation, design acceptance, advanced plans, final plans and PS&E submittal.

ODOT's Project Delivery Life-Cycle model provides a project path that designers and project teams can continually use to re-enforce the project purpose and need. There are multiple milestones and documentation points that ensure the project purpose and need, as well as project goals and objectives are being met. The milestones are also used to document project decisions such as design criteria, finalizing the project charter, the DAP (Design Acceptance Package), change management requests, and S.C.O.P.E. integration elements. Designers should use the milestones as an opportunity to ensure that the project design is in line with the project purpose and need.

One of the more critical project delivery milestones is the DAP. DAP occurs at the end of the initial design phase where the different disciplines review the project. Some of the deliverables at DAP include Environmental documentation, Design Acceptance Plans, design narrative, access management documentation, and project footprint.

There are benefits in design staff understanding the program development and project delivery processes. Information regarding these processes is available from PMO.

There are opportunities within each stage of the ODOT Transportation System Lifecycle to apply a performance-based design approach and identify opportunities for tailoring this overall framework to align with the goals and objectives of projects. Within each stage of the Transportation System Lifecycle, evaluating the trade-offs between design, operations, and safety can help confirm that the project solutions align with the intent of the context and identified users.

A multidisciplinary project team established at the early stages of the project can provide continuity through project completion. In ODOT's Transportation System Lifecycle, this team (which may vary by project phase) will help verify that planning decisions are considered at the next stage of alternatives evaluation and preliminary design. During Program Development, this team is the Project Scoping Team, and during Project Development, this team is the Project Delivery Team. These multidisciplinary project teams will create documentation, maintain

project continuity, and verify that design decisions are aligning with the original project goals. The performance-based approach establishes a framework that can guide this team throughout the project flow.

117.1 Design Flexibility in Project Delivery

ODOT's Performance-Based Practical Design (PBPD) strategy is an integral part of project development, and specifically, the design process. PBPD requires sound engineering judgment and making informed decisions based on a specific project scope, purpose and need. PBPD will typically require more contextual information around project outcomes and goals during project development allowing for proper decision making when weighing and determining the design elements for a specific project. In addition to ODOT's PBPD strategy the Department continues to promote design flexibility and multi-modal design within project development.

Integrating a performance-based approach and a multidisciplinary project team into the four stages of ODOT's System Lifecycle can help establish appropriate desired project outcomes and effectively evaluate trade-offs during decision making. This approach can also be a guide for creating an iterative process that allows for flexibility in the design, continuous verification of desired project outcomes, and documenting of design decisions throughout each stage of the process. Figure 100-24 illustrates how a performance-based approach may be integrated into the System Lifecycle stages and highlights key locations for input and documentation.

DRAFT

Figure 100-24 A Performance-Based Approach to ODOT Project Flow

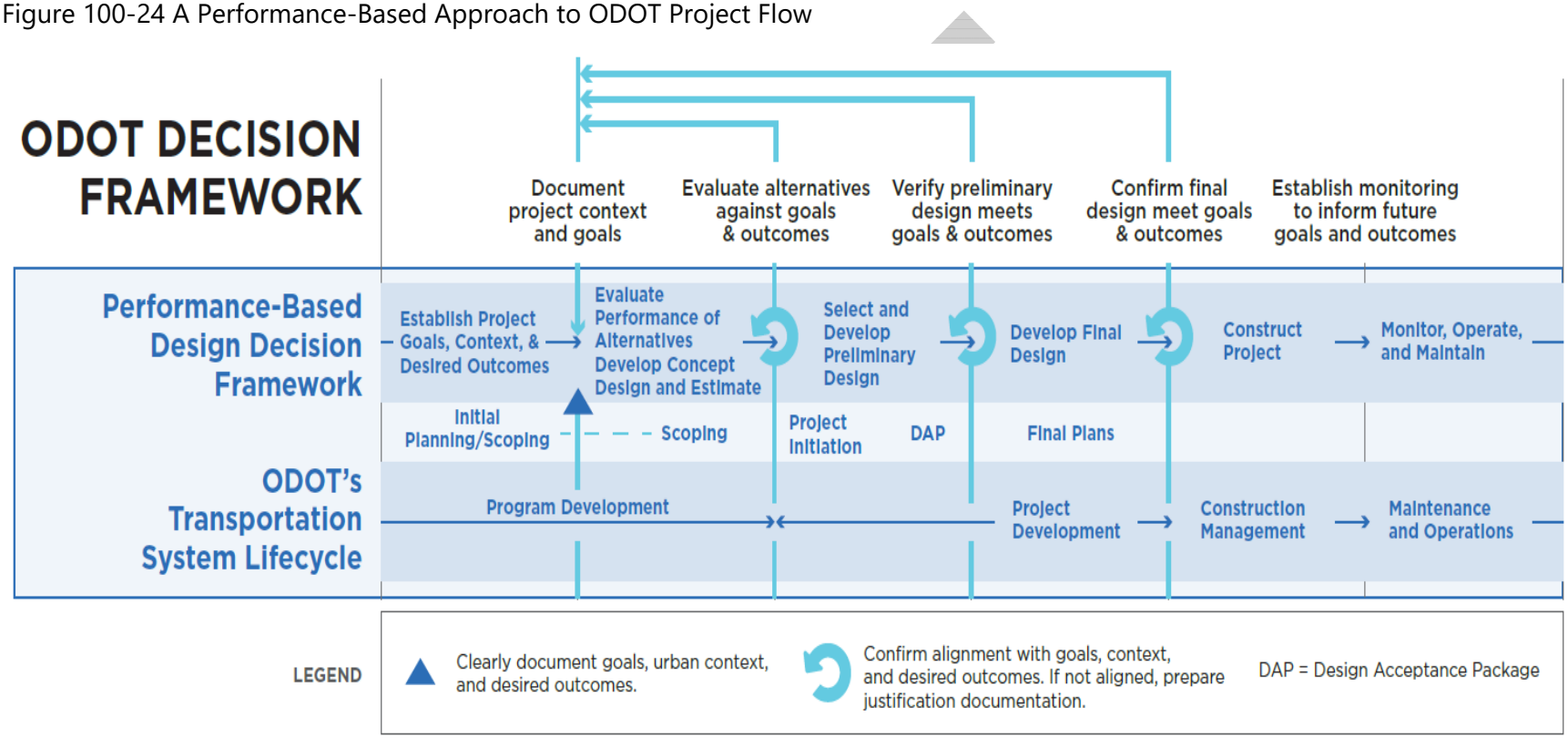


Figure 100-24 provides a multimodal decision-making framework and shows how this approach may become iterative at specific stages of the project. The process establishes links between planning and design to integrate and balance modal needs early in the decision-making. A draft UDC is produced from the scoping process to establish a concept design. The decision-making framework includes the following six stages:

- Establish Project Goals, Context, and Desired Outcomes
- Evaluate Performance of Alternatives
- Select and Develop Preliminary Design
- Develop Final Design
- Construct Project
- Monitor, Operate, and Maintain

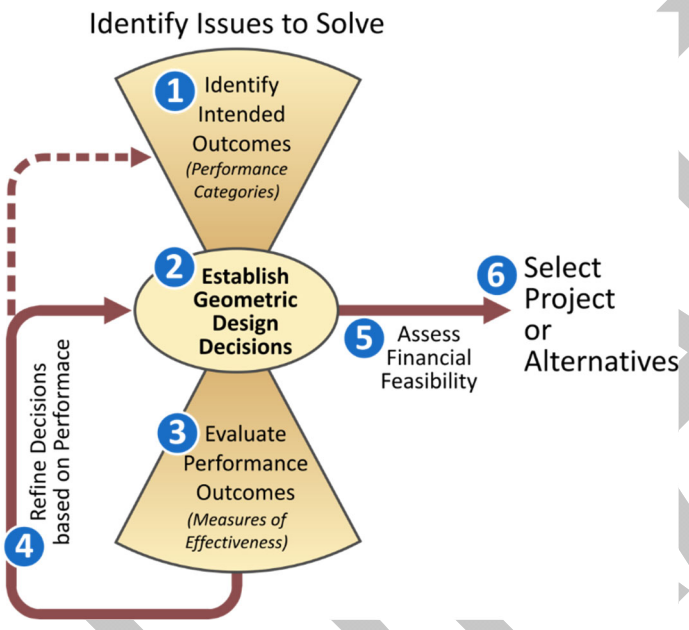
The circular arrow symbols in Figure 100-24 highlight milestones within the decision framework where the project goals and desired project outcomes should be revisited to verify that the planning and design decisions, alternatives development, and designs align with the original intent of the project and serve the needs of the users. These are also milestones in which design documentation of planning and design decisions is important. If design decisions, project team discussions, and alternative evaluations have led to any changes in the performance measures or project goals, this information and the project team decisions should be clearly documented. This process will need to follow guidance established in the ODOT Directive PD-02 and meet requirements and policies established through the ODOT Statewide Project Delivery Branch. For urban projects, changes should be justified through ODOT Urban Design Concurrence documentation for urban projects and through the designer narrative for projects outside urban locations, reviewed, and then approved or rejected by a multidisciplinary team. As noted previously, engaging the multidisciplinary project team early in the project can help identify constraints, project context considerations, and evaluate trade-offs for various design decisions. The blue circular arrow symbols represent logical milestones for engaging this team to ensure that input is received early, often, and continuously throughout the project. Changes will need to be justified through ODOT design documentation, reviewed, and then approved/rejected by the team. If the change is recommended but does not meet HDM design criteria, an approved design exception is required (see Part 1000). If the change is approved by the team and it is deemed a scope change, a Change Management Request (CMR) may be needed.

DRAFT

117.1.1 Design Flexibility - Applying a Performance-Based Approach within Project Development

Clear documentation of a performance-based approach can encourage effective problem-solving, collaborative decision making, and an overall greater return on infrastructure investments. NCHRP Report 785, Performance-Based Analysis of Geometric Design of Highways and Streets presents a performance-based model focused on desired project outcomes and applies the concepts at various project levels as shown in Figure 100-25.

Figure 100-25 Performance-Based Approach



Source: NCHRP Report 785

This performance-based approach is based on:

1. Identifying desired project outcomes and performance metrics
2. Establishing design decisions based on the desired outcomes
3. Evaluating the performance of the design
4. Iterating and refining the design to align solutions with the desired outcomes
5. Assessing the financial feasibility of the alternatives
6. Selecting a preferred alternative that aligns with the desired outcomes or re-assessing desired outcomes if no acceptable solution is identified

The performance-based approach aligns with ODOT's Practical Design Strategy which calls for delivering projects that benefit the transportation system within existing resources by

establishing appropriate scopes to deliver specific results focused on safety and operational needs of all road users through qualitative analysis of trade-offs between design alternatives. The ODOT Practical Design Strategy emphasizes the need to utilize different perspectives and discuss pertinent project information early in the project flow to establish clear project objectives and problem statements. This strategy describes the need to evaluate a specific project with the overall transportation system in mind and highlights that "the system context will shape the design".

The ODOT Performance-Based Practical Design Strategy identifies the benefits of a multidisciplinary project team and outlines the values associated with this strategy to make maximum use of techniques that provide safety performance analysis of the base design and design alternatives. The values, described by the acronym "S.C.O.P.E.," are compatible with ODOT's mission and assist decision-makers in their role in managing the state's transportation system. The "S.C.O.P.E." values previously discussed in 107.2 are shown below:

- Safety
- Corridor Context
- Optimize the System
- Public Support
- Efficient Cost

Understanding how to integrate practical design strategies and a performance-based approach into the project flow can help guide practitioners in setting up project teams, documenting decisions, and identifying solutions that serve the intent of the urban context and users within that context.

Integrating practical design strategies and a performance-based approach is most effective when applied at the earlier stages of the project development. Design influences are identified, outlined, discussed, and evaluated before the actual design of a project begins. Early project scoping and alternatives, identification and evaluation efforts have a major influence. As a project moves from preliminary to final design, it becomes much more difficult to affect overall project outcomes.

117.2 Programs to Fund Projects

Projects are funded from a variety of sources. Urban projects are typically more difficult to fund due to competing interests. Table 100-4 shows the primary ODOT programs to fund and deliver transportation projects.

DRAFT

Table 100-4: Primary ODOT Programs to Fund and Deliver Transportation Improvements

Program Type	Program Focus	How Are Projects Selected	Design Opportunities[1]	Who Develops Project
Fix-It Programs	Fix or preserve existing facilities (bridges, pavement, culverts, signals, etc.)	Data-driven, condition of assets	• Consider low-cost opportunities to address needs through innovative design (e.g., lane reconfiguration when repaving) • Leverage other funding programs to address other needs in project area	ODOT or Certified Local Agency
Enhance Programs	Enhance or expand transportation facilities	Legislature, ACTs, and ODOT staff recommend priority investments from state and local plans (can be competitive grants or discretionary).	• Most flexible to address design issues across modes and disciplines • Leverage other projects to address multiple needs in project area • Can fund stand-alone projects (grants and legislative discretionary projects)	ODOT or Certified Local Agency
Safety Programs	Reduce deaths and injuries on Oregon's roads	Data-driven, optimize safety impact (cost-benefit)	• Approved safety countermeasures list provides multiple options to encourage context appropriate design solutions	ODOT or Certified Local Agency
Local Government Programs	Direct funding to local governments	Local governments identify priority investments.	• Very flexible to address local priority design issues across modes and disciplines	MPO or Local Agency (if state funds) ODOT or Certified Local Agency (if federalized)

Table 100-4 (Continued): Primary ODOT Programs to Fund and Deliver Transportation Improvements

Program Type	Program Focus	How Are Projects Selected	Design Opportunities[1]	Who Develops Project
State-Funded Programs	Preserve and/or enhance transportation system (generally smaller projects than STIP Fix-It or Enhance) Examples: Safe Routes to School, Connect Oregon, State Pedestrian/Bicycle Program	Program-specific objectives (e.g., improve safety on school routes, promote economic growth)	• Very flexible to address design issues across modes and disciplines • Most flexible timeline (e.g., "Quick Fix" Safety or Pedestrian/Bicycle funds can be used for immediate improvements) • Not subject to Federal requirements or required to be in STIP • Can leverage other projects to address multimodal needs in project area or fund stand-alone projects	ODOT or Local Agency
Development-Related Projects	Serve demand generated when property develops or redevelops	Part of land use permitting process. ODOT works with local agency (land use authority) and developer to identify needed improvements.	• Consider opportunities to incrementally implement improvements in adopted plan and/or dedicate right-of-way for future improvements • Not subject to Federal requirements or required to be in STIP • Consider opportunities to address needs through innovative design and/or to leverage developer funded improvements	ODOT or Local Agency
Local Agency Projects	Locally funded projects	Local governments identify priority investments	Consider opportunities to address needs through innovative design and/or to leverage locally funded improvements	Local Agency

Table 100-4 (Continued): Primary ODOT Programs to Fund and Deliver Transportation Improvements

Program Type	Program Focus	How Are Projects Selected	Design Opportunities[1]	Who Develops Project
Public Transit and Active Transportation	Improve non-single occupancy vehicle (non-SOV) transportation options (e.g., pedestrian and bicycle, public transportation, , transportation options/demand management)	Legislature, ACTs, and ODOT staff recommend priority investments from state and local plans (can be competitive grants or discretionary).	• Very flexible to address design issues across modes and disciplines • Can leverage other projects to address multimodal needs in project area or fund standalone projects	ODOT or Certified Local Agency

[1]All projects that receive state and federal funds are required to include at least the minimum bicycle and pedestrian facilities (per ORS 355.514) within the project budget and meet accessibility requirements. Some funds can be used for stand-alone bicycle and pedestrian projects or enhanced bicycle and pedestrian facilities within another project.

DRAFT

117.3 Refined Decision-Making Framework

This section provides information on establishing project goals and desired outcomes to inform the performance-based decision making throughout the project flow. Information is provided to help practitioners identify and select performance measures that relate to the project goals and how to evaluate alternatives throughout the project flow described previously.

117.3.1 Establishing Project Goals and Desired Outcomes

Project goals and desired outcomes are identified early in the project flow. At a core, projects will have specific goals based on funding categories as in 1R Paving, 3R Preservation, 4R Enhance/Modernization or Safety focused projects. Safety and operational needs of all road users determined through performance analysis is also fundamental to project outcomes. Additional project goals are considered through a brief list of succinct points that speak to what a community thinks are important as it relates to a multimodal transportation vision and the associated land use goals of the study area. The multi-disciplinary project team (Project Scoping Team) identifies the final project goals and desired outcomes for consideration with the scoping phase. ODOT planning and active transportation members of the scoping team provide background information and direction for discussion of potential inclusion of additional project goals. Goals discussed may be visionary, future focused and aspirational as well as goals to achieve immediate needs. Not all projects can address all goals that may be discussed, but this process provides at least a minimum opportunity for project teams to include items with projects that make incremental improvements and build toward long-term objectives. As an example, even a minimal scope 1R paving project with funding category goals of simply paving and striping may be able to provide incremental improvements to a roadway section. Restriping a typical four or five lane section to include a lane reduction or "road diet" to gain operational and safety benefits of a median left turn lane or the addition of a buffered bicycle facility are initial steps to possible long-range goals and aspirations for the local community with little to no additional cost to the project.

117.3.2 Project Goals to Consider

Vision of place:

The vision will incorporate the existing context and may relate to a desired future land use pattern and nature of future growth (e.g., remain a Rural Community context, increase mix of uses to become an Urban Mix context). The role of the place in the region (e.g., employment center, residential enclave, neighborhood retail, regional shopping area, etc.) and other community values, such as safety, economic development, community character, as well as environmental and cost impacts are considered. The identified future vision of place is

DRAFT

documented in a local implementation-oriented plan (e.g., small area plans) and vetted with interested parties in the area.

Desired role of the facility:

The desired role of the facility will draw heavily from the transportation characteristics as well as regional and local vision and goals for the study area, vetted with interested parties. A facility could function as a regional commuting facility with longer-distance trips or a local-serving roadway with mostly short distance trips.

Major users of the facility:

The context and the role of the facility will inform who the users are. Based on observations of existing and future transportation and land use conditions, the project team can define who the major users of the facility are now and in the future. These users may include pedestrians, bicyclists, public transit users, freight traffic, motorists, etc., and includes user demographic groups (e.g., elderly, school children, tourists, retailers, employees, disadvantaged communities, etc.) from major land uses around the facility as well.

The project goals should be determined at the start of the project with scoping and confirmed at key milestones in the multimodal decision-making framework. This will help verify that the alternatives and design decisions align with the original intent of the project and serve the needs of the identified users.

117.3.3 Performance Measures, Evaluating Alternatives

Project-level performance measures allow practitioners to develop and evaluate alternatives based on the project goals and desired outcomes. For each project, performance measures are tailored to evaluate an alternative's ability to respond to the specific needs of the users and should relate directly to the project's documented goals. Therefore, performance measures are identified after defining the project's goals and desired outcomes, and before alternatives are developed. The measures chosen for a project are discussed, understood, vetted, and agreed upon with a multidisciplinary project team and when necessary, with key interested parties.

In general, project-level performance measures:

- **Reflect Project Goals and Desired Outcomes:** Balanced measures of success account for project goals and how these goals fit into the larger transportation network (i.e., local versus commuter oriented). An effective set of measures describes the experience of each anticipated user and provides a way to assess the likelihood of achieving desired outcomes. Projects typically have a wide range of goals and, therefore, no individual measure should be used to determine the complete solution to a problem. However, safety performance is primary to any set of project performance measures. For instance, a community may want to implement bicycle lanes on an ODOT arterial while minimally impacting traffic mobility. Along with safety performance measures of the

DRAFT

proposed bicycle facility, measures such as bicycle level of traffic stress (LTS) or multimodal level-of-service (MMLOS) could be used to measure impacts to bicyclists, while the traditional vehicle volume-to-capacity (v/c) ratio would still be considered for traffic mobility.

- **Are Understandable and Easy to Communicate:** With competing interests developing potential transportation projects, measures of success need to communicate to all of those involved. Evaluation criteria need to be readily measurable using available data and explained in a way that can be understood by non-technical interested parties and members of the public. While some measures require relatively complex calculations (such as v/c ratio), other simpler measures can still produce a good deal of understanding with minimum analysis. For instance, measures that describe the pedestrian environment can be as simple as determining the number of crosswalks per mile, the type of pedestrian signals provided, and the presence of Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliant curb ramps. While it may seem that having more data and conducting more analysis would lead to the "correct" result, a simple and easy to understand set of evaluation criteria that truly reflect the context and project goals may lead to better buy-in by interested parties and the ultimate success of the project.
- **Are Consistent and Objectively Measurable:** To effectively support decision making, each measure needs to be objectively measurable for all alternatives. For example, a measure specific to traffic signal performance would not be consistently measurable for both alternatives when comparing a signalized corridor to a roundabout corridor. In another example, "forecast bicycle volumes" could be consistently and objectively measurable if the agency has a travel demand model for bicycle travel and takes infrastructure into account when predicting behavior. When selecting measures, it is important to agree on a consistent, objective methodology for evaluating the measure. Even more qualitative measures, such as "level of community support," can be measured using a consistent, objective method.
- **Help Differentiate Between Alternatives:** In aggregate, the selected set of measures needs to help differentiate performance among the alternatives to inform decision making. Each individual measure does not necessarily need to differentiate between all goals. In some cases, all alternatives under consideration will fulfill a goal (and related measure) to the same degree. However, within the set of measures, one or more must be measurably different between the various alternatives.
- **Need to be Specific to the Plan:** Effective measures of success need to be developed for specific plans and studies and not simply "copied and pasted" from previous studies with similar attributes. For example, while v/c ratio is generally used for many traffic-related roadway considerations, a study exploring ways to improve pedestrian safety on a corridor may focus on the number and spacing of pedestrian crossings instead. The v/c ratio may be a secondary evaluation element when determining a balance between the

DRAFT

number of pedestrian crossings, corridor operations and the projected success in meeting the goal of pedestrian safety.

While the concepts and design criteria from the Blueprint for Urban Design have been incorporated into the HDM, both volumes of the Blueprint for Urban Design remain as a reference document on the HDM web page. Appendix E in Volume 2 of the Blueprint for Urban Design provides a menu of potential project-level performance measures that could be considered for each mode and an example of linking performance measures to a project's goals and desired outcomes. This list is not intended to be an exhaustive list or to be prescriptive. The list draws from industry best practices, including latest guidance and research from FHWA, such as the FHWA Guidebook for Developing Pedestrian and Bicycle Performance, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Guide to Sustainable Transportation Performance Measures, the Oregon Analysis Procedures Manual, and the Oregon Safety Action Plan. ODOT also has a set of system wide monitoring Key Performance Measures (KPMs); while these cannot all be applied at the project level to evaluate alternatives; they can help to inform the types of measures to be used. For example, one KPM is, "Number of serious traffic injuries per 100 million vehicle miles traveled (VMT) in Oregon." A corresponding project-level measure could be "predicted safety performance" for each alternative.

As discussed earlier in this section, establishing and applying performance measures has the greatest influence on project outcomes when they are incorporated early in project scoping and alternatives identification. The iterative nature of the project flow helps practitioners align solutions with the original desired outcomes.

117.3.4 Selecting and Developing the Preliminary Design

The context informs the types of users and the intensity of uses within each context. For almost every project, the needs of users can be addressed in multiple ways. The alternatives developed to respond to these needs should explore a variety of methods and means for meeting them.

Sometimes, due to limited right-of-way, difficult choices must be made for how to serve different users along a roadway. Where it is not possible to provide a high-quality facility for each mode along all ODOT roadways, it may be necessary to rely upon parallel networks to provide additional travel options that serve all users.

In many cases, there may not be one clear-cut alternative that equally serves all users at the same level. Selecting a well-vetted set of performance measures will frame a discussion and provide information for ODOT, the public, and local officials to understand the trade-offs among the alternatives.

Example: In a higher intensity area, such as a Traditional Downtown/Central Business District, local business owners may want to prioritize on-street parking over a dedicated bicycle facility, if they believe the on-street parking is critical to their customers. There are a variety of ways to address such a case. One solution would be to create a

DRAFT

shared lane (vehicles and bicycles) with speeds that are 25 mph or lower to allow for a basic level of bicycle access. In this case, since not all bicyclists are comfortable sharing a lane with vehicle traffic, the project team can also look beyond the roadway in question and consider the larger network in developing alternatives by including parallel routes. When balancing modal needs, in–depth analysis is required to determine potential unintended consequences in trade-offs.

The example above is focused on an urban location, but it provides an exercise in trade-off analysis that can be generalized to all projects. The important point to emphasize is the need to evaluate trade-offs in depth to determine and understand any unintended consequences that may arise and to balance the positive and negative effects to overall goals for all users and the surrounding community.

Some potential ways to help evaluate the trade-offs for this example between on-street parking and a bicycle facility may include:

- Number of people served by each facility. This may need additional data. (e.g., parking spaces on a block used by 50 customers per day; bicycle lane used by 200 people per day);
- Availability of alternative facilities to serve each use (e.g., whether there is a nearby low-stress route for bicyclists or whether there is available parking on side streets or parking lots);
- Understanding the trade-offs between impacts on safety, comfort, and convenience of users (e.g., asking motorists to park and walk an extra block to access destinations, versus asking bicyclists to ride in mixed traffic or out of direction on an alternate route);
- Economic impact (e.g., understanding potential economic impacts of convenient on-street parking space versus bicycle facility adjacent to businesses); and
- How each alternative supports community goals.

If design decisions, project team discussions, and alternative evaluations lead to any changes in the performance measures or project goals, this information and the project team decisions are clearly documented (potentially as part of ODOT design documentation) and justified for review by the project team who would either confirm the decisions or would provide alternate direction on how to proceed. The alternate direction could include:

- Additional or further modification to the project team revisions;
- Rejection of the revisions and return to original project goals; or
- Decision to change the scope of the project and reinitiate the process of goals development.

This is a similar approach to what the scoping team uses on ODOT STIP projects. After consensus has been reached, the preliminary design decisions and trade-offs should be well

DRAFT

documented, with support from interested parties as necessary. In some cases, this documentation will take the form of a "corridor plan" with a concept. In other cases, the documentation may be more informal and internal to ODOT to document the process and outcome to pass on to the final design project team.

117.3.5 Program and STIP Development

The program development phase is the process where projects are created through the transportation planning process to the approval of the Oregon Transportation Commission and into the STIP. There are five major milestones in this process including (See the Project Delivery Guidebook for detail on the milestones):

1. Transportation Planning
2. Management Systems Analysis
3. Identify Potential Projects
4. Draft Scope, Schedule, Cost Estimate (Draft STIP)
5. Project Selection (Final STIP)

As part of this process, designers will be part of scoping teams, develop purpose and need statements, and provide potential solutions to identified problem statements. The end result of this phase is the development of the draft STIP and projects selected for the final STIP. There are several key documents created during the program development and the final STIP development and project initiation. These include, the Business Case, the Project Charter, the Project Management Plan and the Practical Design S.C.O.P.E. Integration Form. The Urban Design Concurrence Document that focuses on the context, modal integration and project design decisions can be used to aid in the development of the Business Case and the Project Charter as well as being a basis for Project Management Plan and the Project Narrative as development continues to DAP and final plans.

One useful tool during scoping and programming is the Features, Attributes and Conditions Survey - Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (FACS-STIP) tool. It is a web-based geographic information system (GIS) application developed to provide easy access to transportation asset data. The tool consists of the Map tool, Data to Go, Asset Reporting and the Comment tool. It has continued to evolve over the years based on business needs and customer requests and will continue to respond to ODOT's evolving data needs.

117.4 Project Business Case

The Business Case is used to clearly define the problem, need, benefit, and value of projects. Business cases consider modal involvement, connections to basic assumptions, commitments

DRAFT

for funding and the project's original funding program goals early in the project's lifecycle and ensure these elements are not lost in the project development process. Funding program managers typically develop the initial needs business case. They are responsible for managing the funding program portfolio and meeting funding program goals. Active scoping begins once project sponsors complete the business case. Post scoping, funding program managers work with project sponsors and designers to finalize the business case before project selection. The business case will include identification of accessible transportation elements being included in the project or a description why there are no accessible elements required.

117.5 Project Charters

A Project Charter serves as the agreement for the scope, schedule, budget, approach, and risks of the project. The Project Charter is used to provide direction to the project team and baselines the project scope, schedule, and budget. A Project Charter is required for every STIP Project on the State system that is delivered by the ODOT. A Project Charter is first drafted after the project is scoped for STIP programming purposes.

The Project Charter is completed during the Project Initiation Phase of project development. The TPM or RE-CP is responsible for developing the Project Charter in collaboration with the Area Manager and program manager(s). The TPM or RE-CP should ensure that the project charter is consistent with information in the final Business Case. For more information regarding the project charters, see the Project Charter Guidance from the ODOT Project Management Office.

117.6 Project Management Plan

Project management plans document how a project is to be managed, executed and controlled, and are continuously updated throughout the life of the project. Project management plans may not be needed on projects where standard operating procedures are used. On projects without standard operating procedures, project management plans document the process the team is going to use to develop the project.

Section 118 Design Procedures

The purpose of this section is to provide the designer with a general outline of design procedures from STIP development to the production of Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E). This section provides a design procedure for determining whether a project uses 1R, 3R, or 4R design guidance. Single Function projects will typically use 4R design guidance. As such, Single Function projects are not discussed in detail in this section. Single Function projects will not be required to use the 1R/3R record of decision documentation procedures discussed

DRAFT

later in this section. This section also provides roadside inventory procedures for 1R, 3R, and 4R projects.

This section is not all inclusive of all design features but will provide the designer with a general basis on how projects are designed through the project development process, including final STIP project selection. The ODOT Project Management Office (PMO) provides guidance material that outlines the program development and project development processes that are part of the project delivery process.

118.1 Project Development Process

The project development phase begins with the assignment of a project from the approved STIP to the preparation of final plans and readying of the project for bid letting. There are seven major phases of the project development lifecycle in which designers participate. The seven phases include:

1. Project Initiation:

   Tasks include the establishment of the project team and the review and confirmation of the project scope. During this task, the designer may need to provide conceptual designs that address the project problem, purpose and need statement, and scope as addressed in the project prospectus. All disciplines need to collaborate and integrate design needs as initial design parameters are established from scoping information.

   a. For preservation projects, contact ODOT Pavement Services as part of the Project Initiation tasks. This allows ODOT Pavement Services to schedule testing, complete testing, and complete Preliminary Design work prior to project kick-off with remaining project team members.

2. Survey, Maps, Engineering and Environmental Reports:

   Depending on the type of project, the designer may need to participate in determining the type of survey information required for the project. Other task work involved may include Hazardous Materials Corridor study; the Environmental Baseline report; Area of Potential Impact maps; Work Zone Traffic issues; Pavement design; and Traffic Counts and Preliminary Traffic Analysis.

3. Design Acceptance Phase:

   The design acceptance package (DAP) milestone is a critical decision point for the designer as the project geometry boundaries are set to enable other activities such as right of way, environmental permitting, and construction contract work to begin. The designer will typically deliver the roadway design, stage construction design, design narrative, and potentially the traffic control plans and interchange layout sheet during

DRAFT

this task. The design narrative should provide a summary of the alternative analysis. Some of the deliverables for the designer at DAP may include:

a) Preliminary horizontal and vertical geometry alignments
b) Typical sections
c) Superelevation
d) Cut and Fill Slopes, Materials, and Earthwork
e) Guardrail, Concrete Barrier, Cable Barrier
f) Curb Ramp Footprint
g) Preliminary Drainage, Erosion Control, and Stage Construction design
h) Preliminary Quantity and Cost Estimate
i) Completion of the Roadside Inventory
j) Design Exception requests
k) Design Narrative
l) Design Maps, Profiles, Cross-Sections, and other deliverables
m) Urban Design Concurrence Document

The designer should also be aware of the coordination with other disciplines, including but not limited to:

a) Utilities
b) Right of Way
c) Bridge
d) Geotechnical Engineering
e) Geology
f) Environmental Services
g) Traffic Control
h) Pavements
i) Traffic
j) Transportation Analysis
k) Active Transportation Liaison
l) Region Transit Coordinator
m) Project Controls Office (PCO)

DRAFT

n) Rail

o) Aeronautics

p) Access Management

q) Commerce and Compliance Division

r) Statewide Mobility Program

s) Climate Change Office

t) Office of Equity and Civil Rights

u) Federal, State, and Local Agencies and other interested parties

4. Right of Way and Permits:

   During this stage, a number of right of way and permit functions are performed. Some of the tasks at this stage include; final right of way map and property descriptions; right of way acquisition; railroad encroachment map; right of way certification. Other tasks include obtaining required permits involving wetlands, fish passage, utilities, railroad, airport clearance, and others.

5. Plans Review Phase:

   The main purpose of this stage is additional technical and construction refinement of the project plans at the Preliminary Plans and Advance Plans milestones. Other tasks conducted in this phase include update of the communication plan; noise mitigation; access management procedures; revision of estimates; and preliminary special provisions.

6. Final Plans and Special Provisions for Construction:

   This stage includes the work conducted after the Advance Plans-Plans in Hand meeting. It is the last opportunity for technical review before the PS&E milestone. Final plans, cost estimate, construction schedule, and special provisions are deliverables during this stage.

7. Plans, Specifications, and Estimates for Construction - This stage involves the process where the project is considered complete and ready for bid advertisement through Project Controls Office and ODOT Procurement Office – Construction Contracts.

118.2 Roadside Inventory - General

For all projects whether using 1R, 1R+, 3R, or 4R standards, some form of a roadside inventory shall be made of roadside features. The inventory is performed to determine asset condition, to inventory existing features, to assist in bid item background, and to also determine those features that do not conform to AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide - 2011" and/or the

DRAFT

AASHTO Green Book geometric design standards or non-geometric design standards (such as structural strength, safety features and traffic control, etc.). The inventory of roadside safety hardware is maintained by ETSB staff. The FACS-STIP tool is used to access roadside safety hardware and other asset inventory data that can be accessed for scoping projects. The designer, along with assistance of the Project Team, should determine the level of detail needed for the project roadside inventory. Roadside safety is fundamental to the inventory process. Enough detail of the collected roadside items needs to be included for analysis to determine effects on roadway departure crashes and determine appropriate project scope for mitigation. Besides the mandatory use of the FACS-STIP tool, the roadside inventory can take many different forms, including but not limited to:

- A formal survey of the project;
- Use of the ODOT digital video log;
- Use of ODOT's TransGIS and multiple level data information;
- Use of the ODOT "Virtual Highway Corridor" tool;
- Use of other web mapping tools; or
- Different levels and intensity of project site visits.

The level of detail of the roadside inventory will vary between projects. This section provides direction on roadside inventory guidance for projects using 1R, 3R, or 4R standards. Preservation projects using 1R standards require minimal asset inventory work compared to projects using 4R (New Construction or Reconstruction) standards. Roadside inventory for projects using 3R standards will vary depending upon the project scope and purpose. However, complete roadside inventory for 3R projects is important for identifying deficiencies and determining final scope. This section should help the roadway, traffic, and other designers in providing the level of survey detail required to the Project Team.

The FACS-STIP Tool and associated user guides provide additional information to assist developing a roadside inventory for all projects. The FACS-STIP Tool provides data on highway features or attributes, such as freight routes, vertical clearance routes, state highway classification, functional classification, ORS 366.215 routes, etc. The FACS-STIP Tool is required to be used on all projects in an effort to maintain an accurate and up to date asset inventory.

The 2011 AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide" provides information and operating practices related to roadside safety. A design exception process (Part 1000) has been developed for those project-specific non-standard roadside features that are identified in the roadside inventory. Design exceptions are required for any non-standard equipment or non-standard clear zone feature that will not be corrected as part of the project. As discussed in Part 1000, 4R clear zone design exceptions are approved by the State Roadway Engineer while 3R clear zone design is the responsibility of the Region Technical Center.

DRAFT

118.2.1 Additional Roadside Inventory for 3R Projects

If it is determined that the 1R/3R Record of Decision Documentation results in the preservation project being 3R, additional roadside inventory features may be needed. As discussed previously, the scoping team should determine the level of effort that will be required, use the FACS-STIP tool for asset inventory, and use Region Scoping forms to assist project teams in capturing the appropriate level of roadside inventory. It may not be necessary to inventory every object near the roadway. Continuous runs of utility poles or trees at the R/W line may not need to be inventoried on every project. However, if objects are within the established clear zone, options to prevent or lessen potential vehicle impacts like delineation or shielding are a necessary consideration for need and feasibility.

Other than roadside features, the field work on these projects should be limited to the amount needed for quantity calculations. In general, field work should focus on addressing 3R requirements, including leveling for crown and super correction, lane and shoulder widths, bridge widths, existing rumble strips, and pavement detection loops. By their nature, urban projects may require some additional work, but every effort should be made to limit the survey work to the minimum needed for the particular project. By their nature, preservation projects on sections of highway having low crash history place special emphasis on pavement preservation even while recognizing that certain cost-effective safety improvements may be necessary and desirable. The following guidance discusses additional 3R inventory requirements for freeways and other state highways.

ODOT 3R Freeway Projects

If it is determined that the freeway preservation project is a 3R project, consider other assets and roadside inventory features for identification to address other design requirements such as Interstate Maintenance Design Features (see Section 310.3). The FACS-STIP tool can be used to capture additional assets.

1. Interchange Ramp Surfacing
2. Other roadside obstacles not addressed above in the 1R/3R decisions document
3. Delineators
4. Fencing
5. Signing, Illumination, and Signal Loops
6. Rumble Strips
7. Striping
8. Drainage
9. Bodies of Water

DRAFT

10. Drop-offs at Pavement Edge
11. Cattle and/or Equipment Pass Headwalls
12. Retaining Walls

ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Highways

If it is determined that the urban or rural non-freeway preservation project is a 3R project, consider other assets and roadside inventory features for identification to address other design requirements. In addition to the features listed below, the designer should be aware of other 3R design requirements that may impact the roadside inventory such as Mandatory 3R Design Features and the Urban Preservation Strategy (see Part 300).

1. Roadside Obstacles Within Clear Zone or R/W
    a. Trees
    b. Luminaires
    c. Utility Poles
    d. Fences
    e. Misc. Fixed Objects (mailboxes, fire hydrants, railroad crossing warning devices, etc.)
2. Existing Guardrail, Cable Rail, and Concrete Barrier, including Bridge Rail Connections
3. Drainage Facilities and Bodies of Water
4. Public Road Intersections with Stopping Sight Distance Less Than ODOT New Construction Standards
5. Horizontal Curves More Than 15 mph below project design speed, and the current year ADT is 2000 or greater.
6. Vertical Curves More Than 20 mph below the project design speed (Current year ADT greater than 2000), Hiding Intersections, Sharp Horizontal Curves, or Narrow Bridges
7. Accessible elements and facility deficiencies in the inventory or ADA Transition Plan
8. Drop-offs at Pavement Edge
9. Cattle and/or Equipment Pass Headwalls
10. Retaining Walls

Following is a further explanation of the above inventory items and some thoughts on appropriate mitigation measures that may be incorporated on this type of project.

DRAFT

1. Roadside Obstacles:

   With the emphasis on pavement preservation, the inventory of roadside obstacles is generally limited to R/W or clear zone, whichever is less. Consider including objects outside the clear zone when special circumstances provide an opportunity for a cost-effective improvement.

2. Existing Guardrail:

   During the inventory/analysis process, the project team should be looking for opportunities to modify existing installations that do not adequately protect obstacles either by extending or burying ends in cuts, or considering new runs based on existing obstacles.

3. Intersection Sight Distance:

   Most of this analysis can be done in the office from As-Constructed Plans. Many times, those intersections with deficient sight distance will also show up during the crash analysis. These intersections will probably have opportunities to incorporate low-cost mitigation elements with the project to diminish crash potential. Deficient intersections should be reviewed on-site with the Region Traffic Engineer to aid in identifying mitigation measures.

4. Horizontal Alignment:

   Horizontal curve deficiencies can best be identified by a review of As-Constructed plans, but superelevation rates need to be measured in the field. As a minimum, superelevation should be corrected as close as reasonably possible to the new construction standard with the project. Additional mitigation (delineation, signing, etc.) may also be appropriate due to site-specific conditions. The Region Traffic Engineer should be consulted for input.

5. Vertical Alignment:

   As-Constructed Plans should be used as a starting point for identifying vertical alignment deficiencies. Field verification is needed to determine if major driveways or intersections are hidden by the vertical curves. If a crash history exists at these locations or horizontal curve locations, it may be appropriate to include major safety improvements with the project. This need should be identified early, during project scoping, so funding can be procured.

DRAFT

6. Americans with Disabilities Act:

   Accessible elements and facility deficiencies in the inventory or ADA Transition Plan and barriers to the transportation system are predominantly in urban preservation projects however they occur in rural communities also. Accessibility accommodation is more than a standard; it is a legal requirement under Federal law. Intersection accommodation by installation of curb ramp and pedestrian ramp upgrades is an absolute minimum regardless of jurisdictional ownership of the sidewalks or walkway. Driveways, gaps, deficiencies or obstacles in the sidewalk or walkway should be carefully reviewed for potential improvements and may provide good opportunities to partner with local jurisdictions or ODOT Public and Active Transportation Program for a better overall facility. In rural areas, shoulders often serve pedestrians; shoulder widening may be considered as an incremental improvement.

118.2.2 Roadside Inventory for 4R Projects

The purpose of the inventory is to identify all objects and configurations that do not conform to the 2011 AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide" and the AASHTO Green Book geometric design standards and non-geometric standards (non-geometric standards relate to structural strength, safety features and traffic control). 4R projects shall have a full roadside inventory completed. In addition, safety projects identified through the All Roads Transportation Safety (ARTS) Program shall have a full roadside inventory completed.

The clear zone concept is discussed in the 2011 AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide". This guide provides an excellent elaboration on the clear zone concept and is a valuable working tool.

Guidelines

Region scoping forms and the FACS-STIP Tool were developed to assist project teams in the scoping effort. The Region scoping forms and/or the FACS-STIP Tool should be used to provide an inventory of conforming and nonconforming objects and provide appropriate details to be used in the development of the project. Nonconforming items are those not in conformance with current 4R design requirements.

An inventory of items should include, but not be limited to the following list of items:

1. Trees
2. Rock Outcrops
3. Steep Cut or Fill Slopes (1:3 or steeper)
4. Barriers (Guardrail, Cable Rail, and Concrete Barrier)
5. Impact Attenuators
6. Bridge Rails

DRAFT

7. Signs
8. Luminaires
9. Drainage Facilities and Bodies of Water
10. Curb Ramps & Pedestrian Ramps
11. Bicycle Facilities
12. Sidewalks, Walkways, and Curbs
13. Bridges
14. Footings and Headwalls
15. Retaining Walls
16. Utilities
17. Public Transit Stops/Facilities
18. Other:
    a. Roadway Surfaces and Dimensions
    b. Sight Distances
    c. Driveways
    d. Mailboxes
    e. Fences
    f. Structure Columns
    g. Signals, ATR and ITS structures
    h. Drop-offs at Pavement Edge
    i. Cattle and/or Equipment Pass Headwalls

The following is a further explanation of the above inventory items.

1. Trees present some interesting problems. The easy recommendation is to remove them if they are within clear zone, but in many cases the public sentiment is to save them at almost any cost. Some trees may be entitled to specific protection because of historic or ecological significance. In addition, federal legislation titled, Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act (IIJA), encourages adding street trees to address urban heat islands to help mitigate urban conditions. Reasonable protection, such as extending a barrier required for another obstacle, may be more expensive but also more acceptable to the public than removal of the tree. See Part 400 regarding street and median trees.
2. Rock outcrops in cut slopes can sometimes be removed, but large outcrops or solid rock cuts may need guardrail or barrier protection. These are easily overlooked as they have

DRAFT

seldom been considered for protection. Decisions on the proper protection of slopes must be made only after considering the magnitude of the problem and the costs involved.

3. Fill slopes steeper than 1:3 within the clear zone should be considered for protection or flattening. While slope flattening is the desirable action, 3R projects, and at times, 4R projects seldom have adequate material available and R/W is frequently ~~inadequate~~limited. Flattening may not be feasible due to streams or wetlands at the toe of the fill. Provision of barrier, guardrail, or cable rail is the usual solution. While vehicles can traverse a 1:3 slope, they cannot recover, and the large clear zone required (over 120 feet at 70 mph) frequently cannot be provided within the R/W.

   Cut slopes steeper than 1:3 within the clear zone should be flattened or considered for protection. Provide a 1:3 or 1:4 "safety slope" area at the bottom of steeper cuts if possible. Decisions on the proper protection of slopes must be made only after considering the magnitude of the problem and the costs involved.

4. Barriers include guardrail, cable rail, and concrete barriers. Barrier that does not meet NCHRP-Report 350 or MASH criteria must be replaced. Guardrail must be checked against current standards for type of rail, height, flare rates, anchors, bridge connectors, terminals, lap direction, miscellaneous hardware, etc. If the terminal can be buried in the backslope it should be considered even though only a flare may be required. Concrete barrier sloped ends are allowable only when design speed is less than 45 mph, or the sloped end is outside the clear zone.

   Concrete barrier shall meet current standards for size and shape. Consider the effect of overlays, past or present. At the base of the barrier the finished surface of the overlay must not be higher than the top of the vertical 3-inch portion of the barrier for proper functioning. Flare rates and terminal treatments (buried end, etc.) must conform with current standards. Narrow base barrier must be supported with embankment behind it.

   Guardrail protecting fixed objects needs approximately 6.5 feet from face of rail to object to provide space for adequate deflection. If deflection room cannot be provided, contact the Senior Roadside Design Engineer for possible solutions. Exposed guardrail and barrier ends that cannot be properly flared or buried, such as in exit ramp gores, should be protected with an impact attenuator.

   Contact the Senior Roadside Design Engineer in ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for guidance if there are questions concerning these items.

5. Existing impact attenuators must meet NCHRP-Report 350 criteria and be properly maintained with no modifications that are not approved by the manufacturer. Provide careful inspection by experienced personnel using the manufacturer's specification book. The District Manager, Senior Roadside Design Engineer, or manufacturer's

DRAFT

representative may be appropriate sources of expert assistance. If a bridge or other significant structure is affected, include Bridge Engineering in the discussion.

6. The 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide identifies acceptable bridge rail shapes. If in doubt as to acceptability of a particular rail type, consult Bridge Engineering. The concrete "safety shape" should be used on freeways. Guardrail connections to bridge rail are a critical area. Chapter 7 of the “Roadside Design Guide”, Bridge Railings and Transitions provides an excellent guidance.

7. Signs must be mounted on breakaway posts if within the clear zone. The need for a multidirectional breakaway base should be considered. The slope on unidirectional single-support breakaway bases must be in the correct direction.

   Breakaways must not be in the ditch and should be at or above the ground surface, but not over 4 inches above the surface. Proper bolts, washers, slip plates, etc., must be in place with no modifications, such as welding, that may alter the function of the breakaway.

   The hinge mechanism must also have all hardware in place. No auxiliary sign panels should span the hinge in such a way as to alter its function. The hinge mechanism should be a minimum of 7 feet, above the ground. On fills the nearest sign post should be at least 30 feet outside the edge of the traveled way (fog line) so the vehicle will not be airborne when it strikes the sign. Signs mounted on wood posts must not have concrete foundation collars or support plates. Wood post installations must comply with the Oregon Standard Drawings.

8. Luminaires must have frangible or slip bases if within the clear zone. Some older frangible bases may not function properly with the newer small cars. Consult the Traffic Structures Engineer for acceptability of specific frangible bases. If luminaires cannot be readily relocated or protected, a study of the need for them should be considered. ~~Eliminating them may be less hazardous than retaining them.~~

9. ODOT’s Drainage Facilities Management System (DFMS) has data on existing culverts, including condition assessments. Contact the Technical Services Hydraulic Engineering Section or the Region Hydraulics Engineer for assistance. ODOT maintenance personnel can also provide information (i.e., maintenance records and inspection reports) pertaining to the existing culvert. In addition to agency staff resources, neighboring landowners can be another invaluable resource for helping to understand a project site. Interviews with adjacent property owners can provide information such as known history of the site, including recollections of past floods and damages.

   Transverse or longitudinal culverts may need stabilization, rehabilitation, or replacement. Before extending an existing culvert, conduct a thorough evaluation of the pipe’s existing hydraulic performance and structural integrity.

DRAFT

Cross culverts can be lengthened to eliminate open ends, outlet ditches, etc., within the clear zone. Even though paved end slopes exist, they may not provide a safe end, since many of the 1:3 paved ends are inletted into 1:4 or 1:6 slopes, creating a ditch across the clear zone. Paved end slope installations must be constructed as shown in the Oregon Standard Drawings, with particular attention to warping or contouring the slope as shown.

Metal end sections on culvert pipes require appropriate end treatments. Safety end sections should be considered on larger pipes (See Oregon Standard Drawings). Recontouring around some existing paved end slopes must be considered if erosion and settlement have allowed the upper end of some paved end slopes to project more than 6 inches above the ground.

Longitudinal drainage ditches must be uniform and not eroded. Pipes under driveways and crossroads are to be reviewed to determine compliance with the Roadside Design Guide so that vehicles hitting them are not stopped abruptly or launched into the air. Type "M-E" or "M-O" inlets or modifications of them, may be required to accomplish these flatter end slopes. Pay particular attention to crash history when evaluating these features.

10. Most inventories for preservation and 4R projects are in conjunction with overlay or paving projects so correction of poor pavement conditions is an integral part of the project. Drop-offs, roughness, raveling joints, etc., must be analyzed if repaving is not already part of the proposed project.

Certain design elements can best be analyzed in the office using "As Constructed" plans. These include horizontal and vertical alignment and typical sections. Elements such as sight distance for merges, lane drops, road approaches, and intersections should also be analyzed in the field so the interaction of all elements can be better evaluated.

~~A broad viewpoint must be maintained so that possible hazards~~Evaluate roadside objects that don't fit conveniently in the categories already mentioned so they are not ~~over-looked~~overlooked. Utilities (poles, valves, etc.) slope breaks that can launch a car or stop it as solidly as a barrier, cattle and equipment passes hidden by vegetation, erosion around culvert ends hidden by weed growth, etc., are easily overlooked. Shoulders on structures should be full width, according to current standards.

A working knowledge of the 2011 AASHTO “Roadside Design Guide”, the Project Delivery Guidebook, the HDM, and the AASHTO Green Book will assist in project scoping and data information collection. A good understanding of how the clear zone requirement is determined by considering design speed, side slope, ADT, and curvature is needed. All nonconforming items are to be inventoried, even though it may appear to be difficult to bring them into conformance with the appropriate standard. ODOT’s Practical Design Strategy document provides guidance in respect to project scope, economics and practicality of upgrading nonconforming elements.

DRAFT

The implementation of the 1R Preventive Maintenance Paving Program along with the 1R Safety Features Upgrade Program mark a fundamental change in ODOT's approach to maintaining the highway system while systematically improving safety.

118.3 Project Scoping

As discussed above, the 1R/1R+/3R design procedures and using the 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation determines if a project uses 1R, 1R+, or 3R standards. This 1R/3R Record of Decisions documentation is populated during the project scoping phase. Scoping assists in evaluating project context, asset condition, initial budget, identified risks, and potential opportunities. Scoping teams should consist of members from a variety of disciplines with a broad knowledge base. Each team will vary depending on the needs of the particular project. Each Region is responsible for the scoping of projects. 1R/3R projects may not require as many team members as a 4R project. Besides the TPM or RE-CP, representatives (not exclusive) may include Roadway, Bridge, Traffic, Maintenance, Construction, Environmental, Pavements, Utilities, Survey, Geo/Hydro, Access Management, Right of Way, and Local Agency.

The intent of the Scoping Team is to identify the parameters of the project, clearly identify the problem, identify a range of solutions, determine a general schedule in respect to urgency and timeframe, and develop estimated cost of the project based on general project elements and other funding opportunities. These may include some low-cost mitigation measures or safety enhancements if funding is available.

To assist in the analysis and scoping trip, scoping team members should gather a large amount of asset information prior to the site visit. The asset information can then be reviewed on site by the team and compared with the crash history.

The scoping team should determine the level of effort that will be required by the survey crew during project development phases. Very definite parameters should be set as to which roadside obstacles need to be inventoried. The intent of the inventory is not to survey every fixed object or culvert throughout the project. Although, these will probably need to be accurately identified and located during design phases. Only those objects near the roadway that constitute a substantial hazard should be inventoried for scoping. However, if there is a location with a number of run-off-the-road crashes (e.g., on the outside of a curve), then the effort and the area covered in the inventory should be increased. The ODOT Roadway Departure Safety program can be used to identify locations of high roadway departure locations and proposed countermeasures.

Other than roadside features, early field work should be limited to the amount needed for estimated quantity calculations, in particular leveling for crown and super correction. By their nature, urban projects may require some additional work, but every effort should be made to limit the survey work to the minimum needed for the particular project.

DRAFT

During scoping, the need for exceptions from design standards, or for new traffic control devices, should be identified. Design exception requests shall be submitted as early as possible in the project development process. This will minimize the need for redesign should the exception request be denied. Both the 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation and Urban Design Concurrence documents discuss design exceptions in respect to project scoping.

118.3.1 Asset Inventory- 1R/3R Preservation Projects

The 1R/3R Record of Decisions Documentation will determine if a project is either 1R, 1R+, or 3R. The 1R/3R asset inventory and roadside inventory requirements of the Record of Decisions Documentation include the following features:

1. Pavement Condition
2. Roadway Departure Safety Plans
3. Intersection Safety Plans
4. Bicycle/Pedestrian Safety Plans
5. Safety Plans
    a. Review of Safety Priority Index System (SPIS)
6. Review of Crash History
7. Accessible Elements and Facility Features in the Inventory or ADA Transition Plan
8. Bicycle Facilities
9. Bridges/Structures- Vertical Clearance
10. Bridges/Structures- Bridge Rail
11. Sidewalks and Walkways
12. Signs
13. Traffic Barriers
14. Traffic Signals
15. Public Transit Stops
16. Other Infrastructure Assets such as Geometry

Section 119 Motor Carrier Freight Considerations

The Oregon Freight Route system carries a significant tonnage of goods and materials within and through the state. They are shown with the nomenclature of "FR" in the Oregon Highway

DRAFT

Plan (OHP) Highway Classification tables. These routes are also known as Reduction Review Routes as determined by legislative action in ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. In addition, there are OHP designated Intermodal Connectors that are part of the National Highway System (NHS) connecting freight origin and destination points like ports, rail terminals or major industrial areas to arterial networks and interstate highways. These various designated routes are to provide a higher level of service and mobility than other statewide highways.

These Freight Routes will often be the most important facilities to local jurisdictions or small towns as their main street in addition to serving as connections for through truck traffic. As such, they should maintain an appropriate level of functionality for not only freight movements, but for all road users as well. ORS 366.215, Creation of state highways; reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity, states that ODOT may not permanently reduce the vehicle-carrying capacity of an identified freight route when altering, relocating, changing or realigning a state highway unless safety or access consideration require the reduction. When a project is proposed on a designated freight route, follow applicable ODOT guidance for determination of reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity and ORS 366.215 compliance. OAR 731-012 provides a process to follow when working through compliance with ORS 366.215. In order to accommodate freight mobility, planning and design efforts should also consider the types and frequency of permitted freight loads through a corridor.

In addition to designated freight routes, other state highways serve significant volumes of truck traffic as well and have been pre-approved for use of interstate size trucks. These routes are identified on Route Map 7 that is published by the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division. Although Route Map 7 includes all highways, it identifies those highways where the use of interstate size trucks is allowed and where design should accommodate those vehicles.

Route Map 7 is color coded and identifies where the interstate truck is allowed without permit. Projects on routes identified by either the OHP Freight Map or pre-approved for WB-67 size trucks as shown on Route Map 7 should strongly consider freight needs in the design, particularly intersections. A WB-67 size truck is a single tractor trailer truck with a 67-foot wheelbase; this is currently the largest single tractor trailer approved for travel on Oregon highways without a permit. It is often referred to as the “interstate” design truck.

Section 120 FHWA Emergency Relief Program-Betterments

120.1 General

The FHWA Emergency Relief (ER) program is intended to assist the states and local agencies in repairing highway facilities damaged by disaster and returning those facilities to pre-disaster

DRAFT

condition. In-kind restoration is the predominant type of repair. The purpose of this section is to define betterments, explain the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) policy on betterments, give examples of betterments and provide guidance on the submittal of betterment requests for FHWA approval. 23 USC Section 120(e) and FHWA website Special Federal Funding provide additional information pertaining to the Emergency Relief - Betterments program application and funding.

120.2 Definition

A betterment is defined as (1) an additional feature or upgrading, or (2) a change in capacity, function or character of the facility from its pre-disaster condition. Betterment requests during the last several years have been limited to the first category, with no proposals to change the capacity, function or character of a facility.

120.3 Policy

FHWA policy permits the approval of ER funding for upgrading or additional features to protect the highway from future disaster damage. To receive such approval, it must be shown that the ER expenditure is cost-effective in terms of reducing probable future recurring repair costs to the ER program. It is also FHWA policy that betterments to correct pre-existing conditions, particularly at landslides, will be subjected to a higher level of evaluation and it will be considerably more difficult to justify the expenditure of ER funds at such sites.

In general, betterments that change the capacity, function or character of a facility are not eligible for ER funding. Examples of this category of betterment include:

1. Adding lanes
2. Upgrading surfaces, such as from gravel to paved
3. Improving access control
4. Adding grade separation
5. Changing from rural to urban cross-section

One exception is that under special circumstances, ER funding can be used for a replacement bridge that can accommodate traffic volumes over the design life of the bridge, thus potentially allowing ER funding for added lane(s) on the structure.

DRAFT

120.4 Examples of Betterments

The following are examples of upgrading or additional features that are considered betterments. Specific FHWA approval is required before ER funds can be used for the following:

1. Stabilizing slide areas (e.g., internal dewatering systems, retaining structures, etc.)
2. Stabilizing slopes
3. Raising roadway grades
4. Relocating roadways to higher ground or away from slide prone areas
5. Installing riprap
6. Lengthening or raising bridges to increase waterway openings
7. Deepening channels
8. Increasing the size or number of drainage structures
9. Replacing culverts with bridges
10. Installing seismic retrofits on bridges
11. Adding scour protection at bridges
12. Adding spur dikes

There will be cases where one of the above features can be added with only a relatively minor expenditure of ER funds. These may include, short and low height retaining structures, small areas of rock inlays for slope stabilization or installation of small amounts of riprap incidental to other repair work. The decision whether this work will be considered a betterment will be decided on a case-by-case basis.

The following are examples of upgrading or additional features that are not considered betterments:

1. Replacement of older features or facilities with new ones,
2. Incorporation of current design standards, and
3. Additional features resulting from the environmental process required as a condition of permit approval or environmental commitment.

120.5 Approval Requests

To request approval of a betterment, it will be necessary to provide detailed justification. It is important that the request contain information regarding conditions at the site prior to the

DRAFT

disaster (including a brief summary of previous problems) and the current conditions at the site. The "do nothing" alternative must be discussed, and it is expected that most proposals would include at least two "build" alternatives. Estimated costs for each alternative are needed. The appropriate ODOT unit must review and endorse betterment requests prepared by consultants.

The same basic rules will apply to betterment requests on local agency facilities. These proposals must be reviewed and endorsed by the appropriate ODOT unit and the request to use ER funds for such betterments must be made by ODOT in order to be considered.

As previously noted, if ER funds are to be approved, the betterment must be economically justified based on an analysis of the cost of the betterment versus projected savings in costs to the ER program should future disasters occur. This cost/benefit analysis must focus solely on benefits resulting from estimated savings in future recurring repair costs under the ER program. The analysis cannot include other factors typically included in highway benefit/cost evaluations such as traffic delay costs, added user costs, motorist safety, economic impacts, etc.

If FHWA is unable to provide ER funding for betterment, ODOT or the local agency has the option to include the work in either the ER repair project or a separate project, and fund it with other Federal-aid, State or local funds.

Section 121 References

121.1 AASHTO References

The following policies are helpful when developing transportation projects, and are currently available by order from AASHTO:

- *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, 7th Edition – 2018 (AASHTO Green Book)*
- *Roadside Design Guide, 4th Edition - 2011*
- *A Policy on Design Standards - Interstate System - 2016*
- *Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, 4th Edition – 2012*

121.2 Other References

The following list of references is not all-inclusive:

- Federal Aviation Regulations, Part 77 (D.O.T., F.A.A.)
- Oregon Standard Drawings

DRAFT

- Oregon Standard Specifications for Highway Construction 2021
- ODOT CAD Manual
- ODOT Roadway CAD Manual
- Contract Plans Development Guide
- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices and Oregon Supplementals
- ODOT Traffic Volume Tables
- Highway Capacity Manual,
- 1999 Oregon Highway Plan, including amendments
- State of Oregon, Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan - 2016
- Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide - 2011, ODOT (HDM Appendix L)
- TRB Special Report #214, Practices for Resurfacing, Restoration and Rehabilitation
- ODOT Soil and Rock Classification Manual,
- ODOT Bridge Design Manual and CAD Manual
- ODOT Geotechnical Design Manual
- ODOT Hydraulics Manual
- ODOT Traffic Manual
- ODOT Traffic Control Plans Design Manual
- ODOT Right of Way Manual
- ODOT Survey Manual
- ODOT Project Delivery Guidebook
- ODOT Access Management Manual
- ODOT Analysis Procedures Manual (APM)
- ODOT Pavement Markings Manual
- ODOT Traffic Signal Policy and Guidelines
- ODOT Traffic Signal Design Manual
- ODOT Highway Safety Program Guide
- ODOT Construction Manual
- Local Agency Guidelines Manual

DRAFT

Part 200 Geometric Design and Context

DRAFT

Section 201 Introduction

This section presents the primary design controls and criteria that are integral to the development of any highway project. Standards are presented for design speed, horizontal and vertical alignment, superelevation, sight distance, and grades. Understanding the traffic characteristics, providing for all transportation modes, selecting the appropriate design vehicle and design speed, and determining the access management strategy are all key to successfully delivering a project that meets the goals and values of practical design and design flexibility. Each of these design controls and criteria are discussed separately in the following sections for the different roadway functional classifications, both urban and rural; however, the intent is that all these considerations should be taken holistically for the best possible outcome. As with any project, the practical application of these standards will depend on the purpose, need, context, and unique constraints of the project.

This section also discusses the context of a roadway in relationship to roadway functional classification and the state highway classification, the flexibility in design depending on the context, while keeping in mind and collaborating with other areas of the Department such as operations, maintenance, and safety resulting in a design that provides a long service life.

With the incorporation of the Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD) into the HDM, there are six urban contexts that are similar to the past HDM Oregon Highway Plan segment designations. These different contexts and their relationship to each other are discussed in Section 203 through Section 207.

Because of the multiple urban contexts and their integration with design, a large portion of Part 200 is dedicated to describing the urban context, flexibility, and trade-offs within the urban environment. This does not distract from the importance of rural design and rural geometric design. Design controls and criteria are equally important in a rural environment as well, where design speeds are generally higher.

201.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 200-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

DRAFT

Table 200-1: Documentation and Approval Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 201.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 201.2 and 201.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 201.3 and 201.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

201.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 201.4).

201.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 201.4).

201.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

DRAFT

201.5 Definitions

85th Percentile Speed - The speed at or below which 85 percent of the drivers operate their vehicles, based on a speed study.

Design Speed - The selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the roadway.

Green Book - AASHTO publication "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, 7th Edition - 2018".

Target Speed - The speed set as a project goal. The intended operating speed.

Target Speed (ITE Definition) - The highest operating speed at which vehicles should ideally operate on a roadway in a specific context.

Target Speed (AASHTO Working Definition) - The operating speed that the designer intends for drivers to use.

Operating Speed - The speed at which vehicles are observed operating during free flow conditions

Running Speed - A vehicle's speed determined by dividing the distance traveled by the time duration, excluding delays.

201.6 Acronyms

AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials

CCD - Commerce and Compliance Division

FHWA - Federal Highway Administration

MCTD - Motor Carrier Transportation Division

PODI - Projects of Division Interest

DRAFT

Section 202 Approval Processes

202.1 Design Exceptions

Any deviation from any design standard requires a design exception approved by the State Roadway Engineer. A design exception requires signatures from both the Engineer of Record (EOR) and State Roadway Engineer. Design exceptions and the design exception process are addressed in Part 1000 of the HDM. Design exceptions may also require approval by the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) for projects of interest they choose to review. Currently, these projects are called Risked Based Involvement Projects (RBIP). Previously, these projects were classified by FHWA as Projects of Division Interest or PODI.

202.2 Design Concurrence Document

The Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD), which has been incorporated into the HDM, established the urban design concurrence document form to determine project context, define design criteria, and document design decisions. ***Authority for approval of the urban design concurrence document will reside in the Region Technical Center.*** The Region Technical Center Manager shall provide final approval of design concurrence with collaborative input from region planning, traffic, roadway, and maintenance sections.

Section 203 Context and Classification

203.1 Urban Context and Roadway Classifications

This section describes the ODOT Urban Context system to differentiate the variety of urban areas and unincorporated communities in Oregon. The urban context of a roadway, together with its transportation characteristics, will provide information about the types of users expected along the roadway, regional and local travel demand of the roadway, and the challenges and opportunities of each roadway user. The urban context and transportation characteristics of a roadway will determine key design guidance and criteria for state roadways in urban areas. The six ODOT defined urban contexts of Traditional Downtown/Central Business District, Urban Mix, Commercial Corridor, Residential Corridor, Suburban Fringe, and Rural Community primarily relate to arterials, collectors and local roads with at-grade intersections. Design of interstate highways, limited-access freeways, expressways with interchanges, or other similarly operating arterials with grade separated facilities are not

DRAFT

included within these six context types. They have a context of their own that focuses on maintaining through-trip motor vehicle mobility as a primary function. These are generally higher speed roadways that serve as connections between destinations and are often access controlled. However, the crossroad or cross street between ramp terminals of an interstate or limited access freeway, grade separated expressway/arterial is not considered part of the interstate, freeway, or expressway/arterial, but rather part of the urban network. Although the crossroad of an interstate highway, limited access freeway, or grade -separated expressway/arterial may be located in an urban context, the intended mobility and high-level operation of the interstate highway, limited access freeway, or grade-separated expressway/arterial needs to be maintained. While ramp access and mobility are important for interstate, freeway, and expressway operation, in urban locations, some queuing may be desirable to allow for needed modal operations focused on the crossroad between the ramp terminals. There needs to be a balance between ramp operations, freeway mobility and the urban street network for overall safety of all road users. This section describes how to determine the urban context of an ODOT roadway and what additional transportation characteristics are considered when planning and designing a roadway. This will expand ODOT's context-sensitive approach for planning, design, and operations of projects in urban areas that serve all users.

203.2 Design Flexibility in Urban Contexts

ODOT'S Performance-Based Practical Design aligns with national design trends and is set to follow FHWA direction as well as future updates to the AASHTO Green Book. The Performance-Based Practical Design process builds on ODOT's Practical Design strategy developed in 2010 and provides additional guidance for practitioners to use design flexibility to implement designs that are appropriate within each urban context described in Section 207 and Section 208. The process includes guidance to help practitioners identify and evaluate the final design, while considering operations, safety, and maintenance as well when determining criteria for urban projects. *While the Highway Design Manual is a primary source for project design, inter-disciplinary scoping and project development teams need to utilize all ODOT resources and tools for evaluating design, operation, maintenance, and safety to balance trade-offs in order to integrate the needs of each modal group and develop solutions that meet the desired outcomes of a project.* Part 300, Section 303 introduces the cross section realms and provides specific considerations to the design elements within each realm as it relates to urban projects. In addition, the summary tables within Part 300, Section 304 provide design guidance recommendations for ODOT urban projects. The Urban Design Concurrence document provides documentation of the project decision process and provides reasoning for the proposed project design, along with background information that pertains to the established project goals and outcomes.

DRAFT

203.3 Integrating Design, Operations, Maintenance, and Safety

Designing multimodal transportation facilities in urban areas is inherently complex. While past design trends have emphasized adherence to strict design standards, current urban design strategies highlight flexibility in design and emphasize the need to identify project goals and performance measures that align with the intended project outcomes. Project teams involved with urban design projects are tasked with balancing the needs and priorities of a variety of roadway users while integrating design principles, operations, maintenance tasks, and safety. Understanding and executing a performance-based approach within each stage of the project development process enables project teams to make informed decisions about the performance trade-offs. This is especially helpful when developing solutions in fiscally and physically constrained environments. National activities and associated publications, such as the FHWA Performance-Based Practical Design initiatives and the NCHRP Report 785: Performance-Based Analysis of Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, have resulted in a framework for how to integrate design, operations, and safety by evaluating the overall performance of a project.

Balancing the trade-offs by integrating design, operations, maintenance tasks, and safety for all modal groups involves using relevant, objective data to support the design decisions. This will require an awareness of the resources available to quantify specific performance measures or qualitatively describe the anticipated effect of a given roadway or intersection. Evaluating the trade-offs within a constrained roadway environment and balancing the needs of various modal users can be particularly challenging in an urban area. Along with federal design publications, the ODOT HDM is the primary resource for detailed design guidance providing flexibility in urban highway design in relation to land use and community-based decision processes. While in the past the primary project focus was motor vehicle operations, there are now resources and tools to guide practitioners in multimodal analysis and evaluating the needs for each user from an operational perspective. Both FHWA and ODOT recognize information found in resources outside federal or Oregon DOT publications. Some of these include publications from other state DOTs, guides developed by national organizations like the National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO), the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE), and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), as well as information provided by many other transportation engineering resources. ***While outside resources may be utilized for information purposes, the Oregon Highway Design Manual is the deciding factor for design of highways, roads and streets on the Oregon state highway system.***

Whether or not safety is the catalyst for a project, conducting safety analysis can help identify areas for improving the roadway for various modal users. ODOT seeks to provide safe transportation to each roadway user and continues to work towards reducing fatal and severe injury crashes on state facilities. Therefore, using safety performance measures or qualitative assessment of safety is often a focus when evaluating project alternatives and assessing project

DRAFT

trade-offs. Practitioners can reference the Oregon Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety Implementation Plan for additional guidance and resources. In addition to modal, safety and operational needs, the Maintenance role in a facility's life cycle is an important one. Designing and constructing a facility that is difficult to maintain will not provide adequate long-term service and can degrade modal safety and operations over time.

Urban roadway facilities are designed and operated to enable safe access for all users, including pedestrians, bicyclists, motorists, and transit riders of all ages and abilities. The design team evaluates the difference between "accommodating" versus "designing for" a given mode and applies consistent principles within the project context. Multimodal design considerations depend on the intended function of the corridor, as well as balancing trade-offs and objectives from local plans. For example, consider a roadway designed primarily for mobility for motorized vehicles. The design is required to "accommodate" other users, such as pedestrians and bicycles, but it will not attract a wide range of vulnerable users. A roadway intended to serve and attract non-auto users, however, is "designed for" multimodal users. This means mobility for motorized vehicles takes a lower design need and is "accommodated", possibly allowing increased congestion as the trade-off.

With an understanding of the overall project performance, including maintenance needs, a project team can begin to evaluate the design element application based on the integration of design, operations, and safety. Subsequent sections of Part 300 provide guidance for integrating design, safety and operations in conjunction with maintenance needs and provide potential tools for measuring and evaluating the considerations and trade-offs between design elements. Section 205 and Section 206 provide information and recommendations for each ODOT Urban Context. In conjunction with Sections 303 and 304, they provide design guidance for roadway cross-sections within the various contexts and provide the next level of detail by discussing the range of considerations for design elements within the roadway cross-section, which are organized into "cross-section realms".

203.4 Resources for Design, Operations, and Safety

Balancing the trade-offs by integrating design, operations, maintenance tasks, and safety for all modal groups involves using relevant, objective data to support the design decisions. This will require an awareness of the resources available to quantify specific performance measures or qualitatively describe the anticipated effect of a given roadway or intersection. Long term maintenance tasks must also be considered in the final design. The Maintenance Section plays a significant role in making sure ODOT's facilities function as they were designed. The Maintenance role in a facility's life cycle is an important one. Designing and constructing a facility that is difficult to maintain will not provide adequate long-term service. Other recently published research, such as NCHRP Report 880: Design Guide for Low-Speed Multimodal

DRAFT

Roadways, also provide a useful resource for considering design trade-offs in an urban environment.

Specific safety calibration factors developed for the State of Oregon can help practitioners better apply the predictive safety methods in the Highway Safety Manual to address project safety outcomes.

Whether or not safety is the catalyst for a project, conducting safety analysis can help identify areas for improving the roadway for various modal users. ODOT seeks to provide safe transportation to each roadway user and continues to work towards reducing fatal and severe injury crashes on state facilities. Therefore, using safety performance measures or qualitative assessment of safety is often a focus when evaluating project alternatives and assessing project trade-offs. There are limitations in the bicycle and pedestrian crash data available at ODOT. Practitioners can reference the Oregon Pedestrian and Bicycle Safety Implementation Plan for additional guidance and resources.

Evaluating the trade-offs within a constrained roadway environment and balancing the needs of various modal users can be particularly challenging in an urban area. The ODOT HDM is the primary resource for detailed design guidance and discusses the flexibility in highway design in relation to land use and community-based decision processes. While in the past the primary project focus was motor vehicle operations, there are now resources and tools to guide practitioners in multimodal analysis and evaluating the needs for each user from an operational perspective.

Section 204 Roadway Classification

The following guidance discusses the different types of roadway classifications and contexts including: the federal functional classification, ODOTs state highway classification, the OHP highway segment designations and non-designated segments, other roadway designations such as freight routes and reduction review routes, and, most recently, ODOT's six urban contexts.

The classification and context guidance needs to be considered holistically by the designer as the Highway Design Manual has developed the design standards based upon the federal functional classifications including freeways; expressways; rural arterials, collectors and local routes; and urban arterials, collectors, and local routes. ODOT has further developed the urban functional classification into the following six urban contexts: traditional downtown/central business district; urban mix; commercial corridor; residential corridor; suburban fringe; and rural community. The six urban contexts are not necessarily based on being within the urban growth boundary, but rather, the surrounding context of the roadway in question. ***These six urban contexts and related design guidance are not to be used in the design of interstate highways or other limited-access freeways, grade separated Oregon Highway Plan designated expressways or other similarly operating arterials with interchanges.*** In respect to interchanges

and depending on the style of interchange, the appropriate design context will need to be determined for the crossroad between the ramp terminals.

204.1 Oregon Highway Plan Classifications

ODOT currently uses a highway classification system that divides state highways into five primary categories: Interstate, Statewide, Regional, District, and Local Interest Roads. Table 200-2 shows ODOT's definitions and objectives for these classifications. ODOT uses the state highway classification system to guide management and investment decisions regarding state roadway facilities. The state highway classifications provide information on the role of roadways related to mobility and access, as well as limited guidance regarding the prioritization of roadway users.

When planning in urban areas, the urban context is the primary basis of planning and design decisions. The state roadway designation would be a secondary basis of planning and design decisions.

DRAFT

Table 200-2: State Highway Classifications (OHP)

State Highway Classification	Primary Function	Secondary Function	Objective
Interstate Highways	Provide connections to major cities, regions of the state, and other states.	Provide connections for regional trips within metropolitan areas	Provide for safe and efficient high-speed continuous-flow operation in urban and rural areas. Includes managed access.
Statewide Highways	Provide inter-urban and inter-regional mobility and connections to larger urban areas, ports, and major recreation areas	Provide connections for intra-urban and intra-regional trips	Provide safe and efficient, high-speed, continuous-flow operations
Regional Highways	Provide connections and links to regional centers, Statewide or Interstate Highways, or economic or activity centers of regional significance	Serve land uses in the vicinity of these highways	Provide safe and efficient, moderate to high-speed operations
District Highways	Provide connections and links between small urbanized areas, rural centers and urban hubs[1], and serve local access and traffic	N/A	Provide for safe and efficient, moderate to high-speed continuous-flow operation in rural areas[2] and moderate to low-speed operation in urban and urbanizing areas[1] for traffic flow and for pedestrian and bicycle movements
Local Interest Roads	Local streets or arterials serving little or no purpose for through traffic mobility	N/A	Provide for safe and efficient, low to moderate speed traffic flow and for pedestrian and bicycle movements.

Source: 1999 Oregon Highway Plan

[1] Small urbanized areas, rural centers, and urban hubs described in the OHP are all considered urban. Their urban context would be classified based on the characteristics described in Section 207.

[2] Adding flexibility to the Statewide and Regional Highway classifications allows for low to moderate speeds in urban contexts and to further support safe movement of bicyclists and pedestrians. Currently, District Highways have different objectives in urban and rural areas; context and design flexibility provides the same opportunity for Statewide and Regional Highways.

A subset of the five OHP classifications outlined above are roadways designated by the Oregon Transportation Commission as expressways. The OHP defines expressways as complete routes or segments of existing two-lane and multi-lane highways and planned multi-lane highways that provide for safe and efficient high speed and high volume traffic movements. Their

primary function is to provide for interurban travel and connections to ports and major recreation areas with minimal interruptions. A secondary function is to provide for long distance intra-urban travel in metropolitan areas. In urban areas, speeds are moderate to high. In rural areas, speeds are high.

204.2 Other Roadway Designations or Characteristics

While context and OHP roadway classification can provide general guidelines for the type and activity level of different users, there are other roadway designations or characteristics that impact planning and design of roadways in urban areas. Table 200-3 summarizes some of these additional factors and the design criteria they can potentially affect. Section 207 provides more details related to how specific design elements are impacted by these designations or characteristics.

Table 200-3: Designations/Characteristics Impacting Design Decisions

Factors	Data Sources	Affected Design Criteria
Reduction Review Route	• ODOT designation – defined and stipulated by statute; ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012	• Anything that constitutes a permanent change to overall roadway horizontal and vertical clearance
Level of Access Management[1]	• Driveway density[2] • Intersection density[2]	• Median type • Median opening spacing • Signal spacing • Intersection spacing • Frequency of pedestrian crossings • Bicycle facility design • Target speed
Freight Activity	• Percent and volume of heavy vehicles • Need for loading/unloading zones	• Design vehicle • Lane width • Intersection curb-return radii • Bicycle facility design
Transit Activity	• Presence of transit routes/stops • Transit ridership • Local transit plans – Transit Development Plan, Transit Master Plan or Coordinated Plan	• Lane width and use restrictions • Sidewalk and bicycle connections • Frequency of pedestrian crossings • Bicycle facility design • Transit stop location and layout
Seismic Lifeline Route / Tsunami Evacuation Route	• Oregon designation	• Lane width • Shoulder width
Scenic Byways	• Oregon designation	• Consideration of natural and historic resources along the corridor

[1] ODOT standards are defined and stipulated by statute OAR 734-051 and PD-03 Access Management

[2] *Driveway density and intersection density are directly related to ODOT State Highway Designations*

The Oregon Highway Plan identifies three special overlay designations for the state highway system. They include: a state highway freight network, Lifeline/Evacuation Routes (Seismic/Tsunami/Flood/Wildfire), and Scenic Byways. Designs on these designated routes have special considerations.

- **State Highway Freight System** - The primary purpose of the State Highway Freight System is to facilitate efficient and reliable interstate, intrastate, and regional truck movement through a designated freight system. This system includes routes on the National Highway System (NHS) as well as routes designated from legislative action ORS 366.215 and OAR 731, Division 12 that encompass the Reduction Review Route network.

  Projects on highways that are designated as part of the Reduction Review Route network must follow the process identified in OAR 731, Division 12 to include input and support from interested parties affected by any permanent changes to the roadway. The Mobility Advisory Committee, or MAC, provides review and feedback on agency projects through the lens of freight mobility and work zone safety as it applies to both temporary and permanent reductions or restrictions on the state highway system. In addition to the Reduction Review Route highways subject to ORS 366.215 and OAR 731, Division 12, the MAC also advises the agency on planning and design of projects that propose permanent reductions or restrictions on state highways not subject to ORS 366.215 but have stakeholder engagement requirements per Department policy. Projects of this type may include safety and/or traffic calming features like roundabouts, pedestrian islands with raised features, new traffic signals, or other items that permanently change the roadway cross-section and may affect mobility of freight movements. ***For state highway projects on Reduction Review Routes or projects per Department policy that have potential to permanently impact freight mobility, include the Mobility Advisory Committee (MAC) early in the design process to solicit feedback that may affect final design parameters.*** The Mobility Advisory Committee Charter specifies which projects require input from the MAC.

  National Network Routes are subject to 23 CFR Part 658, which contains requirements to accommodate minimum vehicle lengths, widths, and weights, as well as access, use, and other requirements. Changes to National Network Routes, including but not limited to additions or deletions of segments, dimensional restrictions, weight restrictions, and access restrictions, must follow the approval procedures in 23 CFR Part 658.

- **Lifeline/Evacuation Routes** - Earthquakes, flooding, landslides, wildfires, and other natural and man-made disasters may destroy or block key access routes to emergency facilities and create episodic demand for highway routes into and out of a stricken area. ODOT's investment strategy should recognize the critical role that some highway facilities, particularly bridges, play in emergency response and evacuation. It is the policy of the State of Oregon to provide a secure lifeline network of streets, highways,

DRAFT

and bridges to facilitate emergency services response and to support rapid economic recovery after a disaster.

- **Scenic Byways** - While every state highway has certain scenic attributes, the Oregon Transportation Commission has designated Scenic Byways throughout the state on federal, state, and local roads which have exceptional scenic value. It is the policy of the State of Oregon to preserve and enhance designated Scenic Byways, and to consider design elements for natural conditions and aesthetics in conjunction with safety and performance considerations on designated Byways.

Section 205 Documenting Context and Classification

This section describes how land use has been integrated into transportation planning, operations, and design in recent years. It outlines six urban land use contexts developed for state-owned roadways and provides guidance to determine the urban context of a state-owned roadway.

Although rural contexts do not have as wide of variety as the urban contexts, rural contexts and the associated cross-sectional elements need to be tied to their intended functional classification providing for a level of operation and safety. Rural contexts vary from full access-controlled interstates to rural local routes that run through populated locations.

Context and other roadway characteristics/designations must be documented early in the project development process, ideally prior to project scoping, in order to use the appropriate context-based design criteria. ***Documentation becomes part of ODOT design concurrence to provide background for design decisions based on the context.***

Context is initially documented in a local agency's long-range plan and/or an ODOT facility plan. In some cases, the context may be different for the existing condition and the future planned land use. Future context must be supported by other planning and regulatory documents establishing requirements for desired future land use development in terms of zoning allowances, property dedication stipulations, building setback limitations or any other state or local development requirements that direct property redevelopment towards the future contextual goals.

If the context is documented in an existing long-range or facility plan, planners should review and coordinate with local planners to confirm the context at the start of a project. For projects that are not included in a long-range or facility plan, in collaboration with local planners, ODOT determines the context at the start of the project, prior to scoping or design. ***ODOT will have the final determination of the context.***

DRAFT

ODOT staff determine the applicable designations and characteristics for the roadway in question (Section 204, Table 200-2 and Table 200-3). These designations/characteristics are documented through Design Documentation, including a brief description of their impact on the design. This documentation becomes part of ODOT project design documentation to provide background for design decisions based on the context, classifications, designations, and characteristics.

The urban context and roadway characteristics/designations documented at the start of the project are reviewed and updated as needed at the start of every project phase to consider current data and recent local planning efforts and become part of the overall ODOT design documentation.

205.1 Urban Context and Land Use

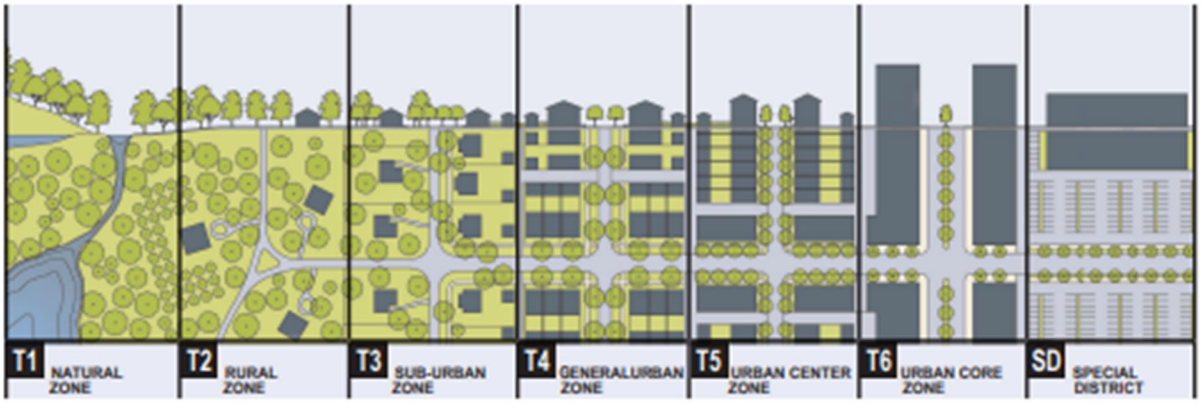
Oregon has been at the forefront of linking land use and transportation planning for several decades. Policy 1B in the 1999 OHP recognizes that state-owned roadways can be the main streets of many communities. The policy strives to maintain a balance between serving those main streets and the through traveler. Policy 1B sets up three categories to designate highway segments, which were later adopted into the revisions of the 2003 ODOT HDM. This was the first inclusion of separate design criteria for urban locations into the ODOT HDM. The segment designations include:

- **Special Transportation Areas (STA):** Designated districts of compact development located on a state-owned roadway within an urban growth boundary in which the need for appropriate local access outweighs the considerations of highway mobility except on designated OHP Freight Routes where through highway mobility has greater importance.
- **Urban Business Areas (UBA):** Existing areas of commercial activity or future nodes and various types of centers of commercial activity within urban growth boundaries or urban unincorporated community boundaries on District, Regional or Statewide Highways where vehicular accessibility is important to continued economic viability.
- **Commercial Centers (CC):** Large, regional centers or nodes with limited access to the state highway. Commercial Centers are to locate in a community that is the population center for the region and where the majority of the average daily trips to the center originate.

Nationally, a similar direction focusing on land use context as a driver for transportation planning and design has been taking place. “Transect” is a term from biology, where it describes the range of different habitats in nature. As with organisms who prefer to live in or thrive in different habitats, personal preferences, opportunities, constraints, and needs can determine the type of environment in which community members live or work, from a rural

place to a city center, and everywhere in between. Land development patterns tend to follow a transect as they transition from rural to urban. Within each transect zone, a predominance of specific types of land uses are expected. For instance, higher density housing and mixed-use buildings are typical in the more urban transect zones. Figure 200-1 illustrates the transect and transect zone concept.

Figure 200-1: A typical Rural to Urban Transect and Transect Zones



This prototypical development pattern was first established in the SmartCode in 2003 and has been evolving since. (Center for Applied Transect Studies)

Since then, various agencies have adopted their own versions to help understand the users in each transect zone and the needs of roadway users in each zone. Recent efforts include the land use contexts found in the Pennsylvania and New Jersey Departments of Transportation *Smart Transportation Guidebook*; the Florida Department of Transportation's *Context Classification* system; and the National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 855: An Expanded Functional Classification System for Highways and Streets. Information from this document is included in Chapter one of the 2018 Green Book, seventh edition and will be the basis for the next update of the Green Book as the 8th edition when it is published.

NCHRP Report 855 provides a general starting point for agencies to adopt their own classification of contexts and defines the following five land use contexts:

Rural: Areas with lowest density of development, few houses or structures (widely dispersed or no residential, commercial, and industrial uses), and usually large setbacks.

Rural Town: Areas with low-density development but diverse land uses with commercial main street character, potential for on-street parking and sidewalks, and small setbacks.

Suburban: Areas with medium-density development, mixed land uses within and among structures (including mixed-use town centers, commercial corridors, and residential areas), and varied setbacks. Appropriate roadway designs require an understanding of the function of the roadway within its current and planned future contexts and the needs of the existing and potential roadway users.

Urban: Areas with high-density development, mixed land uses and prominent destinations, potential for some on-street parking and sidewalks, and buildings with varying setbacks from the roadway.

Urban Core: Areas with highest density of development, mixed land uses within and among predominately high-rise structures, and small setbacks of buildings from the roadway.

205.2 ODOT Urban Context

In developing a context-sensitive approach to planning and designing roadways in urban areas, ODOT has created a set of six urban land use contexts to describe the variety of urban areas and unincorporated communities in Oregon. As defined previously, the term "urban," as used throughout this document, is a broad use of the word and is not limited to places within an Urban Growth Boundary (UGB), nor is it limited to the federal classification of urban being determined by a population density of 5,000 or more. Based on the Rural Community context, unincorporated cities and towns are considered as urban for the purposes of this document. However, to meet the Rural Community context there needs to be a recognition of, or semblance to, a city or town proper. Merely having a collection of houses or buildings adjacent to the highway does not fit the intended definition of a Rural Community context as it is used in this document. There needs to be a central community aspect like a post office or store in conjunction with a collection of residences to meet the intent of the Rural Community context.

The six ODOT Urban Contexts build off the NCHRP Report 855, with a few changes to reflect Oregon-specific conditions. The suburban context was split into two contexts to distinguish between commercial and residential-focused areas. The Suburban Fringe context was added to draw attention to areas transitioning from rural to a more urban context. The ODOT Urban Contexts and their relationship with the NCHRP Report 855 contexts are shown in Table 200-4.

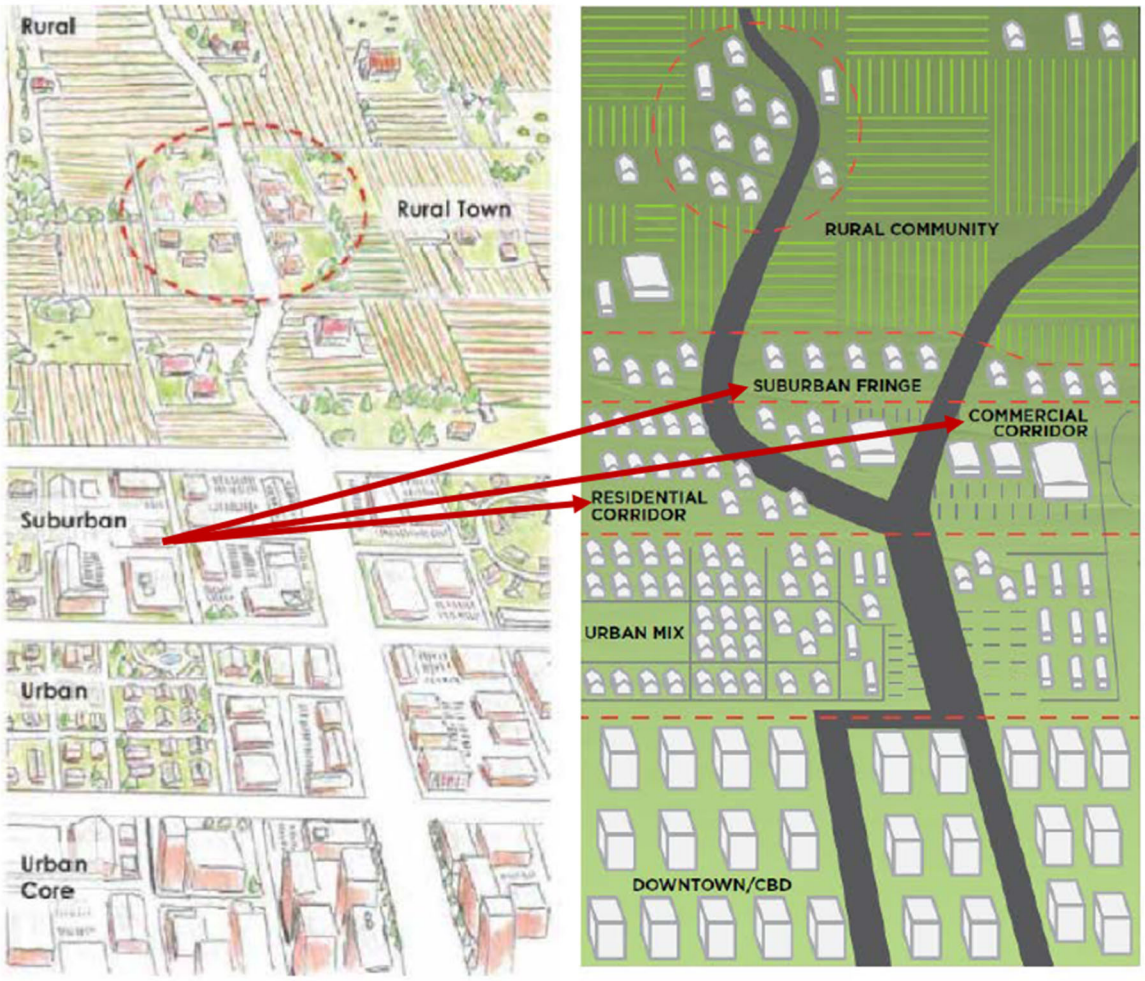
Table 200-4: ODOT Urban Contexts in Relation to NCHRP Report 855 Contexts

ODOT Urban Context	NCHRP Report 855 Context
Traditional Downtown/ Central Business District (CBD)	Urban Core/Rural Town
Urban Mix	Urban
Commercial Corridor	Urban/Suburban
Residential Corridor	Urban/Suburban
Suburban Fringe	Suburban/Rural
Rural Community	Rural Town

The six ODOT Urban Contexts shown in Table 200-4 are general and may not fit every project location specifically. Planning activities or project teams determine the appropriate context

based on predominant land use, modal goals, roadway function, or other major considerations such as anticipation of future planned land use and community aspirations. Figure 200-2 illustrates the NCHRP Report 855 contexts compared to the ODOT Urban Contexts.

Figure 200-2: NCHRP Report 855 and ODOT Urban Land Uses

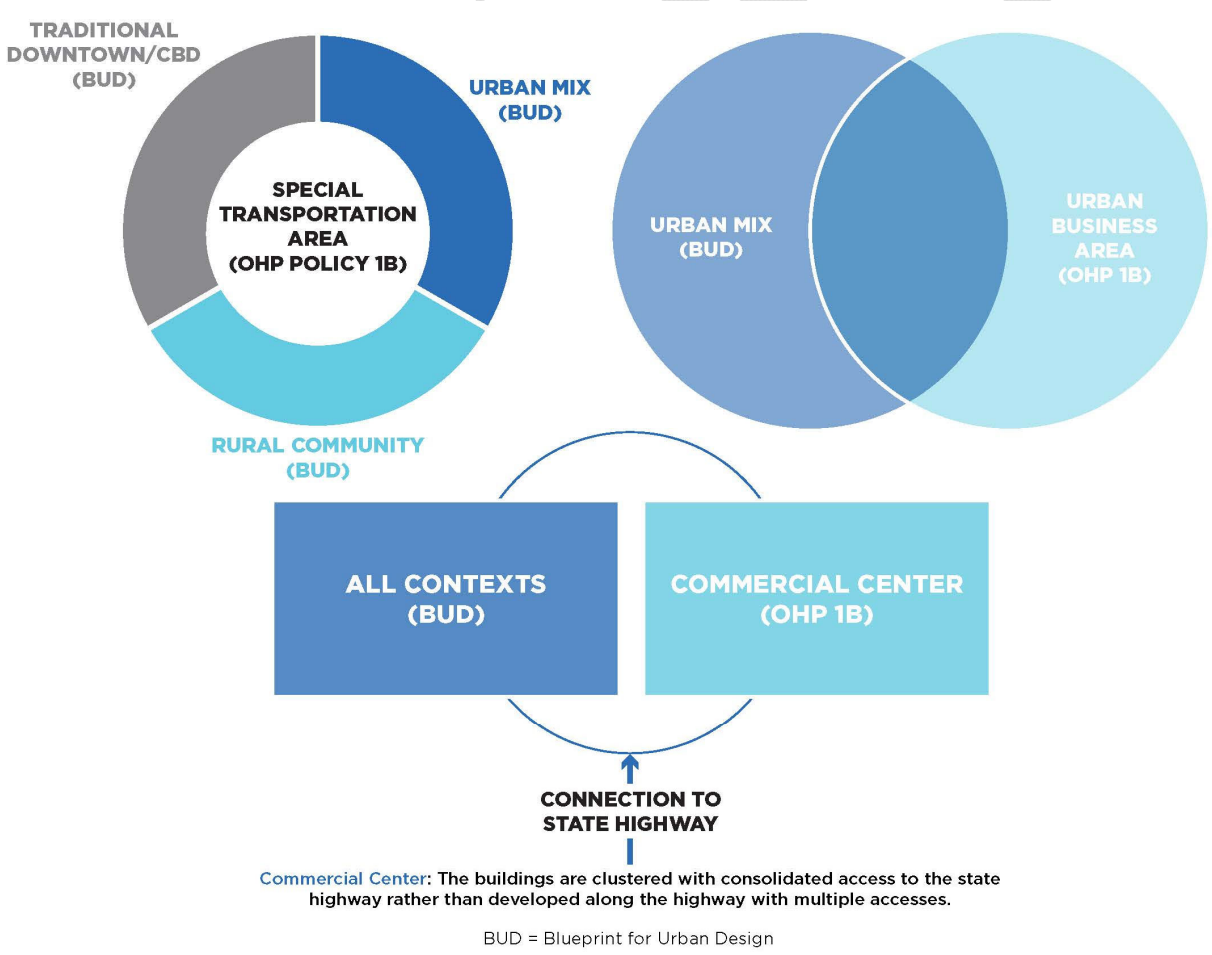


NCHRP Report 855 suggests a Suburban context. When developing the ODOT urban contexts, it was felt that a more nuanced approach to the suburban area was needed. As a result, the ODOT suburban context is separated into Commercial Corridor, Residential Corridor and Suburban Fringe contexts.

205.3 Urban Context and the Oregon Highway Plan

There is overlap between the Oregon Highway Plan Policy 1B highway segment designations of Special Transportation Area (STA), Urban Business Area (UBA), and Commercial Center (CC) and the urban contexts defined in the HDM. Figure 200-3 shows how STAs, UBAs, and CCs relate to the ODOT Urban Contexts. A Traditional Downtown/Central Business District (CBD) is generally STA like; however, a CBD is not always classified as an STA. Nor is an STA always a Traditional Downtown/CBD. An STA can be located in a Traditional Downtown/CBD, but it can also be located in an Urban Mix context or a Rural Community context. A UBA can be located within an Urban Mix context; however, Urban Mix is not always classified as a UBA. Depending on adjacent land uses and characteristics, a CC may be located in any of the urban contexts.

Figure 200-3: Oregon Highway Plan Segment Designations of Urban Contexts



205.4 Determining Urban Context

Table 200-5 presents a framework of general characteristics to determine the urban context along state roadways. The definitions and descriptions in Section 205.2 give a broad overview of the land use types and street patterns found within each context. The measures in Table 200-5 provide more detailed assessments of the existing or planned conditions along the roadway. These measures are evaluated through a combination of field visits, internet-based aerial and street view imagery, map analysis, consultation with the local jurisdiction, and a review of land use plans including Transportation System Plans (TSP) as well as other planning studies or activities. Oregon Highway Plan segment designations are policy driven and as such, they apply to all context evaluations. While they are not specific to any single urban context, segment designations assigned to a roadway section do play a part in the final design criteria of a determined urban context. The OHP segment designations are part of the final evaluation as needed, but the urban context is not solely dependent on a highway segment designation. For example, an ODOT roadway does not need to be designated as an STA to be considered a Traditional Downtown/CBD context; however, if a roadway section is determined to be an Urban Mix and it is also designated as an STA, then the final design needs to include appropriate STA criteria.

Projects with a relatively short design horizon, such as resurfacing projects, may only need to consider existing conditions in the determination of the urban context. However, it is beneficial for practitioners to look for opportunities to support future land use expectations identified in planning activities and address gaps in the bicycle and pedestrian network, where feasible. Proposed developments with approved permits are considered part of the existing conditions. For projects with a longer design life that consider future transportation demand projections, documented future land use plans are considered in determining the urban context.

In some cases, the urban context may differ on each side of the roadway (e.g., commercial corridor across from residential corridor). Where characteristics differ on each side of the roadway, appropriate context determination is focused on predominant land use, modal balance/needs, roadway function, or other major considerations. Generally, there is enough flexibility within the design matrices for the determined context to provide a consistent cross-section when contexts overlap.

DRAFT

Table 200-5: ODOT Urban Context Matrix

Land Use Context	Building Setbacks Distance from the building to the property line	Building Orientation Buildings with front doors that can be accessed from the sidewalks along a pedestrian path	Land Use Existing or future mix of land uses	Building Coverage Percent of area adjacent to right-of-way with buildings, as opposed to parking, landscape, or other uses	Parking Location of parking in relation to the buildings along the right-of-way	Block Size Average size of blocks adjacent to the right-of-way
Traditional Downtown/ CBD	Shallow/ None	Yes	Mixed (Residential, Commercial, Park/Recreation)	High	On-street/ garage/ shared in back	Small, consistent block structure
Urban Mix	Shallow	Some	Commercial fronting, residential behind or above	Medium	Mostly off-street/Single row in front/ In back/ On side	Small to medium blocks
Commercial Corridor	Medium to Large	Sparse	Commercial, Institutional, Industrial	Low	Off-street/In front	Large blocks, not well defined
Residential Corridor	Shallow	Some	Residential	Medium	Varies	Small to medium blocks
Suburban Fringe	Varies	Varies	Varied, interspersed development	Low	Varies	Large blocks, not well defined
Rural Community	Shallow/ None	Some	Mixed (Residential, Commercial, Institutional, Park/Recreation)	Medium	Single row in front/ In back/ On side	Small to medium blocks

205.5 Urban Context and Multimodal Users

The ODOT Urban Contexts can also help planners and engineers understand the types of users and the intensity of use expected within each urban context. For example, in a Traditional Downtown/CBD, practitioners would expect a higher number of pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit users than in a Suburban Fringe context. Therefore, slower speeds, shorter signal spacing, shorter crossing distances, and other design elements such as bicycle facilities, on-street parking, and wide sidewalks are considered as strategies to improve safety and comfort of the anticipated users (bicyclists, pedestrians, and transit riders). However, freight movements and delivery of goods to business within a Traditional Downtown/CBD must also be accommodated.

In a Suburban Fringe area, designers would expect a predominance of vehicles and freight; however, bicyclists and pedestrians are also likely to be present and enhanced facilities are considered for safety and comfort. A roadway in the Suburban Fringe context would typically have higher speeds, and lower levels of traffic delay, but the design elements for the facility will change as it transitions into different urban contexts.

When determining the roadway typical section proposed for a project, designers use the urban context to better understand the anticipated users and identify appropriate consideration for each of them. Table 200-6 shows a representation of the relative need of each user type to drive planning and design decisions in the different urban contexts. This table is a starting point and not a final determination of modal considerations. Specific modal integration is determined on a project-by-project basis; however, modes with lower consideration must still be accommodated. For example, there will be freight needs to deliver products to businesses in a CBD. Even if freight is a lower consideration compared to bicyclists and pedestrians, project-level needs incorporate how freight will access the area. In this example, it may mean the design vehicle is a single-unit (SU) and a tractor-trailer combination WB-67 is “accommodated”. However, on Reduction Review Routes, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012 requirements must also be considered in these decisions. The following parts and sections will contain more guidance on criteria to be used for each urban context. Guidance for bicycle facility selection and its relation to modal integration is located in Part 900, Bikeway Design.

DRAFT

Table 200-6: General Modal Considerations in Different Urban Contexts

Land Use Context	Motorist	Freight	Transit	Bicyclist	Pedestrian
Traditional Downtown/CBD	Low	Low	High	High	High
Urban Mix	Medium	Low	High	High	High
Commercial Corridor	High	High	High	Medium	Medium
Residential Corridor	Medium	Medium	Low	Medium	Medium
Suburban Fringe	High	High	Varies	Low	Low
Rural Community	Medium	Medium	Varies	High	High

High: Highest level facility should be considered and prioritized with other modal treatments.

Medium: Design elements should be considered; trade-offs may exist based on desired outcomes and user needs.

Low: Incorporate design elements as space permits.

Section 206 Examples of ODOT Urban Contexts

206.1 Traditional Downtown/Central Business District

Thinking of the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context, the major sections of downtown Portland, Salem, Eugene, Bend, Medford or Grants Pass come to mind. However, smaller towns and cities like Tillamook, Astoria, Coos Bay, Bandon, Hood River, Baker City, Lakeview and Burns, to name a few, also have great downtown areas and are considered in the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context. Small block sizes characteristic to the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District encourage walking, biking and transit modes for access to properties, business and activities.

General Characteristics of the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context:

Buildings are generally at the back of walk or with small setbacks. Access to buildings is from the sidewalk or pedestrian pathway. Land use is mostly commercial and retail with some mixed residential, park space or small recreation areas. Buildings cover large portions of properties adjacent to the highway and block sizes are small with on-street parking or shared parking in back of buildings along with a developed grid system of streets. Figure 200-4 and Figure 200-5 illustrate the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context.

Figure 200-4: Aerial - Baker City, Downtown Grid (US30/OR7)

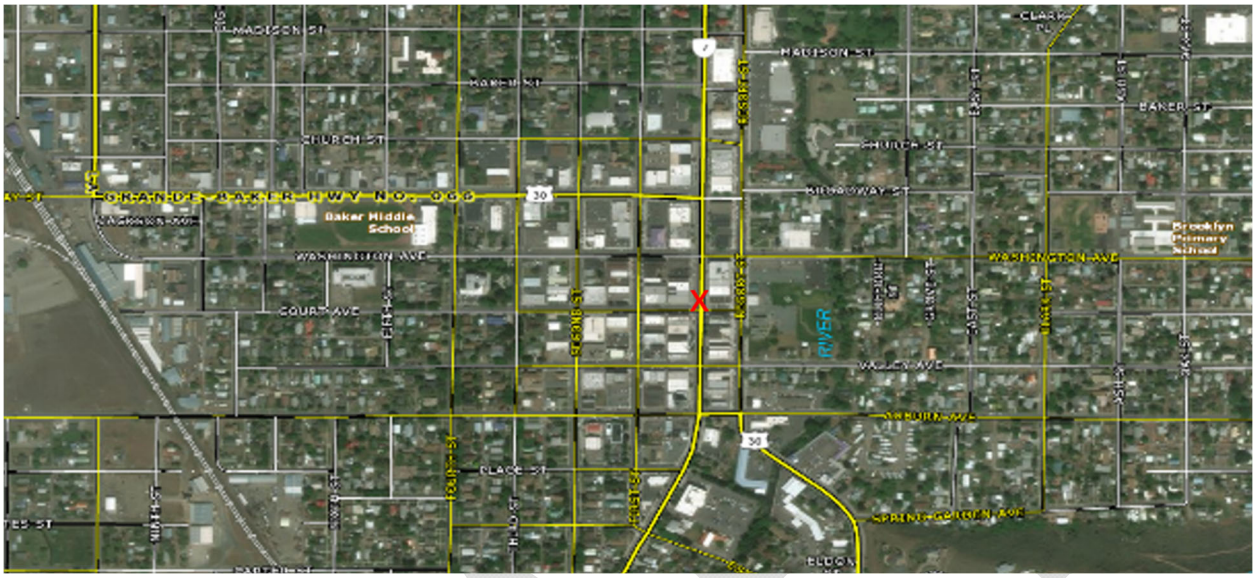
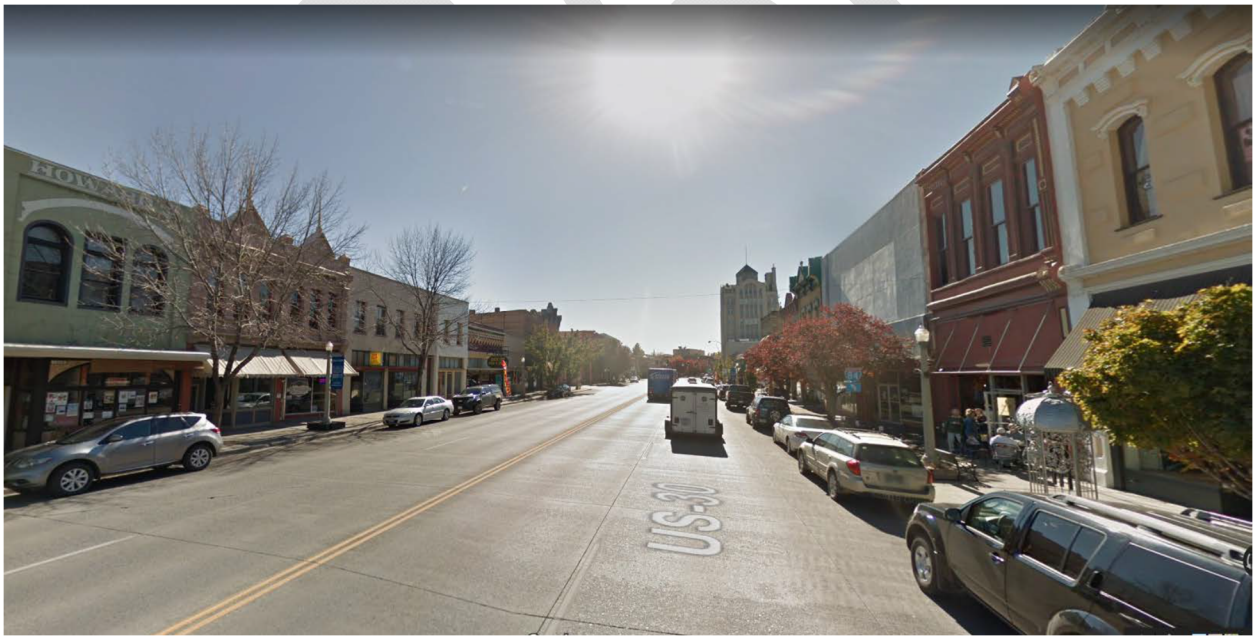


Figure 200-5: Baker City Downtown (US30)



206.2 Urban Mix

The Urban Mix context generally is the area adjacent as a roadway moves outward from the central downtown area. It is often established as businesses move outward into older residential areas and properties redevelop or repurpose. There may be no defining line between a Traditional Downtown/Central Business District and an Urban Mix. The two contexts may morph into one another. Smaller block sizes are conducive to walking, biking and transit for access to properties.

General Characteristics of the Urban Mix Context:

Building setbacks are generally shallow with a mix of buildings tight with the sidewalk and some with a small frontage to the sidewalk and pedestrian pathway. Land use is commercial, retail or professional offices fronting the property and may have residential on upper floors or in back. In conjunction with the business properties, there may be older residential mixed in with the more recent property redevelopments. Building coverage is generally medium in relation to property sizes with some on-street parking, but parking is mainly off-street, single row parking in front, in back or on side. The street network is in a connected grid pattern with blocks small to medium in size. Figure 200-6 and Figure 200-7 illustrate the Urban Mix context.

Figure 200-6: Aerial - Urban Mix Portland: US26, Powell Blvd. West of I-205 (Inner Powell)

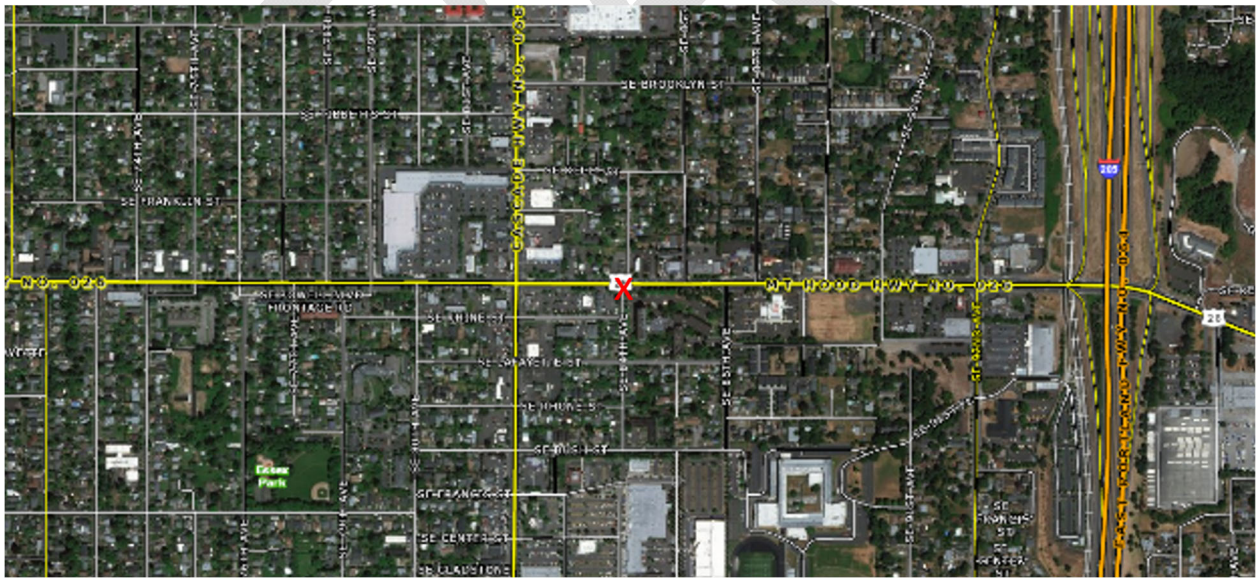


Figure 200-7: Urban Mix - Portland US26, Powell Blvd.



206.3 Commercial Corridor

A Commercial Corridor context is readily identifiable and consists primarily of large commercial, retail or industrial properties along major, higher speed arterials. As a result, access to properties along a Commercial Corridor has traditionally been focused on motorized vehicles with some transit access. A connected street network grid is not usually present as many of the properties in this context developed on large tracts of land that were originally at the edge of communities and subsequent characteristic development followed as the rest of the corridor was established. Special attention is needed when designing bicycle and pedestrian facilities for this context.

General Characteristics of the Commercial Corridor Context:

Building setbacks are medium to large with off-street parking area between the sidewalk and building entrances. Building coverage on the properties is small in relation to the total right-of-way. Land uses encompass commercial, retail or industrial businesses that include large parking areas for customers and employees. Figure 200-8 and Figure 200-9 illustrate the Commercial Corridor context.

DRAFT

Figure 200-8: Aerial - Commercial Corridor, US97 South Redmond

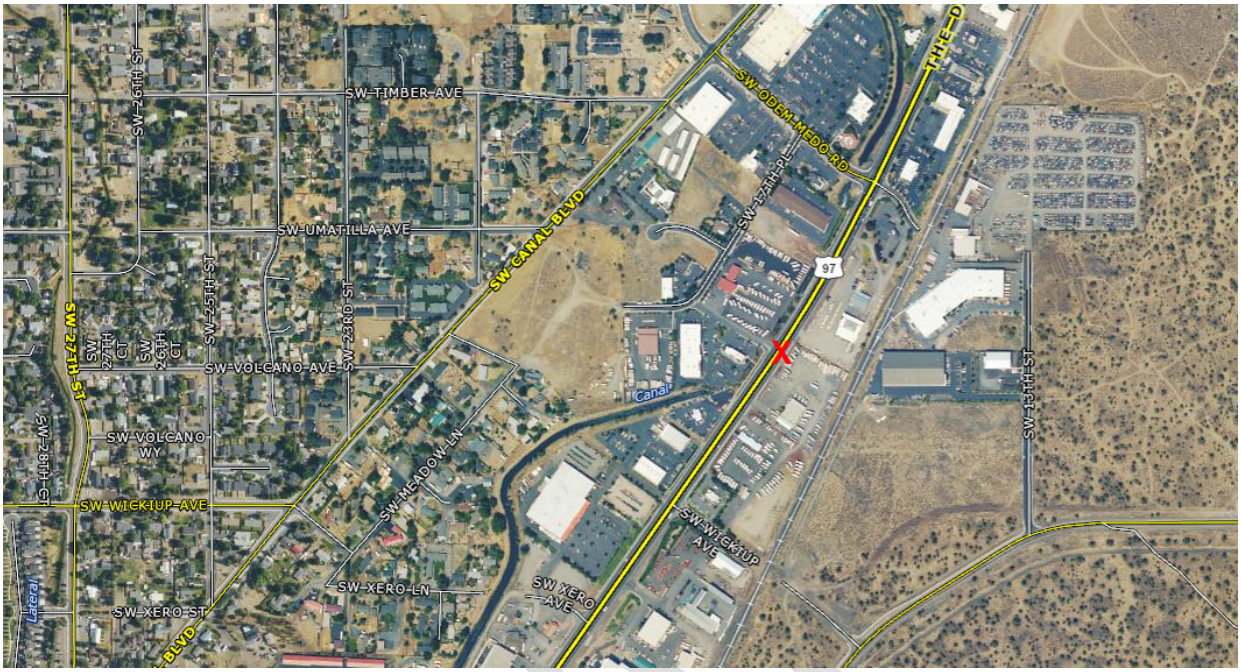


Figure 200-9: Commercial Corridor - US97 South Redmond



206.4 Residential Corridor

The Residential Corridor context differs from the Commercial Corridor with its higher density of residential properties. It may be along a higher speed arterial as is a Commercial Corridor, but greater potential for pedestrian, bicycle and transit access from residential properties will be a design focus along Residential Corridors. This context has a more connected street grid network and may have mixed commercial, retail and light industrial activities to support the

residential nature. Access to the highway is primarily through public street connections, although some properties with higher densities of residents or higher trip generations may have some direct access.

General Characteristics of Residential Corridor:

Building setbacks are generally shallow with some buildings at the back of walk. Land use is varied with commercial and retail in relation to the high density of residential properties. Building coverage on residential right-of-way varies from single family homes to higher density, multi-family housing. Block sizes are small to medium with parking options that vary with posted speeds from on-street for some roadway types to off-street in most cases, due to the general location of this context along major arterials. Figure 200-10 and Figure 200-11 illustrate the Residential Corridor context.

Figure 200-10: Aerial - Residential Corridor, OR221 Wallace Road, West Salem



Figure 200-11: Residential Corridor - OR 221, West Salem (Parkway Concept)



206.5 Suburban Fringe

The Suburban Fringe context is generally the transition area from higher speed rural roadways to the lower speed urban section entering communities. The design focus for this context is speed control and communicating to drivers they are entering an urban area or rural community.

General Characteristics of the Suburban Fringe Context:

Building setbacks vary with no specific distance but are generally large. Few buildings are at the roadway or right-of-way edge. Properties are generally larger with buildings taking up minimal space leaving large open areas. Land use is varied. Development is interspersed with residential, farming, commercial, retail and industrial. Block sizes are large and not well defined. Parking is primarily off-street, although depending on the adjacent urban context, some on-street parking could be present. Figure 200-12 and Figure 200-13 illustrate the Suburban Fringe context.

DRAFT

Figure 200-12: Aerial - Suburban Fringe, OR 212 Damascus

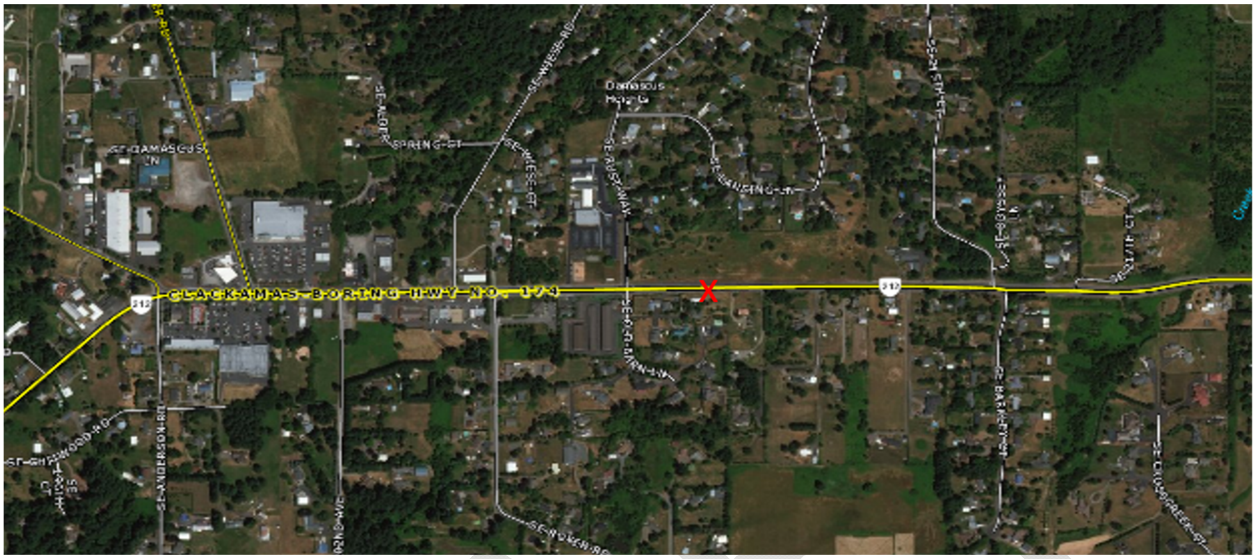


Figure 200-13: Suburban Fringe - OR 212 Damascus



DRAFT

206.6 Rural Community

The Rural Community context was established for small, unincorporated communities that encompass concentrated areas of development surrounded by undeveloped areas with the highway running through main street. The design focus in this context is on speed control and connectivity. Safe access across the highway for residents of these communities is paramount for community activities. Students getting to school, people accessing mail at the post office or

shopping for groceries are daily activities that can be done through walking and biking for many residents, rather than driving short distances. Providing designs that control the speed of through traffic and provides facilities to enhance safe walking and biking can improve the quality of life for these communities. It is important to strike a balance between through traffic needs and local community needs.

General Characteristics of the Rural Community Context:

Building Setbacks are shallow to none with open frontages and a single row of parking along the edge of the highway. Land use is varied with some residential mixed with mostly small businesses, small retail or light industrial. Post offices, general stores, parks and recreation facilities are common. Block size is generally small and often not well defined. Figure 200-14 and Figure 200-15 illustrate the Rural Community context.

Figure 200-14: Aerial - Rural Community, OR 22 Gates

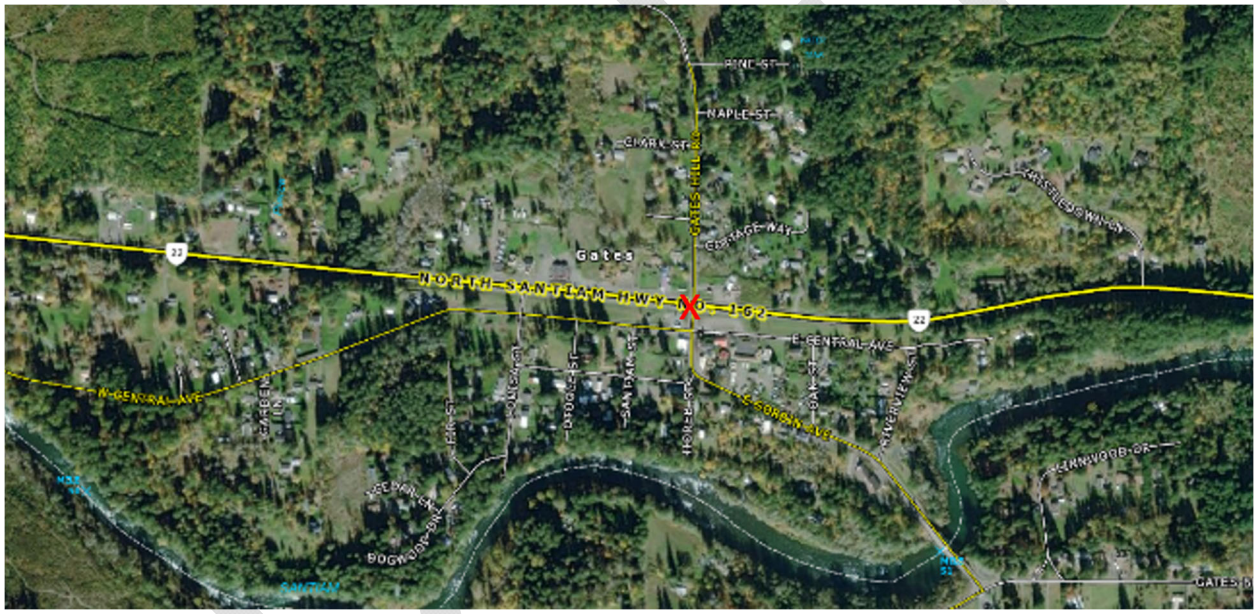


Figure 200-15: Rural Community, OR 22 Gates



Section 207 Designing Based on Context and Classification

The purpose of this section is to outline how the contexts, modal expectations, and roadway characteristics described earlier in this part can be applied together, with the design approach described for each context. The following sub-sections and Table 200-7 provide general guidance on design direction for various elements of the roadway design. More specific guidance for design elements within each land use context is included in Part 300. The design guidance tables and cross section figures in Part 300 also provide more detail on considering different roadway characteristics.

207.1 Urban and Rural Freeways (Including Interstates)

Speeds for these roadways range from 50 to 70 mph. These access-controlled facilities focus on the vehicular mode, mobility over access, and need to accommodate the heavy and large loads that use urban and rural freeways, including the interstate system. Both the urban and rural freeway contexts have similar modal expectations and roadway contexts, although the urban freeways traverse through the different urban environments.

207.2 Urban and Rural Expressways

Similar to urban and rural freeways, urban and rural expressways mainly focus on vehicle mobility, although expressways may not have similar levels of access control as freeways.

Because expressways may consist of grade separated or at-grade intersections, the level of modal accommodation will vary. Speeds are relatively high ranging from 45 to 70 mph depending on urban or rural environments. Urban expressways with grade separated accesses do not fit the six urban contexts defined in the HDM and are generally designed using Urban freeway criteria. However, urban expressways with at-grade intersections do fit with the six ODOT urban contexts and are subject to the appropriate design criteria for the selected context.

As with any urban roadway, right of way, cost, terrain, and other constraints may necessitate designing expressways below the standards described for them. The appropriate design exception must be obtained to reduce any design element below standard criteria. Justification for exceptions from expressway design standards must be substantial. Due to the mobility needs of expressways, they are held to a high standard and therefore exceptions should be minimized. For more information on the design exception process, refer to Part 1000.

207.3 Rural Arterials, Collectors, and Local Routes

Rural arterials, collectors, and local routes serve most uses related to vehicular traffic moving through rural arterials, but also a wide range of modes due to the rural arterial functional classification making up a large percentage of rural facilities ranging from rural arterials to rural local routes. Speed ranges also vary in the range of 45 to 70 mph.

207.4 Traditional Downtown/Central Business District

To best serve all users, vehicle speeds are generally 25 mph or below, and higher levels of congestion are expected. Transit stops are placed at frequent intervals, and transit priority treatments can help with transit mobility, even in congested conditions. Preferred bicycle and pedestrian facilities are relatively wide and comfortable to serve users of all ages and abilities. Curbside uses are important and may include transit and freight loading/unloading needs, parking (vehicles, bicycles, etc.), and other uses. Landscaping and street tree installation follows ODOT placement and spacing guidelines and are appropriate in this context.

207.5 Urban Mix

To best serve all users, vehicle speeds are typically 25 to 30 mph, and higher levels of congestion are acceptable. Transit stops are placed in proximity to origins and destinations. Preferred bicycle and pedestrian facilities are relatively wide and comfortable to serve users of all ages and abilities. Where low speeds cannot be achieved, practitioners must consider a buffer between travel lanes and bicycle and pedestrian facilities. Curbside uses are important and may include transit and freight loading/unloading, parking (vehicles, bicycles, etc.), and other uses.

Landscaping and street trees, following ODOT placement and spacing guidelines, are appropriate in this context.

207.6 Commercial Corridor

Multimodal access to destinations must be balanced with vehicle and freight throughput. Vehicle speeds are typically 30 to 35 mph, depending on the roadway function. Medians facilitate access to commercial destinations. Demand for transit service is moderate to high due to the prevalence of commercial land use. Bicycle and pedestrian connections to transit are emphasized as part of the bicycle network. Boarding and alighting occur at the curbside. Preferred bicycle and pedestrian facilities are separated from travel lanes by a buffer.

207.7 Residential Corridor

On state-owned roadways, these streets are likely to see use from a variety of modes, with most uses related to vehicular traffic moving through the area. Vehicle speeds are typically 30 to 35 mph, depending on the roadway function. The single-use nature of this context limits the multimodal activity; however, providing bicycle and pedestrian facilities is preferred for residents. Facilities separated from travel lanes by a buffer are preferred. Consider local pedestrian/bicycle plans when designing for the Residential Corridor context. Providing appropriate enhanced crossings where desired by local communities can benefit pedestrian movement along and across the highway.

207.8 Suburban Fringe

Pay special attention to the expected future context of the roadway when determining the level of consideration paid to each mode. Speeds will generally be higher on these roadways with a range of 35 to 40 mph. Therefore, evaluate bicycle and pedestrian facilities to meet existing and future needs. Although not always possible, facilities separated from travel lanes by a buffer provide safer and more comfortable experiences for users and are the preferred choice. This context often separates rural areas from more urban contexts. A primary goal of projects in this context is to lower operating speeds through appropriate transition zones as vehicles enter more urbanized areas.

DRAFT

207.9 Rural Community

In this context, streets are likely to see use from a variety of modes, with most uses related to either vehicular traffic moving through the town or local community members moving throughout the community via walking, bicycling, or driving. To best serve this mix of users, encourage vehicle speeds in the range of 25 to 35 mph entering the town, potentially through the use of speed transition zones. Other design features can help inform drivers they are entering a town, such as "gateway" intersections, street trees lining the street, or other local icons/art/signs visible from the street. Pedestrian crossings of the roadway in rural towns are relatively frequent to reduce the roadway's impact as a barrier. Designs related to sidewalks, bicycle facilities, and curbside uses reflect the need of the local community.

DRAFT

Table 200-7: Designing Based on Context, Considering Roadway Designations and Activity of Different Modes

Context	Typical Speed Ranges (MPH)[4]	Travel Lanes[1,2]	Turn Lanes[1,2]	Shy Distance[1,3]	Median[1,2]	Bicycle Facility[1,2,5]	Sidewalk	Target Pedestrian Crossing Spacing Range (feet)[6]	On-street parking[1]
Urban and Rural Freeways (including interstates)	50-70 mph	Start with standard	Not Applicable	Start with standard	Start with standard	Generally, Not Applicable (only in specific cases)	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
Grade Separated Urban and Rural Expressways	45-70 mph	Start with standard	Not Applicable for Grade Separations/ Start with standard	Not Applicable for Grade Separations/ Start with standard	Start with standard	Generally, Not Applicable (only in specific cases)	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
At-Grade Urban and Rural Expressways	45-70 mph	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard See Part 900	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard See Part 800, 900	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard	Urban - Use Context Rural - Start with Standard

Table 200-7 (Continued): Designing Based on Context, Considering Roadway Designations and Activity of Different Modes

Context	Typical Speed Ranges (MPH)[4]	Travel Lanes[1,2]	Turn Lanes[1,2]	Shy Distance[1,3]	Median[1,2]	Bicycle Facility[1,2,5]	Sidewalk	Target Pedestrian Crossing Spacing Range (feet)[6]	On-street parking[1]
Rural Arterials/ Collectors/ Local Route	45-70 mph	Start with standard	Start with standard	When applicable, Start with standard	Start with standard	Start with standard	When applicable, Start with standard	When applicable, Start with standard	When applicable, start with standard
Traditional Downtown/ CBD	20-25	Evaluate, start with preferred widths, wider by roadway characteristics	Minimize additional crossing width at intersections	Minimal	Optional, use as pedestrian crossing refuge	Start with separated bicycle facility	Ample space for sidewalk activity (e.g., sidewalk cafes, transit shelters)	250-550 (1-2 blocks)	Include on-street parking if possible
Urban Mix	25-30	Evaluate, start with preferred widths, wider by roadway characteristics	Minimize additional crossing width at intersections	Minimal	Optional, use as pedestrian crossing refuge	Start with separated bicycle facility, consider roadway characteristics	Ample space for sidewalk activity (e.g., sidewalk cafes, transit shelters)	250-550 (1-2 blocks)	Consider on-street parking if space allows

Table 200-7 (Continued): Designing Based on Context, Considering Roadway Designations and Activity of Different Modes

Context	Typical Speed Ranges (MPH)[4]	Travel Lanes[1,2]	Turn Lanes[1,2]	Shy Distance[1,3]	Median[1,2]	Bicycle Facility[1,2,5]	Sidewalk	Target Pedestrian Crossing Spacing Range (feet)[6]	On-street parking[1]
Commercial Corridor	30-35	Evaluate, start with preferred widths, wider by roadway characteristics	Balance crossing width and operations depending on desired use	Consider roadway characteristics, desired speeds	Typically used for safety/ operational management	Start with separated bicycle facility, consider roadway characteristics	Continuous and buffered sidewalks, with space for transit stations	500-1,000	Not Applicable
Residential Corridor	30-35	Evaluate, start with preferred widths, wider by roadway characteristics	Balance crossing width and operations depending on desired use	Consider roadway characteristics, desired speeds	Optional, use as pedestrian crossing refuge	Start with separated bicycle facility, consider roadway characteristics	Continuous and buffered sidewalks	500-1,000	Generally not applicable, Consider roadway character
Suburban Fringe	35-40	Evaluate, start with preferred widths, wider by roadway characteristics	Balance crossing width and operations depending on desired use	Consider roadway characteristics, desired speeds	Optional, use as pedestrian crossing refuge	Start with separated bicycle facility, consider roadway characteristics	Continuous and buffered sidewalks	750-1,500	Not typical

Table 200-7 (Continued): Designing Based on Context, Considering Roadway Designations and Activity of Different Modes

Context	Typical Speed Ranges (MPH)[4]	Travel Lanes[1,2]	Turn Lanes[1,2]	Shy Distance[1,3]	Median[1,2]	Bicycle Facility[1,2,5]	Sidewalk	Target Pedestrian Crossing Spacing Range (feet)[6]	On-street parking[1]
Rural Community	25 - 35	Evaluate, start with preferred widths, wider by roadway characteristics	Balance crossing width and operations depending on desired use	Consider roadway characteristics, desired speeds	Optional, use as pedestrian crossing refuge	Start with separated bicycle facility, consider roadway characteristics	Continuous and buffered sidewalks, sized for desired use	250-750	Consider on-street parking if space allows

[1] Design decisions consider the presence and volumes of freight and transit activity. Follow the Reduction Review Route policy and process.

[2] Design decisions must consider the existing level of access management and/or the driveway density.

[3] Shy distance: the lateral distance from the edge of the travel way beyond which a roadside object will not be perceived as an ~~immediate hazard~~obstacle by the typical driver.

[4] Section 207.10, (Target Speed) provides the approach and strategies associated with target speed.

[5] Section 306 and Part 900 provide guidance to determine appropriate bicycle facility selection.

[6] Section 307 and Part 800 provide guidance for pedestrian crossing locations and pedestrian facilities.

DRAFT

207.10 Speed, Context, and Design

207.10.1 Design Speed

Design speed is a selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the roadway. The selected design speed is consistent with the speeds that drivers are likely to expect on a given highway. The design speed of a project may have a direct impact on the cost, safety, and quality of the finished project. With the exception of local streets, the chosen design speed in rural areas should be as high as practicable to attain a specified degree of safety, mobility, and efficiency while taking into consideration constraints of environmental quality, social and political impacts, economics, and aesthetics. In urban situations, the design speed is generally equal to or, where necessary, higher than the posted speed of the particular section of roadway. When establishing a project design speed, consider land use, pedestrian needs, safety, and community livability. Care must be taken to not confuse design speed with operating speed, posted speed, 85th percentile speed, target speed, or running speed. See AASHTO's "Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018" for a detailed explanation of each of these different kinds of speeds.

The selection of a design speed for any given project is dependent on several factors. These factors include traffic volume, geographic characteristics of an area, functional classification of the roadway, number of travel lanes, 50^{th} and 85^{th} percentile speeds, roadway environment, adjacent land use, context, and type of project being designed. Design speeds are generally selected in increments of 5 mph.

When selecting an appropriate design speed, the roadway section in question as well as adjacent sections to the proposed project are considered. Within the project, the chosen design speed is applied consistently throughout the section keeping in mind the speed a driver is likely to expect. This is very important when dealing with horizontal and vertical alignments, superelevation rates, and spiral lengths. For example, a project with a selected design speed of 55 mph may consist of multiple horizontal curves. All horizontal curves should be designed for 55 mph along with the appropriate superelevation and spiral length for the design speed. Some projects may cross over different contexts. In these instances, more than one design speed may be appropriate for the project. The proper use of design speed creates consistent roadways and expectations for the driver. Due to economical or environmental reasons all curves may not be able to achieve the desired design speed. In those cases, it is important that the driver be advised of the lower speed condition ahead with the use of curve warning signs.

Finally, selecting the appropriate design speed for a particular section must consider transition areas from rural to urban environments. Providing a smooth and clear transition from high rural speed conditions to urban environments is critical in controlling drivers' perceptions of

DRAFT

the areas they are entering. These transitions alert users of the changing environment, and control vehicular speeds as they enter various urban environments. The most common and effective transitions are those that establish a different roadway culture such as sidewalks, buffer strips, and raised medians. Another common technique for transition areas is visual narrowing of the roadway. This can be accomplished with raised islands, buffer strips, and landscaping.

Although this section will primarily focus on design speed for motor vehicles, the design speed selection process is also considered for other modes such as bicycles. Design speed guidance for bicycle facilities is located in Part 900.

207.10.2 Selecting Project Design Speed

For all projects on state highways, the design speed is selected by the Region Roadway Manager and the Region Traffic Manager in cooperation with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. This applies to private developments only if they include any construction on the highway, other than the access itself. Where mitigation impacts the cross-section or alignment of the highway, such as a channelization, widening or striping, the design speed must be approved by the Region Roadway Manager before any permit is issued.

Design speed is integral to many other design elements. As such, selection of design speed needs to be carefully considered to determine an appropriate value. For urban locations, it may be appropriate to utilize the posted speed as project design speed. For higher speed interstate highways, freeways and other roadways in open road locations, it may be advantageous to select a design speed higher than the posted speed to allow for driver variability. The selected design speed for non-freeway 3R and Single Function projects is the same as the posted speed in most cases and does not require an approval. However, there may be occasions where the Region's goals for a section of roadway would call for selecting a design speed that is higher than the posted speed. **Under no circumstances will a design speed be lower than the posted speed and in general, design exceptions are not granted for design speed.** Rather, selection of an appropriate design speed is preferred.

Additional information on specific design speeds and target speeds based on specific cross sectional information and context can be found in PART 300 Cross Section Elements.

207.10.3 Target Speed

Target Speed is a term and concept developed in the 2010 Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) publication, Designing Walkable Urban Thoroughfares: A Context Sensitive Approach and is used primarily in urban locations. ITE defined target speed as the highest operating speed at which vehicles should ideally operate on a roadway in a specific context. AASHTO has

a working definition of target speed that defines it as the operating speed that the designer intends for drivers to use. For ODOT purposes, target speed is the appropriate speed at which drivers should be operating a vehicle on a section of roadway based on context, classification and overall operations. Target speed differs from design speed in that it is often an aspirational goal of a project and may be the ultimate goal for speed reduction along a roadway segment. ***Depending on context, roadway operations and characteristics, target speed may be established below the posted speed limit when appropriate speed reduction is a project goal.*** Target speeds need to be determined with realistic goals in mind. Target speed needs to fit with the context and operational needs of a location. Setting a target speed 15 mph below the posted speed on a major, urban arterial in a Commercial Corridor context may not be realistic when considering the design element options available to achieve that much of a speed reduction. *Other than a roundabout, no single design treatment will afford significant speed reduction. Research has shown speed reductions of 5 mph and sometimes as high as 10 mph can be achieved when combinations of design treatments are utilized together.*

Reducing vehicle operating speeds on highways within urban areas can encourage walking and bicycling and reduce fatal and serious injury crashes. *Considering the target speed (desired operating speed) and identifying strategies to achieve the desired speed are key priorities for urban projects.* Understanding the relationship between the target speed, design speed, and posted speed can help practitioners consider the trade-offs from a speed perspective and how speed may influence the characteristic of the roadway and its users.

207.10.4 Recommendations for Target Speed

A goal in urban locations, is for the target speed, the posted speed and design speed to be the same, and a roadway should encourage an actual operating speed at the target speed. This is a concept that has become known as a "self-enforcing roadway". However, rarely is this the case at project scoping or project initiation and lowering operating speeds to aspirational target speeds then becomes a project goal. Ideally, the target speed is intended to be used as the posted speed limit in urban locations after projects are complete. When the target speed is less than the posted speed limit and/or the design speed, project design provides appropriate speed management treatments to encourage drivers to operate at the intended target speed. If the design treatments are successful in lowering operating speeds to the target speed, then the posted speed can also be lowered to match the target and operating speeds. Table 200-8 provides recommendations for target speed in each ODOT defined urban context. It also includes a list of suggested design treatments to incorporate in project designs to aid in achieving the desired target speed.

DRAFT

Table 200-8: Recommended ODOT Target Speed and Design Treatments for Urban Contexts

Urban Context	Target Speed (MPH)	Design Treatments
Traditional Downtown/CBD	20-25	Roundabouts, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, on-street parking[1], street trees[2], median islands, curb extensions, chicanes[3], textured surface, coordinated signal timing, speed tables[3], road diets
Urban Mix	25-30	Roundabouts, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, on-street parking[1], street trees[2], median islands, curb extensions, chicanes[3], textured surface, coordinated signal timing, road diets
Commercial Corridor	30-35	Roundabout, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, landscaped median Islands, coordinated signal timing, road diets
Residential Corridor	30-35	Roundabout, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, landscaped median Islands, coordinated signal timing, road diets
Suburban Fringe*	35-40	Roundabouts, transverse pavement markings, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, road diets, entry treatments
Rural Community	25-35	Roundabouts, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, on-street parking[1], street trees[2], median islands, curb extensions, chicanes[3], speed tables[3], road diets, entry treatment

* The suburban fringe context is typically suburban adjacent to rural areas at the edge of urban development, but often is in the process of developing. For projects in the suburban fringe context zone, practitioners should consider likely future development and consider applying designs for residential corridor, commercial corridor, or urban mix contexts if this type of development is likely to occur.

[1] If on-street parking is not well utilized, the additional pavement width may increase operating speeds.

[2] When used along roadways, street trees may not reduce speeds in a specific urban context to a point where it is appropriate to have a vertical element adjacent to the roadway.

[3] Speed tables and chicanes may not be appropriate on most state roadways but may be considered in special cases.

207.11 Posted Speed

Posted speed is the legally enforceable maximum speed drivers must follow. In Oregon, posted speed limits are set based on a number of factors, including the results of a speed study. Many factors are considered when making a recommendation for an appropriate posted speed. The

speed data and crash history play an integral part in determining a recommended speed. The posted speed is heavily influenced by the existing conditions, including roadway geometry, the roadside culture and development, and Oregon statutes.

As with most state transportation departments, ODOT's traditional approach for setting speed has depended on the 85th percentile speed as the key factor in determining the recommended speed. The 85th percentile speed is still used for rural higher speed locations. However, more recent research has developed better strategies for determining posted speeds for urban locations.

This is a general discussion about setting posted speeds. *For more detailed and current information on how posted speeds are set for urban locations, consult the ODOT Speed Zone Manual.*

207.12 85th Percentile Speed

The 85th percentile speed is that speed at or below which 85 percent of the drivers operate their vehicles. The posted speed and the 85th percentile speed may not always be the same. In some instances, where statutory speeds have been applied or in urban areas, the posted speed may be set below the 85th percentile speed. All non-statutory posted speeds are determined by a speed study. The designer should check with the Technical Services Traffic Section for speed study information when using 85th percentile and posted speeds in design. Measuring operating speeds in the field can provide additional information for consideration in selecting the appropriate design and target speeds and is strongly recommended.

Section 208 Urban Arterial Design

This section provides guidance for general design and standard selection for urban arterials. Specific geometric design criteria are located in the following sections: Section 216 and Section 207.10 for Design Speed; Section 217 for Sight Distance; Section 218 for Horizontal Alignment; Section 219 for Vertical Alignment; 219.5 for Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment; and Section 221 for Grades.

State highways through urban areas are part of the state highway network and provide connectivity to rural areas and adjacent communities and urban areas. In addition, they serve as arterials for the particular community where they reside and often are the major or principal arterial in that community. This section provides information on ODOT 3R Urban Arterial design guidance followed by the ODOT 4R Urban design guidance, and the ODOT Urban 1R and ODOT Urban Single Function design guidance. Section 203 through Section 207 cover context, context determination, general design by context, and design speed for urban locations. Horizontal alignment and superelevation, vertical curvature, grades, stopping sight distance, and cross sectional design criteria are addressed in later sections.

The primary function of an urban arterial is to serve major through traffic movements with a high level of mobility and provide limited land access. Arterials carry the highest traffic volumes and serve as the conduit for longer internal and external trips as well as for intra-area travel between city centers. However, arterials often traverse major city centers such as traditional downtowns, central business districts or regional commercial centers. In addition, due to existing land use and development patterns, arterials often are adjacent to areas of intense auto oriented development. These different land use designations can significantly affect the design of a particular arterial highway. Issues such as pedestrian movement, transit accommodation, bicycle facilities, freight routes, through traffic capacity, as well as the type of land use designation must all be considered when determining appropriate context and design for urban arterials. In order to address conflicts that arise when designing arterial highways in these locations, ODOT developed the six urban contexts described in Section 205 and Section 206, creating areas along state highways where context sensitive designs and practical solutions are needed. These six urban contexts and associated design guidance consider the 1999 Oregon Highway Plan highway segment designations and non-designated segments. ***Prior criteria developed for the Special Transportation Area (STA), Urban Business Area (UBA), and Commercial Center (CC) OHP designations are policy driven. As such, these areas that exist on the state highway system by designation of the Oregon Transportation Commission (OTC) must be incorporated with current ODOT urban design contexts and design criteria when they coincide with the six HDM urban contexts along a highway corridor.*** Current HDM urban design criteria are similar and have been derived from earlier urban criteria for STAs, UBAs and CCs. Incorporating the policy driven OHP segment designated sections into the HDM contexts for a project final design is not difficult. The segment designations need to be identified and documented with the project Urban Design Concurrence (UDC) documentation to ensure appropriate design parameters coincide with OHP policy. ***Since there is much overlap between the OHP segment designation policy requirements and the six urban contexts listed in the HDM, this may seem redundant. However, designs must follow design criteria and policy. Identifying design compliance with policy is an important part of project documentation.***

Since arterials can traverse many different types of areas within urban growth boundaries, speed is often a major concern. Transition, design and operating speed of an arterial as it enters an urban area on the fringe, moving to areas of normal urban density and then into compact town centers, is often a challenge for a designer. However, these transition areas are often the most critical design consideration for an urban arterial as it travels through an urban area. *The designer is encouraged to utilize visual cues such as landscaping, roadside amenities, visual aesthetics, and design elements to help achieve the appropriate speed transitions for these areas and roadway sections.*

Another important aspect to Urban Arterial design is determining the appropriate design speed and target speed. ***The selection of design speed and target speed is dependent on many factors that need to be carefully considered and evaluated. Section 207 and Section 216 provides***

DRAFT

information on selecting design speeds that should be reviewed prior to selection of a design speed for a particular project.

208.1 Rural to Urban Transitions

One of the most important elements of arterial urban highway design is the transition area. Transition areas occur when a rural highway enters an urban area, when urban expressways enter slower speed urban centers or between other different urban environments such as between a rural area and a suburban fringe. The types and treatments of transitions will vary depending upon the type of transition.

A very common type of transition is the transition from a rural high-speed highway to an urban highway. In many small communities or rural communities, the length of transition is very short. The main emphasis for a designer in these areas is to try to change the look and feel of the highway segment. This often involves establishing urban design features such as sidewalks, buffer strips, marked crosswalks, landscaping, bike lanes, raised medians, and illumination. Generally, these types of features will portray to the motorist that they are entering a changing environment that is urbanized and requires slower speeds and greater attention to pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit vehicles. Designing for the context of the roadway can also include designing for the intended operating speed of a roadway segment. Speed is part of the context of a roadway. In some of these transition areas, reducing the cross section width may be an appropriate option, but is only one of many ways to help transition speeds. Changing the roadway culture, including elements outside of the roadway section, can also help to create transition areas. Any modifications of the actual cross section elements should be consistent with the design criteria for a particular urban environment and context. Many of these standards are also applicable to transitioning from a high-to-moderate speed urban expressway to other urban environments. The key message to send to motorists is that the culture and function of the highway has changed.

Transitions to downtown/central business district type of environment are very important. These areas are often very low speed and controlling operating speeds is important to the success of these areas. A recommended approach to dealing with transitions into downtown environments is the use of a “Gateway” approach. A “Gateway” is essentially a special entry that sends a message to motorists that this is a downtown environment. Features such as curb extensions, on-street parking, wider sidewalks, pedestrian scale lighting, landscaping and/or other roadside features, are good visual cues and can be incorporated into a Gateway concept. Other tools include narrow cross sections utilizing reduced shoulder, median, shy distance, and/or lane widths. Gateways should include a vertical element that helps effect a visual narrowing. There are many different options to help achieve this result.

In summary, the goal of transition areas is to affect motorists’ perceptions of the area, establish speed expectations, establish the function of the highway, and make motorists aware that

DRAFT

something has changed. Designing effective transition areas is not always easy. Resources are available to assist with design concepts and strategies for transition areas. These include staff resources from Technical Services including Roadway, Bicycle and Pedestrian Program, Traffic Management units, and Roadside Development Program, as well as written guidance listed in Section 225 and others.

Section 209 ODOT 3R Urban Design Standards

This section discusses the appropriate design standards for urban non-freeway arterial highway projects and is applicable to arterials, collectors, and local streets. Specific geometric design criteria are located in the following sections: Section 216 and Section 207 (207.10) for Design Speed; Section 217 for Sight Distance; Section 218 for Horizontal Alignment; Section 219 for Vertical Alignment; 219.5 for Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment, and Section 221 for Grades.

In general, the intent of 3R projects is pavement preservation with additional focus on safety items. Some of those safety items include mandatory 3R design features such as ADA curb ramps and deficient guardrail, consideration of low-cost safety mitigation measures, and in the case of urban arterials, the corrective measures located in the 3R urban preservation strategy. The Urban Preservation Strategy adds design guidance, which provides statewide consistency in the urban preservation program.

A design feature not meeting the standards as specifically noted in the following areas: roadway width; bridge width; horizontal curvature; vertical curvature and stopping sight distance; pavement cross slope; superelevation; vertical clearance; ADA; or pavement design life must be upgraded, or a design exception must be documented and approved. For more information on these criteria and other safety-conscious design considerations, the designer should become acquainted with "TRB Special Report #214", and NCHRP Report 876 "Guidelines for Integrating Safety and Cost-Effectiveness into Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation (3R) Projects".

Once the decision is made to upgrade a roadway feature, the designer uses the ODOT Highway Design Manual, the Green Book, the AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide" or "TRB Special Report #214", or NCHRP Report 876 "Guidelines for Integrating Safety and Cost-Effectiveness into Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation (3R) Projects", whichever gives guidance in the particular area of need. When evaluating intersections, consider turning radius to facilitate truck movements as well as intersection sight distance.

DRAFT

Section 210 ODOT 4R Urban Design Criteria

As discussed previously in this Part, ODOT has developed six urban contexts for urban arterials, which include: traditional downtown/commercial business district; urban mix; commercial corridor; residential corridor; suburban fringe; and rural community. In addition to the design guidance in Part 200, cross section design criteria have been developed and are located in Part 300 (Cross Section Elements). Each of the different urban contexts come with a recommended range of design criteria. Selecting values within the ranges of recommended guidance does not require a design exception. Appropriate values are documented in the Urban Design Concurrence Document (UDC). Going below the minimum value in the recommended guidance does require a design exception and discussion with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section as early as possible in the project development process is encouraged.

Guidance for Specific geometric design criteria are located in the following sections: Section 216 and Section 207 (207.10) for Design Speed; Section 217 for Sight Distance; Section 218 for Horizontal Alignment; Section 219 for Vertical Alignment; 219.5 for Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment; and Section 221 for Grades.

Section 211 ODOT 1R and Single Function Urban Design Standards

1R and Single Function applicable design criteria and requirements for urban roadways is located in Part 300 (Cross Section Elements) as the 1R projects are typically paving only projects. Single Function projects are to use the 4R standard.

Section 212 Role of Planning Documents and Design Criteria

Coordinating planning activities with project design is critical to ensure decisions and commitments made during the planning process are incorporated into final project designs. This is particularly important in urban locations where community desires of local jurisdictions have been included in long range planning documentation. Planning documents such as corridor plans, refinement plans, regional or local transportation system plans, and facility plans including Interchange Area Management Plans (IAMPs) provide valuable guidance to designers. These documents have undergone extensive public involvement to select the type and level of infrastructure improvements that address the identified problems. The designer needs to be aware of and understand the context of the recommendations contained in these

DRAFT

planning documents when preparing project designs. Contact the Region Planning Manager and staff to help identify and interpret the information in these plans. ***The Chief Engineer must provide concurrence on Interchange Area Management Plans (IAMP) and other types of facility plans.***

The types of plans discussed above are all plans adopted by local jurisdictions and/or the Oregon Transportation Commission. Therefore, transportation improvement projects must be consistent with these adopted plans. **Design elements and features on State Highways must meet ODOT Design Standards. The Department cannot construct, fund or permit design elements or features that do not meet standard criteria unless a Design Exception has been approved by the State Roadway Engineer.** Because pertinent information may not be available in these early planning processes, exceptions to design standards are typically processed during project development and are approved in writing at that time. Similarly, any traffic control changes such as traffic signals, signing, or striping must receive the appropriate approvals. Consult with the ODOT Traffic Section.

However, since Transportation Plans commonly have design elements and features of State Highways discussed in them, there are times when deviations to design standards need to be addressed during planning to ensure they are incorporated in the final project development when the planning documents are actually implemented. These design elements and features may include roadway cross-sections, centerline alignments, interchange layout configurations, bike facilities, sidewalks, shoulders, and shared use paths.

Issues corresponding to interpretation can occur when the design elements and features shown in Transportation Plans differ from those in the Highway Design Manual. Since ODOT prepared, funded or reviewed the plan, local government or the public often think that the design elements and features shown have been approved by ODOT and that ODOT will construct or allow the construction of these elements and features according to the plan. Unless a Design Exception has been previously sought, future projects linked to an adopted plan may be required to follow ODOT standards regardless of the design elements or features that may have been identified in the plan.

To avoid this problem, planning studies that lead to potential adoption of plans affecting the state highway system that include, but are not limited to, Regional Transportation Plans, Regional Mobility Plans, Interchange Area Management Plans (IAMP), Transportation System Plans, or other local Mobility Plans should follow ODOT Design Standards or seek a Design Exception; Part 1000 of the Highway Design Manual describes the Design Exception process. With the introduction of performance-based, practical design and greater flexibility for urban locations, it is important to address how context related design criteria will be developed to ensure future projects meet desired goals and outcomes of the planning process.

DRAFT

Below are some guidelines for inclusion of design elements and features in planning documents that include State Highways:

1. Don't show specific dimensions for any design elements.
2. If you do show dimensions, they should be to ODOT standards.
3. For planning studies that have non-standard design elements and features that may be constructed within five years, obtain a Design Exception before incorporation of dimensions into the final plan.
4. For planning studies that have non-standard design elements and features that may be constructed within five to ten years, submit a Draft Design Exception request and obtain a written indication or concurrence that a Design Exception is warranted and would probably be approved from the State Roadway Engineer before incorporation of dimensions into the final plan.
5. Planning documents cannot select an alternative with non-standard elements or features as the preferred alternative unless a Design Exception has been obtained or the State Roadway Engineer has indicated that one would probably be approved.
6. In consideration of overall safety along a highway segment, proposed cross-sections with multiple non-standard design elements should be avoided. When avoidance is not possible, the cumulative effect on operations and safety of introducing multiple non-standard elements in the same cross-section must be considered and evaluated carefully.

Planning documents are often long range. Their use is for planning land use and infrastructure options over 15 and 20-year periods of time or more. These long-term plans designate future areas of development. Designers must ensure the safety of all users when designing projects that travel through these future areas of development. Consideration should be given to long range planning efforts and how those efforts impact the proposed roadway projects. The designer should work with the Project Team, Region Planning Manager, and/or Area Manager to gain a better understanding of the planning efforts and processes completed or underway for a particular area.

Section 213 Urban and Rural Freeway Design

This section provides guidance for standards on urban and rural freeways for 3R, 4R, 1R, and Single Function design projects. Specific geometric design criteria are located in the following sections: Section 216, Design Speed; Section 217 for Sight Distance; Section 218 for Horizontal Alignment; Section 219 for Vertical Alignment; 219.5 for Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment; and Section 221 for Grades. Cross sectional design guidance is addressed in Part 300.

The designer must be aware of which standards apply and choose the appropriate standard when dealing with freeways. The practical design strategy and design flexibility play a role in

providing guidance for the designer in project design and development. Whether a freeway project is single function, 1R, 3R, or 4R, sound engineering judgment and decision making is required. ***The designer, working with the project team, should keep project scope, purpose and need, and the Practical Design values of Safety, Corridor Context, Optimize the System, Public Support, and Efficient Cost (S.C.O.P.E.) in mind when making project design decisions.***

Freeways are the highest form of arterials and have full access control. The full control of access is needed for prioritizing the need for through traffic over direct access. A freeway's primary function is to provide mobility, high operating speed, and level of service, while land access is limited. Access connections, where deemed necessary, are provided through ramps at grade separated interchanges. The major advantages of access-controlled freeways are high capacity, high operating speeds, operational efficiency, lower crash potential, and safety to all highway users.

The major differences between freeways and other arterials include the following elements: grade separations at crossroads and streets; the grade separated cross road connections between the freeway and crossroad are accomplished through exit and entrance ramps; and full control of access. ***Oregon Highway Plan designated expressways can be designed with both freeway and non-freeway design elements. However, the two design types should not be intermixed in close proximity to each other. Consistency of design elements should be carried for reasonable distances for continuity and driver expectancy and understanding.*** The use of jug handle style interchanges and use of right turn channelization is not considered freeway design but can be used in expressway design. The long-term corridor and planning goals should be considered when deciding whether or not to design an expressway to freeway standards. (See Section 214 for additional information on expressways and the decision to design expressways as freeways).

The Freeway 3R Design Standards apply to both urban and rural freeway conditions for preservation or Interstate Maintenance projects. All new freeways or modernization of existing freeways are to use the 4R/New standards.

213.1 ODOT 3R Freeway Design Standards

When a project on the freeway system has been classified as 3R, the standards and guidance outlined in the following sections apply. The development of a freeway 3R project should also be responsive to the considerations concerning purpose, applicability, scope, determination, and design process. The 3R standards for those specific listed elements are based on the 2016 AASHTO publication, "A Policy on Design Standards-Interstate System", which provides guidelines for work on the Interstate system. The standards provided are considered as allowable minimums. **For those design elements not specifically addressed, the guidelines in the AASHTO Green Book are to be followed. 3R projects that include specific horizontal and vertical curve corrections are to use ODOT 4R standards for those curve correction design**

elements. In addition to these standards, Interstate Maintenance Design Features in Part 300 are to be incorporated into all interstate freeway 3R projects. The "Have To" list is the minimum treatment for the listed project elements. ***The "Like To" list includes treatments for elements which should be considered when economically feasible, i.e., minimal extra cost, or funds available from sources other than the Preservation Program.***

Technical Resources have been identified for a number of the project elements. These resources should be utilized by the Project Team to aid in determining if a "Like To" measure is warranted, cost-effective and fundable or if a design exception should be sought to do less than the "Have To" requirements. Design exceptions should be identified as soon as possible (typically during project scoping), and the appropriate design exception request officially submitted for approval as soon as all pertinent information can be determined and analyzed. Design exceptions are covered in Part 1000.

213.2 ODOT 4R Freeway Design Standards

Urban freeways generally have more travel lanes and carry more traffic than rural freeways. Urban freeways can be either depressed, elevated, at ground level, or a combination of the above mentioned. Urban freeways usually have a narrower median than rural freeways due to the high cost of obtaining right-of-way. In addition, urban freeways tend to have more connections than rural freeways but complying with interchange spacing requirements is critical to maintaining a high level of long-term freeway operations.

Rural freeways are generally similar in concept to urban freeways, except that the horizontal and vertical alignments are more generous in design. This level of design is normally associated with higher design speeds and greater potential for available right of way. Due to the nature of the facility, right of way is typically more available and less expensive in a rural setting. This allows for a wider median which improves the safety of the facility. In addition to the increase in safety of a rural freeway, the higher design speeds in a rural setting allow for greater capacity, a higher level of mobility, and potentially a reduced need for multiple lanes. Rural freeways are normally more comfortable from a driver perspective, and generally have lower maintenance costs.

213.3 ODOT 1R and 4R Single Function Freeway Design Standards

1R and 4R Single Function applicable design criteria and requirement for freeways is located in Part 300 (Cross Section Elements). 1R projects are typically paving only projects. Single Function projects are 4R projects with a very limited scope of work.

DRAFT

Section 214 Urban and Rural Expressway Design

Section 214 provides 3R, 4R, 1R and single function design guidance for urban and rural expressways. Specific geometric design criteria are located in the following sections: Section 216 and Section 207 (207.10) for Design Speed; Section 217 for Sight Distance; Section 218 for Horizontal Alignment; Section 219 for Vertical Alignment; 219.5 for Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment; and Section 221 for Grades.

Urban and rural highways can take several forms: freeways, expressways, arterials, collectors, and sometimes, local roads. Similar to urban and rural freeways, urban and rural expressways are a designation identified in the Oregon Highway Plan and mainly focus on vehicle mobility, although expressways may not have similar levels of access control as freeways. The following is from the Oregon Highway Plan:

> "Expressways are complete routes or segments of existing two-lane and multi-lane highways and planned multi-lane highways that provide for safe and efficient high speed and high-volume traffic movements. Their primary function is to provide for interurban travel and connections to ports and major recreation areas with minimal interruptions. A secondary function is to provide for long distance intra-urban travel in metropolitan areas. In urban areas, speeds are moderate to high. In rural areas, speeds are high."

Because expressways may consist of grade separated or at-grade intersections, the level of modal accommodation will vary. Speeds are often relatively high ranging from 45 to 70 mph depending on urban or rural environments.

Designing urban and rural expressway highway projects presents designers with a variety of challenges. Designers must balance the needs of autos, trucks, transit, bicyclists, and pedestrians, while considering highway function, speed, safety, alignment, channelization, right of way, environmental impacts, land use impacts, and roadside culture. Part 200 addresses the design standards for design speed, horizontal alignment and superelevation, vertical curvature, grades, and stopping sight distance while cross sectional design criteria are addressed in Part 300. This section discusses a variety of issues, concerns, and areas for consideration when designing urban and rural expressways.

One critical distinction when designing a project on an urban expressway is if the section has grade-separated intersections or if intersections are at-grade.

- ***If the urban expressway section has at-grade intersections, then the six urban contexts and their respective design criteria apply to determine appropriate design decisions and the Urban Design Concurrence document is used. (0 – Section 207 and Part 300)***
- ***If the urban expressway section has grade-separated intersections (interchanges), then design decisions are based on freeway and higher operating speed design criteria.***

DRAFT

- *In locations where the urban expressway is a mixture of both grade-separated interchanges and at-grade intersections, the project team and the Region Roadway Manager will need to determine if the section fits with any of the six urban contexts or if higher speed freeway design should be used. Generally, if the majority of the access points are grade-separate and the roadway is operating like a freeway even though it may not be a multi-lane roadway, then freeway design criteria should be used. If the roadway is operating more as an urban arterial street with mostly at-grade intersections, then it could potentially fit into one of the six urban contexts.*

214.1 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Expressway Design Standards

The 3R expressway design guidance for urban and rural expressways are generally the same as the 3R urban and rural arterial design guidance. Part 300 provides additional information for urban expressway 3R design. In general, the intent of 3R projects is pavement preservation with additional focus on safety items. Some of those safety items include mandatory 3R design features such as ADA curb ramps and deficient guardrail, consideration of low-cost safety mitigation measures, and in the case of urban expressways, the corrective measures located in the 3R urban preservation strategy.

214.2 ODOT 4R Urban Expressway Design Standards

Urban expressways are generally high-speed, limited access facilities whose function is to move both inter-urban and intra-urban traffic. Mobility is a high priority. Expressways may often serve as major freight corridors as well as being designated as an OHP Freight Route. They are often part of the National Highway System (NHS). Private property access is discouraged in favor of through mobility importance. Access is normally restricted to at-grade signalized and unsignalized public road intersections or grade-separated interchanges. At-grade signalized intersections may provide full access. However, at-grade, unsignalized intersections should be considered carefully and for safety reasons, it is desirable to limit them to a right-in, right-out condition. In areas where there is no other reasonable access, private approach roads may be allowed. Private approach road connections to expressways need to be considered and evaluated carefully in order to minimize safety risks and to address driver expectancy related to the context and roadside culture and should also be limited to a right-in, right-out condition. ***Expressways may have a mixture of at-grade intersections and interchanges. However, the mixing of at-grade intersections with grade separated interchanges in proximity to each other should be kept to a minimum.*** Drivers may become confused in their perception of expectations at the different connection styles causing undesirable actions on their part as they interact with

other vehicles entering or leaving the roadway. Some expressways may become freeways in the future and therefore should be designed, operated, and managed at the highest level to ensure long-term operations. The transitioning of urban roadways to expressways should take into account the long-term plan for the roadway, which can impact the design of the facility.

214.3 ODOT 4R Rural Expressway Design Standards

Expressways are designated by the OTC. They are allowed on statewide, regional and district classified highways. Expressways are generally high speed, limited access facilities whose main function is to provide for safe and efficient high speed and high-volume traffic movements. Since expressways are specifically designated from the overall planning of the state highway system, design of expressways must maintain the functionality of the roadway. In higher speed rural settings, vehicle mobility is a high function. In lower speed urban settings where the expressway may fit into one of the ODOT six urban contexts, vehicle mobility is still of high importance; However, overall vehicle mobility must also be balanced against other urban transit, bicycling, and pedestrian needs. In balancing these needs, trade-offs are necessary to provide appropriate facilities and safe access for all users and in some cases, not all modes will be able to be accommodated. When the expressway functionality of the highway is determined the greater need, transit riders, bicyclists, and pedestrians may need to be served in another manner or on adjacent facilities. The project development team must determine appropriate design that accomplishes project goals and outcomes, while producing a final design that minimizes conflicts between transportation modes and provides access to the highway system for all users. Part 300, Section 310.13 provides guidance for pedestrian design on expressways. Part 800 and Part 900 also provide design considerations for pedestrians and for bicyclists on expressways, as well as for other roadway types.

Expressway designation is not limited to multi-lane roadways. Rural two-lane highways can also be designated as expressways. The Dalles-California Highway (US 97) in Central Oregon is an example of a designated expressway that includes both multi-lane sections and two-lane sections. The primary function of rural expressways is to provide connections to larger urban areas, ports, and major recreational areas with minimal interruptions. Rural expressways may also serve as major freight corridors or may be located on Freight Routes. Private access is discouraged, and public intersections are highly controlled. *Rural expressways may utilize at-grade intersections or grade separated interchanges. However, the mixing of at-grade intersections with grade separated interchanges in proximity to each other should be kept to a minimum.* Drivers may become confused in their perception of expectations at the different connection styles causing undesirable actions on their part as they interact with other vehicles entering or leaving the roadway. Some expressways may become freeways in the future and therefore should be designed, operated, and managed at the highest level to ensure long-term operations. The transitioning of rural roadways to expressways should take into account the long-term plan for the roadway, which can impact the design of the facility.

High level roadways, although classified as expressways, may operate more as a freeway. These expressways have grade separations in place of at-grade intersections and are fully access controlled. When high level expressways meet the operational definition of freeways, the expressway should be designed with freeway standards. This means many of the design elements such as left turn lanes, striped medians, and right turn lanes would not apply.

214.4 ODOT 1R and Single Function Urban and Rural Expressway Design Standards

1R and Single Function applicable design criteria and requirements for expressways are located in Part 300 (Cross Section Elements) as the 1R projects are typically paving only projects. Single Function projects are to use the 4R standard.

Section 215 Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design

This section provides guidance for general design of Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Routes on 3R, 4R, 1R, and Single Function design projects. Specific geometric design criteria are located in the following sections: Section 216 for Design Speed; Section 217 for Sight Distance; Section 218 for Horizontal Alignment; Section 219 for Vertical Alignment; 219.5 for Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment; and Section 221 for Grades. Cross sectional design criteria are addressed in Part 300.

Rural highways make up a large percentage of the state highway mileage. Rural highways cover the widest range of geographical and topographical conditions. Rural highways connect all parts of the state to each other. Rural highway designs should provide the safest cost-effective solutions. This Part also discusses how to design highways that are Scenic Byways and highways that travel through the many rural communities located throughout the state.

The arterial road systems provide a high speed and high-volume travel network between major points in urban and rural areas. Rural arterials consist of a wide range of roads, from multi-lane rural expressways to low volume, two lane roads. Most rural state highways in Oregon are functionally classified as arterials as they serve the greatest traffic volumes and provide critical connections to the larger urban areas, ports, multi-modal facilities, and recreational areas. However, some state highways serve very low volumes of traffic and are classified as collectors or local roads. The design standards and guidelines contained in this chapter are only to be used for non-freeway rural highway design. Rural freeway design is covered in Part 600.

215.1 ODOT 3R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design Standards

This section discusses the appropriate design standards for rural non-freeway highway projects and is applicable to arterials, collectors, and local streets. In general, the intent of 3R projects is pavement preservation with additional focus on safety items. Some of those safety items include mandatory 3R design features such as ADA curb ramps and deficient guardrail. Low-cost safety mitigation measures should also be considered with these projects.

Non-freeway 3R projects should be developed in line with the S.C.O.P.E. values of Practical Design presented in Part 100. **A feature not meeting the standards as specifically noted for the following items: roadway width, bridge width, horizontal curvature, vertical curvature and stopping sight distance, pavement cross slope, superelevation, vertical clearance, ADA, or pavement design life must be upgraded, or a design exception must be documented and approved.** For more information on these criteria and other safety-conscious design considerations, the designer should become acquainted with "TRB Special Report #214-Designing Safer Roads-Practices for Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation".

Once the decision is made to upgrade a roadway feature, the designer should use the ODOT Highway Design Manual, the AASHTO Green Book, TRB Special Report #214, or NCHRP Report 876 "Guidelines for Integrating Safety and Cost-Effectiveness into Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation (3R) Projects", whichever gives guidance in the particular area of need. When evaluating intersections within a 3R project, turning radius to facilitate truck movements should also be considered as well as intersection sight distance.

215.2 ODOT 4R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design Standards

215.2.1 ODOT 4R Rural Arterial Design Standards

Most rural state highways are classified as arterial roadways. Appendix A contains a listing of the functional classification of all state highways. Corridor Plans and county Transportation System Plans (TSPs) also need to be reviewed to ensure that the highway classification is correct. ***Where discrepancies exist between the tables in Appendix A and the classifications assigned by a Corridor Plan or TSP, the higher classification is used. The context must also be considered. Some rural highways with less than 5000 ADT are classified as rural arterials, yet go through small cities with a posted speed of 25 to 30 mph. In these locations, urban standards are appropriate and careful consideration must be given to the transition from a high-speed to***

low-speed environment. Section 216 through Section 221 provides ODOT 4R/New Rural design standards for the design of reconstruction and new construction projects on rural highways.

215.2.2 ODOT 4R Rural Collector Design Standards

Collectors serve two very important functions. First, collectors provide mobility to and from the arterial streets. Second, collectors provide land access to abutting properties. Due to their dual purpose, collectors have mobility characteristics that are just below those of an arterial and just above those of a local street.

The design elements of collector roads are similar to the design elements of arterials, although typically the range of values is slightly less demanding. Design speeds are normally lower than those for arterials, steeper grades are allowed, and lane and shoulder widths are generally narrower.

The different design standards for rural collectors can be found in Section 216 through Section 221. Additional information on collectors can found in Chapter 6 of the AASHTO Green Book.

215.2.3 ODOT 4R/New Local Rural Route Design Standards

A rural local route's primary function is to provide access to rural areas. Local routes account for a very large proportion of the roadway mileage in the State. Local routes normally carry very low volumes; therefore, design standards for local routes are generally lower than those standards for collectors and arterials. Design speeds are lower, steeper grades are allowed, and travel lanes and shoulder widths are generally narrower.

Additional information on rural local routes can be found in Chapter 5 of the AASHTO Green Book.

215.3 ODOT 1R and Single Function Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design Standards

1R and Single Function applicable design criteria and requirements for rural arterials, collectors, and local routes are located in Part 300 (Cross Section Elements) as the 1R projects are typically paving only projects. Single Function projects are to use the 4R standard.

DRAFT

Section 216 Design Speed

216.1 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Design Speed-All Highways

The design speed for 3R projects will generally be the posted speed, but consideration of context, environment and existing features may result in the selection of a speed greater than the posted speed as the design speed. However, the design speed selected shall not be less than the posted speed. The intent of a 3R project is to preserve the existing pavement by resurfacing or rehabilitating the roadway, extend the service life of the facility, and provide effective safety countermeasures or include safety enhancements. General federal guidance notes that the geometric design should be consistent with speeds implied by the posted or regulatory speed. With the design speed being equal to the posted speed, drivers will be able to operate at the posted speed without exceeding the safe design speed of the facility. There may also be rare occasions where the Region's goals for a section of roadway would call for selecting a design speed that is higher than the posted speed.

216.2 ODOT 4R Urban and Rural Freeway Design Speed

In general, the design speed of freeways should be similar to the desired running speed during off peak hours, keeping in mind a reasonable and prudent speed. In some urban areas, with populations under 50,000, the posted freeway speed is 65 mph. In more densely populated urban areas (over 50,000), the posted speed is 55 or 60 mph, or in constrained areas, 50 mph. Because of the different posted speeds, the design speed chosen may vary. In many urban areas the amount of available right of way can be restricted and achieving high design speeds can be very costly. ***In balancing the need for safety and providing a high-speed facility with consideration for right of way costs, the design speed for urban freeways shall be a minimum of 50 mph. A 50 mph design speed may only be used in very constrained urban corridors or in mountainous terrain, and the design speed must be consistent with the corridor and meet driver expectancy. On most urban freeway corridors, a design speed of 60 mph can be provided with little additional cost. In situations where the corridor is relatively straight and the character of the roadway and location of interchanges permit a higher design speed, 70 mph should be used.***

For rural freeways the design speed is 70 mph, except that in mountainous terrain, a design speed of 50 to 60 mph may be used. The design speed must be consistent with the corridor and meet driver expectancy.

Rural freeways outside of mountainous terrain generally have higher design speeds. Normally right of way is more available in rural locations allowing for more generous horizontal and

DRAFT

vertical alignments. These higher design speeds allow for increased volumes and capacity while providing a safe facility and a more comfortable driving environment. Increased capacity leads to improvements to the level of mobility standards and a facility that will operate longer than a lower design speed urban freeway. ***For all freeway projects, the design speed is to be selected by the Region Roadway Manager and the Region Traffic Manager in cooperation with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.***

Other sections discuss design speed selection for the design of 3R, 1R, and Single Function projects. Table 200-9 provides suggested design speed values for various roadways.

216.3 ODOT 4R Urban Expressway Design Speed

The design speed of an expressway is a critical element for determining the appropriate standard to be applied to a given segment. ***Expressways are usually high-speed roadways and should be designed appropriately. Most urban expressways should be designed based upon a 55 mph design speed or higher. In more restrictive urban environments, a 50 mph design speed may be more appropriate. A 45 mph design speed may be considered only in highly constrained areas and retrofit situations.*** Several factors including planned operating speeds, amount of access control, use of at-grade intersections, use of grade separations and topography play major roles in determining the appropriate design speed. Some Urban Expressways may have the look and feel of a Freeway. In these instances, it is important to recognize the context and resultant driver expectation. Table 200-9 provides suggested design speed values for various roadways.

216.4 ODOT 4R Rural Expressway Design Speed

Rural expressways carry high speed and high-volume traffic and should be designed accordingly with the function of the facility. ***Rural expressway design speeds should be designed for a minimum 50 mph design speed in mountainous areas, 60 mph in rolling terrain, and 60 or 70 mph in flat terrain. Expressways may in time evolve into freeways and the chosen design speed should allow for that facility type transition.*** Table 200-9 provides suggested design speed values for various roadways.

216.5 ODOT 4R Rural Arterial Design Speed

Rural arterials have a wide range of design speed depending on the terrain, traffic volume, location of facility, and driver expectancy. ***Design speeds range from 45 mph in mountainous terrain and low volume to 60 or 70 mph on level terrain. A 60 mph design speed works well for most of Oregon's rural two-lane highways. In general design speeds on level terrain range from***

60-70 mph; rolling terrain design speeds in rural areas range from 50-60 mph; and mountainous terrain design speeds range from 45-50 mph. A 45 mph design speed in mountainous terrain or a 50 mph design speed in rolling terrain would only apply where the traffic volumes are low. The design speed in rural communities will vary according to community characteristics. Rural arterials also traverse rural towns and communities. In these areas, determine design speed based on adjacent land use, community needs and overall operations. Table 200-9 provides suggested design speed values for various roadways.

216.6 ODOT 4R Rural Collector and Local Route Design Speed

The ODOT 4R Rural Collector and Local Route Design Speed requirements can be found in Table 200-9.

216.7 ODOT 4R Urban Arterial Design Speed

With development of the Blueprint for Urban Design, ODOT developed a relationship between target speed, design speed, posted speed, and the operating speed of an urban roadway to provide direction for ODOT urban arterial design speeds. Design and speed management treatments were developed to help achieve the range of target speeds for the urban contexts. ***The overall long-term goal is for the design speed, posted speed, and target speed to be the same in most urban locations, but in no case, can the design speed of urban arterials be less than the posted speed.*** As an aspirational goal, target speed may be shown below posted when speed reduction is defined as a project goal. Additional information on target speed and recommendations for design speed and target speed are discussed in Section 207.10, Speed, Context and Design. Table 200-9 provides suggested design speed values for various roadways.

DRAFT

Table 200-9: Design Speed Selection

DESIGN SPEED				
FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION/CONTEXT	**Terrain or Characteristic**			
	Flat	**Rolling**	**Mountainous**	**Urban**
Interstate/Freeway	70	70	50-70	50-70
Urban Expressway	45-70			
Rural Expressway	50-70			
Rural Arterial	45-70			
Rural Collector	45-70			
Rural Local Route	45-50			
ODOT URBAN CONTEXTS	**DESIGN SPEED/TARGET SPEED**			
Traditional Downtown/CBD	20-25	Speeds shown for Urban Contexts are considered aspirational "target speeds" anticipated for each context. Actual selected project design speed shall not be less than posted speeds. In cases where desired target speed is less than posted speed, design speed is set at posted speed and design treatments are employed to reduce operating speed.		
Urban Mix	25-30			
Commercial Corridor	30-35			
Residential Corridor	30-35			
Suburban Fringe	35-40			
Rural Community	25-35			

Section 217 Sight Distance

217.1 General

Sight distance is the unobstructed distance of roadway ahead visible to the driver. There are multiple types of sight distance that include stopping sight distance, passing sight distance, decision sight distance and intersection sight distance. It is critical that sight distance issues be properly developed and applied to projects.

Check horizontal sight distance when designing slopes and retaining walls or where median barriers, raised medians, center piers, structure screening or screen plantings are used.

Combinations of slight horizontal curvature with crest vertical curves may seriously diminish sight distance where barrier, high curbs or plantings are used. **Set slopes, walls and other side obstructions back from the pavement edge to provide at least minimum stopping sight distance for a driver in the traffic lane nearest the obstruction.** Take into consideration the possibility of future conversion of shoulders or parking areas to driving lanes.

For intersections at grade, a vehicle entering the highway from a side street or access must be able to clearly see a vehicle throughout the sight triangle based on minimum stopping sight distance *and preferably intersection sight distance for the design speed*. It is desirable to provide sufficient sight distance so that the entering vehicle may cross or make a turn without significant slowing of the through traffic. On high-speed, high-volume roadway intersections, providing intersection sight distance, rather than the minimum stopping sight distance, will minimize operational and safety problems. **Horizontal sight distance, as measured 2 feet above the centerline of the inside lane at the point of obstruction, must at least equal the stopping sight distance.** When the normal cut bank reduces the horizontal sight distance below the stopping sight distance for the design speed, the cut bank is flattened or benched.

Vertical curves designed to the minimum stopping sight distance may need to be flattened to obtain intersection sight distance, passing sight distance, etc. All forms of sight distance must be checked and provided for as appropriate. **Required stopping sight distance is shown in Table 200-10.** Figure 200-16 indicates how sight distances are measured.

Urban locations with limited right-of-way, on-street parking, utility poles, street trees, signs, etc. provide significant challenges in meeting sight distance requirements and take specific analysis to determine appropriate design. Approved Design Exceptions are required where relocation of sight obstructions is infeasible or impossible.

217.2 Stopping Sight Distance

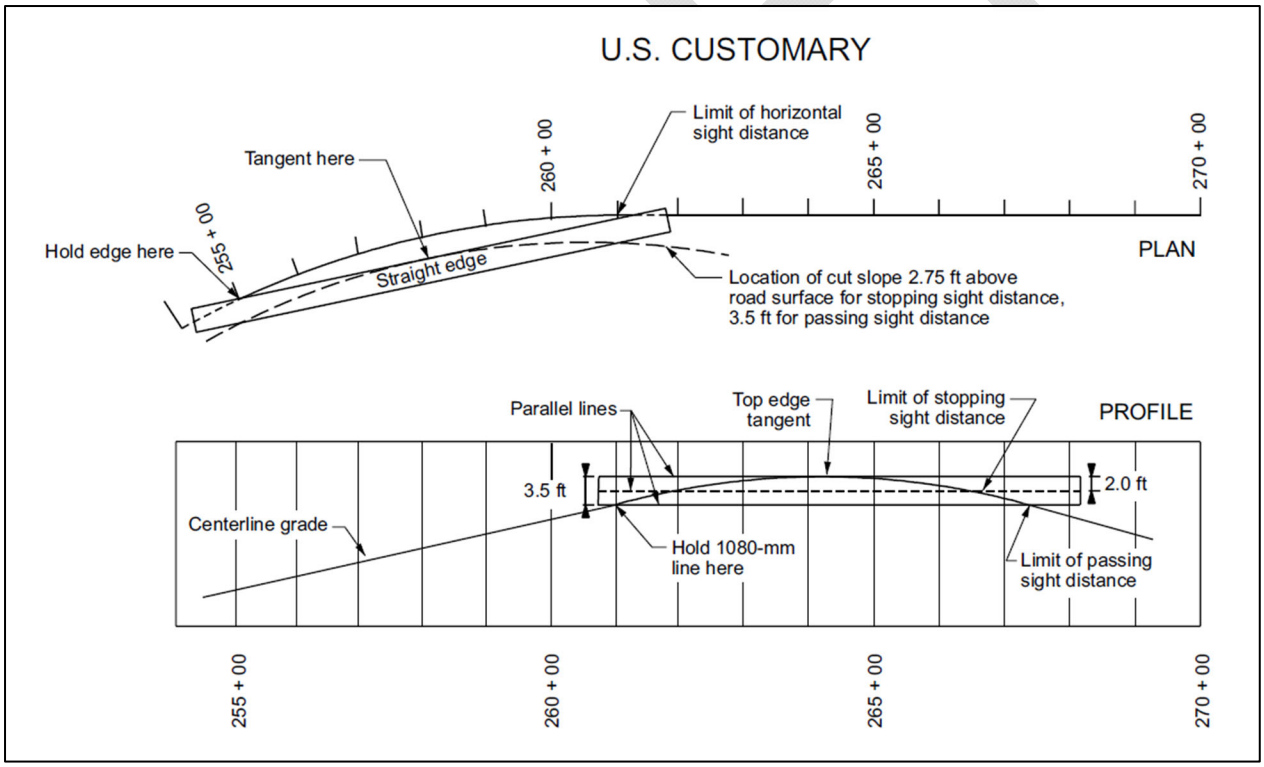
Stopping sight distance is the minimum distance required for a vehicle traveling at a particular design speed to come to a complete stop after an obstacle on the road becomes visible. Stopping sight distance is normally sufficient to allow an alert and prudent driver to come to a hurried stop under normal circumstances. **Stopping sight distance is measured from the driver's eye (assumed to be 3.5 feet above the roadway surface) to an object 2 feet above the roadway surface.** Stopping sight distance is the summation of two distances: the distance traveled by a vehicle from the time the driver sees an object that requires a stop to the instant the brakes are applied, and the distance required to stop the vehicle from the time the brakes are applied. These two distances are called brake reaction distance and braking distance. **Table 200-10 contains the stopping sight distance minimums.**

Stopping sight distance must, at a minimum, be obtained on all vertical and horizontal alignments, including adjustments for grade. Figure 200-49 and Figure 200-50 show the minimum stopping sight distance requirements for crest and sag vertical curves (See Part 600,

Table 600-5 for sight distance on ramps). Figure 200-17 indicates the minimum stopping sight distance for horizontal curves. Care must be taken to ensure that these minimum distances are obtained in project design. Roadside elements such as cut slopes, guardrail, tunnels, retaining walls, bridge rail, and barriers can obstruct the view of the driver and must be properly located to ensure that proper stopping sight distance is achieved. As noted previously, other types of sight distance may control in a design, as well. For example, it would be desirable to flatten a crest vertical curve in order to provide full intersection sight distance from a side street.

Highway grades can have a significant effect on stopping sight distances. Refer to Figure 200-16 for manually determining Stopping Sight Distance. Table 3-1 on page 3-4 of the 2018 AASHTO Green Book provides Stopping Sight Distance values for level roadways. For information about the effects of grades on Stopping Sight Distances, see Table 3-2 on page 3-6 of the 2018 AASHTO Green Book.

Figure 200-16: Determining Stopping Sight Distance



Source: AASHTO 2018

Table 200-10: Stopping Sight Distance

Design Speed	Stopping Sight Distance
25 mph	155 ft.
30 mph	200 ft.
35 mph	250 ft.
40 mph	305 ft.
45 mph	360 ft.
50 mph	425 ft.
55 mph	495 ft.
60 mph	570 ft.
65 mph	645 ft.
70 mph	730 ft.

Source: 2018 AASHTO

217.3 Decision Sight Distance

Many times, the elements of the roadway become complex and require additional distances for drivers to make the proper maneuver. Human factors can play a huge role in how a particular driver perceives and reacts to roadway design and conditions. As roadway systems experience an aging population of drivers, the range of human factors of that demographic becomes increasingly important. Older drivers often experience declining vision acuity, reduced body movement affecting head turning ability and other physical movement, increase in reaction time, and changes in cognitive function to name a few. For more information in human factors and considerations for roadway design, see NCHRP Report 600, Human Factors Guidelines for Road Systems, second edition. For assistance with interpreting the document, contact ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

In addition to older driver concerns, distracted driving is another human factor to consider. Stopping sight distance may not be adequate when drivers must process complex roadway information in an instant or when the roadway information is difficult to decipher or unexpected. When possible, endeavor to provide decision sight distance at locations where multiple information processing, decision making, and corrective actions are needed. Sample locations where decision sight distance is needed include unusual intersection or interchange

configuration and lane drops. If site characteristics allow, locate these highway features where decision sight distance can be provided. If this is not practicable, use suitable traffic control devices and positive guidance to give advanced warning of the conditions. Work with the Region Traffic Engineer on the need for decision sight distance at certain locations - also if there is need for additional signing, illumination, etc. Decision sight distance is calculated using the 3.5-foot eye height and the 2-foot object height that is also used for stopping sight distance. Pages 3-7 thru 3-9 of the 2018 AASHTO Green Book provide more information on decision sight distance.

217.4 Intersection Sight Distance

Obtaining intersection sight distance is important in the design of intersections. Intersection sight distance is considered adequate when drivers at or approaching an intersection have an unobstructed view of the entire intersection and of sufficient lengths of the intersecting highways to permit the drivers to anticipate and avoid potential collisions. Sight distance must be unobstructed along both approaches at an intersection and across the corners to allow the vehicles simultaneously approaching, to see each other and react in time to prevent a collision. Intersection sight distance is determined by using a 3.5 foot eye height and a 3.5 foot height of object.

It is desirable to provide intersection sight distance at every road approach, whether it is a signalized intersection or private driveway. On high-speed, high-volume roadway intersections, providing intersection sight distance will minimize operational and safety problems and is a prudent goal. However, in some locations, intersection sight distance may not be obtainable. In these instances, minimum stopping sight distance is required. However. many urban locations present specific challenges to meeting either intersection sight distance or minimum stopping sight distance. **In these locations, analysis is required to support the design and a Design Exception is required if minimum stopping sight distance cannot be achieved.**

When reviewing intersection sight distance, items such as building clearances, street appurtenances, potential sound walls, landscaping, on-street parking and other roadway elements must be taken into consideration in determining and obtaining the appropriate sight distance at intersections. Railroad and rail crossings are treated in the same manner as roadway intersections in determining intersection sight distance for the vehicle crossing the tracks. For placement of trees within the intersection sight distance triangle, see Part 300 and Part 400.

Pages 9-35 through 9-59 of the AASHTO Green Book indicate intersection sight distance for traffic turning left, crossing, or turning right onto a major highway. It is desirable to obtain intersection sight distance at all intersections.

DRAFT

217.5 Passing Sight Distance

Passing sight distance is the minimum distance needed to accommodate a passing maneuver on a two-lane highway. A 3.5 foot height of eye of the passing vehicle and 3.5 foot height of object are used for measuring passing sight distance. If adequate passing sight distance opportunities cannot be accommodated in the project design, passing lanes or climbing lanes are desirable. Work with the Region Traffic Engineer on locations for passing opportunities, or passing or climbing lanes. Pages 3-10 thru 3-17 of the AASHTO Green Book provide more information on passing sight distance.

Section 218 Horizontal Alignment

218.1 General

The horizontal alignment (centerline) of a highway affects vehicle operating speeds, sight distances, passing opportunities and highway capacities. Decisions on alignment also have a major impact on the cost of a project. *To provide a consistent alignment, avoid sudden changes from tangents and gentle curves to sharp curves.* Degree of curvature values used in new or revised horizontal alignment design are generally designed to the nearest whole degree. Where necessary, appropriate increments are allowable such as nearest 30 minutes, 15 minutes or 5 minutes.

Check the combination of horizontal alignment and sight obstructions. Analyze horizontal curves through cut areas, through tunnels, and at intersections with minimum building setbacks to verify that stopping and intersection sight distances are met. Figure 200-17 provides design speed, stopping sight distance, and line of sight requirements for horizontal curves.

218.2 Urban Non-Freeway Horizontal Alignment

Controlling vehicle speed in urban corridors is important when balancing project design for all road users. The six ODOT urban contexts each have a defined target speed range appropriate for project design goals. One aspect in project design that aids in controlling vehicle speed is the roadway alignment. In new construction and to some degree in roadway reconstruction, the designer has control of potential alignment options and decisions that affect potential speed profiles. However, since much of ODOT's urban design work is along established corridors, alignments have already been established with existing built environments surrounding them. When corridor alignments were originally established, the areas may have been more rural in context, but over time, the adjacent properties redeveloped and the roadside context changed.

DRAFT

In these locations, designers often have limited ability to make significant, if any, changes to the existing alignment and alternative methods of speed control are applied to achieve the desired target speed. Potential options for traffic calming could include reallocation of roadway space or roadside features, roundabouts, possible reduction of travel lane widths or changes to roadway lane configuration, as well as installing urban features to the roadside to indicate to drivers they are in an urban context. These features could include curb and sidewalk, if non-existent, street trees where appropriate, raised medians, on-street parking where applicable, improved pedestrian crossings, and bicycle facilities.

218.3 3R Freeway Horizontal Curvature and Superelevation

Horizontal alignment, superelevation, and superelevation transition shall meet the minimum standards outlined in the AASHTO Green Book. Existing non-spiraled alignments are allowed as long as AASHTO superelevation transition design control requirements (tangent-to-curve transition) are met. ODOT 4R standards are to be used for horizontal and vertical curve corrections.

Because of terrain and high design speeds, rural freeways should have very gentle horizontal and vertical alignments. In rural areas, the designer should be able to create a safe and efficient facility while taking into consideration the aesthetic potential of the freeway and surrounding terrain. Most freeways are constructed near ground level and the designer should take advantage of the existing topography to create not only a functional freeway, but also one that looks and drives well and fits into the existing topography.

218.4 3R Rural Arterial Horizontal Curvature and Superelevation

Alignment improvements to horizontal curvature and superelevation can be as cost effective as lane and shoulder width improvements. Evaluate reconstruction of the horizontal alignment, including spirals and superelevation development, when the comfort speed of the existing curvature is more than 15 mph below the project design speed, and the current year ADT is 2000 or greater. Refer to Section 218.7 for comfort speed. Also, include and consider curves in series along a roadway section in this analysis. Adjust these curves as necessary to provide consistency in alignment and drivability. When reconstruction of the horizontal alignment is not justified, apply appropriate mitigation measures such as those listed in Part 300, Section 312. Correction of the superelevation should be applied if the comfort speed of the curve is lower than the project design speed. If the comfort speed exceeds the project design speed, maintain the superelevation unless there is a justifiable reason to change it.

218.5 3R Urban Arterial Horizontal Curvature and Superelevation

Each horizontal curve should be evaluated for design sufficiency compared to the ODOT Urban Standards. Deficient curves should be evaluated against criteria below to determine what level of corrective action, if any, is appropriate.

Evaluate reconstruction of horizontal curvature, including spirals and superelevation development, when the comfort speed of the existing curve is more than 15 mph below the project design speed, and the current year ADT is 2000 or greater. Refer to Section 218.7 for comfort speed. Also, include and consider curves in series along a roadway section. Adjust as necessary to provide consistency in alignment and drivability. When curve reconstruction is not justified, appropriate mitigation measures such as those listed in Part 300, Section 313 should be applied. Correction of the superelevation should be applied if the comfort speed of the curve is lower than the project design speed. If the comfort speed exceeds the project design speed, the superelevation should be maintained unless there is a justifiable reason to change it.

218.6 4R Horizontal Curvature (All Highways)

This section focuses on horizontal curvature. Vertical curvature is discussed in later sections. However, horizontal and vertical alignments must coordinate to provide effective, comfortable and aesthetic roadways. Refer to 219.5 for discussion of combined horizontal and vertical alignment and Figure 200-53 for examples of good and weak coordination of horizontal and vertical curves.

Horizontal curve calculations are based on the arc definition for a circular curve. Minimum degree of curvature can be found in Table 200-11 (Open Road), Table 200-12 (Urban) and Table 200-13 (Suburban). **Sufficient curve length must be used to prevent the appearance of a "kink" in the alignment. For small deflection angles, a minimum arc length of 15 times the design speed is required. For larger deflection angles where spiral transitions are required, the minimum arc length of the simple curve is 50 ft. An angle point is considered a curve with an arc length of zero, and therefore, does not meet the minimum standard.**

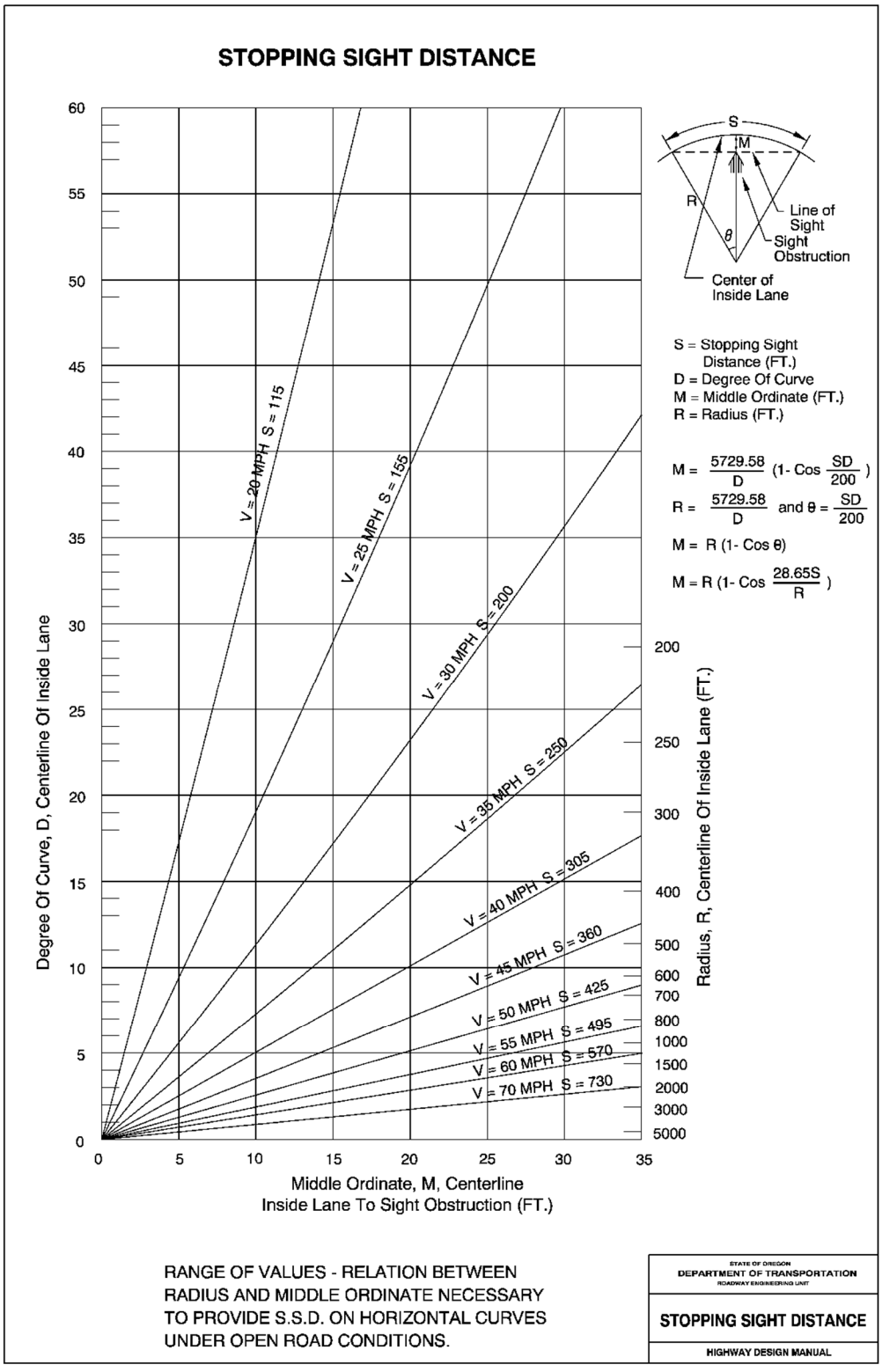
Compound curves are adjoining curves in the same direction with differing degrees of curvature. *They may be used where necessary with an intermediate spiral segment. Design the spiral segment to provide an "a" value equal to or less than the standard spiral for the sharper curve.* See Part 600 for spiral segments. The "a" value is a measure of the rate of change of the curvature. (Change in Degree of curve x 100 / length of spiral).

Broken back curves are curves in the same direction connected with a short segment of tangent. *It is desirable to avoid the use of broken back curves. When the use of a broken back alignment cannot be avoided, design the tangent section so that all travel lanes slope in the same direction as the*

superelevation of the curves. This avoids the introduction of two flat spots on the travel lane toward the outside of the curves and prevents the development of a dip on the edge of the pavement that can affect driver comfort and drainage (See Figure 200-19). Generally, this treatment is required when the length of the tangent is 500 feet or less.

DRAFT

Figure 200-17: SSD on Horizontal Curves



218.6.1 Spiral Transitions

Spirals provide a transition between tangents and curves and between circular curves of substantially different degrees of curve (spiral segment). The natural path of a vehicle entering a curve is to drive a spiral. Spirals also provide a location for developing superelevation. Standard spiral lengths are based on the number of lanes being rotated and the super rate for the curve. **Apply spirals to all curves of 1° or sharper. This applies to secondary as well as to primary highways. Curves with a degree of curve flatter than 1° are not required to be spiraled.** Consider using spirals for curves with a degree of curve flatter than 1° to assist in developing the superelevation runoff. When designing an unspiraled curve, refer to Figure 200-20. Longer spirals than the standard may be used wherever advantage in their use is apparent. Many existing alignments on the highway system include longer than standard spirals and operate very well. *Consider using longer spirals appropriate for a section with additional lanes when future widening is anticipated.* The standard spiral lengths for typical design speeds in open road, urban, and suburban settings are presented in Table 200-11, Table 200-12, and Table 200-13. The minimum spiral length for any curve not covered by these tables can be calculated using the three formulas also presented on Table 200-11, Table 200-12, and Table 200-13. Note that the spiral lengths presented in the tables are based on the formulas and then adjusted to provide a consistent progression in the "a" value. The "a" value is a measure of the rate of change of the curvature. (Change in Degree of curve x 100 / length of spiral). This results in a consistent feel for the driver. Spiral lengths are normally rounded up to the nearest 5 feet.

Design exceptions are required when using spirals that are less than standard. Using longer spirals than standard does not require an exception. Using unequal spiral lengths is not an exception if both meet or exceed standards. This arrangement is most commonly found on ramps. Designers always need to consider potential operational effects and the roadway context in making alignment decisions.

Prior versions of design standards were based on using inside edge super rotation. Current standards allow for using other rotation points when developing superelevation.

Ramp profile grades are typically carried at the ramp alignment and rotated about the ramp centerline.

See Part 600 for ramp alignment requirements.

The minimum length of the simple curve between spirals is 50 feet. *At times it may be appropriate to install a spiral segment to transition from one central curve to another central curve.* These are called compound curves. The spiral segment assists in providing a smooth transition between two curves in close proximity to each other. *Back to back spirals between reversing curves are permissible.*

The type and location of the facility (urban or rural in nature) will dictate the proper combination of curve, spiral, and superelevation rate.

DRAFT

On some low speed non-superelevated roadways, the use of spirals may not be warranted. In addressing the six urban contexts for urban arterials, the lack of spirals and/or reduced superelevation rate or the use of a crown section may be warranted in these environments to provide design flexibility in relation to urban context. **Smooth curvature is still required, and angle points require an approved design exception.** In some narrow lane locations where spiral transition is not provided, widening of the outside shoulder may be of benefit for smoother curve transition for drivers. **Designing such roadways without spirals and standard superelevation requires a design exception.**

218.6.2 Superelevation and Methods for Developing Superelevation

The standard method of developing superelevation runoff is shown in Figure 200-20 and Figure 200-22. ***The standard method of superelevation development for ODOT is rotation around the profile grade. The profile grade is normally carried along the centerline or the low side edge of travel.*** Other options as shown in Figure 200-21 are also available. Where the grade is 4 percent or greater, the superelevation is developed according to Section 221. *When the superelevation is rotated about centerline, ensure the design doesn't create a low spot on the inside of the curve where ponding can occur. For flat curves with a degree of curve less than 0° 30' superelevation is typically not required.* In the design of runoff, the use of multiple line profiles is suggested. Multiple line profiles are especially useful in situations where grade controls at road approaches, building elevations or interchange designs are encountered.

When a horizontal curve has less than 200 feet of main circular curve, the superelevation along the main curve is determined by joining the runoffs in the center of the curve and using a continuous vertical curve of a length equal to twice the length of the main curve, with a minimum vertical curve length of 200 feet.

On multi-lane divided highways, each direction may have an independent alignment. In these situations, the superelevation for one direction may be developed independent of the other to minimize run-out lengths. Each direction follows the superelevation rules contained in this section for the number of lanes on each alignment.

When the tangent distance between reversing curves is less than 400 feet, adjust the runoff of the superelevation so that the edges of pavement and the centerline fall on a uniform grade between the Point of Curve to Spiral (PCS) of the first curve and the Point of Spiral to Curve (PSC) of the second curve. (See Figure 200-20).

Standard superelevation applies on climbing lanes. When climatic conditions warrant it, a design exception for reduced superelevation may be granted for a climbing lane on the high side of a curve.

Use Table 200-11 to determine proper superelevation and spiral lengths for freeways and rural highways. For design speed other than shown, determine the superelevation by

interpolation and calculate the spiral length. This table is also used for constrained rural mountainous locations.

Table 200-11 also applies to freeways and rural areas where snow and ice conditions prevail. Elevations over 3000 feet can be considered where snow and ice prevail. Other locations, such as the Columbia River Gorge may be considered for discussion as a snow and ice area. In these areas, avoid using a degree of curve that would normally be designed with a superelevation greater than 8 percent. For example, if the design speed is 70 mph, the maximum degree of curve where snow and ice prevail would be 3 degrees. If a sharper curvature must be used, the superelevation may be held at 8 percent with the understanding that the curve would have a "comfort speed" lower than the design speed and may need to be posted with a speed rider. In this situation, the comfort speed table (Table 200-14) can be used to determine the comfort speed of any curve at 8 percent superelevation. **Limiting the superelevation to 8 percent on roadways where snow and ice prevail when standard superelevation would normally be greater than 8 percent requires a design exception.** It is generally not appropriate to limit the superelevation to anything less than 8 percent on a rural highway as that may compromise safety and operations during warmer times of the year.

Use Table 200-12 for ODOT urban context locations where design speeds range from 25-40 mph and the maximum superelevation rate is 4 percent. Use the suburban superelevation and spiral lengths table (Table 200-13) for transition areas between urban/suburban and rural areas and design speeds range from 45-55 mph, with a maximum superelevation rate of 6 percent. *This table may also be appropriate for the suburban fringe context and also rural community context where design speeds range from 45-55 mph.*

DRAFT

1 Table 200-11: Open Road Superelevation & Spiral Lengths

	70 mph								60 MPH								50 MPH								45 MPH			
D	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	L6	L7	L8	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	L6	L7	L8	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	L6	L7	L8	e	L1	L2	D
0°30'	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	0°30'
0°35'	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	0°35'
0°40'	2.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	0°40'
0°45'	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	0°45'
0°50'	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	0°50'
0°55'	3.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	0°55'
1°00'	3.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	3.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	2.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.0	-	-	1°00'
1°05'	4.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	3.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.0	-	-	1°05'
1°10'	4.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	3.5	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.0	-	-	1°10'
1°15'	4.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	3.5	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.0	135	205	1°15'
1°20'	4.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	4.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	3.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.5	135	205	1°20'
1°25'	5.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	4.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	3.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.0	135	205	1°25'
1°30'	5.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	4.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	3.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	2.0	135	205	1°30'
1°35'	5.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	4.5	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.0	135	205	1°35'
1°40'	5.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	4.5	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.0	135	205	1°40'
1°45'	6.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	5.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.0	135	205	1°45'
1°50'	6.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	5.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	4.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.0	135	205	1°50'
1°55'	6.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	5.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	4.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.5	135	205	1°55'
2°00'	6.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	5.5	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	4.0	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.5	135	205	2°00'
2°10'	7.0	215	325	430	540	645	755	860	970	6.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	3.5	135	205	2°10'
2°15'	7.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	6.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	4.0	135	205	2°15'
2°20'	7.5	225	340	450	565	675	790	900	1015	6.0	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	510	580	655	4.0	135	205	2°20'
2°30'	7.5	225	340	450	565	675	790	900	1015	6.5	175	265	350	440	525	615	700	790	5.0	150	225	300	375	450	525	600	675	4.0	135	205	2°30'
2°45'	8.0	240	360	480	600	720	840	960	1080	7.0	190	285	380	475	570	665	760	855	5.5	165	250	330	415	495	580	660	745	4.5	155	235	2°45'
3°00'	8.0	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	7.5	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	6.0	180	270	360	450	540	630	720	810	5.0	170	255	3°00'
3°15'	8.5	255	385	510	640	765	895	1020	1150	8.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	6.0	195	295	390	490	585	685	780	880	5.5	185	280	3°15'
3°30'	9.0	270	405	540	675	810	945	1080	1215	8.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	6.5	210	315	420	525	630	735	840	945	5.5	205	310	3°30'
3°45'	9.0	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	8.0	225	340	450	565	675	790	900	1015	7.0	210	315	420	525	630	735	840	945	6.0	205	310	3°45'
4°00'	9.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	8.5	230	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	7.5	210	315	420	525	630	735	840	945	6.5	205	310	4°00'
4°15'	9.5	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	8.5	230	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	7.5	215	325	430	540	645	755	860	970	6.5	210	315	4°15'
4°30'	9.5	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.0	240	360	480	600	720	840	960	1080	8.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	7.0	210	315	4°30'
4°45'	9.5	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.0	245	370	490	615	735	860	980	1105	8.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	7.0	210	315	4°45'
5°00'	9.5	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.5	255	385	510	640	765	895	1020	1150	8.5	230	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	7.5	220	330	5°00'
5°15'	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	8.5	230	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	8.0	225	340	5°15'
5°30'	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	8.5	230	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	8.0	225	340	5°30'
5°45'	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.0	230	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	8.5	230	345	5°45'
6°00'	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.0	240	360	480	600	720	840	960	1080	8.5	230	345	6°00'
6°15'	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.0	245	370	490	615	735	860	980	1105	8.5	230	345	6°15'
6°30'	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	10.0	300	450	600	750	900	1050	1200	1350	9.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	9.0	235	355	6°30'
6°45'	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	9.5	255	385	510	640	765	895	1020	1150	9.0	235	355	6°45'
7°00'	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	9.5	260	390	520	650	780	910	1040	1170	9.0	240	360	7°00'
7°15'	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	9.0	240	360	7°15'
7°30'	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.0	270	405	540	675	810	945	1080	1215	9.5	240	360	7°30'
8°00'	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.5	285	430	570	715	855	1000	1140	1285	10.5	280	420	560	700	840	980	1120	1260	9.5	240	360	8°00'
8°30'	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	10.0	245	370	8°30'
9°00'	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	10.0	250	375	9°00'
9°30'	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	10.5	255	385	9°30'
10°00'	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	10.5	260	390	10°00'
10°30'	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	530	665	795	930	1060	1195	11.0	265	400	10°30'
11°00'	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	12.0	265	400	11°00'
12°00'	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	12.0	250	375	12°00'
14°00'	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	11.5	250	375	500	625	750	875	1000	1125	12.0	250	375	14°00'
16°00'	12.0	235	355	470	590	705	825	940	1060	12.0	235	355	470	590	705	825	940	1060	12.0	235	355	470	590	705	825	940	1060	12.0	235	355	16°00'
18°00'	12.0	235	355	470	590	705	825	940	1060	12.0	235	355	470	590	705	825	940	1060	12.0	235	355	470	590	705	825	940	1060	12.0	235	355	18°00'
20°00'	12.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	12.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	12.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	12.0	220	330	20°00'
24°00'	12.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	12.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	12.0	220	330	440	550	660	770	880	990	12.0	220	330	24°00'
36°00'	12.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	12.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	12.0	205	310	410	515	615	720	820	925	12.0	205	310	36°00'

NOTES:

1 Select only one design speed that is appropriate to the corridor or section of highway.
DO NOT use more than one column in the design of a corridor or section of highway.

2 The shaded area represents degree of curvature that should only be used in constrained areas. These curves may need to be posted with an advisory speed since the comfort speed is lower than the selected design speed. See Table 200-13 in this chapter.

3 For a degree of curve that falls between values listed use the super rate and spiral length for the next highest degree of curve listed.

4 For design speeds other than shown, the superelevation & spiral length can be interpolated from the table.

5 The formulas below can be used to determine the minimum spiral length for superelevation runoff, comfort and aesthetics: Use the longest spiral solution of the three and round up to the nearest 5 ft.

Superelevation Runoff:
$Ln = [(w * n * e) / s] * b$; $b = [1 + 0.5 * (n-1)] / n$

Where: w=width of lane; typically 12 ft
Where: e=superelevation rate in percent
Where: n=number of lanes rotated
Where: b=adjustment factor
Where: s=relative slope in percent
s=0.70 @ 25 mph
s=0.66 @ 30 mph
s=0.62 @ 35 mph
s=0.58 @ 40 mph
s=0.54 @ 45 mph
s=0.50 @ 50 mph
s=0.47 @ 55 mph
s=0.45 @ 60 mph
s=0.43 @ 65 mph
s=0.40 @ 70 mph

Centrifugal Control: $Ls = (D)(V^3/3638)$
Where: V=velocity in mph and D= Degree of curve

Aesthetic Control: Ls=2.9V
Where: V=velocity in mph

LEGEND:

NC - Normal crown
D - Degree of curve
e - Superelevation in percent
Ln - Standard spiral length for n lanes rotated;

2

Table 200-12: Urban Superelevation & Spiral Lengths

	40						35						30						25						
D	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	D
1°00'	NC	120	180	240	300	360	NC	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	1°00'
1°15'	NC	120	180	240	300	360	NC	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	1°15'
1°30'	2	120	180	240	300	360	NC	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	1°30'
1°45'	2	120	180	240	300	360	NC	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	1°45'
2°00'	2	120	180	240	300	360	2	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	2°00'
2°15'	2.5	120	180	240	300	360	2	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	2°15'
2°30'	2.5	130	195	260	325	390	2	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	2°30'
2°45'	2.5	140	210	280	350	420	2	105	160	210	265	315	NC	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	2°45'
3°00'	2.5	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	3°00'
3°15'	2.5	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2	90	135	180	225	270	NC	75	115	150	190	225	3°15'
3°30'	2.5	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	3°30'
3°45'	2.5	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	3°45'
4°00'	2.5	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	4°00'
4°15'	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	4°15'
4°30'	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	4°30'
4°45'	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	4°45'
5°00'	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	5°00'
5°15'	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2	75	115	150	190	225	5°15'
5°30'	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	5°30'
5°45'	3	125	190	250	315	375	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	5°45'
6°00'	3	130	195	260	325	390	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	6°00'
6°15'	3	135	205	270	340	405	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	6°15'
6°30'	3	140	210	280	350	420	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	6°30'
7°00'	3.5	140	210	280	350	420	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	7°00'
7°30'	3.5	150	225	300	375	450	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	75	115	150	190	225	7°30'
8°00'	3.5	160	240	320	400	480	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	80	120	160	200	240	8°00'
8°30'	3.5	165	250	330	415	495	3	110	165	220	275	330	3	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	85	130	170	215	255	8°30'
9°00'	4	170	255	340	425	510	3	115	175	230	290	345	3	90	135	180	225	270	2.5	90	135	180	225	270	9°00'
9°30'	4	175	265	350	440	525	3	120	180	240	300	360	3	95	145	190	240	285	2.5	95	145	190	240	285	9°30'
10°00'	4	180	270	360	450	540	3.5	125	190	250	315	375	3	100	150	200	250	300	2.5	100	150	200	250	300	10°00'
10°30'							3.5	130	195	260	325	390	3	105	160	210	265	315	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	10°30'
11°00'							3.5	135	205	270	340	405	3	105	160	210	265	315	3	105	160	210	265	315	11°00'
11°30'							3.5	140	210	280	350	420	3	110	165	220	275	330	3	105	160	210	265	315	11°30'
12°00'							3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	110	165	220	275	330	3	105	160	210	265	315	12°00'
12°30'							3.5	150	225	300	375	450	3	115	175	230	290	345	3	105	160	210	265	315	12°30'
13°00'							3.5	155	235	310	390	465	3	115	175	230	290	345	3	105	160	210	265	315	13°00'
13°30'							3.5	160	240	320	400	480	3	120	180	240	300	360	2.5	105	160	210	265	315	13°30'
14°00'							4	165	250	330	415	495	3	120	180	240	300	360	3	105	160	210	265	315	14°00'
15°00'							4	175	265	350	440	525	3.5	125	190	250	315	375	3	105	160	210	265	315	15°00'
16°00'													3.5	130	195	260	325	390	3	105	160	210	265	315	16°00'
17°00'													3.5	135	205	270	340	405	3	105	160	210	265	315	17°00'
18°00'													3.5	140	210	280	350	420	3	105	160	210	265	315	18°00'
19°00'													3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	105	160	210	265	315	19°00'
20°00'													3.5	150	225	300	375	450	3	105	160	210	265	315	20°00'
21°00'													4	160	240	320	400	480	3	105	160	210	265	315	21°00'
22°00'													4	165	250	330	415	495	3	110	165	220	275	330	22°00'
23°00'																			3	115	175	230	290	345	23°00'
24°00'																			3.5	120	180	240	300	360	24°00'
25°00'																			3.5	120	180	240	300	360	25°00'
26°00'																			3.5	120	180	240	300	360	26°00'
27°00'																			3.5	120	180	240	300	360	27°00'
28°00'																			3.5	120	180	240	300	360	28°00'
29°00'																			3.5	125	190	250	315	375	29°00'
30°00'																			4	130	195	260	325	390	30°00'
32°00'																			3.5	150	225	300	375	450	32°00'
34°00'																			4	155	235	310	390	465	34°00'
36°00'																			4	155	235	310	390	465	36°00'

When standard length spirals cannot be attained, use the formulas below for minimum spiral lengths by runoff, comfort, & aesthetics:
Use the longest spiral solution of the three and round to the nearest higher even 5 feet.

Superelevation Runoff: Ls=we/2s

Where: e=superelevation rate in percent
Where: w=width, edge of travel to edge of travel
Where: s=relative slope in percent
s=0.70 @ 25 mph
s=0.66 @ 30 mph
s=0.62 @ 35 mph
s=0.58 @ 40 mph
s=0.54 @ 45 mph
s=0.50 @ 50 mph
s=0.47 @ 55 mph
s=0.45 @ 60 mph
s=0.43 @ 65 mph
s=0.40 @ 70 mph

Centrifugal Control: Ls= (D)(V^3/3638)
Where: V=velocity in mph and D= Degree of curve

Aesthetic Control: Ls=2.9V
Where: V=velocity in mph

LEGEND:

D - Degree of curve
e - Superelevation in percent
Ln - Standard spiral length for n lanes
L2 - Standard spiral length for two lanes
L4 - Standard spiral length for four lanes
L3=1.25(L2) , L5=1.8(L2) , L6=2(L2)

Table 200-13: Suburban Superelevation & Spiral Lengths

	55						50						45						
D	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	e	L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	D
0°45'	2	160	240	320	400	480	NC	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	0°45'
0°50'	2	160	240	320	400	480	NC	-	-	-	-	-	NC	-	-	-	-	-	0°50'
0°55'	2	160	240	320	400	480	2	145	220	290	365	435	NC	-	-	-	-	-	0°55'
1°00'	2.5	160	240	320	400	480	2	145	220	290	365	435	NC	-	-	-	-	-	1°00'
1°05'	2.5	160	240	320	400	480	2	145	220	290	365	435	2	135	205	270	340	405	1°05'
1°10'	2.5	160	240	320	400	480	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	2	135	205	270	340	405	1°10'
1°15'	3	160	240	320	400	480	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	2	135	205	270	340	405	1°15'
1°20'	3	160	240	320	400	480	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	2	135	205	270	340	405	1°20'
1°25'	3	160	240	320	400	480	2.5	145	220	290	365	435	2.5	135	205	270	340	405	1°25'
1°30'	3	160	240	320	400	480	3	145	220	290	365	435	2.5	135	205	270	340	405	1°30'
1°35'	3.5	160	240	320	400	480	3	145	220	290	365	435	2.5	135	205	270	340	405	1°35'
1°40'	3.5	160	240	320	400	480	3	145	220	290	365	435	2.5	135	205	270	340	405	1°40'
1°45'	3.5	160	240	320	400	480	3	145	220	290	365	435	2.5	135	205	270	340	405	1°45'
1°50'	3.5	160	240	320	400	480	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	135	205	270	340	405	1°50'
1°55'	4	160	240	320	400	480	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	135	205	270	340	405	1°55'
2°00'	4	160	240	320	400	480	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	135	205	270	340	405	2°00'
2°05'	4	160	240	320	400	480	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	135	205	270	340	405	2°05'
2°10'	4	160	240	320	400	480	3.5	145	220	290	365	435	3	135	205	270	340	405	2°10'
2°15'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°15'
2°20'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°20'
2°25'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°25'
2°30'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°30'
2°35'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°35'
2°40'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°40'
2°45'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	3.5	135	205	270	340	405	2°45'
2°50'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4	145	220	290	365	435	4	135	205	270	340	405	2°50'
2°55'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	4	135	205	270	340	405	2°55'
3°00'	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	4	135	205	270	340	405	3°00'
3°15'	5	165	250	330	415	495	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	4	135	205	270	340	405	3°15'
3°30'	5	170	255	340	425	510	4.5	145	220	290	365	435	4	135	205	270	340	405	3°30'
3°45'	5	180	270	360	450	540	4.5	150	225	300	375	450	4.5	135	205	270	340	405	3°45'
4°00'	5	190	285	380	475	570	4.5	160	240	320	400	480	4.5	135	205	270	340	405	4°00'
4°15'	5.5	200	300	400	500	600	5	170	255	340	425	510	4.5	135	205	270	340	405	4°15'
4°30'	5.5	210	315	420	525	630	5	180	270	360	450	540	4.5	135	205	270	340	405	4°30'
4°45'	5.5	220	330	440	550	660	5	190	285	380	475	570	4.5	135	205	270	340	405	4°45'
5°00'	6	230	345	460	575	690	5	195	295	390	490	585	4.5	140	210	280	350	420	5°00'
5°15'	6	240	360	480	600	720	5.5	200	300	400	500	600	5	145	220	290	365	435	5°15'
5°30'							5.5	205	310	410	515	615	5	150	225	300	375	450	5°30'
5°45'							5.5	210	315	420	525	630	5	155	235	310	390	465	5°45'
6°00'							5.5	215	325	430	540	645	5	160	240	320	400	480	6°00'
6°15'							5.5	220	330	440	550	660	5	165	250	330	415	495	6°15'
6°30'							6	225	340	450	565	675	5	170	255	340	425	510	6°30'
6°45'							6	230	345	460	575	690	5.5	175	265	350	440	525	6°45'
7°00'													5.5	180	270	360	450	540	7°00'
7°15'													5.5	185	280	370	465	555	7°15'
7°30'													5.5	190	285	380	475	570	7°30'
7°45'													5.5	195	295	390	490	585	7°45'
8°00'													6	200	300	400	500	600	8°00'

When standard length spirals cannot be attained, use the formulas below for minimum spiral lengths by runoff, comfort, & aesthetics:
Use the longest spiral solution of the three and round to the nearest higher even 5 feet.

Superelevation Runoff: Ls=we/2s

Where: e=superelevation rate in percent
Where: w=width, edge of travel to edge of travel
Where: s=relative slope in percent
s=0.70 @ 25 mph
s=0.66 @ 30 mph
s=0.62 @ 35 mph
s=0.58 @ 40 mph
s=0.54 @ 45 mph
s=0.50 @ 50 mph
s=0.47 @ 55 mph
s=0.45 @ 60 mph
s=0.43 @ 65 mph
s=0.40 @ 70 mph

Centrifugal Control: Ls= (D)(V^3/3638)
Where: V=velocity in mph and D= Degree of curve

Aesthetic Control: Ls=2.9V
Where: V=velocity in mph

LEGEND:

NC - Normal Crown
D - Degree of curve
e - Superelevation in percent
Ln - Standard spiral length for n lanes
L2 - Standard spiral length for two lanes
L4 - Standard spiral length for four lanes
L3=1.25(L2) , L5=1.8(L2) , L6=2(L2)

Figure 200-18: Standard Superelevation

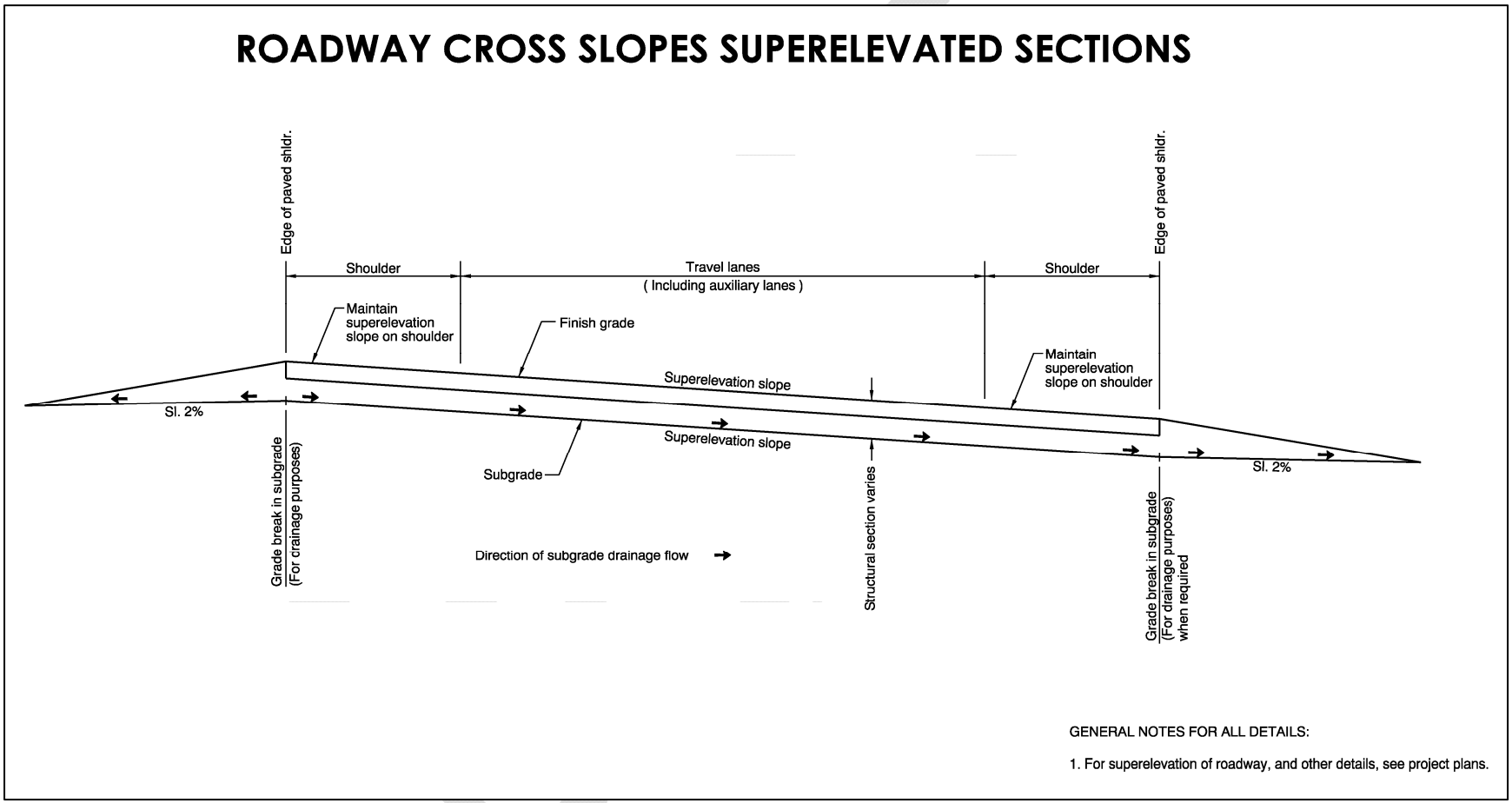


Figure 200-19: Developing Superelevation on 2-Lane Highways

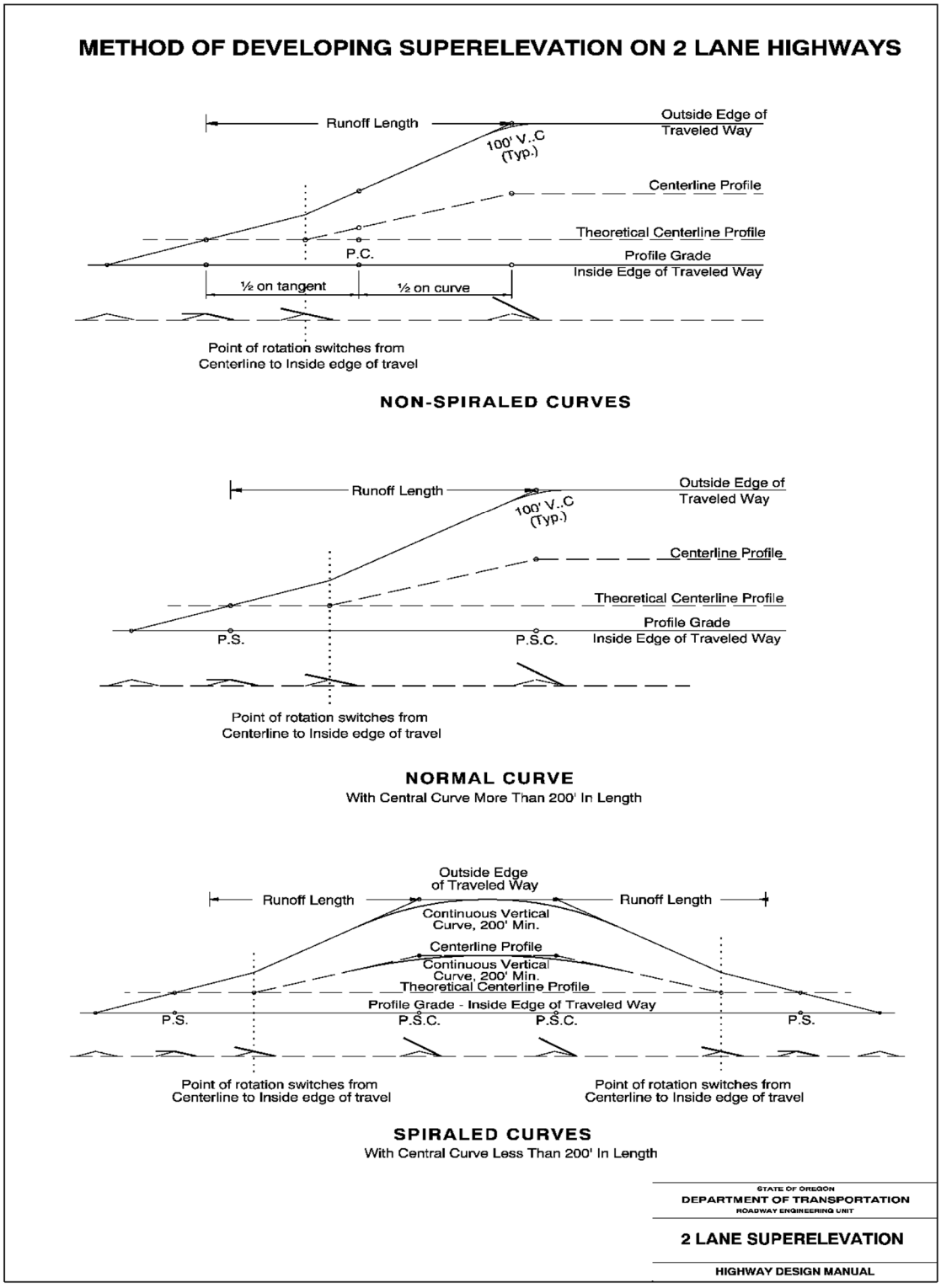


Figure 200-20: Developing Superelevation on 2-Lane Highways (Cont'd)

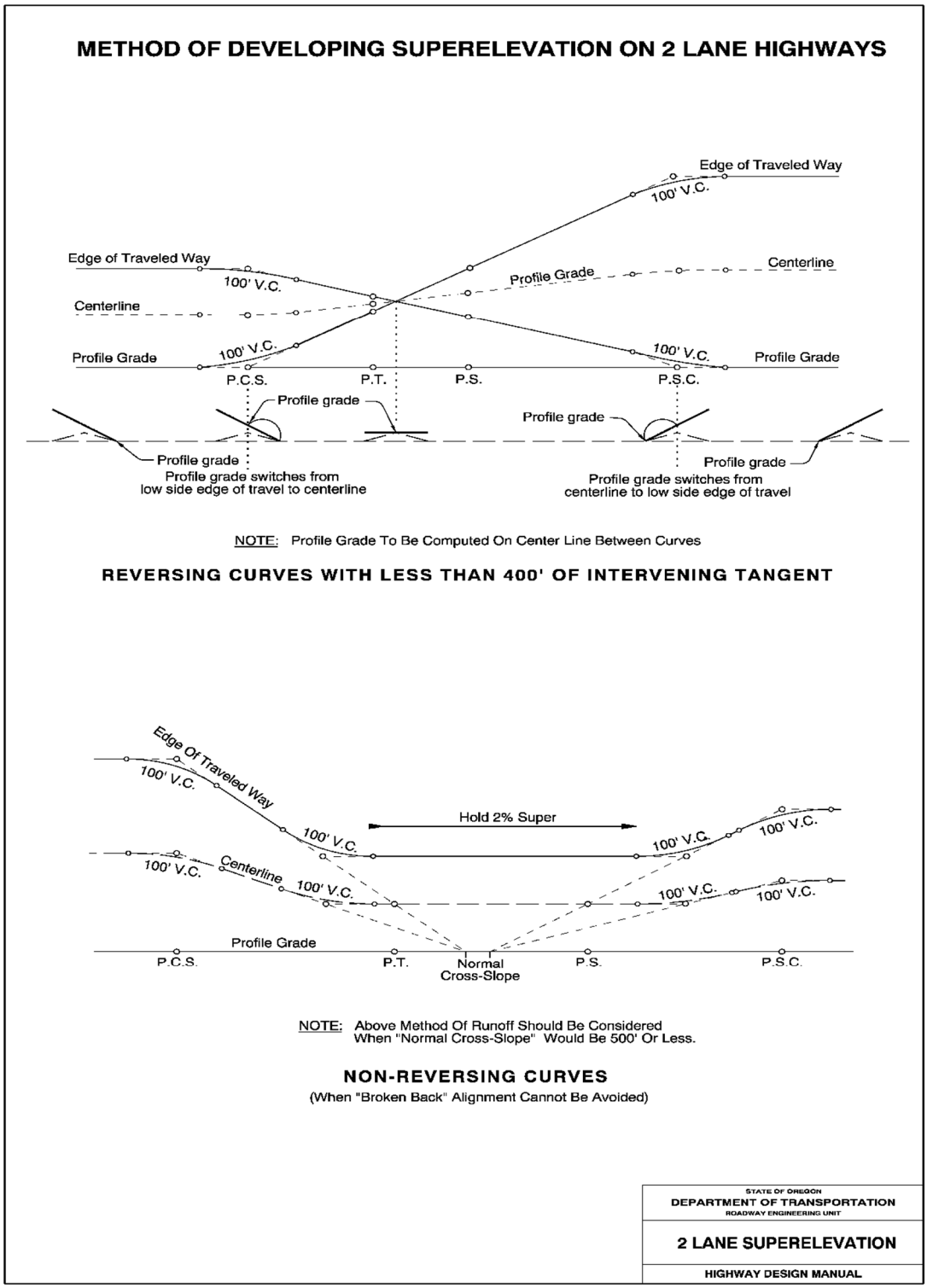


Figure 200-21: Examples of Additional Methods for Developing Superelevation

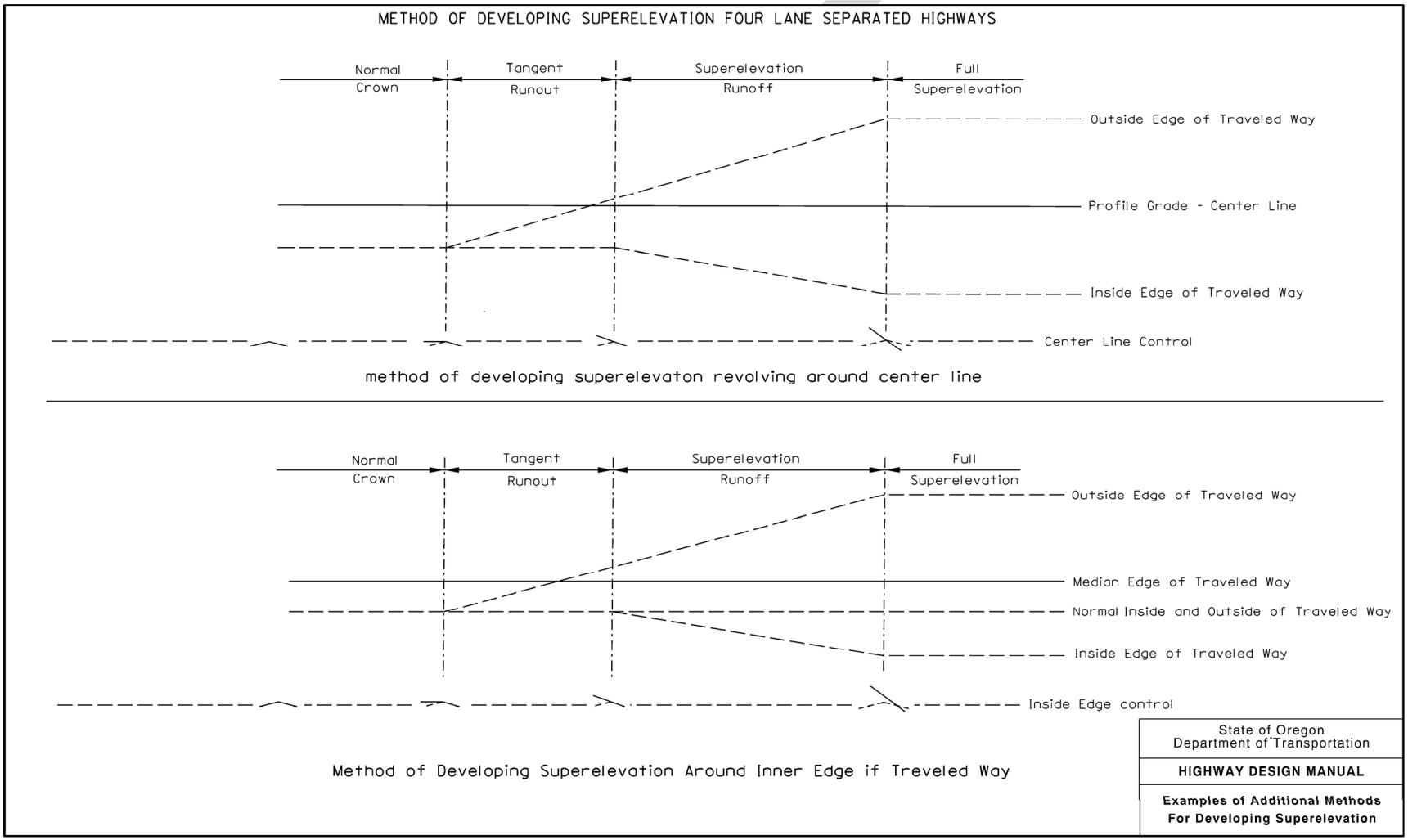
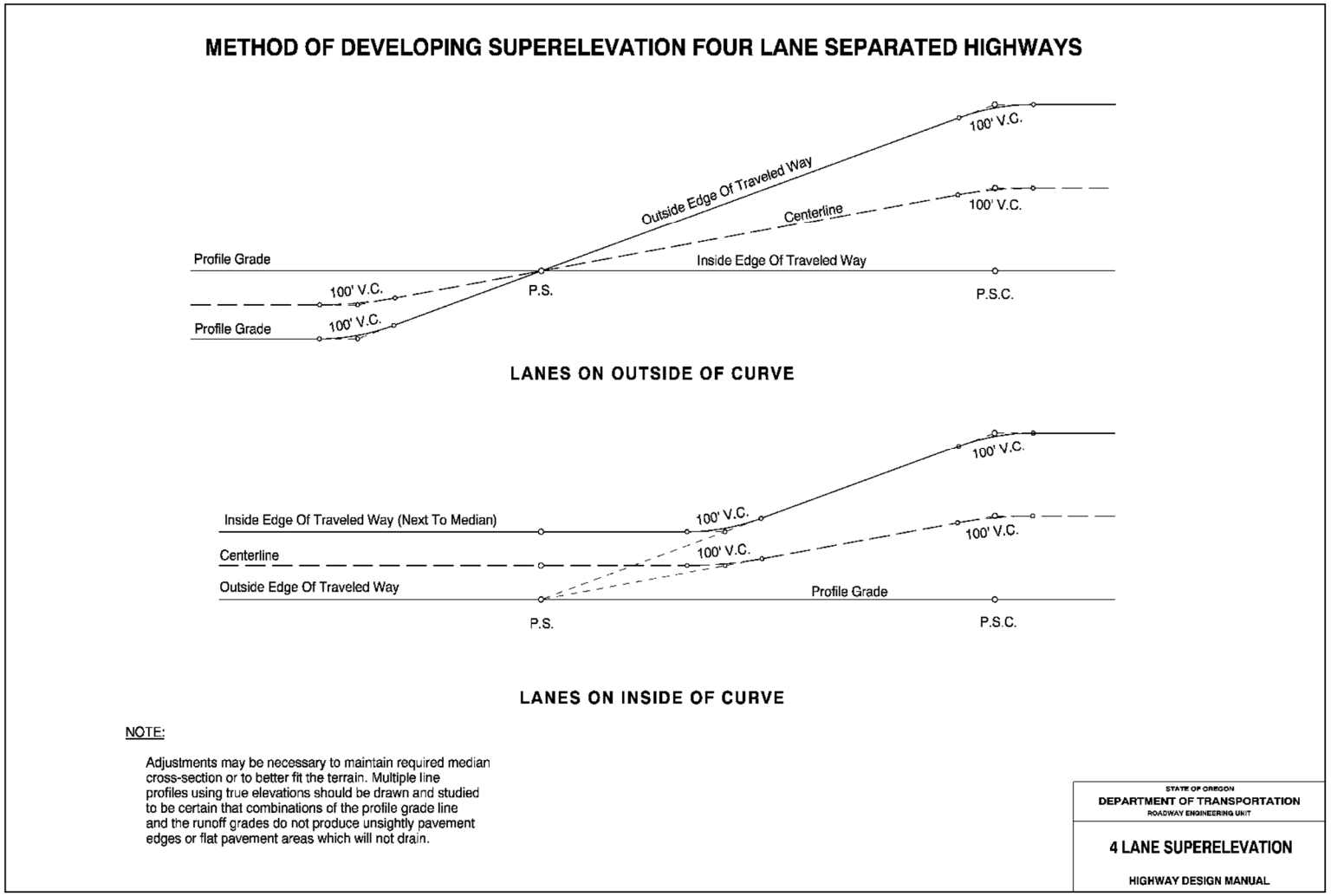


Figure 200-22: Developing Superelevation on 4-Lane Highways



218.7 Comfort Speed Chart

The Comfort Speed Chart shown in Table 200-14 represents the vehicle speed, degree of curvature and superelevation at the point where the driver begins to experience an unacceptable level of discomfort. The data in this chart does not represent a design standard. Design standards for superelevation are provided in Table 200-11, Table 200-12, and Table 200-13. *This chart is provided as a tool to evaluate existing or proposed sections for safety and operation. It can also be used for supporting data as part of a design exception.*

DRAFT

Table 200-14: Comfort Speed

Curve		Superelevation in Feet per Foot of Width																						
Degree	Radius (ft)	-0.020	0.000	0.020	0.025	0.030	0.035	0.040	0.045	0.050	0.055	0.060	0.065	0.070	0.075	0.080	0.085	0.090	0.095	0.100	0.105	0.110	0.115	0.120
0°30'	11459.16	87	94	100																				
0°45'	7639.44	81	86	92	93	95																		
1°00'	5729.58	76	81	86	87	88	90	91																
1°15'	4583.66	72	76	81	82	83	84	86	87	88														
1°30'	3819.72	68	73	77	78	79	80	81	82	83														
1°45'	3274.04	65	70	74	75	76	77	78	78	79	80	81	82											
2°00'	2864.79	63	67	71	72	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80										
2°15'	2546.48	61	64	68	69	70	71	72	72	73	74	75	76	77	77	78								
2°30'	2291.83	59	62	66	67	67	68	69	70	71	72	72	73	74	75	75	76							
2°45'	2083.48	57	60	64	64	65	66	67	68	68	69	70	71	72	72	73	74							
3°00'	1909.86	55	59	62	63	63	64	65	66	66	67	68	69	69	70	71	72							
3°15'	1762.95	54	57	60	61	62	62	63	64	65	65	66	67	67	68	69	69	70						
3°30'	1637.02	52	56	59	59	60	61	61	62	63	64	64	65	66	66	67	68	68						
3°45'	1527.89	51	54	57	58	59	59	60	61	61	62	63	63	64	65	65	66	67						
4°00'	1432.39	50	53	56	56	57	58	58	59	60	60	61	62	62	63	64	64	65						
4°30'	1273.24	48	51	53	54	55	55	56	57	57	58	58	59	60	60	61	61	62	63					
5°00'	1145.92	46	49	51	52	53	53	54	54	55	56	56	57	57	58	58	59	60	60					
5°30'	1041.74	45	47	50	50	51	51	52	52	53	54	54	55	55	56	56	57	57	58	58				
6°00'	954.93	43	46	48	48	49	50	50	51	51	52	52	53	53	54	54	55	55	56	56				
6°30'	881.47	42	44	46	47	47	48	49	49	50	50	51	51	52	52	53	53	54	54	55				
7°00'	818.51	41	43	45	46	46	47	47	48	48	49	49	50	50	51	51	52	52	53	53	53			
7°30'	763.94	40	42	44	44	45	45	46	46	47	47	48	48	49	49	50	50	51	51	52	52			
8°00'	716.20	39	41	43	43	44	44	45	45	46	46	47	47	47	48	48	49	49	50	50	51			
8°30'	674.07	38	40	42	42	43	43	44	44	44	45	45	46	46	47	47	48	48	48	49	49	50		
9°00'	636.62	37	39	41	41	42	42	43	43	43	44	44	45	45	46	46	46	47	47	48	48	49		
9°30'	603.11	36	38	40	40	41	41	42	42	42	43	43	44	44	45	45	45	46	46	47	47	47		
10°00'	572.96	36	37	39	39	40	40	41	41	42	42	42	43	43	44	44	44	45	45	46	46	46		
10°30'	545.67	35	37	38	39	39	39	40	40	41	41	42	42	42	43	43	44	44	44	45	45	45		
11°00'	520.87	35	36	38	38	38	39	39	40	40	40	41	41	42	42	42	43	43	43	44	44	45		
11°30'	498.22	34	36	37	37	38	38	39	39	39	40	40	40	41	41	41	42	42	43	43	43	44		
12°00'	477.46	34	35	36	37	37	38	38	38	39	39	39	40	40	40	41	41	41	42	42	43	43		
14°00'	409.26	32	33	34	35	35	35	36	36	36	37	37	37	38	38	38	39	39	39	39	40	40	40	
16°00'	358.10	30	31	33	33	33	34	34	34	34	35	35	35	36	36	36	37	37	37	37	38	38	38	39
18°00'	318.31	29	30	31	32	32	32	32	33	33	33	33	34	34	34	35	35	35	35	36	36	36	36	37
20°00'	286.48	28	29	30	30	31	31	31	31	32	32	32	32	33	33	33	33	34	34	34	34	35	35	35
22°00'	260.44	27	28	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	31	31	31	31	32	32	32	32	33	33	33	33	34	34
24°00'	238.73	26	27	28	28	28	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	31	31	31	31	31	32	32	32	32	33
26°00'	220.37	25	26	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	30	31	31	31	31	31
28°00'	204.63	25	25	26	27	27	27	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	29	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	30	31
30°00'	190.99	24	25	26	26	26	26	26	27	27	27	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	29	29	29	29	29	30
32°00'	179.05	23	24	25	25	25	26	26	26	26	26	27	27	27	27	27	28	28	28	28	28	29	29	29
34°00'	168.52	23	24	24	25	25	25	25	25	26	26	26	26	26	26	27	27	27	27	27	28	28	28	28
36°00'	159.15	22	23	24	24	24	24	25	25	25	25	25	26	26	26	26	26	26	27	27	27	27	27	27

$R=V^2/[15(e+f)]$

e=rate of superelevation
f= sidefriction factor
V= Vehicle speed, mph
R=Radius, ft

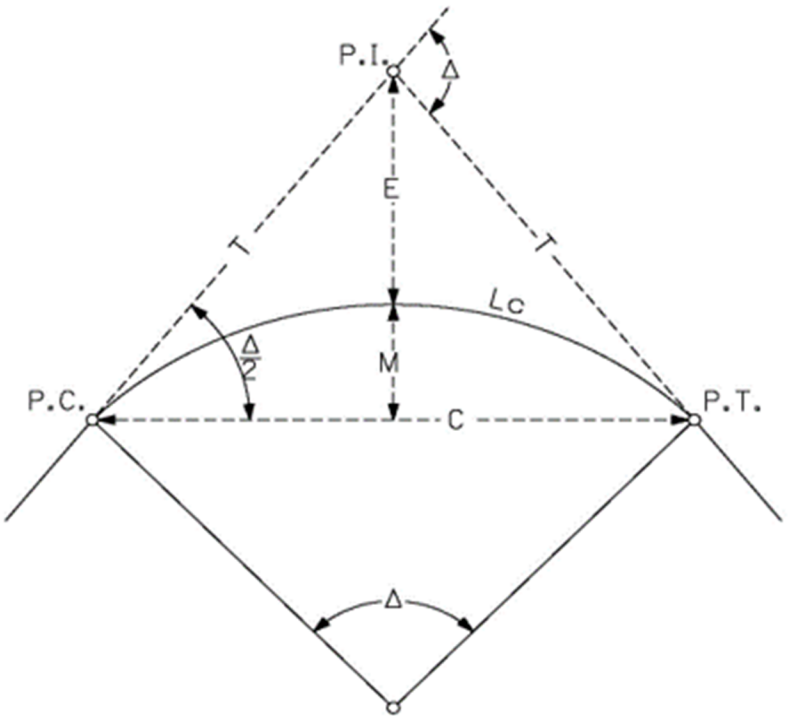
Speed	Friction Factor
25	0.23
30	0.20
35	0.18
40	0.16
45	0.15
50	0.14
55	0.13
60	0.12
65	0.11
70	0.10

218.8 Horizontal Curve Equations and Examples

ODOT standard horizontal alignments typically use transition spirals instead of the basic circular curve. The following figures present the circular curve definitions, spiral curve definitions, basic curve formulas, and accompanying nomenclature. Figure 200-23 describes the circular curve definition, Figure 200-24 through Figure 200-26 describe the spiral curve definition, and Figure 200-27 and Figure 200-28 describe the basic curve formulas. Figure 200-29 through Figure 200-48 provide detailed information and potential solutions for reversing horizontal curves and spiral segment layout.

DRAFT

Figure 200-23: Circular Curve Definitions



A circular curve is based on the arc definition using the degree as it's parameter designation.

P.C. = Beginning of curve.
P.I. = Point of intersection of the tangents.
P.T. = End of curve.
Δ = Deflection angle of the tangents at the P.I..
D = Degree of Curvature
T = Tangent distance from P.I. to P.C. or P.I. to P.T.
Lc = Length of curve from P.C. to P.T.
E = External distance from the P.I. to midpoint of curve.
M = Middle Ordinate distance from midpoint of chord to midpoint of curve.
C = Chord length from P.C. to P.T.

$$T = R \tan \frac{\Delta}{2}$$

$$Lc = \frac{\pi R \Delta}{180}$$

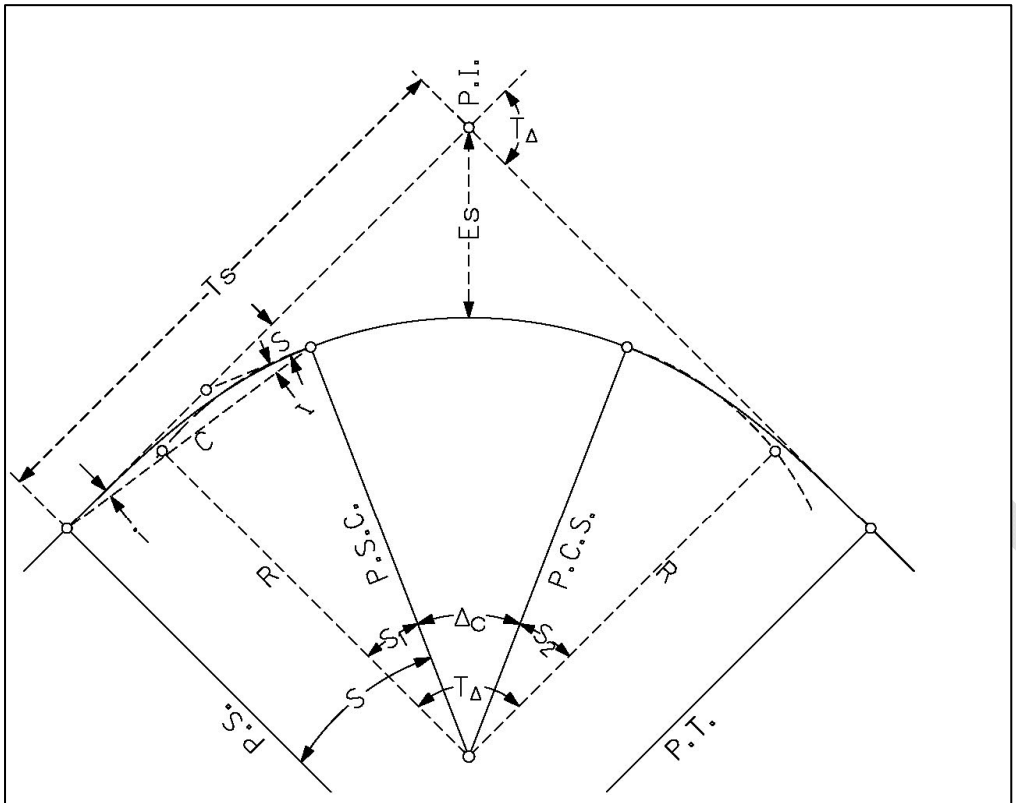
$$E = \left(R \div \cos \frac{\Delta}{2}\right) - R$$

$$M = R - \left(R \cos \frac{\Delta}{2}\right)$$

$$C = 2R \sin \text{deflection} = 2R \sin \frac{\Delta}{2}$$

$$\text{Deflection per foot of arc} = \frac{90}{\pi R}$$

Figure 200-24: Spiral Curve Definitions



T_Δ = Deflection angle of the tangents at the P.I.

$\Delta c = T_\Delta - (S_1 + S_2)$ = Central angle of circular curve.

S = The central angle of the whole spiral.

l = The angle from any point on the spiral between the tangent at that point and the chord from that point to the P.S.

i = The angle between the tangent at the P.S. and the chord from the P.S. to any point on the spiral or the deflection angle to any any point on the spiral.

Ts = The semi-tangent distance of the spiraled curve; distance from the P.I. to the P.S. or P.I. to P.T.

Es = External distance, shortest distance from P.I. to the curve assembly.

C = The chord from the P.S. to the P.S.C. or P.C.S. to P.T.

D = The degree of the central circular curve.

Ls = The length of the spiral from the P.S. to the P.S.C. or P.C.S. to P.T.

ℓ = The length of the spiral from the P.S. or P.T. to any given point on the spiral.

a = The rate of increase in degree of curve per station along the spiral (= (100) (D)/Ls).

d = The degree of curve at any given point on the spiral.

Figure 200-25: Spiral Curve Definitions (Cont'd)

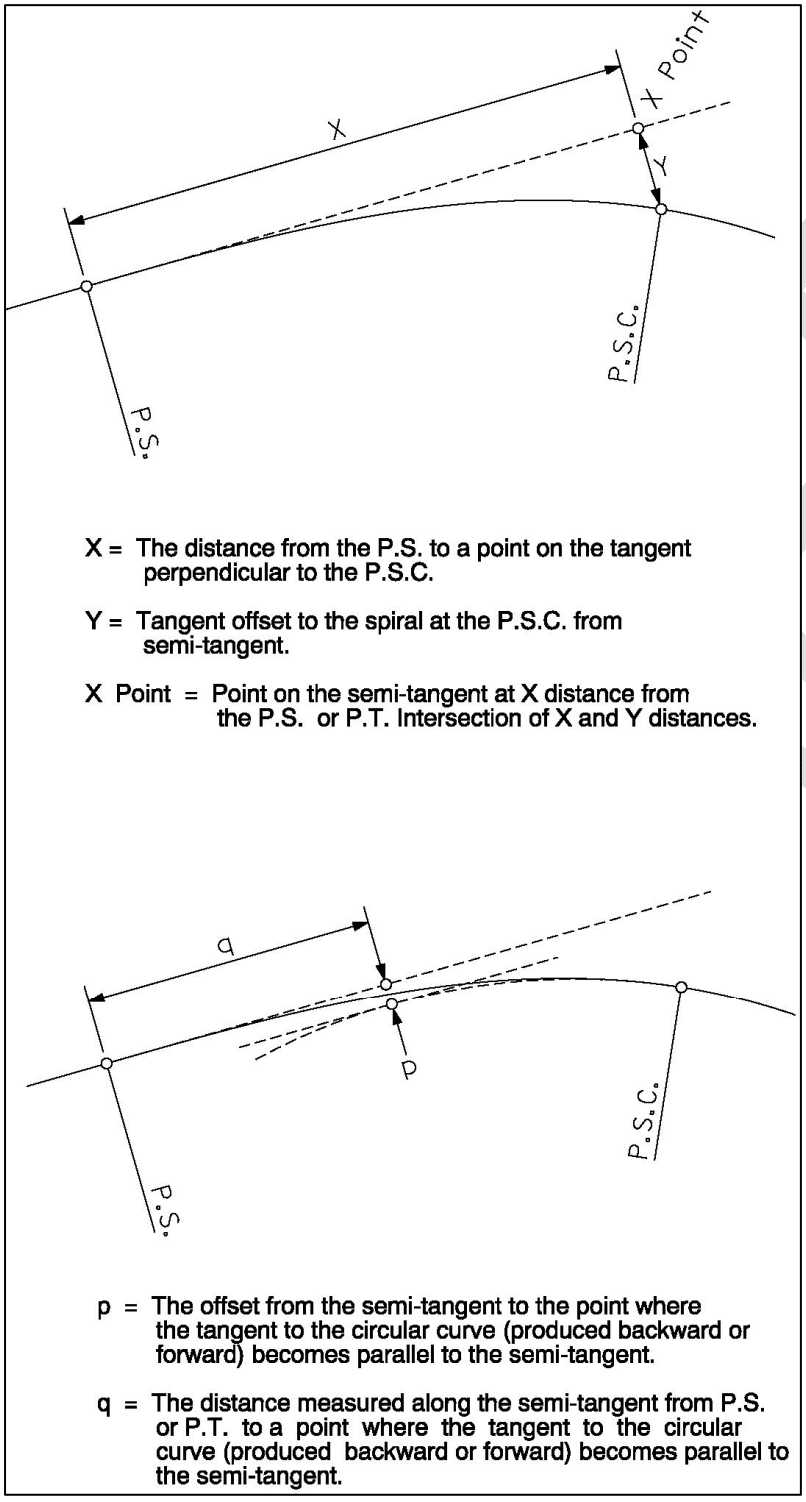
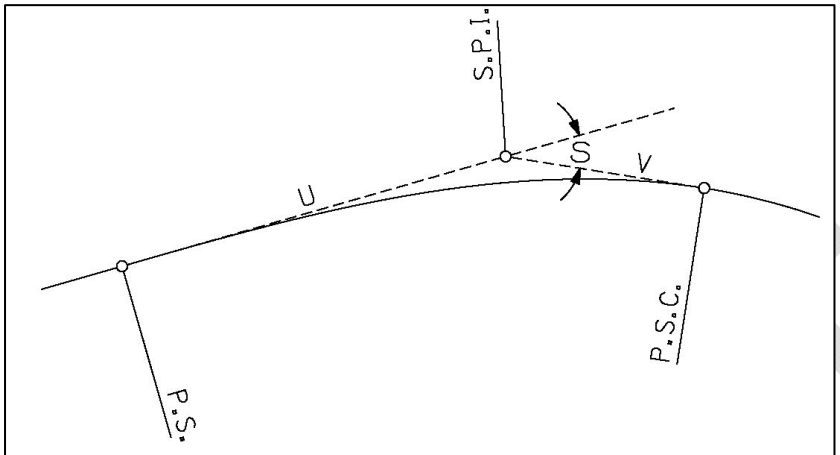


Figure 200-26: Spiral Curve Definitions (Cont'd)



S.P.I. = Intersection of spiral tangents.

U = The distance on the tangent from the P.S. to the intersection with a tangent through the P.S.C.; the longer spiral tangent.

V = The distance on the tangent through the P.S.C. from the P.S.C. to the intersection with the tangent through the P.S.; the shorter spiral tangent.

S = The central angle of the spiral from the P.S. to any given point on the spiral.

NOTATION

P.I. = Point of intersection of tangents.

P.S. = Point of change from spiral to tangent.

P.S.C. = Point of change from spiral to circular curve.

P.C.S. = Point of change from circular curve to spiral.

P.T. = Point of change from spiral to tangent.

P.R.S. = Point of reversing spirals.

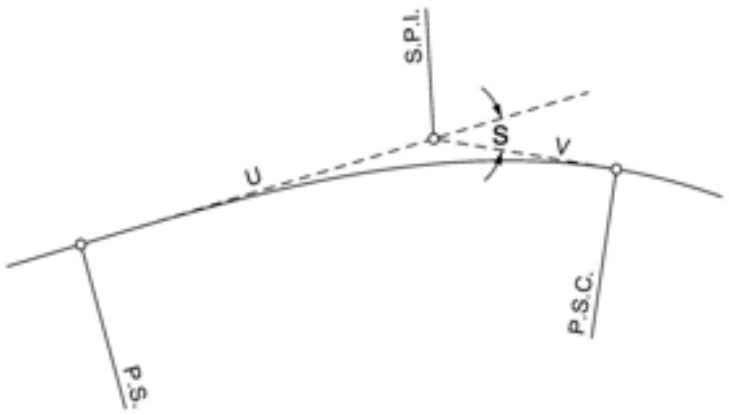
P.S.S. = Point of change from spiral to spiral.

P.O.S. = Point on spiral.

P.O.C. = Point on circular curve.

P.O.S.T. = Point on semi-tangent.

P.O.T. = Point on tangent.



S.P.I. = Intersection of spiral tangents.

U = The distance on the tangent from the P.S. to the intersection with a tangent through the P.S.C.; the longer spiral tangent.

V = The distance on the tangent through the P.S.C. from the P.S.C. to the intersection with the tangent through the P.S.; the shorter spiral tangent.

S = The central angle of the whole spiral.

NOTATION

P.I. = Point of intersection of tangents.

P.S. = Point of change from spiral to tangent.

P.S.C. = Point of change from spiral to circular curve.

P.C.S. = Point of change from circular curve to spiral.

P.T. = Point of change from spiral to tangent.

P.R.S. = Point of reversing spirals.

P.S.S. = Point of change from spiral to spiral.

P.O.S. = Point on spiral.

P.O.C. = Point on circular curve.

P.O.S.T. = Point on semi-tangent.

P.O.T. = Point on tangent.

1

Figure 200-27: Basic Horizontal Curve Formulas

Spiral Definition

The Standard Highway Spiral is a curve whose degree varies directly with its length, beginning at infinity at the P.S. and reaching a degree of curve equal to the circular curve at the P.S.C.

$\pi = 3.1415926536$

1 Radian = 57.295779513°

$a = [(100)(D)/Ls]$

$D = [(a)(Ls)/100] = [(200)(S)/Ls]$

$Ls = (100)(D)/a = (200)(S)/D$

S = Spiral Angle in Degrees

$S = (D)(Ls)/200 = (a)(Ls^2)/20{,}000 = (D^2)/(2)(a)$

$R = 5729.5779513/D = (5729.5779513)(Ls)/(200)(S) = (28.647889757)(Ls)/S$

$$\frac{X}{Ls} = \sum \left(\frac{\Theta^{2n-2}}{(2n-2)\,!\,(4n-3)\,(-1)^{n+1}} \right)$$

$$\frac{Y}{Ls} = \sum \left(\frac{\Theta^{2n-1}}{(2n-1)\,!\,(4n-1)\,(-1)^{n+1}} \right)$$

Following is the expanded form for values to n = 8 ("n" is not equal to 0)

Θ = S in Radians

$$X = Ls\left(1 - \frac{\Theta^2}{10} + \frac{\Theta^4}{216} - \frac{\Theta^6}{9360} + \frac{\Theta^8}{685{,}440} - \frac{\Theta^{10}}{76{,}204{,}800} + \frac{\Theta^{12}}{11{,}975{,}040{,}000} - \frac{\Theta^{14}}{2{,}528{,}170{,}444{,}800}\right)$$

Note: Designations of X and Y have been reversed to match most software. The ODOT Standard Highway Spiral Book values for X and Y are still accurate, just reversed.

$$Y = Ls\left(\frac{\Theta}{3} - \frac{\Theta^3}{42} + \frac{\Theta^5}{1320} - \frac{\Theta^7}{75{,}600} + \frac{\Theta^9}{6{,}894{,}720} - \frac{\Theta^{11}}{918{,}086{,}400} + \frac{\Theta^{13}}{168{,}129{,}561{,}600} - \frac{\Theta^{15}}{40{,}537{,}905{,}408{,}000} - - -\right)$$

2

1 Figure 200-28: Basic Horizontal Curve Formulas (Cont'd)

$$\text{Tan } i = \frac{Y}{X}$$

$$I = S - i$$

$$q = X - R \sin S = X - \frac{28.647\,889\,757\ Ls}{S} \sin S$$

$$p = Y - R\ (1 - \text{Cos } S) = Y - \frac{28.647\,889\,757\ Ls}{S} (1 - \text{Cos } S)$$

$$U = X - \frac{Y}{\tan S}$$

$$V = \frac{Y}{\sin S}$$

$$C = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$$

$$Ts = q + (R + p) \tan \frac{T\Delta}{2}$$

$$Es = \frac{R + p}{\text{Cos} \frac{T\Delta}{2}} - R$$

$$Lc = \text{Length of circular curve} = \frac{\pi R \Delta c}{180} = \frac{\pi R (T_\Delta - S_1 - S_2)}{180}$$

Note: Designations of X and Y have been reversed to match most software. The ODOT Standard Highway Spiral Book values for X and Y are still accurate, just reversed.

2

Figure 200-29: Parallel Tangents - Equal Length Reversing Curves

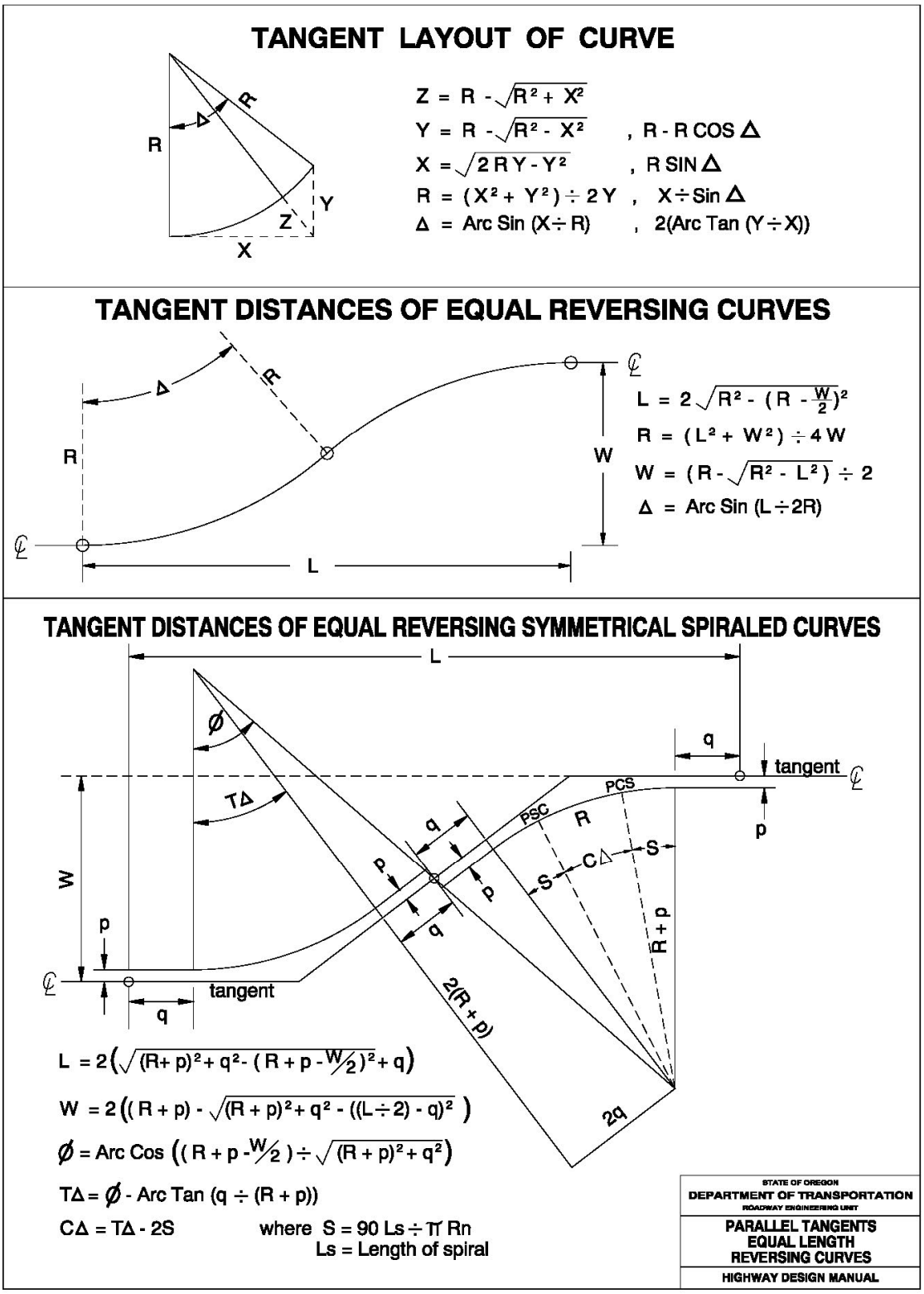


Figure 200-30: Parallel Tangents - Unequal Length Reversing Curves

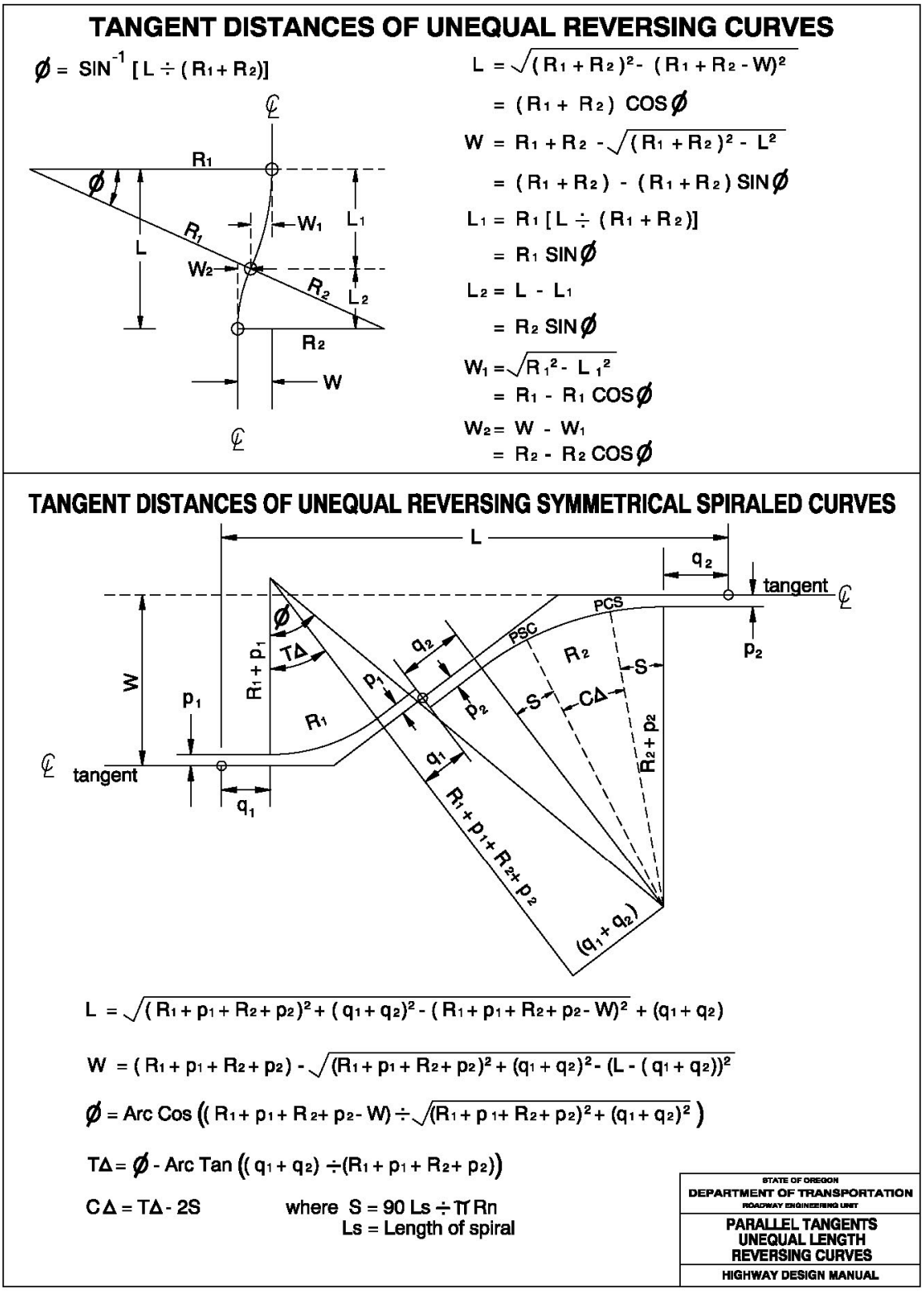
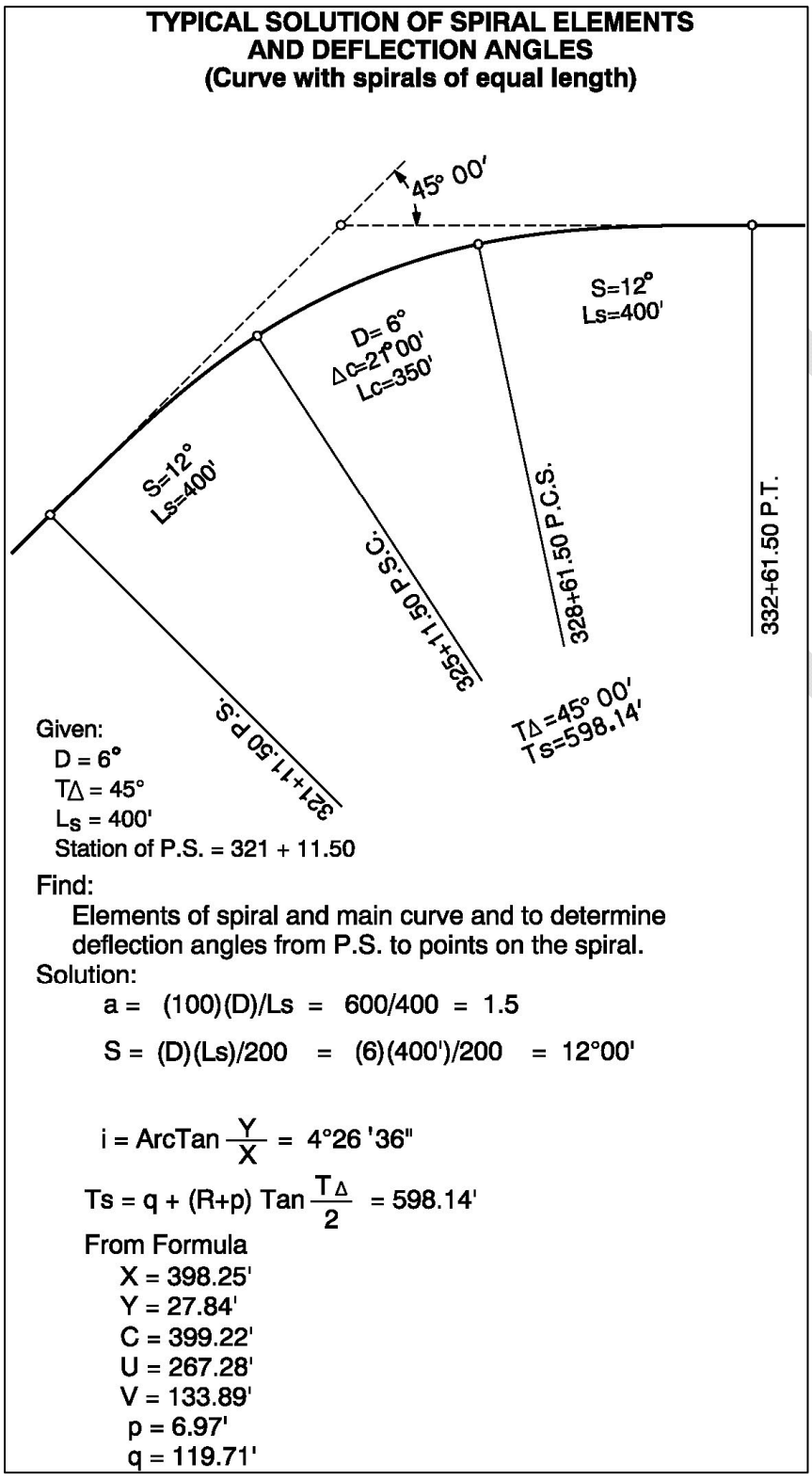
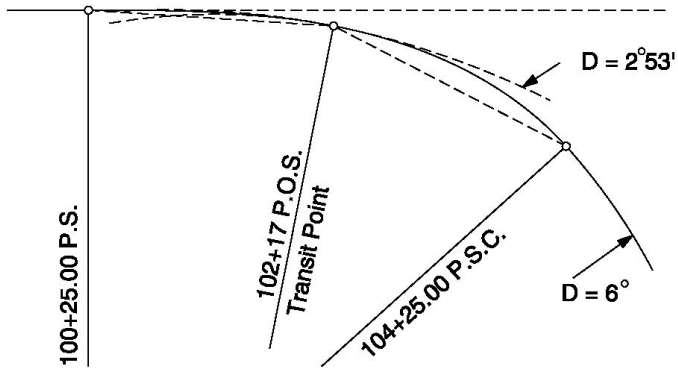


Figure 200-31: Spiral Solution - Example 1



1 Figure 200-32: Spiral Solution - Example 2

INTERMEDIATE SETUP ON SPIRAL WITH DEFLECTIONS



Given:
S = 12° 00'
D = 6°
a = 1.5
Ls = 400'
P.S. = 100 + 25.00
P.S.C. = 104 + 25.00

Find:
Assume it is necessary to make intermediate setup at station 102 + 17

Solution:
RULE: A spiral deviates from the circular curve common to it at any point at the same rate as it deviates from the tangent at the P.S. Therefore, at any point on the spiral the deflection angle from the tangent at that point to any other point on the spiral is equal to the deflection angle for a circular curve of the same radius as the spiral at the intermediate setup plus or minus the deflection from tangent at the P.S. to a point at an equivalent distance from the P. S. thus:

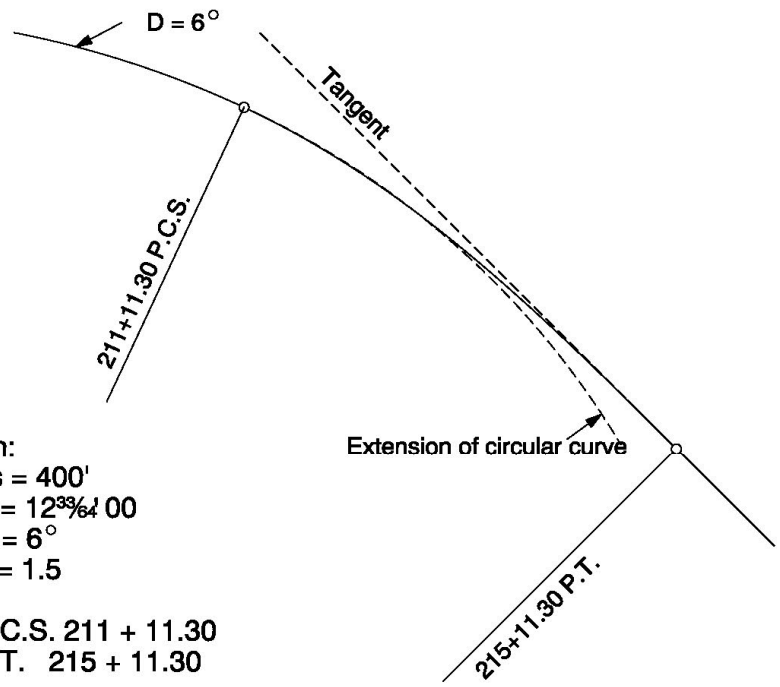
* Degree of curve at point of intermediate setup Sta. 102+17 $= \frac{(a)(\ell)}{100} = \frac{(1.5)(192)}{100} = 2°\ 52'\ 48"$

	Simple Curve Deflection		Spiral Deflection		Deflection (Instr. at Sta. 102+17)
P.S. 100 + 25.0	2°45'54"	-	0°55'18"	=	1°50'36"
+ 50	2°24'18"	-	0°41'48"	=	1°42'30"
101 + 00	1°41'12"	-	0°20'30"	=	1°20'36"
+ 50	0°57'54"	-	0°06'42"	=	0°51'12"
102 + 00	0°14'42"	-	0°00'24"	=	0°14'21"
Transit Pt. + 17	0°00'00"	-	0°00'00"	=	0°00'00"
+ 50	0°28'30"	+	0°01'36"	=	0°30'06"
103 + 00	1°11'42"	+	0°10'18"	=	1°22'00"
+ 50	1°54'54"	+	0°26'30"	=	2°21'24"
104 + 00	2°38'06"	+	0°50'12"	=	3°28'18"
P.S.C. 104 + 25.0	2°59'42"	+	1°04'54"	=	4°04'36"

2

Figure 200-33: Spiral Solution - Example 3

DEFLECTIONS TO SPIRAL FROM P.S.C. OR P.C.S.



Given:
Ls = 400'
S = 12 33/64' 00
D = 6°
a = 1.5

P.C.S. 211 + 11.30
P.T. 215 + 11.30

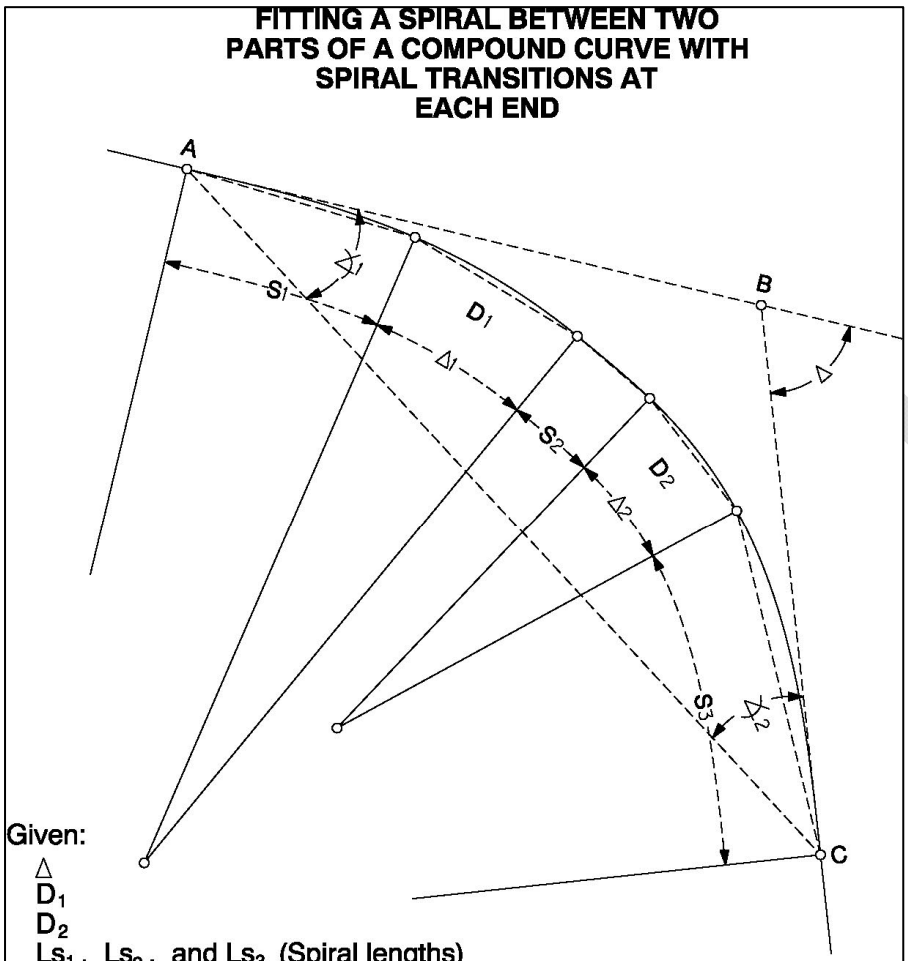
Find:
Deflections angles from the tangent to the curve at P.C.S.

Solution:
To back the spiral in from P.C.S.:
RULE: A spiral curve and a circular curve which coincide at any point (as at the P.C.S.) deviate from each other at the same rate as the spiral does from the tangent at the P.S.

Therefore, to obtain deflection angles from the tangent to the curve at the P.C.S. to the spiral, compute deflection angles to the circular curve and subtract therefrom the deflection angles to the spiral at corresponding distances from the P.S.

STATION	Simple Curve Deflection (D = 6°)		Spiral Deflection		Deflections (Instrument Setup at P.C.S.)
P.C.S.211+11.30	0°00'00"	—	0°00'00"	=	0°00'00"
211+50	1°09'42"	—	0°02'12"	=	1°07'30"
211+75	1°57'42"	—	0°06'06"	=	1°48'36"
212+00	2°39'42"	—	0°11'48"	=	2°27'54"
212+35	3°42'42"	—	0°23'00"	=	3°19'42"
212+80	5°03'42"	—	0°42'42"	=	4°21'00"
213+20	6°15'42"	—	1°05'18"	=	5°10'24"
213+50	7°09'42"	—	1°25'30"	=	5°44'12"
214+00	8°39'42"	—	2°05'00"	=	6°34'42"
214+50	10°09'42"	—	2°52'06"	=	7°17'36"
215+00	11°39'42"	—	3°46'36"	=	7°53'06"
P.T. 215+11.30	12°00'00"	—	4°00'00"		8°00'00"

Figure 200-34: Spiral Solution - Example 4



Given:

Δ
D_1
D_2
Ls_1, Ls_2, and Ls_3 (Spiral lengths)

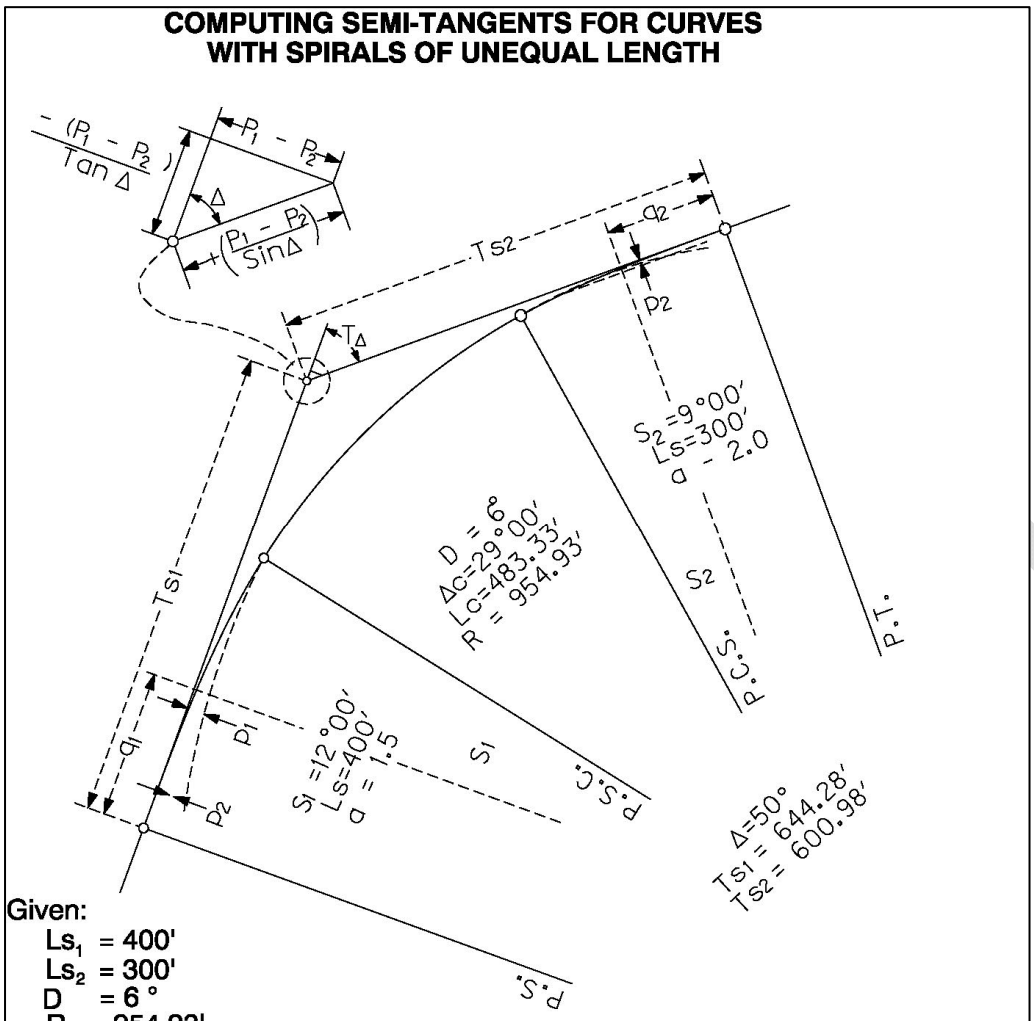
Find:

Semi-tangents

Solution:

(1) Ascertain Δ_1 (by assumption or measurement).
(2) Then $\Delta_2 = \Delta - \Delta_1 - S_1, - S_2, - S_3$.
(3) Find long chords for circular curves and spirals.
(4) Figure bearings for chords.
(5) Compute coordinates for point C.
(6) Compute length and bearing of long chord A - C.
(7) Then $\measuredangle_2 = \Delta - \measuredangle_1$:
(8) Solve triangle ABC for semi-tangents AB and BC. (Three angles and one side known).
(9) Spiral S_2 may be used to connect curves D_1 and D_2 by choosing that portion of the spiral having curvature intermediate between the radius of the two circular curves: thus if $D = 3°$ and $D_2 = 10°$ the connecting spiral will have a varied radius from $3°$ to $10°$ omitting the portion of the spiral below $3°$.
Deflection angles from P.C.S. or P.S.C. may be computed in the same manner as an intermediate setup on the spiral (see Example II).

Figure 200-35: Spiral Solution - Example 5



Given:

$Ls_1 = 400'$
$Ls_2 = 300'$
$D = 6°$
$R = 954.93'$
$\Delta = 50° 00'$

Find: Semi-tangents (Ts_1 and Ts_2) and external (Es_1 or Es_2).

Solution:

To compute semi-tangents ascertain the spiral elements.

Then

$$Ts_1 = q_1 + (R + p_2)\ \text{Tan}\ \frac{T\Delta}{2} - \frac{p_1 - p_2}{\text{Tan}\ T\Delta} \qquad Ts_2 = q_2 + (R + p_2)\ \text{Tan}\ \frac{T_\Delta}{2} + \frac{p_1 - p_2}{\text{Sin}\ T_\Delta}$$

Es_1 and Es_2 formulas are valid only if S_1 and S_2 are equal to or less than ½ Δ.

$$Es_1 = \sqrt{(Ts_1 - q_1)^2 + (R + p_1)^2} - R \qquad Es_2 = \sqrt{(Ts_2 - q_2)^2 + (R + p_2)^2} - R$$

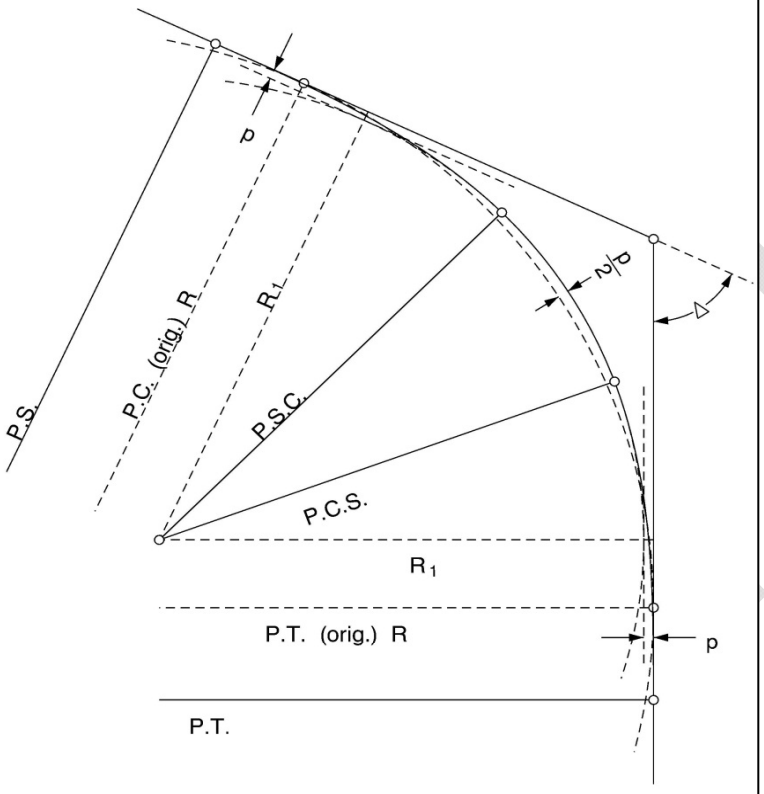
$$Ts_1 = 199.71' + (954.93' + 3.92') \times 0.466\ 307\ 7 - \frac{(6.97' - 3.92')}{1.191\ 754} = 644.28'$$

$$Ts_2 = 149.88' + (954.93' + 3.92') \times 0.466\ 307\ 7 + \frac{(6.97' - 3.92')}{0.766\ 044} = 600.98'$$

Rule: Ls_1 = Longer spiral

Figure 200-36: Spiral Solution - Example 6

FITTING EXISTING CIRCULAR CURVE ALIGNMENT WITH SPIRALED CURVES REQUIRING A MINIMUM SHIFT OF ALIGNMENT



Given:
- R
- Δ
- Ls

Find: R_1

Solution:

To retain present tangents and fit spiraled alignment with least possible shift of circular curve.

The new curve will be sharper and it should lay outside of the old curve at the vertex, and the distance between the vertexes of the two curves should be equal to half the spiral

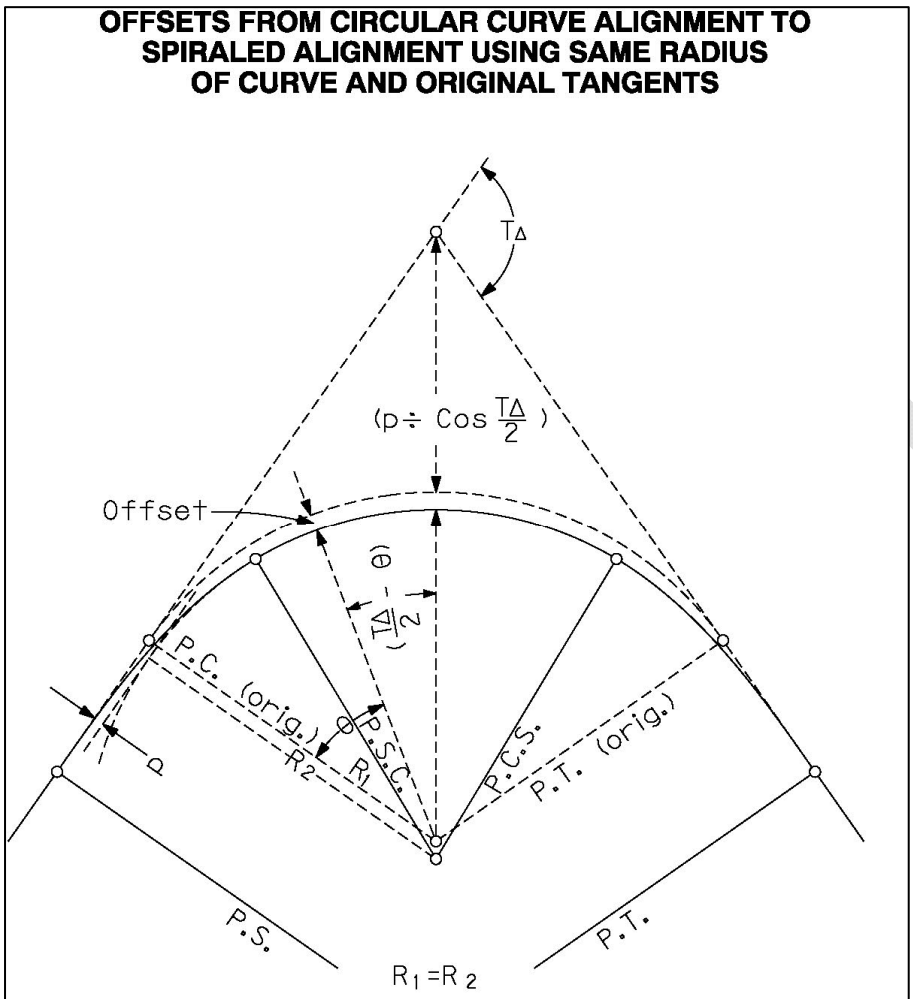
offsets, $\frac{p}{2}$

$$\text{Then } R_1 = R - \frac{p + \frac{p}{2}\cos\frac{\Delta}{2}}{1 - \cos\frac{\Delta}{2}}$$

In solving this equation, first assume a value for "p" slighty greater than the value of "p" for a radius of curve equal to the original curve. Base the assumption on an estimate of the new curve radius required.

Then revise the value of "p" to fit alignment.

Figure 200-37: Spiral Solution - Example 7



In fitting spiraled alignment to existing circular curve alignment, while retaining the same degree of main curve and the original tangents, it will be found that the new main curve will not be concentric with nor parallel to the original curve. The offset varies from a value of "p" as shown on the sketch to a value of (p ÷ Cos T_Δ ÷ 2) at the vertex. Between the point where the value of "p" applies to the P.S.C., the offsets from the original alignment to the new alignment may be found by obtaining the X coordinate to the point in question on the spiral and making correction for the offset to the original circular curve where that is necessary. Beyond the P.S.C. the following approximate formula will give values of the offset sufficiently close for practical purposes.

$$\text{Offset} = p \div \text{Cos}\frac{T_\Delta}{2}\left[\cos\left(\frac{T_\Delta}{2} - \theta\right)\right] \quad \text{Approximately}$$

Where θ = angle from the P.C. or P.T. of original circular curve to the point desired.

Figure 200-38: Spiral Solution - Example 8

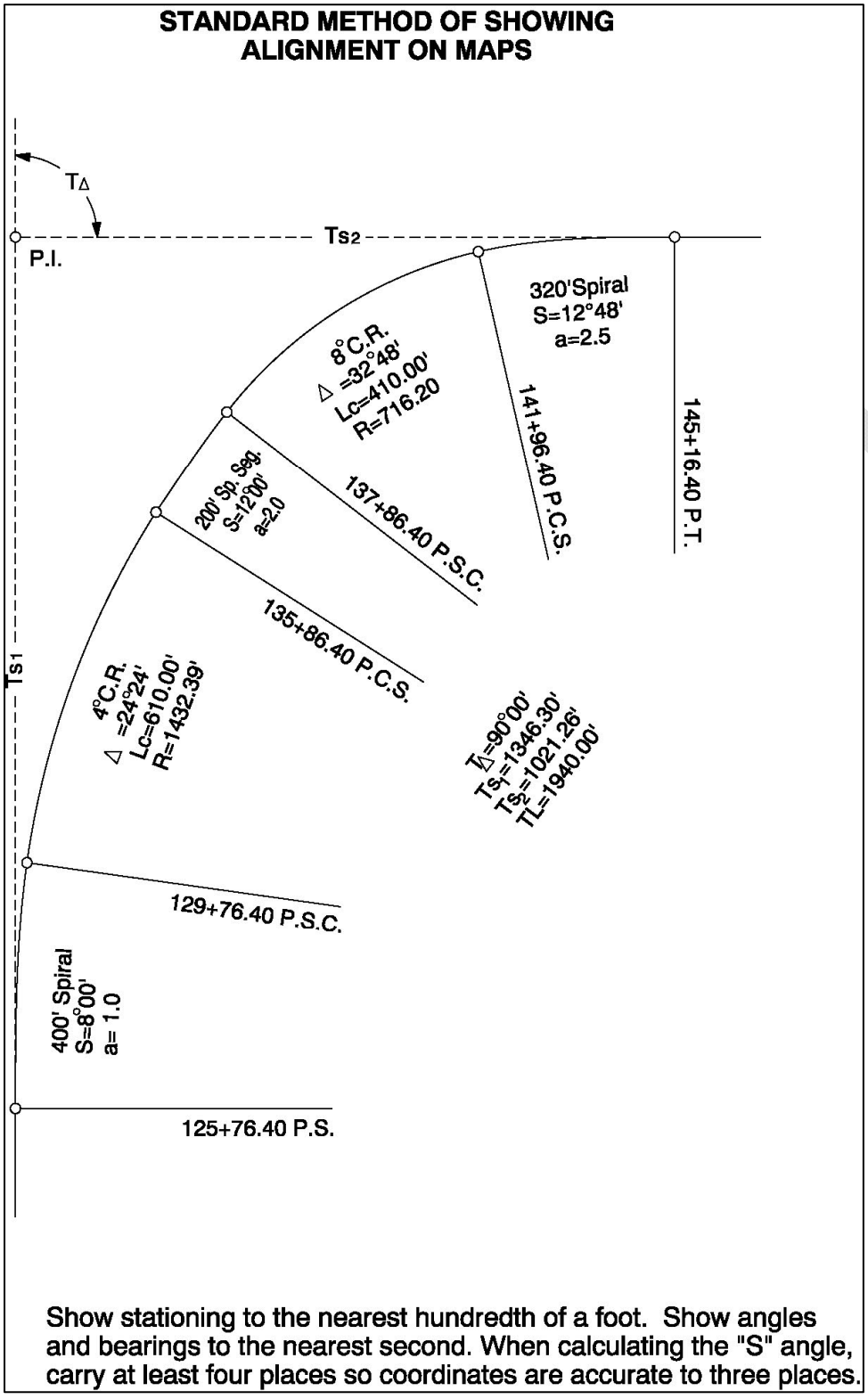


Figure 200-39: Spiral Solution - Example 9

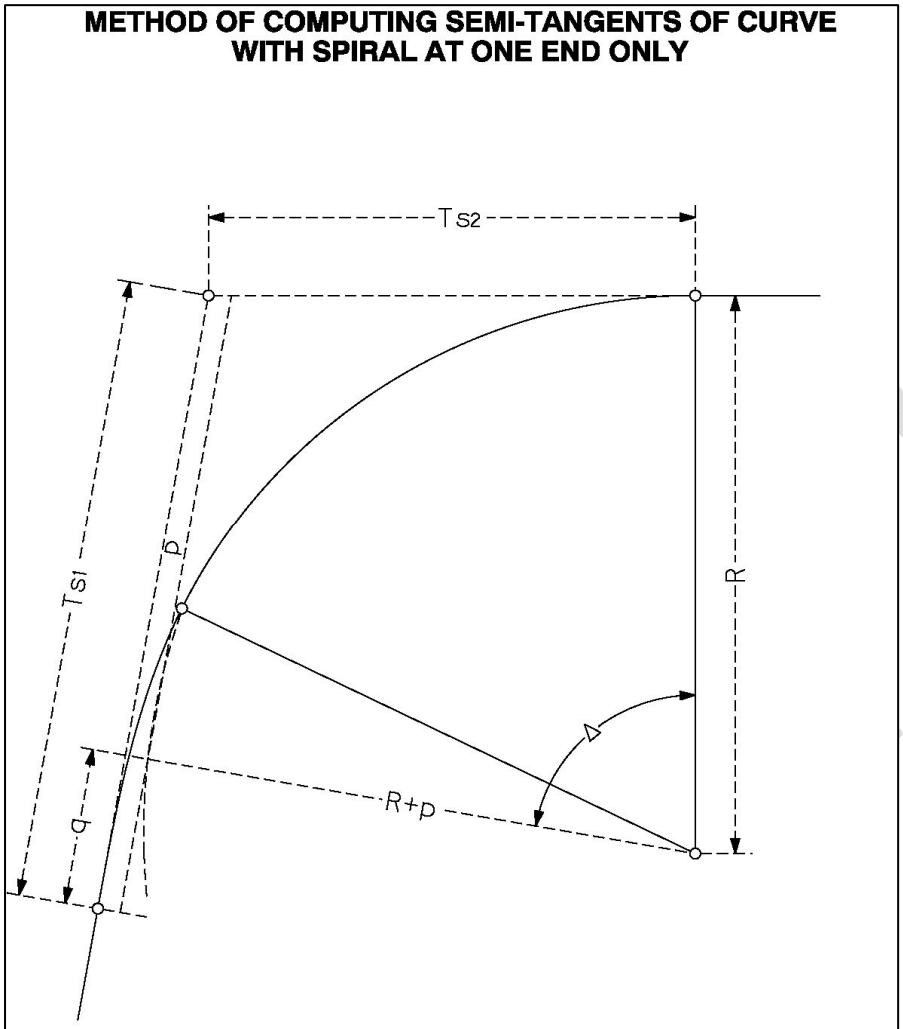
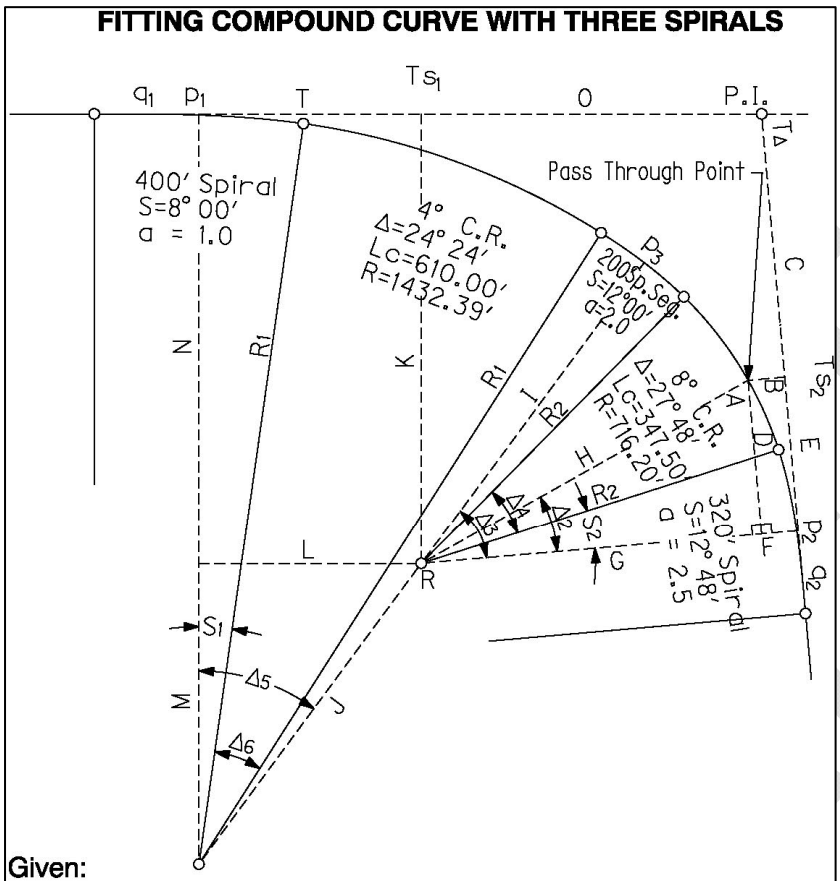


Figure 200-40: Spiral Solution - Example 10



Given:

With a fixed pass through point or a given or assumed semi-tangent (Ts_2), known P.I., TΔ, R_1 and R_2, spiral lengths.

Find:

Ts_2 (for fixed point) or Ts_1 (for known Ts_2)

Solution:

FIXED PASS THROUGH POINT

Calculate C and B along and perpendicular to the Ts semi-tangent tangent Then ....

$B = F$, $G = (R_2 + p_2) - F$, $H = R_2$, $\cos\Delta_2 = \frac{G}{H}$, $D = H \sin\Delta_2$,

$E = D$ and $Ts_2 = C + E + q_2$

GIVEN OR ASSUMED SEMI-TANGENT (Ts_2)

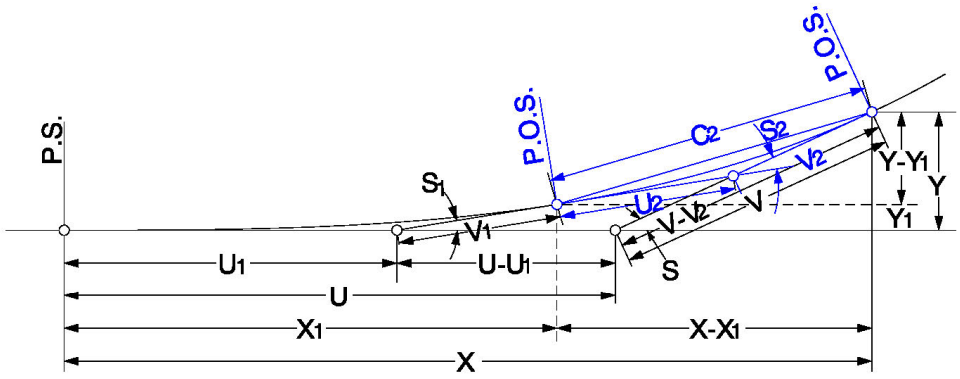
Calculate coordinates for the radius point of "R_2" from Ts_2. Calculate O and K along and perpendicular to the Ts_1, semi-tangent. 'p_3' is the perpendicular distance between R_1 and R_2, when tangent to each other. Then $I = R_2 + p_3$.

$J = R_1 - I$, $K = N$, $M = (R_1 + p_1) - N$, $\cos\Delta_5 = \frac{M}{J}$, $L = J \sin\Delta_5$,

$T = L$, $\Delta_6 = \Delta_5 - (S_1 + \Delta$ for D_1 for ½ length of intermediate spiral), $\Delta_3 = T\Delta - \Delta_5$, $\Delta_4 = \Delta_3 - (S_3 + \Delta$ for R_2 for ½ length of intermediate spiral) $Ts_1 = O + T + q_1$; the use of ½ the length of the intermediate spiral is a close approximation of the true answer.

Figure 200-41: Spiral Solution - Example 11

DETERMINING U, V, AND C DISTANCES FOR SEGMENT OF A SPIRAL



Given:

200' spiral segment, a=1.0, connecting 3° curve to 5° curve.

Find:

S, U, C, and V distances for that spiral segment.

Solution:

The given spiral segment is that portion of the Standard Highway Spiral , a=1.0, between the P.O.S. at Ls = 300' and the P.O.S. at Ls = 500'. In the solution of the given problem S,U,V, X, and Y are values for L = 500', S_1,U_1,V_1 ,X_1, and Y_1 are values for L = 300' m and S_2,U_2, C_2 and V_2 are the values to be found for the given spiral segment.

Ls = 500', S = 12° 30' , U = 334.17', V = 167.43', Y = 36.24'
X = 497.63'

Ls = 300', S_1 = 4° 30' , U_1= 200.06', V_1= 100.06', Y_1= 7.85'
X_1 = 299.81'

$$S_2 = S - S_1 \qquad V_2 = V - \frac{(U - U_1)\text{Sin } S_1}{\text{Sin } S_2}$$

$$U_2 = \frac{(U - U_1)\text{ Sin } S}{\text{Sin } S_2} - V_1 \qquad C_2 = \sqrt{(X_1 - X)2 + (Y_1 - Y)2}$$

$$S_2 = 12° 30' - 4° 30' = 8° 00'$$

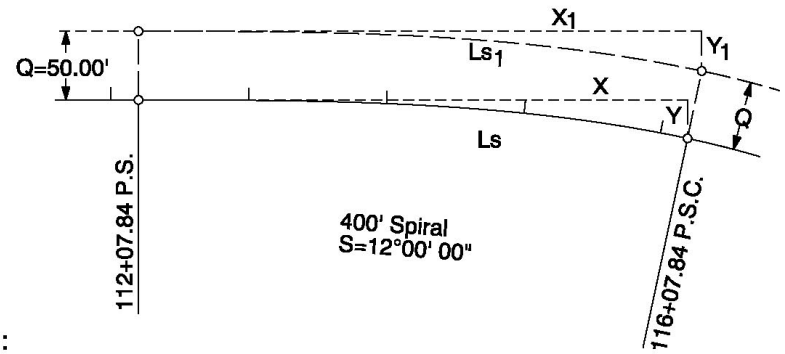
$$U_2 = \frac{(334.17' - 200.06')\text{ Sin } 12°30'}{\text{Sin } 8°00'} - 100.06' = 108.506'$$

$$V_2 = 167.43' - \frac{(334.17' - 200.06')\text{ Sin } 4°30'}{\text{Sin } 8°00'} = 91.83'$$

$$C_2 = \sqrt{(36.24' - 7.85')\ 2 + (497.63' - 299.81')\ 2} = 199.847'$$

Figure 200-42: Spiral Solution - Example 12

COMPUTING OFFSET SPIRALS



Given:

Ls = 400'
a = 1.5
S = 12° 00' 00"
Q = 50.00' (Outside offset)

NOTE:
The offset spiral is not related to the Standard Highway Spiral. Therefore use the following method.

Find:
Offset spiral.

Solution:

θ = S (in radians) for the base spiral = $\frac{S}{57.29578}$

Q = Offset in feet

$Ls_1 = Ls \pm Q(\theta)$ (+) for outside offset

$X_1 = X \pm Q \sin S$ (-) for inside offset

$Y_1 = Y \pm Q(1 - \cos S)$ Use (+) for outside offset

To compute the spiral offset as it would be run in the field; setting stakes at right angles to and "Q" offset from the corresponding stations on the base spiral with transit setup at the P.S. or P.T. of the offset spiral:

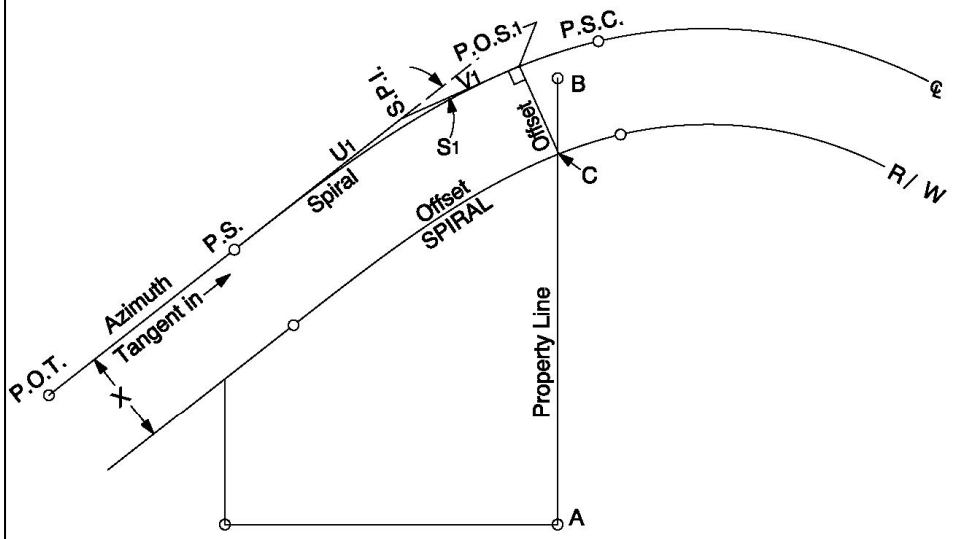
(1) Find the S angle for each station.
(2) Determine length of the offset spiral, Ls_1, from P.S. or P.T. to each station.
(3) Using S angles found in step 1, determine the corresponding X and Y values for each station of the base spiral.
(4) Determine the X_1 and Y_1 values for the offset spiral.
(5) Determine the offset spiral deflections from $\tan i = \frac{Y_1}{X_1}$
(6) Calculate chords using formula in example XI.

TABULATION OF RESULTS FOR ABOVE DATA

STATION	Ls	S	L1	Y	X	Y1	X1	i1	C1
112+07.84 P.S.	0.00	0°00'00"	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0°00'00"	0.00
112+50	42.16	0°08'00"	42.28	0.03	42.16	0.03	42.28	0°02'24"	42.28
113+00	92.16	0°38'13"	92.72	0.34	92.16	.034	92.72	0°12'36"	50.44
113+50	142.16	1°30'57"	143.48	1.25	142.15	1.27	143..47	0°30'36"	50.76
114+00	192.16	2°46'10"	194.58	3.10	192.12	3.16	194.54	0°55'48"	51.10
114+50	242.16	4°23'53"	246.00	6.20	242..01	6.35	245.84	1°28'48"	51.39
115+00	292.16	6°24'07"	297.75	10.88	291.79	11.19	297.36	2°09'18"	51.75
115+50	342.16	8°46'50"	349.82	17.45	341.35	18.04	348.98	2°57'30"	52.07
116+00	392.16	11°32'03"	402.23	26.25	390.57	27.26	400.57	3°53'36"	52.41
116+07.84 P.S.C.	400.00	12°00'00"	410.47	27.84	398.25	28.93	408.65	4°03'00"	8.24

1 Figure 200-43: Spiral Solution - Example 13

SOLUTION OF OFFSET SPIRAL INTERSECTING WITH PROPERTY LINE



Given:

Centerline geometry, offset value, coordinate of P.O.T. on tangent in, azimuth of tangent in, coords of point A and B or coords of A or B and azimuth to the other. "Lg" is a generic value representing the guess length of spiral to offset point.

Find:

Coordinate of intersect point C.

Solution:

This problem has no direct solution. It can be solved by iteration. This is not as difficult as it seems.

Begin at the P.S. of the spiral and guess an "Lg" length. Using the "Lg" and the "a" value generate "U_1" and "V_1" and "S " values for trial solution. The solution is to coordinate from the P.S. to the S.P.I. to the P.S.C. of the P.O.S. along the spiral. Next coordinate a point "C" from the P.O.S.$_1$ 90° off the tangent between the S.P.I. and P.O.S. out the offset distance "X". Finally inverse between point "C" and point "A" and determine the azimuth of point "C" to "A". Compare this azimuth to the azimuth between point "B" to "A". When azimuths are identical you have solved for the intersect.

ALGORITHM FOR ITERATION

Lg_1 = $Guess_1$ = Length of spiral for Trial #1
Lg_2 = $Guess_2$ = Length of spiral for Trial #2
Ls_3 = ? = Projected length from linear regression

"Equation" is all calculations to produce difference in azimuths (d_1 , d_2).

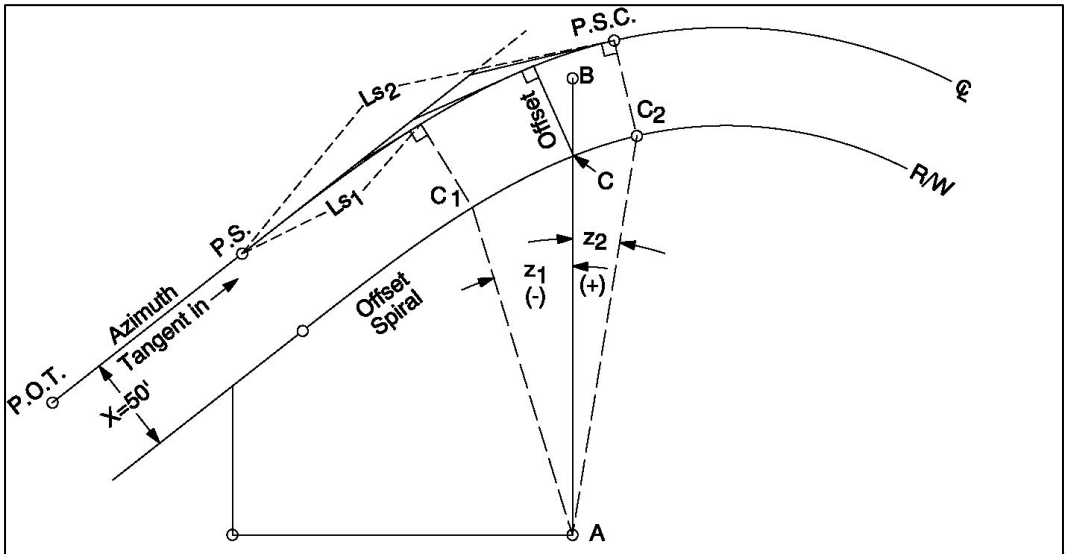
Solve "equation" using Lg_1 - result is z_1
Solve "equation" using Lg_2 - result is z_2

Given Lg_1 , z_1 , Lg_2 , z_2 , compute Ls_3:

$Ls_3 = Lg_2 - (z_2 (Lg_1 - Lg_2) / (z_1 - z_2))$

2

Figure 200-44: Spiral Solution - Example 14



Given:

Centerline geometry, D - 8, Spiral 400', offset 50', coordinate of P.O.T. on tangent in, azimuth of tangent in, coords of point "A" and "B" or coords of (A or B) and azimuth to the other.

Find:

Coordinate of intersect point C.

Solution:

$Lg_1 = Guess_1 = 300'$ $Lg_2 = Guess_2 = 400'$

Calculate "z_1" by assuming a "Ls_1" length and computing for "U_1", "V_1" and "S_1". Turn a 90° and "X" distance from "V_1" tangent at point on spiral to offset spiral. Inverse between point "C_1" and "A" for azimuth. Take the difference between "C " to "A" and "B" to "A" and this is angle z_1. Repeat steps for z_2.

Note:

To reduce the number of iterations select "Lg_1" and "Lg_2" as close as possible to point "C". Keep in mind the positive and negative "z" values.

$Ls_3 = 400' - (8.9151\ (300' - 400') / (-3.3458 - 8.9151) = 327.28839'$

$Ls_3 = 327.28839' - (0.299(400' - 327.28839') / (8.9151 - 0.299) = 324.76512'$

$Ls_3 = 324.76512' - (-0.0276(327.28839' - 324.76512') / (0.299 - (-0.0276)) = 324.97835'$

$Ls_3 = 324.97835' - (0.0001\ (324.76512' - 324.97835') / (-0.0276 - (0.0001)) = 324.97758'$

In this example the L_3 starts to repeat itself to significant figures, & it is solved.

Flow Diagram for "Lg" in Ls_3 equation

Lg_1 Lg_2 Ls_3

Lg_2 becomes new Lg_1, and Ls_3 becomes, new Lg_2.

Lg_1 Lg_2 Ls_3

Lg_1 Lg_2 Ls_3

Figure 200-45: Establish Local Tangent on Horizontal Curves

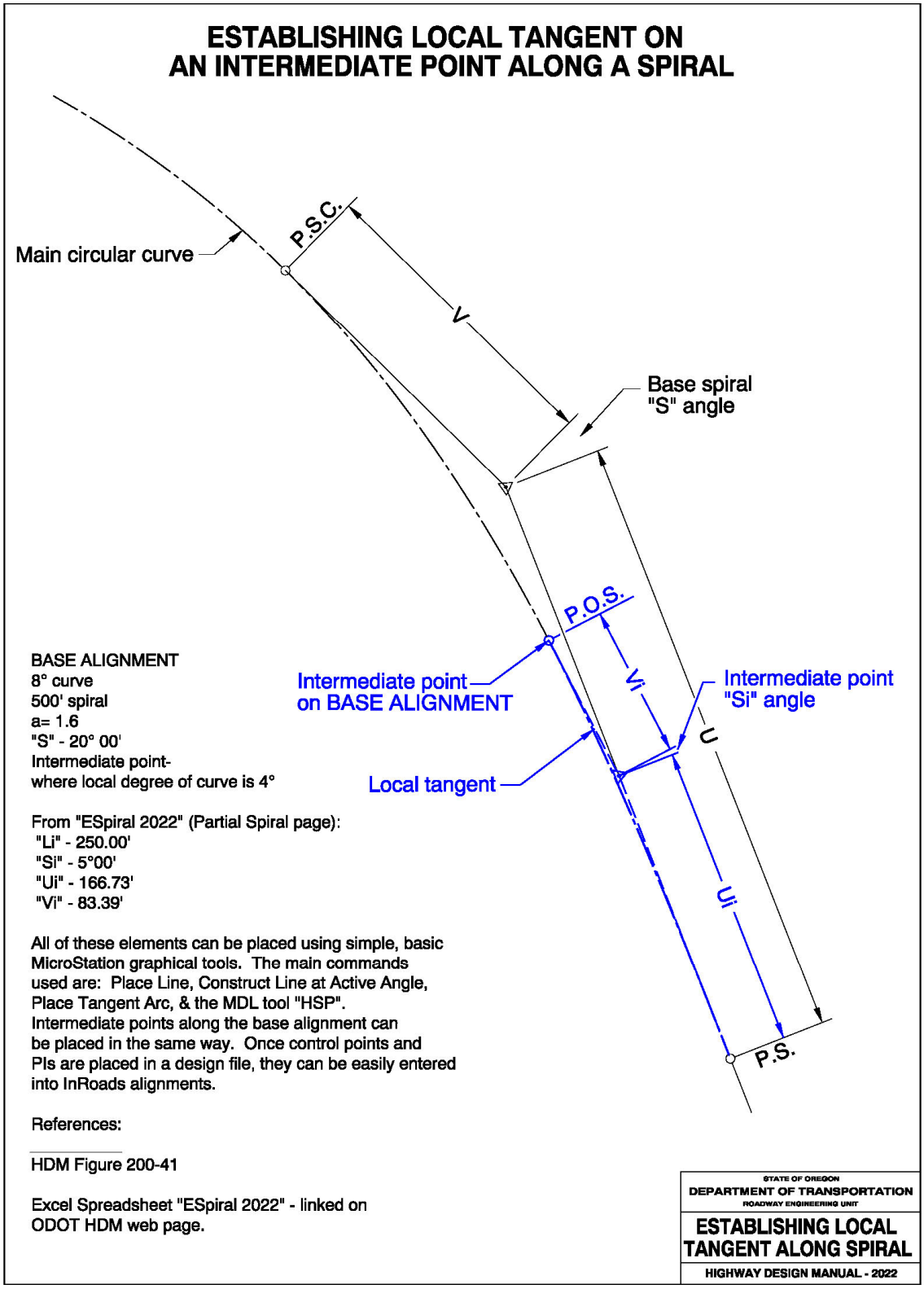


Figure 200-46: Using Spiral Segment in Compound Horizontal Curve Situations

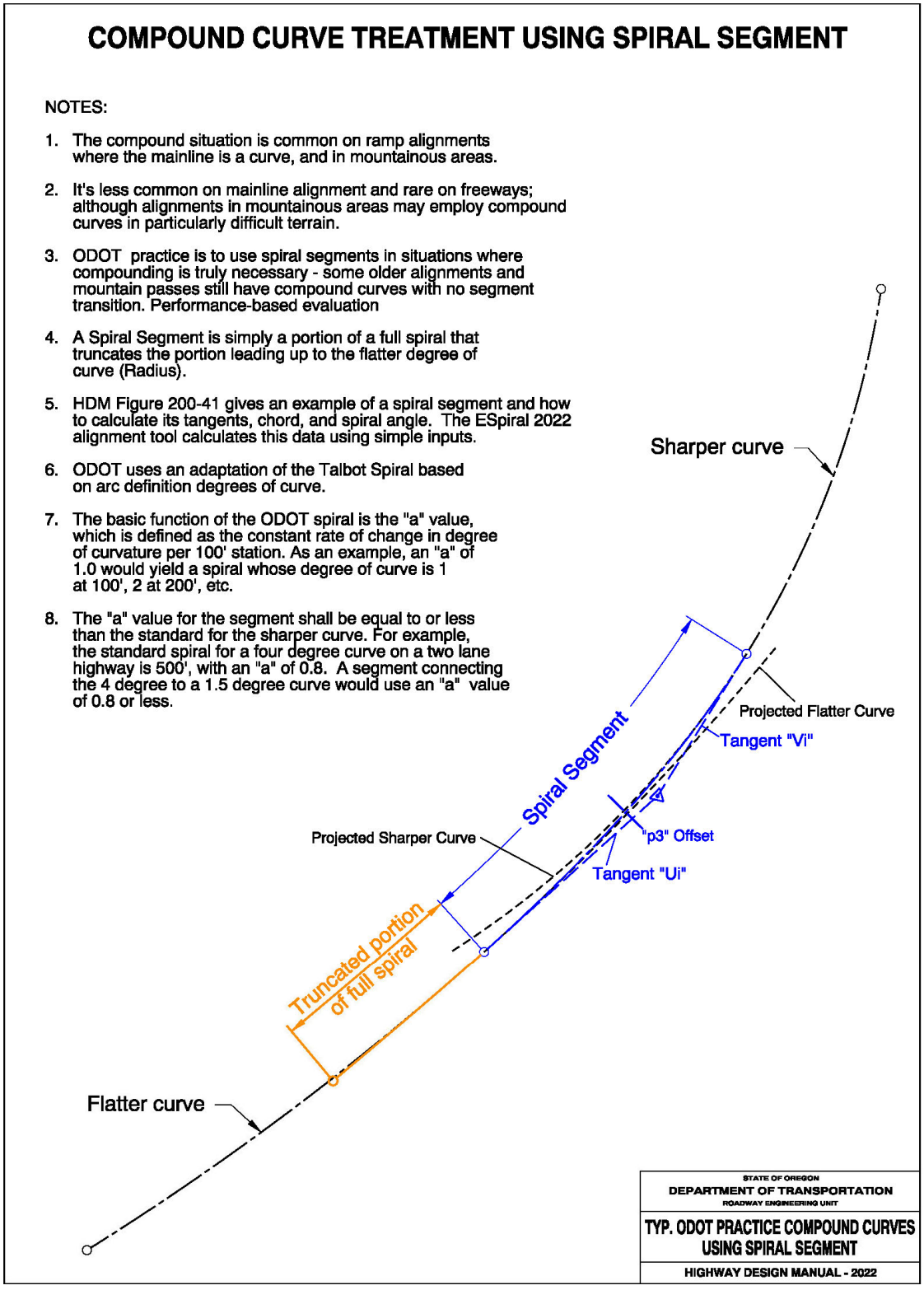


Figure 200-47: Establishing Ramp Takeoff/Touchdown Points and Ramp Angles from Local Tangent

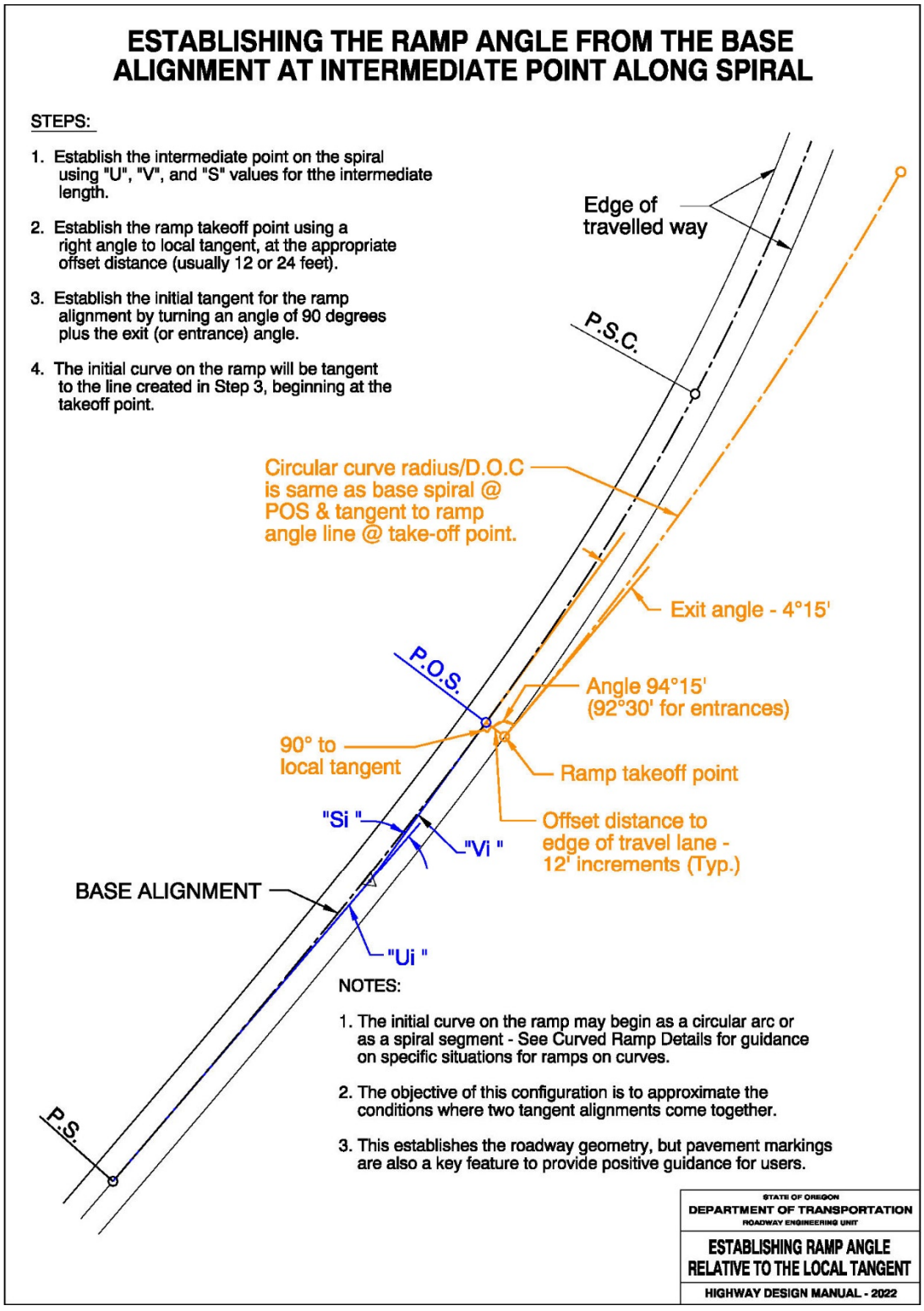


Figure 200-48: Establishing Spiral Segment Control Points
(in conjunction with ESpiral ~~2022~~ spreadsheet)

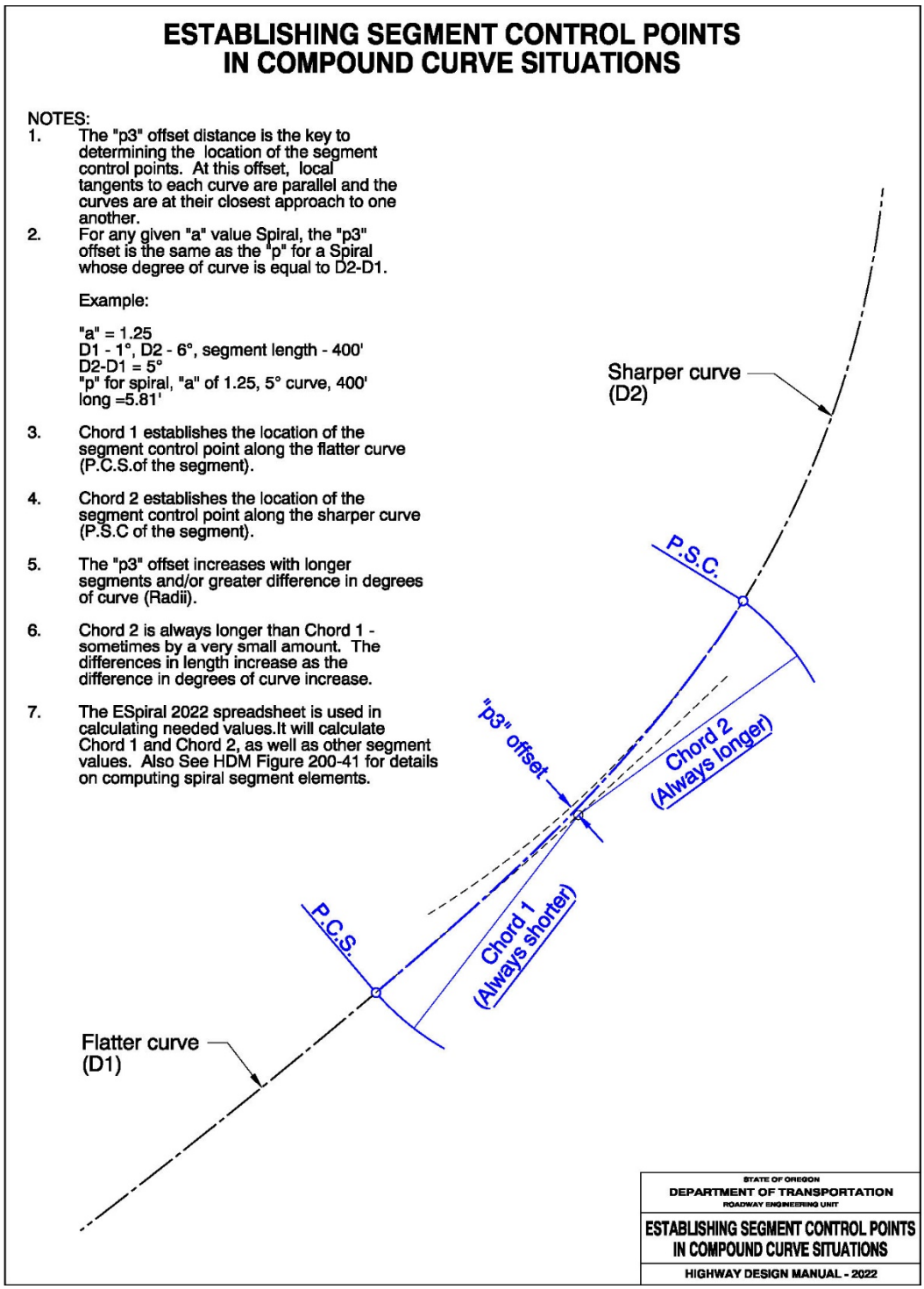
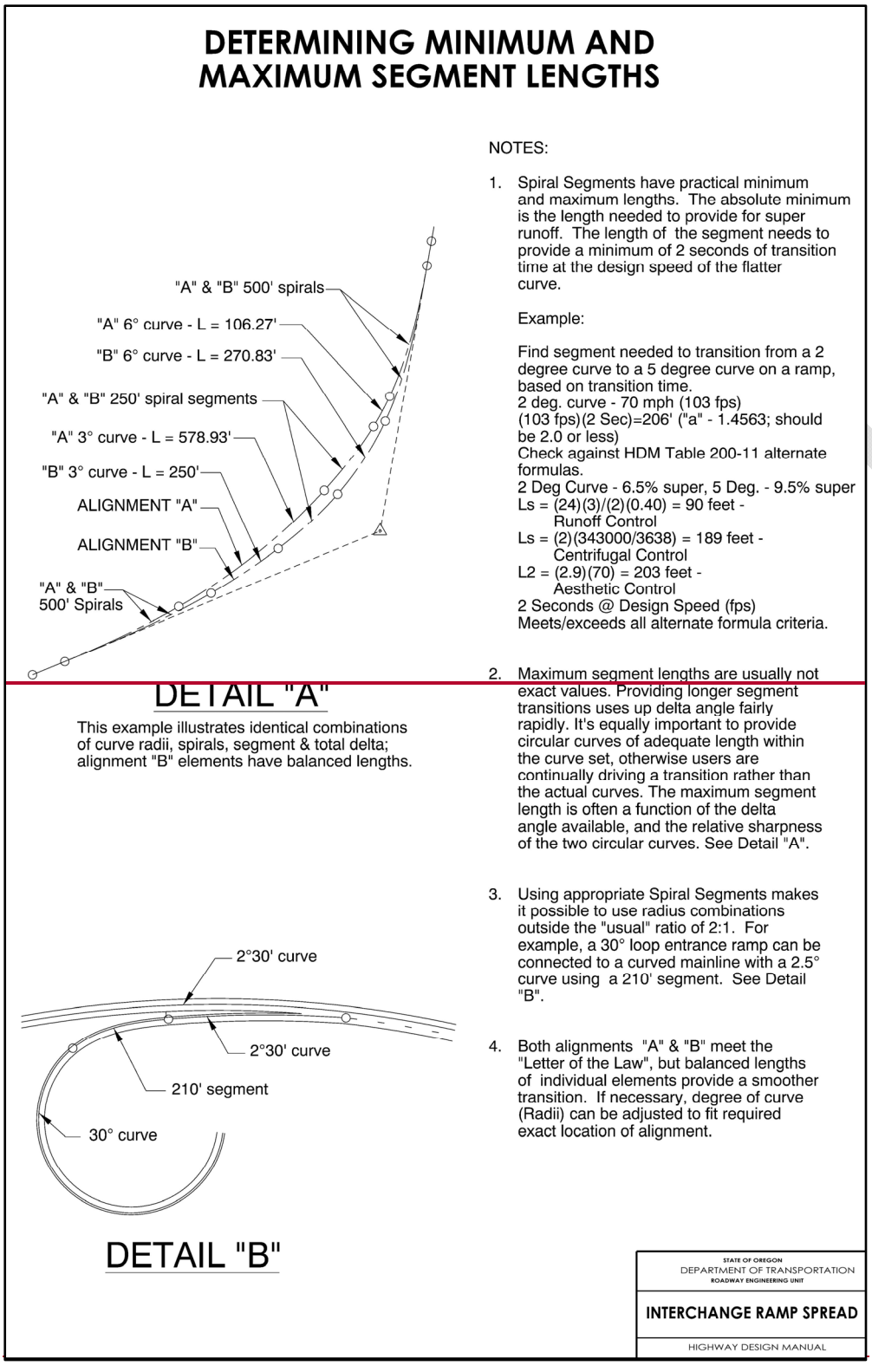


Figure -: Example of Spiral Segment in a Mainline Alignment Situation



Section 219 Vertical Alignment

Design (centerline) vertical curves to provide sight distance at least equal to the stopping sight distance for the indicated design speed. The vertical sight distance is the distance from the operator's eye, assumed to be 3.5 feet above the pavement to the point 2 feet above the pavement. While objects less than 2 feet in height may be encountered on Oregon highways, it is rare that a complete emergency stop would be required to avoid such an object. Therefore, it is typically not practical to design for an object height of less than 2 feet. **The minimum lengths of vertical curves which may be used for the various design speeds are shown in Figure 200-49 and Figure 200-50.**

It is desirable to increase the length of vertical curves over that shown whenever it is economically possible. **When the algebraic difference in the grades is small, the minimum curve length is three times the design speed.** This is represented by the vertical lines in the lower left hand corner of Figure 200-49 and Figure 200-50. An angle point is considered a curve with a length of zero, and therefore, does not meet the minimum standard.

The intent of 3R projects is to preserve and extend the pavement life of the roadway. Reconstructing the vertical alignment of preservation projects is typically outside the project purpose, need, and scope. However, analysis of potential safety benefits is performed to determine the need to include vertical curve improvements.

See Section 1205 for additional information regarding rail crossing design requirements.

219.1 3R Freeway Vertical Curvature and Stopping Sight Distance

For all 3R freeways, stopping sight distance shall be those values established in the AASHTO Green Book for the selected design speed. See Chapter 3 of the Green Book for sight distance information.

DRAFT

219.2 3R Vertical Curvature and Stopping Sight Distance (All Highways Except Freeways)

For 3R projects, evaluate reconstruction of crest vertical curves if:

1. The crest obstructs ~~from~~the view ~~major hazards~~of roadway features, such as intersections, sharp horizontal curves, or narrow bridges, and the current year ADT is greater than 2000, or
2. The design speed based on the existing Stopping Distance is more than 20 mph below the ODOT Urban Standard (urban) or project design speed (rural) and the current year ADT is greater than 2000.

After evaluation, if reconstruction of the vertical curve is not justified or cost effective, or the curve is not reconstructed to new construction standards, a design exception is required.

219.3 4R Vertical Curvature (All Highways)

The minimum lengths of vertical curves which may be used for the various design speeds for crest vertical curves and sag vertical curves are shown in Figure 200-49 and Figure 200-50. The figures provide the Rate of Vertical Curvature (K) values based on design speed and stopping sight distance requirements. *It is desirable to increase the length of vertical curves over that shown whenever it is economically possible.* **When the algebraic difference in the grades is small, the minimum curve length is three times the design speed.** This is represented by the vertical lines in the lower left hand corner of Figure 200-49 and Figure 200-50. **An angle point is considered a curve with a length of zero, and therefore, does not meet the minimum standard.** Figure 200-51 and Figure 200-52 provide information for sag and crest vertical curve formulas and design.

DRAFT

Figure 200-49: SSD Crest Vertical Curve

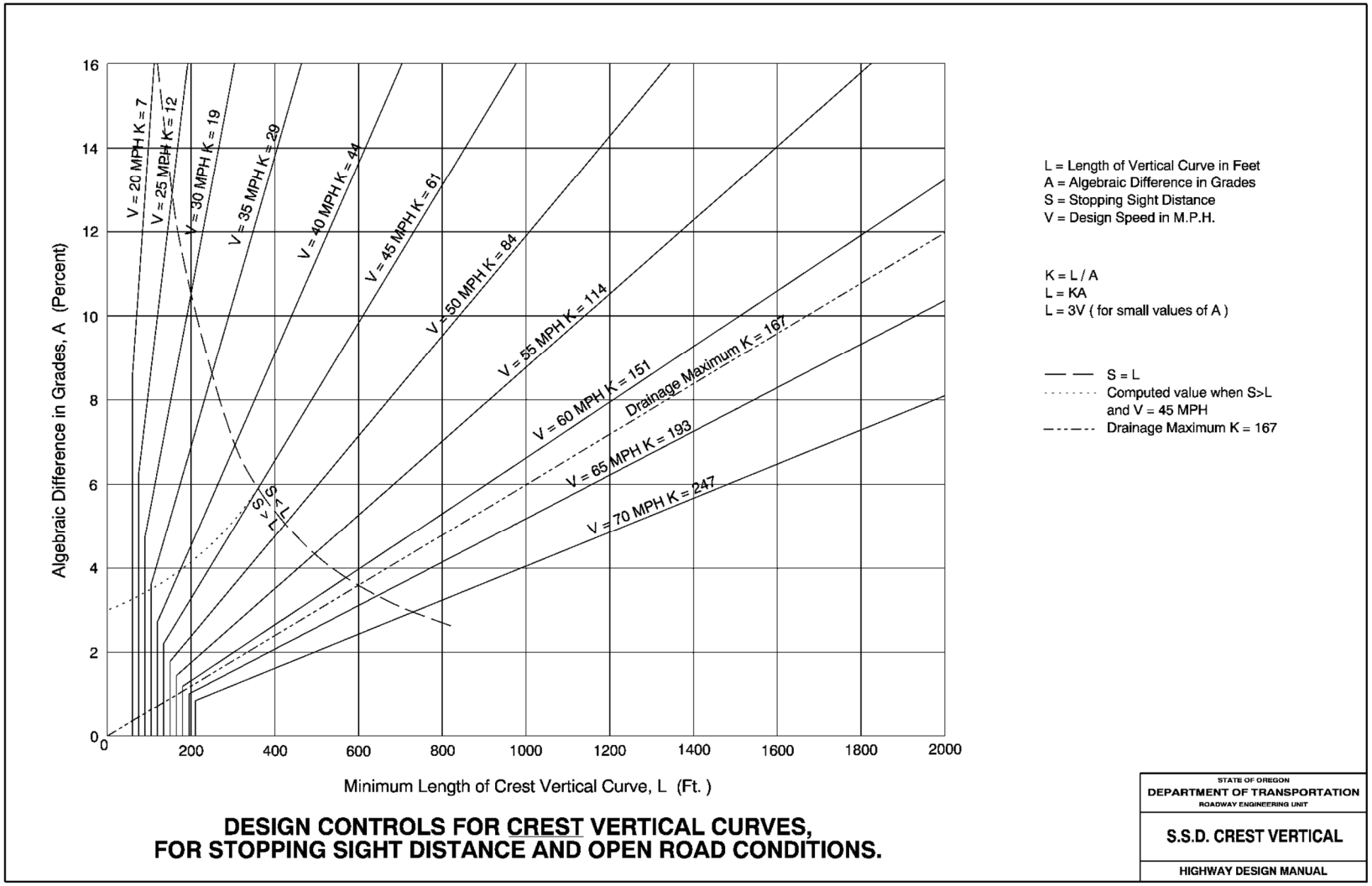
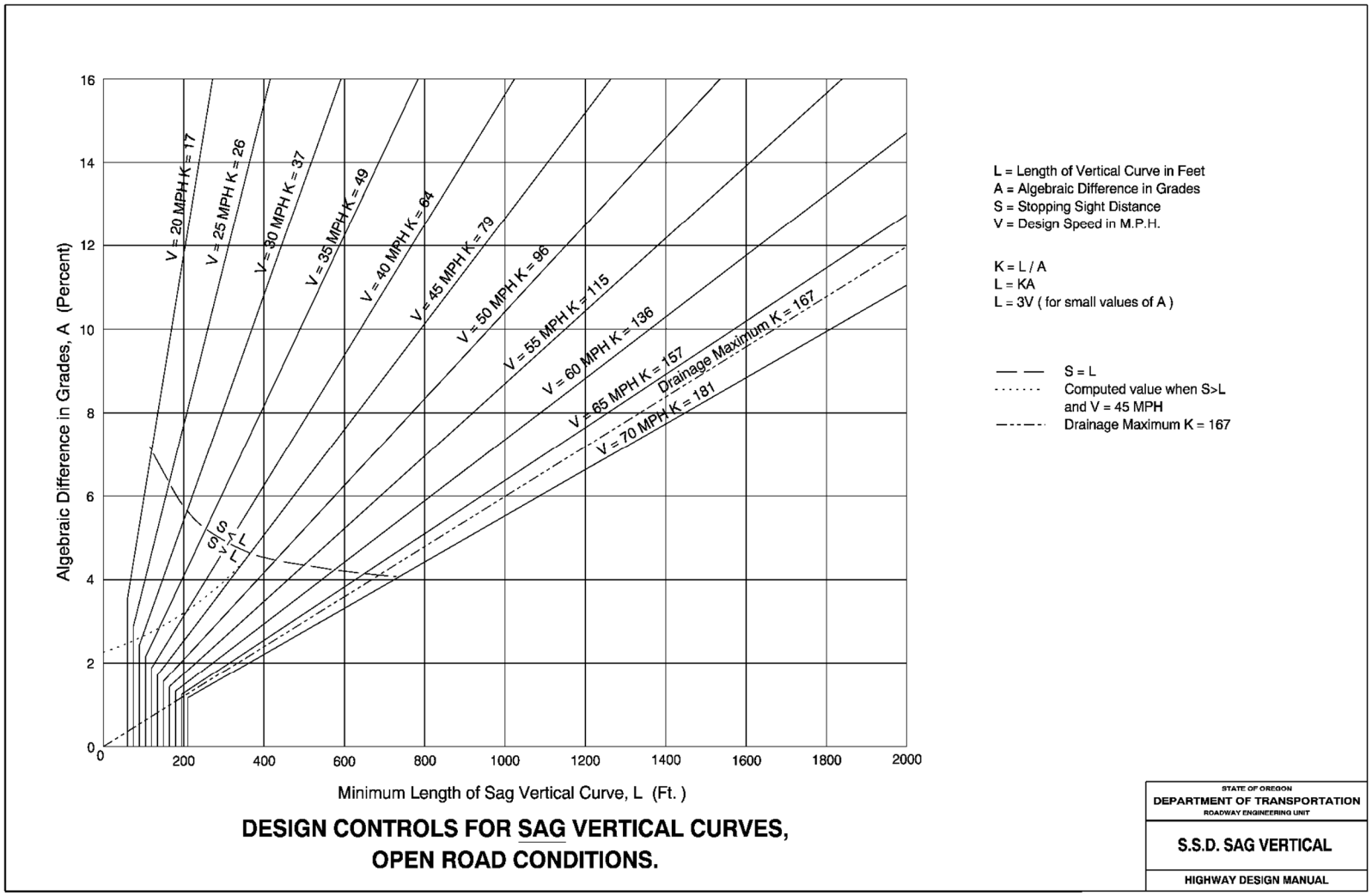


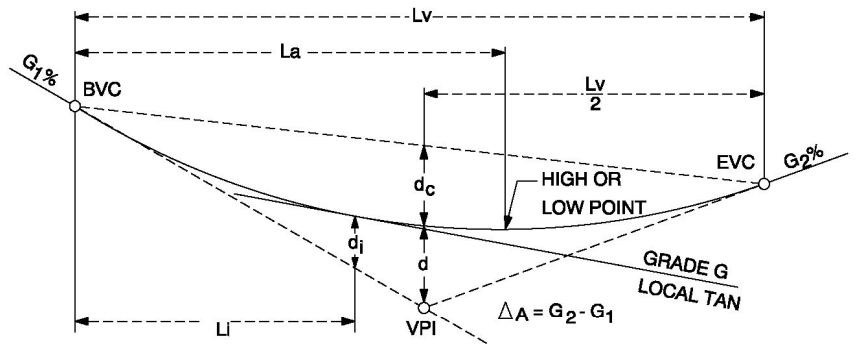
Figure 200-50: SSD Sag Vertical Curve



219.4 Vertical Curve Formulas

Figure 200-51: Vertical Curve Formulas

VERTICAL CURVE SYMMETRICAL PARABOLIC



L_i = Distance from beginning point of vertical curve to any point along the curve.
G_1, G_2 = Tangent grades in percent, positive for ascending forward, negative for decending forward.
K = Ls / ΔA = feet to affect a 1% change in grade.
ΔA = algebraic difference in grades, percent.
Lv = Length of vertical curve in feet, measured horizontally.
d = Vertical offset from the vertex (called PI) to the middle of curve.
d_i = Vertical offset from a tangent to the vertical curve vary as the square of the distance from the PC.
d_c = Vertical offset from the chord to the vertical curve.

$$\Delta_A = G_2 - G_1 \qquad K = \frac{Lv}{\Delta_A}$$

$$d = d_c = \frac{\Delta_A Lv}{800} = \frac{K \Delta_A^2}{800}$$

$$d_i = \frac{L_i^2}{\left(\frac{Lv}{2}\right)^2} \qquad d = \frac{\Delta_A L_i^2}{200\, Lv} = \frac{L_i^2}{200\, K}$$

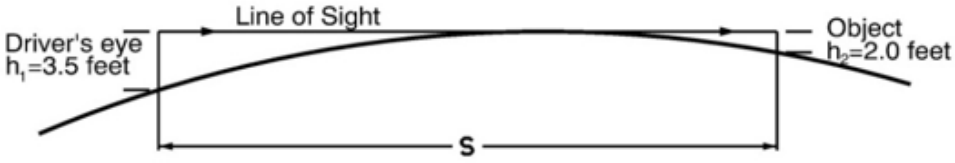
$$G = G_1 - \frac{L_i}{K} \qquad L_a = G_1 K$$

Note: Distances Lv, d, d_c, L_a, L_i, d_i, are in feet.
Grades G_1, G_2, ΔA, G are in percent.

Figure 200-52: Crest and Sag Vertical Curves

CREST CURVATURE

Design Speed (V) mph	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Design (K)	12	19	29	44	61	84	114	151	193	247

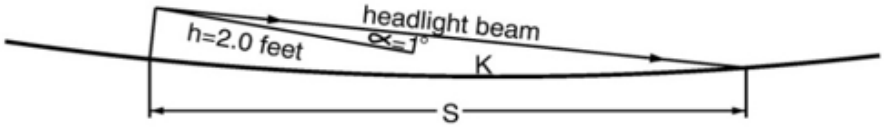


$$K = \frac{S^2}{200\ h_1\ (1 + \sqrt{h_2 / h_1})^2}$$

Stopping Sight Distance (S) is derived from this formula:
$S = 1.47Vt + (1.075)(V^2/a)$
where:
t = brake reaction time, 2.5 seconds;
V = design speed, mph;
a = deceleration rate - 11.2 ft/s²

SAG CURVATURE

Design Speed (V) mph	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Design (K)	26	37	49	64	79	96	115	136	157	181



Where the length of curve exceeds the stopping sight distance, K is given.

S Less Than or Equal to Lv $\quad K = \frac{S^2}{200\ (h + S\ \tan\alpha)}$

Where the stopping sight distance exceeds the curve length, K is given.

S > Lv $\quad K = \frac{2S}{\Delta_A} - \frac{200\ h_1}{\Delta_A^2}(1 + \sqrt{h_2 / h_1})^2$ where:
A = Algebraic Difference in Grades

Minimum sag vertical curvature for comfort critera, illumination may be required.

$$L = \frac{AV^2}{46.5}$$ where:
A = Algebraic Difference in Grades

219.5 Vertical Edge Design

Provide smooth profiles for edges of pavement without grade breaks (see 2018 AASHTO Green Book Section 3.3.8.7). For edge design controlled by construction centerline alignment profile and superelevation, utilize vertical curves per Section 218.

Section 220 Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment

The combined effect of the horizontal and vertical alignment must be considered during design of a highway *(see the AASHTO Green Book).* In addition, the designer is responsible for providing all the final horizontal and vertical geometry for the project, including bridges.

When designing for the coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment, the following issues need to be considered.

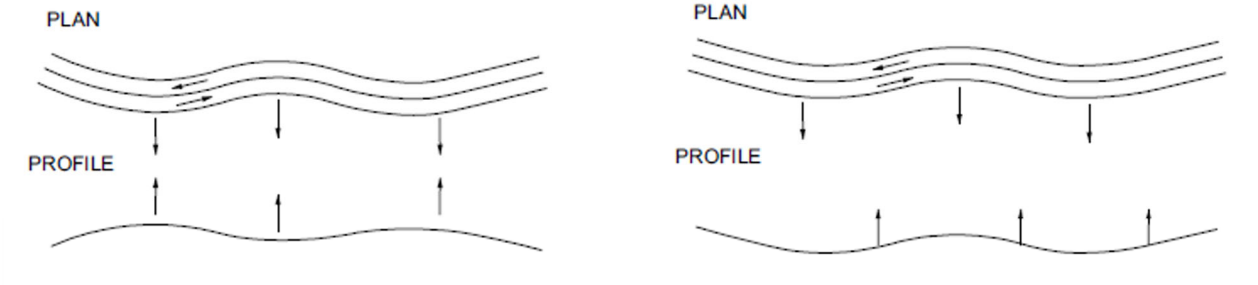
1. *Balance curvature and grades. Tangent alignment mixed with steep grades or flat grades with excessive curvature is poor design. A balance of both elements leads to uniform operation, aesthetically pleasing, and safe designs.*
2. *Vertical and horizontal alignments should complement each other.*
3. *Avoid locating sharp horizontal curves at or near the top of a crest vertical curve or at the low point of a sharp vertical curve.*
4. *Design horizontal and vertical curvature to be as flat as possible in the area of intersections to allow for proper sight distance.*

On summits with both horizontal and vertical curves, make the horizontal curve longer than the vertical curve. There is a limit of one vertical curve within a horizontal curve. It is desirable to provide a tangent grade on tangent alignment. Once the sight distance is broken by a curve in either the vertical or the horizontal alignment, there is little value in maintaining a tangent. The ideal alignment extends from control point to control point without unnecessary curvature in between. However, extremely long tangents may cause problems, due to driver boredom. (See the AASHTO Green Book)

In the design of two-lane arterials, provide for passing at frequent intervals. Work with the Region Traffic Engineer on locations for passing opportunities or passing or climbing lanes. Figure 200-53 illustrates coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment on curves. Figure 200-54 illustrates examples of poor coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment.

DRAFT

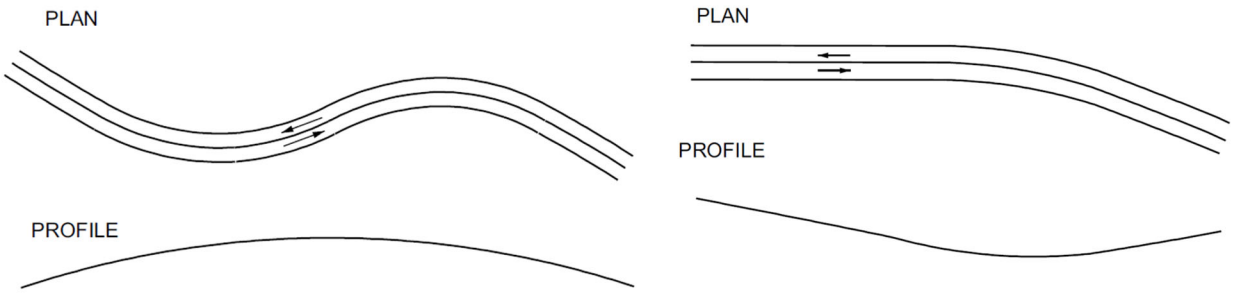
Figure 200-53: Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Curves (AASHTO, 2018)



The classic case of coordination between horizontal and vertical alignment in which the vertices of horizontal and vertical curves coincide, creating a rich effect of three-dimensional S-curves composed of convex and concave helixes

Weak coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment

Figure 200-54: Examples of Poor Combined Horizontal and Vertical Alignment (AASHTO, 2018)



This combination is undesirable for two reasons. The tangent between the curves is too short, and the reverse occurs on a crest.

Short Tangent on a Crest between Two Horizontal Curves

This combination presents a poor appearance – the horizontal curve looks like a sharp angle.

Sharp Angle Appearance

Section 221 Grades

221.1 General

On grades of 4 percent or greater, it is advantageous to carry the profile grade at the edge of the traveled way to the right of the centerline ascending the grade. The superelevation is obtained by raising the center and left side of the roadway on curves turning to the right going uphill, and by lowering the center and left side of the roadway on curves turning to the left. Where this rule applies and the horizontal curve passes over a summit, the profile grade is carried on the

outside of the curve developing superelevation by lowering the center and inside edge of the roadway. For grades less than 4 percent, use the standard method of superelevation in conformance with Section 218.

It is important to take into account the impact from grades in the different design elements such as acceleration and deceleration lanes, stopping sight distance, passing sight distance, and intersection sight distance. Table 3-2 in the 2018 AASHTO Green Book page 3-6 shows the effects of grade on stopping sight distance.

Due to 3R projects being primarily dedicated to preservation, a design requirement for 3R grades is to maintain the existing grade, except where 3R projects are on interstate highways or freeways. **Adjust grades on 3R interstate highway or freeway projects to meet design criteria. Design exceptions are required if grades cannot meet design criteria.**

221.2 3R and 4R Freeway Grades

3R projects that include modernization work will need to follow the 4R grade requirements for that portion of the preservation project that includes the modernization work type. Table 200-15 provides design guidance for both 3R and 4R freeway grades. Generally, grades on urban and rural freeways are very similar. In urban and mountainous areas, increased grades are allowed due to terrain. Care should be taken in urban areas to minimize the use of steep grades due to the close spacing of interchanges and the multiple speed changes needed in an urban area. In an urban environment, the driver must process large amounts of information in short periods of time. Steep grades make it more difficult for lane changes and other maneuvers to be made. **The 4R maximum grade for flat, rolling, or mountainous are 3 percent, 4 percent, and 5 percent respectively.**

Table 200-15: Maximum Freeway Grades

	Maximum Freeway Grades (%) for Specific Design Speed								
Design Speed (mph)	50	60	70		50	55	60	65	70
Design Standard	**4R***				**3R***				
Terrain									
Flat/Level	-	_	3		4	4	3	3	3
Rolling	-	_	4		5	5	4	4	4
Mountainous	5	5	5		6	6	6	5	5

* In urban areas grades may be 1% steeper.

Grades 1% steeper in urban areas require a design exception.

221.3 4R Urban and Rural Expressway Grades

The length and percentage of grade affects the operation of the expressway. Long, steep grades reduce the efficiency of the facility, especially when there are high truck volumes. **Table 200-16 below provides design standards for Urban and Rural Expressway Grades.**

Table 200-16: Maximum Expressway Grades (%) for Specific Design Speed

Design Speed (mph)	45	50	55	60	65	70
Urban	6	6	5	5	5	5
Design Speed (mph)	**50**	**60**	**70**			
Rural	6	4	3			

221.4 4R Rural Arterial Grades

Rural arterials cover a wide range of topographic areas. Highway grades can have a significant effect on traffic flow and operations and therefore should be as flat as possible without negatively affecting drainage needs. Highways that carry substantial amounts of truck or recreational vehicle traffic will be greatly affected by steep grades. Wherever possible, steep grades should be avoided. Where this is not practical, the length of grade should be minimized. **The maximum grade allowed on rural arterial, collector and local highways can be found in Table 200-17, Table 200-18, and Table 200-19.** *Where terrain impacts traffic flow, provide frequent passing opportunities where possible.*

In some mountainous terrain, long steep grades are unavoidable. In these instances, consider the use of truck climbing lanes. On continuous steep downhill grades, the use of truck escape ramps may be necessary. Where truck escape ramps are deemed necessary, they should be designed as an ascending grade type per the AASHTO Green Book. Climbing lanes are covered in more detail in Part 300.

DRAFT

Table 200-17: Rural Arterial Maximum Grades (%) for Specific Design Speed

Design Speed (mph)	45	50	55	60	65	70
Level Terrain	5	4	4	3	3	3
Rolling Terrain	6	5	5	4	4	4
Mountainous Terrain	7	7	6	6	5	5

Table 200-18: Rural Collector Maximum Grades (%) for Specific Design Speed

Design Speed (mph)	45	50	55	60	65	70
Level Terrain	5	4	4	3	3	3
Rolling Terrain	6	5	5	4	4	4
Mountainous Terrain	7	7	6	6	5	5

Table 200-19: Rural Local Route Maximum Grades (%) for Specific Design Speed

Design Speed (mph)	45	50	55	60	65	70
Level Terrain	5	4	4	3	3	3
Rolling Terrain	6	5	5	4	4	4
Mountainous Terrain	7	7	6	6	5	5

221.5 4R Urban Arterial Grades

As with any urban arterial, the grade selected can have an effect on how well an arterial operates, especially on urban arterials that have a high percentage of trucks, heavy vehicles, and transit vehicles. *Steep grades impact speeds and stopping distances and can have an effect on intersection operations. Although grades should be kept as flat as possible, the existing terrain and context of an urban arterial may make it difficult to achieve the design grade requirements.* **Table 200-20 below provides the design requirements for maximum urban arterial grades.**

Table 200-20: Urban Arterial Maximum Grades (%) for Specific Design Speed

Design Speed (mph)	25	30	35	40	45	50+
All ODOT Urban Contexts	8	8	7	7	6	6

Section 222 Design Vehicles and Accommodation of Design Vehicles

In selecting the appropriate design vehicle, many factors must be considered such as the number and type of trucks, functional classification of the highway, freight route designation, and the effect on other modes including pedestrians and bicycles. Space allocation for all modes of transportation must be considered, not just the needs of the largest vehicles. The design vehicle is typically the largest vehicle that normally uses the highway without a special permit. After determining the appropriate design vehicle, a decision needs to be made as to the appropriate level of accommodation in the design for the location. For example, at an intersection, will the radii be designed for the design vehicle, or will it be designed to accommodate the design vehicle? *The concept of designing for the design vehicle is to provide a path for the vehicle that is free of encroachments upon other lanes. Providing a design that accommodates the design vehicle means that some level of encroachment upon other lanes is necessary for the vehicle to make a particular movement (see Part 500).* A balanced design approach takes into consideration more than just the amount of room the design vehicle requires. For example, what is the intended operating speed of the facility? Fully designing for a large design vehicle may result in higher than desired speeds. What is the context? In a traditional downtown, it is desirable to provide priority to pedestrians over other modes. An example of an intersection that would need to be designed for the design vehicle with no encroachment into adjacent lanes would be a rural stop-controlled intersection with a state highway, the highway being two lane or multi-lane with higher speeds and/or high traffic volumes. If a traffic study concludes that finding a gap in multiple traffic flows is not possible, the intersection would need to be designed for the design vehicle so it can turn into a single lane. *Other factors to consider are the effects on pedestrians and bicycles: For example, large turning radii at intersections will accommodate larger design vehicles but can increase vehicle speeds and create a larger distance for pedestrian crossings.* So, designing for a large design vehicle tends to make the intersection less desirable for most of the users of the intersection. Therefore, rather than designing for the design vehicle, the design should normally accommodate the design vehicle in consideration of the overall safety of the highway.

In addition to the design vehicle, the occasional larger vehicle may need to use the highway. Coordination with the Commerce and Compliance Division and the Statewide Mobility Program group in the

Statewide Project Delivery Branch is required to determine if any vehicles larger than the design vehicle are allowed on a highway by permit and what level of accommodation needs to be provided. The Commerce and Compliance Division (CCD) receives requests to move special loads through the state. Although these loads are not to be used for design purposes, there will be occasion where the appropriate route for these special loads, which are typically accompanied by pilot vehicles, will need to be developed. These special load requests from CCD normally are sent to Technical Services, but the Region Technical Centers may also receive the requests. Region staff should work with the Region Mobility liaison and with Technical Services when CCD requests for these special loads occur. Additional information can also be found in the ODOT Mobility Procedures Manual.

For more information on design vehicle accommodation for private and public road approaches and intersections, see Part 500 (Intersection Design).

Section 223 Traffic Characteristics

Roadway designers need a basic understanding of traffic flow and characteristics (including bicycle, pedestrian, freight and transit) to be able to develop safe and effective facility designs. This understanding is as fundamental to sound design as geometric, hydraulic, or structural considerations. Designers don't necessarily need to be experts on analysis, but they do need to be familiar with basic concepts in order to develop projects that will meet agreed upon goals and objectives.

There are four major components that affect the character and flow of traffic:

1. Vehicles (including autos, trucks, bikes, pedestrians, and transit)
2. Facility character and functional requirements (not the same as Functional Class)
3. Drivers/Users
4. Traffic Demand that is to be accommodated (again, for all types of traffic)

Additionally, there are other factors that affect the four main components, including:

1. Weather/Seasonal Variations
2. Completeness of the facility network (Functional Class -Arterials, Collectors, Locals; Bicycle Networks – Local, State; Pedestrian Network – Local, State)
3. Overall context/location (Rural, Suburban, Urban) and development patterns
4. Availability of Transit/Park & Ride, etc.
5. Intermodal connections (such as Rail to Highway, Highway to Ports)

Analysis of traffic data (for all modes) can be complex and is subject to many variables. Designers need to consult with ODOT's Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) and

Region Traffic Units to get a clear understanding of traffic data and characteristics. Since traffic staff are always included as members of Project Teams, they can provide specific and detailed guidance to design personnel. Decision making on projects needs to be a collaborative effort - designers should also communicate back the "physical world" perspective during decision making and design. Neither traffic nor geometric design is an exact science, so allowances are necessary to accommodate the inherent uncertainties.

Tools are available to aid design personnel in understanding traffic needs and analysis. Chapter 2 of the AASHTO Green Book has an excellent detailed discussion on Traffic Characteristics – it is written with designers in mind. TPAU has developed an *"Analysis Procedures Manual"*. This document provides current methodologies, practices, and procedures for conducting long term analysis for ODOT plans and projects.

Section 224 Accommodation of other Modes in Design

Roadway facilities are designed and operated to enable safe access for all users, including pedestrians, bicyclists, motorists, and transit riders of all ages and abilities. The design team should understand the difference between "accommodating" versus "designing for" a given mode and apply consistent principles within the project context. Multimodal design considerations depend on the intended function of the corridor, as well as balancing trade-offs and objectives from local plans. For example, consider a roadway designed primarily for mobility for motorized vehicles. The design is required to "accommodate" other users, such as pedestrians and bicycles, but it will not attract a wide range of vulnerable users. A roadway intended to serve and attract non-auto users, however, should be "designed for" multimodal users. This means mobility for motorized vehicles is a lower need and may allow for some congestion.

224.1 Accommodation and Design for Pedestrians and Bicyclists

ORS 366.514 requires that ODOT, cities and counties provide walkways and bikeways wherever a highway, road or street is being constructed, reconstructed, or relocated. They are not required if:

1. Scarcity of population or other factors indicate an absence of any need;
2. Costs are excessively disproportionate to need or probable use; or
3. Where public safety is compromised.

DRAFT

In addition to Oregon statutes, FHWA also provides policy based on various sections in the United States Code (U.S.C.) and the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) in Title 23 - Highways, Title 49 - Transportation, and Title 42 - Public Health and Welfare to incorporate safe and convenient walking and bicycling facilities into transportation projects. Every transportation agency, including the federal department of transportation, has the responsibility to improve conditions and opportunities for walking and bicycling and to integrate walking and bicycling into their transportation systems.

The designer should start with the assumption that accommodation is required and seek an exemption only where it is obvious that one of the three above exceptions applies. The designer should also reference planning documents to see if prior efforts have already established if sidewalks or bikeways are needed.

On a simple preservation project additional accommodation may not be required. As part of the practical design process, the project charter will identify the purpose and need of the project, including any required accommodation for pedestrians and bicyclists.

However, restriping of paving only projects can afford opportunities to make incremental improvements to bicycle facilities at low or no cost to the project. Adding a bike lane or buffered bike lane with restriping where one did not exist can be a big improvement to the system with minimal impact to the project scope, schedule, or budget.

The Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) is a federal Civil Rights law that mandates both the private and public sectors to make their facilities accessible. For ODOT, that means that pedestrian facilities must be built so people with mobility, visual or cognitive limitations can easily use them. ODOT standards incorporate the most current guidance in the ADA Standards for Accessible Design, Public Right-Of-Way Accessibility Guidelines, and the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA).

One of ODOT's three goals tied to the agency mission statement is to "improve Oregon's livability and economic prosperity". Many ODOT highways operate as the "Main Street" in a community. Shopping districts with the most comfortable and pleasurable pedestrian walking environments have shown to be the most successful. Therefore, comprehensive pedestrian design that includes greater sidewalk width and more pedestrian friendly accommodations, rather than basic accommodation of minimum sidewalk width is appropriate in Special Transportation Areas (STAs) (see Part 800) and Urban Mix or Traditional Downtown/Central Business District contexts. Bicycle tourism is a significant industry in Oregon that also influences Oregon's livability and economic prosperity. Comprehensive bicycle facility design, rather than basic accommodation is appropriate along designated bicycle routes and in urban contexts.

Refer to Parts 800 and 900 for design standards of pedestrian and bicycle facilities. Incorporate the following principles outlined in Section 224.1.1 and Section 224.1.2 when designing pedestrian and bicycle facilities.

224.1.1 Design Principles for Pedestrians

This section is a general discussion of designing for pedestrians. For in-depth discussion and information, see Part 800.

1. Pedestrians tend to take the shortest route between two points. The pedestrian's path of travel should be direct with minimal out-of-direction travel.
    - Pedestrian walkways should not meander.
    - Provide walkways on both sides of a street. When sidewalk is provided on one side of the street, but not the other, most pedestrians tend to stay on the side without sidewalk, rather than cross the street; the sidewalk itself does not lure most pedestrians to cross the street.
    - The typical maximum distance pedestrians walk are as follows: 1 mile for work commute, ½ mile for transit and other trip purposes.
2. Pedestrian travel patterns are less predictable than those of bicyclists or motorists.
3. About 50 percent of pedestrian traffic is shopping related. About 11 percent is commute related. Peak pedestrian volumes are not during the peak commuter times for motor vehicles, they usually occur near the noon hour.
4. Designs must accommodate pedestrians of varying abilities and disabilities.
    - Obstructions in walkways reduce the effective width for pedestrians and can make walkways inaccessible for persons with disabilities.
5. Regular pedestrian crossing opportunities should be provided in business districts.
    - All legs of an intersection should typically be open to pedestrians.
    - All legs of an unmarked intersection are crosswalks.
    - ORS801.220 says, “Whenever marked crosswalks have been indicated, such crosswalks and no other shall be deemed lawful across such roadway at that intersection.” Some interpretations of this statute have suggested marking one crosswalk at an intersection means the crosswalk on the opposite leg of the intersection no longer exists unless it is marked too. ODOT is implementing ORS801.220 in the following way. The above quoted sentence from ORS801.220 clarifies that a marked and unmarked crosswalk cannot both exist across the same leg of an intersection – the marked crosswalk takes precedence. Thereby limiting the impact of ORS801.220 to one leg of the intersection, and not affecting the legal crossing at the other leg of the intersection.

DRAFT

224.1.2 Design Principles for Bicyclists

This section is a general discussion of designing for bicyclists. For in-depth discussion and information, see Part 900.

1. Bicycle accommodation is required on all highways, except those described in OAR 734-020-0045.
    - Bicycle accommodation needs to be continuous on both sides of the roadway.
2. Bicycles are vehicles and are accommodated as roadway users where possible.
    - The path for bicyclists should be direct, logical and close to the path of motor vehicle traffic, making bicyclist movements visible and predictable to motorists.
    - Safe on-street bicycle accommodation includes bicycle-safe drainage grates and adjusting manhole covers to street grade.
3. Designs may also accommodate bicyclists of lesser abilities.
    - Only in rare cases should bicyclists be required to proceed through intersections as pedestrians.
    - Oregon law (ORS 814.420) requires bicyclists to use a bike path or bike lane, rather than the roadway travel lanes, if a bike path or bike lane is provided.
4. Bicyclists are affected by steep grades more than motorists or pedestrians are.

Section 225 References

Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD), ODOT, 2019

Main Street…When a Highway Runs Through It: A Handbook for Oregon Communities, DLCD/ODOT, 1999

Designing Livable Streets and Trails Guidance, Metro, 2021

Roadside Design Guide, AASHTO - 2011

Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Guide, ODOT – 2011(HDM, Appendix L)

AASHTO: A Guide for Achieving Flexibility in Highway Design (2004)

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, 7th Edition – 2018 (AASHTO Green Book)

FHWA: Flexibility in Highway Design

Urban Street Design Guide, NACTO

DRAFT

Part 300 Cross Section Elements

DRAFT

Section 301 Introduction

Part 300 Provides direction for applying the appropriate design criteria to project cross section design. Performance-Based Practical Design and design flexibility is a strategy to deliver focused benefits for the State's transportation system while working with the realities of a fiscally constrained environment. ODOT's Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD) has been incorporated into the Highway Design Manual to further provide flexibility, particularly in the urban context. These strategies encourage project teams to use engineering judgment to make cost effective system improvements. Understanding of the cross-section elements contained herein will allow the practitioner to make sound decisions in keeping the project within scope and budget. The first portion of this Part 300 provides information on urban and rural contexts, the current industry direction on urban design, connecting ODOT's current highway segment designations to ODOT's six urban contexts, determining the context, and evaluating and prioritizing design elements.

The cross-section elements of the roadway are as important as the alignments of the roadway and can have as much effect on traveling vehicles. Corresponding care must be given to the cross-section elements to assure safe operation of the facility. In addition to cross-section elements for the six ODOT urban contexts, Part 300 provide the 3R, 4R, 1R, and Single Function cross section criteria for urban and rural freeways, urban and rural expressways, rural arterials, collectors, and local routes, as well. In addition, this Part provides design guidance for cross slope, vertical clearance, roadside design, curb placement, shy distance and roadside barriers, safety edge, rumble strips, ditches, earthwork, rounding cutbanks, and median design.

Projects that are not intended to modernize the roadway, thus leaving the existing widths and alignments, still can make significant improvements to the overall safety of the facility by addressing the cross-sectional elements discussed in this chapter.

Within this manual are specific font changes that are used to show the documentation and/or approval that is required for not meeting the value shown.

DRAFT

301.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 300-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 300-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	EOR
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 301.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 301.2 and 301.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 301.3 and 301.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

301.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 301.4).

301.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 301.4).

301.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

DRAFT

301.5 Definitions

1R/3R Record of Decision -	Documentation to determine whether the 1R or 3R standard applies to a paving project.
ADA Ramp -	See Section 102.
Context Sensitive Solutions (CSS) -	A planning and design approach to advance programs and projects in a collaborative manner and in a way that fits into the community and environment.
Design Exception -	Approval authorized by the State Roadway Engineer to deviate from a design criteria standard. Design Exceptions are submitted on the Design Exception Request Form (see HDM Part 1000).
Design Concurrence Document -	Documentation to determine project context, define project design criteria, and document project design decisions for projects. The Design Concurrence Document is included in the DAP submittal.
National Truck Network -	The National Network was authorized by the Surface Transportation Assistance Act of 1982 (P.L. 97-424) and specified in the U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (23 CFR 658) to require states to allow conventional combinations on "the Interstate System and those portions of the Federal-aid Primary System serving to link principal cities and densely developed portions of the United States on high volume routes.
Transition Realm -	The area immediately adjacent to the curb or sidewalk edge (e.g., parking, loading, transit stops). May also include non-pedestrian areas behind the curb (e.g., curb-separated bicycle lanes).
Urban -	Relating to, or characteristic of a town or city.
Urban Context -	Relates to all nearby built and natural features, as well as social, economic and environmental factors impacting a location. Urban context is based on existing and future land use characteristics, development patterns, and roadway connectivity in an area. For purposes related to the Highway Design Manual, urban context is not limited to places within the current Urban Growth Boundary (UGB)

DRAFT

Urban Design - For the HDM, the term applies to urban contexts relating to land uses that broadly identify the various built environments along ODOT roadways.

301.6 Acronyms

CC - Commercial Center

EOR - Engineer of Record

OHP - Oregon Highway Plan

STA - Special Transportation Area

UBA - Urban Business Area

UDC - Urban Design Concurrence

Section 302 Approval Processes

302.1 Design Exceptions

Any deviation from any design standard or approved design criteria range requires design exception approval by the State Roadway Engineer. Design exceptions require signature by both the Engineer of Record (EOR) and State Roadway Engineer. Design exceptions and the design exception process is addressed in Part 1000 of the HDM. Design exceptions may also require approval by the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) for a project of interest.

302.2 Urban Design Concurrence Document

The Blueprint for Urban Design (BUD), which has been incorporated into the HDM, established the Urban Design Concurrence Document Form (UDC) to determine project context, define design criteria, and document design decisions on urban projects including rural communities. (See 106.3 Urban Design Concurrence Document for more information.)

Authority for approval of the urban design concurrence document resides in the Region Technical Center. ***The Region Technical Center Manager provides final approval of design concurrence with collaborative input from Region Planning, Traffic, Roadway, and Maintenance.***

DRAFT

302.3 1R/3R Record of Decision Document

The 1R/3R Record of Decision document is to be filled out by Pavements staff, Region Roadway staff, and Traffic staff. Approval signatures are the Pavements Engineer, the Region Roadway Manager, and the Region Traffic Manager. The Transportation Project Manager's or Resident Engineer – Consultant Projects' role is to coordinate the process.

Section 303 Cross Section Elements

The Standard Roadbed Sections and the ODOT 4R/New Standards outlined in Part 300 give the dimensions to be used for the design of new facilities, the modernization of existing facilities, and the preservation of facilities. These include shoulders, travel lanes, medians, and other cross-sectional elements. Design frontage roads in accordance with the anticipated traffic and their location.

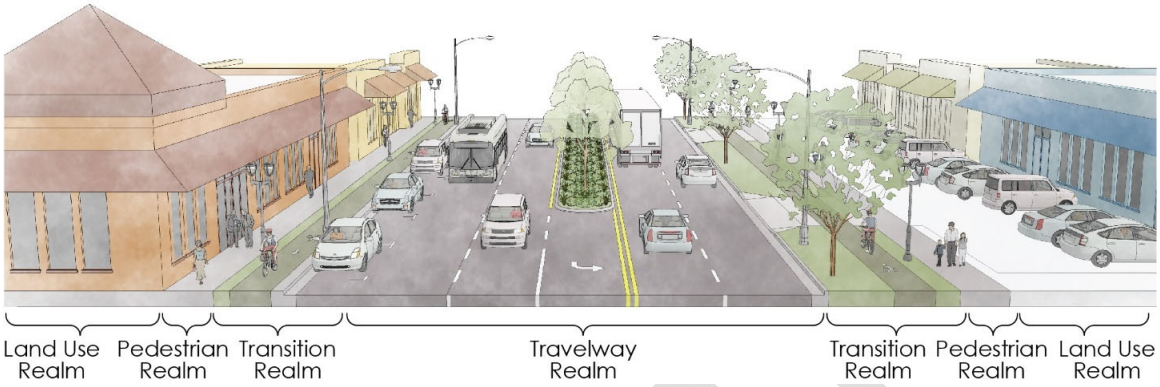
Section 304 Cross Section Realms

304.1 Cross Section Realms and Considerations

This section provides an overview of the importance of integrating design, safety and operations in conjunction with maintenance needs and provides a summary of potential tools for measuring and evaluating considerations and trade-offs. This discussion provides the next level of detail and the range of considerations for design elements within the roadway cross section, which are organized into "cross section realms" as shown in Figure 300-1. The figure provides a graphical overview of the various cross section realms, their positions across the section and the intended function they may serve in an urban area. T*he elements and dimensions of these realms will vary depending on the urban context, the anticipated users, and desired project outcomes.* Table 300-2 is a summary of the Cross Section Realms.

DRAFT

Figure 300-1 Example of Cross Section Realms



DRAFT

Table 300-2 Summary of Cross Section Realms

Street Realm	Location	Function
Land Use Realm	Immediately adjacent to the roadway right-of-way	Typically, privately owned, the land use realm contributes to the urban context of the place. This space can also serve a variety of other functions in some cases, including pedestrian space, amenities such as bicycle parking, utilities, landscaping, parking, and other uses. Awnings or building appurtenances, signs and other activities that require use of the public right-of-way or overhang into the Pedestrian Realm must be permitted by ODOT or the local agency (if sidewalk is locally owned).
Pedestrian Realm	Includes the sidewalk and the buffer or furniture zone	Serves pedestrians and access to land uses. Buffer/furniture zone often used as a place for utilities, lighting, signs, street trees, and other furnishings. May also serve as public space for art, sidewalk seating, or other types of public uses if sidewalk is locally owned.
Transition Realm	The area immediately adjacent to the curb or sidewalk edge (e.g., parking, loading, transit stops). May also include non-pedestrian areas behind the curb (e.g., curb-separated bicycle lanes).	Bicycle movement or parking, pedestrians, planters, transit stops, parking, loading/unloading, pick-up/drop-off. May serve multiple functions in same block or location, may vary by time of day. May also include street trees and/or other green streets treatments
Travelway Realm	The center of the right-of-way used for movement, typically including travel lanes, median, and/or turn lanes	Primarily functions to serve various types of vehicle movement (including motor vehicles, buses, light rail vehicles, streetcars, bicycles, motorcycles, freight, etc.) Can provide or manage vehicular access through turn lanes, medians, and other treatments. Median can function as a place for vegetation, green streets storm water treatments, and as a pedestrian refuge.

The next set of figures (Figure 300-2 through Figure 300-7) and tables (Table 300-2 through Table 300-7) provide key questions and considerations for primary design elements typically found within each of the cross-section realms. These questions and considerations guide practitioners in making decisions about how to apply the context, evaluate the desired project goals and outcomes, and design the cross-sectional elements as an iterative process. Subsequent sections provide specific design guidance for elements within the realms for each urban context. If a project team finds that a roadway is not able to attain the design recommendations, the

information in these tables can support the project team's approach to evaluating trade-offs and documenting design decisions as part of the ODOT urban design concurrence process. Project teams consider the existing urban context and the potential future context desired by the community. Understanding the context considerations, while outlining clear desired project outcomes (for the near-term and long-term needs of the community) can help guide project teams with decision making.

304.2 Land Use Realm

The land use realm shown in Figure 300-2, and described in Table 300-3, is a key defining feature of the urban context. ODOT does not typically own or control the adjacent land use directly. Instead, it is typically private property, regulated by the local jurisdiction. ***ODOT project teams work in parallel with the local jurisdiction to verify that the street design supports the desired context and desired project outcomes.***

The function of the land use realm in a Traditional Downtown/CBD area is different from that in the other contexts. Where there is zero setback in a downtown area, business entrances are at the back of the sidewalk, so the roadway speed, volume, and operations influence the attractiveness of the businesses. By contrast, in a Commercial Corridor, entrances farther from the roadway are typically preferred. The road noise caused by higher speeds may impact real estate and the attractiveness of businesses. However, there can also be zero setback in a Commercial Corridor (typically the back wall of a business).

Figure 300-2: Land Use Realm

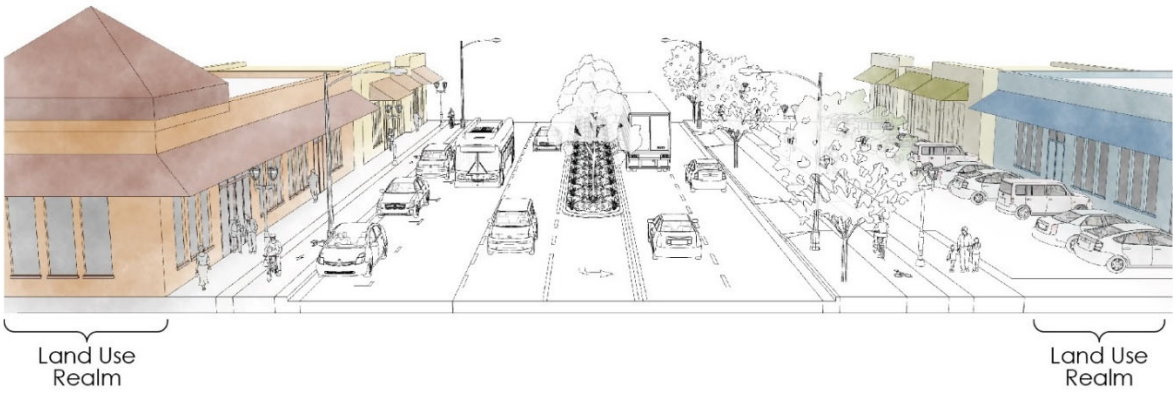


Table 300-3 Design Element Considerations within the Land Use Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Access to commercial development / storefront	In traditional downtown type land use, buildings often have zero setback, creating a welcoming environment for pedestrians. To ensure adequate space for building frontage in addition to pedestrian movement, wider sidewalks may be necessary. In other contexts, buildings may have zero setback or a significant setback. In these situations, evaluate and consider the likely pedestrian path between land uses and to/from transit stops to determine where there is likely a demand for street crossings.
Elements supportive of pedestrian realm	In some urban contexts, the land use realm can offer space that is supportive of the pedestrian realm, potentially reducing demands on the street right-of-way. Consider whether there is the potential to work with the local jurisdiction and property owners to include any of the following: Additional sidewalk width Pedestrian plazas / parks Landscaping adjacent to the sidewalk Stormwater facilities (green streets) Awnings or building appurtenances, signs, and other activities that require use of the public right-of-way must be permitted by ODOT or the local agency (if sidewalk is locally owned).
Elements supportive of other street functions	The land use realm can also provide space to support other functions. Consider whether it would be appropriate to rely on the adjacent land use for parking. In many cases, local jurisdiction development code requires property owners to provide bicycle parking. In some cases, an easement can allow for utilities to be located on adjacent land.

304.3 Pedestrian Realm

The pedestrian realm, shown in Figure 300-3 and described in Table 300-5 includes the frontage zone, the pedestrian zone (Pedestrian Access Route), the buffer zone, and, in some urban contexts, this may also include the curb zone. Exhibit 300-1 illustrates the Pedestrian Zones within the Pedestrian Realm. Section 810.4, Pedestrian Zones, provides more in-depth discussion about pedestrian zones. Depending on how or where a bicycle facility is included, the curb ~~zone~~ may be considered in either the Pedestrian Realm or the Transition Realm. For consistency in this document, it is shown in the Pedestrian Realm. However, bear in mind, if a separated bicycle facility is incorporated with the final design, the curb may be included with

the Transition Zone. Where a multi-use path design is employed, both the curb and the bicycle facility could be included as part of the Pedestrian Realm.

The greatest need for pedestrian accommodation is along urban highways where sidewalks separated with a buffer are the preferred facility for pedestrians. **Provide sidewalks on all urban highways within city limits with the possible exception of limited access expressways or interstate highways.** Sidewalks will most likely be needed on highways beyond city limits, within the urban growth boundary, or in unincorporated areas, based on existing and planned land use.

Human factors can play a huge role in how a particular driver perceives and reacts to roadway design and conditions and this can affect pedestrian safety as well. As roadway systems experience an aging population of drivers, the range of human factors of that demographic becomes increasingly important. Older drivers and older pedestrians often experience declining vision acuity, reduced body movement affecting head turning ability and other physical movement, increase in reaction time, and changes in cognitive function to name a few. For more information on human factors and considerations for roadway design, see NCHRP Report 600, Human Factors Guidelines for Road Systems, second edition. For assistance with interpreting the document, contact ODOT ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. Understanding pedestrian activity along a corridor, needed access to land use, and potential buffers in the Pedestrian Realm helps prioritize the design decisions for this section of the roadway and support the need to balance the trade-offs amongst the various cross section constraints.

When considering the Pedestrian Realm, pedestrian permeability across the roadway is of critical importance in urban locations. ***Sidewalks provide mobility along the highway, but full pedestrian accommodation also requires frequent, safe and convenient crossing opportunities.*** To help determine final decisions on crossing spacing needed by pedestrian activity in the area, look at pedestrian origins and destinations within adjacent blocks to help evaluate spacing needs. Wide highways carrying large traffic volumes can be barriers to pedestrians, making facilities on the other side difficult to access. Consider mid-block and uncontrolled intersection crossings, as people will take the shortest route to their destination. Prohibiting such movements is counter-productive if pedestrians cross the road with no protection. It is better to design highways that enable pedestrians to cross safely. Evaluate pedestrian crossing locations in relation to origins and destinations to determine appropriate spacing to meet demand. Table 300-4 provides target spacing for pedestrian crossings. These values are starting points with further analysis needed to determine appropriate spacing for a given corridor location. Section 307, Pedestrian Crossing Location, provides more information on crossing spacing. See Part 800 for detailed information about designing for pedestrians.

DRAFT

Table 300-4: Target Crossing Spacing

Urban Context	Target Spacing (ft.)
Traditional Downtown/ CBD	250-550
Urban Mix	250-550
Commercial Corridor	500-1,000
Residential Corridor	500-1,000
Suburban Fringe	750-1,500
Rural Community	250-750

All pedestrian crosswalks, marked and unmarked, must meet accessibility requirements provided throughout this manual. HDM Part 800, Pedestrian Design, provides detailed information and guidance to design appropriate and accessible pedestrian facilities.

Figure 300-3 Pedestrian Realm

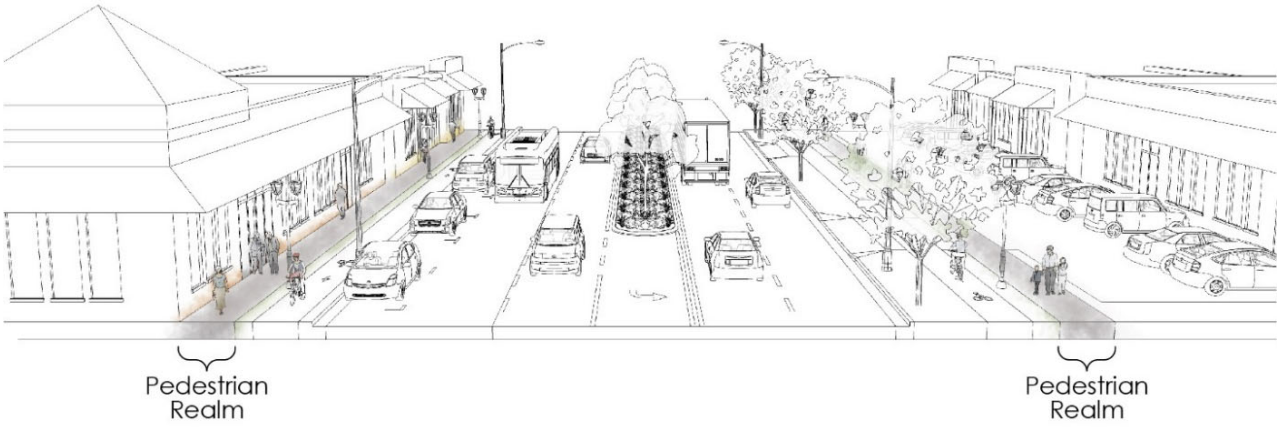


Exhibit 300-1, Pedestrian Realm Zones

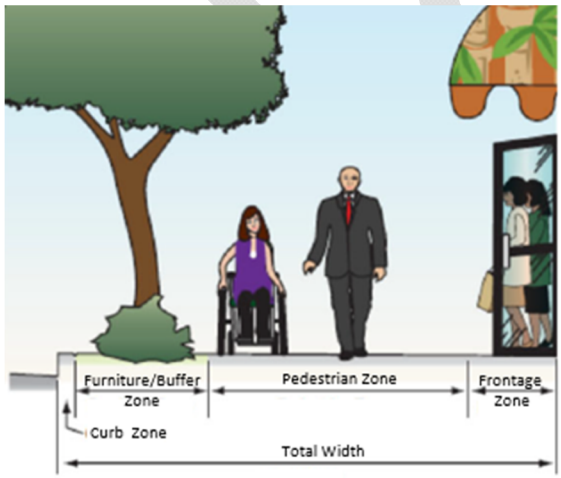




Table 300-5 Design Element Considerations within the Pedestrian Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Frontage Zone	The frontage zone is located between the pedestrian zone and the right-of-way. Depending on the available space, this zone may include items such as sandwich boards (if sidewalk locally owned), bicycle racks, and benches. This area is used by window shoppers and is where people enter and exit buildings. • The width of the frontage zone is needed to prevent adjacent property owners from installing a fence at the back of walk, or for maintenance personnel to make sidewalk repairs. • In a Traditional Downtown/CBD context, additional width is needed to provide space for merchandise and sidewalk cafés (if sidewalk is locally owned and permitted), and opening doors (typically needs 4 feet).
Pedestrian Zone	What is the travel speed next to the sidewalk? Is the street a high priority for pedestrian activity, based on community input and local jurisdiction planning efforts? • If so, prioritize serving pedestrians with a high-quality facility (width and buffer). What level of pedestrian activity is occurring today? Is there a desire or potential for higher pedestrian activity? • Select sidewalk widths with sufficient space to accommodate anticipated/desired level of activity. What is the target pedestrian level-of-traffic-stress for this location? A pedestrian accessible route is provided in the pedestrian zone.
Buffer Zone	People walking need to be buffered from motor vehicle movement. Ensure that a buffer is provided within the pedestrian realm or the transition realm, or that generous sidewalk width provides sufficient space for buffering if sidewalk is curb tight. Permitted items such as sandwich boards, bicycle racks, and other street furniture are typically placed in this zone. Additional design elements to consider in sidewalk design include: • Pedestrian scale lighting • Utility pole placement Do transit stops need extra buffer? • Where vehicle speeds or volumes are high, sufficient buffer is important. • Downtown area may have parked cars that can serve as a buffer. Suburban areas have no parking but may include a planter strip.

Table 300-5 (continued) Design Element Considerations within the Pedestrian Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Curb Zone	The curb zone is the transition between a sidewalk and the roadway. • At a crosswalk or intersection, the design of the gutter pan (apron) is important for accessibility standards. • A curb and gutter is typically 2 feet, and the gutter portion can be part of the adjacent transition realm. Where separated bicycle lanes exist, the curb is on the other side of the bicycle lane, so in lieu of the curb zone being defined as the curb between the bicycle lane and sidewalk, this zone is characterized by the buffer space between the bicycle lane and the sidewalk. Most urban streets with sidewalks are typically curbed. A vertical curb channelizes drainage and prevents vehicles from parking on the sidewalk.

304.4 Transition Realm

The transition realm, shown in Figure 300-4 and described in Table 300-6 includes the area immediately adjacent to the curb or sidewalk edge (e.g., parking, loading, transit stops) and may also include non-pedestrian areas behind the curb (e.g., curb-separated bicycle lanes). The primary design elements within this realm are the right-side shoulder, bicycle facilities, and on-street parking. Storm water and landscape considerations are also relevant in this realm and can impact the overall roadway cross section.

Figure 300-4 Transition Realm

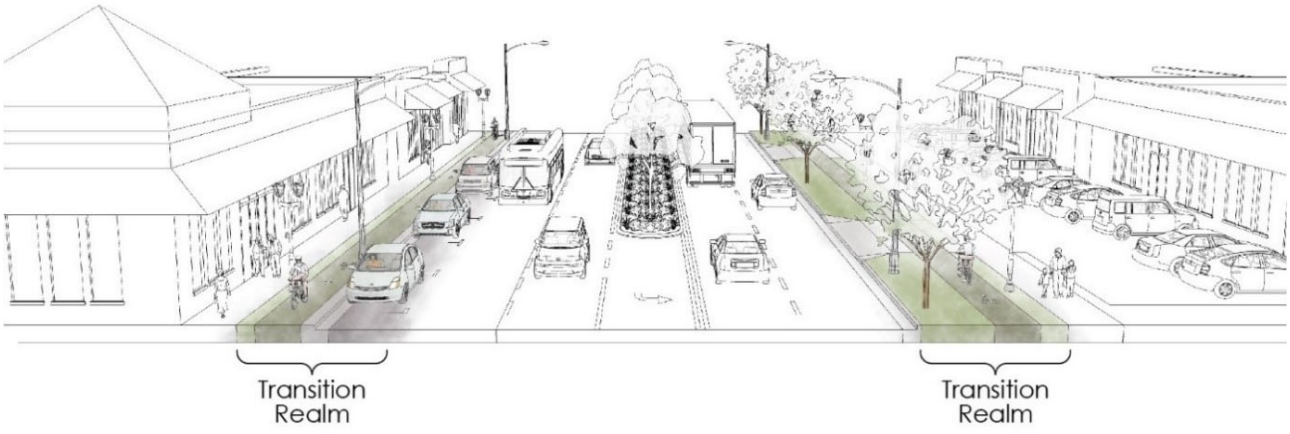


Table 300-6 Design Element Considerations within the Transition Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Right Side Shoulder	What is the purpose of this space? Is there a need for roadside recoverable area or shy distance based on the urban context, target speed, and/or run-off the road crashes? Is storm water allowed to encroach into travel lanes (spread) given the context and target speed?
Bicycle Facility (See Part 900 for Design Details)	What cross-sectional elements are next to the bicycle lane (e.g., narrow travel lane with higher percentage of trucks)? What are speeds? • When speeds are higher, the project team needs to consider additional separation, such as extra buffer or moving bicycles behind the planter strip. • Street buffers function to increase the sense of comfort and safety for bicyclists. This space can serve many functions from green treatments to transit boarding platforms. Features that are necessary to be accessed from the travel lane, typically located in the sidewalk buffer, such as mailboxes, should be in the street buffer. Is the street part of the regional bicycle network? • If so, prioritize serving bicycle access and mobility. What type of bicyclist is currently served? What are the forecast volumes of bicyclists, and is the width sufficient to serve them? If curb and gutter is used for drainage, consider how the gutter pan affects the functionality of the bicycle facility. Bicycles need a usable space, not just space. What level of facility is needed to serve riders of all ages and abilities? • On a shoulder bicycle lane, bicyclists can pass other bicycles by using part of the adjacent vehicle lane. However, when bicycle lanes are constrained between curbs or other objects, passing may be restricted. Where separated bicycle lanes are used, the bicycle lane should consider the ability for a bicycle to be passed or for two bicycles to travel side-by-side. What are the forecast volumes of bicyclists, and is the width sufficient to serve them? Can buffer widths be minimized by providing greater physical protection? Is there a parallel route that is equally direct/accessible and/or that has been identified in a local jurisdiction plan? Can anticipated volumes of bicyclists and pedestrians be served with a multi-use path on one or both sides of the street?

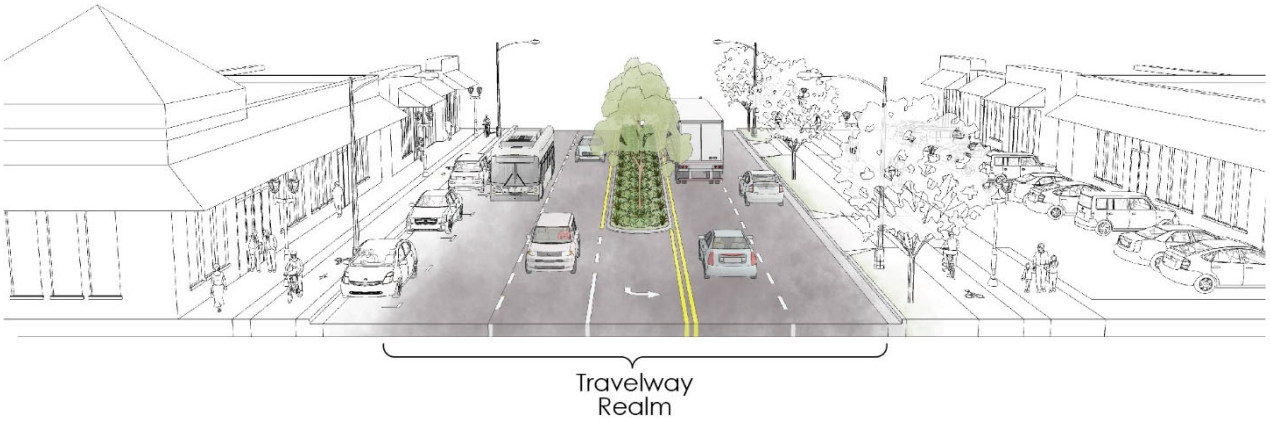
Table 300-6 (Continued): Design Element Considerations within the Transition Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Bicycle / Street Buffer Zone	Stormwater/Landscape Strip What are the green street treatment locations that present the fewest trade-offs on this street? • Curb extensions work well with on-street parking but are more challenging to implement in conjunction with separated bicycle facilities. • Linear facilities in transition zone provide "greening" benefits along the length of street but require width for the entire cross section. Street trees are often required by local jurisdictions in the landscape zone and must meet sight distance standards and be permitted by ODOT. • Basins can be implemented in right-of-way remnants. Are there opportunities to reduce impermeable surface to reduce run-off volumes? Transit Stops Are buses stopping in the travel lane or in a bus pullout? What is the transit agency's guidance along the specific corridor? Are bus stops upstream or downstream of intersection? What would be the interaction between the bus stop and the bicycle facility, as well as access to pedestrian facilities? Transit stops may be incorporated in the buffer and curb zones that are part of the pedestrian zone.
On-Street Parking	What is the off-street parking situation? What about parking availability on side streets? Consult a parking study if available or determine available capacity on side streets or off-street and compare that to the utilized capacity on the study street. Ensure availability of accessible parking and EV charging spaces. Identify the need to allocate space for the following: • Bicycle parking • On-street loading/unloading • Freight • Pick-up/drop-off of people
Maintenance	When determining appropriate elements for the transition zone, the ability for maintaining the facility shall be considered. Consult ODOT maintenance staff for input when determining the following: • Sweeping, snow removal, and maintaining constrained cycle track facilities. • Restriping and maintaining markings for buffered bicycle lanes. • Maintaining vertical elements like tubular markers used for delineation and separation of the bicycle facility and the travel lane. Consider intergovernmental agreements with the local jurisdiction for maintenance of the transition zone and elements within it. This may include the pedestrian realm as well.

304.5 Travelway Realm

The travelway realm, shown in Figure 300-5 and described in Table 300-7, focuses on the movement of motor vehicles and includes travel lanes, median, and/or turn lanes. Understanding the user priorities and desired outcomes for a project can help prioritize the trade-offs for the design elements within the travelway realm.

Figure 300-5 Travelway Realm



DRAFT

Table 300-7 Design Element Considerations within the Travelway Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Travel Lane Width	What is the land use context and target speed for the street? • In slower, denser urban contexts, consider narrow, minimum lane widths. • In suburban contexts, consider narrower lane width. • In higher speeds, maintain wider lane. • Maintain typical lane width for the context. What design elements are adjacent to the lane? • Evaluating the appropriate lane width may depend on the design elements adjacent to the lane. • The width of a travel lane adjacent to shy distance or a buffered bicycle lane, may have flexibility to be narrowed while still meeting the roadway needs. • A travel lane directly adjacent to a curb may benefit from a full width to allow for adequate width for users on the roadway. What are the appropriate number of through travel lanes? • If a street has several through lanes per direction, consider a detailed operational evaluation of a road reorganization (i.e., road diet) to reallocate space to other functions and get public input. • Consider if it is appropriate to accept higher levels of congestion. What role does this street play in the regional transit network? • If the street is part of the frequent bus network (or any rail or high-capacity transit), prioritize designs that prioritize transit. What role does this street play in the freight network? • If the street is part of the regional or statewide freight network, prioritize designs that preserve adequate vehicular capacity for the demand. What role does this street play in Reduction Review Route? • Follow the appropriate process outlined in OAR 731-012
Turn Lane Width	What design elements are adjacent to the left-turn lane? • Is there a median with a shy distance that may provide an opportunity to narrow the lane width? • What is the median striping width in the opposing direction? What design elements are adjacent to the right-turn lane? • How are bicycles addressed at right-turns?

Table 300-7 (continued): Design Element Considerations within the Travelway Realm

Design Element	Considerations
Left Side Shy Distance	In low-speed urban contexts, consider minimizing additional width needed for shy distance (e.g., median or curb). • Lower target speeds • Use fewer vertical elements (which require shy distance) • Zero shy distance may be acceptable when considering trade-offs and design considerations in relation to the context
Striped Median Width	What is the speed along the street and the potential of vehicles to cross into oncoming traffic?
Raised Curb Median	What is the purpose of the median? • Access management. • Landscaping to create "boulevard" effect.

Section 305 Cross-Section and Realm Design Guidance

As noted previously in Section 304, Table 300-2 through Table 300-7 provide guidance to help project teams consider various design elements typically found within each of the cross section realms. Having an understanding of all the elements and how they interact with each other will guide practitioners in making decisions about how to apply, evaluate, and design the cross-sectional elements.

A holistic evaluation of the cross section that considers the individual design elements together, rather than separately, can help verify that the overall roadway cross section aligns with desired project outcomes and balances the needs of each user. Section 305.1 through Section 305.6 including Table 300-8 through Table 300-13 and Figure 300-6 through Figure 300-11 provide recommendations for design elements within the six urban contexts described in Part 200.

- Section 305.1 - Traditional Downtown/CBD
- Section 305.2 - Urban Mix
- Section 305.3 - Commercial Corridor
- Section 305.4- Residential Corridor
- Section 305.5 - Suburban Fringe
- Section 305.6 - Rural Community

These sections provide design guidance recommendations for roadway cross sections within each ODOT urban context. The ODOT Urban Design Concurrence document and the decision-

making process described in Part 100 are used to justify and document the project team decisions and reasoning for the preferred solutions and final cross-section design. When reviewing the tables and figures from a pedestrian and bicycle user perspective and preference, the higher end of the dimension range should be the starting point for evaluation, as shown first in the tables. For travel lanes, the intent is to begin evaluation with the generally preferred lower width dimension and increase as needed depending on the context, users, and roadway characteristics. This would include consideration for large vehicles and freight needs. Final dimensions chosen from within the acceptable ranges are determined by project goals and design outcomes in conjunction with all roadway user needs. The individual dimensions need to be appropriate for the context and project parameters as a whole and not chosen because they are what one wants them to be. Trade-offs will need to be made between design elements and realms to determine an appropriate final cross-section that meets all user needs and project goals.

The design elements within each of the design tables relating to the design contexts developed for Table 300-8 through Table 300-13, cannot be used in isolation. Each element across the section is integral to the others. Key considerations to keep in mind when determining the final cross-section elements and their dimensions are:

1. How urban context influences roadway design while designing for multimodal users considering highway designations, classifications, characteristics, operations and safety.
2. How design elements fit together within the respective cross section realms as well as with each other.
3. How the final cross-section meets the modal needs of all users and fits with goals and outcomes for the project.

Design decisions related to each design element within the respective urban context should consider integrating the trade-offs for design, operations, maintenance and safety. Practitioners need to have an understanding of the considerations within the respective cross section realms within the urban context. See Section 304, Cross Section Realms for information.

305.1 Traditional Downtown/Central Business District

Table 300-8 provides design criteria for the respective design elements for ODOT roadways through the Traditional Downtown/CBD context. With this design approach, the goal is to design roadways in the Traditional Downtown/CBD context for a target speed of 20-25 mph. Target speed is discussed in Section 207.10. Figure 300-6 illustrates various cross section scenarios for how the design elements within this type of context may be arranged.

Exhibit 300-2 is an example of land types in this context and depicts the Traditional Downtown/CBD context with higher development and greater building heights containing mixed uses that are generally built up to the sidewalk and street within a well-connected

DRAFT

roadway network. It is the responsibility of the project team to determine final cross-section elements.

Exhibit 300-2 Typical Traditional Downtown/CBD Context - Tillamook (US101: OR131-OR6)



DRAFT

Table 300-8 Design Element Recommendations for Traditional Downtown/CBD Context

Realm	Design Element	Width
Pedestrian Realm	Frontage Zone	4′ to 2′
	Pedestrian Zone	10′ to 8′
	Buffer/Furniture Zone	6′ to 0′
	Curb/Gutter[1]	2′ to 0.5′
Transition Realm[6]	Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)[2]	8′ to 7′
	Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including Buffer)[2]	6′ to 5′
	Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer[2] Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer[2]	3′ to 2′ 3′ to 0′
	Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder (if travel lane directly adjacent to curb)[3,5]	2′ to 0′
	On-Street ~~Parking~~Parking[7]	7′ to 8′
Travelway Realm[5]	Travel Lane[4,5]	11′
	Right Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	11′ to 12′
	Left Turn Lane[4]	11′
	Left Side / Right Side Shy Distance	1′ to 0′
	Two-Way-Left-Turn Lane	11′ to 12′
	Raised Median – No Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	8′ to 11′
	Left-Turn Lane with Raised Curb Median/separator (includes 16″ separator & Shy Distances)	12′ to 14′

[1] Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided or travel lane is directly adjacent to curb, gutter pan should be included in shoulder/shy or on-street parking measurement. Gutter pan should be included in travel lane, bicycle lane or turn lane measurements only where a smooth transition from gutter pan to roadway surface is provided.

[2] Refer to Bicycle Facility Selection process (Section ~~306 and Part 900~~941) to determine appropriate bicycle facility ~~type. Consider raised~~tier. Refer only to the design elements corresponding to the applicable bikeway tier. Tier 1 facilities include one-way separated bike lanes (See Section 943 for discussion of curb constraints), two-way separated bike lanes and shared use side paths (See Section 961). Tier 2 facilities include on-street bike lanes and buffered bike lanes. Tier 3 facilities are travel lanes shared with motor vehicles. See Section 943 for ODOT design standards in the bike lane zones.

[3] Tier 2 bicycle lanes ~~where appropriate. Except for right-turn channelizations, 5-foot on-street~~ also function as shoulders. Since many Tier 1 bicycle ~~lane is allowed only with~~ facilities are outside the shoulder area, a ~~street buffer. When a raised buffer is used to protect the bicycle lane, the width should~~shoulder may need to be ~~6′ if parking is adjacent or if signs or other features are anticipated.~~

~~[3]~~ provided in addition to the bike facility. Overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as the right-side shoulder. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs.

[4] 11-foot lane width preferred; 12-foot lane optional, where needed; **10-foot lane width requires a formal design exception from the State Roadway Engineer.** On freight- or transit-oriented streets, a 10-foot travel lane is generally not appropriate without a buffer zone or shoulder.

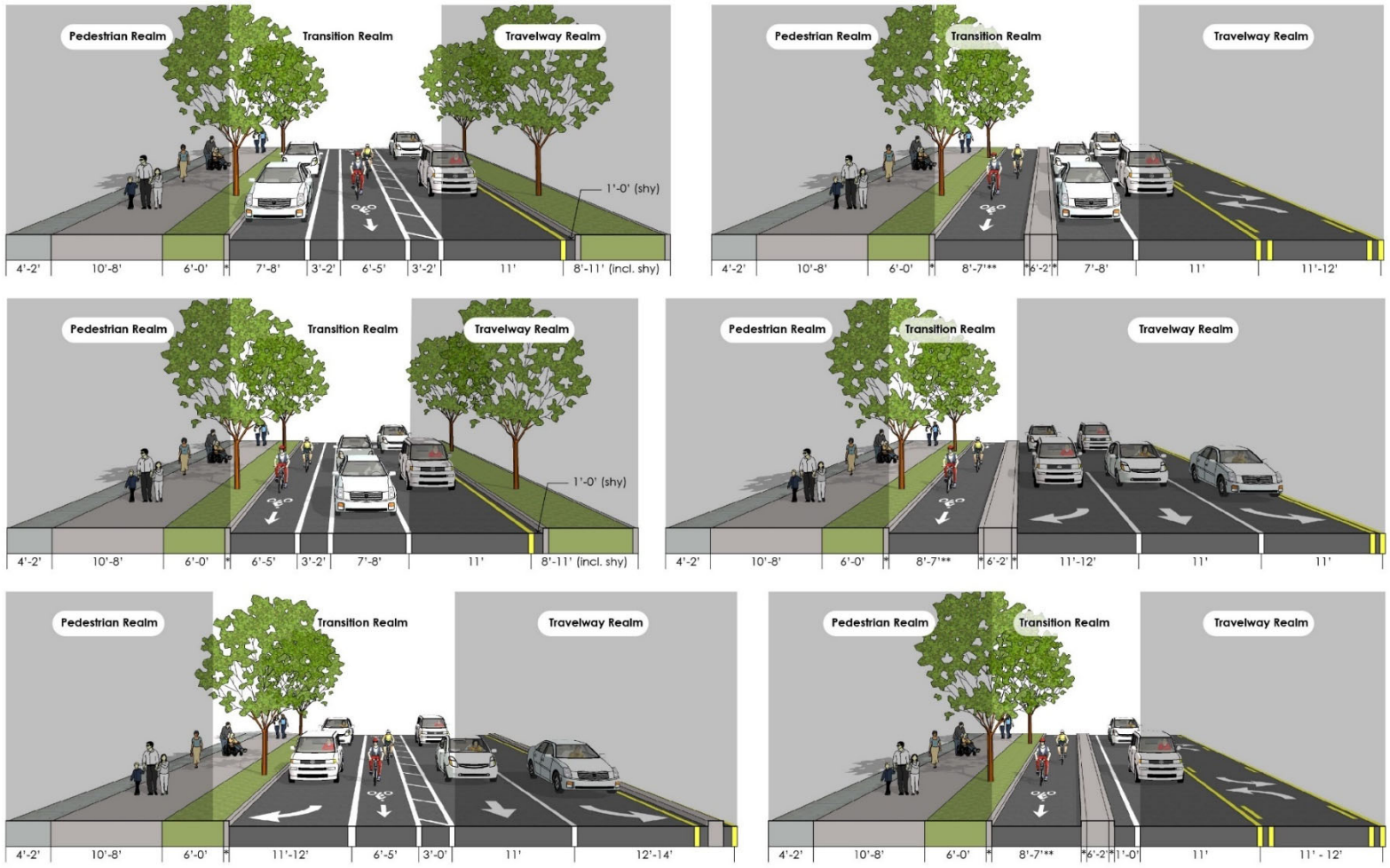
[5] On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

[6] When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

[7] Parking width does not include shoulder/shy width distance.

DRAFT

Figure 300-6 Example Cross-Section Options for Traditional Downtown/CBD, See Table 300-8 for additional information



* 0.5' (curb) or 2' (curb & gutter) ** Consider raised bicycle lane

Note: When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

305.2 Urban Mix

Table 300-9 provides design criteria for the respective design elements for ODOT roadways through the Urban Mix context. With this design approach, the goal is to design roadways for a target speed of 25-30 mph. Figure 300-7 illustrates various cross section scenarios for how the design elements within this type of context may be arranged.

Exhibit 300-3 depicts the Urban Mix context that includes a mix of land uses within a well-connected roadway network. Commercial or retail uses front on the street and may be mixed with older residential properties, some of which have been repurposed as professional offices. Residential neighborhoods are often directly behind the properties fronting on the highway. Modal integration in the Urban Mix context is a balance between vehicle mobility/throughput and bicycle, pedestrian and transit needs. Exhibit 300-3 is an example of the land use typically found in an Urban Mix context. It is not intended to depict specific design aspects. It is the responsibility of the design team to determine the final design criteria for a project cross-section to meet the goals and outcomes of a specific project.

Exhibit 300-3 Example of Urban Mix Context - Hillsboro, SE Baseline St. (OR 8, Tualatin Valley Hwy.)



DRAFT

Table 300-9 Design Element Recommendations for Urban Mix

Realm	Design Element	Width Guidance
Pedestrian Realm	Frontage Zone	1′
	Pedestrian Zone[7]	8′ to 5′
	Buffer Zone	6′ to 0′
	Curb/Gutter[1]	2′ to 0.5′
Transition Realm[6]	Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)[2]	8′ to 7′
	Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including Buffer)[2]	6′ to 5′
	Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer[2] Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer (preferred for On-Street Lane)[2]	4′ to 2′ 4′ to 0′
	Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder (if travel lane directly adjacent to curb)[3,5]	2′ to 0′
	On-Street ~~Parking~~Parking[8]	8′
Travelway Realm[5]	Travel Lane[4,5]	11′ to 12′
	Right Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	11′ to 12′
	Left Turn Lane[4]	11′ to 12′
	Left Side / Right Side Shy Distance	1′ to 0′
	Two-Way-Left-Turn Lane	11′ to 12′
	Raised Median – No Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	8′ to 11′
	Left-Turn Lane with Raised Curb Median/Separator (including 16″ separator & Shy Distances)	12′ to 14′

[1] Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided or travel lane is directly adjacent to curb, gutter pan should be included in shoulder/shy or on-street parking measurement. Gutter pan should be included in travel lane, bicycle lane or turn lane measurements only where a smooth transition from gutter pan to roadway surface is provided.

[2] Refer to Bicycle Facility Selection process ~~(and Part 900~~(Section 941) to determine appropriate bicycle facility ~~type. Consider raised~~tier. Refer only to the design elements corresponding to the applicable bikeway tier. Tier 1 facilities include one-way separated bike lanes (See Section 943 for discussion of curb constraints), two-way separated bike lanes and shared use side paths (See Section 961). Tier 2 facilities include on-street bike lanes and buffered bike lanes. Tier 3 facilities are travel lanes shared with motor vehicles. See Section 943 for ODOT design standards in the bike lane zones.

[3] Tier 2 bicycle lanes ~~where appropriate. Except for right-turn channelizations, 5-foot on-street~~ also function as shoulders. Since many Tier 1 bicycle ~~lane is allowed only with~~ facilities are outside the shoulder area, a ~~street buffer. When a raised buffer is used to protect the bicycle lane, the width should~~shoulder may need to be ~~6′ if parking is adjacent or if signs or other features are anticipated.~~ provided in addition to the bike facility. Overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as the right-side shoulder. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs.

[4] 11-foot lane width preferred; at 40 mph and above, a 12-foot lane width preferred; **10-foot lane width requires a formal design exception from the State Roadway Engineer.** On freight- or transit-oriented streets, a 10-foot travel lane is generally not appropriate without a buffer zone or shoulder.

[5] On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

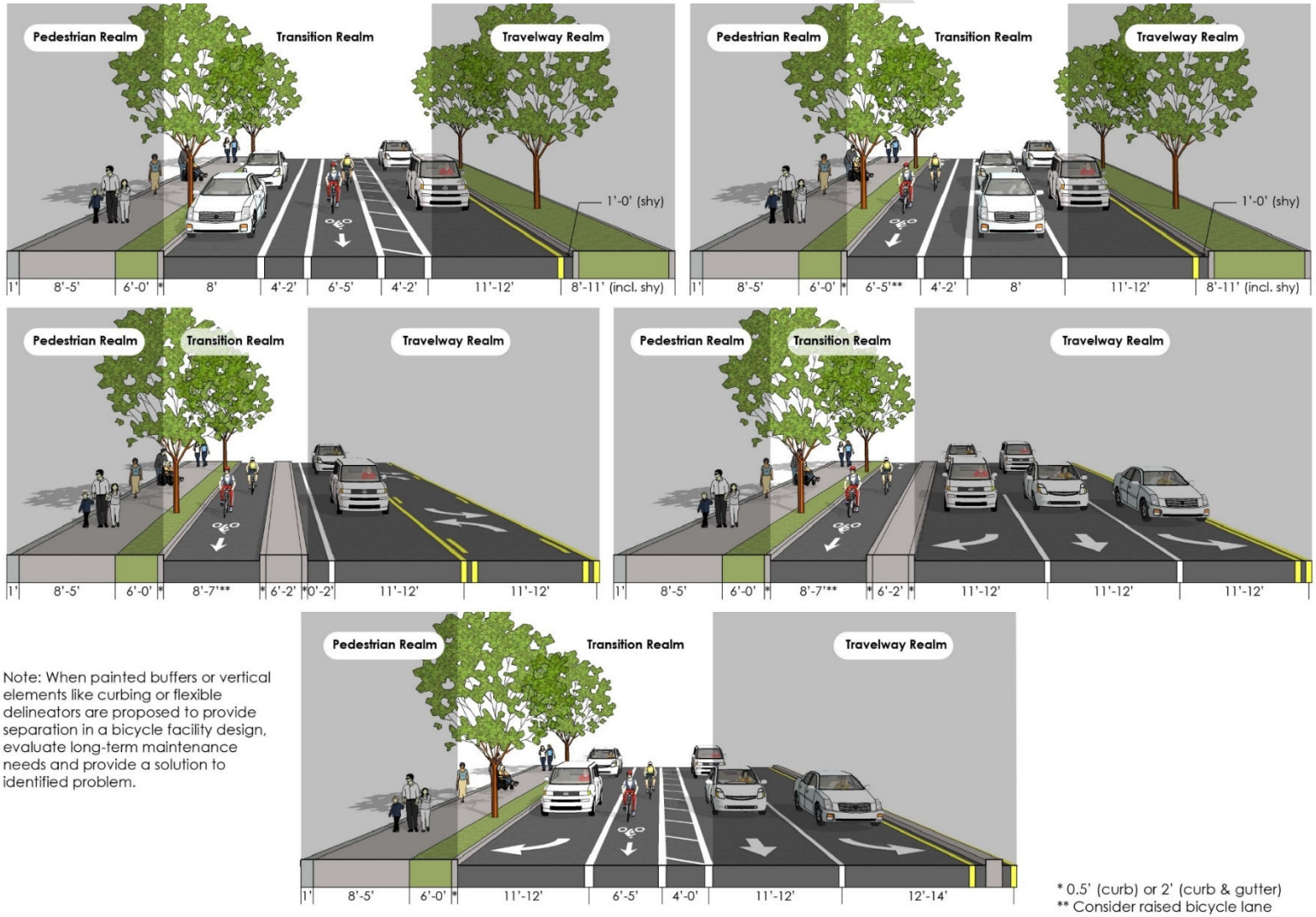
[6] When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

[7] 5-foot pedestrian zone requires a paved frontage zone and/or a paved buffer zone. **Minimum sidewalk width is 6-feet.**

[8] Parking width does not include shoulder/shy width distance.

DRAFT

Figure 300-7 Example Cross-Section Options Urban Mix, See Table 300-9 for additional information



305.3 Commercial Corridor

Table 300-10 provides design criteria for the respective design elements for ODOT roadways through the Commercial Corridor context. With this design approach, the goal is to design roadways for a target speed of 30-35 mph. Figure 300-8 illustrates various cross section scenarios for how the design elements within this type of context may be arranged.

Exhibit 300-4 depicts a Commercial Corridor context with large building footprints set within large blocks, large parking lots and a disconnected or sparse roadway network. The Commercial Corridor context can also include industrial land uses and is traditionally focused heavily on vehicle mobility. It is important in this context to also provide access for transit, bicycles and pedestrian needs to the highest level possible to encourage multi-modal use. Exhibit 300-4 is an example of the land use typically found in the Commercial Corridor context. It is not intended to depict specific design aspects. It is the responsibility of the design team to determine the final design criteria for a project cross-section to meet the goals and outcomes of a specific project.

Exhibit 300-4 Typical Commercial Corridor Context - Grants Pass (OR 199, Redwood Hwy.)



DRAFT

Table 300-10 Design Element Recommendations for Commercial Corridor

Realm	Design Element	Width Guidance
Pedestrian Realm	Frontage Zone	1′
	Pedestrian Zone[9]	8′ to 5′
	Buffer Zone	5′ to 0′
	Curb/Gutter[1]	2′ to 0.5′
Transition Realm[8]	Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)[2]	8′ to 7′
	Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including Buffer)[2]	6′ to 5′
	Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer (preferred for On-Street Lane)[2]	5′ to 2′ 5′ to 0′
	Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder (if travel lane directly adjacent to curb)[3,5]	4′ to 0′
	On-Street Parking	N/A
Travelway Realm[5]	Travel Lane[4,5]	11′ to 12′
	Right Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	12′ to 13′
	Left Turn Lane[6]	12′ to 14′
	Left Side / Right Side Shy Distance[3]	1′ to 0′
	Two-Way Left-Turn Lane[6]	12′ to 14′
	Raised Median – No Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	8′ to 11′
	Left-Turn Lane with Raised Curb Median/Separator (including 16″ separator & Shy Distance)[7]	14′ to 16′

[1] Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided or travel lane is directly adjacent to curb, gutter pan should be included in shoulder/shy or on-street parking measurement. Gutter pan should be included in travel lane, bicycle lane or turn lane measurements only where a smooth transition from gutter pan to roadway surface is provided.

[2] Refer to Bicycle Facility Selection process ~~(and Part 900~~(Section 941) to determine appropriate bicycle facility ~~type. Consider raised~~tier. Refer only to the design elements corresponding to the applicable bikeway tier. Tier 1 facilities include one-way separated bike lanes (See Section 943 for discussion of curb constraints), two-way separated bike lanes and shared use side paths (See Section 961). Tier 2 facilities include on-street bike lanes and buffered bike lanes. Tier 3 facilities are travel lanes shared with motor vehicles. See Section 943 for ODOT design standards in the bike lane zones.

[3] Tier 2 bicycle lanes ~~where appropriate. Except for right-turn channelizations, 5-foot on-street~~ also function as shoulders. Since many Tier 1 bicycle ~~lane allowed only with~~ facilities are outside the shoulder area, a ~~street buffer. When a raised buffer is used to protect the bicycle lane, the width should~~ shoulder may need to be ~~6′ if parking is adjacent or if signs or other features are anticipated.~~

[3] provided in addition to the bike facility. Overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as minimum right-side shoulder width. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs. At 35 mph and above, at a minimum, include a 1-foot shoulder/shy distance to curb or roadside barrier.

[4] At 40 mph and above, a 12-foot lane is preferred; **10-foot lane width requires a formal design exception from the State Roadway Engineer.** On freight- or transit-oriented streets, a 10-foot travel lane is generally not appropriate without a buffer zone or shoulder.

[5] On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

[6] At 40 mph and above, a 14-foot lane is preferred.

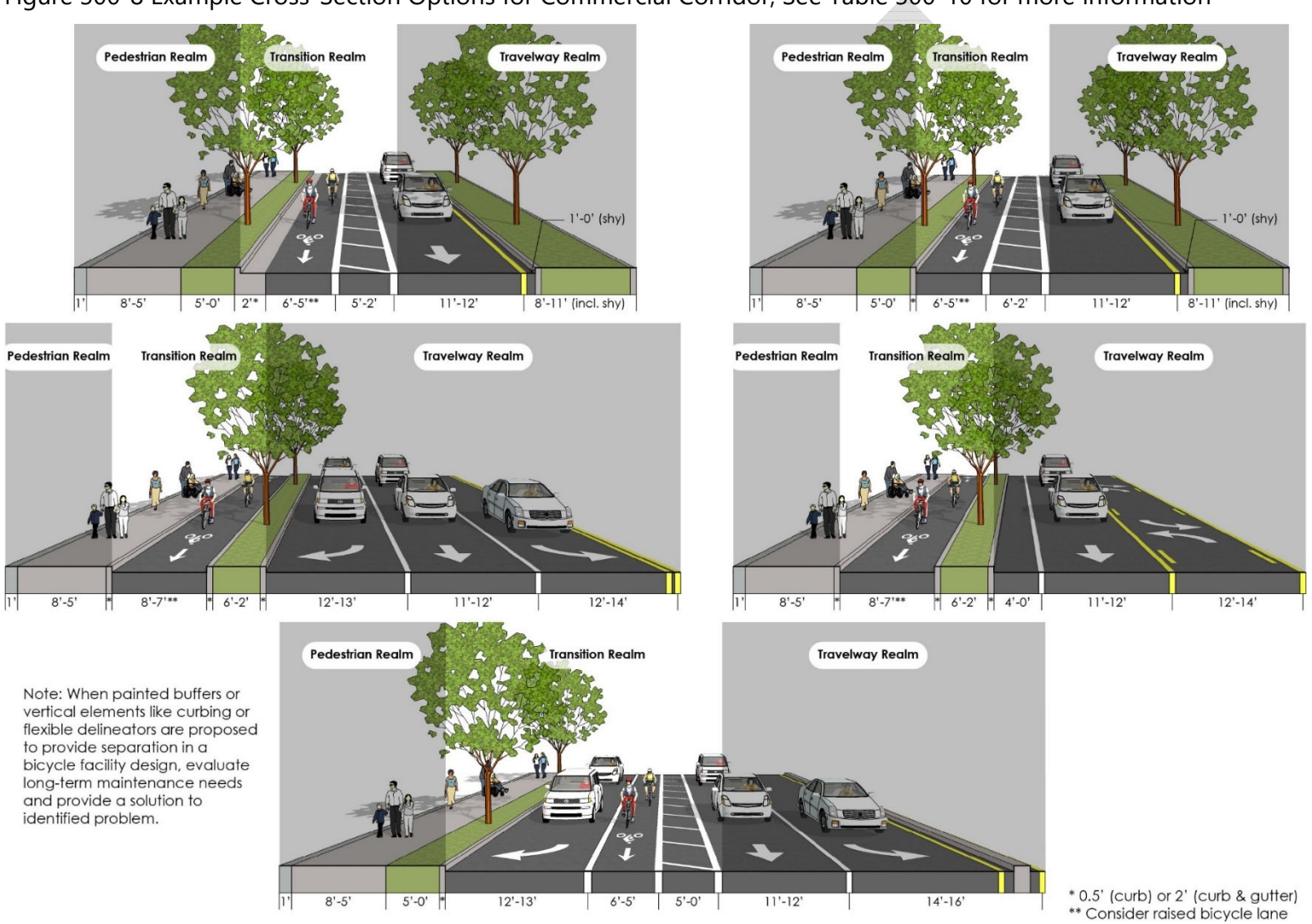
[7] At 40 mph and above, a 16-foot width is preferred.

[8] When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

[9] 5-foot pedestrian zone requires a paved frontage zone and/or a paved buffer zone. **Minimum sidewalk width is 6-feet.**

DRAFT

Figure 300-8 Example Cross-Section Options for Commercial Corridor, See Table 300-10 for more information



305.4 Residential Corridor

Table 300-11 provides the design criteria for the respective design elements for ODOT roadways through the Residential Corridor context. With this design approach, the goal is to design roadways for a target speed of 30-35 mph. Figure 300-9 illustrates various cross section scenarios for how the design elements within this type of context may be arranged.

Exhibit 300-5 depicts a Residential Corridor context. This context contains mostly residential land uses with a well-connected to somewhat connected roadway network. The Residential Corridor context may extend for long distances with single-family homes or apartment complexes intermixed that have direct access to the roadway. However, access is often through public street connections on major arterials where vehicle mobility is more of a focus. With residential uses being the primary land use in a Residential Corridor, it is important to provide access for transit, bicycles and pedestrian needs to the highest level possible to encourage multi-modal use and provide equity for all socioeconomic groups. Residential Corridors are often on the fringes of Commercial Corridors or Urban Mix areas. Having a variety of modal choices for residents living along the Residential Corridor to access adjacent Commercial Corridors or Urban Mix areas to obtain goods and services is critical to livability and sustainability. Providing alternative modal facilities can affect change and work towards statewide goals to reduce greenhouse gas levels as well as reducing the overall carbon footprint. Exhibit 300-5 is an example of the land use typically found in the Residential Corridor context. It is not intended to depict specific design aspects. It is the responsibility of the design team to determine the final design criteria for a project cross-section to meet the goals and outcomes of a specific project and fit the needs of all roadway users.

Exhibit 300-5 Example of a Residential Corridor context - Tigard - OR 141 (Hall Blvd.)



DRAFT

Table 300-11 Design Element Recommendations for Residential Corridor

Realm	Design Element	Width Guidance
Pedestrian Realm	Frontage Zone	1′
	Pedestrian Zone[9]	8′ to 5′
	Buffer Zone	6′ to 0′
	Curb/Gutter[1]	2′ to 0.5′
Transition Realm[8]	Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)[2]	8′ to 7′
	Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including Buffer)[2]	6′ to 5′
	Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer (preferred for On-Street Lane)[2]	5′ to 2′ 5′ to 0′
	Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder (if travel lane directly adjacent to curb)[3,5]	4′ to 0′
	On-Street Parking	N/A
Travelway Realm[5]	Travel Lane[4,5]	11′ to 12′
	Right Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	12′ to 13′
	Left Turn Lane[6]	12′ to 14′
	Left Side / Right Side Shy Distance[3]	1′ to 0
	Two-Way Left-Turn Lane[6]	12′ to 14′
	Raised Median – No Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	8′ to 11′
	Left-Turn Lane with Raised Curb Median/Separator (including 16″ separator & Shy Distances)[7]	14′ to 15′

[1] Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided or travel lane is directly adjacent to curb, gutter pan should be included in shoulder/shy or on-street parking measurement. Gutter pan should be included in travel lane, bicycle lane or turn lane measurements only where a smooth transition from gutter pan to roadway surface is provided.

[2] Refer to Bicycle Facility Selection process ~~(and Part 900~~(Section 941) to determine appropriate bicycle facility ~~type. Consider raised~~tier. Refer only to the design elements corresponding to the applicable bikeway tier. Tier 1 facilities include one-way separated bike lanes (See Section 943 for discussion of curb constraints), two-way separated bike lanes and shared use side paths (See Section 961). Tier 2 facilities include on-street bike lanes and buffered bike lanes. Tier 3 facilities are travel lanes shared with motor vehicles. See Section 943 for ODOT design standards in the bike lane zones.

[3] Tier 2 bicycle lanes ~~where appropriate. Except for right-turn channelizations, 5-foot on-street~~ also function as shoulders. Since many Tier 1 bicycle ~~lane allowed only with~~ facilities are outside the shoulder area, a ~~street buffer. When a raised buffer is used to protect the bicycle lane, the width should~~shoulder may need to be ~~6′ if parking is adjacent or if signs or other features are anticipated.~~

[3] provided in addition to the bike facility. Overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as minimum right-side shoulder width. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs. At 35 mph and above, at a minimum, include 1-foot shoulder/shy distance to curb or roadside barrier.

[4] At 40 mph and above, a 12-foot lane is preferred; **10-foot lane width requires a formal design exception from the State Roadway Engineer.** On freight- or transit-oriented streets, a 10-foot travel lane is generally not appropriate without a buffer zone or shoulder.

[5] On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

[6] At 40 mph and above a 14-foot lane is preferred.

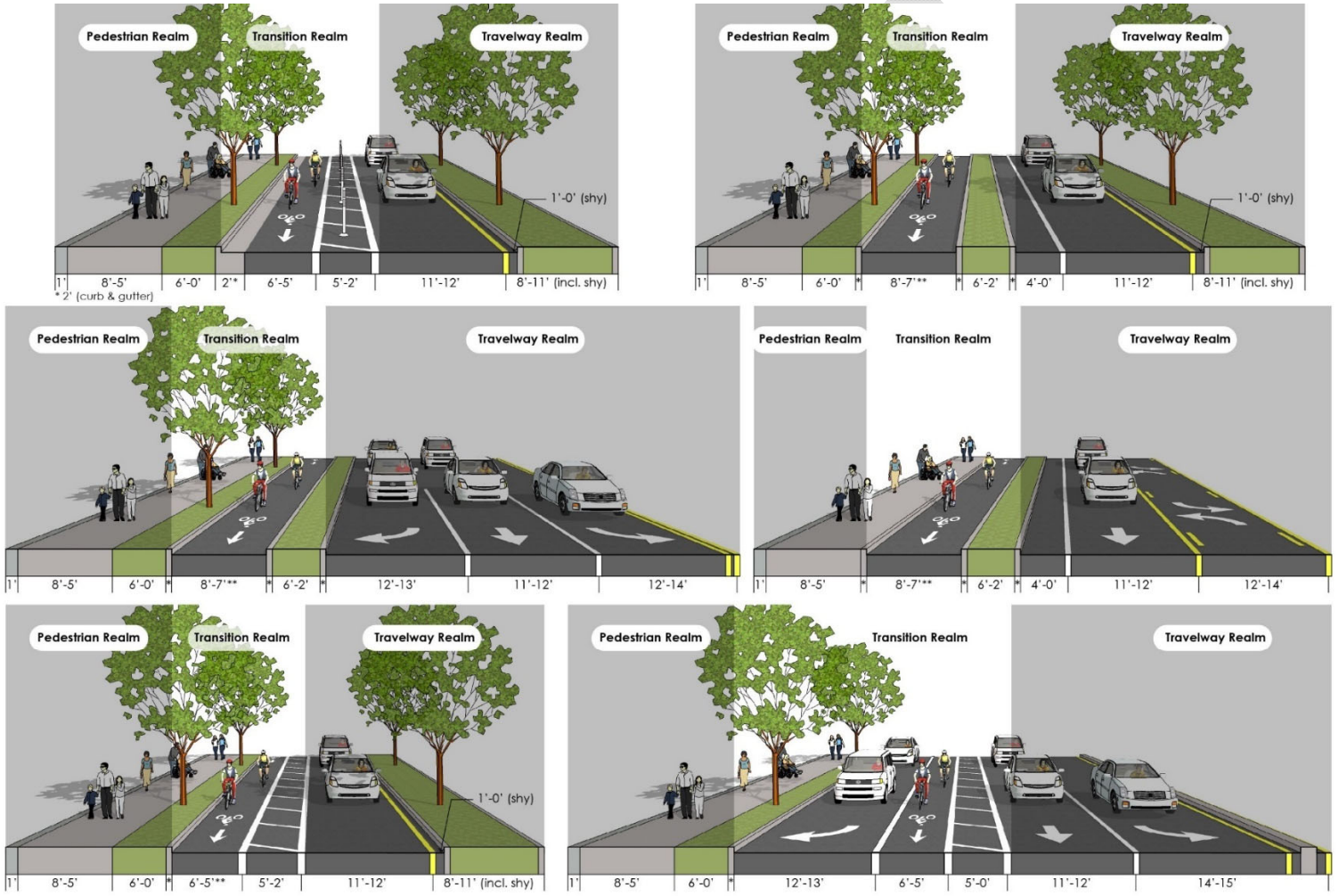
[7] At 40 mph and above, a 15-foot width is preferred.

[8] When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

[9] 5-foot pedestrian zone requires a paved frontage zone and/or a paved buffer zone. **Minimum sidewalk width is 6-feet.**

DRAFT

Figure 300-9 Example Cross-Section Options for Residential Corridor, See Table 300-11 for additional information



* 0.5' (curb) or 2' (curb & gutter) ** Consider raised bicycle lane

Note: When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

305.5 Suburban Fringe

Table 300-12 provides design criteria for the respective design elements for ODOT roadways through the Suburban Fringe context. With this design approach, the goal is to design roadways for a target speed of 35-40 mph. Figure 300-10 illustrates various cross section scenarios for how the design elements within this type of context may be arranged.

Exhibit 300-6 depicts the Suburban Fringe context that generally contains sparsely developed lands that are typically at the edge of the urban growth boundary of a city or the established urban area of a town. Land uses can include large lot residential, small-scale farms or intermittent commercial or industrial properties. The Suburban Fringe context is often the area between higher speed rural roads and lower speed urban roads. A key component of design in this context is to indicate to drivers they are entering an urban area and need to slow their speed for the upcoming urban context. Rural transit stops may be present within the Suburban Fringe area and need to be designed to accommodate buses stopping and starting with higher speed traffic. It is critical to investigate and determine existing and future pedestrian activity to and from these rural transit stops to develop and design appropriate access. Local transit agencies can be a resource for information. Bicycle facilities are incorporated as needed for connectivity to facilities within the adjacent urban context.

Exhibit 300-6 Example of Suburban Fringe, Prineville, SE Combs Flat Rd. (OR 380)



DRAFT

Table 300-12 Design Element Recommendations for Suburban Fringe

Realm	Design Element	Width Guidance
Pedestrian Realm	Frontage Zone	1′
	Pedestrian Zone[9]	8′ to 5′
	Buffer Zone	6′ to 0′
	Curb/Gutter[1]	2′ to 0.5′
Transition Realm[8]	Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)[2]	8′ to 7′
	Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including Buffer)[2]	6′
	Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer ~~(physical~~ Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer (separation preferred for On-Street Lane)[2]	5′ to 2′ 5′ to 0′
	Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder (if travel lane directly adjacent to curb)[3]	6′ to 0′
	On-Street Parking	N/A
Travelway Realm[5]	Travel Lane[4,5]	11′ to 12′
	Right Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	12′ to 13′
	Left Turn Lane[6]	12′ to 14′
	Left Side / Right Side Shy Distance[3]	1′ to 0′
	Two-Way Left-Turn Lane[6]	12′ to 14′
	Raised Median – No Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	8′ to 13′
	Left-Turn Lane with Raised Curb Median/Separator (including 16″ separator & Shy Distances)[7]	14′ to 16′

[1] Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided or travel lane is directly adjacent to curb, gutter pan should be included in shoulder/shy or on-street parking measurement. Gutter pan should be included in travel lane, bicycle lane or turn lane measurements only where a smooth transition from gutter pan to roadway surface is provided.

[2] Refer to Bicycle Facility Selection process ~~(and Part 900~~(Section 941) to determine appropriate bicycle facility ~~type. The preferred bicycle and pedestrian facility in Suburban Fringe is a 10-foot to 16-foot~~ tier. Refer only to the design elements corresponding to the applicable bikeway tier. Tier 1 facilities include one-way separated bike lanes (See Section 943 for discussion of curb constraints), two-way separated bike lanes and shared use ~~path~~side paths (See Section 961). Tier 2 facilities include on-street bike lanes, buffered bike lanes and shoulders without bicycle markings. Tier 3 facilities are travel lanes shared with ~~a 6-foot buffer from the roadway. On-street~~motor vehicles. See Section 943 for ODOT design standards in the bike lane zones.

[3] Tier 2 bicycle lanes ~~shall include the widest street buffer that can be accommodated and should include physical separation (e.g., flexible delineator posts) where feasible. Consider raised~~also function as shoulders. Since many Tier 1 bicycle ~~lanes where appropriate. When a raised buffer is~~

~~used to protect the bicycle lane, the width should be 6 feet if parking is adjacent or if signs or other features are anticipated. Except for right-turn channelizations, 5-foot on-street bicycle lane allowed only with a street buffer.~~

[3] ~~facilities are outside the shoulder area, a shoulder may need to be provided in addition to the bike facility.~~ Overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as minimum right side shoulder width. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs. At 35 mph and above, at a minimum, include a 1-foot shoulder/shy distance~~.~~ to curb or roadside barrier. In transition areas from higher speed to lower speed, shoulder width should taper from wider, higher speed shoulder width to appropriate lower speed urban shoulder width.

[4] At 40 mph and above, a 12-foot lane is preferred; **10-foot lane width requires a formal design exception from the State Roadway Engineer**. On freight- or transit-oriented streets, a 10-foot travel lane is generally not appropriate without a buffer zone or shoulder.

[5] On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

[6] At 40 mph and above a 14-foot lane is preferred.

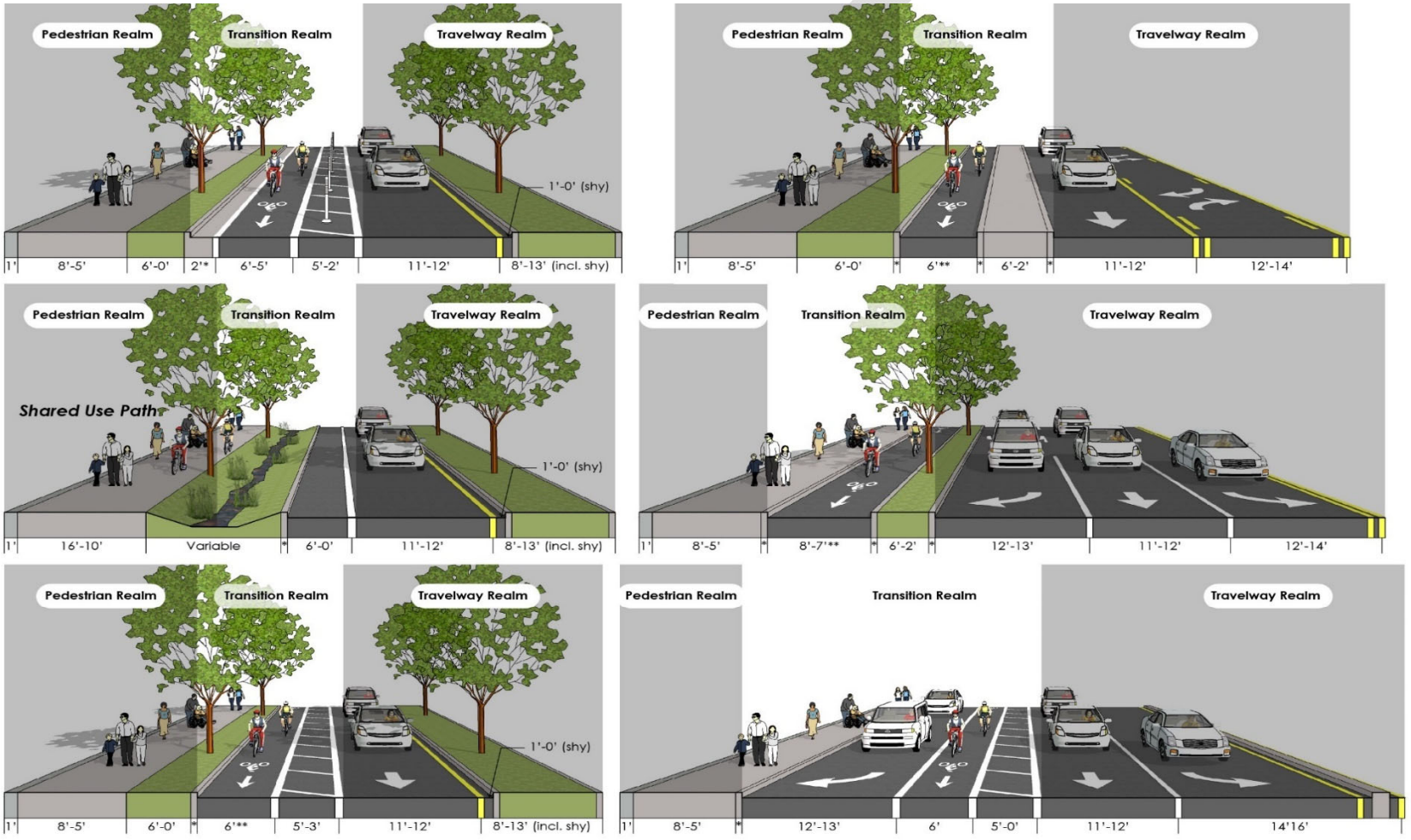
[7] At 40 mph and above a 16-foot width is preferred.

[8] When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

[9] 5-foot pedestrian zone requires a paved frontage zone and/or a paved buffer zone. **Minimum sidewalk width is 6-feet**.

DRAFT

Figure 300-10 Example Cross-Section Options for Suburban Fringe, See Table 300-12 for more information



* 0.5' (curb) or 2' (curb & gutter) ** Consider raised bicycle lane

Note: When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

305.6 Rural Community

Table 300-13 provides design criteria for the respective design elements for ODOT roadways through the Rural Community context. With this design approach, the goal is to design roadways for a target speed of 25-35 mph. Figure 300-11 illustrates various cross section scenarios for how the design elements within this type of context may be arranged.

Exhibit 300-7 is an example of a Rural Community context. This context encompasses small concentrations of developed areas immediately surrounded by rural undeveloped areas. Areas considered a Rural Community context can take many forms and are comprised of primarily residential uses but also include other uses that help to make the community self-sufficient. The Rural Community context isn't just a cluster of buildings along the roadway. There needs to be a central focal point or gathering place like a post office, store, school or community center that creates activity and movement of people around the community. These areas are often smaller unincorporated towns that don't meet the federal minimum population density of 5,000 to be classified as urban, but still have communities that are clustered around the highway with urban type needs where people need to safely cross the roadway to access goods and services. In many of these locations, the highway carries a rural arterial or collector designation in terms of the statewide highway network, but consideration must be given to the need to create a more urban feel with project design through these communities.

Designers should be aware of several issues when designing a highway through a Rural Community context. Issues such as speed, pedestrian safety and access are very important to the local community. The speed of traffic on the highway is a primary concern. The highway classification, importance as a freight route, traffic volume, and importance as a recreational route in addition to the roadside characteristics of the community must all be considered when selecting design elements. When reduced traveling speeds are desired, traffic calming techniques and development of roadside culture can be effective.

Traffic speed often has a significant physical, emotional and psychological impact to pedestrian crossing safety. Utilizing appropriate techniques to manage traffic vehicle speed is important in the Rural Community context. A variety of techniques could be employed, including, but not limited to, roundabouts, lane narrowing, speed feedback signs, curb extensions, median islands, etc. It is the responsibility of the project team to determine what treatments are appropriate for the location and that meet the performance and project goals. The ETSB Roadway Engineering Section can assist with developing traffic calming designs for these communities.

Pedestrian safety in rural communities is often a major concern. These communities often have small centers of activity on both sides of the highway that require pedestrians to cross. Providing safe and clear sidewalks is also an important design element to include in the Rural Community context. Sidewalks in these areas can be separated from the roadway with a buffer strip. This buffer strip can be landscaped to increase the visual appearance of the area and may also assist with speed management. Other techniques like providing clearly defined pedestrian

DRAFT

crossings at adequate spacing and delineating them where appropriate by the use of markings, signing, and construction materials all may be considered to improve the visibility of pedestrian crossing areas. Other features such as curb extensions and raised medians may also improve pedestrian crossing safety. The designer also needs to be aware of and take into account historic elements, areas or sites, which may impact the use of certain roadway designs.

Rural communities often need a high level of highway access to preserve the economic vitality and functionality of the community. This is generally caused by the lack of a supporting roadway network to reduce the dependence upon direct highway access. OAR 734 Division 51 provides guidance for access spacing. Where access spacing is less than standard, the designer can investigate alternative access techniques including but not limited to frontage roads, shared access, restricting turn movements, and completing local street systems to reduce highway access dependency.

Speed control, pedestrian safety, bicycle safety, access management, and community goals are important considerations for the Rural Community context. However, the designer must still consider the highway classification and other highway designations for these locations. The designer needs to balance accommodating through traffic with local movements when developing project designs in the Rural Community context.

Exhibit 300-7 Example of Rural Community, Rhododendron, Mt. Hood Hwy (US 26)



Table 300-13 Design Element Recommendations for Rural Community

Realm	Design Element	Width Guidance
Pedestrian Realm	Frontage Zone	1′
	Pedestrian Zone[8]	9′ to 5′
	Buffer Zone	5′ to 0′
	Curb/Gutter[1]	2′ to 0.5′
Transition Realm[7]	Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)[2]	8′ to 7′
	Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including Buffer)[2]	6′ to 5′
	Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer[2] Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer[2]	4′ to 2′ 4′ to 0′
	Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder (if travel lane directly adjacent to curb)[3]	6′ to 0′
	On-Street ~~Parking~~Parking[9]	8′
Travelway Realm[5]	Travel Lane[4,5]	11′ to 12′
	Right Turn Lane (including shy)	11′ to 12
	Left Turn Lane	11′ to 12′
	Left Side / Right Side Shy Distance[3]	1′ to 0′
	Two-Way Left-Turn Lane	11′ to 12′
	Raised Median – No Turn Lane (including Shy Distances)	8′ to 11′
	Left-Turn Lane with Raised Curb Median/Separator (including 16″ separator & Shy Distances)[6]	12′ to 14′

[1] Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided or travel lane is directly adjacent to curb, gutter pan should be included in shoulder/shy or on-street parking measurement. Gutter pan should be included in travel lane, bicycle lane or turn lane measurements only where a smooth transition from gutter pan to roadway surface is provided.

[2] Refer to Bicycle Facility Selection process ~~(and Part 900~~(Section 941) to determine appropriate bicycle facility type. ~~Consider raised bicycle~~ Refer only to the design elements corresponding to the applicable bikeway tier. Tier 1 facilities include one-way separated bike lanes ~~where appropriate. Except~~(See Section 943 for ~~right-turn channelizations, 5-foot~~discussion of curb constraints), two-way separated bike lanes and shared use side paths (See Section 961). Tier 2 facilities include on-street bike lanes, buffered bike lanes and shoulders without bicycle markings. Tier 3 facilities are travel lanes shared with motor vehicles. See Section 943 for ODOT design standards in the bike lane zones.

[3] Tier 2 bicycle ~~lane allowed only with a street buffer. When a raised buffer is used to protect a~~lanes also function as shoulders. Since many Tier 1 bicycle ~~lane, the width should~~ facilities are outside the shoulder area, a shoulder may need to be ~~6 feet if parking is adjacent or if signs or other features are anticipated.~~

~~3~~ provided in addition to the bike facility. Overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and

needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as minimum right-side shoulder width. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs. At 35 mph and above, at a minimum, include a 1-foot shoulder/shy distance to curb or roadside barrier. In transition areas from higher speed to lower speed, shoulder width should taper from wider, higher speed shoulder width to appropriate lower speed urban shoulder width.

[4] 11-foot lane width preferred, at 40 mph and above, a 12-foot lane is preferred. **10-foot lane width requires a formal design exception from the State Roadway Engineer**. On freight- or transit-oriented streets, a 10-foot travel lane is generally not appropriate without a buffer zone or shoulder.

[5] On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

[6] At 40 mph and above, a 14-foot width is preferred.

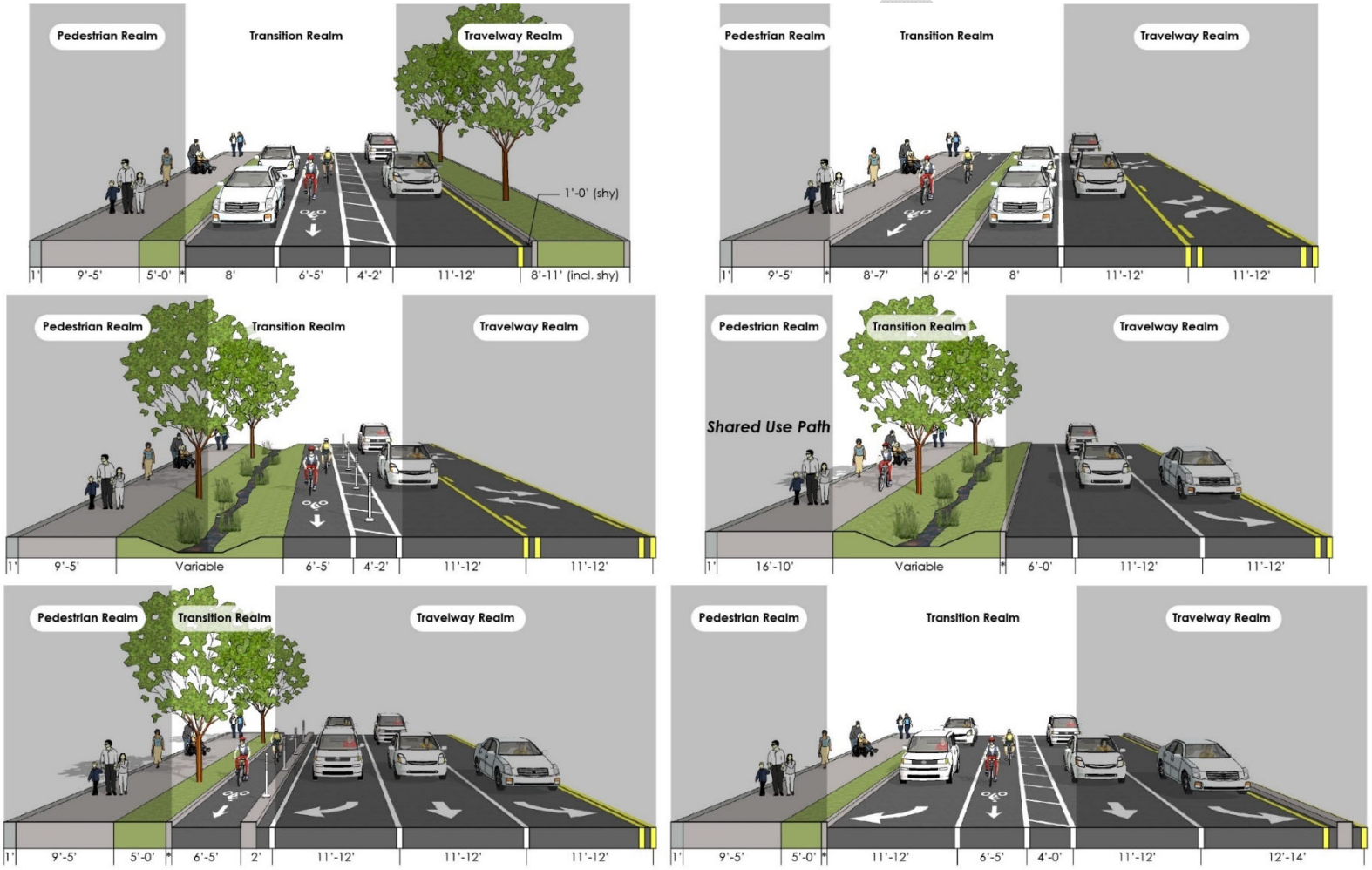
[7] When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

[8] 5-foot pedestrian zone requires a paved frontage zone and/or a paved buffer zone. **Minimum sidewalk width is 6 feet.**

[9] Parking width does not include shoulder/shy width distance.

DRAFT

Figure 300-11 Example Cross-Section Options for Rural Community, See Table 300-13 for additional information



* 0.5' (curb) or 2' (curb & gutter) ** Consider raised bicycle lane

Note: When painted buffers or vertical elements like curbing or flexible delineators are proposed to provide separation in a bicycle facility design, evaluate long-term maintenance needs and provide a solution to identified problems.

305.7 On-Street Parking

On-street parking is typically an element of STAs or Traditional Downtown/Central Business Districts. There are two types of on-street parking, parallel parking and diagonal parking. Both are discussed further in sub-sections below. On-street parking provides friction between the driver and the downtown environment and has potential for reducing speeds and can provide a traffic calming effect. The parked vehicles also provide a buffer between the traffic and pedestrians. An area of concern for designing on-street parking is that it may reduce the visibility of pedestrians and vehicles approaching or entering the roadway. Additionally, in a narrow cross-section where space is not available to designate a specific bike area, it is more difficult for bicyclists to negotiate the roadway advancing with traffic, while watching for the potential of a driver opening a car door into their path. In an STA or a Traditional Downtown/Central Business District, vehicle speed and bicycle speed are more closely matched and utilizing a shared lane condition to provide additional space to parked cars may be more appropriate than in other roadway designations. See sections 920.2 and 941.4.3, for information on appropriate use of bicyclists sharing lanes with motor vehicles.

Landscaping in conjunction with on-street parking can provide an urban roadway with a more inviting and visually pleasing effect. Landscaping, especially trees, can be a traffic calming technique as well. Trees provide a vertical element and have an impact on driver behavior, much in the same way as parked vehicles or adjacent buildings. A row of trees, buildings at the back of sidewalk, or parked cars gives the appearance to the driver that the roadway is narrower and calms traffic. Parked vehicles and trees or other landscaping features need to be located in appropriate locations so that sight distance, especially at intersections, is not compromised. See ORS 811.550 for where stopping, standing, or parking are prohibited. See Section 407 for placement requirements for median or street trees.

When parking is marked, accessible parking spaces must be provided in accordance with Oregon Transportation Commission Standards for Accessible Parking Places. The number and location of accessible parking spaces is a function of the entire block or parking lot on a site. Some coordination with the local jurisdiction may be required. Review any Electric Vehicle (EV) parking plans or any other parking plans for the community. Electric Vehicle parking is separate from on-street parking and specific accessibility requirements apply.

305.7.1 Parallel Parking

Parallel parking is the preferred type on the state highway system where on-street parking is deemed appropriate. On-street parking is often a necessary component for maintaining a functioning and economically viable-downtown area. Businesses are generally close to the sidewalk, often with limited off-street parking opportunities. When making decisions to include on-street parking in these areas, consider the highway classification and function, viability of

DRAFT

parallel roadways, adequacy of side street parking, availability of other parking strategies, overall safety, and maintaining the economic vitality of the downtown area.

Generally, on-street parking should be included with roadway designs for STAs and the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context whenever possible. On-street parallel parking is also permissible in the Urban Mix and Rural Community contexts if deemed appropriate. For Commercial Corridor, Residential Corridor, and Suburban Fringe contexts, on-street parking is not applicable.

On-street parking increases the potential for conflict between bicyclists and motor vehicles. Through these areas, bicyclists need room to operate and maneuver for opening car doors, mirrors of motor vehicles, and vehicles exiting parking spaces. **Where parallel on-street parking is deemed appropriate, the combined on-street parking and bicycle travel width shall not be less than 12 feet in an STA or Traditional Downtown/Central Business District (7 feet for parking and 5 feet for bicycle accommodation).** More than the minimum space for bicycles is better and strongly encouraged. Separated facilities for bicyclists are preferred. See Table 300-8 for design guidance in STAs and Traditional Downtown/Central Business District contexts. In Urban Mix and Rural Community contexts, refer to Table 300-9 and Table 300-13 respectively for bicycle facility and on-street parking dimensions. Although not a preferred treatment, if constraints prohibit parallel parking and a bike lane side-by-side and the posted speed is 25 mph or less, it may be possible to accommodate bicycle travel by sharing the travel lane. See Part 900 for bicycle facility design and specifically Section 920.2 for shared lanes and Section 941 for the urban bicycle facility selection process. See the ODOT ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual for shared lane marking criteria.

NOTE: Only parallel parking is allowed on state highways. Any other type requires an exception.

305.7.2 Diagonal Parking

Diagonal parking should only be installed where the below criteria are met and space is available to safely accommodate all users, including pedestrians and bicyclists. When diagonal parking is analyzed, impacts to travel lane, bike lane, and parking widths and any subsequent compromises must be balanced for all operational needs. The formal approval process will ensure that the conditions below have been met and documented.

The decision to approve diagonal parking is only made where the diagonal parking is justified, found to be reasonably safe, and does not detract from providing a high level of pedestrian and bicyclist design and accommodation. STA and Traditional Downtown/CBD context locations are meant to be very pedestrian and alternative mode friendly; diagonal parking should not reduce any of these features to unacceptable levels.

Due to operational deficiencies and restricted sight distances diagonal parking is generally not permitted on state highways and is not recommended. However, communities designated and

approved by the OTC as an STA may have situations where diagonal parking may be considered. The Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context may be appropriate for diagonal parking as well, since it generally is consistent with STA characteristics. The Urban Mix and Rural Community contexts also allow on-street parking. However, this is limited to parallel style parking.

In addition to traditional head-in diagonal parking, many cities have been experimenting with back-in diagonal parking. In locations where diagonal parking is being considered in general, back-in diagonal parking may also be considered where deemed appropriate. Back-in diagonal parking has advantages and eliminates some of the operational deficiencies and sight distance problems encountered with traditional head-in diagonal parking. When diagonal parking is being evaluated, strongly consider back-in diagonal parking with the analysis. Drivers can pull into the traffic stream with a good view of oncoming traffic that includes bicyclists. Back-in diagonal parking for accessible parking spots is not prohibited.

For all diagonal parking requests, the State Roadway Engineer must approve the installation of diagonal parking through the design exception process. In order to receive this approval, the diagonal parking is only allowed in an approved and designated STA or an established Traditional Downtown/Central Business District context as determined by guidance from the Highway Design Manual. The following considerations are required when requesting approval for diagonal parking.

1. A parking utilization study must be completed documenting the need for additional parking opportunities in the subject area. The study should be in compliance with the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) guidelines for parking studies and show an existing utilization factor of 85 percent or greater.
2. The community must demonstrate that the parking demand cannot be met by increasing side street parking opportunities or developing off-street shared parking areas.
3. The highway must have a posted speed of 25 mph or less.
4. The Average Daily Traffic (ADT) on the highway should be less than 6,000 vehicles. On multi-lane couplets, the ADT should be less than 6,000 vehicles per direction.
5. The available right of way must be sufficient to provide standard cross section features. For a two-lane roadway and 60-degree angle parking, a minimum distance of 33 feet from the curb line to the centerline stripe of the highway without a bike lane is required. With a bike lane, the minimum distance is 40 feet. In addition, a minimum 10-foot sidewalk is desirable in STAs and Traditional Downtown/CBD contexts. Sidewalk widths should not be reduced below the minimum standard to install diagonal parking.
6. Bike lanes should only be striped where sufficient room exists to allow a shy distance to the bike lane and travel lane. Buffered bicycle lanes are preferred with space provided to both the travel lane and parked cars.

DRAFT

Exhibit 300-8 Examples of On-Street Parking



Parallel Parking
Minimum Bicycle Lane



Typical Head-in Diagonal Parking
Reduced Visibility to Oncoming
Vehicles and Bicyclists



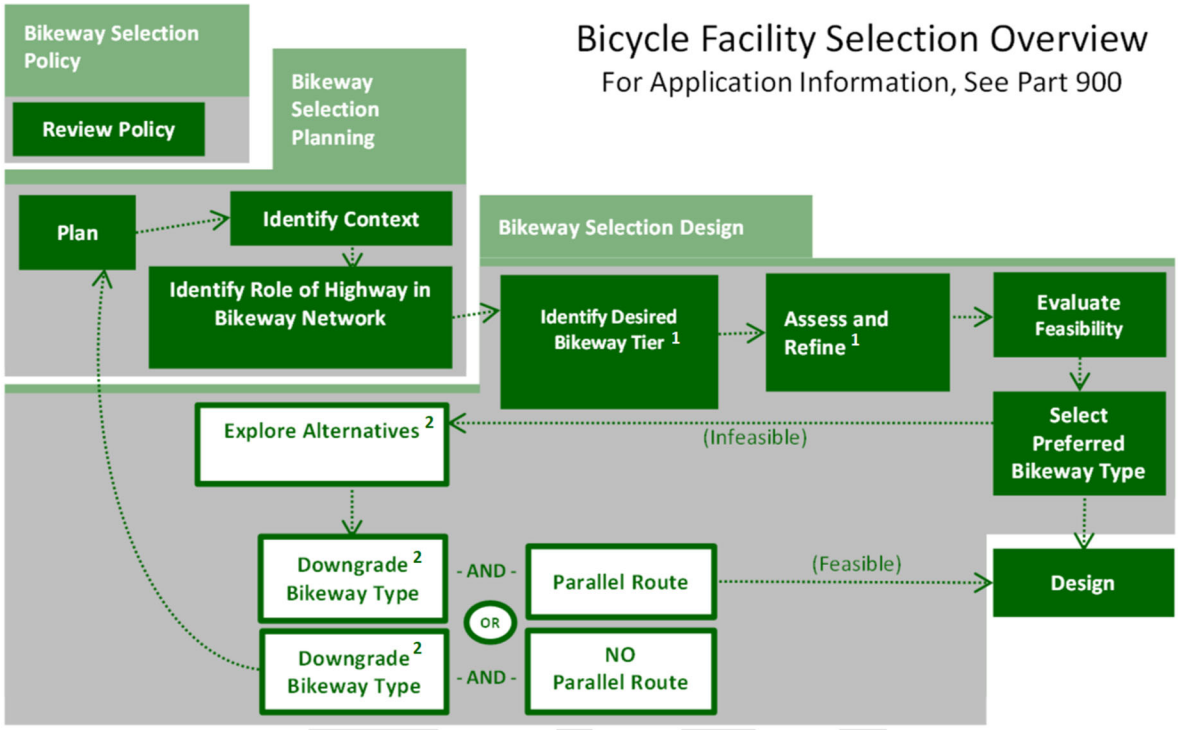
Back-in Diagonal Parking
Improved Visibility to Oncoming
Vehicles and Bicyclists

Section 306 Bicycle Facility Selection

In Oregon, all public urban roadways should have appropriate walkways and bikeways provided, regardless of whether or not they are a "designated" route. **Per ORS 366.514, walkways and bikeways must be provided whenever a roadway is "constructed, reconstructed, or relocated."** *Providing the preferred bicycle facility type on ODOT facilities that are part of state, regional, local bicycle routes, scenic bikeways, US Bicycle Routes, or other designated bikeways is the primary goal.* On highways that are not part of a planned bicycle route, accommodations for bicycle traffic is still the goal and providing a facility with riders of all ages and abilities in mind is beneficial, unless a low-stress parallel route has been identified by the local jurisdiction or an adopted network plan. When parallel routes are selected, they should be as direct as possible and well-signed for bicycle wayfinding. To be viable, parallel routes provide equivalent access to destinations along the highway, provide facilities and crossings for "Interested but Concerned" users, and increase average trip lengths by less than 0.27 miles or 1.5 minutes for short trips.

DRAFT

Figure 300-12 Bicycle Facility Selection Process



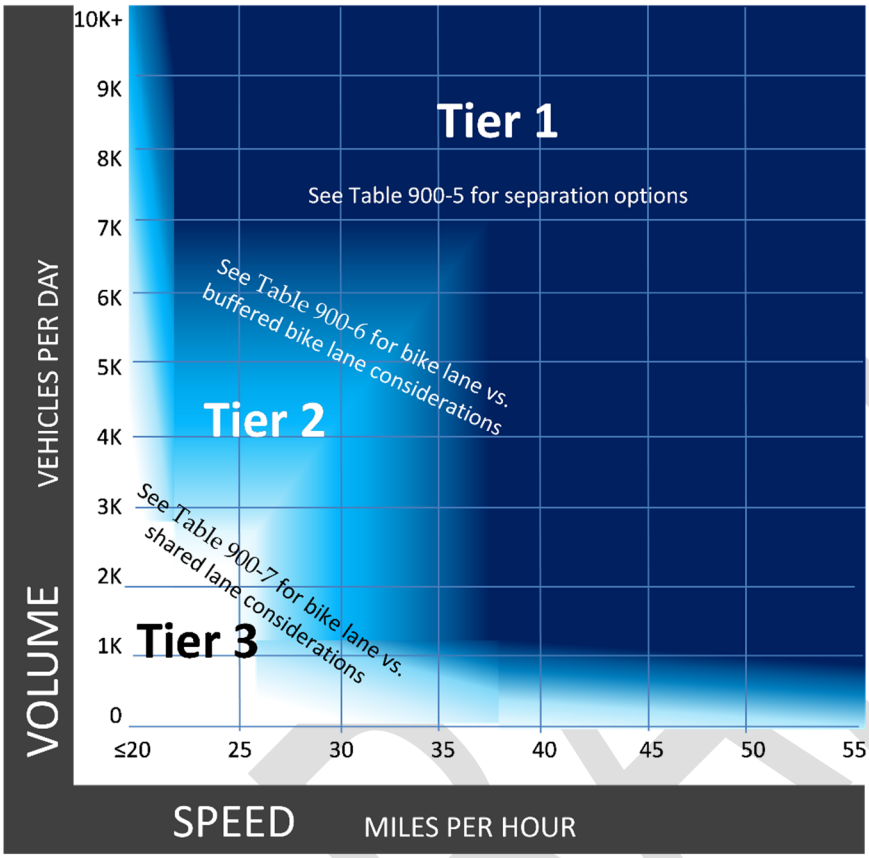
[1] See Figure 300-13. For application, see Part 900 and Figure 900-3.

[2] See Part 900

Encouraging and accommodating bicycles as a transportation mode is a priority within urban projects and an important aspect to be integrated into the cross-section. In order to expand the portion of the bicyclist demand served, appropriate bicycle facilities need to be evaluated and included early in project planning and development. Understanding current guidance about bicycle facility selection, identifying the degree of separation, and evaluating trade-offs are key to effective implementation. Reviewing various options using a decision-making framework can help prioritize trade-offs, refine decisions, and lead to a solution that supports the project needs. Bicycle facilities are generally located in the transition realm, but depending on facility type selected, could also be considered part of the pedestrian realm, as in a design that integrated the bicycle facility as a shared use path.

Figure 300-12 illustrates the framework for the bicycle facility selection process and Figure 300-13 depicts guidance on the type of bicycle facility to use based upon vehicle speeds and vehicle volumes commensurate with appropriate design tiers. This section is introductory for bicycle facility design and is included here in reference to the previous sections on realms and cross section design criteria. Additional detail on bicycle facility selection and design is located in Part 900.

Figure 300-13 Bicycle Facility Tier Identification Matrix



Section 307 Pedestrian Crossing Locations

Identifying and prioritizing pedestrian crossing locations on ODOT facilities is a priority within urban projects. Providing adequate crossing opportunities for pedestrians to access destinations easily and comfortably is a focus for urban design. ***When crossings are located with too great of a distance between pedestrian origins and destinations, add crossings to increase pedestrian permeability to the roadway section according to the target spacing table and process outlined in the ODOT Traffic Manual, Section 310.1.*** Considerations for pedestrian crossing locations and the trade-offs of various options are decision topics that begin during the planning process through project delivery and maintenance. Planning level information and specific local needs are important aspects in the analysis. In some cases, an existing crossing might be better if relocated. When considered as part of a larger project, such as a corridor project, strive to meet the spacing targets at a minimum. ***If the target crossing spacing cannot be met on a project, the project team provides documentation as part of the ODOT design documentation process. Similarly, if a crossing is proposed for removal and would lead to a spacing distance beyond the target range for the context, justification is provided.***

Once crossing locations have been identified, an engineering study is done at each crossing according to the ODOT Traffic Manual to determine what, if any, enhancements are needed at each crossing. If enhancements are proposed to be added along a section of highway listed as a Reduction Review Route that would change or restrict the cross-section for large vehicles, the project must follow the process outlined in OAR 731-012.

Section 308 Median Design

308.1 General

Highway medians are important design elements that can significantly impact the safety, function, and/or efficiency of a highway. Highway medians provide separation of opposing traffic streams, separation of turning and through traffic, safety buffer and recovery area, positive longitudinal guidance, and positive control of turning movements. Some median designs improve pedestrian crossings by providing a refuge for pedestrians crossing, minimizing the exposure time to traffic and reducing the crossing distance. Other benefits may include enhanced aesthetics and reduced headlight glare. This section will discuss general design elements and standards for various median treatments on roadways other than freeways. Freeway median design is covered in Section 310, Urban and Rural Freeway. Section 310.6 discusses median treatment for 3R projects and Section 310.13 outlines median treatment for 4R projects.

Additional information for non-freeway median design relating to specific roadway classifications can be found in the following sections:

- Urban Expressways – Section 311.14 and Section 311.16
- Rural Expressways - Section 311.18
- Rural Arterials, Collectors, Local Routes – Section 312.8
- Urban Arterials, Collectors, Local Routes – Section 313.8

Medians can be either traversable or non-traversable designs. Traversable medians are those that do not physically prevent vehicles from crossing or entering the median. These include Continuous Two Way Left Turn Lanes (CTWLTLs) and painted medians. A non-traversable median is designed to discourage or prevent vehicles from crossing the median except at designated locations. Examples of non-traversable medians include raised curb, concrete barrier, or depressed medians. Designers need to be aware that medians striped with "double-double yellow lines with transverse markings" are physically traversable but specifically illegal to cross.

Wherever a raised median or concrete barrier is being considered for installation where it did not exist previously, considerations of access management criteria and freight mobility must be followed. Access

management criteria found in ORS 374.305 to 374.330 must be included in the design. ***Highway designs must follow the procedure and guidelines in OAR 731-012 for the implementation of ORS 366.215, "Creation of state highways; reduction in vehicle carrying capacity" to ensure freight mobility issues have been addressed.***

As noted above, the design of highway medians can significantly impact safety. Review of freeway median cross-over crashes resulted in changes in ODOT freeway median closure design. Specific guidance on the closing of interstate and freeway medians and freeway median barrier warrants can be found in Part 400, Section 401.

308.2 Continuous Two Way Left Turn Lanes

Continuous Two Way Left Turn Lanes (CTWLTLs) are often used in urban areas to provide full movement access to adjacent properties and roadways while minimizing impacts of left turning vehicles on through traffic. CTWLTLs are a reasonable tool to improve system safety and efficiency for roadways with low to moderate traffic volumes and speeds. CTWLTLs are generally not be used on roadways with any of the following conditions:

1. Traffic volumes over 28,000 vehicles a day
2. Speeds of 45 mph or more and with multiple, closely spaced accesses.

Under these types of conditions, the preferred median treatment is a non-traversable median that controls left turn movements. CTWLTLs can be considered in high volume and/or high-speed locations when the access points are all located on one side of the highway or are spaced at least 1000 feet apart when the access points are on opposite sides of the highway. On roadways with existing CTWLTLs, the existing median should not be converted to a painted median until all private accesses have been removed; this is generally only true on limited access highways.

While CTWLTLs are generally a good safety technique to use, the designer needs to be aware of potential competing use of the CTWLTLs for making either a two-stage left turn or at over lapping left turns access locations. Both of these conflicts place vehicles in a potential head-on configuration.

Continuous left turn lanes should be considered only on roadways where:

1. Access to adjacent properties is desired and not otherwise precluded.
2. Left turning vehicles stopped in travel lanes may present an unexpected obstacle.
3. Left turning vehicles significantly reduce roadway capacity.
4. Property access points are clearly defined, and the safety of pedestrian traffic is given the highest priority.
5. Passing opportunities on two-lane roadways are not appreciably reduced.

DRAFT

When the use of a continuous left turn lane is deemed appropriate, the following design features should be considered.

1. The volume of left turning vehicles should not exceed the available storage nor create a high conflict potential in the turn lane.
2. The continuous left turn lane should not extend through a railroad crossing or signalized intersection.
3. Horizontal and vertical alignment should be considered in the design of the continuous left turn lane to maximize sight distance.
4. The design of the continuous left turn lane and other median treatments should be consistent within a given highway section.
5. Care should be given to avoid overlapping left turns. This may require relocating or offsetting approach points. Consideration should also be given to restricting the approaches to "right-in / right-out" configuration to mitigate overlapping left turns.

Design Criteria for an urban CTWLTL can be found in Sections 305.1 through 305.6 for the six ODOT urban contexts with additional information in Section 313.8 covering median design for Urban Arterials, Collectors, and Local Routes.

308.3 Painted Medians

Painted medians are generally narrower than CTWLTLs. This type of median typically utilizes double solid yellow lines to define the median area. Painted medians are intended to prohibit vehicles crossing the median or using it as a CTWLTL. This type of median control may be used on moderate volume and speed highways in rural areas. In these situations, the painted median is often used as a precursor to installing a non-traversable median such as a concrete barrier. In urban areas however, this median treatment should be used carefully. For new applications this treatment should be limited to urban areas where no adjacent property approach exists and intersection spacing is very long, one-half mile or longer. Generally, these conditions will only be present on limited access highways. The major concern is that the painted median will be used as a CTWLTL and may increase crash experience due to the narrow width.

308.4 Non-Traversable Medians (Non-Freeway)

By law, all proposals to install raised or depressed barriers on two-lane segments of state highways requires collaboration specifically with representatives of the freight industry and automobile users and may include representatives of local government and other transportation stakeholders, as appropriate (See ORS 374.326).

DRAFT

Raised medians are the preferred type of median treatment for most Statewide NHS and some Regional highways (See Oregon Highway Plan, Appendix D for Highway Classification information). Raised medians should also be considered on other highway classifications where the safety and operational benefits are significant and where improved pedestrian crossing opportunities are desired. Raised medians can be designed with either curbs or concrete barriers. Curbed raised median designs are the preferred treatment in urban areas as they are often more aesthetic than the concrete barrier and afford the opportunity to provide accessible pedestrian crossings. However, the concrete barrier may be a more appropriate treatment in rural areas, high-speeds sections, or where right of way is constrained but may require crosswalk closure treatments and formal approval of closure at intersections. Most of the design elements discussed apply to either type of median design. The remainder of this section will describe design standards and guidelines for both types of raised medians. In addition, raised curbed medians are described as two sub-sets. Full width medians refer to the curb-to-curb dimensions of the median between intersections or over long distances. A median traffic separator is that portion of the median that defines left turn channelization areas. Refer to the Median Policy from the Oregon Highway Plan for more information on raised median locations.

308.5 Raised Median Design Standards

308.5.1 Median Width

(Note: The raised median widths include the raised portions only, in contrast to the total median width which includes shy distance and inside shoulders).

The width of raised medians is variable between intersections. Factors such as pedestrian accommodation, landscaping, and right of way control median widths.

1. **The minimum median traffic separator width at intersections is 4 feet when the design does not include a median pedestrian refuge area and the design speed is equal to or above 55 mph. For design speeds below 55 mph, the raised median traffic separator can be reduced to 2 feet in constrained locations.** However, if a 2-foot median is used, additional measures (such as paint, pavement markers, or delineator posts) should be included to provide conspicuity of the narrow median for motorists and pedestrians. Narrowness of the median can limit roadway users' recognition of its presence. For improved visibility, a wider median traffic separator may be preferred with widths up to 4 feet even when the design speed is less than 55 mph.
2. When crossing 4 lanes of traffic, analysis is performed to determine the need for pedestrian refuge accommodation in the median. **However, when crossing more than 6 lanes or 6 lanes and a 20-degree skew angle or more, the medians and median traffic separators must be designed to accommodate pedestrians mid-way across an**

DRAFT

intersection with a refuge area. The number of lanes includes turn and through lanes. Changes in the median traffic separator will impact the overall median width.

3. **When pedestrians are to be accommodated mid-way with a refuge area, the median or median traffic separator width shall be as follows:**

Design Hour Ped. Volume	Width
≤ 100	At least 6 feet
≥ 101	At least 8 feet

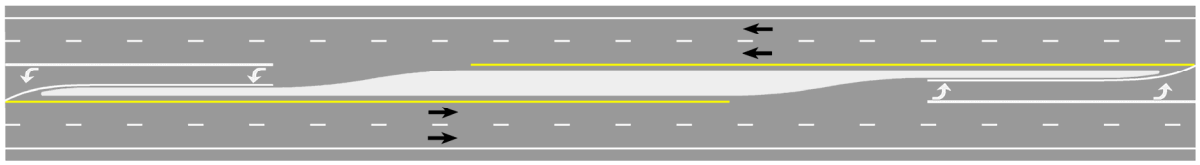
4. *Where left turns are not accommodated over a significant length, one-half mile or longer, the minimum raised curb median width should be no narrower than 6 feet. Where left turn accommodation is provided at intersections the minimum median width preferred provides a 4-foot median traffic separator, a 12 foot left turn lane and the appropriate shy distance for opposing traffic.* (See Table 300-14 Left Side Shy Distance for shy distance requirements.) The intent is to minimize the hourglass effect of widening the median at intersections and narrowing between.

5. Where intersection spacing is relatively short, left turn bays often become back-to-back in nature. It is desirable to have some full width median between the left turn bays. The full width median allows for better visibility of the driver and also allows a place to install signing. Figure 300-14 shows an example of a full width median. The desirable full width median section should be as follows:

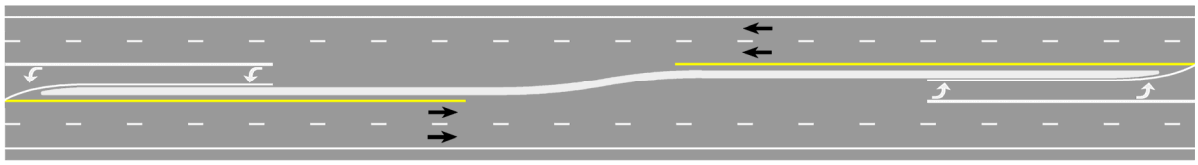
Design Speed	Length of Full Width
≤ 30 mph	65 feet
35 mph	100 feet
45 mph	130 feet
≥ 50 mph	165 feet

DRAFT

Figure 300-14 Raised Median Width



FULL WIDTH MEDIAN SECTION



NOT A FULL WIDTH MEDIAN SECTION

308.5.2 Shy Distance from Raised Medians

Whenever barriers, such as curbs, are introduced into the roadscape it is desirable to provide a buffer space. This buffer helps improve safety of the users, traffic flow, and operational efficiency. This buffer is often referred to as "E" or Shy Distance. **Table 300-14 establishes the shy distance requirements from raised medians. This table is not to be used for determining the shy distance for higher speed expressways (See Table 300-26 and Table 300-27). The table also applies to left side shy distance for other conditions such as curbed sections on one-way roadways.**

When raised curb or concrete barrier medians are not continuous, an additional 1 foot of shy distance should be added to the median width values shown above. Table 300-14 is used in place of the direction give in Section 318.

Table 300-14 Left Side Shy Distance

Design Speed (mph)	Curb 12 ft. Lane (feet)	Curb 11 ft. Lane (feet)	Concrete Barrier All Lane Width (feet)
25	1 (0)	1 (0)	2 (1)
30	1 (0)	1 (0)	2 (1)
35	2 (1)	2 (1)	2 (1)
45	2 (1)	2 (1)	2 (1)
50	2	3 (2)	3
55+	3	4	4

Note: Preferred Design Widths; ( ) Urban Context Minimum Widths

308.5.3 Sight Distance

Sight distance at both unsignalized and signalized intersections is critical to provide a safe and efficient median opening. It is desirable to provide intersection sight distance at all median openings. However, in many situations, this is not practical. The designer is encouraged to provide the highest level of sight distance practical. Sight distance is covered in more detail in Part 200, Section 217.

308.5.4 Landscaping Accommodation

Landscaping is an important feature to raised curb medians. Landscaping enhances the visibility of the median as well as the aesthetics. Two major concerns with landscaping are sight distance and maintenance. Sight distance concerns are crucial at both signalized and unsignalized intersections. The maintenance concerns include the amount of maintenance, median access, and cost. However, not all landscape techniques are labor intensive. Many types of vegetation are considered native and require almost no special care. In addition, landscaping features such as paving blocks, bricks, rocks, or other materials are relatively maintenance free.

Figure 300-15 provides guidance for low vegetation in medians. Figure 300-16 provides guidance for median tree placement.

The following are important design elements to consider when landscaping medians:

1. It is desirable to provide a vertical element within the median to increase visibility. *However, to ensure sight distance lines are preserved, vegetation or mounding should not extend higher than 24 inches above the pavement surface within the functional area of intersections.* Sight distance must also be preserved where pedestrian crossings are provided mid-block.

2. **The minimum median width to accommodate landscaping is 6 feet.** *Care should be taken to not use landscaping that impairs sight distance. There should also be a planting setback. The use of trees in a raised median are typically not recommended and should only be considered in urban situations where the design criteria shown in* Figure 300-16 *below can be met.*

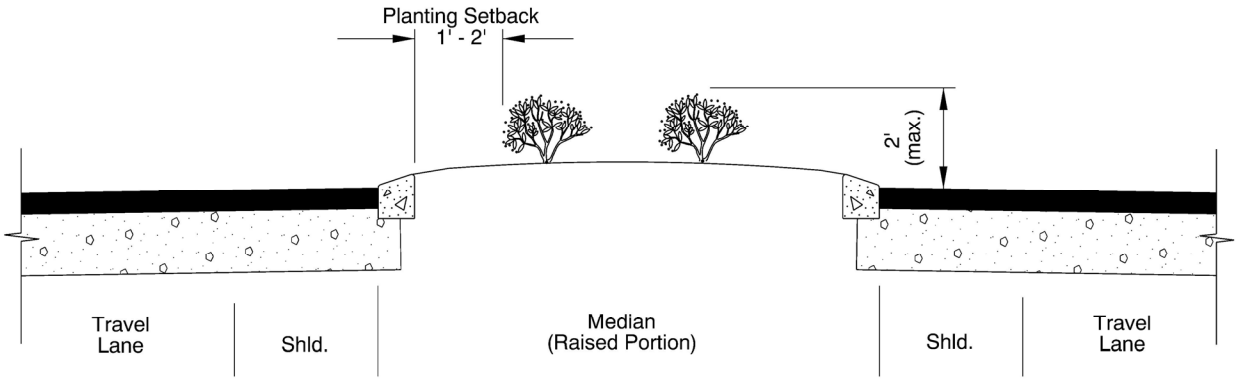
3. **Side slopes within the median for mounding shall be no steeper than 1:3 and preferably flatter.**

4. *A planting set back of 1 foot to 2 feet should be considered where median width allows. The planter strip should be structural to support maintenance equipment. This could minimize the maintenance requirements or ease maintenance operations, such as mowing.*

DRAFT

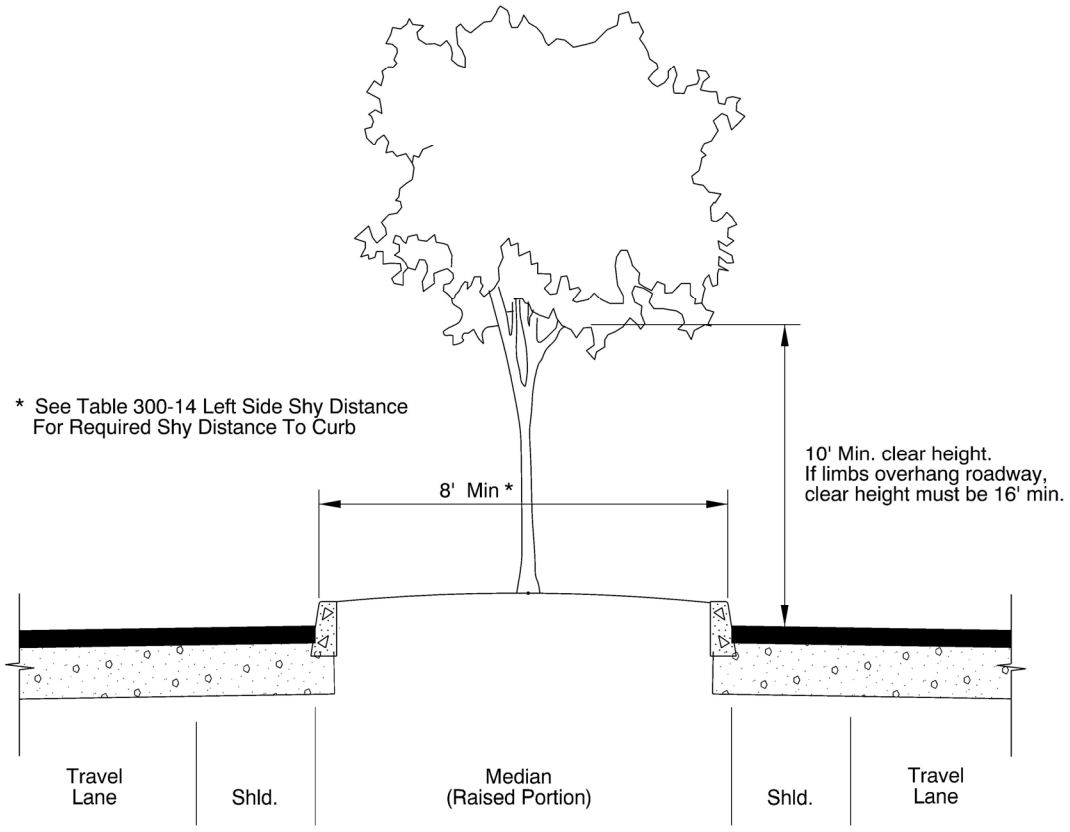
5. *Consider using planter boxes rather than continuous vegetation to reduce maintenance. Planter boxes are also effective treatments for improving median visibility. Planter boxes may either be flush or raised. Raised planter boxes should be 6 inches or less above the curb height.*

Figure 300-15: Landscaping Accommodation



Roadside and median trees are also discussed in Part 400, which includes specific design criteria for placement of trees.

Figure 300-16: Median Tree placement



308.5.5 End Treatments

Starting and ending raised median treatments can create conflict areas to roadway users and must be designed carefully. Raised median sections should be designed with logical starting and ending points within a given section of highway. End treatments are critical to ensure the appropriate and safe function of the raised median.

~~Haphazardly placing~~Placing small sections of raised median throughout a highway segment may offset any safety benefits and may actually increase the crash frequency over that anticipated without any median treatment. In urban situations, it is preferred to have the median begin and end at an intersection. Rural areas may not allow this intersection approach. In these cases, the designer is to determine logical termini based upon the intended function of the median and roadside character of the highway. ~~It is important to remember that raised medians are a barrier and can be a roadway hazard.~~

Impact attenuators are used to protect concrete barrier ends. The type of attenuator used must conform to the ODOT approved materials list. AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide - 2011" can provide additional information regarding end treatment design for concrete barriers.

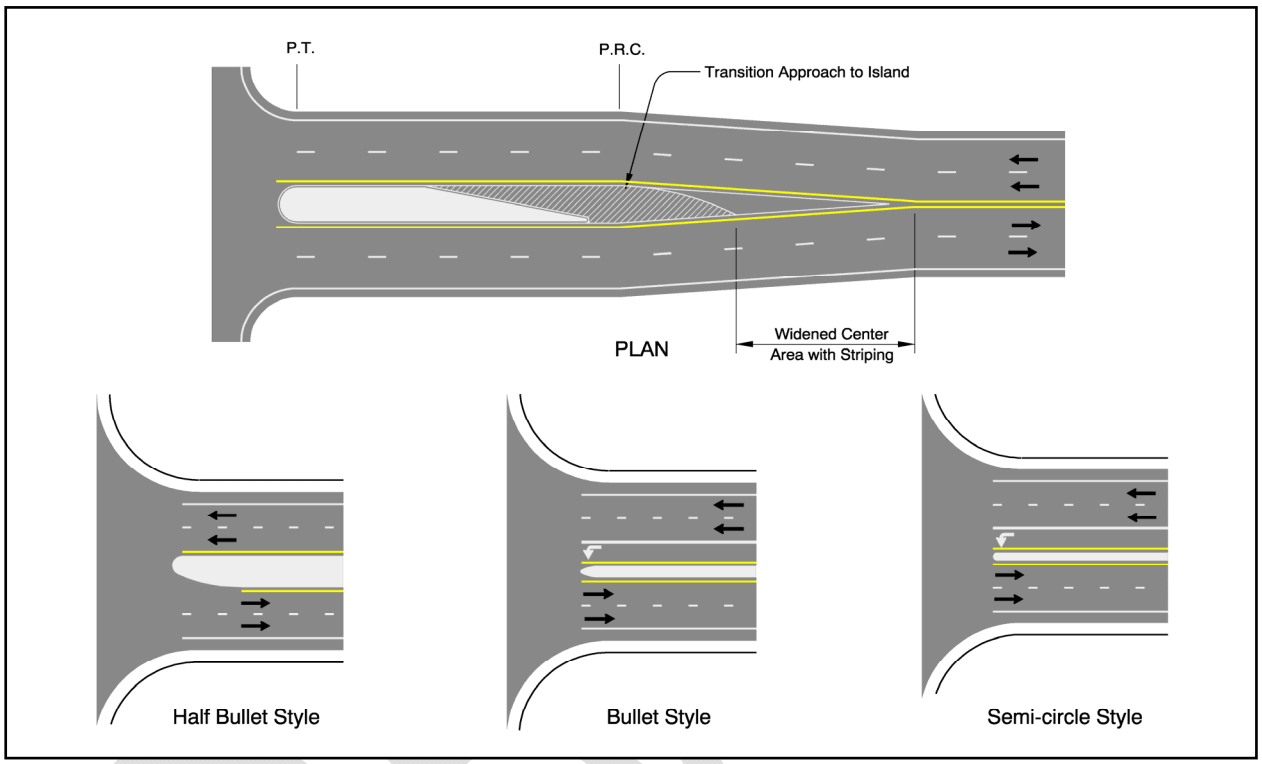
Raised curbed medians generally do not require any special end treatments but a squared off, blunt end style is an unacceptable end treatment. *In high-speed situations, design speeds over 45 mph, and where pedestrian accommodation in the median is not required, the curb line should be tapered to 2 inches in height.* This tapered section should be accomplished over 15 feet. Standard Drawing RD706 provides additional detail for this tapered treatment.

Two other concerns about end treatments are pedestrian refuges and truck off-tracking. At signalized intersections, the preferred median treatment is to stop the raised median prior to the cross walk. Generally, the pedestrian movement through a signalized intersection should be made in one stage. Pedestrian refuges create two stage crossings. At a signalized intersection, the refuge requires additional signal equipment and signal timing that needs to be considered prior to adding the refuge feature. *The preferred design, when providing a pedestrian refuge for crossings at unsignalized intersections, is to utilize the cut-through option. This treatment requires a protective nose area that should be at least 13 square feet or more.* The nose can be designed with either a semi-circle or half bullet type design. The semi-circle design type is only recommended for median traffic separator widths of 4 feet or less. Wider medians should utilize the half bullet type design to better facilitate truck turning movements. All end treatment designs need to consider the off-tracking characteristics of the appropriate design vehicle. The designer must use caution when providing a pedestrian refuge and using the half bullet type nose design. The half bullet design may reduce the available refuge for pedestrians. In some situations, the crossing may need to be moved back slightly to provide a full width refuge. This is especially prevalent where the nose must be moved back to provide for adequate truck turning movements. The transition approach to island area at the beginning and end of a raised median is the appropriate location for additional low-cost warnings, such as rumble strips or painted

DRAFT

chevrons. These additional warnings are not required at all locations. *Figure 300-17 provides additional detail regarding end treatments for raised curb medians. For additional design specifics, see Part 500 Intersection Design.*

Figure 300-17: End Treatments



308.5.6 Accommodating U-Turns

The use of a raised median significantly reduces the opportunities for vehicles to make left turns. To facilitate traffic's ability to reach destinations on the left side of the highway, U-turn opportunities need to be included with the design. *The preferred approach is to provide U-turn capabilities at signalized median openings.* This approach offers greater protection for the U-turning vehicles. *The second option is to utilize an unsignalized median opening. This approach should be used in conjunction with a jug handle design.* Executing a U-turn through the oncoming traffic lanes creates a greater exposure to the U-turning vehicle and through traffic and should be avoided in high volume or high-speed conditions. ***When accommodating U-turning vehicles, the designer needs to consider the following:***

1. Speed of the highway
2. Volume of traffic opposing and executing the U-turn
3. The design vehicle to be accommodated

4. The adjacent roadside culture, and
5. The opportunity to use existing roadways to accommodate U-turn movements

A left turn lane shall always be included when accommodating U-turning vehicles. U-turn movements are never to be allowed out of a through travel lane. Part 500, Section 504.6 provides additional information and illustrations for accommodating U-turns.

Consult the Region Traffic and Roadway Sections when considering accommodating U-turns on state highways. U-turns must be located with respect to legal requirements [ORS 810.130(3), ORS 811.365, OAR 734-020-0025]. The State Traffic Engineer and State Roadway Engineer must jointly approve all U-turns at signalized intersections; consult with the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section and Roadway Engineering Section.

308.5.7 Type of Curb

When using raised curb medians, the designer needs to determine the appropriate curb type. The preferred curb type is the mountable curb. Mountable curb is a design that provides delineation for pedestrians, landscaping, or other objects in the median, while also enhancing the aesthetics of the median. The use of low-profile mountable curb also requires substantial mounding for visibility and safety. Standard curb can be substituted for mountable curb when desired by the project team when design speeds are less than or equal to 45 mph. The use of standard curb may also be appropriate for urban or urbanizing areas where the posted speed is 45 mph. **For roundabout design, use low profile mountable curb as shown in RD170**.

Section 309 ADA Requirements for Resurfacing, Rehabilitation and Reconstruction Projects

An ADA Ramp may require reconstruction when paving alterations occur adjacent to the ADA ramp. See 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. Refer to tables in applicable sections for ADA Ramp requirements on projects with increased scopes of work for mandatory improvements. ADA Ramps are triggered when adjacent walkways are modified or newly constructed.

Section 310 Urban and Rural Freeway

This section provides 1R, 3R, 4R, and 4R Single Function (SF) design guidance for urban and rural freeways, including the interstate. Freeways are the highest form of arterials and have full access control with the primary function of providing mobility and higher speeds for all vehicle modes. As Part 200 provided the geometric requirements such as vertical and horizontal

curvature, vertical clearance, sight distance, and grades, this section focuses on the cross-section elements such as lane width, shoulder width, cross slope, vertical clearance, roadside design, clear zone, median design, and other cross-sectional features.

When the width computed for the lateral support of the surfacing material is a fractional width, round the lateral support width up to the nearest foot.

310.1 ODOT 1R Urban and Rural Freeway Resurfacing

The primary intent of a 1R project is to preserve the existing pavement before it deteriorates to a condition where extensive reconstruction would be necessary to rehabilitate the roadway section. Projects under the 1R category consist primarily of paving the existing roadway surface and generally deferring other improvements to future 4R, 3R, specific safety, or single function projects. When project programming and funding are being determined, the ODOT Practical Design Policy and design flexibility can be employed in deciding if a particular preservation project should be in the 1R category or if there is enough value being added to the highway system or corridor for the additional cost if the project is placed in the 3R category that would trigger additional improvements. Safety considerations outlined in the 1R guidance should also be part of the process in determining the appropriateness of a project being selected for 1R. ***The safety evaluation is a critical part of determining whether a project belongs in the 1R or 3R categories and is integral to the process. The 1R/3R Record of Decision form is used to aid the decision process to determine if a 1R project should be upgraded to a 3R project to provide immediate safety improvements.***

The ODOT 1R project standard will apply to Preservation projects that are limited to a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay. Many of the safety items that have traditionally been addressed in 3R projects can be more effectively dealt with in a statewide strategic program. For example, establishing a prioritized program for upgrading guardrail to current standards along a highway corridor instead of upgrading between specific project limits. A program of this nature has the ability to better utilize funding to target higher need locations for safety item improvements rather than only making safety item improvements based on paving projects. *However, the replacement of safety items such as guardrail, guardrail terminals, concrete barrier, impact attenuators, and signs may be included in the 1R project category when necessary if funding other than Preservation funds are used and the added work will not delay the scheduled bid date.* **Any safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced by the 1R project. Existing safety features cannot be degraded to a level below the existing condition as a result of the paving project.**

DRAFT

310.2 Urban and Rural Freeway 1R Resurfacing Standards

These are projects that extend the pavement life of existing highways. An ADA Ramp may require reconstruction when paving alterations occur adjacent to the ADA Ramp. See 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. Other safety enhancements are not required to be included; however, *safety features may be added to 1R projects where other (non-preservation) funding is available.* ***Any existing safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced, thus necessitating some work in addition to paving.***

Since 1R projects will generally not address safety upgrades, pedestrian and/or bicycle enhancements, in no case shall safety, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded. *The safety feature is addressed based on system priorities in standalone projects or other STIP projects.* When scoping 1R projects, the safety feature databases are used to identify opportunities to add safety enhancements with other (non-preservation) funding. Subsequent subsections in 310.2 outline the ODOT Resurfacing 1R project standard. While the criteria primarily relates to the paving treatment and the ability to pave without degrading existing conditions, there may be corridors where analysis of the crash history indicates that a full 3R project is warranted. *Therefore, projects are screened for 1R eligibility from a safety perspective as well.*

310.2.1 Scoping Requirements

In order to ensure the intent of the program is met in addressing pavement and safety needs, adequate advance information is needed to assure adequate statewide decisions are made with consistency.

1. **1R/3R Record of Decision Form**
   - This form steps the scoping team through the scoping process. Parts of the form are filled out by different sections including Pavements, Traffic, and Roadway.
   - Use of this form provides a statewide uniform approach to determining the project design standard – 1R vs 3R – that will be applied to a pavement preservation project.
2. **Urban Design Concurrence Document (Draft)** – For Urban Expressway projects using context-based design under 45 mph.

   This document identifies the project context and is used by the scoping team to provide a concept design and provide documentation of decisions leading to that design. The Draft Urban Design Decision document is part of the final scoping package for project initiation.
3. **Urban Design Concurrence Memo** - or Urban Expressway projects using context-based design under 45 mph.

DRAFT

There may be a small number of urban projects with scope too limited and outside the roadway that an Urban Design Concurrence document may not be necessary. Projects that could meet the criteria are ITS projects installing cable, a bridge screening project that does not impact the roadway or similar type projects. The primary focus of the work is outside the roadway and peripheral to it. For these types of projects, an Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo is required and, if granted, takes the place of the Urban Design Concurrence document on the DAP Checklist.

310.2.2 Project Initiation Requirements

1. At project initiation, the 1R/3R Record of Decision Form must be reviewed and approved to ensure the project will be developed under the appropriate design standard.

2. For urban expressway projects with at-grade intersections using context-based design and under 45 mph, the project development team reviews the Draft Urban Design Concurrence (UDC) document to understand the decisions made by the project scoping team and to verify the conditions, decisions and concept are still appropriate to meet project goals and outcomes. Existing conditions may have changed between scoping and project initiation. ***If changes are needed, the project development team modifies the Draft UDC to meet project goals and/or planning needs. The Draft UDC is further developed as project development continues and is reviewed again at each project milestone to ensure the final design meets the scoping expectations, goals, aspirations, and outcomes for the project.***

3. For urban expressway projects with at-grade intersections using context-based design and under 45 mph, if the scoping team determined an Urban Design Concurrence document isn't needed and obtains an Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo, the project development team reviews the project scope to determine the exemption memo is still appropriate for the project scope. **At any time during project development, if the scope of the project changes to include work impacting the roadway, the project development team is required to complete the Urban Design Concurrence document for submittal at the Design Acceptance phase.**

310.2.3 1R Project Requirements

1. A paving project is initially designated 1R based on the appropriate paving treatment – a single lift overlay or inlay. (There is no formal requirement for pavement design life for an individual project; however, since the 1R treatment is location specific, it is expected that an 8-year pavement life will be the goal of the program).

    - Pavement Services is the final authority regarding the pavement design.

DRAFT

2. Where less than approximately 5 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay, the project may be designated 1R.
3. **Where up to approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project may be designated 1R; however, this requires the approval of a design exception.**
4. **Where more than approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project must be designated 3R.**
    - **As an exception to this is rule, a grind and inlay plus an overlay may also be considered for development under the 1R standard; however, this would be uncommon and requires the approval of a design exception.**
5. Where the appropriate course of action is not clear based on the percentages noted above, include ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff in the discussion.
6. Chip seals are 1R projects and subject to the requirements of the 1R standard. Chip seal alone is not an alteration paving treatment however when multiple surface treatments are combined it may result in an alteration (see Section 309).

310.2.4 Unprotected and Unconnected Bridge Ends

On 1R paving projects, any bridge rail with unprotected ends or unconnected transitions exposed to traffic must be mitigated. Provide an end treatment meeting the current standard, or a design exception must be obtained. For possible funding options, contact the Senior Roadway / Roadside Design Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

- Unprotected ends – Where the end of the bridge rail is exposed with no end treatment such as a transition to guardrail or a crash cushion.
- Unconnected transition – Where there is no crashworthy transition between the end of the bridge rail to the guardrail or other barrier.

310.2.5 Responsibilities

1. 1R/3R form filled out by Pavements staff, Region Roadway and Traffic Staff. There are approval signatures by the Pavements Engineer, Region Roadway Manager & Traffic Manager. It will be the Transportation Project Manager's or Resident Engineer-Consultant Projects' role to coordinate. Form is housed in ProjectWise.
2. Final Urban Design Concurrence document is completed and approved by the Region Technical Center Manager, with concurrence from the Region Maintenance, Traffic and Roadway units. The final UDC is part of the Design Acceptance Package submittal. It is

DRAFT

the Transportation Project Manager's or Resident Engineer-Consultant Projects' role to ensure the final UDC is submitted.

310.3 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Freeway Typical Section

When a project on the freeway system has been classified as 3R, the standard cross section elements outlined in Table 300-16 below apply. *The development of a freeway 3R project should also be responsive to the considerations given in Part 100 concerning purpose, applicability, scope, determination, and design process. The standards for those specific listed elements are based on the AASHTO publication, "A Policy on Design Standards-Interstate System", which provides guidelines for work on the Interstate system.* **The following standards are considered as allowable minimums. For those design elements not specifically addressed below, the guidelines in the AASHTO Green Book are to be followed. 3R projects that include specific horizontal and vertical curve corrections are to use ODOT 4R standards for those curve correction design elements. In addition to these standards, Interstate Maintenance Design Features in Table 300-15, are to be incorporated into all interstate freeway 3R projects.** The "Have To" list is the recommended minimum treatment for the listed project elements. The "Like To" list includes treatments for elements which should be considered when economically feasible, i.e., minimal extra cost, or funds available from sources other than the Preservation Program.

Technical Resources have been identified for a number of the project elements. These resources should be utilized by the Project Team to aid in determining if a "Like To" measure is warranted, cost-effective and fundable or if a design exception should be sought to do less than the "Have To" requirements. ***Design exceptions should be identified as soon as possible (typically during project scoping), and the appropriate design exception request officially submitted for approval as soon as all pertinent information can be determined and analyzed.*** Design exceptions are covered in Part 1000.

DRAFT

Table 300-15: Interstate Maintenance Have To/Like To

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
ADA Ramps	• See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year.		Roadway Section
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.		Roadway Section
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-NCHRP Report 350 concrete shoulder or median barrier that retains earth behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.		Roadway Section
Interchange Ramps	• Ramp surfacing to the ramp termini.		Roadway Section
Roadside Obstacles	• Cost effective removal or shielding of rock outcroppings, trees, concrete structures higher than 4", utility poles, non-breakaway sign and light poles and other potential ~~hazards~~objects within the clear zone.		Roadway Section

Table 300-15 (Continued): Interstate Maintenance Have To/Like To

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
Bridges	• See BDM	Bridge painting, widening, deck replacement, scour protection and seismic retrofit.	Bridge Section
Delineators	• Install missing delineators. • Replace damaged delineators.		Roadway Section
Fencing	• Replace damaged or rotting fencing.	Fill in incomplete sections	
Attenuators	• Replace damaged or non-standard (not meeting NCHRP 350 or MASH) attenuators. • Adjust attenuators as needed. • Install attenuators if warranted.		Roadway Section
Rumble Strips	• Install on rural portions as per ODOT Rumble Strip Standards and Policies.		Roadway Section
Pavement Life	• Project Dependent		Pavement Unit
Striping	• High volume, Urban areas would have all durable lines. • Mountainous sections with lots of curves would have all durable lines. • Flat tangent sections will have durable skip lines only.		Region Traffic
Drainage	• See Hydraulics Manual		Fish Program Manager & Hydraulics Unit
Signal Loops	• Project Dependent		Traffic Section

Table 300-16: ODOT 3R Freeway Design Standard Minimums

Design Feature	Flat Terrain	Rolling Terrain	Mountainous Terrain	Urban Characteristics
Design Speed	Posted Speed	Posted Speed	Posted Speed	Posted Speed
Lane Width	12′	12′	12′	12′
Right Shoulder Width	10′	10′	10′	10′
Left Shoulder Width 4 Lane Section	4′	4′	4′	4′
Left Shoulder Width 6 Lane Section	10′	10′	10′	10′
Median Width	36′	36′	10′	10′
Vertical Clearance	See Section 317	See Section 317	See Section 317	See Section 317

Design Feature	Minimum Width (all terrains)
Bridges to Remain in Place (Less than 200′ in length)	12′ Lane 10′ Right Shoulder 3.5′ Left Shoulder
Bridges to Remain in Place (200′ or more in Length)	12′ Lane 3.5′ Right Shoulder 3.5′ Left Shoulder
Tunnels (Desirable Width)	44′ – total 12′ Lane 5′ Left Shoulder 10′ Right Shoulder Two- 2.5′ Safety Walks (Contact Traffic Section for delineation requirements)
Tunnels (Minimum Widths)	30′ – total 12′ Lane Two - 1.5′ Safety Walks (Contact Traffic Section for delineation requirements)

310.4 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Freeway Lane Width

All traffic lanes for 3R freeway projects are 12' wide.

310.5 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Freeway Shoulders

On the left side of traffic on a four-lane section, the standard shoulder width is 4 feet. On six or more lane sections, the standard shoulder width is 10 foot paved.

The designer should be aware of snow zone locations where there is a shoulder break and an overlay is being placed. There is potential for pavement removal by the snowplows cutting into the pavement in the shoulder break areas. The designer should work with the Project Team to discuss the need for additional leveling quantities to bring the shoulder slope up to match the existing slope of the travel lanes.

310.6 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Freeway Medians

Medians in rural areas having level or rolling topography shall be at least 36 feet wide. Medians in urban and mountainous areas shall be at least 10 feet wide. *Consideration should be given to decking median openings between parallel bridges when the opening is less than 30 feet wide.* Due to terrain constraints many of the rural freeways were originally constructed with an urban median width of 8 to 10 feet. ***For those locations in rural and urban areas that have an existing median width of 8 to 10 feet, a design exception will not be required.***

310.7 ODOT 3R Freeway Bridges to Remain in Place

Mainline bridges on the Interstate system may remain in place if, as a minimum, they meet the following values. The bridge cross section consists of 12-foot lanes, 10-foot shoulder on the right, and a 3.5-foot shoulder on the left. For long bridges (200 feet or more), the offset to the face of parapet or bridge rail on both the left and the right side is 3.5 feet measured from the edge of the nearest traveled lane. Bridge railing shall meet or be upgraded to current standards. Refer to the ODOT BDM for bridge railing requirements.

310.8 ODOT 3R Freeway Structure Cross Section

At a minimum, the width of all bridges, including grade separation structures, measured between rails, parapets, or barriers shall equal the full paved width of the approach roadways. The approach roadway includes the paved width of usable shoulders. Long bridges, defined as bridges having an overall length of 200 feet or more, may have a lesser width. Such

bridges shall be analyzed individually. **On long bridges, offsets to parapet, rail, or barrier shall be at least 3.5 feet measured from the edge of the nearest traffic lane on both the left and the right sides.**

Narrow structures should be considered for widening to full shoulder on major rehabilitation projects; in particular, on those projects where the design life after rehabilitation is expected to be 20 to 30 years. Each structure should be looked at individually to determine whether widening is appropriate. For example, it may not be appropriate to widen a narrow, long structure or a structure that is 2 feet short of being able to accommodate full shoulders.

310.9 ODOT 3R Freeway Tunnels

The desirable width for tunnels is at least 44 feet. This width consists of two 12-foot lanes, 10-foot right shoulder, 5-foot left shoulder, and 2.5-foot safety walk on each side. However, because of the high cost, a reduced tunnel width can be accepted, but it must be at least 30 feet wide, including at least a 1.5-foot safety walk on both sides.

310.10 ODOT 4R Urban and Rural Freeway Typical Section

This section provides 4R design guidance for urban and rural freeways, including the interstate. As previously discussed, freeways are the highest form of arterial and provide for mobility and high speeds. **The 4R cross section elements listed below are to be used on all 4R freeway projects. See Figure 300-18 and Figure 300-19.**

DRAFT

Figure 300-18: ~~Standard~~Typical Urban Freeway Section (Includes Non-Interstate Facilities)

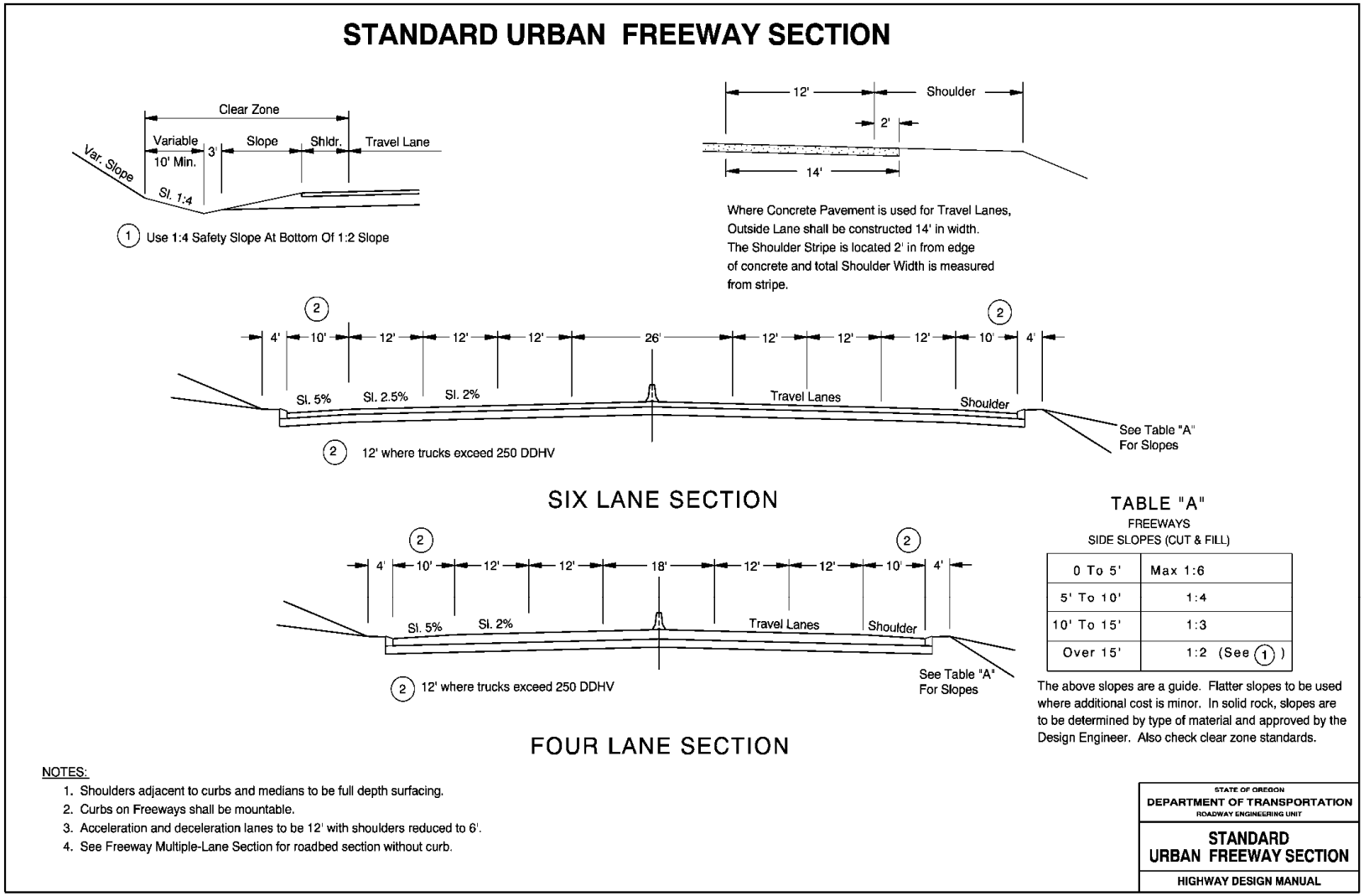
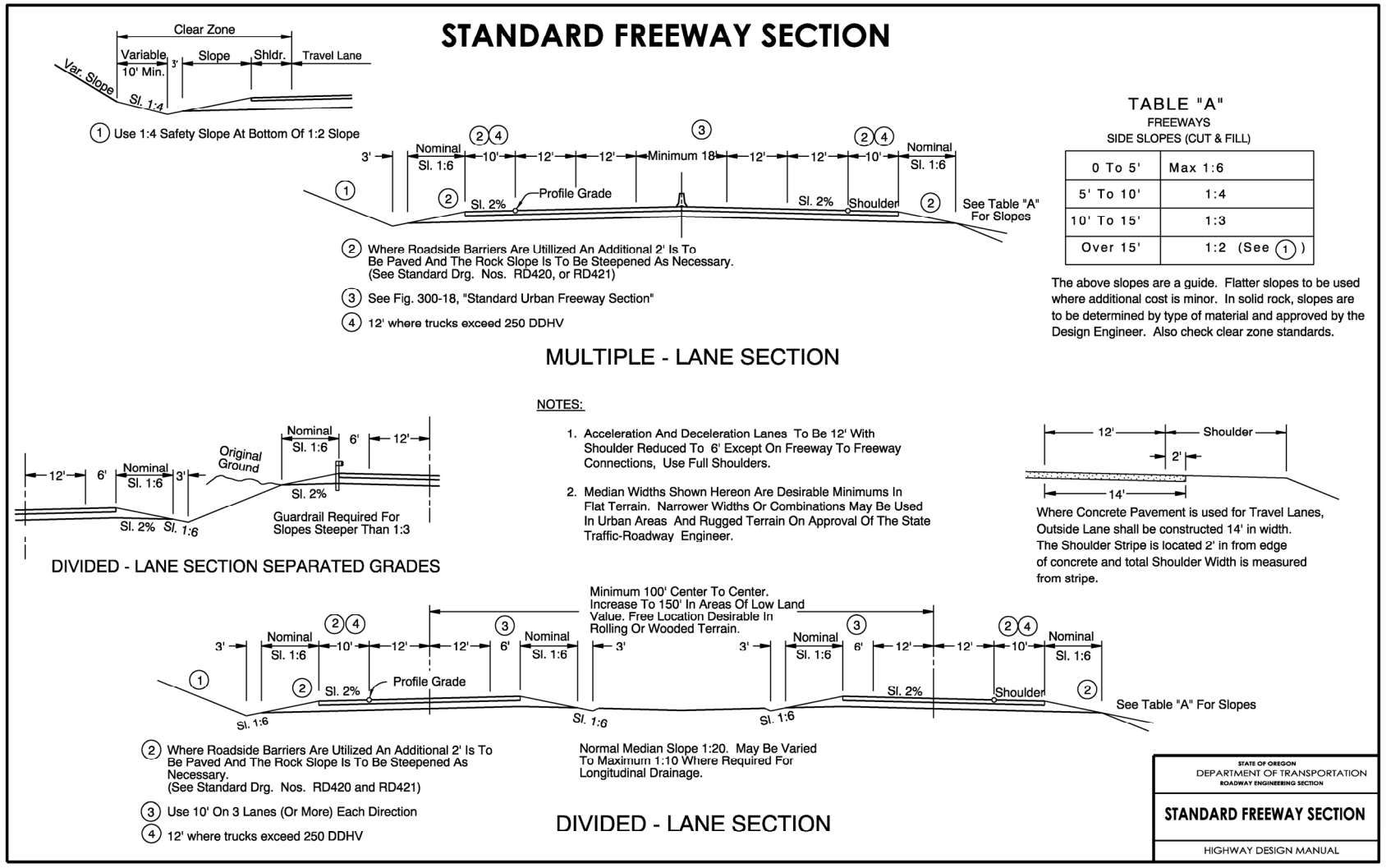


Figure 300-19: ~~Standard~~Typical Freeway Section (Includes Non-Interstate Facilities)



310.11 ODOT 4R Freeway Lane Width

The travel lane width for both urban and rural freeways shall be 12 feet. See Figure 600-32 and section 605.9 in Part 600 for more information regarding freeway ramps. **A design exception is required for non-standard lane widths.**

310.12 ODOT 4R Urban and Rural Freeway Shoulders

The shoulder width of urban and rural freeways is dependent upon the number of lanes of the facility. **The right side shoulder for both urban and rural freeways shall be 10 feet. This width allows for emergency parking of vehicles on the right hand shoulder. The left side shoulder is dependent on the number of freeway lanes. When there are two lanes in each direction on the freeway, the left side shoulder shall be a minimum of 6 feet wide. When the freeway consists of three or more lanes in each direction, the left side shoulder shall be a minimum of 10 feet wide**. This wide left side shoulder on a multi-lane section allows for vehicles in the left lane to use the left side shoulder in an emergency instead of crossing two lanes of traffic to find refuge in the right-side shoulder. Wider shoulders also provide other benefits in addition to emergency parking, such as providing space for incidence response, emergency vehicle travel, maintenance activities and stage construction of future modernization and preservation projects. See Figure 600-32 and section 605.9 in Part 600 for more information regarding freeway ramps.

For interstate freeways, when truck traffic Directional Design Hourly Volume (DDHV) is greater than 250, the right-side shoulder shall be increased to 12 feet. ***For non-interstate freeways, when the truck traffic DDHV is greater than 250, widening the right shoulder to 12 feet should be evaluated.***

For new construction, auxiliary and climbing lanes on the freeway should have the same shoulder and lane width as standard freeway shoulders. Typically, the right-side shoulder width should be 10 feet, with a minimum 8' shoulder required, excluding shy distance requirements. Where truck traffic DDHV is greater than 250 or there is a roadside barrier, a 12-foot shoulder should be considered. In retrofit situations, such as operational and safety projects or adding auxiliary and climbing lanes to a preservation project, it is preferred that new construction shoulder width (minimum 8') be installed. **When right side roadside barriers are used, the normal right side shoulder width shall be increased to provide a 2-foot "E" offset or "shy" distance. The 2-foot "shy" distance is not required when the shoulder width is 12 feet or more. When a roadside barrier is used on the left side shoulder of 10 feet or more in width, the left side shoulder shall also provide the 2-foot "E" distance. Exceptions to the 2-foot "E" widening may be approved by the State Roadway Engineer when the additional shoulder widening is not practical.**

DRAFT

310.13 4R Urban and Rural Freeway Medians

Freeway medians provide a separation between the travel ways of opposing traffic. Medians provide a sense of security and convenience to the operators of motor vehicles. The wider the median the more comfortable the driver becomes with the facility. ***The width of urban and rural freeway medians is dependent upon available right of way. Because urban freeways have high speed and high-volume traffic, the median should be as wide and flat as possible.*** A wider median on an urban freeway can provide for future transit, rail, HOV (high occupancy vehicles), HOT (high occupancy toll), maintenance, construction staging, mitigation, or travel lanes. Many times, the width of medians is restricted due to the highly developed and expensive right of way.

For urban freeways the minimum median width for a freeway with two lanes in each direction and a concrete barrier is 18 feet between edges of travel lanes. This allows for 6-foot shoulders, a 2-foot "E" distance, and a nominal 2-foot concrete barrier width. **For urban freeways with three or more lanes in each direction and a concrete barrier, the median shall be 26 feet wide between edges of travel lanes.** This distance allows for 10-foot shoulders, a 2-foot "E" distance, and a nominal 2-foot concrete barrier width. ***The designer should be considering future needs of the facility when dealing with minimum median designs, particularly accommodating future lanes or transit.*** When determining four lane median width, consideration should be given to future six lane expansion.

The desirable median width in an urban and rural area is 76 feet (inside edge of travel lane to inside edge of travel lane). This allows for a median that has the flexibility of allowing additional lanes in the future. In areas where the right of way is inexpensive the edge of travel lane to edge of travel lane distance should be increased to 126 feet.

Freeway medians with a width of 100 feet or less shall be closed with an appropriate barrier system. Evaluate site specific conditions and crash data for wider freeway medians to determine if they should also be closed.

Median widths ranging from 76 to 126 feet (inside edge of travel lane to inside edge of travel lane) are very common for rural freeways. The median width allows for future widening, grading of an earth median (slopes shall be 6:1 or flatter), or drainage facilities. In areas of steep topography, the use of a wide median allows for the designer to use independent profiles and proper sideslopes. *In rural locations, where terrain prohibits the use of the rural median standard, the urban median width (18'/26') can be considered and evaluated.* **Use of the urban median standard in a rural freeway setting requires a design exception.**

At freeway cloverleaf ramp terminals, there may be instances where some form of raised median placed between the exit and entrance ramps may be appropriate to reduce the potential for crossover crashes. See Section 600 for detail on ramp median treatments.

DRAFT

310.14 ODOT 4R Single Function (SF) Freeway Standards

The specific design standards used for a Single Function Standard project will generally be the same design standards used for a 4R/New Construction project. The difference is that the scope of work is very limited on SF projects, so the SF Standard does not require addressing non-related, non-standard features of the roadway. For example, if a guardrail upgrade qualifies as a Single Function project, it will not be necessary to address other non-standard features on the roadway, such as lane and shoulder width, horizontal and vertical alignment, etc.

310.14.1 Application of 4R Single Function (SF) Project Standards

Single Function projects include projects that are within the right of way but do not permanently impact the travel lanes or shoulders of the highway. Generally, projects that only include work outside the edge of pavement will qualify for the SF standard. The SF standard can also be applied to certain maintenance projects such as re-striping projects as long as the final configuration of the travel lanes and shoulders would not be changed in any way. These projects address a specific need. The scope of work is limited to features that are directly impacted as a result of addressing the specific need. See Section 113.1 for additional information about 4R Single Function project standards. **In no case shall safety, operations, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded as a result of a SF project. Each feature constructed in a SF project must be built to the applicable standard for new construction.** The SF Standard does not apply to resurfacing projects.

ADA Program specific projects are technically not classified as Single Function but are classified as 4R projects with a very limited scope. While they are focused on a single overall objective, they have specific requirements that need to be met that often go beyond the intent of the Single Function category. For practical purposes, ADA Program specific projects can be considered similar to Single Function projects in that they do not need to address all elements across the roadway section and substandard roadway features are not addressed. ADA Program specific projects focus on the needed upgrades to meet applicable standards and any element that it affects as a result, such as signal hardware or associated drainage.

Section 311 Urban and Rural Expressway

Urban and rural highways can take several forms: freeways, expressways, arterials, collectors, and sometimes, local roads. Similar to urban and rural freeways, urban and rural expressways

DRAFT

are a designation identified in the Oregon Highway Plan and mainly focus on vehicle mobility, although expressways may not have similar levels of access control as freeways. The following is from the Oregon Highway Plan:

> "Expressways are complete routes or segments of existing two-lane and multi-lane highways and planned multi-lane highways that provide for safe and efficient high speed and high-volume traffic movements. Their primary function is to provide for interurban travel and connections to ports and major recreation areas with minimal interruptions. A secondary function is to provide for long distance intra-urban travel in metropolitan areas. In urban areas, speeds are moderate to high. In rural areas, speeds are high."

Because expressways may consist of grade separated or at-grade intersections, the level of modal accommodation will vary. Speeds are often relatively high ranging from 45 to 70 mph depending on urban or rural environments.

Designing urban and rural expressway highway projects presents designers with a variety of challenges. Designers must balance the needs of autos, trucks, transit, bicyclists, and pedestrians, while considering highway function, speed, safety, alignment, channelization, right of way, environmental impacts, land use impacts, and roadside culture. Part 200, Section 208 through Section 222 addresses the design standards for design speed, horizontal alignment and superelevation, vertical curvature, grades, and stopping sight distance while cross sectional design criteria are addressed in this section and will discuss a variety of issues, concerns, and areas for consideration when designing urban and rural expressways for all project types.

One critical distinction when designing a project on an urban expressway is if the section has grade-separated intersections or if intersections are at-grade.

- If the expressway section has at-grade intersections, then the six urban contexts and their respective design criteria apply to determine appropriate design decisions and the Urban Design Concurrence document is used. (Section 204 through Section 209 and Section 310)
- If the expressway section has grade-separated intersections (interchanges), then design decisions are based on freeway and higher operating speed design criteria.

Expressways that fit into the six identified contexts are designed from the design criteria for the context the expressway section fits. ***While expressways in general are expected by OHP definition to provide greater vehicle mobility, expressways located in the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District, Urban Mix, or Residential Corridor contexts must balance vehicle mobility with pedestrian, bicycle and transit mobility as well as safety.***

When the width computed for the lateral support of the surfacing material is a fractional width, round the lateral support width up to the nearest foot.

DRAFT

311.1 ODOT 1R Urban and Rural Expressway Resurfacing

The primary intent of a 1R project is to preserve the existing pavement before it deteriorates to a condition where extensive reconstruction would be necessary to rehabilitate the roadway section. Projects under the 1R category consist primarily of paving the existing roadway surface and generally deferring other improvements to future 4R, 3R, specific safety, or single function projects. When project programming and funding are being determined, the ODOT Practical Design Policy and design flexibility can be employed in deciding if a particular preservation project should be in the 1R category or if there is enough value being added to the highway system or corridor for the additional cost if the project is placed in the 3R category that would trigger additional improvements. Safety considerations outlined in the 1R guidance should also be part of the process in determining the appropriateness of a project being selected for 1R. ***The safety evaluation is a critical part of determining whether a project belongs in the 1R or 3R categories and is integral to the process. The 1R/3R Record of Decision form is used to aid the decision process to determine if a 1R project should be upgraded to a 3R project to provide immediate safety improvements.***

The ODOT 1R project standard will apply to Preservation projects that are limited to a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay. Many of the safety items that have traditionally been addressed in 3R projects can be more effectively dealt with in a statewide strategic program. For example, establishing a prioritized program for upgrading guardrail to current standards along a highway corridor instead of upgrading between specific project limits. A program of this nature has the ability to better utilize funding to target higher need locations for safety item improvements rather than only making safety item improvements based on paving projects. *However, the replacement of safety items such as guardrail, guardrail terminals, concrete barrier, impact attenuators, and signs may be included in the 1R project category when necessary if funding other than Preservation funds are used and the added work will not delay the scheduled bid date.* **Any safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced by the 1R project. Existing safety features cannot be degraded to a level below the existing condition as a result of the paving project.**

311.2 Urban and Rural Expressway 1R Resurfacing Standards

These are projects that extend the pavement life of existing highways. An ADA Ramp may require reconstruction when paving alterations occur adjacent to the ADA Ramp. See 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. Other safety enhancements are not required to be included; however, *safety features may be added to 1R projects where other (non-preservation) funding*

is available. ***Any existing safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced, thus necessitating some work in addition to paving.*** **Since 1R projects will generally not address safety upgrades, pedestrian and/or bicycle enhancements, in no case shall safety, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded.** *The safety feature is addressed based on system priorities in standalone projects or other STIP projects.* When scoping 1R projects, the safety feature databases are used to identify opportunities to add safety enhancements with other (non-preservation) funding. Subsequent subsections in 311.2 outline the ODOT Resurfacing 1R project standard. While the criteria primarily relates to the paving treatment and the ability to pave without degrading existing conditions, there may be corridors where analysis of the crash history indicates that a full 3R project is warranted. *Therefore, projects are screened for 1R eligibility from a safety perspective as well.*

311.2.1 Scoping Requirements

In order to ensure the intent of the program is met in addressing pavement and safety needs, adequate advance information is needed to assure adequate statewide decisions are made with consistency.

1. **1R/3R Record of Decision Form**
   - This form steps the scoping team through the scoping process. Parts of the form are filled out by different sections including Pavements, Traffic, and Roadway.
   - Use of this form provides a statewide uniform approach to determining the project design standard – 1R vs 3R – that will be applied to a pavement preservation project.
2. **Urban Design Concurrence Document (Draft)** – For Urban Expressway projects using context-based design under 45 mph.

   This document identifies the project context and is used by the scoping team to provide a concept design and provide documentation of decisions leading to that design. The Draft Urban Design Decision document is part of the final scoping package for project initiation.
3. **Urban Design Concurrence Memo** - or Urban Expressway projects using context-based design under 45 mph.

   There may be a small number of urban projects with scope too limited and outside the roadway that an Urban Design Concurrence document may not be necessary. Projects that could meet the criteria are ITS projects installing cable, a bridge screening project that does not impact the roadway or similar type projects. The primary focus of the work is outside the roadway and peripheral to it. For these types of projects, an Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo is required and, if granted, takes the place of the Urban Design Concurrence document on the DAP Checklist.

DRAFT

311.2.2 Project Initiation Requirements

1. At project initiation, the 1R/3R Record of Decision Form must be reviewed and approved to ensure the project will be developed under the appropriate design standard.

2. For urban expressway projects with at-grade intersections using context-based design and under 45 mph, the project development team reviews the Draft Urban Design Concurrence (UDC) document to understand the decisions made by the project scoping team and to verify the conditions, decisions and concept are still appropriate to meet project goals and outcomes. Existing conditions may have changed between scoping and project initiation. ***If changes are needed, the project development team modifies the Draft UDC to meet project goals and/or planning needs. The Draft UDC is further developed as project development continues and is reviewed again at each project milestone to ensure the final design meets the scoping expectations, goals, aspirations, and outcomes for the project.***

3. For urban expressway projects with at-grade intersections using context-based design and under 45 mph, if the scoping team determined an Urban Design Concurrence document isn't needed and obtains an Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo, the project development team reviews the project scope to determine the exemption memo is still appropriate for the project scope. **At any time during project development, if the scope of the project changes to include work impacting the roadway, the project development team is required to complete the Urban Design Concurrence document for submittal at the Design Acceptance phase.**

311.2.3 1R Project Requirements

1. A paving project is initially designated 1R based on the appropriate paving treatment – a single lift overlay or inlay. (There is no formal requirement for pavement design life for an individual project; however, since the 1R treatment is location specific, it is expected that an 8-year pavement life will be the goal of the program).

    - Pavement Services is the final authority regarding the pavement design.

2. Where less than approximately 5 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay, the project may be designated 1R.

3. **Where up to approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project may be designated 1R; however, this requires the approval of a design exception.**

DRAFT

4. **Where more than approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project must be designated 3R.**
    - **As an exception to this is rule, a grind and inlay plus an overlay may also be considered for development under the 1R standard; however, this would be uncommon and requires the approval of a design exception.**
5. Where the appropriate course of action is not clear based on the percentages noted above, include ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff in the discussion.
7. Chip seals are 1R projects and subject to the requirements of the 1R standard. Chip seal alone is not an alteration paving treatment however when multiple surface treatments are combined it may result in an alteration (see Section 309).

311.2.4 Unprotected and Unconnected Bridge Ends

On 1R paving projects, any bridge rail with unprotected ends or unconnected transitions exposed to traffic must be mitigated. Provide an end treatment meeting the current standard, or a design exception must be obtained. For possible funding options, contact the Senior Roadway / Roadside Design Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

- Unprotected ends – Where the end of the bridge rail is exposed with no end treatment such as a transition to guardrail or a crash cushion.
- Unconnected transition – Where there is no crashworthy transition between the end of the bridge rail to the guardrail or other barrier.

311.2.5 Responsibilities

1. 1R/3R form filled out by Pavements staff, Region Roadway and Traffic Staff. There are approval signatures by the Pavements Engineer, Region Roadway Manager & Traffic Manager. It will be the Project Leaders role to coordinate. Form is housed in ProjectWise.
2. Final Urban Design Concurrence document is completed and approved by the Region Technical Center Manager, with concurrence from the Region Maintenance, Traffic and Roadway units. The final UDC is part of the Design Acceptance Package submittal. It is the Project Leaders role to ensure the final UDC is submitted.

311.3 ODOT 3R Urban Expressway Typical Section

As noted in Part 200, the 3R urban design guidance for urban expressways is generally the same as the 3R urban arterial design guidance found in Section 311 through Section 316 below. The urban expressway 3R guidance is slightly different than the rural expressway 3R guidance and

is listed separately. ***Additionally, urban expressways with at-grade intersections meeting one of the six urban contexts described in Part 200 use design criteria from Section 205 through Section 211, as well as 305.7 and Section 307 in conjunction with Section 311. Urban expressways not considered in the six urban contexts use Tables in Section 311 for relevant design criteria. These expressways generally have posted speeds 45 mph or above.***

The intent of 3R projects is pavement preservation with additional focus on safety items. Some of those safety items include mandatory 3R design features such as curb ramps and deficient guardrail, consideration of low-cost safety mitigation measures, and in the case of urban expressways, the corrective measures located in the 3R urban preservation strategy and the consideration of additional urban design features. **Table 300-17 below provides the cross-section minimums for urban expressways not categorized as one of the six urban contexts outlined in Part 200.**

3R Urban Expressway projects are a good opportunity to provide incremental improvements towards long-range urban corridor goals. Work with region Active Transportation Liaisons to determine feasible options for alternative transportation users that can be included.

DRAFT

Table 300-17: ODOT 3R Urban Non-Freeway Design Standards for Roadways with Posted Speed 45 mph and Greater (Use also for Urban Expressways with Interchanges)

Highway Feature	Highway Average Daily Traffic (ADT)			
	< 750	750 - 2000	2001 - 4000	> 4000
Travel Lane [1] <10% Trucks [2] >10% Trucks [2]	 10′ 10′	 10′ 11′	 11′ 12′	 11′ 12′
Left Turn Lane [3]	12′	13′	13′	14′
Right Side Shoulder [4]	2′	3′	4′	6′
Left Side Clearance (Shy Distance) [5] posted speed 40-45 mph posted speed ≥ 45 mph	 1′ 2′	 1′ 2′	 1′ 2′	 1′ 2′
Curbside Sidewalk[5]	6′	6′	6′	6′
Cross Slope (crown) [6]	2%	2%	2%	2%
Maximum Superelevation [7] design speed ≤ 40 mph design speed ≥ 45 mph	 4% 6%	 4% 6%	 4% 6%	 4% 6%
Vertical Clearance	See Section 317			

[1] For the National Network - 23 CFR 658.9 – "The route consists of lanes designed to be a width of 12 feet or more or is otherwise consistent with highway safety." (see current Route Map 7) and a minimum 11-foot lane is required on all NHS Routes on State jurisdiction roadways only. Local Agencies may use AASHTO standards for lane width on Local Agency jurisdiction roads.

[2] Trucks are defined as heavy vehicles, single unit configuration or larger (six or more tires).

[3] Left turn lane width include 2-foot median separator.

[4] Where a right side shoulder is not used, a right side shy distance from curb or on-street parking is required. This shy distance is 2 feet for posted speeds up to 35 mph and 3 feet for 40 mph and above.

[5] Left side clearance (shy distance) required from the curb or on-street parking and is the only applicable to one way roadways. Curbside sidewalks are discouraged when design speed is greater than 45 mph.

[6] See Table 300-19 and Table 300-20 for improvement criteria and corrective measures.

[7] Numbers shown are for new design.

311.4 Mandatory 3R Urban Expressway Design Features

The following is a list (Table 300-18) of mandatory design features that must be incorporated into Preservation projects:

Table 300-18: Mandatory 3R Design Features

Deficiency	Mandatory Corrective Measure
ADA Ramps	• ADA Ramps shall be added where absent or "Missing" • See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year • ADA Ramps shall be reconstructed when the curbline is modified, reconstructed, or newly established
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	Refer to the BDM
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-350 concrete barrier with earth support behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.

311.5 Low-Cost Safety Mitigation Measures 3R Urban Expressway

Table 300-19 is a list of low-cost safety measures that should be considered on all projects utilizing ODOT 3R urban design standards and can be used as mitigation in justification for design exceptions.

Table 300-19: Low-Cost Safety Measures

Item	Low-Cost Safety Measure	
Narrow Lanes and/or Shoulders	- Pavement edge lines	- Raised pavement markers
Steep Sides-lopes/Roadside Obstacles	- Remove or relocate obstacle - Roadside ~~hazard~~object markings - Round ditches	- Install guardrail - Slope flattening - Breakaway hardware
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	- Install supplementary signing markings	- ~~Hazard~~Object and pavement
Sharp Horizontal Curve	- Install supplementary signing - Correct superelevation - Gradual side-slopes	- Pavement anti-skid treatment - Obstacle removal or shielding - Install post delineators
Poor Sight Distance at Hill Crest	- Install supplementary signing - Fixed-~~hazard~~object removal	- Driveway relocation - Illumination
Intersection	- Install supplementary signing - Signalization - Speed control (traffic calming, visual cues, etc.)	- Pavement anti-skid treatment - Illumination
Bicycle Access	- Restripe roadway to include a buffered bike lane - Signal timing changes to improve bicycle progression	
Pedestrian Access	- Vehicle speed control (traffic calming measures, visual cues, continental striping crosswalks) - Reduce crossing distance (striping or curb radius reduction options) - Improve visibility of pedestrian (Illumination, curb extensions)	

NOTE: Designers need to exercise engineering judgment based upon engineering principles and practices in selecting appropriate mitigation measures from the above list.

311.6 ODOT 3R Urban Preservation Strategy

The 3R Urban Preservation Strategy is a good place to utilize the ODOT Performance-based, Practical Design Policy and design flexibility. Urban areas are complex with many conflicting needs. An urban 4R project would attempt to rebuild and improve a roadway section on the whole. Whereas the intent of a 3R project is pavement preservation with improvements to selected

design elements for safety and operations. *Improvements to some of those design elements may be required by regulation or mandate. Other design elements may or may not be improved at the discretion of the project team. It is these elements where Performance-Based Practical Design can be employed to aid in the determination of the amount of value added to the system or corridor by making the improvements on either a wholesale basis or as an incremental improvement.*

Due to the complexity and cost of urban preservation type projects, the Urban Preservation Strategy has developed a set of criteria for evaluating other design features for possible modifications or improvements. Table 300-20 contains the list of "Have To" and "Like To" corrective measures. **The corrective measures listed under the "Have To" column must be addressed on all urban 3R preservation projects.** *The corrective measures listed under the "Like To" column should be considered where economically feasible (i.e., minimal extra cost or funds available from sources other than Preservation funding).* **Design exceptions are required for each design feature not meeting the "Have To" corrective measures.**

Under some conditions, the "Like To" corrective measures are required as part of an Urban Preservation Project. These conditions include:

1. Pavement condition requiring reconstruction, or
2. Curb exposure less than 6 inches, or
3. Cross slope greater than 8 percent.

If any of these above conditions are met, design exceptions are required for not meeting the corrective measures from the "Like To" column of Table 300-20.

While Urban Preservation projects must meet the design standards and features described above or obtain a design exception, depending upon certain conditions, it is often desirable to provide additional improvements in urban environments. Table 300-21 shows other design features considered only if additional funding sources are available other than Preservation and where improvements are cost effective. This optional list is not a requirement for Urban Preservation projects and does not require design exceptions if these items are not included in a project.

Along with preservation paving, urban 3R projects provide opportunities to make improvements to facilities for other roadway users. When determining project scope on 3R urban project, perform evaluation and include feasible improvements to bicycle and pedestrian facilities within 3R guidelines. *Restriping after paving may provide a low-cost opportunity within a 3R project to provide buffered bicycle lanes where appropriate. Preservation paving projects can provide opportunities to make incremental improvements to facilities and should not be overlooked when striving to meet long term planning goals.* In some cases, additional funding from specific sources can be added to a 3R project to make greater improvements for vulnerable road users. ***The Urban Design Concurrence document is used on 3R urban projects to document project context and decisions to establish the final design. These 3R urban projects include 3R urban expressway projects with at-grade intersections.***

DRAFT

Table 300-20: Urban Preservation Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
Pavement Life	• 8 to 15 year minimum (unless life cycle benefit/cost justifies an alternative) for overlays, inlays or appropriate treatment.	• 15 year minimum life for reconstruction (may be triggered by cross slope, curb exposure or pavement condition).	Pavement Unit
Signal Loops	• Adjust or replace with non-invasive detection (e.g., radar detection) as necessary.		Traffic Section
Striping	• Install pavement markings with materials selected according to Chapter 5 of the ODOT pavement Markings Design Guidelines.		Region Traffic
Signing	• Replace or add signs according to the ODOT Sign Design Manual.		Traffic Section
Utilities (manholes, valves, vaults)	• Adjust.		Roadway Section
Drainage	• Adjust as necessary to maintain basic system. • Address high priority fish culverts identified in Salmon program.	• Reroute bridge drains which drain directly into waterway. • Address lower priority fish culverts as required.	Fish Prog. Mgr. & Hydraulics Unit
Obstacles behind curbs	• Reconstruct curb to re-establish delineation and drainage function if grades & existing R/W permit. • Relocate to meet standards where practical.	• Meet required clear zone standards for obstacles behind curb. Relocate if necessary.	Traffic & Roadway Sections
Roadside obstacles with demonstrated safety issues	• Remove or mitigate.	•	Roadway Section

Table 300-20 (Continued): Urban Preservation Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
ADA Ramps	• ADA Ramps shall be added where absent or "Missing" • See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year • ADA Ramps shall be reconstructed when the curbline is modified, reconstructed, or newly established	• Meet accessibility standards on all curb ramps, sidewalks and driveways.	Roadway Section
Vertical Clearances	• Maintain existing or minimum vertical clearances. See Section 317	• Meet required vertical clearance.	Bridge Section
Narrow Bridges/ Deficient Rails	• See BDM	• Widen bridge, where practical • Meet current standard for bridge rails and connections	Bridge Section
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.	• Meet required standard.	Roadway Section

Table 300-20 (Continued): Urban Preservation Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-350 concrete barrier with earth support behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.		Roadway Section
Curb Exposure	• 4-inch minimum curb exposure for delineation of roadway. Additional exposure may be required for drainage.	• Meet required standard.	Roadway Section
Cross Slope	• Maintain existing where applicable. • Minimize cross slope to meet standards where practical. Maximum cross slope not to exceed 8%.	• Meet required standard for superelevation rates and cross slopes.	Roadway Section

The following optional items should be considered, IF cost effective AND additional funding (other than Preservation funding) is available.

Table 300-21: Additional Urban Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure	Technical Resource
Drainage	• Upgrade systems.	Roadway Section
Access Issues	• Driveway relocations/closures.	Region Access Mgr.
Operational Issues	• Modify curb radii to facilitate truck movement. (Where demonstrate need – broken curb, tracks on sidewalk, etc.) • Islands (replacing, adding or removing). • Install/upgrade traffic control devices.	Traffic & Roadway Sections
Safety Issues	• SPIS site addressed. • Rumble strips, pavement markings, slope flattening, illumination, etc.	Transportation Safety Office, Traffic Section, & Roadway Section
Pedestrian	• Sidewalk infill - If less than 10% missing in length of project. • CQCR identified issues along project length • Curb extensions, Modified curb radius • Illumination (with local agreements) • Work with Traffic Section to identify potential ARTS, HSIP or other options that could be included	Traffic & Roadway Sections
Bicycle	• Incremental of permanent improvements as additional funding allows (buffered bike lanes, separated facilities, protected intersections) • Work with Traffic Section to identify potential ARTS, HSIP or other options that could be included	Traffic &Roadway Sections

311.7 ODOT 3R Rural Expressway Typical Section

Rural OHP designated expressways can be of two types, those with grade-separated interchanges that often function similar to a freeway or interstate highway and those with at-

grade intersections that function more like a rural arterial. As noted in Part 200, Section 214.1, the 3R rural design guidance for rural expressways is the same as the 3R rural arterial design guidance found in this section. The rural expressway 3R guidance is slightly different than the urban expressway 3R guidance and is listed separately. In general, the intent of 3R projects is pavement preservation with additional focus on safety items. Some of those safety items include mandatory 3R design features such as curb ramps and deficient guardrail as well as consideration of other low-cost safety mitigation measures.

311.8 ODOT 3R Rural Expressway Roadway Widths

3R projects on OHP designated rural expressways with grade-separated interchanges that resemble and function much like a freeway or interstate highway, use ODOT 3R freeway design criteria.

Table 300-22 below provides the cross-section minimums for projects on OHP designated rural 3R expressways with at-grade intersections that resemble and function like rural arterial highways. These minimum dimensions are acceptable on 3R projects where existing cross-section elements are less than standard widths. They are not to be used to reduce existing cross-section elements that already meet standard widths. Use of the minimum widths shown in Table 300-22 to reduce existing standard widths requires a design exception.

Table 300-22: Minimum 3R Lane and Shoulder Widths - Rural Expressways with At-grade intersections (Non-Freeway Rural Arterials)

Design Year Volume (ADT)	Average Running Speed	Lane Width	Shoulder Width
Less Than 750 Vehicles	All Speeds	10′	2′
750 to 2000 Vehicles	Under 50 mph	11′	2′
750 to 2000 Vehicles	50 mph or over	11′	3′
Over 2000 Vehicles	All Speeds	11′	4′

NOTE: A minimum 11-foot lane is required on all NHS Routes on ODOT jurisdiction roadways only. Local Agencies may use AASHTO standards for lane width on Local Agency jurisdiction roads.

311.9 Mandatory 3R Rural Expressway Design Features

Following is a list (Table 300-23) of mandatory design elements that must be incorporated with 3R expressway projects:

Table 300-23: Mandatory Design Features

Geometric Deficiency	Mandatory Corrective Measure
ADA Ramps	• ADA Ramps shall be added where absent or "Missing" • See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year • ADA Ramps shall be reconstructed when the curbline is modified, reconstructed, or newly established
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	See BDM
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-350 concrete barrier with earth support behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.

311.10 Low-Cost Safety Mitigation Measures 3R Rural Expressway

Table 300-24 is a list of low-cost safety measures that should be considered on all 3R projects. They can also be used as mitigation in justification for design exceptions.

Table 300-24: Low-Cost Safety Measures

Design Element	Low-Cost Safety Measure	
Narrow Lanes and/or Shoulders	• Pavement edge lines • Raised pavement markers • Post delineators	• Rumble strips • Safety Edge
Steep Sideslopes/ Roadside Obstacles	• Roadside ~~hazard~~object markings • Round ditches • Install guardrail • Remove or relocate obstacle	• Slope flattening • Breakaway hardware • Rumble Strips
Narrow Bridges/ Deficient Rails	• Install supplementary signing	• ~~Hazard~~Object and pavement markings
Sharp Horizontal Curve	• Install supplementary signing • Shoulder widening • Shoulder paving • Lane Widening • Correct superelevation • Gradual side slopes	• Pavement antiskid treatment • Obstacle removal or shielding • Raised Pavement Markers • Install post delineators • Rumble Strips
Poor Sight Distance at Hill Crest	• Install supplementary signing • Fixed-~~hazard~~object removal • Shoulder widening	• Driveway relocation • Illumination
Intersections	• Install supplementary signing • Illumination	• Pavement antiskid treatment • Speed control
Bicycle Access - Work with Traffic Section to identify potential ARTS, HSIP or other options that could be included	• Restripe roadway to include a buffered bike lane • Signal timing changes to improve bicycle progression	
Pedestrian Access - Work with Traffic Section to identify potential ARTS, HSIP or other options that could be included	• Vehicle speed control (traffic calming measures, visual cues, continental striping crosswalks) • Reduce crossing distance (striping or curb radius reduction options) • Improve visibility of pedestrian (Illumination, curb extensions)	

311.11 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Expressway Bridge Width

A decision must be made to retain, widen or replace any bridge within the limits of a 3R project. Widening versus replacement should be evaluated to determine the most cost-effective treatment. Consider the AASHTO Green Book standards for bridges to remain in place, and Table 300-25, whichever is less, for minimum width. Additionally, analysis of the crash history and the cost of widening is required when determining if widening is cost effective. ***If the decision is made to replace an existing structure, new construction standards will apply to the bridge replacement portion of the project only, not to the roadway portion. Replacing structures does not change the remainder of a 3R Project to 4R.***

When a decision is made to retain a bridge, evaluate the bridge rail to determine if it can adequately contain and redirect vehicles without snagging, penetrating or vaulting. **Upgrade ~~structurally inadequate or functionally obsolete~~non-standard bridge rail according to the ODOT Bridge Design Manual. *Consideration may be given to design standard exceptions for railing upgrades, roadway widths, etc., when the structure is listed in or determined eligible for the National Register of Historic Places.*** Discuss eligibility of historic determination with the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO). **A design exception may be required based on final determination. Evaluate the bridge rail design for pedestrian needs and provide a design that accommodates pedestrians as necessary. If the clear roadway width on the structure is less than the approach roadway width, install appropriate traffic control devices.** *Refer to the ODOT Bridge Design Manual and the ODOT Bridge Section for additional information when determining bridge decisions on roadway projects.*

Table 300-25: Minimum Useable Bridge Widths

Volume (ADT)	Useable Bridge Width
0 – 750	Width of approach lanes
751 – 2000	Width of approach lanes, plus 2 feet
2001 – 4000	Width of approach lanes, plus 4 feet
Over 4000	Width of approach lanes, plus 6 feet

311.12 ODOT 4R Urban and Rural Expressway Lane Width

As discussed in previous sections, urban expressways have two design categories, those with grade-separated interchanges and those with at-grade intersections. **Urban expressway projects with at-grade intersections and a posted speed less than 45 mph utilize the urban context design criteria.** Since a fundamental element of an expressway designation is a high level of mobility, most expressways, including many urban expressways, have posted speeds at or above 45 mph. As such lane widths should be held to a higher operating standard. **All travel lane widths shall be 12 feet on all urban and rural expressways with speeds of 45 mph and above. Where right turn lanes are provided at intersections, they shall be in conformance with Figure 500-18 Right Turn Channelization. Left turn lanes shall include a 12-foot lane with a 4-foot traffic separator. The traffic separator shall be a minimum of 2 feet.** For major intersections, dual left turn lanes may be required. In these instances, the design should follow the recommendations in Part 500. *If the traffic separator is a raised curb, a 4-foot shy distance should be provided between the through travel lanes and the curb.*

Rural expressways are very similar to freeways as they offer a high level of mobility and safety. In addition, expressways may become freeways in the future as the roadway is upgraded to meet the needs of traffic demand.

311.13 ODOT 4R Urban Expressway Shoulders

Expressways must include an adequate shoulder for emergency parking, disabled vehicles, and emergency response vehicles. The shoulder also provides significant safety benefits to motorists and bicyclists, as well as improves traffic flow and capacity. In addition, a shoulder provides space for necessary maintenance and construction activities. **A minimum 8-foot right side shoulder shall be used for design speeds of 45 mph or greater where no roadside barriers are used.** This width of shoulder is necessary to help distinguish expressways as a higher order of roadway facility that should ultimately move towards being an access controlled facility and provide an area for disabled vehicles and emergencies. **The left side shoulder for four lane urban expressways with median barrier shall be 4' to the face of barrier and 8' to the face of barrier for six lane urban expressways.**

Where roadside barriers are used such as guardrail, concrete barrier, or bridge rail, the right-side shoulder should include an additional 2-foot shy distance from the shoulder to face of barrier.

Expressways can be physical barriers to well-connected bicycle route systems. As a result, when expressways run through urban areas, bicycles may need to use the expressway route as a connection to a destination if other routes are too far away. **On higher speed expressways that resemble freeways, a separated facility or a viable parallel street are options to accommodate**

bicyclists. ***If there is not an acceptable parallel street system available, a separated bicycle facility should be included with expressways.*** *Bike lanes adjacent to travel lanes are not appropriate on higher speed expressways due to large differentials in anticipated speed between motor vehicles and bicycles.* ~~In addition, when a shoulder is designated as a bike lane, it cannot serve disabled vehicles or other activities appropriate for shoulder use.~~ A separated path that serves the same destinations as the expressway should be provided. Providing enough width is allocated, a two-way path is appropriate for an expressway because access is restricted thereby reducing conflicts with cross traffic or access.

Design for bicycle accommodation along expressways can be challenging. However, ORS 366.514 requires that ODOT, cities and counties provide walkways and/or bikeways wherever a highway, road or street is being constructed, reconstructed, or relocated. They are not required if:

1. Sparsity of population or other factors indicate an absence of any need;
2. Costs are excessively disproportionate to need or probable use; or
3. Where public safety is compromised.

In most situations, the shoulder of a lower speed urban expressway with at-grade street connections can accommodate bicycle traffic if no other option is available. However, bicycle traffic is better accommodated on a separated facility or a multi-use path that also provides pedestrian access. Right turn channelization located with at-grade intersections on expressways can pose challenges for through bicyclists. How to best accommodate bicycle traffic along expressways should be handled on a case-by-case basis and will depend on balancing the needs and expectations of the various users of the roadway. For more information on multi-use paths and other bicycle accommodation methods, refer to Part 900 and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Guide.

311.14 4R Urban Expressway Medians

Expressways must include a median treatment. Generally, the preferred design is to use a non-traversable type of median. **Non-traversable medians are required on all new, multi-lane urban or rural expressways on new alignment.** *All other existing urban expressways should consider construction of a non-traversable median when projects are developed along these highways.*

Modernization of all rural, multi-lane Expressways, including Statewide (NHS), Regional and District level roadways require non-traversable medians.

For access management purposes, the preferred median type for urban expressways is a raised curb median. ***When mitigation for lane departure or median cross-over crashes is a design condition, then a barrier type non-traversable median should be installed.*** **If an urban expressway is also a freeway and the width between opposing travel lanes is 100 feet or less, then a barrier type**

non-traversable median must be installed. Guidance for Freeway Median Barrier Warrant and the closing of freeway medians can be found in Part 400.

At single left turn lane locations with a raised curb median, the raised portion should be a minimum of 12 feet wide (curb face to curb face) with two 4-foot left side (inside) shoulders (one for each direction of travel). This provides an overall travel lane to travel lane width of 20 feet. Consideration of double left turn lanes may be needed for high volume expressways with appropriate intersection spacing. With 4 foot inside shoulders, the overall median width for double left turn lanes would be 32 feet travel lane to travel lane.

Figure 300-20: Expressway Median Widths and Dual Left Turn Lanes

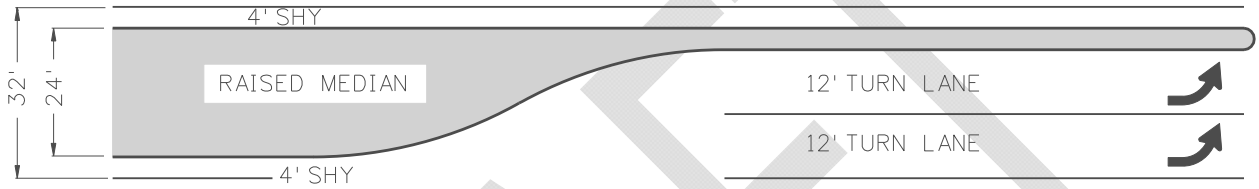
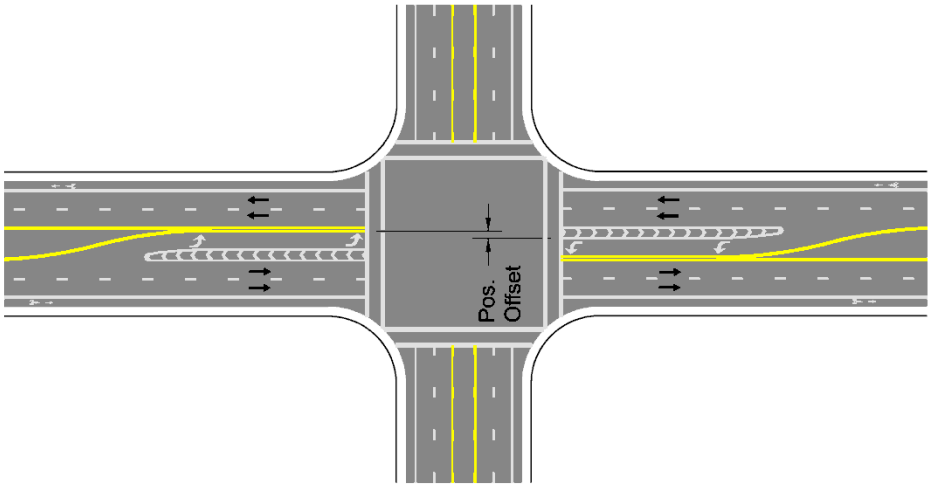


Figure 300-20 shows the different element widths for a double left turn. Even where only single left turn lanes are needed, the 32-foot width allows for future widening and also provides a positive off-set to oncoming traffic. To make a safe left turn, sight distance is important to a driver in order to see and identify an acceptable gap in oncoming traffic. *A positive offset from the opposing left turn lane can increase sight distance for a left turning driver and is most applicable at signalized intersections operating as permissive or permissive/protected left turn movements.* Depending on traffic volumes and queuing, a positive offset may aid left turning drivers at some unsignalized intersections as well. *Negative offset can be a greater hindrance to left turning drivers as their line of site may be blocked by vehicles waiting to turn left from the opposing left turn lane.* Positive offset is preferred at most intersections with left turns to improve sight lines and minimize potential for crashes. This is particularly critical on high-speed roadways where impact velocities create greater potential for serious injury and fatal crashes. *(See Figure 300-21 for more information on opposing left turn movements and positive/negative offsets).*

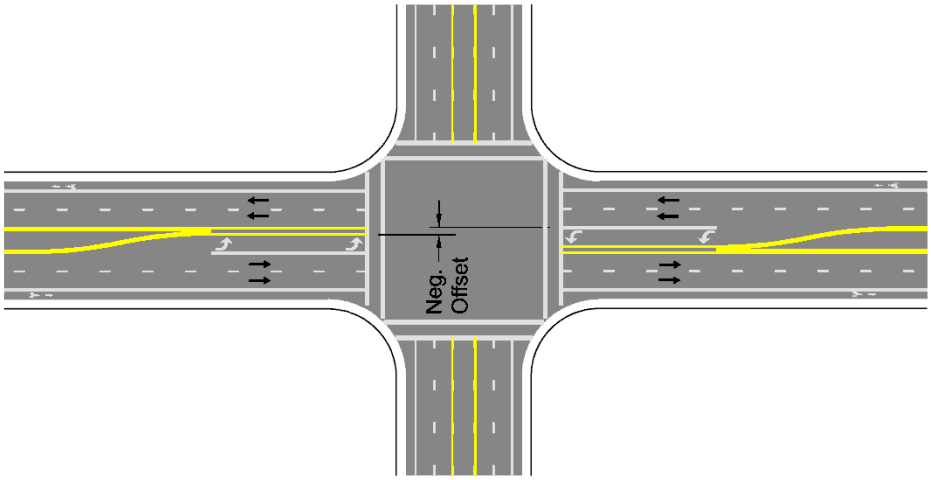
Since expressways are, from a functional classification perspective, a higher order facility, the left side shoulder should be held to a higher standard than the normal shy distance for other urban arterials. Where extensive right of way is available, a depressed median could be used. However, depressed medians will generally not be an option within urban environments. Both the raised curb and depressed median options should be considered first as they offer the greatest design flexibility. *In areas with right of way restrictions, a concrete barrier should be considered. The concrete barrier is 2 feet wide at the base and requires a 4-foot left side shoulder. Concrete barriers should be avoided in areas where pedestrian crossings or at-grade median openings may be expected.* Openings in concrete barriers present many design challenges including reduced sight distance and the need for impact attenuators, although attenuators are designed for safer impact when protecting a blunt end, it is another object that could potentially be hit causing vehicle damage and increased maintenance cost. **Wherever a raised median or concrete barrier**

is being considered for installation where it did not exist previously, considerations of access management criteria and freight mobility must be followed. On expressways with a design speed equal to or less than 45 mph, a minimum 10-foot painted median could be used. Since painted medians are less desirable on expressways, raised median or concrete barrier is encouraged. Additional information about median design can be found in Section 308 Median Design.

Figure 300-21: Positive and Negative Offset



POSITIVE OFFSET BETWEEN LEFT-TURN LANES



NEGATIVE OFFSET BETWEEN LEFT-TURN LANES

311.15 ODOT 4R Urban Expressways and Pedestrians

Design for and accommodation of pedestrians along expressways is accomplished on a case by case basis. On those expressways that look and function closer to a freeway, pedestrians generally are not accommodated adjacent to the roadway. These are high speed, limited access facilities focused on vehicle mobility and for these types of expressways, pedestrian movements are better accommodated on parallel local roads and streets, if there is an appropriate parallel street system available. In some instances, a separate multi-use path may be constructed along expressways as the appropriate alternative. ***Where multi-use paths are used, a minimum width of 10 feet is recommended.*** **Where a multi-use path is parallel and adjacent to an expressway, a 5 foot or greater width separating the path from the edge of roadway is required.** See Part 900 for more information on bicycle facility design.

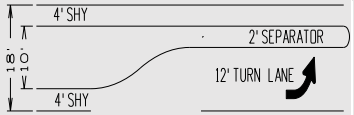
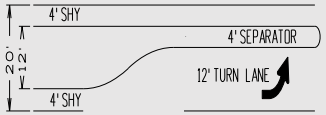
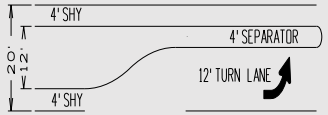
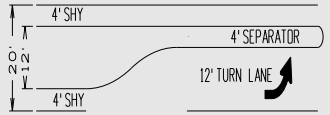
On some lower speed expressways, or along expressways in highly urbanized areas, pedestrians may be accommodated adjacent to the roadway. The preferred method is a sidewalk and buffer strip. The buffer strip should be at least 8 feet wide but may be as low as 4 feet under constrained conditions. Sidewalks separated by a buffer strip should be at least 6 feet wide, with wider sidewalk design encouraged. Curbside sidewalks should be avoided along expressways. Part 800 for pedestrian design and Part 900 for bicycle design and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan provide additional guidance to the design of bicycle and pedestrian facilities in these areas. Consult with the ODOT bicycle and pedestrian Design Engineer for specifics of design for pedestrians in urban expressway locations.

Pedestrian crossings should be located at signalized intersections or with grade-separation in order to provide safer crossing opportunities and to maintain the intended function of the expressway. Expressways, by OHP definition, are generally designed for vehicle mobility rather than access. Pedestrian activated crossings at uncontrolled locations are not appropriate on higher speed urban expressways and require special approvals for installation. Generally, the breakpoint between higher speed and lower speed expressways is considered to be 40 – 45 mph.

311.16 ODOT 4R Urban Expressway Typical Section

As established previously in Part 200 and in Part 300, Section 311, urban expressways can be categorized in two ways for design criteria purposes – those with interchanges and those with at-grade intersections. Most expressways, including many urban expressways, have posted speeds of 45 mph or greater. For urban expressways with at-grade intersections that fit with one of the urban contexts defined in Part 200 and have a posted speed less than 45 mph, use design criteria from Section 205 through Section 211 as well as 305.7 and Section 307. Table 300-26 provides 4R design guidance for urban expressway cross sectional elements for urban

Table 300-26: ODOT 4R/New Urban Standards – Expressways (Posted 45 mph or greater)

Design Elements	Design Speed			
	45 mph [1]	50 mph	55 mph	60 - 70 mph
Travel Lane	12′	12′	12′	12′
Right Turn Lane	12′ plus shoulder [2]	12′ plus shoulder [2]	12′ plus shoulder [2]	12′ plus shoulder [2]
Left Turn Lane				
Right Side Shoulder	8′	8′	8′	8′
Striped Median Raised Curb Median[3] Conc. Barrier Median	10′ 18′ travel lane to travel lane 10′ (4 lane) 18′ (6 lane)	10′ 20′ travel lane to travel lane 10′ (4 lane) 18′ (6 lane)	10′ 20′ travel lane to travel lane 10′ (4 lane) 18′ (6 lane)	10′ 20′ Travel lane to travel lane 10′ (4 lane) 18′ (6 lane)
Continuous Left Turn Lane	N/A [4]	N/A [4]	N/A [4]	N/A [4]
Max. Superelevation [5]	6%	6%	6%	See Table 200-11
Max. Degree of Curvature	8°	6°45′	5°15′	See Table 200-11
Maximum Grade	6%	6%	5%	5%
Bicycle Facility	Undesignated – Shoulder Designated - Separated Path or Parallel Streets			
Curbside Sidewalk	8′	Undesirable [6]	Undesirable [6]	Undesirable [6]
Separated Sidewalk	6′ [7]	6′ [7]	6′ [7]	6′ [7]
On-street Parking	N/A [8]	N/A [8]	N/A [8]	N/A [8]
Vertical Clearance	See Section 317			

[1] The 45 mph design speed should generally only apply to retrofit situations.

[2] Shoulder on curbed and uncurbed sections shall be 3 feet and 4 feet respectively. For right turn lane design on Expressways with at-grade intersections, follow Figure 500-18 in Part 500.

[3] Minimum raised curb median. Consideration of 6' raised traffic separator for pedestrian crossing may increase median width.

[4] Continuous turn lanes are not allowed on expressways with interchanges.

[5] Superelevation at intersections may need modification; see Part 500, Section 506 and Part 200, Section 218.

[6] Curbside sidewalks are discouraged when design speed is greater than 45 mph.

[7] Pedestrians are not normally accommodated adjacent to expressways. Where separated sidewalks are used, a minimum 8 foot buffer strip should be provided.

[8] On-street parking is not allowed on expressways.

311.17 ODOT 4R Rural Expressway Shoulders

Rural expressways must have an adequate shoulder for emergency parking, disabled vehicles, and emergency response vehicles. The shoulder also provides significant safety benefits to motorists and bicyclists, as well as improving traffic flow and capacity. *Rural expressways will typically have an 8-foot right hand shoulder for most design speeds on 4 lane facilities.* **The left side shoulder for four lane separated rural expressways shall be 4 feet. Separated rural expressways with more than two lanes in each direction shall have a 6-foot left side shoulder for a design speed of 50mph and 8 feet for 60 or 70 mph design speeds. For four lane rural expressways with median barrier, the left shoulder shall be 4' to the face of barrier. For six lane rural expressways with median barrier, the left shoulder shall be 8' to the face of barrier for a 50 mph design speed and 10' to the face of barrier for a 60 mph or greater design speed.**

In addition to the standard shoulder width, where roadside barriers are used (guardrail, concrete barrier, or bridge rail), the right-side shoulder shall include an additional 2-foot "E" or shy distance from the face of barrier. On rural four lane expressways, left side shy distance is not required.

In most situations the shoulder can also accommodate bicycle traffic. In some situations, a shared-use path may better accommodate bicycle traffic. On access-controlled facilities, a separated path for shared bicycle and pedestrian use is optimal. Refer to Part 900, Section 971 and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide for additional information on multi-use paths.

DRAFT

311.18 4R Rural Expressway Medians

Note: The addition of any median treatment that changes or restricts the existing roadway cross-section will need to be investigated for freight mobility issues and comply with ORS 366.215, Creation of state highways; reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity. For guidance in complying with ORS 366.215, see ODOT guidance document Guidelines for Implementation of ORS 366.215, No Reduction of Vehicle-Carrying Capacity and the ODOT Highway Mobility Operations Manual.

Rural multi-lane expressways shall include some type of median treatment. This median could be a variety of types, such as depressed median, raised curb, or concrete barrier. For more information regarding types of median treatments refer to Section 308. The median should be a non-traversable type; however, in some situations a painted median is acceptable as in the case of at-grade intersections. **The 1999 Oregon Highway Plan requires the construction of a non-traversable median for:**

1. All new multi-lane highways constructed on completely new alignment; and
2. Modernization of all rural, multi-lane expressways, including Statewide (NHS), Regional, and District.

In rural developed areas such as rural communities and centers where left turn movements are necessary and would be allowed, the preferred median type is a 12-foot wide raised curb median (curb to curb). This would also require two 4 foot inside shoulders for an overall median width of 20 feet (travel lane to travel lane). Consideration of double left turn lanes on at-grade intersections on expressways should be given, resulting in a 24 foot raised island. The required two 4 foot inside shoulders would result in an overall median width of 32 feet (travel lane to travel lane).

For multi-lane expressways in most rural environments, a depressed median similar to freeways is the preferred median treatment. The depressed median allows flexibility on running independent grades, while providing a larger separation between travel directions. This type of median treatment should generally be used on rural multi-lane expressways, particularly where right of way is available. A 76 foot or wider (travel lane to travel lane) median is desirable for depressed medians on rural expressways. However, narrower medians could still be considered if adequate separation, proper side slopes, and drainage can be accommodated. Typically, a median width of at least 46 feet is necessary to provide the necessary design features. *Where the width is 60 feet or less, the median should be closed with concrete barrier or cable barrier to prevent crossover crashes. However, on expressways with at-grade intersections and driveway accesses, fully closing the median to reduce cross-over crashes should be balanced with the needs of local access.* As mentioned above, raised curb is generally only appropriate near rural development centers.

The median width necessary for a concrete barrier is shown in Table 300-26. The minimum median width for a four-lane facility is 10 feet (2-foot barrier and 4-foot shoulders). On six lane facilities, an additional 2-foot shy distance on each side of the barrier is required to

DRAFT

account for the increased probability that the shoulder will be used for emergency parking. Wherever concrete median barrier is used, carefully consider appropriate end treatments. These could include attenuators, or transitions to other median types such as depressed or raised curb.

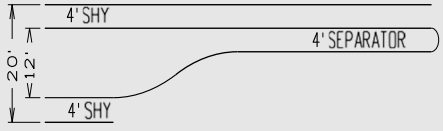
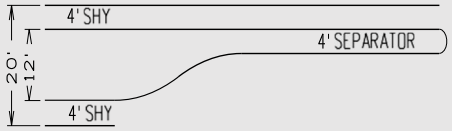
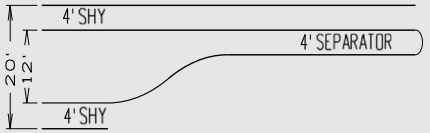
Not all expressways, particularly rural sections, will be multi-lane facilities. **On two lane rural expressways, a controlled median is not required.** A non-traversable median on a two lane expressway should generally be discouraged except at critical locations such as interchanges, access points, or at-grade intersections median treatments may be used as appropriate for access control.

Where a painted traversable median is acceptable in rural areas, the median width shall be a minimum of 14 feet for design speeds of 50 to 55 mph and 16 feet for a design speed of 60 mph or greater. *Use of a 14-foot and 16-foot median should be in conjunction with access control measures to ensure that the median is not used as a continuous turn lane. The use of continuous two way left turn lanes (CTWLTL) on rural expressways is discouraged and should only be considered if other alternatives are not feasible.* **Left turn channelization may be provided at intersections only**.

DRAFT

311.19 ODOT 4R Rural Expressway Typical Section

Table 300-27 ODOT 4R/New Expressway Standards - Rural Expressway

Design Elements	Design Speed		
	50 mph	60 mph	70 mph
Terrain	Mountainous	Rolling/Flat	Flat
Travel Lane	12′	12′	12′
Right Turn Lane	12′ plus shoulder[1]	12′ plus shoulder[1]	12′ plus shoulder[1]
Left Turn Lane			
Right Side Shoulder	8′ (4 lane) 10′ (6 lane)	8′ (4 lane) 10′ (6 lane)	8′ (4 lane) 10′ (6 lane)
Left Side Shoulder	4′ (4 lane) 6′ (6 lane)	4′ (4 lane) 8′ (6 lane)	4′ (4 lane) 8′ (6 lane)
Striped Median Raised Curb Median[2] Concrete Barrier Median	14′ Minimum 20′ Travel Lane to Travel Lane 10′ (4 lane) 18′ (6 lane)	16′ Minimum 20′ Travel Lane to Travel Tane 10′ (4 lane) 22′ (6 lane, includes 2′ shy)	16′ Minimum 20′ Travel Lane to Travel Lane 10′ (4 lane) 22′ (6 lane, includes 2′ shy)
Continuous Left Turn Lane	N/A[3]	N/A[3]	N/A[3]
Maximum Superelevation[4]	See Table 200-11	See Table 200-11	See Table 200-11
Maximum Degree of Curvature	8° 00′	5° 00′	3° 15′
Maximum Grade	6%	4%	3%
On-street Parking	N/A[5]	N/A[5]	N/A[5]
Vertical Clearance	See Section 317		

[1] The minimum shoulder on curbed and uncurbed sections is 3 feet and 4 feet respectively; 5 feet is required on curbed sections where no through bike lane is provided.

[2] Minimum raised curb median. Consideration of 6' raised traffic separator for pedestrian crossing may increase median width.

[3] Continuous turn lanes are not allowed on expressways.

[4] Superelevation at intersections may need modification, see Part 500 Superelevation rate used from Standard Superelevation Table 200-11, which is based on open road conditions.

[5] On-street parking is not allowed on expressways.

311.20 ODOT 4R Single Function (SF) Urban and Rural Expressway Standards

The specific design standards used for a Single Function Standard project will generally be the same design standards used for a 4R/New Construction project. *The difference is the scope of work is very limited on SF projects,* so *the SF Standard does not require addressing non-related non-standard features of the roadway.* For example, if a guardrail upgrade qualifies as a Single Function project, it will not be necessary to address other non-standard features on the roadway, such as lane and shoulder width, horizontal and vertical alignment, etc.

311.20.1 Application of 4R Single Function (SF) Project Standards

Single Function projects include projects that are within the right of way but do not permanently impact the travel lanes or shoulders of the highway. Generally, projects that only include work outside the edge of pavement will qualify for the SF standard. The SF standard can also be applied to certain maintenance projects such as re-striping projects as long as the final configuration of the travel lanes and shoulders would not be changed in any way. These projects address a specific need. The scope of work is limited to features that are directly impacted as a result of addressing the specific need. See Section 113.1 for additional information about 4R Single Function project standards. **In no case shall safety, operations, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded as a result of a SF project. Each feature constructed in a SF project must be built to the applicable standard for new construction.** The SF Standard does not apply to resurfacing projects.

ADA Program specific projects are technically not classified as Single Function but are classified as 4R projects with a very limited scope. While they are focused on a single overall objective, they have specific requirements that need to be met that often go beyond the intent of the Single Function category. For practical purposes, ADA Program specific projects can be considered

similar to Single Function projects in that they do not need to address all elements across the roadway section and substandard roadway features are not addressed. ADA Program specific projects focus on the needed upgrades to meet applicable standards and any element that it affects as a result, such as signal hardware or adjacent driveways.

Section 312 Rural Arterials/Collectors/Local Routes

This section provides 1R, 3R, 4R, and 4R Single Function (SF) typical section and design guidance for rural arterials, collectors, and local routes. As outlined in Part 200, arterials, make up a large percentage of the state highway mileage and cover a wide range of geographical and topographical conditions. As Part 200 provided the geometric requirements such as vertical and horizontal curvature, vertical clearance, sight distance, and grades, this section focuses on the cross section elements such as; lane width, shoulder width, cross slope, vertical clearance, roadside design, clear zone, median design, and other cross sectional features for rural arterials, collectors, and local routes. ***When the width computed for the lateral support of the surfacing material is a fractional width, round the lateral support width up to the nearest foot.***

312.1 ODOT 1R Rural (Non-Freeway) Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design Standards

The primary intent of a 1R project is to preserve the existing pavement before it deteriorates to a condition where extensive reconstruction would be necessary to rehabilitate the roadway section. Projects under the 1R category consist primarily of paving the existing roadway surface and generally deferring other improvements to future 4R, 3R, specific safety, or single function projects. When project programming and funding are being determined, the ODOT Practical Design Policy and design flexibility can be employed in deciding if a particular preservation project should be in the 1R category or if there is enough value being added to the highway system or corridor for the additional cost if the project is placed in the 3R category that would trigger additional improvements. Safety considerations outlined in the 1R guidance should also be part of the process in determining the appropriateness of a project being selected for 1R. ***The safety evaluation is a critical part of determining whether a project belongs in the 1R or 3R categories and is integral to the process. The 1R/3R Record of Decision form is used to aid the decision process to determine if a 1R project should be upgraded to a 3R project to provide immediate safety improvements.***

The ODOT 1R project standard will apply to Preservation projects that are limited to a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay. Many of the safety items that have traditionally been addressed in 3R projects can be more effectively dealt with in a statewide strategic program. For example,

establishing a prioritized program for upgrading guardrail to current standards along a highway corridor instead of upgrading between specific project limits. A program of this nature has the ability to better utilize funding to target higher need locations for safety item improvements rather than only making safety item improvements based on paving projects. *However, the replacement of safety items such as guardrail, guardrail terminals, concrete barrier, impact attenuators, and signs may be included in the 1R project category when necessary if funding other than Preservation funds are used and the added work will not delay the scheduled bid date.* **Any safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced by the 1R project. Existing safety features cannot be degraded to a level below the existing condition as a result of the paving project.**

312.2 Resurfacing (1R) Project Standards

These are projects that extend the pavement life of existing highways. An ADA Ramp may require reconstruction when paving alterations occur adjacent to the ADA Ramp. See 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. Other safety enhancements are not required to be included; however, *safety features may be added to 1R projects where other (non-preservation) funding is available.* ***Any existing safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced, thus necessitating some work in addition to paving.*** **Since 1R projects will generally not address safety upgrades, pedestrian and/or bicycle enhancements, in no case shall safety, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded.** *The safety feature is addressed based on system priorities in standalone projects or other STIP projects.* When scoping 1R projects, the safety feature databases are used to identify opportunities to add safety enhancements with other (non-preservation) funding. Subsequent subsections in 312.2 outline the ODOT Resurfacing 1R project standard. While the criteria primarily relates to the paving treatment and the ability to pave without degrading existing conditions, there may be corridors where analysis of the crash history indicates that a full 3R project is warranted. *Therefore, projects are screened for 1R eligibility from a safety perspective as well.*

312.2.1 Scoping Requirements

In order to ensure the intent of the program is met in addressing pavement and safety needs, adequate advance information is needed to assure adequate statewide decisions are made with consistency.

1. 1R/3R Record of Decision Form

- This form steps the scoping team through the scoping process. Parts of the form are filled out by different sections including Pavements, Traffic, and Roadway.
- Use of this form provides a statewide uniform approach to determining the project design standard – 1R vs 3R – that will be applied to a pavement preservation project.

312.2.2 Project Initiation Requirements

At project initiation, the 1R/3R Record of Decision Form must be reviewed and approved to ensure the project will be developed under the appropriate design standard.

312.2.3 1R Project Requirements

1. ***A paving project is initially designated 1R based on the appropriate paving treatment – a single lift overlay or inlay.*** (There is no formal requirement for pavement design life for an individual project; however, since the 1R treatment is location specific, it is expected that an 8-year pavement life will be the goal of the program).

   Pavement Services is the final authority regarding the pavement design.

2. ***Where less than approximately 5 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay, the project may be designated 1R.***

3. **Where up to approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project may be designated 1R; however, this requires the approval of a design exception.**

4. **Where more than approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project must be designated 3R.**

   As an exception to this is rule, a grind and inlay plus an overlay may also be considered for development under the 1R standard; however, this would be uncommon and requires the approval of a design exception.

5. ***Where the appropriate course of action is not clear based on the percentages noted above, include ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff in the discussion.***

6. Chip seals are 1R projects and subject to the requirements of the 1R standard. Chip seal alone is not an alteration paving treatment however when multiple surface treatments are combined it may result in an alteration (see Section 309).

DRAFT

312.2.4 Unprotected and Unconnected Bridge Ends

On 1R paving projects, any bridge rail with unprotected ends or unconnected transitions exposed to traffic must be mitigated. Provide an end treatment meeting the current standard, or a design exception must be obtained. For possible funding options, contact the Senior Roadway / Roadside Design Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

- Unprotected ends – Where the end of the bridge rail is exposed with no end treatment such as a transition to guardrail or a crash cushion.
- Unconnected transition – Where there is no crashworthy transition between the end of the bridge rail to the guardrail or other barrier.

312.2.5 Responsibilities

1R/3R form filled out by Pavements staff, Region Roadway and Traffic Staff. There are approval signatures by the Pavements Engineer, Region Roadway Manager & Traffic Manger. It will be the Project Leaders role to coordinate. Form is housed in ProjectWise.

312.3 ODOT 3R Rural Arterials, Collectors, and Local Routes Typical Section

This section discusses the appropriate 3R design standards for rural non-freeway highway projects and is applicable to arterials, collectors, and local streets. In general, the intent of 3R projects is pavement preservation with additional focus on safety items. Some of those safety items include mandatory 3R design features such as curb ramps and deficient guardrail, as well as consideration of low-cost safety mitigation measures. Table 300-28 below provides the cross-section minimums for rural arterials. Table 300-29 provides the mandatory 3R design features and Table 300-31 provides the low-cost safety mitigation measures.

DRAFT

312.4 ODOT 3R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Roadway Widths

See Table 300-28 for minimum 3R roadway widths.

Table 300-28: Minimum 3R Lane and Shoulder Widths Rural Non-Freeway (Arterials, Collectors, Local Streets)

Design Year Volume (ADT)	Average Running Speed	Lane Width	Shoulder Width
Less Than 750 Vehicles	All Speeds	10′	2′
750 to 2000 Vehicles	Under 50 mph	11′	2′
	50 mph or over	11′	3′
Over 2000 Vehicles	All Speeds	11′	4′

NOTE: A minimum 11-foot lane is required on all NHS Routes on ODOT jurisdiction roadways only. Local Agencies may use AASHTO standards for lane width on Local Agency jurisdiction roads.

DRAFT

312.5 Mandatory 3R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design Features

Following is a list of mandatory design elements that must be incorporated with 3R projects:

Table 300-29: Mandatory Design Features 3R Rural Arterial, Collector Local Routes

Geometric Deficiency	Mandatory Corrective Measure
ADA Ramps	• ADA Ramps shall be added where absent or "Missing" • See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year • ADA Ramps shall be reconstructed when the curbline is modified, reconstructed, or newly established
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	• See BDM.
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-350 concrete barrier with earth support behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.

312.6 ODOT 3R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Bridge Width

A decision must be made to retain, widen or replace any bridge within the limits of a 3R project. Widening versus replacement should be evaluated to determine the most cost-effective treatment. Consider the AASHTO Green Book standards for bridges to remain in place, and Table 300-30, whichever is less, for minimum width. Additionally, analysis of the crash history and the cost of widening is required when determining if widening is cost effective. ***If the decision is made to replace an existing structure, new construction standards will apply to the bridge replacement portion of the project only, not to the roadway portion. Replacing structures does not change the remainder of a 3R Project to 4R.***

When a decision is made to retain a bridge, evaluate the bridge rail to determine if it can adequately contain and redirect vehicles without snagging, penetrating or vaulting. **Upgrade structurally inadequate or functionally obsolete bridge rail.** ***Consideration may be given to design standard exceptions for railing upgrades, roadway widths, etc., when the structure is listed in or determined eligible for the National Register of Historic Places. Evaluate the bridge rail design for pedestrian needs and provide a design that accommodates pedestrians as necessary.*** If the clear roadway width on the structure is less than the approach roadway width, install appropriate traffic control devices.

Table 300-30: Minimum Useable Bridge Widths

Design Year Volume (ADT)	Useable Bridge Width
0 – 750	Width of approach lanes
751 – 2000	Width of approach lanes, plus 2 feet
2001 – 4000	Width of approach lanes, plus 4 feet
Over 4000	Width of approach lanes, plus 6 feet

312.7 Low-Cost Safety Mitigation Measures

Table 300-31 is a list of low-cost safety measures that should be considered on all 3R projects. They can also be used as mitigation in justification for design exceptions.

Table 300-31: Low-Cost Safety Measures

Design Element	Low-Cost Safety Measure
Narrow Lanes and/or Shoulders	• Pavement edge lines • Raised pavement markers • Post delineators • Rumble strips • Safety Edge
Steep Sideslopes/Roadside Obstacles	• Roadside ~~hazard~~object markings • Round ditches • Install guardrail • Remove or relocate obstacle • Slope flattening • Breakaway hardware • Rumble Strips
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	• Install supplementary signing • ~~Hazard~~Object and pavement markings
Sharp Horizontal Curve	• Install supplementary signing • Shoulder widening • Shoulder paving • Lane Widening • Correct superelevation • Gradual sideslopes • Pavement antiskid treatment • Obstacle removal or shielding • Raised Pavement Markers • Install post delineators • Rumble Strips
Poor Sight Distance at Hill Crest	• Install supplementary signing • Fixed-~~hazard~~object removal • Shoulder widening • Driveway relocation • Illumination
Intersections	• Install supplementary signing • Illumination • Pavement antiskid treatment • Speed control

312.8 4R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Routes Medians

All multi-lane rural highways shall include a median. *The preferred design for these types of highways is a non-traversable type of median.* A non-traversable median may consist of a wide depressed median (similar to expressways), a raised mountable curb, cable barrier, or a concrete barrier. Of these, the concrete barrier should be avoided due to the difficulty of providing at-grade intersections that are common to rural highways. Both depressed and raised curb medians can be easily and safely transitioned to provide turning and crossing opportunities. In some situations, a painted median may be acceptable. If there is a history of crossover crashes, low-cost mitigation such as rumble strips should be applied, and consideration may be given to closing the median with concrete barrier or cable barrier if practical.

1. Non-traversable medians must be constructed for:
    a. All new multi-lane highways constructed on completely new alignment; and
    b. Modernization of all rural multi-lane expressways.
2. Non-traversable medians should be considered for:
    a. All multi-lane highways undergoing 3R or 4R improvements; and
    b. Highways not undergoing modernization where a median would improve safety.

Median openings must conform to the Access Spacing Standards contained OAR 734 Division 51. Where median openings in a non-traversable median are allowed, intersection sight distance should be provided from the intersection. This may require modification of the median design or providing a median opening wide enough to ensure proper sight distance. The minimum median width is dependent upon the design speed of the highway. Figure 300-22 contains the standard median widths.

Where painted medians are acceptable, they should be a minimum of 8 feet wide on rural arterials. Rural collectors and rural local roads may have narrower medians. **Painted medians must be clearly striped so as not to be confused with continuous two way left turn lanes** (CTWLTL). CTWLTLs should be avoided in most rural environments. Short sections may be needed in some rural communities or where closely spaced accesses require it. Figure 300-22 provides standard details for median width, shoulder widths, slopes, and ditch widths.

Missing curb ramps must be installed and curb ramps that do not meet the current accessibility standard, including barriers to accessibility at crosswalks, accessible route islands, and curbless connections to Pedestrian Access Routes (PAR) must be upgraded to the current standard.

DRAFT

312.9 ODOT 4R Rural Arterials, Collectors, and Local Routes Typical Section

Table 300-32 provides the cross-section element guidance for all rural arterials, collectors, and local routes. Where discrepancies exist between the classifications assigned, the higher classification is used. Some rural highways with less than 5000 ADT are classified as rural arterials, yet go through small cities with a posted speed of 25 to 30 mph. In these locations, the use of the urban context standards in Section 312 through Section 317 may be appropriate and careful consideration must be given to the transition from a higher to lower speed environment.

DRAFT

Table 300-32: ODOT 4R/New or Reconstruction - Rural Design Standards

For Non-Freeway RURAL Functional Classifications Including Arterials, Collectors and Local Classifications

Design Feature	Functional Class																	
	Two Lane														Four Lane			
	ADT under 400			ADT 400 - 1500			ADT 1500 - 2000				ADT over 2000				DHV over 700			
Design Speed (mph)	60	50	45	60	55	45	70	60	55	50	70	60	55	50	70	60	55	50
Width of Traveled Way (ft.)																		
Rural Arterials	24	22	22	24	24	22	24	24	24	22	24	24	24	24	2 X 24			
Rural Collectors	22	20	20	22	22	22	24	24	24	22	24	24	24	24	2 X 24			
Rural Local Routes	22	20	18	22	22	22	24	24	24	22	24	24	24	24	2 X 24			
Shoulder Width (ft.)																		
Rural Arterials	4	4	4	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Rural Collector	2	2	2	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Rural Local Routes	2	2	2	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Recommended Max Grades (%)																		
Rural Arterials	3	5 (6)[a]	6 (8)[a]	3	4	6	3	4	4	6	3	4	4	6	3	4	4	6
Rural Collector / Local	5	6 (8)[a]	6 (9)[a]	4	6	6	4	5	5	6	4	5	5	6	4	5	5	6
	[a] Recommended Maximum Grades for ADT under 250																	
Maximum Degree of Curvature	5°	8°15′	10°30′	5°	6°30′	10°30′	3°15′	5°	6°30′	8°15′	3°15′	5°	6°30′	8°15′	3°15′	5°	6°30′	8°15′
Stopping Sight Distance (ft.)	570	425	360	570	495	360	730	570	495	425	730	570	495	425	730	570	495	425
Passing Sight Distance	---------- As Available ---------- 1200 feet for 70 mph or less -------																	

Table 300-32 (Continued): ODOT 4R/New or Reconstruction - Rural Design Standards
For Non-Freeway RURAL Functional Classifications Including Arterials, Collectors and Local Classifications

Design Feature	Functional Class																	
	Two Lane														Four Lane			
	ADT under 400			ADT 400 - 1500			ADT 1500 - 2000				ADT over 2000				DHV over 700			
Design Speed (mph)	60	50	45	60	55	45	70	60	55	50	70	60	55	50	70	60	55	50
Surface Type	---------- As determined by Pavements Engineer ----------																	
Type of Shoulder Surface	---------- Same as Traveled Way ----------																	
Width of Structures	Width of future approach roadway and shoulders, as determined above plus offset to barrier, where applicable																	
Width of Major Long Span Bridges	---------- Special study may be required ----------																	
Vertical Clearance	---------- See Section 317 ----------																	
Loading	---------- Design Loading – HS 25 Design Truck or HL-93 Vehicular Loading ----------																	

Climbing or Passing Lanes shall be considered where combinations of horizontal and vertical alignment prevent passing opportunities. Passing lanes, use 2′ median when 3 or 4 lane sections result. Climbing lanes, use 2′ median in 4 lane section only. Desirable shoulder width is 6′ (minimum 4′). If the roadway has substantial bike use, consult the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Engineer or the project bicycle and pedestrian coordinator for input.

Four lane construction standards should be utilized wherever the traffic is likely to approach or exceed capacity. Refer to median table in Figure 300-22 for four lane median width.

Where roadside barriers are used, increase the shoulder width by 2′ to provide barrier clearance and lateral support. (See Section 320.1 "roadside barriers"

To convert ADT's and DHV's, contact Transportation Planning Analysis Unit or Region Traffic Unit.

Figure 300-22 ~~Standard~~Typical Sections for Highways Other Than Freeways

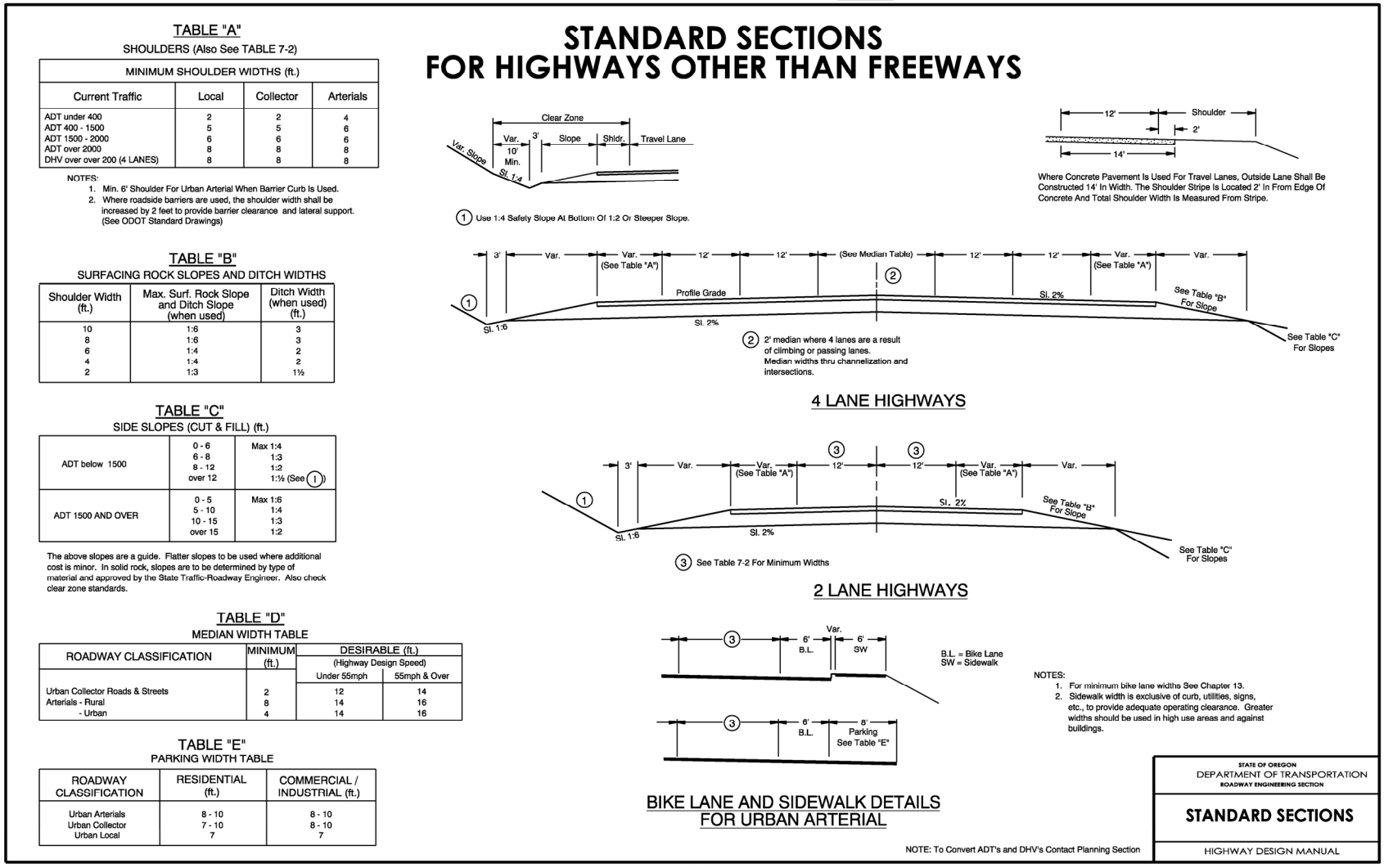


TABLE "A"

SHOULDERS (Also See TABLE 7-2)

MINIMUM SHOULDER WIDTHS (ft.)			
Current Traffic	Local	Collector	Arterials
ADT under 400	2	2	4
ADT 400 - 1500	5	5	6
ADT 1500 - 2000	6	6	6
ADT over 2000	8	8	8
DHV over over 200 (4 LANES)	8	8	8

NOTES:
1. Min. 6' Shoulder For Urban Arterial When Barrier Curb Is Used.
2. Where roadside barriers are used, the shoulder width shall be increased by 2 feet to provide barrier clearance and lateral support. (See ODOT Standard Drawings)

TABLE "B"

SURFACING ROCK SLOPES AND DITCH WIDTHS

Shoulder Width (ft.)	Max. Surf. Rock Slope and Ditch Slope (when used)	Ditch Width (when used) (ft.)
10	1:6	3
8	1:6	3
6	1:4	2
4	1:4	2
2	1:3	1½

TABLE "C"

SIDE SLOPES (CUT & FILL) (ft.)

ADT below 1500	0 - 6 6 - 8 8 - 12 over 12	Max 1:4 1:3 1:2 1:½ (See ①)
ADT 1500 AND OVER	0 - 5 5 - 10 10 - 15 over 15	Max 1:6 1:4 1:3 1:2

The above slopes are a guide. Flatter slopes to be used where additional cost is minor. In solid rock, slopes are to be determined by type of material and approved by the State Traffic-Roadway Engineer. Also check clear zone standards.

TABLE "D"

MEDIAN WIDTH TABLE

ROADWAY CLASSIFICATION	MINIMUM (ft.)	DESIRABLE (ft.) (Highway Design Speed)	
		Under 55mph	55mph & Over
Urban Collector Roads & Streets	2	12	14
Arterials - Rural	8	14	16
- Urban	4	14	16

TABLE "E"

PARKING WIDTH TABLE

ROADWAY CLASSIFICATION	RESIDENTIAL (ft.)	COMMERCIAL / INDUSTRIAL (ft.)
Urban Arterials	8 - 10	8 - 10
Urban Collector	7 - 10	8 - 10
Urban Local	7	7

STANDARD SECTIONS
FOR HIGHWAYS OTHER THAN FREEWAYS

① Use 1:4 Safety Slope At Bottom Of 1:2 Or Steeper Slope.

Where Concrete Pavement Is Used For Travel Lanes, Outside Lane Shall Be Constructed 14' In Width. The Shoulder Stripe Is Located 2' In From Edge Of Concrete And Total Shoulder Width Is Measured From Stripe.

② 2' median where 4 lanes are a result of climbing or passing lanes. Median widths thru channelization and intersections.

4 LANE HIGHWAYS

③ See Table 7-2 For Minimum Widths

2 LANE HIGHWAYS

B.L. = Bike Lane
SW = Sidewalk

NOTES:
1. For minimum bike lane widths See Chapter 13.
2. Sidewalk width is exclusive of curb, utilities, signs, etc., to provide adequate operating clearance. Greater widths should be used in high use areas and against buildings.

BIKE LANE AND SIDEWALK DETAILS
FOR URBAN ARTERIAL

NOTE: To Convert ADT's and DHV's Contact Planning Section

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING SECTION

STANDARD SECTIONS

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

312.10 ODOT 4R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Lane Width

Rural highways carry many different types and volumes of traffic. Some highways may be major freight routes, others may be major recreational routes or commuter routes, while some may only serve an isolated farm to market industry or local traffic. Travel lanes need to be designed in accordance with this wide range of highway uses and functions. The number of lanes required is normally arrived at by consideration of projected volume, level of service, and capacity conditions.

When determining the appropriate lane widths for a particular section of highway, consider the highway classification, presence of trucks, highway function, and traffic volumes. Travel lane widths can significantly impact the capacity or mobility of a particular highway section as well as the safety of the section.

Highways that are identified as freight routes generally have 12-foot lanes, regardless of volume. In urban locations, 11-foot lanes can often be utilized to provide space to accommodate other transportation modes. Twelve-foot lanes are generally used for all rural statewide classified highways on the National Highway System (NHS): the minimum lane width on the NHS system is 11 feet. Research has shown that 11-foot travel lane width is reasonable and adequate in lower speed urban locations and does not pose a safety risk over 12-foot lanes widths, provided truck and freight use and needs are considered. AASHTO design criteria allows lower volume collectors and local routes to have a narrower roadway width. Lane width for regional and district highways is typically based upon functional class and volume. Table 300-32 provides information on standard lane width.

312.11 ODOT 4R Rural Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Shoulders

Shoulders are a very important and often overlooked element of a rural highway. Right side shoulders provide lateral clearance from roadside objects, provide lateral support of the highway section, increase capacity, provide an area for emergency parking, provide an area to pass a stalled vehicle, can aid emergency vehicles reaching a crash site, and provide an area for motorists to recover if they drift outside of the travel lanes. Left side shoulders in separated roadways also provide many of the same benefits, but generally are narrower than the right side.

Paved right side shoulders are required on every rural state highway. The width of the shoulder is dependent upon traffic volumes, terrain, and to some degree by design speed. For most rural highways, shoulders of 4 feet to 8 feet are sufficient to provide the adequate level of

DRAFT

safety. Lower classification facilities generally have narrower shoulders. Table 300-32 should be used to determine the appropriate shoulder width.

Another benefit of shoulders on rural highways is a safe area for bicycle use. These shoulders are not exclusively for bicycles, since they also serve the functions described above. Many rural highways provide great recreational opportunities for bicyclists. Some rural highways are along designated tourism routes such as Scenic Bikeways, National Bike Routes and other recognized bikeways. These routes attract bicycle users internationally and from across the country. ***Recognized bikeways need greater attention to bicycle accommodation, beyond the minimum shoulder widths.***

312.12 ODOT 4R Single Function (SF) Rural (Non-Freeway) Arterial, Collector, and Local Route Design Standards

The specific design standards used for a Single Function Standard project will generally be the same design standards used for a 4R/New Construction project. ***The difference is that the scope of work is very limited on SF projects, so the SF Standard does not require addressing non-related substandard features of the roadway.*** For example, if a guardrail upgrade qualifies as a Single Function project, it will not be necessary to address other substandard features on the roadway, such as lane and shoulder width, horizontal and vertical alignment, etc.

312.12.1 Application of 4R Single Function (SF) Project Standards

Single Function projects include projects that are within the right of way but do not permanently impact the travel lanes or shoulders of the highway. Generally, projects that only include work outside the edge of pavement will qualify for the SF standard. The SF standard can also be applied to certain projects within the roadway such as re-striping projects as long as the final configuration of the travel lanes and shoulders is not changed in any way. These projects address a specific need. The scope of work is limited to features that are directly impacted as a result of addressing the specific need. See Section 113.1 for additional information about 4R Single Function project standards. **In no case shall safety, operations, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded as a result of a SF project. Each feature constructed in a SF project must be built to the applicable standard for new construction.** The SF Standard does not apply to resurfacing projects.

ADA Program specific projects are technically not classified as Single Function but are classified as 4R projects with a very limited scope. While they are focused on a single overall objective, they have specific requirements that need to be met that often go beyond the intent of the Single

Function category. For practical purposes, ADA Program specific projects can be considered similar to Single Function projects in that they do not need to address all elements across the roadway section and substandard roadway features are not addressed. ADA Program specific projects focus on the needed upgrades to meet applicable standards and any element that it affects as a result , such as signal hardware or adjacent driveways.

Section 313 Urban Arterials

This section provides 1R, 3R, 4R, and 4R Single Function (SF) typical section and design guidance for urban arterials, collectors, and local routes. As outlined in Part 200, arterials, make up a large percentage of the state highway mileage and cover a wide range of geographical and topographical conditions. As Part 200 provided the geometric requirements such as vertical and horizontal curvature, vertical clearance, sight distance, and grades, this section focuses on the cross section's elements such as; lane width, shoulder width, cross slope, vertical clearance, roadside design, clear zone, median design, and other cross sectional features for rural arterials, collectors, and local routes.

When the width computed for the lateral support of the surfacing material is a fractional width, round the lateral support width up to the nearest foot.

313.1 ODOT 1R Urban (Non-Freeway) Arterial Design Standards

The primary intent of a 1R project is to preserve the existing paving before it deteriorates to a condition where extensive reconstruction would be necessary to rehabilitate the roadway section. Projects under the urban 1R category consist primarily of paving the existing roadway surface and generally defer other improvements to future 4R projects, 3R projects, specific safety projects, or single function projects. The ODOT 1R Urban Arterial standards apply to all six urban arterial contexts defined in Part 200 and included in Section 305. When project programming and funding are being determined, the ODOT Practical Design Policy and Performance-based, Practical Design decision process can be employed when deciding if a particular preservation project should be in the 1R category or if there is enough value being added to the highway system or corridor for the additional cost to place the project in the 3R category, triggering additional improvements.

The ODOT 1R project standard will apply to Urban Preservation projects that are limited to a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay. Many of the safety items that have traditionally been addressed in 3R projects can be more effectively dealt with in a statewide strategic program. For example, a program for upgrading guardrail to current standards along a highway or in a District not just between specific project limits. A program of this nature has the ability to better

utilize funding to target higher need locations for safety item improvements rather than only making safety item improvements based on paving projects. *However, the replacement of safety items such as guardrail, guardrail terminals, concrete barrier, impact attenuators, and signs may be included in the 1R project category when necessary if funding other than Preservation funds are used and the added work will not delay the scheduled bid date.*

Even on a 1R urban project, perform evaluation and include feasible improvements to bicycle and pedestrian facilities within 1R guidelines. Restriping after paving may provide a low-cost opportunity within a 1R project to provide buffered bicycle lanes where appropriate. Preservation paving projects can provide opportunities to make incremental improvements to facilities and should not be overlooked when striving to meet long term planning goals. *The Urban Design Concurrence document is used on 1R projects to document project context and decisions to establish the final design.*

313.2 Resurfacing (1R) Project Standards

These are projects that extend the pavement life of existing highways. An ADA ramp may require reconstruction when paving alterations occur adjacent to the ADA ramp. See 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. Other safety enhancements are not required to be included; however, *safety features may be added to 1R projects where other (non-preservation) funding is available.* ***Any existing safety features that are impacted by the proposed resurfacing must be adjusted or replaced, thus necessitating some work in addition to paving.*** **Since 1R projects will generally not address safety upgrades, pedestrian and/or bicycle enhancements, in no case shall safety, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded.** *The safety feature is addressed based on system priorities in standalone projects or other STIP projects.* When scoping 1R projects, the safety feature databases are used to identify opportunities to add safety enhancements with other (non-preservation) funding. Subsequent subsections in 313.2 outline the ODOT Resurfacing 1R project standard. While the criteria primarily relates to the paving treatment and the ability to pave without degrading existing conditions, there may be corridors where analysis of the crash history indicates that a full 3R project is warranted. *Therefore, projects are screened for 1R eligibility from a safety perspective as well.*

313.2.1 Scoping Requirements

In order to ensure the intent of the program is met in addressing pavement and safety needs, adequate advance information is needed to assure adequate statewide decisions are made with consistency.

1. **1R/3R Record of Decision Form**

- This form steps the scoping team through the scoping process. Parts of the form are filled out by different sections including Pavements, Traffic, and Roadway.

- Use of this form provides a statewide uniform approach to determining the project design standard – 1R vs 3R – that will be applied to a pavement preservation project.

2. **Urban Design Concurrence Document (Draft)**

   This document identifies the project context and is used by the scoping team to provide a concept design and provide documentation of decisions leading to that design. The Draft Urban Design Decision document is part of the final scoping package for project initiation.

3. **Urban Design Concurrence (UDC) Exemption Memo**

   There may be a small number of urban projects with scope too limited and outside the roadway that an Urban Design Concurrence document may not be necessary. Projects that could meet the UDC Exemption Memo criteria are ITS projects installing cable, a bridge screening project that does not impact the roadway or similar type projects. The primary focus of the work is outside the roadway and peripheral to it. For these types of projects, an UDC Exemption Memo is required and, if granted, takes the place of the Urban Design Concurrence document.

313.2.2 Project Initiation Requirements

1. **At project initiation, the 1R/3R Record of Decision Form must be reviewed and approve to ensure the project will be developed under the appropriate design standard.**
2. The project development team reviews the Draft Urban Design Concurrence (UDC) document to understand the decisions made by the project scoping team and to verify the conditions, decisions and concept are still appropriate to meet project goals and outcomes. Existing conditions may have changed between scoping and project initiation. If changes are needed, the project development team modifies the Draft UDC to meet project goals and/or planning needs. The Draft UDC is further developed as project development continues and is reviewed again at each project milestone to ensure the final design meets the scoping expectations, goals, aspirations, and outcomes for the project.
3. If the scoping team determined an Urban Design Concurrence document isn't needed and obtains an Urban Design Concurrence Exemption Memo, the project development team reviews the project scope to determine the exemption memo is still appropriate for the project scope. At any time during project development, if the scope of the project changes to include work impacting the roadway, the project development team is required to complete the Urban Design Concurrence document for submittal at the Design Acceptance phase.

DRAFT

313.2.3 1R Project Requirements

1. A paving project is initially designated 1R based on the appropriate paving treatment – a single lift overlay or inlay. *(There is no formal requirement for pavement design life for an individual project; however, since the 1R treatment is location specific, it is expected that an 8-year pavement life will be the goal of the program).*

   Pavement Services is the final authority regarding the pavement design.

2. **Where less than approximately 5 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay or inlay, the project may be designated 1R.**

3. **Where up to approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project may be designated 1R; however, this requires the approval of a design exception.**

4. Where more than approximately 25 percent of a project (based on lane miles paved) includes more than a single lift non-structural overlay, the project must be designated 3R.

   As an exception to this is rule, a grind and inlay plus an overlay may also be considered for development under the 1R standard; however, this would be uncommon and requires the approval of a design exception.

5. Where the appropriate course of action is not clear, based on the percentages noted above, include ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff in the discussion.

6. Chip seals are 1R projects and subject to the requirements of the 1R standard, with one exception. Chip seals are 1R projects and subject to the requirements of the 1R standard. Chip seal alone is not an alteration paving treatment however when multiple surface treatments are combined it may result in an alteration (see Section 309).

313.2.4 Unprotected and Unconnected Bridge Ends

On 1R paving projects, any bridge rail with unprotected ends or unconnected transitions exposed to traffic must be mitigated. Provide an end treatment meeting the current standard, or a design exception must be obtained. For possible funding options, contact the Senior Roadway / Roadside Design Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

- **Unprotected ends** – Where the end of the bridge rail is exposed with no end treatment such as a transition to guardrail or a crash cushion.
- **Unconnected transition** – Where there is no crashworthy transition between the end of the bridge rail to the guardrail or other barrier.

DRAFT

313.2.5 Responsibilities

1. 1R/3R form filled out by Pavements staff, Region Roadway and Traffic Staff. There are approval signatures by the Pavements Engineer, Region Roadway Manager & Traffic Manger. It will be the Project Leaders role to coordinate. Form is housed in ProjectWise.
2. Final Urban Design Concurrence document is completed by the project development team and approved by the Region Technical Center Manager, with concurrence from the Region Maintenance, Traffic, and Roadway units. The final UDC is part of the Design Acceptance Package submittal. It is the Project Leaders role to ensure the final UDC is submitted.

313.3 ODOT 3R Urban Arterial Typical Section

As the 3R requirements are the same for all of the six urban contexts defined in Part 200, the 3R requirements are listed only once but are applicable to all the urban contexts listed in Section 305. *With Performance-based, Practical Design, even 3R projects are designed with the focus on project goals and outcomes, both short term and long term.* These projects may not be able by themselves to meet all long-range planning goals for a location or roadway section, but they can provide incremental improvements as a stepwise opportunity to work toward the overall goals, outcomes and long-term planning aspirations for a roadway corridor. Preservation projects can provide some level of improvement at relative cost and opportunities should not be overlooked if they can be appropriately incorporated in the final design.

For urban arterial 3R projects, an appropriate urban context is established as defined in Part 200 and the decision process, guidance and design criteria outlined in Section 305 is used in conjunction with the following sections to determine the final project cross-section. ***The Urban Design Concurrence document is used to document project decisions of what can and what cannot be included with the project.***

Because urban preservation is generally more involved than rural, a number of processes are combined to develop the ODOT 3R urban criteria and guidelines. The ODOT 3R urban design criteria incorporate the Safety Priority Indexing System (SPIS) and the Urban Preservation Pavement Strategy. The Urban Preservation Strategy adds design guidance which provides statewide consistency in the urban preservation program. As with the 3R program in general, urban 3R projects require a roadside inventory to be completed.

When preservation type projects involve the installation of left or right turn channelization, the width of the existing approach lanes or those widths given in Section 305 for the appropriate context are used as minimums. These widths also apply in the situation of a re-striping of an existing section of roadway. The widths of the channelized lanes conform to those specified in Section 305 and in Part 500 as applicable.

DRAFT

313.4 Mandatory 3R Design Features

The following is a list in Table 300-33 of mandatory design features that must be incorporated into Preservation projects:

Table 300-33 Mandatory 3R Design Features

Geometric Deficiency	Mandatory Corrective Measure
ADA Ramps	• ADA Ramps shall be added where absent or "Missing" • See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year • ADA Ramps shall be reconstructed when the curbline is modified, reconstructed, or newly established
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	• See BDM
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-350 concrete barrier with earth support behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.

313.5 Low-Cost Safety Mitigation Measures

Table 300-34 below is a list of low-cost safety measures that should be considered on all projects utilizing ODOT 3R Urban design standards and can be used as mitigation in justification for design exceptions.

Table 300-34 Low-Cost Safety Measures

Design Element	Low-Cost Safety Measure
Narrow Lanes and/or Shoulders	• Pavement edge lines • Raised pavement markers
Steep Sideslopes/Roadside Obstacles	• Roadside ~~hazard~~object markings • Round ditches • Install guardrail • Remove or relocate obstacle • Slope flattening • Breakaway hardware
Narrow Bridges/Deficient Rails	• Install supplementary signing • ~~Hazard~~Object and pavement markings
Sharp Horizontal Curve	• Install supplementary signing • Correct superelevation • Gradual sideslopes • Pavement anti-skid treatment • Obstacle removal or shielding • Install post delineators
Poor Sight Distance at Hill Crest	• Install supplementary signing • Fixed-~~hazard~~object removal • Driveway relocation • Illumination
Intersections	• Install supplementary signing • Signalization • Illumination • Pavement anti-skid treatment • Speed control (traffic calming, visual cues, etc.)
Bicycle Access - Work with Traffic Section to identify potential ARTS, HSIP or other options that could be included	• Restripe roadway to include a buffered bike lane • Signal timing changes to improve bicycle progression
Pedestrian Access - Work with Traffic Section to identify potential ARTS, HSIP or other options that could be included	• Vehicle speed control (traffic calming measures, visual cues, continental striping crosswalks) • Reduce crossing distance (striping or curb radius reduction options) • Improve visibility of pedestrian (Illumination, curb extensions)

NOTE: Designers need to exercise engineering judgment based upon engineering principles and practices in selecting appropriate mitigation measures from the above list.

313.6 ODOT 3R Urban Preservation Strategy

The 3R Urban Preservation Strategy is a good place to utilize the ODOT Performance-based, Practical Design process and the ODOT Practical Design Policy. Urban areas are complex with many conflicting needs. An urban 4R project would attempt to rebuild and improve a roadway section overall. *Whereas the intent of a 3R project is pavement preservation with improvements to selected design elements for safety and operations.* ***Improvements to some of those design elements may be required by regulation or mandate. Other design elements may or may not be improved at the discretion of the project team.*** It is these elements where Performance-based, Practical Design can be employed to aid in the determination of the amount of value added to the system or corridor by making the improvements on either a wholesale basis or as an incremental improvement.

Due to the complexity and cost of urban preservation type projects, the Urban Preservation Strategy has developed a set of criteria for evaluating other design features for possible modifications or improvements. Table 300-35 contains the list of "Have To" and "Like To" corrective measures. **The corrective measures listed under the "Have To" column must be addressed on all urban 3R preservation projects.** *The corrective measures listed under the "Like To" column should be considered where economically feasible (i.e., minimal extra cost or funds available from sources other than Preservation funding).* **Design exceptions are required for each design feature not meeting the "Have To" corrective measures or dimensions not meeting the guidance in the design tables in Section 305.**

Under some conditions, the "Like To" corrective measures are required as part of an Urban Preservation Project. These conditions include:

1. Pavement condition requiring reconstruction, or
2. Curb exposure less than 6 inches, or
3. Cross slope greater than 8 percent.

If any of these above conditions are met, design exceptions are required for not meeting the corrective measures from the "Like To" column of Table 300-35.

Urban Preservation projects must meet the design standards and features described above or obtain a design exception, depending upon certain conditions. However, it is often desirable to provide additional improvements in urban environments. It is strongly encouraged to consider other design features in the "Like To" column in Table 300-35 when additional funding sources are available other than Preservation and where improvements are cost effective. This optional list is not all-inclusive and is not a requirement for Urban Preservation projects and does not require design exceptions if these items are not included in a project. The Performance-based, Practical Design approach includes providing incremental improvements working toward long-range planning goals and aspirations when possible and preservation projects are a good opportunity to include stepwise improvements.

DRAFT

Table 300-35 Urban Preservation Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
Pavement Life	• 8 to 15 year minimum (unless life cycle benefit/cost justifies an alternative) for overlays, inlays or appropriate treatment.	• 15 year minimum life for reconstruction (may be triggered by cross slope, curb exposure or pavement condition).	Pavement Unit
Signal Loops	• Adjust or replace with non-invasive detection (e.g., radar detection) as necessary.		Traffic Section
Striping	• Install pavement markings with materials selected according to Chapter 5 of the ODOT Pavement Marking Design Guide.		Region Traffic
Signing	• Replace and/or add signs according to the ODOT Sign Design Manual		Traffic Section
Utilities (manholes, valves, vaults)	• Adjust.		Roadway Section
Drainage	• Adjust as necessary to maintain basic system. • Address high priority fish culverts identified in Salmon program.	• Reroute bridge drains which drain directly into waterway. • Address lower priority fish culverts as required.	Fish Prog. Mgr. & Hydraulics Unit
Obstacles behind curbs	• Reconstruct curb to re-establish delineation and drainage function if grades & existing R/W permit. • Relocate to meet standards where practical.	• Meet required clear zone standards for obstacles behind curb. Relocate if necessary.	Traffic & Roadway Sections

Table 300-35 (Continued): Urban Preservation Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
Roadside obstacles with demonstrated safety issues	• Remove or mitigate.		Roadway Section
ADA Ramps	• ADA Ramps shall be added where absent or "Missing" • See Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects. • Evaluate assets that do not have a remediation year • ADA Ramps shall be reconstructed when the curbline is modified, reconstructed, or newly established	• Meet accessibility standards on sidewalks and driveways.	Roadway Section
Vertical Clearances	• Maintain existing or minimum vertical clearances. See Section 317	• Meet required vertical clearance.	Bridge Section
Guardrail	• Upgrade all guardrail and end terminals and transitions not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Provide transitions at unconnected bridge ends. • Install protection at unprotected bridge ends. • Adjust MGS guardrail to 31 inches where the height to the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. Adjust 350 guardrail to at least 29 inches where the top of the rail is 28 inches or less. • Removal of guardrail and replacement with concrete barrier where minimum offsets are not met for bridge column protection.	• Meet required standard.	Roadway Section

Table 300-35 (Continued): Urban Preservation Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure		Technical Resource
	"Have To"	"Like To"	
Concrete Barrier	• Upgrade all concrete barrier not meeting NCHRP Report 350 or MASH to the current standard. • Pre-350 concrete barrier with earth support behind the barrier may remain in service. • All barrier in which the proposed finish grade exceeds the 3" vertical lip (reveal) of the barrier shall be replaced or reset.		Roadway Section
Narrow Bridges/ Deficient Rails	• See BDM	• Widen bridge, where practical • Meet current standard for bridge rails and connections	Bridge Section
Curb Exposure	• 4 inch minimum curb exposure for delineation of roadway. Additional exposure may be required for drainage.	• Meet required standard.	Roadway Section
Cross Slope	• Maintain existing where applicable. • Minimize cross slope to meet standards where practical. • Maximum cross slope not to exceed 8%.	• Meet required standard for superelevation rates and cross slopes.	Roadway Section

The following optional items in Table 300-36 should be considered, when cost effective AND additional funding (other than Preservation funding) is available.

Table 300-36 Additional Urban Design Features

Project Element	Corrective Measure	Technical Resource
Drainage	Upgrade systems.	Roadway Section
Access Issues	Driveway relocations/closures.	Region Access Mgr.
Operational Issues	Modify curb radii to facilitate truck movement. Islands (replacing, adding or removing). Install/upgrade traffic control devices.	Traffic & Roadway Sections
Safety Issues	SPIS site addressed. Rumble strips, pavement markings, slope flattening, illumination, etc.	Transportation Safety Office, Traffic Section, & Roadway Section
Sidewalk Infill	If less than 10% missing in length of project.	Roadway Section
Bicycle Facility	Upgrade existing facility or add facility if missing	Roadway Section
Transit Stop	Upgrade existing facility or add facility if missing	Traffic-Roadway Transit Liaison
Planning Goals	Add improvements to meet long range planning activities	Region Planning/Region Traffic and Roadway

313.7 ODOT 3R Urban Arterial Bridge Width

A decision must be made to retain, widen, or replace any bridge within the limits of a Preservation project. Widening vs. replacement should be evaluated to determine the most cost-effective treatment. Consider the AASHTO Green Book reference to "Standards for Bridges to Remain in Place", and Table 300-37, whichever is less, for minimum width. Additionally, consideration should be given to the accident history and the cost of widening when

determining if widening is cost effective. ***If the decision is made to replace an existing structure, new construction standards will apply to the bridge replacement portion of the project only, not to the roadway portion.***

When a decision is made to retain a bridge, evaluate the existing bridge rail to determine if it can adequately contain and redirect vehicles without snagging, penetrating or vaulting. **Structurally inadequate or functionally obsolete bridge rail needs to be upgraded or replaced. A 1997 FHWA policy in conjunction with an AASHTO agreement stipulates that for 3R and preventative maintenance projects, bridge rails that do not meet NCHRP 230 requirements must be replaced. At a minimum, bridge rail on 3R projects must be NCHRP 350 compliant. Consideration should be given to design exceptions for railing upgrades, roadway widths, etc., when the structure is listed in or determined eligible for the National Register of Historic Places.** Appropriate traffic control devices should be installed where the clear roadway width on the structure is less than the approach roadway width. Refer to the ODOT Bridge Design Manual and the ODOT Bridge Section for additional information when determining bridge decisions on roadway projects.

Table 300-37: Minimum Useable Bridge Widths

Design Year Volume (ADT)	Useable Bridge Width
0 – 750	Width of approach lanes
751 – 2000	Width of approach lanes, plus 2 feet
2001 – 4000	Width of approach lanes, plus 4 feet
OVER 4000	Width of approach lanes, plus 6 feet

313.8 4R Urban Arterial Medians

A median is the area of a roadway or highway that separates opposing directions of travel. Medians can either be traversable or non-traversable. A median can be raised curbed or simply a painted stripe.

All multi-lane state highways, regardless of classification, shall use a median treatment. Non-traversable medians are used in urban areas for operational and safety purposes to control traffic movements to and from access points. Strongly consider installing a non-traversable median during all preservation or modernization work on existing roadways, particularly if a non-traversable median exists on adjacent sections in proximity or where there is a history of cross-over crashes. **The preferred type of non-traversable median for an urban arterial is a raised curb median and shall be designed and constructed for all new, limited access, multi-lane highways constructed on completely new alignments.** In addition, the 1999 Oregon

Highway Plan provides direction where non-traversable medians are recommended and should be considered. These locations include:

1. All multi-lane highways with a forecasted volume of 28,000 vehicles a day or greater within the 20-year planning horizon.
2. Modernization of multi-lane highways which are:
    a. Statewide (NHS) Highways;
    b. Regional Highways where design speeds are greater than 45 mph.
3. Modernization or preservation of multi-lane highways with an annual accident rate greater than the average statewide rate for the same classification.
4. Topography and horizontal or vertical alignment result in inadequate left-turn intersection sight distance and it is impractical to relocate or reconstruct the connecting approach road or impractical to reconstruct the highway in order to provide adequate intersection sight distance.

In urban areas, a Continuous Two Way Left Turn Lane (CTWLTL) can be used on two-lane highways or any multi-lane highway where a traversable median is deemed appropriate. However, CTWLTLs should be avoided on multi-lane highways in urban suburban fringe context due to the induced pressure for local land access and development. *Even where a CTWLTL is the preferred median choice, consideration of sections of raised curb medians may be appropriate to control turn movements at signalized intersections or to provide pedestrian crossing opportunities.* See Section 308 Median Design and the Oregon Highway Plan, "Policy 3B: Medians for more information on median design and location". Table 300-14 provides the required left side shy distances.

Installation of raised medians in urban areas must comply with ORS 366.215.

The use of medians in STAs or urban downtown/CBD contexts may or may not be needed. Medians in these locations are generally only located at spot locations to address left turn needs or specific pedestrian needs, such as a mid-block crossing. A left turn bay should be provided at intersections wherever significant left turning volumes are allowed. However, left turns from a through lane, may be acceptable in some situations. ***Generally, raised curb medians are not appropriate in STAs or urban downtowns, unless they are needed to improve pedestrian crossing opportunities, general mobility, access control or appropriate vegetation treatments.*** The use of highway medians in these areas should consider the classification of the highway, function of the highway, availability of other routes or parallel roadways, economic vitality of the area, impact to pedestrian crossings and pedestrian mobility, and safety for all travel modes. Median widths are addressed in PART 300 for all urban contexts and are dependent on project goals and outcomes. CTWLTLs should be avoided and should only be used where several continuous intersections are in need of left turn channelization. An additional shy distance is required where a raised curb median is used. Section 308 (Median Design) provides more detailed median design information. Table 300-14 provides the required left side shy distances.

Installation of medians in STAs urban downtowns can impact pedestrian crossings. Where medians are required to maintain acceptable traffic flow and safety, the designer needs to evaluate options that reduce the impact to pedestrian crossing and safety. The width of median used should take into consideration the pedestrians needs as well as the roadway needs. When medians are not needed for turning movements, but are needed for pedestrian crossings and bicycle access, the width of the pedestrian crossing median should be 6 feet at a minimum, preferably 8 feet. In tightly constrained areas a 4-foot median could be used. However, a standard adult bicycle is on the order of 6 feet in length from front wheel to rear wheel at a minimum – longer if a trailer for pulling young children or cargo is attached. Providing less than a 6-foot median in locations where bicycle traffic is expected to cross the highway may not provide adequate median width should a cyclist need to use the median as a refuge. In areas where recreational paths cross the roadway, median widths may need to accommodate more than the length of a standard bicycle. In addition to medians, options may include curb extensions, mid-block crossings, pedestrian refuges, or other treatments. Whether or not medians are used, improved pedestrian crossings should be the goal in urban environments. PART 300, Section 305 addresses median widths to consider based on urban context. Information is also provided in PART 800 (Pedestrian Design) and PART 900 (Bicycle Design).

Installing a raised median where one has not previously existed may require investigation and determination of its effect on truck traffic that uses the section of roadway. ORS 366.215, Creation of state highways; reduction of vehicle –carrying capacity, states that ODOT may not permanently reduce the vehicle-carrying capacity of an identified freight route when altering, relocating, changing, or realigning a state highway unless safety or access consideration require the reduction. **If a raised median is proposed to be installed, follow applicable ODOT guidance for determination of reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity and ORS 366.215 compliance.** Additional information about median design can be found in Section 308.

313.9 ODOT 4R Single Function (SF) Urban (Non-Freeway) Design Standard

The specific design standards used for a Single Function Standard project will generally be the same design standards used for a 4R/New Construction project. The difference is that the scope of work is very limited on SF projects, so the SF Standard does not require addressing non-related non-standard features of the roadway. For example, if a guardrail upgrade qualifies as a Single Function project, it will not be necessary to address other non-standard features on the roadway, such as lane and shoulder width, horizontal and vertical alignment, etc.

DRAFT

313.9.1 Application of 4R Single Function (SF) Project Standards

All Urban Contexts and all ODOT Highway Segment Designations can utilize the Single Function category. Single Function projects include projects that are within the right of way but do not permanently impact the travel lanes or shoulders of the highway. Generally, projects that only include work outside the edge of pavement will qualify for the SF standard. The SF standard can also be applied to certain projects within the roadway such as re-striping projects as long as the final configuration of the travel lanes and shoulders is not changed in any way. These projects address a specific need. The scope of work is limited to features that are directly impacted as a result of addressing the specific need. See Section 113.1 for additional information about 4R Single Function project standards. I**n no case shall safety, operations, pedestrian and/or bicycle conditions be degraded as a result of a SF project. Each feature constructed in a SF project must be built to the applicable standard for new construction**. The SF Standard does not apply to resurfacing projects.

ADA Program specific projects are technically not classified as Single Function but are classified a 4R projects with a very limited scope. While they are focused on a single overall objective, they have specific requirements that need to be met that often go beyond the intent of the Single Function category. For practical purposes, ADA Program specific projects can be considered similar to Single Function projects in that they do not need to address all elements across the roadway section and substandard roadway features are not addressed. ADA Program specific projects focus on the needed upgrades to meet applicable standards and any element that it affects as a result , such as signal hardware or adjacent driveways.

Section 314 Oregon Highway Plan Special Overlays

Rural arterial highways cover many miles of varying terrain and roadside development, and they are often located in areas of high scenic or historical significance. *Designers need to consider the need for special consideration of scenic byways, rural communities, historical markers and viewing sites as they develop design plans.* The Oregon Highway Plan includes special overlays for designating roadways needing additional design considerations. These include Scenic Byways, Freight Routes, and Lifeline Routes.

314.1 Scenic Byways

The OHP establishes a Scenic Byway Policy (see Section 314.2).

However, should the Scenic Byway designation apply to an urban roadway section context, ODOT has established a process for portions or segments of highway routes that have been, or

are going to be, designated as Scenic Byways. Of the six urban contexts, the Rural Community context is the most likely to overlap with the Scenic Byway designation. However, it is possible that some of the other urban context locations could also fall under parts of a Scenic Byway.

Scenic Byways are those routes or segments that are located in significant scenic or historic corridors. ODOT has adopted many State and Federal Scenic Byway routes. These routes are described in the Oregon Highway Plan, pages 67-69. Scenic Byways are eligible for special federal funding. In addition, federal legislation encourages flexibility in design when designing projects within a Scenic Byway corridor.

When designing projects on a Scenic Byway, the designer should try to minimize the impacts to the natural and historic resources along the corridor. This may require the designer to use non-standard designs to avoid and minimize impacts. However, it is still the responsibility of the project design team to provide a safe and appropriate level of operation of the roadway section for all road users. Some special considerations to minimize impacts within Scenic Byway corridors are:

1. Utilize alternative guardrail types or walls. Consult Roadway and/or Bridge Engineering.
2. Utilize alternative bridge rails.
3. Consider visual impacts and obstructions from guardrail. Reconsider the need for it.
4. Make sure the appropriate design speed is used so as not to change design elements unnecessarily.
5. Consider blending cut and fill slopes with the natural terrain.

Designers need to coordinate early with Region Planners and the Scenic Byway program to identify key resource issues and concerns. The Scenic Byway program can provide valuable services for determining the scope, issues, and parameters to consider. They are also knowledgeable regarding various flexible design solutions to minimize impacts.

314.2 Scenic Byway Policy

The OHP establishes a Scenic Byway Policy. Scenic Byways have exceptional scenic value to the state. The OTC must designate a route as a Scenic Byway. The intent of the designation is to ensure that the scenic qualities of the highway are preserved and may be enhanced by highway designs and projects. The Scenic Byway designation should not impact the design of urban arterials. However, the designer should contact the Scenic Byway Program to make sure the Scenic Byway Corridor Management Plan will not affect the urban highway design. Page 68 of the OHP contains a map of Oregon's Scenic Byways. (The OHP contains a map of Oregon's designated Scenic Byways along with additional information.)

DRAFT

314.3 Freight Route

The Oregon Freight Route system carries a significant tonnage of goods and materials within and through the state. Highways included in the Oregon Freight Route network are shown with the nomenclature of FR in the OHP Highway Classification tables. Many of these routes are also known as Reduction Review Routes as determined by legislative action in ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. These routes are to provide a higher level of service and mobility than other statewide highways. However, other state highways serve significant volumes of truck traffic as well and have been pre-approved for use of interstate size trucks. These routes are identified on Route Map 7, which is published by the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division, Over-Dimension Permit Unit. Although Route Map 7 includes all highways, it identifies those highways where the use of interstate size trucks are allowed and should accommodate those vehicles in the final roadway design.

Route Map 7 is color coded and identifies where the interstate truck is allowed without permit. Projects on routes identified by either the OHP Freight Map or pre-approved for WB-67 size trucks as shown on Route Map 7 should strongly consider freight needs in the design, particularly at intersections. A WB-67 size truck is a single tractor trailer truck with a 67-foot wheelbase; this is currently the largest single tractor trailer approved for travel on Oregon highways without a permit. It is often referred to as the "interstate" design truck. Reducing design standards and through carrying capacity is discouraged on OHP designated Freight Routes. These Freight Routes will generally be the most important facilities to the local jurisdiction as well as surrounding region and possibly the state. As such, they should maintain an appropriate level of functionality. ORS 366.215, Creation of state highways; reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity, states that ODOT may not permanently reduce the vehicle-carrying capacity of an identified freight route when altering, relocating, changing, or realigning a state highway unless safety or access consideration require the reduction. **When a project is proposed on a designated freight route, follow applicable ODOT guidance for determination of reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity and ORS 366.215 compliance.** OAR 731-012 provides a process to follow when working through compliance with ORS 366.215.

In conjunction with the OHP Freight Route system, the Oregon Highway Plan also recognizes the National Network as established in the Surface Transportation Act of 1982 (23 CFR 658). These routes are federally designated truck routes and are denoted in the OHP with the nomenclature TR for Truck Route in order to differentiate them from the FR used for the Oregon Freight Route system. In many instances, the FR routes and the TR routes are coincident. The FR routes are routes specific to Oregon designation for freight movement within and through the state. Whereas the TR routes are specific to federal designation designed to carry freight effectively from state to state at the national level and are part of the national network of truck routes. ***TR routes are part of the National Highway System (NHS) and in most cases, when a TR route is located on a state highway that is not designated as part of the FR system, it may still be***

subject to the requirements of ORS 366.215. Projects on these routes must follow the guidelines set out for implementation of ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012.

A third group of roadways that comprise the freight route system in Oregon are roadways designated as Intermodal Connectors. Intermodal Connectors are part of the National Highway System and connect freight origin and destination points like ports, rail yards or major industrial areas to the arterial highway networks and interstate highways throughout the state. These routes are generally short in length with many of them less than a mile long. However, they are of vital importance for freight to get to and from origin and destination points. These roadway segments are located all across the state. A listing of them is included in Appendix E of the Oregon Highway Plan. All of these roadways must meet federal guidelines as part of the NHS. However, not all of these roadways are on state highways. Some of them are part of local jurisdiction networks. **Intermodal Connectors located on state highways will need to meet ORS 366.215 requirements if designated as a Reduction Review Route and projects on these segments must follow the guidelines set out for implementation of ORS 366.215 and OAR731-012.**

Projects on highways that are designated as part of the Reduction Review Route network must follow the process identified in OAR 731, Division 12 to include input and support from interested parties affected by any permanent changes that reduce the carrying capacity of the roadway. The Mobility Advisory Committee, or MAC, provides review and feedback on agency projects through the lens of freight mobility and work zone safety as it applies to both temporary and permanent reductions or restrictions on the state highway system. In addition to the Reduction Review Route highways subject to ORS 366.215 and OAR 731, Division 12, the MAC also advises the agency on planning and design of projects that propose permanent reductions or restrictions on state highways not subject to ORS 366.215 but have requirements for engagement by interested parties per Department policy. Projects of this type may include safety and/or traffic calming features like roundabouts, pedestrian islands with raised features, new traffic signals, or other items that permanently change the roadway cross-section and may affect mobility of freight movements. ***For state highway projects on Reduction Review Routes or projects per Department policy that have potential to permanently impact freight mobility, include the Mobility Advisory Committee (MAC) early in the design process to solicit feedback that may affect final design parameters.***

DRAFT

314.4 Lifeline Route

Another overlay is the Lifeline Route designation. These routes have been identified as critical connections between areas of the state that may become generally inaccessible during an emergency such as earthquakes, tsunamis or flooding. It is critical to keep these facilities operating during such disasters to aid evacuation and relief efforts. This designation will generally not have much effect on the final design of a particular highway except for structures that are critical to maintaining accessibility. I***f a reduced roadway section is proposed, impacts to effective evacuation along the Lifeline Route must be considered and mitigation provided, if necessary, before a final design is completed and approved.***

Section 315 Cross Slope

The rate of cross slope is an important element in cross section design and is complicated by two contradictory controls. A reasonably steep lateral slope is desirable to quickly remove surface water and thus reduce hydroplaning of the vehicles. On the other hand, steep cross slope is undesirable because of the tendency of vehicles to drift toward the low edge of the traveled way. Cross slopes up to and including 2 percent are barely perceptible in terms of vehicle steering. However, cross slopes steeper than 2 percent are noticeable and require a conscious effort in steering. Steep cross slopes increase the susceptibility to lateral skidding when vehicles brake on icy or wet pavements or when stops are made on dry pavement under emergency conditions.

315.1 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Freeway Cross Slope

3R urban and rural freeway standards are to use the cross-slope guidance provided in AASHTO's A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets.

315.2 ODOT 3R Urban and Rural Arterial Cross Slope

Appropriate leveling quantities should be included in the project to correct cross slope to 2 percent. However, for 3R projects, if existing cross-slope is 1.5 percent, it may not be cost effective to correct it to the full standard 2 percent unless the correction would also mitigate other problems or concerns in terms of safety or drainage issues. ***In addition, correction of the superelevation should be applied if the comfort speed of the curve is lower than the project design speed. If the comfort speed exceeds the project design speed the superelevation should be maintained unless there is a justifiable reason to change it.***

315.3 ODOT 4R Urban and Rural Freeway Cross Slope

The cross slope for four lane (two lanes in each direction) urban and rural freeways is 2 percent. When an urban or rural freeway consists of three or more lanes in each direction, the cross slope shall be increased to 2.5 percent for the outside lanes and is applicable to the outside shoulder cross slope. The two inside lanes shall retain a cross slope of 2 percent. At locations where curb is introduced (typically urban areas), the shoulder cross slope shall be ~~increased to 5 percent.~~at least 2.5% and may be increased to 5 percent. *Drainage needs and other considerations such as bus on shoulder usage, maintenance of traffic operations, and rebuild costs for future widening when shoulders are constructed with concrete should be used to determine the appropriate value. At locations where the curb is intermittent, increasing the shoulder cross slope to 5 percent should be analyzed on a case-by-case basis.* Figure 300-18 and Figure 300-19 indicate the proper cross slope and standards for the different width freeway sections. These figures also provide information and design details on cut and fill slopes, safety slopes, and separated grades.

315.4 ODOT 4R Urban and Rural Arterial Cross Slope

For state highways, the cross-slope standard is 2 percent. This allows a balance between surface drainage and vehicle steering effort. **The central crown line shall not have a total rollover or cross slope change of over 4 percent without approval by the State Roadway Engineer.**

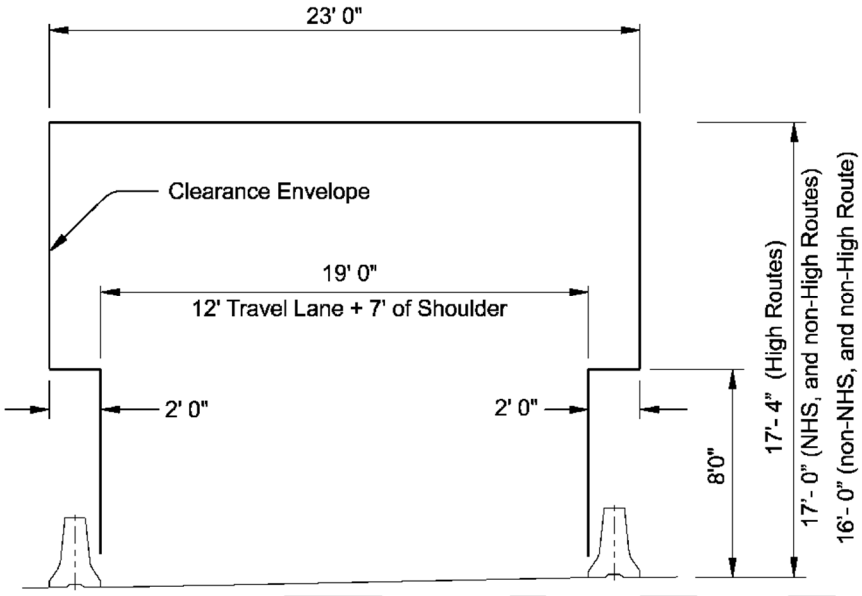
On facilities with 3 or more lanes inclined in the same direction, each successive pair of lanes outward from the first two lanes may increase the cross slope by 0.5 percent.

For non-modernization projects correcting poor cross slope can be an inexpensive safety feature to add to the project. Project ends are typical locations for compromised cross slope transitions unless enough length is used for the transition. Sections that transition between a single cross slope and crown cross slope can be problematic if the transition is too abrupt. Vehicles with high centers of gravity can unexpectedly be caused to sway from side to side when traveling at high speed and control of the vehicle may be difficult to maintain. These tangent transitions need to be addressed similarly to the superelevation run out of a horizontal curve.

DRAFT

Section 316 Horizontal Clearances

Figure 300-23: Interstate Clearance Envelopes for Single Lane (Temporary Traffic Control)

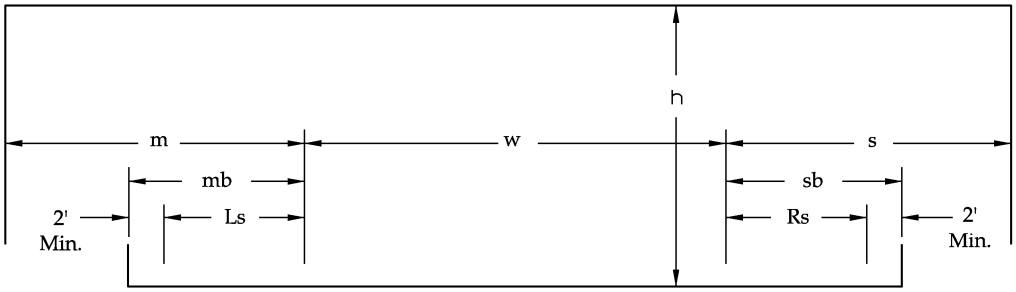


DRAFT

Figure 300-24: Freeway & Highway Clearances

ALL FREEWAY AND HIGHWAY CLEARANCES

(To be adjusted to provide minimum stopping sight distance when necessary)



h Minimum Vertical Clearance includes shoulder area
m Distance from Edge of Traveled Way to Obstacle on Left
mb* Distance from Edge of Traveled Way to Barrier on Left
Ls Left Shoulder
w Width of Traveled Way
s Distance from Edge of Traveled Way to Obstacle on Right
sb Distance from Edge of Traveled Way to Barrier on Right
Rs Right Shoulder

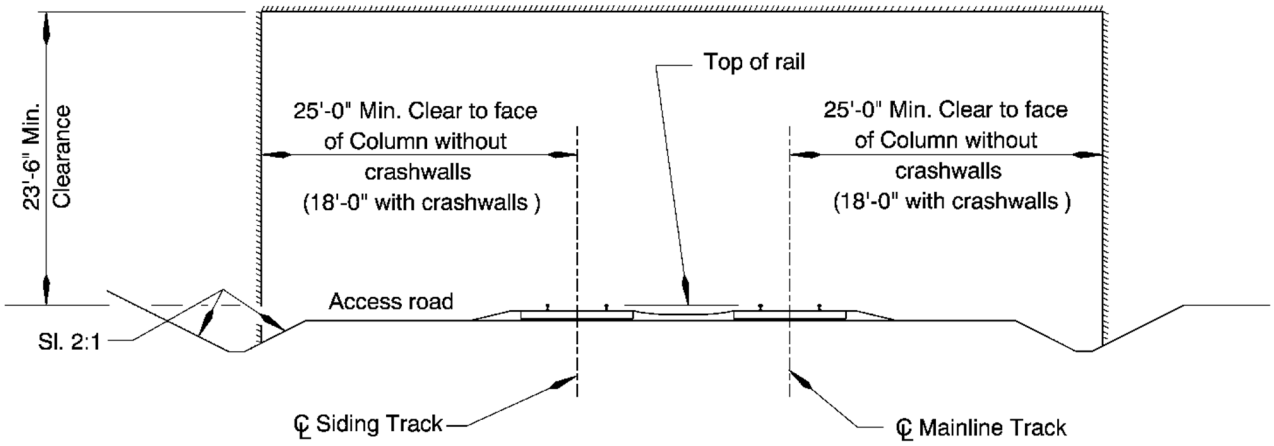
NOTE: On two-lane, two-way highways, s and sb apply to shoulders on both sides of highway.
* When barrier is warranted.

	INTERSTATE FREEWAY	NON-INTERSTATE FREEWAY	ALL FREEWAY RAMPS		ALL OTHER HIGHWAYS
			ONE LANE	TWO LANES	
h	See Figure 4-6				
w	12' Lanes	12' Lanes	16'	24'	12' Lanes
m	See The 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide				
s					
Ls	Full Shoulder	Full Shoulder	4'	6'	Full Shoulder
Rs	Full Shoulder ①	Full Shoulder	6' ②	10' ①	Full Shoulder

① Where curb is introduced intermittently for drainage on interstate it shall be set back 2' from edge of shoulder at guardrail locations.

② 10' on freeway to freeway ramps.

Figure 300-25: Railroad Clearances



Section 317 Vertical Clearance

In 2007, Motor Carrier Transportation Division (MCTD) (now called Commerce and Compliance Division, CCD) completed a study on the frequency of permitted loads that were over dimensional for height. ***From the collected data, it was determined that the actual measured height of bridges needs to be at least 17′ – 4″.*** CCD also identified the routes that are of major significance for the mobility of high loads. These "High Routes" are primarily on the National Highway System (NHS), but there are portions that are on highways other than the NHS. Some of these routes are in rural portions of the state where there are no over passes, so high loads can move freely without physical restrictions. Some high routes require the use of detours, including "up and over" use of interchange ramps, for high vehicles to use the route. **The Vertical Clearance Standards are minimum heights. The Vertical Clearance Standard is required for the full roadway width including shoulders for the through lanes, and to ramps and collector-distributor roadways in Interstate-to-Interstate interchanges.** *Future overlays of the highway are not included in the Vertical Clearance Standard and need to be considered when determining the clearance needed for new construction.*

Minimum Bridge Vertical Clearance Standards are:

- 17′-4″ on High Routes
- 17′-0″ on NHS Non-High Routes
- 16′-0″ on Non-NHS and Non-High Route

For vertical clearance on Local Agency jurisdiction roadways, see Section 317.4.

Proposed new construction that reduces vertical clearance shall require consultation with CCD to ensure understanding of the impact of the proposed decrease to the user. All other

projects, which result in final vertical clearances at or above the minimum vertical clearance, require notification of CCD to ensure all vertical clearance inventories are current and updated for the appropriate routing of permit vehicles.

In addition to the vertical clearance requirements above there may be projects that impact freight mobility even though minimum vertical clearance is achieved. **In coordination with the traffic designer, the Region Mobility Liaison is to be contacted when any proposed project (new construction, reconstruction, preservation, or maintenance) adds a new or modifies an existing overhead structure (such as Truss Sign Bridge, Monotube Cantilever, Signal Mast Arm, and Signal Strain Pole) regardless of meeting the existing minimum vertical clearance standards. In addition, contact the Region Mobility Liaison for any project that reduces the existing vertical clearance regardless of meeting the minimum vertical clearance standards.** The Region Mobility Liaison will provide the appropriate coordination with the Region, and CCD. This coordination is intended to address not only project specific mobility requirements, but also any corridor level vertical clearance and mobility needs. **However, because vertical clearance greater than 19'-0" for sign, VMS, and signal support structures are considered non-standard and the additional height may result in other significant issues, a design exception is required.** The Traffic designer is to follow the procedures outlined in Part 1000. The design exception request process for increasing the vertical clearance greater than the above mentioned 19'-0" will need to consider safety, operations, and impact to other design features in order to support the approval of the design exception.

The lateral clearances shown in Section 316 are to the face of rail and assume the barrier is warranted. The 19 feet-0 inch dimension does include off tracking. The design engineer may determine that accommodation for off tracking is not required in tangent sections and may use a minimum dimension of 18 feet-0 inch.

In addition to ODOT vertical clearance standards, the FHWA has agreed that all exceptions to the AASHTO vertical clearance standard of 16 feet for the rural Interstate and the single routing in urban areas will be coordinated with the Military Traffic Management Command Transportation Engineering Agency (MTMCTEA) of the Department of Defense. Regardless of funding, this agreement applies whether it is a new construction project, a project that does not provide for correction of an existing non-standard condition, or a project which creates a non-standard condition at an existing structure.

Clearance requirements for transmission and communication lines vary considerably and must comply with the National Electrical Safety Code. Clearance information should be obtained from the State Utility Liaison.

See Appendix C for Oregon Vertical Clearance Standards High Route Highways Table and the High Route map.

DRAFT

317.1 3R Vertical Clearance - Urban and Rural Freeway

The 3R vertical clearance for freeways is to comply with the overall system management goal to maintain current system mobility and not lose any effective usage of the system during preservation activities. **3R freeway projects shall have:**

1. No reduction in existing vertical height clearance below the Minimum Vertical Clearance standards outlined in Section 317. Reduction in current vertical clearance which results in a vertical clearance at or above the minimum vertical clearance requires notification to the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program.
2. No reduction in vertical clearance if the existing vertical height clearance is below the Minimum Vertical Clearance standards outlined in Section 317. Consultation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program is required.

3R projects that do not meet the vertical clearance standards will need to apply for a design exception and will require consultation with CCD. As with the 4R vertical clearance requirements, communication and coordination with CCD and interested parties is critical to ensure an understanding of the system requirements. **Vertical clearance for pedestrian overpasses shall follow the standards above.**

The vertical clearance to sign trusses and cantilever sign structures shall be a minimum of 18 feet. The vertical clearance from the deck to the cross bracing on through truss structures shall also be a minimum of 18 feet. For vertical clearance requirements on Local Agency jurisdiction roadways, see Section 317.4.

The vertical clearance for tunnels shall be at least 16 feet. Any reduction in vertical clearance for tunnels shall require a design exception and consultation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program. Maintaining the existing vertical clearance for tunnels on all 3R Freeway projects requires notification of the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program.

317.2 3R Vertical Clearance - Urban and Rural Arterial

As a minimum, maintain the existing clear height on all structures. On projects utilizing ODOT 3R standards (Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation), the vertical clearance of structures is considered over the entire roadway width, including usable shoulder width. For 3R projects, no reduction of the existing vertical clearance below the minimum vertical clearance is allowed. No reduction in vertical clearance is allowed if the existing vertical height is currently below the minimum vertical clearance.

Projects that do not meet these Vertical Clearance Standards will need to apply for a Design Exception and will require consultation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program. The Statewide Mobility Program will then involve interested parties from industry in the consultation process necessary to fully evaluate user impacts, project construction, and design

options. For vertical clearance requirements on local agency jurisdiction roadways, see Section 317.4.

317.3 4R Vertical Clearance – Urban and Rural Freeways, Expressways, and Arterials

The vertical clearance guidance provided in the introduction to Section 316 is applicable to all 4R vertical clearance requirements. In addition, the Vertical Clearance standards for all 4R urban and rural projects is as follows:

- 17′-4″ on High Routes
- 17′-0″ on NHS Non-High Routes
- 16′-0″ on Non-NHS and Non-High Route

The vertical bridge clearance on all High Routes shall be 17′ 4″. *Additional height may be needed to provide 17′-4″ clearance if future overlays are anticipated.* **All urban and rural Interstate Freeways are designated High Routes, and therefore, shall have a minimum vertical clearance of 17′ 4″.** The vertical clearance of all urban and rural non-Interstate freeways will depend on the freeway being designated as a High Route, National Highway System (NHS) route (not on High Routes), or non-NHS (not on High Routes). The vertical clearance standards also apply to non-freeway urban and rural highways. **The minimum vertical clearance for NHS (not on High Routes) is 17′ 0″ and 16′0″ for non-NHS (not High Routes).** The designation of the facility (High Route, NHS, non-NHS, etc.) is critical in determining the minimum vertical clearance requirement and should be verified prior to determining the vertical clearance requirement. **The vertical clearance shall be from the top of the pavement to the bottom of the structure and includes the entire roadway width including the usable shoulder width. Any proposed decrease in vertical clearance in new construction, regardless of the vertical clearance standard, requires consultation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program.**

The clearance requirements for transmission and communication lines vary considerably and must comply with the National Electrical Safety Code. Clearance information should be obtained from the Utilities Engineer.

The vertical clearance for sign trusses, cantilever sign supports, and through-truss structures shall be a minimum of 18 feet and a maximum of 19′ because of their lesser resistance to impacts. The vertical clearance for pedestrian overpasses shall be 17′-4″ (does not include buffer for future overlays).

DRAFT

317.4 Vertical Clearances for Local Jurisdiction Roads

Local jurisdiction roads that are part of the NHS are required to meet AASHTO standards for vertical clearance. Also, any projects using federal funds on Local jurisdiction roads are required to meet AASHTO standards for vertical clearance. For new construction or reconstruction, provide 16 feet clearance over the entire roadway width (including travel lanes and paved shoulders). Existing clearances of 14 feet may be retained. In highly urbanized areas, a minimum clearance of 14 feet may be provided if there is an alternate route with 16 feet clearance, or if a local ordinance exists. Additional clearance should also be provided for future overlays of the under passing roadway.

317.5 Vertical Clearance – Railroads

The minimum railroad clearance to be provided on crossings shall conform to Oregon Administrative Rule (OAR) 741 and as shown in Figure 300-25. Additional clearance may be required and should be determined individually for each crossing. **Information regarding clearances shall be obtained from the Railroad Liaison.** For vertical clearance requirements on Local Agency jurisdiction roadways, see Section 317.4.

Section 318 Curbs

Curbing should be avoided on higher speed rural highways. **Use mountable curbs on any freeway, expressway, or rural highway with higher speeds. Vertical faced barrier curbs shall not be used on urban or rural freeways.** The Oregon Standard Drawings RD700 series provides information on curb type. **Only the low-profile mountable curb has been approved for freeway application.** The low-profile mountable curb, mountable curb, and mountable curb and gutter are the mountable curb types approved for other locations. ~~**Full shoulder width shall be provided and paved to the same depth as the main roadway**~~**For non-freeway applications, the minimum exposure for 4R standards is 6 inches.** This minimum exposure standard does not apply when reduced exposure is allowable at corners between curb ramps and adjacent driveways per Part 800.

Where a standard curb is introduced, it should be curved or tapered away from the edge of the travel lane on the end of the curbed section approached by traffic. It need not be curved or tapered away where traffic leaves the curbed section. **When curbs are used on highways with narrow shoulders, the beginning of a curb on the right shall be offset a minimum of 6 feet. On the left, the offset shall not be less than 3 feet greater than the normal curb offset** (Figure 500-31 Channelization & Intersection Island Details). Curb and gutter is required at most curb ramp locations to better control the transition from the road surface to the ramp and meet accessibility requirements.

Where roadway grades are 0.5 to 0.3 percent, monolithic curb and gutter design (either curb and gutter, or mountable curb and gutter types) shall be used. The monolithic curb and gutter design is the most hydraulically efficient curb design. **As such, this design type is required when the grades are flat to increase the efficiency of removing water from the road surface.** On grades greater than 0.5 percent, low profile mountable curb, standard curb, or mountable curb may be used. Refer to ODOT Standard Drawings RD700 and RD701.

Where sidewalk ends, curb endings and transitions to the expected pedestrian access route must be installed. Refer to ODOT Standard Drawings RD950 and RD952.

Consideration of the impact to bicyclists needs to be given when using monolithic curb and gutter. The gutter forms a grade break where typically there is a change of surface materials. Bicyclists tend not to ride on the gutter material. *A reduced bike lane width of 5 feet and the use of a monolithic curb and gutter system needs careful evaluation with regard to the competing needs of all users.*

Although curbs are typically installed in urban areas, there may be instances where curbs are not installed due to water quality reasons. *The Senior Hydraulics Engineer should be contacted for discussion on curbs and water quality issues.*

Section 319 Drainage

319.1 General

Drainage facilities enable the carrying of water across the highway right of way and also provide a mechanism for removing storm water from the roadway itself. There are many types of drainage facilities including channels, bridges, culverts, curbs, gutters, and a variety of drains. It is typical for a roadway designer to design roadside ditches, cut-off ditches, inlet spacing and locations, drainage systems for storm sewer pipes, culverts, and outlet protection when the element is considered low risk. Design of medium-risk and high-risk hydraulic design elements should be performed by a Hydraulic Engineer. See HDM Section 1211 to determine the level of risk for hydraulic design elements. *The designer should work with the regional hydraulics engineer in determining drainage needs for projects with systems larger than described above, or when flood plains, bridge hydraulics, scour or bank protection, fish passage, detention, water quality, or temporary erosion control are involved.* More discussion is provided on hydraulic issues in HDM Section 1211 Hydraulics and Section 1214 Temporary and Permanent Erosion and Sediment Control. Refer to the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual when performing hydraulic designs.

319.2 Longitudinal Slope

Experience has shown that the recommended minimum values of roadway longitudinal slope will provide safe, acceptable pavement drainage. A minimum longitudinal gradient can be

more important for a curbed pavement than for an uncurbed pavement since the water is constrained by the curb. However, flat gradients on uncurbed pavements can lead to drainage problems if vegetation is allowed to build up along the pavement edge. **Desirable gutter grades should not be less than 0.5 percent for curbed pavements with an absolute minimum of 0.3 percent.** *The designer should consult with the regional hydraulic engineer for potential solutions to flat longitudinal grades.* Superelevation and/or widening transitions can create a gutter profile different from centerline profile. *The design should carefully examine the gutter profile to prevent the formation of ponds potentially created by superelevation and widening transitions. Water cross flow in superelevation transitions needs to be considered and inlet locations need to be carefully designed to catch excess flows.* The cross flows can contribute to hydroplaning or be locations of ice. ***Sag vertical curves require analysis to ensure adequate drainage and removal of "flat" areas that impede storm water runoff.***

319.3 Selection of Inlets

The performance of inlets and cross slope has an impact on hydraulic capacity. In a past study, the performance of the CG-3 inlet was compared to the standard grated inlets. The efforts of the study provided the following results. The CG-3 inlet outperformed the CG-1 and G-1 inlets when the gutter grade was less than 1 percent. The CG-3 inlet provided about the same performance as the CG-2 and G-2 inlets when the gutter grade was less than 0.8 percent. When the gutter grade exceeded 1 percent, bypass became a problem with CG-3 inlets and required close inlet spacing to control the bypass flow. *In summary the study concluded that the CG-3 inlets are cost effective when the gutter grade is less than 1 percent.*

319.4 Storm Water Management

Most projects must address water quality and some projects must address flow control issues. ODOT's water quality goal is to design and implement highway projects in a manner that manages project runoff to protect the beneficial uses of the receiving surface and ground waters, and to manage project runoff quantities and flows to protect the receiving water's stream form, function, and stability.

The ODOT Hydraulics Manual provides design guidance for stormwater water quality and flow control (detention). Other manuals may also be referenced such as Metro's "Green Streets" on a project-by-project basis in urban environments.

Coordinate the design of stormwater water quality and flow control facilities with the region hydraulics engineer. *See HDM Section 403 for clear zone requirements.*

Section 320 Shy Distance

Whenever barriers, such as guardrail, concrete barriers, traffic separators, curbs or other significant vertical elements are introduced into the roadscape it is desirable to provide a buffer space. This buffer helps improve safety of the users, traffic flow, and operational efficiency. This buffer is often referred to as "E" or Shy Distance.

320.1 1R Roadside Barriers

Projects that upgrade existing roadside barrier normally maintain the existing shoulder width/shy distance. If practical, locate the upgraded barrier to provide standard shy distance where the existing shoulder/shy distance is less than standard.

320.2 3R Roadside Barriers

Projects that upgrade existing roadside barrier normally maintain the existing shoulder width/shy distance. If practical, locate the upgraded barrier to provide standard 2' shy distance where the existing shoulder width/shy distance is less than standard.

Where new barrier is installed, widen the shoulder to provide standard shoulder width and shy distance to the face of the barrier.

Shy distance is not applied to spot locations, including where the guardrail transition connects to existing bridge rail.

~~320.1~~320.3 4R Roadside Barriers

Where right side roadside barriers are used on Interstate highways, freeways, or higher speed rural arterial roadways, the standard right shoulder width will be increased to provide a 2-foot shy (or "E") distance. This applies to all divided arterial locations, freeway (including ramps), or non-freeway. Studies show that drivers tend to leave extra room on the right side of the vehicle when near a vertical obstruction. The shy distance or "E" allows a horizontal distance for the driver to shy away from the vertical obstruction. **When the right-hand shoulder is 12 feet or greater, the 2-foot "E" is not required**, since a 12-foot right side shoulder is adequate to park a disabled vehicle and drivers do not tend to require extra width when vertical obstructions are 12 feet or more horizontally from the traveled way. The 2-foot shy distance applies to both concrete barrier and guardrail.

The 2 foot "E" is not added to the left side shoulder except under the following conditions:

DRAFT

1. On freeways only, when the standard shoulder is 10 feet. (This occurs on 6 lane minimum facilities). The minimum edge line to edge line distance in this configuration is 26 feet.
2. Four lane mainline section of all roadway types using concrete median barrier when the left side shoulders (6 feet or less) of the opposing lanes is separated by only barrier. Shoulders that are 6 feet in width require an edge line to edge line distance of 18 feet in this configuration.
3. This standard does not require the additional 2-foot "E" for the left shoulder at spot roadside barrier locations such as bridges and interchange areas unless the above criteria is met. Interchange ramps with left side roadside barriers do not require the 2-foot "E" on the left side.

Single Function projects that upgrade existing roadside barrier normally maintain the existing shoulder width/shy distance. If practical, locate the upgraded barrier to provide standard 2' shy distance where the existing shoulder width/shy distance is less than standard. Where new barrier is installed, widen the shoulder to provide standard shoulder and shy distance to the face of the barrier. Shy distance is not applied to spot locations, including where the guardrail transition connects to existing bridge rail.

For urban roadway sections that fit into one of the six defined urban contexts, see Section 305 for guidance on shy distances to be applied in the urban contexts.

For more information on roadside barrier design and location refer to Part 400, Roadside Design.

320.4 3R Shy Distance from Raised Medians

Where new raised median will be installed as part of a 3R project, the shy distance requirements are the same as 4R projects.

~~320.2~~320.5 4R Shy Distance from Raised Medians

Table 300-38 **establishes the shy distance requirements from raised medians for most rural arterials, except expressways**. Table 300-38 also applies to left side shy distance for other conditions such as curbed sections on one-way roadways.

Table 300-38: Left Side Shy Distance (Rural Arterials)

Design Speed	Rural Arterial Shy Distance (feet)

(mph)	Curb		Concrete Barrier
	12 ft. Lane	11 ft. Lane	All Lane Width
25	1	1	2
30	1	1	2
35	2	2	2
45	2	2	2
50	2	3	3
55+	3	4	4

When raised curb or concrete barrier medians are not continuous, an additional 1 foot of shy distance should be added to the values above. Table 300-38 is used in place of the direction given in Section 318 relating to curb placement. For higher speed expressways see Table 300-26 and Table 300-27. See Section 308 for more discussion about median design.

Section 321 Safety Edge

Lane departure crashes in which a vehicle departs from its lane and crashes with another vehicle, rolls over, or hits a fixed object represent from 60 to 80 percent of rural Oregon crashes. In 2007, fixed object crashes accounted for 70 percent of the rural crashes with an additional 10 percent involving overturned vehicles. This translates to 80 percent of the crashes being these two types and accounts for 90 percent of the fatal crashes and 90 percent of the injury crashes. These numbers have remained consistent for a number of years not only in Oregon but in states with a large number of miles on rural roads.

Safety Edge is a counter measure developed to address potential problems with tire rubbing along the edge of pavement. When a vehicle's tires drop off the edge of the paved surface the driver tends to over steer in the attempt to return the vehicle onto the paved surface. Safety Edge provides a sloped edge surface to assist the vehicle in returning to the paved surface without over steering.

On paving projects with shoulder widths of 6 feet or less and new pavement thickness of two inches or more, Safety Edge shall be included in the project and shown on the typical sections. Details for Safety Edge are shown on Oregon Standard Drawing RD615.

Roadside features can impede the paving operation and successful construction of the Safety Edge. These most common features are guardrail, mailboxes, approaches, intersections, and deep roadside ditches. Consecutive features may require Safety Edge to be omitted for portions of the project due to constructability issues. **When safety edge is omitted on projects with shoulders less than 6 feet in width, a design exception is required.**

Section 322 Rumble Strips

Safety is a very important component of design and roadway departure. Head-on crashes make up a significant portion of Oregon's fatalities and serious injury crashes. Rumble strips are a relatively low-cost engineering treatment designed to alert drivers of a lane departure through vibration and noise created when a vehicle's tires contact the rumble strip. Rumble strips may be placed on the shoulders, between opposing travel lanes (centerline), or in the travel lanes (transverse). **Rumble strips require the approval of either the State Traffic Engineer or Region Traffic Engineer depending on the application.**

Guidelines have been established on when it may be necessary to install the rumble strips for safety reasons on state highways. Historically, rumble strips have not been used often on urban highways. However, there are sections of urban highways that could benefit from the application of rumble strips. There are newer rumble strip designs that can reduce the noise level of tires running over the strips. ***If rumble strips are proposed, the accommodation of bicyclists and shoulder width should be considered along with maintenance activities.*** The ODOT Traffic Manual provides specific details to determine if a particular project should have rumble strips installed.

Section 323 Earthwork

When the standard sections do not provide for stable slopes and roadbed, a special design is necessary. For preliminary design, cut and fill slopes steeper than 1V:2H should not be considered. Recommendations for final slope configurations are provided by the Geotechnical Engineer in the Geotechnical Report. **The design shall be based on soil tests and other factors and must have the approval of the Geotechnical Engineer.**

When the slope at the edge of the surfacing material is 1:6 and continuous sections of guardrail are required, consider reducing the surfacing material slope to a minimum of 1:3 behind the guard rail to minimize impacts on the total horizontal width. This may apply in the case of railway encroachments, high fill, or very high cost right of way.

When designing individual cuts and fills and varying the rate of slope due to height variations, use care to avoid irregular faces, ponding of water, and poor aesthetics. *Embankment and cut slopes greater than 10 feet in height need to be identified and communicated to the geotechnical staff early in the design process, because subsurface investigation, laboratory testing and analyses is required prior to making final slope configuration recommendations.* Embankment height is measured as the difference in elevation between the subgrade at the shoulder and the toe of the slope. *The toe of existing embankments and cut slopes should not be altered without recommendations from the Geotechnical Engineer.* The recommendations provided by the geotechnical EOR establish the engineered embankment prism. **Non-structural elements shall not infringe on the engineered**

DRAFT

embankment prism. Non-structural elements placed outside the engineered embankment prism are the sole responsibility of the discipline requesting the elements.

Table 300-39 provides guidance for additional width for fill sections where there is a concern for the stability of slopes. For additional information about earthwork design, see Section 1202, Geotechnical Design as well as consulting the Geotechnical section for guidance as needed. Earthwork often involves water runoff and drainage issues. See Section 1211, Hydraulics and Section 1214, Temporary and Permanent Erosion Control for additional guidance.

Table 300-39: Additional Embankment Widening on High Fills

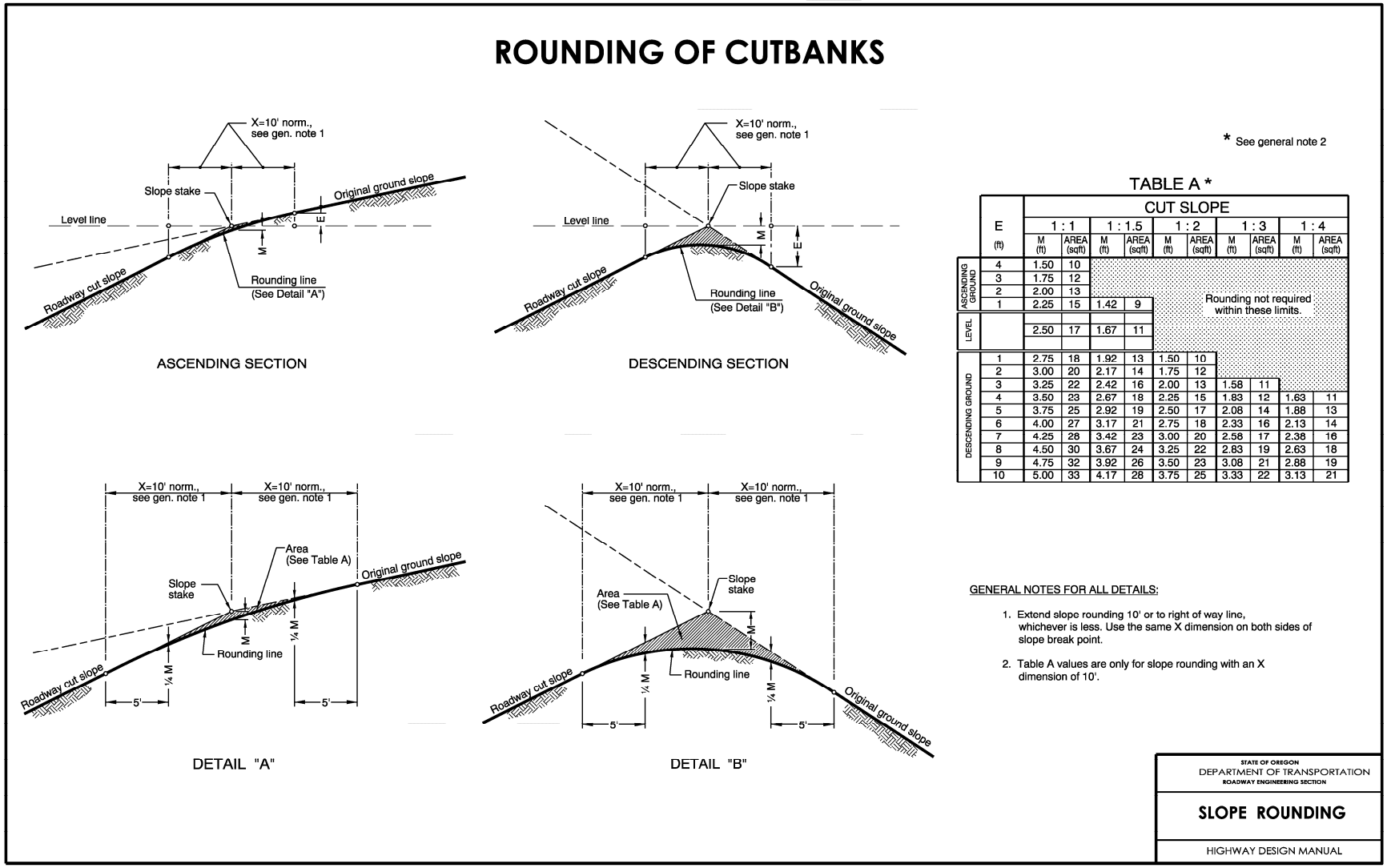
Fill Height (Feet)	Widening of Subgrade as Appropriate, Each Side of Centerline (Feet)
0-20	No Widening
20-30	1
30-40	2
40-50	3
Over 50	4

Fill height is to be considered as the difference in elevation between the subgrade shoulder and the adjacent toe of slope.

323.1 Rounding Cutbanks

Cut slopes shall be designed to blend in with the surrounding terrain. This is accomplished by rounding the top of the cutbanks as shown on Figure 300-26 also as specified in the Oregon Standard Specifications for Highway Construction (Section 00330). The rounding limits also have an impact on right of way requirements.

Figure 300-26: Rounding Cutbanks



Section 324 Truck Weigh Stations

On freight routes and other major highways, truck weigh stations may be necessary. The Commerce and Compliance Division shall be consulted when a weigh station is being impacted or considered. **Appropriate acceleration and deceleration lanes must be provided for truck weigh station locations.** The station should also be set back from the highway to provide separation from high-speed traffic and stopped trucks. Truck weigh stations may also be located at non-freeway locations. Due to location and type of facility, the design of non-freeway weigh stations will vary. For freeway and non-freeway weigh station design guidance, contact the ODOT ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

Section 325 Safety Rest Areas

Safety rest areas are a facility removed from the traveled way with parking and facilities for the traveler deemed necessary for rest, relaxation, comfort, and information needs. Rest areas are located on freeways and other highways.

The design of rest areas will vary depending upon location and need. Some rest areas are quite large while other rest areas only serve a few vehicles and are more of a wayside. *Roadway Engineering should be contacted concerning design guidance for rest areas.* **Pedestrian amenities and services at Safety Rest Areas, such as restrooms, picnic tables, information kiosks, etc., must be accessible. In addition, an appropriate number of accessible parking spaces must be provided .**

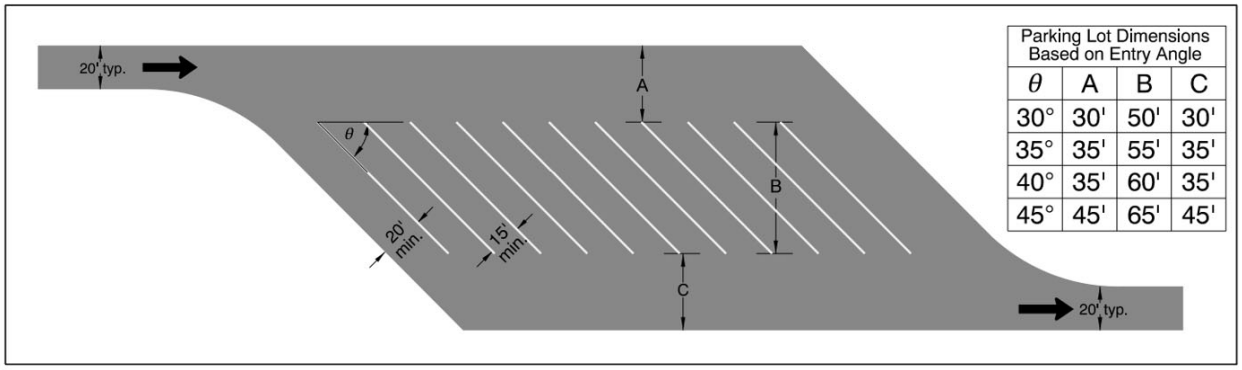
Rest areas located on the freeway system are to be designed with exit and entrance ramps. The exit and entrance ramps should be designed in the same manner as interchanges. Because rest areas accommodate a large numbers of trucks, the design should consider exit and entrance ramps that better accommodate trucks. As mentioned above, rest areas have different functions. One of those functions is providing travel information. Many times, the rest area will be closed for long periods, and this has an impact on the travel information provider. In cases where the rest area requires remodeling or repair, the designer should see that tourist information facilities are kept in service if possible or look at ways of minimizing the closure time.

325.1 Large Vehicle Parking in Rest Areas

Figure 300-27 shows the minimum dimension layouts for large vehicle parking in new rest area parking areas. This is not always attainable when modifying current rest area parking areas due to limited right of way, current paved surface, and funding. It is also not desirable to remove current parking spaces to get closer to this standard. When repaving current rest areas, evaluate the current layout of the parking area to provide additional parking spaces. At a minimum in

the evaluation, make improvements to the design without reducing the number of parking spaces. Only reduce the existing number of parking spaces when absolutely necessary to meet an appropriate design layout based on Figure 300-27. Maintain the maximum number of parking spaces possible.

Figure 300-27: Typical Large Vehicle Parking Space Dimensions for New Rest Area Parking Areas



Parking Lot Dimensions Based on Entry Angle

θ	A	B	C
30°	30'	50'	30'
35°	35'	55'	35'
40°	35'	60'	35'
45°	45'	65'	45'

Section 326 Emergency/Truck Escape Ramps

Rural highways are often located in steep terrain. In some sections, long continuous grades may be the only reasonable design option. *Where long continuous down grades are present or being considered, the designer should investigate the need for emergency/truck escape ramps.* Generally, truck escape ramps are only needed where long descending grades exist. Section 3.4.5 of AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Streets and Highway - 2018", has additional design guidance on escape ramps.

Section 327 Chain-up And Brake Check Areas

Chain-up areas are used to allow drivers of trucks or other vehicles to install and remove chains in areas where there is inclement weather. Chain-up areas are typically located at the base of sustained grades and where there is a demonstrated need. Chain-up areas are typically located adjacent to the mainline, where the shoulder can be easily widened. Brake check areas are typically located just prior to long descending grades. ***The width of chain up and brake check areas should be at least 20 feet wide (including the existing shoulder width). Exit and entrance tapers for chain up and brake check areas should be 20:1 and 25:1 respectively.*** The length of chain-up and brake check areas will vary depending on the location and truck volumes.

Section 328 Climbing Lanes

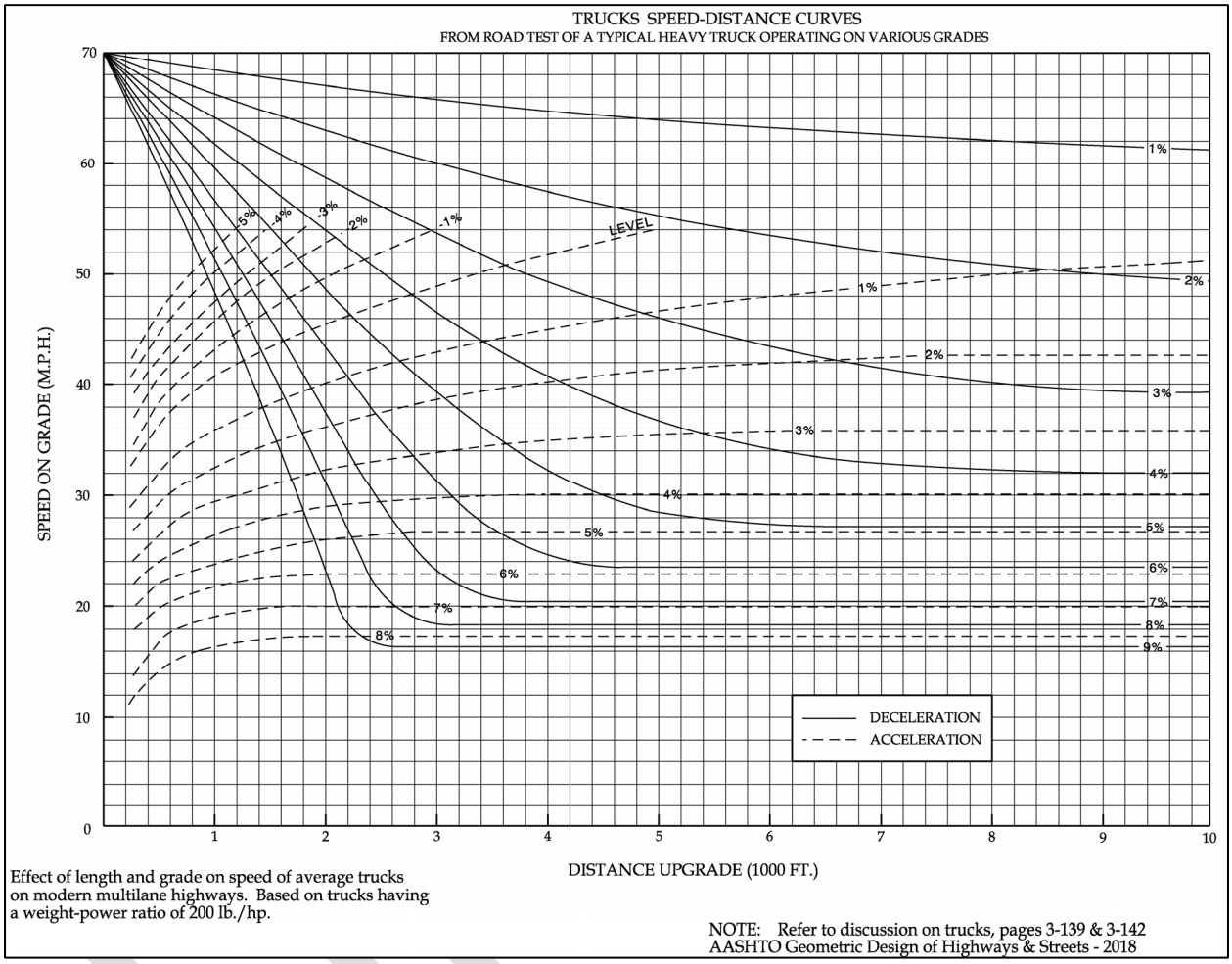
Climbing lanes are normally provided to prevent unreasonable reductions in operating speeds. Normally the combination of heavily loaded vehicles operating on long uphill grades results in the need for climbing lanes. *A climbing lane section is not considered a three-lane section but, rather, a two lane section with an additional lane for uphill slow moving vehicles.* (See AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018".)

Where climbing lanes are warranted as specified in Part 300 ODOT 4R/New Standards, the location of the beginning and the end of the lane can be determined by the chart, "Truck Speed / Distance Curves" Figure 300-28. *In using this chart for design purposes, vertical curves are not considered, and the speeds are taken from the chart assuming that the vehicle travels in a straight line from one point of grade intersection to the next. Vertical curves can be broken up into straight line segments if additional accuracy is desired.* ***The taper section added at the beginning of a climbing lane should have a 25:1 ratio desirably, that should be at least 300 feet in length.. The taper section added at the end of a climbing lane should have a 50:1 ratio desirably, that should be at least 600 feet in length.***

Whenever climbing lanes are warranted, the feasibility of supplemental downhill passing lanes should be investigated. **Both climbing lanes and downhill passing lanes shall be the same width as the travel lanes used for normal construction. The desirable adjacent shoulder width is 6 feet with a minimum of 4 feet. If the roadway has substantial bike use, consult the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer or the project resource for active transportation for input on shoulder width. When climbing lanes are supplemented with downhill passing lanes, a 2-foot-wide median shall be introduced.** Four-lane construction with appropriate shoulder and median widths should be substituted for climbing lanes wherever traffic is likely to approach or exceed capacity.

DRAFT

Figure 300-28: Truck Speed/Distance Curve



Section 329 Passing Lanes

Passing lanes should be considered on two-lane arterials where it is not practical to achieve adequate passing sight distance or where increased traffic volumes have an adverse impact on the desired volume to capacity ratio. Ideally, passing lanes should be considered only in areas where the roadway can be widened on both sides to provide simultaneous passing opportunities for both directions.

The standard travel lane for a passing lane section is 12 feet. The desirable shoulder width should be 6 feet with a minimum of 4 feet. Consult the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer or the project resource for active transportation for input on shoulder width. **The minimum median width in a passing lane section (three or four lanes) shall be 2 feet.**

If at all possible, passing lanes should be located where there are no approaches. If there are existing approaches, the type of approach is critical. **The design team shall evaluate and consider closure of the existing approach(s).** It may be possible to allow a passing lane where there are single residential approaches or possible forest service type roads, but the approach to public/county roads and approaches that serve multiple trip generation opportunities are problematic in a passing lane section. There are expectations in a passing lane such that the drivers will only be focused on the through movement vehicles. Entering and exiting vehicles violate the driver expectations, for example a vehicle stopped in the left lane waiting to make a left turn. In cases where higher volume access points exist in a passing lane section, left turn lanes are strongly encouraged. **The ending point and transition section of a passing lane is critical, and these specific types of locations need to be avoided for ending the passing lane:**

- **The crest of a hill,**
- **On a horizontal curve, and**
- **Locations that have the potential for a left turn.**

Passing lanes should be clearly identified to prevent motorists from thinking they are entering a four-lane section of roadway. The minimum length of a passing lane should be 1,250 feet, plus tapers. The taper section at the end of a passing lane should be computed by the following formula:

$$\boxed{L = WS} \qquad \textit{(L=Length in feet, W=Width in feet, S=Posted Speed in mph).}$$

The recommended length for the lane addition taper is half to two-thirds of the lane drop length. Optimum passing length is 1.25 miles. It is very important to have passing lanes long enough to allow the passing of vehicles but not too long as to make the added passing lane seem like an additional travel lane. ***The Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) or the Region Traffic Engineer should be contacted to determine the appropriate length of passing lane.***

Design considerations for providing passing lanes on two-lane highways are as follows:

1. Horizontal and vertical alignment should be designed to provide as much length as feasible with sight distance for safe passing.
2. To maximize safe operations, drivers should be able to clearly recognize both lane additions and lane drops.
3. For volumes approaching design capacity, the effect of lack of passing lanes in reducing capacity should be considered.
4. Where the traffic is slowed or capacity reduced because of trucks climbing long grades, construction of climbing lanes should be considered.
5. Where the passing opportunities provided by application of Items 1 and 4 are still inadequate, the construction of a four-lane highway should be considered. Inability to

economically justify climbing lanes or multi-lanes may require that the roadway be designed for a much higher volume to capacity ratio.

Consider providing extensions to the passing lane section to allow slower vehicles the opportunity to attain free flow speed prior to merging. This reduces the speed differential between vehicles at the merge, improving safety and operations.

DRAFT

Part 400 Roadside Design

DRAFT

Section 401 Introduction

The design of the roadside environment is a critical part of any highway segment. A well-designed roadside can significantly improve the safety and operation of a particular segment. Steep slopes or obstacles should be avoided or mitigated where possible and practical. Fixed object and run off the road often account for a significant number of crashes on a segment of highway. Therefore, providing a safe roadside environment should be a goal of every project. The 2011 AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide" should be used to determine the clear zone distance and mitigation measures to use for different highway conditions. The following sections of Part 400 provide additional information and examples on proper clear zone requirements and roadside design.

As AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" directs, the preferred treatment of roadside obstacles is to relocate them outside of the clear zone. Only where this is not possible or cost effective, should shielding be considered.

401.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 400-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 400-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE)

gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 401.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 401.2 and 401.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 401.3 and 401.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

401.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb “provide” is typically used. The adjective “required” is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs “should” and “may” are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives “recommended” and “optional” are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 401.4).

DRAFT

401.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 401.4).

401.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

401.5 Evaluation Criteria for Roadside Hardware

NCHRP Reports 230 and 350 - Roadside hardware crash testing has evolved since the 1962 publication of Highway Circular 482. In 1974 NCHRP Report 153, Recommended Procedures for Vehicle Crash Testing for Highway Appurtenances developed the first criteria for crash testing of roadside safety systems, followed by the 1980 NCHRP Report 230, Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Safety Appurtenances. This report served as the first national standard for the evaluation and crash testing of roadside hardware. The NCHRP Report 230 was superseded by NCHRP Report 350, Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features, in 1993.

MASH – First published by AASHTO in 2009 and updated in 2016, the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH) is an update to and supersedes NCHRP Report 350 for the purposes of evaluating new safety hardware devices. The only substantial update in the current 2016 edition is the criteria for crash testing cable barrier.

DRAFT

401.6 Acronyms

MGS - Midwest Guardrail System

MASH - Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware

NCHRP - National Cooperative Highway Research Program

Section 402 Clear Zone

A clear zone is the unobstructed traversable area provided beyond the edge of the through traveled way for the recovery of errant vehicles. The design clear zone is determined by several factors, including design speed, ADT, horizontal curvature, and embankment slope. The distances given in the tables in this section are not absolute and the design options selected to mitigate the effect of roadside obstacles require good engineering judgment in order to balance cost effectiveness with the expected increase in safety.

When water with a depth of 2 feet or more is located with a likelihood of encroachment by an errant vehicle it is considered a roadside obstacle and is to be evaluated for mitigation.

The AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide - 2011" suggests considering the following options when evaluating a roadside obstacle for mitigation:

1. Removing or redesigning the obstacle
2. Relocating the obstacle
3. Reduce impact severity by breakaway devices
4. Redirection of vehicle by installation of barrier device
5. Delineation of object

General information on clear zone requirements for 3R and 4R projects follows. There are no specific clear zone requirements for 1R projects.

402.1 3R Clear Zone and Sideslopes (All Highways)

On all 3R projects, a roadside inventory, along with the crash summary and analysis, gives the designer information necessary to make good design decisions regarding roadside safety improvements. Evaluation and improvement considerations of roadside features should be consistent with the following:

1. *Flatten sideslopes of 1:3 or steeper at locations where run-off-road accidents are likely to occur* (e.g., on the outside of horizontal curves).

2. Retain current slope ratios. Do not steepen sideslopes when widening lanes and shoulders, unless warranted by special circumstances.
3. Remove, relocate or shield isolated roadside obstacles.
4. Remove vertical drop-offs at the edge of pavement after paving. See Safety Edge in Part 300, Section 321 for shoulders 6 ft or less.

Part 100 outlines the 3R design process that should be used in development of all 3R projects.

For ODOT 3R projects, Clear Zone design decisions are the responsibility of the Region Technical Center and should be documented in the project design narrative or related project files, as well as in a separate depository or library set up for the purpose of long-term retention and future access as needed. **Design Exceptions for clear zone on 3R projects are approved by the Region Roadway Manager using the design exception form shown in Part 1000.**

402.2 4R Clear Zone (All Highways)

This section will address elements of roadside design including clear zone; clear zone requirements; clear zone distances; horizontal curve adjustments; and sideslopes.

The AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide - 2011" is the most recent publication written to provide guidance in roadway design regarding roadside clearances. The AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide - 2011" gives procedures and tables to determine the correct clear zone distance for use in the placement of barrier, sign installation, guard rails, ditch location, and other roadside appurtenances. It provides the criteria for the placement or removal of any object which may influence the trajectory of a vehicle which has left the travel lanes, either in a controlled or uncontrolled situation.

The AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide – 2011", in chapter 10, gives additional assistance to designers with clear zone in the urban context. Understanding of the role delineation plays between the travel way and non-travel way along a highly urban environment gives the designer more options than before.

Of specific importance for both rural and urban freeways is the safety slope located at the back of curb or from edge of travel lane. **In order to provide a recommended ditch section, the 1:6 rock foreslope and ditch section must be followed by a 1:4 backslope for a minimum of 10 feet**. A variable back slope can then be used. These standards should also be followed when designing center medians. **In a curbed median section, a 4-foot (2 percent) slope shall be followed by the 1:4 back safety slope.**

The design clear zone distance can be determined by using Table 400-2 and Table 400-3 shown at the end of this section. These tables were taken from the AASHTO "Roadside Design Guide - 2011". They are provided as a quick reference for the experienced designer who is already familiar with the determination process. Table 400-2 is used to determine general clear zone

DRAFT

distance. Table 400-3 is used for horizontal curve adjustments. **Obstacles located within the design clear zone distance must be evaluated and mitigated using one of the 5 options listed at the beginning of Section 402.**

~~Care must be taken in arriving at the proper clear zone distance.~~ Table 400-2 lists the different clear zone distances for cut and fill slopes. Many times, multiple slopes have to be used to determine the appropriate clear zone distance. At times, the roadway typical section will have both a foreslope and backslope. When this occurs the procedure for determining the proper clear zone requires more than pulling a number from Table 400-2. An urban freeway may also include a curbed section that is followed by 2 percent slope for 4 feet. The 2 percent slope must then be followed by a 1:4 or flatter back safety slope for a minimum of 10 feet. The backslope adjacent to the 1:4 safety slope can then be varied. This urban treatment will meet the recommended ditch section requirements of the "Roadside Design Guide - 2011". Following is an example of the proper procedure for determining clear zone distance for a typical section that includes both a foreslope and a backslope.

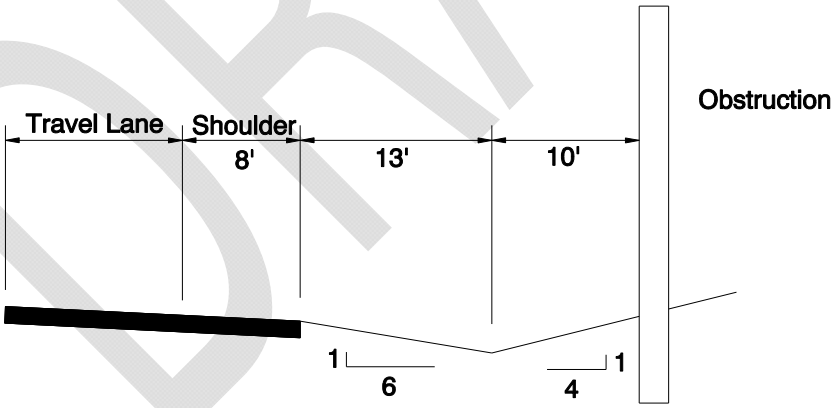
Example:

Design ADT: 7000

Design Speed: 60 mph

Recommended clear zone for 1:6 slope (fill): 30 to 32 feet from Table 400-2

Recommended clear zone for 1:4 slope (cut): 24 to 26 feet from Table 400-2



Discussion: Since the example is within the preferred channel cross section, Table 400-2 can be used to determine the clear zone. However, when the suggested clear zone exceeds the available recovery area for the foreslope, the backslope may be considered as additional available recovery area. The range for the suggested clear zone for the foreslope of 30 to 32 feet extends past the slope break into the backslope. Since the backslope has a suggested clear zone of 24 to 26 feet which is less than the foreslope the larger of the two values should be used. In

DRAFT

addition, fixed objects should not be located near the center of the channel where the vehicle is likely to funnel. An appropriate clear zone range for this example is 30 to 32 feet.

For further information and more detailed procedures it is recommended all designers read the AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011"*.

Design exceptions for clear zone on 4R projects are approved by the State Roadway Engineer.

Table 400-2: Clear Zone Distances

Design Speed (mph)	Design ADT	Fill Slopes			Cut Slopes		
		1V:6H or flatter	1V:5H to 1V:4H	1V:3H	1V:3H	1V:5H to 1V:4H	1V:6H or flatter
≤ 40	Under 750	7 - 10	7 - 10	[b]	7 - 10	7 - 10	7 - 10
	750 - 1500	10 - 12	12 - 14	[b]	10 - 12	10 - 12	10 - 12
	1500 - 6000	12 - 14	14 - 16	[b]	12 - 14	12 - 14	12 - 14
	Over 6000	14 - 16	16 - 18	[b]	14 - 16	14 - 16	14 - 16
45 - 50	Under 750 [c]	10 - 12	12 - 14	[b]	8 - 10	8 - 10	10 -12
	750 - 1500	14 - 16	16 - 20	[b]	10 - 12	12 - 14	14 - 16
	1500 - 6000	16 - 18	20 - 26	[b]	12 - 14	14 - 16	16 - 18
	Over 6000	20 - 22	24 - 28	[b]	14 - 16	18 - 20	20 - 22
55	Under 750 [c]	12 - 14	14 - 18	[b]	8 - 10	10 -12	10 - 12
	750 - 1500	16 - 18	20 - 24	[b]	10 - 12	14 - 16	16 - 18
	1500 - 6000	20 - 22	24 - 30	[b]	14 - 16	16 - 18	20 - 22
	Over 6000	22 - 24	26 - 32 [a]	[b]	16 - 18	20 - 22	22 - 24
60	Under 750 [c]	16 - 18	20 - 24	[b]	10 - 12	12 - 14	14 - 16
	750 - 1500	20 - 24	26 - 32 [a]	[b]	12 - 14	16 - 18	20 - 22
	1500 - 6000	26 - 30	32 - 40 [a]	[b]	14 - 18	18 - 22	24 - 26
	Over 6000	30 - 32 [a]	36 - 44 [a]	[b]	20 - 22	24 - 26	26 - 28
65 - 70	Under 750 [c]	18 - 20	20 - 26	[b]	10 - 12	14 - 16	14 - 16
	750 - 1500	24 - 26	28 - 36 [a]	[b]	12 - 16	18 - 20	20 - 22
	1500 - 6000	28 - 32 [a]	34 - 42 [a]	[b]	16 - 20	22 - 24	26 - 28
	Over 6000	30 - 34 [a]	38 - 46 [a]	[b]	22 - 24	26 - 30	28 - 30

[a] When a site-specific investigation indicates a high probability of continuing crashes or when such occurrences are indicated by crash history, the designer may provide clear-zone distances greater than the clear zone shown in this table. Clear zones may be limited to 30 ft for practicality and to provide a consistent roadway template if previous experience with similar projects or designs indicates satisfactory performance.

[b] Because recovery is less likely on the unshielded traversable 1V:3H fill slopes, fixed objects should not be present in the vicinity of the toe of these slopes. Recovery of high-speed vehicles that encroach beyond the edge of the shoulder may be expected to occur beyond the toe of slope. Determination of the width of the recovery area at the toe of slope should consider right-of-way availability, environmental concerns, economic factors, safety needs, and crash histories. Also, the distance between the edge of the through traveled lane and the beginning of the 1V:3H slope should influence the recovery area provided at the toe of slope. While the application may be limited by several factors, the foreslope parameters that may enter into determining a maximum desirable recovery area are illustrated in Table 400-3. A 10-ft recovery area at the toe of slope should be provided for all traversable, non-recoverable fill slopes.

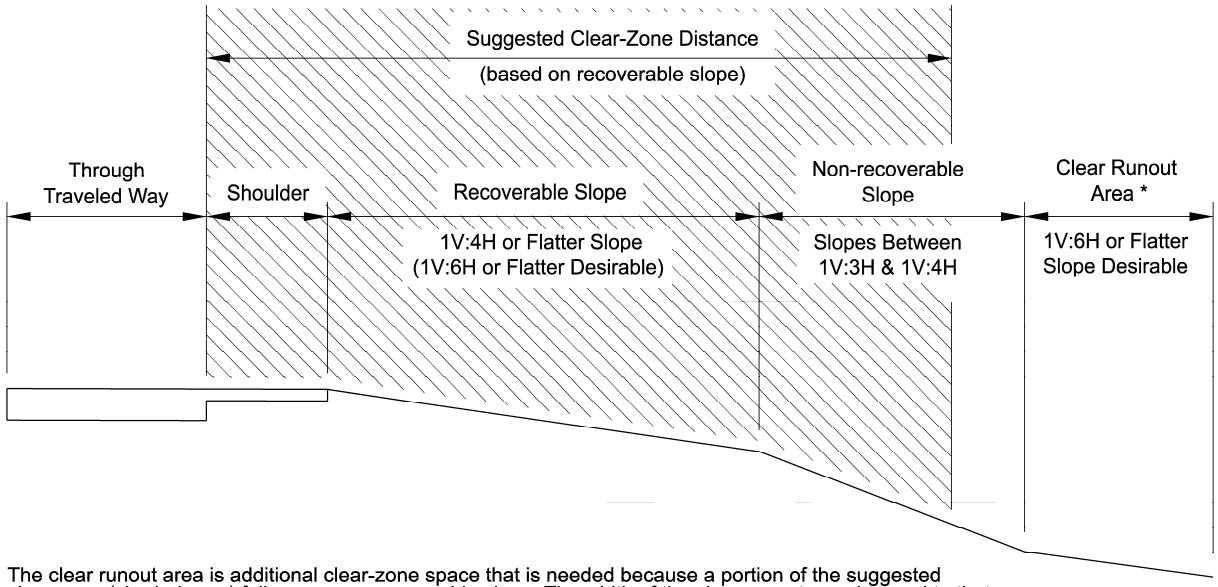
[c] For roadways with low volumes it may not be practical to apply even the minimum values found in this table. Refer to Chapter 12 in the AASHTO's "*Roadside Design Guide - 2011*" for additional considerations for low-volume roadways and Chapter 10 for additional guidance for urban applications.

402.2.1 Clear Zone on Freeways

Of specific importance for both rural and urban freeways is the safety slope located at the back of curb or from edge of travel lane. **In order to provide a recommended ditch section, the 1:6 rock foreslope and ditch section must be followed by a 1:4 backslope for a minimum of 10 feet**. A variable backslope can then be used. This type of safety slope is also required for urban freeways with ditch sections or curb. **Typically, an urban freeway has a curbed section that is followed by 2 percent slope for 4 feet. The 2 percent slope must then be followed by a 1:4 or flatter back safety slope for a minimum of 10 feet**. The backslope adjacent to the 1:4 safety slope can then be varied. This urban treatment will meet the recommended ditch section requirements of the "Roadside Design Guide - 2011". These standards should also be followed when designing center medians. **In a curbed median section, a 4-foot (2 percent) slope shall be followed by the 1:4 back safety slope.**

DRAFT

Figure 400-1 AASHTO Safety Slope



The clear runout area is additional clear-zone space that is needed because a portion of the suggested clear zone (shaded area) falls on a non-recoverable slope. The width of the clear runout area is equal to that portion of the clear-zone distance that is located on the non-recoverable slope.

Reference: AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide – 2011"* Figure 3-2 and Table 3-2

402.2.2 Horizontal Curve Adjustments

Table 400-3: Horizontal Curve Adjustments

Degree of Curvature	Design Speed (MPH)					
	40	45	50	55	65	70
2°	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2
2°30′	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.3
3°	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.4
3°30′	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.3	1.4
4°	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.5
4°30′	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.3	1.4	-
5°	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	-
6°	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.5	-
7°	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.5	-	-
8°30′	1.3	1.4	1.5	-	-	-
11°30′	1.4	1.5	-	-	-	-
17°30′	1.5	-	-	-	-	-

$CZ_c = (L_c)*(K_{cz})$

Where:

CZ_c = Clear zone on outside of curvature, feet

L_c = Clear zone distance, feet (see) AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide – 2011"* Table 3-1

K_{cz} = Curve correction factor

Note: The clear-zone correction factor is applied to the outside of curves only. Corrections are typically made only to curves with a degree of curvature greater than 2°.

Section 403 Ditches & Water Quality Facilities

Figures 300-18, 300-19, and 300-22, outline the typical ditch section for rural highways, and urban and rural freeways. These typical sections create a standard roadside ditch flowline that is 0.5 feet below the subgrade elevation. The peak discharge, longitudinal slope, and ground cover for each ditch affect the ditch capacity. On steep slopes shear stresses on the ditch bottom should be evaluated to assure the ditch does not erode. The discharge contributing to ditches runs off from areas from within the right of way, but this area is often small compared to runoff from outside the right of way. Evaluate each ditch for significant flows from off-site.

The standard traversable ditch should be used on all projects unless the calculated peak flows indicate insufficient capacity or instability. A ditch is considered traversable when the sum of the horizontal components of the ditch foreslope and the ditch backslope is equal to or greater than 10 and both slopes are 1:4 or flatter. ~~When the design speed is greater than 45 mph, the designer needs to give stronger consideration to the configuration of the ditch.~~ Contacting the foreslope of the ditch with the rear bumper can cause the vehicle to roll, and contacting the backslope the ditch with the front bumper can cause an excessive deceleration of the vehicle. **A non-traversable ditch is a roadside obstacle and requires shielding with roadside barrier when located within the design clear zone.**

The use of a flat bottom ditch may be appropriate in locations to satisfy water quality treatment requirements. Flat bottom ditches are recommended to be at least 4 feet wide at the ditch bottom with standard surfacing slopes. The 4-foot-wide bottom typically allows a vehicle to safely traverse the ditch. Flat bottom ditches may also be appropriate in open freeway medians. Additional information on ditches is provided in Part 1200, Section 1211.

Planter-style facilities that utilize vertical edges, such as curbing or walls, are considered roadside obstacles when the vertical change in elevation exceeds 6 inches**. A clear zone design exception is required when vertical changes due to the stormwater facility exceed 6 inches. Use of these planters within the clear zone is limited to roadways with posted speeds of 35 mph or less.**

Section 404 Culvert End Treatments

This subsection briefly describes many commonly used end treatments. Culvert end treatments are available in a variety of configurations and may be prefabricated or constructed in place. Commonly used configurations include projecting culvert barrels, concrete headwalls, prefabricated end sections, and culvert ends mitered to conform to the fill slope.

Culverts typically represent a significant contraction of flow in the upstream and downstream channels and often are a hydraulic control point. In certain flow conditions, end treatments can improve the discharge capacity by reducing the energy losses, at the inlet, associated with flow contraction. The designer must evaluate each for safety, hydraulic efficiency, structural stability, ability to pass debris, scour, and economics.

ODOT policy requires all culverts with diameters of 72 inches or greater, or the equivalent pipe size, to install end treatments on both ends." Refer to the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual and Section 1211 for additional information regarding hydraulic design.

404.1 Projecting Ends

A projecting end is a treatment where the culvert protrudes out of the embankment. The primary advantages of this type of end treatment are simplicity and cost when installing. Projecting ends also provide excellent strength characteristics because the pipe consists of a complete ring structure out to the culvert end. However, they are vulnerable to various types of failures, especially displacement and buoyancy (concrete will not experience buoyancy) at the culvert ends.

- Projecting ends are the least efficient end type as the thin wall provides no flow transition and results in high energy losses. The only exception is the socket end of a concrete pipe which is highly efficient when the socket end is facing upstream.

Projecting ends are a roadside obstacle and require shielding with roadside barrier when located within the ~~required~~design clear zone or where likely to be hit by an errant vehicle.

404.2 Mitered Ends

A mitered culvert end is formed when the culvert barrel is cut to conform to the plane of the embankment slope. Mitered ends are relatively cost effective~~, more aesthetically pleasing and less of a hazard to traffic than projecting ends. These ends~~ and are slightly more efficient than projecting ends when mitered to conform with the slope. If designed with the use of beveled edges, mitered ends can be highly efficient.

Mitering or extreme skews of metal and thermoplastic pipe considerably weakens the end section to act as a ring in compression. The end sections ~~are structurally inadequate~~do not meet structural requirements to withstand hydraulic, fill, and impact loads unless they are well anchored with a concrete collar, paved end slope, or headwall. Any size of metal or thermoplastic pipe that is mitered must be constructed ~~with~~or anchored with a collar, paved end slope or headwall. The need to shield mitered ends with roadside barrier can be eliminated if the following conditions are met. Safety bars are indicated to reduce the clear opening width in order to make the culvert end traversable.

Parallel Culverts:(parallel to the roadway centerline under driveways, road approaches, etc.)

- **Pipe diameters less than or equal to 24 inches and posted speed more than or equal to 45 miles per hour, provide 1V: 6H sloped end or safety end section. No safety bars are required.**
- **Pipe diameters less than or equal to 24 inches and posted speed less than 45 miles per hour, provide 1V: 4H sloped end or safety end section. No safety bars required.**
- **Pipe diameters more than 24 inches and posted speed more than or equal to 45 miles per hour, provide 1V: 6H safety end section with safety bars.**
- **Pipe diameters more than 24 inches and posted speed less than 45 miles per hour, provide 1V: 4H safety end section with safety bars.**
- **Multiple pipes with diameters more than or equal to 15 inches, provide safety end sections with safety bars, using above criteria.**

Cross-culverts:

- **Pipe diameters less than or equal to 36 inches, provide either a sloped end to match embankment slope, or a 1V: 6H or 1V: 4H safety end section. No safety bars are required. The embankment slope should be warped and shaped to match the safety end section.**
- **Pipe diameters more than 36 inches, provide either a sloped end with safety bars to match the embankment slope, or a 1V: 6H or 1V: 4H safety end section with safety bars.**
- **Multiple pipes with diameters more than or equal to 36 inches, provide either a sloped end, with safety bars to match embankment slope, or a 1V: 6H or 1V: 4H safety end section with safety bars.**

404.2.1 Headwalls with Wingwalls

Headwalls with wingwalls or standalone headwalls are the standard end treatment for box culverts and are used on circular, pipe-arch, and bottomless culverts. They can be cast-in-place or prefabricated and attached to the structure.

DRAFT

Headwalls are used for structural stability for culvert ends, eliminates buoyancy or uplift forces, and provides inlet and outlet protection. Incorporating a beveled edge in the upstream headwall allows flows to for a smooth transition constrict into the culvert. The bevels are highly hydraulic efficient under certain flow regimes.

Wingwalls are used to retain and protect the roadway embankment and provide a transition between the channel and culvert. Hydraulic efficiency is improved by maintaining the approach velocity, aligning and guiding drift, and funneling the flow into the culvert entrance. Wingwalls should be flush with box culvert barrels to avoid snagging drift.

Headwalls and wingwalls are roadside obstacles that require shielding with roadside barrier.

404.3 Concrete Boxes with Grates

Concrete boxes with grates are often used on small culverts draining medians, swales, gutters, depressions in paved surfaces, or roadside ditches. Details of these boxes are shown on Standard Drawings RD364, RD366, RD368, RD370, RD374, and RD378. **Applicable safety standards apply to these ends within the clear zone.**

404.4 Prefabricated End Sections

Prefabricated end sections include precast end sections for concrete pipes and flared sheet metal ends for metal pipes. Prefabricated end sections include precast end sections for concrete pipes and flared sheet metal ends for metal pipes. Flared end sections are used only on circular pipe or pipe arches and are more aesthetically acceptable as they conform to the finished embankment slope. Flared end sections allow flow to smoothly constrict into a culvert entrance and have a similar hydraulic inlet efficiently of a headwall or headwall and wingwalls with a square edge.

Prefabricated end sections are not approved for use within the clear zone that are unshielded from traffic. When the culvert end is within the clear zone and safety is a consideration, use a safety end section with bars as shown on RD321, RD322 or RD324.

404.5 Depressed and Tapered Inlets

A tapered inlet is a flared culvert entrance with an enlarged face section and a hydraulically efficient throat section. Tapered inlets can dramatically improve culvert hydraulic performance for culverts in inlet control. These end types are not appropriate for fish passage design or in high debris systems. Tapered inlets have a relatively high cost compared to other end treatments and are specially designed for each application. However, when tapered inlets are feasible, the improvement in hydraulic performance can be significant.

Depressed and tapered inlets are special applications. The need to shield these culvert ends is determined on a case-by-case basis and depends on their specific design and location relative to the ~~required~~design clear zone.

Section 405 Roadside Barriers

The following subsections provide information regarding design and use of roadside barrier. See Section 320.~~1~~ for roadside barrier shy distance requirements.

405.1 Guardrail and Concrete Barrier

405.1.1 General

This section provides information to the designer concerning guardrail and concrete barrier. The AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011"* shall be used to determine guardrail and concrete barrier locations. Exceptions to this guide are to be approved by the State Roadway Engineer. Standard Drawings in the RD400 series deal with guardrail while Standard Drawings in the RD500 series deal with concrete barrier. Barrier treatment in rural areas should consider impacts to animal crossings and the designer should contact the region environmental representative for assistance.

Regardless of the type of the barrier system used, when a median is proposed to be closed with a barrier system discussion with the Oregon State Police needs to occur to discuss cross over locations for emergency access.

Existing barrier systems used to mitigate lack of clear zone at a minimum shall meet NCHRP Report 350 crash testing criteria. No design exception will be granted to leave existing hardware that does not meet the minimum crash testing requirements on 3R and 4R projects.

405.2 Guardrail

This includes transitions to bridge rail, longitudinal runs of guardrail, and guardrail end terminals.

DRAFT

405.2.1 Upgrades and Height Adjustments

The MGS guardrail (with splice between the posts) passed MASH testing at 28". The previous standard – NCHRP 350 29" guardrail (measured to the top of the rail with the splice on the post) marginally passed MASH testing with steel posts but failed with wood posts. This means the previous standard is right at the Pass/Fail limit. Therefore, it is reasonable to upgrade to 31" MGS on 4R projects when NCHRP 350 29" guardrail is impacted by the project. NCHRP 350 tested guardrail may remain in place on 1R and 3R preservation projects. **Where the height is lower than 28", it should be adjusted to a minimum of 29"** – See Standard Drawing RD400. On 4R projects, NCHRP 350 tested guardrail may remain place if it is not impacted by the project.

4R Projects:

- **Upgrade all unconnected and unprotected bridge rail end treatments within the project limits.**
- **All NCHRP 230 or older guardrail within the project limits must be upgraded to MGS guardrail.**
- **All NCHRP 350 guardrail that is impacted by the project must be upgraded to MGS guardrail.**
- **Existing MGS guardrail that is lower than 28" must be raised to 31".**
- *A transition for height and splice location may be used for NCHRP 350 guardrail runs that extend more than 250 ft. beyond the project limits (see Oregon Standard Drawing RD481).* **Where Pre-NCHRP 350 guardrail is impacted, replace the entire run.**
    - *Consider replacing the entire run of NCHRP 350 guardrail if the run extends more than 250 ft. beyond the project limits if:*
        - *it is cost effective,*
        - *the guardrail is disrepair, for example, rotten posts.*

3R Projects:

- **Upgrade all unconnected and unprotected bridge rail end treatments within the project limits.**
- **MGS guardrail that is lower than 28" must be raised to 31".**
- **NCHRP 350 guardrail may remain in place. Where the height is lower than 28", adjust to a minimum of 29".**
    - Note: There is no objection to raising NCHRP 350 guardrail to 31" if practical. However, this does not result in a MASH compliant barrier (since the splice will still be on the post) and it may not be possible to raise some NCHRP 350 end terminals higher than 29".

DRAFT

- **The entire run of pre-NCHRP 350 guardrail must be upgraded to the current standard.**

1R Projects

- **Upgrade all unconnected and unprotected bridge rail end treatments within the project limits.**
- Guardrail height adjustment is not required for resurfacing treatments that do not impact guardrail height.
    - Grind/inlays and chipseals are assumed to have no impact on guardrail height.
- **For projects that impact rail height (i.e., overlays):**
    - **MGS guardrail that is lower than 28" must be raised to 31".**
    - NCHRP 350 guardrail may remain in place. **Where the height is lower than 28", adjust to a minimum of 29".**
    - Upgrading pre-NCHRP 350 guardrail is not required; however, **the functionality of the existing guardrail must be maintained.**
        - ***Seek additional funding to upgrade pre-350 guardrail.***
        - *If no additional funding is available - adjust guardrail as high as possible up to 29".*

Major Bridge Maintenance (MBM):

- **Address all unconnected and unprotected bridge rail end treatments as follows:**
    - ***Seek additional funding to upgrade unconnected and unprotected bridge rail end treatments.***
    - Where it is not possible to include bridge rail end treatments in the project, prioritize and address in a future project through the 1R Roadside Safety Feature Upgrade Program.
    - **Where unprotected bridge ends cannot be upgraded ~~due to site conditions~~, document with a design exception.**
- Guardrail height adjustment is not required for resurfacing treatments that do not impact guardrail height.
    - Concrete deck sealing and multi-layer polymer concrete overlays (MPCO's) are examples of deck preservation activities that are considered to have no impact on guardrail height.
- For projects that impact rail height (i.e., overlays):
    - **MGS guardrail that is lower than 28" must be raised to 31".**

DRAFT

- NCHRP 350 guardrail may remain in place. **Where the height is lower than 28", adjust to a minimum of 29".**
- Upgrading pre-NCHRP 350 guardrail is not required; however, the functionality of the existing guardrail must be maintained.
  - ***Seek additional funding to upgrade pre-350 guardrail.***
  - *If no additional funding is available - adjust guardrail as high as possible up to 29".*

405.2.2 Guardrail Design and Length of Need

~~**On any project where**~~**Length of need calculations are required when guardrail or other roadside barrier is** ~~**being proposed, the length of need calculation is required**~~**installed or upgraded.** This will assure that the fixed objects within the clear zone are shielded as intended. Chapter 5 in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide - 2011" contains information and details on length of need calculations.

Designers need to understand where and what the length of need point is on the terminal. The critical impact point of the angled crash test is the length of need point. This is the point where a vehicle should begin to be redirected along the length of the barrier instead of passing through the barrier. Any length of guardrail upstream from the length of need point is not included in the distance provided by the length of need calculation.

$$X = \frac{L_A + \left(b/a\right)(L_1) - L_2}{\left(b/a\right) + \left(L_A/L_R\right)}$$

Example:

Given: ADT = 7,500 vpd

Speed = 50 mph

Select: b/a = 0 – non flared terminal

L_A = Lateral Extent of Area of Concern – Designer selects 15 ft.

L_R = Runout Length – 190 ft.

From table 5-10(b) page 5-50 AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011*".

L_1 = Tangent Length of Barrier upstream from the Area of Concern.

If Barrier is installed with no flare, L_1 becomes zero.

(See page 5-51 AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011"*)

L_2 = Lateral Distance – 4 ft shoulder and 2 ft "E" distance = 6 ft.

DRAFT

Solution: For a parallel installation (i.e., no flare rate), the equation reduces to the following:

$$X = \frac{L_A - L_2}{\left({}^{L_A}/_{L_R}\right)}$$

$$X = \frac{15 - 6}{\left({}^{15}/_{190}\right)} = \frac{9}{.0789} = 114\ ft.$$

405.2.3 Guardrail Terminals

~~Guardrail terminals are protective systems that prevent errant vehicles from impacting obstacles, by either gradually decelerating the vehicle to a stop when the terminal is hit head-on, or by redirecting the vehicle away from the obstacle when struck on the side. These systems are connected to the ends of runs of guardrail and work in concert with the guardrail run to shield rigid objects or hazardous conditions that cannot be removed, relocated, or break away.~~

~~**Approved end terminals are listed in the Qualified Products List (QPL).** ***Also available are terminals that are designed for a lower speed impact (under 45 mph) that are called Test Level 2 terminals.*** They are shortened versions of the standard terminals. With the competition as it is, all products undergo routine adjustments to design that make it impractical to list current models. The designer should refer to the QPL, as the QPL stays abreast with all changes and regularly posts updates.~~ **Approved end terminals are listed in the Qualified Products List (QPL). Provide crashworthy end terminals on all leading guardrail ends exposed to traffic; and provide crashworthy end terminals on all trailing guardrail ends exposed to traffic on undivided highways even if located outside the clear zone for opposing traffic.** A downstream anchor terminal may be used on trailing guardrail ends on divided highways where there is no reasonable way for opposing traffic to hit the terminal head on.

405.2.4 Grading at Guardrail Terminals

In order to create predictable outcomes in actual crashes, conditions that existed during the crash testing should be duplicated as closely as possible. This ~~means that~~includes providing an adequate width of approach at the end post of terminals~~ is essential.~~. This is so an impacting vehicle will be in the same plane as the roadway surface~~ and not dropping off the edge at the instant of impact~~. ***A width of 5 feet from the back of the end post to the hinge point should be provided where possible (see RD419).***

405.2.5 Establishment of Variable-Sized Recovery Areas

In addition to the grading at guardrail terminals that ~~is needed to provide~~ provides a relatively flat approach, provide an adequate recovery area ~~should also be provided~~ where possible. A recovery area consists of traversable slopes (1:3 or flatter) and is free of obstructions. Often, the recovery area can be provided by extending the guardrail run to a location where the desired dimensions can be achieved without extensive grading.

DRAFT

Table 400-4: Desired Recovery Area Dimensions

DESIGN SPEED (MPH)	WIDTH (FT.)	LENGTH (FT.)
50 +	20	75
35-45	18	50
< 35	16	40

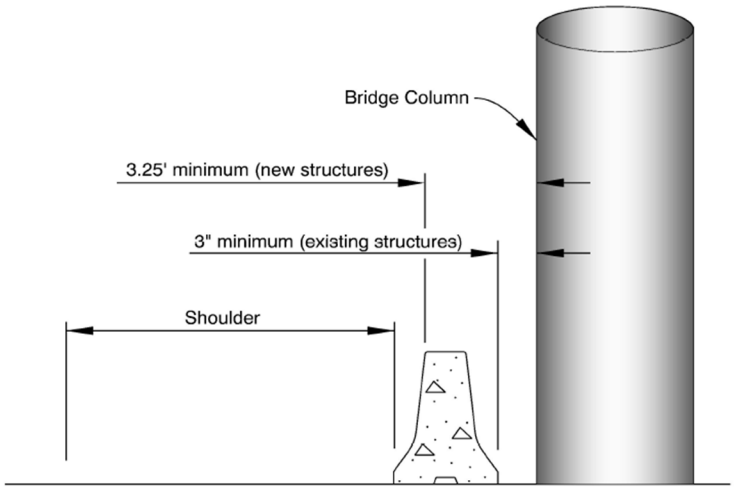
405.3 Concrete Barrier

~~405.2.6~~405.3.1 Concrete Barrier and Bridge Columns

When the design shoulder width is not encroached upon by placement of the concrete barrier, the concrete barrier should be placed as shown in Figure 400-2. ~~*For existing structures, the minimum clearance between the bridge column and barrier is 3 inches. For new structures, the normal clearance between the bridge column and barrier is 2 feet.*~~ *The roadway designer should consult with the bridge designer to determine the appropriate clearances.* **For new installations, the minimum distance from the top traffic face of barrier and the face of the bridge column is 3.25 feet, and a minimum 42 inch high MASH crash tested TL5 rigid barrier is required.** Where this standard will not be met, consult with the bridge designer as early in the design process as possible since it may result in changes to the design of the bridge column. See Section 1004.2

~~**Where**~~*For existing structures, the minimum clearance* ~~**from the traffic face of barrier and the face of**~~*between the bridge column and barrier is* ~~**at least**~~ *3*~~**.25 feet, use pinned 42" portable concrete barrier (see Oregon Standard Drawings). Where**~~ *inches. However, if the* ~~**clearance**~~*distance from the* ~~**traffic**~~*top face of the barrier to the face of the* ~~**bridge**~~ *column is less than 3.25* ~~**feet**~~*ft, a* ~~**42" MASH crash tested TL5 rigid barrier is required.**~~ ~~One option is~~*higher impact load and more damage to* ~~use 42" type F bridge rail (see Oregon Standard Drawings) installed on a moment slab. The moment slab must be designed~~*the bridge column may result in* ~~accordance~~*the event of a crash. When the design shoulder width is encroached upon by the placement of the barrier, consult with* ~~AASHTO LRFD.~~*the bridge designer to develop the best solution balancing the clearance to the structure and the width of the shoulder. See BDM 1.3.6*

Figure 400-2: Concrete Barrier Placement at Bridge Column



NOTE:
Anchor the first two barrier sections approaching the bridge columns and the barrier throughout the columns.

When the design shoulder width is encroached upon by the placement of the concrete barrier, ~~the designer should~~ consult with the bridge designer to develop the best solution to protect the bridge columns.

~~405.2.7~~405.3.2 Tall Precast Concrete Barrier

See Oregon Standard Drawings RD500 series. This 42-inch-high safety shape is available only as precast, with segments 12.5 feet long, matching the length of ODOT's standard precast barrier.

The tall barrier does not replace the standard, but it is to be used in the medians of interstates and on the State Highway Freight System where median barrier is justified or where existing barrier is to be replaced. The tall barrier is not to be used in the Columbia River Gorge National Scenic Area on Interstate 84. Standard concrete barrier can be used in the median in the Columbia River Gorge National Scenic Area (color approved by USFS).

Use the tall barrier on shoulders of any highway system as needed where adverse geometrics may occur such as curves with a degree of curvature greater than that specified in Tables 300-27, 300-31, 300-33 herein, or where severe consequences at specific locations might occur with penetration of a barrier by a heavy vehicle.

DRAFT

~~405.2.8~~405.3.3 Overlays and Concrete Median Barrier Vertical Face

For relatively straight forward overlay projects, the 3-inch vertical face on concrete median and shoulder barrier may be utilized without adjustment of the barrier. **The overlay shall not exceed the vertical face height.**

Tapering an overlay so the vertical face height will not be exceeded must be investigated ~~to ensure~~so that recommended slopes adjacent to the median barriers are not exceeded. Chapter 6 in the AASHTO's *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011"* provides additional information on terrain effect and barrier placement.

~~405.2.9~~405.3.4 Concrete Barrier End Treatment

Any barrier end exposed to the flow of traffic must be protected in some manner. Impact attenuators are recommended by AASHTO. Burying ends in the cut slope is another approved method. ***Sloped ends may be used, but only when the design speed is less than 45 mph, and the end is outside of the clear zone.*** ~~In light of crash tests indicating potential launching hazards, earth~~Earth **mounds are not approved for use.**

~~405.2.10~~405.3.5 Concrete Barrier Upgrades

On 4R and 3R projects, barrier that does not meet NCHRP-Report 350 criteria must be replaced except at locations where the backside of the barrier is supported. Backside support can include a cut slope or retaining wall. Backside support must be strong enough to prevent vehicle penetration of the system at the connection point between segments. ***1R projects can include barrier replacement with other funding sources.*** **No design exceptions will be given in the case of 4R or 3R projects.**

~~405.3~~405.4 Cable Barrier

Cable barrier can be used in medians and on outside shoulders. Though cable barrier has been successfully tested on a 1:4 slope, optimum performance can be achieved by placing on a transverse slope of 1:10 or flatter. All cable barrier systems approved for installation on Oregon State Highways are proprietary, so it is necessary to refer to the manufacture's specifications for installation.

DRAFT

~~405.3.1~~405.4.1 For Median Use

Cable barrier is very effective to use in medians as long as there is at least 8 feet of deflection room on both sides of the barrier. The deflection limit is measured from the taut cable to each adjacent fog line. **Having less than 8 feet of deflection requires a design exception.**

Care must be taken on interstate highways and freight routes where truck mix tends to be higher than the norm, to account for the fact that no cable system has been tested against semitrucks. A semitruck can stretch cable many times more than the design-tested deflection and will usually hold the cable at maximum deflection until the truck and cable are untangled from each other. The designer should account for extra deflection if there is a site-specific history of truck cross-over incidents. For extra measure of protection, the designer should consider use of a MASH Test Level 4 system in cases like this.

Cable barrier use can be considered on Interstate Highways and designated Freight Routes with a median width of 30 feet without an increase in the post spacing. ***Cable barrier installations in median widths less than 30 feet require consultation with the Senior Roadside Design Engineer.***

DRAFT

~~405.3.2~~405.4.2 For Shoulder Use

Cable barrier works well on shoulders ~~as long as the designer ensures~~where at least 8 feet of deflection distance is provided between the cable barrier system and the face of any obstruction. As with median application, account for extra deflection if there is a site-specific history of truck run-off-road incidents.

~~405.4~~405.5 Barrier Systems on Retaining Walls

~~Drop-offs greater than six feet in height at the top of retaining walls shall be protected with a traffic barrier system.~~Provide roadside barrier to shield retaining wall drop-offs within the clear zone. **As a minimum, barrier located at the top of retaining walls on ODOT projects shall meet Test Level 3 (TL-3) requirements.** ***A higher Test Level may be required for high-speed freeways, expressways, and interstates where traffic includes a mix of trucks and heavy vehicles, or when unfavorable conditions justify a higher level of rail resistance.*** Barrier options for protection of retaining wall drop-offs include:

1. Fixed Bridge Rail on Self Supporting (Moment) Slab: This option consists of a Type "F" 32" Bridge rail (BR200) on a self-supporting (moment) slab. The Type "F" 32" railing has been crash tested and satisfies TL-3. Barrier moment slabs must be designed in accordance with AASHTO LRFD and the current ODOT Geotechnical Design Manual (GDM) and must be strong enough to resist the ultimate strength of the railing. The moment slab must also be designed to resist overturning and sliding by its own mass when subjected to a 10-kip static equivalent design load in accordance with AASHTO LRFD 11.10.10.2. ODOT also has a Type "F" 42" railing that has been crash tested and satisfies TL-5 criteria, but the static equivalent design load has not been determined.
2. Anchored Precast Wide Base Median Railing: Where TL-3 traffic railing is acceptable, anchored precast wide base median barrier (Oregon Standard Drawing. RD500) may be used when designed in accordance with AASHTO LRFD and the GDM. Anchored precast barriers shall be located at least 3.0 feet clear from the back of the wall face, and each precast section shall be anchored with four vertical anchors as shown on the "Median Installation" option on Oregon Standard Drawing RD515 and RD516.
3. Guardrail: Where TL-3 traffic railing is acceptable, standard guardrail (Oregon Standard Drawing RD400) may be used when designed in accordance with AASHTO LRFD and the GDM. Locate guardrail posts at least 3.0 ft clear from the back of the wall face, drive or place posts at least 5.0 ft below grade, and place at locations which do not conflict with retaining wall elements and components.

DRAFT

~~405.5~~405.6 Freeway Median Barriers Warrant

For warranting median barrier on interstate freeways and non-interstate freeways use the following:

1. Any open median 100 feet in width or less shall be closed with an appropriate barrier. The median width is measured between the inside fog lines of opposing directions of traffic.
2. For freeway medians greater than 100 feet wide, regions should evaluate site specific conditions and crash data to determine if the median should be closed. Regions are also encouraged to identify and evaluate any other sections of divided highways that they determine look and feel like interstate and non-interstate freeways to determine if the median should be closed.

Table 400-5: Interstate/Freeway List

Hwy	Route	Highway Name	Begin MP	End MP	Interstate/ Freeway
1	I-5	Pacific	0.00	308.38	Interstate
2	I-84	Columbia River	0.00	167.58	Interstate
6	I-84	Old Oregon Trail	167.58	378.01	Interstate
61	I-405	Stadium Freeway	-0.04	4.21	Interstate
64	I-205	East Portland Freeway	0.00	26.56	Interstate
70	I-82	McNary	0.00	11.21	Interstate
227	I-105	Eugene-Springfield	0.00	3.49	Interstate
30	OR 22	Willamina-Salem	24.03	26.18	Freeway
47	US 26	Sunset	53.62	73.75	Freeway
69	OR 569	Beltline	4.37	13.00	Freeway
92	US 30	Lower Columbia River	0.95	1.86	Freeway
144	OR 217	Beaverton-Tigard	0.00	7.52	Freeway
162	OR 22	North Santiam	1.68	13.74	Freeway
227	OR 126	Eugene-Springfield	3.49	9.04	Freeway

There are five barrier systems appropriate for use in the medians of freeways in Oregon. They are listed below. The minimum median widths listed in Table 400-6 are to be used as the minimum median width needed in order to use a specific barrier type. Standard median widths

are covered in Part 300, Section 309.12 4R Urban and Rural Freeway Medians. Refer to 405.1 for concrete barrier guidance and AASHTO's Roadside Design Guide for barrier deflection.

Table 400-6: Median Barrier Systems

Barrier Type	Test Level	TL 3 Tested Deflection	Minimum Median Width	Comments
42-inch F-Shape Precast Concrete Barrier	NCHRP 350 ~~TL 4~~TL4 ~~Assumed at least~~ MASH ~~TL 3 (assumed)~~TL3	30 inches (unanchored)	8'-4"	Anchored deflection estimated to be 0 – 6 inches. Requires asphalt pad for placement. ~~Only tested under NCHRP 350.~~
Modified Thrie-Beam for Medians	MASH TL3	TBD	8'-4"	Installed system approximately 42 inches wide
High Tension/ Low Maintenance Cable Barrier	MASH TL3, 4	Variable 6 – 9 feet	30 feet	Only system that can be placed on a 1:6 up to a 1:4 slope. Easy to maintain. Consider using ~~TL 4~~TL4 if trucks are a known problem.
32-inch F-Shape Concrete Barrier	MASH ~~TL 3~~TL3	30 inches	8'-4"	
Metal Median Guardrail	~~TBD~~MASH TL3	24 inches	24 feet	

Median barrier should be installed on a transverse slope of 1:10 or flatter where possible.

405.6.1 Closing Retained Median Crossovers

Median crossovers are constructed to facilitate staged construction. If a crossover is retained for use in future projects, they must be blocked to prevent improper use. In locations where the median is closed, use portable concrete barrier. In locations where the median is open, sand barrels may be used. Standard details are available that indicate how to lay out the barrier.

~~405.6~~405.7 Impact Attenuators

Impact Attenuators are protective devices that significantly reduce the severity of impacts with fixed objects. This is accomplished by absorbing much of the crash energy and decelerating a vehicle to a safe stop for head on impacts, or by redirecting a vehicle away from the fixed object for a side impact. Impact attenuators are used where fixed objects cannot be removed, relocated, or made to break away, and where fixed objects cannot be adequately shielded by a longitudinal barrier. Impact attenuators may also be used to terminate median barriers. Low maintenance impact attenuators are designed to be relatively easy to repair after an impact with the repair taking 2 hours or less. When selecting an Impact Attenuator ~~that~~ approved for use on Oregon State Highways, there may be a tradeoff between the initial cost and ~~low~~lower maintenance. A low maintenance device should be selected where there is a history or high likelihood of ~~multiple~~frequent impacts, and the location and/or high traffic volumes make it desirable to limit exposure to maintenance workers~~.~~ performing repair work. On the other hand, a device with a lower initial cost may be installed where there is a low likelihood of ~~multiple~~ impacts ~~and~~. Coordinate with the Maintenance office responsible for repair ~~or replacement after a crash will not expose maintenance workers~~work to ~~especially hazardous conditions.~~determine acceptable devices.

Section 406 Roadside and Median Trees

406.1 Roadside Trees

The following is intended to provide for the placement of street trees at the discretion of project teams where the criteria are met. **If street trees are to be placed in a location where any of the criteria are not met, a design exception is required.** (See Part 300, Section 308 Median Design for the placement of trees in the median.)

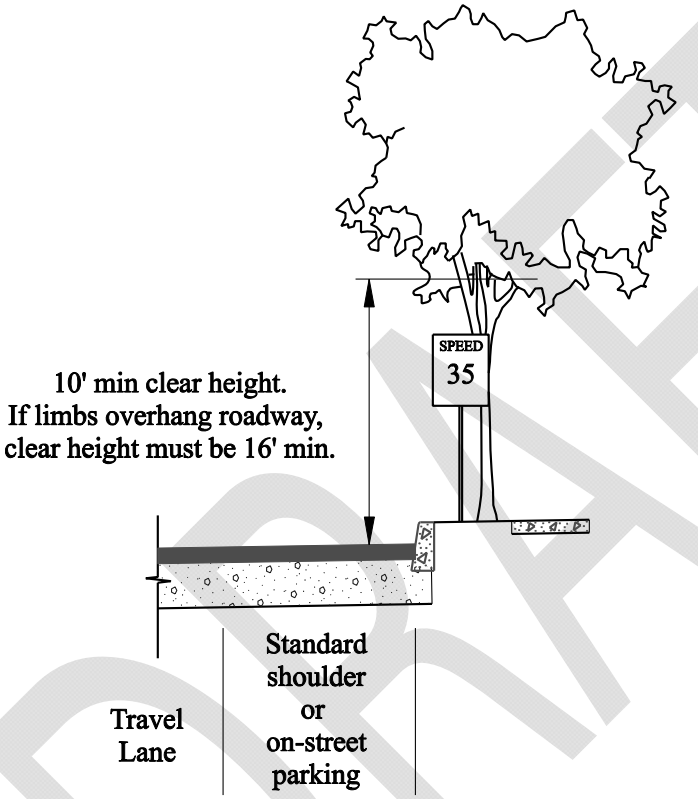
Standard criteria to allow roadside trees:

1. Design speed of 45 mph or less.
2. Trees located behind a positive (physical) delineation, i.e., curb.
3. The section is urban, suburban or a rural to suburban transition zone.
4. Trees may be located in the planter strip between the curb and sidewalk where the posted speed is 35 mph or less and there is a 6 ft. shoulder or on-street parking.

DRAFT

5. A minimum clear height of 10 feet from the pavement to the bottom of the branches not overhanging the roadway. This requirement allows for clear height of pedestrian use on sidewalks and allows sight distances to be clear. If the limbs overhang the roadway, a minimum clear height of 16 feet must be provided to prevent high loads from striking the branches.

Figure 400-3: Roadside Tree Clearance



6. When the design speed is 45 mph or less and if the shoulder is non-standard, or if there is no on-street parking, trees should be located such that there is at least 6 feet from the edge of travel to the trunk of the tree at maturity.

7. Where the posted speed is greater than 35 mph, trees should be located behind the sidewalk or at least 6 feet beyond the curb to the trunk of the tree at maturity.

8. If there is no positive delineation such as a curb, or if the design speed is greater than 45 mph, trees should only be located beyond the clear zone recommended in the AASHTO "*Roadside Design Guide - 2011*".

9. Trees may only be placed within the Intersection Sight Distance Triangle (ISD) such that approximately 50 percent or more of an approaching AASHTO defined "P-vehicle" remains visible at all times and at all approaches when the tree reaches maturity. 50 percent visibility is measured against what would otherwise be visible if there were no

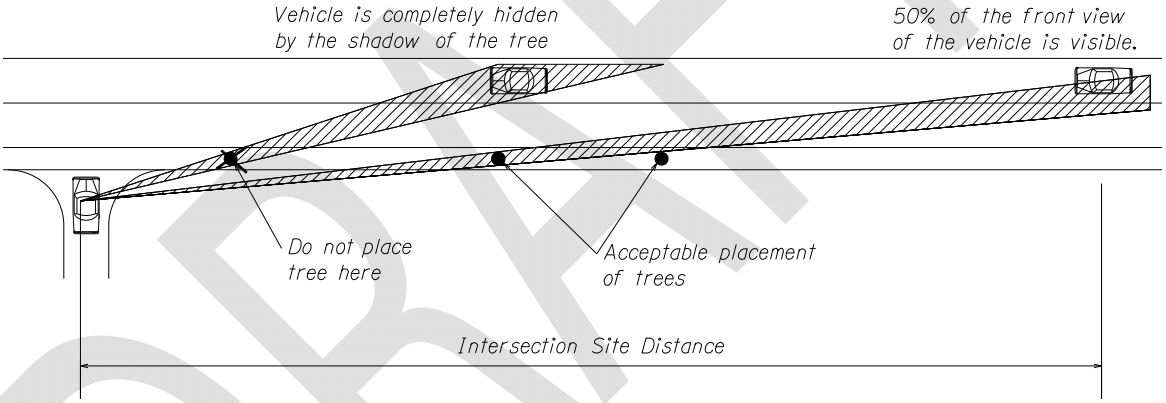
DRAFT

sight obstructions from trees, street furniture, utility poles, vertical curves, etc. For example, if 25 percent of the vehicle is hidden behind a vertical curve, street trees could only block an additional 25 percent of the vehicle. If 50 percent or more of the vehicle were hidden behind a vertical curve, it would not be appropriate to further reduce visibility by planting trees.

10. Consideration must also be given to pedestrians and bicyclists visibility at intersections when selecting tree species and placement. Nearer to the intersection increases the importance of clear visibility lines for drivers to see all users.

11. The illustration below is only a sample of a shadow diagram. Because of the many variables, shadow diagrams must be drawn on a case-by-case basis. Note that ISD applies equally to all approaches and shall be determined by a design professional. Refer to the AASHTO Green Book for the procedure to determine ISD.

Figure 400-4: Roadside Tree Placement



If the above criteria are met, then the combined effect of the following factors should be considered to determine if street trees are appropriate:

- Access control – When the number of approaches is reduced, a greater area is generally available for trees. If there are frequent approaches, it may not be possible to provide trees and at the same time provide adequate visibility at road approaches.
- Crash history – Trees should not be placed where there is a history of run-off-the-road crashes or a high potential for such crashes.
- Environmental value – Aesthetics, air quality, etc.
- Clear zone guidelines – Recognize that if trees are a roadside obstacle when located within the clear zone recommended in the AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011*~~", they pose a hazard to errant vehicles.~~".

- Traffic calming – Tall trees may have a slowing effect on drivers as they provide a tall vertical element on the side of their field of vision.
- Horizontal alignment – Run-off-the-road accidents occur more frequently on curves. Trees should not be placed in high-crash locations.
- Vertical alignment – If visibility is already compromised due to a poor vertical alignment, street trees may compound the problem.
- Shy distance to tree – A minimum of 6 feet from the edge of travel to the trunk of the tree is desirable, when the design speed is 45 mph or less.
- Signing – Landscaping plans should show the location of all signs ensuring that trees do not interfere with visibility.
- Other roadway uses – Trees need to coexist with utilities, miscellaneous street furniture, etc.
- Transportation system plans and city ordinances – Roadside trees are often identified as desirable or required within cities or urban unincorporated areas.

If street trees are included in a project, an appropriate species needs to be selected taking into consideration the dimensions of the tree at maturity, the planter width required to support the root system, etc. An ODOT roadside development professional should be contacted for further information.

406.2 Median Trees

The following is intended to provide for the placement of median trees at the discretion of project teams where the criteria are met. **If median trees are to be placed in a location where any of the criteria are not met, a design exception is required.**

Standard criteria to allow median trees:

1. Posted speed of 35 mph or less
2. Trees located behind a positive (physical) delineation (i.e., curbed – raised median).
3. The section is urban, suburban or in a rural to suburban transition zone.
4. A minimum clear height of 10’ from the pavement to the bottom of the branches. If the limbs overhang the roadway, a minimum clear height of 16’ must be provided.
5. A minimum median width of 8’ from curb to curb.
6. Trees may only be placed within the Intersection Sight Distance Triangle (ISD) such that approximately 50 percent or more of an approaching AASHTO defined “P-vehicle” remains visible at all times when the tree reaches maturity. 50 percent visibility is measured against what would otherwise be visible if there were no sight obstructions

DRAFT

from trees, street furniture, utility poles, vertical curves, etc. For example, if 25 percent of the vehicle is hidden behind a vertical curve, median trees could only block an addition 25 percent of the vehicle – If approximately 50 percent or more of the vehicle were hidden behind a vertical curve, it would not be appropriate to further reduce visibility by planting trees. Note that ISD applies equally to all approaches & should be determined by a design professional.

7. Pedestrian use - Consideration must also be given to pedestrians and bicyclists visibility when selecting tree species and placement. Where the median is expected to provide a refuge for crossing pedestrians, there should be frequent open areas where visibility is good. Trees can hide the pedestrian or cause the driver to believe there is a pedestrian crossing, thus taking emergency action.

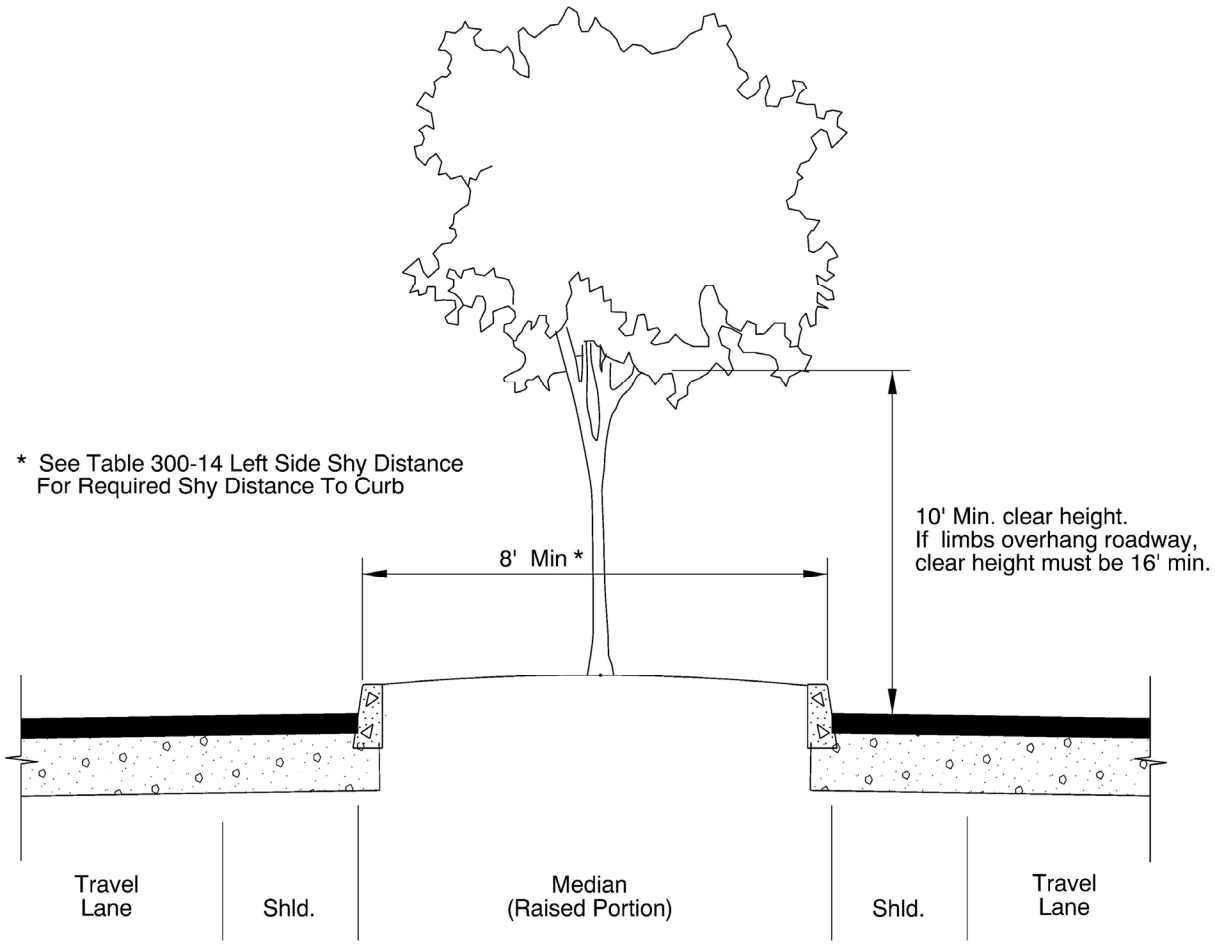
If the above criteria are met, then the combined effect of the following factors should be considered to determine if median trees are appropriate:

- Access Control – When the number of median openings is reduced, a greater area is generally available for trees. If there are frequent openings, it may not be possible to provide trees and at the same time provide adequate visibility between left turning vehicles, oncoming traffic, and other roadway users.
- Crash history – Trees should not be placed where there is a history of run-off-the-road crashes or a high potential for such crashes.
- Environmental value - aesthetics, air quality, etc.
- Clear zone guidelines – recognize that median trees are ~~generally~~roadside obstacles within the clear zone recommended in the AASHTO *"Roadside Design Guide - 2011*~~" and pose a hazard to errant vehicles.~~".
- Traffic calming - tall trees may have a slowing effect on drivers as they provide a tall vertical element on the left side of their field of vision.
- Horizontal alignment – run-off-the-road accidents occur more frequently on curves. Trees should not be placed in high crash locations. See AASHTO's Roadside Design Guide 2011 Table 3-2 for Horizontal Curve Adjustment Factors for clear zone widths.
- Vertical alignment – If visibility is already compromised due to a poor vertical alignment, median trees may compound the problem.
- Shy distance to tree – a minimum of 6' from the edge of travel to the face of the tree is desirable.
- Other Roadway uses – Trees need to coexist with utilities, signs, misc. street furniture, etc. Need to consider future needs.

DRAFT

If median trees are included in a project, an appropriate species needs to be selected taking into consideration the dimensions of the tree at maturity, the median width required to support the root system, etc. An ODOT roadside development professional should be contacted for further information.

Figure 400-5: Median Tree placement



406.3 Evaluation of Sight Lines

When considering the placement or removal of roadside and median trees, a comprehensive evaluation of sight lines is required. The ODOT Tree Sightline Analysis Flowchart (referenced below) provides a suggested workflow to ~~ensure that~~address all the criteria and other factors in Sections 406.1 and/or 406.2 are satisfied.

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Engineering/TRSDocs/Tree_Sightline_Flowchart.pdf

Section 407 Fences

407.1 Right Of Way Fence

There are two types of fences typically used as access control or right of way fences. A Type 1 fence is a barbed wire fence with 4 or 5 strands of barbed wire. A Type 2 fence uses a woven wire fabric with 3 strands of barbed wire above the woven wire fabric. When determining the type of fence to use, consideration for the type of livestock present may be a factor.

For all freeways, fence will be placed at the access control line. In other situations, fencing shall be a consideration in the right of way agreement and installed when required by that agreement.

407.2 Chain Link Fence

~~The installation of chain~~Chain link fence~~, located in clear zones, should be done without the use of the top rail. FHWA has reviewed the use of top rail~~ installations ~~and considers~~within the ~~use of~~clear zone should not include a top rail or ~~pipe rail hazardous. They do not recommend using this type of support for chain link fences or pedestrian handrails where they can be struck by an errant vehicle.~~other rigid horizontal rails or members. In ~~the event of a~~ crash~~, the rails can penetrate the passenger compartment of vehicles. Chain link fences with top rails are particularly poor as vehicle impact on~~ tests, the fabric tends to pull the rail down onto the hood of the vehicle and into the windshield. ~~Top rails, or other rigid horizontal rails or members, metal or wood, should not be used within the clear zone on projects.~~

407.3 Snow Control

On the Cascade and Siskiyou Mountain passes and east of the Cascades, drifting snow ~~may be a serious problem~~is common. Snow fencing can eliminate the need for snow removal, lower pavement maintenance costs, and increase visibility ~~and safety~~ on the road. The following factors should be considered:

407.3.1 Investigation

The direction of the prevailing winter winds must be determined before effective measures can be taken to prevent snowdrift problems. Personal observations, interviews with persons familiar with the local winter conditions, including the ODOT maintenance foreman, and reviews of local records may be of value.

407.3.2 Grade

Highway grades above the surrounding ground are much less subject to drifting because of wind action. A cut section of highway may act as a natural fence, impeding the steady flow of wind, resulting in snow being deposited on the roadway.

407.3.3 Cross Section

It may be possible to reduce or eliminate drifting snow problems by streamlining the roadbed. Steep slopes and obstructions to air movement cause snow drifts. Any flattening of the slopes will reduce the areas where snow is deposited on the road. Guardrail is particularly objectionable and wherever feasible should be eliminated by flattening fill slopes. In cut sections the intersection of the cut with natural ground should be back of a 1:6 slope measured from the edge of the shoulder. Widening the cross section through cuts may be desirable to provide for snow storage.

When considering the use of flat slopes for reducing snowdrift problems, the impacts on the safety and aesthetics of the highway should also be considered.

407.3.4 Control with Snow Fences

Snow fences may be required where control cannot be obtained by other methods. It is necessary that any snow fence be properly located and placed. Snow fences are generally placed parallel to the roadway if the prevailing wind is within 25 degrees of being perpendicular to the roadway otherwise the snow fence is placed perpendicular to the prevailing wind direction and at a distance from the roadway centerline that is equal to 35 times the fence height. If a higher than required fence is used the distance from the roadway centerline can be reduced to 18 times the fence height. Snow fence placement depends on a study of conditions at the site, particularly the direction of prevailing winds. In order to function properly, a snow fence must have an adequate distance behind it to allow for the piling of snow, called snow storage room. The fence itself impedes the wind flow, thereby creating a swirling action behind the fence resulting in the snow being deposited. Ordinarily snow fences should be placed so that the distance from the fence to the top of cut or bottom of fill is 10-15 times the height of the snow fence. If a snow fence is too close to a highway, or a cutbank exists without adequate snow storage room, it can be more of a problem than a solution. A minimum snow storage distance is based on the site conditions.

Two or more parallel rows of fences may be required, but these should be placed far enough apart so the resulting drifts do not overlap, generally 25 times the height of the fence between the snow fences allow non-overlapping snow drifts to form. Snow fences should not be placed any closer than 16 feet to right of way fences or natural parallel barriers.

DRAFT

407.3.5 Control with Landscaping

Trees and shrubs planted at the appropriate location may also provide a permanent and effective type of snowdrift control. An ODOT roadside development professional should be contacted.

Additional information may be obtained from the *ODOT Inspector's Manual* and the *ODOT Maintenance Manual*.

DRAFT

Part 500 Intersection Design

DRAFT

Section 501 Introduction

Part 500 covers the design criteria, guidelines, and processes for designing road approaches, signalized and unsignalized at-grade intersections and roundabouts for all road classifications and contexts on the State Highway system. For information on general design considerations not fully covered in this chapter, or other parts of this manual, refer to AASHTO's most recent version of "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" Chapters 9 and 10; the ODOT research report "Modern Roundabouts for Oregon, Report 98-SRS-522" and "NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts". In addition, supplemental information can be found in National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO) publications, including Urban Street Design Guide, Urban Bikeway Design Guide and Don't Give Up at The Intersection. Intersection control evaluation is important to determine the appropriate intersection control option to develop for a project. Intersection control evaluation is a function of the ODOT Traffic Section. The roadway designer should work with the Region Traffic Section and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Services Unit staff concerning intersection control options.

The ETSB Roadway Engineering Section can provide design assistance in the areas of intersection design, channelizations, road approaches, roundabouts, large vehicle accommodation, and alternative mode accommodation. Consult the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section about complex intersection designs that cannot meet the criteria contained in this design manual. Information on traffic volumes and requirements can be found in Part 1200, Sections 1205 and 1206 of this manual or further information can be obtained from Region Traffic Units and the Analysis Procedures Manual published by the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) of the Policy, Data and Analysis Division of ODOT.

501.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 500-1 shows the four text fonts used along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

DRAFT

Table 500-1: Documentation and Approval Font Key

Font	Documenting	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects, FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 501.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 501.2 and 501.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 501.3 and 501.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support

design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

501.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 501.4).

501.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 501.4).

501.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

DRAFT

501.5 Definitions

Access Control -	The regulation of public access to and from properties abutting the roadway system to preserve the roadway's safety and traffic capacity.
Access Control Line -	A line established along the state highway where the right of access between a property abutting the highway and the highway has been acquired by the department or eliminated by law.
Access Management -	The systematic control of the location, spacing, design, and operation of driveways, median openings, and street connections to maintain roadway safety and capacity.
Alternate Access -	The right to access a property by means other than the proposed approach. It may include an existing public right of way, another location on the subject highway, an easement across adjoining property, a different highway, a service road, a local road, or an alley, and may be in the form of a single or joint approach. The existence of alternate access is not a determination the alternate access is "reasonable" as defined in ORS 374.310.
Approach -	A legally constructed public (road) or private (road or driveway) connection that provides vehicular access to or from a state highway that has written permission under a permit to operate issued by the department, the department has recognized as grandfathered, or the department does not rebut as having a presumption of written permission.
~~Curb ramp~~Channelizing Island -	A defined area between traffic lanes that controls and directs specific movements and physically separates traffic flows.
Conflict Points -	Points where road user traffic crosses, merges, or diverges that creates potential for crashes where multiple road users attempt to occupy the same space.
Corner Radii -	Radius of the corners at an intersection. This could be either a curb radius or the edge of pavement radius where there is no curb.
Continuous Flow Intersection -	An at-grade intersection design that relocates the left-turning traffic to a separate signal-controlled pathway before the main intersection, allowing through movements to occur simultaneously with the left turn movements to reduce conflicts and increase capacity for traffic operations.

DRAFT

Curb Extension - A traffic calming measure that extends the sidewalk into the parking lane to narrow the roadway, increase pedestrian visibility, and reduce crossing distance.

Curb Ramp - A system of geometric components that are built up to or through a curb to access the walkway or street crossing in the public right of way or on building sites. It may also be referred to a sidewalk ramp or curb cut in portions of this manual.

Design Vehicle - The largest vehicle that regularly uses a roadway facility, whose driving characteristics are used to determine various geometric design aspects of the roadway.

Displaced Left Turn - An intersection design configuration where left-turning traffic crosses opposing through lanes at a signal-controlled location upstream of the main intersection, allowing left turns to proceed simultaneously with through movements.

Grandfathered approach - An approach that the department has recognized in documentation dated prior to January 1, 2014, as having grandfathered status under the rules in effect on the date of the documentation.

Grant of Access - The conveyance of a right of access from the department to an abutting property owner.

Intersection - A point where two or more roads meet or cross at the same level.

Intersection Control - How the flow of vehicles is controlled at the intersection. Some examples of intersection control include stop signs, signals, and roundabouts.

Intersection Safety - The practice of designing intersections to minimize crash frequency and severity through proper geometry, sight lines, and traffic control devices.

Intersection Sight Distance - The distance visible to a motorist that allows safe execution of maneuvers at or near an intersection without interfering with other vehicles.

Interchange - A point connecting roadways typically with grade separations that allows traffic to move between two or more roadways, where one roadway has continuous flow.

Jug Handle - An at-grade intersection design where right or left turns are removed from the main intersection by using ramp-like roadways that redirect turning traffic to secondary intersections, typically in a P or reverse P shape. (See Quadrant Intersection)

DRAFT

Median - The portion of a divided highway separating opposing traffic flows, which may be raised, depressed, or flush with the roadway surface.

Mountable Curb - Lower-height curb (rounded or with flat sloping faces) designed to be easily traversed by vehicles when necessary while still providing delineation and drainage control.

Operations - The management of roadway systems to facilitate the safe and efficient movement of people and goods through geometric design and traffic control devices.

Quadrant Intersection - An intersection design that removes left turns from the main intersection by routing them through a connector road in one quadrant, typically using two secondary intersections with simpler signal operations. This design reduces the number of conflict points at the main intersection and can improve both capacity and safety. (See Jug Handle)

Raised Curb Median - A median separated from the travel lanes by vertical curbs, creating a physical barrier between opposing traffic streams.

RCUT - Acronym for Restricted Crossing U-Turn. An intersection design that prohibits direct left turns and through movements from side streets, requiring drivers to turn right and then make a U-turn at a designated downstream location.

Safety Countermeasure - A specific roadway or traffic control improvement meant to address an identified safety concern or crash history at a location.

Sight Distance - The length of roadway ahead that is visible to the driver to ensure safe operation without striking an object in the traveled way or interfering with oncoming vehicles.

Splitter Island - A raised or painted area on an approach leg to a roundabout that separates entering from exiting traffic where its geometry controls vehicle entry and exit speeds.

Stopping Sight Distance - The distance required for a driver to perceive a need to stop, react, and bring a vehicle to a complete stop before reaching that location.

Traffic Separator - A physical barrier, typically a raised curb, that is used to separate traffic moving in the same or opposite directions which is narrower than a raised median.

Truck Apron - Traversable areas designed to accommodate the swept path of large vehicles while maintaining slower speeds for passenger vehicles. Standard roundabout design includes a truck apron around the central island of the roundabout and possibly at the corner radii or

DRAFT

splitter islands near the circular portion of the roundabout. Truck aprons can also be utilized around narrow curb radii that are used to keep vehicular traffic slow while allowing larger vehicles the turning width they require.

Section 502 Road Approaches and Intersections

502.1 General

The location and spacing of road approaches should be in conformance with the Access Management standards as described in the Oregon Highway Plan, Appendix C. The decision for placement and design of a road approach must be consistent with the function of the highway and optimize the safety and operational efficiency for vehicles as well as all users of the roadway no matter their modal choice. ***The road approach design must accommodate the turning movements of the appropriate design vehicle. All road approaches, public and private, require a construction permit from the appropriate District Maintenance Office.*** The District Manager and Region Access Management Engineer and/or Access Management sub-team should be involved early in any road approach discussion and decisions.

Road approaches can be classified as either private or public. Private approaches connect private property with a state highway across the highway right of way. Public approaches are at-grade intersections of public roadway right of way with a state highway.

Both its physical area and its functional area define an intersection or approach. The physical area is the fixed area of the intersection itself from curb-to-curb confined within the corners of the intersection.

The functional area of an intersection extends both upstream and downstream from the physical area and includes any auxiliary lanes or channelization. The functional area includes the perception-reaction distance, the deceleration maneuver distance, the full deceleration distance and the storage length. The functional area also includes area within the public approach (side road) and must be designed accordingly considering the distances shown in Figure 500-1.

Ideally, approaches to the highway are not constructed within the functional area of an adjacent intersection. Realistically, however, there are many factors that enter decisions regarding placement of approach connections. The roadway designer must consider all aspects and constraints when designing roadway approaches and provide the best overall connections possible. Figure 500-1 displays the functional area of an intersection.

DRAFT

Figure 500-1: Functional Intersection Area

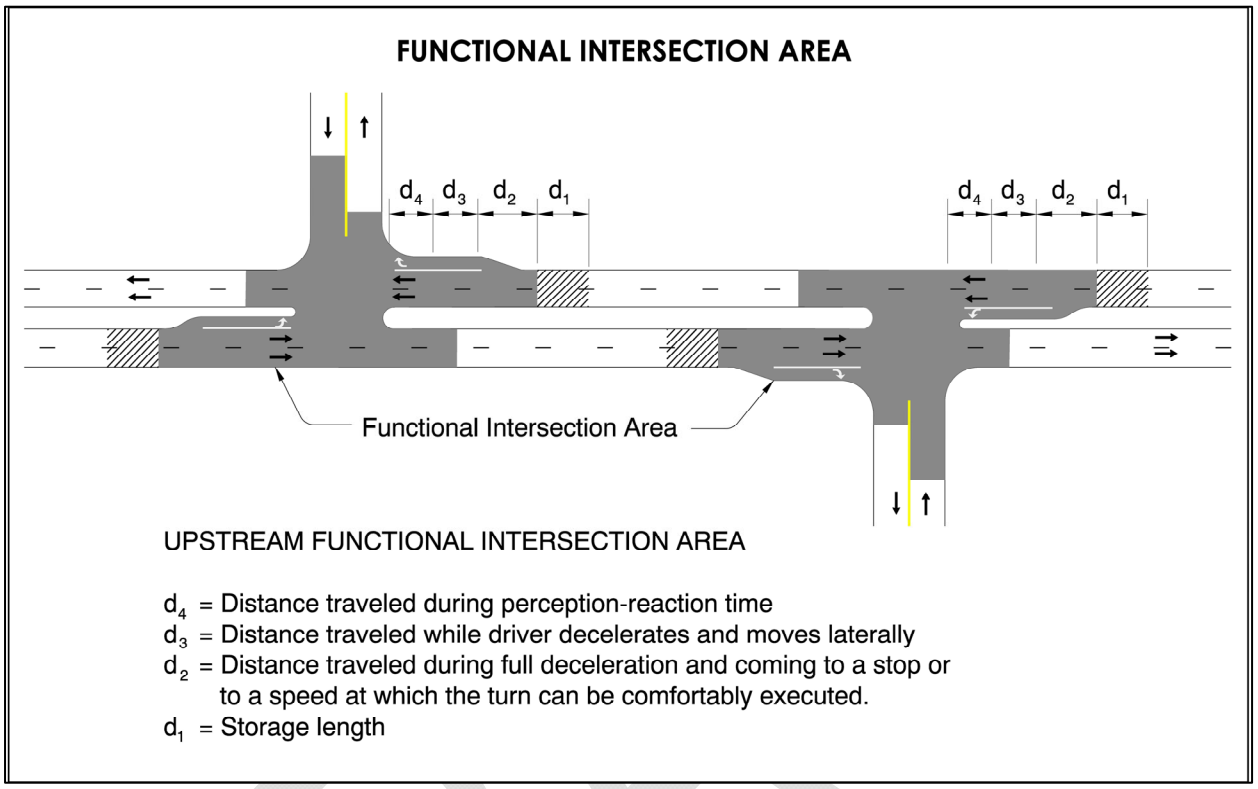
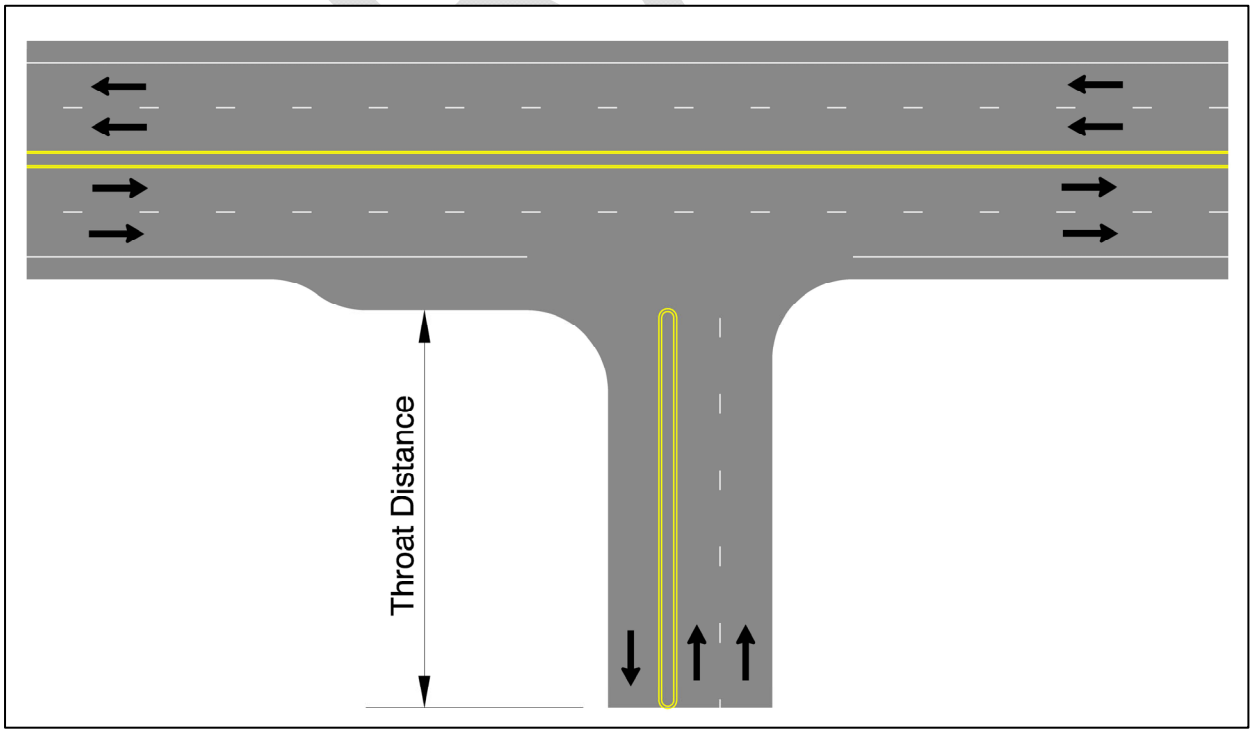


Figure 500-2: Throat Distance at Approaches



For approach connections from properties adjacent to the highway, the corresponding site circulation plan should specify the entry/exit throat distance. This throat distance is critical in order to provide an efficient and functional connection between the highway and the adjacent property. Throat lengths are critical for commercial and industrial type land use approaches. ***The Transportation Planning Analysis Unit or the Region Access Management Engineer can assist with determining the appropriate throat distance***. Figure 500-2 depicts the typical throat distance concept.

502.2 Design for or Accommodate Design Vehicle

Intersections should be designed for the appropriate design vehicle. An important concept concerning the design vehicle when designing an intersection or road approach is the concept of "accommodating" the design vehicle or "designing for" the design vehicle.

When an intersection is designed to accommodate the design vehicle, the intent is to provide enough physical space for the design vehicle to maneuver and turn through the intersection but may not be able to do so within the confines of a single lane. When an intersection is designed for the design vehicle, the design provides appropriate turning and maneuvering space to allow the design vehicle to remain within one lane.

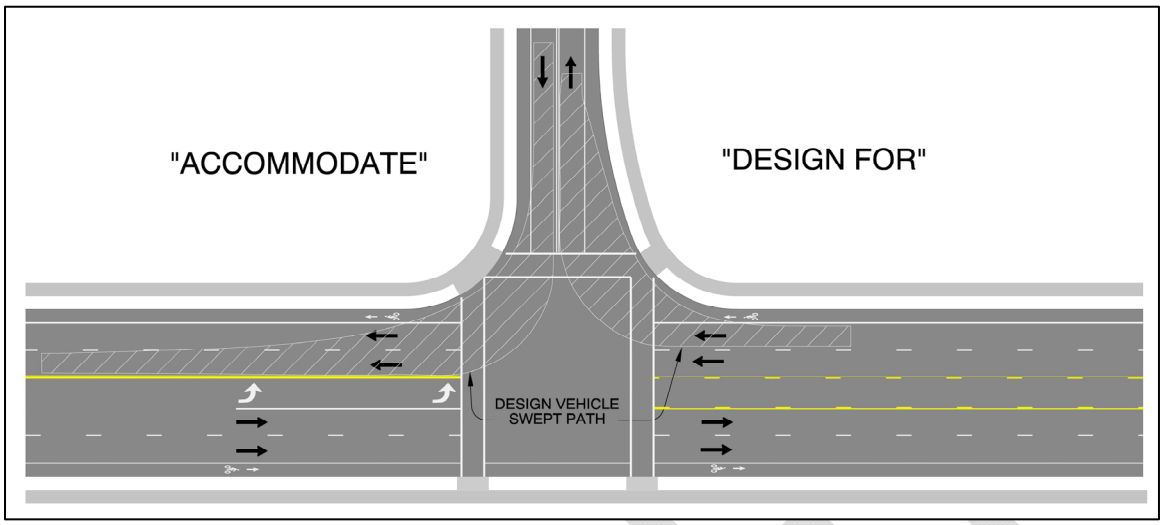
While it is advantageous to design for the largest vehicle using the approach, often real-world constraints make it difficult or impossible to achieve. Large curb radii will accommodate larger design vehicles but can increase vehicle speeds and create a larger distance for pedestrian crossings.

Designing all approaches for a WB-67 type vehicle certainly provides a level of comfort for the variability of vehicles using the approach. However, not all approaches have a high need for WB-67 access. Freight distribution centers and industrial locations will most certainly need approaches and access designed for WB-67 type vehicles. However, most commercial and retail locations may only need access designed for single axle (SU) type delivery vehicles with accommodation for the occasional WB-67 type vehicle. See Section 222 for more information regarding design vehicle selection.

Approaches should be designed for the appropriate design vehicle. The designer must realistically consider the needs of the approach and design accordingly. Being judicious and fully analyzing the needs of an approach connection to create a design specific to the location can improve roadway conditions overall for all modal users of the state highway system. Providing an approach larger than necessary is not only inefficient in cost but can also have detrimental effects for other roadway users. Figure 500-3 illustrates the "Accommodate" and "Design For" concept.

DRAFT

Figure 500-3: Accommodating and Designing for a Design Vehicle



Section 502.1 is not intended to be a detailed discussion of approach road design. For more detail on approach road or median design refer to Section 506, and Parts 200 and 300.

502.3 Legal Considerations for Road Approaches

The legal issues involved with approaches are specialized and complicated. Refer to the "Access Management Manual" for access rights and road approach issues. This manual includes information from "Oregon Administrative Rules, Chapter 734, Division 51 – Access Management," that defines legal criteria relating to road approach permitting and design. Additional information on access management can be found in Section 503.

502.4 Intersections and Interchanges - Expressways

Connections to both urban and rural expressways can be either at-grade intersections or grade separated interchanges. *At most rural expressway locations, the preferred connection type is grade separation.* ***Where appropriate, grade separated connections should also be considered at major rural highway intersections.*** However, there are many factors to consider in the design of these types of connections. For urban and Rural interchange spacing (crossroad to crossroad) and other design criteria see Part 600. Table 600-2 provides information for spacing criteria.

Section 503 Access Management and Access Control

503.1 Access Management

Access management is a tool available to designers, planners, and other transportation professionals to improve traffic safety, capacity, and efficiency while promoting economic development. The benefits of managing access to highways are well documented. Good access management techniques and strategies when designed properly along state highways will reduce the overall number of crashes and increase the highway's capacity. This section is not an exhaustive description of all the rules, laws, and techniques related to access management, but outlines some of the basic concepts, definitions, and appropriate tools for use on Oregon State Highways.

Access management is an important tool for maintaining the safety and functionality of a highway segment. ***In rural environments, access spacing conforms to the standards contained in OAR 734 Division 51.***

There are several documents that designers, planners, and field staff are encouraged to review to get a big picture understanding of access management. These include:

1. OAR 734 Division 51 – These are the administrative rules that the Department must comply with in carrying out the access management in permitting, planning, and project delivery.
2. ***Project Delivery Leadership Team Operational Notice PD-03 describes the accountabilities and deliverables for access management during project development.***
3. Access Management Manual - This manual consists of three volumes covering legal, technical, and procedural information and resources for the department's access management program. Volume 1, Chapter 3 entitled Guidelines and Resources for Access Management in Project Development provides guidance for implementation of project delivery operational notice PD-03. Volume 2 of the manual contains technical papers on various aspects of access management such as sight distance, access spacing, interchange management, functional intersection areas, and medians. Volume 3 is a user's guide for the Central Highway Approach/Maintenance Permit System (CHAMPS). CHAMPS is a computer-based system that is used by department staff to document the permitting process and issue approach permits.

DRAFT

503.2 Access Management - Expressways

Access management is critical to retaining the efficiency, safety, and function of an expressway. The expressway designation implies higher mobility along the corridor over access to individual properties. In general, private land access is limited where the property has alternative access. Expressways should discourage private access and focus connections at public roads. In some cases, this may require building alternate access to the property or the purchase of access rights. Existing private accesses should be eliminated when possible during project development. Additionally, public road connections that do not meet the spacing standards should be eliminated where possible during project development and in accordance with any adopted access management plans for the highway. If possible, full access rights should be purchased along the length of the expressway with access points only allowed at public roads that meet the spacing standards contained in Appendix C of the Oregon Highway Plan. ***The spacing standards can also be found in OAR 734-053-4020. Breaks in the access control line should only be given for those roadways that are connected during construction. All other future connections must obtain a grant of access to be connected.*** (See Section 503.7 for more information on the Grant of Access process.) The intent of this access control is to manage the number and locations of vehicular access to the expressway and to minimize potential conflict points along high speed, mobility centric highways. Where a multi-use pathway is provided along the expressway, additional connections for bicyclists and pedestrians to the local road system are strongly encouraged. These types of connections should be designed so that motorized vehicles are precluded from using them. ***For specific information regarding access management and Expressways, see the Oregon Highway Plan and OAR 734, Division 51.***

503.3 Access Management Plans

An access management plan is a useful management tool. An access management plan can be done as part of an ODOT STIP project or during a coordinated planning study. Access management plans developed in a coordinated planning process establish a plan for accessing properties in the future. An access management plan essentially is a detailed plan outlining how adjoining properties are to be accessed during project development.

503.4 ODOT Permit Process

The ODOT Permit Process is also outlined in OAR 734 Div. 51. See OAR734-051-1070(30) for information on "Grandfathered" accesses. *All approaches to a state highway must have department permission to be considered legal.* Through the permitting process ODOT can negotiate access designs, approach configurations, turn movement restrictions, and even shared approaches. Properties with multiple approaches can be modified to provide the minimum number needed.

DRAFT

Access management decisions are made by the Region Access Management Engineers (RAME). Work closely with the RAME for approach permit decisions. ***The authority for issuing permits resides with the District Manager or designee.***

503.5 Access Control

Access Control is a term established in Oregon Right-of-Way and Access Rights statutes. A property that is access controlled has no right of access between the property abutting the highway and the highway. Interstate highways and freeways are access controlled with access only through grade- separated interchanges at public streets and highways. There is no access provided to adjoining private properties. Generally, expressways with grade-separated interchanges are access controlled. However, expressways with at-grade intersections may or may not have access control lines established. Preference is to establish access control on urban and rural expressways, but it may not always the case.

Acquiring the access rights from properties abutting a state highway provides a high level of protection to the highway. However, acquiring access control is not justifiable in all conditions. The Department has developed guidelines for access management decisions during project development. These guidelines are contained in Transportation Operations Bulletin PD-03a. They attempt to focus the Department's limited resources for projects that really need access control. Additional guidance can be found in OAR 735, division 51.

503.6 Access Control - Expressways

Maintaining access control on rural expressways is critical to retaining the safety and efficiency of the facility. No private approaches should be allowed on rural expressways. When an expressway is established along a highway, or if there are existing private approaches, a long term plan should be established to eliminate them or provide alternative access as opportunities occur. ***Space and control public road connections according to the access management spacing standards contained in the Oregon Highway Plan, Appendix C.*** Spacing standards can also be found in OAR 734-053-4020. Traffic signals are not recommended on rural expressways, and modernization of expressways that have traversable medians will typically result in non-traversable medians.

503.7 Grants of Access

A Grant of Access is a transfer of a property right to a property owner for a right of access at a particular location. The Department must follow the requirements of OAR 734 Div. 51 when issuing Grants of Access. Obtaining a Grant of Access can be a complex process. Before even

DRAFT

considering a Grant of Access as part of a project, the designer should contact the Region Access Management Engineer.

Section 504 Access Management Design Tools

504.1 Right In – Right Out ~~Only~~

Restricting an approach road to right turns in and out only is accomplished by the installation of a non-traversable median. In urban environments this median should be a raised curb style. In more rural environments the median could be raised curb, median barrier, or depressed median. Controlling the median with a non-traversable design is the only design that provides a positive reinforcement of the turn restrictions. Figure 500-4 and Figure 500-5 show some examples of median designs limiting approach roads to right turns only.

Figure 500-4: Median Detail: Right-In Right-Out (Median Barrier)

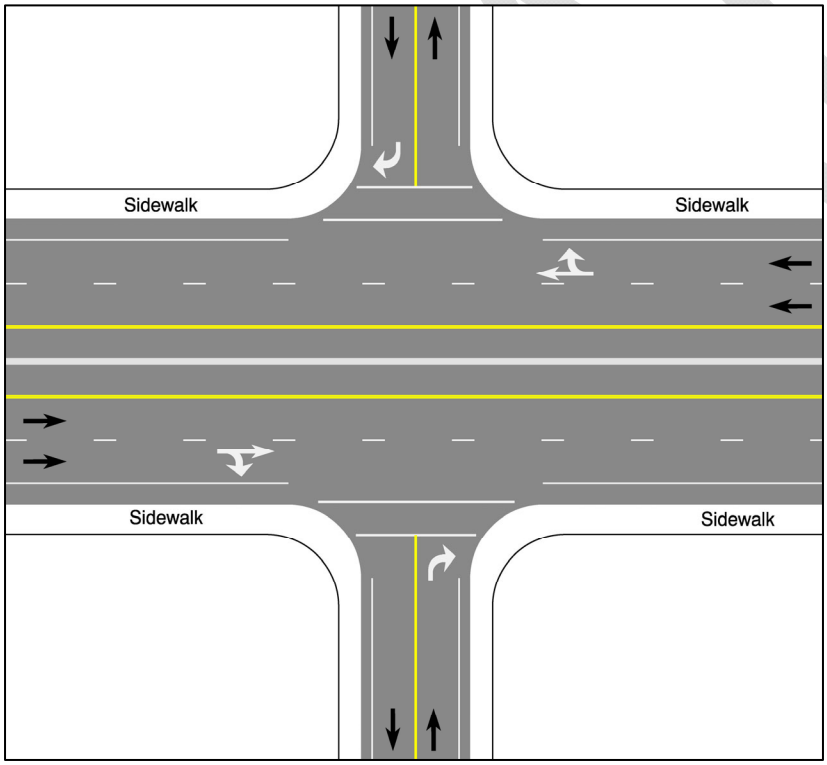
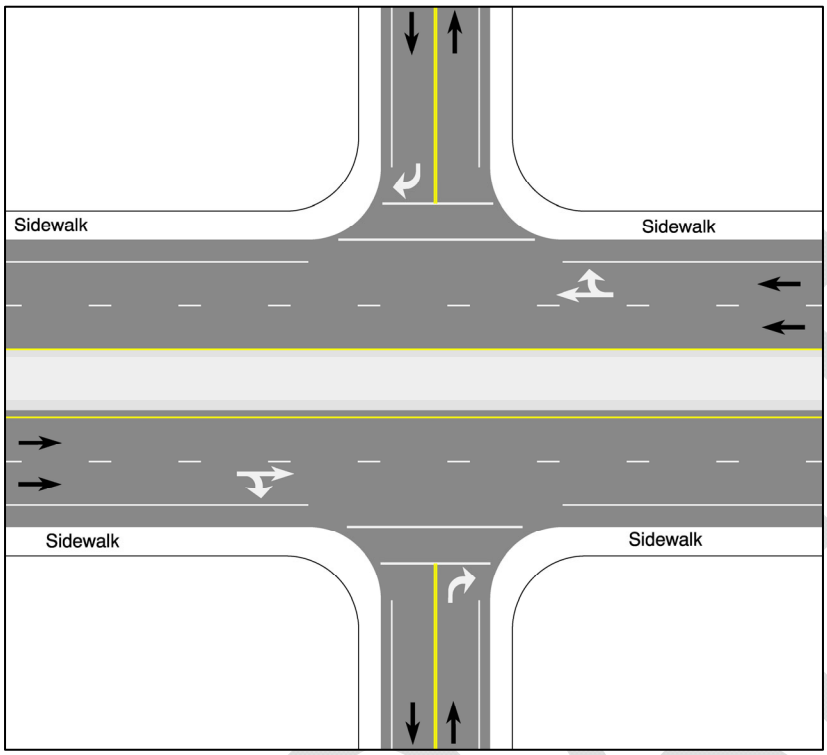


Figure 500-5: Raised Median Detail: Right-In Right-Out (Raised Curbed Median)



DRAFT

Figure 500-6: ~~Benefits of~~ Median Control ~~for Pedestrians~~Conflict Point Reduction: Right in Right Out Access

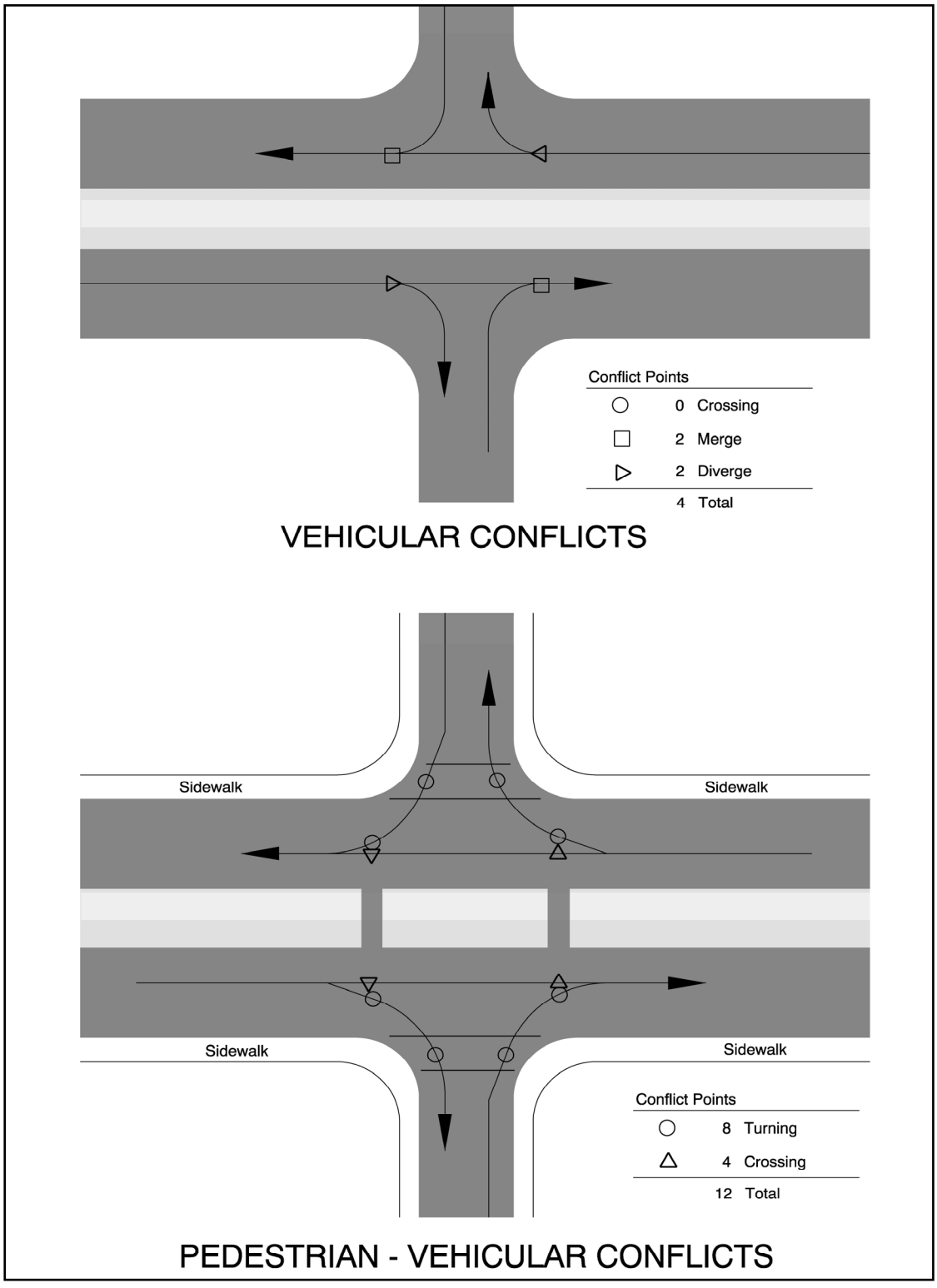
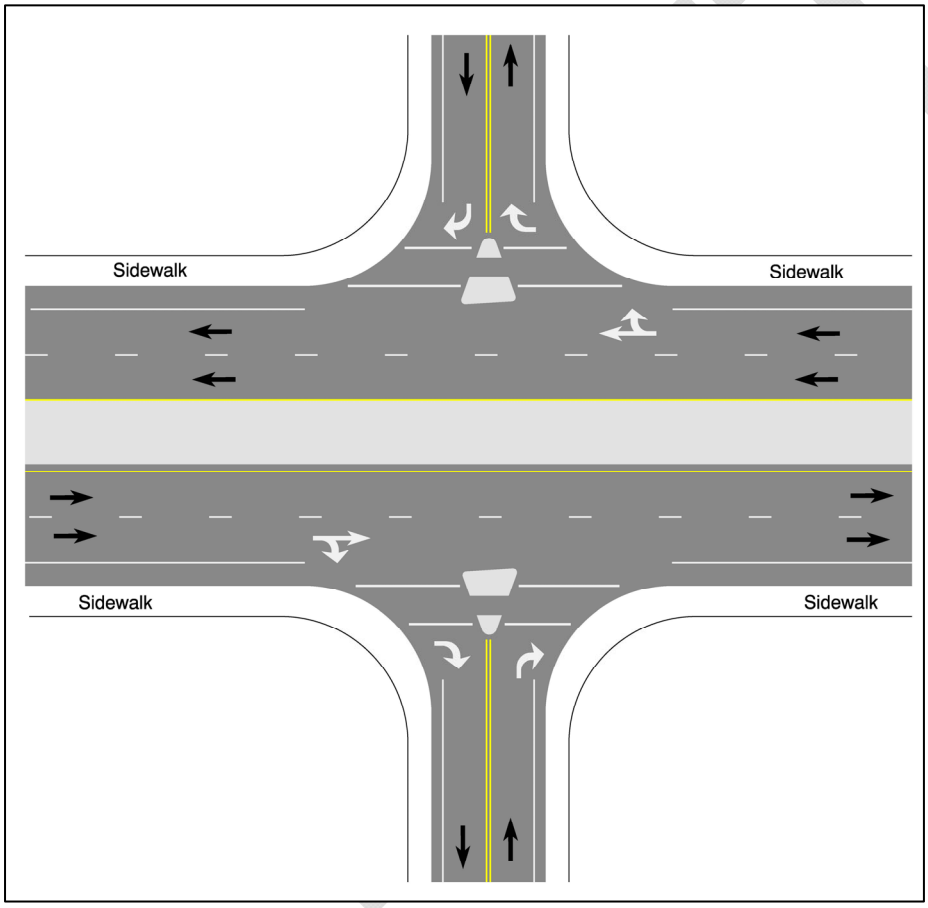


Figure 500-6 shows the benefits of median control involving pedestrians. For more information on median design, refer to Part 300, Sections 308 through 312. For more information on approach road design, refer to Section 101 and Section 506.

Note: ***The addition of any median treatment will need to be investigated for freight mobility issues and comply with ORS 366.215,*** Creation of state highways; reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity. For guidance in complying with ORS 366.215, see ODOT guidance document "Guidelines for Implementation of ORS 366.215, No Reduction of Vehicle-Carrying Capacity and the ODOT Highway Mobility Operations Manual".

Figure 500-7: "Porkchop" With Non-Traversable Median



Another design option that may be considered in some situations is the use of a “pork chop” design. A pork chop design consists of a channelization island, usually with raised curb that directs traffic in the intended direction. The channelization island tries to discourage turn movements by angling the entry and exit so that left turn movements are uncomfortable. The problem with the pork chop design is that passenger vehicles are still physically able to make left turn movements. Most pork chop designs that do not include a non-traversable median design have a very high rate of non-compliance for the restricted movements. Therefore, a pork

chop design should still include a non-traversable median design as well. Where a non-traversable median is not practical or is unacceptable, the designer should attempt to maximize the entry and exit angles to make left turn movements as difficult as possible. Figure 500-7 shows a "pork chop" design concept with median control.

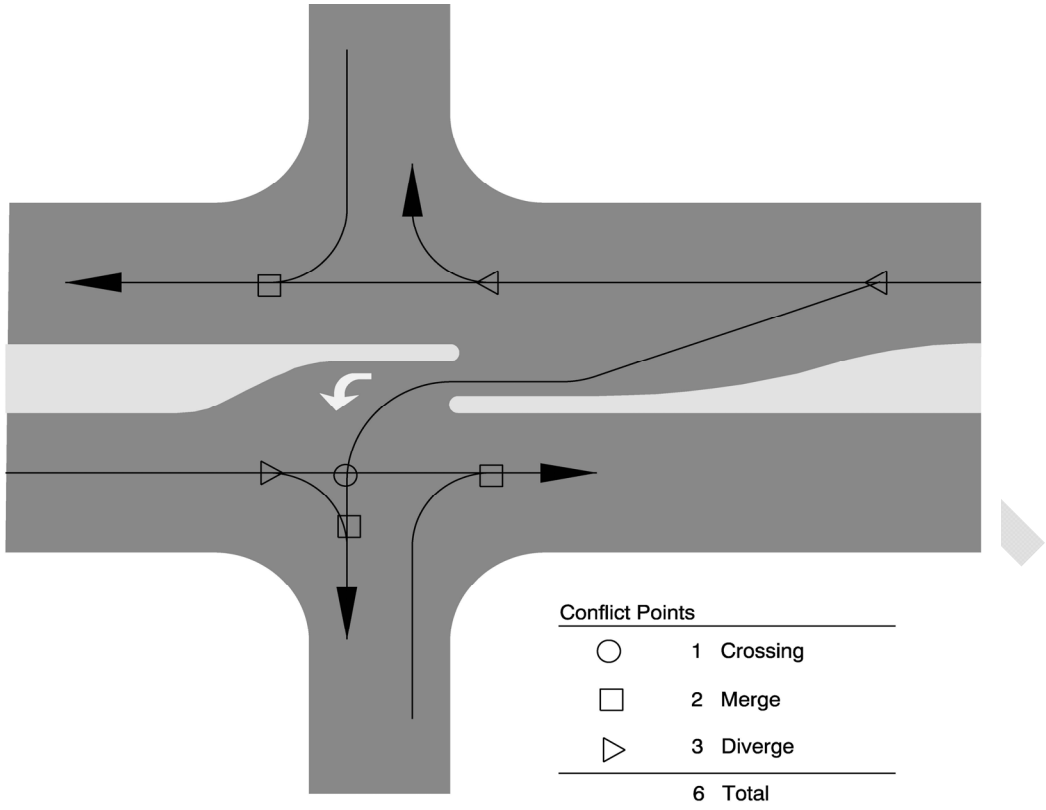
504.2 Right In – Right Out with Left In

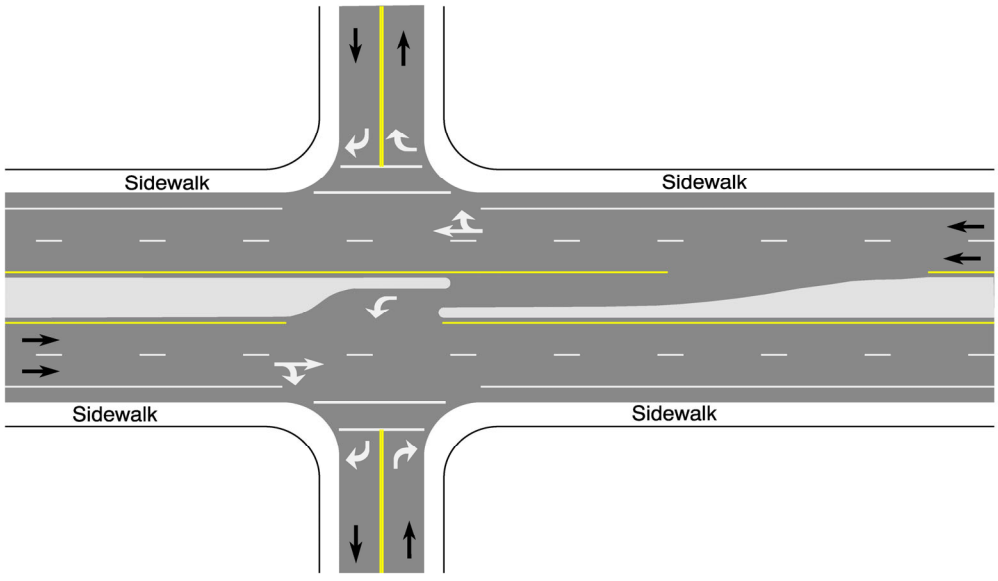
From a traffic analysis perspective, the left turn out movement from approach roads ~~usually operates worse than all other movements.~~can create operational and safety concerns. This is because in the hierarchy of turn movements, the left turn out from an approach road is the last priority. In addition, the left turns from an approach road usually experience a higher number of ~~accidents~~crashes than the other movements because of an increased number of conflict points. Because of these factors, there are several situations where eliminating a left turn out movement from an approach road is the preferred design solution. The only effective design option for this technique is a non-traversable median as shown in Figure 500-4 and Figure 500-5.

Based on the outcome of a region evaluation of overall roadway section operations and safety concerns, there may be locations where allowing a left turn in from the main line to the approach road is acceptable. When a left in option is deemed viable, the preferred median style is a traffic separator (raised curb~~,~~) or non-traversable median ~~barrier is not applicable~~. When designing this type of median, it is critical to physically exclude the left turn out movement. The basic concept of this design is to break the raised median and extend a traffic separator along the right edge of the left turn entering traffic creating a channelization for the left turn vehicle. This separator should extend back away from the approach road far enough so that passenger vehicles cannot physically turn left from the approach road. The design still must accommodate the appropriate design vehicle. Figure 500-8 illustrates this design concept.

DRAFT

Figure 500-8: Median Control Conflict Point Reduction: Right-Out, Right-In, Left-In (One Direction Only)





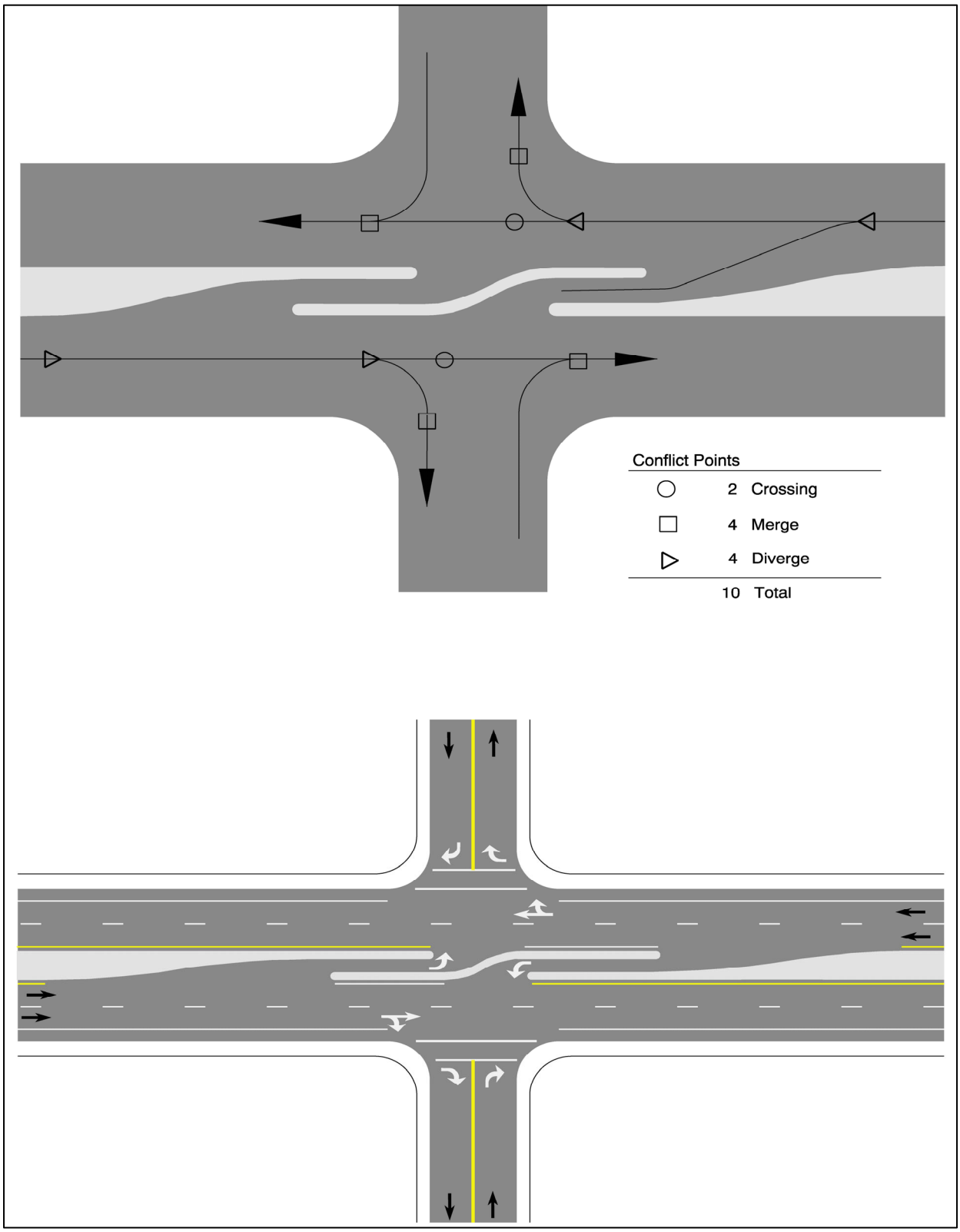
504.3 Opposing approaches with Left In

In many urban environments, approach roads will be directly opposite from each other. In some situations, eliminating left turns out of the approaches, but maintaining left turns into the approach road is desired. In these cases, the appropriate design is very similar to the design described in "Right In, Right Out with Left In" for a single approach restricting left turns out. The difference is the median design now accommodates opposing left turn traffic. The concept remains the same however, physically eliminate the ability for vehicles to make a left turn out movement. The difference is the traffic separator must now "snake" through the intersection transitioning from one side of the median to the other using reversing curves. The curvature is determined by the design vehicle. It is preferred with this technique to obtain additional width of the traffic separator in the middle of the median. This will provide additional visual guidance through the intersection. Figure 500-9 illustrates the use of this design concept.

DRAFT

Figure 500-9: ~~Opposing Approaches,~~Median Control Conflict Point Reduction: Right-In, Right-Out, Left-In (Both Directions)

DRAFT

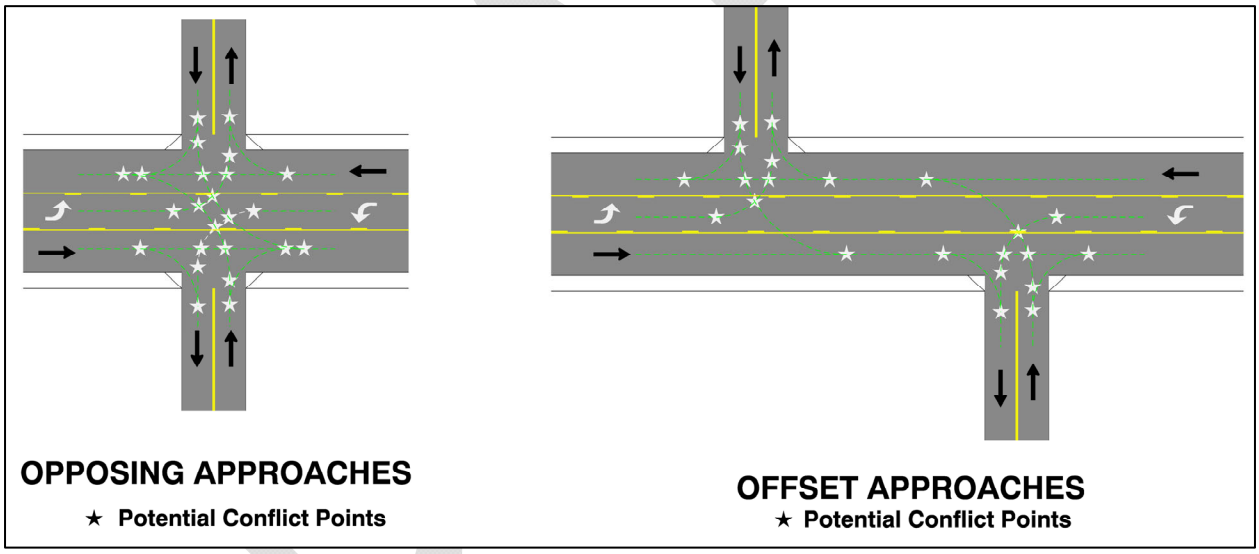


1

504.4 Offset Approaches

Primarily, this design option is used in rural or fringe areas where spacing between approach points is large. This design tool is implemented where a four-leg intersection is experiencing significant operational and safety problems. By separating the intersection into two individual intersections, the number of conflicts is reduced which should improve the safety of the intersections. ***If this design option is chosen, the intersection needs to be split in the correct direction. The approaches should be offset to the right in order to eliminate the back to back left turn queue conflict.*** The amount of the offset will vary depending upon the highway volume, approach road volume, surrounding land uses, speed of the highway, and direction of the offset. The designer considers the functional area of each intersection and the amount of weaving traffic. In addition, contact the Region Access Management Engineer and the Roadway Engineering Section when considering offset approaches. For more information on offset approaches/intersections refer to Figure 500-10.

Figure 500-10: Conflict Points - Opposing Approaches and Offset Approaches



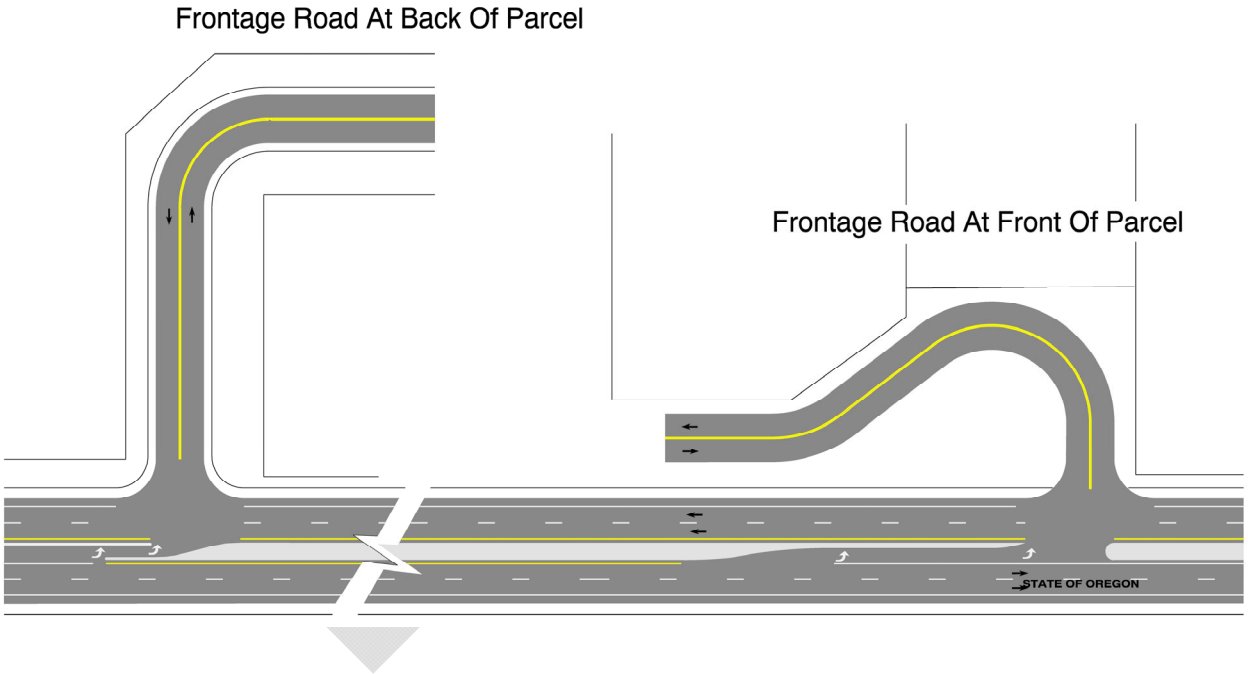
504.5 Frontage Roads

Frontage roads are a very useful design to eliminate or restrict direct highway access from a section of highway. Design frontage roads to accommodate the volume and type of traffic anticipated. Two of the most important elements of the frontage road design are the connection to the highway and turning roadway. Design the connection to accommodate the allowable turning movements for the appropriate design vehicle. If trucks are to use the frontage road, they must be considered in the design. Secondly, the design of the connection to the frontage road is critical. Usually, this connection is a turning roadway, but may be an intersection. The

connection needs to provide off-tracking room for trucks using the frontage road. The design needs to consider the roadway alignment and width to make sure trucks can physically make the turns required. Finally, frontage roads should be offset from the highway so as not to interfere with highway operations. ***The frontage road must be physically separated from the highway by use of barriers, fencing, or ditches. The separation between the highway and frontage road edges of pavement must be at least 40 feet, but preferably 50 feet or more.*** The design also needs to consider clear zone requirements and the effect of headlight glare on both roadways.

Another option involving the location of the frontage road is to locate the frontage road on the back side of the adjacent properties. This is often called a "backage" road. This option may be more appealing from a visual standpoint allowing the properties to front the mainline roadway while the parking lot and frontage road are located further away from the mainline roadway. This option may also provide for ~~better~~improved mainline/frontage road traffic operations. See Figure 500-11 or frontage road examples.

Figure 500-11: Examples of Frontage Road Locations



504.6 U-Turns

Where a section of highway contains a non-traversable median for an extended length, there may be a need to accommodate U-Turning traffic. There are several design techniques available to accommodate U-Turns. The first option is at a standard intersection. This design option generally requires widening the highway in one quadrant of the intersection to accommodate the required turning space of vehicles. Designs need to consider the type of vehicle using the U-

Turn. In most situations, trucks will be prohibited from using this style of U-Turn. The widening can make use of a far side bus stop or can be tapered. **All U-Turns using this type of design technique at a signalized intersection must have the approval of the State Traffic Engineer in consultation with the State Roadway Engineer.**

A second design option for accommodating U-Turning traffic is the use of a ~~jug-handle.~~mid-block U-Turn. There are two options for ~~jug-handle~~mid-block U-Turn designs. One option is the left side ~~jug-handle.~~mid-block U-Turn (Figure 500-13). The left side ~~jug-handle~~mid-block U-Turn is a turning roadway alignment located on the left side of a highway. U-Turning traffic makes a left turn from the highway into ~~the jug-handle. The jug-handle~~a space to turn around and then make a right turn onto the highway. The turning space circulates the traffic back to the highway where vehicles re-enter the traffic stream as right turns through normal gaps in traffic flow. This style of ~~jug-handle~~ U-Turn can be used at an existing "T" intersection or mid-block. *~~The jug-handle~~This U-Turn is only compatible with a right side "T" intersection, which may or may not be signalized. ~~Jug-handle~~These intersections would typically accommodate U-Turn truck movements.*

The other ~~jug-handle~~ design option is the right side jug-handle. The right side jug-handle is located on the right side of the highway. U-Turning traffic makes a right turn off the highway into the jug-handle, and then loops around to the left. The vehicles then make a left turn across the highway. This movement ~~may or may not~~should be signalized. *~~As with the left side jug-handle, the~~The right side jug-handle is only compatible with a "T" intersection. In this case, however, the intersecting roadway is on the left side of the highway.* The major disadvantage of this style is traffic must make a left turn across both directions of highway traffic and is therefore less operationally efficient and ~~may also have additional safety risks~~increases conflict points for the vehicular movements.

See Figure 500-12 and Figure 500-13 for U-Turn treatments.

~~Jug-handle style~~ U-turns can also be used at mid-block locations~~. These may be used~~ downstream of an intersection to improve operations and safety at an intersection as described below in the Indirect Left Turns section.

Also, see the ODOT Traffic Manual and the ODOT Traffic Signal Policy and Guidelines for traffic related design and approvals. Consult with the region Traffic Section.

DRAFT

Figure 500-12: U-Turns at Intersections

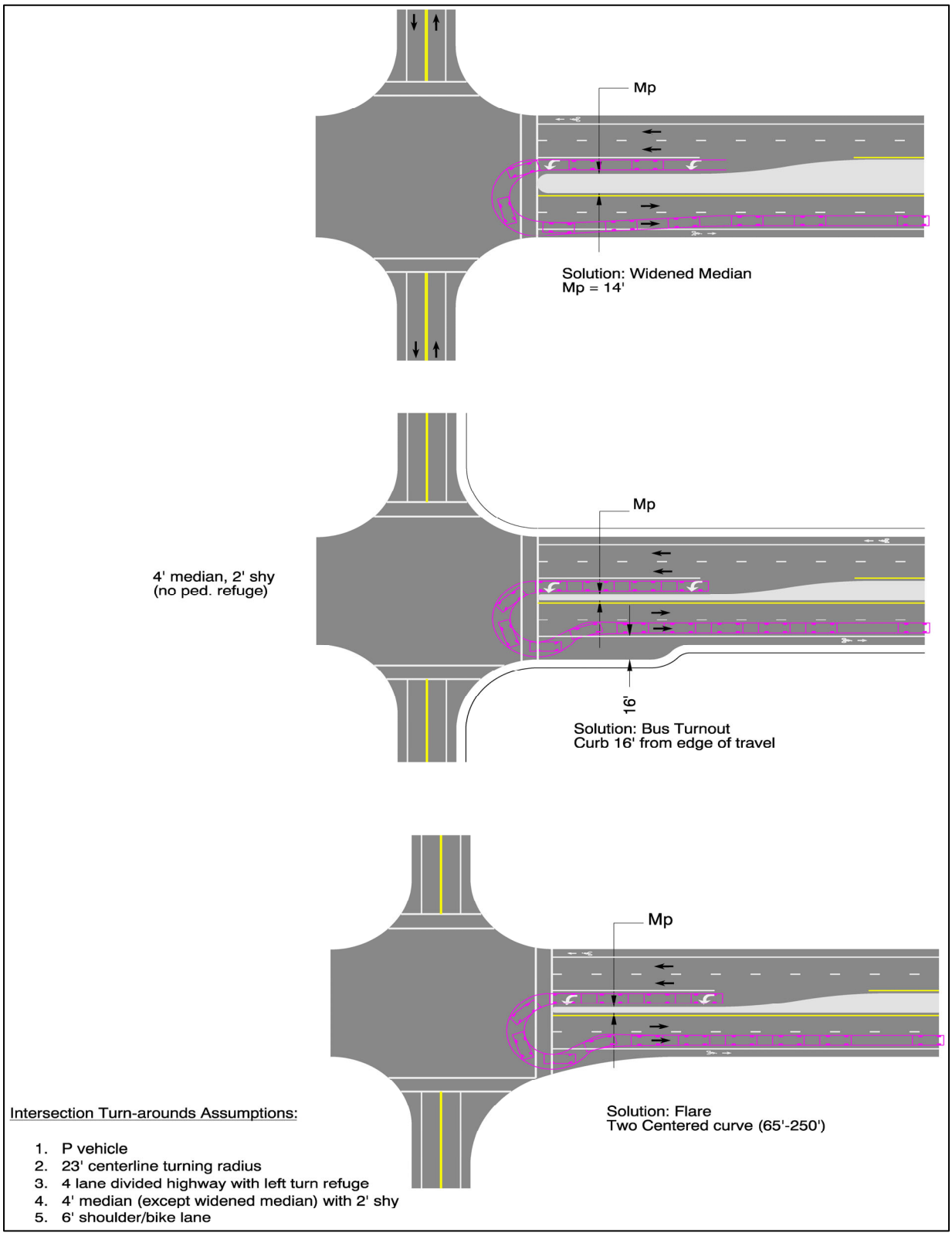
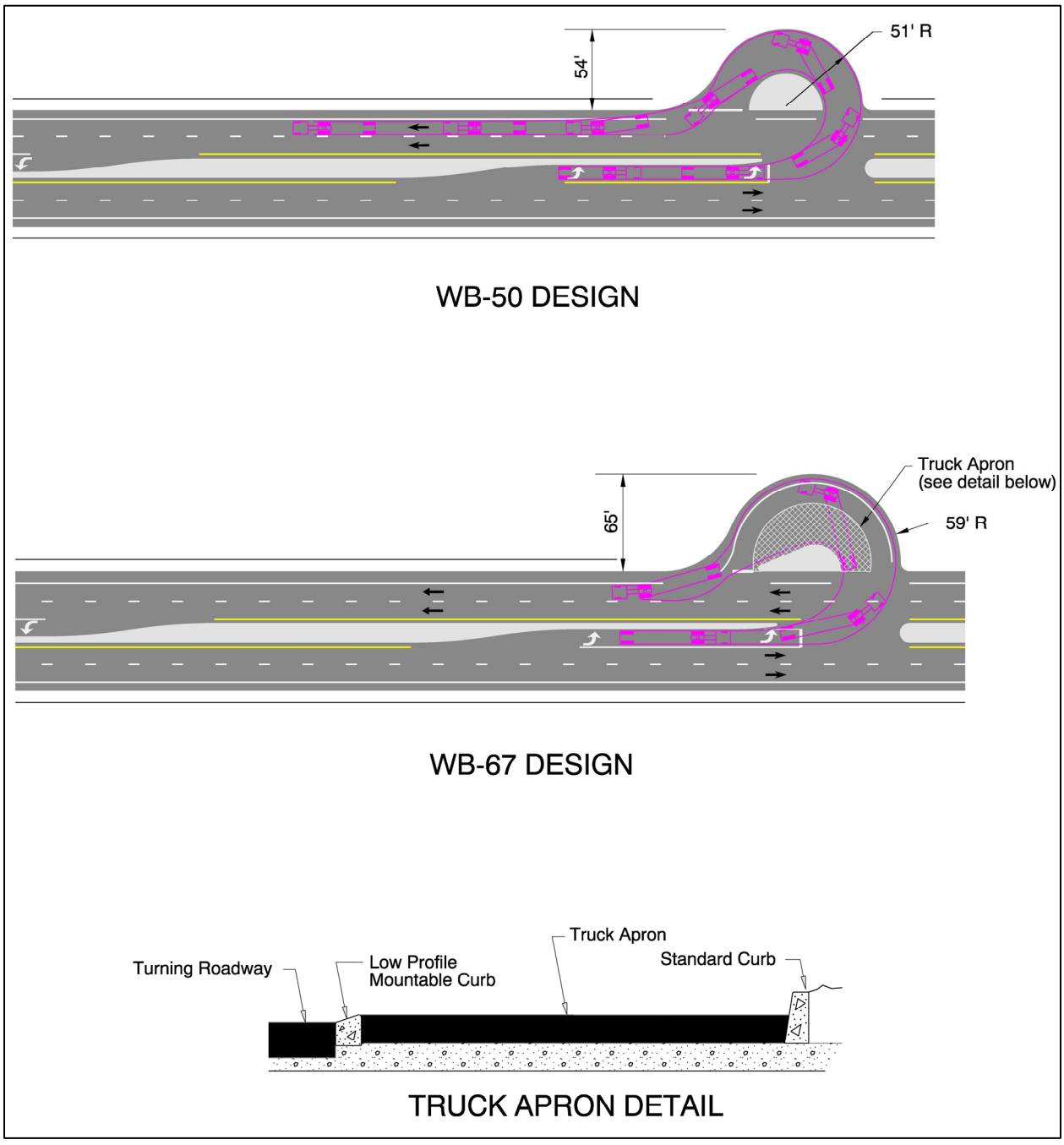


Figure 500-13: U-Turns at Mid-Block



504.7 Indirect Left Turns

One tool available is indirect left turns at intersections. In some situations, for operational capacity or safety reasons, it may be desirable to remove left turning traffic from an

intersection. The left turns are accomplished by other connections. The first option available is the use of a right side ~~jug handle just like the one~~mid-block U-Turn as described ~~for U-Turns~~ above. Vehicles wishing to turn left actually leave the highway on the right side then cross the highway. Generally, these designs are signalized to facilitate the crossing movement. Again, this particular type of ~~jug handle~~U-Turn is only compatible with a left side "T" intersection.

A different type of indirect left turn design uses connecting roadways. This design concept is similar to the jug-handles described in the U-Turn section. Within this type of design are several options. These include the single quadrant and double quadrant. The single quadrant design provides one connecting roadway that provides for two way traffic operation. Location of the connecting roadway is dependent upon traffic flow characteristics, adjacent roadside development, need for intersection spacing, and signalization needs. The concept of the single quadrant design is to remove all left turning traffic from a specific intersection. The traffic uses the connecting roadway to gain access to the particular street. Location of the connecting roadway is critical to the operation on the highway, particularly if both intersections are to be signalized. Prior to design acceptance, the Traffic Engineering Services Unit and Transportation Planning and Analysis Unit (TPAU) should have reviewed the design concept through an engineering study, such as an Intersection Control Evaluation (ICE) and determined if the design concept is supported. The State Roadway Engineer approves the type of the traffic control for the intersection.

As mentioned previously, another option is the double quadrant design. This design is very similar to a jug-handle style interchange, except that the intersecting roadways are not grade separated. Again, turning traffic, generally left turns, use the connecting roadways. The roadways may provide for all movements or may be right in/right out only depending upon traffic capacity and safety needs. The Traffic Engineering Services Unit and TPAU should review and support this type of design prior to design acceptance. In addition, there may be access management issues on these connecting roadways. The Region Access Management Engineer should be consulted to identify and address these issues. In many situations, these last two design alternatives may be a phased approach towards grade separation in the future.

Section 505 Driveway Design

505.1 Design Requirements for Private Road Approaches

Private approaches are connections to adjacent businesses, residences, or other private roadways. Generally, private approaches provide access to/from the highway and an adjacent property across the highway right of way. These approaches service all land use types including residential, commercial, and industrial. Typically, private approaches in urban areas will use a

'dust pan' style approach. This style drops the curb and possibly the sidewalk to highway grade to allow vehicular access. ***Use Standard Drawings RD725 through RD750 when designing "dust pan" style private approach roads. For high volume driveways or driveways that are part of a signalized intersection, use a radius design style similar to that used by a public approach. Refer to Table 500-2 to determine the style of approach to be used. The Signal Design Manual, Section 5.1.6 has additional information for driveways at signals.***

There are three general types of private road approaches. These are:

- Type A Non-curbed, ditch section highway with radius style approach.
- Type B Curbed highway section with "dust pan" style approach.
- Type C Curbed highway section with radius style approach.

Design Type C private approaches in accordance with Section 506 General Intersection Design. The design of Types A and B are described below.

The design of private road approaches is affected by many factors. The type of access, volume of vehicles, type of vehicles, grades, alignment, and adjacent land use all influence the design. ***The spacing of approach roads should be consistent with the spacing guidelines specified in the Oregon Highway Plan, Appendix C. Use the Access Management Policy contained in the OHP and Oregon Administrative Rule (OAR) 734, Division 51 for spacing guidelines and other guidance pertaining to access management.***

1. ***All road approaches should be placed so that intersection sight distance is provided.*** The vehicle entering the traffic stream should have a view along the highway equal to the intersection sight distance for the design speed of the highway. **At a minimum, stopping sight distance for the design speed of the highway must be provided at all approaches.** For more information on intersection and stopping sight distances refer to the AASHTO Green Book and HDM Part 200, Section 217.4 for Intersection Sight Distance. ***Any proposed approach that cannot provide sight distance as required by Oregon Revised Statute (OAR) 734, Division 51 must obtain an approval from the Region Access Management Engineer (RAME)***. For more information related to access management deviations, see Section 503. Cut slopes may need to be widened and roadside vegetation removed to provide required sight distance.
2. ***Both public and private road approach grades should be designed so that drainage from the approach does not run on or across the traffic lane, shoulder areas, or sidewalk. The normal slope of the shoulder should not be altered.*** In urban areas where the drainage is along a curb and gutter, only the paved approach area to the right of way line may drain into the gutter. In the case of an approach below the street grade, a short vertical curve should be used to confine the drainage in the gutter line. In some instances, inlets may be required on each side of the approach to collect runoff without ponding or to ensure that roadway drainage does not leave the right of way. *For approach road design, provide a flat landing area for vehicles entering the highway for at least 20 feet from the edge of the*

DRAFT

shoulder. A grade of two percent is desirable for these landings and four percent is the maximum. Approach grades steeper than four percent should be carefully evaluated by the Designer.

3. **The maximum grade break between highway shoulder and approach is eight percent for Type A and B approaches.** *In addition, a 20 foot landing area should be provided.* In some situations, the maximum break cannot be met. When this is the design condition, the designer should attempt to achieve a roadway-to-approach transition as smooth as possible. This may require using a short vertical curve.

4. **The approach must at least accommodate the appropriate design vehicle.** Generally, commercial accesses are designed for at least a Single Unit (SU) truck design vehicle. Vehicles larger than an SU are not to be treated as the design vehicle unless 3 or more WB-40 or larger trucks are anticipated between 7:00AM and 7:00PM. ***Anytime the design vehicle is larger than a SU, the approach is designed as a radius style.*** When vehicles larger than an SU are anticipated, but are not the design vehicle as described above, the approach must accommodate the larger vehicle. ('Accommodation' only refers to the physical ability to make the maneuver including encroaching on other lanes, whereas 'designed for' means that design elements do not require encroachment. A site visit and discussion with maintenance personnel along with information gathered from property and business owners will help determine the appropriate design for an approach. (See Figure 500-3 for more detail concerning "design for" and "accommodate for".)

5. **All approaches must be designed to aid in the longitudinal crossing of pedestrians.** It is preferable to maintain sidewalks at a continuous grade. However, without a buffer strip or set back to provide a ramp down area to street grade, this is nearly impossible. Route continuity is also important to pedestrians. If a curbside sidewalk cannot be set back for a significant longitudinal distance, it is best to leave it curbside rather than break up the pedestrian continuity. **Sidewalk cross-slope must be maintained at 2 percent or less for accessibility.** To meet this requirement approaches may need to be designed with more than one slope to transition from roadway grade to final approach grade. Roadway standard drawings in the RD700 series and RD900 series provide information and various design options for curb, sidewalk, and driveway design at approaches and curb ramps.

6. *All curbs and delineators used at approaches on highways without continuous curbs should be placed at the normal shoulder width from the edge of the traveled way to provide adequate shoulder adjacent to the approach.*

7. *Approaches on opposite sides of the highway should be located across from each other whenever possible. However, under high speed and or high traffic volume conditions, approaches may need to be offset to reduce the complexity and number of conflicts (see Figure 500-10).* In addition to reduction in conflict points, separating approaches breaks the crossing maneuvers into distinct steps and isolates them, reducing driver tasks and anxiety. When designing, the approaches need to be separated far enough that they operate independently outside

DRAFT

their functional areas (see Figure 500-1). Although this situation is possible at some high volume private approaches, this treatment is generally only appropriate for public road approaches. Not all intersection locations are good candidates for separated approaches. The ETSB Roadway Engineering Section and the Region Access Management Engineer should be contacted when considering separation of private approach roads. Major public roads with large volumes of through traffic should generally not be separated.

8. *Approach roads should not be constructed within the functional area of an adjacent intersection.* Refer to the Access Management Policies from the Oregon Highway Plan and OAR 734, Division 51 for more information on functional area (see Figure 500-1).

9. ***Where a private approach serves a high volume of traffic, additional design and/or traffic controls may need to be incorporated into the design.*** High volume approaches often will require channelization along the highway. Refer to Section 506 for details on left and right turn lanes. In some instances, the approach may require a traffic signal to operate safely and efficiently. A private approach located opposite of a signalized intersection forms an additional approach to the intersection and all approaches to a signalized intersection must be signalized. It is best to avoid this type of driveway configuration. However, when it is necessary, see the Signal Design Manual, Section 5.1.6 for guidance. The designer should work with the Region Access Management Engineer to determine solutions for high volume private approaches and potential private approaches opposite signalized intersections. Private approaches are not allowed directly opposite interchange ramp terminals.

   NOTE: All traffic signals must be approved by the State Traffic Engineer prior to installation. Generally, only public road approaches should be considered for signalization. Avoid signalizing private approaches.

10. *Type A approaches need to be designed to minimize the pedestrian longitudinal distance.* This may require the design to incorporate a two-centered curve rather than a single radius when accommodating design vehicles larger than a Single Unit (SU) truck.

11. *The approach design and corresponding site circulation plan should specify the entry/exit throat distance.* This throat distance is critical to provide an efficient and functional connection between the highway and adjacent property. Throat lengths are critical for commercial and industrial type land use approaches. The Transportation Planning Analysis Unit or the Region Access Management Engineer can assist with determining the appropriate throat distance. See Figure 500-2.

DRAFT

Table 500-2: Typical Private Approach Style and Width

Land Use Type	Approach Peak Hour Volume	Approach Style	Typical Throat Width[1]
Single Family Residential[2]	0 – 10	Dust Pan	16′
	11+	Dust Pan	24′
Multiple Family Residential	0 – 10	Dust Pan	16′
	11 – 150	Dust Pan	24′ – 28′
	151 – 300	Dust Pan[3]	36′ – 40'
	301 – 399	Radius[4]	Variable[5]
	400+	Radius	Variable[5]
Commercial	0 – 20	Dust Pan	24′
	21 – 150	Dust Pan	28′ – 32′
	151 – 300	Dust Pan[3]	36′ – 46′
	301 – 399	Radius[4]	Variable[5]
	400+	Radius	Variable[5]
Industrial		Dust Pan/Radius[6]	Variable[5]
Special Uses[7]		Radius	Variable[5]

1 The typical throat widths are only to be used as guides to the designer or permit specialist. The throat width needs to be checked to ensure traffic movements are accommodated acceptably.

2 Generally, multiple single-family residences don't share a single approach unless they are on a public road.

3 The dust pan style designs are primarily to be used. However, a radius style may be used if the traffic composition at the driveway contains a substantial number of recreational vehicles, buses, and single unit trucks, and the highway posted speed is greater than 35 mph, or access spacing each side is 660 feet or more.

4 The radius style design should generally be used. However, a dust pan style may be considered where the highway posted speed is 30 mph or less and access spacing is 165 feet or less.

5 The typical width is variable dependent upon approach style, design vehicle, and number of lanes.

6 Special care should be used when determining the appropriate style. Some industrial uses operate similar to commercial uses and should use commercial style approaches and dimensions. Heavy industrial/warehouse uses that serve significant truck volumes should use a radius style.

7 Special Uses include developments such as truck stops, amusement parks, stadiums, distribution centers, etc.

Section 506 General Intersection Design

506.1 General Design Considerations

This section describes the standards and guidelines for the geometric design of traditional at-grade intersections including lane widths, shoulders, superelevation, skew angles, turning radii, left turn lanes, right turn lanes, channelization islands, curb extensions, and bicycle and pedestrian needs. Context of the roadway and roadside is important to the final intersection design. Contextual factors in the design of intersections include the adjacent land use, urban or rural condition, vehicle speeds, traffic volumes and highway operation. The ODOT Practical Design Policy of Safety, Corridor Context, Optimize the System, Public Support and Efficient Cost (SCOPE) can aid in applying context design to a project. (See ODOT Practical Design Strategy.)

Specific design issues and concerns related to signalized and unsignalized intersections are discussed in Section 507 and Section 508 respectively. The design standards and considerations for modern roundabouts are contained in Section 509.

506.2 Approach Grades

There are two types of approaches to state highways. Public road connections are one type of approach and private approaches such as driveway connections are the second category. *For public roads, the approach grades of intersecting roadways with a state highway should be kept to a minimum. It is undesirable to have road connections along superelevated curved sections of state highway and these connections are discouraged. When this type of connection cannot be avoided, special care must be taken by the designer to provide an adequate connection.* It is preferable to have a relatively flat or slightly elevated roadway connecting with a state highway. This helps improve the visibility of the intersecting roadway and can also help control highway drainage.

In order to effectively match intersecting roadway grades with state highway grades, vertical curve alignments should be used on all approach connections. *Generally, the intersecting roadway's vertical alignment should match with the cross slope of the highway if the cross slope is less than 3 percent. Where the cross slope is equal to or greater than 3 percent a small break in the grade or vertical curve at the outer edge of shoulder not exceeding 2 percent may be acceptable. In addition, a 20 foot paved landing should be provided to aid an entering vehicle transition to the highway.* The goal is to provide a connection that does not require vehicles to stop and enter the highway from a steep grade. The flatter the approach, the better, particularly for large vehicles. *Due to acceleration and deceleration characteristics of various vehicle types using public roadways, grades of public road approaches at state highway connections greater than 3 percent should be avoided*. However, in many locations due to existing terrain or right-of-way constraints, constructing approach grades less

than or equal to 3 percent may be costly or infeasible to accomplish. In these locations, a more practical threshold would be to provide a maximum grade on the connecting road of 6 percent. *In locations where the connecting approach grade exceeds 6 percent, special care needs to be taken by the designer to provide adequate vertical transition from the steep road approach to the highway grade.*

Due to typically expected operating conditions, driveway approaches to state highways can be constructed with greater differential changes in grade than public roadway connections. Figure 500-14 (RD725) and Figure 500-15 (RD715) provide design and layout information for an approach with sidewalk and without sidewalk. Additional information and options about the design and layout of sidewalks and driveway approaches is available from Oregon Standard Drawings. Pertinent standard drawings include RD715, RD720, RD721, RD725, RD730, RD735, RD740, RD745 and RD750.

Regardless of roadway connection type, where a marked or unmarked crosswalk exists, the allowable cross slope is dependent on intersection control type. The best practice for new construction is 2 percent or less to meet accessibility requirements. Crosswalks, whether marked or unmarked, exist across each approach to an intersection. See HDM Section 802 for crosswalk location determinations. Figure 500-16~~,~~ (RD900), HDM Part 800, and the Oregon Standard Drawing RD900 series provide information about curb ramps. In addition, adequate sight distance must be provided at all road connections.

DRAFT

Figure 500-14: Driveway Approaches with Sidewalks

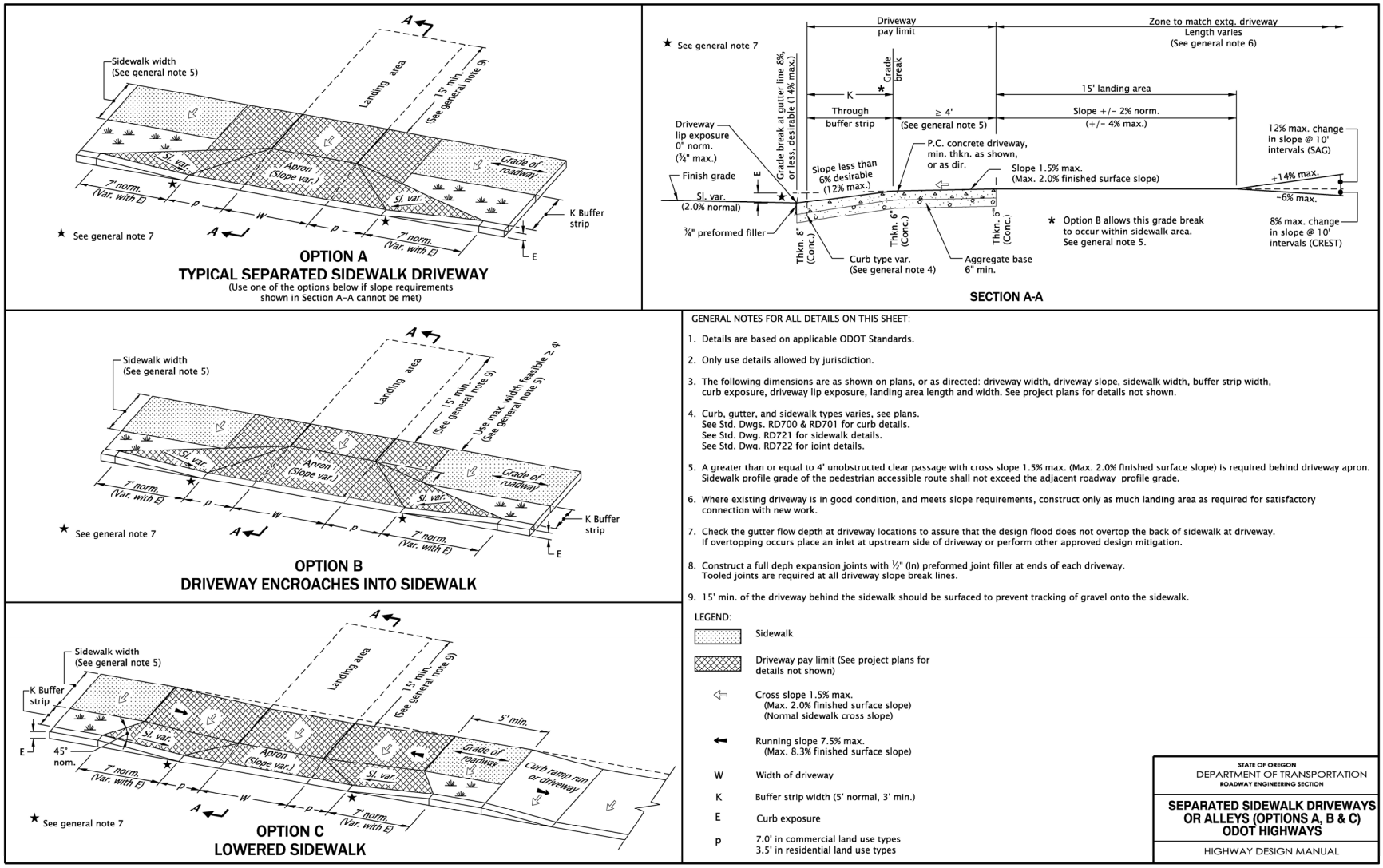
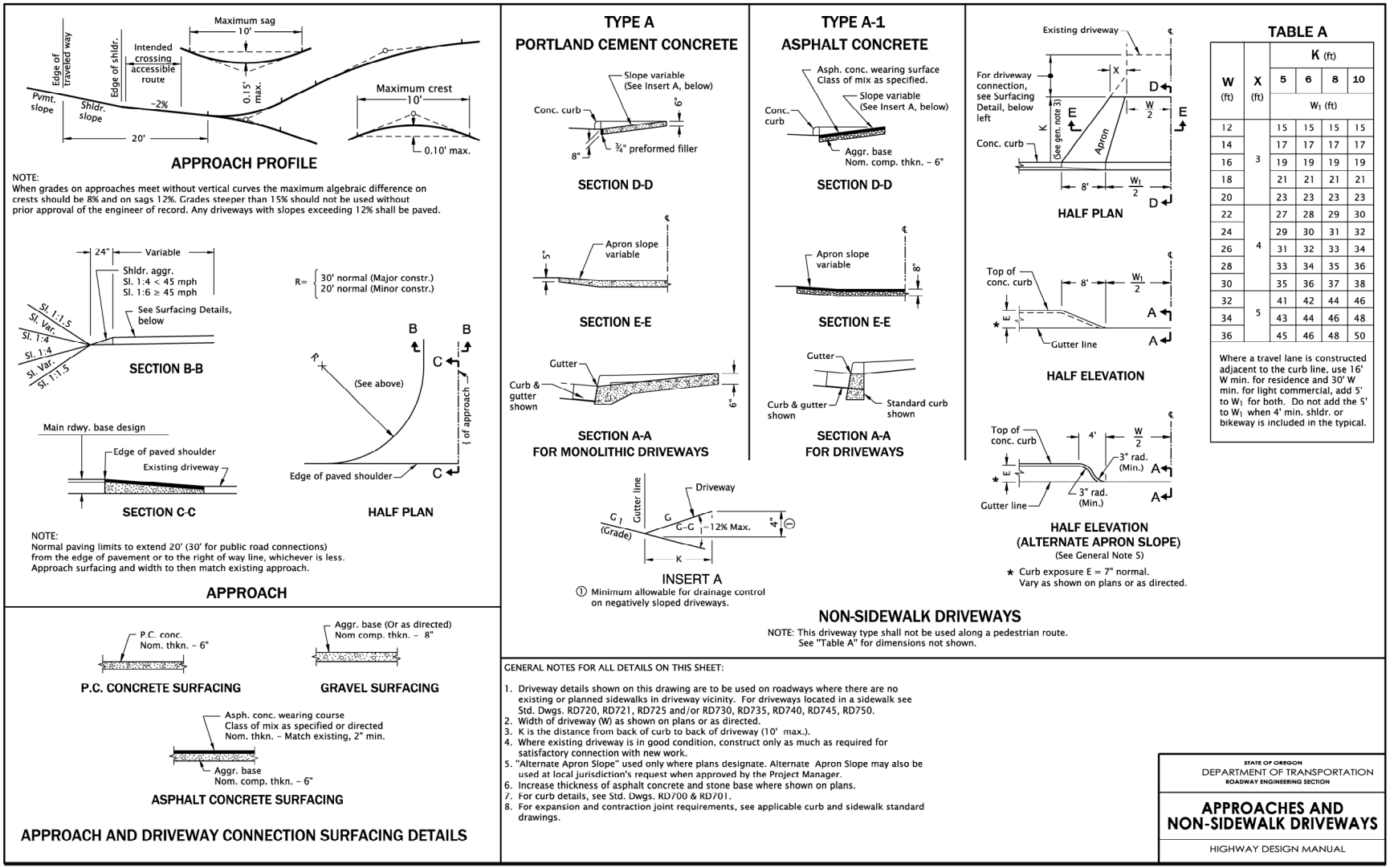


Figure 500-15: Driveway Approaches Without Sidewalks



W (ft)	X (ft)	K (ft) 5	6	8	10
		W1 (ft)			
12	3	15	15	15	15
14		17	17	17	17
16		19	19	19	19
18		21	21	21	21
20		23	23	23	23
22	4	27	28	29	30
24		29	30	31	32
26		31	32	33	34
28		33	34	35	36
30		35	36	37	38
32	5	41	42	44	46
34		43	44	46	48
36		45	46	48	50

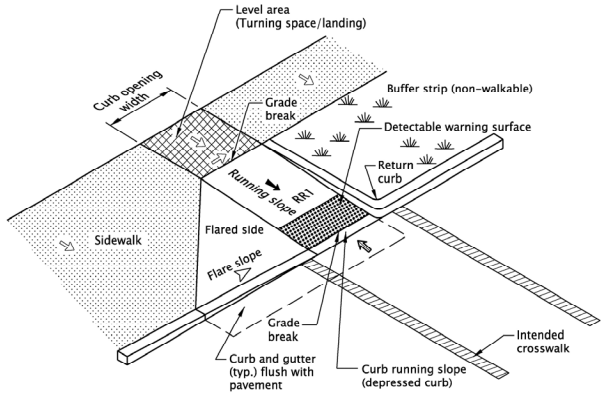
Figure 500-16: Typical Curb Ramp Components and Legend

CURB RAMP INDEX

STD. DWG. NO.	STD. DWG. TITLE
RD900	Curb Ramp Components And Legend
RD901	Curb Ramp Legend And Corner Identification
RD902	Detectable Warning Surface Details
RD904	Detectable Warning Surface Placement For Curb Ramps
RD905	Detectable Warning Surface Placement For Directional Curbs
RD906	Detectable Warning Surface Placement For Accessible Route Island
RD908	Detectable Warning Surface Placement
RD909	Detectable Guide Strip Placement At Bike Ramps
RD910, RD912	Perpendicular Curb Ramp
RD913	Perpendicular Curb Ramp With Closure
RD916	Perpendicular Curb Ramp Single Ramp
RD920	Parallel Curb Ramp
RD922	Parallel Curb Ramp Single Ramp
RD930, RD932 & RD936	Combination Curb Ramp
RD938	Combination Curb Ramp Single Ramp
RD940	Blended Transition Curb Ramp Single Ramp
RD950 & RD952	End Of Walk Curb Ramp
RD960	Unique Curb Ramp

LEGEND:

- Marked or intended crossing location
- Sidewalk or other traversable surface
- Detectable warning surface (DWS)
- Level area (Turning space/landing)
- Cross slope 1.5% max. (Max. 2.0% finished surface slope) (Normal sidewalk cross slope)
- Running slope 4.0% max. (Max. 4.9% finished surface slope)
- Running slope 7.5% max. (Max. 8.3% finished surface slope)
- Counter slope 4.0% max. ascending or descending (Max. 5.0% finished surface slope) Slope as required for drainage
- Flare slope (Max. 10.0% finished surface slope)
- 4'x4' clear space
- RR1 Ramp Run Position 1



TYPICAL CURB RAMP SYSTEM COMPONENTS
(PERPENDICULAR TYPE SHOWN)

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING SECTION

CURB RAMP COMPONENTS AND LEGEND

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

506.3 Travel Lane Widths

Travel lane width through an intersection needs to remain constant. In general, the through travel lane width at rural high speed, channelized intersections is 12 feet as shown in Figure 500-19. For specific locations, the appropriate travel lane width is determined by the location (rural or urban), design speed, volume of trucks, highway designation and alignment. *Use the rural or urban highway design sections of this manual to determine the appropriate through lane width.* In most urban locations and Special Transportation Area (STA) designated roadway sections, 11-foot travel lane width is preferred, depending on functional classification, volume and nature of traffic, pedestrian mobility, freight mobility and accessibility goals. In other urban locations with significant constraints, 11-foot travel lane width may be allowable. See Part 200 and Part 300 for guidance on the use of lane widths less than 12 feet. **However, travel lane widths shall not be reduced through an intersection. Lane width approaching an intersection is to be maintained through the intersection.**

When an intersection is a part of or connecting to a turning roadway, the lane widths may need to be increased to allow for large vehicle off tracking. Refer to chapters 3 and 9 of the AASHTO Green Book for more details of turning roadways.

Any reductions in existing lane widths will need to be investigated for freight mobility issues and comply with ORS 366.215, Creation of state highways; reduction of vehicle-carrying capacity. For guidance in complying with ORS 366.215, see ODOT guidance document "Guidelines for Implementation of ORS 366.215, No Reduction of Vehicle-Carrying Capacity" and the "ODOT Highway Mobility Operations Manual".

506.4 Travel Lane Alignment

Similar to through travel lane width, travel lane alignment should remain constant through an intersection. *If a proposed design creates misalignment of lanes across an intersection, rather than introducing angle points that create abrupt deflections to vehicle pathways across the intersection, a ~~better~~preferred design option would be to incorporate slight alignment and striping changes upstream and downstream of the intersection to ~~better~~ transition lanes smoothly, thereby effectively reducing or eliminating the lane shift.* The alignment changes upstream and downstream should provide curvature to smooth the transition. This is particularly true with intersections on curves. Shifting of lanes through signalized or stop controlled intersections is strongly discouraged and should only be done when site constraints make it infeasible to keep lane alignment consistent. **Travel lanes on the mainline highway shall not be shifted at uncontrolled intersections.**

At signalized intersections, lane lines should line up through the entire intersection and not be offset. This helps to not only discourage unintentional lane changes through the intersection area, but also minimizes the possibility of a driver inadvertently encroaching on the adjacent

DRAFT

lane. ***However, in cases where it is deemed necessary to shift a lane through a signalized intersection, refer to the following guidance provided in the remainder of Section 506.4 and Figure 500-17 (Travel Lane Offset Layout) for discussion of potential lane offset.***

Guidance for Lane Shift when deemed necessary:

Posted Speed Limit Less than 30 mph:

Maximum Offset – 4 feet

Posted Speed 30 mph to 35 mph:

Maximum Rate of Change Across Intersection – 1ft. lateral in 20 ft. longitudinal

Maximum Offset - 4 feet

Posted Speed 40 mph to 45 mph:

Maximum Rate of Change Across Intersection – 1ft. lateral in 30 ft. longitudinal

Maximum Offset – 3 feet

Posted Speed Greater Than 45 mph:

No Offset Permitted Across Intersection

Shifted travel lane rate of change is measured in the direction of travel between marked crosswalks by projecting a line along the center of the entering travel lane from the closest crosswalk stripe entering the intersection to the farthest crosswalk stripe exiting the intersection. If no crosswalk is present, then project a line perpendicular from the end of the lane striping to the center of the travel lane entering the intersection to determine a beginning measuring point for the lane shift and rate of change distance. Since most controlled intersections without a marked crosswalk should have a stop bar present, the stop bar with respect to the travel lane center could also be used as an alternate method to determine a starting point. In either method, the ending point is the intersection of the projected entering lane center and the intersection of the furthest crosswalk stripe exiting the intersection. If no crosswalk is present on the exiting side of the intersection, then project a perpendicular line from the beginning of the lane striping leaving the intersection to the center of the shifted lane to determine the end point. In all cases the rate of change shall be applied evenly across the entire distance along the projected center of the entering travel lane.

Travel lane offset is measured from the center of the travel lane entering the intersection to the center of the shifted travel lane exiting the intersection. For multi-lane roadways, all travel lanes in the same direction shall be offset equally and remain parallel to one another unless site specific constraints make this infeasible. For locations where lanes cannot be shifted equally or cannot remain parallel to one another, contact Region Roadway and Traffic staff or ETSB Roadway Engineering Section and Traffic Engineering Section staff for guidance.

For stop-controlled intersections, the maximum offset that may be applied is 4 feet across the intersection.

DRAFT

When lanes are shifted through an intersection, care must be taken to ensure that adequate space is maintained between travel lanes and roadway features like curbs; raised median islands, signs, illumination or signal poles, etc. All proposed lane shift designs must be reviewed by appropriate staff in the Region Traffic and Region Roadway sections as well as appropriate Traffic and Roadway staff in the ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections regardless of proposed lane shift amount. Agreement for the lane shift is required from the Region Roadway Manager/Engineer, the Region Traffic Manager/Engineer and the ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections.

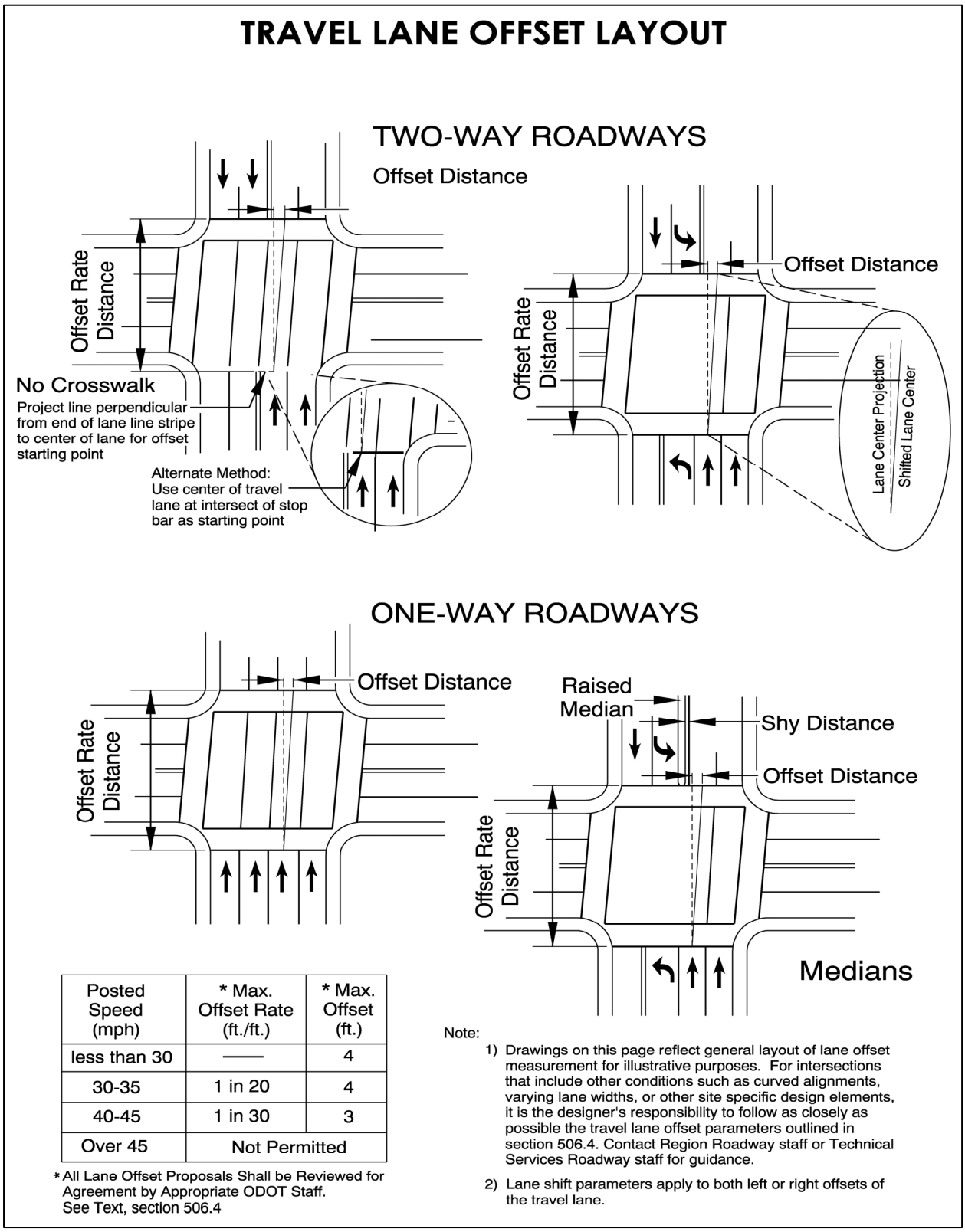
At signalized intersections, excessive shifting of lanes may cause signal head misalignment with their respective lanes. ***Signal heads should be shifted to match the lane shift. If this cannot be accomplished, then lane shift shall be limited to a maximum of two feet with approval from the Region Traffic Engineer.***

If shifting lanes through a signalized intersection is necessary, an option for mitigation is to carry some form of lane marking, generally dotted striping, through the intersection to inform drivers of the shift and help keep them aligned with the lanes. Contact the Region Traffic Section for appropriate use of lane markings through the intersection.

Providing guidance for layout of lane offset at intersections in this manual does not imply agreement to any specific design proposal. It is the designer's first responsibility to provide a design that transitions a vehicle from one side of an intersection to the other smoothly. Only after it has been demonstrated and determined through the review process that a smooth transition is not feasible will a design incorporating a lane shift be considered as a viable option. Figure 500-17 illustrates travel lane offset layout when a shift of the travel lane is necessary.

DRAFT

Figure 500-17: Travel Lane Offset Layout



Posted Speed (mph)	* Max. Offset Rate (ft./ft.)	* Max. Offset (ft.)
less than 30	——	4
30-35	1 in 20	4
40-45	1 in 30	3
Over 45	Not Permitted	

* All Lane Offset Proposals Shall be Reviewed for Agreement by Appropriate ODOT Staff. See Text, section 506.4

Note:

1) Drawings on this page reflect general layout of lane offset measurement for illustrative purposes. For intersections that include other conditions such as curved alignments, varying lane widths, or other site specific design elements, it is the designer's responsibility to follow as closely as possible the travel lane offset parameters outlined in section 506.4. Contact Region Roadway staff or Technical Services Roadway staff for guidance.

2) Lane shift parameters apply to both left or right offsets of the travel lane.

506.5 Travel Lane Continuity

Lane continuity is also important for effective traffic flow at an intersection. *When a through lane drops downstream of an intersection, adequate length of the lane being eliminated needs to be established to allow the two traffic streams to merge safely and effectively as well as to allow for standard signing and striping of the lane drop.* This distance may vary by location due to specific intersection operation, number of downstream access points, on-street parking or other constraints. Each location needs to be thoroughly investigated and an appropriate length determined. Failure to provide adequate length for necessary maneuvers may impact intersection operation and expected capacity due to uneven lane balance. Anticipated lane utilization through the intersection may not occur if it is too difficult to merge downstream. Drivers familiar with the intersection may be reluctant to use the lane that is dropping if they have had difficulties merging downstream in the past and they may choose to merge into the other through lane prior to the intersection. This is particularly true for locations where a through lane is added just prior to the intersection to increase intersection capacity and then immediately dropped downstream of the intersection. Consult the Region Traffic Engineering Unit and the ODOT Transportation and Analysis Unit (TPAU) to provide information about appropriate merge length.

506.6 Shoulder Widths

~~As with travel lanes, the width of shoulders should generally remain constant through an intersection. However, two lane highways that are flared to provide left turn channelization may require shoulder width modifications. Urban and rural design criteria will determine appropriate shoulder width at specific locations. Standard shoulder width should be utilized through rural and higher speed intersections. **In constrained locations where left turn channelization is being considered, the shoulder width may be reduced, but shall be no less than 4 feet in rural locations.** Reduction of shoulder width below the design criteria width may require a design exception. For urban shoulder width, See Part 200 and Part 300 for design criteria.~~

As with travel lanes, maintain the width of shoulders through an intersection.

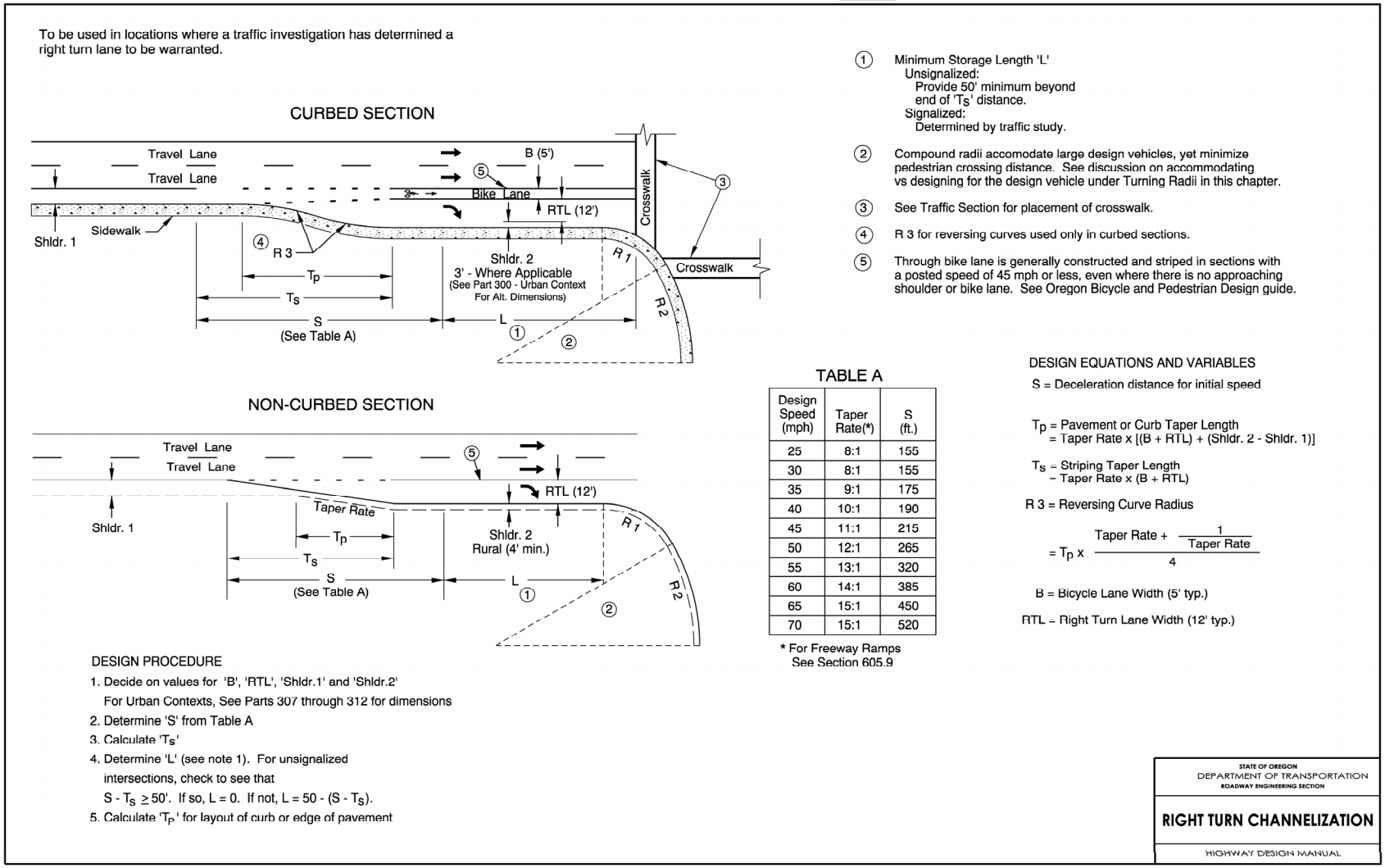
When ~~only~~ a minimum 6-foot bicycle lane is provided adjacent to the highway, reducing shoulder width requires discussion about bicycle accommodation needs. Part 900 and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide provide information about shoulder widths and consultation with the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer or the project resource for active transportation may provide additional appropriate design options. Shoulder widths will also require modifications where the intersection includes a right turn lane. If the design is providing only a minimum 6-foot bicycle facility adjacent to the highway, then shoulders should be designed to match the dimensions of Figure 500-18. This would provide ~~only~~ a minimum level of design. ***Highway projects should provide the highest appropriate level of***

DRAFT

bicycle and pedestrian facilities possible within project scope and funding. Consider separated and protected bicycle facility design options. On projects where funding categories limit project scope to specific items, there may be other sources of funding that can be allocated to include bicycle and pedestrian improvements. Contact the region Active Transportation Liaison to determine bicycle and pedestrian facilities appropriate for the project and to determine if alternate funding sources are available for even greater improvements to the bicycle and pedestrian networks along the highway.

DRAFT

Figure 500-18: Right Turn Channelization



506.7 Intersections on Curves and Superelevation

An intersection should not be located within a horizontal curve. Intersections on curves present design challenges that affect superelevation, sight distance, driver comfort and vehicle stability. However, in many existing situations, intersections are present within highway curves and in many of these locations, these connections cannot be effectively relocated. Signalized intersections in curves compound operational problems, as well. Stopping traffic on steep cross slopes determined by main line design superelevation needs is undesirable due to the potential for slippage under ice conditions or potential load shifting on trucks. *Intersection Sight Distance (ISD) should be achieved at all intersections.* **Stopping Sight Distance (SSD) shall meet the minimum requirement.**

When an intersection occurs within a highway curve, the highway superelevation should be kept to a minimum. However, the highway still needs to provide for safe movement of traffic through the intersection at highway speeds. As a result, the designer must balance the superelevation need of traffic on the main line in free flow conditions with operational issues of the intersection. In these types of locations, some designers prefer to merely limit maximum superelevation to 4 percent. However, in some cases, trying to hold the superelevation to 4 percent or less may result in design speeds less than desirable for a specific highway. A ~~better~~ solution is to determine an appropriate superelevation for a specific location based on needs at that location.

At a minimum, the superelevation at an intersection should provide speeds determined from the Comfort Speed matrix shown in Part 300 equal to the desirable design speed. This means that if the design speed for the highway segment is 45 mph, then the comfort speed for the curve at the desired superelevation must be at least 45 mph.

Example:

Using the Suburban Superelevation & Spiral Lengths in Part 300 and a design speed of 45 mph with an 8 degree curve, the design superelevation would be 6 percent. This may be an undesirable condition with a signalized intersection on a curve. An alternative is to use the Comfort Speed values. Entering the table for an 8 degree curve and following across the row until the column for 45 mph is reached returns a 4 percent superelevation. This would reduce the design superelevation by 2 percent and may be an acceptable option.

Reducing superelevation should not compromise the overall geometry of the alignment and subsequently create a new problem while using an alternate superelevation design. **A design exception is required to utilize an alternate superelevation design based on Comfort Speed in relation to Design Speed.** It is critical to ensure that connections on the high side of a superelevated highway curve provide an approach with adequate sight distance. Ideally, intersection sight distance

DRAFT

should be provided. Where this is not feasible or practical, as a minimum, stopping sight distance must be provided.

Another important consideration in designing a road connection on the high side of a horizontal main line curve is the comfort factor for side road traffic. Operation of the main line is the first concern, but it is important to create a comfortable transition across the superelevation for the traffic entering onto the main line. Where possible, keeping superelevation to a minimum on the main line while establishing grades on the connecting road to minimize vertical and lateral movement inside the vehicle entering onto the main line is desirable.

In addition to consideration of vehicles entering from the side road to the main line, main line traffic turning dynamics at intersections on curves must be evaluated as well. Main line turning vehicle dynamics and driver comfort also benefit from minimum superelevation when making turns onto side roads. Main line vertical grade can have great effect on turning dynamics. Negative (downhill) grades in conjunction with horizontal curvature and its respective superelevation can exacerbate turning forces acting on a vehicle. Not only can these forces be uncomfortable for drivers and passengers, in the case of trucks or other vehicles with higher centers of gravity like RVs and buses, these forces can cause loads to shift or, in extreme cases, cause roll over crashes.

When it is necessary to design or improve an intersection located on a horizontal curve, it is important to carefully analyze the interaction of the horizontal curvature and superelevation with all intersecting grades, grade breaks and vertical alignments on both the side road and the main line in relation to anticipated vehicle turning movements and dynamics. It is important to keep these forces and reactions to a minimum and within acceptable levels to ensure safe and effective operation of the intersection.

Intersections on horizontal curves can produce problems for pedestrians as well. Care must be taken to ensure sight lines to crosswalks provide ample vision for drivers to see pedestrians and for pedestrians to see approaching vehicles and adequately evaluate the approach speed and the time needed to cross the roadway.

506.8 Skew Angles

Roadway connections with a state highway should intersect at a 90-degree angle. 90-degree intersections maximize sight distance, improve safety, increase efficiency, and improve operations and safety of bicycle and pedestrian movements. In some situations, however, obtaining a 90-degree intersection is impractical or has excessive cost. Where this is the case, skewed intersections may be unavoidable. Skew angles of up to 30 degrees from perpendicular may be justified. However, the amount of skew should be held to a minimum. Figure 500-27 shows an intersection with excessive skew and the intersection reconfigured to improve skew. Figure 500-28 shows skew configuration with right turn lanes and islands to accommodate pedestrian movements. The presence of large trucks needing to negotiate this type of intersection can have direct effect on the final design layout.

DRAFT

Several factors can help determine the amount of skew that is acceptable for any particular intersection. ***Intersections with all or most of the following characteristics might justify allowing a skew angle of up to 30 degrees.***

- Highway speeds are low, generally 35 mph or less;
- Volumes on both the highway and intersecting roadway are low (at or below left or right turn channelization warrant limits);
- Large vehicle turning movements are minimal;
- Intersecting roadway has a functional classification of minor collector or below, and
- Intersection sight distance is available.

For all other intersections not meeting criteria on this list, the maximum skew should be held to 15 degrees from perpendicular. Refer to the AASHTO 2018 Green Book, Chapter 9 for possible alignment solutions to skewed intersections. Chapter 9, Figure 9-18, page 9-59 provides information on sight triangles as skewed intersections.

506.9 Turning Radii

Turning radii are one of the most important design elements of intersections. The operations, safety, and efficiency of an intersection are controlled by the turning movements. If the turning vehicles are geometrically limited from completing the maneuver properly, the intersection may break down, capacity is limited, and crash potential may increase.

The appropriate design vehicle must be identified prior to designing the intersection turning movements. *Selection of the appropriate design vehicle can sometimes be difficult. Issues to take into consideration in choosing a design vehicle include number and type of trucks, functional classification of the intersecting roadways, surrounding land use, consideration of future changes in land use and traffic, freight route designation, etc.* See Part 200 and Part 300 for additional information on design vehicle selection. After determining the appropriate design vehicle, a decision needs to be made as to the level of design accommodation. In other words, is the intersection radii to be designed for the design vehicle or merely to accommodate the design vehicle? The concept of designing for the design vehicle is to provide a path for the vehicle that is free of encroachments upon other lanes. Providing a design that only accommodates the design vehicle means that some level of encroachment upon other lanes is necessary for the vehicle to make a particular movement (see Figure 500-3). An example of an intersection that would need to be designed for trucks with no encroachment into adjacent lanes would be a stop-controlled intersection with a state highway, the highway being two lane or multi-lane with higher speeds and/or high traffic volumes. If a traffic study concludes that finding a gap in multiple traffic flows is not possible, the intersection would need to be designed for the design vehicle so that the truck driver can turn from his lane into a single lane. *Other factors to consider in turning radii are the effects on pedestrians and bicycles. Large radii create long crossing distances with increased exposure times and*

DRAFT

may add time to signal timing cycles. Large radii can also result in higher speed turns. ***When it is necessary to design the intersection with large radii for larger vehicles, a balance needs to be obtained between the necessary radii and impacts to all intersection users.*** See Section 502.2 for accommodation for design vehicle.

Another item that must be decided is the turning radius of the design vehicle. The turning radius of the design vehicle determines the ease and comfort of making the turning maneuver. The smaller the turning radius, the larger the off-tracking of the vehicle and the slower the speed. Forcing large vehicles to use very small turning radii forces the driver to perform a very slow maneuver that may not be in the best interests of the operation of the intersection. Generally, the radius chosen is in line with the surrounding culture. Tighter radii are chosen for low and/or urban speeds, while larger radii are selected for higher speeds and rural intersections. When designing with tighter radii, it is important to evaluate the impacts of large vehicle off-tracking. ***Large vehicle off-tracking should not occur over pedestrian ramps and sidewalks or interfere with signal or utility pole locations.***

Once the design vehicle is selected and the level of design accommodation determined, then the intersection radii can be designed. Intersection radii should be kept as small as possible to minimize the size of the intersection and the pedestrian crossing distance. ***Any time the design vehicle is larger than a Single Unit (SU) truck or a bus, consider using a two-centered curve.*** Off-tracking templates or automated off-tracking programs should be used to determine the vehicle path. *When using automated off-tracking programs to evaluate intersection radii needs, the vehicle simulation should start from the appropriate lane location (centered within the right-most lane for the design vehicle). Run simulations through the radius in a smooth, natural driving movement without forcing the wheels to turn from a stopped condition. Include body clearance envelopes to account for mirrors and other protruding objects.*

Once this path is identified, a two-centered curve can be developed which closely emulates this path. The designer may need to look at a range of vehicle turning radii and the subsequent intersection designs. This allows the designer to select the best design for the design vehicle while minimizing the size of the intersection. **Edge (curb) returns should not contain angle points or tangent sections.**

Keep the size of intersections to a minimum. When accommodating large trucks, intersection radii can become very large. This can substantially increase the size of the intersection. Larger intersections generally have greater crash potential, are difficult to delineate, can be confusing, require more right-of-way, and significantly increase pedestrian and bicycle crossing times and distances.

506.10 Left Turn Lanes

On some higher volume and higher speed highways, left turning traffic can become a major safety concern, especially on two-lane highways. *On rural highways, left turn lanes should generally only be considered at public road intersections.* The Analysis Procedures Manual

DRAFT

(Transportation Planning and Analysis Unit) discusses citing criteria for installing left turn lanes. ***A left turn lane should be considered in the design when these criteria are met.*** Generally, left turn lanes are not to be constructed for private accesses in rural areas unless the siting criteria are met and installation of a left turn lane will not create additional safety concerns on the highway. A major concern regarding left turn lanes for private access is that successive accesses may require installation of a section of a continuous two way left turn lane (CTWLTL). Using CTWLTLs in rural environments should be discouraged. *Rural CTWLTLs may be considered where needed specifically for safety in short sections or within the boundaries of a rural community.*

As stated above, providing left turn lanes at multiple locations that are spaced closely may create a need for a CTWLTL. It is undesirable to provide a typical section that creates an hour glass shape. This is where a highway is widened to provide a left turn lane, then narrowed back to the original typical section, only to be immediately widened again. This situation should be avoided. ***Left turn lanes in rural areas should be selected where adequate spacing exists to avoid this hourglass problem. Figure 500-31 provides an equation to avoid an hourglass.***

Providing a left turn lane at an intersection will significantly improve the safety of the intersection. Eliminating conflicts between left turning vehicles decelerating or stopping and through traffic is an important safety consideration. ***A left turn lane must be provided at all non-traversable median openings, and they are strongly recommended to be installed at other intersections meeting the installation criteria.*** The left turn lane installation criteria are different for signalized and unsignalized intersections. Refer to Section 507 for Signalized Intersections and Section 508 for Unsignalized Intersections for the appropriate siting criteria. For additional information about siting criteria for left turn lanes, see the ODOT Analysis and Procedures Manual (APM).

Left turn lanes for rural and higher speed locations shall be 12 feet wide plus the appropriate traffic separator width and shy distance when required. For urban locations, see Part 200 and Part 300 for left turn design criteria.

The installation of a traffic separator at urban left turn lane locations is critical when there are access points to adjacent properties along the length of the left turn lane. The separator will protect the left turn lane operation and safety by eliminating the opportunity for vehicles to cross it when entering and exiting adjacent accesses. The width of the traffic separator is determined by several factors. **If the median includes a raised curb design, the traffic separator width shall be a minimum of 4 feet in higher speed locations**. **However, when pedestrians are to be accommodated on the raised portion of the median with separate phases for the crossing maneuver, the raised traffic separator shall be 6 feet minimum in width**. *Medians that use raised curb also need to provide the appropriate shy distance from the curb and adjacent through travel lanes.* The width of paint-striped medians is determined by the design speed of the highway and the type of land use area. **For design speeds of 55 mph or less, the paint-striped median shall be 2 feet and 4 feet for design speeds of 60 mph or greater.** For more information on median design, refer to Part 300, Cross-Section Elements.

DRAFT

Development of left turn lanes should be in conformance with Figure 500-19. However, where the median width is developed non-symmetrically, a reversing curve should be used in lieu of the straight speed tapers. The reversing curve option can reduce the overall widening thereby saving construction costs and possibly saving right of way or significant features. Figure 500-19 depicts the standard left turn channelization design. Figure 500-20 depicts the reversing curve channelization option.

Left turn lanes are striped in accordance with the ODOT ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual. ~~Essentially this means that the reversing~~Reversing curve entry taper shall be used for:

1. All dual left turn lanes;
2. All left turn lanes developed from sections without medians or with narrow medians, and
3. All left turn lanes located within wide median sections or CTWLTLs that have design speeds greater than 45 mph.

It is critical to the operation of intersections to provide adequate storage length for left turning vehicles out of the through traffic lanes. **At a minimum, provide 100 feet of storage.** ***The Region Traffic Engineering Unit and the Analysis Procedures Manual (APM) should be consulted to determine the appropriate storage length for specific intersections***. For specific analysis procedure questions or interpretation of the APM or for complex projects requiring additional study, contact the ODOT Transportation Planning and Analysis Unit (TPAU) for guidance or technical help on the particular project or methodology.

In some instances, dual left turn lanes may need to be considered. **When designing dual left turn lanes, there must be dual receiving lanes on the connecting roadway with adequate length downstream prior to any merge points.** The designer must determine the appropriate design vehicles to use for side-by-side operation through the turning movement. *In rare locations, like at freeway ramp terminals leading to truck stops or warehousing districts, the design may need to be two WB-67 vehicles making the turn simultaneously. However, in most locations, a WB-67 and an SU vehicle side-by-side is adequate for design. In other locations where truck volumes are low, an SU vehicle and a passenger vehicle may be sufficient*.

DRAFT

Figure 500-19: Left-Turn Channelization

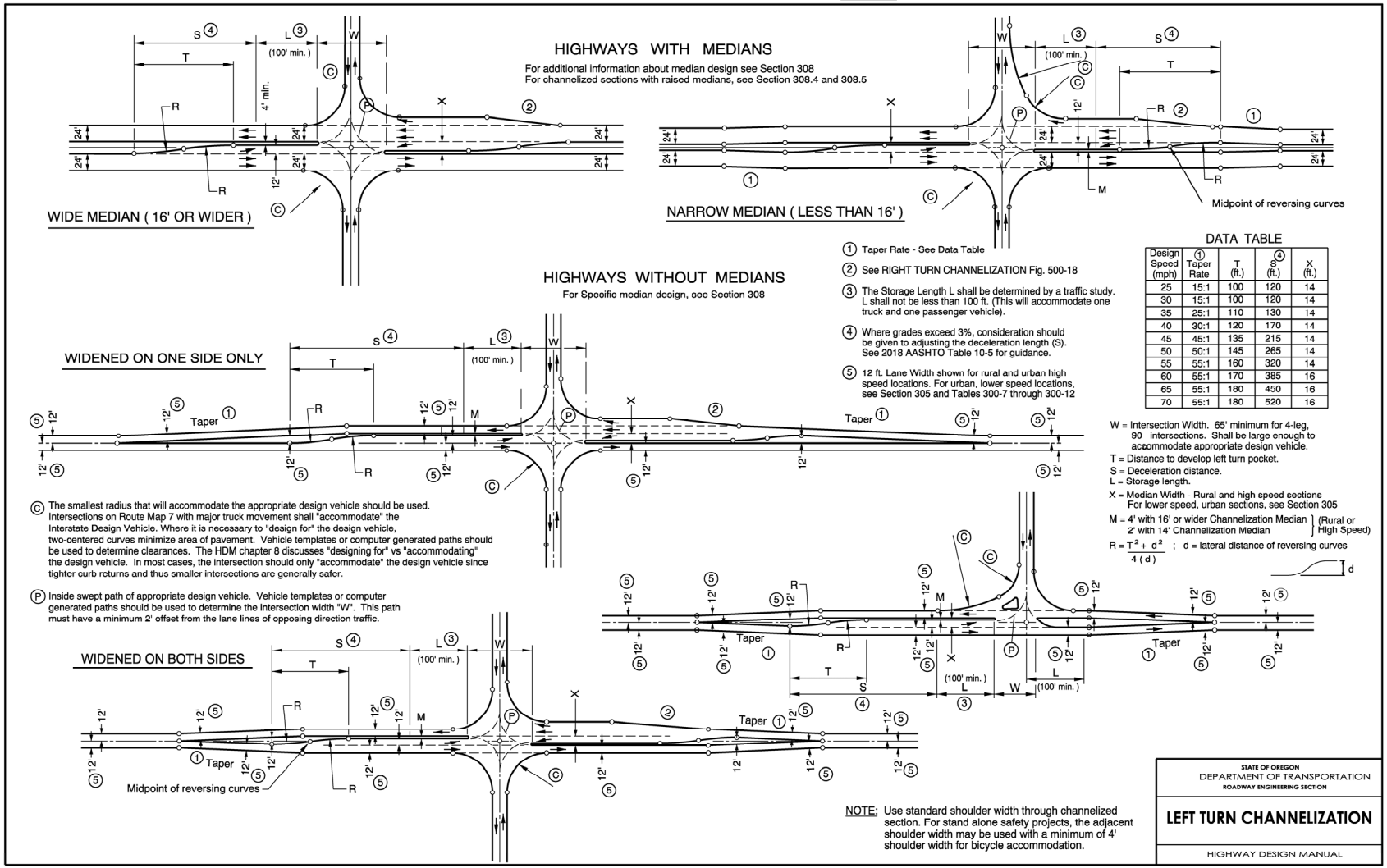
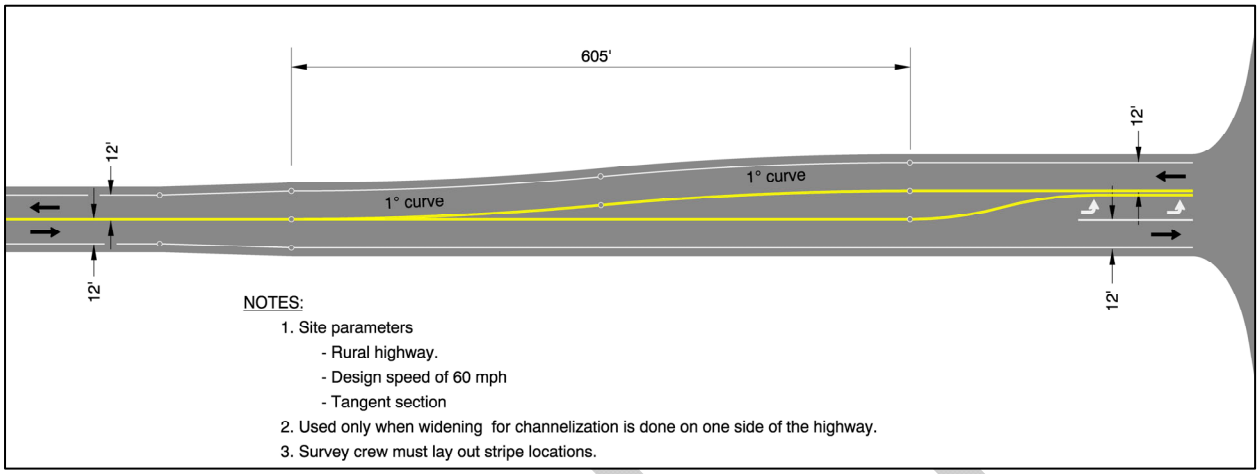


Figure 500-20: Reversing Curve Option for Left-Turn Channelization – Rural Highway



506.11 Right Turn Lanes

Similar to left turns, right turning traffic may sometimes create a safety issue at some intersections. However, right turn traffic does not normally need to come to a complete stop and wait for an opposing gap to complete the maneuver, except in the case of a pedestrian crossing. Therefore, the safety implications are not as significant as with left turning vehicles. At some intersections, the volumes on the highway and the right turning traffic may be significant enough to create a safety problem. The Analysis Procedures Manual (Transportation Planning and Analysis Unit) discusses siting criteria for installing a right turn lane. ***A right turn lane should be considered only at public road intersections that meet these criteria. Right turn lanes should not be used for private drives unless the access has significant turning volume, a specific crash problem could be corrected by utilizing a right turn lane, or the access is within a rural community area and meets the criteria from the Analysis Procedures Manual.***

Speed differential between right turning traffic and through traffic can create significant safety problems at intersections. To reduce this conflict, installation of right turn lanes may be appropriate at some intersections. Right turn lanes also help improve traffic operations and mobility standards at some intersections. *Installation of right turn lanes should be considered at intersections that meet the siting criteria. For information about siting criteria for right turn lanes, see the ODOT Analysis and Procedures Manual (APM).*

(https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Pages/APM.aspx)

Not all intersections that meet the siting criteria should have right turn lanes installed. In urban situations, only significant public roads and large private approaches should be considered for installation of a right turn lane. A proliferation of right turn lanes along an

urban arterial is undesirable for bicycles and pedestrians, creates an aesthetically unpleasing typical section, and may not improve safety throughout the section. Multiple right turn lanes could, in effect, create a continuous right turn lane, which is not desirable on state highways.

Right turn lanes should be designed in conformance with Figure 500-18. ~~Preferably, a~~*A* ***right turn lane should be 12 feet wide*** ~~with a shoulder of 3 feet or 4 feet for curbed or non-curbed sections respectively.~~. This ~~allows for~~provides additional space for larger turning vehicles. In some instances, right turn lanes could be considered a turning roadway. ***When the shoulder also serves as the pedestrian access route, the minimum shoulder width is 4 feet. On rural highways, this is reduced to 3 feet for curbed sections if a sidewalk is provided. For curbed urban highways with sidewalks, the need for additional shoulder/shy width is determined based on the context in Part 300.***

Turning roadways are usually thought of in relation to interchange ramps. ~~However, according~~According to AASHTO, turning roadways include interchange ramps and intersection curves for right-turning vehicles. The AASHTO publication, ~~"~~*A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2011*~~"~~ has extensive information on turning roadway design including sections on minimum radii, control radii, corner islands, minimum edge of traveled way, lane configuration and swept paths. ~~However, in~~In urban locations where space is constrained by the built environment, flexibility is necessary when laying out right turn lanes. *For urban locations, the dimensions in Figure 500-18 may be modified to meet context needs for flexibility.* See Part 200 for context information and Part 300, Sections ~~307 - 312~~–305.1 - 305.6 for urban right-turn lane design criteria.

When designing an urban right turn lane, bicyclist movements need to be accommodated. The goal for highway projects is to provide the highest appropriate level bicycle and pedestrian facilities possible within project scope and funding at a given location. It is desirable to connect new and existing networks while projects are being constructed. ***Contact the region Active Transportation Liaison to determine bicycle and pedestrian facilities appropriate for the project and to determine if alternate funding may be available.***

Where minimum bicycle lanes adjacent to the travel lane are existing or proposed, add a bike lane to the left of the right turn lane. This helps reduce conflicts between right turning vehicles and through cyclists. In addition, providing the bike lane between the through travel lane and the right turn lane ~~better~~ aligns the cyclist with the downstream shoulder or continuation of the established bike lane. Creating a bike lane between the through lane and the right turn lane establishes the conflict point further back from the intersection where the paths of right turning vehicles and cyclists must cross. ***Care must be taken to balance bicycle speeds, right turning vehicle speeds and operational queue lengths in the right turn lane to establish the appropriate bike and motor vehicle crossing location.*** Part 900 provides guidance for designing bicycle facilities. In this conflict area, the bike lane is generally marked with short skip striping. The MUTCD and FHWA now allow this area to be colored green inside of the skip stripe to draw more attention to the conflict area. Region Traffic and Roadway sections, ODOT bicycle and pedestrian coordinators and the ODOT ETSB Roadway Engineering Section should be consulted for

DRAFT

current guidance if it is determined that using this treatment in this location would be beneficial.

The standard width for a bike lane between a through travel lane and a right turn lane is 5 feet. This width is narrower than a standard bike lane against a curb. ~~However, it is a minimum width and if~~If the bike lane is too wide, it may appear to vehicle drivers as an added lane. Also, width added to a bike lane increases the overall width of the roadway section that must be crossed by pedestrians. Width of the right turn lane is critical as well. *The preferred width is 15 feet (12' lane, 3' shoulder) from the adjacent travel lane or bike lane to curb for most right turn lanes.* The additional 3 feet provides space for truck off-tracking and minimizes the need for a right turning truck to encroach on the adjacent lane when making the turn. In some instances, a 3-foot shoulder may not be adequate and additional width might be needed. However, that additional width has consequences. Right turn lane width in conjunction with bicycle lane width is a balance between providing enough space for the respective vehicle's lane use but minimizing the crossing distance for pedestrians at an intersection within the space available. *In urban locations, narrower than preferred right turn lanes may be appropriate. Part 200 and Part 300 provide design criteria for urban cross-sections and urban right-turn lanes.*

In some instances, dual right turn lanes may need to be considered. If used, dual right turn lanes need to be carefully evaluated for overall performance and impacts. When designing dual right turn lanes, there must be two lanes on the connecting roadway to turn into and there must be adequate length provided downstream before any lanes merge. The designer also must determine the appropriate design vehicles to use for side-by-side operation through the turning movement. *In rare locations, like at freeway ramp terminals leading to truck stops or warehousing districts, that may need to be two WB-67 vehicles making the turn simultaneously. However, in most locations, a WB-67 and an SU vehicle side-by-side is adequate for design. In other locations where truck volumes are low, an SU vehicle and a passenger vehicle may be sufficient. When considering dual right turn lanes as an option, consult the Region Traffic Section for input.* Dual right turn lanes are also difficult for pedestrians and bicyclists to navigate. Part 900 and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide provide information in regard to bicycle and pedestrian accommodation at dual right turn lanes. Consult the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer or the project resource for active transportation for guidance on design alternatives.

506.12 Deceleration & Acceleration Lanes

Deceleration lanes are encouraged at intersections and required at interchanges. Deceleration at an interchange can look similar to a standard right turn lane or a freeway exit ramp. *Each situation must be evaluated and analyzed to determine the appropriate treatment.* Figure 500-18 should be used for all right turn deceleration lanes at interchanges. The information contained in Part 600 can be used to determine acceptable exit ramp designs.

DRAFT

Acceleration lanes should generally only be used at interchanges on rural expressways. Acceleration lanes at at-grade accesses or intersections may not be appropriate. ***Acceleration lanes should only be used where they will not be influenced by downstream intersections or accesses. At-grade intersections and access locations may include acceleration lanes only where access management spacing standards are met, the type of turning movements are considered, and where an engineering analysis shows they will operate safely.*** Design guidance and criteria for at-grade intersections are found in Section 506.13 and Section 506.14.

For freeway style interchanges, freeway type acceleration lanes are necessary. For jug handle and at-grade acceleration lanes, the parallel type shown in Section 506.13 may be most appropriate. Part 600 and the AASHTO Green Book provides guidance for determining the appropriate acceleration lane length. The length may need to be increased when a significant volume of truck traffic is using the merge lane or where high volumes are merging into a single lane.

506.13 At-Grade Right Turn Acceleration Lanes

At-grade intersections generally should not have short tapers or acceleration lanes constructed for vehicles entering the state highway from a crossroad or another state highway. *Acceleration lanes are generally only provided at grade separated facilities. However, in some situations, acceleration lanes may be justified.* ***The following criteria outlines where at-grade right turn acceleration lanes can be considered.*** **All of the criteria must be satisfied and requires joint approval from the State Traffic Engineer and State Roadway Engineer through the design exception process.**

- The posted speed on the main highway shall be 45 MPH or greater.
- The V/C ratio of the right-turn movement without the acceleration lane shall exceed the maximum value listed in Tables 6 and 7 of the OHP for the corresponding highway category and location.
    a. Exception 2a: If trucks represent at least 10 percent of all right-turning vehicles entering the highway, then the V/C criteria may be waived.
    b. Exception 2b: If substandard sight distance exists at an intersection or right-turning vehicles must enter the highway on an ascending grade of greater than 3 percent, then the V/C criteria may be waived.
    c. Exception 2c: If crash data in the vicinity of the intersection shows a history of crashes at or beyond the intersection attributed to right-turning vehicles entering the highway, then the V/C criteria may be waived.
- The peak hour volume of right-turning vehicles from the side street onto the state highway shall be at least 10 vehicles/hour for Rural Expressways and 50 vehicles/hour for all other highways.

DRAFT

- **No other access points or reservations of access shall exist on both sides of the highway within the design length, taper, and downstream from the end of the taper within the decision sight distance, based on the design speed of the highway.**

    a. Exception 4a: **If positive separation between opposing directions of traffic exist such as raised medians or concrete barriers, then access control is only needed in the direction of the proposed acceleration lane.**

The State Traffic Engineer shall determine if a right-turn acceleration lane proposal meets the above criteria. Proposals are submitted to the State Traffic Engineer from the region and include an engineering investigation with data supporting the above criteria and a drawing encompassing the intersection and design length of the acceleration lane showing all access points and reservations of access to the highway. Only proposals for right-turn acceleration lanes from public streets should be considered. If the State Traffic Engineer determines that a right-turn acceleration lane proposal meets the above criteria, the proposal will be forwarded to the State Roadway Engineer for consideration of design standards. All right-turn acceleration lane proposals shall require the joint approval of the State Traffic Engineer and State Roadway Engineer.

Special consideration is given to cyclists and pedestrians. Acceleration lanes create an unexpected condition for both pedestrians and cyclists. Every reasonable effort must be made to create conditions that make the crossing safer and easier for pedestrians and cyclists. **The acceleration lane shall be designed in accordance with Figure 500-21 "Right Turn Acceleration Lane from At-Grade Intersection".**

Free-flow acceleration lanes may be considered in rural or suburban areas provided the turning radius is tightened and the angle of approach is kept as close to a right angle as possible. These combined elements will force right-turning drivers to slow down and look ahead, where pedestrians and bicyclists may be present, before turning and accelerating onto the roadway.

DRAFT

Figure 500-21: Right Turn Acceleration Lane from at Grade Intersection

RIGHT TURN ACCELERATION LANE FROM AT GRADE INTERSECTION

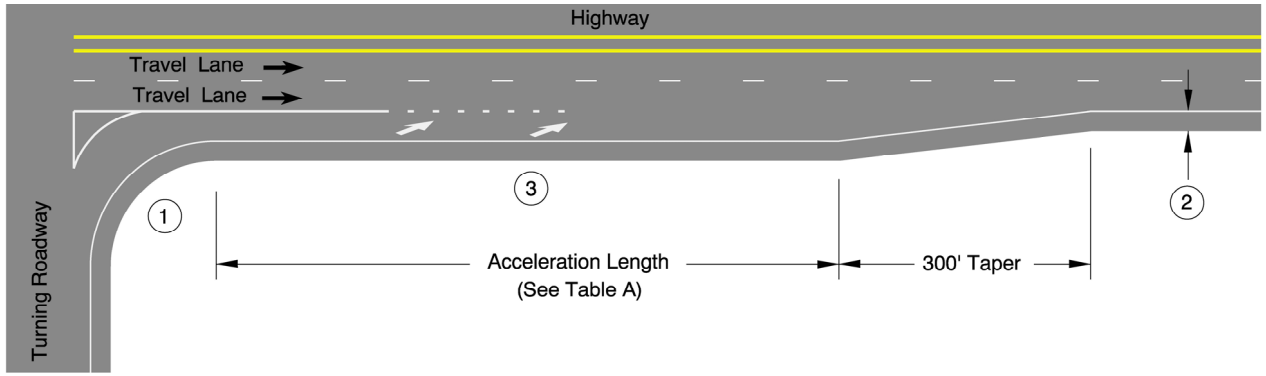


TABLE A
MINIMUM ACCELERATION LENGTH

Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Design Speed of Turning Roadway	
	Stop Condition	15 mph
50	720	660
55	960	900
60	1200	1140
65	1410	1350
70	1620	1560

TABLE B
MAINLINE GRADE AJUSTMENT FACTORS

Design Speed of Highway (mph)	% Grade	Upgrade	Downgrade
50	3% to less than 5%	1.3	0.65
55		1.35	0.625
60		1.4	0.6
65		1.45	0.6
70		1.5	0.6
50	5% and over	1.5	0.55
55		1.6	0.525
60		1.7	0.5
65		1.85	0.5
70		2.0	0.5

NOTES:

(1) Radius shall accomodate design vehicles, yet minimize pedestrian crossing distance. Compound radii are recommended for larger design vehicles. Radii are measured to the edge of travel lane or face of curb.

(2) Design shoulder width as required per Highway Design Manual

(3) Use Table B to determine acceleration lenght adjustment due to grade.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING SECTION

RIGHT TURN ACCELERATION LANE FROM AT GRADE INTERSECTION

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

506.14 Median Acceleration Lanes

For ODOT purposes, a median acceleration lane is a lane added to the median of a roadway at an un-signalized intersection to allow left turning vehicles from a side road to gain speed and merge with main line traffic. Median acceleration lanes may seem like a reasonable solution to left turn problems onto busy, high-speed roadways and, in some locations, they may be an acceptable feature. However, their use should be reserved for locations with specific needs. Improper installation of a median acceleration lane may create unanticipated problems greater than the problems the installation is attempting to solve. ***Any location where a median acceleration lane is proposed must be analyzed carefully before a median acceleration lane is considered to be appropriate.*** ~~Overall, there is little definitive research or information available on the use or effectiveness of median acceleration lanes.~~ The location is of critical importance to the effective function of a median acceleration lane. *Site specific analysis is paramount in determining the appropriateness of installing a median acceleration lane.*

Median acceleration lanes function best on rural, multi-lane, free flowing roadways with ample median width and decision sight distance to accommodate not only the turning movements of all vehicle types, but to also provide the acceleration lane itself. ***Median width must be provided over a long enough distance to allow the accelerating driver to choose a gap in the traffic stream and merge smoothly prior to the end of the median acceleration lane.*** Median acceleration lane length will likely need to be longer than typical right side acceleration lane length to ensure adequate, comfortable and safe merge maneuvers into the traffic stream. *Additional run-out length should be provided downstream of the median acceleration lane taper. This will provide a "bail out" area or escape route if no adequate gap is available for the accelerating vehicle in the main line traffic stream.* **Median acceleration lanes are not always appropriate for two lane roadways on the state highway system and ~~shall not be installed on state highways without~~requires approval from the State Traffic and State Roadway Engineer ~~approvals~~.** Figure 500-22 and Figure 500-23 provide information about Median Acceleration Lane layout.

Although not recommended, it may be possible to install a median acceleration lane on some limited access, divided, urban arterials or expressways with posted speeds of 45 mph or greater. However, this type of installation must be considered carefully. ***Median width and intersection spacing must be appropriate to allow the acceleration lane to function.*** **In addition, there shall be no right-side access points to the main line highway along the length of the median acceleration lane or within decision sight distance of the left side merge taper.** Right side accesses along a section of roadway with a median acceleration lane on the left side create the scenario of the main line traffic being impacted from both sides of the roadway at the same time. Depending on the location, low-volume access points may be allowed with a design exception. **Median acceleration lanes shall not be installed in locations with posted speeds below 45 mph.** When speeds are below 45 mph, the differential of an accelerating vehicle and the traffic stream are not as great, and a median acceleration lane ~~does~~may not provide added benefit.

DRAFT

As discussed in the preceding paragraphs, in limited situations, a median acceleration lane may provide an incremental improvement to a multi-lane expressway by providing left turning vehicles an opportunity to accelerate and reduce speed differential before entering the traffic stream. This is particularly true where there are large numbers of left turning trucks. Where sufficient gaps exist in the main line traffic stream, a median acceleration lane is not needed and the cost of installation as well as potential environmental impacts of adding new impervious surface may not be justified. However, where there are few gaps in the main traffic stream and there is a high demand for left turning trucks or other large vehicles like RVs, motor homes or buses from the side road, a median acceleration lane may serve as an acceptable interim solution. ***A median acceleration lane is not a typical design. Contact ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff for information regarding the installation of median acceleration lanes.*** **Before any median acceleration lane can be installed on the state highway system, approval from the State Traffic and State Roadway Engineers must be obtained.**

Consideration may be given to install a median acceleration lane when all of the following criteria are met:

1. A multi-lane, divided expressway or arterial highway with a posted speed of 45 mph or greater
2. Adequate Median width to allow for desirable dimensions as shown in Figure 500-22 and Figure 500-23
3. Large left turning volume from side road – particularly truck volumes and recreational vehicle
4. Insufficient gaps or ~~inadequate~~restricted intersection sight distance (Particularly AASHTO B1, Right Side)
5. No right side accesses onto main line along the length of the acceleration lane or within decision sight distance of the end of the taper
6. Significant crash history – particularly truck crashes

DRAFT

Table 500-3: Desirable Length of Full Width Median Acceleration Lane

Posted Speed (mph)	2/3 of Posted Speed (mph)	Desirable Length of Full Width Median Acceleration Lane, Rounded (ft.)
45	30	810
50	34	995
55	37	1203
60	40	1435
65	44	1680

Note: Desirable Length Based on 200lb/hp Truck Accelerating to 2/3 posted speed
Minimum Median Acceleration Lane Length – 810'

The 200 pound per horsepower truck equates to the 85 percent truck in the national fleet based on studies reported in NCHRP Report 505, Review of Truck Characteristics as Factors in Roadway Design published in 2003. Table 29 in NCHRP Report 505 lists average acceleration capabilities for several different weight to power ratio classes of trucks. For the 200 pound per horsepower vehicles, the average acceleration listed is 1.22 ft./s^2. The following formula for uniform acceleration was used to determine the desirable lengths for Median Acceleration Lanes listed in Table 500-3.

$$V_f^2 = V_i^2 + 2AS$$

Where:

V_f = Final speed achieved at the end of distance S, ft./sec.

V_i = Initial speed, ft./sec. for Table 500-3, $V_i = 0$

A = Acceleration, ft./sec^2. A=1.22 ft./sec^2

S = Distance to accelerate to 2/3 of posted speed, ft.

DRAFT

Figure 500-22: Median Acceleration Lane - Narrow Median

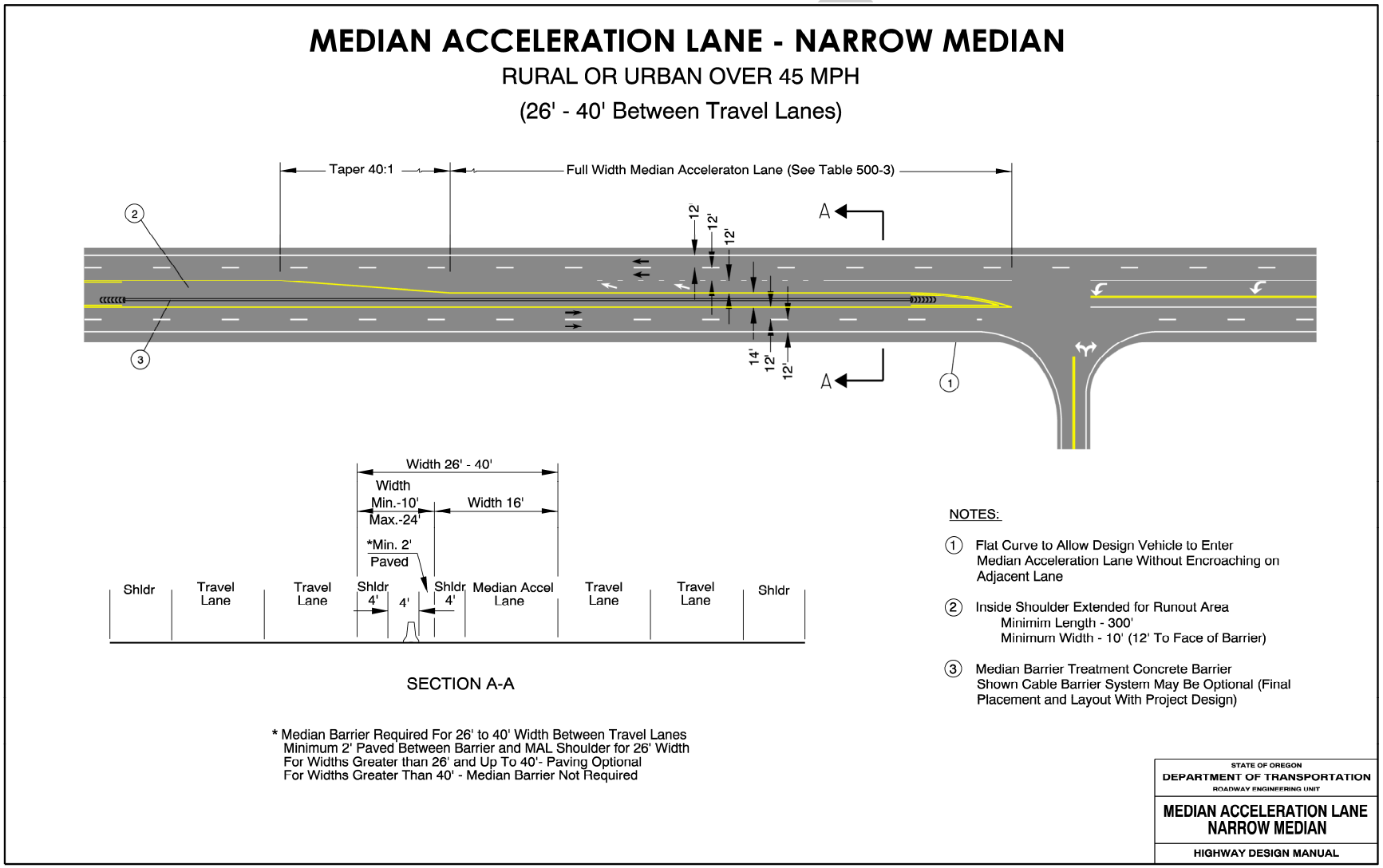
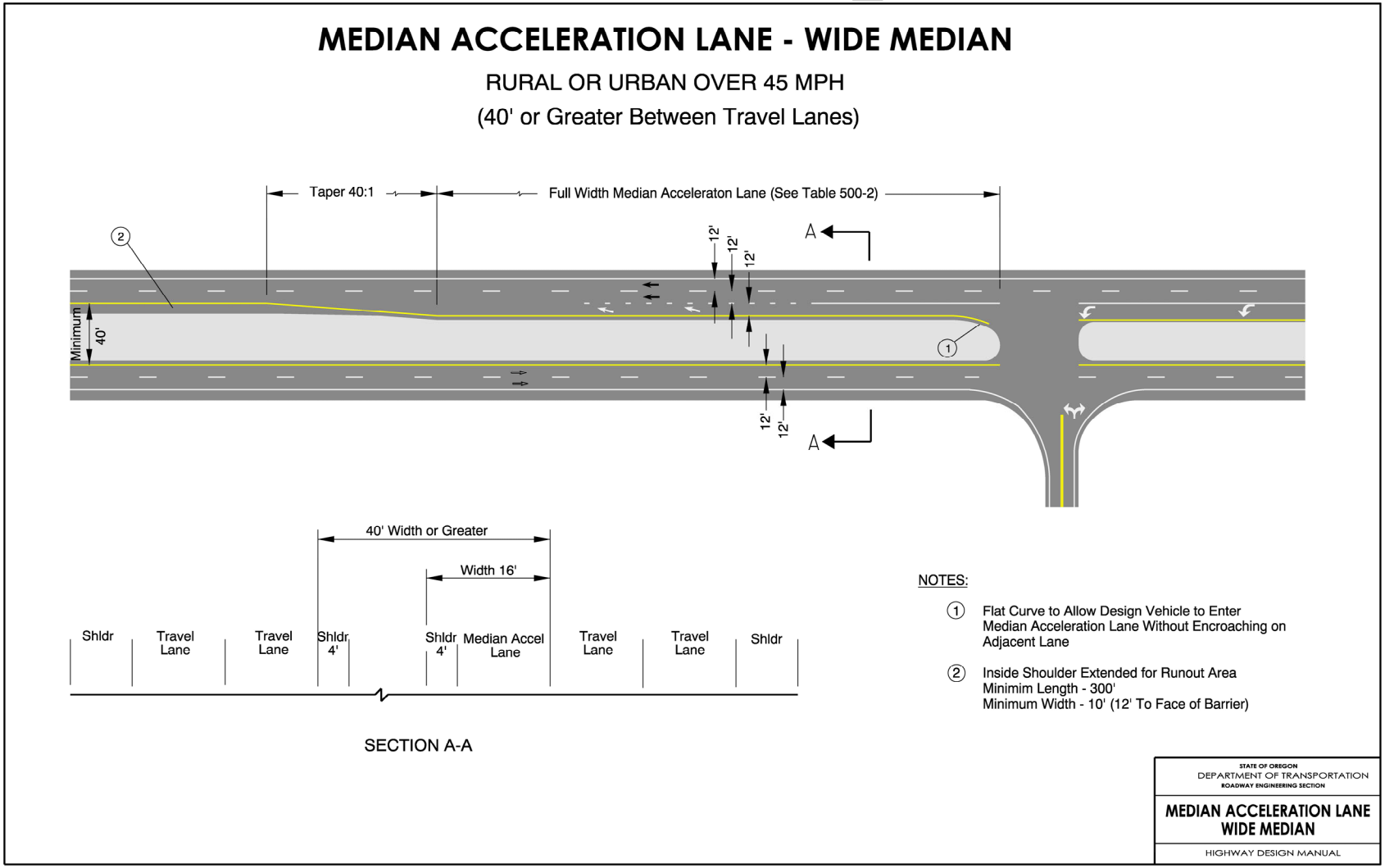


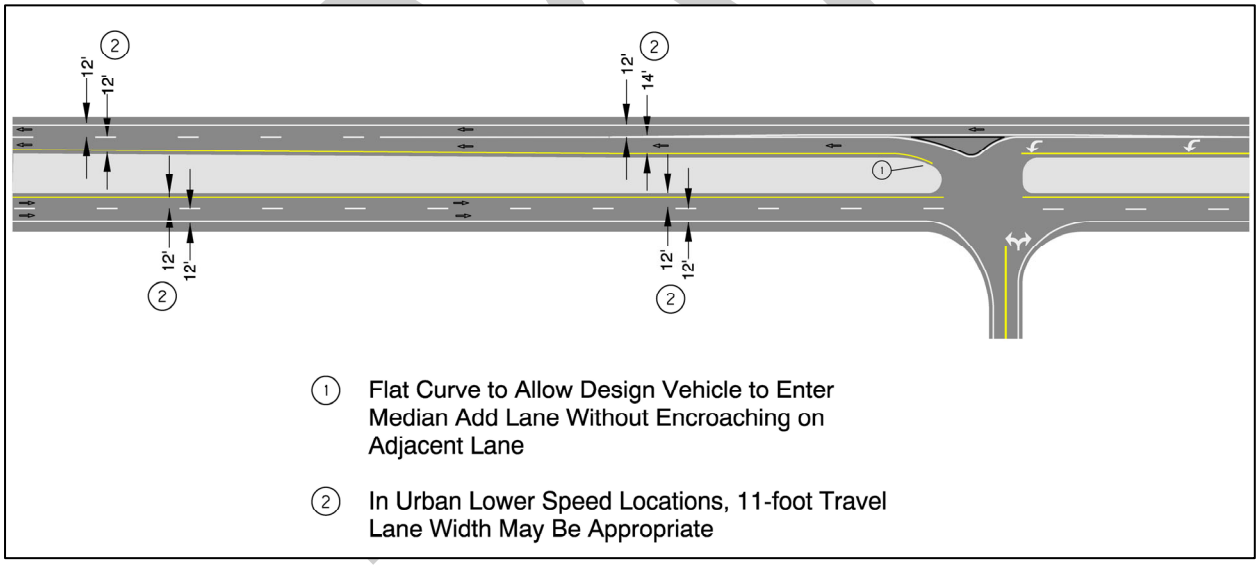
Figure 500-23: Median Acceleration Lane - Wide Median



506.15 Left Turn Add Lanes

A left turn add lane is a lane provided for vehicles turning left from a side road to accelerate and enter the main line traffic stream in a designated through lane. *A left turn add lane should not be confused with a median acceleration lane. Although they may serve similar functions, there is a distinct difference. A median acceleration lane requires the left turning vehicle to merge into the through lane of the main line traffic stream. Whereas a left turn add lane creates a new and separate through lane for the left turning vehicle to enter that is independent of the existing through travel lane on the main line highway.* This eliminates the need for the turning vehicle to merge into the existing through lane and creates a completely different operational characteristic from a median acceleration lane that reduces impacts on traffic in the existing through lane. ***Some form of physical separation between the add lane and the existing through travel lane should be provided for a length necessary to minimize speed differential between travel lanes. The first 600 feet should be a positive physical separation in the form of a raised separator or barrier, while the remaining length can be less physically separating in the form of rumble strips or a wide, solid paint stripe***. Figure 500-24 illustrates a left turn add lane configuration.

Figure 500-24: Left Turn Add Lane



506.16 Channelization Islands

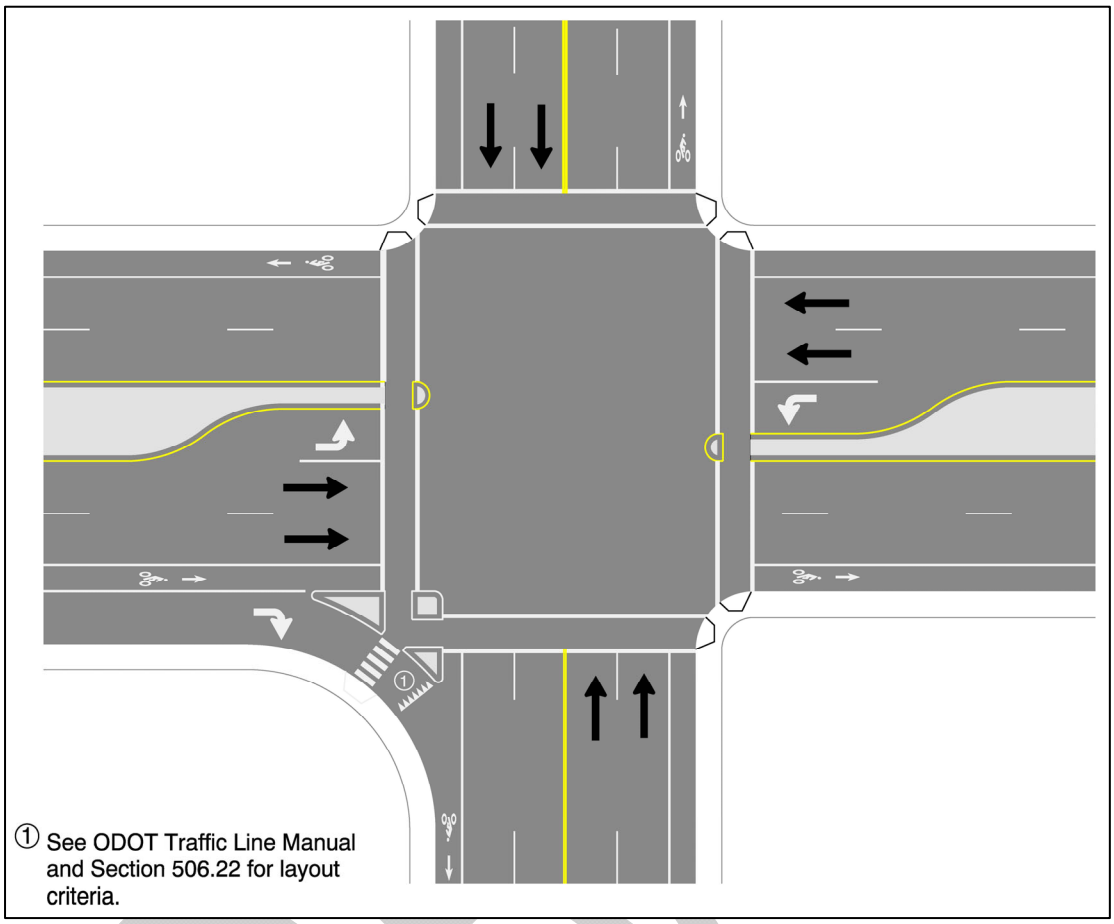
Channelization islands help to direct turning traffic through an intersection. Channelization islands are a tool to help decrease the exposed crossing area of very large intersections. These islands can provide a refuge area for crossing pedestrians and offer a location for signal poles and sign posts. *Where channelization islands are to accommodate poles or sign posts, the island should ideally have an area of at least 100 square feet.* ***The minimum area shown on RD710 is 75 square feet.***

Channelization islands are also useful for decreasing the crossing distance of pedestrians. When intersections are very wide, pedestrians must cross very long distances which increases their exposure time to traffic, reduces safety, and reduces efficiency of the signal due to the time necessary to cover the crossing maneuver. *The designer should consider using channelization islands where crossing distances are greater than 6 lanes wide.* (Section 308 discusses raised medians and this section (Section 506.16) provides additional guidance on channelization islands for bicyclists and pedestrians). ***Channelization islands should be designed in conformance with Figure 500-25.*** Part 800 provides additional information regarding pedestrian crossings and channelization islands. Part 900 provides information regarding protected intersections and channelization layout.

In some rural locations, it may be advantageous to provide a moderate to higher speed right turn movement at major intersections. However, care must be taken at these locations to adequately provide facilities that protect pedestrians. Channelization islands could also be used in these instances. ***When channelization islands are installed at high speed, rural locations, care must be taken to place these islands with adequate offset distance from the through travel lane.*** *Figure 500-31 provides layout details for channelization islands.* **Adding raised channelization islands to intersections must be in compliance with ORS 366.215 and freight mobility needs.** See ODOT guidance document "Guidelines for Implementation of ORS 366.215, No Reduction of Vehicle-Carrying Capacity" and the "ODOT Highway Mobility Operations Manual".

DRAFT

Figure 500-25: Typical Multi-Lane Channelized Intersection



506.17 Curb Extensions

Curb extensions, also known as "bulb-outs," are good tools to help reduce the pedestrian crossing distances in areas with on-street parking. Curb extensions also increase pedestrian visibility, help control vehicular speeds, and give a "downtown look" to an urban area. Curb extensions are generally appropriate within slower speed compact areas, such as Special Transportation Areas (STAs) or Traditional Downtown/Commercial Business Districts. Curb extensions are generally considered at intersections, but they can also be utilized with great benefit at mid-block pedestrian crossings as well.

The curb extensions still must be designed to accommodate the appropriate design vehicle. However, due to the speed, traffic characteristics, and importance of alternative modes in these areas, the level of accommodation of large vehicles is expected to be minimal. ***Curb extension design at proposed locations must meet the process and criteria outlined in ORS 366.215 and must meet freight mobility needs.*** See ODOT guidance document "Guidelines for Implementation of ORS

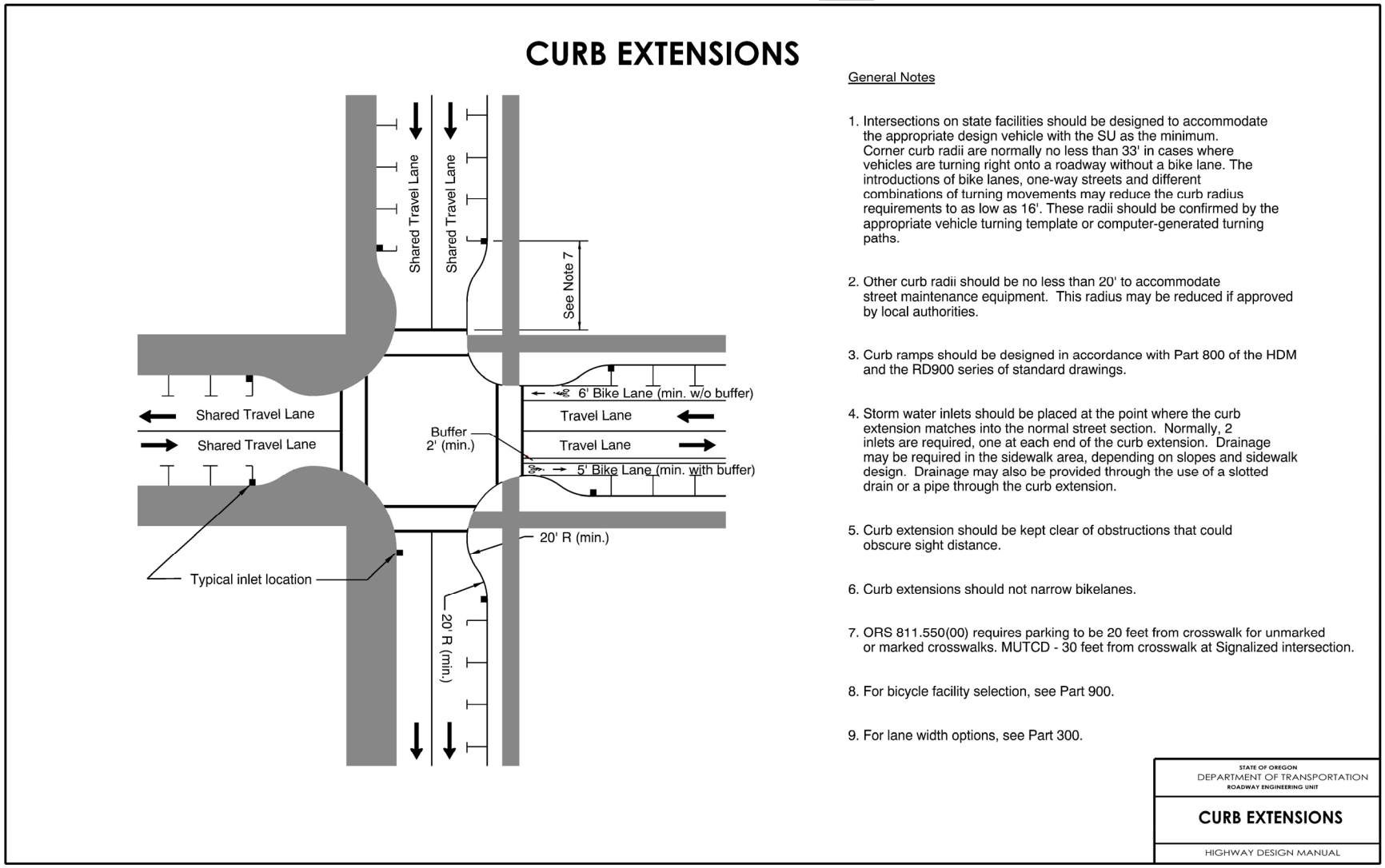
366.215, No Reduction of Vehicle-Carrying Capacity" and the "ODOT Highway Mobility Operations Manual".

Curb extensions should generally be constructed to the full width of the on-street parking. *However, when no bike lane is present, the curbside travel lane should be at least 14 feet wide from the left side lane line to the face of the curb at the maximum extension point.* Each curb extension design is different. Figure 500-26 contains several design concepts for consideration. Special consideration is required in many situations for addressing drainage in conjunction with curb extensions, especially in retrofit situations. **Curb extensions shall not block and should not narrow bicycle lanes. Adequate drainage shall be provided along the curb line with no ponding of water at the curb ramp entrance.** For additional information on curb extensions, see Part 800 for pedestrian design guidance.

ORS 811.550(17) requires parking to be 20 feet from a marked or unmarked crosswalk and the MUTCD indicates parking should be 30 feet from the crosswalk at signalized intersections. Curb extensions can be used to provide the pedestrian benefits listed previously in this section as well as provide compliance for the required distance from crosswalks to on street parking.

DRAFT

Figure 500-26: Curb Extensions



506.18 Bicycle and Pedestrian Needs

The design of intersections must consider the needs of bicyclists and pedestrians. The level and amount of design effort required to ensure adequate design for these modes will vary among locations. ***Inclusive intersection designs keep the crossing distances and pedestrian exposure to a minimum. Pedestrians and motorists must be able to see each other clearly and understand how the other will proceed through the intersection.*** This can sometimes be difficult at major intersections that accommodate multiple turn lanes. When intersections become excessively large and complex, pedestrian safety ~~is often at a higher risk.~~could be compromised if not adequately balanced with the needs of other modes. The roadway designer should provide mitigation measures to reduce the crossing distance ~~to balance impacts~~ for vulnerable roadway users.

Providing pedestrians with a crossing that can be completed in one movement is preferred. *However, when pedestrians must cross an excessive number of traffic lanes or a combination of excessive traffic lanes and a large skew angle, consider an appropriately sized pedestrian median refuge to enable pedestrians to cross the street in two phases.* A right turn channelization island can also be considered to reduce the pedestrians' exposure to both through and right turning vehicles. Curb extensions are a treatment available to reduce the crossing distance for roadways with on-street parking. Median refuges and right turn channelization islands may be more appropriate in suburban locations, and curb extensions may be a more appropriate treatment in more compact areas such as STAs or Commercial Business Districts. However, any of these treatments could apply in a multitude of situations. A general rule of thumb is to consider pedestrian crossing treatments when the crossing distance exceeds 90 feet in typical urban environments such as Urban Business Areas (UBAs) or Commercial Corridors and 72 feet in compact densely developed areas such as STAs, Traditional Downtown, or Urban Mix contexts.

Use protected intersection design to provide safer intersection operations for all users. See Part 900 for guidance on protected intersections.

ADA requirements shall be met in every intersection design. Issues such as curb ramps, location of pedestrian and signal poles, obstructions, fixed objects, drainage, etc., need to be reviewed and designed to be accessible and accommodate all roadway and intersection users. Part 800 for Pedestrian Design and Part 900 for Bicycle Facility design provides additional information on intersection accommodation.

506.19 Intersection Design Affecting Pedestrians

There are several aspects of intersection design that impact the safety, comfort, and access needs of pedestrians. For each identified issue, measures that can be used to mitigate these effects will be proposed. In addition to the issues discussed below, see Part 800 for additional information

DRAFT

about pedestrian design for intersections. The ODOT Traffic Manual is another resource available to roadway designers. Traffic control options for intersections are covered by the ODOT Traffic Section. Coordinate with the Region Traffic Section and the ETSB, Traffic Engineering Services Unit staff.

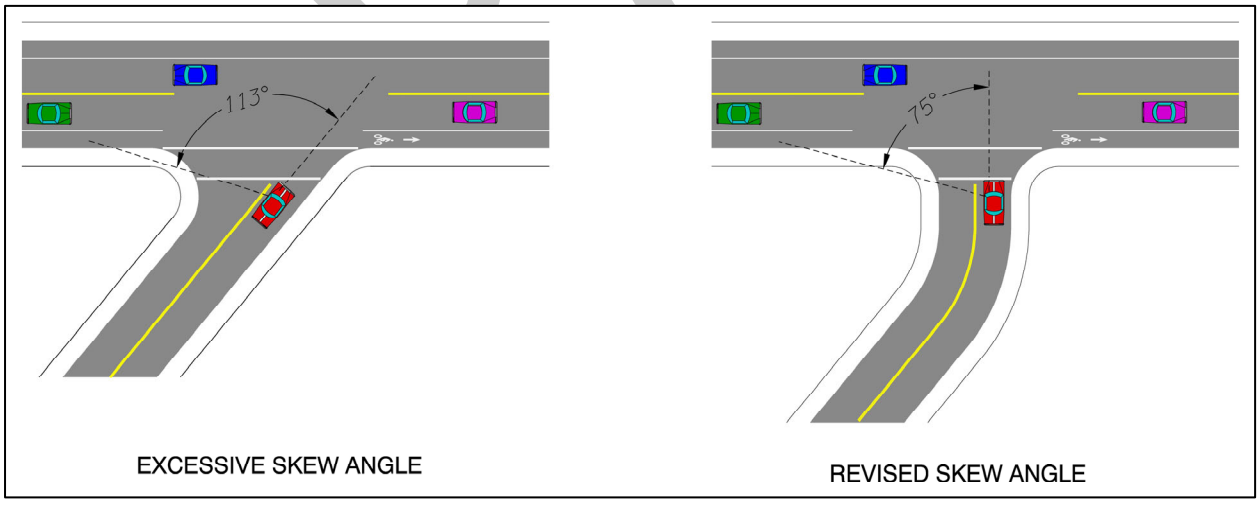
506.20 Excessive Skews

Skewed approaches have several negative effects for pedestrians:

1. They make the crossing longer;
2. They enable motorists to make a turn at high speeds;
3. They force entering motorists to look backwards for conflicts, so that a pedestrian approaching from the other direction is out of sight, and
4. They place crossing pedestrians with their backs to approaching traffic.

The best way to mitigate for a skew is to reconfigure the intersection at, or close to, a right angle. If sufficient right of way is not available for total reconfiguration, the negative effects can be mitigated with a curb extension in the flat-angle corner(s). Figure 500-27 shows an example of an intersection with excessive skew and the intersection reconfigured with improve skew angle. If a curb extension isn't feasible, then use the tightest possible radius in the flat-angle corner(s).

Figure 500-27: Skew Angle and Field of View



506.21 Long Crosswalks

Long crosswalks are a problem for all road users for several reasons:

1. The pedestrian is exposed to conflicts longer;
2. It is difficult for some people to see pedestrian signals if they are too far away, and
3. The capacity of the intersection is reduced if the signal cycle is governed by the pedestrian crossing time. ***However, operational needs must be balanced against pedestrian access needs and pedestrian safety.***

Several methods may be considered, individually or jointly, to reduce crosswalk lengths:

1. Narrow the cross-section;
2. Provide curb-extensions on streets with parking;
3. Reduce the skew of the intersecting street, and
4. Minimize curb radius.

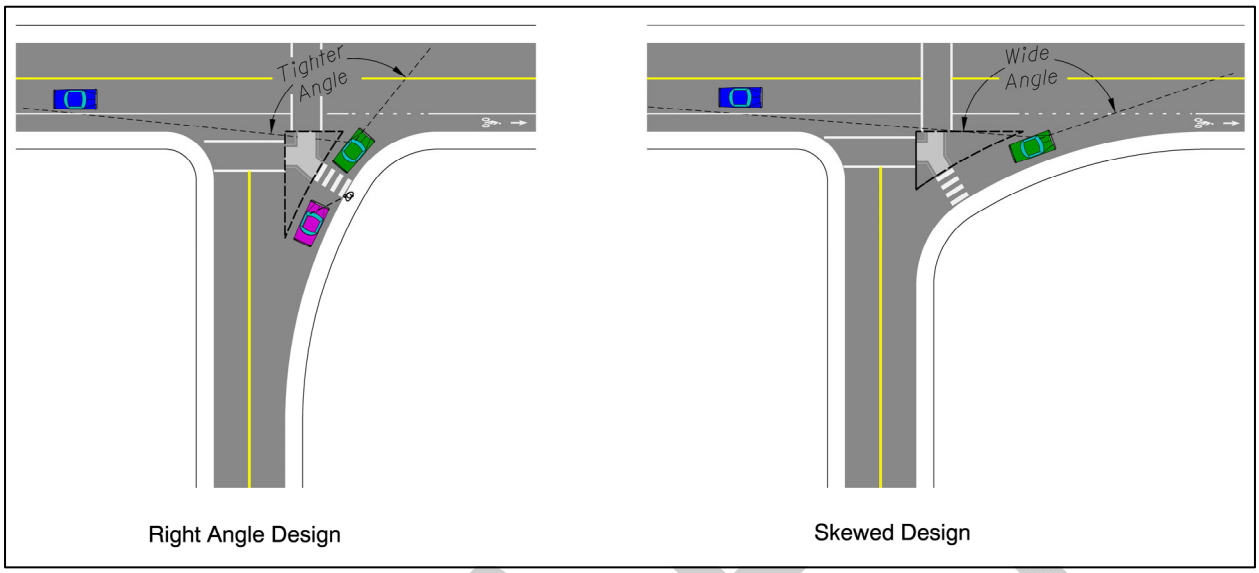
If the overall crosswalk length cannot be reduced, or the above techniques still do not provide sufficient reductions, then consider placing a refuge island(s) to enable the pedestrian to cross in two or more phases. ***Pedestrian median refuges are strongly recommended when crossing more than 6 lanes. Pedestrians should not be forced into a two-phase crossing; rather, the option should be available should they be stranded on a refuge island. Always provide a pedestrian push-button on islands.*** The Signal Design Manual can provide guidance for crossings at signalized intersections. Consult the Region Traffic Section and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section when considering the installation of pedestrian refuge islands.

506.22 Island Geometry

An island placed between a slip lane and through traffic can offer pedestrians a refuge, *but if it is poorly designed, the geometry can encourage drivers to make turns at high speeds without looking for pedestrians.* This can be mitigated by a design that brings the motorist to the intersecting street at close to a right angle, rather than a skew. This forces the driver to slow down and enables the driver to see the crossing pedestrian. Figure 500-28 shows an example of a reconfigured right angle design and a skewed, flat angle design. The type of design chosen varies depending upon the right turn vehicle accommodation. *In many cases the presence of large trucks creates challenges for the use of this treatment. See Section 502.1 and Figure 500-3 for more information on large vehicle accommodation and design. Also see ODOT guidance document "Guidelines for Implementation of ORS 366.215, No Reduction of Vehicle-Carrying Capacity" and the ODOT "Highway Mobility Operations Manual".*

DRAFT

Figure 500-28: Island Geometry (Right Turn Bypass)



506.23 Corner Radii

Large corner radii present several problems for pedestrians:

1. They make the crossing longer;
2. They enable motorists to make a turn at a potentially higher speed, and
3. They make it very difficult to line up the sidewalks, crosswalks and curb ramps.

Designers should try various design options to minimize the corner radii at intersections in urban areas. Refer to the method described in Section 506.9 Turning Radii.

Choosing the appropriate radius is often dependent on factors other than strict interpretation of design parameters. For example, it may be acceptable to design to a tight radius on approach streets with very little truck traffic, even if that means that the occasional truck may have to encroach into traffic to make a turn. Where there is a higher volume of truck traffic turning, a balance needs to be maintained between a large enough radius to accommodate truck turning, but a small enough radius to keep speeds of smaller turning vehicles low; thereby, minimizing impacts to pedestrians and bicyclists. In some locations, it might be appropriate to install an apron to minimize turning radii and accommodate the necessary vehicles. Exhibit 500-1 illustrates the use of an apron to minimize turning radius for passenger vehicles, but also allow bus and truck turning movements. When installing an apron, ADA requirements must be met. *The use of aprons must be considered carefully for overall impacts to safety and operations for all road users.*

DRAFT

Exhibit 500-1: Apron to Accommodate Bus Turning and Minimize Radius for Passenger Vehicles



506.24 Crosswalk and Ramp Placement

Crosswalk and curb ramp placement becomes a concern when an intersection is skewed, or if the corner radii are too large, especially with curb-tight sidewalks. The pedestrian expects the sidewalk, the curb ramp and the crosswalks to be in a reasonably straight line. The natural crossing point will be a continuation of the pedestrian zone.

Again, large corner radii create very long crosswalks. The designer may then be tempted to move the crosswalk away from the intersection, where the crossing is shorter, and crosswalks and curb ramps are perpendicular to the curb. This creates a new problem, as the crosswalk is offset from the intersection. The crossing pedestrians may not be visible to turning motorists, or pedestrians may ignore the crosswalk markings and walk where they are less inconvenienced. In other circumstances, squaring up the crossing may be the appropriate treatment. The best solution is to tighten up the intersection as much as possible.

In most instances, the best design will be arrived at through an iterative process. ~~Imagining~~Visualizing the natural path a pedestrian will take, while anticipating the various vehicle turning movements that may conflict with a pedestrian ~~will help~~, helps in reaching a ~~designer reach~~design that provides optimal visibility of pedestrians and reasonable crossing distances. ~~Examining~~Considering driver and pedestrian expectations where pedestrian/vehicle conflicts may occur ~~will help a designer better accommodate~~improves the design of pedestrian ~~crossings~~crossing accommodation.

Another consideration is trying to ensure that sidewalks are separated with a buffer strip. This has two advantages: the extra separation will place the sidewalks between the offset crosswalk and the curb-tight crosswalk described above, and a curb ramp traced through the buffer strip will more

DRAFT

effectively channel pedestrians to the right crossing point. For additional information, Part 800 provides guidance for pedestrian design and Part 900 provides information on protected intersections.

506.25 Curb Ramps - Placement and Number

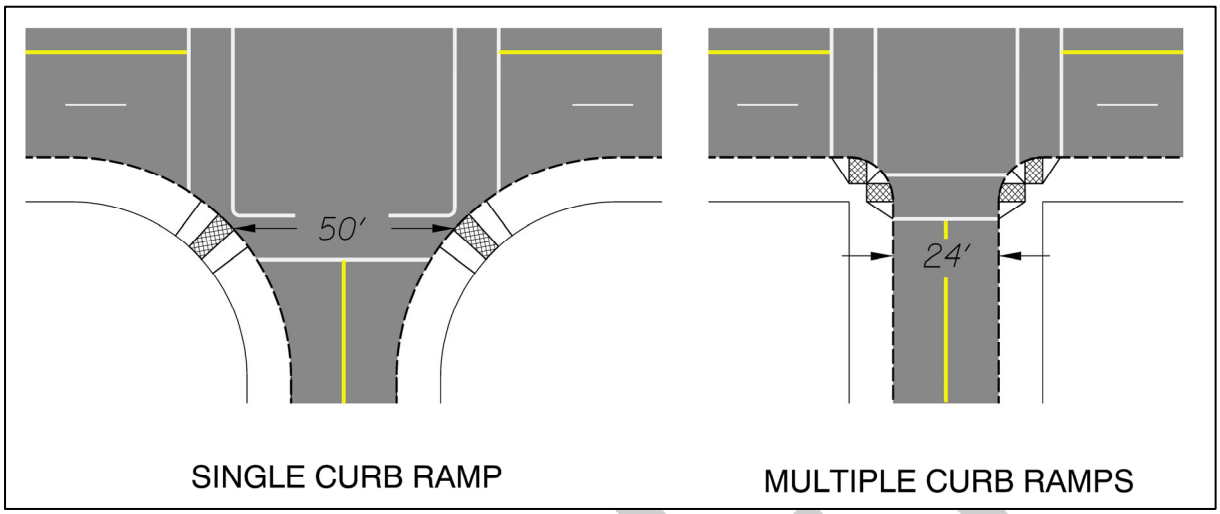
U.S. Access Board guidance on compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) recommends two curb ramps at each corner of an intersection on new construction, and reasonable efforts should be made to install two curb ramps on all projects. **To the greatest extent feasible, provide a separate curb ramp for each intersection crosswalk location. The use of a single curb ramp on a corner that serves both directions requires a design exception.**

An advantage to utilizing two curb ramps is the ability to align curb ramp runs between the crosswalk and the adjacent sidewalk pedestrian accessible route and pedestrian zone. This allows pedestrians a straight path to follow to reach the sidewalk, rather than having to deviate from the crosswalk alignment to find the single curb ramp located at the apex of the corner. Providing two curb ramps makes it easier to construct the curb ramp run perpendicular to the curb, as required. However, on corners with larger radii, generally radii greater than 30 feet, placing two curb ramps may make it difficult to align everything correctly. In these situations, unique solutions such as utilizing shared components of a curb ramp can be a benefit. For example, a shared turn space (level landing), or a shared ramp run that is used jointly for each curb ramp to access the crosswalk (see Option "CC-3" on RD936) will bring the natural travel paths of pedestrians closer to the pedestrian zone and connecting crosswalk. Two curb ramps enable people in wheelchairs and other mobility aids, and those with low vision to enter a crosswalk directly in a straight line, without having to turn in the roadway. Figure 500-29 compares the number of curb ramps provided at an intersection corner based on corner radius, crossing distance, and location. Regardless of radius, the designer should strive to place two curb ramps for each corner where it is feasible. The use of a single curb ramp on a corner requires an approved design exception.

The drawings in Figure 500-29 are for illustrative purposes for discussion about the number of curb ramps and placement. Actual curb ramp design requires greater detail. Whatever the final design, the designer needs to provide the most optimal method available to ensure continuity for people with disabilities to traverse the distance between the crosswalk and the sidewalk. See applicable Oregon Standard Drawings for accessible island, accessible sidewalk and accessible curb ramp options and design. See Part 800 for additional information about accessible design and ODOT design practices.

DRAFT

Figure 500-29: Crosswalk Ramp Placement



506.26 Signal Pole and Push Button Placement

Signal poles must be placed in a location where they do not interfere with pedestrians' path of travel. They must be placed in a location that all pedestrians are able to conveniently reach and activate the signal control push buttons. There is placement criteria for accessibility that must be followed, including reach range and landing requirements to activate the push button. The designer works with the Region Traffic Unit and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section concerning placement of signal poles and push buttons. The Signal Design Manual provides extensive detailed information and guidance for signal pole, pedestal, and push button placement.

In general, placing the poles correctly is made easier with tight corner radii, sidewalks separated with a buffer strip, and two curb ramps per corner. As the radius increases, it becomes more difficult to place the poles and pedestals out of the pedestrian zone and keep the push button within the appropriate reach range. **In all locations, pedestrian push buttons must be installed to meet accessibility requirements.** See Sections 5.4 and 5.5 of the ODOT Traffic Signal Design Manual for guidance on signal pole and push button placement. **Under no circumstances shall pedestrian push button poles be placed in a curb ramp run for new construction.**

This section is a general overview for signal poles and pushbutton placement to help the roadway designer understand conflicts and accessibility requirements. See the ODOT Traffic Signal Design Manual as well as the MUTCD, 4E.08 for additional detailed information on signal pole and push button pole placement requirements. Signal pole and push button placement is a specialized design consideration. Consult Region Traffic and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section, Traffic Signal staff for appropriate placement of signal poles and equipment.

DRAFT

506.27 Free-Flow Acceleration (Add) Lanes

This type of intersection treatment should be avoided in urban areas. ***Free-flow acceleration lanes, often called "slip lanes", are generally not allowed for urban at-grade intersections.*** They create an unexpected condition for both pedestrians and cyclists. Free-flow acceleration lanes are different than at-grade right-turn acceleration lanes described in Section 506.13. A free-flow acceleration lane provides a lane for traffic to make the turn and enter the acceleration lane without stopping. This implies priority for the turning vehicle over other roadway facility users and is generally not appropriate in urban locations. *Use of free-flow lanes is strongly discouraged where pedestrians and bicyclists are expected to cross the lane.*

If a free-flow acceleration or add lane is provided for capacity reasons, then make every reasonable effort to create conditions that make any adjacent crossings safer and easier for pedestrians and cyclists. Crossings should occur prior to vehicle acceleration locations where vehicle speed is low. Adequate sight distance must be provided for a driver to see pedestrians and bicyclists crossing the lane.

Most of the design principles offered in previous sections on right turn lanes would apply to free-flow lanes also: tighten the turning radius, narrow the lane, and keep the angle of approach as close to a right angle as possible. These three elements combined will force drivers turning right to slow down and look ahead, where pedestrians and bicyclists may be present, before turning and accelerating onto the roadway.

Section 507 Signalized Intersections

Signalized intersection design will need to consider the additional issues to the design standards for general intersection design that were discussed in Section 506. Specific roadway design items of interest at signalized intersections include left turn lanes, right turn lanes, bicycle accommodation and pedestrian needs. *It will be necessary for the designer to coordinate with the Region Traffic Unit and the ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections to meet these specific design needs.*

507.1 Left Turn Lanes

Most signalized intersections will have left turn lanes. *When left turning traffic is allowed from a two-way highway at a signalized intersection, a left turn lane should be provided.* Providing a traffic signal phase for left turning traffic is determined by the Region Traffic Engineering Section and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section (see "ODOT Traffic Signal Policy and Guidelines").

When the left turning volume is very large, a single left turn lane may not be able to operate at an acceptable level. In these instances, a dual left turn lane may be needed. ***Requests for dual***

DRAFT

left turn lanes must be approved by the State Traffic Engineer (see OARs 734-020-0135 and 0140 for criteria). ***When designing dual left turn lanes, there must be dual receiving lanes on the connecting roadway with adequate length downstream prior to any merge points.*** The designer must determine the appropriate design vehicles to use for side-by-side operation through the turning movement. *In rare locations, like at freeway ramp terminals leading to truck stops or warehousing districts, that may need to be two WB-67 vehicles making the turn simultaneously. However, in most locations, a WB-67 and an SU vehicle side-by-side is adequate for design. In other locations where truck volumes are low, an SU vehicle and a passenger vehicle may be sufficient. Dual left turn lanes should be designed in conformance with* Figure 500-30. *Consult the Region Traffic Section when considering the design of a dual left turn lane as well.* Figure 500-31 illustrates channelization, island and intersection details.

DRAFT

Figure 500-30: Dual Left Turn Channelization

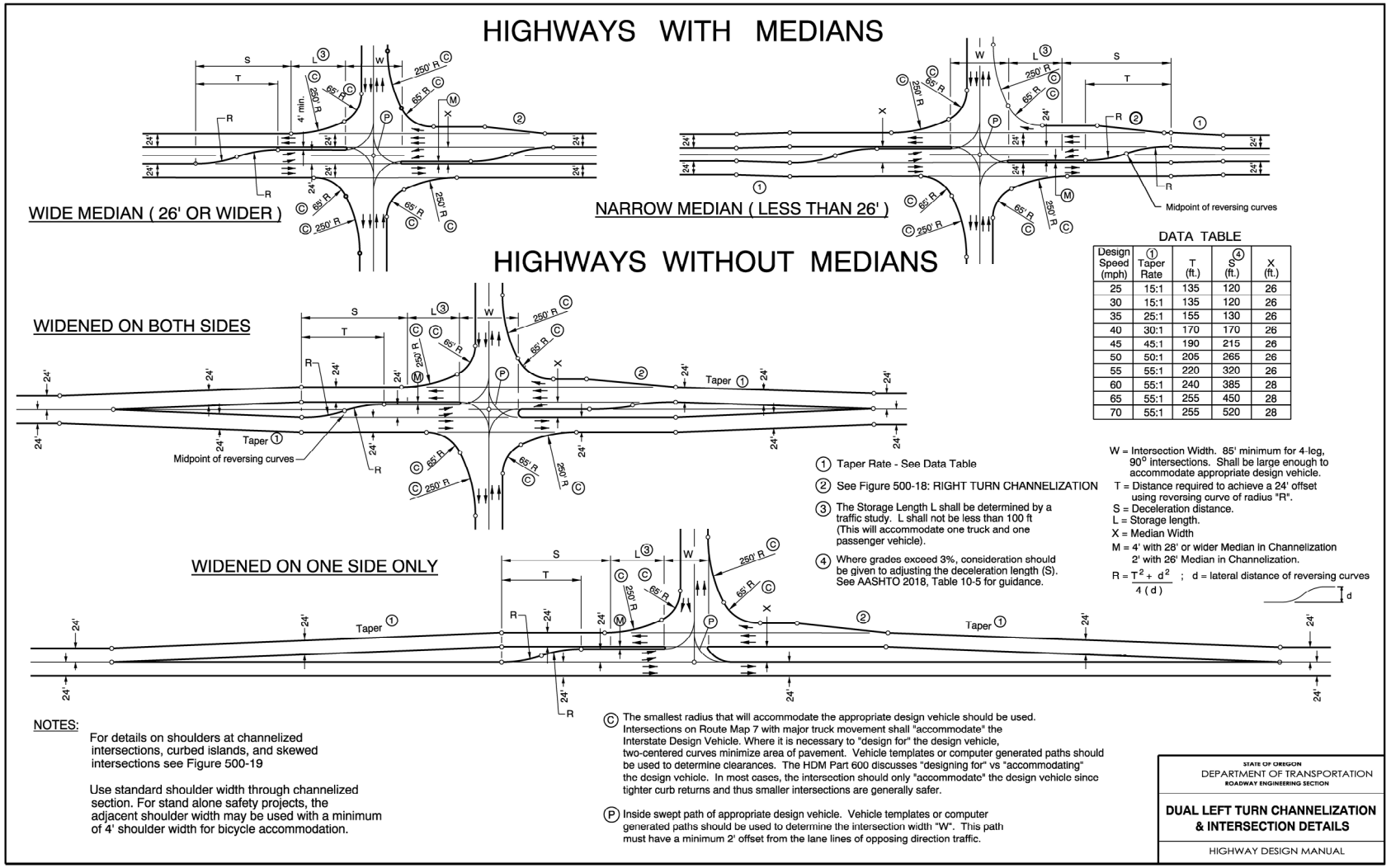
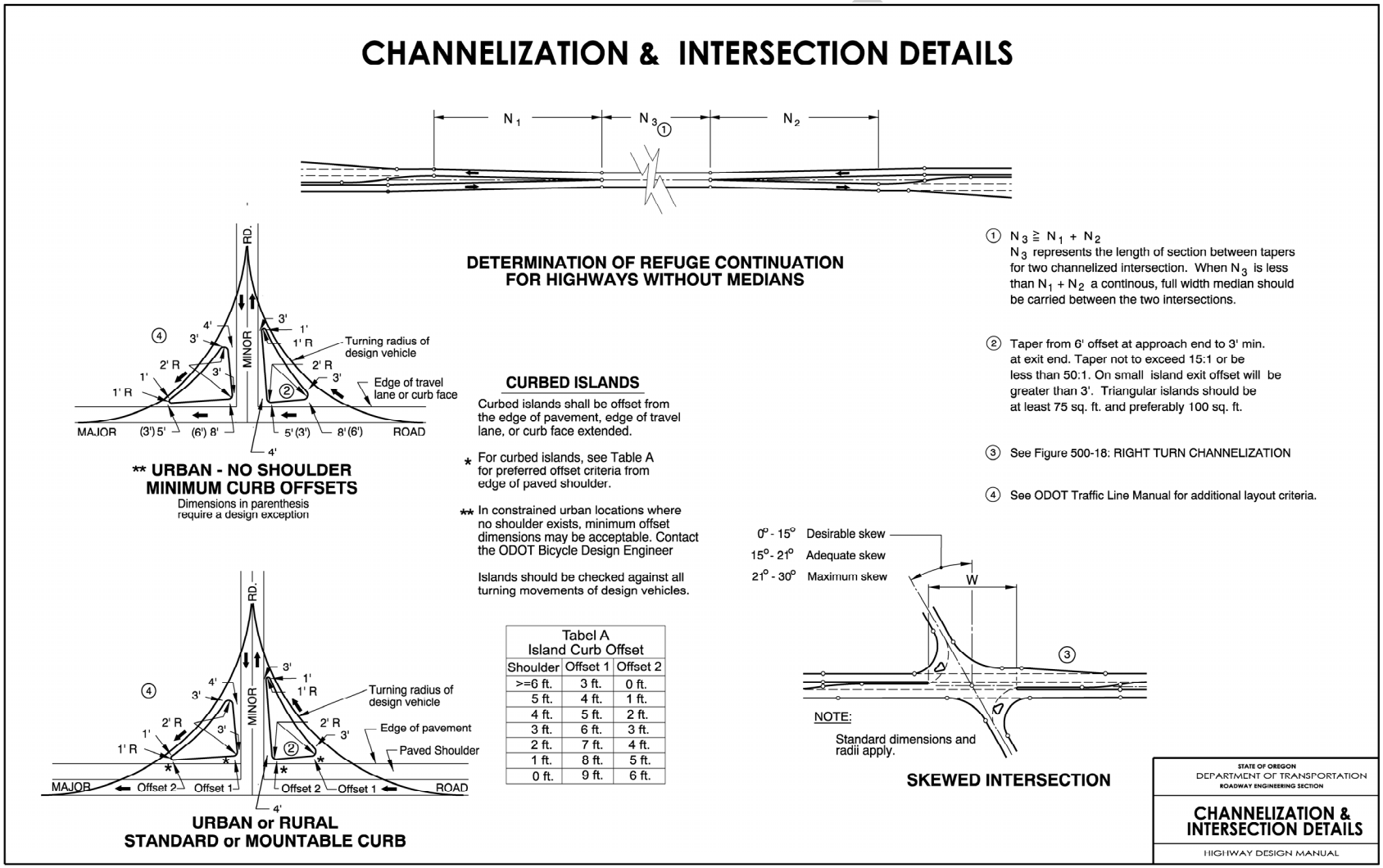


Figure 500-31: Channelization Island & Intersection Details



507.2 Right Turn Lanes

There are no specific warrants for installation of a right turn lane at a signalized intersection. A rule of thumb is to install a right turn lane when peak hour right turn volume is 200 or more. *However, adding a right turn lane increases pedestrian crossing distances and adds complexity for bicycle facilities. Installation of a right turn lane at signalized intersections should be justified by engineering analysis.* Consult the Region Traffic Section and the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) when considering the addition of a right turn lane. *In some instances, removal of an existing right turn lane may be preferred for overall operation of a signalized intersection for all road users.*

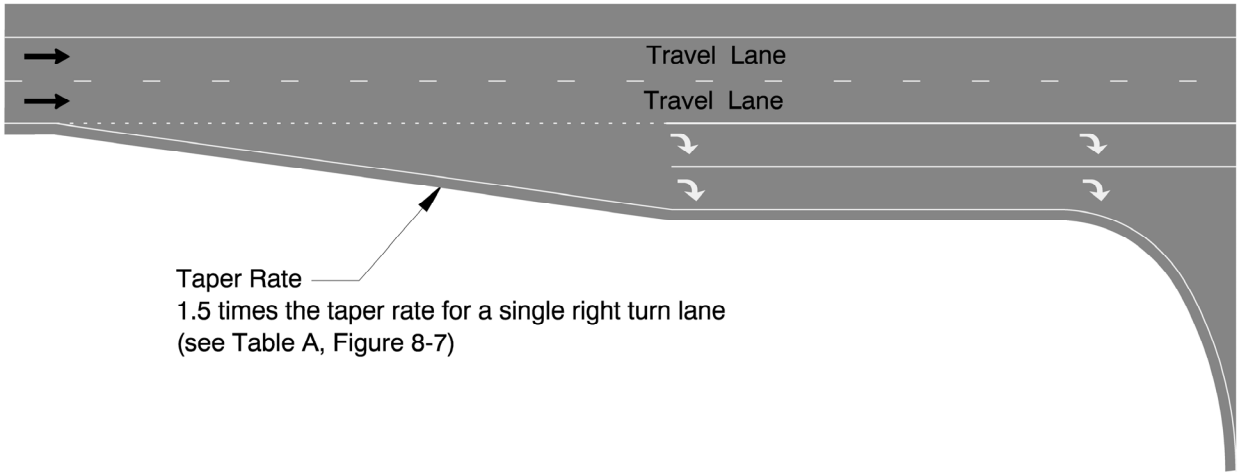
When a right turn lane is installed at a signalized intersection, it is critical to the operation of signalized intersections that adequate storage length for right turning vehicles (out of the through traffic lanes) be provided. **The storage length needs to accommodate the 95 percent queue distance through the design life of the project.** The 95 percent queue length means that there is only a 5 percent probability that the actual volume of vehicles will exceed the storage available. ***In areas where obtaining the 95 percent queue distance is impractical, the designer should provide as much storage as possible. Consider shortening the entrance taper to lengthen the available storage if possible.*** **Any exception to providing 95 percent queue distance requires approval from the State Roadway Engineer.** For individual intersection or operational projects, contact the Region Traffic Engineering Unit to determine the appropriate storage lengths needed. For complex or environmental study projects, the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) can be contacted to help determine the appropriate storage lengths or give guidance or technical help on the particular project or methodology. At some intersections, right turn demands might be so large that dual right turn lanes may be necessary. ***The Analysis Procedures Manual, Region Traffic, and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section must be consulted and the approval of the State Traffic Engineer obtained prior to installation of dual right turn lanes*** (see OARs 734-020-0135 and 0140). Where dual right turn lanes are required, follow the guidelines shown in Figure 500-32. Dual right turn lanes can create additional crossing issues for bicycle and pedestrian movements. ***When dual right turn lanes are proposed, bicycle and pedestrian movements must be considered and adequately addressed.*** Contact the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer or the project resource for active transportation for information about providing appropriate facilities.

In addition to bicycle and pedestrian considerations at dual right turn lane locations, the designer also must determine the appropriate design vehicles to use for side-by-side operation through the turning movement. *In rare locations, like at freeway ramp terminals leading to truck stops or warehousing districts, that may need to be two WB-67 vehicles making the turn simultaneously. However, in most locations, a WB-67 and an SU vehicle side-by-side is adequate for design. In other locations where truck volumes are low, an SU vehicle and a passenger vehicle may be sufficient. When considering dual right turn lanes as an option,* consult the Region Traffic Section for input. When

DRAFT

designing dual right turn lanes, there must be two lanes on the connecting roadway to turn into and there must be adequate length provided downstream before any lanes merge.

Figure 500-32: Dual Right Turn Channelization



507.3 Bicycle and Pedestrian Needs

Signalized intersections must provide marked pedestrian crossings at all approaches and provide bicycle connectivity and continuity. There may be some locations where full access may not be appropriate. ***Locations where exceptions to full access may be considered are:***

1. Intersections that include multiple left or right turn lanes,
2. Intersections with one or more legs being one-way roadways, and
3. Intersections that are a 'T' configuration.

However, even at these locations, bicycle and pedestrian needs and movements must be addressed and accommodation is expected. The idea is to only close a crossing where there is a safety concern for pedestrians. ***Only the State Traffic Engineer can close a legal crosswalk.*** Contact the Region Traffic Section and the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section early in the project to determine the appropriate pedestrian crossing locations.

At rural signalized intersections where typical pedestrian facilities (like a sidewalk) may not be present, see section 821.1.5 for information on pedestrian pads to ensure access to push buttons.

Section 508 Unsignalized Intersections

This section covering unsignalized intersection design is intended to enhance the discussion about general intersection design criteria covered in Section 506. *Left turn lanes, right turn lanes,*

bicycle access and pedestrian movements will need to be specifically considered and accounted for when designing unsignalized intersections. The level and amount of design effort required to ensure adequate design for these modes will vary among locations. Because of the complexity of urban areas, a higher level of effort is needed to ensure that these design needs are adequately addressed.

508.1 Left Turn Lanes

Left turn lanes at unsignalized intersections must meet the siting criteria to justify installation. Regardless of the funding source, the Region Traffic Engineer must approve all unsignalized channelized left turn lanes. The designer consults with the Region Traffic Unit in locations where left turn lanes are being considered. For information about siting criteria for left turn lanes, see the ODOT Analysis and Procedures Manual (APM).

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Pages/APM.aspx

508.2 Right Turn Lanes

Unsignalized intersections and private approach roads must meet the installation criteria prior to constructing a right turn lane. Regardless of the funding source, the Region Traffic Engineer must approve all unsignalized right turn lanes.

Since the right turning vehicles only have to yield to pedestrians and bicyclists at unsignalized intersections, there is no need to provide vehicle storage at an unsignalized right turn lane. ***The one exception is where vehicular storage may be required where the right turn lane is next to an at grade railroad crossing.*** For information about siting criteria for right turn lanes, see the ODOT Analysis and Procedures Manual (APM).

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Pages/APM.aspx

508.3 Bicycle and Pedestrian Needs

Bicycle movements must be considered at all unsignalized intersections. There are a variety of methods available to provide adequate bicycle connectivity and continuity at these types of locations. For information, see the "Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide". Part 900 provides guidance for bicycle facility selection and bicycle access requirements.

By law, every intersection is a legal crossing location for pedestrians. *This is true whether the crossing is marked or unmarked. Therefore, it is important to ensure that pedestrian needs are included in the intersection design, particularly in urban areas.* See the ODOT Traffic Manual for standards, guidelines, and processes related to marking crosswalks. Part 800 provides guidance on pedestrian design requirements and ADA compliance.

DRAFT

Section 509 Roundabouts

509.1 General

This section provides basic information and site criteria on both single lane and multi-lane roundabouts. Please contact the ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections for additional design criteria and recommendations.

~~Traffic signals, stop signs and modern roundabouts are all forms of intersection control. Signal control and stop control are more established forms of intersection control and are well known to motorists, pedestrians and bicyclists. Signal control and stop control function by separating out individual traffic movements at an intersection in physical and temporal space. Each road user takes a turn or is delegated time and reasonable opportunity to move through the intersection space in sequence. However, intersections controlled by signals and stop signs do not always afford the most efficient or safest operation. When traffic volumes are low, signals can cause unnecessary delay by stopping traffic flow when conflicts do not exist. When traffic volumes are high, stop signs can cause long queues and extended delay. In addition, when motorists, pedestrians or bicyclists make mistakes or push the limits at signalized or stop controlled intersections, the results often cause severe injury or fatal crashes.~~

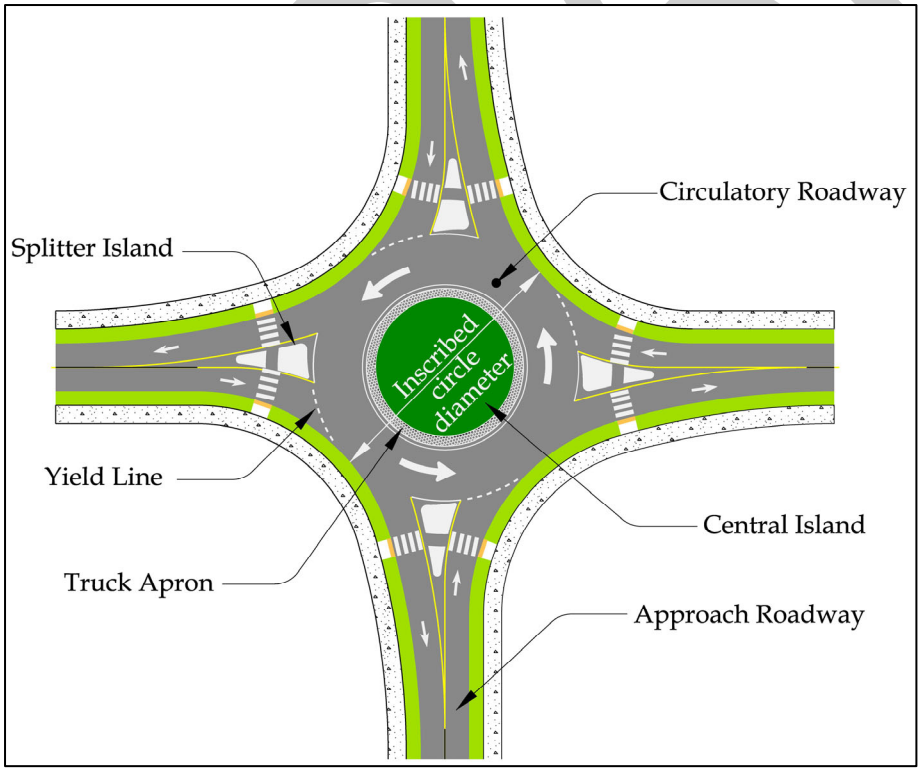
~~Modern roundabout~~Roundabout controlled intersections have the potential to function much more efficiently and safely than signal controlled or stop sign controlled intersections because they do not stop traffic flow unnecessarily. ~~By design, roundabouts~~Roundabouts allow for more consistent flow by slowing all vehicles through the intersection. By reducing delay, they improve vehicle fuel efficiency and reduce overall vehicle emissions at the intersection. They also function well during power outages or severe storm conditions. ~~Modern roundabouts~~Roundabouts are an effective intersection control option on evacuation routes.

~~Modern roundabouts can also be~~Roundabouts are generally safer than signalized or stop controlled intersections~~. By reducing~~ because they slow speeds, reduce conflict points, ~~reducing speeds,~~ and ~~keeping traffic flowing in the same direction, both crash frequency and severity have been shown to be reduced when compared to other intersection control types.~~remove severe conflict points. Roundabouts have been shown to be safer for pedestrians and bicyclists as well.~~ By design, roundabouts lower vehicle speeds.~~ Lower vehicle speeds translate to less kinetic energy transfer between vehicle-to-vehicle crashes, vehicle-to-bicycle crashes, and vehicle-to-pedestrian crashes. ~~As a result, if a~~Fewer conflict points and removing severe crash ~~does occur in a roundabout, the severity is~~conflict points greatly ~~reduced lessening~~reduce the potential for ~~a fatality or~~fatal and serious injury crashes. Roundabouts are an effective tool when designing from a Safe System approach and part of an effective strategy to reduce fatalities and serious injuries at intersections.

DRAFT

~~Some people, including motor vehicle drivers, pedestrians, and bicyclists are unsure how to use roundabouts because they are less prevalent than signals and stop signs. As a result, they approach roundabouts with concern, both when discussing proposed installations and when encountering one on the highway. In some cases, drivers remember circular intersections of the past that were called "traffic circles" or "rotaries". Many of these older circular intersections did not function well. As a result, many drivers have negative impressions of circular intersections that carry over to the present. By their design, however, modern roundabouts eliminate the undesirable design features of older traffic circles or rotaries and~~Roundabouts create an efficient and effective intersection control option with specific characteristics~~.~~ that can improve operations and safety for all users. . The distinctive characteristics of a ~~modern~~ roundabout ~~that separate it from a traffic circle or rotary~~ include a raised central island with a circulatory roadway, raised splitter islands at the entry to introduce deflection to the vehicle path, and yield control for approaching vehicles. ~~In older style circular intersections, circulating traffic yielded to the entering traffic and caused capacity problems that eventually leads to intersection lock-up at peak times. In various locations around the United States, operations at many of the original traffic circles and rotaries have been improved by incorporating some of the modern roundabout concepts into them where feasible. In some locations, the older style traffic circles have been removed entirely.~~ Figure 500-33 details several major roundabout elements.

Figure 500-33: Elements of a ~~Modern~~ Roundabout



~~Studies have shown, even in communities where the initial majority viewpoint concerning the installation of roundabouts was negative, once roundabouts were installed and the community became used to driving them, the roundabouts have become a popular form of safe and effective intersection control and the community viewpoint changed to positive for the installation of roundabouts.~~

509.2 Overview

Roundabouts have been proven as a viable alternative to traffic signals at many intersections. Several studies comparing roundabouts to traffic signals or two-way stop-controlled intersections have demonstrated consistent results in determining that roundabouts can provide significant safety improvements. Their combined findings indicate:

1. Reduction of fatalities by more than 90 percent;
2. Reduction of injuries by up to 75 percent;
3. Reduction of all crashes by a third or more; and
4. Increases in pedestrian and bicyclist safety due to slower vehicle speeds.

Additional information concerning roundabouts and their safety performance can be found through information provided by the Federal Highway Administration website "FHWA Safety - Roundabouts" and through research results from the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety (IIHS).

~~All roundabouts greatly reduce conflicts at intersections and increase safety when compared to signal controlled or stop controlled intersections. However, due to differences in inherent characteristics of single lane and multi-lane roundabouts, there are differences in the potential safety improvements between them.~~ Both single lane and multi-lane roundabouts reduce fatal and serious injury crashes. Single lane roundabouts have greater reduction in intersection conflict points than multi-lane roundabouts and, therefore, tend to have greater reduction in overall crash rates than multi-lane roundabouts.

Since there ~~is more than one~~are multiple travel ~~lane in a multi-lane roundabout,~~lanes within multi-lane roundabouts, they have ~~the~~more potential for sideswipe crashes ~~that~~than single lane roundabouts ~~do not have. However, since~~. Since speeds are slow, these additional crashes are generally less severe than ~~the~~crossing-type conflict point crashes that are higher speed like "T-bone" and head-on ~~crash types~~crashes that occur at signalized or stop controlled intersections. Therefore, even though multi-lane roundabouts may have a greater ~~preponderance of~~potential for side-swipe crashes than a single lane roundabout, they are still a safer alternative than a multi-lane signalized intersection because the severity of crashes is greatly reduced~~,~~ while providing the necessary intersection capacity.

DRAFT

There are three ~~conflict~~crash types that can occur at multi-lane roundabouts that do not occur at single lane roundabouts, and they can lead to sideswipe crashes. They are categorized as:

1. Driver fails to maintain lane position through the roundabout (Note: ORS 811.292 and ORS 811.370 have provision for "commercial motor vehicles" to operate outside a single lane in a multi-lane roundabout when necessary.)
2. Entering driver fails to yield properly and enters next to a vehicle exiting the roundabout.
3. Driver turns or exits from the incorrect lane and crosses the path of a vehicle in the outside lane.

These types of driver error are not unique to roundabouts and similar errors can also occur at conventional intersections. ~~However, with~~With good roundabout geometric design ~~consistent with~~consisting of appropriate entry and exit angles, vehicle deflection ~~and,~~ sight distance ~~as well as,~~ and effective striping and signing, the first two crash types can be minimized thereby further improving safety over conventional~~,~~ signal or stop sign controlled multi-lane intersections.

Along with the potential safety benefits they provide, roundabouts can also reduce congestion and delay. ~~They~~Roundabouts have been shown to continue functioning at higher volume-to-capacity (V/C) ratios than signal or stop sign controlled intersections and clear queues faster if traffic does backup momentarily. Roundabouts have been shown to be efficient during both peak and non-peak hours~~.~~ unlike signal or stop sign controlled intersections.

Other distinct advantages of roundabouts include the following:

1. Reduced pollution and fuel use through smoother flow and fewer stops;
2. Significant life-cycle cost savings when compared to traffic signals due to no signal equipment installation or upgrade costs and ~~reduced~~eliminated maintenance costs; ~~and~~
3. Can provide traffic calming ~~and,~~ general speed reduction, ~~while supporting urban and rural community values through~~ and quieter operation ~~and by providing a traffic control solution that is both functional and aesthetically pleasing~~.

~~As stated earlier in this section, some~~Some features of multi-lane roundabout design are significantly different from single lane roundabout design and some techniques used in single lane roundabout design may not directly transfer to multi-lane roundabout design. ~~However, several~~Several principal objectives should be achieved when designing any roundabout. The following principles are the goal of roundabout designs:

1. Provide slow entry speeds and consistent speeds through the roundabout utilizing vehicle path deflection.
2. Provide the appropriate number of lanes and lane assignments to achieve adequate capacity, lane volume balance and lane continuity for necessary vehicle movements.

DRAFT

3. When determining number of lanes needed, a 20-year analysis is generally not ~~always~~ appropriate. ~~Adding~~Additional lanes ~~too soon~~ in a ~~roundabout's life can reduce~~roundabout without the additional traffic increases speeds and the number of conflict points. This reduces the overall safety benefits ~~roundabouts afford.~~of the roundabout. Consider staged design to achieve maximum safety performance. Staged design should consider right-of-way needs for future lanes and the placement of various roadside features (lighting, walkways, utilities, etc.) outside the eventual lane configuration when possible.
4. Provide smooth channelization that is intuitive to drivers that results in vehicles naturally using the intended lanes.
5. Provide adequate design and accommodation for all vehicle types expected to use the roundabout, including freight and transit vehicles. Roundabout project teams work with District permits and Commerce & Compliance Division to choose appropriate design and accommodation vehicles for specific roundabout locations.
6. ~~Design~~Provide facilities to include the needs of pedestrians and bicyclists~~.~~ for urban roundabouts.
7. Provide appropriate sight distance and visibility for driver recognition of the intersection and potential conflicts with other roadway users both motorized and non-motorized.

The Transportation Research Board (TRB) and the FHWA have published a useful guidance document entitled NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts. It can be found on the TRB/NCHRP website.

For proposed roundabouts on state highways in Oregon, staff should familiarize themselves with FHWA guidance documents, the ODOT Highway Design Manual, including this section, Section 509 ~~Modern~~ Roundabouts, the Roundabout Selection Criteria And Approval Process (Section 509.3 of the HDM and Section 403 (Roundabouts) of the ODOT Traffic Manual) as well as pertinent sections of the Analysis and Procedures Manual (APM) published by TPAU.

Before proceeding to the Roundabout Selection Criteria and Approval Process, a thorough alternatives analysis should have been completed in the form of an Intersection Traffic Control Study showing that a roundabout is a viable alternative when compared to other types of intersection traffic control. Refer to the Intersection section of the ODOT Traffic Manual for more detail on how to conduct this type of analysis. Capacity for the proposed roundabout should be analyzed for the appropriate peak hour flow(s). ~~However, roundabouts~~Roundabouts have proven to provide greater traffic flow and can still function well at Vehicle to Capacity Ratios (V/C) of 0.90 and ~~even as high as 0.95~~higher for short periods of time.

If traffic analysis based on a 20-year projection shows the need for additional lanes in a roundabout, it is important to understand when the additional lanes will be needed. Building extra lanes at the outset that are not needed ~~can have negative impacts on the safe~~

~~operations~~will reduce some of the safety benefits of the roundabout in the interim until the lanes are truly ~~needed~~necessary. Keeping roundabouts to single lane operation for as long as possible and phasing in additional lanes when needed is best practice. If analysis shows the single lane will function for many years, ~~it is advisable to~~ start with a single lane roundabout and add lanes when, or if, operation reaches a V/C of 0.90.

509.3 Roundabout Selection Criteria and Approval Process

Roundabouts are proposed for a variety of reasons including safety improvements, operation improvements, community livability, traffic calming, aesthetic gateway treatments, etc. ***The State Traffic Engineer has been delegated the authority to approve the installation of roundabouts on State Highways in consultation with the State Roadway Engineer.*** Requests for roundabout evaluations are a collaborative process between the Region Traffic Unit and Region Roadway Unit. ***All roundabout requests sent to the State Traffic Engineer and State Roadway Engineer for consideration shall be jointly sent by the Region Traffic Manager and the Region Roadway Manager, accompanied by an Engineering Investigation that includes purpose, need and intent of the installation of the proposed roundabout.*** In addition, the Engineering Investigation shall address the considerations as described in the following discussion.

~~Once the State Traffic Engineer receives a request, the Traffic and Roadway Sections will coordinate a review with other technical staff from Technical Services and the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) to make a recommendation to the State Traffic Engineer.~~ Analysis is performed to evaluate the roundabout option in relation to other traffic control options. This is an Intersection Control Evaluation (ICE) and may follow FHWA guidelines grounded in safety analysis. Refer to Section 400.0 of the ODOT Traffic Manual~~ODOT Traffic Manual~~ for intersection control evaluations. If the information provided is insufficient or not appropriate in methodology (see the ODOT Analysis Procedures Manual (APM))as determined by the Department) the State Traffic Engineer may request further analysis. Once the State Traffic Engineer receives a request, the ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections will coordinate a review with staff from ETSB and the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) to make a recommendation to the State Traffic Engineer.

The approval process for roundabouts is divided into two phases: Conceptual Approval and Design Approval. ***The State Traffic Engineer will make the decision whether roundabouts will receive Conceptual Approval and move to the Design Approval phase in consultation with the State Roadway Engineer. Conceptual Approval must follow ODOT procedures that assure the roundabout can accommodate freight movement on the highway.*** (Refer to ODOT's Mobility Engagement Guidance for Intersection Improvements and Roundabouts.) This requires the

DRAFT

Region to engage with the Mobility Advisory Committee to seek the following through the freight mobility committee review process (ORS 366.215; OAR 731-012):

- An agreement with the Mobility Advisory Committee on roundabout ~~sizing~~geometry. See ODOT Directive DES 02.
- Stakeholder Forum support for proposed reductions in Vehicle-Carrying Capacity (if applicable): Refer to ODOT's ORS 366.215 Implementation Guidance.

The State Roadway Engineer will make the final decision on the approval of the geometric design in the Design Approval phase. Consult with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section, the Statewide Mobility Program, and the Region Mobility Liaison for additional guidance.

Conceptual Approval will constitute official approval under the Delegated Authorities of the State Traffic Engineer for a roundabout to be used as traffic control at a particular intersection. For Conceptual Approval, an Intersection Traffic Control Study addressing all pertinent considerations described in this section will be required. ***In addition, a Conceptual Design of the intersection shall be submitted to the State Traffic Engineer for review by Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections staff. Conceptual Approval will not be granted until staff in the Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections verify that the region has followed the ODOT procedures related to*** roundabout sizing (ODOT Directive DES 02) and, if applicable, reductions in ***vehicle carrying capacity*** subject to a Stakeholder Forum review (*ORS 366.215; OAR 731-012*). See Section 403.0 of the ODOT Traffic Manual for conceptual approval requirements.

Design Approval will constitute the final approval phase of the roundabout at a particular intersection. The geometrics of roundabout designs (including channelization plans) must be submitted to ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for the State Roadway Engineer ~~for~~to review and ~~approval~~approve the geometric design. A formalized Design Approval letter will be issued by the State Roadway Engineer with concurrence from the State Traffic Engineer.

The Department has developed a list of considerations that should be addressed ~~in the Engineering Investigation that is~~ and submitted for Design Approval regarding proposed roundabout ~~locations~~design. These considerations should not be interpreted as ~~roundabout warrants, nor should they be considered~~ pass/fail criteria for ~~installation~~design approval of a roundabout. These have been identified as important considerations to evaluate when ~~proposing~~designing roundabout intersections on state highways.

~~1.~~ Freight Mobility needs should be sufficiently defined prior to Conceptual Approval by presenting an initial concept design to the MAC (Mobility Advisory Committee) for informational purposes and discussion of freight vehicle accommodation needs at that specific location. Later when the geometric design is being finalized with design and accommodation vehicle movements a formal MAC presentation should occur for a letter of support on reduction review routes. Truck turning movements of design and accommodation vehicles should be demonstrated using computer-generated path simulation software and shown for evaluation. Additional information for freight

DRAFT

accommodation is found in NCHRP 1043~~Freight Mobility needs should be sufficiently defined and addressed prior to Conceptual Approval.~~

1. ~~Motorized user mobility needs must be balanced with the mobility needs of non-motorized road users.~~ section 10.5.

2. The ability for bicyclists and pedestrians to safely move through the roundabout intersection is equally important as the mobility needs of motorized vehicles (See NCHRP 1043~~.~~ section 10.4). Designers are encouraged to ~~first~~ utilize separated bicycle facilities with their roundabout designs where ~~applicable~~urban context is present, where existing or expected bicycle facilities are present, and ~~appropriate~~where development is expected to generate demand relatively soon. At a minimum, bicyclists are given the option to use either the circulating roadway with other vehicles or the pedestrian crosswalks outside the circulatory roadway. ~~Special design considerations are needed for the pedestrian crosswalk~~Pedestrian crosswalks at the entrances and exits on all ~~legs of the~~ roundabout ~~where vehicles are either decelerating~~legs need to be designed for visibility and speeds considering deceleration to enter the roundabout or ~~accelerating~~acceleration to exit the roundabout. Multi-lane roundabouts, like other multi-lane intersections, have potential for ~~"multiple threat"~~additional conflicts between vehicles and pedestrians, particularly low vision and blind pedestrians. The Public Rights-Of-Way Accessibility Guide (PROWAG) has identified the need for pedestrian-activated crossing capability or raised crosswalks at multi-lane ~~roundabouts. Although not explicitly required at this time, rulemaking is proposed, and it is prudent to design a multi-lane~~ roundabout ~~for easy installation of the necessary equipment in the future.~~segments. Crosswalk placement, striping, ~~installing conduit as well as~~ identifying and reserving ~~necessary equipment locations even though final installation of all the equipment is not necessary at this time,~~space for future RRFB equipment is good design practice and can save money in the future. Generally, Rectangular, Rapid Flashing Beacons (RRFB) are being installed at multi-lane roundabout ~~entrances~~segments on state highways where pedestrian facilities (sidewalks or shared use paths) are present.

3. Roundabout design should consider the needs and desires of the local community including speed management and aesthetics.

4. Intersection safety performance is a primary consideration when pursuing a roundabout for intersection control. Predicted reductions in fatal and serious injury crashes is compared with other types of intersection control such as traffic signals or other alternatives supported by crash modification factors (CMF) from the AASHTO Highway Safety Manual. Crash history should also be evaluated at the intersection to analyze what conflicts will be eliminated from a roundabout installation as compared to repeated types of crashes at specific locations (repeated crash movements that are eliminated will see added safety benefits in addition to the CMFs). Include the final Roundabout Concept Approval letter and submittal documents in the Design Approval

DRAFT

submittal. Ensure that the roundabout design meets all requirements of the Roundabout Concept Approval letter.

5. Roundabout entrance geometry, circulating geometry and exit geometry is designed to allow the design vehicle to traverse the roundabout in a reasonable and expected manner commensurate with best design practices as shown in NCHRP Report 1043~~NCHRP Report 1043,~~ Guide for Roundabouts sections 9-11 and the HDM. ~~This design utilizes a representative template of the design.~~ Fastest path vehicle~~,~~ movements should be evaluated and ~~the vehicle path is demonstrated using computer-generated path simulation software~~shown for review.

6. **Roundabouts** ~~should~~**shall meet** ~~acceptable~~**a v/c** ~~ratios~~**ratio of 0.85 for** ~~the appropriate~~**a 20 year Design Life**~~.~~ **unless located downstream of a freeway or expressway exit ramp in which case a v/c ratio of 0.80 should be met.** Analysis ~~considers~~should consider when ~~in the Design Life~~ the roundabout will most likely reach capacity. Roundabouts can still function well at V/C values of 0.90 or above. Building a roundabout too large for initial operations ~~can negatively impact~~will reduce its safety ~~performance~~benefits until traffic demands meet the design lane configuration (See ~~subsection 1206~~1207.3 Design Guidelines regarding design life for ~~possible exceptions to this consideration~~more information.)

7. Roundabouts proposed for ~~the~~ state highways with posted speeds higher than 35 mph will require ~~special~~ design considerations (e.g., possibly any of the following: longer splitter islands, specific landscaping, possibly reversing curve alignments approaching the roundabout, etc.) to transition the ~~roadside~~roadway environment ~~from higher~~ to lower speeds approaching the roundabout intersection. A roundabout needs to be seen by approaching drivers and in higher speed locations needs a higher level of conspicuity (See NCHRP 1043 section 9.5 and 10.14). Ensure that the design slows drivers naturally and encourages yielding to circular roadway traffic using splitter island geometry and visual cues regarding the intersection.

8. For roundabouts with more than 4 approach legs, special design considerations should be made for the layout of the approach legs. Distance between legs must be balanced and ensure adequate time for driver decision making.

9. Roundabout proposals should address how roundabout operations would impact the corridor immediately upstream and downstream from the roundabout intersection. (If the proposed roundabout is in a location where exiting vehicles would be interrupted by queues from signals, railroads, draw bridges, ramp meters, or by operational problems created by left turns or accesses, these ~~problems~~possibilities should be addressed by the Engineering Investigation and incorporated into the design.

For brevity, the following is summarized from the ODOT Traffic Manual, Section 403, Roundabouts, and is included in a bulleted~~, step-wise~~ listing. For the full text, reference the ODOT Traffic Manual.

DRAFT

Steps in the Roadabout Selection Criteria and Approval Process include:

1. Perform an engineering investigation including a comprehensive Intersection Traffic Control Study. In addition to site specific intersection data, the investigation should include comparisons of intersection control types (i.e., stop controlled, signal controlled, roundabout, etc.)
2. Determine Design Life – generally 20 years for STIP projects and 10 years for development review.
3. Submit a scaled Conceptual Design of the proposed roundabout to the State Traffic Engineer for approval including roundabout type, geometry, topography, influence area, approximate right-of-way required as well as other pertinent design information and impacts. Figure 500-33 illustrates major design elements of a roundabout.
4. After Concept Design Approval has been obtained, submit a refined Design Package to obtain Design Approval from the State Roadway Engineer. This Design Package should include:
    a. Channelization plans, completed per the Department's guidance for roundabout pavement markings found in the ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual and for splitter islands found in the Highway Design Manual.
    b. A summary of the documented design decisions including
        i. how the requirements of Highway Division Directive DES 02 have been net, or
        ii. How the OAR 731-012 process (Reduction of Vehicle Carrying Capacity) has been met.
    c. Identified deviations from design standards where design exceptions might be needed.
    d. Roundabout geometric data, including:
        - Approach, entry, exit, and circulating design speeds for all approach legs including any bypass legs for right-turning vehicles. (Bypass legs should be designed for speeds no more than 5 mph greater than the design speed of the circulatory roadway in order to accommodate bicycles and pedestrians crossing the bypass leg);
        - The design vehicle for each movement and accommodation for other special vehicles (e.g., permitted loads, farm equipment, etc.);
        - A table or drawing summarizing the roundabout design details, including inscribed diameter, central island diameter, truck apron designed to accommodate the appropriate design vehicle for the roundabout, and cross slope of the circulating roadway;

DRAFT

- Detailed drawings showing the fastest path for each movement, with speed and radius for each curve;
- A table summarizing stopping and intersection sight distance on each leg; and
- Computer generated (AutoTurn) paths showing design vehicle and largest oversize vehicle movements (The Highway Division Directive DES 02 process will help identify the oversized loads that could be expected).

5. Detailed drawings of the splitter islands on each leg. These should include pedestrian and bicycle accommodation, ramps, etc.
6. Preliminary signing and illumination plans.

509.4 Design Considerations

It is the intent of the Department to ensure that the geometric design of roundabouts adheres to principals that encourage lower speeds ~~where appropriate~~ and improves safety for all users. These principals will also have traffic-calming benefits on the road system. It must be recognized that the design of a roundabout is an iterative process. Geometric layout may need to be refined several times before capacity and safety requirements can be achieved. Engineering judgment will be required to refine the layout. Each roundabout has its own unique requirements.

The following discussion presents some basic design considerations for modern roundabouts. Additional design details and layout considerations can be obtained through consultation with the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. **Roundabout designs on the state highway system shall use NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts and the HDM to determine design criteria and compliance with design standards. Where design considerations may conflict, the ODOT Highway Design Manual criteria will be used to resolve the conflict.**

509.5 Design Vehicle

When designing intersections on the state highway system, ODOT makes a distinction between "designing for" and "accommodating for" large vehicles. The typical design vehicle for intersections on state highways is the WB-67 class Interstate Truck also known as the Interstate Design Vehicle. Vehicles larger than the WB-67 class are accommodated as necessary.

In the design of roundabouts, as with other highway facilities, layouts should provide accommodation for the largest vehicles likely to use the facility. On reduction review routes accommodation vehicles should include a 105' lowboy trailer, a 12' wide manufactured home with a 105' overall length, any larger permit vehicles that have traveled that specific corridor

DRAFT

through the intersection (check with district permits for those vehicles), and any special farm equipment used nearby that would utilize the highway (community engagement).

The primary consideration for designing a roundabout to allow large vehicles to satisfactorily traverse it is to select both the appropriate design vehicle and~~, if necessary,~~ the appropriate accommodation vehicles. Once the vehicles have been selected, the necessary design for entrance geometry, circulating geometry and exit geometry can be provided.

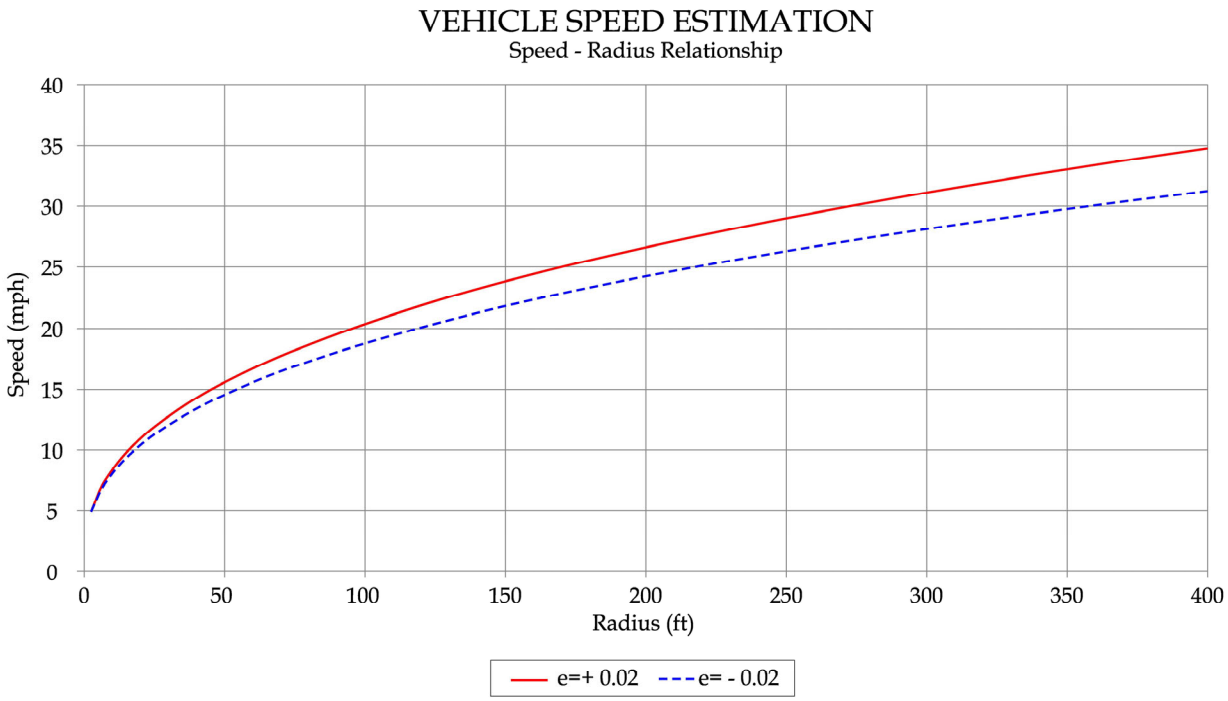
When designing a roundabout on the state highway system, the designer:

1. ***Shall coordinate with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and appropriate highway user groups to determine type and frequency of large vehicle traffic expected to use the roundabout.***
2. ***Shall use a WB-67 Interstate Truck as the design vehicle, unless it has been determined through coordination with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and appropriate highway user groups that a smaller vehicle is acceptable.***
3. ***Shall consider and accommodate as necessary, based on conversations with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and appropriate highway user groups, the need of over-dimensional vehicle passage through the roundabout.***
4. **Shall design entrance geometry, circulating geometry and exit geometry for all roundabouts, single lane and multi-lane, to allow the design vehicle to traverse the roundabout in a reasonable and expected manner commensurate with best practices as shown in NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts and the HDM.** ***It is also important to remember that ORS 811.292 and ORS 811.370 have provision for "commercial motor vehicles" to operate outside a single lane in a multi-lane roundabout when necessary and that it is illegal to drive next to a commercial vehicle within a multi-lane roundabout.***
5. ***Shall design the roundabout using representative templates for the design vehicle and for any vehicles being accommodated with the design. This design will utilize the representative templates to demonstrate vehicle accommodation and vehicle pathway through the roundabout by using computer generated path simulation software.***
6. ***Shall coordinate with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and other highway user groups throughout the design process to ensure all roundabout user expectations are being considered, including bicycle and pedestrian needs.***

DRAFT

509.6 Design Speed and Target Speed

Figure 500-34: Estimated Vehicle Speed and Radius Relationship – Fastest Path



Highway designers generally use a selected design speed when designing roadway elements for a project. ~~However, in the traditional sense of highway design, the~~The term design speed doesn't ~~necessarily~~ relate well to roundabouts. Controlling speed plays an important part for safety at roundabouts. Roundabouts are purposely designed so that traveling speeds are restricted to a low and consistent speed through the roundabout.

Figure 500-34 demonstrates estimated vehicle speeds based on the relationship of path geometry in the terms of radius and superelevation to corresponding theoretical velocity when calculating fastest paths through a roundabout. Superelevation for the path through a roundabout is considered to be a typical positive two percent at entrance and exit and a typical negative two percent along the circulating roadway. Table 500-4 is a tabular form of the path speed/radius relationship based on 25 foot increments in radius and the typical positive and negative two percent superelevation.

The vehicle speed values shown on the graph in Figure 500-34 and in Table 500-4 are determined by utilizing the simplified equations shown in NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts where:

$$V = 3.4415R^{0.3861}$$ for e= +2%

and

$V = 3.4614R^{0.3673}$ for e= -2%.

These simplified forms are derived from the basic equation for velocity and minimum radius from the AASHTO Green Book;

$$V = \sqrt{15R(e+f}$$

They are only valid for superelevation values (e) of +2% and -2%. Side Friction Factor (f) varies with speed as shown in Figure 3-6 (Side Friction Factors Assumed for Design) in the AASHTO Green Book and is accounted for in the equations. In an actual design, if superelevation is greater or less than the assumed positive and negative two percent shown in Figure 500-34 or Table 500-4 then theoretical fastest path speeds for the specific design will need to be calculated using the AASHTO minimum radius equation. Design superelevation (e) and friction factor (f) values can be obtained from the 2011 AASHTO Figure 3-6, Side Friction Factors Assumed for Design.

DRAFT

Table 500-4: Speed to Radius Relationship

Radius (ft.)	V(+2%) (mph)	V(-2%) (mph)
25	12	11
50	16	15
75	18	17
100	20	19
125	22	20
150	24	22
175	25	23
200	27	24
225	28	25
250	29	26
275	30	27
300	31	28
325	32	29
350	33	30
375	34	31
400	35	31

Speed (V), Radius (R) Relationship Equations:

Equation 500-1: Speed Radius Relationship

$$V = 3.4415R^{0.3861}$$ For e= 2% (NCHRP Report 1043, Equation 9.3)

Equation 500-2: Speed Radius Relationship

$$V = 3.4614R^{0.3673}$$ For e= -2% (NCHRP Report 1043, Equation 9.4)

Equation 500-3: Speed Radius Relationship

$$V = \sqrt{15R(e+f)}$$ (AASHTO Minimum Radius)

The design speed of the roundabout intersection should not be confused with the design speed of the highway. In many cases, the design speed of the approaching roadway may be greater than the speed for which the roundabout will be designed. Therefore, it is advantageous to use the term target speed when designing the roundabout layout. This will eliminate confusion with the approach road design speed. For roundabouts, target speed is considered the speed of

DRAFT

the "fastest path" of a vehicle through the roundabout. This is also called "geometric speed" in NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts.

There are five critical path radii used to determine fastest path movements through a roundabout. The fastest path of a vehicle is a theoretical analysis of entrance radius (R_1), the circulating radius (R_2), exit radius (R_3), left turn radius (R_4) and right turn radius (R_5). Figure 500-35 denotes the five critical radii that determine fastest path calculations for a roundabout. Figure 500-36 and Figure 500-37 demonstrate the method and assumptions used to calculate a fastest path through a single lane roundabout and a multi-lane roundabout respectively.

On the state highway system, maximum theoretical entry approach speeds for single lane roundabouts should be 25 mph. For multi-lane roundabouts maximum theoretical entry approach speeds should be limited to 30 mph. Target speeds for single lane roundabouts should be between 15 and 20 mph and between 20 and 25 mph for multi-lane roundabouts. Theoretical speeds through the roundabout (entry, circulation, exit) should be kept consistent with no greater differential than 10 mph to 15 mph maximum between entry and exit. For smaller diameter roundabouts found on local jurisdiction highways, these theoretical speeds may need to be reduced to fit the smaller design.

A safely designed roundabout should have geometry that accommodates all traffic movements at the chosen approach and target speeds, thereby maximizing safety benefits and minimizing the area needed for installation.

DRAFT

Figure 500-35: Five Critical Path Radii for Fastest Path Analysis

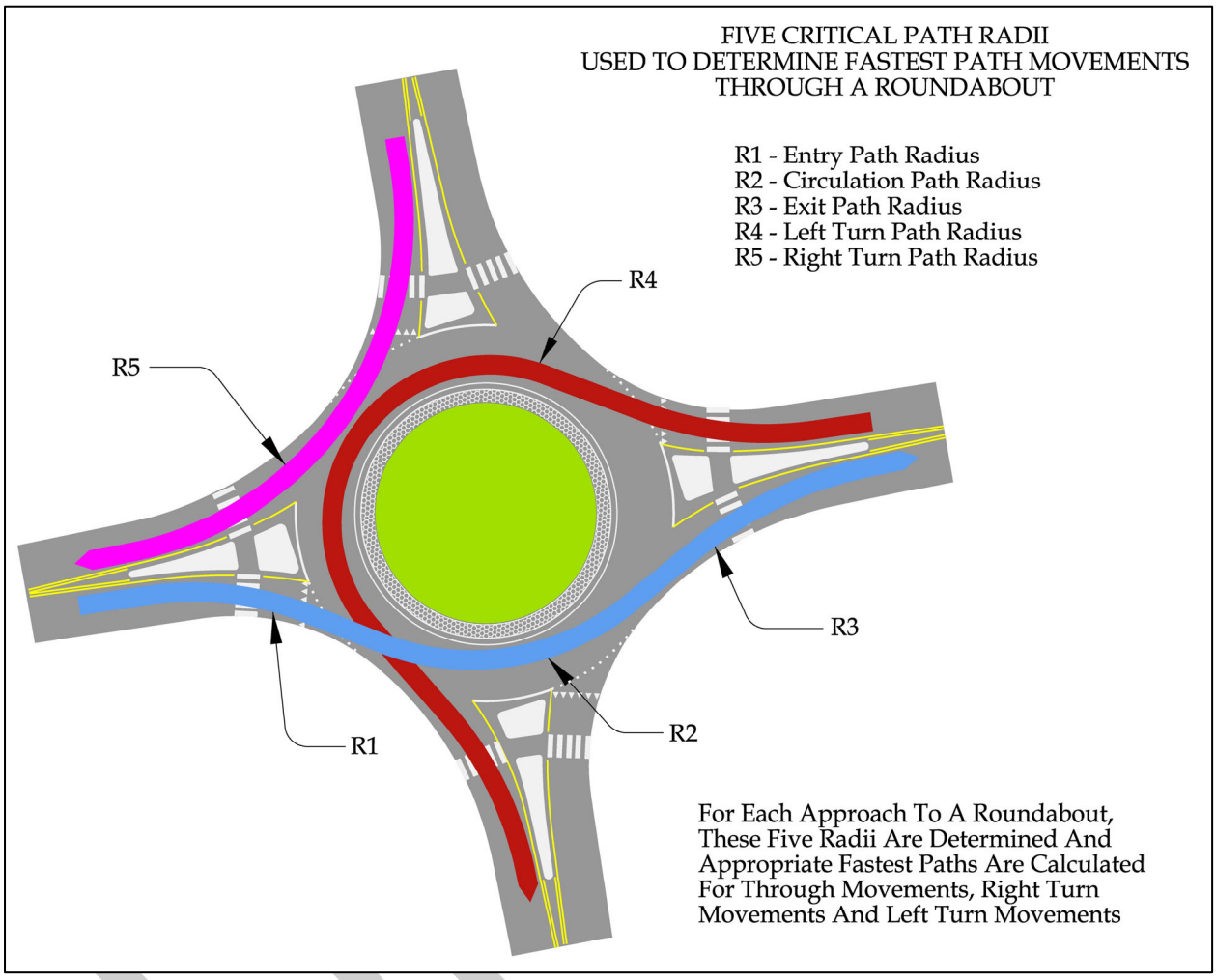


Figure 500-36: Fastest Vehicle Path through a Single Lane Roundabout

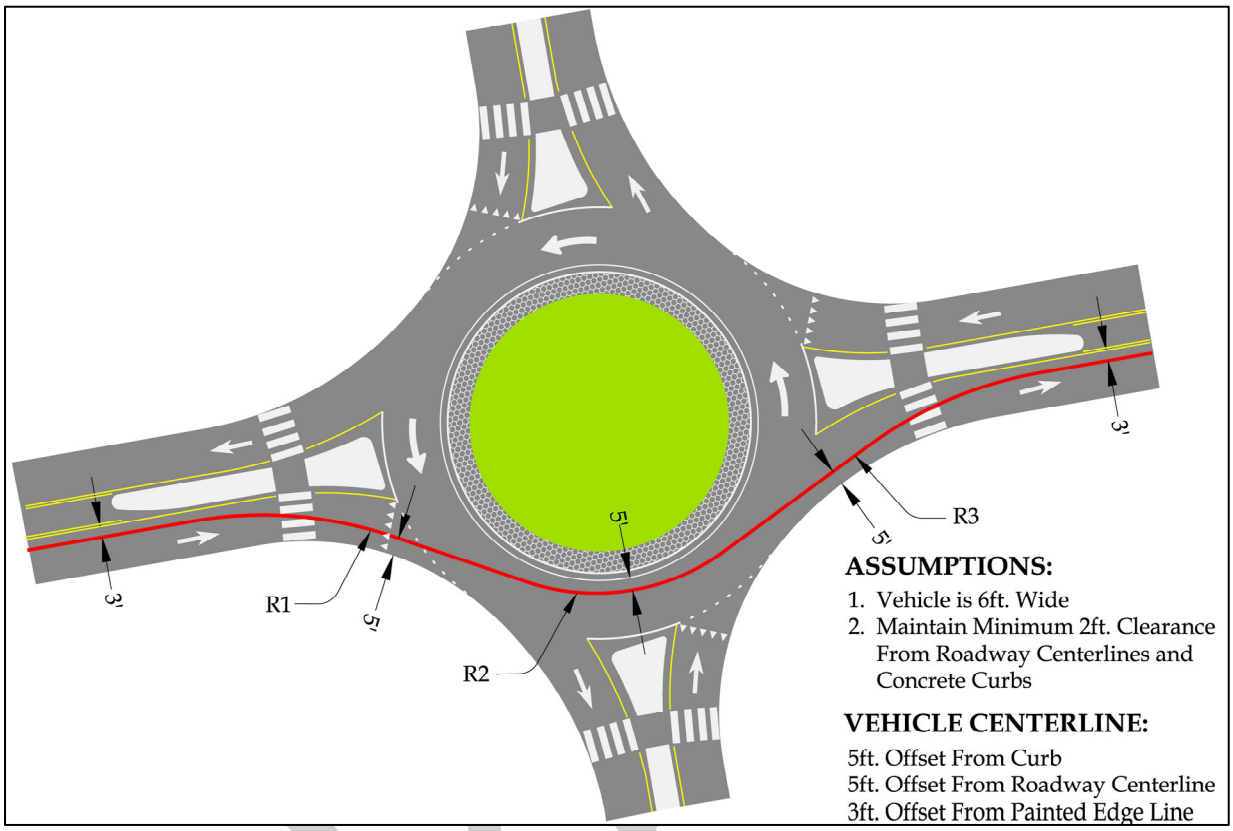
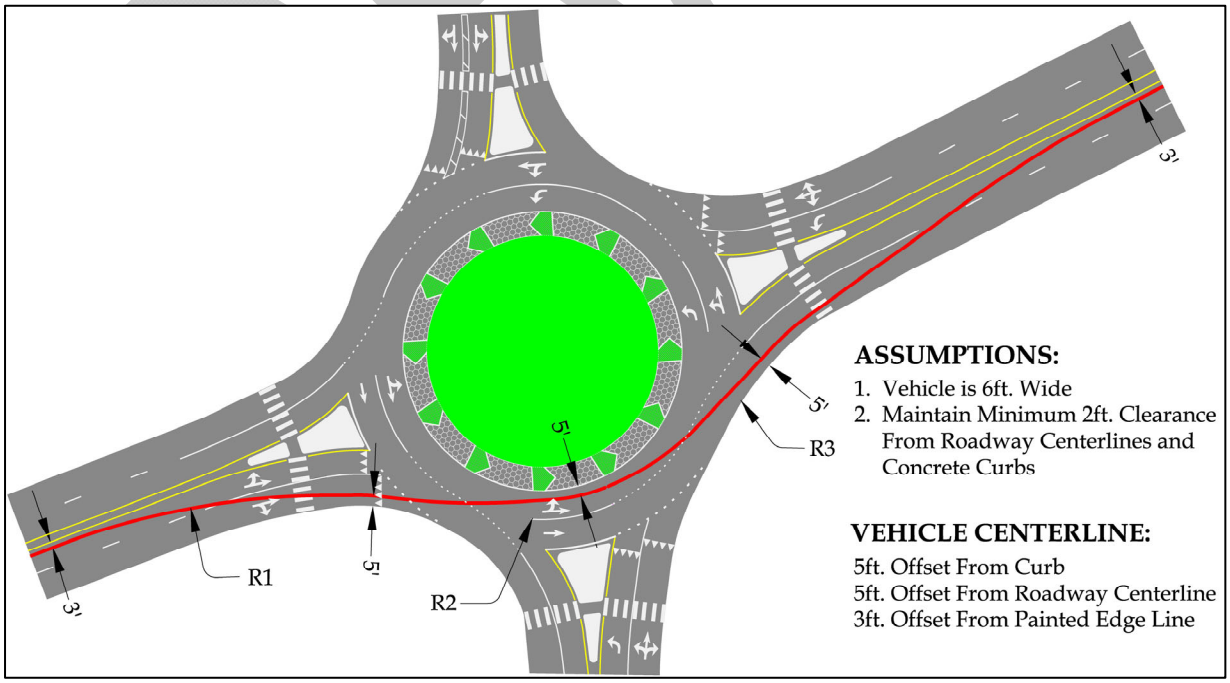


Figure 500-37: Fastest Vehicle Path through a Multi-Lane Roundabout



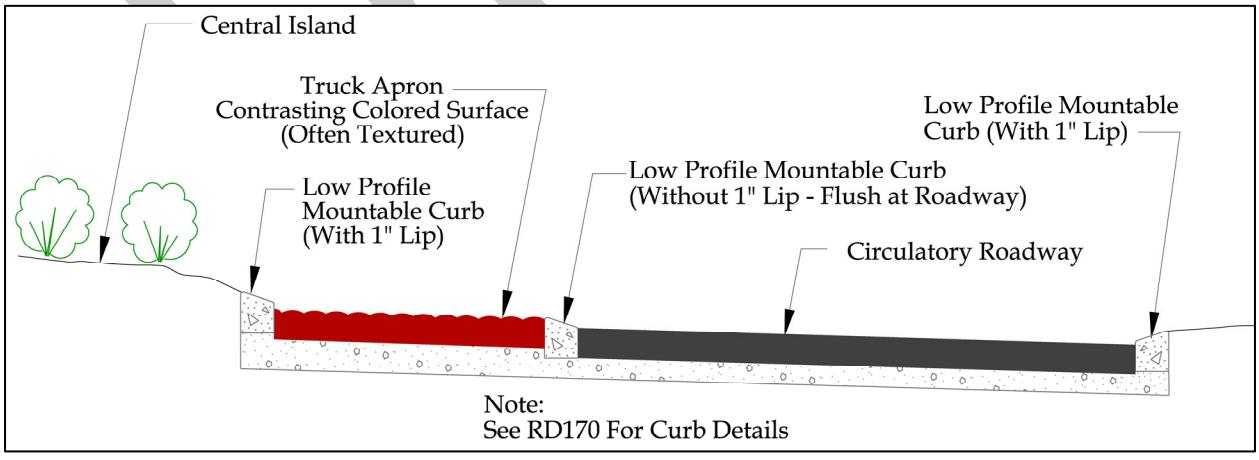
509.7 Inscribed Circle and Central Island

The inscribed circle is the outside edge of travel of the circulatory roadway. The central island is the raised area surrounded by the circulatory roadway. There are two areas of a central island, the mountable truck apron and the non-traversable center raised area. Figure 500-38 shows a typical cross-section of a roundabout including the basic elements of the truck apron, circulating roadway and central island.

Low profile mountable curbing is used for roundabouts on the state highway system. ***For central island truck aprons or other truck aprons where it is anticipated that trucks will need to mount the curb to maneuver through a roundabout, the low-profile curb is installed without the 1-inch lip and the edge of the slope is flush with the roadway finish surface. On splitter islands approaching the roundabout, the low-profile curb is generally installed with the 1-inch lip at the roadway finish surface. However, if there are locations along the splitter island where it is intended for large or over-sized vehicles to mount the curb to traverse the roundabout, the curb can be installed without the lip and flush with the roadway finish surface. See RD170 for curb details at roundabouts on the state highway system.***

It is important to maintain color differentiation between roadway areas, apron areas and splitter islands. This helps drivers see and understand the different areas of a roundabout and where they should be driving. It is strongly recommended to use red brick coloring for concrete truck apron and splitter island surfaces if using concrete as the traveled lanes near and inside the roundabout. This will provide strong color differentiation when either concrete or asphalt is used for the roadway surfacing. Patterning the apron and the splitter island surfaces is also recommended. Patterning discourages passenger vehicles from using the apron area unless necessary.

Figure 500-38: Typical Roundabout Cross-Section Elements



The Interstate Design Vehicle (WB-67 class truck) is the standard design vehicle for roundabouts on the state highway system. *Vehicles larger than a WB-67 vehicle will be*

accommodated at roundabouts where necessary as determined through conversation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and appropriate highway user groups.

The truck apron is a key roundabout design element to provide passage ~~and accommodation~~ of the design vehicle and accommodation of larger vehicles into and through the roundabout. Encroachment onto ~~the~~ truck ~~apron~~aprons is permitted and ~~encouraged~~expected for large vehicles to effectively traverse a roundabout~~; however, vehicles smaller than the Interstate Design Vehicle may be accommodated without encroachment.~~ .

To minimize circulatory roadway ~~width~~and entrance lane widths for single lane roundabouts, some states use the design philosophy that the circulatory roadway should be only wide enough to allow passage of a standard bus, fire truck, or ambulance without using the truck apron and therefore, all larger vehicles would use the truck apron for off-tracking. This is a good design practice to minimize the circulatory roadway width, keep passenger vehicle speeds low, reduce cost, reduce impacts to adjacent properties, and provide a more comfortable ride for passengers.

Design each roundabout to fit the location needs and to provide the most appropriate design elements for the traffic stream expected to use it. In the case of mini-roundabouts or compact roundabouts, the central island may need to be mounted by all larger vehicles. In rare, single lane locations where high proportions of heavy vehicles are expected, the design of adequate circulatory roadway width with minimal use of the truck apron might be appropriate. It is anticipated that locations with wider circulating lane width would be the exception as a special case.

Increasing circulatory roadway width or inscribed diameter to accommodate large vehicles within the circulatory roadway will ~~generally~~ increase the fastest path speeds through the roundabout for smaller vehicles, thereby potentially negating some of the safety benefits afforded by roundabouts. Truck aprons can be utilized at roundabout entrances and exits to accommodate the larger vehicles while still maintaining slower fastest path speeds. This practice can also reduce roadway widths which results in cost reduction. *A balance must be maintained between accommodating large vehicles and the safe, effective passage of general traffic ~~for which the roundabout is intended~~.*

NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts lists ranges of acceptable inscribed diameters for both single lane and multi-lane roundabouts. See Table 500-5 for inscribed diameters suggested in NCHRP Report 1043.

For general design parameters on the state highway system, the inscribed circle diameter for a single lane and multi-lane roundabouts accommodating the Interstate Design Vehicle generally follows the inscribed circle diameter of the NCHRP Report 1043. For Oregon state highways, ORS 366.215, OAR 731-012, and directive DES-02 must also be considered and appropriate procedures followed when determining the design inscribed diameter of a roundabout. Table 500-5 provides guidance for inscribed diameters. For roundabouts proposed on a reduction review route, the OAR 731-012 process leads to a record of support and documents collaboration with interested parties. See Oregon Revised

DRAFT

Stature 366.215 Implementation Guidance for more information. On non-reduction review routes, the DES-02 process provides agreement of the roundabout being "properly sized".

If a smaller vehicle than a WB-67 class vehicle has been deemed the appropriate design vehicle, a smaller inscribed diameter may be acceptable. **Using inscribed diameters smaller than the minimums described above require design concurrence and/or design exceptions. Contact the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for guidance.**

~~In addition to design vehicle considerations, there~~There are many other factors to consider when determining the inscribed diameter for a proposed roundabout. There may be locations where a smaller inscribed diameter is appropriate to accomplish overall intersection control goals. These locations should be considered on a case-by-case basis and designed accordingly to achieve the necessary intersection control. These designs may be based on a smaller design vehicle if deemed appropriate through conversation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and the requisite highway user groups.

If a WB-67 class vehicle is the design vehicle and a smaller diameter is proposed, then the truck apron may need to be widened for accommodation. Widening the truck apron will reduce the central Island diameter and may create undesirable visibility and sight lines across the roundabout. ~~In lower speed, urban locations, this may not be a substantial consideration.~~

Table 500-5: Roundabout Inscribed Diameters

ROUNDABOUT INSCRIBED DIAMETER					
	NCHRP Report 1043			ODOT Range	
Design Vehicle	**Single Lane	Multi-Lane		**Single lane	Multi-Lane (2-Lane)
		2-Lane	3-Lane		
WB-67	120 ft. - 180 ft.	140 ft. – 180 ft.	190 ft. - 240 ft.	*130 ft. -180 ft.	*175 ft. – 220 ft.
SU-30 BUS-40 WB40/ WB-50	65 ft. - 130 ft.	135 ft. – 160 ft.	190 ft. - 240 ft.	*95 ft. -130 ft.	*165 ft. – 220 ft.

* Design exception required for smaller inscribed diameters

** Mini-roundabouts and compact roundabouts are special cases of single Lane designs and have general diameters from 45ft. – 90ft. and from 65ft. – 120ft. respectively

In addition ~~to the inscribed diameters shown in ,~~ there are inscribed diameter ranges of smaller diameters that can be utilized ~~in certain locations~~ to meet operation and safety needs with minimal to no right-of-way acquisition. Depending on diameter and agency terminology, these types have been termed "mini-roundabout" or "compact roundabout". In general, mini-

roundabouts fall into a diameter range of 45 ft. to 90 ft. and compact roundabouts are considered in the 90 ft. to 130 ft. range. These are ~~generally~~commonly used on city or county roadways with minimal (less than 5-7% for mini) or no large vehicle traffic.

For the needs and vehicles that utilize the state highway system, there are ~~few~~ places where these smaller diameter roundabouts would be appropriate. ~~However, there may be~~There are some locations where a mini or compact roundabout would work well on the state system and these two additional types of roundabouts should ~~not be arbitrarily dismissed.~~ be considered where there is limited budget and less traffic present (especially if there is adequate existing pavement area).

The safety benefits afforded by roundabouts, even small diameter ones, are well documented. Roundabouts should be considered whenever intersection safety improvements are considered. If a smaller inscribed diameter roundabout is proposed for a design, contact the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for guidance. In the right location and with proper design, mini and compact roundabouts can provide safe and efficient intersection traffic control for minimal cost.

509.8 Roundabout Cross Section

Once the inscribed diameter has been established, the circulatory roadway width and central island truck apron width can be determined. The circulatory roadway is the area between the outside curb and the central island truck apron. This ~~is the~~ area is where ~~the majority of~~most traffic will traverse the roundabout. For single lane roundabouts, circulatory roadway widths should provide adequate width for most vehicles to comfortably maneuver through the roundabout, provide for some off-tracking of larger vehicles up to the design vehicle, but not be so wide that drivers may feel there is more than one lane in the roundabout.

Circulatory roadway width is based on the number of entering lanes and the turning requirements of the design vehicle. Generally, the circulating width should be at least as wide as the maximum entry width and in some cases, it may be appropriate to increase the width up to 120 percent of entry width.

The recommended circulatory roadway width for a single lane roundabout on the state highway system is 21 feet, excluding the truck apron width. For multi-lane roundabouts, the suggested circulating width is 14 feet to 16 feet per lane or 28 feet to 32 feet for a two-lane roundabout on the state highway system. The suggested circulatory roadway widths are based on general design characteristics. Circulating widths should be checked using design vehicle turning characteristics and overall intersection control parameters governing the intended need for the roundabout installation. Larger diameters and wider lanes tend to increase circulating speeds which could jeopardize the intended speed control of a roundabout.

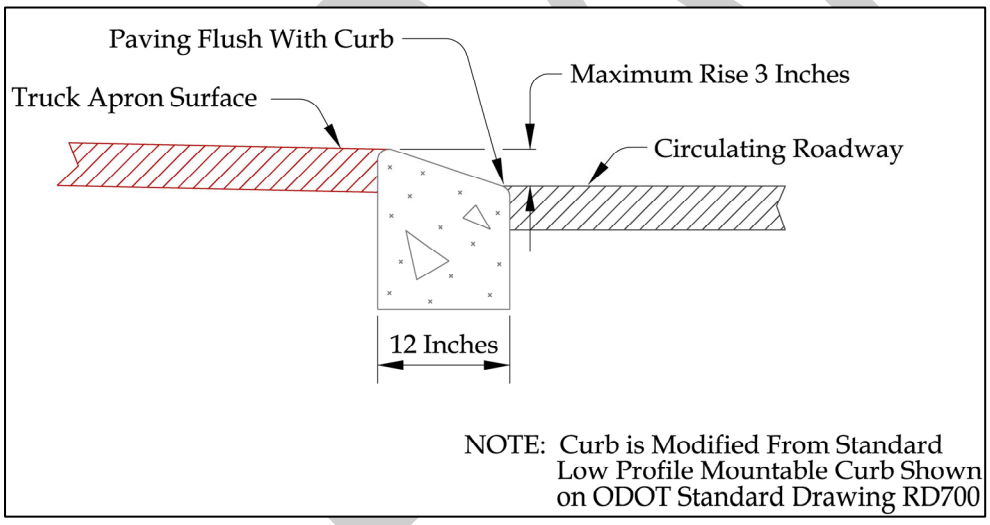
Central island truck aprons are an integral design element of a roundabout that provides accommodation for large vehicles while maintaining deflection and design controls for general traffic to achieve effective roundabout design at an intersection. A truck apron is generally

DRAFT

designed in such a way that when traversed by a passenger car, it would feel uncomfortable but not unsafe. **Truck aprons shall be designed to allow for efficient transition to and from the ~~circulatory~~ roadway for large vehicles. Modified, low profile curbs no higher than 3 inches shall be used for delineation and transition between the ~~circulatory~~ roadway and ~~the~~ truck ~~apron~~aprons. *For some designs with specific needs, the total rise of the modified low profile curb could be lowered to 2 inches to facilitate specific vehicles.*** However, this is not a standard curb cross-sectional shape and will potentially require additional hand work to form and construct. This can increase cost and construction complexity. **Curbs for truck aprons shall be installed flush with the ~~circulatory~~ roadway** (see Figure 500-39~~.~~). See ~~. For full curb design at roundabouts. (See~~ Standard Drawing RD170~~.)~~ for additional curb details.

As discussed in Section 509.7, it is important to maintain color differentiation between roadway areas, apron areas and splitter islands. ***It is strongly recommended to use red brick coloring for concrete truck aprons and splitter island surfaces.*** This will provide ~~strong~~ color differentiation when either concrete or asphalt is used for roadway surfacing. Patterning the apron and the splitter island surfaces is also recommended. Patterning generally discourages passenger vehicles from using the apron area unless necessary. (See Figure 500-38, Typical Roundabout Cross-Section Elements.)

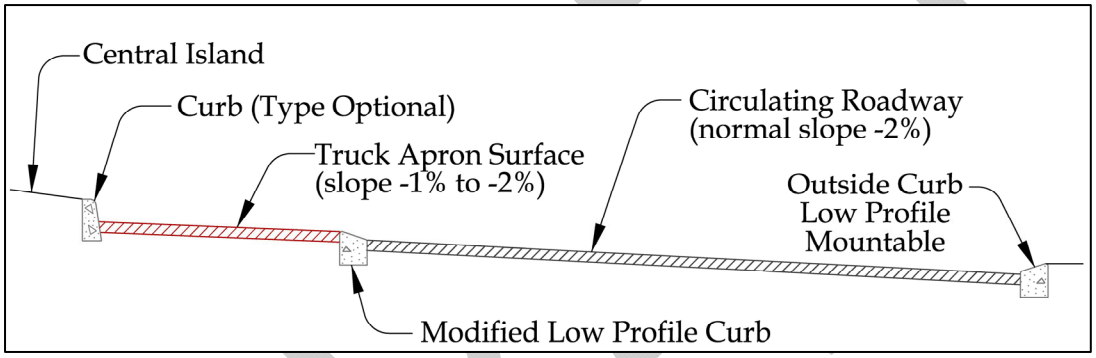
Figure 500-39: Truck Apron Modified Low Profile Mountable Concrete Curb



~~*Truck*~~*The central island truck apron width is determined by turning requirements of the design vehicle and other large vehicles being accommodated through the roundabout.* Vehicle paths can be simulated using computer software to determine off-tracking needs. *Typical central island truck apron widths range from 10 feet to 20 feet, but wider aprons can be used to accommodate specific vehicle movements as needed. Central islands and their truck aprons do not need to be limited to a circular shape. While this is the typical configuration, they can be shaped to meet turning movement needs.* Figure 500-42 illustrates a non-circular central island.

In general, past design practice set cross-slope of the central island truck apron at 2 percent from the roundabout center to the apron curb (-2 percent). More recent design philosophy is leaning to utilizing a 1 percent cross-slope to ~~better~~ accommodate specific large vehicle combinations. Truck apron cross-slopes need to be carefully determined to not introduce undesirable dynamics to large vehicles as they traverse the apron. This is particularly true when accommodating low–boy trailers, oversize loads, loads with high centers-of-gravity or loads that can shift, like bulk liquid loads. Low-boy trailers can pose problems with the vertical profile between the apron and the circulating roadway. Some low-boy trailers have only six inches of clearance from the ground to the bottom of the trailer frame. Truck apron cross-slope should be only as steep as necessary to provide adequate drainage. Smooth transitions between the circulating roadway and the apron are crucial to effective design and in ~~most~~almost all cases should not be greater than 2 percent in differential slope.

Figure 500-40: Typical Truck Apron and Circulating Roadway Cross-Slope



Cross-slope of the circulating roadway is also usually at 2% outward (-2%) keeping the truck apron and circulating roadway relatively parallel with each other. Figure 500-40 Illustrates typical truck apron and circulating roadway cross-slope. Advantages to this cross-slope design include:

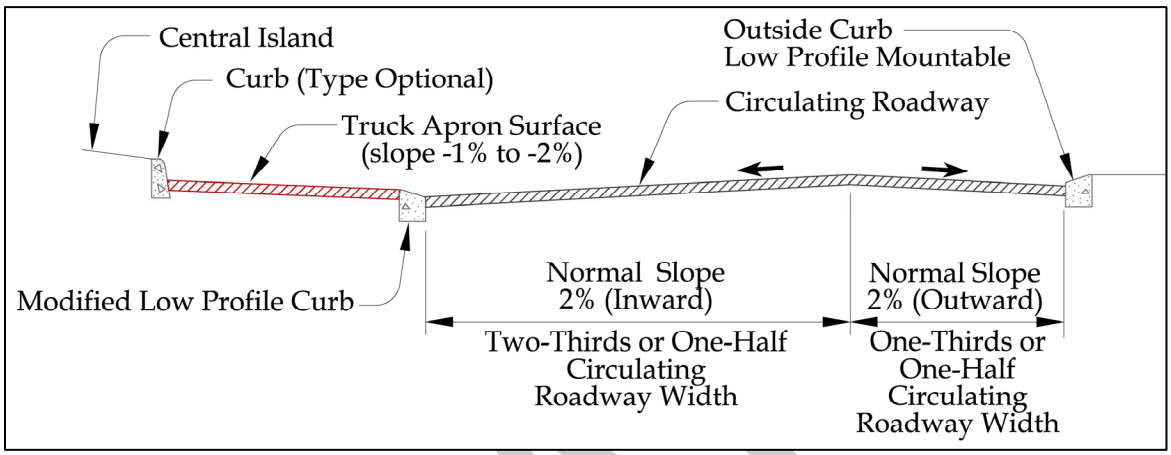
1. Raising the central island and improving its visibility,
2. Lowering circulating speeds by introducing adverse superelevation,
3. Minimizing breaks in the cross-slope of the entrance and exit lanes. And
4. Helping drain surface water to the outside of the roundabout minimizing the drainage system.

In the past, significantly altering the cross-slope relationship between the truck apron and the circulating roadway was generally not an accepted practice. However, more recent research and analysis investigating varying this relationship from the typical -2% across the truck apron and circulatory roadway has shown there may be some benefit to certain vehicle movements through roundabouts, as well as potential drainage benefits.

Some agencies have opted to slope the truck apron inward toward the central island. In locations subjected to high incidence of precipitation, this option can reduce runoff across the circulating roadway. This can also have a beneficial effect of less ice buildup on the circulating

roadway in colder climates. Depending on adjacent geometry of a particular roundabout, sloping the truck apron inward can also have a positive effect in minimizing the potential for load shifting. However, sloping the circulating roadway inward may require additional drainage for storm water removal.

Figure 500-41: Truck Apron and Crowned Circulating Roadway Cross-Slope



Some agencies ~~are developing~~develop roundabout geometries that include a crown section on the circulating roadway. In this option, the inner portion of the circulating roadway is sloped inward towards the truck apron and the outer portion is sloped outward away from the truck apron. The crown section is usually divided into two-thirds of the circulating roadway width sloping inward and one-third sloping outward. The roadway width could also be divided in a half inward and a half outward scenario. Figure 500-41 illustrates the crowned circulating roadway concept.

Agencies that are developing these alternative cross-sections ~~feel they~~ may ~~be of~~ benefit ~~in~~ accommodating oversize and overweight vehicles at these roundabouts. The theory is to minimize vertical movement as a large vehicle transitions on and off the truck apron. Disadvantages to using a crowned circulating roadway section are:

1. More inlets are required to handle the drainage, and the drainage system is more complex with the potential for increased maintenance.
2. The crown section introduces a break point in the vehicle path at entrances and exits that must be adequately blended for both comfort and clearance problems for low ground clearance vehicles.
3. Sloping the circulating roadway inward reduces or eliminates the adverse superelevation of the fastest path through the roundabout. This can increase some vehicle speeds on the circulating roadway.

The alternative roundabout cross-sections discussed in this section are not the preferred cross-section for roundabouts on the state highway system in Oregon. They are discussed here because some agencies

are using them, and they seem to have benefits in certain locations. However, their use is not wide spread, and more information is needed to understand if there are unforeseen negative impacts.

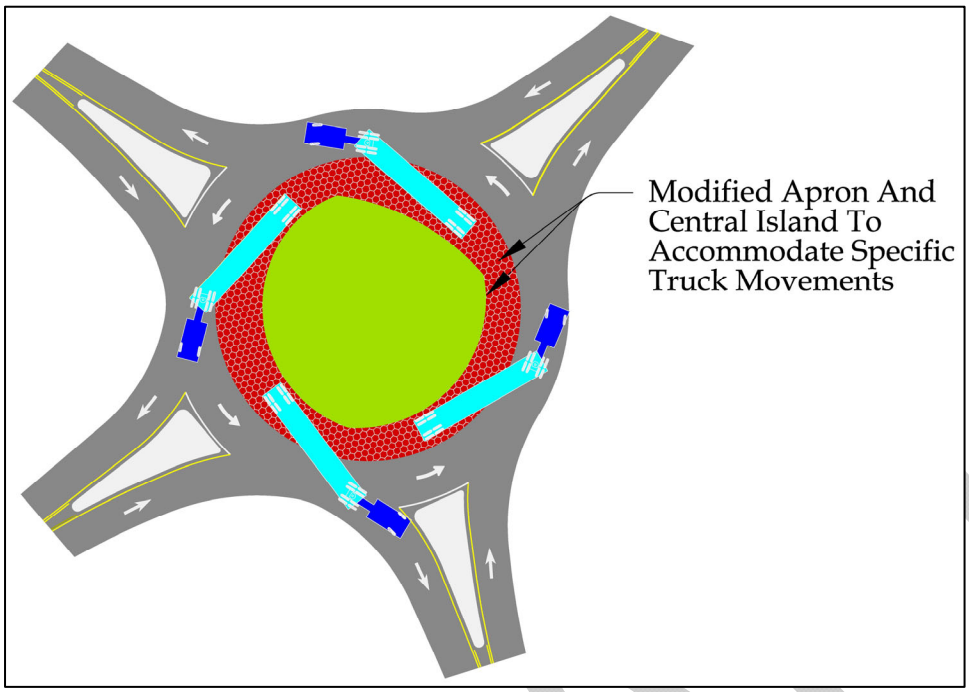
~~However the cross-section of a roundabout is designed, the~~The vertical profile that a vehicle traversing a roundabout follows is ~~a~~ critical ~~piece of~~in determining the ~~overall roundabout~~cross-section design. Designers must analyze the vertical design profile for the paths of ~~all~~low clearance vehicles that will be using the roundabout. This is particularly important for large vehicles that will need to utilize the truck apron and for low-boy trailers with limited ground clearance. The vertical clearance ~~can~~needs to be checked by drawing a chord across the truck apron in the position of the trailer's swept path~~. It is also important~~ to analyze vertical clearance ~~along~~entering, through, and exiting the circulatory roadway itself. ~~In some cases, the~~The warping of the profile to blend transitions at exits and entrances can create high spots that a turning trailer may contact under dynamic loading or twisting of the trailer frame.

The central island truck apron is a critical element of a roundabout and there is no set truck apron width. It needs to be wide enough to accommodate appropriate vehicle movements. A 10 foot to 15 foot width is a good starting point. Large vehicles making left (270 degree) turns will generally have the greatest off-track. Apron width may need to be increased to accommodate this movement for some vehicles. If a central island truck apron larger than 15 foot width is needed, this may be an opportunity to evaluate the benefit of a larger inscribed circular diameter.

Truck aprons and the corresponding central island do not necessarily need to be round. There are examples of oval shaped central islands and odd shaped aprons that have been used to accommodate specific vehicles. Truck aprons utilizing "cut-out" central island sections have also been employed to optimize truck movements at some locations. Figure 500-42 illustrates modifying the truck apron and central island to accommodate truck movements.

DRAFT

Figure 500-42: Modified Truck Apron



Modifying the central island and truck apron can be beneficial in smaller diameter roundabouts by keeping the footprint small and still accommodating large vehicles. This can also work well at ~~normal sized~~larger diameter roundabouts that accommodate ~~oversize~~oversized vehicles. ~~However, care must be taken in not creating an apron wider than necessary. Widening the truck apron will decrease the remaining raised center area.~~

Creating aprons only as wide as necessary is encouraged since widening the truck apron will decrease the remaining raised center area. *One important reason for the raised center area is to provide a visual screen using vegetation to restrict visibility from one side of the roundabout to the other.* The term used in roundabout design for blocking the view across a roundabout with earth mounding or vegetation is "Terminal Vista". The center area needs to be visible to approaching drivers to indicate to them the existence of the roundabout. If an approaching driver can see across the roundabout, there may be a tendency to think the road continues straight through the intersection and the driver may be unaware of the necessity to deviate and maneuver around the circulatory roadway. Long range approach visibility of the central island is important at all roundabouts, but it is paramount at rural locations where approaching vehicles are traveling at a greater speed differential between normal roadway speed and roundabout entrance speed. A driver needs time to understand and slow down on approach to the entrance. The roundabout needs to be conspicuous to drivers.

In a positive sense, wider aprons can increase sight distance to the left for a driver judging a gap when entering a roundabout. Balance needs to be maintained between a truck apron wide enough to accommodate vehicles and aid in entering sight distance, but not create visibility or

recognition problems for approaching traffic. If a roundabout's inscribed diameter needs to be at the smaller end of the suggested NCHRP Report 1043 range for design, a wider apron may be necessary to accommodate large vehicles. Designing for these situations needs careful consideration to ensure compromises do not negatively affect overall roundabout performance.

509.9 Entry/Exit Geometry and Layout

Entrance and exit geometry and layout are critical to effective roundabout design. There are four key considerations when designing roundabout entrances and exits. They include:

1. Approach alignment;
2. Angle between approaches;
3. Entry/exit width, and
4. Entry/exit curve radii.

509.9.1 Approach Alignment

There are three general types of approach alignment. They include:

1. Alignment offset left of center;
2. Alignment with center, and;
3. Alignment offset right of center.

Figure 500-43 illustrates the three alignment types.

1. Alignment Offset Left of Roundabout Center
    a. Advantages
        i. Increased deflection for ~~better~~ entry speed control
        ii. Potential for larger entry radii to ~~better~~ accommodate large vehicles with smaller inscribed diameters
        iii. May reduce impacts to right side of approach roadway
    b. Disadvantages
        i. Potential for tangential exit or increased exit radii creating less speed control on exit
        ii. May create greater impacts to left side of approach roadway
2. Alignment With Center of Roundabout
    a. Advantages

DRAFT

i. Reduces alignment changes along approach roadway to keep impacts centered

ii. May provide for more consistent entry and exit radii and more consistent speed

iii. Centers approach on roundabout center and may make roundabout more visible to approaching drivers.

b. Disadvantages

i. May require a slightly larger inscribed diameter to maintain speed control compared to left offset style

ii. May be more difficult to control approach speeds

3. Alignment Offset Right of Center

a. Advantages

i. May improve view angles in some locations

ii. May help in large inscribed diameters, if speed can be controlled

b. Disadvantages

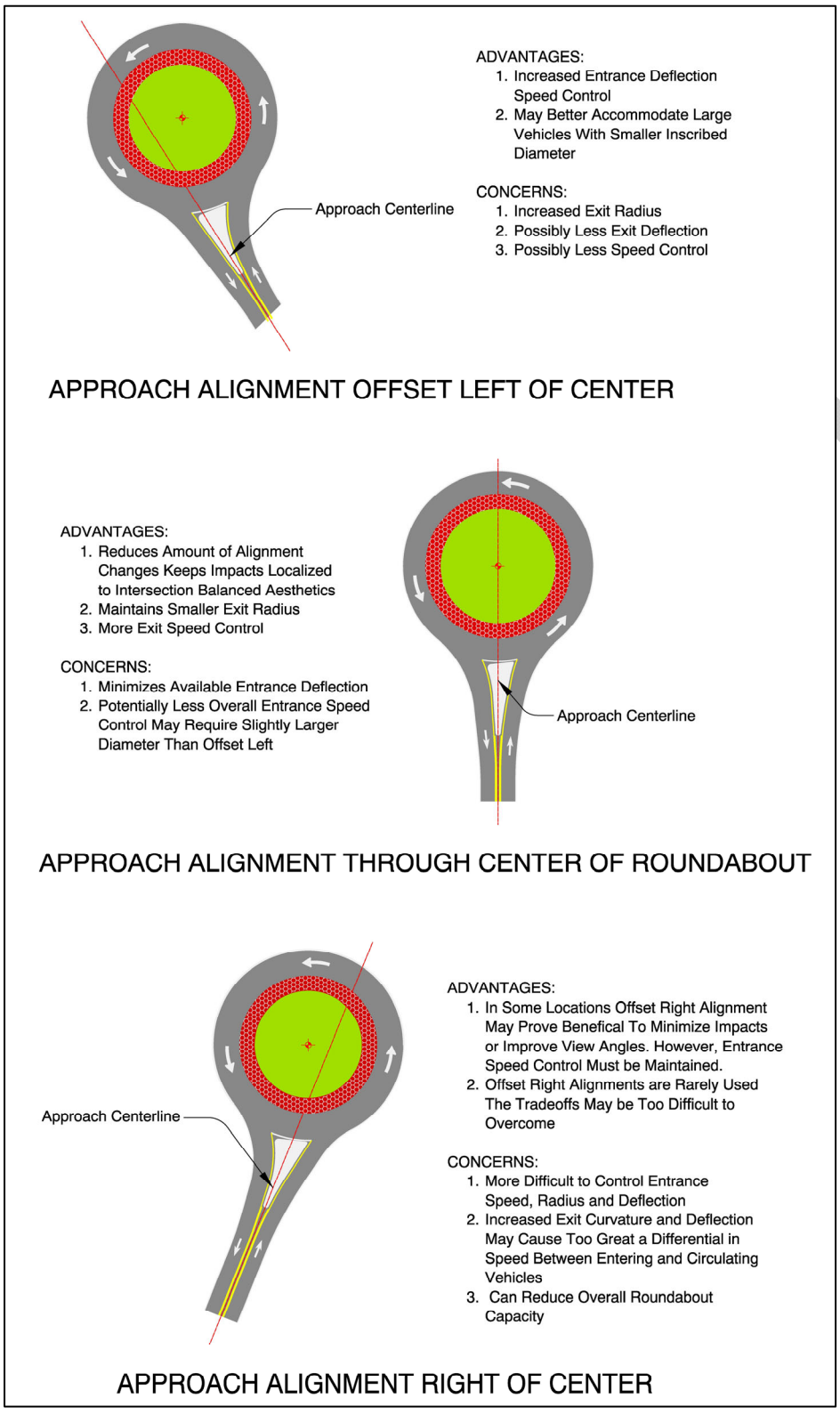
i. Less potential for appropriate deflection to control entry speed

ii. Decreases exit radii creating greater speed differential through roundabout

iii. Creates potential for uncomfortable forces acting on vehicle occupants

DRAFT

Figure 500-43: Approach Alignment



Of the three types of approach alignments discussed, alignments offset left or alignments with the center are preferred for roundabout design on state highways. ***Approach alignments offset right are discouraged and generally should not be used****.* The major concern with offset right alignments is speed control on entry. However, there may be a rare location where an offset right alignment might be appropriate. **Offset right alignments will require design concurrence through the ODOT ETSB Roadway Engineering Section and the State Roadway Engineer.**

Roundabout approach alignment focuses on the centerline horizontal alignment approaching the roundabout. Consideration must also be given to the alignment the approaching vehicle actually traverses. This often begins with an offset alignment from centerline and deviates from the centerline alignment through successive curvature to control speed as the vehicle approaches the yield line at the entrance. For layout purposes, this alignment may follow the middle of the travel lane, the splitter island curb line, or in the case of a multi-lane roundabout, the center stripe between the approaching lanes. Whatever location is determined as most appropriate for the vehicle approach alignment, it is of primary importance that the alignment meet ODOT horizontal design criteria.

ODOT horizontal alignments utilize spiral transitions for curves equal to or greater than 1 degree and angle points are not permitted. ***All project design alignments must be tied to the existing alignment at beginning and end and not "float" independently.*** For approach vehicle alignments at roundabouts, the offset alignment starts parallel to the centerline alignment.

- If the approach alignment is on tangent, the offset alignment begins with the same bearing as the centerline alignment.
- If the approach alignment starts at a point on a curve of the centerline alignment, the offset alignment follows the parallel offset curvature of the centerline alignment for a minimum of 50 feet before alignment changes.
- For tangent offset approach alignments utilizing successive reversing curvature with posted approach speed of 35 mph or greater, the first curve, if 1 degree or greater, ~~shall~~should use an appropriate entrance spiral transition when the roundabout is less visible. A spiral transition is not required on the exit of the curve nor is a spiral transition required on any successive curves up to the yield line.
- For alignments beginning on a parallel offset curve, maintain a minimum of 50 feet of starting curvature prior to any alignment changes. For parallel offset curve alignments with posted approach speed of 35 mph or greater, maintain the minimum 50 feet of curvature and use an appropriate spiral transition segment to the first successive element. No spiral transitions are required on any curves following the first successive element.
- Exit horizontal geometry will follow the same layout as entrance geometry only in reverse order ending with a spiral transition back to the existing alignment at the tie in

DRAFT

point if the final curve is greater than 1 degree. The exit alignment will tie into the existing alignment parallel offset smoothly with no angle point.

509.9.2 Angle Between Approaches

As with design of stop controlled or signalized intersections, the angle between approaches is important to the overall design of a roundabout. ***All approaches should be designed as perpendicular to each other as possible.*** This approach design will help ensure sufficient separation between two adjacent legs. Approaches built too close together, can lead to potential traffic conflicts due to the entering driver being unaware of an entering vehicle on the upstream approach leg. In addition, if two successive approaches meet at an angle significantly greater than 90 degrees, it will often result in excessive speed of right turning vehicles. Alternatively, if two successive approaches form an angle significantly less than 90 degrees, then the difficulty for larger vehicles to successfully move through the turn is increased. Figure 500-44 demonstrates difficulties with approach angles too great or too small.

As with designing any intersection improvement, conventional or roundabout, it may be difficult if not impossible to provide perpendicular approach connections. Right-of-way, topography and existing structures are only a few of the potential restrictions and conflicts designers face when trying to improve skewed intersection alignments.

When it is not possible to re-align approaches to 90 degrees, it may be possible to increase the inscribed diameter or to change the overall geometry from a circle to an oval to achieve a balance between entry design, exit design and speed control. However, care must be taken to not compromise the overall roundabout design or project parameters. Increasing the inscribed diameter or developing an oval roundabout can improve adjacent approach geometry, but these designs can also increase roundabout speeds to the point of negatively impacting the overall design.

An oval geometry may have greater right-of-way impacts as well as being too unfamiliar to drivers, thereby creating the potential for confusion. However, oval roundabouts can provide benefits in the appropriate location. Figure 500-45 illustrates a skewed alignment and the three options to make approach alignment improvements and the potential trade-offs when using them.

A fourth option could be a combination of these design adjustments. Improving the skew with a minor alignment change and a small increase in inscribed diameter may be sufficient to provide acceptable approach geometry, while minimizing impacts to adjacent properties. For simplicity in presenting the concepts, illustrations in the figures all have the individual approach alignments meeting at the center of the roundabout. Using approach alignments other than center alignments as shown in Figure 500-43 could also help to create acceptable overall approach spacing at skewed locations. Even though a roundabout contains skewed approaches, it may still provide improved safety and operations over the existing skewed intersection it is

DRAFT

replacing. *Given the previous discussion, skewed intersections should not be dismissed as roundabout candidates before full analysis is performed. Many skewed approach roundabouts have been constructed and are working well.*

By their nature, roundabouts with 3 or 5 (or more) approaches can be difficult to provide appropriate deflection, speed control and right turning radii. Roundabouts with only three approaches may have large angles between approaches allowing for less deflection and higher entrance and exit speeds. Roundabouts with five or more approaches present challenges not so much in achieving deflection, but in providing sufficient turning radii at some or all right turn movements, as well as challenges providing preferred entry design. *For roundabouts with three approaches, it is preferred, as much as possible, to align two of the approaches at 180 degrees with each other and the third approach at 90 degrees with the other two rather than aligning all three at 120 degrees with each other to achieve appropriate deflection and speed control.* Figure 500-46 depicts three legged roundabout approach alignment.

Figure 500-44: Angle Between Approaches

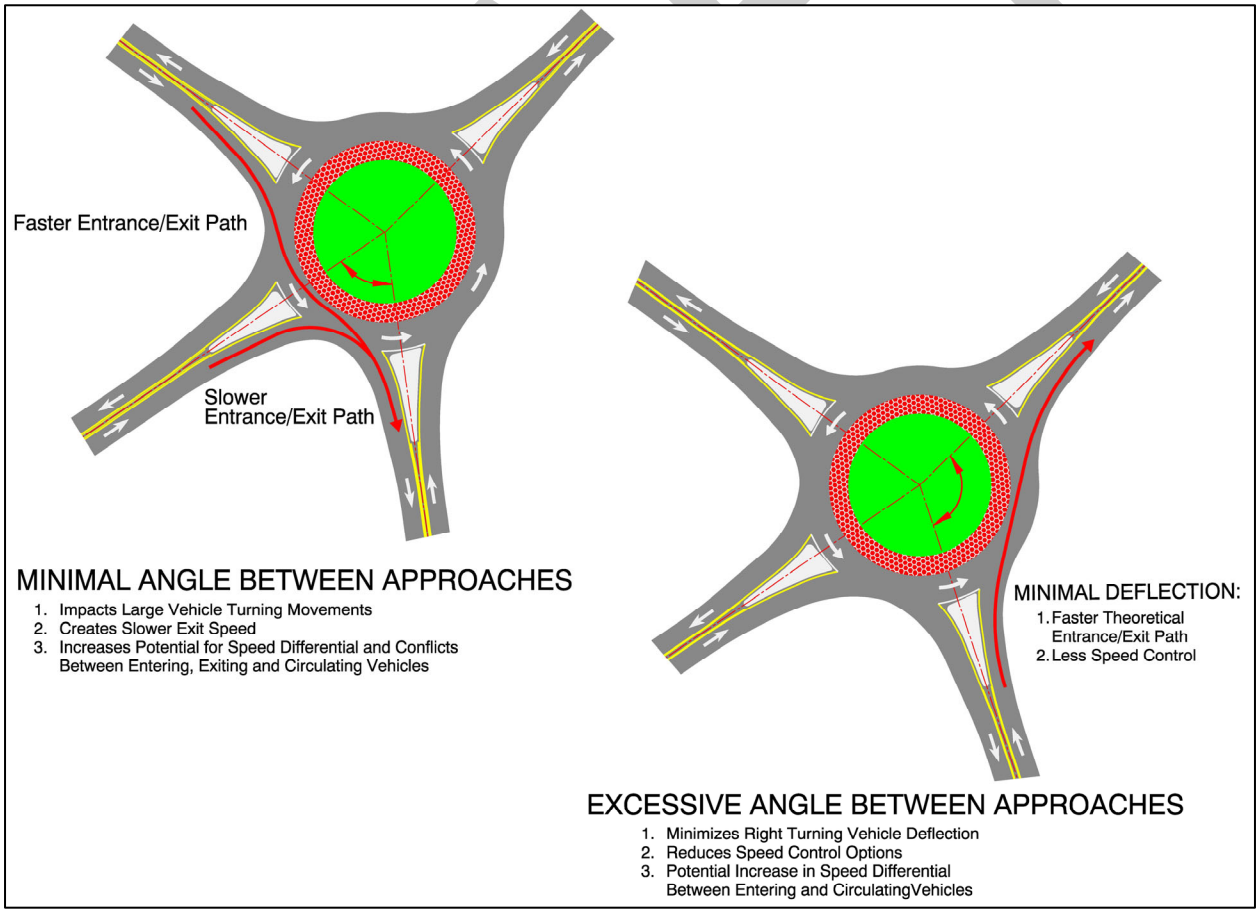


Figure 500-45: Skewed Alignments

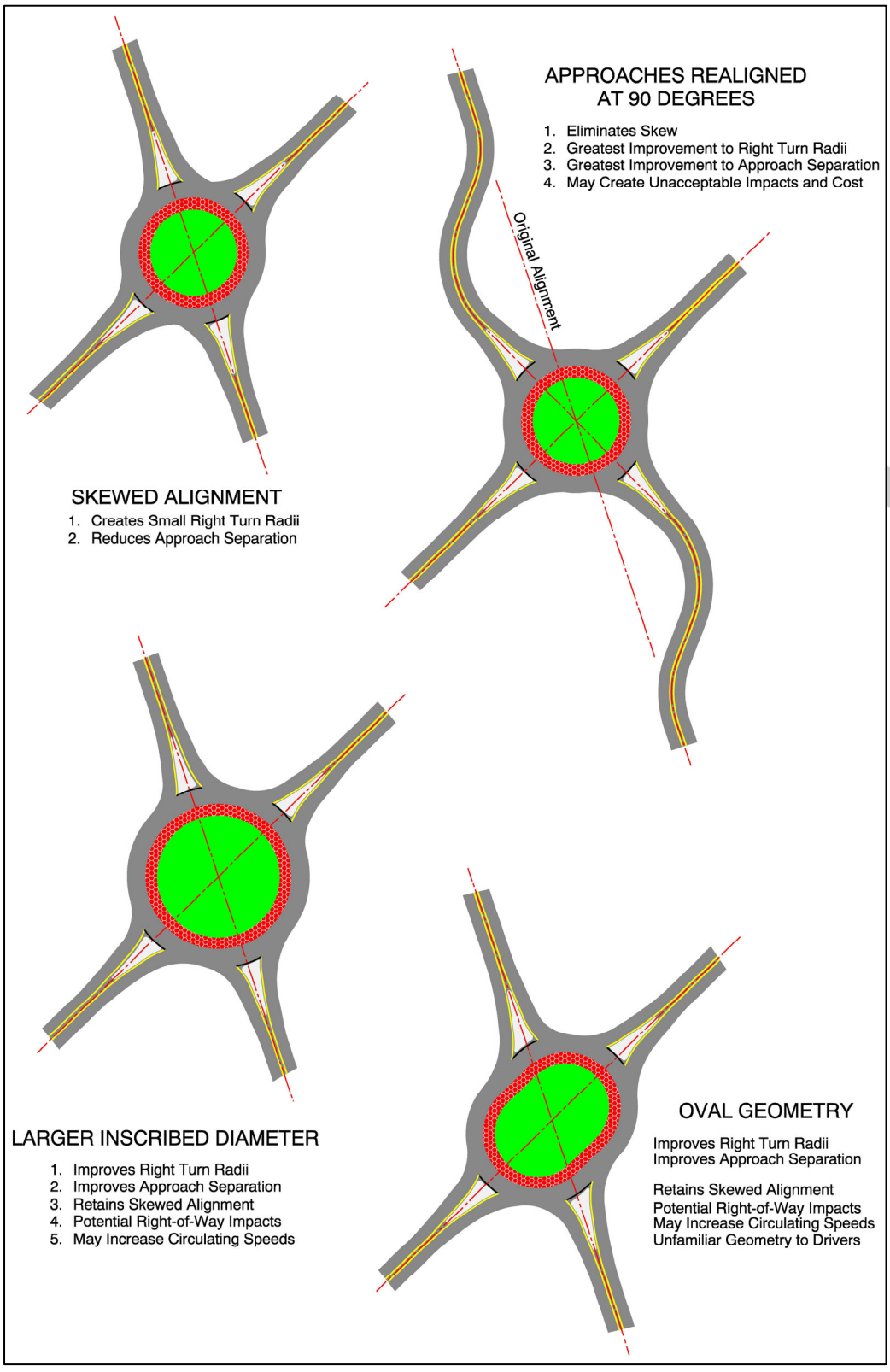


Figure 500-46: Roadway with Three Approaches

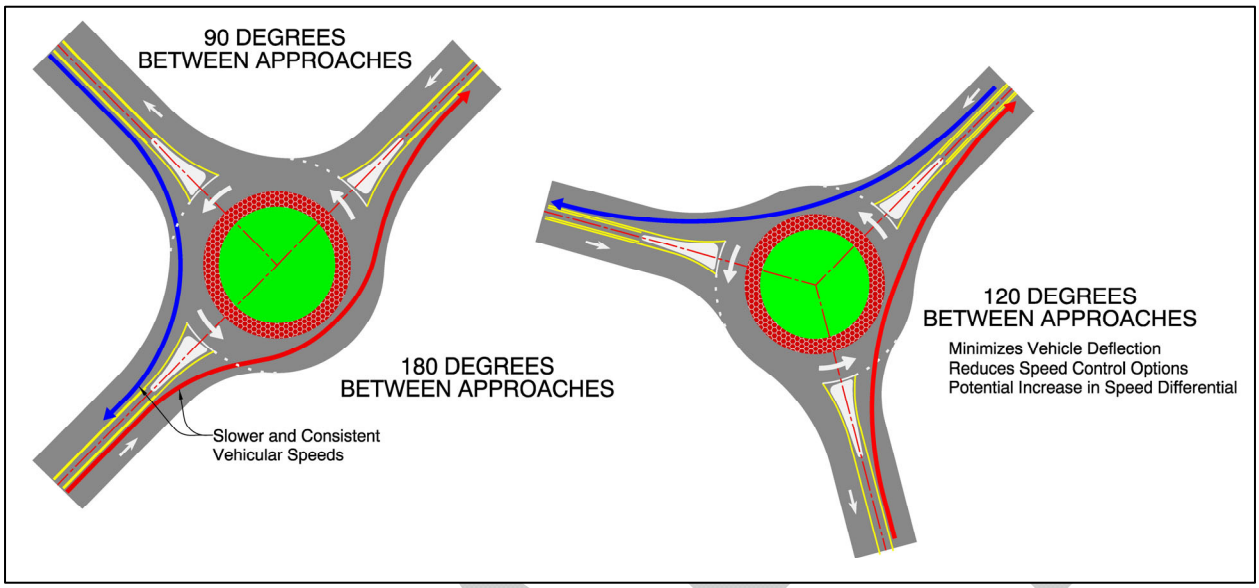
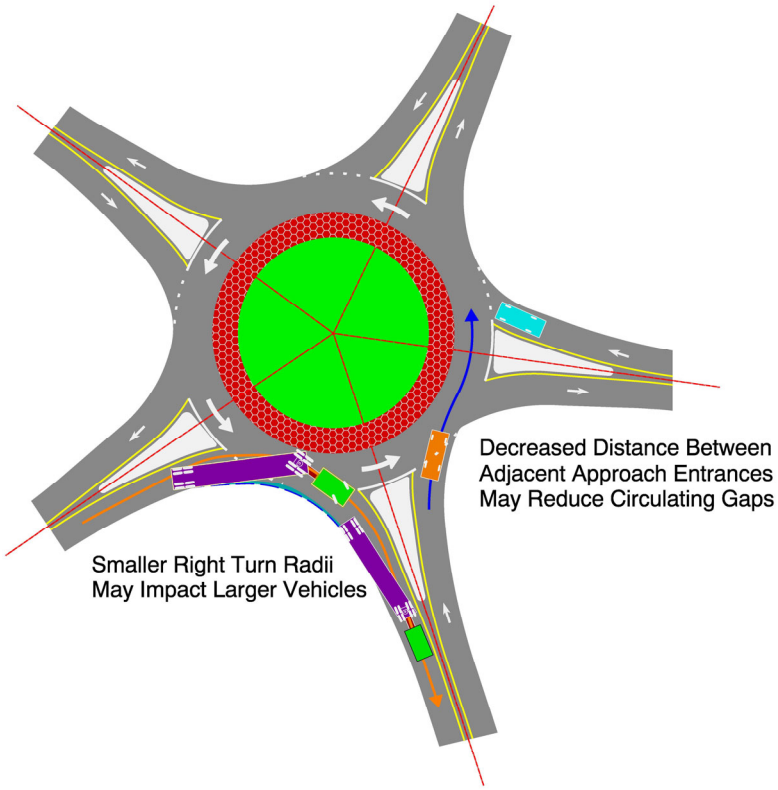


Figure 500-47 portrays a roundabout with five approaches and some of the inherent problems with roundabouts comprised of more than four legs. Roundabouts with more than four approaches present challenges with approach angles and with entry and exit parameters. In general, the more approaches there are, the smaller the angle between the approaches. These roundabouts will need special design considerations to achieve an effective design. Contact the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section to discuss options when laying out a roundabout with more than four approach legs.

DRAFT

Figure 500-47: Roundabout with Five Approaches



509.10 Entry and Exit Width

Entry width and exit width are also important factors in creating effective roundabout design. These widths are dictated by the needs of the traffic stream based principally on the design vehicle. ***Vehicle needs must be balanced against necessary speed management and pedestrian crossing needs.*** Single lane roundabouts generally employ widths between 14 ft. for smaller diameter or mini-roundabouts and 18 ft. for more standard size roundabouts. Although, in some locations, these widths may be increased if deemed appropriate and flaring the entrance can aid in truck off-tracking. For multi-lane roundabouts, required entry and exit widths depend on the number of lanes entering or exiting. Typical widths for a two-lane roundabout range from 24 ft. to 30 ft. As with single lane roundabouts, these widths may be increased for specific vehicle accommodation when necessary, keeping in mind the balance with other roundabout design needs and parameters. Widths should only be as wide as necessary. Increasing width can affect fastest path speeds and may compromise overall safety goals.

509.11 Entry and Exit Geometry

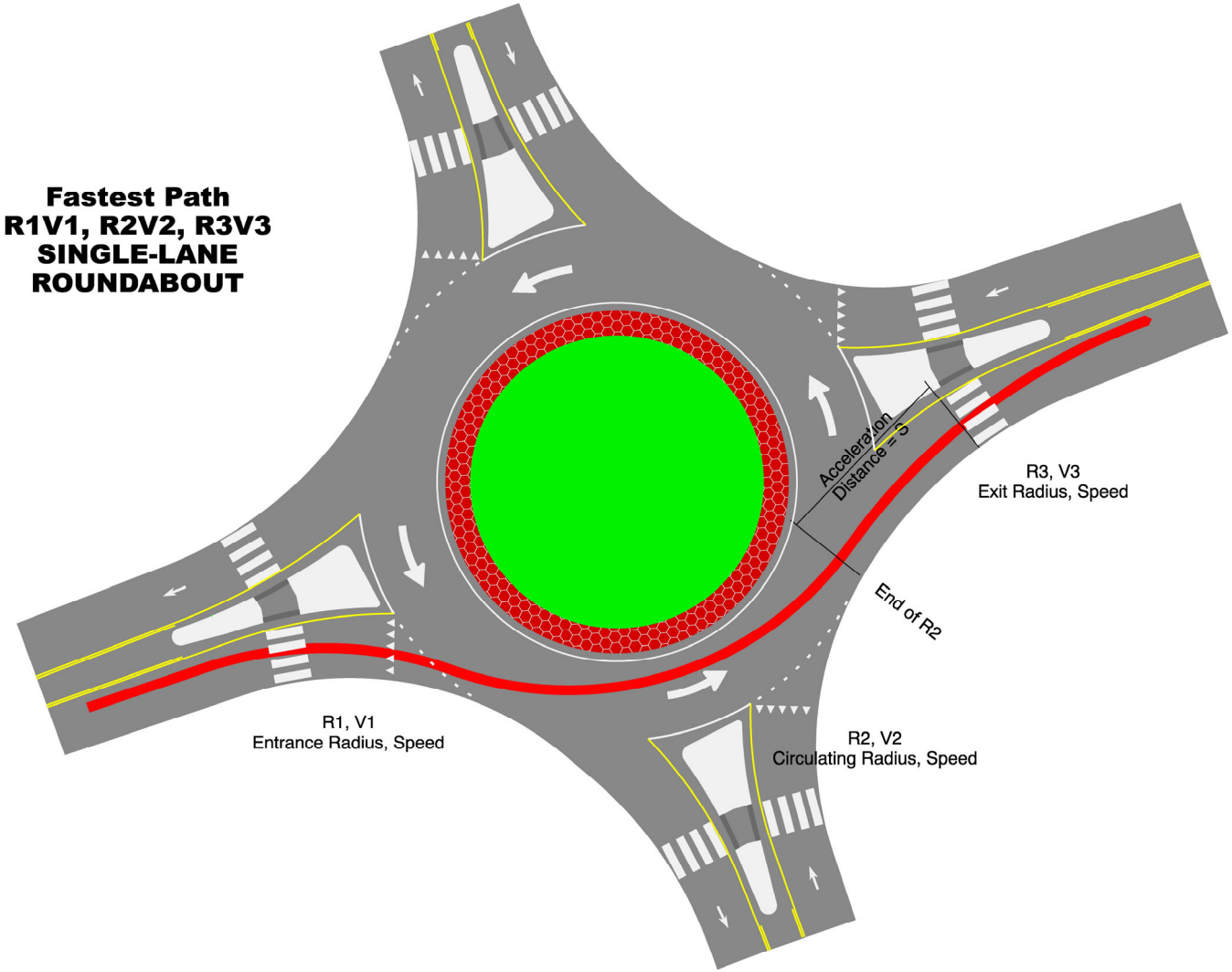
Along with entry width and exit width, entrance and exit geometry helps control speed in roundabout design. *Entrance and exit geometry can influence capacity and safety. Entrance radii designed too small may potentially create single vehicle crashes due to abrupt changes in vehicle path alignment. Entrance curve radii set too large may increase entry speeds and a fastest path greater than desired.* Entrance radii are generally in a range from 50 ft. to 100 ft. However, there is no single appropriate radius for all designs. Entrance radius should be appropriate to control entrance speed, but still provide the necessary room for large vehicles to enter the circle without hitting the curb. For some locations, compound radii may be the best solution.

Exit radii are generally larger than entrance radii to allow for consistent or slightly increased flow at the exit. Exit radii should not be designed smaller than entrance radii. When exit radii are smaller than entrance radii, the potential exists for congestion and crashes at the exit. However, if exit radii are too large, speeds may be too great at the downstream pedestrian crossing. Exit pathways must balance exit speed in relation to predicted fastest path speeds from entrance and circulating geometries along with pedestrian crossing needs. Research has demonstrated correlation between observed exit speed and a vehicle's ability to accelerate on the circulating roadway as it approaches the exit to the roundabout. ***Approach alignments left of center are beneficial for entrance geometry deflection and entrance speed control, but they can also tend to create flatter horizontal exit geometry that may have potential for greater acceleration and higher than acceptable speed upon exiting the roundabout.*** Roundabout designers must provide a consistent and controlled path for vehicles to enter, traverse and exit a roundabout at an appropriate speed. It may take several design iterations to achieve acceptable entrance and exit geometry for a roundabout location.

The generally accepted method to predict entrance and exit speed for design is to use the speed, radius relationship as previously discussed in Section 509.6. However, research projects from 2004 and 2007 have developed an alternate method of predicting vehicle speeds for entrances and exits of roundabouts. These research projects observed vehicle operation at roundabouts throughout the country and determined that in some locations, the actual vehicle speeds observed did not match predicted speeds. The intent of the two research projects was different, but they both developed an alternate method to match observed speeds with predicted design speeds at roundabout exits. The method is based on the standard Newtonian equation for uniform acceleration. Although equations were developed for both entrance speed and exit speed, it is recommended by NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts that the standard method using the speed, radius relationship should be used for prediction of entrance speed, while the alternate method may be used for exit speed.

DRAFT

Figure 500-48: Exit Geometry – Alternate Speed Prediction Method



Equation 500-4: Newtonian Equation for Uniform Acceleration to Predict Roundabout Exit Speed

$$V_f^2 = V_i^2 + 2as$$ (Figure 500-48)

Where: V_f = Final R3 Speed, ft/s (V3 – exit speed)

V_i = Initial R2 Speed, ft/s (V2 – circulating speed)

a = Acceleration, ft/s2

S = Distance, ft. (End of R2 to Crosswalk)

Generally larger exit radii will increase the overall roundabout capacity by allowing exiting vehicles to exit faster than entering vehicles. Some roundabout designs incorporate a large exit radius that creates an almost tangential alignment for exiting vehicles. *Large offset left entrance geometry to enhance entering speed control flattens the exit geometry on that leg of the roundabout.* This also maximizes flow at the exit and, thereby, potentially creates greater gaps for entering vehicles on other approaches. It can also increase exit speeds. These designs are based on the alternate method of exit speed prediction using uniform acceleration calculations.

This may work well to increase capacity and designers who prefer this type of design feel that opening up the exit geometry may provide drivers with ~~a better~~ improved line of sight to pedestrians and the crosswalk area as well. *However, the potential for loss of consistent speed control at the downstream crosswalk is a major disadvantage.* Limiting the acceleration distance and determining appropriate acceleration rates are critical to predicting potential exit speed with these types of designs. See Section 510, Analysis for Roundabout Entrance and Exit Geometry, for additional information and discussion about larger radius or tangential roundabout exits and the proposed alternate calculation method.

There is significant discussion between roundabout designers about the best method to determine exit geometry and to control exit speed within design parameters. As a result, currently there is no definitive answer to what the best method is to predict entrance and exit speed when designing a roundabout. Research has shown that in some cases where exit radii are not excessively large and/or acceleration distances are short limiting a vehicle's ability to accelerate prior to the exit crosswalk, opening up exit geometry may not have a great effect on exit speed. *Relaxed exit geometry that increases acceleration distances and acceleration rates can potentially have significant effects on a vehicle's speed at the exit crosswalk thereby impacting pedestrian movements and, potentially, pedestrian safety.*

This is particularly true for multi-lane roundabouts in off-peak times when a vehicle's fastest path may cross adjacent lanes. In any roundabout layout, it is the designer's responsibility to provide vehicle alignments that consistently control vehicle speeds from entrance to exit in an effective manner for all modes of transportation utilizing the roundabout. ODOT's preferred method of design is to use smaller, more radial alignments for entrance and exit layout when predicting vehicle speed into, through and out of a roundabout. There may be some rural

DRAFT

locations where pedestrian activity is expected to be low or locations where pedestrian activity is restricted or prohibited that a large radius or tangential exit design might be acceptable.

For roundabouts designed on the state highway system, appropriate radius values that effectively provide design entrance, circulating and exiting speeds shall be determined using the speed, radius relationship discussed in Section 509.6 of the ODOT Highway Design Manual using Equation 500-1, Equation 500-2, or Equation 500-3 on page 500-88, Figure 500-34, or Table 500-4 to determine appropriate fastest paths for roundabout design.

Like approach alignment, exit alignment is important for overall roundabout operation and safety. As discussed previously, exit speed can impact the downstream pedestrian crossing as vehicles leave a roundabout. The R1 and R2 values help control entering and circulating speeds. While research shows that R2 can affect and control exit speed, this is only true if the distance a vehicle has to accelerate is also controlled. Exit alignment can have a key role in controlling the available acceleration distance. Figure 500-48 illustrates entrance and exit geometry and depicts exit acceleration distance to the downstream crosswalk. Flatter exit alignment increases available acceleration distance and potentially increases vehicle speed at the downstream crosswalk.

Depending on overall roundabout geometry, it is difficult to specify exact exit alignment criteria that will work for all roundabouts. Exit geometry needs to be established on a case-by-case basis. *For ODOT exit alignments, best practice is to limit the R3 radius from getting too large or tangential while limiting the available acceleration distance to a maximum of 75 feet to 100 feet and limit potential vehicle speed at the downstream pedestrian crossing to 30 mph. In some rural locations, where pedestrian activity is anticipated to be low over the design life of a project or where pedestrian activity is prohibited, faster exit geometry and longer acceleration distances could be acceptable.*

As with approach vehicle alignments, all ODOT roundabout exiting vehicle alignments shall end parallel with the centerline alignment, either offset tangent at the centerline bearing or with offset curvature parallel to the centerline.

For additional guidance on roundabout entrance and exit geometry design, contact the ODOT ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

509.12 Entrance and Exit Aprons

Depending on overall geometry, large vehicles can have difficulties negotiating entrances and exits to roundabouts. Like aprons added to central islands to aid vehicle off-tracking, truck aprons positioned on the entrance and/or exit curves have been utilized at some roundabout locations to accommodate potential off-tracking needs. While these aprons, sometimes called "blisters", are advantageous for the movement of large vehicles through the roundabout, they can be counter-productive for the roundabout by providing an alternate fastest path that allows too great a speed for smaller vehicles, thereby, diminishing the overall effectiveness of the roundabout.

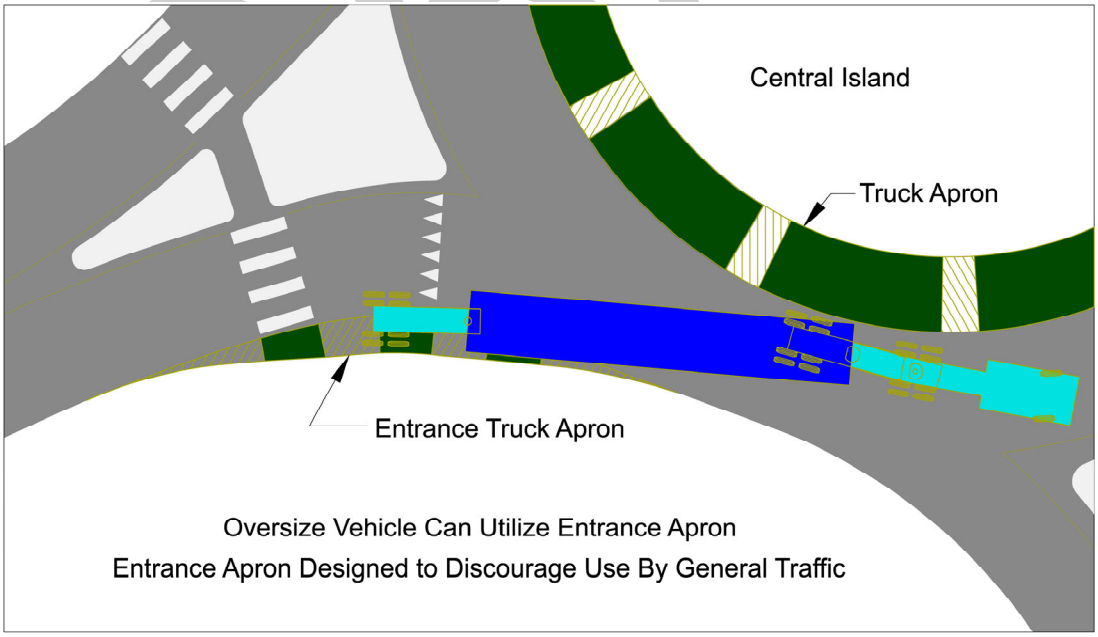
DRAFT

These types of entrance and exit aprons should not be a general design element included in all roundabout designs. Rather, their design should be approached with caution and should be reserved for when they are needed as a necessity to accommodate specific vehicles. Effective entrance and exit geometry to control speeds of smaller vehicles must be maintained along with the design of truck entrance aprons.

Utilizing entrance and exit aprons can keep the overall size of a roundabout small and still provide space for large vehicles to maneuver through the roundabout. Keeping the overall size of a roundabout small also helps maintain speed control. Entrance and exit geometry is a balance of many factors. Entrance and exit aprons can be effective and should not be summarily eliminated as a design option. However, they are not needed at every roundabout and should not be automatically included. Their use should be coordinated with overall design needs. Figure 500-49 demonstrates an oversize vehicle off-tracking onto an entrance apron.

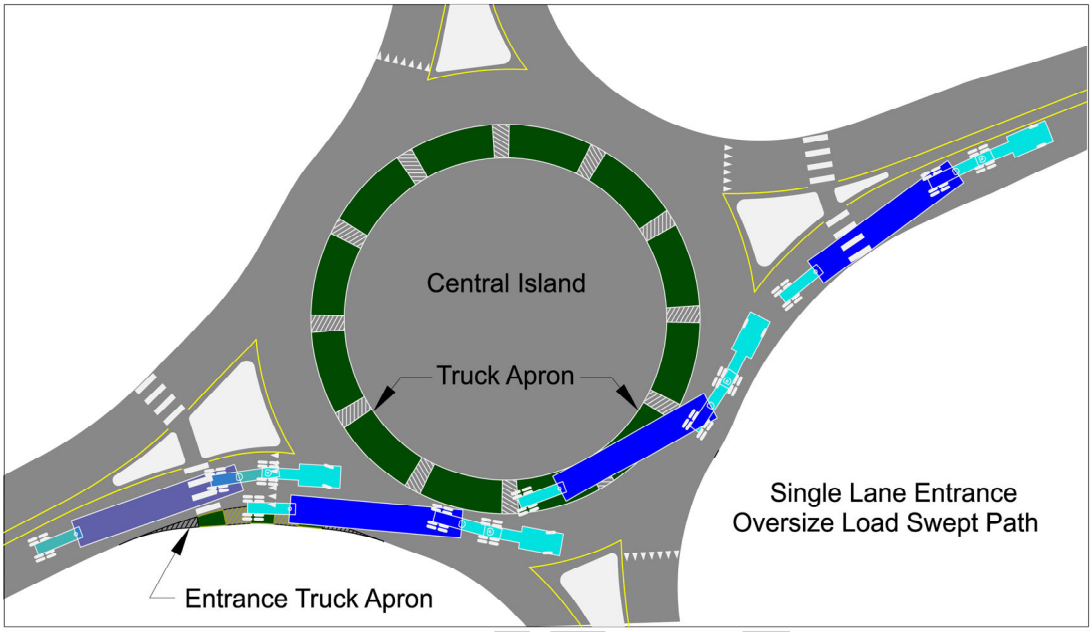
When entrance or exit aprons are used, they need to be designed to allow access by large vehicles but designed to discourage their use by smaller vehicles to maintain the overall roundabout design parameters and speed control. Entrance and exit apron design is similar to central island truck apron design (See Figure 500-39). Using entrance and/or exit aprons may create potential design compromises that need to be understood and analyzed as appropriate for the overall roundabout design at any specific location. Entrance and exit aprons should only be used when all other design options have been evaluated and they are the only reasonable alternative to provide accommodation for large vehicles through the roundabout. Figure 500-50 demonstrates an oversize vehicle swept path through a single lane roundabout utilizing an entrance apron.

Figure 500-49: Oversize Vehicle and Entrance Apron



DRAFT

Figure 500-50: Swept Path of Oversize Vehicle Using an Entrance Apron



509.13 Splitter Island

The purposes of splitter islands are to:

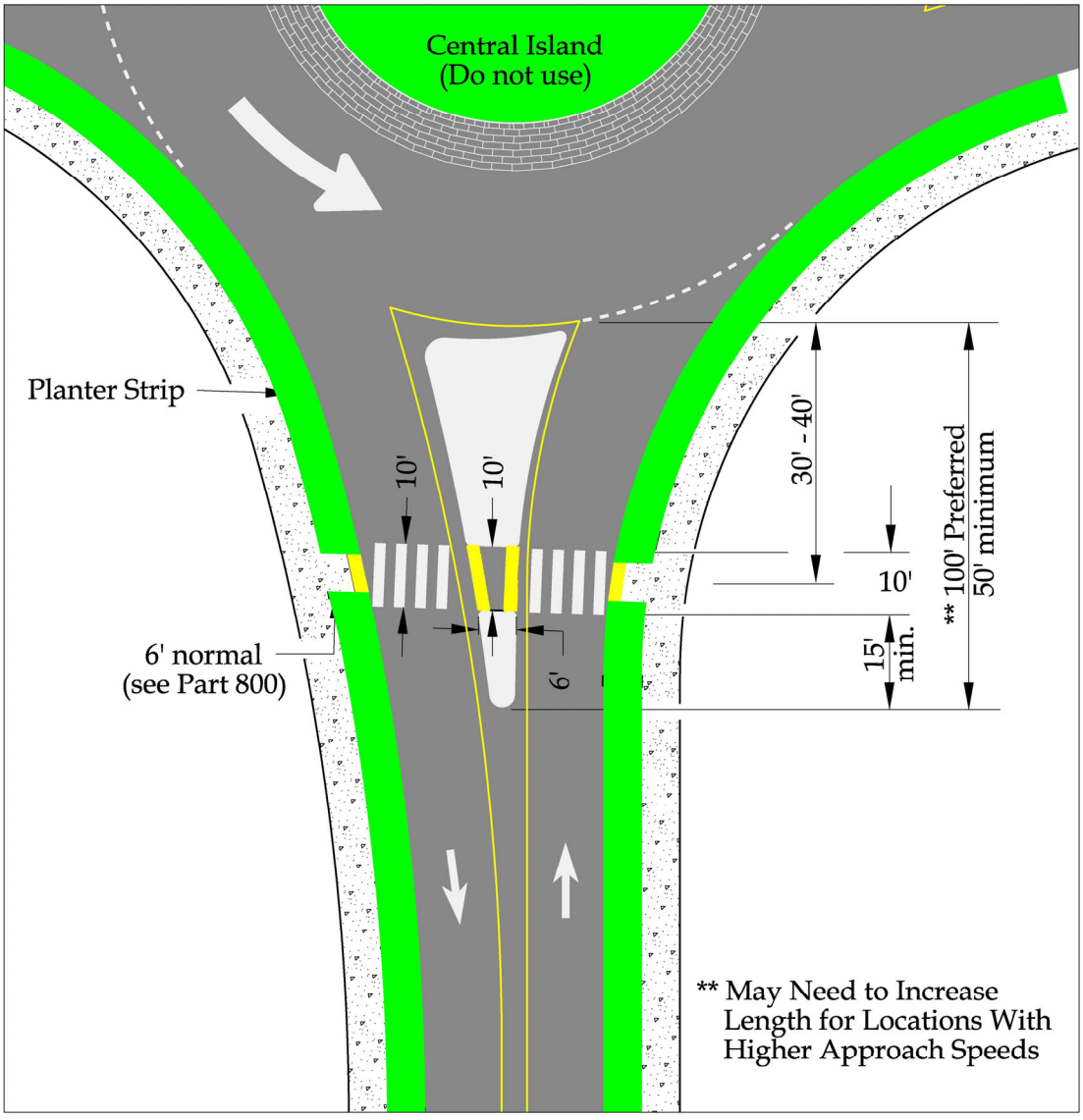
1. Help alert drivers of the upcoming roundabout and regulate entry and exit speed;
2. Physically separate entering and exiting traffic, minimize potential for wrong-way movement;
3. Introduce deflection into vehicle paths to control movement at the entrance/exit; and
4. Provide a refuge for pedestrians, and a place to mount traffic signs.

A length of 100 ft. is desirable in urban locations, the minimum length of the island in these locations measured along the approach should be 50 feet long to provide sufficient protection for pedestrians. Longer islands or extended raised medians are used in areas with higher approach speeds. Excessive splitter island length adds unnecessary cost to a project. For higher speed locations, median and splitter island combined length is the distance needed to comfortably decelerate from roadway speed to the desired entrance speed of the roundabout. *Using the AASHTO comfortable deceleration value of 11.2 ft/sec^2 and assuming a distance based on braking distance, splitter island length of 250 ft. to 300 ft. for higher speed locations generally is adequate to reduce vehicle speeds from highway speed to entrance speed.*

DRAFT

A separation between the entrance yield line on the circulatory roadway and the pedestrian crossing is crucial to safety and operation. This separation distance helps split up the decision points of yielding to a pedestrian and picking a gap in the vehicular flow of the roundabout. *It is recommended that the pedestrian crossing be located at least 30 – 40 feet from the yield line to the center of the crosswalk. The recommended crosswalk width is 10 feet. The opening through the splitter island should be a minimum of 6 feet in length at the center of the crosswalk.* Typically, the splitter island will have a cut through design to accommodate pedestrians. Figure 500-51 shows an example of a splitter island at a single lane roundabout.

Figure 500-51: Minimum Splitter Island Dimensions, Single Lane Roundabout



For multi-lane roundabouts, entry geometry is typically established first to identify a design that adequately controls fastest-path speeds, avoids path overlap and accommodates large

vehicles. The splitter islands are then developed in conjunction with the entrance and exit designs to provide adequate median width for pedestrian refuge and sign placement requirements. For more information specific to overall design of multi-lane roundabouts, refer to the following 509.14 for specific multi-lane roundabout design.

509.14 Design for Pedestrians

The accommodation and safety of pedestrians at roundabouts is dependent on the following design features:

1. Slow speeds, achieved through sufficient deflection;
2. Separation of conflicts, achieved by placing the crosswalk away from the yield line of the circulatory roadway by 30–40 feet (approx. one car length); and
3. Breaking up the pedestrian crossing movements, achieved by placing a splitter island at each leg. Pedestrians only need to cross one direction of traffic at a time.

Sidewalks provide pedestrian accessibility at roundabouts. **Where bike ramps will provide bicyclists access to use the sidewalk and crosswalk with pedestrians, minimum sidewalk width is 8 feet.** Greater sidewalk widths are encouraged and should be used. ***10 feet or more is preferred for the width of the walkway as it functions as a shared use path.*** When pedestrians and bicyclists share a sidewalk, appropriate shared use path requirements are employed for the design.

It is preferred sidewalks are set back from the edge of the circulatory roadway whenever possible using landscaped buffer zones. ***Recommended set back widths (buffer zone) should be at least 5 feet.*** **For ODOT design, the minimum width of the set back (buffer zone) is 3 feet.** Landscape strips and buffer zones provide more benefits than just aesthetic value. Buffer zones:

- Increase comfort for pedestrians
- Provide an area for snow storage
- Allow for the overhang of large vehicles, if necessary, as they traverse the roundabout
- Help direct pedestrians to appropriate crosswalks, rather than crossing to the center island or cutting across the circulatory roadway

Vegetated buffers are the preferred option, however, other softscape and hardscape options are available. **Hardscape options must include tactile relief adequate for low vision and blind individuals to discern and detect the buffer zone and provide guidance to the crosswalk.** For additional information on buffer zone requirements, see Part 800 or contact the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. Grass or low shrub type vegetation should be the choice for plantings. They provide the visual and tactile delineation, but also allow drivers to see pedestrians on the sidewalk and at crosswalks.

DRAFT

Taller plantings may block driver sight distance and mask the presence of pedestrians. Roundabout signing and vegetation placement must be coordinated to ensure signs are not obscured as vegetation grows over time. Legible signs, easily understood by drivers are an important feature of roundabouts.

Where no buffer zone is provided and the sidewalk is curb tight, then continuous vertical delineation or edge treatment that is discernable and detectable is required to provide direction to crosswalk locations. Examples of detectable edge treatments include chains, fencing or railings. **Do not use a Detectable Warning Surface for edge delineation.** For additional information, see Part 800.

Research has shown multi-lane roundabouts to be safer for pedestrians than signal controlled, multi-lane intersections. Low vision and blind pedestrians may find crossing multi-lane roundabout connections to be difficult, due to limited or masked audible cues to traffic movements. However, this would not be dissimilar to multi-lane, mid-block crossings or multi-lane, uncontrolled intersection crossings as well. When appropriate, multi-lane roundabouts benefit from the installation of special traffic control devices (Signals or Rectangular Rapid Flash Beacons) at crosswalk locations to accommodate pedestrians with vision disabilities. NCHRP Report 834, Crossing Solutions at Roundabouts and Channelized Turn Lanes for Pedestrians with Vision Disabilities: A Guidebook, provides information for potential design of pedestrian crossings. **Install appropriate "signal" equipment with all multi-lane roundabout projects to ensure accessibility**.

It is beneficial and prudent for potential future signalization requirements to be incorporated with project design criteria to the greatest extent possible with all designs. ODOT's preference is that the designer should consider what would be required to retrofit a signal into the proposed multi-lane roundabout layout particularly underground infrastructure. *Consideration should be given to signal pole placement, signal head visibility, and controller cabinet location as well as conduit, wiring and operational needs.* At the very least, the roundabout design should be as easily adaptable and possible in the future to include these requirements for accessibility. ***Check with the Region Traffic Unit and the ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections for current direction on accessibility requirements.*** For more information on pedestrian design at roundabouts, see Part 800.

509.15 Design for Bicyclists

Greater emphasis is being placed on separated bicycle facilities at roundabouts. *The preferred method is to accommodate cyclists on separated facilities.* Not all locations will have the ability to include fully separated designs. When fully separated designs are not possible, bicyclists are given a choice to enter a roundabout as a vehicle and occupy a lane until exiting the roundabout, or to use the sidewalks and crosswalks with pedestrians. Occupying a lane through the roundabout will, in most cases, be the most expedient method of traversing a

DRAFT

roundabout for a bicyclist. Riding with traffic in a roundabout may not be comfortable for many bicyclists. For these bicyclists, a bike ramp is provided for them to exit the bike lane on approach to the roundabout and use the sidewalk and crosswalks in the manner of a pedestrian.

In single lane roundabouts, occupying a lane through the roundabout is less complicated than occupying a lane in a multi-lane roundabout. With a single lane roundabout, bicyclists will generally be traveling at relative speed to other vehicles on the roadway. Since it is easier to command the lane in a single lane roundabout, there is less chance of a bicyclist being cut off at an exit by a motorist. Also, bicyclists are more visible to motorists in a single lane roundabout, as there is less room and less distraction for vehicle drivers.

Multi-lane roundabouts pose greater challenges to bicyclists when occupying a lane to navigate through them. The greater complexity of multi-lane roundabouts may cause bicyclists to be less visible to motorists. Bicyclists will have a greater challenge in controlling the lanes in a multi-lane roundabout and there is greater potential to be cut off at an exit. Depending on roundabout configuration and bicyclist destination, a bicyclist may need to enter the roundabout in the left lane of a multi-lane roundabout. This may not be familiar or expected by other roundabout users. When considering bicycle access and movement through a multi-lane roundabout, it is important to remember that ORS 811.292 and ORS 811.370 have provision for "commercial motor vehicles" to operate outside a single lane in a multi-lane roundabout when necessary. Like other vehicle drivers traversing a roundabout, bicyclists must not pass or ride beside a commercial vehicle. In Oregon, by statute (ORS811.292), it is a Class C Traffic Violation to drive beside or pass a commercial vehicle in a roundabout.

If bicyclists choose to ride with traffic through any roundabout, single lane or multi-lane, they are expected to be a vehicle and should not be given individual direction to maneuver in a manner unexpected or different than a motor vehicle. They should be provided with efficient, safe and effective means of traversing the roundabout, as are other roundabout users. Bicyclists choosing to use the travel lane through a roundabout are given ample space and distance to merge into the travel lane prior to the roundabout entry to allow motorists time to recognize them.

Do not provide a bike lane within the circulatory roadway of a roundabout. Providing a bike lane to the actual circulatory roadway entrance will compound the merge maneuver for the bicyclist and create a conflict point between the bicyclist and motorist who are both concentrating on entering a gap in roundabout traffic. Providing a bike lane within the circulatory roadway of a roundabout would create a condition with greater potential for conflicts between vehicles and bikes than if bicyclists use the travel lane. Figure 500-52 provides the recommended design options for roundabout approach legs that have a shoulder or bike lane.

The shoulder/bike lane should terminate at a distance sufficient to allow bicyclists to merge into traffic before drivers' attention is on roundabout traffic coming from the left. Bicycle ramps are placed where the shoulder/bike lane terminates, allowing bicyclists to access the sidewalk should they choose to utilize it and the crosswalks to traverse the roundabout. **End the bike**

DRAFT

lane 165 feet in advance of the yield line and provide a bicycle ramp 100 feet in advance of the yield line.

Bicycle ramps are not intended to serve pedestrian traffic. If there is no sidewalk on the approach to a roundabout, the ramp to a path serving the roundabout functions for both bicyclists and pedestrians. Use a pedestrian curb ramp rather than a bicycle ramp in that case.

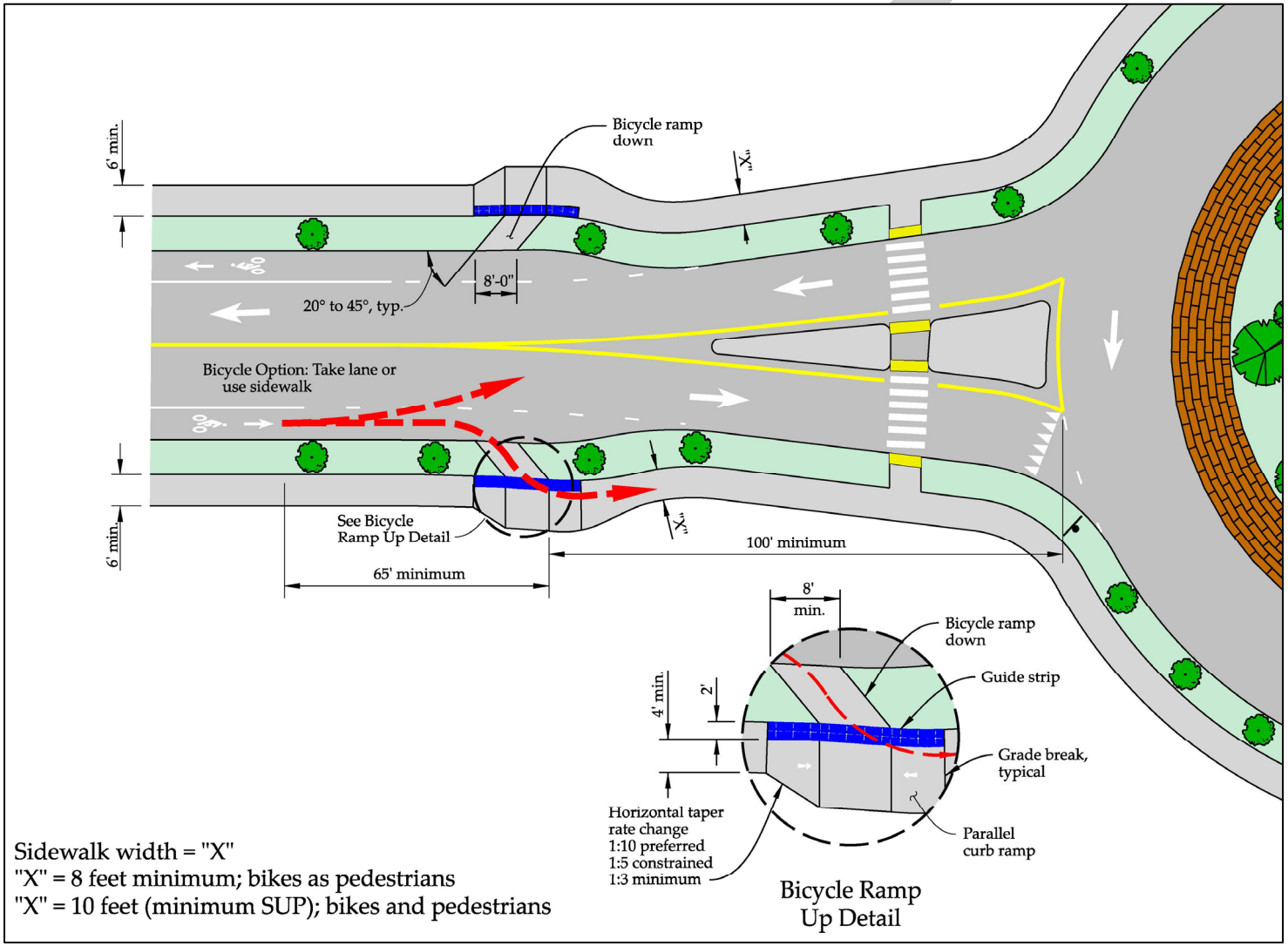
The width of the bicycle ramp depends on the layout. Where a bicycle ramp is in line with the approaching bicycle lane, the bicycle ramp may be equal in width to the approaching bicycle lane. Where the bicycle ramp requires bicycles to move parallel to the bicycle lane, **provide a bicycle ramp with minimum of 8 feet width.** General design practice attempts to keep roundabout entrances relatively flat with a suggested maximum grade of 4 percent. However, this is not always possible due to existing topographic conditions. Even a maximum grade of 4 percent sustained over a long enough distance can slow a cyclist. *Approach grade and expected cyclist speed in relation to vehicle speed at the lane merge point is an important design consideration when designing for bicyclists to use the travel lane through a roundabout.*

Bicycle ramps can be confused with curb ramps by low vision and blind pedestrians. **Include a Detectable Guide Strip adjacent to bicycle ramps.** See part 800 for additional guidance on detectable guide strips and refer to Oregon Standard Drawing RD909 for placement of detectable guide strips. Gaining popularity is the use of Tactile Wayfinding Tiles also called Tactile Walking Surface Indicators across the top of the bicycle ramp and sidewalk. This option is relatively new and is ODOT's preferred method (See Part 900 for bicycle ramp design). More direction will be available when the next addition of the AASHTO Bicycle Design Guide is published. Contact the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer or the Senior ADA Standards Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for more information on installing Tactile Walking Surface Indicators at roundabouts. *It is preferred to locate bicycle ramps in a buffer zone. In these locations, the bike ramp is considered as part of the traveled way that needs to be detectable to pedestrians.*

The least desirable location for the bicycle ramp is within the sidewalk itself. Use this design option only if necessary and no other option will work. Review Oregon Standard Drawing RD909 for detectable guide strip placement.

DRAFT

Figure 500-52: Bike Accommodation



Where bike ramps will provide bicyclists access to use the sidewalks and crosswalks, minimum sidewalk width is 8 feet. ***10 feet or more is preferred for the width to allow for bicycles and pedestrians to function as a shared use path.*** If there is a separated bicycle facility, apart from the sidewalk, the sidewalk width may be 6 feet, although wider sidewalks are preferred**.** In locations where bicycle riding on the sidewalk is prohibited by statute, appropriate signage is necessary to inform bicyclists.

Bicycle ramps up from the roadway to the sidewalk should be placed at a 35 degree to 45 degree angle with the roadway allowing bicyclists to use the bike ramp, while discouraging them from entering the sidewalk area at too great a speed. Since the bicycle ramp is not a pedestrian curb ramp, its slope is not limited to a maximum of 1 in 12 (8.33%), however wheelchairs and power assisted mobility devices are permitted to use the shoulder and may use the bike ramp to enter the sidewalk.

If necessary, the slope may be greater than 1 in 12. Ramps steeper than 1 in 12 can be a clue for low vision and blind pedestrians to differentiate between the bicycle ramp and the pedestrian curb ramp. Steeper ramps can also slow bicycle traffic as it enters the sidewalk zone. In general, bike ramps should only be as steep as necessary to fit the location with a potential maximum of 1 in 5 (20%) in extreme circumstances. Bicycle ramps from the sidewalk down to the roadway at roundabout exits can be placed with an angle as small as 20 degrees with the roadway since it is not necessary for a bicyclist to slow upon entry to the roadway. A flatter angle can be beneficial in allowing a bicyclist to enter the bike lane or travel lane at a relative speed to traffic. However, some discernible angle is preferred to provide information to pedestrians with vision disabilities that the bicycle ramp is not the pedestrian curb ramp.

When roadways leading up to a roundabout location have been designed utilizing a separated or protected bicycle facility like a cycle track, side path or multi-use path, there may be several options for providing accommodation for bicyclists to navigate the roundabout. For guidance in melding the bicycle facility design with the roundabout design, contact the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. For more information on bicycle facility design at roundabouts, see Part 900.

509.16 Design for Trucks

Freight transport is a vital function of the state highway system. Improperly designed roundabouts can impede freight traffic. ***Roundabouts proposed on a Reduction Review Route will need to go through a review with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and affected parties to obtain a "Record of Support". Roundabouts proposed on Non-Reduction Review Routes do not need a Record of Support from interested parties. However, those projects will need to comply with ODOT Directive, DES-02. The DES-02 Directive requires collaboration with interested parties from industry to come to agreement that the proposed roundabout is properly sized for the location.***

DRAFT

Roundabouts on the state highway system must be designed to accommodate the necessary movement of freight. The WB-67 class, "interstate" truck will be the basic design vehicle for roundabouts on the state highway system. Larger, permit vehicles will be accommodated as needed on a case-by-case basis. At specific locations, a smaller design truck than a WB-67 might be appropriate on some sections of highway. If a vehicle smaller than a WB-67 is anticipated to be used as the roundabout design vehicle, discussions with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program and representatives of the trucking industry will be necessary to reach a final determination of feasibility.

When oversize/overweight (OSOW) loads may need to move through a roundabout location, these loads will need to be accommodated in an acceptable manner. To create an overall roundabout design that will accommodate the anticipated OSOW vehicles at a particular roundabout, discussion between the designer, ETSB staff, ODOT Statewide Mobility Program, and trucking industry representatives will be necessary to determine appropriate loads and vehicle configurations to consider and how best to accommodate their movement through the roundabout. Section 509.5 provides general information about roundabout design vehicles and accommodation vehicles.

There may be locations where a smaller diameter roundabout is required that may also need to allow for OSOW vehicle traffic or a location may need to allow for unique or specialized loads to pass through the proposed roundabout. For these situations, there are several alternative design concepts that provide special access and movement through the roundabout. Contact the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for assistance in designing these unique and special access locations. In most cases, they will require design concurrence and may need additional design approval from the State Roadway Engineer, as well as support of groups with a stake in highway configuration.

509.17 Transit Considerations

While it is possible to effectively locate roundabouts on transit corridors, placement of actual transit stops in proximity to roundabouts is problematic for smooth operation of both the transit system and the roundabout. ***The placement of bus or other transit stops near roundabouts should be consistent with the needs of the users and the desired operations of the roundabout.*** Stops should be close to passenger generators or destinations, and pedestrian crossings of the roundabout legs should be minimized. A bus or transit stop is best situated:

1. On an exit lane, in a pullout just past the crosswalk; or
2. On an approach leg 60 feet upstream from the crosswalk, in a pullout; or
3. On a single lane entrance leg, just upstream from the crosswalk, if the traffic volume is low and the stopping time is short. This location should not be used on two-lane entrances (In the interest of pedestrian crossing safety, a vehicle should not be allowed to pass a stopped bus).

DRAFT

Bus pullouts or transit stops shall not be located within the circulatory roadway of the roundabout on the state highway system.

Although rare, there are locations in other jurisdictions where fixed transit lines (light rail, Bus Rapid Transit) have been provided with independent alignment through roundabouts. The best practice for the state highway system is to avoid placing a fixed transit line through a roundabout; however, when it cannot be avoided, care must be taken when establishing the transit alignment to not diminish the performance of the roundabout. The design can be successful. However, care must be taken to determine the transit schedule and its impact on the traffic flows at the roundabout. The interaction between the transit vehicles and normal traffic must be considered for present volumes and patterns as well as anticipated future transit and traffic needs.

Exhibit 500-2: Example of a Light Rail Line through a Roundabout



509.18 Roundabouts Near Railroad Crossings

Locating any intersection near an at-grade railroad crossing is generally discouraged, but this is often unavoidable, and roundabouts have been successfully used to control traffic near railroad crossings in many places around the US. Where an at-grade rail crossing is provided at a roundabout, design consideration should include the provisions of traffic control such as crossing gates and flashing lights at the grade crossing consistent with treatments at other highway-rail grade crossings. The treatment of at-grade rail crossings should follow the recommendations of the MUTCD and the FHWA Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook.

Where roundabouts include or are in proximity to a highway at–grade rail crossing, a key consideration is the accommodation of vehicle queues to avoid queuing across the tracks. The

MUTCD requires an engineering study to be conducted for any roundabout near a highway-rail grade crossing to determine queuing effect at the rail crossing and to develop provisions to clear highway traffic from the crossing prior to train arrival. Contact the ODOT Rail Safety Program in the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division for more information when considering a roundabout near an at-grade railroad crossing.

509.19 Roundabout Metering

When one approach to a roundabout may be creating operational issues for the roundabout as a whole or is impacting access to the roundabout at another approach, a metering device installed on the higher volume approach can improve overall operations of the roundabout. Metering devices have been used successfully in many locations. Metering devices should not be indiscriminately installed at roundabouts. Their use should be limited to when it is necessary for operations for them to be installed. ***Metering a high-volume entrance can provide gaps for the other entering legs improving overall operation and potentially extending the life of a single lane roundabout before additional circulating lanes are needed.*** Metering can be an effective method of providing operational improvements, but their use must be evaluated and determined to be appropriate.

509.20 Multi-Lane Roundabout Configuration

Since many design features of roundabouts are integral to both single lane and multi-lane roundabouts, the previous discussion about roundabout design elements did not specify explicit information about single lane roundabouts or multi-lane roundabouts, but rather discussed the design elements themselves in more general terms for both applications. There are a few unique design needs at a multi-lane roundabout that are not shared with single lane roundabouts. As a result, multi-lane roundabout design presents a greater challenge to the designer.

In the past, roundabouts were classified as single lane, double lane and, in extreme cases, triple lane roundabouts. The intent was to have equal lanes entering and exiting assuming balanced flow between intersecting roadways. As roundabout design has evolved and a roundabout is just another form of intersection control, general intersection control principles are being applied to roundabout design.

In conventional intersection design, it is not required to have an equal number of lanes at each leg. Intersection lane configuration is based on the needs of the traffic movements through the intersection. If one leg has a high volume of left turn traffic, a dedicated left turn lane may be designed for that leg as well as a through lane. This, in effect, creates a two-lane entrance, while the through lane may align with only one lane on the opposite leg exiting the intersection.

DRAFT

Likewise, if one leg has a high volume of right turn traffic, a dedicated right turn lane or even a "free right" slip lane might be designed to improve operation.

The same concepts are now being applied to roundabout design and the term "multi-lane roundabout" has replaced the previous "double lane" or "triple lane" nomenclature. The term multi-lane covers a wider range of various lane configuration options that a design might employ to ~~better~~ tailor the design to the specific intersection control required for a specific location. ***Because lane configuration on entrance and exit may be specific to a particular move at a particular exit, signing and striping of multi-lane roundabouts must convey to drivers which lane they need to be in to negotiate the roundabout successfully.*** The information contained in the signing and striping must be understood by the approaching driver far enough in advance of the roundabout to safely make the appropriate lane choice. If drivers are positioned in the correct lane for their destination when entering the roundabout, the lane striping and guidance will get them to the appropriate exit.

Some multi-lane roundabout configurations may appear complex to an approaching driver. When examining a design in plan view it may be easy to see how the lanes flow. At driver eye level that may not be the case. ***The designer must keep in mind what drivers see or don't see as they approach the roundabout. The designer must also consider what drivers need to see to understand how to get to the appropriate exit for their journey.*** Efficient, effective and well-placed signing, striping and lane markings are critical to convey that information to motorists in modern multi-lane roundabout design. Figure 500-53 and Figure 500-54 portray examples of multi-lane roundabout design with various entrance and exit lane configurations. These layouts are hypothetical and are intended to provide guidance and illustration for potential options to meet traffic control needs at a given location.

These multi-lane roundabout layouts are not all inclusive and other configurations may enhance the fit at a particular location ~~better~~. Individual designers will need to design for the needs of the site for which the roundabout is being designed. Some of the entrance and exit options shown in the figures would only be employed at unique or high-volume locations. ***As with any intersection design, it is important to only provide what is necessary to meet the control needs of the traffic movements. It is good design practice to keep the layout and operation of a multi-lane roundabout as simple as possible, while still providing the necessary control functions to allow smooth, efficient traffic flow.*** Additional information about roundabout lane configuration and striping can be found in the ODOT ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual and the 2023 Edition of the MUTCD, Chapter 3C Roundabout Markings.

DRAFT

Figure 500-53: Various Multi-Lane Roundabout Entrance and Exit Configurations

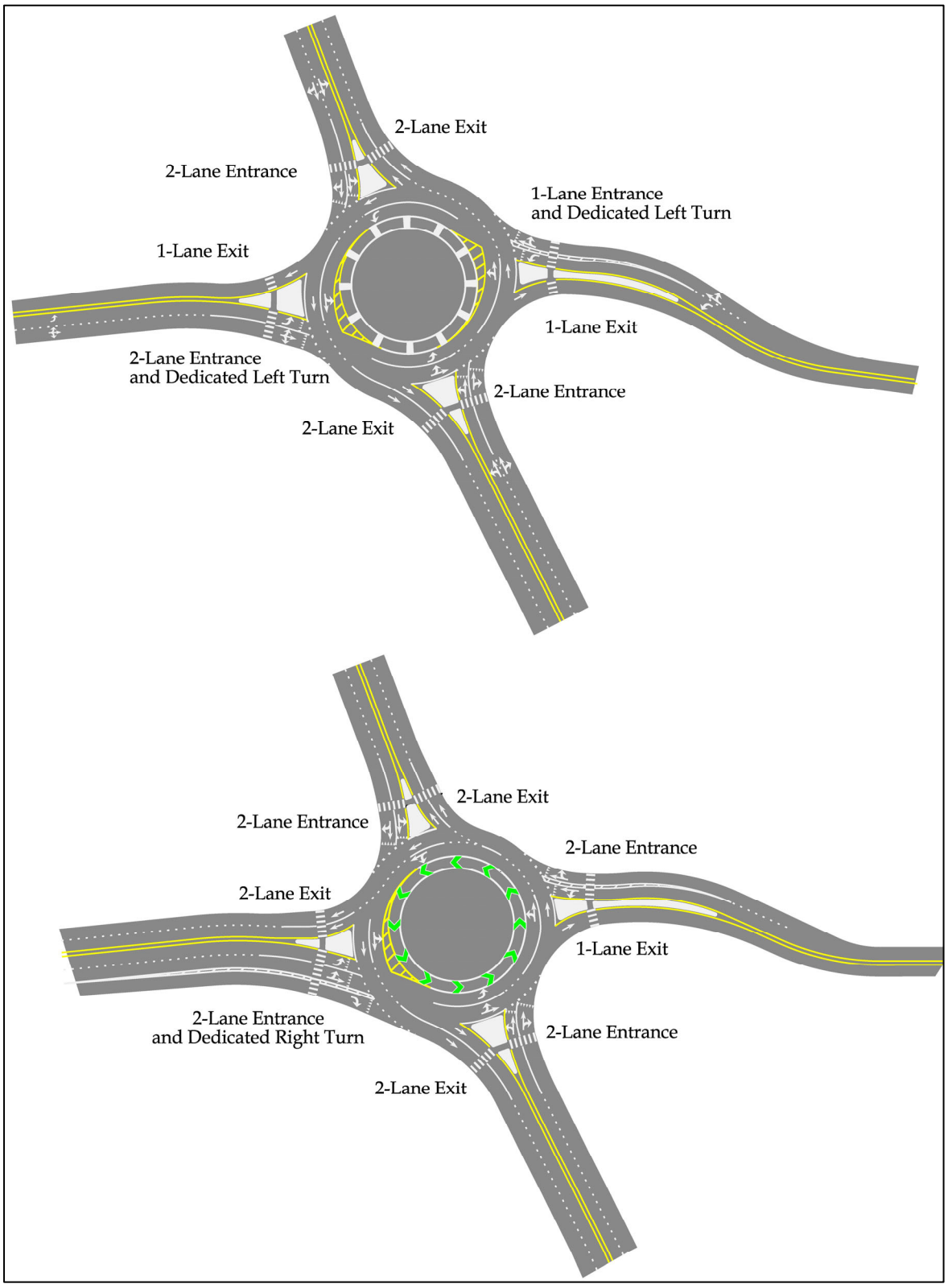
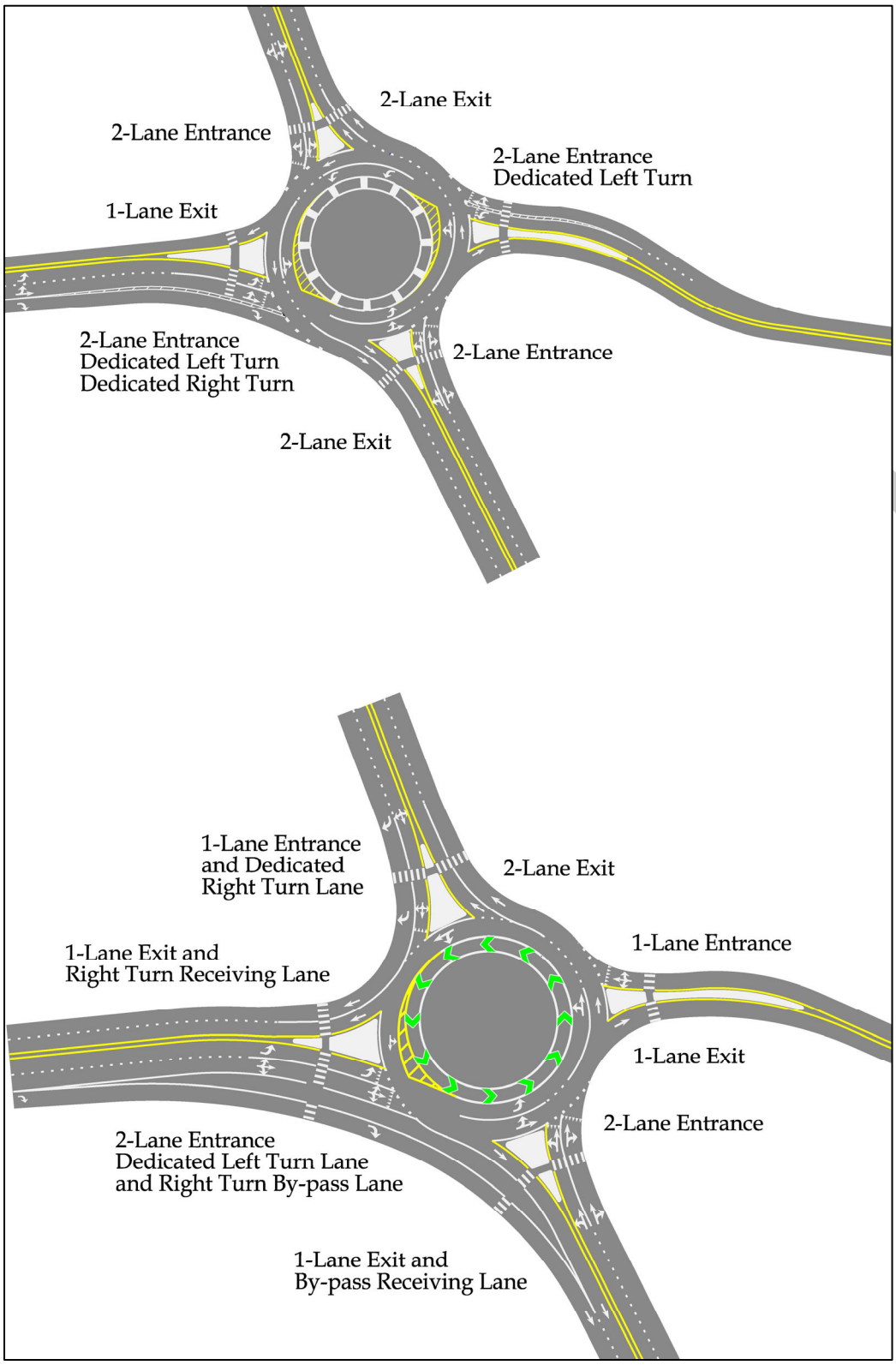
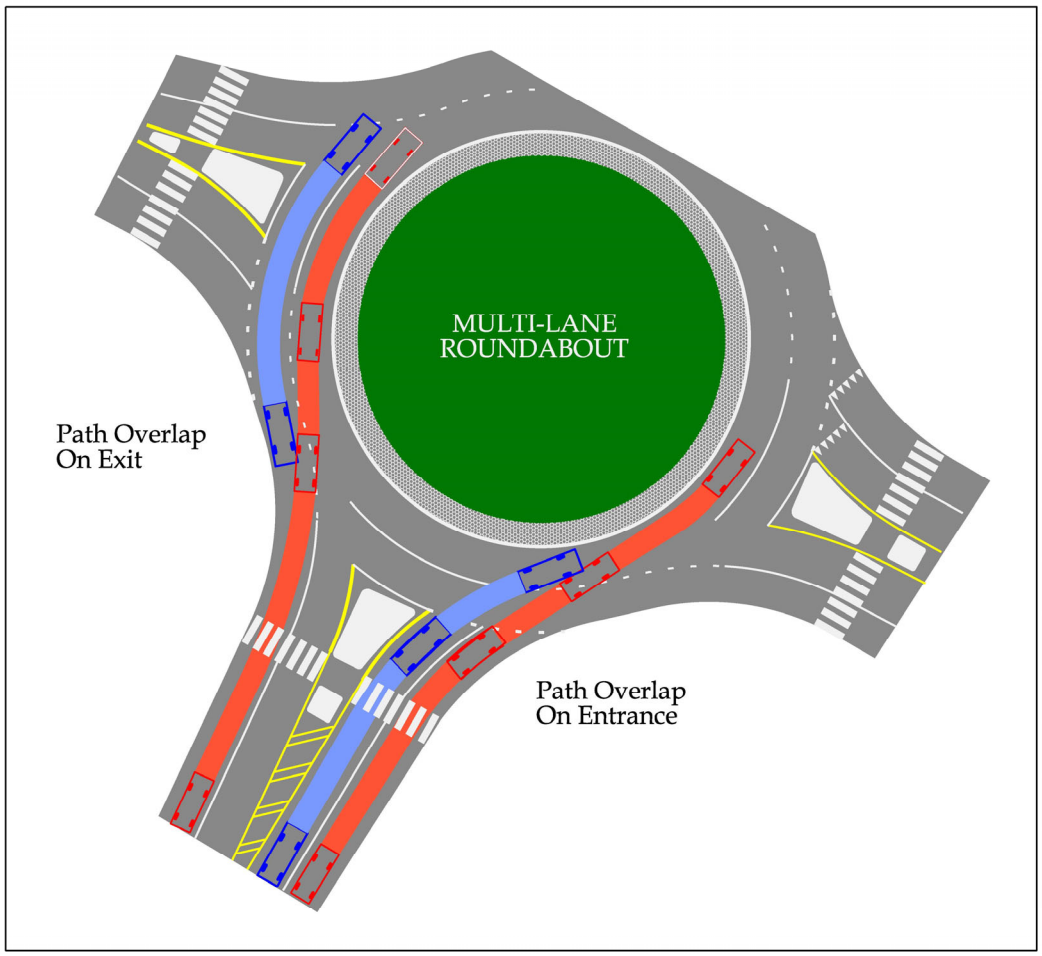


Figure 500-54: Additional Multi-Lane Roundabout Entrance and Exit Configurations



509.21 Path Overlap (Multi-Lane Roundabouts)

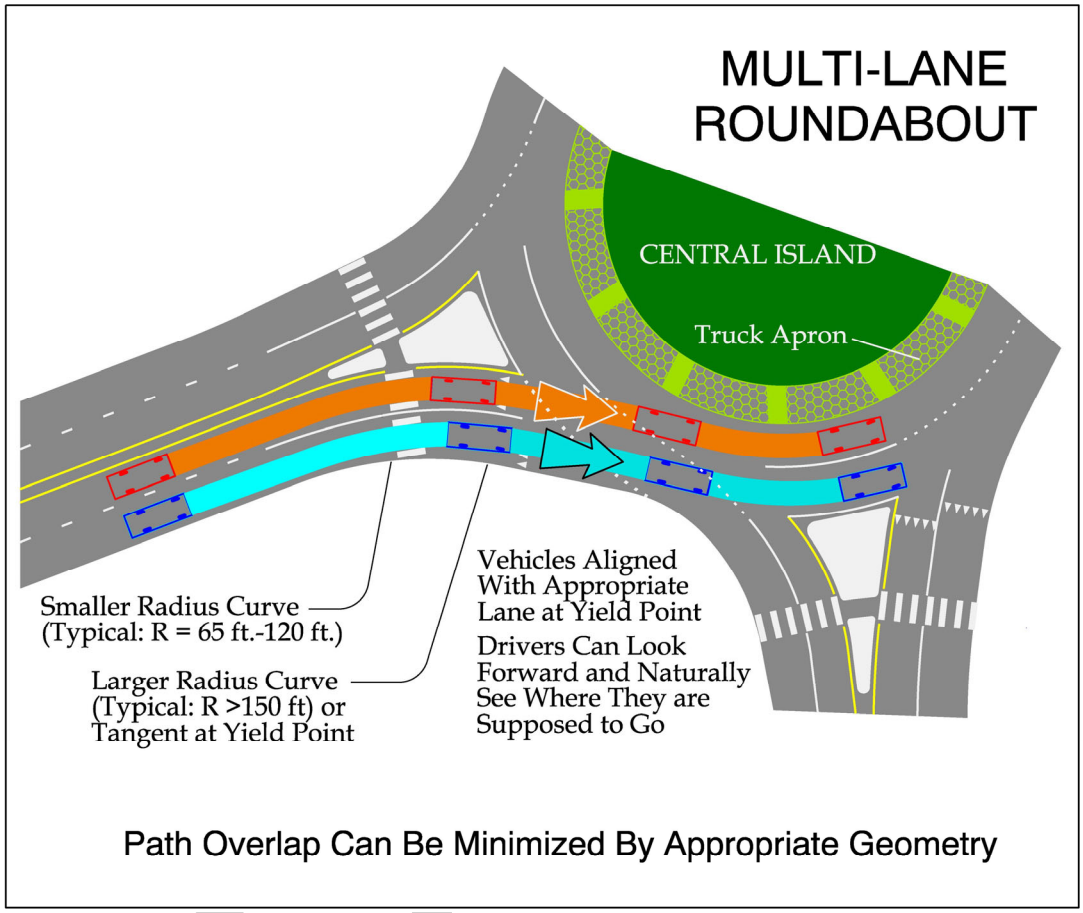
Figure 500-55: Path Overlap - Multi-Lane Roundabout



Path overlap is another unique design concern present with multi-lane roundabouts. Figure 500-55 demonstrates the effect of path overlap at a multi-lane roundabout. Entrance design, central island design and exit design must be balanced to provide a consistent, comfortable flow when designing both single lane and multi-lane roundabouts. Multi-lane roundabouts, however, pose a greater problem with entry and exit design. Because more than one lane enters and exits the circulating roadway at multi-lane locations, a phenomenon known as path overlap can occur. *Vehicle path overlap occurs when the natural path of a vehicle crosses into the adjacent lane.* It generally happens at entrances to roundabouts but can also occur at exits or even along the circulating roadway itself. *The natural path of a vehicle is the path a driver seeks based on comfort due to the applied forces to the vehicle from the roadway geometry.* The natural path is determined by approach geometry, entrance radii and entrance width. To avoid path overlap and potential side-swipe crashes at a multi-lane roundabout, the entry design for the approach lanes must provide a comfortable path for drivers to keep their vehicles in one lane and not encroach on

the adjacent lane. While proper entry curvature is a key factor in avoiding path overlap, there is no single method for creating a desirable vehicle path alignment. It may take several iterations of design elements to finalize an appropriate vehicle path to provide a smooth transition from entrance to circulating roadway to exit that eliminates path overlap.

Figure 500-56: Minimizing Path Overlap - Multi-Lane Roundabouts

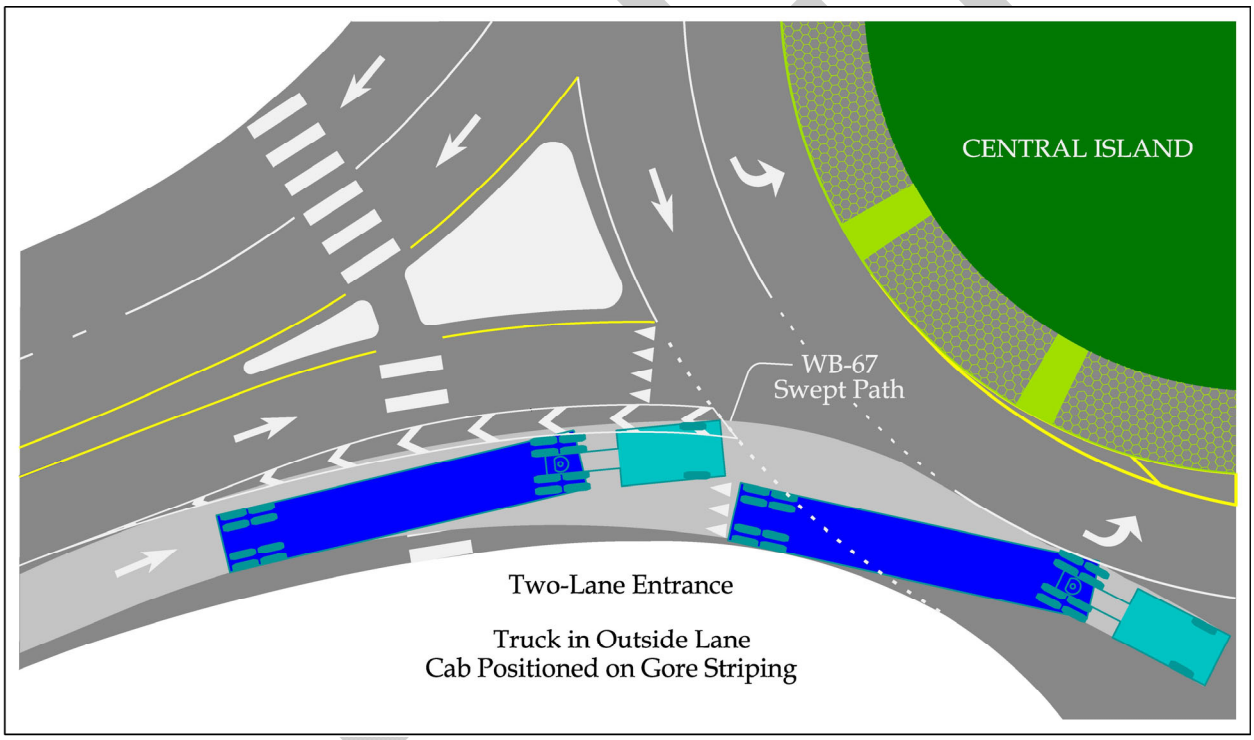


As a general starting point, entrance radii should be greater than 65 feet and less than 120 feet. Compound curve sets or a single curve in series ahead of a tangent may prove beneficial in creating a successful design that balances desired speed constraint, provides large vehicle accommodation and addresses bicycle and pedestrian needs while directing the entering driver to the appropriate lane through the multi-lane roundabout. Figure 500-56 illustrates geometry that can minimize path overlap. The general idea is to create entrance geometry that slows the entering vehicle to the desired entry speed and then comfortably leads it to the appropriate circulating lane with a smooth transition to the circulating roadway and another smooth transition from the circulating roadway to the exit radius out of the roundabout.

509.22 Large Vehicle Accommodation (Multi-Lane Roundabout)

Large vehicles must be able to negotiate a multi-lane roundabout. As with single lane roundabouts, truck aprons around the central island are used to aid large vehicle movements through multi-lane roundabouts. *ORS 811.292 and ORS 811.370 provide for "commercial motor vehicles" to operate outside a single lane in a multi-lane roundabout when necessary. It is sometimes beneficial to design multi-lane roundabouts to allow larger vehicles to traverse the roundabout without operating outside of a single lane. However, this need must be balanced with the overall effectiveness of the roundabout. It is acceptable and sometimes necessary to allow truck off-tracking into an adjacent lane for overall design of a roundabout.*

Figure 500-57: WB 67 Entering in the Outside Lane, Using Gore Striping – Two-Lane Entrance

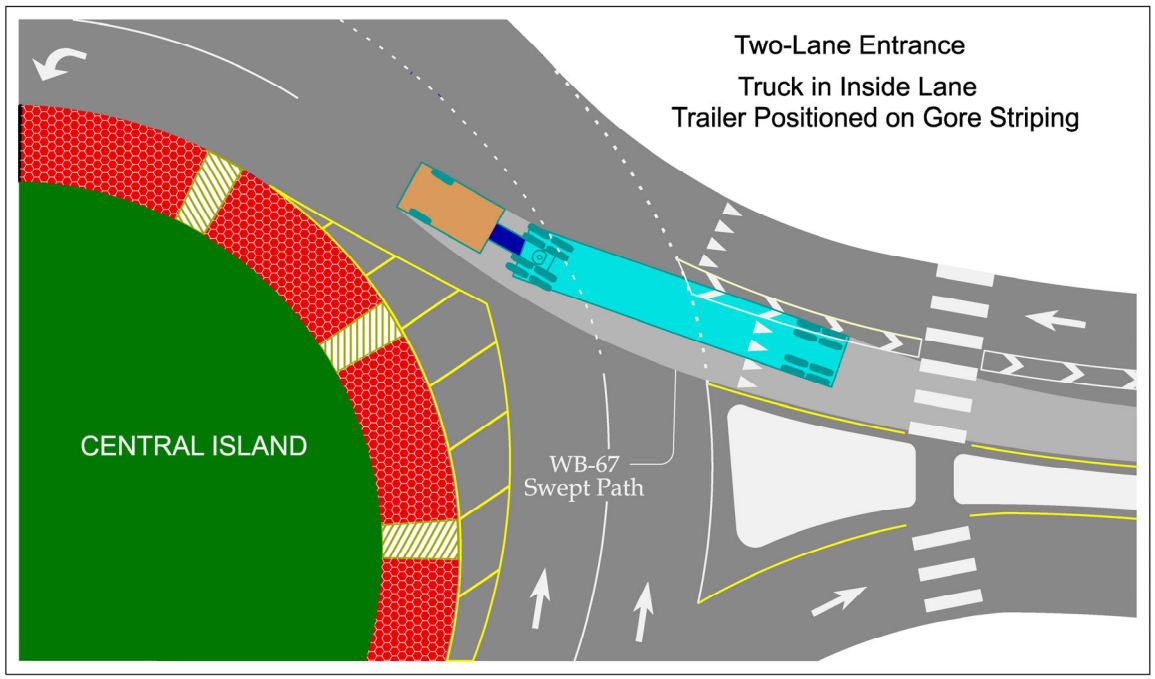


Designing a multi-lane roundabout keeping large vehicles in one lane can lead to overly large inscribed diameters that can jeopardize desired speed control and safety goals. In Oregon, by statute (ORS 811.292), it is a Class C Traffic Violation to drive beside or pass a commercial vehicle in a roundabout. As a result, designing for large vehicle to remain in a single lane is not always necessary or beneficial. Providing too large of a multi-lane design may encourage faster path speeds for passenger vehicles when truck volumes are not present.

When accommodating larger vehicles, one way to help keep them from encroaching on the adjacent lane at the entrance to a multi-lane roundabout, while keeping entrance width to a

minimum, is to provide a section of "Gore Striping" between the entrance lanes. Figure 500-57 and Figure 500-58 depicts a WB-67 swept path at a roundabout entrance that utilizes gore striping. The drawings show a truck entering from either lane utilizing the striping to minimize encroachment of the adjacent lane.

Figure 500-58: WB-67 Entering in the Inside Lane, Using Gore Striping – Two–Lane Entrance



509.23 Artwork at Roundabouts

Artwork added to the central island of a roundabout installation can provide aesthetic value, promote placemaking, and provide community recognition as a gateway treatment to a city or town. There also is recognition that artwork (coordinated effectively with landscaping) placed in the roundabout can benefit safety by making the intersection a focal point that provides greater recognition by drivers of expected roadway operation thereby promoting lower speeds which translates to potential for improved safety. There are many successful roundabout artwork installations in Oregon, across the United States and around the world. However, each roundabout location has different needs and artwork installed at roundabouts must be carefully determined on a case-by-case basis. Not all roundabouts are good candidates for artwork. This is particularly true for small diameter roundabouts where there is minimal room to provide an acceptable clear zone. When artwork is requested at a roundabout location, follow requirements and guidance in this section of the Highway Design Manual and the ODOT Highway Directive Hwy 01 for Placement of Artwork on State Highway Right of Way.

As with artwork installed anywhere within the Oregon State Highway Right of Way, artwork proposed for roundabouts must be suitable for heavy traffic conditions, comply with highway safety requirements and practices, not degrade highway safety and operations, be long-term durable, and be weather and vandal resistant. The following requirements include specific guidance for artwork at roundabouts and do not supersede ODOT's Highway Directive HWY 01, Placement of Artwork on State Highway Right of Way. Rather, they supplement directive HWY 01 and provide guidance for applying the directive in relation to specifics of artwork installed at roundabouts that Highway Directive HWY 01 may not directly address, since it is focused more on artwork placement outside the roadway. Artwork placed within the central island of a roundabout is similar to placement of an object within the median of a roadway section between travel lanes.

To ~~better~~ understand overall traffic operations after a roundabout is constructed at a specific location, it is recommended that a two-year waiting period be provided prior to artwork installation to determine and verify any specific design parameters including allowable clear zone needed in relation to the artwork installation. The 2-year period from day of opening provides a real-world, art free test and allows drivers to adjust to the traffic change before artwork is installed. District input and crash history over the first two years after opening can be reviewed by the Region Traffic and Roadway managers before proceeding with artwork installation.

When artwork is proposed for a roundabout location, the selection, funding, installation, and maintenance is the responsibility of the local jurisdiction where the roundabout is located. In many cases, the time frame to obtain funding, work through the RFP and artist/artwork selection process, ODOT approval process, and final installation may take much, if not all, of the two-year suggested waiting period. During this time, region traffic, roadway, and maintenance units should be reviewing traffic operations at the roundabout for indications of potential issues with artwork placement. Communication with the local jurisdiction of any problems or operational conditions that would affect final decisions on artwork placement is critical in the overall process during this interim time.

ODOT's responsibility is for the appropriateness and placement of the artwork in terms of safety and operation of the highway, not the aesthetic value of the artwork itself. While the selected artwork must fit with the roundabout design and there are specific parameters for materials, signs, symbols, and objects that can be used in artwork placed within the state highway right of way, the local jurisdiction chooses the content, context, and overall aesthetic theme of the artwork selected. In addition, an intergovernmental agreement is established between ODOT and the local jurisdiction to provide direction and define responsibilities for installation and long-term maintenance of the artwork. ODOT reserves the right to remove any artwork that is not maintained or becomes a safety or operations concern.

DRAFT

509.23.1 Parameters for Roundabout Artwork Installations

Artwork must not interfere with the operation, maintenance, or use of the highway. ~~The safety of the highway system and travelers is of utmost concern for ODOT. Although a desired benefit of the Artwork is to make the central island more conspicuous (thus improving safety), it must not cause an unsafe distraction for motorists and other travelers.~~ Artwork must:

1. Be of a size and scale that fits within the allowable area, must be coordinated to match the aesthetic design of the roundabout, and not demand a driver's attention to cause distraction from blinking or bright lights, glaring materials, or reflective surfaces.
2. Be placed in compliance with clear zone requirements as determined by ODOT policy for applicable installation areas at roundabouts. (See process outlined below in the Location of Artwork Within the Central Island section)
3. Not imitate a traffic control device.
4. Not have moving elements or water, nor simulate movement.
5. Not have elements that would cause the proposed Artwork to obscure the form of the roundabout, nor be a distraction to (e.g., not cause glare for, nor impair the safe vision of) motorists and other travelers.
6. Not attract pedestrians nor cyclists to the center island area.
7. Not contain text, interpretation of the Artwork, information on the artist, nor advertising or other form of a commercial message (business, product, or brand name, logo, phone number, web page, etc.), nor represent or pay tribute to a specific individual.
8. Utilize long lasting materials and construction techniques which will require minimal care and resist vandalism.
9. Must utilize shielded illumination to prevent light from being directed at the highway and of such low intensity or brilliance as to not cause glare or impair vision of motorists on the highway and must meet all state and local illumination codes.
10. Not have any foundation or base of the artwork installation exposed more than 4 inches above the ground.
11. Utilize breakaway features or frangible materials to the maximum extent feasible.

The artist(s) must coordinate design work closely with ODOT traffic and roadway engineers and with the state and local jurisdiction landscape architects and meet all federal, state, or local restrictions for aesthetic elements of the roundabout for compatibility and to match the aesthetic design of the roundabout, provide a site plan, and provide design plans stamped by a professional engineer registered in the State of Oregon demonstrating structural stability, the ability to withstand the necessary wind loads, and the means or method of installation (e.g.,

DRAFT

foundation and footing drawings complete with structural calculations and details of the interface and connection between the art and the foundation and/or footing). The artist(s) must provide a one-year warranty of the art structure, foundation/footing and workmanship from the date of final approval of the installation of the project.

509.23.2 Location of Artwork Within the Central Island

Once it has been established that artwork is appropriate at a roundabout location, it must be determined where within the central island it will be acceptable to install the chosen artwork piece. Artwork adds aesthetic value to a roundabout installation and can play a key role in placemaking as a gateway treatment to local communities. In addition to the aesthetic value artwork can also improve the overall safety and operations of the roundabout as well. Artwork adds increased conspicuity to the central island and the roundabout in total. Increasing the visual awareness for drivers approaching the roundabout can improve drivers understanding and recognition of operations of the roadway ahead and help prepare them to enter the roundabout.

~~Any object placed along the roadway like signs, signals, bridge columns, guardrail, shoulder barrier, etc., poses some risk that vehicles may collide with the object.~~ Artwork placed within the roundabout central island ~~also carries some risk of~~ has the potential for collision ~~from~~with an errant vehicle. As with placing any object along the roadway, minimizing ~~the risk of collision~~this potential is paramount. To determine appropriate placement of the artwork piece and ~~minimize risk of impact~~reduce the chance and severity of impacts, follow the process outlined below.

Determine Artwork Placement Design Speed and Design ADT - Design Speed for the artwork installation is considered to be the determined approach speed to the roundabout. Engineering judgement is needed to establish an appropriate speed. The Artwork Placement Design Speed could be the posted speed approaching the roundabout or it could be posted speed+5 mph or even posted speed+10 mph depending on location specific context.

After establishing an appropriate Artwork Placement Design Speed, use the Clear Zone Distance Table (Table 400-2) found in the ODOT Highway Design Manual to determine an initial Artwork Placement Design Clear Zone

Based on the Horizontal Curve Adjustment Table (Table 400-3) found in the ODOT Highway Design Manual use a 1.5 adjustment factor applied to the initial clear zone value determined in step 2 above to determine a calculated Artwork Placement Clear Zone value.

The Artwork Design Clear Zone is measured from the inside edge of the circulating roadway towards the center of the central island and includes the truck apron. This determines the area within the center of the central island where artwork may be located to minimize the ~~risk~~possibility of collision. It is best to keep this area as small as practicable.

DRAFT

After determining an appropriate area for artwork installation from the procedure described in previous steps, perform a visual check by using a computer-generated simulation on a plan view of the roundabout establishing a reasonable errant passenger vehicle pathway projected along an assumed approach alignment into the central island. Based on engineering judgement, adjustments may need to be made to the previously determined allowable installation area based on the outcome of the simulation.

Final determination and agreement of the artwork installation area is a collaborative effort of Region Traffic and Roadway Mangers and ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Section staff.

Document the decision process in project files for future reference.

While artwork can be an integral part of a roundabout installation, artwork may not be appropriate at all roundabout locations. Having a process to determine an area for artwork installation does not, in itself, dictate the inclusion of artwork at a roundabout location. ODOT reserves the right to not allow artwork installations at any roundabout location based on overall safety, operational needs, or other significant impacts to the roadway section attributed to the artwork installation.

509.23.3 Roundabout Artwork Placement Evaluations

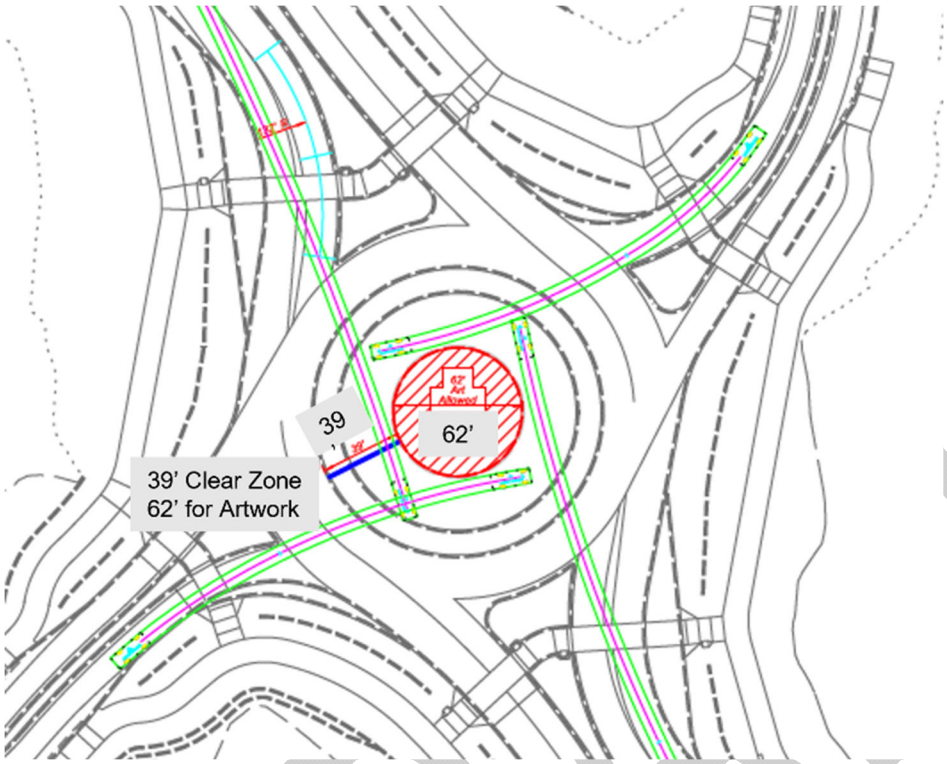
Example 1: Higher speed multi-Lane roadway – Posted Speed Approaching – 55 mph

- Multi-Lane Roundabout Design
- Fastest Path (Calculated) – 28-29 mph
- Target Speed (Circulating) – 20-25 mph

1. Determine artwork placement design speed - Since multi-lane higher speed roadway approaching the roundabout location, a posted speed + 5 mph could be used – use 60 mph.
2. From HDM Table 400-2 for 60 mph – Initial Artwork Placement Clear Zone = 26 ft.
3. Apply adjustment factor - Calculated Artwork Placement Clear Zone = 26 x 1.5 = 39 ft.
4. Define potential area where artwork could be allowed – Total width across central island including truck apron minus the artwork placement clear zone times 2.
   Width across central island - 140ft. – 2(39ft. clear zone) = 62ft. for potential artwork area.
5. As a visual verification, use computer generated simulation of an errant passenger vehicle alignment into the central island.
6. Evaluate final allowable artwork area – graphic representation agrees with calculated area at 62ft.
7. Obtain agreement on determined area with Region Traffic and Roadway mangers and with ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Sections staff.
8. Document decision in project files.

DRAFT

Figure 500-59: Roundabout Artwork - Higher Speed Multi-Lane Roadway



Example 2: Lower Speed Urban Roadway - Posted Speed Approaching – 35 mph

- Single Lane Roundabout Design
- Entrance Fastest Path (Calculated) – 25-26 mph
- Target Speed (Circulating) – 15-20 mph

1. Determine artwork placement design speed – Single-lane urban roadway approaching the roundabout location, a posted speed of 35 or posted speed + 5 mph could be used – both are in the same category on Table 400-2 - use 40 mph.
2. From HDM Table 400-2 for 40 mph – Initial Artwork Placement Clear Zone = 16 ft.
3. Apply adjustment factor - Calculated Artwork Placement Clear Zone = 16 x 1.5 = 24 ft.
4. Define potential area where artwork could be allowed – Total width across central island including truck apron minus the artwork placement clear zone times 2.

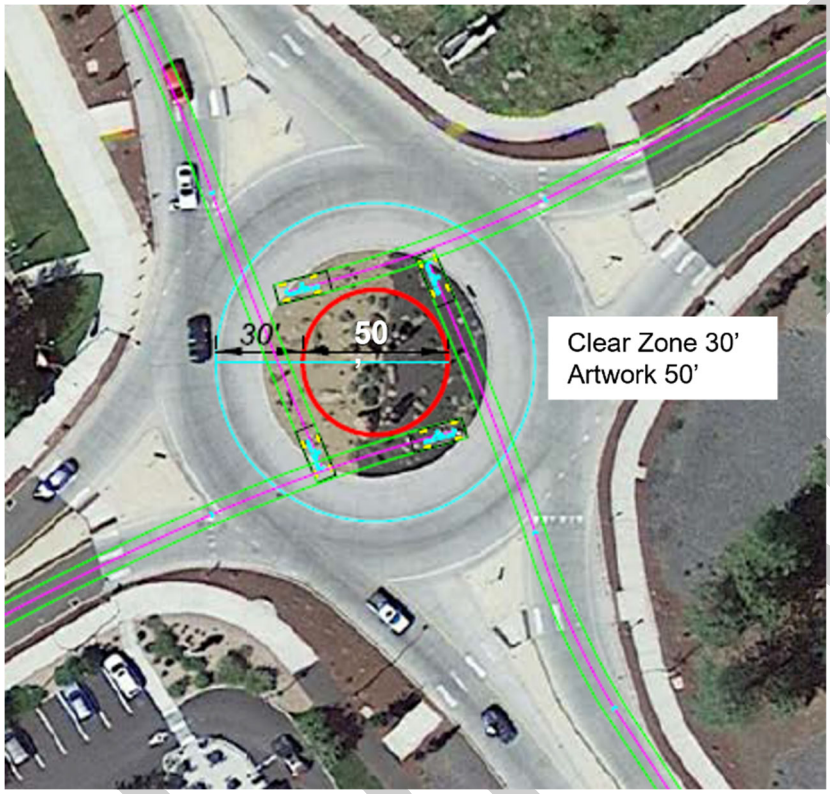
   Width across central island – 110 ft. – 2(24 ft. clear zone) = 62 ft. for potential artwork area.
5. As a visual verification, use computer generated simulation of an errant passenger vehicle alignment into the central island.
6. Evaluate final allowable artwork area – Based on roundabout approach geometry and splitter island placement, the visual representation of a reasonable errant vehicle path is outside the calculated artwork clear zone and inside the potential area for artwork.

DRAFT

Increase the artwork placement clear zone to 30 ft. and reduce the final allowable area for artwork to 50 ft. (110 ft. – 2(30 ft.) = 50 ft.)

7. Obtain agreement on determined area with Region Traffic and Roadway mangers and with ETSB Traffic and Roadway Engineering Section staff.
8. Document decision in project files.

Figure 500-60: Roundabout Artwork - Lower Speed Urban Roadway



Section 510 Analysis; Roundabout Entrance and Exit Geometry (White Paper)

Entrance and exit geometries play an important role in controlling speed and movement of a vehicle through a roundabout. In general, providing roundabout alignments that increase flow at the exit may provide increased gaps in the circulating traffic stream and may provide greater opportunities for entering vehicles. Currently, there is significant discussion between roundabout designers about the best method to determine exit geometry and to control exit speed within design parameters. The discussion centers around the prediction of vehicle speed and how to calculate appropriate values for design. The standard method has been to utilize the

speed, radius relationship as shown in Figure 500-34. The graph was derived using the basic equation for velocity and minimum radius from the AASHTO Green Book;

$V = \sqrt{15R(e+f)}$, where superelevation, e, is held to +2% and -2% with side friction factor, f, values assumed for general design.

Table 500-4 is a tabular form of the values in Figure 500-34 reported at 25 ft. radius intervals. In addition, NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts provides simplified equations to calculate speeds for given radii as well. Equation 1 is for +2% superelevation and Equation 2 is for -2% superelevation.

Speed (V), Radius (R) Relationship Equations:

Equation 1: $\boldsymbol{V = 3.4415R^{0.3861}}$ For e= 2% (NCHRP Report 1043)

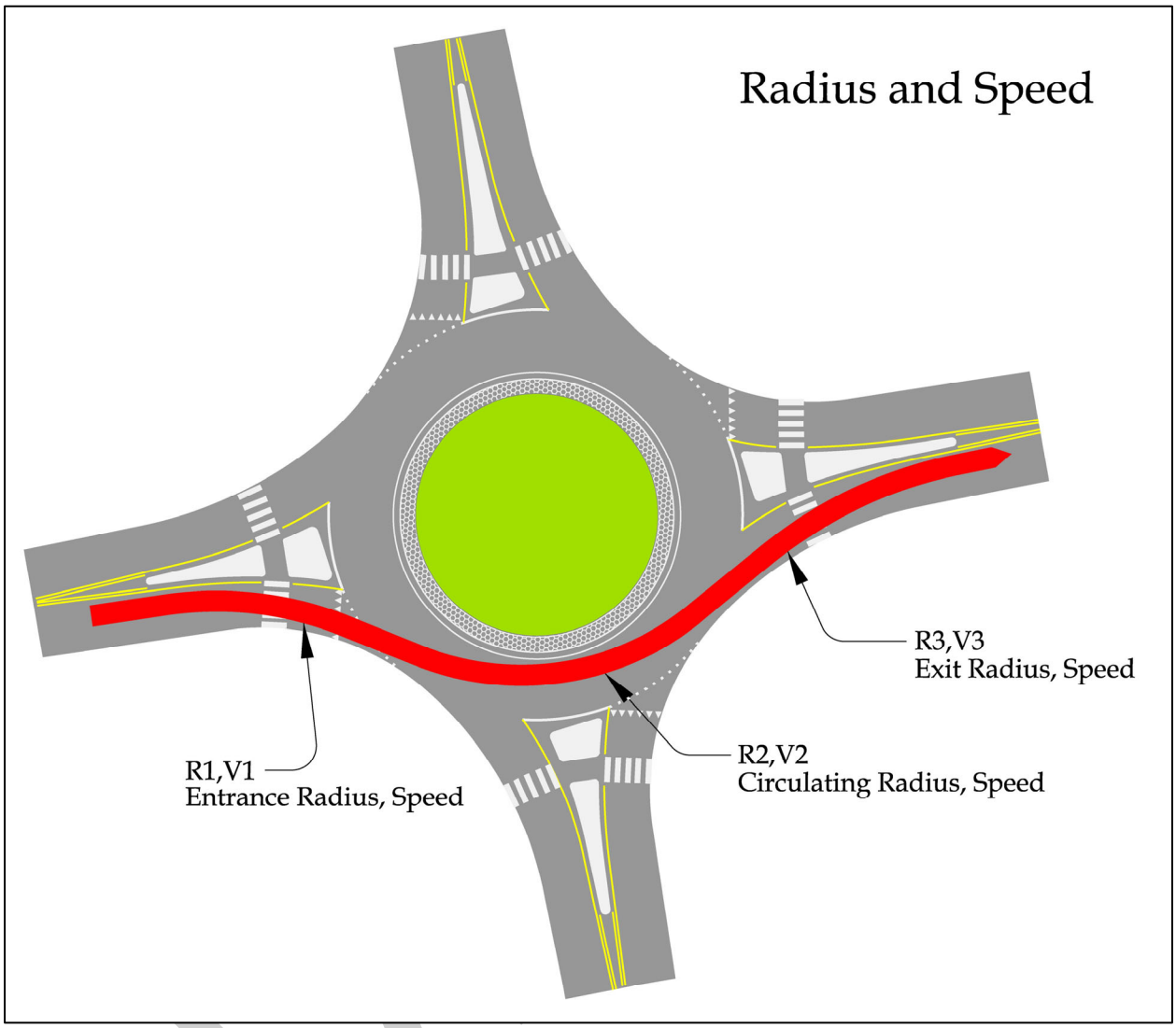
Equation 2: $\boldsymbol{V = 3.4614R^{0.3673}}$ For e= -2% (NCHRP Report 1043)

Equation 3: $\boldsymbol{V = \sqrt{15R(e+f)}}$ (AASHTO Minimum Radius)

Figure 500-61 illustrates the vehicle path through a roundabout depicting the R1,V1; R2,V2; and R3,V3 locations.

DRAFT

Figure 500-61: Vehicle Path through a Roundabout - Speed, Radius Locations



For superelevation other than +/- 2%, Equation 3, AASHTO Minimum Radius calculations need to be used with an appropriate side friction factor, f.

However, there is thought that exit radii designed too small to reduce predicted exit speed in an attempt to focus on pedestrian safety may unnecessarily limit overall roundabout capacity. This leads to the question, then, how to calculate appropriate exit radii to maximize capacity and still protect pedestrian movements at the downstream crosswalk?

510.1 Research for Alternate Calculation Method

510.1.1 Report: Alternate Design Methods for Pedestrian Safety at Roundabout Entries and Exits:

Crash Studies and Design Practices in Australia, France, Great Britain and the USA Bill Baranowski, Edmund Waddell (2004)

Research done in 2004 by Bill Baranowski of Roundabouts USA and Edmund Waddell of Michigan DOT investigated entrance and exit geometry in order to determine appropriate roundabout alignments to increase capacity without negatively effecting pedestrian safety. The investigation determined that R_1 and R_2 values along with vehicle acceleration from R_2 through R_3 may play more of a role in exit speed than exit radius, R_3, alone. The researchers looked at the circulation radius, speed; R_2,V_2 relationship, the distance from the end of the R_2 radius to the exit crosswalk and the potential acceleration of a vehicle over that distance. Figure 500-48 illustrates the acceleration distance from the R_2V_2 location and the downstream pedestrian crossing.

The research assumed an exiting vehicle can accelerate along a given R3 radial path with an acceleration rate of 3.5 ft/s2 and also assumed acceleration starts at the end point of R2. The standard Newtonian equation for uniform acceleration was used to compute potential vehicle speeds at the exit crosswalk.

Newtonian Equation for Speed and Acceleration

$$V_f^2 = V_i^2 + 2aS$$

Where: V_f = Final R3 Speed, ft/s (V_3, Exit Speed)

V_i = Initial R2 Speed (V_2, Circulating Speed)

a = Acceleration, (3.5 ft/s^2)

S = Distance, ft (End of R2 to Crosswalk)

After analyzing theoretical roundabout layouts and investigating several existing roundabouts, the researchers concluded that the R_2,V_2 radius, speed relationship and vehicle acceleration from R_2 to the crosswalk as a vehicle exits a roundabout has more effect on the vehicle speed at the exit crosswalk than a tighter exit radius using only the radius, speed relationship for R3 alone. The theory then is that exit geometry (radius) can be relaxed to increase overall capacity and not appreciably affect pedestrian activity or safety at the exit crosswalk by increased vehicle speed. This may prove to be true for small acceleration distance values coupled with relative

DRAFT

radius values to predict and control maximum potential exit speed. However, effectively controlling this relationship may not always be easily accomplished.

While the theory may have validity, it is only one analysis and appropriate application is critical to its effectiveness for speed prediction and control. Two key variables in the calculation are the distance available to accelerate prior to the exit crosswalk and the acceleration rate itself. If available acceleration distance is kept short, the exit speed may not be greatly affected. However, in larger diameter roundabouts, the available distance to accelerate may have an appreciable effect on exit speed. This may be particularly true for multi-lane roundabouts. The acceleration rate chosen for design will also influence the predicted speed. The research used a rate of 3.5 ft/sec^2 for exit speed calculations. This is not a particularly fast rate of acceleration and may be acceptable for a curvilinear acceleration rate for small to moderate radii transitioning to the exit. Some roundabout designs are utilizing large exit radii that become almost tangential. In these designs, it would be expected that vehicles would be accelerating from R_2 to the exit at a rate greater than 3.5 ft/sec^2. NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts uses 6.9 ft/sec^2 for an acceleration rate in similar equations. This is nearly twice the rate used in the Baranouski/Waddell research and may ~~be a better~~improve estimation when considering that the current vehicle fleet is capable of maximum performance, straight line acceleration rates of 9 ft/sec^2 for a four cylinder compact car to over 20 ft/sec^2 for a high performance eight cylinder vehicle with the average (non-weighted for vehicle types) for all vehicles at about 13 ft/sec^2. (See Table 500-6 attached, Maximum Performance – Straight Line Acceleration by Vehicle.)

The Baranowski/Waddell research is significant in that it shows the role R_2 can play in controlling exit speed when alignments incorporate smaller curvilinear radii and short acceleration distances between R_2 and the exit crosswalk. However, for a larger R_3 radius or tangential exit, the acceleration rate for predicted speed calculations may need to be increased ~~to better represent conditions~~ as available acceleration distances increase.

510.1.2 NCHRP Report 572, Roundabouts in the United States

Rodegerdts, Blogg, Wemple, Myers, et al (2007)

NCHRP Report 572 was a research project that investigated roundabouts in the United States and analyzed their operation. Authors of NCHRP Report 572 collected data from 103 roundabouts from around the United States. One of their findings indicated that observed entry and exit speeds did not always correlate well to the predicted entry and exit speeds determined for a given roundabout using the speed, radius relationship. The predicted speeds tended to be greater than the observed speeds. This was particularly evident for roundabouts with tangential or large entrance or exit radii. However, the speed~~,~~ radius relationship did well in predicting observed circulating speeds through the R_2 and the R_4 pathways around the central island.

DRAFT

It is unclear as to why the speed~~,~~-radius relationship is effective to predict speeds for pathways around the central island radius but is not as effective when predicting speeds in relation to entry and exit radii when correlated to observed speeds at specific roundabouts. From their observations and analysis, the authors developed equations that, in some locations, may ~~better~~help predict entry and exit speeds based on vehicle deceleration and acceleration ability. Like the previous research work done in 2004, these equations include vehicle deceleration and acceleration parameters based on observations and analysis and use the standard equation for uniform acceleration as a basis.

These equations are also presented in NCHRP 1043, Guide for Roundabouts (2023) to calculate predicted values for V_1 and V_3 along a vehicle's fastest path as it enters and exits a roundabout. The guide suggests these equations can be used as an alternative to using values derived from the simplified speed, radius relationships. However, as a cautionary statement, since predicted V_2 values derived from the speed~~,~~-radius relationship seem to correlate to observed V_2 values, there may be other factors involved like driver behavior, driver expectation, driver familiarity, etc. affecting the correlation of predicted exit speeds and observed exit speeds rather than straight forward correlations to radial path, speed or acceleration.

Equation 4 – Alternative Entrance Speed Calculation, V_1

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{1.47}\sqrt{(1.47V_2)^2 + 2a_{1,2}d_{1,2}}$$

V_1 = entry speed, mph

V_2 = circulating speed based on path radius, mph

$a_{1,2}$ = deceleration between point of interest along V_1 path and mid-point of V_2 path, = -4.2 ft/s^2

$d_{1,2}$ = distance between point of interest along V_1 path and mid-point of V_2 path, ft.

The deceleration rate of -4.2 ft/s^2 for entry speed was developed from the observed driver/vehicle behavior at the researched sites. While this equation had ~~better~~improved correlation predicting entry speed with observed speed, the authors also included the following statement in NCHRP 572:

> "However, given the hesitancy currently exhibited by drivers under capacity conditions, the observed entry speeds may increase over time after drivers acclimate further. Therefore, the research team believes that an analyst should be cautious when using deceleration as a limiting factor when establishing entry speeds for design. Furthermore, the research team believes that a good design should rely more heavily on controlling the entry path radius as the primary method for controlling entry speed, particularly for the fastest combination of entry and circulating path (typically the through movement)."

NCHRP Report 672, Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, second edition also addresses this concern and states:

DRAFT

> "Analysts should use caution in using deceleration as a limiting factor to establish entry speed for design. To promote safe design, deflection of the R_1 path radius should be the primary method for controlling entry speed. Therefore, while Equation 6-3 may provide an improved estimate of actual speed achieved at entry, for design purposes it is recommended that predicted speeds from Equation 6-1 be used."
>
> (Note: In this White Paper, NCHRP Report 672 Equation 6-3 and Equation 6-1 are reported as Equation 4 and Equation 1 respectively)

Similar to entry speed, NCHRP Report 572 developed an equation that utilizes vehicle acceleration ability for predicting exit speed based on the standard uniform acceleration equation to ~~better correlate~~improve correlation of predicted exit speed with observed exit speed for investigative purposes. As with the deceleration rate for entry speed, the report developed a vehicle exit acceleration value of 6.9 ft/s2 from observed information.

Equation 5 – Alternative Exit Speed Calculation, V_3

$$V_3 = \frac{1}{1.47}\sqrt{(1.47V_2)^2 + 2a_{2,3}d_{2,3}}$$

V_3 = Exit Speed, mph

V_2 = circulating speed based on path radius, mph

$a_{2,3}$ = average acceleration between midpoint of V_2 path and the point of interest along V_3 path = 6.9 ft/s^2

$d_{2,3}$ = distance along vehicle path between midpoint of V_2 path and the point of interest along the V_3 path, ft.

The authors of NCHRP 572 did not provide a caveat for not using the alternate V_3 calculation method for design as was provided for the alternate V_1 calculation method. There is no explanation provided in the report to indicate why one calculation may be considered more valid than the other. One must remember the reason for the derivation of these equations. The intent was to provide a prediction of exit speed that ~~better~~ correlated to observed exit speed at roundabout locations. The use of these equations lies in the assumption that since the predicted exit speed using the speed~~,~~ - radius relationship is greater than the observed speed, there must be something affecting the speed~~,~~ - radius relationship at exits. Acceleration rates were determined ~~to make a better~~for correlation. However, it works fine for R_2,V_2 and R_4,V_4 predicted and observed values. There may be other driver behavior factors that also affect observed R_1,V_1 and R_3,V_3 relationships. The authors are concerned this is the case with entrance speed and the same may be true for exit speed. The derived equations use a single deceleration or acceleration rate determined from observed data. Applying these acceleration rates to large radius or tangential exits and small radius, tight curvilinear exits equally may not produce effective design results in both cases. Using the same rates for both exit types assumes acceleration in a straight line or in a large radius is the same as acceleration in a tighter curvilinear path. This may not be the case. Therefore, lowering the acceleration rate for smaller radius paths seems

DRAFT

reasonable. The research done in 2004 used 3.5 ft/s² as an acceleration rate for their investigation into exit geometry. This seems a more reasonable acceleration rate for smaller radial paths. NCHRP 572 uses 6.9 ft/s² as an acceleration rate. This seems reasonable for larger radius or tangential exits and seems to represent where, by observation, American drivers currently feel comfortable when exiting a roundabout. However, will this rate increase as drivers become more familiar with roundabouts? This is a concern of the authors of NCHRP Report 572 for V_1 values.

510.2 Evaluation of Large Radius or Tangential Exits and Small Radius Exits

In addition to determining an acceptable acceleration rate, the other two critical variables in these equations are the V_2 speed and the distance, d, over which the deceleration or acceleration can take place. Therefore, if a large radius or tangential exit is designed for a roundabout, the R_2 value must provide the appropriate design V_2 and the acceleration distance must be effective in limiting a vehicle's potential downstream speed to design values.

Figure 500-62 is a hypothetical roundabout layout based on real roundabout dimensions that portrays potential differences in speed between a smaller curvilinear exit and a more tangential or large radius exit. The vehicle path alignment shown from lower left to upper right (green) assumes radii for R_1 and R_2 that provide a 20 mph V_1 and V_2. The curvilinear R_3 exit radius is shown as both 175 ft. and 125 ft. for illustrative purposes and correlates to a V_3 speed of 25 mph and 22 mph respectively. These V_3 values are based on the speed, radius equations discussed previously in Section 510 and is shown in Table 500-4 is a tabular form of the values in Figure 500-34 reported at 25 ft. radius intervals. In addition, NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts provides simplified equations to calculate speeds for given radii as well. Equation 1 is for +2% superelevation and Equation 2 is for -2% superelevation.

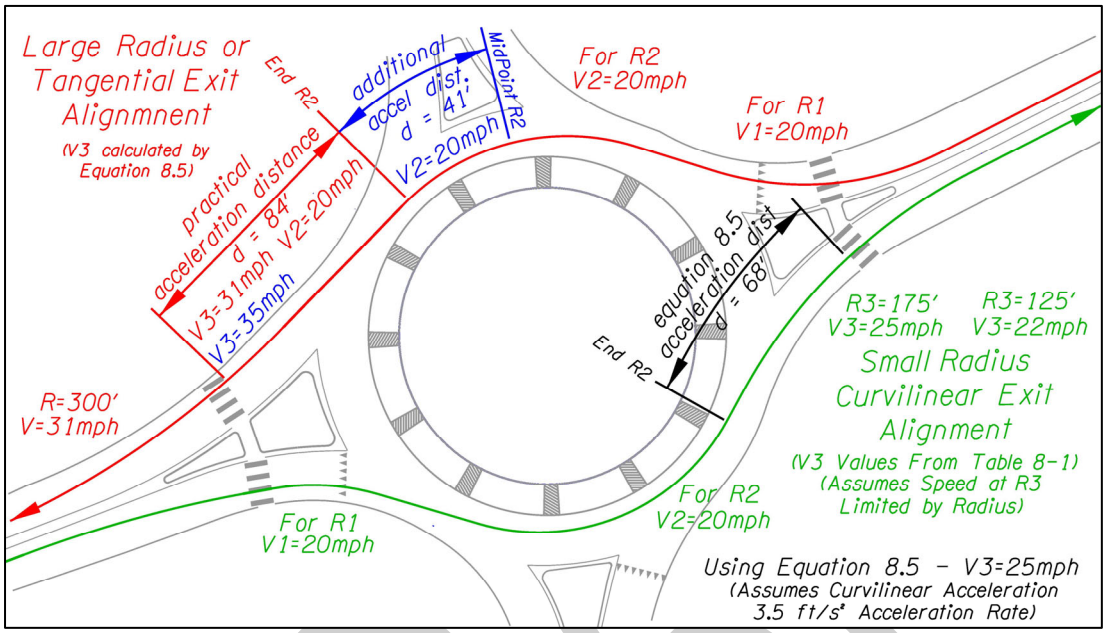
, Figure 500-34. For comparison, the speed, acceleration equation was used to calculate a predicted V_3 exit speed along the radial R_3 path. Since the exit radius is small, using the 3.5 ft/s² acceleration rate discussed previously and coupled with the relatively short acceleration distance shown, a predicted V_3 of 25 mph was determined. This is equal to the value predicted for V_3 using the speed, radius relationship for a 175 ft. exit radius. This is in line with the conclusions of the 2004 research report. However, keep in mind, this geometry has a smaller curvilinear alignment with a short acceleration distance that helps limit a vehicle's ability to accelerate. For comparison, increasing the acceleration rate for the calculation to the NCHRP Report 572 value of 6.9 ft/s² yields a predicted speed of 29 mph at the crosswalk. This is beginning to reach the unacceptable level for speed at the crosswalk when considering pedestrian safety.

Large radius or tangential exit geometry set for increased capacity or exit geometry opened up due to skewed approach alignments or other site specific parameters that might dictate

DRAFT

positioning of roundabout elements may have equal or greater impact to potential vehicle speeds at the crosswalk.

Figure 500-62: Exit Geometry – Comparison Tangential and Small Radius



The vehicle path shown on the opposite side of the roundabout from upper right to lower left (red) in Figure 500-62 also assumes radii for R_1 and R_2 that provide a 20 mph V_1 and V_2. However, the V_3 value of 31 mph is based on the potential for vehicle acceleration from the end of R_2 to the crosswalk. This distance is shown as a "practical acceleration distance", d, and for this layout is equal to 84 ft. This distance assumes a driver does not accelerate until reaching the end of the circulating path radius R_2. This is the approach the researchers in 2004 preferred. The equation parameters listed in NCHRP 672, Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, second edition define the acceleration distance as the distance from the midpoint of the V_2 path and a point of interest along the V_3 path.

The point of interest is the downstream crosswalk in this analysis. Adding the additional acceleration distance back along the path to the midpoint of R_2 and assuming a vehicle is capable of accelerating at 6.9 ft/s2 along this reversing radial to tangential path, yields a total distance of 124 ft. that a vehicle can accelerate prior to the downstream crosswalk increasing the calculated V_3 speed to 35 mph. These calculated speeds are 6 mph and 10 mph faster than the predicted V_3 speed of 25 mph at the tighter curvilinear exit on the opposite path of the roundabout. Either of these speeds would be considered excessive for design at the downstream crosswalk. This exemplifies the need to limit the acceleration distance, d, to provide acceptable exit speed if a tangential or large radius design is used.

510.3 Conclusion

The two research projects discussed both used uniform acceleration in their calculations. However, they each used different rates of acceleration. Baranowski and Waddell used 3.5 ft/s^2 for acceleration. NCHRP Report 572 used 6.9 ft/s^2, which is almost double the rate used by Baranowski and Waddell. Both these rates appear to be rates that were field observed by the authors of the reports. The difference may be attributed to the focus of the individual research. Baranowski and Waddell were studying roundabout locations where they considered exit radii to be excessively tight to restrict speeds. Therefore, the observed rates of acceleration were compatible with the geometry.

In the case of NCHRP Report 572, the authors were trying to correlate observed exit speed with predicted speed, and they noted there was a greater discrepancy when the exit radius was large – predicted speed greater than actual observed speed. In these cases, it appears the acceleration rate was determined to match the observed speed and the 6.9 ft/s^2 value they determined in 2007 may in fact be a comfortable rate for American drivers at larger radius exits. This is further borne out when looking at potential 0 – 60 mph maximum performance characteristics of the current vehicle fleet. Table 500-6 is a listing of maximum performance and straight line acceleration of various late model production vehicles ranging from 4 cylinder compact cars to high performance 10 cylinder "muscle cars".

The data was collected from the on-line automotive sight AutoRooster at http://www.autorooster.com. The site reports 0 - 60 times for a variety of current vehicles. The corresponding accelerations were calculated and added to the table as 60 mph acceleration values in ft/s^2. The acceleration values ranged from 9.09 ft/s^2 for a 2008 Honda Civic, 4-cylinder vehicle to 24.50 ft/s^2 for a 2010 Dodge Viper, 10 cylinder vehicle. The mathematical average (non-weighted for numbers of vehicle type) for all the vehicles in the table is 12.89 ft/s^2. This indicates that the 6.9 ft/s^2 value determined from observed speeds in NCHRP Report 572 may be an acceptable overall value as a "comfortable" acceleration rate to most drivers, since the average in Table 2 of 12.89 ft/s^2 was determined from maximum, straight line performance.

Currently, there is no definitive answer to what the best method is to predict entrance and exit speed when designing a roundabout. Research has shown that in some cases where exit radii are smaller and/or acceleration distances are short limiting a vehicle's ability to accelerate prior to the exit crosswalk, opening up exit geometry may not have a great effect on exit speed. However, relaxed exit geometry that increases acceleration distances and acceleration rates can potentially have significant effects on the exit crosswalk impacting pedestrian movements. This is particularly true for multi-lane roundabouts in off-peak times when a vehicle's fastest path may cross adjacent lanes.

In any roundabout layout, it is the designer's responsibility to provide vehicle alignments that consistently control vehicle speeds from entrance to exit in an effective manner for all modes of transportation utilizing the roundabout. For this reason, after the above discussion, it seems

DRAFT

reasonable to use roundabout entrance and exit alignments that limit a driver's ability to accelerate prior to the exit crosswalk and it appears that a good method to do that is the standard radius, speed relationship.

DRAFT

Table 500-6: Maximum Straight Line Acceleration Performance by Vehicle

Vehicle Data	0-60 (sec)	1/4 Mile (sec)	60 MPH Distance (ft)	60 MPH Acceleration (ft/sec^2)
2008 Honda Civic, 4cyl	9.7	17.1	427.8	9.09
2010-12 Nissan Versa, 4 cyl.	9.4	18.3	414.5	9.38
2013 Ford Escape, 4 cyl.	9.3	17.4	410.1	9.48
2011-14 Chevy Cruze, 4 cyl.	9.0	16.5	396.9	9.80
2009-12 Toyota Corolla. 4 cyl.	8.9	16.7	392.5	9.91
2010-13 Chevy Tahoe, 8 cyl.	8.5	16.9	374.9	10.38
2013 Ford Fusion, 4 cyl.	8.5	16.9	374.9	10.38
2014 Ford Focus, 4 cyl.	8.5	16.7	374.9	10.38
2012 Toyota Camry, 4 cyl.	8.3	15.6	366.0	10.63
2011-12 Dodge Caravan, 6 cyl.	8.1	16.7	357.2	10.89
2014 Chevy Impala, 6 cyl.	8.1	16.3	357.2	10.89
2012-14 Ford Explorer, 4 cyl.	7.8	15.9	344.0	11.31
2013 Honda Accord, 4 cyl.	7.7	15.8	339.6	11.45
2013 Nissan Altima, 4 cyl.	7.1	15.5	313.1	12.42
2012 Mercedes S Class, 6 cyl. (D)	7.0	15.3	308.7	12.60
2013 Toyota Avalon, 6 cyl.	6.8	15.3	299.9	12.97
2012 Mercedes C Class, 4 cyl.	6.8	15.3	299.9	12.97
2011-13 Ford F-150, 6 cyl.	6.5	15.3	286.7	13.57
2012-13 BMW 5 Series, 4 cyl.	6.1	14.5	269.0	14.46
2012-13 Chevy Camero, 6 cyl.	6.0	14.4	264.6	14.70
2009-12 Nissan Maxima, 6 cyl.	5.8	14.4	255.8	15.21
2012-12 BMW 3 Series, 4 cyl.	5.6	14.4	247.0	15.75
2011-13 Ford Mustang, 6 cyl.	5.3	14.0	233.7	16.64
2014 Chevy Corvette, 8 cyl.	3.9	12.1	172.0	22.62
2008-10 Dodge Viper, 10 cyl.	3.6	11.9	158.8	24.50
				Average, 12.89 ft/s^2

Note: Data from AutoRooster (autorooster.com/0-60-times)

Section 511 References

511.1 AASHTO References

- A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018 (AASHTO Green Book)
- Guide for Development of New Bicycle Facilities – 2012

511.2 Other References

- Oregon Standard Drawings
- The 1999 Oregon Highway Plan
- ODOT Traffic Manual
- ODOT ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual
- Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan
- Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide
- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices and Oregon Supplements
- NCHRP Report 1043, Guide for Roundabouts, 2023
- NCHRP Report 672, Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition, 2010
- NCHRP Report 572, Roundabouts in the United States, 2007
- Research Report: Alternate Design Methods for Pedestrian Safety at Roundabout Entries and Exits: Crash Studies and Design Practices in Australia, France, Great Britain and the USA, 2004

DRAFT

Part 600 Interchanges and Grade Separations

DRAFT

Section 601 Introduction

Interchanges and grade separations are an integral part of freeways, and also a feature of certain other facilities in select locations and contexts. Much has been learned about how interchanges operate and the role they play in safety and efficiency of our roadway network. Some features of earlier generations of freeways and other facilities have proven to be problematic or have become obsolete as the demands on them have grown. Several ODOT facilities started with a mix of interchanges and at-grade intersections, over time changing to fully access controlled highways. Some still have a mix of interchanges and at-grade intersections. In some cases, very early versions of grade separated facilities (Harbor Drive and Interstate Avenue in Portland) have been changed into at-grade arterial roadways, with vestiges of the original still in service. Valuable insights have been gained from these transitional facilities. Most of those insights have been incorporated into ODOT standards and practices over time. Detailed explanations of current standards and practices are provided in each Section.

Interchange contexts can vary widely, from simple rural locations to complex urban systems and large freeway to freeway connections. A wide variety of interchange forms have been used over the last several decades. There are some design features, however, that are common to all interchanges no matter the context.

Part 600 of the HDM provides specific guidance on design and planning for interchanges and grade separations on ODOT facilities. Design criteria and standard practices have been developed (and continue to be refined) as operational, safety, and constructability experience has increased. Key design and planning considerations are discussed in detail. Recognizing that in many (if not most) situations, it isn't practical (or in some cases possible) to meet full standards, Part 600 includes discussion of the tradeoffs involved when working on existing facilities. Also included are numerous design aids and example applications of design criteria and practices in typical situations.

601.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 600-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

DRAFT

Table 600-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 601.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 601.2 and 601.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 601.3 and 601.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

DRAFT

601.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 601.4).

601.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 601.4).

601.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

601.5 Definitions

Definitions of some basic terms and ODOT specific terminology is appropriate. The following terms are commonly used in the context of Interchange Planning and Design.

At-Grade Intersection - An intersection of two roadways at the same level, typically featuring stop control, roundabout control, or traffic signal control.

Grade Separation - A roadway that is carried at a different level than a through roadway. They may be part of an interchange, or a standalone feature.

DRAFT

Interchange - A system of interconnecting roadways in conjunction with one or more grade separations that provides for movement of traffic between two or more roadways or highways at different levels.

Freeway - An arterial roadway with full control of access. It's intended to provide high levels of safety and efficiency in moving high volumes of traffic at high speeds. Access to a Freeway is only by way of entrance and exit ramp roadways.

Ramp - In the context of interchanges, a ramp is a connecting roadway between different level roadways. They feature full access control and perform the key function of transitioning to/ from higher speeds to lower speeds or a full stop.

FHWA - Federal Highway Administration

Access Modification Request - A formal document submitted by ODOT to FHWA regarding modified access to the Interstate System. FHWA approval is required for implementing those changes.

Interchange Area Management Plan (IAMP) - An ODOT process that is intended to provide engineering and access management guidance for new and existing interchanges. It is developed in conjunction with local officials and public input. Planned improvements, expected operational characteristics and high level environmental evaluations are part of the final document, which when approved by the Oregon Transportation Commission, becomes an amendment to the Oregon Highway Plan. Future improvements, projects, and management decisions are informed and guided by the IAMP.

Mainline - In the freeway and interchange context, the mainline is the primary or through roadway (such as an Interstate) being served by the interchange

Crossroad - The primary roadway intersecting the through roadway by way of grade separation and ramp roadways. The crossroad may be a State Highway or local jurisdiction roadway. In the interchange area, the crossroad must take into account the local context and the necessary interchange functions.

Auxiliary Lane - An Auxiliary Lane is defined as the portion (normally a full lane) adjoining the through lanes for speed change, turning, storage for turning, weaving maneuvers, truck climbing, or other purposes that supplement through traffic movements. They are typically used for relatively short section of a roadway, such as between two closely spaced interchanges.

DRAFT

Speed Change Lane - The portion of a ramp roadway used for speed matching, gap identification and merging maneuvers (entrances) or deceleration to appropriate speeds or a stop (exits). ODOT uses parallel type entrances and tapered type exits. Standard ramp configurations in the HDM provide the necessary/appropriate speed change lengths.

Section 602 General Information

There are three types of roadway intersections: intersections at-grade, grade separations without exit or entrance ramps, and interchanges. Each of these has specific characteristics and applications. Each is appropriate to use in the proper context. The strongly preferred approach for system planning is to use consistent control features and not mix at-grade intersections with grade separated interchanges. Grade separations without ramps are sometimes necessary on at-grade facilities due to terrain, development patterns, or the need to maintain appropriate spacing of adjacent intersections. When this approach is considered, the completeness of the supporting local road network (local roads or frontage roads for example) must also be considered; strong consideration must be given to including those elements that are missing or incomplete as part of the roadway work.

In some very unusual situations, intersections at-grade and interchanges can be used together, with appropriate spacing and other criteria being applied. However, this needs to be very carefully evaluated regarding safety and operations and implemented with exceptional care. Mixing of controls create uncertainty and confusion for roadway users (driver expectations). If users are accustomed to seeing a facility that is accessed by way of interchanges, an at-grade intersection is out of context.

An example of this is the incremental development of OR 217 (Beaverton-Tigard Highway). Although interchanges were planned at several locations, they were not built during initial construction in the mid-1960s - they had interim at-grade intersections with signals. Shortly after the facility was opened, the operational and safety issues became very apparent. Access was eventually handled by completing the remaining interchanges in the late 1970s; close interchange spacing and some confusing connections created additional ongoing issues. The highway is also affected by limited local parallel facilities.

Design and planning practitioners need to keep in mind that using an inappropriate solution for a specific context can lead to serious safety and operational issues. This section discusses both general considerations and specific design features for interchange and grade separation facilities in a variety of contexts.

Interchanges require major investments and typically have significant impact on the natural and built environments. The decision to use an interchange as a transportation solution requires adequate study, including traffic analysis, geometric design, and environmental/land use

DRAFT

impacts. To work properly, an interchange needs to fit into the context of the roadway system, the surrounding area, and be supported by an adequate network of local facilities. When these features, for whatever reason, are not feasible, a new interchange is not advisable.

Basic interchange forms (diamond, partial cloverleaf, etc.) have inherent strengths, weaknesses and tradeoffs when they are applied. Section 603 has discussion and examples of various basic forms and issues to consider when working in both planning and design. Variations are too numerous to list; experience has taught us that it is advisable to stick with the basic forms in most cases. Striving to provide clear, simple, and familiar patterns for drivers is the best practice. When it's deemed appropriate, basic forms can be modified to fit the immediate context.

~~Existing interchanges often have operational and safety issues to consider as well.~~ Much of our freeway system was designed and initially built in the late 1950s and early 1960s. Although they were deemed appropriate at the time, decisions were made without the benefit of operational experience we now enjoy. Common ~~problem~~ areas for consideration on these facilities include close spacing to adjacent interchanges, ~~inadequate~~limited speed change areas, limited queue storage ~~issues~~, crossroads that ~~have deficient~~are operating over capacity, tight geometry that restricts sight lines or operations, and ~~inadequate~~limited weaving areas on the mainline.

Close interchange spacing is often a root cause of other problems, such as speed change and weaving issues. Solutions for these types of problems are commonly expensive and difficult to implement. Existing facilities normally can't avoid these problems, unless there is a willingness to remove an interchange (although the grade separation structure may remain) or some connections. Adding frontage roads and grade separations without ramps often helps to maintain or improve the local road network around the interchange, but these come with a cost as well. When new interchanges are considered, designers and planners need to adhere to the spacing and design guidelines provided in Part 600.

Particularly during planning efforts, it is important to not default to minimum design values. Defaulting to minimums may entirely preclude future options for managing problems or make them more costly and impactful. When working in fully developed areas, compromises are normally unavoidable, at least for some elements. Designers should always look for opportunities, however, to provide as many incremental improvements as possible within the context of the work. Where greater uncertainty exists, planning for future needs should always allow for as much flexibility as is reasonable. Alternatives need to be evaluated to an appropriate level of detail to understand the implications of these basic decisions.

ODOT has several example facilities that have made provision for future needs. Some were originally built to accommodate future construction which has since taken place, and others have made provision for work yet to be done. Examples include:

- The four laning of OR 22 between Joseph Street interchange and Stayton interchange (several grade separation structures dating back to 1960).

DRAFT

- I-205 in Portland made provision for a future system of busways and slip ramps in some areas, and some of that space was ultimately used for Light Rail Transit.
- OR 140 in Klamath Falls has an interchange at Washburn Way; the structure overhead was constructed to provide for a four-lane section on the highway, even though the highway is currently two lanes.
- I-5 in Salem is configured with sufficient median width to allow for possible future needs.
- The recently constructed two-lane Phase 1 of the Newberg-Dundee Bypass has also made provision for future needs.

Designers and planners must remember that any interchange, no matter how simple or basic, functions as a unit. The various components each have their functions and features to make the facility work. While the interchange always needs to make appropriate accommodation for the context in which it is present, it still needs to be able to function as a discrete piece of the overall system.

602.1 Warrants for Interchanges and Grade Separations

Interchanges are integral features of freeways and are adaptable for solving safety, operational, and traffic congestion problems on other types of facilities provided that adequate access management features are present. They can vary from single ramps connecting between local facilities and arterials to large and complex arrangements connecting two or more highways or freeways. Grade separations without ramps are also integral features on freeways. They also can provide significant system benefits to other facilities. Since a wide variety of factors come into play at each location, specific warrants for justifying an interchange cannot be conclusively stated. There are several conditions that need to be considered when deciding whether to use an interchange as a transportation solution. These include:

1. Design Designation – Fully Access Controlled Facilities, e.g.
2. Reduction of Bottlenecks or Congestion
3. Reduction of Crash Frequency and Severity
4. Site Topography
5. Traffic Volume
6. Road User Benefits – Cost of Delays and Congestion, e.g.

DRAFT

Chapter 10 of the AASHTO *"Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018"*, page 10-3 to 10-5 has a detailed discussion on things to consider for each interchange warrant. Warrants pertaining to grade separations are also located in that section

602.2 Interchange Spacing

Interchanges are expensive to build and to upgrade. Therefore, it is critical that they operate as efficiently as possible. Interchange spacing and access control should be an integral part of interchange planning and design. With the high number of vehicles and demand in an urban area, the interchange spacing for urban freeways is less than the spacing for rural interchanges. Minimum spacing for an added interchange is 3 miles in urban areas and for rural areas it is 6 miles. The spacing is measured from crossroad to crossroad.

See OAR 734, Division 51 for additional guidance on other Interstate and Non-Interstate interchange spacing criteria. Coordinate with the Region Access Management Engineer (RAME) on interchange and ramp spacing during planning and project development.

Table 600-2 shows the spacing standards for interchanges for freeway and non-freeway locations. The spacing shown is based upon crossroad to crossroad centerline distance. **Provide crossroad to crossroad spacing for new interchanges according to the values listed.**

DRAFT

Table 600-2: Freeway and Non-Freeway Interchange Spacing

Access Management Classification	Area	Interchange Spacing
Freeways Interstate and Non-Interstate	Urban Rural	3 miles 6 miles
Non-Freeways Expressways, Statewide, Regional, and District Highways	Urban Rural	1.9 miles 3 miles

NOTES:

Spacing distance is measured from crossroad to crossroad.

A design exception is required if interchange spacing standards are not met for new interchanges.

When long range plans call for new interchanges or converting grade separations into interchanges, new interchange criteria apply. A design exception is required where spacing standards are not met. The DE needs to be prepared by internal or external staff making the proposal.

Existing interchanges that do not meet current spacing standards do not require a design exception. *Interchange ramp spacing guidelines (explained in OAR Chapter 734, Division 51) apply and need to be considered during project development. An operational and safety analysis needs to be completed.* This analysis is prepared by ODOT or external staff doing the project work.

FHWA Interstate System Access ~~Modification~~ approval is required for added or modified access to Interstate highways~~. The policy~~ according to 23 CFR 624 (Part 624). This requires specific items to be addressed in a formal submittal document, known as an Interstate Access ~~Modification Request (IMR for short).~~Justification Report (IAJR). This document is prepared by ~~ODOT~~internal or ~~by others delegated to do so~~external staff making the proposal. Details on the policy are available online at: Interstate Access Policy - Interstate System - Design - Federal Highway Administration (dot.gov). Other ODOT jurisdiction highways (including freeways) are not subject to the FHWA policy; approvals in those cases are internal to ODOT.

602.3 Access Control at Interchanges

Access spacing along the crossroad in an interchange area is equally important as the interchange spacing. Spacing and operation of accesses and intersections adjacent to the ramp terminal are key part of how well service interchanges can serve their function. Recurring ~~problems~~issues are often present in facilities operating at or near capacity. ~~Poorly performing~~

~~intersections, inadequate~~Intersections performance, progression between them, and the effects of turning moves at accesses can create conditions which potentially back traffic onto the freeway.

Access management is one of the most valuable tools ODOT has in preserving the existing transportation system and addressing safety issues. It allows balancing between land access and preserving the movement of traffic in a safe and efficient manner.

Access spacing standards have been developed that are dependent on the type of area adjacent to the freeway interchange. Urban areas have two types of area, fully developed and urban. A fully developed interchange management area occurs when 85 percent or more of the parcels along the developable frontage are developed at urban densities and many have driveways connecting to the crossroad. Fully developed areas are also characterized by slower speeds. Urban interchange management areas are areas within an urban growth boundary that are not fully developed. OAR 734, Division 51 and the OHP provide information and spacing requirements for interchanges and interchange management areas at urban and rural locations.

At new interchanges with new crossroads, provide access control in the interchange area consistent with the following:

1. At all rural and suburban/urban fringe area interchanges, access shall be controlled a minimum distance of 1320 feet from the centerline of the ramp. The access control shall be applied equally to both sides of the crossroad. No reservations of access are allowed within these access controlled areas. No private access is allowed across from the interchange ramp terminal.

2. All other urban interchange areas should also be access controlled for 1320 feet from the centerline of the ramp. In many existing urban interchange environments however, this distance will be very difficult to achieve due to the built-up environment surrounding the interchange. In these situations, provide access control for a minimum distance of 750 feet. This controlled section applies equally to both sides of the crossroad and shall not include any reservations of access. No private access is allowed across from the interchange ramp terminal.

When a new interchange is added to an existing crossroad, full standard spacing is often not feasible. ***In those situations, every effort needs to be made to move in the direction of meeting the full spacing criteria.*** Often it is necessary to do added traffic analysis to support decision making. Investing in this level of improvement makes it very important to understand how the system will operate, both at opening and over time with the non-standard features.

When appropriate, exceptions from the above criteria need to be developed through a deviation process associated with interchange access management area planning. This is not a design exception, but rather a part of the project's Access Management Plan. It is developed by the project team in conjunction with the Region Access Management Engineer as part of the project's decision making records. OAR 734, Division 51 provides information and rules involving access

DRAFT

management for road connections to state highways. Potential justifications for not obtaining the minimum access control may include but are not limited to:

1. The cost of obtaining the access rights far exceeds the benefits.
2. Existing development patterns make it difficult and costly to provide alternative access routes such as frontage roads, combined access, or completing local roadway networks.
3. Topographical constraints make it impractical to achieve the desired spacings.

Exceptions from the access control standards for new interchanges with new crossroads will generally not be approved. In these situations, the standards should be achievable at a reasonable cost and impact. Only extreme cost or environmental impacts may justify an exception. Substantial inability to meet access criteria may in itself be sufficient reason to dismiss a new interchange alternative.

In those situations and contexts where meeting full spacing standards is not possible, every effort needs to be made to move in the direction of the standard. Exceptions and deviations are nearly always necessary in fully developed and urban areas. Many rural locations have significant terrain constraints that preclude full standards. Recognizing these facts, it's still important to document the reasons for not meeting the criteria, both in planning and project development.

Also remember that additional guidance on access management at interchanges can be found in the Oregon Highway Plan and OAR 734, Division 51.

602.4 Interchange Area Management Plans (IAMPs)

An Interchange Area Management Plan (IAMP) is an ODOT long term (20+ years) transportation facility plan that focuses on solutions that manage transportation and land use decisions over a period of time at an interchange. An IAMP is a valuable tool in protecting the long term function and operations of an interchange.

The ODOT Interchange Area Management Plan Guidelines provide additional information on IAMPs and are maintained by the Planning Unit of ODOT's Policy, Data, and Analysis Division. They are Facility Plans and as such require approval from the ODOT Chief Engineer or designated representative. Completed IAMPs are adopted by the Oregon Transportation Commission and become amendments to the Oregon Highway Plan.

IAMPs involve many local and state interested parties. The purpose of an IAMP includes the following objectives:

1. Protect the state and local investment in major facilities;
2. Establish the desired function of interchanges;

DRAFT

3. Protect the function of interchanges by maximizing the capacity of the interchanges for safe movement from the mainline highway facility;
4. Balance the need for efficient interstate and state travel with local use;
5. Preserve and improve safety of existing interchanges;
6. Provide safe and efficient operation between connecting roadways;
7. Adequately protect interchanges from unintended and unexpected development while accommodating planned community development;
8. Manage the existing interchange capacity and new capacity provided through improved interchange improvements;
9. Establish how future land use and transportation decisions will be coordinated in interchange areas between ODOT and the local governments;
10. Minimize impacts to farm and forest lands and other resource lands around rural interchanges in accordance with adopted Statewide Planning Goals;

602.5 Traffic Studies

Appropriate levels of traffic analysis are necessary for decision making and design on interchanges. This is the case regardless of the type of work (new construction or upgrading/modifying existing facilities). Traffic studies should be requested as early in the development of the design as possible, and the appropriate level of analysis detail determined at that time. Typical requests for analysis include peak hour volumes, turning movements, capacity (Volume/Capacity ratios), storage lengths and levels of service. Analysis for weaving sections, storage lengths, and spacing should also be done as needed. **Analysis shall be considered on the basis of a 20-year design life after construction of the project.** There are also situations where sensitivity analysis is needed. An example of this is estimating when traffic volumes or V/C ratios are expected to reach certain levels. This information helps to inform planning and future facility needs, which in turn can also inform current project efforts. Providing flexibility for future needs is always desirable.

602.6 Design Reviews and Approvals

Prior to the location and design stage, ODOT and FHWA approval must be obtained for the reconstruction, reconfiguration, adding an interchange, or adding new access points to an existing interchange on the Interstate system. Depending on the level of interchange detail, FHWA approval is obtained at the Division Office for new or revised access on the Interstate System, except for Freeway to Freeway and partial interchanges, which require consultation with FHWA Headquarters staff in Washington D.C. The approval procedures are submitted to

DRAFT

and processed through the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. Justification for new or modified access is based on a number of factors, including roadway system analysis, traffic studies, interchange spacing, cost/benefit ratio, etc. The HDM and following documents provide the basis of interchange planning and design process:

- AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018"
- AASHTO "A Policy on Design Standards-Interstate System - 2016"
- FHWA ~~Policy Statement on Additional Interchanges to the~~ Interstate System ~~– May 22, 2017 Revision~~Access– 23 CFR 624 (Part 624)
- The "Oregon Highway Plan - 1999" ("OHP"), plus amendments.
- Oregon Administrative Rules (OAR) Chapter 734, Division 51.

New or modified interchanges on non-Interstate facilities do not require FHWA approval. These proposals do require coordination between Region Technical Center design staff and ETSB Roadway Engineering Section Interchange Engineers. The same fundamental principles apply as in evaluation of Interstate access.

602.6.1 Standard Interchange Layout Sheets

The proposed interchange design (new or modified) may be prepared on the Standard Interchange Layout Sheet to serve as the documentation of basic design features for the interchange. Draft copies are submitted to the Interchange Engineers in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section, Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (or Region Traffic), and the Bridge Engineering Section for review. The Standard Interchange Layout Sheet, when developed, is normally developed by the Design Acceptance stage of project development, at least in draft form. Guidelines for preparation of the Standard Interchange Layout Sheet are available from the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section Interchange Engineers.

Section 603 Guiding Principles for Interchange Planning and Design

603.1 Route Continuity

The concept of Route Continuity refers to providing a clear directional path along the entire length of a designated route on the principal highway mainline. *Through drivers, especially those not familiar with a route, should be provided with a continuous through path on which it is not necessary to change lanes to continue on that route.* Applying this principle simplifies the driving task

because it reduces lane changes and allows for simpler signing. It makes navigating unfamiliar routes easier and reduces the number of tasks drivers need to deal with at any given time. Operationally, fewer lane changes often helps to reduce congestion on the main route.

Route continuity applies to entire systems of roadways, but interchange (or series of interchanges) design features are used to provide for it. A practical aspect of route continuity is that interchange configurations and designs should favor the through route instead of heavy volume connections. Heavier movements can be accommodated with more generous geometry, more direct connections and auxiliary lanes. The net result may be that for an interchange to provide good route continuity more grade separating structures are needed. The effects of poor route continuity are more pronounced when a route goes through an urban area or on a bypass, but they still apply in other contexts.

Some locations have overlapping routes on a single roadway. In some situations, this feature is relatively simple (a US route that overlaps with an Interstate in a rural area, e.g.). In urban areas the issues are usually more complicated. Signing is more complex and weaving sections are needed in many cases. It is important to establish relative priority of the Routes (Interstate, US, State Route, e.g.). The priority Route should be given primary consideration in design (such as I-84/US 395 between Exits 188 and 209). ***When the relative priorities are essentially equal, the heavier volume route may be given design priority.*** This may not always be the case, such as two Interstates where one is a through Route and the other is a spur or looping Route (such as I-5 and I-205 or I-405). ***The primary Interstate Route should have priority in that case.*** Not all existing facilities are configured in line with this guidance - it may be infeasible in some situations.

Appropriate levels of traffic analysis, evaluation of constructability, and identifying other major constraints are needed to determine if operational/safety/incident response issues are problematic enough to warrant correction.

AASHTO's "*A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets -2018*", Section 10.9.5.5, pages 10-83 to 10-85 has a more detailed discussion of Route Continuity and Overlapping Routes, and includes illustrative examples.

603.2 Basic Number of Lanes

A basic lane is simply a through travel lane that continues for a specified distance along a highway route. For example, an **Interstate route has a minimum of four basic lanes (two in each direction) over its entire length.** The basic number of lanes is maintained over a significant length of the route based on the capacity needs of that section. A typical situation where the number of basic lanes varies is a through route that traverses a major urban area. Basic lanes are added and terminated at locations where volumes and system considerations make it appropriate. Localized variations in traffic volume, such as weaving areas between interchanges, do not change the basic number of lanes. These variations are handled by

introducing auxiliary lanes, or in some cases Collector-Distributor roadways. (See 603.6 for discussion).

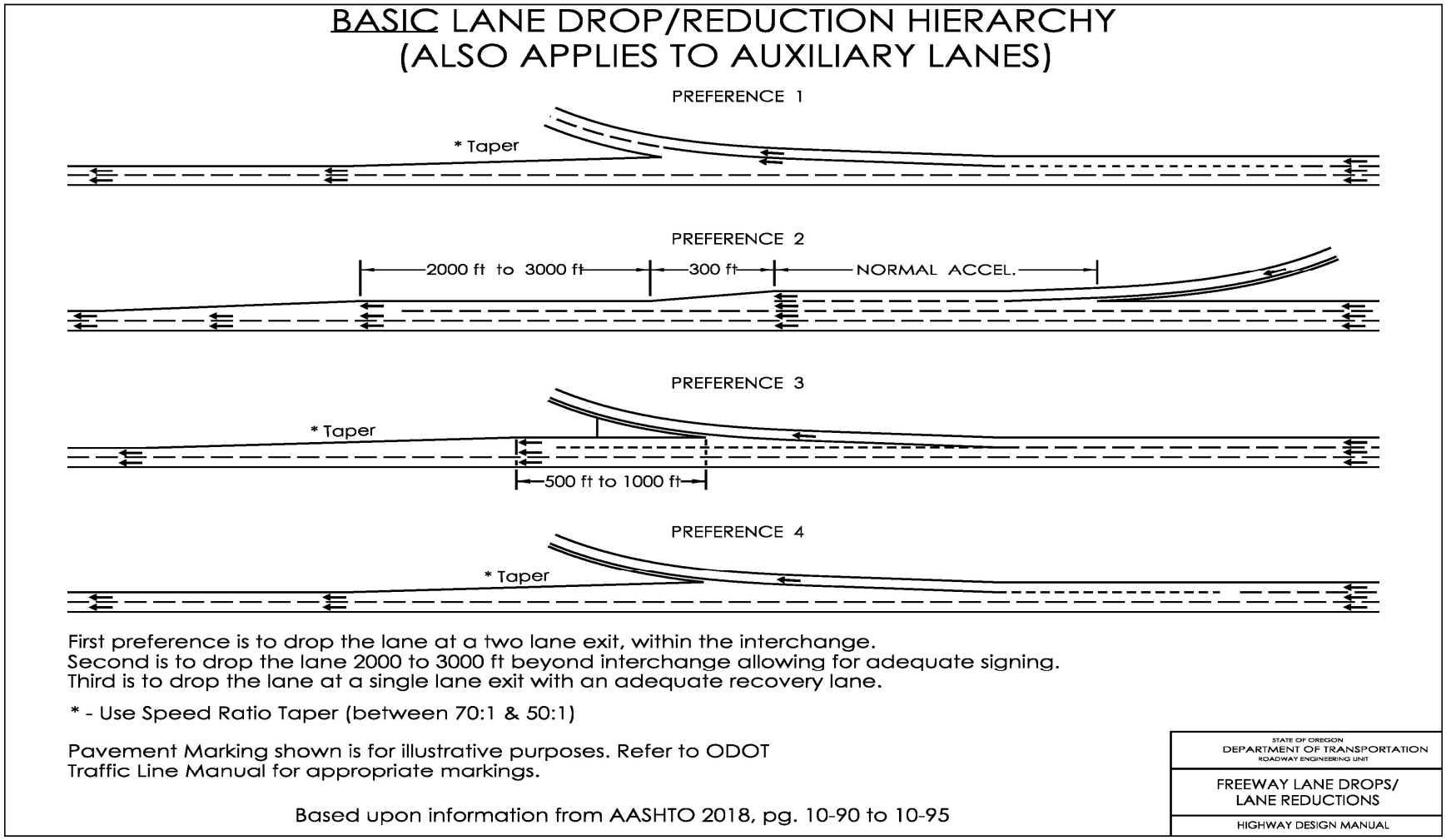
It is very important in systems planning to identify the appropriate number of basic lanes and their logical termini. AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018", pages 10-86 and 10-87, discusses the concept of Basic Number of Lanes and includes a schematic (Figure 10-51) that illustrates the idea clearly. This concept is closely associated with the principles of Route Continuity and Lane Balance.

The freeway systems in Oregon were mostly planned and built between the late 1950s and early 1970s. Some of these concepts were not well defined in that era. Many of the facilities were built with minimal (or no) room allowed for future improvements. Decisions to invest in major improvements or to add capacity are not just engineering choices. The impact to the natural and man-made environment, budgets, future planning objectives, and the communities nearby generally require compromises from "ideal" solutions. While it may not be feasible to provide all the exact guidance around Route Continuity, Lane Balance, and the Basic Number of Lanes, designers need to seek every opportunity to provide for future flexibility with the updated infrastructure.

When basic through lanes are suddenly added or dropped on a facility in an unexpected manner, it often leads to confusion for users – especially those who are unfamiliar with the area. Adding a basic lane is usually not as problematic – it typically happens at major entrance ramps. Lane drops should be clearly visible to approaching users, preferably on flat horizontal alignment and grade. They should occur at places that make sense to drivers and are as free as possible from other features that place demands on drivers' attention. *Reductions in the basic number of lanes should only be done when overall traffic demand on the route drops significantly.* Examples of this include the outer edge of a major metro area, a major system interchange, or a series of service exits that remove enough demand so that the basic lane is no longer necessary. Figure 600-1 shows, in order of preference, typical configurations for dropping a basic lane.

DRAFT

Figure 600-1: Freeway Lane Reductions



603.3 Lane Balance

To realize efficient traffic operation through an interchange, there should be a balance in the number of traffic lanes on the highway and ramps. Design traffic volumes and capacity analysis determine the number of lanes to be used on the highway and on the ramps, but the number of lanes for some sections should be increased to ease operation from one roadway to another. See AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018", pages: 10-87 to 10-90 for additional information regarding Lane Balance. Several figures are provided that illustrate the concept. Lane balance should be checked after the minimum number is determined for each roadway on the basis of the following principles:

- ***The number of lanes beyond the merging of two traffic streams should not be less than the sum of all traffic lanes on the merging roadways minus one but may be equal to the sum of all traffic lanes on the merging roadways.***
- ***For exits, the number of approach lanes on the highway should be equal to the number of lanes on the highway beyond the exit plus the number of lanes on the exit, minus one.***
- For entrance ramps bringing two lanes of traffic onto a highway, the road beyond the ramp entrance should be at least one lane wider than the road approaching the entrance. These types of entrances are often where an added basic lane begins, but not always. **The parallel design for two lane entrance ramps shall be used (see Figure 600-16 for details) in any case. Any exception from this standard requires approval by the State Roadway Engineer.** ODOT operational experience with tapered (aka "instant on") entrance connections has not been positive, particularly with two lane ramps. Exceptions are strongly discouraged.

603.4 Weaving Sections

Weaving sections occur when entrance ramps are closely followed by exit ramps, and an auxiliary lane is utilized. Such areas present special design problems due to the concentrated lane changing maneuvers of merging and diverging traffic. The development of the design involves the following factors: desired mobility standard; length; number of lanes; traffic volumes; weaving and non-weaving vehicles; and average speed. Auxiliary lane lengths generally will be below access management spacing standards and may require a deviation. Design guidance may be obtained from AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018", ODOT Analysis Procedures Manual and from the Highway Capacity Manual.

Consult with the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit and Region Traffic staff for data and direction on the design of each weaving section and the location of consecutive entrance and exit ramps.

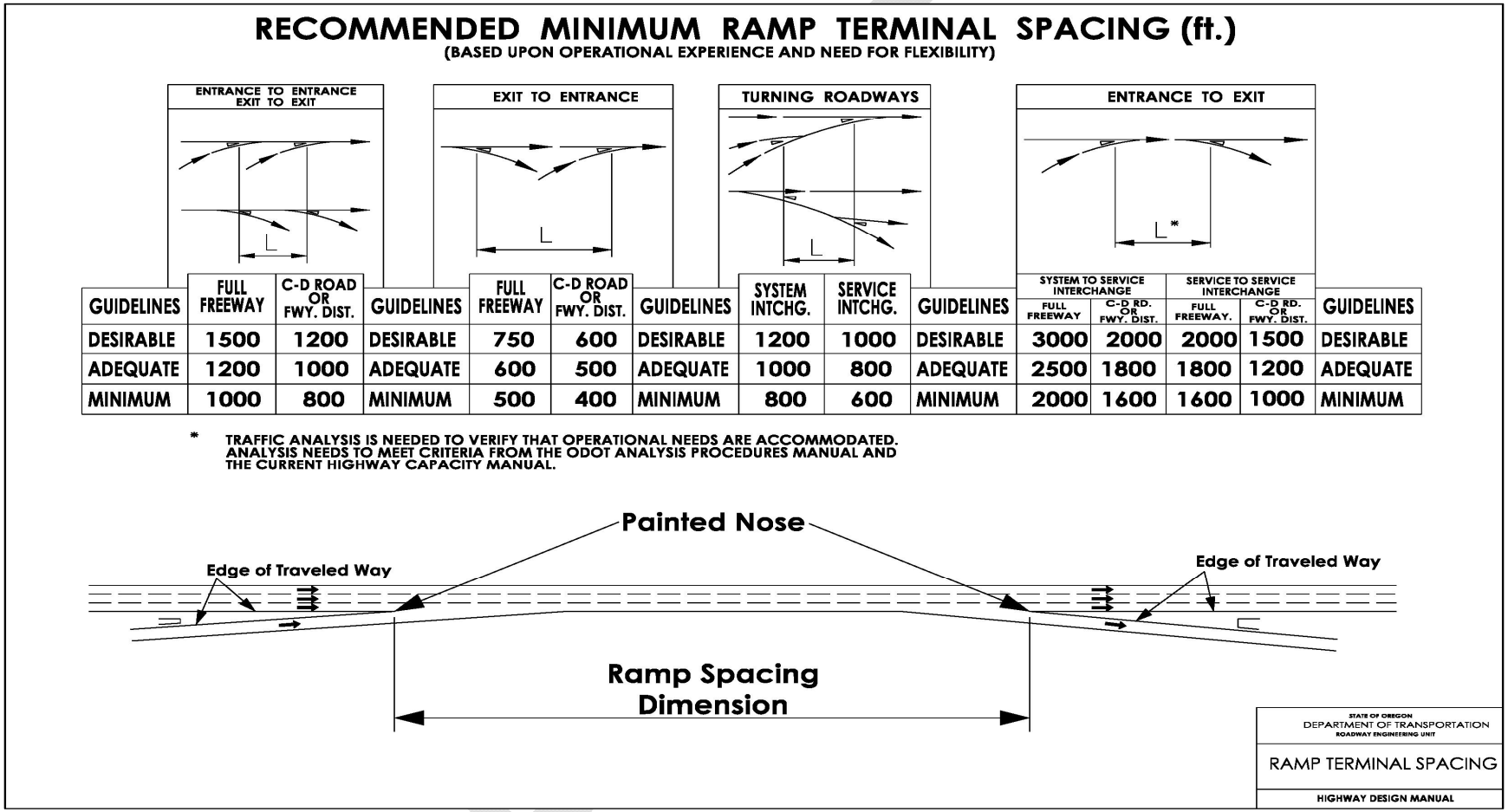
As a preliminary guide, the minimum distance between a freeway entrance and exit ramp at separate interchanges is one mile for urban freeways and two miles for rural freeway (see OAR 734, Division 51 guidelines). **Provide a minimum distance between successive freeway entrance and exit ramp terminals of 1000 feet. Provide a minimum distance for a single exit followed by a secondary exit or split of 800 feet. See Figure 600-2 for minimum spacing distances, for additional details and other ramp terminal configurations. Ramp spacing dimension is measured from painted nose to painted nose. Design exceptions from the minimum standard spacing must be obtained from the State Roadway Engineer.**

Where the distance between an entrance terminal and an exit terminal is 2500 feet or less, the interim space generally becomes a weaving section and must be analyzed for required length and design by the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit, Regional Traffic staff, or others designated to do the appropriate analysis. *Where the distance is 1500 feet or less, an auxiliary lane may be introduced.*

Collector-Distributor roads can also be used to reduce traffic friction from multiple entrance and exit connections on the same side of the freeway, thereby permitting more uniform speeds and smoother operations on the through traffic lanes. More guidance on Collector-Distributor roads is provided in Section 603.6.

DRAFT

Figure 600-2: Minimum Ramp Terminal Spacing



603.5 Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are introduced adjacent to through lanes for limited distances for specific operational or capacity reasons. They are used to provide lane balance, facilitate weaving maneuvers, and help smooth out flow in through lanes. A typical application is to provide an added lane on the mainline between closely spaced interchanges.

Auxiliary lanes have the same width as through lanes. Shoulders adjacent to auxiliary lanes should be the same width as the remainder of the corridor (typically 10 feet or more), **with a minimum width of eight feet (plus 2 feet if longitudinal barrier is present). Auxiliary lane drops at exits shall be configured according to the details in Figure 600-14.**

603.6 Collector-Distributor (C-D) Roads

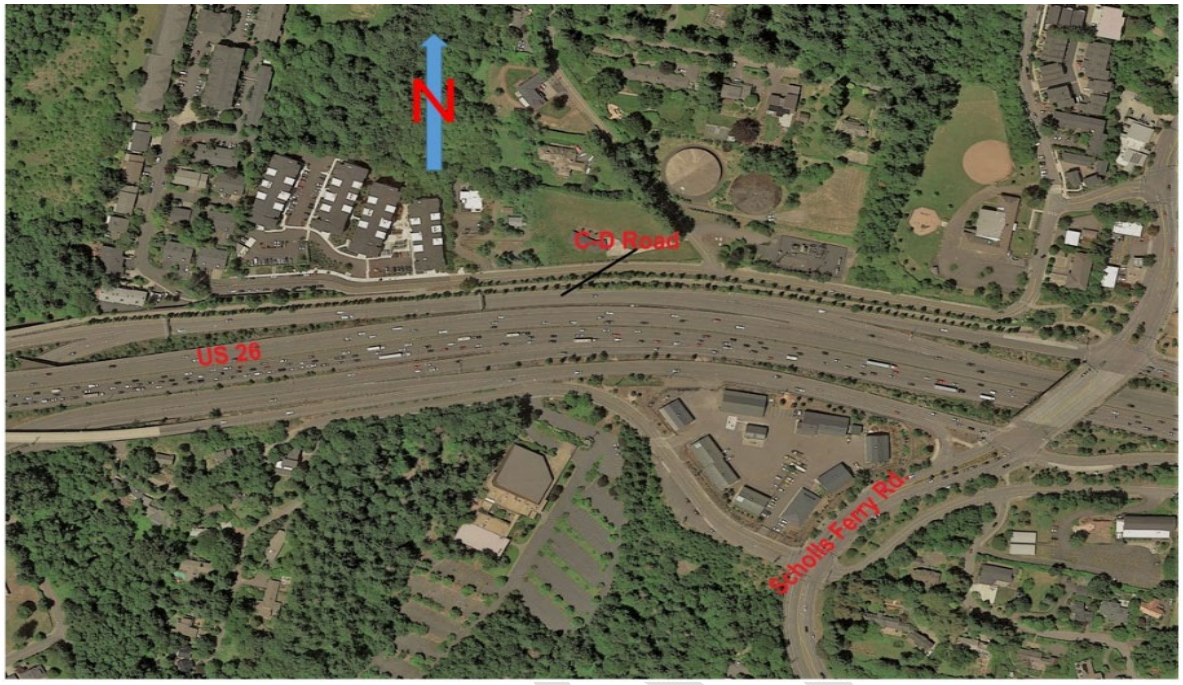
C-D roads are introduced to freeway systems to eliminate weaving directly on mainline through lanes. They are physically separated from the through roadway and connect to it by way of slip ramps. They may be provided within a single interchange, between two adjacent interchanges, or even continuously between several interchanges of a freeway segment. Ramp connections occur on the C-D road, which then conveys traffic to the mainline lanes.

C-D roads are one-way facilities similar to frontage roads except that access to abutting property is not permitted. ***The design speed of the C-D can be less than the through roadway, although it's preferred to keep that differential to no more than 10 mph.*** They may have single lane or more commonly, multi-lane configurations. **Typical cross sections for C-D roads use the ODOT standard ramp dimensions as shown in Figure 600-32.** The outer separation between edges of travelled way should be a minimum of 20 feet (preferably 30 feet) with an appropriate barrier separating the two roadways. Slip ramp connections to or from the through lanes are configured the same as any other exit or entrance ramp.

Figure 600-3 shows a C-D road system on a freeway in Portland. A two lane exit from the freeway forms the backbone, which also serves as a directional connection to an urban arterial highway. Local access ramps enter and leave from the C-D road rather than the freeway mainline.

DRAFT

Figure 600-3: Collector Distributor System (US 26 Sylvan Interchange - Portland)



603.7 Grade Separation Structure Considerations

In all cases, provide vertical clearance on interchange structures in accordance with Part 300 guidelines. Along with the selection of interchange form, the grade separation structure should consider vertical clearance requirements and mobility concerns.

As interchange structure options are explored (both with existing and new bridges), vertical clearance requirements for the interchange and the corridor, along with alternate "up and over" options, should be considered. Some interchange forms do not provide for direct "up and over" movement where larger oversized freight vehicles can exit the freeway and then return to the freeway at the same interchange (usually due to the oversized load being impacted by the existing interchange structure vertical clearance). They also need to provide for adequate sight lines. Particularly at depressed interchanges, structure elements can impair sight lines for traffic stopped at ramps. The appropriate sight lines to consider for design are usually based on Stopping Sight Distance, (SSD) or Intersection Sight Distance (ISD). The roadway context (urban or rural, higher or lower speed), type of intersection traffic control and geometry at the ramp intersections all need to be considered when determining which sight distance case to apply. Skewed ramp intersections and abrupt vertical curves can make it difficult to achieve sight distance goals. Shoulder widening or flaring the corners of structures may be needed to achieve SSD, so early coordination with structural designers is important. Use the "C" Table on Figure 600-23 as a guide for minimum requirements.

Although it is often appropriate to provide Intersection Sight Distance (ISD) at the intersections, this is sometimes difficult to achieve on existing facilities. When the ramp intersection is stop controlled, using ISD is the most appropriate treatment. Designers should refer to "*A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018*"- Sections 3.2 and 9.5 for guidance on selecting the most appropriate sight distance case to use. Designers should also consider using ISD at signal or roundabout controlled intersections. **SSD for the design speed of the crossroad is the minimum to be provided in all cases.**

Structure layout needs to consider future needs for both the through road and the crossroad. This normally means two things. First, the clear opening underneath the structure needs to accommodate the "ultimate" typical section envisioned for the facility (future lane additions, e.g.). Secondly, grades on the structure should also allow for future widening without restricting vertical clearance. It is also important to check sight lines on long flyover and viaduct structures. The combination of horizontal and vertical curvature and superelevation transitions can sometimes result in sight line limitations. Bridge rails can also limit sight lines. Geometric designers need to coordinate with structure designers to arrive at appropriate solutions, since it's normally impractical to widen these structures to allow for added sight distance.

Refer to AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018" - Chapter 10 for detailed discussion on grade separation design.

Section 604 Interchange Types and Forms

Regardless of the type of facility, it is very important that the basic form of the interchanges fits the basic function it is expected to perform. Inappropriate applications can lead to early obsolescence and safety issues.

There are two basic types of interchanges – "System" and "Service". System interchanges connect two or more freeways. The focus is on providing free flow and higher speed connections to facilitate mobility. System interchange examples in Oregon include I-5/I-205 in Tualatin, I-84/I-82 near Hermiston, and I-5/I-105/OR 126 in Eugene-Springfield. Service interchanges connect freeways (or other expressways) to local facilities. Mobility is also an important function of service interchanges, but it needs to be balanced with the need to get access to the surrounding area and the rest of the local roadway network. The majority of ODOT interchanges are service types.

The selection of interchange form should take into account vertical clearance requirements and mobility concerns. Some interchange forms do not provide for a direct "up and over" movement where larger oversized freight vehicles can exit the freeway and then return to the freeway at the same interchange (usually due to the oversized load being impacted by the existing vertical clearance at the interchange structure). As interchange options are explored,

vertical clearance requirements for the interchange and the corridor, along with alternate "up and over" options, should be considered.

A preliminary layout of guide signing is a very useful tool when comparing interchange alternatives. The sign plan may help to identify potential confusion points for drivers navigating the facility and helps to show where design features might cause operational problems. A sign concept should be developed for each alternative considered during early stages of design.

Figure 600-4 illustrates basic system interchange forms. System interchanges are often complex and need to be customized to local conditions. Because of this, they may not fit exactly to the basic forms shown. ODOT has relatively few system interchanges on its facilities, and the majority of them are in the Portland Metro area.

Figure 600-5 illustrates basic service interchange forms. They tend to be much simpler in configuration. With very few exceptions, service interchanges provide for all moves to and from the main facility. Figure 600-6 shows compact service forms. ODOT has not used the compact forms extensively, but they are considered proven concepts (when applied in the proper context).

In a few cases, system movements are provided within the confines of a service interchange, such as the I-5/Chemawa Rd/Salem Parkway and Canby/Charbonneau/Wilsonville-Hubbard Highway interchanges. A standard diamond interchange is "superimposed" over a directional Y (See Figure 600-7). For these types, additional care must be taken with respect to spacing between consecutive ramps, lane balance, guide signing, the length of speed change lanes, and providing for driver expectations. Each of these areas are discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

A few non-freeway interchange forms are shown in Figure 600-8. These types of solutions are not appropriate for Interstates or other freeways.

Figure 600-9 shows interchange forms for specialized situations. ODOT has used the Trumpet form in a few locations. It is suitable for connecting two highways as a low level system interchange, and as a service type. The Three-Level diamond is appropriate for connecting two limited access facilities, using a third level to handle turning movements through at-grade intersections, completely separate from thru moves. It too can serve as a low level system type connection. It may be adaptable in non-freeway situations where adequate access control is provided on both facilities. ODOT has not used this form, but it is used in several midwestern states and in Texas.

Partial interchanges (1/2 diamond or "Y") have sometimes been used in less developed areas to connect local roads or bypassed routes that have no access to other highways. These are limited applications, and usually consist of a pair of interchanges. Examples include I-84 Exits 313/317 (Encina/Pleasant Valley) in Region 5, and I-5 Exits 76A & 76B (Wolf Creek) in Region 3. Partial interchanges tend to violate driver expectations, and thus can lead to operational and safety

problems, especially for unfamiliar users. Drivers using service interchanges expect to be able to exit and enter the highway at the same location. FHWA policy strongly discourages the use of partial interchanges on the Interstate system.

Less than "full movement" interchanges may be considered on a case-by-case basis for applications requiring special access for managed lanes (e.g., Transit, HOV or HOT lanes) or major Park and Ride Lots. The same logic applies to non-Interstate facilities. Contact the ODOT Interchange Engineer for guidance.

Each situation and context have unique characteristics, so it is not possible to say which interchange form is most appropriate for all situations. In general, it is best to avoid using configurations that require heavy left turn demands to go through standard signalized intersections. The exceptions to this are the Single Point and Diverging Diamond forms, where the left turns are handled in a way that works better with through traffic. Also, it is good practice to use the simplest interchange form that will meet expected demands. Driver expectancy is key – drivers should be presented with clear choices and the fewest number of decisions necessary to navigate the interchange (or series of interchanges). Details for Single Point intersection layout are found in Figure 600-23 and Figure 600-24.

Full cloverleaf interchanges have operational issues that make their use problematic, even when Collector-Distributor (C-D) roads are used. The key problem is that loop ramps on the same side of the through roadway have significant safety and operational problems. Loop ramps generally have tight curvature (25 – 30 mph). The speed differentials between entering and exiting traffic combined with relatively short weaving/speed change lanes are a serious safety concern. C-D roads (discussed in detail in 603.6) can provide some limited benefits by removing the weaving and speed change maneuvers from the mainline. Traffic congestion on the C-D facility can also reach levels where backups onto freeway mainlines occur – thus rendering the C-D facility obsolete. These issues make it highly preferable to use other interchange forms**; ODOT will not approve the use of full or ¾ cloverleafs in any context.**

Partial Cloverleafs with loops in opposite quadrants are considered acceptable, although exit loop configurations have additional issues. Loop ramps of necessity are designed with sharper curves and require longer speed change lanes. Exit loops on the far side of a crossroad can have sight lines obscured by fills, or in the case of depressed interchanges, the mainline profile. Areas prone to regular freezing conditions may see more issues with vehicles sliding off loop ramps. **Transitions to exit loops on downgrades require longer spirals and the loop itself needs to have a minimum radius of 191′ (30° curve).** The area beyond the exit loop gore needs to be kept as free of obstructions as possible and should be contour graded.

There are cases where loop ramps on the same side of the crossroad work adequately. They are not configured as free-flowing ramps, but rather as "T" intersections in a Folded Diamond configuration. Figure 600-10 depicts I-84 Exit 261 (OR 82 Wallowa Lake Hwy.) in La Grande; a good example of the concept.

DRAFT

Figure 600-4: Examples of System Interchange Forms

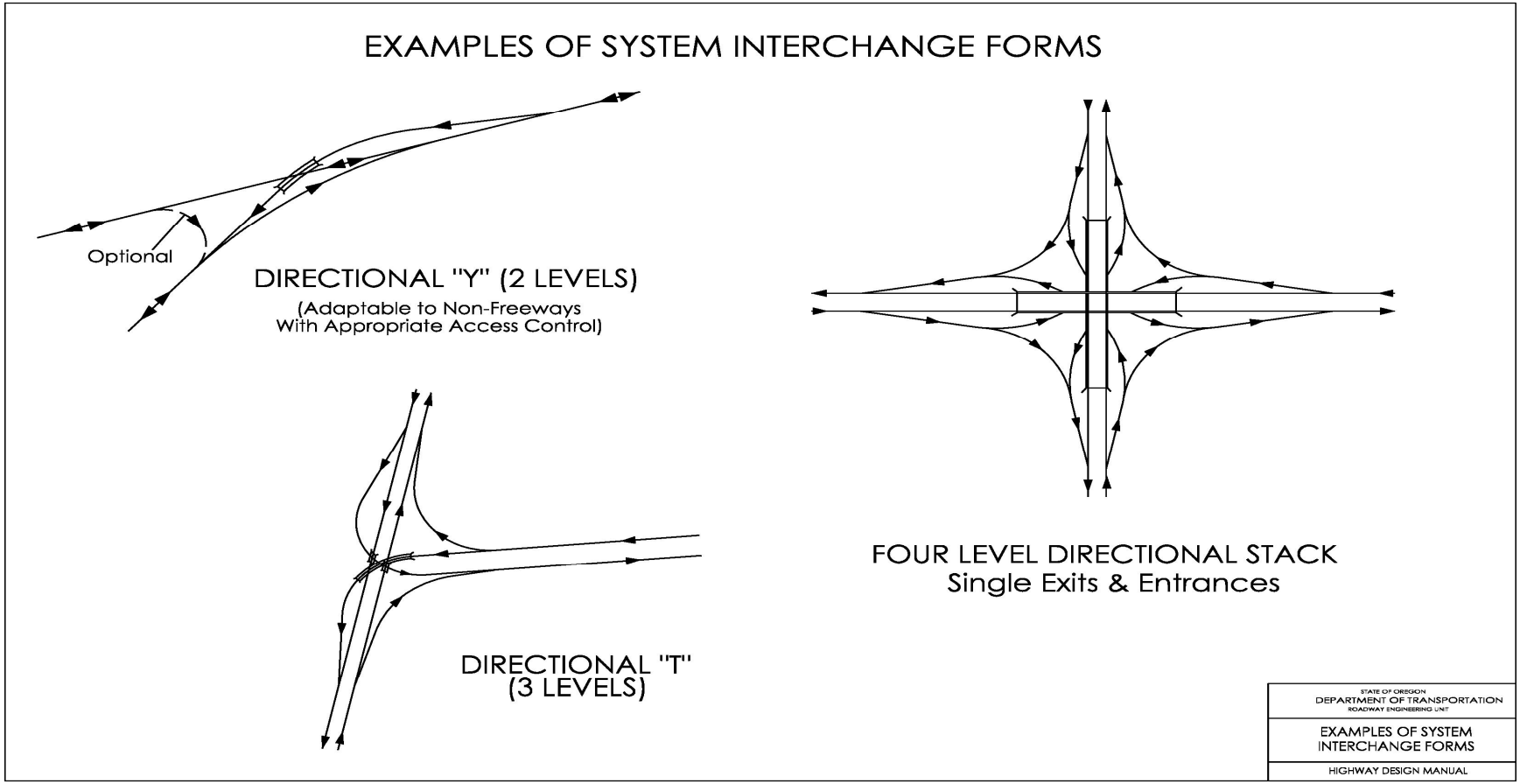


Figure 600-5: Common Service Interchange Forms

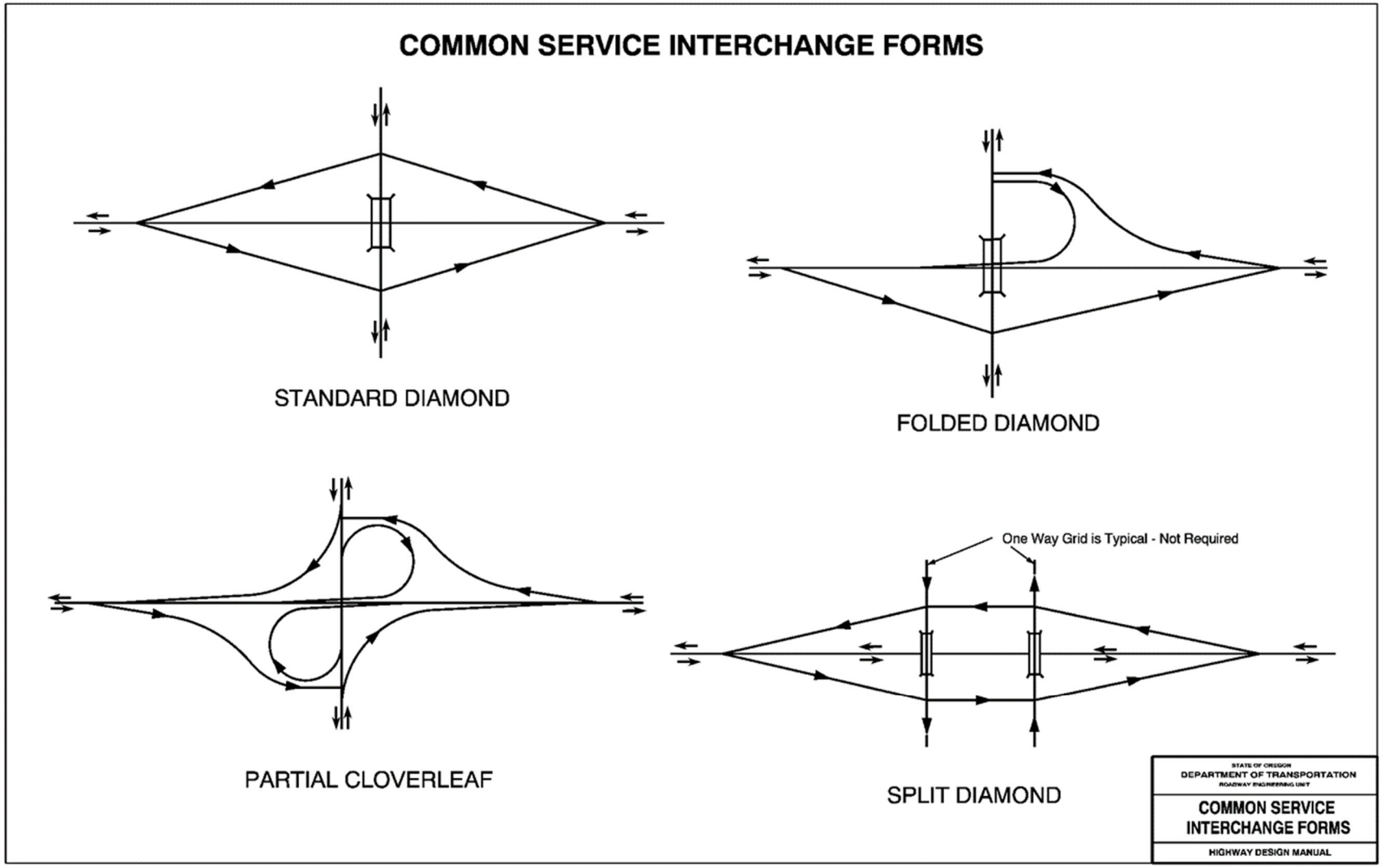


Figure 600-6: Examples of Compact Diamond Interchange Forms

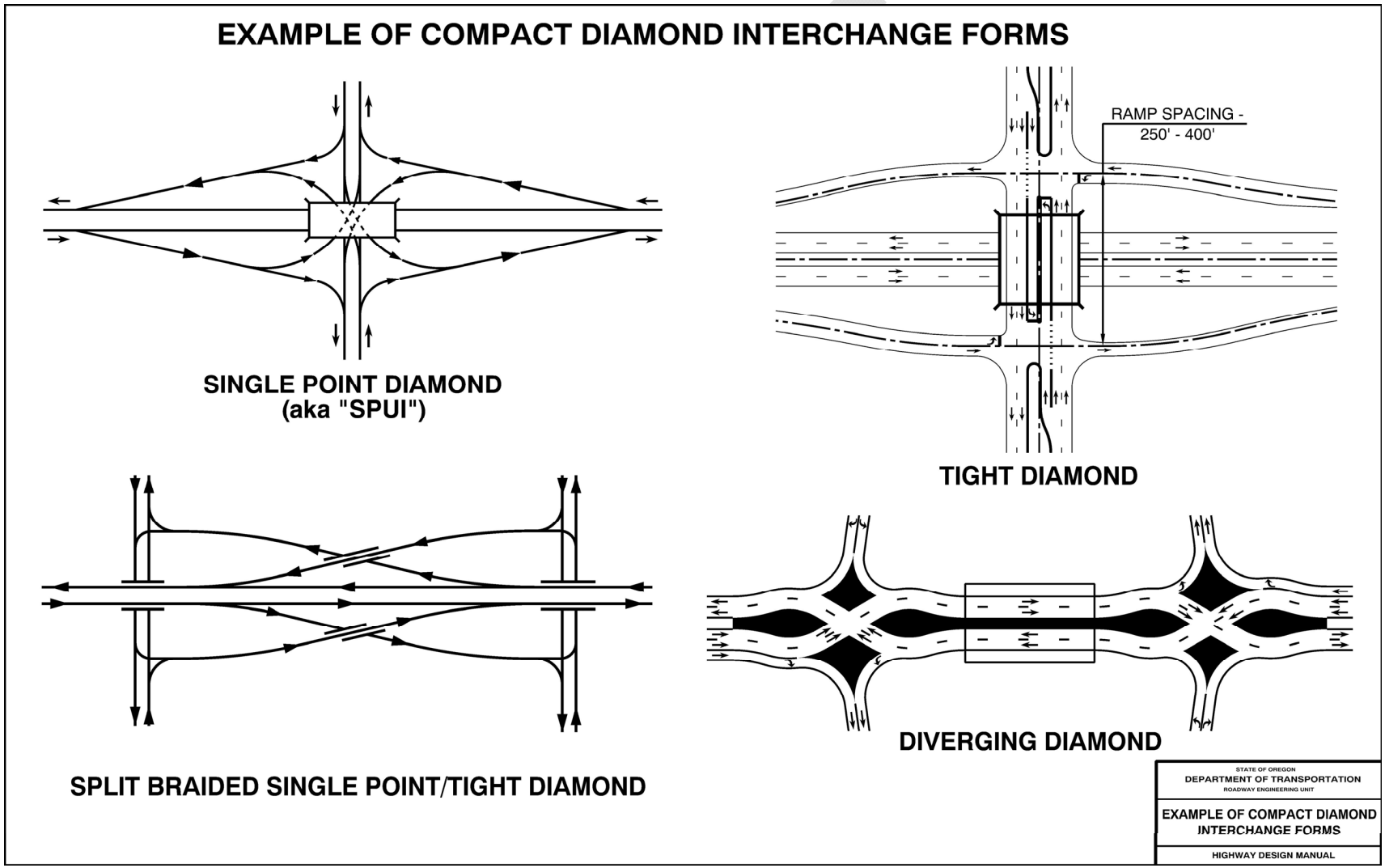


Figure 600-7: Superimposed Interchange in Keizer, OR (I-5 Exit 260)



Figure 600-8: Non-Freeway Interchange Forms

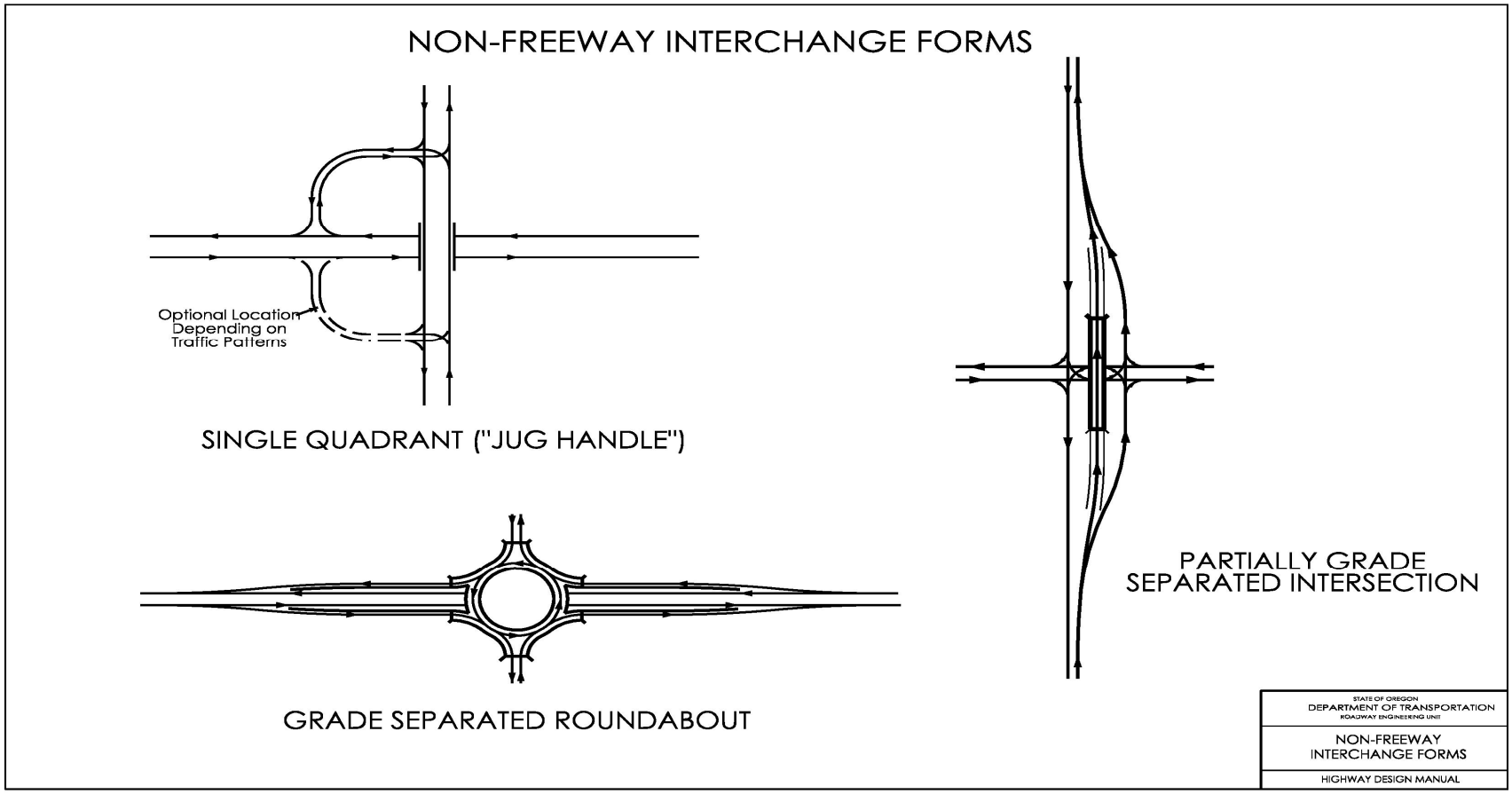


Figure 600-9: Examples of Specialized Interchange Forms

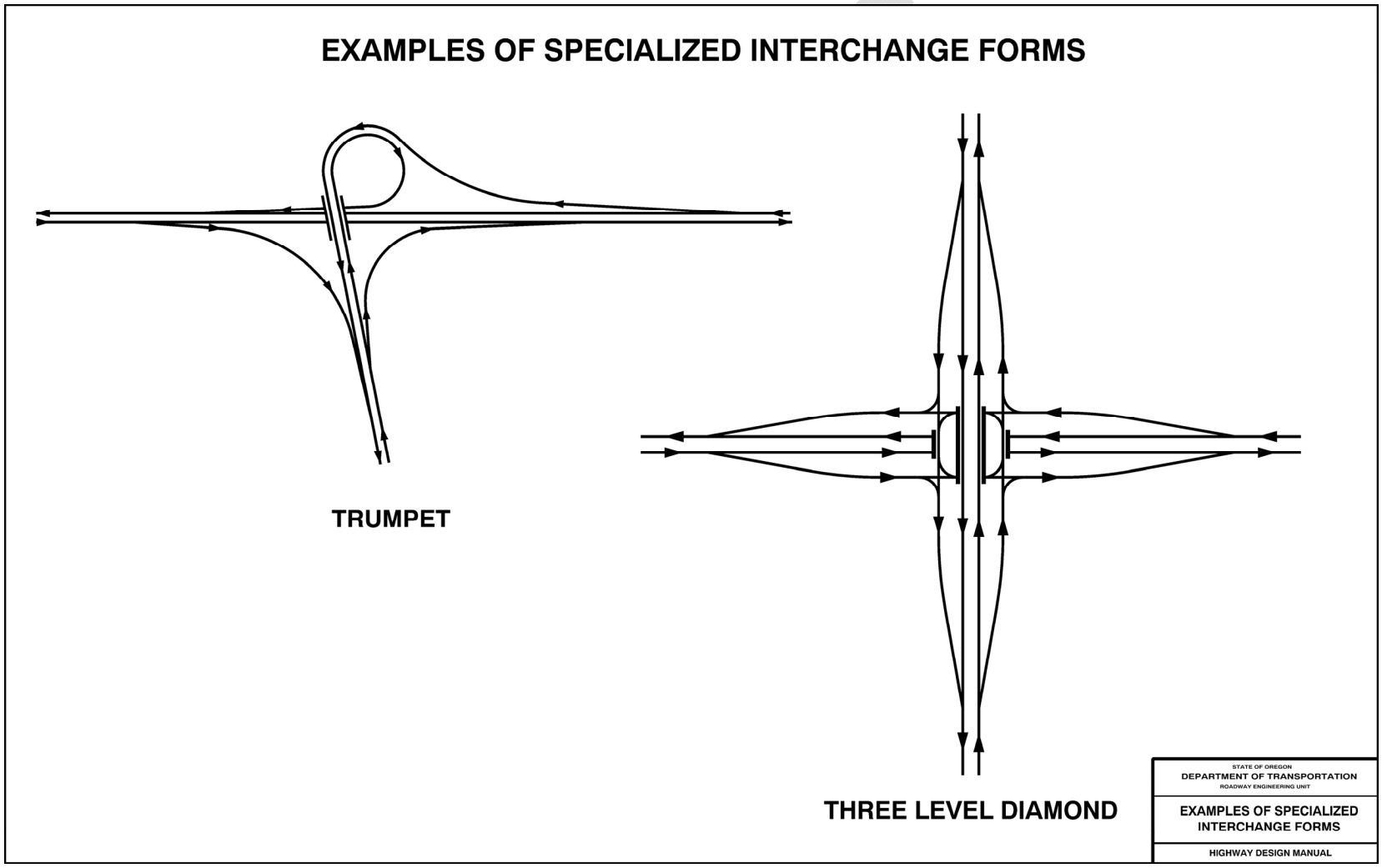


Figure 600-10: I-84 Exit 261 in La Grande



Several features and issues are common to all types of interchanges. These items are important to consider in all contexts. New or Existing facilities, Freeway or Non-Freeway, Urban, Rural or Transitional Areas - these features must be evaluated for all projects.

Common elements include:

1. Clear Sight Lines (vertical & horizontal)
2. Interchange Form – appropriate for traffic types and patterns
3. Appropriate Horizontal/Vertical Geometry
4. Adequate Speed Change Lanes
5. Driver Expectancy/Positive Guidance – adequate perception/reaction distances for typical maneuvers – all exits/entrances to the right of through traffic
6. Design Vehicle Offtracking
7. Adequate Storage for Vehicle Queues
8. Bike, Pedestrian and Transit Needs (accessibility features under the ADA for site arrival and destinations points)
9. Adequate Accommodation for Signing
10. Long Range Planning Vision for the Interchange – including the crossroad facility
11. Adaptability/Flexibility for Changing Needs Over Time

"Ideal" designs are typically not possible, especially in retrofit situations and in fully developed areas. In retrofit situations evaluating deficiencies and making tradeoffs is necessary. Designers must still consider the key features and how to make safety and operational improvements whenever possible. Tools such as the Highway Safety Manual, Interactive Highway Safety Design Model (IHSDM) and FHWA's Interchange Safety Analysis Tool – Enhanced (ISAT-E) are available to help in evaluations. ODOT Interchange Engineer and the State Traffic Safety Engineer are available to help in using tools and providing guidance on tradeoff situations.

Section 605 Interchange Geometric Design

605.1 Crossroad Design

Parts 200, 300, 800, and 900, discuss typical section and other design elements for roadways. Crossroad design, including nearby intersections, is an integral part of the overall interchange, regardless of whose jurisdiction the road falls under. The local context for the crossroad must also be considered during design and planning efforts. Deficient crossroads often create safety and operational issues, such as vehicle queues extending back to freeway thru lanes on exit

DRAFT

ramps. In developed areas, crossroad characteristics are largely set, and the changes need to maintain the interchange functions will require tradeoffs in the design. New interchange layouts generally have more flexibility, but need to provide good profiles, intersection design, and appropriate access management. Retrofit designs, especially in developed areas, need to carefully consider identified design and operational issues and make appropriate accommodation. In all contexts, essential information for crossroad design includes traffic volumes and queue lengths, crash history and analysis, clearly defined project goals, and clear understanding (agreed to by appropriate parties) of the crossroad context.

605.2 Interchange Ramp Design

An interchange ramp is a connecting roadway that provides for movement between grade separated roadways as part of an interchange. Well planned and designed ramps are important to the proper functioning of interchanges, which in turn are a key feature of well-planned and designed access controlled highways. Because interchange ramps are the transition roadway between high speed, free flowing traffic and the local road system, they need to accommodate the various things drivers are dealing with at that point. That functional transition needs to guide design decisions in all contexts. Designs that require drivers to deal with too much information or maneuvering in a short time span will often have operational and safety problems. Another significant problem is queuing on interchange exit ramps, sometimes extending to the mainline. Queue length is a function of interchange ramp intersection operations, in turn a function of crossroad operations. The point to remember is that interchanges work as a system, and each part of that system that struggles to function will create issues for the rest of the system.

Interchange ramps consist of three discrete elements and functions:

1. The Speed Change Area (including the gores).
2. The Main Transition Area (sometimes called the “Main Curve”, although it may be on tangent alignment).
3. The Terminal Area – which is in some ways an extension of the intersection with the crossroad.

Each discrete piece of the ramp has design features intended to accommodate typical things drivers are dealing with in that area. Interchange exit ramps that experience significant queuing will limit the speed change area’s ability to function well. Peak hour mainline speeds may be significantly less than off-peak speeds, so the speed change function is somewhat mitigated. The speed change on entrances is likewise altered during peak hours. Finding gaps and safely making the entry maneuver becomes more difficult; the length of the parallel portion of the interchange ramp needs to not only meet minimums but be as long as possible.

DRAFT

The Main Transition portion of the interchange ramp needs to provide for a smooth, "stepped down" driving path. This approach provides for a smooth and logical transition from freeway speeds and conditions to the situation where drivers are dealing with an at grade intersection. Stepping speeds down makes sense to users and is relatively easy to negotiate. Although stopping sight distance is the minimum criteria, every effort should be made to improve on this – decision sight distance being the goal. ***When the HDM makes reference to Design Speed on interchange ramps, it is referring to the Main Transition Area. The main transition area should have a design speed of between 50 and (preferably) 70 to 85 percent of the mainline.*** (See Figure 600-11.)

Terminal Areas should continue the "stepped down" approach for design speed (between 50 and 85 percent of the main transition curve). Refer to Figure 600-11, Figure 600-13, and Figure 600-14. Terminal curves have their own set of standard spiral lengths and superelevation rates; these are shown in Figure 600-25.

In cases where interchange ramps connect two freeways in a System Interchange, the Terminal Area is replaced with a second Speed Change Area - an exit at the leading end and entrance at the trailing end. **Two lane entrance ramps are designed according to the information in Figure 600-16.**

Oregon uses parallel type entrance ramps only. **Tapered entrances are not permitted**. **ODOT uses a tapered configuration for both single and multi-lane exits**. In certain multi-lane exit situations it is appropriate to provide an auxiliary parallel deceleration area next to the outermost through lane. An example of this is the two lane SB exit at the I-5/OR 22 (Mission St.) interchange in Salem (Exit 253).

DRAFT

Figure 600-11: Discrete Areas of Typical Ramps

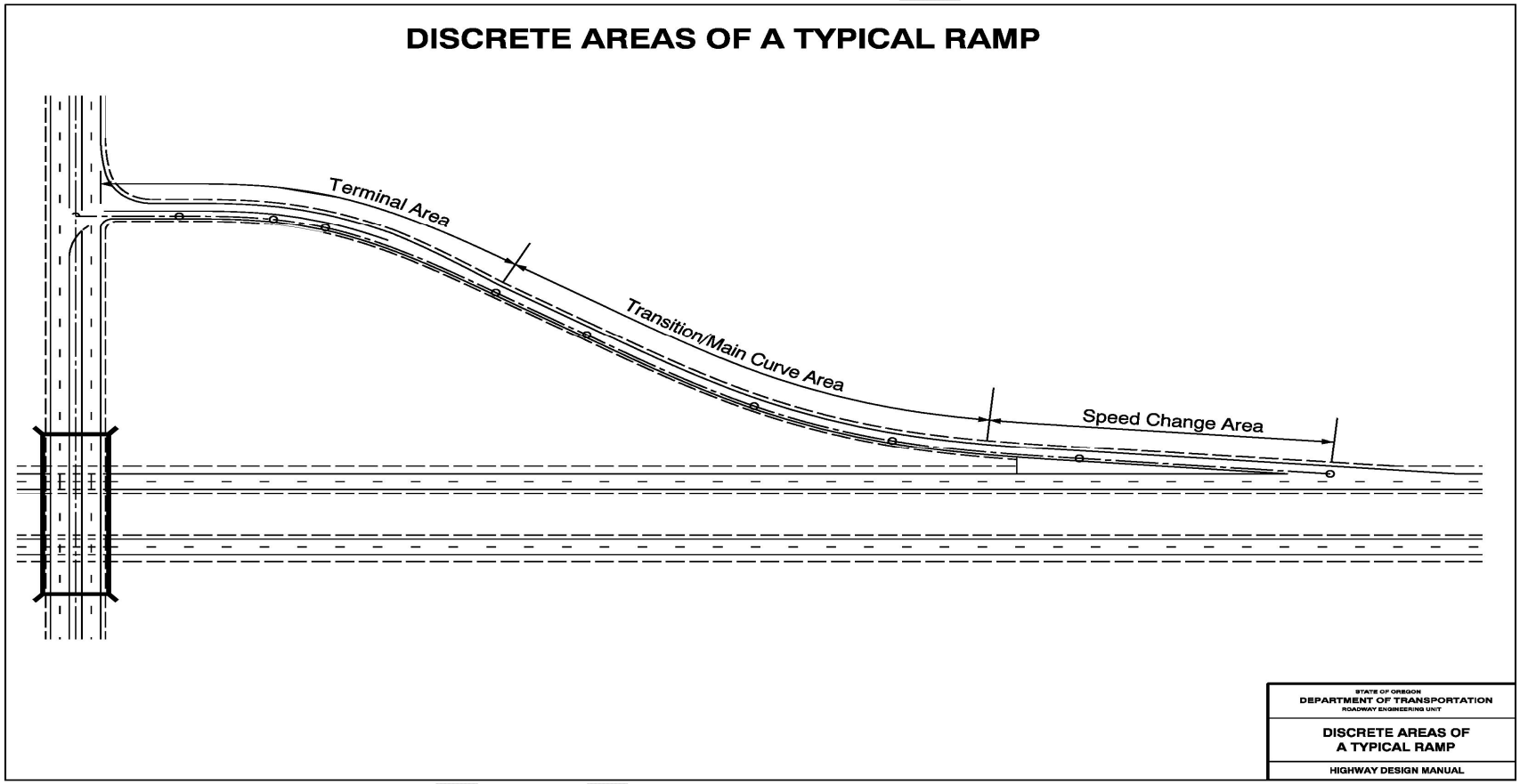


Figure 600-12 illustrates examples of different types of interchange ramps. Some types are only appropriate for non-freeway applications. Assuming adequate access control is in place, the other types can be adapted for non-freeway use as well.

Interchange ramp designs need to provide flexibility for the future. This doesn't mean over-designing, just making sure that there is flexibility to deal with changing needs. Providing additional deceleration length and at least 100' of tangent on the horizontal alignment between the main curve and the terminal curve will often help in this regard. Designing to bare minimums often leads to operational and safety issues. Another consideration is an interchange where future lanes may be added to the right. Interchange ramp gores in these situations should be developed to fit the future condition so that the interchange ramp itself would not have to be rebuilt. The interim condition will provide added speed change length.

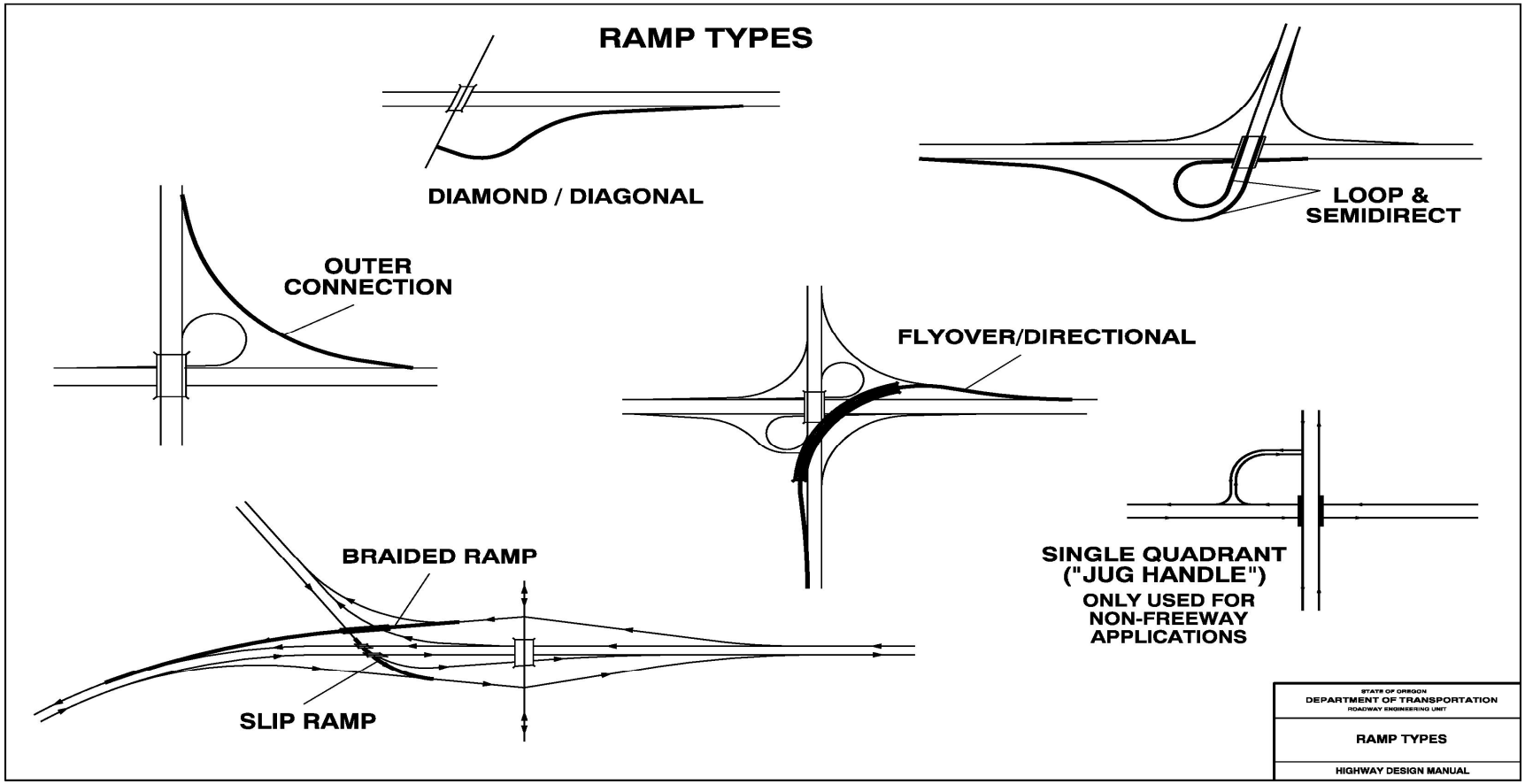
For interchange ramps, provide for adequate speed change length, sufficient storage for vehicles stopped on the ramp, suitable intersection design and control at the cross-road, sight distances, and standard geometry. Each of these elements needs to be checked to make sure they will be adequate and appropriate for expected operations. For additional information on ramp terminal intersections, see Section 605.8. Coordinate with the Interchange Engineers in ETSB Roadway Engineering Section when questions arise.

As a minimum the speed change length shall be long enough for traffic to stop before reaching the end of 95 percent queue length on the ramp. Provide for deceleration to a complete stop from mainline design speed~~.~~ when this is a controlling feature. See AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018", pages: 10-134 to 10-139 for additional information. Coordinate with signal detection locations and operations to allow vehicle queues to clear.

Interchange ramp terminal intersection design and controls have a significant impact on the safety and efficiency of the entire interchange. If interchange ramp intersections and nearby intersections are not able to manage the traffic demands at an appropriate level, it can quickly lead to queues building up on interchange exit ramps and the cross street. This can occur because of deficient geometric design or intersection controls that are inappropriate for the context. Geometric issues are normally easy to identify but sometimes difficult to correct, especially in more fully developed areas. Evaluation of the intersection controls should be done in a timely enough manner to be incorporated into project scoping efforts.

DRAFT

Figure 600-12: Ramp Types



605.3 Interchange Ramp Design Speed

Interchange ramp design speed normally varies from 50 percent (minimum) to 85 percent (desirable) of the freeway speed, except for interchange loop ramps, which are usually designed to 25 or 30 mph. Design speed applies to the interchange ramp proper and not to the terminals and speed change areas, which are relative to the speed of the highway involved. The design speed influences the horizontal and vertical curvature of the ramp, and the length of speed change lanes. Table 600-3 below can be used to determine the appropriate ramp design speed. Ramp capacity is also influenced by the design speed. (See Table 600-4).

Table 600-3: Ramp Design Speed

Highway Design Speed (mph)	Desirable Ramp Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Ramp Design Speed (mph)
50	45	25
55	45	*30
60	50	*30
65	55	*35
70	60	*35

NOTE:

* Loop Ramp Design Speed shall not be less than 25 **mph (36°, 159.15′ Radius). When a loop ramp exits the mainline on a downgrade, the minimum degree of curve should be 30° (190.99′ Radius) and the spiral at the entry end should be at least 300 feet long.** ***Loop radii are seldom greater than a 30 mph design (24°, 238.73′ Radius). The footprint for larger radii curves often becomes impractical (or infeasible) in areas that have even modest levels of development.***

See Figure 600-35 and Figure 600-36 for Loop Alignment details.

Table 600-4: Single Lane Ramp Capacity

Approximate Ideal Service Flow Rates for Single Lane Ramps (Passenger Cars Per Hour)				
LOS	Ramp Design Speed (mph)			
	21 - 30	31 - 40	41 – 50	Over 50
A	*	*	*	600
B	*	*	900	900
C	*	1100	1250	1300
D	1200	1350	1550	1600
E	1450	1600	1650	1700
F	Variable	Variable	Variable	Variable

* Level of service not obtainable due to restricted design speed.

NOTE: For two lane ramps, multiply the values in the table by:

1.8 for 21 - 30 mph

1.9 for 31 - 40 mph

2.0 for 41 mph or over

605.4 Speed Change Lanes

ODOT uses tapered type exit and parallel type entrance configurations. Tapered exits fit the direct path most drivers use during the exit maneuver and give them a clear indication of the point where the exit departs from the through roadway. Parallel interchange entrance ramps provide an added lane of sufficient length to aid in gap acceptance and merging. The actual merging maneuver is similar to changing lanes to the left. The gore area is configured the same for all entrances. The length of the parallel portion varies to account for speed changing and the effects of longitudinal grades. **Figure 600-13 and Figure 600-14 show the ODOT standard for interchange ramp acceleration and deceleration lanes, and dimensions for gore areas. Information on making adjustments for grades is also shown on those two figures. Figure 600-15 shows the details for consecutive entrances at the same interchange (typical in partial cloverleaf interchanges). Figure 600-16 shows details for two lane parallel entrances.**

The ~~deceleration and~~ acceleration characteristics of trucks are quite different from the typical passenger vehicle. ~~*When there is significant truck traffic (over 20 trucks with 4 or more axles per hour), the minimum deceleration design lengths for trucks should be consistent with Figure 600-14.*~~ Due to the longer acceleration requirements, it is normally not practical for acceleration lanes to be

designed for large trucks. Instead, all types of vehicles should be considered in the design of interchange ramps. When significant truck traffic is present, as much parallel acceleration length as is reasonable should be added to the minimum values listed in Figure 600-13.

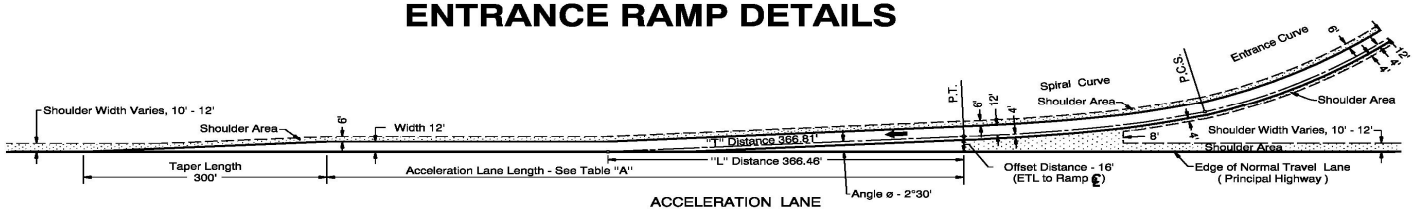
Standard gore area details are shown on Figure 600-13 and Figure 600-14, including minimum acceleration and deceleration lengths. Since gore areas (especially exit gores) are important decision points for drivers, their layout and dimensions can directly affect safety. Gores should present drivers with a clear and easily understood view of how to transition from the mainline to the ramp (or vice-versa). ~~Non-standard elements are not necessarily unsafe; many~~Many existing ramps have non-standard features and are not experiencing significant safety issues. Each ~~situation~~non-standard element needs to be evaluated for its potential effects on safety and operations ~~and documented in a Design Exception~~.

Tradeoffs requiring non-standard features in gore design are unavoidable in some situations, even on new ramps. Examples of this include exits on elevated structures, bridge columns in the gore, or tightly constrained urban facilities. In these types of situations, the key elements for helping drivers make ~~safe transitions~~the transition are the deceleration (or acceleration) distance, adequate room in the gore for impact attenuators (or traffic separators), and pavement cross slopes in the gore area. ~~Non-standard features cannot compromise these elements.~~ Refer to AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" – Chapter 10 for more information on gore design.

DRAFT

Figure 600-13: Entrance Ramp Details

ENTRANCE RAMP DETAILS



ACCELERATION LANE

TABLE "A"
MINIMUM ACCELERATION LANE LENGTHS

Design Speed of Turning Curve (mph)	25	30	35	40	45	50+
Minimum Curve Radius (ft.)	160	230	320	430	555	695
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	TOTAL LENGTH OF ACCELERATION LANE (WITHOUT TAPER) Length (ft.)					
40	540	540	540	540	540	540
45	540	540	540	540	540	540
50	550	540	540	540	540	540
55	780	670	550	540	540	540
60	1020	910	800	550	540	540
65	1220	1120	1000	770	*600	*540
70	1420	1350	1230	1000	820	*580

* Desirable length is **750'**, this allows additional decision time for picking gaps.

TABLE "B"
RATIO OF LENGTH OF ACCELERATION LANES
ON MAINLINE GRADES TO LENGTH ON LEVEL

Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph)						
	25	30	35	40	45	50	ALL Speeds
	3% to 5% Upgrade						3% to 5% Down
40	1.30	1.30	1.20	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.70*
45	1.30	1.35	1.30	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.65*
50	1.35	1.40	1.40	1.40	1.35	1.00	0.65*
55	1.40	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.00	0.65*
60	1.45	1.50	1.50	1.50	1.55	1.60	0.60*
65	1.50	1.55	1.55	1.60	1.65	1.70	0.60*
70	1.55	1.60	1.65	1.70	1.75	1.80	0.60*
	5% and over Upgrade						5% and over Down
40	1.50	1.50	1.50	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.60*
45	1.55	1.60	1.65	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.60*
50	1.60	1.70	1.80	1.90	1.45	1.00	0.55*
55	1.70	1.80	1.90	2.05	2.15	1.00	0.55*
60	1.80	1.90	2.05	2.20	2.35	2.50	0.50*
65	1.95	2.05	2.20	2.40	2.60	2.75	0.50*
70	2.10	2.20	2.40	2.60	2.80	3.00	0.50*

* If the ratio from Table "B" yields a length less than 540', use 540' as the minimum acceleration lane length. The desirable length is 750', this allows additional decision time for picking gaps.

EXAMPLE:

Find: Adjusted Acceleration Lane Length
Given: Principal Highway design speed 70 mph
Turning Highway design speed 30 mph
Meeting on a 5% upgrade

Solution: From Table "A" acceleration lane length = 1350'
From Table "B" ratio on upgrade = 2.20
Adjusted acceleration lane length = 1350' x 2.20 = 2970'

Note: If adjusted acceleration lane length appears impractical, a merge analysis should be performed. Lengthening of acceleration lane length may be necessary due to high truck volumes.

ENTRANCE CURVES & SPIRALS

Ramp Design Speed (mph)	Degree of Curve	Radius (ft)	e (%)	Spiral Length (ft.)	Spiral Parts	
					"a" Value	"S" Value
70	1° 00'	5729.58	3.5	200	0.5	1.0
	2° 00'	2864.79	6.5	200	1.0	2.0
	3° 00'	1909.86	8	240	1.25	3.6
65	4° 00'	1432.39	9	240	1.667	4.8
60	5° 00'	1145.92	9.5	250	2.0	6.25
55	6° 00'	954.93	10	240	2.5	7.2
50	7° 00'	818.51	10.5	240	2.917	8.4
	8° 00'	716.20	10.5	250	3.2	10.0
45	10° 00'	572.96	11	250	4.0	12.5
40	12° 00'	477.46	11.5	240	5.0	14.4
	14° 00'	409.26	11.5	200	7.0	14.0
35	16° 00'	358.10	12	200	8.0	16.0
	18° 00'	318.31	12	200	9.0	18.0
30	20° 00'	286.48	12	200	10.0	20.0
	24° 00'	238.73	12	200	12.0	24.0
25	30° 00'	190.99	12	200	15.0	30.0
	36° 00'	159.15	12	200	18.0	36.0

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

ENTRANCE RAMP DETAILS

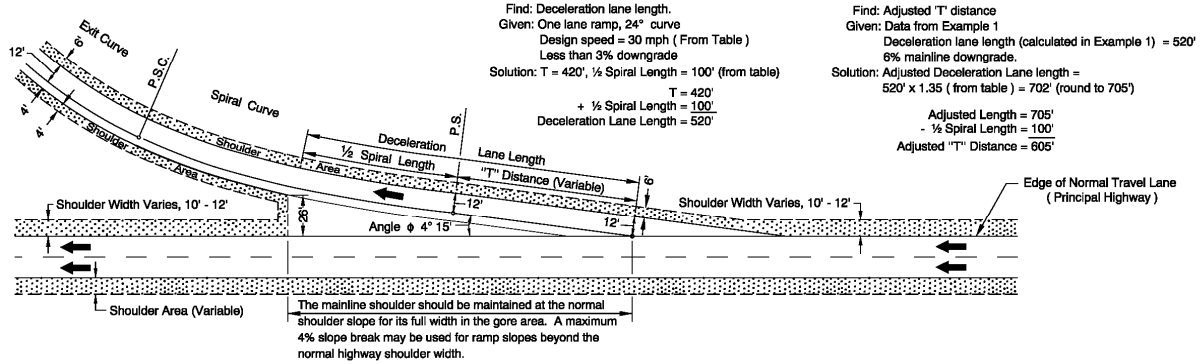
HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-14: Exit Ramp Details

EXIT RAMP DETAILS

EXAMPLE 1:
Find: Deceleration lane length.
Given: One lane ramp, 24° curve
Design speed = 30 mph (From Table)
Less than 3% downgrade
Solution: T = 420', ½ Spiral Length = 100' (from table)
T = 420'
+ ½ Spiral Length = 100'
Deceleration Lane Length = 520'

EXAMPLE 2:
Find: Adjusted 'T' distance
Given: Data from Example 1
Deceleration lane length (calculated in Example 1) = 520'
6% mainline downgrade.
Solution: Adjusted Deceleration Lane length =
520' x 1.35 (from table) = 702' (round to 705')
Adjusted Length = 705'
- ½ Spiral Length = 100'
Adjusted "T" Distance = 605'



MINIMUM DECELERATION LANE LENGTHS (1 LANE)

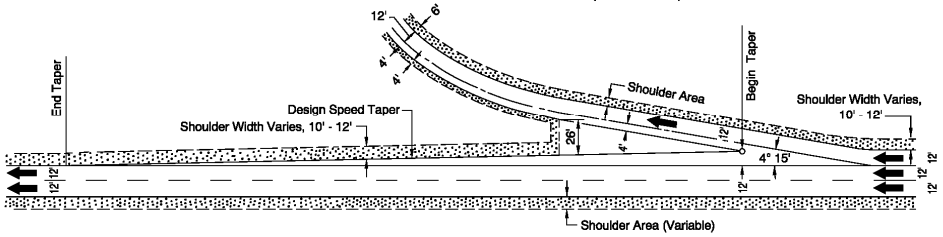
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Stop**	Design Speed of Turning Curve (mph)					
	0	25	30	35	40	45	50
	DECELERATION LENGTHS (ft.)						
40	320	235	185	155	-	-	-
45	385	295	250	220	-	-	-
50	435	355	315	285	225	175	-
55	480	410	380	350	285	235	-
60	530	460	430	405	350	300	240
65	570	500	470	440	390	340	280
70	615	550	520	490	440	390	340

**Deceleration to the end of a 95th percentile queue when this is a controlling feature.

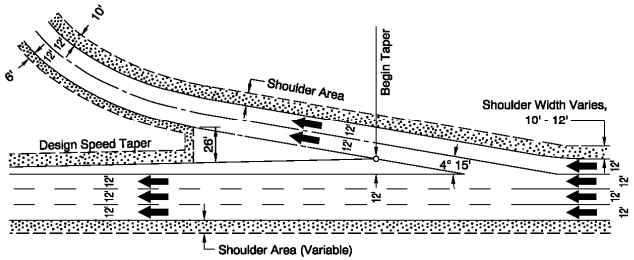
Ratio of Length of Deceleration Lanes on Mainline Grade to Length on Level		
Grade	Down	Up
3% to 5%	1.20	0.9
5% and over	1.35	0.8

NOTE: Adjust "T" Distance to the length required to give adjusted deceleration lane length.

MAINLINE LANE REDUCTION AT EXIT RAMP (ONE LANE)



MAINLINE LANE REDUCTION AT EXIT RAMP (TWO LANES)



EXIT CURVES & SPIRALS

				1 LANE (Highway Design Speed 70 mph)					2 LANE (Highway Design Speed 70 mph)				
Ramp Design Speed (mph)	Degree of Curve	Radius (ft)	e (%)	Spiral Length (ft.)	Spiral Parts "a" Value	Spiral Parts "S" Value	"T"* Distance (ft.)	"T" TRUCK Distance (ft.)	Spiral Length (ft.)	Spiral Parts "a" Value	Spiral Parts "S" Value	"T"* Distance (ft.)	"T" TRUCK Distance (ft.)
70	1° 00'	5729.58	3.5	200	0.5	1.0	240	340	300	0.333	1.5	355	455
	2° 00'	2864.79	6.5	200	1.0	2.0	240	340	300	0.667	3.0	355	455
	3° 00'	1909.86	8	240	1.25	3.6	220	320	360	0.833	5.4	325	425
65	4° 00'	1432.39	9	240	1.667	4.8	220	320	360	1.111	7.2	325	425
60	5° 00'	1145.92	9.5	250	2.0	6.25	215	315	375	1.333	9.375	315	415
55	6° 00'	954.93	10	240	2.5	7.2	220	320	360	1.667	10.8	325	425
50	7° 00'	818.51	10.5	240	2.917	8.4	220	400	360	1.944	12.6	325	505
	8° 00'	716.20	10.5	250	3.2	10.0	215	395	375	2.133	15.0	315	495
45	10° 00'	572.96	11	250	4.0	12.5	265	470	375	2.667	18.75	365	570
40	12° 00'	477.46	11.5	240	5.0	14.4	320	545	360	3.333	21.6	425	650
	14° 00'	409.26	11.5	200	7.0	14.0	340	565	300	4.667	21.0	455	680
35	16° 00'	358.10	12	200	8.0	16.0	390	650	300	5.333	24.0	505	765
	18° 00'	318.31	12	200	9.0	18.0	390	650	300	6.0	27.0	505	765
30	20° 00'	286.48	12	200	10.0	20.0	420	700	250	8.0	25.0	560	840
	24° 00'	238.73	12	200	12.0	24.0	420	700	240	10.0	28.8	565	845
25	30° 00'	190.99	12	200	15.0	30.0	450	745	240	12.5	36.0	595	890
	36° 00'	159.15	12	200	18.0	36.0	450	745	240	15.0	43.2	595	890

* "T" Distance is based upon spiral length shown. Variations in spiral lengths will cause change in "T" distance. *Consider increasing the "T" Distance to "T" TRUCK Distance if high truck volumes are present on the ramp.*

Contact the Roadway Engineering Unit for assistance on any portion of this drawing.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

EXIT RAMP DETAILS

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-15: Consecutive Entrance Ramps

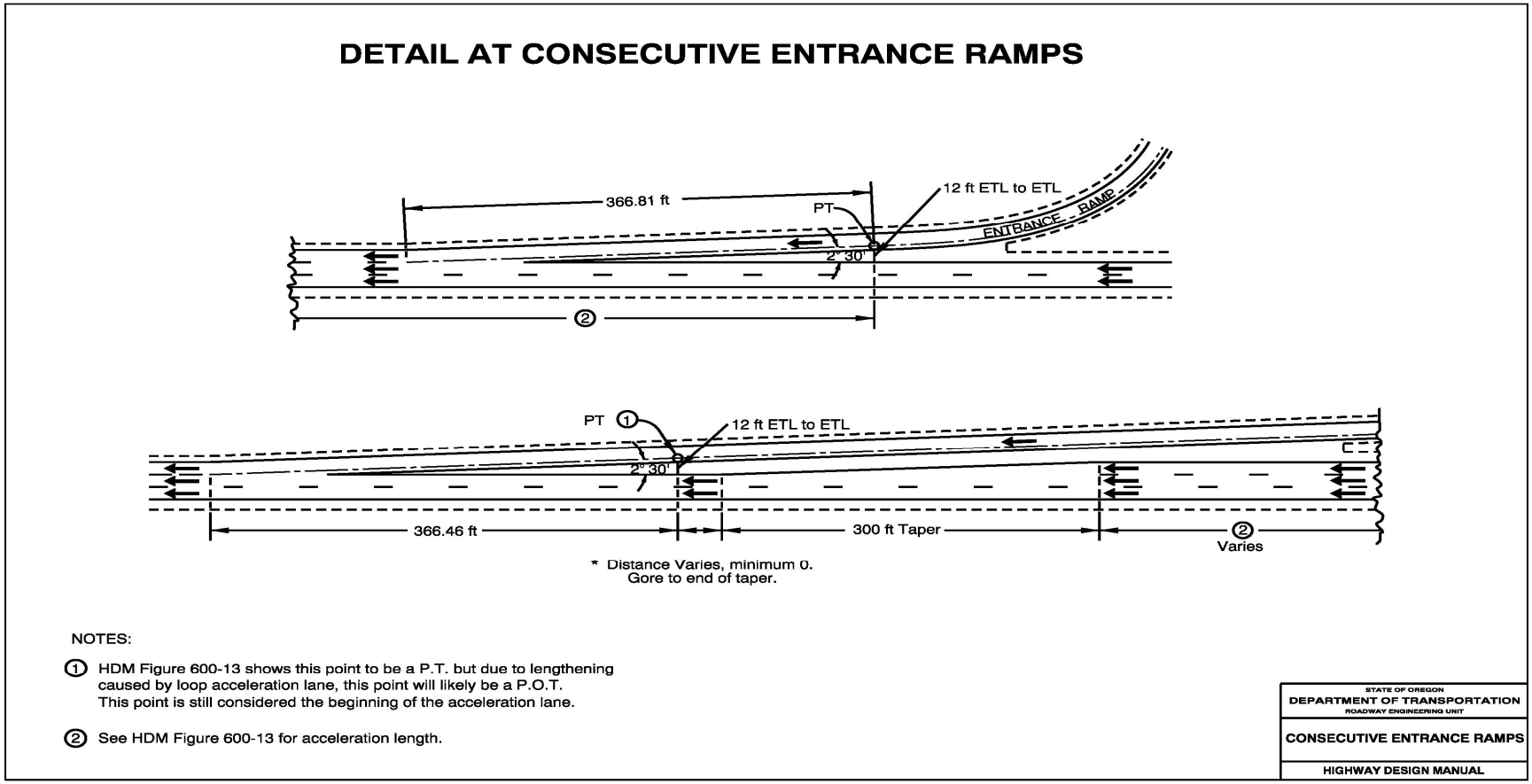
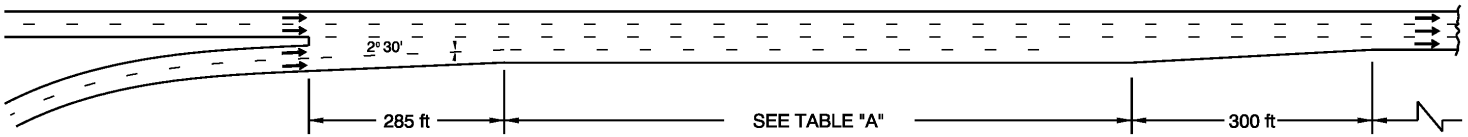


Figure 600-16: Two-Lane Parallel Entrance Ramp

TWO-LANE PARALLEL ENTRANCE RAMP DETAIL



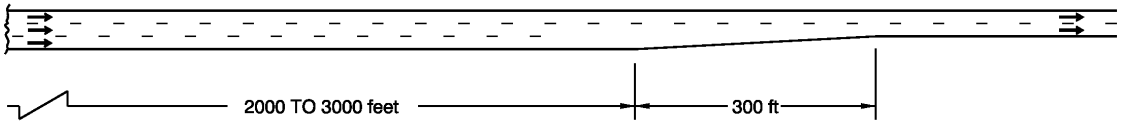


TABLE "A"

Design Speed of Turning Curve	25	30	35	40	45	50 +
Minimum Curve Radius in feet	160	230	320	430	555	695
Design Speed of Highway mph	TOTAL LENGTH OF ACCELERATION LANE (WITHOUT TAPER) Length in feet					
45	540	540	540	540	540	540
50	550	540	540	540	540	540
55	780	670	550	540	540	540
60	1020	910	800	* 550	540	540
65	1220	1120	1000	770	* 600	* 540
70	1420	1350	1230	1000	820	* 580

* Where possible minimum length for design should be 750 feet ; this allows additional decision time for picking gaps.

NOTE: This is the standard two lane ramp configuration.

Two-Lane Tapered Entrances are NOT Considered Acceptable Configurations.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

TWO-LANE PARALLEL ENTRANCE RAMP

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

605.5 Horizontal Alignment

The main curve (the curve immediately following the exit taper or preceding the entrance taper) should conform to the desirable ramp design speed, with maximum degrees of curvature shown in Table 600-5. Variations of this will require adjustments to the exit taper or acceleration lane length. Ramp alignments use standard spiral lengths that are different from those used for open road design. See Figure 600-13, Figure 600-14, and Figure 600-16 for ramp spiral data. Ramp Terminal Curve spirals also have unique values, shown in Figure 600-25.

Table 600-5: Maximum Degree of Curvature and Sight Distance on Interchange Ramps

Design Element	Design Speed of Ramp (mph)							
	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
Maximum Design Degree of Curvature	36°	26°	19°	14°	10°30′	8°15′	6°30′	5°
Stopping Sight Distance (feet)	159	200	250	305	360	425	495	570

The layout of the interchange is influenced by the skew and horizontal alignment of the crossroad. The skew of the crossroad to the highway should be as close to 90 degrees as possible. The use of horizontal curves on either highway through the interchange should be avoided. However, there are numerous existing interchanges on ODOT highways that include horizontal curves. It is often not practical or necessary to remove these features, unless significant safety issues have been documented that relate directly to the curved alignment. Even in those cases, there are often alternatives for solving problems that don't require major roadway realignments.

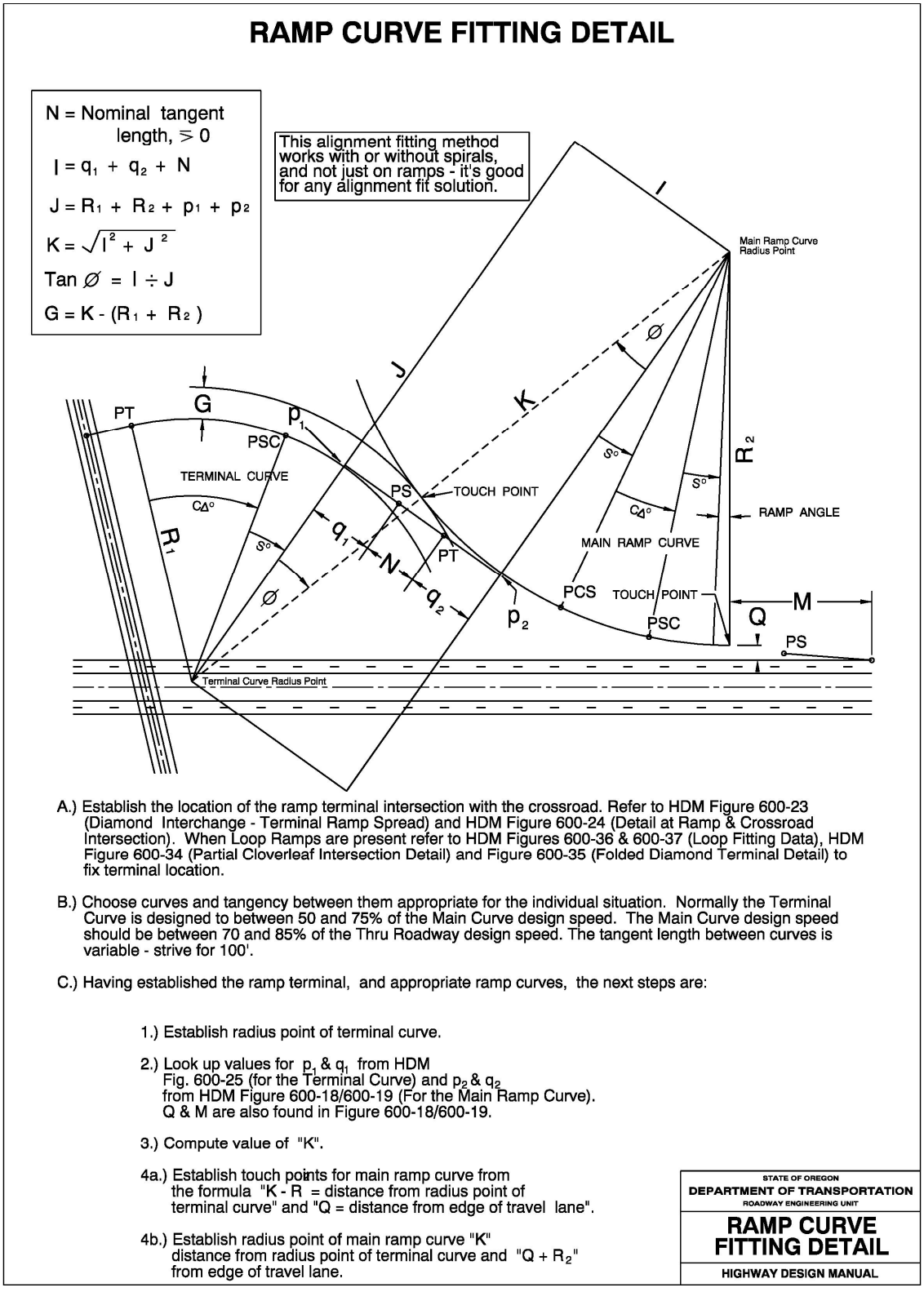
When one way, one-lane ramps exceed 1500 feet in length, consider adding a second lane to relieve congestion caused by slow moving or stalled vehicles. Steep grades and/or a high percentage of trucks may require an added lane on shorter ramps.

Typical horizontal entrance and exit details for the connection to the main highway can be found in Figure 600-13 and Figure 600-14. Ramp terminals are desirably perpendicular to the crossroad as shown on Figure 600-24. Various acceptable configurations for terminal area horizontal geometry are shown on Figure 600-25. Ramp terminal alignments that have spirals at one end only (the entering end on exit ramps and the trailing end on entrance ramps) do not require design exceptions. The first two Options are the most desirable, with Option 2 being common practice. Using Option 3 or Option 4 on Figure 600-25 is generally discouraged when developing new ramp alignments – contact the ODOT Interchange Engineer for guidance.

Designers need to keep in mind that roadside barriers and bridge ends can create sight distance restrictions for the ramp intersections. The appropriate sight distance (Stopping or Intersection) application needs to be determined, each location needs to be evaluated to clearly identify and prioritize problems and the potential solutions. The following figures (Figure 600-17 thru Figure 600-19) include numerous design aids and tools for fitting alignments. The Roadway Engineering Unit can provide guidance on the application of these tools.

DRAFT

Figure 600-17: Ramp Alignment Fitting



A.) Establish the location of the ramp terminal intersection with the crossroad. Refer to HDM Figure 600-23 (Diamond Interchange - Terminal Ramp Spread) and HDM Figure 600-24 (Detail at Ramp & Crossroad Intersection). When Loop Ramps are present refer to HDM Figures 600-36 & 600-37 (Loop Fitting Data), HDM Figure 600-34 (Partial Cloverleaf Intersection Detail) and Figure 600-35 (Folded Diamond Terminal Detail) to fix terminal location.

B.) Choose curves and tangency between them appropriate for the individual situation. Normally the Terminal Curve is designed to between 50 and 75% of the Main Curve design speed. The Main Curve design speed should be between 70 and 85% of the Thru Roadway design speed. The tangent length between curves is variable - strive for 100'.

C.) Having established the ramp terminal, and appropriate ramp curves, the next steps are:

1.) Establish radius point of terminal curve.

2.) Look up values for p_1 & q_1 from HDM Fig. 600-25 (for the Terminal Curve) and p_2 & q_2 from HDM Figure 600-18/600-19 (For the Main Ramp Curve). Q & M are also found in Figure 600-18/600-19.

3.) Compute value of "K".

4a.) Establish touch points for main ramp curve from the formula "K - R = distance from radius point of terminal curve" and "Q = distance from edge of travel lane".

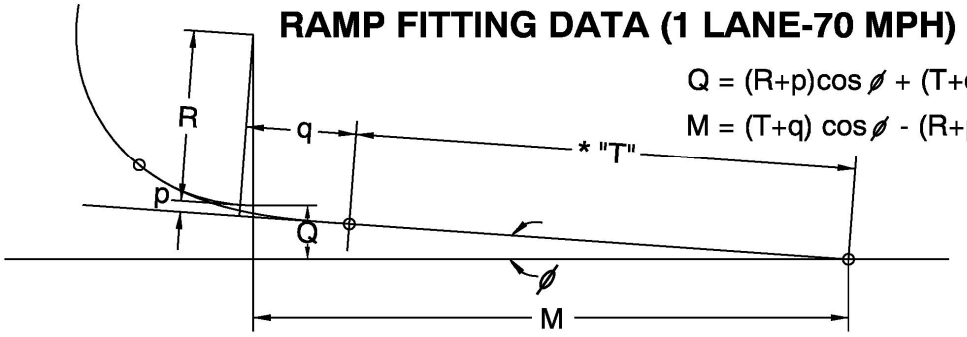
4b.) Establish radius point of main ramp curve "K" distance from radius point of terminal curve and "Q + R_2" from edge of travel lane.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

RAMP CURVE FITTING DETAIL

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-18: Alignment Fitting Data 70 MPH



RAMP FITTING DATA @ HIGHWAY DESIGN SPEED 70 MPH									EXIT ∅ = 4° 15'			ENTRANCE ∅ = 2°30', T= 366.81		
mph	D	R	L	e %	a	S°	p	q	*T	Q	M	Q	M	Accel
70	1	5729.58	200	3.5	0.50	1.00	0.2909	99.9990	240	9.7316	-85.5679	15.1992	216.4307	580
70	2	2864.79	200	6.5	1.00	2.00	0.5818	99.9959	240	17.8991	126.7127	18.2163	341.3753	580
70	3	1909.86	240	8.0	1.25	3.60	1.2565	119.9842	220	21.1970	197.4194	20.6711	402.9686	580
70	3°15'	1762.95	240	8.5	1.35	3.90	1.3611	119.9815	220	21.7051	208.2964	20.9154	409.3695	580
65	3.5	1637.02	240	9.0	1.46	4.20	1.4658	119.9785	220	22.1556	217.6178	21.1397	414.8547	580
65	3.75	1527.89	240	9.0	1.56	4.50	1.5705	119.9753	220	22.5598	225.6946	21.3480	419.6074	580
65	4	1432.39	240	9.0	1.67	4.80	1.6751	119.9719	220	22.9265	232.7603	21.5433	423.7648	580
60	4.25	1348.14	250	9.5	1.70	5.31	1.9311	124.9642	215	23.4129	238.9779	22.0970	432.4164	580
60	4.5	1273.24	250	9.5	1.80	5.63	2.0446	124.9599	215	23.7317	244.5156	22.2815	435.6741	580
60	4.75	1206.23	250	9.5	1.90	5.94	2.1581	124.9553	215	24.0288	249.4689	22.4585	438.5876	580
60	5	1145.92	250	9.5	2.00	6.25	2.2716	124.9504	215	24.3075	253.9252	22.6290	441.2085	580
55	5.5	1041.74	250	10.0	2.20	6.88	2.4985	124.9400	215	24.8195	261.6182	22.9545	445.7323	580
55	6	954.93	240	10.0	2.50	7.20	2.5119	119.9369	220	25.0713	268.0476	22.8322	444.5199	580
55	6.5	881.47	240	10.0	2.71	7.80	2.7209	119.9259	220	25.4809	273.4649	23.1104	447.7040	580
50	7	818.51	240	10.5	2.92	8.40	2.9299	119.9141	220	25.8616	278.1036	23.3787	450.4294	580
50	7.5	763.94	250	10.5	3.00	9.38	3.4056	124.8885	215	26.4841	282.0868	24.1228	457.7586	580
50	8	716.20	250	10.5	3.20	10.00	3.6321	124.8732	215	26.8402	285.5931	24.3939	459.8161	580
45	8.5	674.07	250	11.0	3.40	10.63	3.8586	124.8569	265	30.8861	338.5447	24.6596	461.6275	820
45	9	636.62	250	11.0	3.60	11.25	4.0850	124.8395	265	31.2136	341.2859	24.9206	463.2338	820
45	9.5	603.11	250	11.0	3.80	11.88	4.3113	124.8212	265	31.5300	343.7340	25.1777	464.6672	820
45	10	572.96	250	11.0	4.00	12.50	4.5374	124.8019	265	31.8370	345.9328	25.4315	465.9534	820
45	10.5	545.67	250	11.0	4.20	13.13	4.7635	124.7817	265	32.1360	347.9177	25.6825	467.1134	820
40	11	520.87	250	11.5	4.40	13.75	4.9894	124.7604	315	36.1333	399.5805	25.9308	468.1642	1000
40	12	477.46	240	11.5	5.00	14.40	5.0152	119.7478	320	36.2775	402.7827	25.7793	465.0486	1000
40	13	440.74	200	11.5	6.50	13.00	3.7746	99.8286	340	35.1473	405.6771	23.7060	446.8046	1000
40	14	409.26	200	11.5	7.00	14.00	4.0638	99.8013	340	35.5202	407.9615	24.0236	448.1378	1000
35	15	381.97	200	12.0	7.50	15.00	4.3527	99.7720	390	39.5866	459.7953	24.3370	449.2860	1230
35	16	358.10	200	12.0	8.00	16.00	4.6413	99.7406	390	39.9377	461.5118	24.6466	450.2834	1230
35	17	337.03	200	12.0	8.50	17.00	4.9296	99.7073	390	40.2807	463.0183	24.9533	451.1564	1230
35	18	318.31	200	12.0	9.00	18.00	5.2176	99.6719	390	40.6168	464.3493	25.2573	451.9252	1230
35	19	301.56	200	12.0	9.50	19.00	5.5052	99.6346	390	40.9469	465.5323	25.5590	452.6061	1230
30	20	286.48	200	12.0	10.00	20.00	5.7925	99.5952	420	43.4952	496.5066	25.8586	453.2120	1350
30	22	260.44	200	12.0	11.00	22.00	6.3659	99.5106	420	44.1324	498.3098	26.4526	454.2384	1350
30	24	238.73	200	12.0	12.00	24.00	6.9377	99.4180	420	44.7555	499.7834	27.0405	455.0676	1350
30	26	220.37	200	12.0	13.00	26.00	7.5077	99.3175	420	45.3669	501.0019	27.6230	455.7434	1350
25	28	204.63	200	12.0	14.00	28.00	8.0758	99.2092	450	48.1919	531.9358	28.2007	456.2970	1420
25	30	190.99	200	12.0	15.00	30.00	8.6417	99.0931	450	48.7852	532.7891	28.7741	456.7514	1420
25	34	168.52	200	12.0	17.00	34.00	9.7667	98.8376	450	49.9500	534.1161	29.9083	457.4272	1420
25	36	159.15	200	12.0	18.00	36.00	10.3256	98.6984	450	50.5227	534.6296	30.4694	457.6721	1420

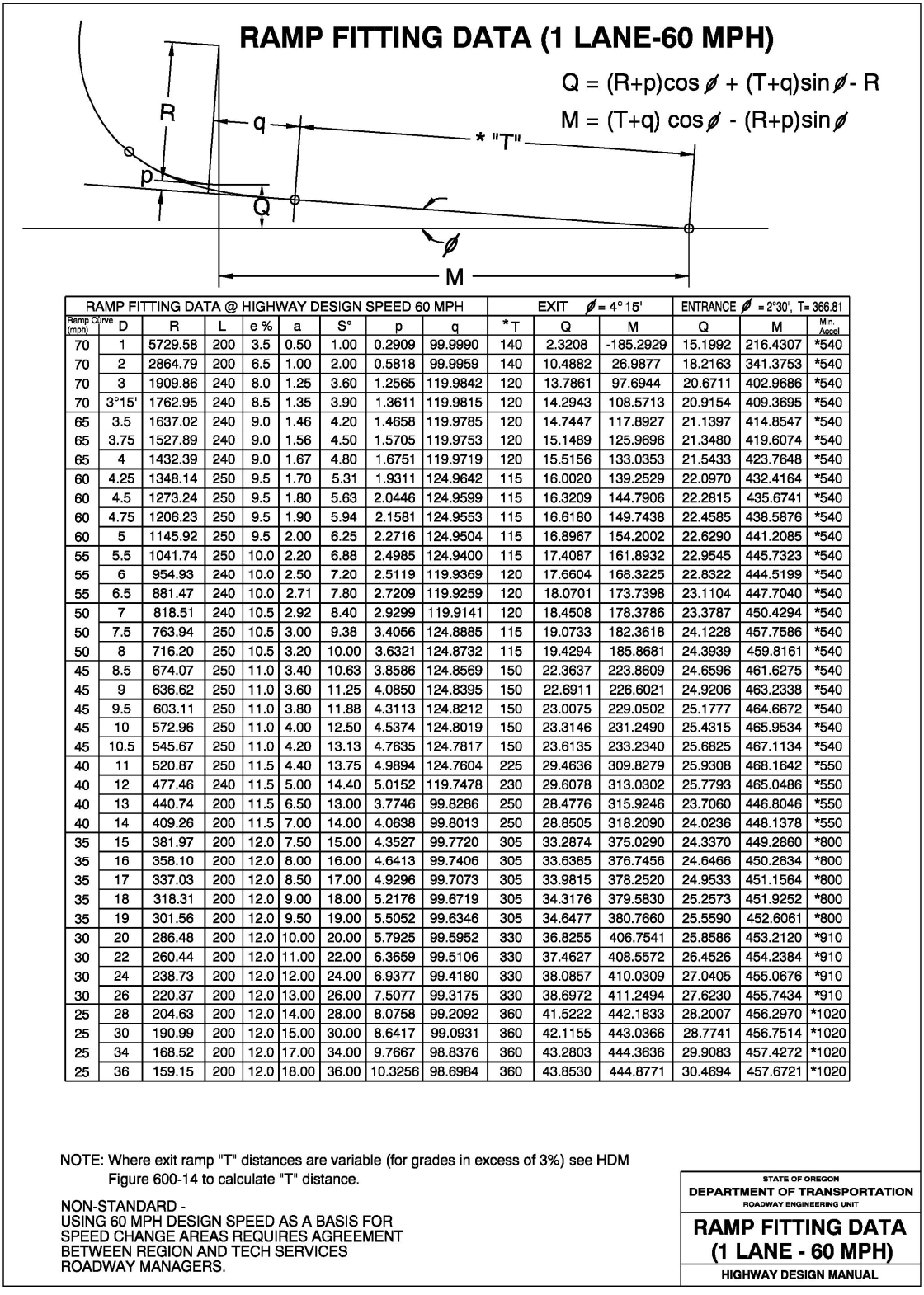
* NOTE: Where exit ramp "T" distances are variable for grades in excess of 3% see HDM Figure 600-14 to calculate "T" distance.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

RAMP FITTING DATA (1 LANE - 70 MPH)

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-19: Alignment Fitting Data 60 MPH



RAMP FITTING DATA @ HIGHWAY DESIGN SPEED 60 MPH									EXIT ø = 4° 15'			ENTRANCE ø = 2°30', T= 366.81		
Ramp Curve (mph)	D	R	L	e %	a	S°	p	q	*T	Q	M	Q	M	Min. Accel
70	1	5729.58	200	3.5	0.50	1.00	0.2909	99.9990	140	2.3208	-185.2929	15.1992	216.4307	*540
70	2	2864.79	200	6.5	1.00	2.00	0.5818	99.9959	140	10.4882	26.9877	18.2163	341.3753	*540
70	3	1909.86	240	8.0	1.25	3.60	1.2565	119.9842	120	13.7861	97.6944	20.6711	402.9686	*540
70	3°15'	1762.95	240	8.5	1.35	3.90	1.3611	119.9815	120	14.2943	108.5713	20.9154	409.3695	*540
65	3.5	1637.02	240	9.0	1.46	4.20	1.4658	119.9785	120	14.7447	117.8927	21.1397	414.8547	*540
65	3.75	1527.89	240	9.0	1.56	4.50	1.5705	119.9753	120	15.1489	125.9696	21.3480	419.6074	*540
65	4	1432.39	240	9.0	1.67	4.80	1.6751	119.9719	120	15.5156	133.0353	21.5433	423.7648	*540
60	4.25	1348.14	250	9.5	1.70	5.31	1.9311	124.9642	115	16.0020	139.2529	22.0970	432.4164	*540
60	4.5	1273.24	250	9.5	1.80	5.63	2.0446	124.9599	115	16.3209	144.7906	22.2815	435.6741	*540
60	4.75	1206.23	250	9.5	1.90	5.94	2.1581	124.9553	115	16.6180	149.7438	22.4585	438.5876	*540
60	5	1145.92	250	9.5	2.00	6.25	2.2716	124.9504	115	16.8967	154.2002	22.6290	441.2085	*540
55	5.5	1041.74	250	10.0	2.20	6.88	2.4985	124.9400	115	17.4087	161.8932	22.9545	445.7323	*540
55	6	954.93	240	10.0	2.50	7.20	2.5119	119.9369	120	17.6604	168.3225	22.8322	444.5199	*540
55	6.5	881.47	240	10.0	2.71	7.80	2.7209	119.9259	120	18.0701	173.7398	23.1104	447.7040	*540
50	7	818.51	240	10.5	2.92	8.40	2.9299	119.9141	120	18.4508	178.3786	23.3787	450.4294	*540
50	7.5	763.94	250	10.5	3.00	9.38	3.4056	124.8885	115	19.0733	182.3618	24.1228	457.7586	*540
50	8	716.20	250	10.5	3.20	10.00	3.6321	124.8732	115	19.4294	185.8681	24.3939	459.8161	*540
45	8.5	674.07	250	11.0	3.40	10.63	3.8586	124.8569	150	22.3637	223.8609	24.6596	461.6275	*540
45	9	636.62	250	11.0	3.60	11.25	4.0850	124.8395	150	22.6911	226.6021	24.9206	463.2338	*540
45	9.5	603.11	250	11.0	3.80	11.88	4.3113	124.8212	150	23.0075	229.0502	25.1777	464.6672	*540
45	10	572.96	250	11.0	4.00	12.50	4.5374	124.8019	150	23.3146	231.2490	25.4315	465.9534	*540
45	10.5	545.67	250	11.0	4.20	13.13	4.7635	124.7817	150	23.6135	233.2340	25.6825	467.1134	*540
40	11	520.87	250	11.5	4.40	13.75	4.9894	124.7604	225	29.4636	309.8279	25.9308	468.1642	*550
40	12	477.46	240	11.5	5.00	14.40	5.0152	119.7478	230	29.6078	313.0302	25.7793	465.0486	*550
40	13	440.74	200	11.5	6.50	13.00	3.7746	99.8286	250	28.4776	315.9246	23.7060	446.8046	*550
40	14	409.26	200	11.5	7.00	14.00	4.0638	99.8013	250	28.8505	318.2090	24.0236	448.1378	*550
35	15	381.97	200	12.0	7.50	15.00	4.3527	99.7720	305	33.2874	375.0290	24.3370	449.2860	*800
35	16	358.10	200	12.0	8.00	16.00	4.6413	99.7406	305	33.6385	376.7456	24.6466	450.2834	*800
35	17	337.03	200	12.0	8.50	17.00	4.9296	99.7073	305	33.9815	378.2520	24.9533	451.1564	*800
35	18	318.31	200	12.0	9.00	18.00	5.2176	99.6719	305	34.3176	379.5830	25.2573	451.9252	*800
35	19	301.56	200	12.0	9.50	19.00	5.5052	99.6346	305	34.6477	380.7660	25.5590	452.6061	*800
30	20	286.48	200	12.0	10.00	20.00	5.7925	99.5952	330	36.8255	406.7541	25.8586	453.2120	*910
30	22	260.44	200	12.0	11.00	22.00	6.3659	99.5106	330	37.4627	408.5572	26.4526	454.2384	*910
30	24	238.73	200	12.0	12.00	24.00	6.9377	99.4180	330	38.0857	410.0309	27.0405	455.0676	*910
30	26	220.37	200	12.0	13.00	26.00	7.5077	99.3175	330	38.6972	411.2494	27.6230	455.7434	*910
25	28	204.63	200	12.0	14.00	28.00	8.0758	99.2092	360	41.5222	442.1833	28.2007	456.2970	*1020
25	30	190.99	200	12.0	15.00	30.00	8.6417	99.0931	360	42.1155	443.0366	28.7741	456.7514	*1020
25	34	168.52	200	12.0	17.00	34.00	9.7667	98.8376	360	43.2803	444.3636	29.9083	457.4272	*1020
25	36	159.15	200	12.0	18.00	36.00	10.3256	98.6984	360	43.8530	444.8771	30.4694	457.6721	*1020

NOTE: Where exit ramp "T" distances are variable (for grades in excess of 3%) see HDM Figure 600-14 to calculate "T" distance.

NON-STANDARD -
USING 60 MPH DESIGN SPEED AS A BASIS FOR SPEED CHANGE AREAS REQUIRES AGREEMENT BETWEEN REGION AND TECH SERVICES ROADWAY MANAGERS.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

RAMP FITTING DATA (1 LANE - 60 MPH)

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Special treatments are used in cases where ramps connect to the mainline on curves. Figure 600-20 and Figure 600-21 provide guidance on developing curved ramp horizontal alignments. The intent of these configurations is to approximate the conditions where ramps merge or diverge on tangent alignments. Additional information is also located at the end of Part 600. The figures at the end of Part 600 provide guidance for specific cases and recommended configurations are shown. In many of these cases it is necessary to use spiral segments to deal with compound horizontal curves. Details on spiral segments are presented in Part 200 of this manual.

Superelevation at curved ramps is generally controlled by the mainline cross slope throughout the gore area. When curved ramps reach the "physical nose" (see Figure 600-14) the ramp and mainline become separate roadways. Ramp cross slopes become mostly independent. Designers must keep in mind the need for smooth cross slope transitions through this area. Development of these transitions will often not fit neatly calculated mathematical or runoff chart solutions. Using multiple line profiles (based on traveled way edges) that approximate precise solutions will normally provide adequate results.

Figure 600-22 is intended as a guide for typical cross slope transitions at ramps. Detailed guidance for developing super transitions at curved ramp connections is provided in AASHTO 2018 – Section 9.6.4. Although the discussion is about turning roadways at intersections, the basic ideas are also applicable for interchange ramps (keeping in mind the higher speed transitions). Often, it's necessary to use cross slope breaks in gore areas to provide suitable transitions. Table 9-18 in AASHTO lists suggested maximum cross slope breaks in various situations; **ODOT's standard for freeways and expressways is to limit cross slope breaks to four percent.** Minimal horizontal alignment, especially on ramps, often has a negative impact on vertical alignment as well. Designers need to pay careful attention to the combined effects of horizontal and vertical geometry. In fully developed areas it is often infeasible to change the crossroad profile, but ramps may have more flexibility. A general discussion on horizontal alignments for roadways can be found in Section 200.

DRAFT

Figure 600-20: Entrance Ramps on Curves

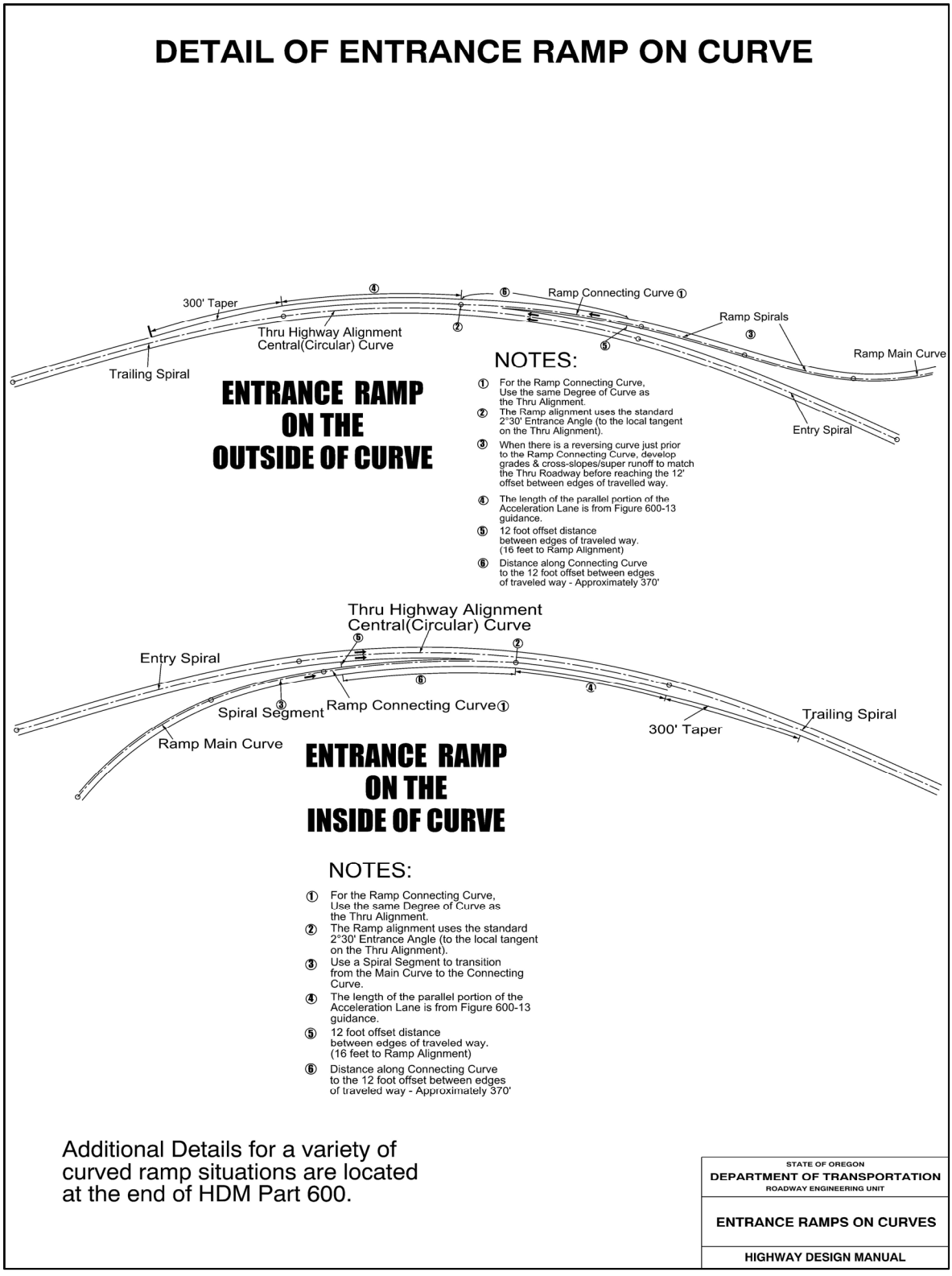
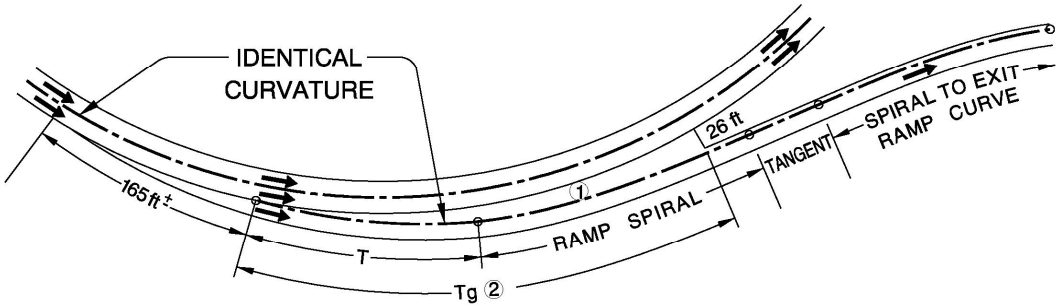


Figure 600-21: Exit Ramps on Curves

DETAIL OF EXIT RAMP ON CURVE

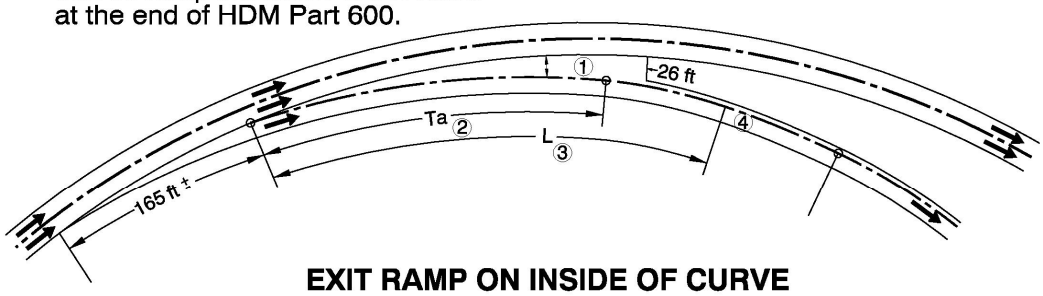


NOTE:
The theory behind this is to emulate a tangent condition for the entire configuration.

1. This angle is to be 4° 15' to local tangent.
2. 'Tg' should approximate distance from takeoff to gore on tangent section (approximately 405 ft)

EXIT RAMP ON OUTSIDE OF CURVE

Additional Details for a variety of curved ramp situations are located at the end of HDM Part 600.



EXIT RAMP ON INSIDE OF CURVE

NOTES:

① This angle is to be 4° 15' to local tangent.

② 'Ta' distance will be the 'T' distance from table for exit curve plus the difference between the length of spiral specified for the exit curve and the length of the spiral segment.

EXAMPLE:

Given: 3° mainline curve, 12° exit curve
with 240 ft Sp. A = 5.0, & T = 320 ft
'Ta' = 320 ft + 240 ft (Sp.) - 150 (Sp. Seg.) = 410 ft

③ "L" deceleration lane length is the "T" distance from the table for exit curve plus ½ length of spiral normally used. To adjust "Ta" for grade correction using above data see example.

EXAMPLE:

Given: T = 320 ft, Ta = 410 ft, ½ Sp. = 120 ft
grade = 4%, factor = 1.2

320 ft (T) + 120 ft (½ Sp.) = 440 ft x 1.2 = 528 ft (round to 530)

"Ta" = 530 ft - 440 ft + 410ft = 500 ft

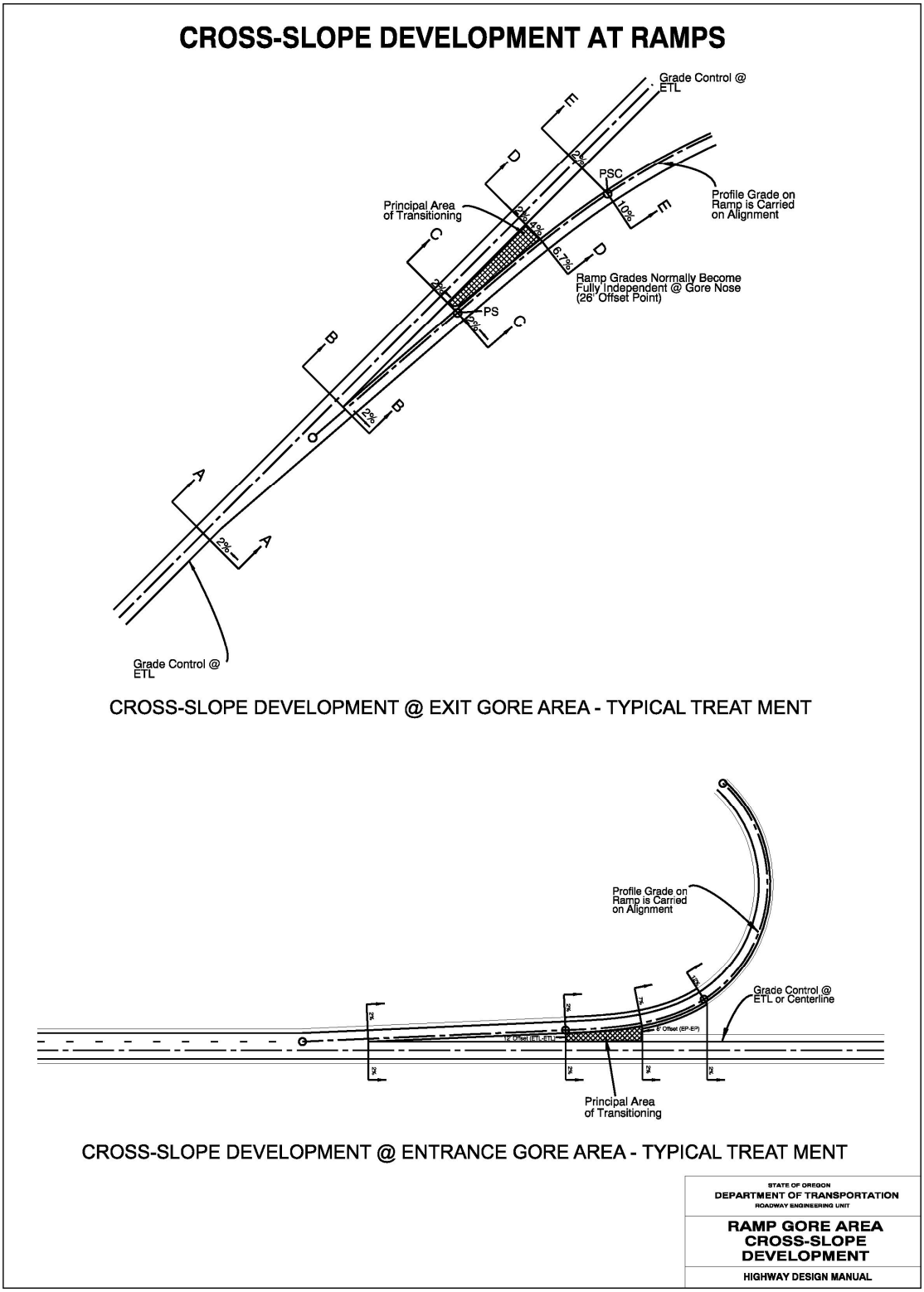
④ Use spiral segment to join exit curve to curve of deceleration lane, which is the same as the mainline curve. The "a" value may vary between designated "a" values for exit curve and deceleration curve, preferably the greater.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

EXIT RAMPS ON CURVES

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-22: Cross Slope Development at Gore Areas



605.6 Vertical Alignment

Ramp grades should be as flat as possible. (See Table 600-6) Steep grades at the terminal area may have significant operational effects, especially for large vehicles. ***Where ramp traffic has a significant percentage of heavy trucks or buses, 3 percent or 4 percent approach gradients are strongly preferred. The grades at the landing area (where the ramp meets the crossroad) should match the cross-slope on the crossing road, preferably close to 2 percent.*** Vertical alignments and clearances for the crossroad and ramps should be designed in accordance with Part 200 guidelines. Ramp profile grades are normally carried at the horizontal alignment.

Table 600-6: Maximum Grades for Ramps

Design Speed (mph)	Ascending Grades %		Descending Grades %	
	Desirable	Maximum	Desirable	Maximum
25-30	5	7	7	8
35-40	4	6	6	7
45-50	3	5	5	6

Except in special cases, descending grades on exit ramps should be the same as the ascending grades. Depressed interchanges are the most common situation where this would apply. Exits on downgrades require added deceleration length, and steeper grades increase this requirement. Steeper grades also make it more difficult to provide an appropriate vertical curve in the gore area, thus the recommendation for keeping the descending exit grades similar to the ascending. In certain special cases grades can vary from the standard as appropriate. Examples of special cases would be an outer connection on a partial cloverleaf or system interchange, or entrance ramps in mountainous terrain. These ramps do not have to account for stopped vehicles in a queue (although they still need to provide SSD and appropriate vertical curves), so there is greater flexibility in the profile design. **Ramp grades steeper than the standard need to be documented in a design exception**. Contact the ODOT Interchange Engineer for guidance in unusual situations.

Ramp profiles in gore area need to be developed to match the mainline profile adequately, in order to minimize cross slope variations in that area. It is preferable to develop grades in gore areas based on the mainline profile up to the point where gore paving ends (refer to Figure 600-13 and Figure 600-14 for details). The ramp profile can become independent at that point. In constrained situations it may be necessary to vary from this practice. *Significant cross slope breaks can create problems for vehicles traversing the gore area, especially at exits, so the profile always needs to match mainline to the extent possible in each situation.*

Ramp grades have significant operational impacts, but it's equally important to provide adequate sight distance along the entire length of the ramp. When the crossroad is over the

main facility, the ascending exits and descending entrances generally have fewer problems, provided they have sufficient length and good horizontal alignment. Sight line limitations are often found on depressed interchanges (crossroad under), both on ramps at the gore area and at the intersection with the crossroad. Sight distances at exit and entrance gore areas require careful evaluation, as these are higher speed conflict areas. The vertical alignment at the terminal end of a ramp may also have adverse impacts on sight lines. A profile that includes a relatively steep grade at the terminal end affects not only sight lines, but startup and stopping operations, which in turn affects the sight distance needed for safe operation.

Partial cloverleaf ramp arrangements may create sight line restrictions as well, in the area where the outer ramp wraps around the loop. The combined effects of horizontal and vertical alignment and the ramp cross section need to be carefully evaluated in all cases. Horizontal and vertical sight lines both need to be checked for obstructions.

In situations where it is impractical to make significant changes to the profile, sight lines should take priority over specific gradient controls. **Design exceptions are necessary when either or both of these criteria aren't met. As a minimum, exit ramp profiles shall provide appropriate stopping sight distance to expected vehicle queues.** *Exit profiles, especially at depressed interchanges, need to provide appropriate sight distance in the gore area.*

605.7 Ramp Terminal Curves

Ramp terminal curves are the portion of a ramp where it meets the crossroad. In some respects, these are a part of the intersection with the crossroad. Sometimes there is no horizontal curve present, but the same principles and thought process need to be followed as with curved terminal areas.

Terminal curves (where a ramp terminates at a crossroad) are generally sharper than the main curve, varying with the conditions. Ramp Terminal areas are typically designed to between 50 percent (minimum) and 85 percent of the main ramp curve speed.

605.8 Ramp Terminal Intersections

The separation or "spread" between ramp terminal intersections on the crossroad should be adequate to allow for standard median channelization if left turns are required. **Figure 600-23 gives minimum spread distances for a basic diamond interchange at various design speeds.** Particular attention should be paid to adequate vertical and horizontal sight distance at the ramp terminals. Design elements such as barrier, protective screening, superelevation rates, and landscaping can have an impact on the sight distance of ramp terminals. Exit ramp and entrance ramp terminals on the crossroad should be offset to encourage drivers to use the entrance ramp and to discourage wrong way moves. Figure 600-24 and Figure 600-25 provide details on exit and entrance ramp terminal intersection design. AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of

Highways and Streets-2018"- Chapter 10, pages 10-98 to 10-102, discusses issues and possible mitigations to help discourage wrong-way entry. Wrong-way potential can be minimized by using conventional, easily recognized intersection and interchange layout, clear pavement markings, and proper signing.

Due to the crossroad grade often being averse to a normal superelevation for terminal curves and the fact that traffic is slowing to stop at the crossroad, ramp terminal curves seldom are fully superelevated and may not be superelevated at all. Therefore, the need for spirals, particularly standard length ramp spirals, is diminished and sometimes eliminated on terminal curves. While spirals may not be required for superelevation transition, their use is always beneficial for leading traffic smoothly into the terminal curve. *The ramp terminal curve superelevation rate is typically one-half the full superelevation rate for that curve.* Refer to Figure 600-25 for spiral length and superelevation details on Terminal Curves. Contact the ODOT Interchange Engineer for guidance as needed.

Ramp terminals on many existing facilities do not meet the "X-X Minimum" distance shown in Figure 600-23. Achieving this target distance is often not feasible, particularly in fully developed areas. Designers need to work with traffic analysis staff to determine the range of options for dealing with anticipated left turn demand on the crossroad. It may be necessary to widen a structure to provide additional turn lanes for storage (along with widening of ramps to receive the added lane). In some cases, it may be necessary to reconfigure the interchange to a more compact form, such as a Tight Diamond or Single Point. Oftentimes at existing interchanges, these values are difficult or infeasible to achieve. Sight lines and intersection features still need to be considered. **Design exceptions are necessary when SSD can't be provided at ramp intersections.**

On the other hand, where interchanges are in remote locations with very little traffic demand, the need for accommodating turn lanes is practically non-existent. In those cases, the chief control is sight lines (as shown in Figure 600-23, Table C). The type of traffic control at the intersection guides in the selection of the most appropriate case to use – Stopping Sight Distance for the crossroad design speed being the minimum. Designers should consider whether it is appropriate to provide Intersection Sight Distance, although in many situations this may prove impractical. Each individual situation must be evaluated to determine the appropriate sight distance condition that will control for design.

In cases where the crossroad is on a horizontal curve, added caution is necessary. Superelevated crossroads introduce awkward breaks in the cross-slope that have serious operational and safety implications, especially when there are significant numbers of trucks present. Horizontal curves can also make it more difficult to provide appropriate sight lines. Crossroad alignments should therefore be as close to tangent alignment as possible.

Refer to Part 500 of this manual and AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets-2018"- Chapter 9 for detailed discussion on intersection design and Intersection Sight Distance.

DRAFT

Figure 600-23: Interchange Ramp Spread

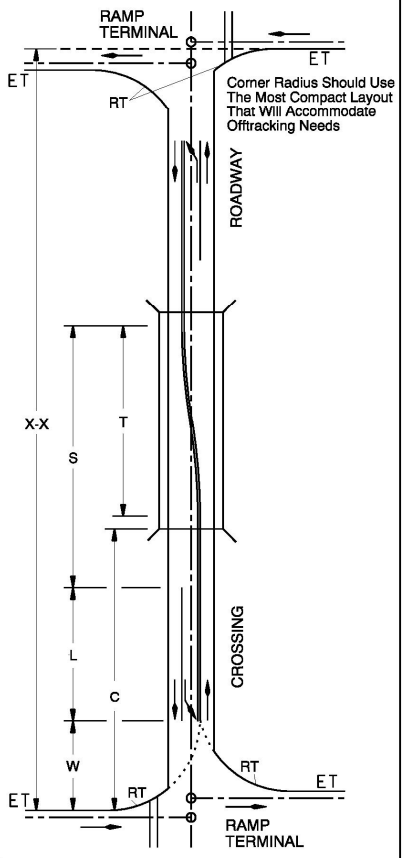
DIAMOND INTERCHANGE - TERMINAL RAMP SPREAD

CHANNELIZATION DIMENSIONS

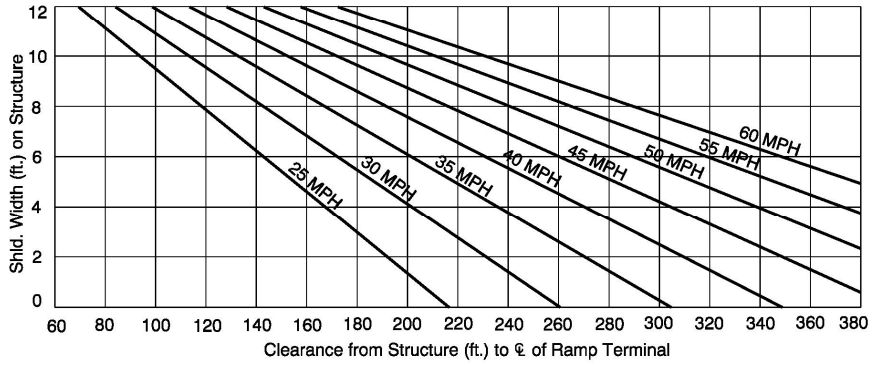
MPH	R (ft.)	T (ft.)	*S (ft.)	L min. (ft.)	X-X MIN 3-Lane	X-X MIN 5-Lane
25	195	100	155	100	610	510
30	195	100	155	100	610	510
35	250	110	155	100	600	520
40	305	120	200	100	680	590
45	370	135	250	100	765	675
50	435	145	305	150	965	875
55	510	160	360	150	1060	970
60	595	170	425	150	1180	1090
65	680	180	495	150	1310	1220
70	680	180	570	150	1460	1370

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

MPH = Design speed of crossing roadway.
R = Radius of reversing curve.
T = Length of reversing curve.
S = Stopping sight distance for a speed 10 mph less than the Design Speed. (Based on 2018 AASHTO, Table 3-1)
L = Length of storage determined by storage analysis - Minimums shown.
W = 100' for 3-lane @ 90° in tangent section. 55' for 5-lane @ 90° in tangent section. W determined by where turning vehicle's off-track crosses edge of left-turn lane (See figure right). This is where stop bar should be placed.
X-X = Minimum distance between the left edges of travel of the ramp terminals (see diagram right). X-X = 2(W+L+S)-T ; where S≥T. Else X-X = 2(W+L)+T.
C = Combined horizontal and vertical sight distance clearance from the structure. Typically 200 feet or more.
RT = Ramp terminal radii should accommodate a WB-67 Interstate Design Vehicle (IDV). Two Centered radii should be used to satisfy this requirement.
ET = Edge of Travel



'C' TABLE



'C' TABLE NOTES

1) 'C' Table values are based on the appropriate vertical curve and horizontal stopping sight distance values for the design speed in a tangent section.
2) Clearance calculations do not include sidewalks; as there may or may not be barrier separation from the roadway. Barriers must be used when the cross-road design speed is 45 mph or greater.

ORIGINAL SOURCE: ODOT PRELIMINARY DESIGN

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

INTERCHANGE RAMP SPREAD

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-24: Detail at Ramp/Crossroad Intersection

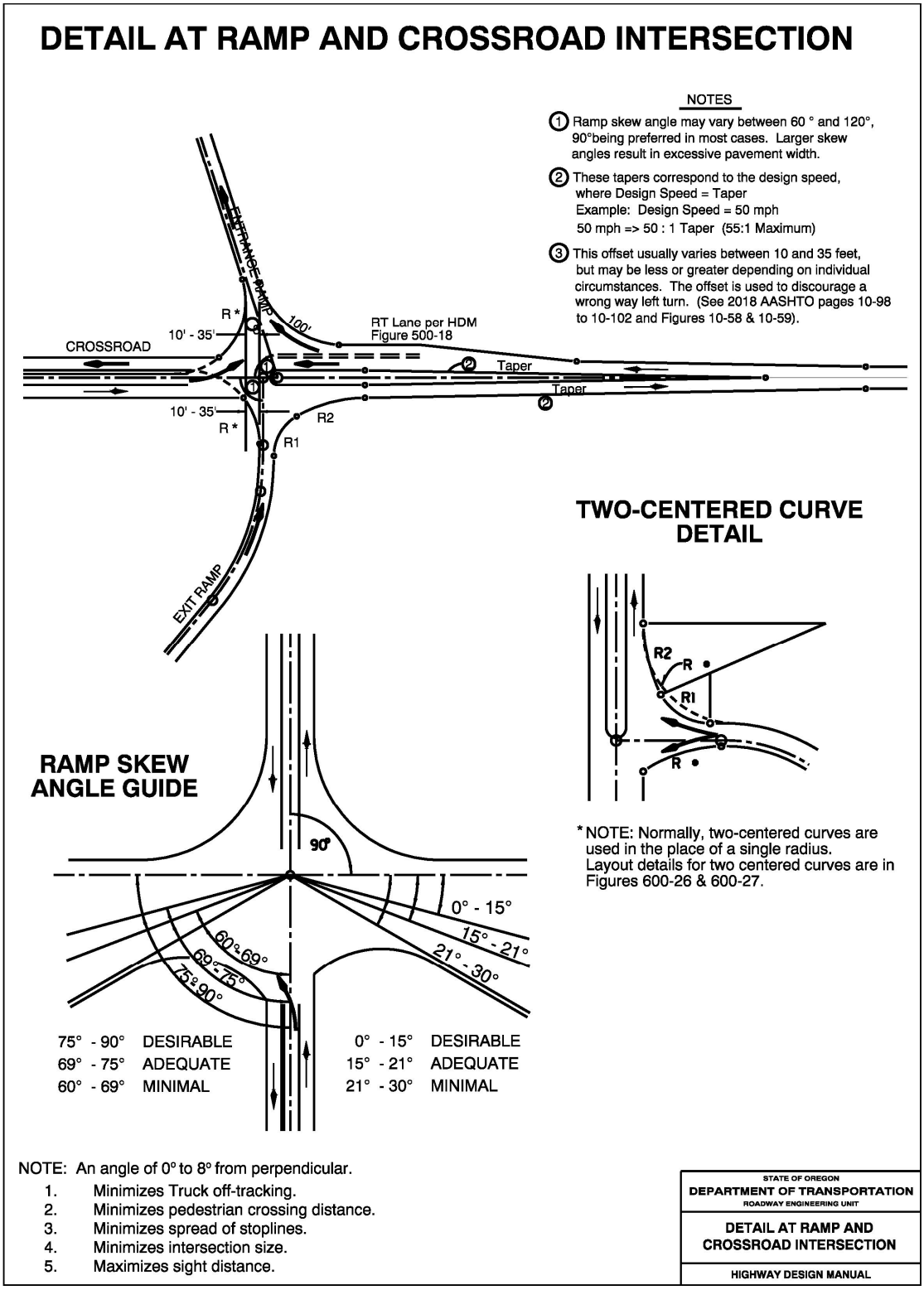
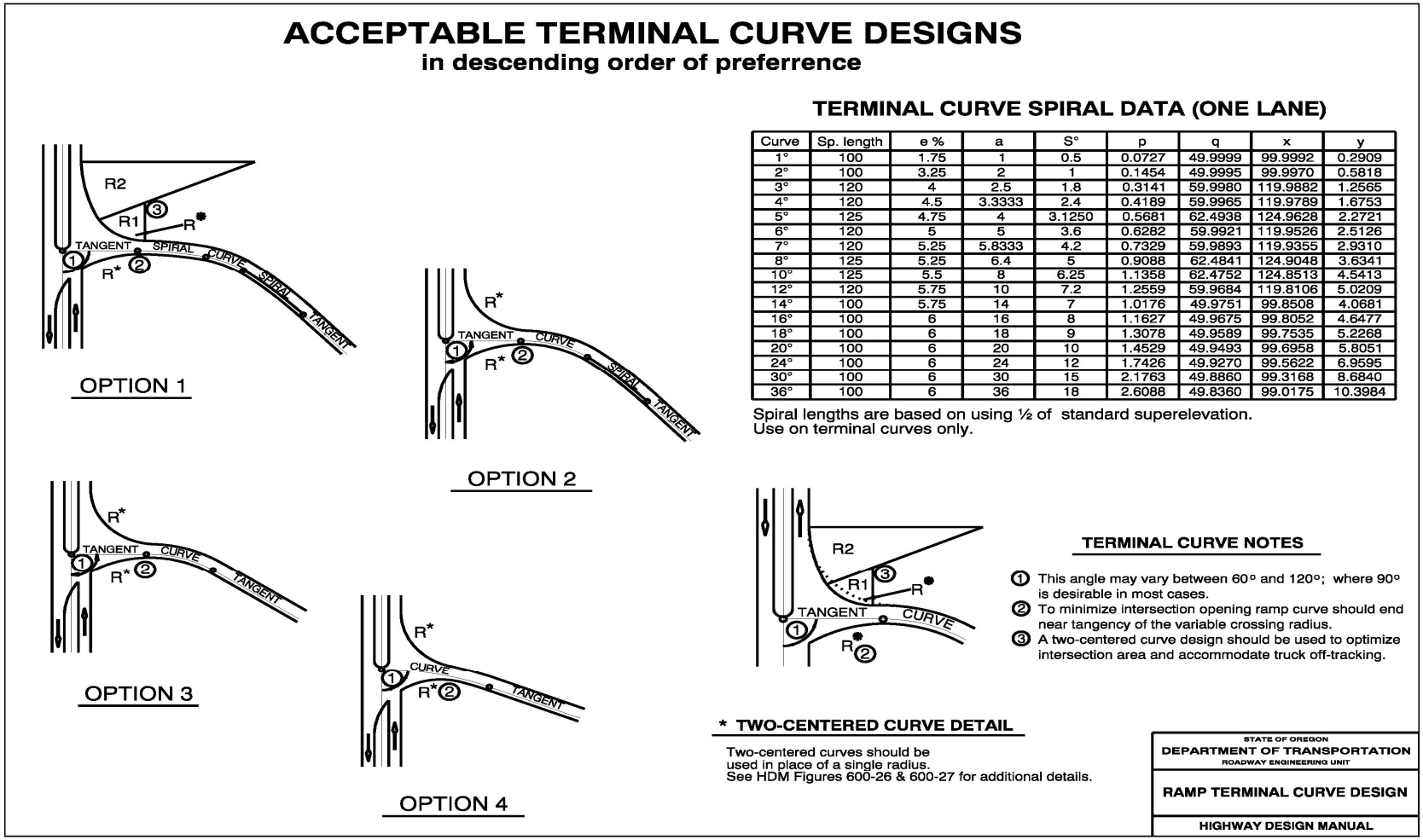


Figure 600-25: Terminal Curve Design Option



Freeway ramp terminals, and intersections pre-approved for interstate trucks shown on Route Map 7 at major truck use locations, shall accommodate the current Interstate Design Vehicle (WB-67).

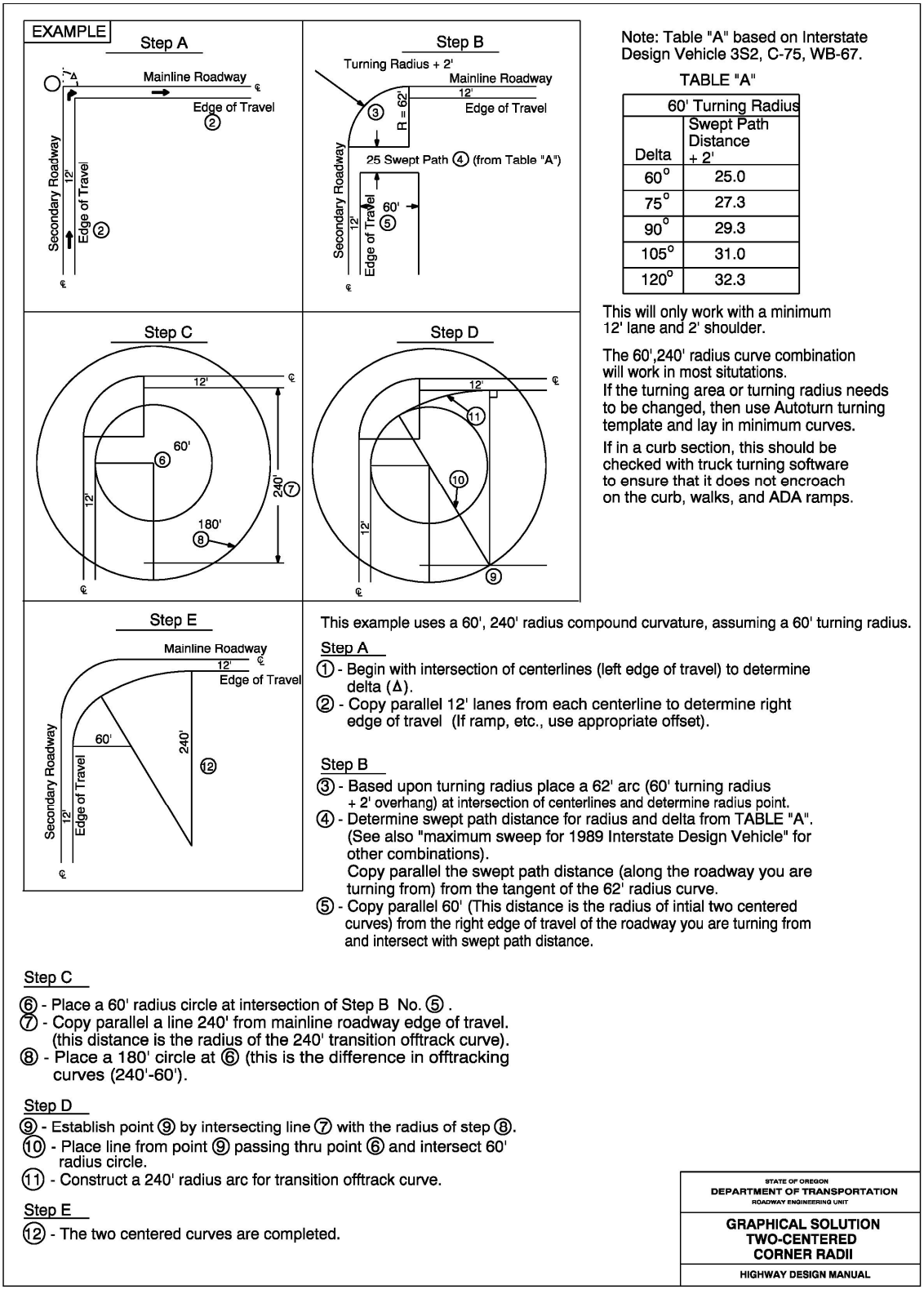
Route Map 7 can be found at: https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Forms/Motcarr/8104.pdf

Other intersections that have known large truck usage should also be designed to accommodate the current Interstate Design Vehicle. Computer and CADD generated wheel paths of the design vehicle should be used to determine adequate clearances. This is particularly important when determining stop lines for left turn bays and when designing double left turns and two lane loop ramps.

Interstate Design Vehicle swept path requirements can also be found on Figure 600-28. Typically, two centered curves are used at ramp terminals due to the benefits of matching the turning characteristics of large vehicles. Two centered curves assist in reducing the crossing distance at ramp terminals while accommodating the turning requirements of the design vehicle. Figure 600-26 and Figure 600-27 have detailed helps on developing two-centered curves.

DRAFT

Figure 600-26: Two Centered Corner Graphical Solution



Note: Table "A" based on Interstate Design Vehicle 3S2, C-75, WB-67.

TABLE "A"

60' Turning Radius	
Delta	Swept Path Distance + 2'
60°	25.0
75°	27.3
90°	29.3
105°	31.0
120°	32.3

This will only work with a minimum 12' lane and 2' shoulder.

The 60',240' radius curve combination will work in most situtations. If the turning area or turning radius needs to be changed, then use Autoturn turning template and lay in minimum curves.

If in a curb section, this should be checked with truck turning software to ensure that it does not encroach on the curb, walks, and ADA ramps.

This example uses a 60', 240' radius compound curvature, assuming a 60' turning radius.

Step A

① - Begin with intersection of centerlines (left edge of travel) to determine delta (Δ).

② - Copy parallel 12' lanes from each centerline to determine right edge of travel (If ramp, etc., use appropriate offset).

Step B

③ - Based upon turning radius place a 62' arc (60' turning radius + 2' overhang) at intersection of centerlines and determine radius point.

④ - Determine swept path distance for radius and delta from TABLE "A". (See also "maximum sweep for 1989 Interstate Design Vehicle" for other combinations).
Copy parallel the swept path distance (along the roadway you are turning from) from the tangent of the 62' radius curve.

⑤ - Copy parallel 60' (This distance is the radius of intial two centered curves) from the right edge of travel of the roadway you are turning from and intersect with swept path distance.

Step C

⑥ - Place a 60' radius circle at intersection of Step B No. ⑤ .

⑦ - Copy parallel a line 240' from mainline roadway edge of travel. (this distance is the radius of the 240' transition offtrack curve).

⑧ - Place a 180' circle at ⑥ (this is the difference in offtracking curves (240'-60').

Step D

⑨ - Establish point ⑨ by intersecting line ⑦ with the radius of step ⑧.

⑩ - Place line from point ⑨ passing thru point ⑥ and intersect 60' radius circle.

⑪ - Construct a 240' radius arc for transition offtrack curve.

Step E

⑫ - The two centered curves are completed.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

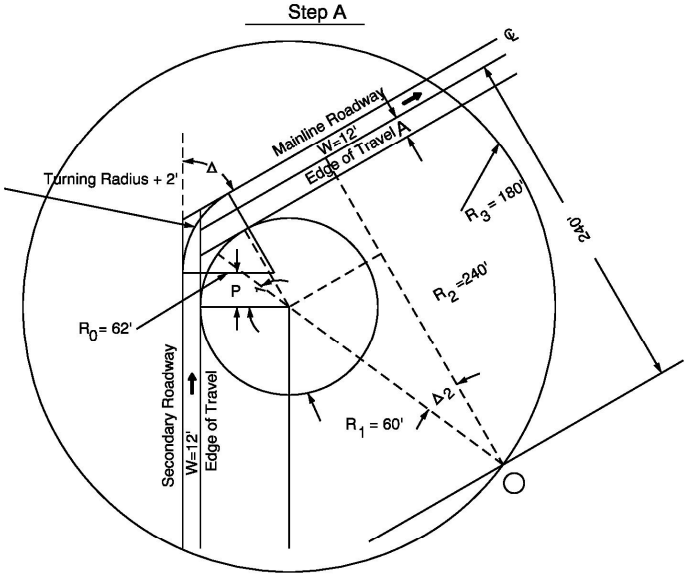
GRAPHICAL SOLUTION
TWO-CENTERED
CORNER RADII

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-27: Two Centered Corner Mathematical Layout

TWO CENTERED CURVE LAYOUT

Step A



This method uses a 60', 240' radius compound curvature, assuming a 60' turning radius.

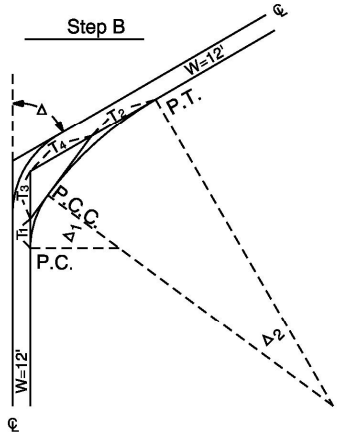
The 60', 240' radius curve combination will work in most situtations.

If the turning area or turning radius needs to be changed, then use truck turning software and lay in minimum curves.

If in a curb section, this should be checked with truck turning software to ensure that it does not encroach on the curb, walks, and ADA ramps.

Follow the illustration for the graphic method for layout of the two centered curves. Step A will be done using these equations below to calculate point ⑨.

Step B



A = distance at right angle parallel from edge of travel to 60' radius curve.

W = Lane width

R = Radius

P = Swept Path + 2'

$R = R_0 - R$

Step A

1) $A = \left(P + \left[(R_0 - R_1)\ \text{Tan}\frac{\Delta}{2}\right] - \frac{}{\text{Tan}\Delta}\right) \text{Sin}\,\Delta = 14.9186'$

2) $\Delta_2 = \text{arc Cos}\ \frac{R - (R + A)}{} = 23\ 29'\ 30''$

$\Delta_1 = \Delta - \Delta$

Step B

1) $T_1 = R_1 \tan\frac{\Delta_1}{2}$

2) $T_2 = R_2 \tan\frac{\Delta_2}{2}$

3) $T_3 = (T_1 + T_2)\ \frac{\text{Sin}\,\Delta_2}{\text{Sin}\,(180 - \Delta)}$

4) $T = T_3\ \frac{\text{Sin}\,\Delta_1}{\text{Sin}\,\Delta_2}$

$T_1 + T_3$ = distance from intersection of edge of travel to P.C. of initial two centered curve.

$T_2 + T_4$ = distance from intersection of edge of travel to P.T. of final two centered curve.

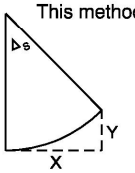
Note: Table "A" based on Interstate Design Vehicle 3S2, C-75, WB-67.

TABLE "A"

60' Turning Radius	
Delta	Swept Path Distance + 2'
Δ	P
60°	25.0
75°	27.3
90°	29.3
105°	31.0
120°	32.3

TANGENT LAYOUT OF CURVE

This method will allow to layout curves, if obstructions prevent setting radius points.



$Y = R - \sqrt{R^2 - X^2}$, $R - R\ \text{COS}\,\Delta_s$

$X = \sqrt{2\,R\,Y - Y^2}$, $R\ \text{SIN}\,\Delta_s$

$R = (X^2 + Y^2) - 2\,Y$

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

MATHEMATICAL SOLUTION
TWO-CENTERED
CORNER RADII

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Ramp intersection design simultaneously needs to provide for design vehicle movements, pedestrian and bike crossings, good lines of sight, and appropriate traffic control devices. Transit stops are also a consideration, primarily in urban contexts.

As mentioned above, care needs to be taken to minimize wrong-way movement potential. Minimizing the skew angle will normally help in dealing with these issues, but other geometric design and lower cost measures are available to help minimize wrong way potential. Studies have consistently shown that impaired and older drivers are overrepresented in wrong way type incidents. Measures to help reduce ~~risk~~wrong way potential need to account for this. Although it's often not possible to determine precisely where drivers make mistakes, certain interchange forms, such as partial service interchanges, non-freeway directional interchanges, and cloverleafs/folded diamonds with exit loops, may create driver confusion and increase wrong way ~~risks~~potential. Reconfiguring interchanges is often costly and sometimes infeasible. Lower cost measures, such as increased lighting, lane extension markings (providing more positive guidance), oversize and low mounted "Do Not Enter" and "Wrong Way" signs, and the use of raised traffic separators are demonstrated effective countermeasures. Providing decision sight distance and appropriate signing in advance of the maneuver area ~~can~~may help reduce ~~risks~~potential as well. The use of roundabout intersection control when appropriate is also a proven wrong way movement countermeasure. Refer to AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets-2018" - Pages 10-98 thru 10-102 for examples and more detailed discussion of how geometric design can help reduce wrong way movements. When designing partial cloverleaf and folded diamond intersections with crossroads, these ideas are especially helpful.

Ramp intersection design also needs to make appropriate accommodation for bicycles, pedestrians, and transit use (when applicable). HDM Parts 800 and 900 have detailed discussion on bike and pedestrian design. Refer to Part 700 for discussion of Public Transportation design. Each individual situation needs to be evaluated to determine the most appropriate solutions to apply. Coordination between all disciplines involved, preferably early in design, is important for getting good results. All of these considerations need to be balanced with the need to keep the intersection to a manageable size, and to accommodate the expected demand at an acceptable level.

Figure 600-29 and Figure 600-30 provide details on intersection layout at Single Point interchanges. The details apply for both overcrossing and undercrossing situations. Contact the ODOT Interchange Engineer for guidaince.

DRAFT

Figure 600-28: Maximum Interstate Design Vehicle (I.D.V.) Swept Path

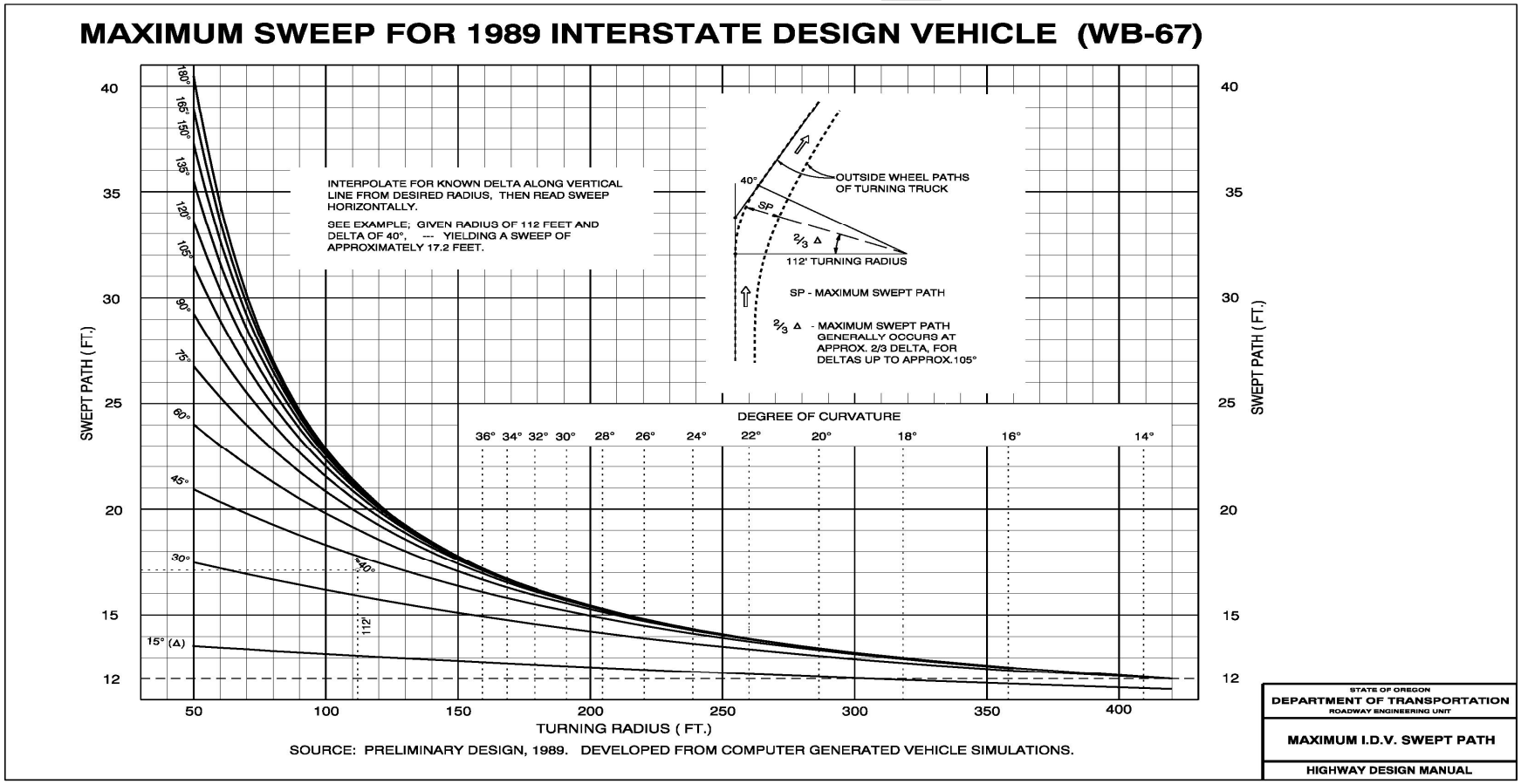
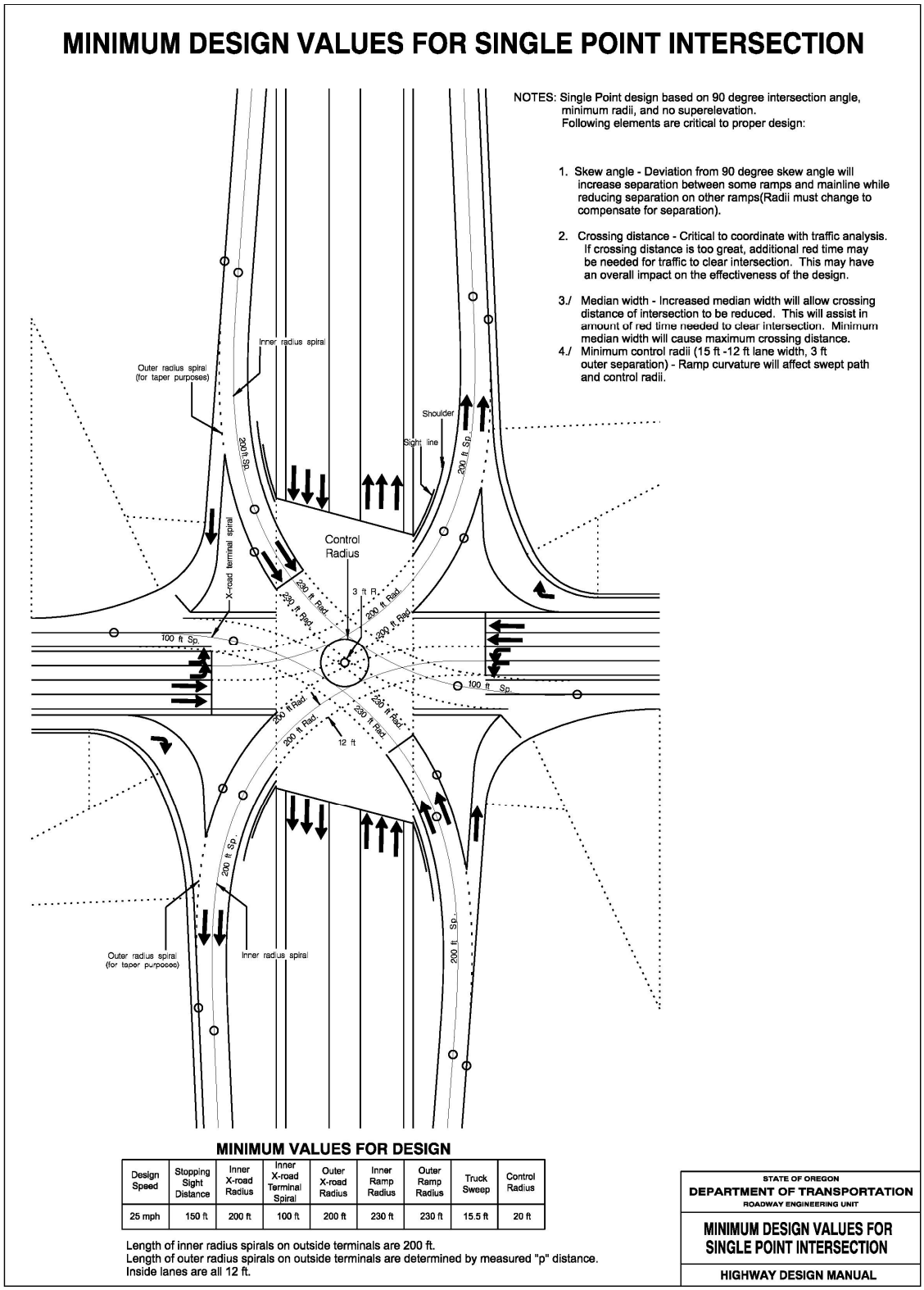
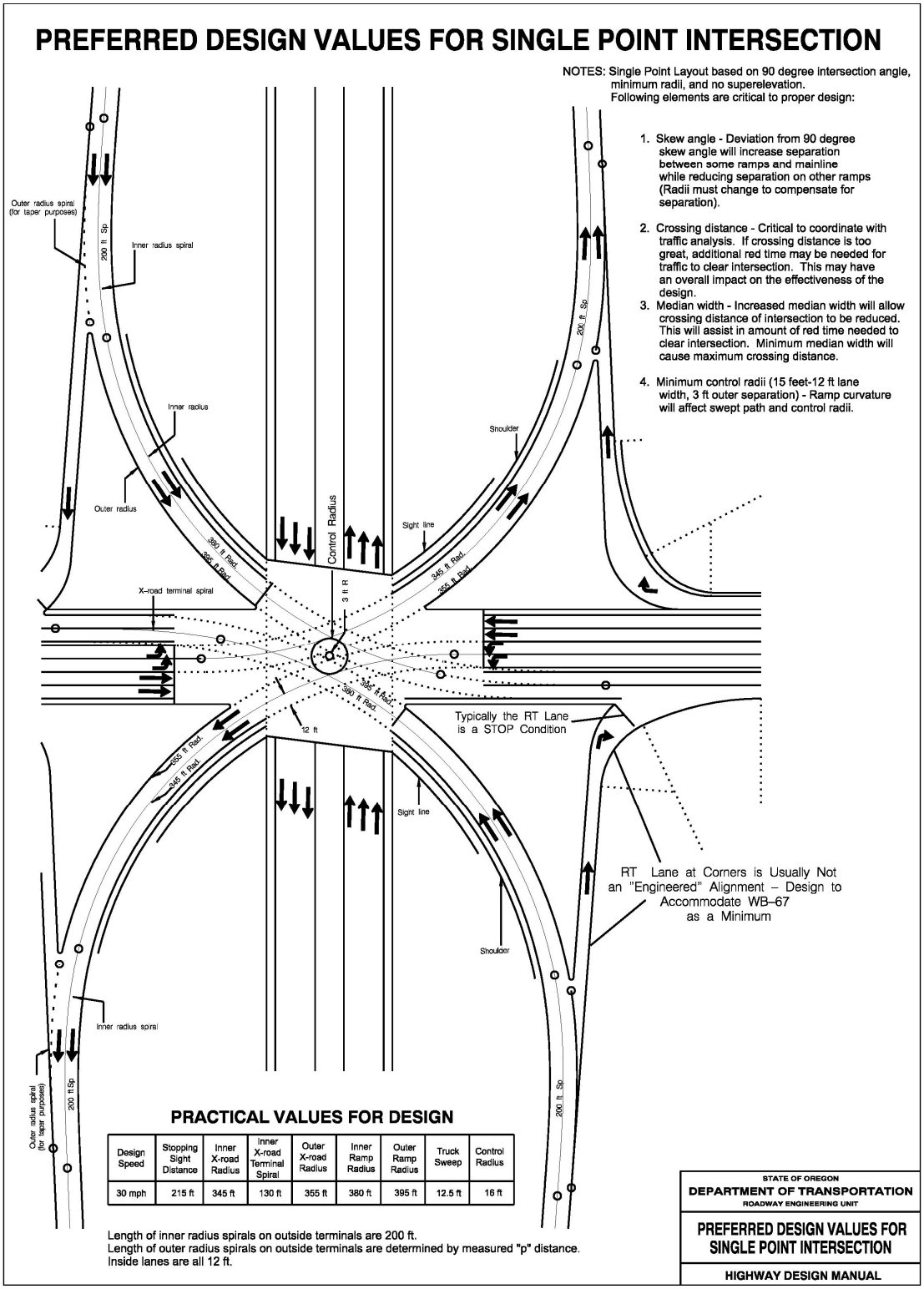


Figure 600-29: Minimal Single Point Intersection Details



Design Speed	Stopping Sight Distance	Inner X-road Radius	Inner X-road Terminal Spiral	Outer X-road Radius	Inner Ramp Radius	Outer Ramp Radius	Truck Sweep	Control Radius
25 mph	150 ft	200 ft	100 ft	200 ft	230 ft	230 ft	15.5 ft	20 ft

Figure 600-30: Preferred Single Point Intersection Details



605.9 Ramp Meters

In highly congested areas, typically urban, the use of ramp meters may be beneficial to freeway traffic operations. Ramp meters reduce merge area turbulence and regulate total freeway flow through downstream bottlenecks. ***The Technical Services Traffic-Roadway Section should be contacted when ramp meters are being considered in the project development process.*** In addition, there are geometric and safety issues with the design of the ramps and placement of the ramp meter signals that should be considered in the design.

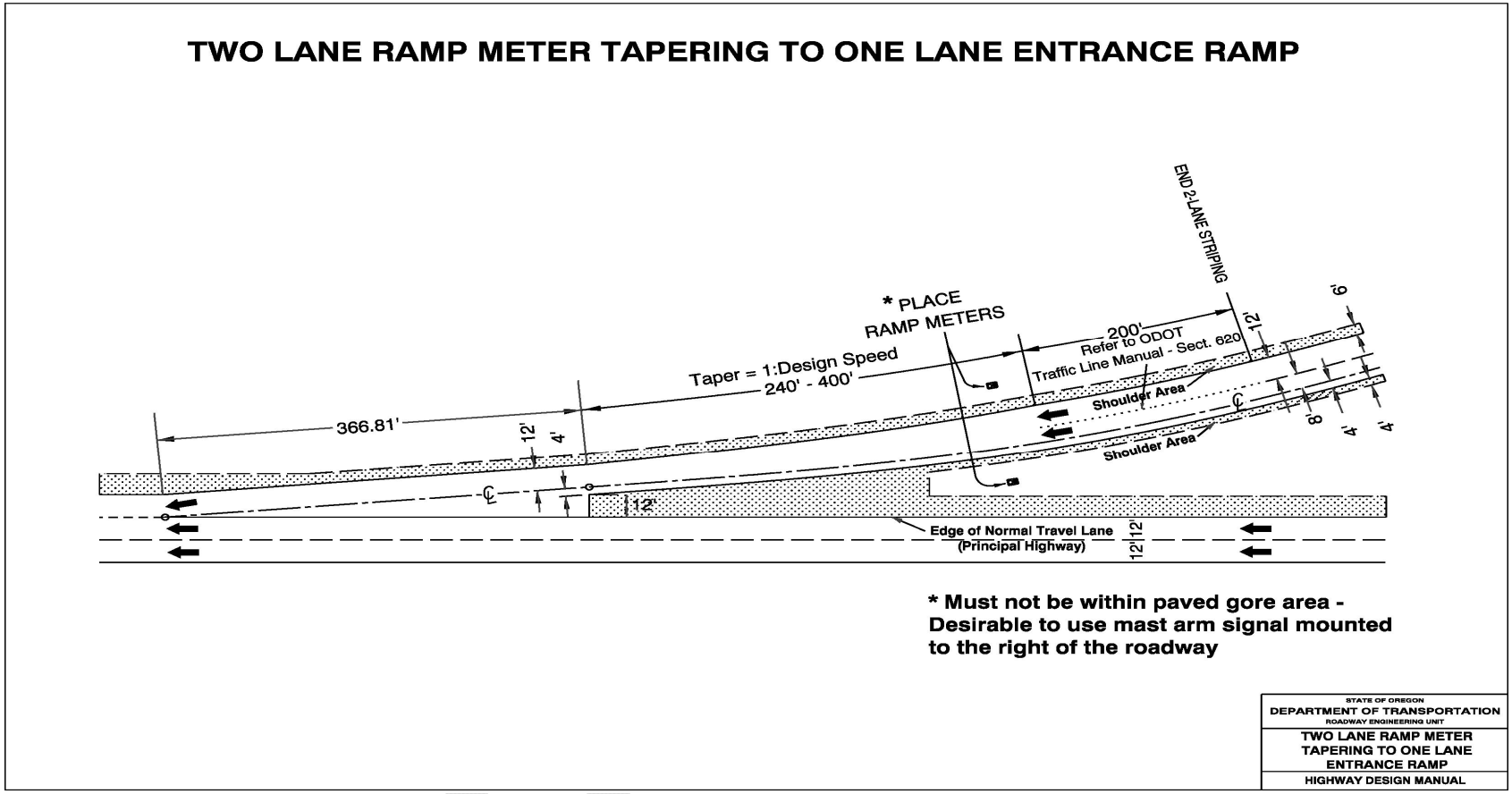
Ramp meters can be installed on single lane or two lane entrance ramps. Ramp meters should not be installed on ramps connecting freeways to freeways, as those types of ramps are designed to operate as free flow ramps. Where ramp meters are installed on a single lane entrance ramp, the ramp design shall be consistent with the appropriate design for 4R/New Construction for Freeway or Non-Freeway Ramps found in Figure 600-13 and Figure 600-14. **Metered ramp acceleration lanes shall, as a minimum, meet the values in Table "A" of Figure 600-13.** This may require lengthening existing acceleration lanes that don't meet current criteria.

In a 3R project, installation of a two lane ramp meter on a single lane ramp should be built to 4R/New Construction standards (the ramp should be widened to full two lane ramp standards). In constrained areas, an evaluation should be made to determine if the existing one lane ramp should be widened to two full standard lanes or if the existing one lane ramp width can be retrofitted for installation of two ramp meters. **Single lane ramps retrofitted for two lane ramp meters require a design exception.** The ramp meter signals should be located just prior to the paved edge of the ramp gore area. Figure 600-31 details the proper location and typical section for a two lane tapered to one lane parallel entrance ramp meter.

It is important to locate the ramp meter signals outside of the freeway clear zone. It is equally important that queued vehicles not be stopped within that same clear zone. Following the guidance in Figure 600-31 should yield a design that meets that requirement. Flat entrance curves may have some design issues, since the more gradual convergence of the roadways has a longer paved gore area. Each location where a ramp meter is considered needs to be checked to verify the clear zone. For further information contact the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section Interchange Engineers.

DRAFT

Figure 600-31: Two-Lane Ramp Meter with Tapering to One-lane Entrance Ramp



605.10 Freeway Ramp Typical Sections

The number of lanes at the actual exit or entry point determines how a ramp is categorized. Single lane ramps that taper to multiple lanes after exiting are still considered one lane – standard shoulders for one-lane ramps are appropriate. Some entrance ramps include added lanes and then taper to a single lane prior to actual freeway entry – again these are considered single lane ramps. Figure 600-32 shows standard dimensions for freeway ramps.

Standard single-lane freeway ramps are 26 feet wide. The 26' width provides for continued operation if a stalled heavy vehicle or maintenance activity requires using some of the width, although a large truck offtracking in relatively sharp ramp curves can make this more difficult. **When roadside barriers are introduced, the right shoulder is widened by 2 feet.** The left shoulder is normally not widened when barriers are used.

If an additional lane is being added to the ramp, it will normally only require adding eight feet of width – enough to get two 12 foot wide travel lanes. **If multiple lanes are needed, they should all be a minimum of 12 feet wide.** More width may be needed to accommodate truck offtracking on relatively sharp curvature. **Use a taper rate of at least 10:1 when adding the width.** The width can be added either to the left or right of the horizontal alignment as appropriate. Evaluate truck offtracking as part of the ramp design process.

Two lane interchange ramps are normally only used at system interchanges, although there are a few two lane loop connections on ODOT facilities that use two lane criteria. **Two-lane ramps consist of two 12 foot wide lanes, ten foot right and 6 foot left shoulders for a total of 40 feet width.** ***Two lane loops may need additional width for offtracking.*** Two lane entrance and exit ramps at service interchanges normally use single lane ramp shoulders. When standard shoulders are provided and barriers are present on two-lane ramps, no additional shoulder width is normally necessary (apart from the 2-foot "e" distance to right side barriers). When tighter horizontal geometry requires extra width for truck offtracking (as on loop ramps), or horizontal sight lines are restricted, more width may be necessary. The horizontal alignment for two-lane ramps is carried on the center of the traveled way (on the skip stripe between the two lanes). If more lanes are added past the gore, the location of the horizontal alignment remains the in the same place.

Non-freeway ramps can take different forms and may have slightly reduced typical cross section dimensions. **Refer to Figure 600-33 for those dimensions.** The horizontal alignment in that case is carried 2 feet from the left edge of traveled way. **As with freeway style ramps, add 2 feet (also referred to as "e" distance) to the right shoulder width when roadside barriers are present, but not to the left shoulder.**

Many non-freeway ramps are basically the same configuration as the freeway style with slightly reduced cross sectional dimensions. Jug-handle style ramps often have two-way operations and require a physical separator between directions of travel. Concrete median barrier is often not

DRAFT

appropriate for this situation. A raised traffic separator (as shown in Standard Drawing RD706) is often preferable. Each direction of travel on jug handle ramps needs to be the same width as shown in Figure 600-33 (22′ total).

DRAFT

Figure 600-32: Freeway Ramps Standard Typical Sections

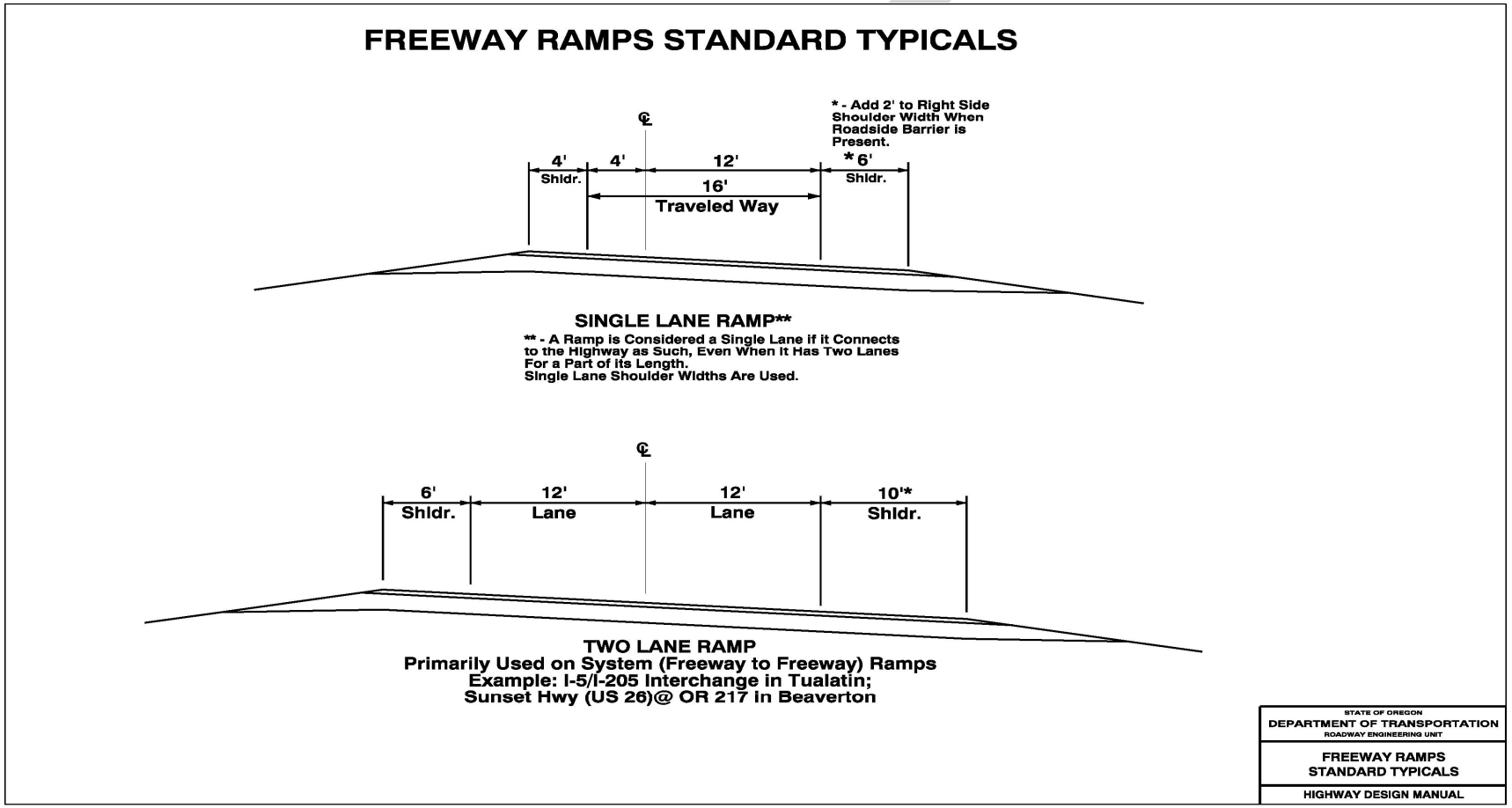
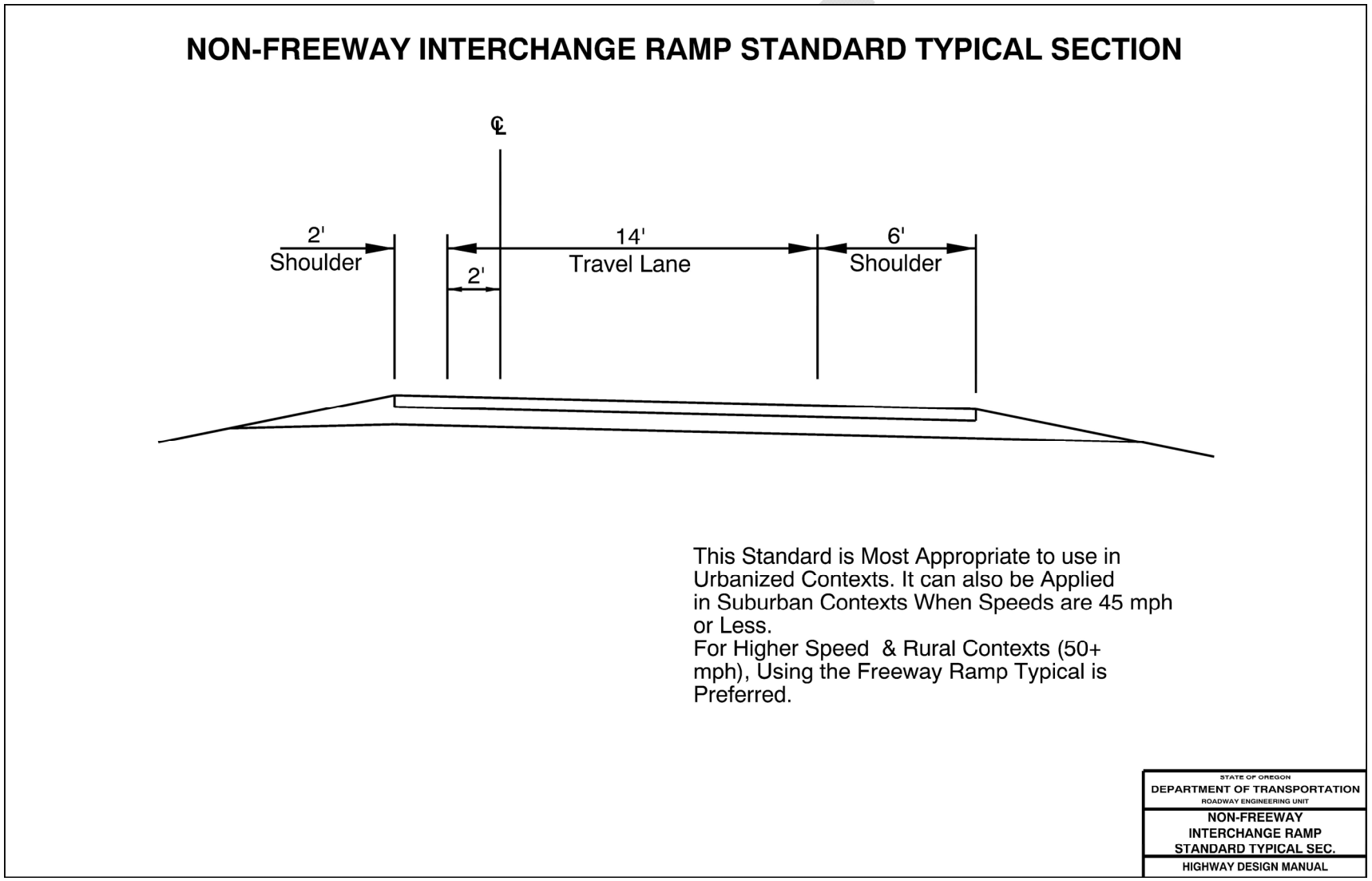


Figure 600-33: Non-Freeway Interchange Ramp Typical Section



605.11 Loop Ramps

Loop ramps should be as large as practical and with a minimum of a 36 degree curve. When designing an exit loop ramp where the crossroad is below the freeway, the maximum degree of curve is 30 degrees, and using spirals longer than the standard is recommended. Details for fitting loop ramp horizontal alignments are located in Figure 600-36 and Figure 600-37. Loop ramp connections usually come parallel to the crossroad using a spiral rather than an angled connection but can also terminate at a regular intersection. Figure 600-34 and Figure 600-35 show details for loop intersections at crossroads.

Adjacent loop ramps on the same side of the freeway are not usually permitted unless the weaving section is carried on a Collector-Distributor (C-D) road. Free flowing Loop ramps on the same side of the crossroad are discouraged due to the short weaving section normally available between them.

Loop ramp intersections with the crossroad must make appropriate provision for bicycle and pedestrian traffic. For rural interchanges the configuration shown in Figure 600-34 is typically the appropriate design. In urban or urbanizing areas, the treatment in Figure 600-35 is normally the most appropriate configuration. Each location must be evaluated for the most appropriate treatment to use, based on current and projected traffic conditions, the physical constraints on the roadway design, and other factors such as potential land use changes in the interchange area. HDM Part 800 and 900 provide guidance for various design situations. Contact the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer for additional guidance.

Loop exit ramps have issues that make their use undesirable in some situations. Deceleration areas need to be substantially longer due to tight radii on the ramps, especially on downgrades. When the loop is located beyond a grade separation structure and fills, it is not as visible to approaching users. Increasing the length of the structure to provide greater visibility can create longer spans (or more short spans with barriers) and can be costly. Significant superelevation is needed on the sharper curves, and this can create problems in areas with snow and ice. Trucks also have more issues negotiating the sharper curves. When loops exit on a downgrade, such as in a depressed interchange, many of the above issues can combine to create operational problems. When considering new interchanges, designs that include loop exits should be used with caution. Existing loop exits need to be evaluated to make sure they sufficiently provide for the above concerns. It may not be feasible to deal with every issue, but opportunities for making incremental improvements should always be sought.

DRAFT

Figure 600-34: Partial Cloverleaf Intersection Detail

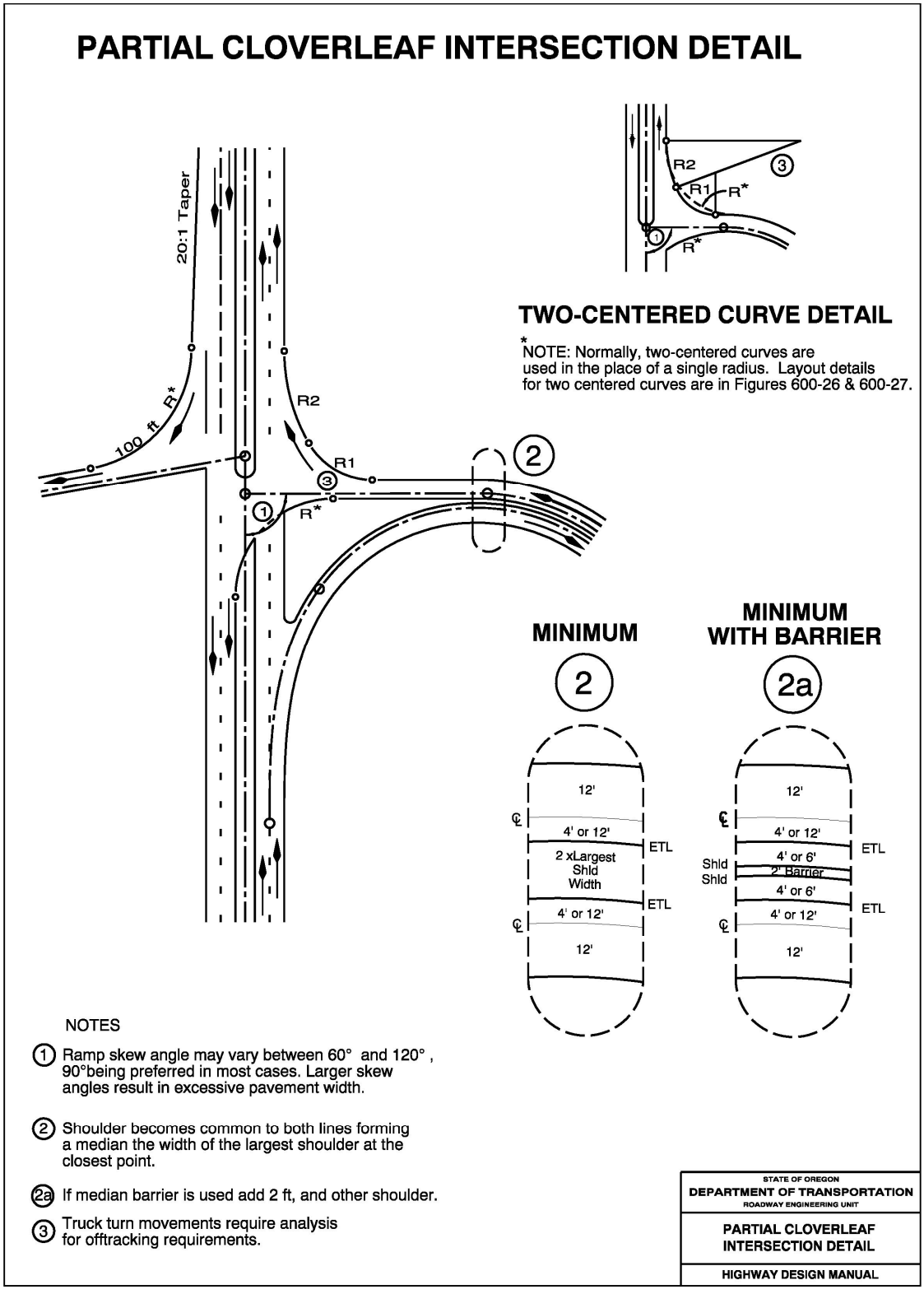


Figure 600-35: Folded Diamond Terminal Detail

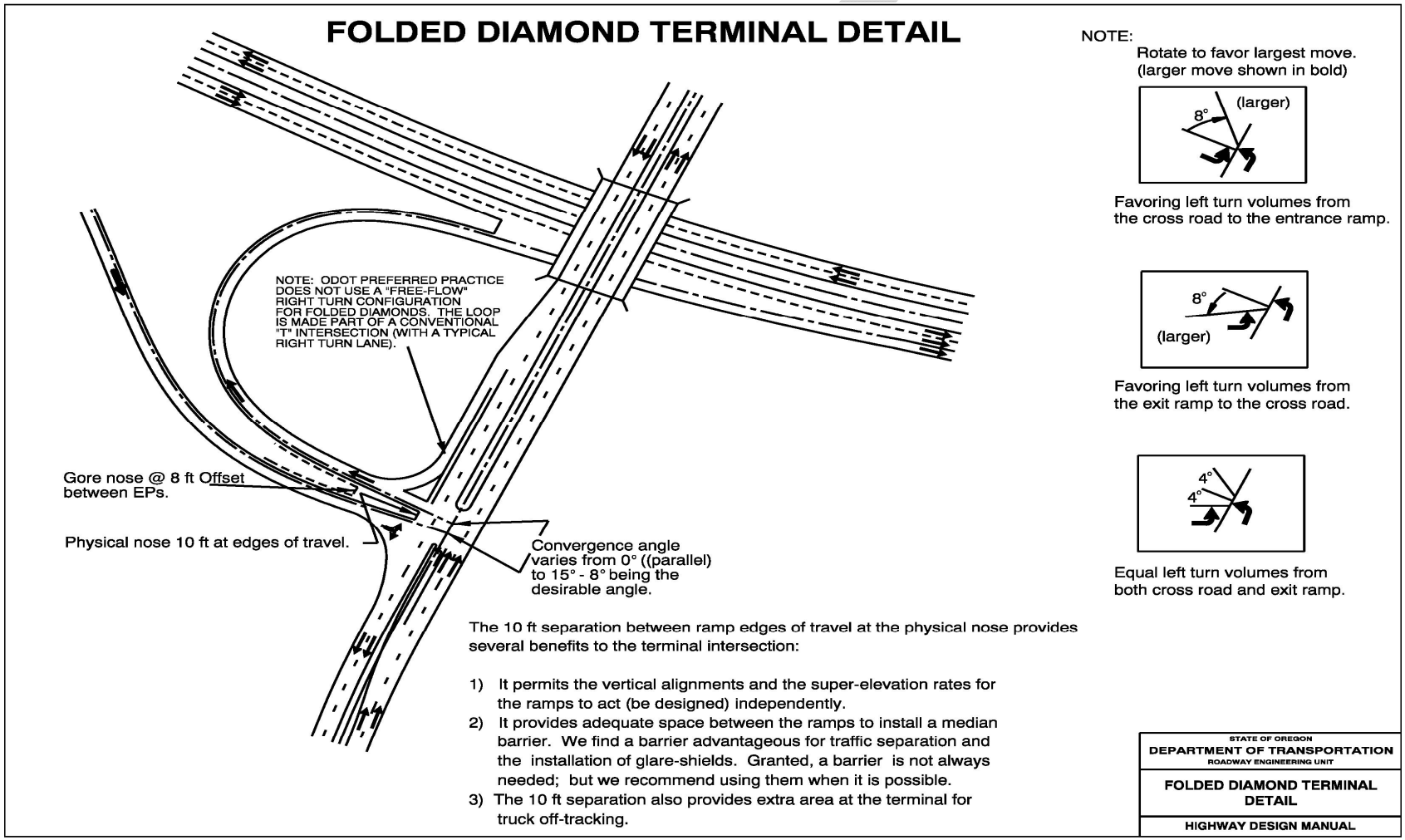
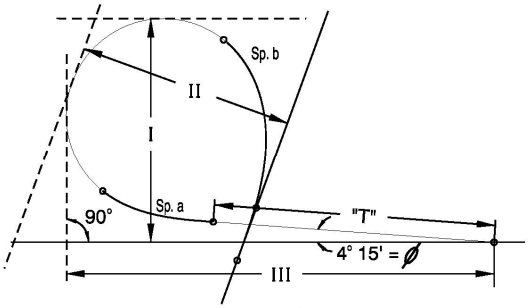


Figure 600-36: Loop Fitting Data (Single Lane)

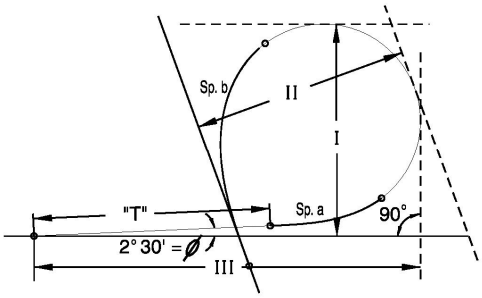
LOOP FITTING DATA (1 LANE)

EXIT LOOP



$I = (R+p)\cos\varnothing + (T+q)\sin\varnothing + R$ $\quad II = 2R + p_b$

ENTRANCE LOOP



$III = (T+q)\cos\varnothing - (R+p)\sin\varnothing + R$

Highway Design Speed=70 mph																
SPEED MPH	CURVE RADIUS	Sp. a LENGTH	p_a	q_a	Sp. b LENGTH	p_b	q_b	EXIT * "T"	I	II	III	ENTRANCE "T"	I	II	III
30	238.73	200	6.9377	99.4180	400	27.2356	195.4112	420	522.2203	504.7005	738.5158	366.81	504.5053	504.7005	693.8000
25	220.37	200	7.5077	99.3175	400	29.3778	194.6327	450	488.3270	470.1146	751.2878	366.81	468.3598	470.1146	676.1118
25	204.63	200	8.0758	99.2092	400	31.4902	193.7978	450	457.4475	440.7458	736.5636	366.81	437.4563	440.7458	660.9248
25	190.99	200	8.6417	99.0931	400	33.5708	192.9079	450	430.7571	415.5427	723.7750	366.81	410.7459	415.5427	647.7373
25	179.05	200	9.2054	98.9692	400	35.6177	191.9644	450	407.4696	393.7163	712.5577	366.81	387.4418	393.7163	636.1730
25	168.52	200	9.7667	98.8376	400	37.6291	190.9687	450	386.9840	374.6631	702.6331	366.81	366.9423	374.6631	625.9442
25	159.15	200	10.3256	98.6984	400	39.6030	189.9224	450	368.8326	357.9129	693.7846	366.81	348.7793	357.9129	616.8270

** Minimum deceleration lengths for exit ramps with heavy truck volumes								
SPEED MPH	CURVE RADIUS	Sp. a LENGTH	p_a	q_a	EXIT * "T"	I	II	III
30	238.73	200	6.9377	99.4180	700	542.9707	504.7005	1017.7459
25	220.37	200	7.5077	99.3175	745	510.1890	470.1146	1045.4766
25	204.63	200	8.0758	99.2092	745	479.3095	440.7458	1030.7524
25	190.99	200	8.6417	99.0931	745	452.6191	415.5427	1017.9638
25	179.05	200	9.2054	98.9692	745	429.3316	393.7163	1006.7465
25	168.52	200	9.7667	98.8376	745	408.8460	374.6631	996.8219
25	159.15	200	10.3256	98.6984	745	390.6946	357.9129	987.9734

NOTES:

* Exit Loop "T" Distances variable for grades in excess of 3%.

** Consideration for use should be given whenever truck volumes reach or exceed 6 trucks per hour.
A 36° exit loop is considered very minimal for design; using 30° or flatter is highly desirable. A 30°curve (or flatter) is required on exit loops on a downgrade.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

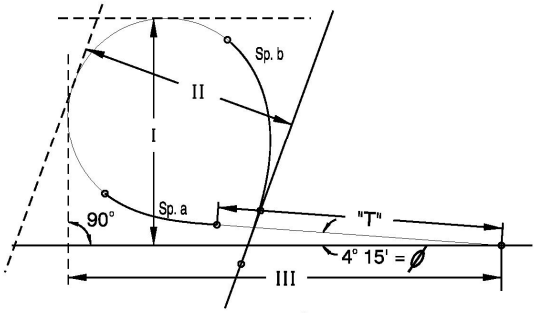
LOOP FITTING DATA (1 LANE)

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

Figure 600-37: Loop Fitting Data (Two Lane)

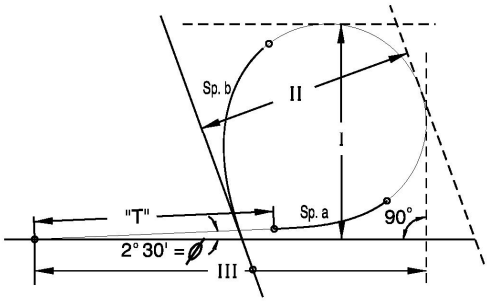
LOOP FITTING DATA (2 LANE)

EXIT LOOP



$I = (R+p)\cos\varnothing + (T+q)\sin\varnothing + R$ $\quad II = 2R + p_b$

ENTRANCE LOOP



$III = (T+q)\cos\varnothing - (R+p)\sin\varnothing + R$

Highway Design Speed=70 mph																
SPEED MPH	CURVE RADIUS	Sp. a LENGTH	p_a	q_a	Sp. b LENGTH	p_b	q_b	EXIT * "T"	I	II	III	ENTRANCE "T"	I	II	III
30	238.73	240	9.9629	118.9964	400	27.2356	195.4112	510	533.3578	504.7005	847.5688	550.2141	516.3816	504.7005	896.4580
25	220.37	240	10.7762	118.8236	400	29.3778	194.6327	540	499.7018	470.1146	860.2506	550.2141	480.4760	470.1146	878.6869
25	204.63	240	11.5856	118.6375	400	31.4902	193.7978	540	469.0573	440.7458	845.4309	550.2141	449.8103	440.7458	863.4117
25	190.99	240	12.3907	118.4381	400	33.5708	192.9079	540	442.5992	415.5427	832.5415	550.2141	423.3352	415.5427	850.1306
25	179.05	240	13.1911	118.2255	400	35.6177	191.9644	540	419.5412	393.7163	821.2182	550.2141	400.2637	393.7163	838.4673
25	168.52	240	13.9867	118.0000	400	37.6291	190.9687	540	399.2822	374.6631	811.1825	550.2141	379.9941	374.6631	828.1344
25	159.15	240	14.7771	117.7616	400	39.6030	189.9224	540	381.3544	357.9129	802.2180	550.2141	362.0581	357.9129	818.9081

** Minimum deceleration lengths for exit ramps with heavy truck volumes								
SPEED MPH	CURVE RADIUS	Sp. a LENGTH	p_a	q_a	EXIT * "T"	I	II	III
30	238.73	240	9.9629	118.9964	790	554.1082	504.7005	1126.7988
25	220.37	240	10.7762	118.8236	835	521.5638	470.1146	1154.4394
25	204.63	240	11.5856	118.6375	835	490.9193	440.7458	1139.6197
25	190.99	240	12.3907	118.4381	835	464.4612	415.5427	1126.7303
25	179.05	240	13.1911	118.2255	835	441.4032	393.7163	1115.4070
25	168.52	240	13.9867	118.0000	835	421.1442	374.6631	1105.3714
25	159.15	240	14.7771	117.7616	835	403.2164	357.9129	1096.4068

NOTES:

* Exit Loop "T" Distances variable for grades in excess of 3%.

** Consideration for use should be given whenever truck volumes reach or exceed 6 trucks per hour.

A 36° (R-159.15') exit loop is considered very minimal for design; using 30° (R-190.99') or flatter is highly desirable.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

LOOP FITTING DATA (2 LANE)

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

605.12 Frontage Roads and Outer Separations

The area between the traveled ways of a through traffic roadway and a frontage road or street is called the outer separation. **Outer separations shall be a minimum of 33 feet (desirably 40 feet)** between edge of travel lanes for one way frontage roads with traffic proceeding in the same direction as the adjacent freeway or expressway traffic. **A minimum of 40 feet (desirably 50 feet)** is the required outer separations for frontage roads having two way traffic. **These same minimums also apply between ramps and frontage roads**. *Screening of headlight glare should be used on frontage roads with two way traffic or traffic opposing the main roadway or ramp traffic.* These outer separation requirements should not be confused with the ramp terminal and roadway spacing standards (OAR Section 734-051 criteria).

A thorough study should be made to determine appropriate widths of outer separations on ground level freeways. The outer separation should be as wide as can be economically attained to provide a safe buffer zone (see AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018", page 8-5).

At intersections on major streets and on expressways, outer separations shall be minimum of 40 feet (desirably 65 feet) to provide room for turning movements.

Intersections of roads or streets with a crossroad having a structure shall be located 200 feet or more from the end of the structure to improve sight distance for vehicles on the intersecting facilities, unless the intersections are signalized. This applies to grade separations without ramps (non-interchanges). Spacing to crossroad intersections (including frontage roads) in the vicinity of interchanges is subject to OAR Chapter 734-051 criteria.

Section 606 Non-Freeway Interchange Design

606.1 General

The types of interchange designs on highways other than freeways are quite varied. They can range from freeway designs to intersection right in/out jug handles. Many of the design standards for freeway interchange design are also applicable to non-freeway interchange design. Unless otherwise noted below, the freeway design standards generally apply to non-freeway designs as well. However, other design elements and issues related to non-freeway design are discussed below.

DRAFT

606.2 Interchange Spacing

Table 600-2 shows the access spacing standards for non-freeway locations. The spacing shown is measured crossroad to crossroad centerline distance. Other access management spacing standards such as the distance between the ramp terminal and the first approach or first full intersection, and the distance between start and end of tapers of adjacent interchanges need to comply with the OAR Chapter 734-051 spacing standards or obtain a spacing deviation, approved by the Region Access Management Engineer (RAME).

606.3 Design Speed

As with freeway style interchanges, the design speed of the ramps should be between 50 percent and 85 percent of the design speed of the mainline. **However, the ramp design speed should not be below 25 mph. In certain fully urbanized contexts, a lower design speed might be considered, but a design exception is required.**

606.4 Typical Section

The design of the crossroad should be the same as for freeways. The ramp cross sections may be different, however. Non-freeway ramp sections *can use the typical section shown in Figure 600-33 when using "jug handle' style designs.* This configuration is most appropriate in urban and suburban context, where speeds are 45 mph or less. Facilities that are grade separated in those contexts can consider using the non-freeway section as well; operational analysis needs to be done to verify that using this section is appropriate. Large volumes of freight vehicles (e.g.) may indicate that the non-freeway section is not adequate. **If the interchange is a more typical open road type design or in a rural context, or the speeds are 50+ mph, use the regular freeway ramp typical section.**

606.5 Access Control

In addition to controlling access at the ramp terminals at the crossroad, access control along the mainline needs to be acquired upstream and downstream of the deceleration and acceleration lanes. Access needs to be controlled one mile (urban)/two miles (rural) in advance of a deceleration lane and one mile (urban)/two miles (rural) downstream of an acceleration lane. Achieving the access spacing may be very difficult on already developed existing roadways and often requires a spacing deviation. OAR Chapter 734-051 contains information on access management requirements.

DRAFT

606.6 Deceleration Lanes

All exit ramps for non-freeway interchanges require a deceleration lane. The deceleration lane can be a freeway style exit taper with gore area, or an intersection right turn deceleration lane. Either option is adequate for loop ramp or jug handle style ramps. Interchanges that look like a standard diamond should use freeway style deceleration design.

606.7 Acceleration Lanes

The decision to use acceleration lanes will vary depending upon the speed of the highway, ramp volume, highway volume, number of lanes, level of service, and the highway roadside culture downstream from the ramp.

Acceleration lanes should generally only be used when merging with a multilane highway. Only where safety is not compromised, could acceleration lanes be considered on two lane two-way roadways. Safety can be compromised when intersections or road approaches are located in the area of the acceleration lane (even on multi-lane facilities), or if the length of the lane is inappropriate for the specific situation. Acceleration lanes that are longer than necessary may encourage their use as a passing section, while those that are too short will probably not be used effectively. ***Where acceleration lanes are used, they should conform to the lengths shown on Figure 600-13.*** Non-freeway acceleration lanes may or may not use the entrance angle design associated with freeway interchanges. Consistency among ramps and throughout sections should be maintained as much as possible. If the exit ramps utilize an exit angle, the following acceleration lane should use the entrance angle. However, each interchange and ramp needs to be evaluated separately to determine the appropriate design. Typically, if the facility uses a "freeway style" interchange, exit and entrance angles should be used. "Jughandle style" interchanges should use parallel deceleration and acceleration ramps. Refer to Figure 600-8 for examples of non-freeway interchange designs.

Acceleration lanes for at-grade intersections that are not associated with non-freeway interchange design shall follow the requirements outlined in Part 500 of this manual.

606.8 Transitional and Combination Type Facilities

Facilities that are transitioning from at-grade to grade separated connections require special attention. Mixing of at-grade and interchange type controls ~~can create~~adds complexity to safety and operational ~~problems~~considerations. An example of this situation is when an at-grade intersection is located near the end of an interchange acceleration lane, setting up conflicting speed/lane change maneuvers.

DRAFT

It is also very undesirable to have an at-grade intersection in between two interchanges, even those with jughandle style ramps. It is preferable to proceed with grade separating and adding ramps in a more "linear" fashion, adding the grade separations from one intersection to the next in progression. Traffic demand, existing development, and other factors can make this approach impractical. Consideration must always be given to the likely operational and safety effects of transitioning a corridor in a non-linear fashion. Tables 6 and 7 in OAR Chapter 734-051 give minimum spacing criteria to guide on planning and design for non-freeway facilities. ~~A basic purpose of these criteria is to provide for safe operating conditions.~~

As a practical matter, meeting these criteria may require developing frontage road systems for local access. It may suffice to complete missing elements of the local road network (where terrain and existing development allow for it). Grade separations without ramps spaced at regular intervals provide for connectivity across the main facility.

Long-term planning for transitioning facilities should consider the need for and impact of future improvements. An example of this is the future conversion of a jughandle type interchange to a standard freeway style set of ramps. In cases where it is expected that a grade separation might be converted to an interchange, adequate spacing between other features is necessary.

Coordination between planning and project development is very important in this context. Good communication can help to minimize difficult, expensive, and sometimes ineffective afterthought fixes. Planners and engineers must strive to get a common understanding of problems, needs, and constraints from each other's viewpoint.

DRAFT

Figure 600-38: Non-Freeway Interchange Example

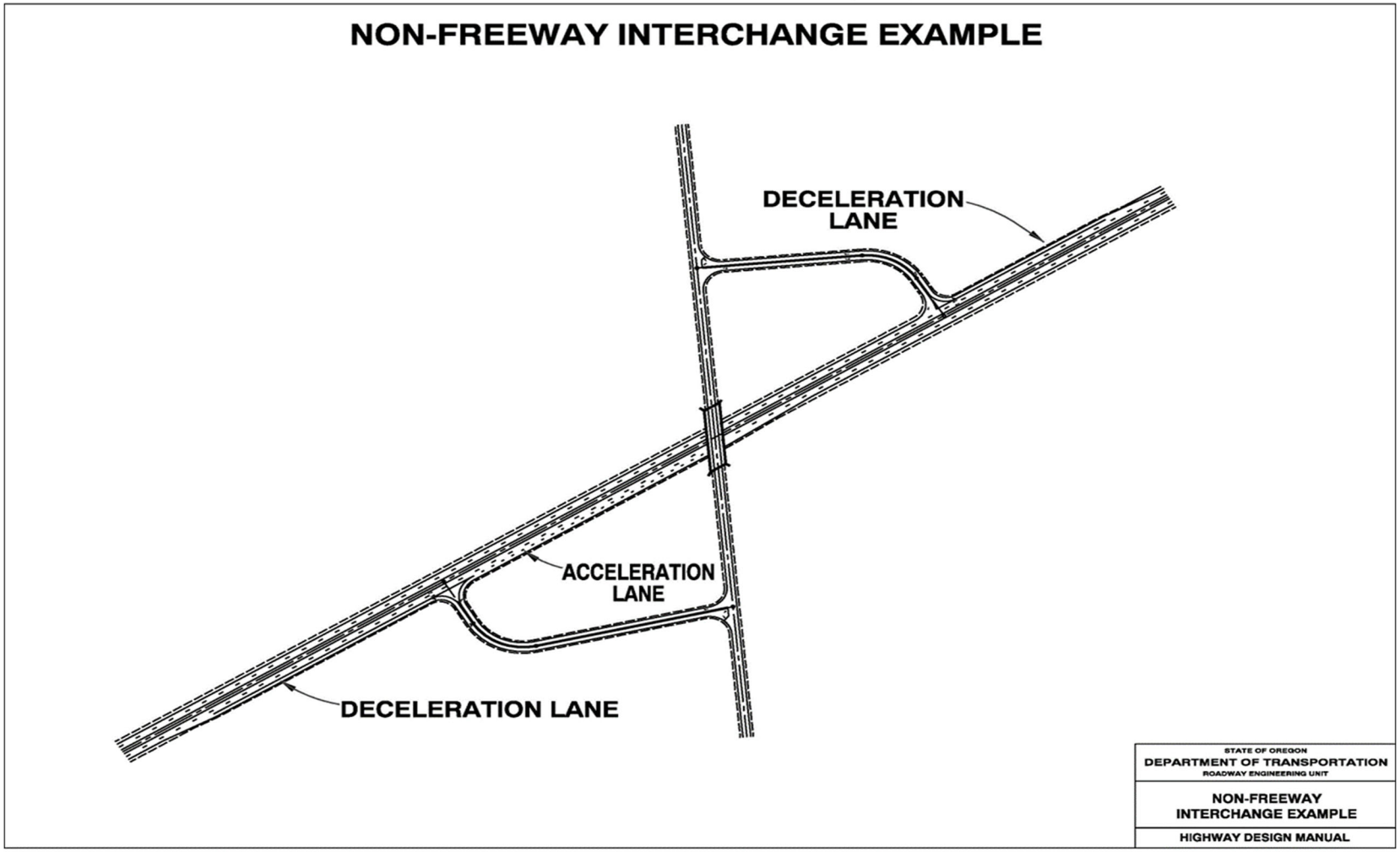
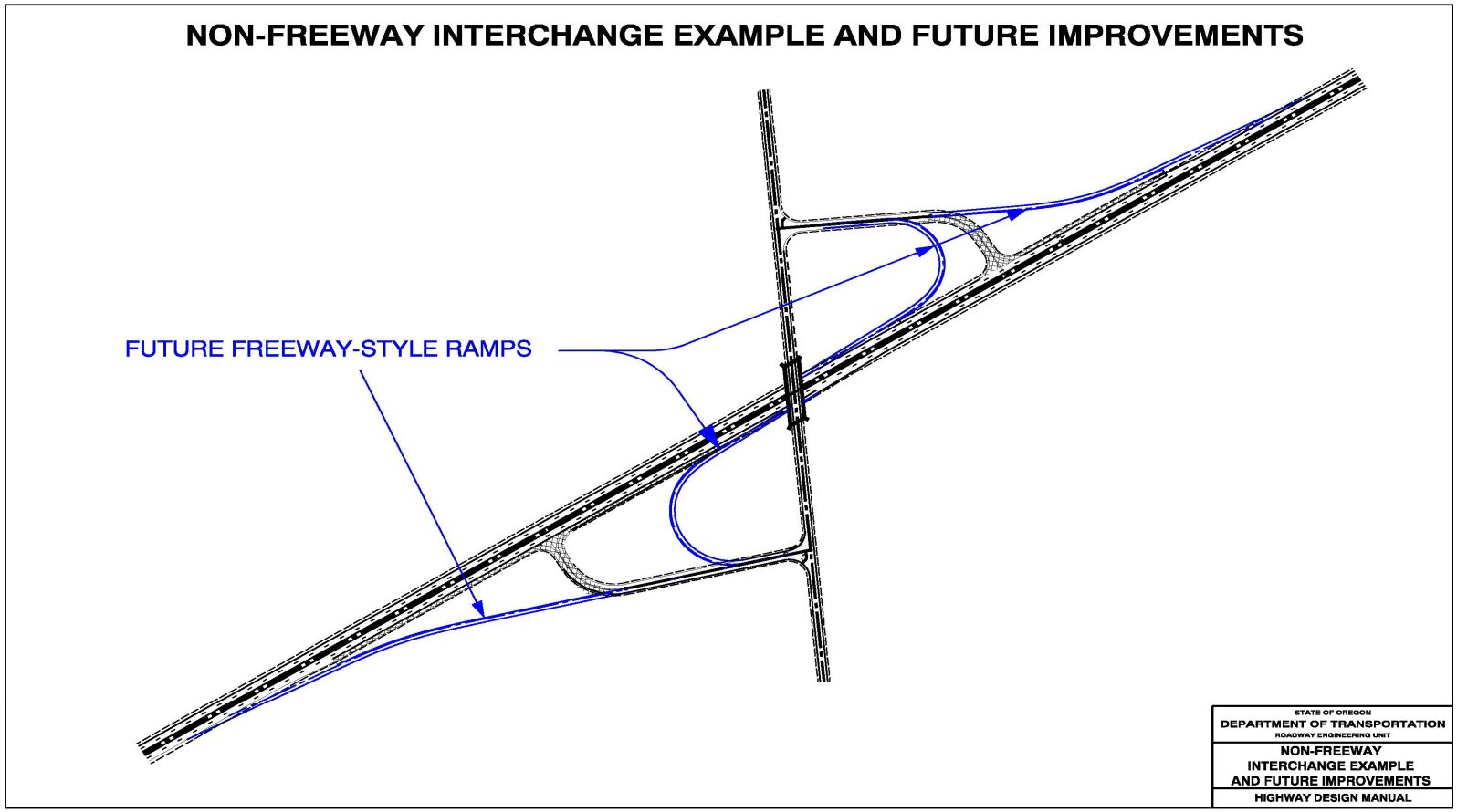


Figure 600-39: Non-Freeway Interchange Example and Future Improvements



Section 607 Accommodating Bicycles and Pedestrians

Bicycle and pedestrian movements must be accommodated through interchanges, even in rural locations. Even in urban or suburban areas where sidewalks are in place, the existing accommodations may not be suitable for current needs. It is equally important to develop the design for bikes and pedestrians as well as vehicles. Some interchange configurations (such as the Single Point or Diverging Diamond) require multi-stage crossings and refuge islands. Occasionally it is necessary to provide separated facilities through complex interchanges. Overhead illumination may also be needed. Each discipline involved in the design (geometry, traffic, structure) needs to coordinate to ensure the needs of various users are met.

The primary conflict points for these modes are at the ramp intersections. Refer to Part 500 (Intersections), 800 and 900 (bicycles-pedestrians-ADA) of this manual for detailed guidance on how to treat these areas.

For all interchange projects, designers should coordinate with the ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer, Region Active Transportation Liaisons, and the ODOT Interchange Engineer. The combined effects of interchange operations and the context in which the interchange is located can be complex and needs a careful review.

Section 608 References and Design Aids

AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets - 2018"

AASHTO "A Policy on Design Standards-Interstate System - 2016"

FHWA Policy Statement on Additional Interchanges to the Interstate System – May 22, 2017 Revision

The "Oregon Highway Plan - 1999" ("OHP"), plus amendments.

Oregon Administrative Rules (OAR) Chapter 734, Division 51.

AASHTO *"A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets-2018"*- Chapter 10, pages 10-82 to 10-87

Chapter 10 of the AASHTO *"Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets – 2018"*, page 10-3 to 10-5 has a detailed discussion on things to consider for each interchange warrant.

Tables 6 and 7 in OAR Chapter 734-051 give minimum spacing criteria to guide on planning and design for non-freeway facilities.

Figure 600-40: Design Aid 1 - Exit on Inside of Curve – Case A

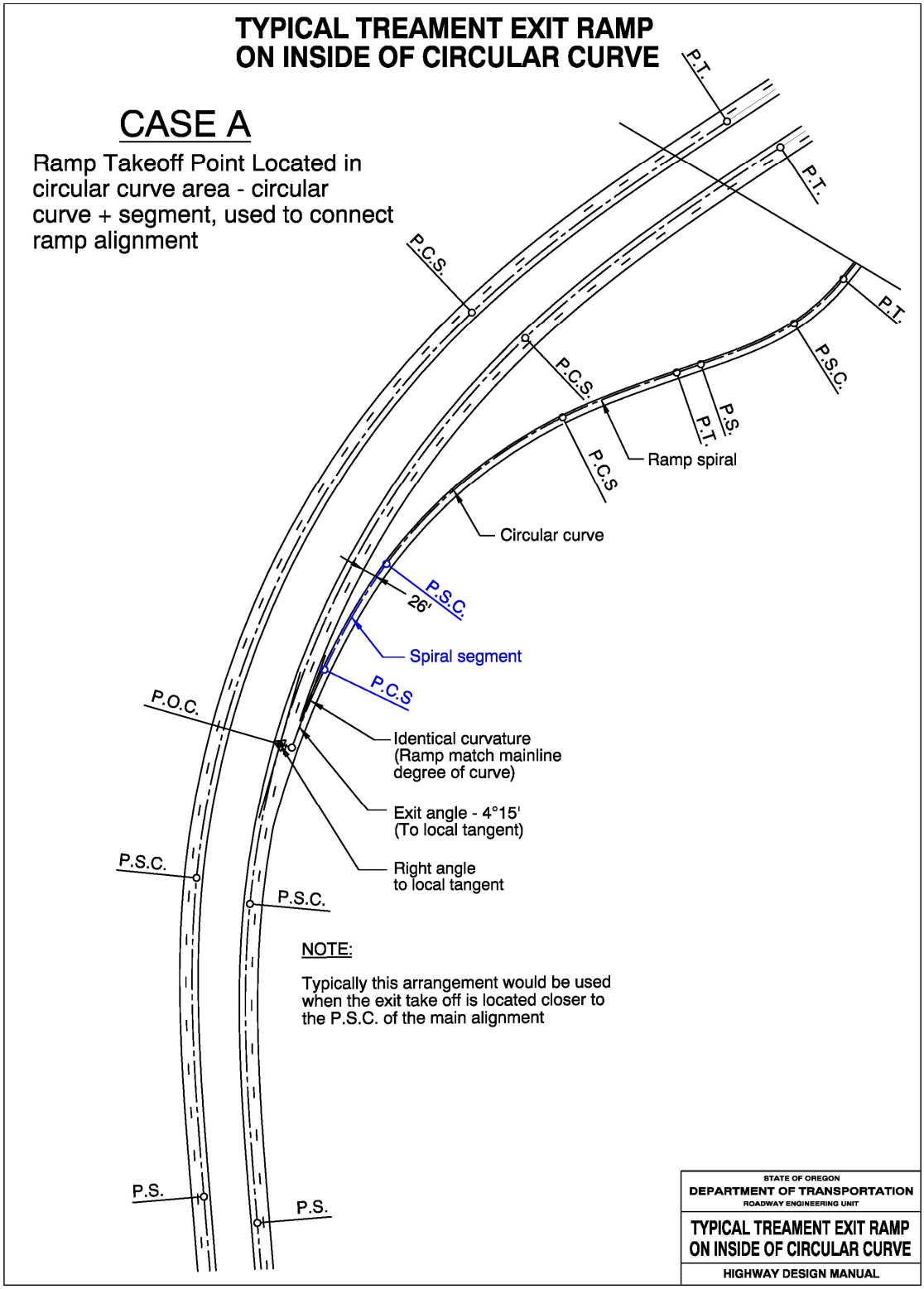


Figure 600-41: Design Aid 2 – Exit on Inside of Curve Case B

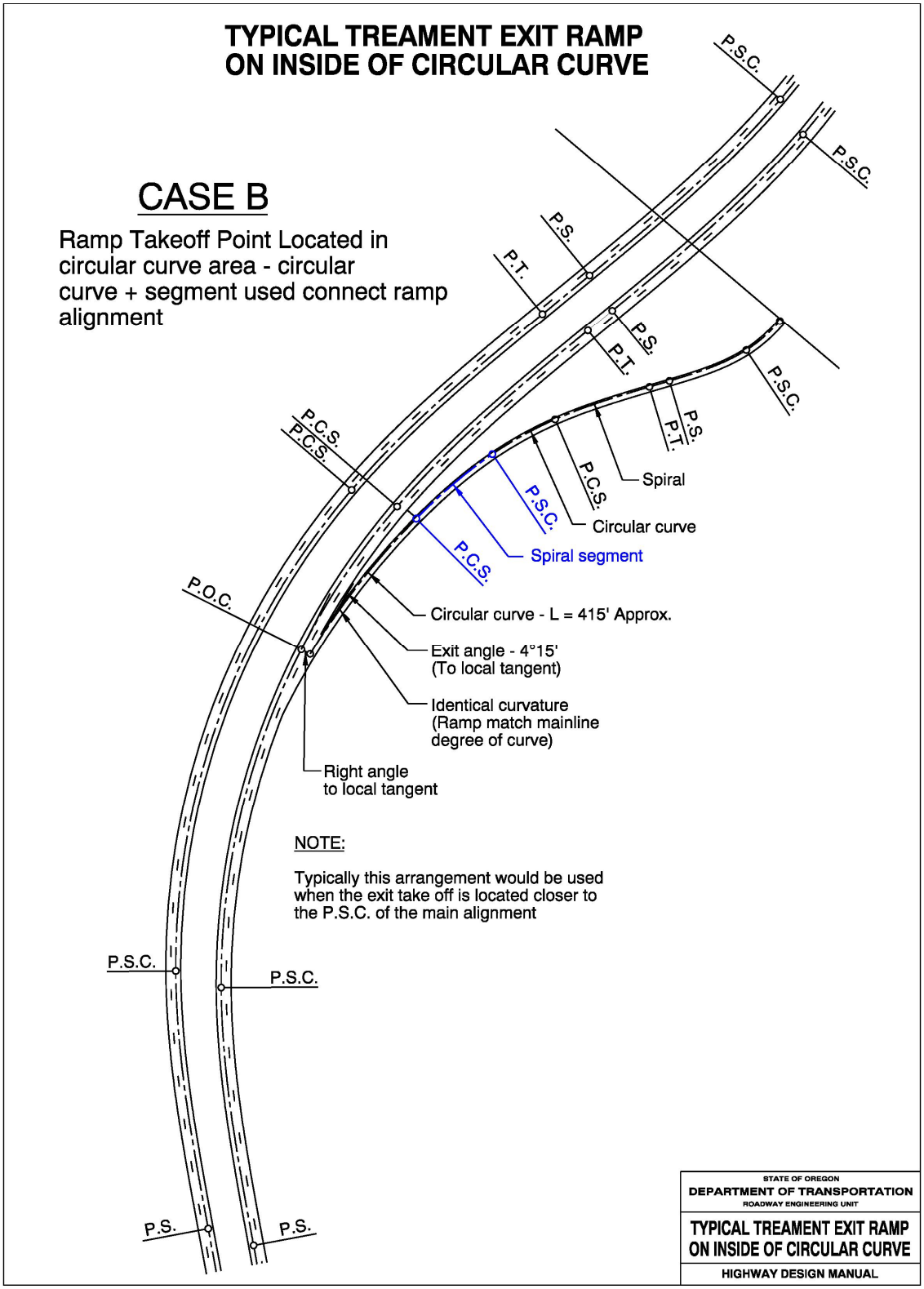


Figure 600-42: Design Aid 3 - Exit from Inside of Curve in Leading Spiral Area

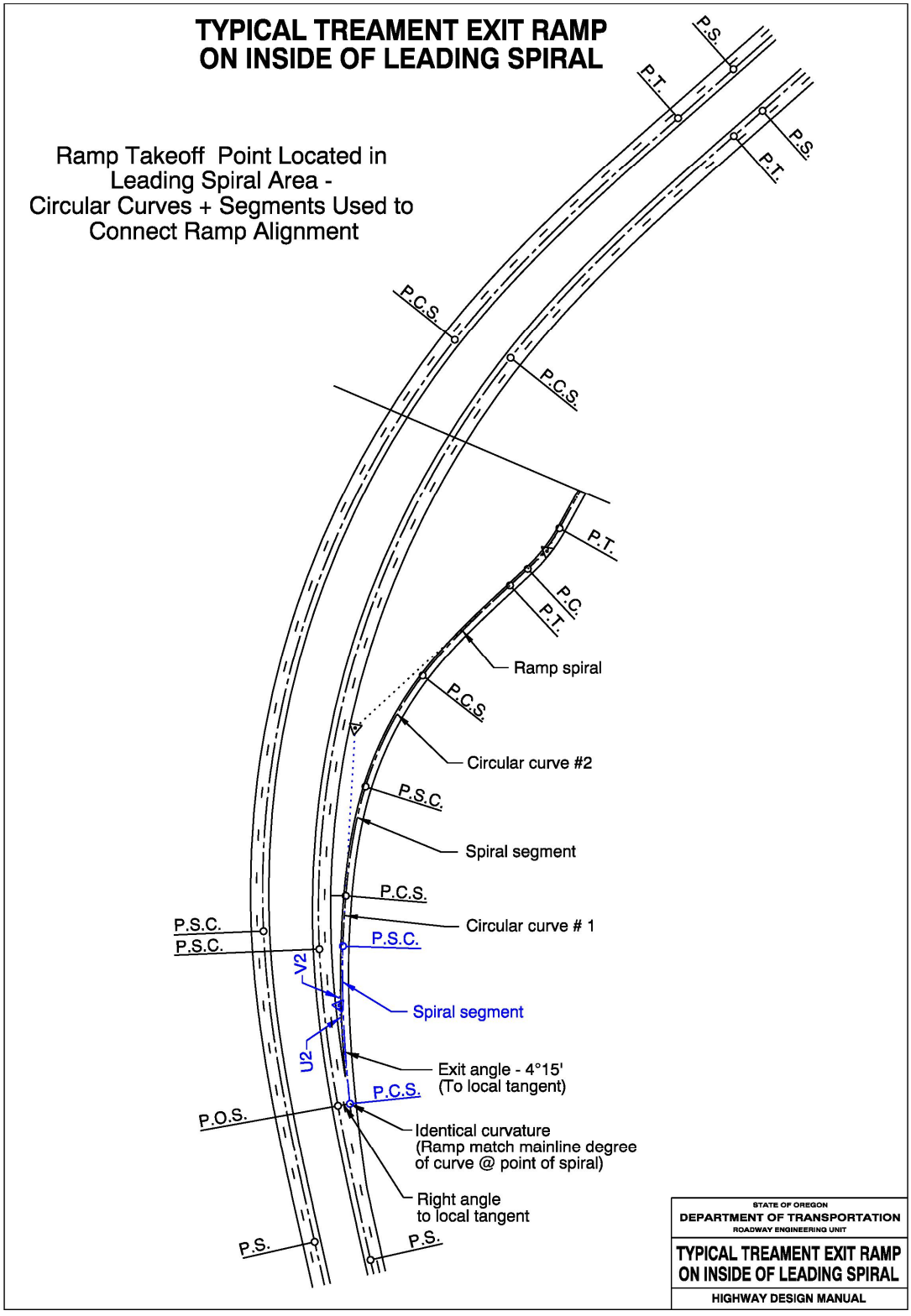


Figure 600-43: Design Aid 4 -Exit from Inside of Curve in Trailing Spiral Area

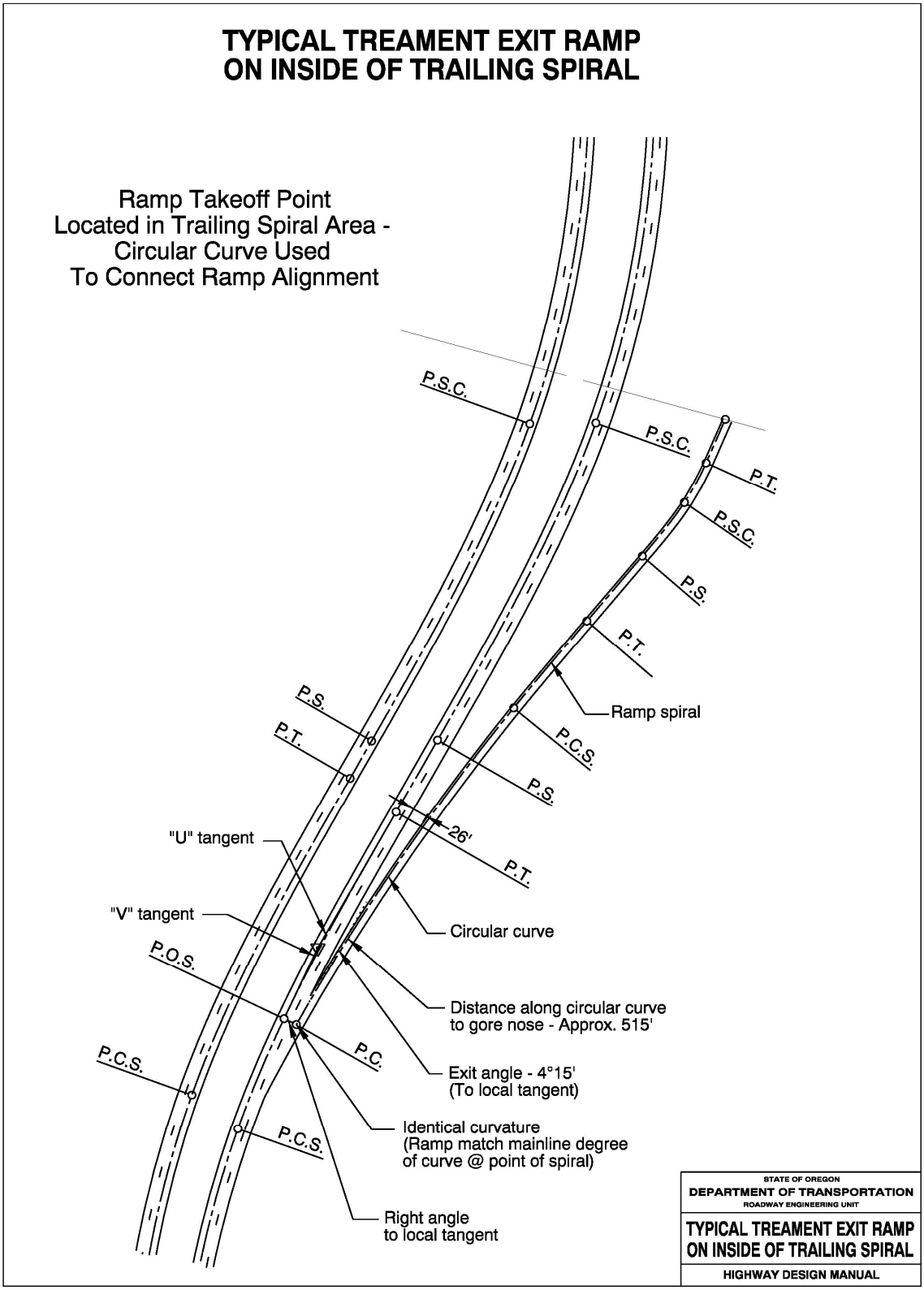


Figure 600-44: Design Aid 5 -Exit from Outside of Circular Curve

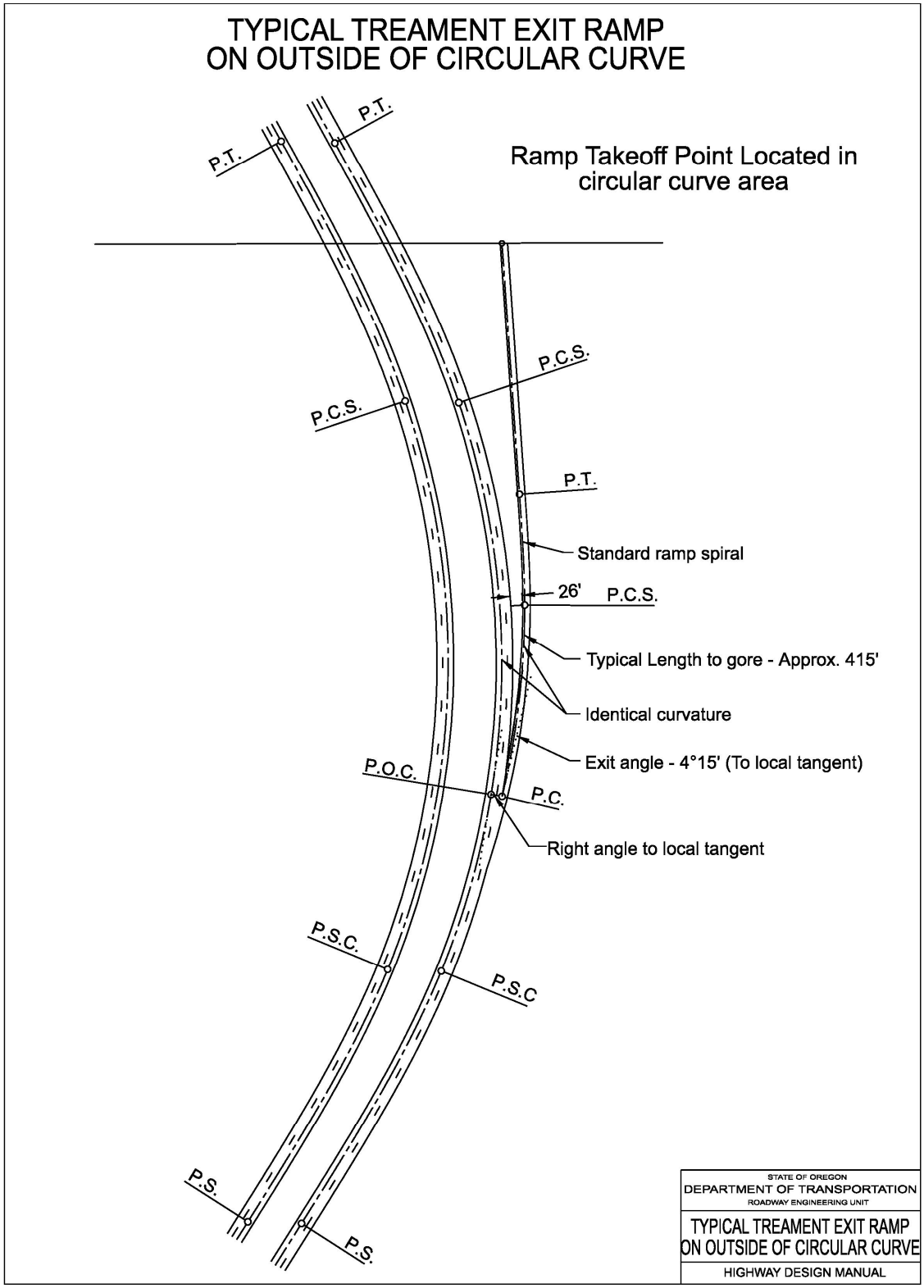


Figure 600-45: Design Aid 6 Exit on Outside of Curve in Leading Spiral Area

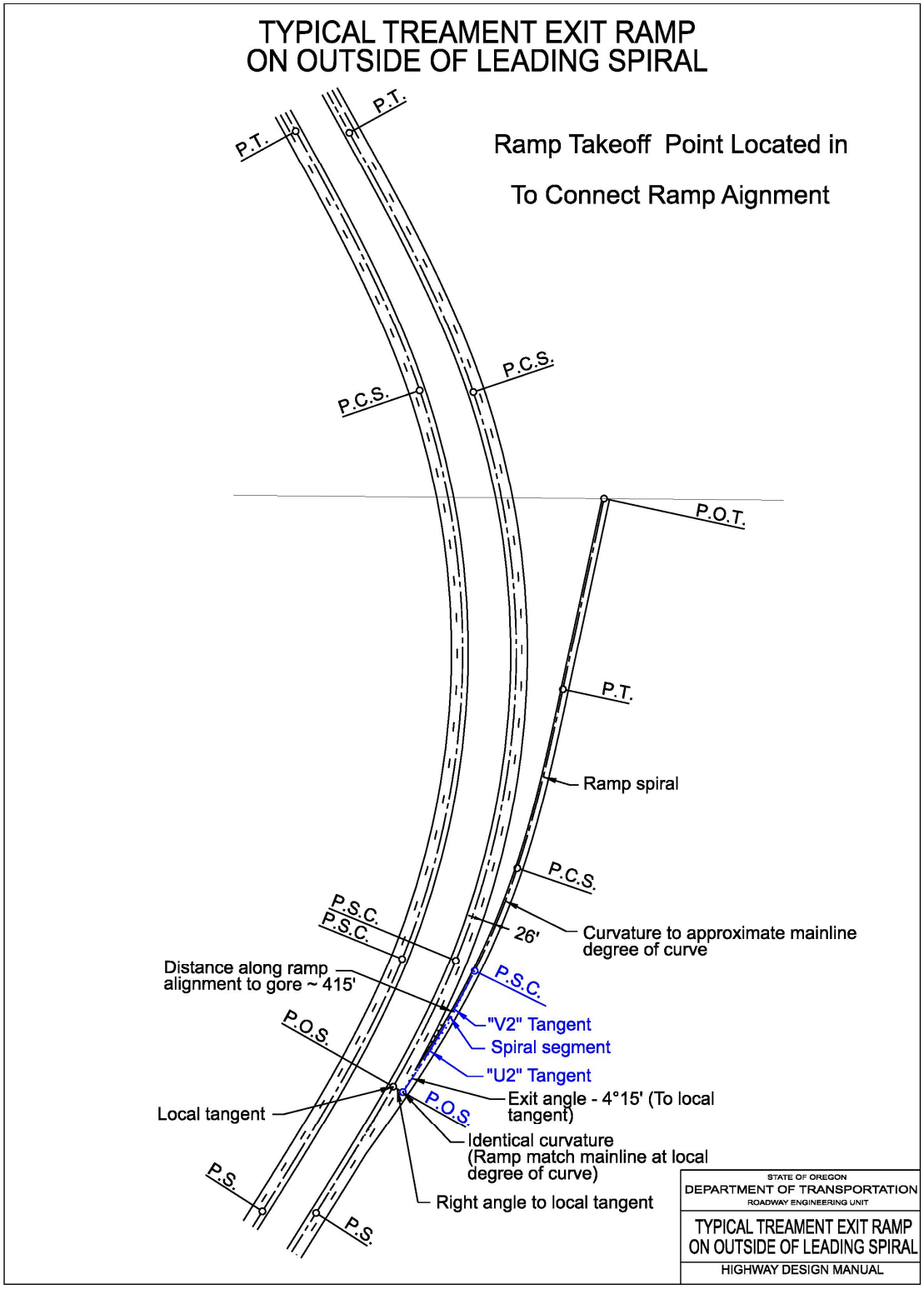


Figure 600-46: Design Aid 7 -Exit from Outside of Curve in Trailing Spiral Area

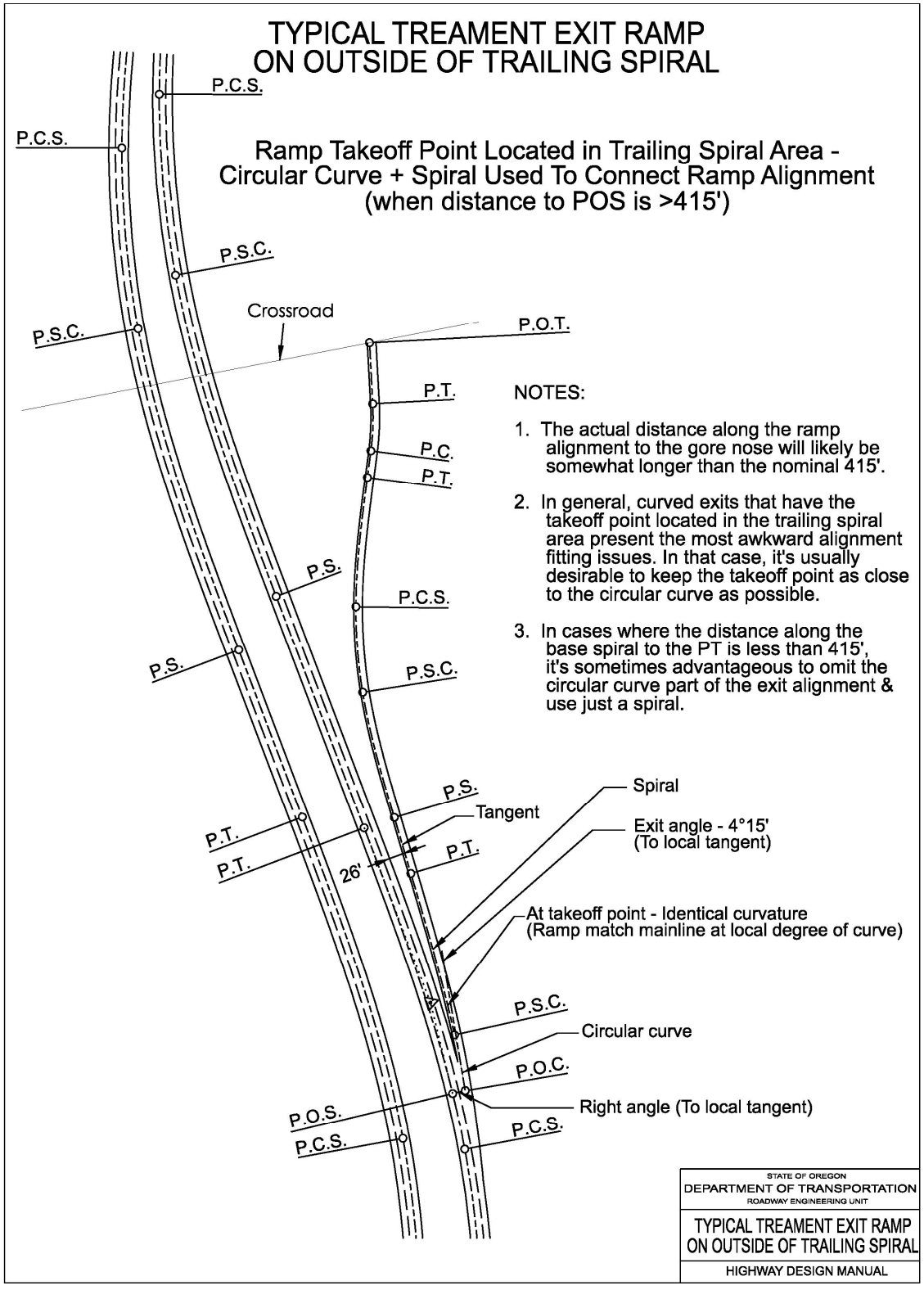


Figure 600-47: Design Aid 8 – Entrance on the Inside of a Circular Curve Area

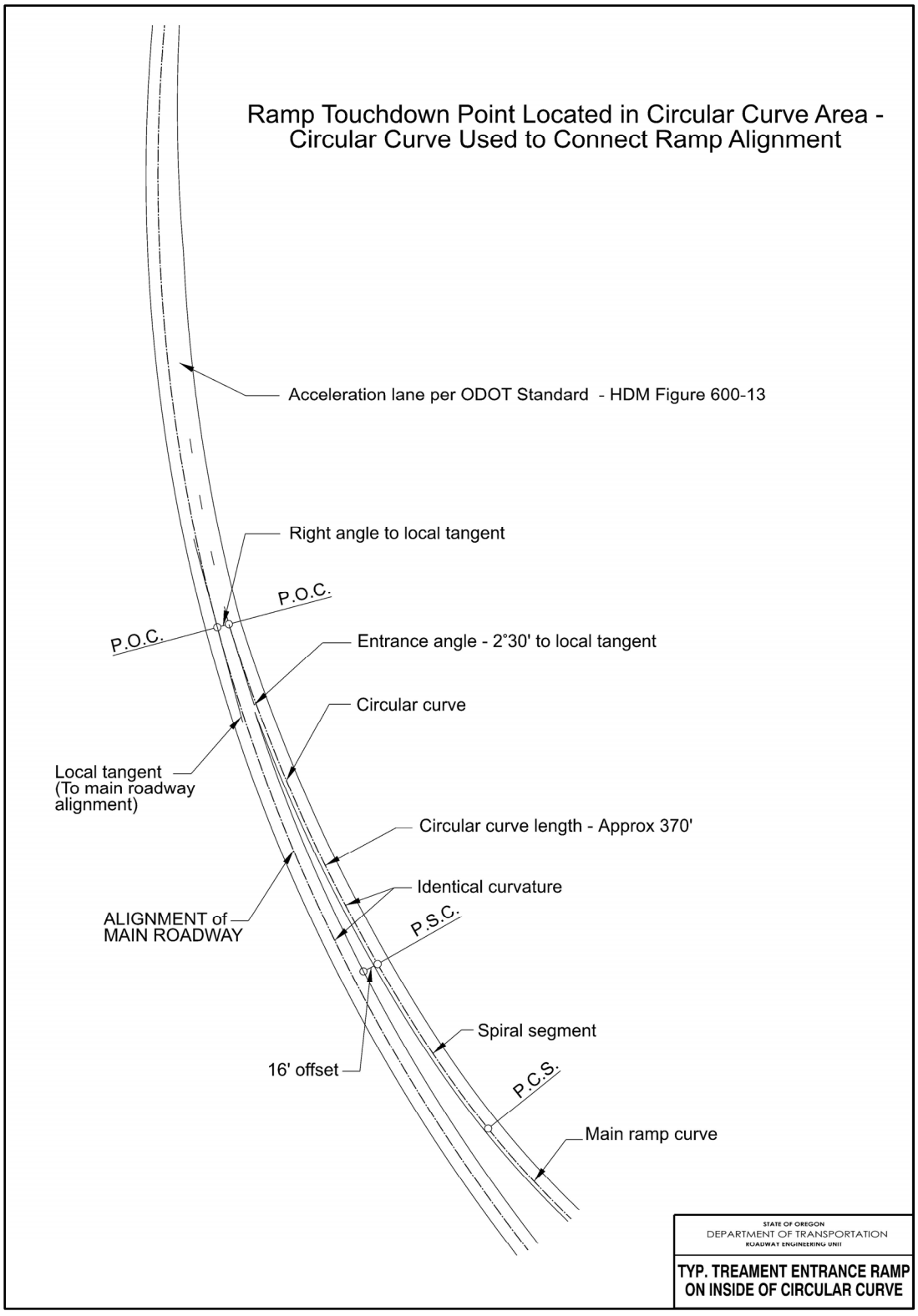


Figure 600-48: Design Aid 9 –Entrance on the Inside of the Leading Spiral Area

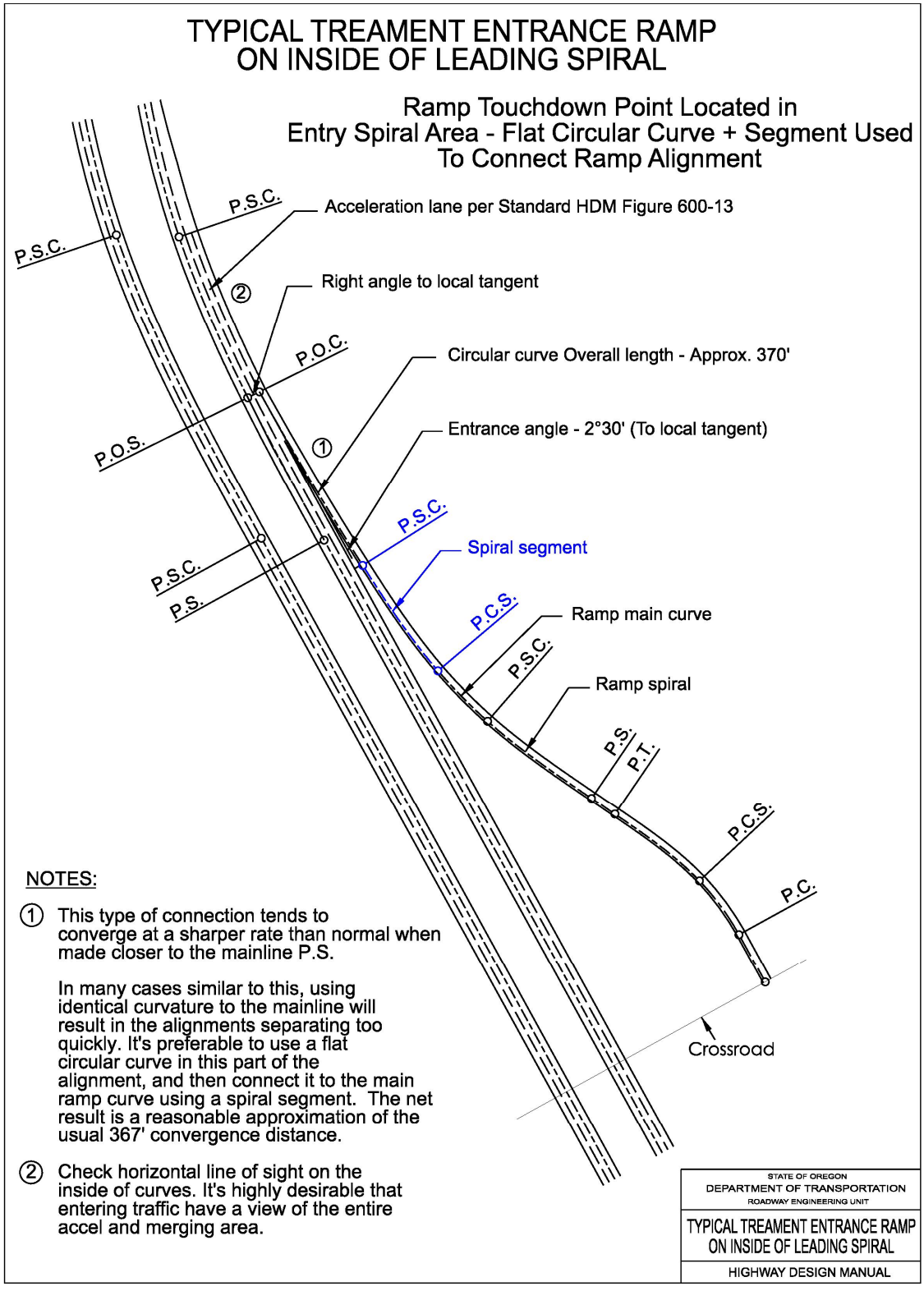


Figure 600-49: Design Aid 10 – Entrance on Inside in the Trailing Curve Area

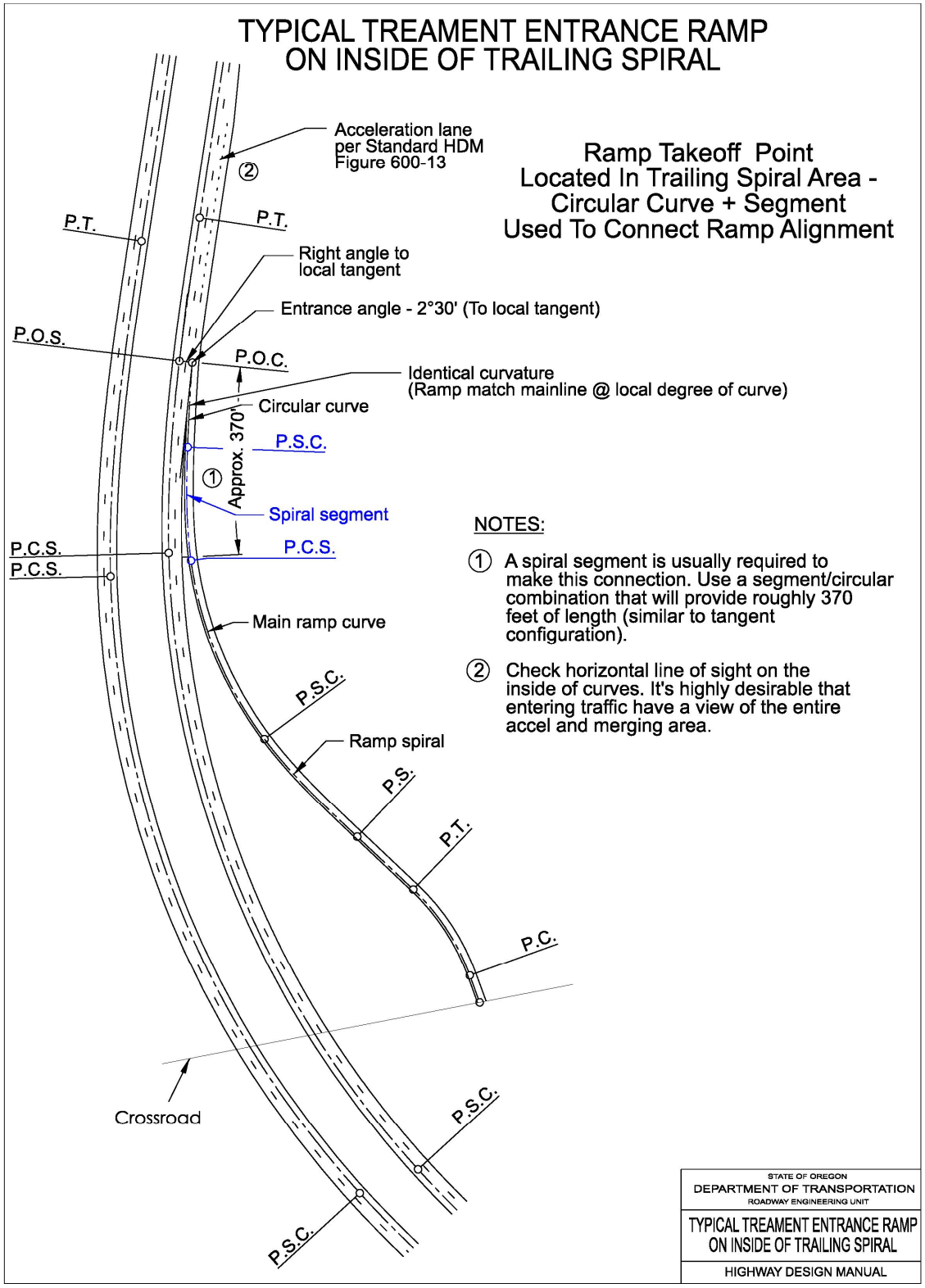


Figure 600-50: Design Aid 11 –Entrance on the Outside in Circular Curve Area

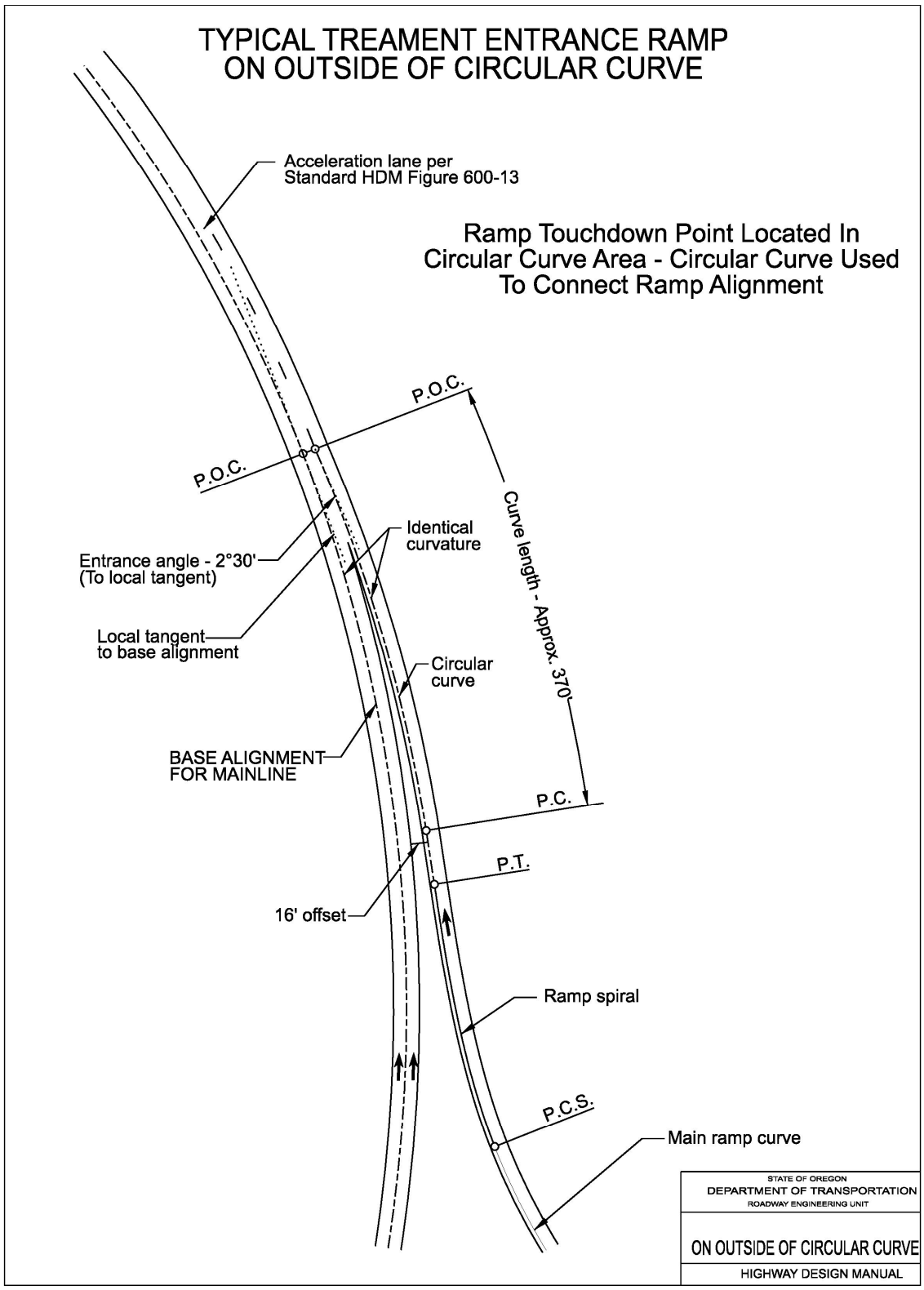


Figure 600-51: Design Aid 12 Entrance on Outside in Leading Spiral Area

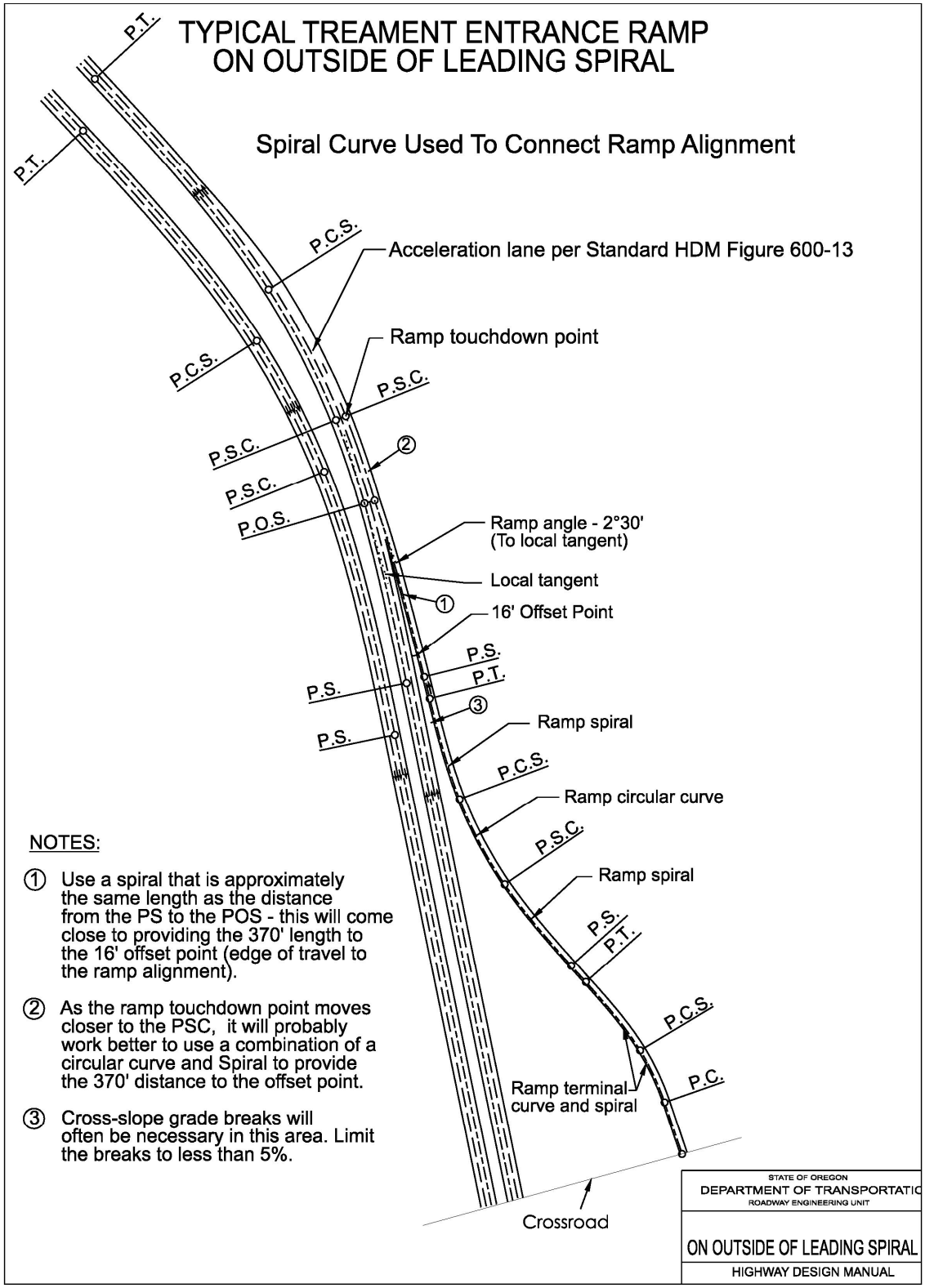
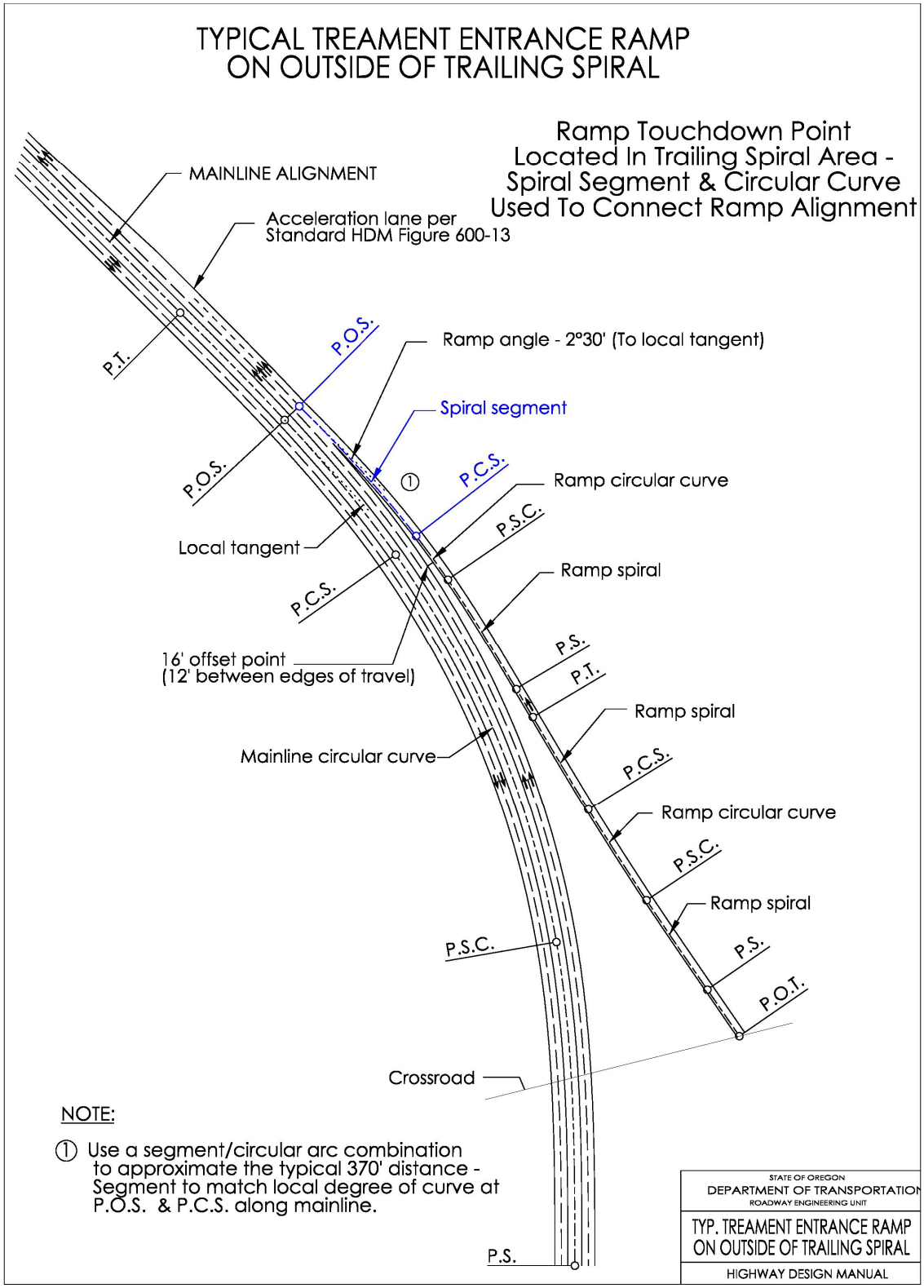


Figure 600-52: Design Aid 13 Entrance on Outside in Trailing Spiral Area



Part 700 Public Transportation and Guidelines

Section 701 General

The Oregon Department of Transportation is committed to providing a multi-modal transportation system. As a part of this system, public transportation needs should be examined during all phases of a project. When ODOT sponsored projects are proposed for state highways where transit facilities exist or are proposed, project teams should work with the local transit agency and other local agencies during the planning and preliminary design process to ensure early consideration of transit needs, to ensure an integrated transportation system, and to ensure that design conflicts are resolved early. Likewise, when local transit agency projects are proposed on state highways, the local transit agency design team needs to work with ODOT design personnel to ensure design conflicts are mitigated in an equitable manner to minimize impact to the state highway. Future needs of the state highway system need to be considered in addition to current design conflict mitigations.

Consultation with the local transit agency is critical to ensure appropriate placement and design of transit facilities. Each public transportation provider has unique needs which should be identified and addressed by the project development team working with the Regional Transit Coordinator. The project leader should involve the Region Traffic Engineer and landscape architectural staff when necessary.

This section of the Highway Design Manual provides guidance to designers for integrating good public transportation design practices into projects. This is especially important in urban settings. The best practices outlined in this section are intended to provide consistent guidance for all designers working on ODOT projects, as well as local agency projects and developer projects. The designs provide a basis for designers to develop interaction with local interested parties during project development.

The design criteria are consistent with American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) standards. As with all engineering designs, they must be applied using sound engineering judgment. The objective is to ensure efficient, cost-effective facilities that meet the needs of the traveling public, transit agencies, and the community.

701.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 700-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 700-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 701.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 701.2 and 701.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 701.3 and 701.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support

design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

701.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 701.4).

701.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 701.4).

701.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

701.5 Definitions

Boarding Platform - An area for transit (bus and rail) service boarding and alighting, and the surface is raised above the street or railway. A boarding platform has a vertical height (exposure) that exceeds 8 inches at

	the edge of the street or railway where boarding and alighting occurs.
Bus Rapid Transit -	A public bus transportation service that is typically fast, efficient and more reliable that conventional bus lines which may travel in dedicated lanes.
Fixed Service Transit Service -	Public transportation that is on predefined routes, stops and schedules for passengers.
High Speed Rail -	A public transportation option running on dedicated tracks designed to travel at speeds more than those possible by other types of railroads (e.g. magnetically levitated, trains on welded rail, or other technology)
Light Rail Transit -	A public transportation option running on dedicated tracks, often sharing the roadway with other vehicles. Traveling speed may vary up to 30 mph on average.
On Demand Transit Service -	Public transportation that is variable based on where and when a passenger needs a ride (taxi, Uber, Lyft services)
Passenger Loading Zone –	An area that is designed or designated for loading and unloading passengers that does not serve vehicles on a fixed or scheduled route.
Paratransit -	A transportation service for those with disabilities who are unable to use fixed route transportation systems.
Park-and-Ride -	Parking area to transfer from a personal vehicle to public transportation, transit, carpools, and vanpools.
Public school transportation -	A transportation service for school children, personnel, and equipment to and from public schools and related activities.
Streetcar -	A public transportation option running on dedicated tracks, sharing the roadway with other vehicles on city streets.
Transit Stop -	A designated area for passengers to board or alight from buses, rail cars, and other transportation vehicles that operate on a fixed route or scheduled route. This includes bus stops and boarding platforms, as well as intercity rail platforms (Amtrack) when located along a public way or road or on property used for transportation purposes.
Transit Station -	A facility where multiple buses or public transit services converge to allow passengers to transfer to another route, mode, or bus.

Vanpool -	A voluntary commuter ridesharing arrangement with more than 7 persons (including driver) in a van or bus to provide commuter travel to regular places of work within the same geographical area.

701.6 Acronyms

TDM	Transportation Demand Management
TSP	Transportation System Plan

Section 702 Transit Design Considerations

Appropriate transit facilities should be incorporated into the design of transportation projects. Public transportation designs must consider a variety of issues to address pedestrian needs and connectivity to complete a transportation trip. This includes Oregon laws, accessibility requirements, modal connectivity and context sensitive designs. Refer to Part 800 Section 805 Pedestrian Needs for more detailed discussion on pedestrian design needs and considerations. The US Department of Transportation has adopted accessibility standards for transit stops that is aligned with the 2023 Public Right of Way Accessibility Guidelines as the minimum standard per 49 CFR Part 37 in December of 2024. Applicable sections of 2023 PROWAG include R309 which pertains to boarding and alighting areas at sidewalks, street level, and boarding platforms. In addition, pedestrian access routes that connect to the boarding and alighting areas with existing circulation paths and transit shelters, as well as pedestrian amenities fall under the USDOT accessibility standards.

Most transit trips begin and end with a walk or bike ride. Accessing trip origins and destinations often require crossing the street. Well planned and designed pedestrian and bicycle facilities in transit corridors make transit systems more effective. High priority should be given to sidewalks and bikeways connecting local streets and popular destinations to transit.

Developing and improving transit corridors requires coordination between transit agencies and the road authorities. Choosing transit service locations for buses, light rail and Bus Rapid Transit is a complicated task, as each location must consider many factors including:

1. Service should be located where there is an expectation of riders based on land use, demographics, origins and destinations.
2. Service should be convenient and designed to be accessible for transit users.
3. Service should be designed in coordination with other travel modes, existing traffic conditions and traffic control.

Consider enhanced crosswalks at existing service stops or relocate the service to more accessible locations within a reasonable walking distance.

Transit service should provide a pleasant environment for waiting passengers with amenities such as shelters, landscaping, adequate buffering from the roadway and lighting.

~~7001Public transportation designs must consider a variety of issues:~~

Figure 700-1: Well-Planned and Situated Bus Stop



Transit service should be placed in locations that are accessible by pedestrians or that can be made accessible by changing the configuration of adjacent land use. This can be done by:

- Orienting building entrances to transit stops or stations.
- Clustering buildings around transit stops.
- Locating business districts close to transit stops.

Regional and statewide public transportation systems benefit from bicycle facilities such as:

- Accommodating bicycles on buses and trains.

- Providing bikeways that lead to transit stops, transit stations and park-and-ride lots; and
- Providing secure bicycle parking at these locations.

People with Disabilities

Public transportation provides services to people with disabilities who are often more reliant on transit services. Designs for public transportation must address the requirements of people who have difficulty with mobility, vision loss, or are hard of hearing. Designs of transit stops must meet accessibility requirements. Designs must comply with the requirements of the US Department of Transportation and the applicable sections of PROWAG as adopted by the US Department of Transportation. ***Bus stop designs that minimize conflicts with other non-motorized users, such as bicyclists on bike lanes or pedestrians walking past passengers waiting to board is preferred.*** See Part 800 for accessibility requirements on walkways and for more detailed discussion on pedestrian design needs and considerations.

Safety and Personal Security

Passenger safety and personal security play significant roles in attracting transit ridership. Design considerations include elements such as pedestrian access, passenger visibility and traffic impacts. Personal security elements such as lighting, nearby development, and open areas increase user comfort. Security is a concern for both the transit user and the transit operator. Research conducted by the Transit Cooperative Research Program Report 258 provides evidence-based suggestion on mitigation strategies for deterring transit rider assault enhancing safety and security in the transit environment.

Examples of design features that can enhance or degrade personal security include:

1. Location: Placement of transit stops should account for access and connectivity to sidewalks, pedestrian crosswalks, and be near activity centers. Transit stops located in mixed land-use areas improve user safety perceptions, particularly at night. Design features that can dramatically degrade both access and security are soundwalls or other similar structures which can isolate waiting passengers from the neighborhood. In general, there is no reason to locate transit stops adjacent to soundwalls or fences, as these preclude direct access from neighborhoods. When this situation arises, the design should consider breaks that allow for pedestrian access through the structure or fencing.
2. Visibility: Waiting areas should be easily seen by nearby residences, businesses, and passers-by. Transparent shelters and well-maintained environments further contribute to visibility and security. For example, see-through walls for weather protection are considered best practice.
3. Illumination: Waiting areas should be well-lit. Consider pedestrian scale lighting. Avoid obstructions and landscaping that could creating shadows and blind spots. Utilizing solar power lighting or light emitting diode (LED) is considered best practice.
4. Landscaping: Street furnishings, trees, and bushes should be designed to provide an open area near the stop. Bushes and shrubbery should be smaller near a bus stop and

not block security cameras. Funding and maintenance for landscaping should be discussed during project development.

Local Differences, Urban or Rural

Each local jurisdiction and public transit agency have different preferences and transit system plans. All public transportation facility designs should be coordinated with the local interested parties to ensure they are compatible with the local transportation system plans and coordinated public transit service plans. Local standards may be applicable particularly where the highway jurisdiction is only curb to curb. Public transportation facility designs for rural areas may have needs that differ from urban areas. Roadway width, design speeds, and service stops without curbs and/or sidewalks are possible differences between urban and rural settings.

Modal Connectivity

Public transportation designs need to consider connections to other modes. For example, park-and-ride designs should be reviewed for transit service accommodation, passenger loading zones, and on demand transit service. Service locations should connect to light rail, bus rapid transit, and intercity high speed rail services. Pedestrians and bicyclists require clear wayfinding with accessible routes to the service stops boarding and alighting areas, and other passenger loading zones.

Transit Needs Change Over Time

Communities change over time and the transit service needs of these communities change as well. Transit stops may need to be relocated. Different modes of transit may be installed in the area. Routes may increase or decrease in ridership. New routes may need to be added. Design teams should coordinate with the Region Planning Unit to communicate with the local transit agency and/or review of local transit planning documents to determine future impacts to both the highway system and the transit system.

702.1 Oregon Applicable Laws

Yield to Bus Law

ORS 811.167 gives a bus the right of way after stopping to receive or discharge passengers if it is displaying a standardized sign that flashes "YIELD." This law influences the decision of the local jurisdiction and ODOT to construct which style of Transit Stop such as a pullout, curb extension, bus lane or floating stop design described in Section 703~~either bus pull-outs or curbside stops.~~.

Bus Priority System

ORS 184.619 and 810.260, 815.445, and OAR 734-020-0300 through 0330 relate to the use of signal preemption devices and traffic control signal operating devices. These systems can provide arriving buses the capability to alter the timing (but not the sequence) of green intervals.

The preemption standards consider the safety and efficiency of emergency, bus, and general traffic operations, and the requirements for traffic signal maintenance. Any signal design in a project area with existing or future transit facilities needs to consider the impacts of these laws. Discussions with the local transit agency will result in identifying the need for bus priority signalization. ***The installation of a bus priority system must be approved by the State Traffic Engineer***. Consideration must be given to the impact on intersection operation if bus priority systems are proposed. Future amenities such as bus arrival displays that may require additional design elements such as conduit or pedestal locations should be considered in transit designs.

702.2 Transit Stop Alterations

An alteration of a transit stop is a change to or an addition of a transit stop, or a part thereof, within an existing developed public right of way that affects or could affect pedestrian access, circulation, or usability. When an alteration occurs to a transit stop element, compliance with the accessibility standards is required for the item being altered to the maximum extent feasible. Reduction in accessibility to other existing transit stop elements should be avoided where feasible when constructing the alteration of an additional transit stop element. Consider accessibility as a whole in the vicinity of the transit stop to balance trade-offs. **Document elements that fall below the minimum accessibility requirements with an alteration.** US DOT has defined alterations of transit stops in the federal code of regulations as the governing authority for public transit.

Alterations include but are not limited to the following construction activities:

- Reconstruction of the existing transit stop.
- The addition of a new transit shelter.
- The addition of a new bench, fare vending machine, or a transit sign that identifies a stop, or route.
- Reconfiguring the interface of a transit stop with the street or sidewalk network such as floating bus stop.
- Adding prepared surface for boarding and alighting.
- Rearrangement of transit stop elements, such as benches or fare vending machines.

Normal maintenance such as painting or replacing damaged items are not alterations. Permanent closure of a transit stop due to service changes is also not an alteration of a transit

stop. **Where accessible transit stops are temporarily not accessible due to construction, maintenance operations, or other similar conditions, alternate transit stops are required that comply with accessibility standards.**

Elements of the transit stop that are impacted by construction must meet accessibility requirements to the maximum extent feasible. In alterations of boarding and alighting areas and boarding platforms, pedestrian circulation paths must be connected to pedestrian access routes. Elements of the transit stop that are not altered and remaining in place, are not triggered for reconstruction. Reduction in accessibility of an existing element should be avoided where feasible in an alteration. A transition segment to the existing walkway is permitted as shown in RD722.

For example, at an established transit stop, where a new sign is installed to make the transit stop identifiable and visible to the public, the placement of the new sign shall not reduce the clear width of the pedestrian access route on the walkway. The new sign installation must meet the visual character requirements of PROWAG including horizontal and vertical clearances as shown in illustration in Section 810.5 Clear Circulation Path. When the new sign installation is installed so that the existing boarding and alighting area is not disturbed or degraded, the existing substandard boarding and alighting area is not required to be reconstructed. Where the installation of the sign disturbs the substrate of the boarding and alighting area (e.g. foundation excavation), the existing boarding and alighting area would be triggered for accessibility upgrades to the current standard.

The entire transit stop is designed to 4R standards including boarding and alighting areas, pedestrian access routes and circulation areas at transit stops where:

- The existing curb line is moved.
- The transit stop walkway is reconstructed.
- A new transit stop is being established.
- An existing transit stop is being reconfigured to be another style (e.g. floating bus stop, pullout design).

Curb ramps at the nearby corner may be triggered for reconstruction and are evaluated on a case-by-case basis for the project in consultation with the Senior ADA Standards Engineer. **The pedestrian access route connects each boarding and alighting area, transit shelter interior, crosswalk, and other pedestrian amenities in the transit area.** Transit amenities may include benches and companion seating, water fountains, transit route information, and fare pay stations. Reconfiguring the interface of a transit stop with the street or sidewalk network such as floating bus stop is an alteration that requires the accessibility standard to be met, as shown in Section 703.3.4 Floating Bus Stop Design~~**Americans with Disabilities** - Public transportation provides service to persons with disabilities. **Designs need to address the requirements of people who have mobility, vision, or hearing impairments. Designs must comply with the**~~

~~requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990. See Part 800 for additional requirements.~~

~~**Safety and Personal Security** - Design considerations include safety elements such as pedestrian access, passenger visibility, and traffic impacts, and personal security elements such as lighting, nearby development, and open areas. Passenger safety and personal security play significant roles in attracting transit ridership.~~

~~**Local Differences** - Each local jurisdiction or public transit agency has different requirements. All new public transportation facility designs should be coordinated with the local interested parties to ensure they are compatible with the local transportation system and coordinated public transit-human services transportation plans.~~

~~**Modal Connectivity** - Public transportation designs need to consider connections to other modes. For example, park-and-ride designs should be reviewed for transit accommodations; bus stop locations should consider connections to light rail and intercity facilities; and pedestrians and bicyclists should have safe, accessible routes to bus stops.~~

~~**Urban vs. Rural Design** - Public transportation facility designs for rural areas will have needs that vary greatly from the urban system needs. Roadway width, design speeds, and bus stops without curbs and/or sidewalks are just a few examples of the issues that may differ between urban and rural settings.~~

~~**How Do Transit Needs Change Over Time** - Communities change over time and the transit needs of these communities change as well. Transit stops may need to be relocated. Different modes of transit may be installed in the area. Routes may increase or decrease in ridership. New routes may need to be added. Designers need to communicate with the Regional Transit Coordinator, local transit agency and/or review of local transit planning documents to determine future impacts to both the highway system and the transit system.~~

~~.~~

Section 703 Transit Stops

~~703.1 Bus Stops~~

Transit services are an important component of the transportation system. Transit Stops are defined in Part 701.5 along with the various types of public transportation services. Transit Stops may be provided on public or private property to provide public transportation services such as city bus services, intercity rail, and shuttle services for popular destinations (e.g. airports or hotels). Design consideration for the various types of transit is discussed in the subsequent sections. The following location guidelines and design standards are intended to provide guidance to designers and planners.

703.1 Bus Stop Locations Selection

The spacing, location, and design of bus stops significantly influence transit system performance and ridership. Bus stops should utilize sites which maximize transit efficiency, encourage safe pedestrian crossings, offer proximity to activity centers, satisfy the general spacing requirements, minimize the disruption to other street traffic, including bicycles and provide convenient connections to other modes. ~~Appropriate transit facilities should be incorporated into the design of transportation projects. The following location guidelines and design standards are intended to provide guidance to designers and planners.~~

~~703.2 Bus Stop Locations Selection~~

In general, bus stop spacing affects overall travel time, and therefore, demand for transit. *However, bus stops should be spaced per Table 700-2 to minimize pedestrian walking distances near major passenger generators*. Bus stop locations are generally determined by the local transit agency and are based on goals to meet the needs of the passengers and maximize passenger convenience. Table 700-2 lists some typical bus stop spacing that would be expected based on highway segment designations. These spacing distances are ranges between stops that have been determined from analysis of information provided by transit agencies throughout Oregon. Generally, the more urban and pedestrian oriented a highway segment designation is, the greater density of ~~transit~~bus stops needed.

Table 700-2: Typical Ranges for Bus Stop Spacing Based on Highway Segment Designation

Area	Spacing Range (feet)
CBDs and STAs [1]	330 – 1000
Urban/Developed Areas, CCs, and UBAs [2]	650 – 1300
Suburban Areas	740 – 2300
Unincorporated Communities/Rural Lands	As Needed

[1] Central Business Districts (CBDs) and Oregon Highway Plan Designated Special Transportation Areas (STAs)

[2] Commercial Centers (CCs) and Urban Business Areas (UBAs)

Communication between ODOT and the local transit agency is important. The location of the bus stop must address both traffic operation issues and passenger accessibility issues. If possible, locate the bus stop ~~should be located~~ in an area where ~~typical~~additional improvements, such as a bench or shelter, can be placed ~~in the~~on public property. As discussed in 701.6~~right of way. Bus~~, make a site-specific evaluation for bus stop ~~location should~~locations which consider potential ridership, traffic and rider safety, and bus operation elements ~~that require site-specific evaluation. *Significant emphasis should be placed on factors affecting personal security;* well-lit open spaces visible from the street create a safer environment for waiting passengers.~~. Elements to consider in bus stop placement include the following as discussed in 701.6~~:~~:

~~1. Use:~~

1. Bus Stop Placement:

   a) Proximity to major trip generators and/or at major transfer points~~;~~.
   b) Presence of or need for addition of accessible sidewalks, crosswalks, and curb ramps~~;~~.
   c) Connection to nearby pedestrian circulation system~~;~~.
   d) Access for people with disabilities~~- Minimum 8'x5' landing~~ to board and alight with an area for each accessible vehicle entry/exit way.
   ~~**e) Accessible sidewalk connections;**~~
   ~~f)~~e) Convenient passenger transfers to other routes~~; and~~.
   ~~g)~~f) Convenient connections to other transportation modes.

2. Traffic and Rider Safety:

   a) Conflicts between buses and other motor vehicle traffic~~;~~.
   b) Passenger protection from passing traffic~~;~~.
   c) All weather accessible surface to step to/from (board or alight) the bus~~;~~.

d) Open and lighted spaces for personal security and passenger visibility~~; and~~ at the stop.
e) Street illumination.

3. Bus Operations:

a) Adequate ~~curb~~ space for the number of buses expected at the stop at one time.
b) Proximity to on-street automobile parking and truck delivery zones.
c) Traffic control devices near the bus stop, such as signals or stop signs.
d) Volumes and turning movements of other traffic, including bicycles.
e) Adequate sidewalk width or area to accommodate expected ridership.
f) Pedestrian activity through intersections.
g) Proximity and traffic volumes of nearby approaches and driveways.
h) Street and sidewalk grades.
i) Ease of re-entering traffic stream.
j) Proximity to rail crossings.

703.1.1 Traditional Intersections

Bus stops are generally located at intersections. Transit stops are placed to minimize the difficulties associated with bus lane changes and bus weaving maneuvers on the approach to a left turn. To minimize conflicts and maintain sight distance, bus stops are not located close to driveways. As with other elements of the roadway, consistency of bus stop placement lessens the potential for operator and passenger confusion. Table 700-3 presents a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages of each bus stop location. Geometric requirements are provided in the subsequent sections along with Section 704 Transit Accessibility and Amenities ~~where they~~.

Placement of the bus stop may be ~~placed~~ near-side or far-side~~. They may also be~~ of the intersection, or placed mid-block. In general, a near-side stop is preferred for non-signalized intersection on two-lane streets ~~when~~. When the bus ~~stops in~~uses the through lane ~~and~~to pick up or drop off passengers, vehicles ~~will~~are not expected to pass around a stopped bus. Where it is not acceptable to stop the bus in traffic and a bus pullout is warranted (see following discussion "Guidelines for Special Treatments"), a far-side or mid-block stop is generally preferred. In the case of a street with wide shoulders or multiple lanes where vehicular traffic may pass uncontrolled around the bus during boarding and alighting, a far-side stop is preferred for sight distance issues. In the case of a street with wide shoulders or multiple lanes where vehicular traffic is controlled by a signal, the bus stop may be located either near-side or far-side. Far-side bus stops at signalized intersections ~~should have a pull-out area to minimize vehicle queuing back into the intersection. Stops should be placed to minimize the difficulties associated with bus lane changes and bus weaving maneuvers on the approach to a left turn. Where it is not acceptable to stop the bus in traffic and a bus pullout is warranted, (see following discussion, "Guidelines for Special Treatments"), a far-side or mid-block stop is~~

~~generally preferred. As with other elements of the roadway, consistency of stop placement lessens the potential for operator and passenger confusion. In order to minimize conflicts and maintain sight distance, bus stops should not be located close to driveways. presents a comparison of the advantages and disadvantages of each bus stop type.~~have a pull-out area to minimize vehicle queuing back into the intersection.

Table 700-3: Advantages and Disadvantages of Far-side, Near-side and Mid-block Bus Stops

FAR-SIDE STOP	
Advantages	**Disadvantages**
• Minimizes conflict between buses and right turning vehicles traveling in the same direction. • Minimizes sight distance problems on approaches to the intersection. • Encourages pedestrians to cross behind the bus at an intersection. • Minimizes area needed for curbside bus zone • If placed just beyond a signalized intersection in a bus pullout, buses may more easily reenter the traffic stream. • If a pullout is provided, vehicle capacity through intersection is unaffected.	• If bus stops in travel lane, could result in traffic queued into intersection behind the bus (pullout will allow traffic to pass around the stopped bus and should be installed with signalized intersections). • If bus stops in travel lane, could result in a high rate of rear-end accidents as motorists fail to anticipate stopped traffic. • May cause passengers to access buses further from crosswalk. • May interfere with right turn movement from cross street.
NEAR-SIDE STOP	
Advantages	**Disadvantages**
• Minimizes interference when traffic is heavy on the far side of an intersection. • Allows passengers to access buses close to crosswalk. • Driver may use the width of the intersection to pull away from the curb. • Allows passengers to board and alight when the bus is stopped for a red light. • Provides the bus driver ~~with~~ the opportunity to look for oncoming traffic, including other buses with potential connecting passengers when more than one route stop is located at the intersection.	• Stopped bus may interfere with a dedicated right turn lane. • May cause sight distance problem for cross-street traffic and pedestrians. • If located at a signalized intersection, and if the shoulder width at the stop is such that buses will exit the traffic stream, a traffic queue at a signal may make it difficult for buses to re-enter the traffic stream. • At single lane, signalized intersections with no pullout~~, prohibits~~ the bus can block through traffic ~~movement with~~ movements on a green light~~, similar to far-side stop without a bus pullout.~~ • ~~May cause~~ Bus blocks sight of pedestrians ~~to cross~~crossing the intersection in front of the bus ~~at intersections.~~
MID-BLOCK STOP	
Advantages	**Disadvantages**

• Minimizes sight distance problems for vehicles and pedestrians. • May result in passenger waiting areas experiencing less pedestrian congestion. • May be closer to passenger origins or destinations on long blocks. • May result in less interference with traffic flow.	• Requires additional ~~distance for~~ no-parking restrictions • Increases walking distance for patrons crossing at intersection, or requires special features to assist pedestrians with mid-block crossing.

Source: Adapted from the Guidelines for Planning, Designing, and Operating Bus-related Street Improvements. Texas Transportation Institute.

703.1.2 Roundabout Intersections

Evaluate the placement of bus stops near roundabouts to be consistent with the needs of the transit users and the desired operations of the roundabout. As with locating bus stops at other types of traditional intersections, pedestrian crossings of the roundabout legs should be minimized. A bus stop is best situated:

1. On an exit lane, in a pullout just past the crosswalk; or
2. **On an entry leg at least 65 feet upstream from the crosswalk, in a pullout**; or
3. On a single entry leg, just upstream from the crosswalk where the traffic volume is low and the stopping time is short. This location should not be used on two-lane entrances (a vehicle should not be allowed to pass a stopped bus in the interest of pedestrian crossing safety).

Information on roundabout design can be found in Part 500.

~~703.3~~703.2 Bus Stop ~~Layout~~Configuration and Delineation

~~***The bus stop***~~Bus stops must be clearly delineated to ensure that other ~~***traffic***~~vehicles will not use the ~~***stop***~~ area ~~***and to give bus operators direction on where to stop the bus.***~~. *Delineation may include ~~appropriate~~ signing and pavement markings at and near ~~to the bus stop location.~~ ~~**For curbside stops,**~~ the bus stop ~~**zones (no parking designation) should be a minimum of 100 feet**~~ location.* Refer to the Pavement Markings Manual for ~~***near-side stops and 80 feet for far-side stops. Curbside mid-block stop zones should be a minimum of 150 feet. Bus stop zones are lengthened 20 feet for articulated buses.*** ~~*Bus stop zones may be shortened significantly with curb extensions as discussed in the next subsection.*~~ ~~Designs should be coordinated with the local jurisdiction~~current standards and ~~transit agency.~~guidelines for delineation.

Generally, buses and bicycles ~~are able to~~can share available ~~road~~ space. However, stopped buses hinder a bicyclist's progression and slower moving bicycles can hinder buses. ***On routes***

heavily traveled by both bicyclists and buses, separation of the two modes can reduce conflict and is the preferred method. ~~Final design of separating bus and bicyclist can take many forms and should be considered on a case by case basis. One method is an adjacent bike lane to delineate the areas. Another method is a completely separated bike path or cycle track behind the bus stop. See Section L107 in the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide and Section 984. There may also be other appropriate ways to accomplish bicycle and bus separation specific to a site. Potential right of way needs may be associated with bus stop and bicycle design and should be considered early in the development process~~***Consult the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer for current guidance.*** In constrained corridors, accessibility concerns arise as well when bicyclist and pedestrians must share space at bus stops. ***Where there are heavy volumes of bicyclists, separation of the pedestrian mode is the preferred method for comfort, reduced conflict and accessibility for pedestrians utilizing the bus stop*.**

Final design of separating bus, bicyclist, and pedestrians can take many forms and is considered on a case by case basis. One method to separate bus and bicyclist is an adjacent bike lane to delineate the areas. Another method to separate bus and bicyclist is a completely separated bike path or cycle track behind the bus stop. See Section 703.3 Bus Stop Design and Section 984. There may be other appropriate ways to accomplish bicycle and bus separation specific to a site. Right of way needs associated with bus stop, bicycle, and pedestrian design is evaluated and considered early in the development process.

More than one bus may occupy a transit stop at a given time. The number of bus ~~loading~~ service positions required at a given location depends on:

1. The rate of bus arrivals, and
2. Passenger service time at the stop.

~~Curb space~~ Space allocation for one bus to be serviced at a stop will typically be adequate for a capacity up to 30 buses per hour. If passenger service time is more than 30 seconds per bus and bus arrivals exceed 30 buses per hour, then more ~~than one loading/unloading position~~bus space allocation is required. Additional area for multiple buses will likely be required~~.~~ at the bus stop. ***Bus stop area ~~should be~~(bay length) is lengthened by 50 feet for each additional single unit bus and 70 feet for each additional articulated bus***.

For curbside stops, the bus stop zones (no parking designation) is a minimum of 100 feet for near-side stops and 80 feet for far-side stops. Curbside mid-block stop zones is a minimum of 150 feet. Bus stop zones are lengthened 20 feet for articulated buses service. Bus stop zones may be shortened significantly with curb extensions as discussed in the next subsection. Designs are coordinated with the local jurisdiction and transit agency to determine design vehicles and bus capacity needs.

703.2.1 Bike Lanes and Transit

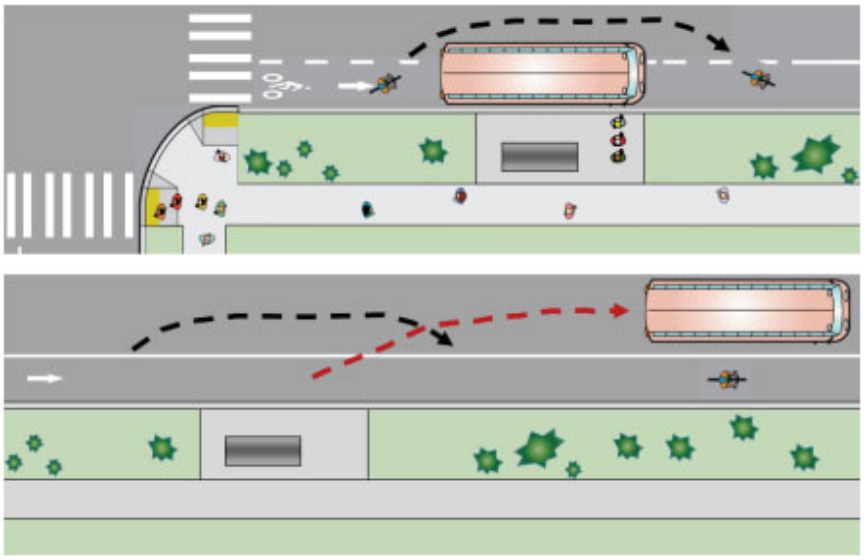
Where transit runs along streets with bike lanes, there are four ways that bus stops interact with a bike lane:

- Transit vehicle stops in bicycle lane;
- Transit vehicle crosses bicycle lane to enter a pull-out;
- Transit boarding and alighting area is an island and pedestrians cross a bicycle lane to enter boarding and alighting area;
- Bicycle lane exits onto sidewalk in a shared space

Due to the dwell time at transit stops, the average running speed of a transit vehicle can be very similar to the average speed of a bicycle rider. As a result, people on bikes often experience a leapfrog effect, where they pass a transit vehicle while it is stopped, are passed by the transit vehicle shortly afterward, and then pass it again having caught up to its next stop (Figure 700-2). This cycle can continue as long as they travel along the same corridor. Even if a bicyclist stops and waits for the boarding and alighting, the bicyclist will typically catch up to the transit vehicle at the next stop to have the same dilemma repeat itself.

A typical conflict along such a transit corridor occurs when a bus service overlaps and blocks the bike lane. While the bike lane is blocked, bicyclists can either stop behind the bus and wait, or attempt to pass on the left. On high speed or high-volume facilities, passing opportunities might be stressful. When the bus re-enters moving traffic, a bike could be in the bus driver's blind spot. Bicyclists are vulnerable users under ORS 801.608.

Figure 700-1: Leapfrog Effect (Bicycle passes stopped bus, then bus passes bicycle)



There are two bus stop configurations that minimize the leapfrog effect. Either a transit vehicle crosses the bike lane to enter a bus pull-out (Figure 700-3) or the transit boarding and alighting area is in a separate island such that pedestrians cross the bicycle lane to enter the area. This is referred to as a "floating bus stop" (Figure 700-4).

Figure 700-2: Bus Pull-Out with Conflict Markings

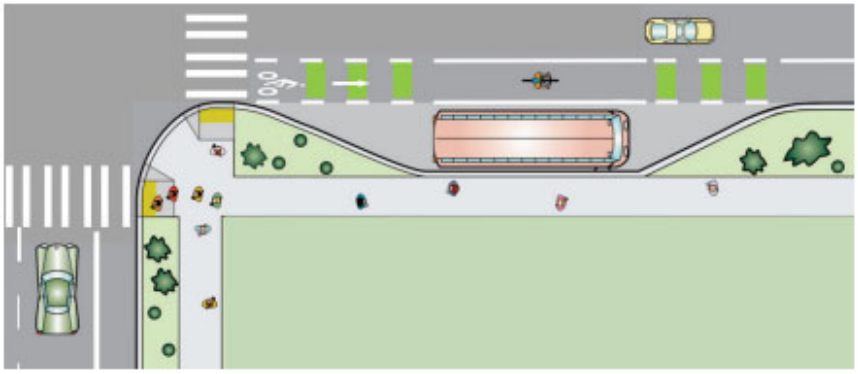
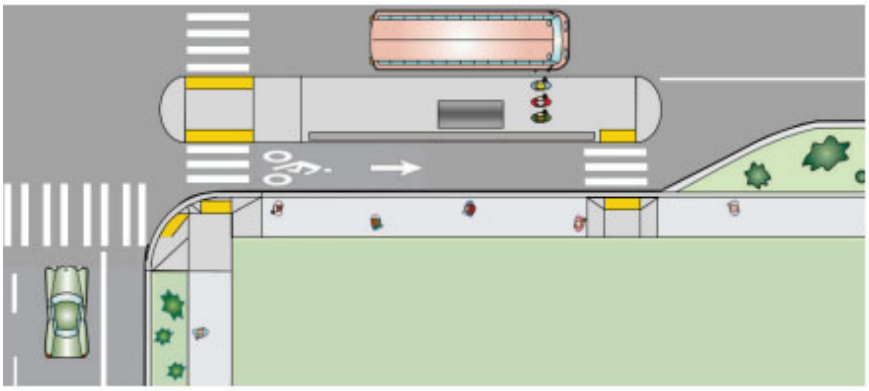


Figure 700-3: Floating Bus Stop ~~Guidelines for Special Treatments~~



703.3 Bus Stop Design

703.3.1 Bus Design Vehicle

AASHTO design vehicle templates cover most categories of vehicles and generally represent the largest vehicle in each class of vehicles surveyed. However, two categories of vehicles are not represented – 45-ft city transit buses, and city transit buses of less than 40 ft. Extended 45 ft transit buses are a newer style of bus that is becoming increasingly popular with bus operators. While they are similar in length to the intercity buses, they are configured as regular city buses with a single rear axle and greater front overhangs. Smaller buses are generally in the 30 to 35 ft range. Height ranges for buses are 10.5 feet to 11 feet, width ranges are 8 feet to 8.5 feet, mirror

to mirror width is typically 11 feet, and length ranges are 30 feet to 60 feet. The minimum turning radii of bus design vehicles will vary based on the design bus vehicle and wheelbase configuration. Coordinate with the local transit service provider and local agency to determine the typical fleet of vehicles that will be servicing the bus stops. Fleets of vehicles dimensions, size, and type will change over time and more rapidly than the roadway improvements can be updated.

~~703.3.1~~703.3.2 Bus Pullout Design

Bus stops ~~may be~~ designed with a pullout, ~~which~~ allows the transit vehicle to ~~pick up~~board and ~~discharge~~alight passengers in an area outside the ~~traveled way~~travelway realm. Bus pullouts are provided primarily on high-volume and/or high-speed arterials. Since most ODOT facilities have a roadway classification of arterial, bus pullouts ~~should be considered~~are preferred at all transit stops on state highways. Lower vehicle speeds, greater public acceptance of delay, development intensity and limited right of way may make pullouts ~~inappropriate~~infeasible in some urban situations. Bus pullouts are frequently constructed at bus stops with a high number of passenger boardings such as large shopping centers, factories, and office buildings. Bus pullouts reduce potential conflicts between bicyclists and passengers ~~exiting~~boarding and alighting the bus. They also provide a means for bicyclists to pass a stopped bus and continue along the roadway. ~~Providing a bus pullout for bus stop locations is the preferred design option on state highways. However, when a bicycle lane is present, the bus driver must be careful when crossing the bike lane to enter and exit the pullout.~~

Figure 700-4 Bus Pullout



Well placed, carefully designed bus pullouts offer ~~safe~~ passenger loading and unloading with minimal delays to both transit and other roadway traffic. While serving as a bus stop, ~~they~~pullouts may also be used simultaneously as a schedule layover area~~.~~ for the transit provider. Table 700-4 lists the advantages and disadvantages that should be considered in the decision to provide a bus pullout:

Table 700-4: Advantages and Disadvantages of Bus Pullouts

Advantages	Disadvantages
• Allows traffic, including bicycles to proceed around bus, reducing delay for other roadway traffic • Assists in maximizing the vehicle capacity of the roadway • Defines bus stop • Passenger loading and unloading may be conducted in a more relaxed manner • Less potential for rear-end accidents	• More difficult to reenter traffic, increasing bus delay and slower average travel time for bus • Bus may need to cross bike lane • Uses additional space, may require additional right of way • May increase rates of sideswipe accidents • Cost • Impacts transit operation times

The Yield to Bus Law, ORS 811.167, gives a bus the operational right of way when pulling away from a bus stop when it is displaying a standardized sign that flashes "YIELD." This law should improve the operational problem of buses re-entering the traffic stream. Multilane, one-way streets may have sufficient gaps in the traffic stream to allow all other traffic, including bicycles to pass around a stopped bus. Bus pullouts are generally not appropriate on multilane one-way roadways.

Figure 700-5 Operational Impacts for Bus Stops without extension

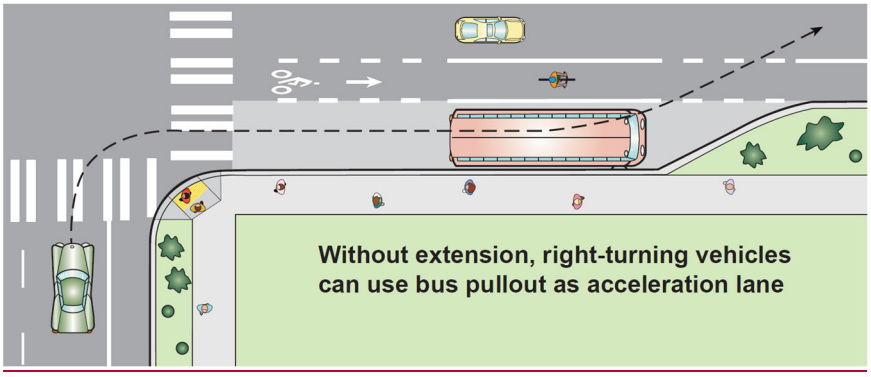
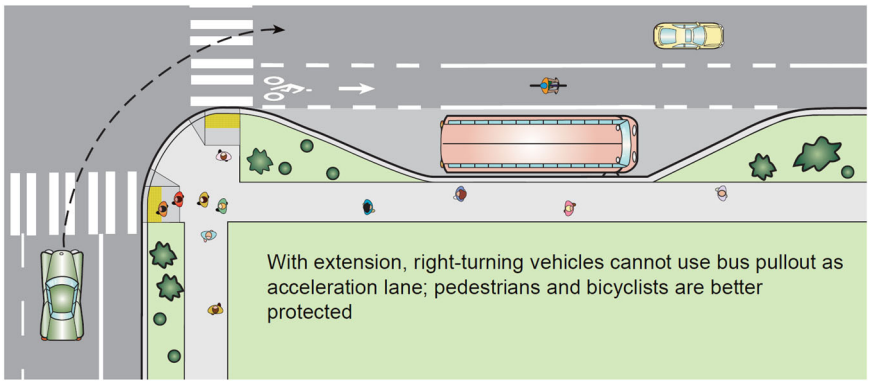


Figure 700-6 Operational Impacts of Bus Stop with extension



A bus pullout is ~~most appropriate~~warranted when one or more of the following situations exist:

1. Average vehicle speed exceeds 40 mph;
2. Traffic in the curb lane exceeds 250 vehicles during the peak hour;
3. History of a high rate of ~~accidents~~crashes, particularly rear-end ~~accidents~~crashes;
4. More than 5 bus stops per hour;
5. Passenger boardings exceed 30 boardings per hour; or
6. Transit agency desires an area for dwelling time~~.~~
7. A bike lane is present or in a high bike use area

~~Multilane, one-way streets may have sufficient gaps in the traffic stream to allow all other traffic, including bicycles to pass around a stopped bus. Bus pullouts are generally not appropriate on these roadways.~~

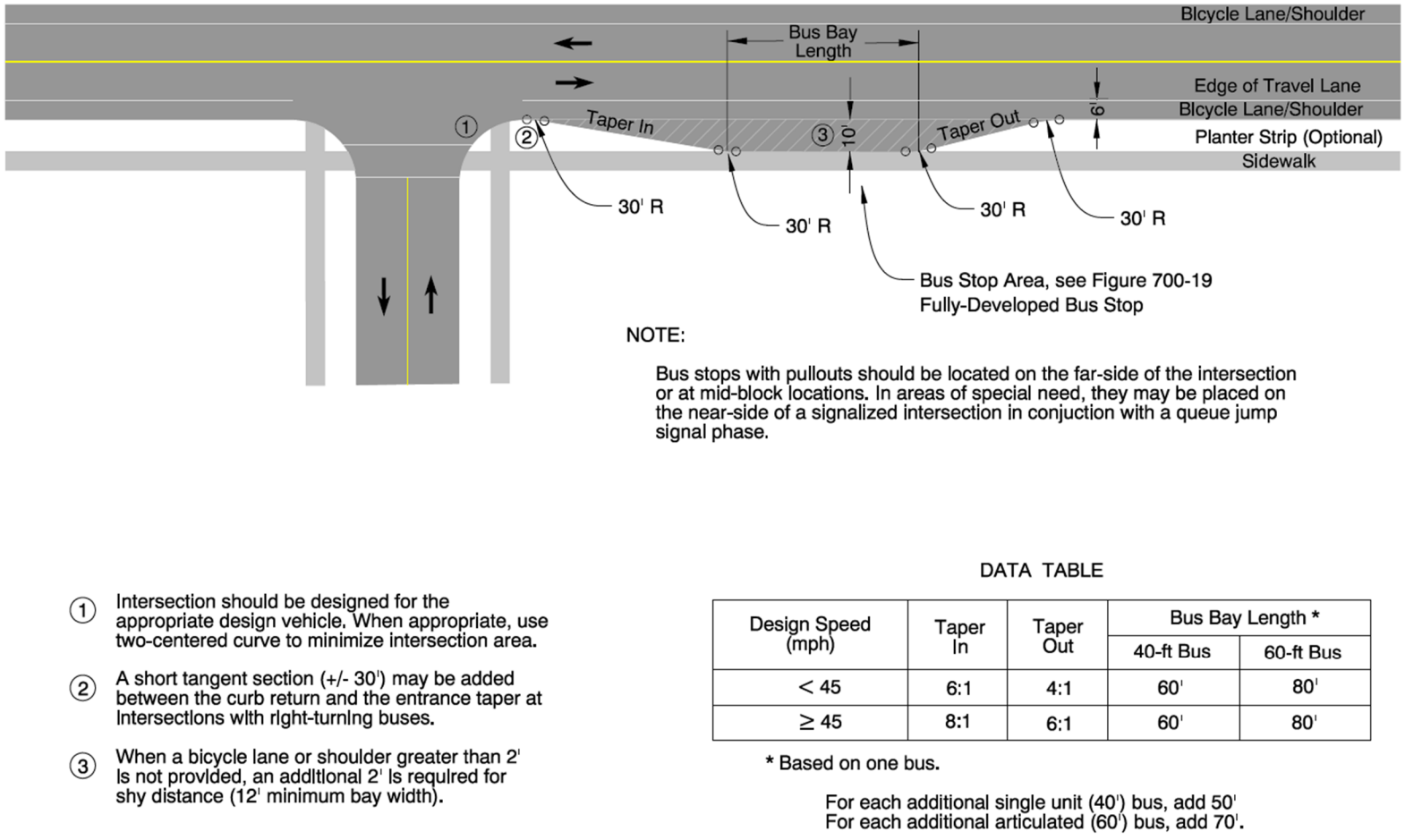
When a bus pullout is ~~justified, it should be placed~~ planned, place the stop to allow buses to easily ~~reenter~~re-enter the traffic flow. The design of a bus pullout should allow through-vehicle and bicycle traffic to flow freely without the obstruction of stopped buses. ~~They should generally be placed~~Generally place the pullout on the far-side of a signalized intersection so that the signal can create gaps in traffic. Due to the highly concentrated wheel loadings on the pavement, bus pullouts ~~should~~are generally ~~be~~ constructed of ~~plain doweled~~portland cement concrete pavement. ~~*Design bus pullouts per typical dimensions shown in . The bay length should be increased by 50 feet for each additional single unit bus expected to concurrently use the pullout.*~~ Consult with the Pavement Services Unit and District Maintenance Manager for design preferences and policy of the bus pullout surfacing.

Figure 700-7 and related bus pullout drawings shown ~~are intended to~~ provide design guidance for ~~transit stops~~ bus pullouts to comply with minimum ODOT requirements.

- ***Bus stop area (bay length) should be lengthened by 50 feet for each additional concurrent bus and 70 feet for each additional articulated bus.***
- ***For curbside stops, the bus stop zones (no parking designation) should be a minimum of 100 feet for near-side stops and 80 feet for far-side stops. Curbside mid-block stop zones should be a minimum of 150 feet. Bus stop zones are lengthened 20 feet for articulated buses service.*** Bus stop zones may be shortened significantly with curb extensions as discussed in the next subsection.
- **The bay width, exclusive of shoulder or bike lane, shall be a minimum of 10 feet, including the gutter pan. In the absence of a bike lane or shoulder, the minimum bay width is 12 feet to account for 2 feet of shy space.** Bus bay widths should not be less than 10 feet in constrained conditions as the bus mirrors will overhang the adjacent facilities on either side (ranging 0 - 1 feet depending on the bus driver). Bus bay widths of at least 10 feet may be considered on low-speed facilities with traveling speeds less than 30 mph. In some corridors where the available space to construct a pullout is constrained, a marked bike lane may overlap with the bus pullout bay. This will impact operations between the two modes as shown in Figure 700-1: Leapfrog Effect.

Local transit agencies may have their own design criteria that differ from the ODOT ~~minimum. The designer should contact~~minimums. Contact the local transit agency to determine specific ~~transit~~bus stop design criteria to comply with the local agency~~.~~ particularly where the highway jurisdiction is only curb to curb. Collaboration between ODOT and the local transit agency using the state highway is critical to successfully design ~~transit stops.~~ bus pullouts.

Figure 700-7~~: Typical Bus~~ : ODOT minimum requirements for a typical Bus Pullout ~~Details~~



① Intersection should be designed for the appropriate design vehicle. When appropriate, use two-centered curve to minimize intersection area.

② A short tangent section (+/- 30') may be added between the curb return and the entrance taper at intersections with right-turning buses.

③ When a bicycle lane or shoulder greater than 2' is not provided, an additional 2' is required for shy distance (12' minimum bay width).

DATA TABLE

Design Speed (mph)	Taper In	Taper Out	Bus Bay Length *	
			40-ft Bus	60-ft Bus
< 45	6:1	4:1	60'	80'
≥ 45	8:1	6:1	60'	80'

* Based on one bus.

For each additional single unit (40') bus, add 50'
For each additional articulated (60') bus, add 70'.

(Consult Local Transit Agency for Project Specific Details Required)

~~703.3.2~~703.3.3 Curb ~~Extensions~~Extension Design

A curb extension may be constructed along streets with on-street parking in areas with high pedestrian use such as downtown shopping districts and central business districts. Curb extensions may be designed in conjunction with bus stops to facilitate bus operations and passenger access. Besides reducing the pedestrian crossing distances, curb extensions with near side bus stops can reduce the impact to the available space for on street parking spaces (compared to typical bus zones), mitigate traffic conflicts between autos and buses merging back into the traffic stream, make crossing pedestrians more visible to drivers, and create additional space for passenger amenities such as a transit shelter and/or a bench.

The combination of curb extension and pullout can make design a challenge, particularly the drainage design. The placement of a bus stop on a curb extension should follow the same guidelines as those previously stated ~~(a near-side stop is preferred on two-lane streets where vehicles will not pass around a stopped bus. In the case of a street with wide shoulders or multiple lanes where vehicular traffic may pass uncontrolled around the bus, a far-side stop is preferred for sight distance issues). A bus stop on the near-side of a single lane entrance into an uncontrolled intersection should completely obstruct the traffic behind it. Where it is not acceptable to have stopped buses obstruct a lane of traffic, and a bus pullout is justified according to the previously discussed conditions, a bus stop may be placed far-side in the parking strip just beyond the curb extension. It may be appropriate to place a bus stop on a far-side curb extension at an uncontrolled intersection if the warrants for a bus pullout are not met and its placement will not create undue traffic hazards~~in Section 703.1.1.

DRAFT

Figure 700-8: Near-Side Curb Extension Bus Stop

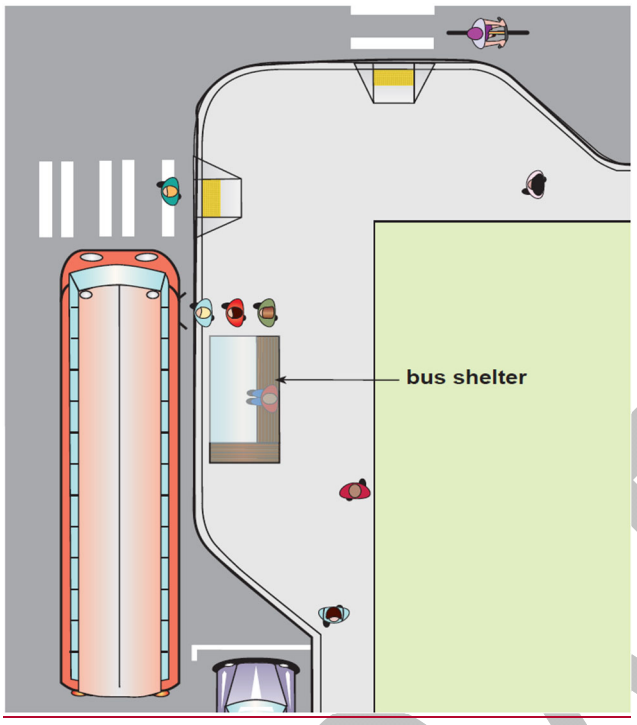


Figure 700-9~~Near~~: Curb Extension Bus Stop Reduces Bus Dwell Time



Near-side curb extensions are usually about the width of the parking lane and of sufficient length to allow passengers to use the front and back doors of a bus. **Boarding and alighting areas are required for each entry and exit door.** Curb extensions should not narrow a bike lane or shoulder that has high volumes of bicycles. ***Design curb extension at near-side bus stops per the typical dimensions shown in Figure 700-12.*** ~~Besides reducing the pedestrian crossing distances, curb extensions with near side bus stops can reduce the impact to parking (compared to typical bus zones), mitigate traffic conflicts between autos and buses merging back into the~~

DRAFT

~~traffic stream, make crossing pedestrians more visible to drivers, and create additional space for passenger amenities such as a shelter and/or a bench.~~.

Provide contrasting pavement and edge delineation (i.e., curbs, railings) to reduce the potential for pedestrians to linger in and block the bike lane. Where the bike lane is raised to the same elevation as the transit stop, pedestrians may linger in the bike lane. Railings may help to separate users. ***Designs need to consider fully separating all modes of travel to address accessibility concerns from the low vision community by not co-locating boarding and alighting areas for passengers with vehicles or cyclists.***

Figure 700-10: Bicycle Lane to Rear of Transit Stop Boarding and Alighting Area



DRAFT

Figure 700-11: Integrated Bike Lane Pedestrian Conflicts



In areas where curb extensions are desired, but it is not acceptable to have the bus stop in the travel lane, a far side pullout area can be created in the parking strip as shown in Figure 700-13. ***Design curb extensions at far side stops per the typical dimensions in Figure 700-13.*** This location and design, which is generally preferred for low-speed, high-volume, four-lane roadways, ~~eliminates the safety hazard~~reducing conflicts of vehicles passing the bus prior to entering the intersection.

DRAFT

Figure 700-12: Near-Side Bus Stop with Curb Extensions

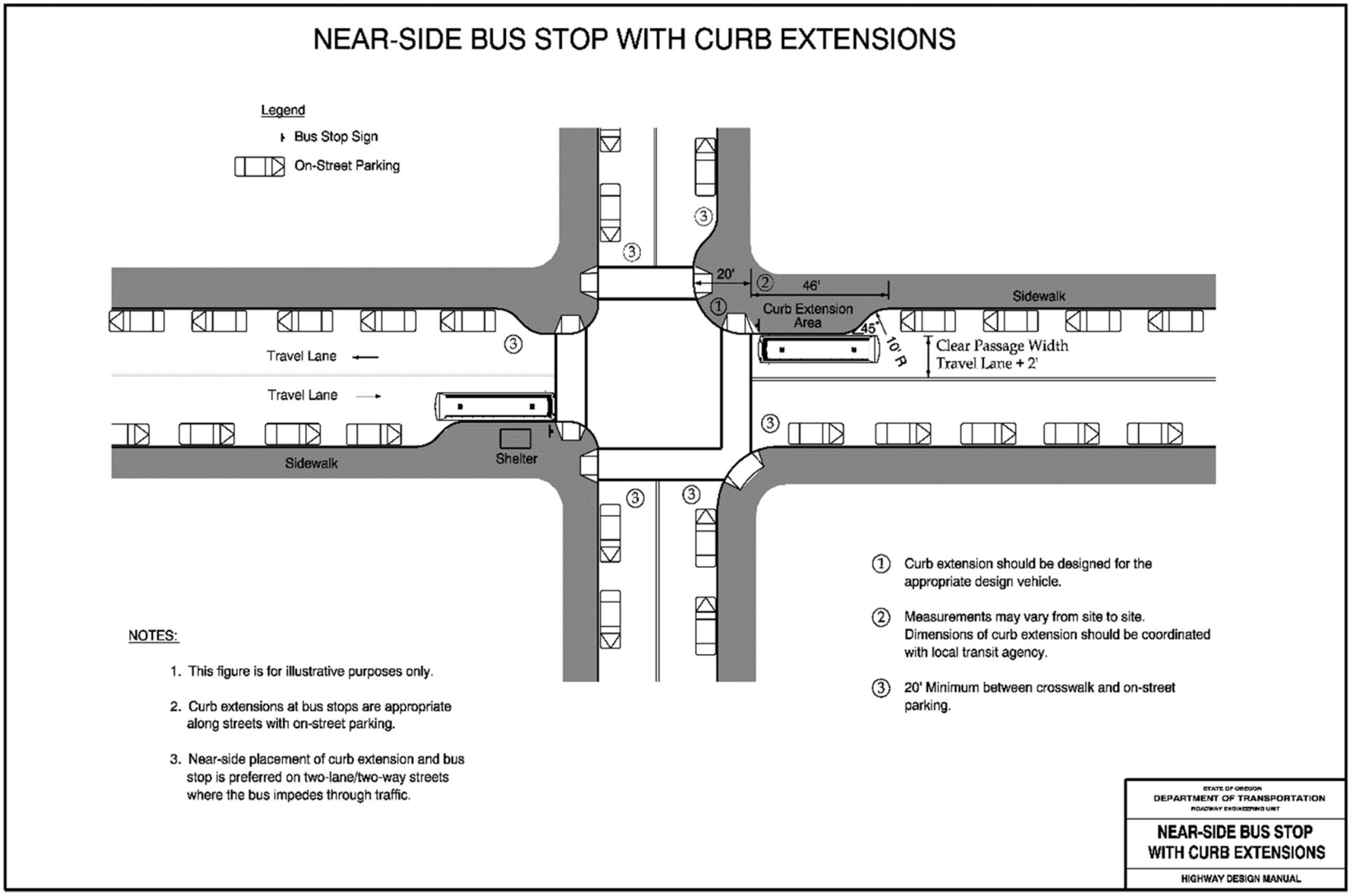
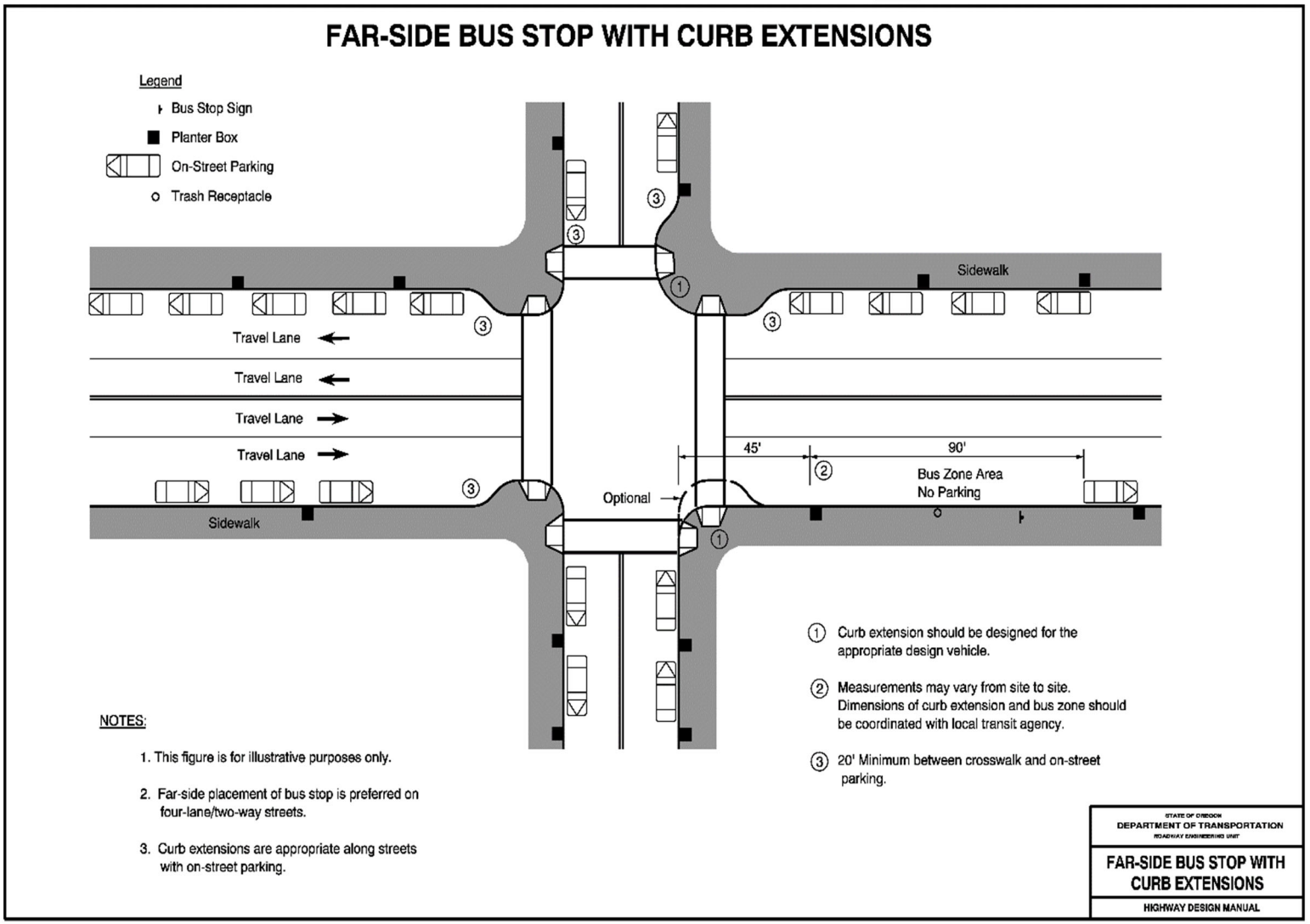


Figure 700-13: Far-Side Bus Stop with Curb



~~703.3.3~~703.3.4 Floating Bus Stop Design

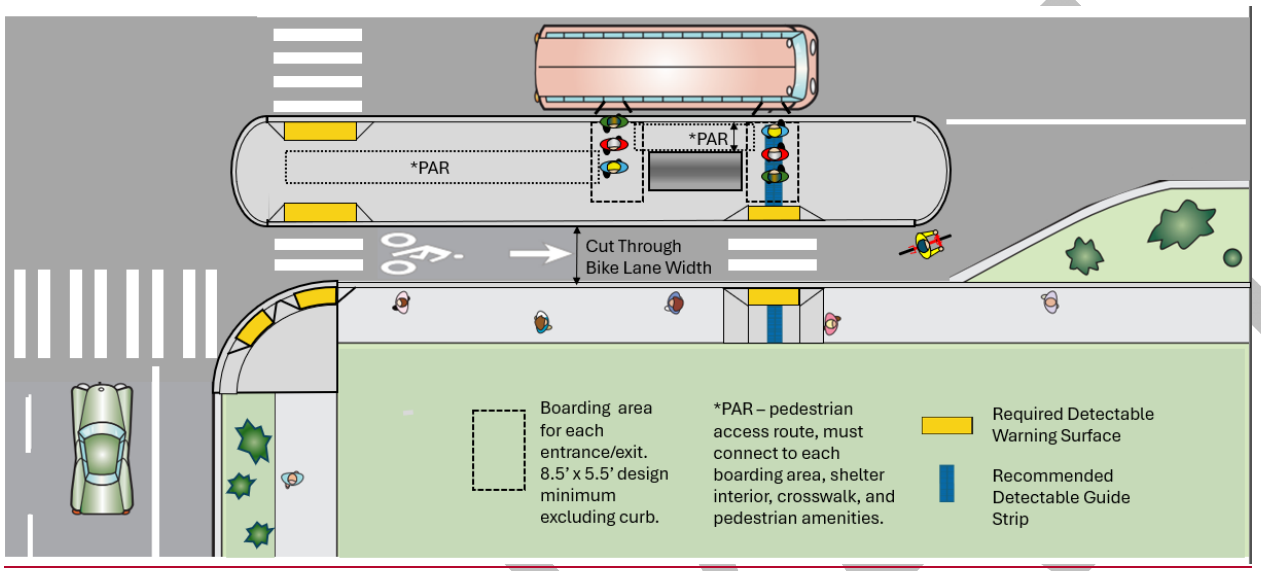
Routing bicyclists to the rear of a transit stop can help alleviate conflicts between bikes and transit vehicles. However, conflicts may exist between people riding bikes and people waiting for transit. The desired outcomes are that pedestrians cross the bike lane only at designated crossings and that bicyclists stop for pedestrians at the crossings. This design fully separates all modes of travel and is consistent with addressing accessibility concerns from the low vision community by not co-locating boarding and alighting areas for passengers with vehicles or cyclists. The layout of the bus stop affects whether these outcomes are achieved.

Pedestrians must cross a bicycle lane to access a bus stop. Although the volume of bicycle traffic may result in few conflicts, the conflicts need to be mitigated. Where bicycle traffic is very low, pedestrians may linger in the bike lane. Conversely, where bicycle traffic is high, pedestrians may have difficulty crossing the bike lane. Bicyclists are required to stop for pedestrians in a crosswalk. Provide a marked crossing across the bike lane at each end of the boarding island. Where bicyclist volume is high and bicyclist yielding to pedestrians is poor, consider adding a pedestrian-activated flasher with the crossing. ***When considering a floating bus stop and co-location shared mode bus stop, consult with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.***

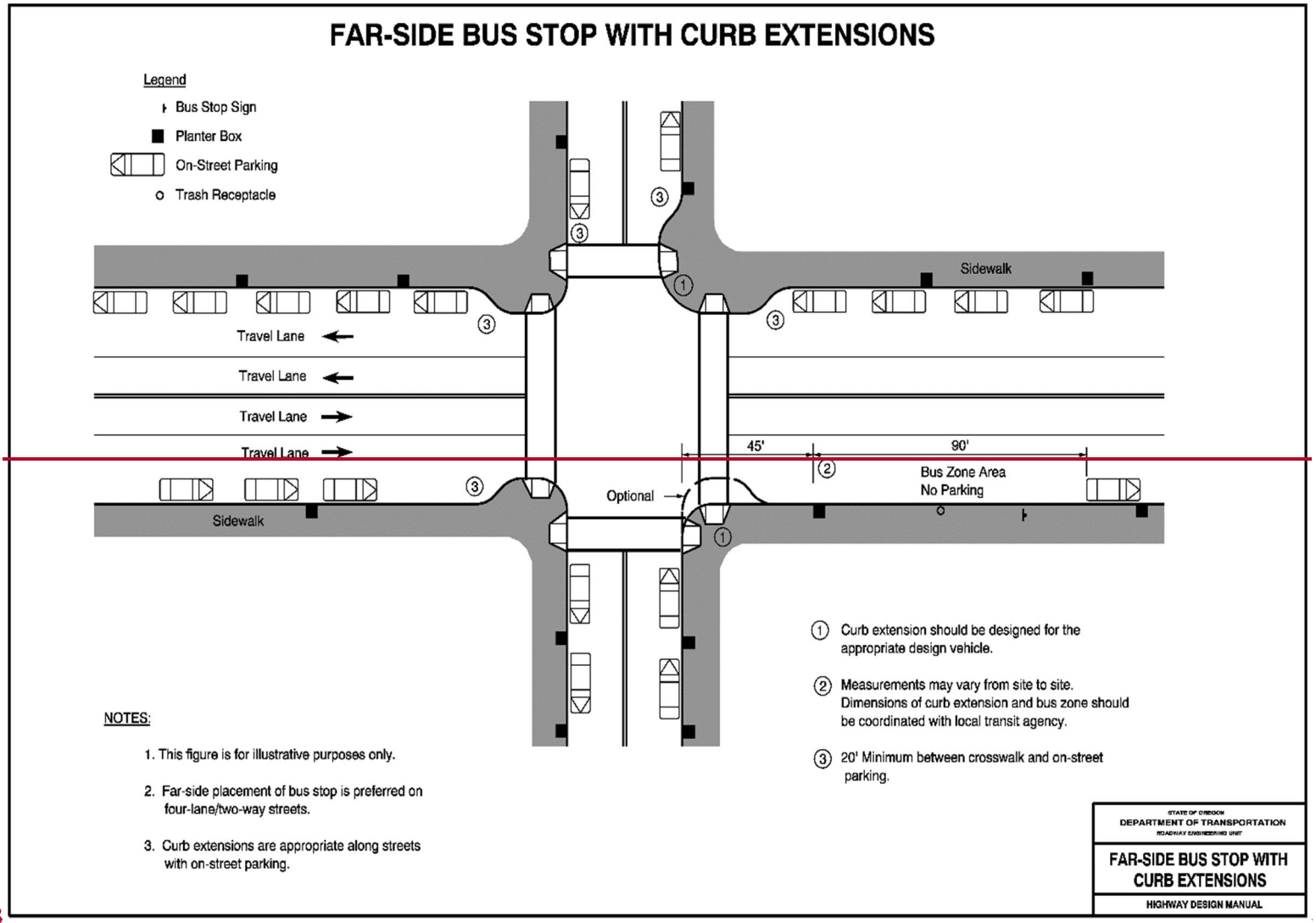
Bicycle lanes that do not overlap the boarding area are preferred. **The design of the boarding island must include a 5.5 foot wide x 8.5 foot long boarding area for passenger loading and for a bus to deploy a lift for wheelchair users to enter and exit a bus**. Where the location of the bus door is variable, it is preferable to provide a continuous 8.5 foot walkway to be used as the boarding area as shown in .

DRAFT

Figure 700-15~~17~~: Floating Bus Stop and Shelter Design With Cut-Through Bike Lane.



DRAFT


FAR-SIDE BUS STOP WITH CURB EXTENSIONS
Legend
Bus Stop Sign
Planter Box
On-Street Parking
Trash Receptacle
Sidewalk
Travel Lane
Travel Lane
Travel Lane
Travel Lane
45'
90'
Bus Zone Area
No Parking
Optional
Sidewalk
NOTES:
1. This figure is for illustrative purposes only.
2. Far-side placement of bus stop is preferred on four-lane/two-way streets.
3. Curb extensions are appropriate along streets with on-street parking.
1 Curb extension should be designed for the appropriate design vehicle.
2 Measurements may vary from site to site. Dimensions of curb extension and bus zone should be coordinated with local transit agency.
3 20' Minimum between crosswalk and on-street parking.
STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT
FAR-SIDE BUS STOP WITH CURB EXTENSIONS
HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

1 ~~70018~~

~~703.3.4 Roundabouts~~

~~A roundabout is a form of intersection design and control which accommodates traffic flow in one direction around a central island, operates with yield control at the entry points, and gives priority to vehicles within the roundabout. The placement of bus stops near roundabouts should be consistent with the needs of the users and the desired operations of the roundabout. As with locating bus stops at other types of intersections, pedestrian crossings of the roundabout legs should be minimized. A bus stop is best situated:~~

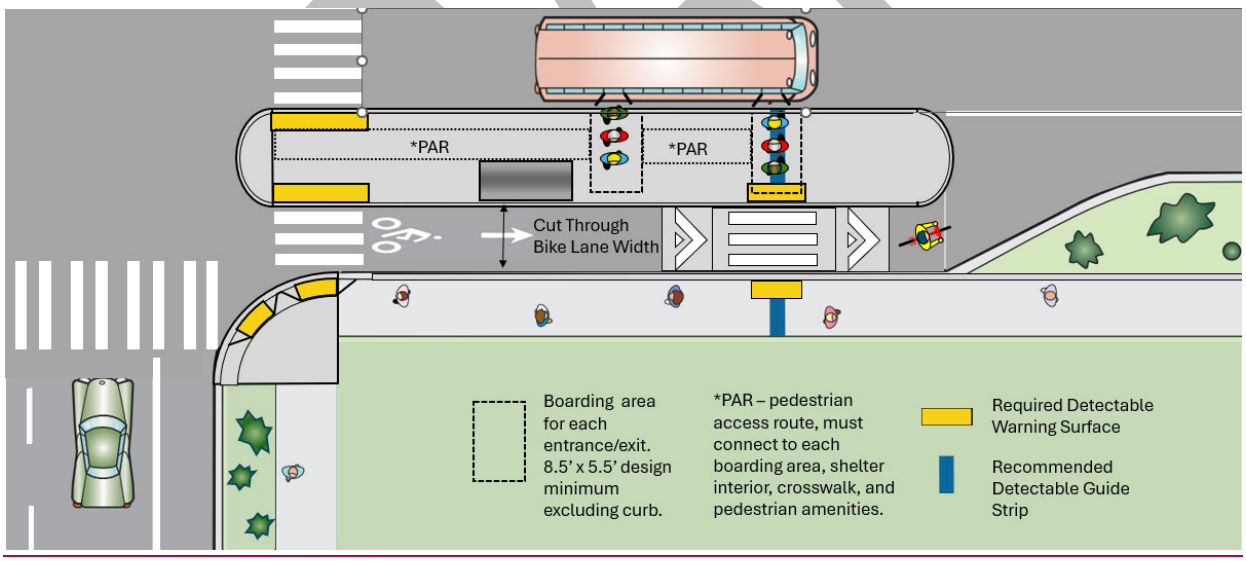
~~On an exit lane, in a pullout just past the crosswalk; or~~

~~On an approach leg 65 feet upstream from the crosswalk, in a pullout; or~~

~~On an entrance leg, just upstream from the crosswalk where the traffic volume is low and the stopping time is short. This location should not be used on two-lane entrances (a vehicle should not be allowed to pass a stopped bus in the interest of pedestrian crossing safety).~~

~~Information on roundabout design can be found in Part 500.~~

Figure 700-16: Floating Bus Stop and Shelter Design with Cut-Through Bike Lane and Elevated Bike Crossing



703.4 Light Rail Transit, Bus Rapid Transit and Streetcar Stops

Most of the design principles for bus stops listed previously would also apply to Light Rail Transit (LRT), Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) and streetcar stop locations. There are a few design

items that are unique to these modes that may not be found at bus stops. When designing stop locations for light rail transit, bus rapid transit or streetcars, the following ~~should be~~is considered:

1. ~~Transit stops~~Boarding and alighting areas may need to be on either side of a transit vehicle. These vehicles generally have access on both sides for convenience.
2. Transit stops may be located in a center median necessitating ~~safe~~ pedestrian access to the center of the roadway.
3. ~~Rail stops~~ Light rail transit or ~~BRT~~ bus rapid transit routes and pathways are more permanent in location than city bus stops, ~~as~~and the ~~route is~~location and amenities are more difficult to alter in the future.

Section 704 Transit Accessibility and Amenities

Elements of transit stops that have accessible requirements include pedestrian services and amenities. These include fare vending machines, operable parts of fixed elements, detectable warnings for boarding platforms, boarding and alighting areas, pedestrian signs, pedestrian access routes between newly constructed transit stops and pedestrian amenities, temporary alternate transit stops, and benches. They are discussed in detail in the subsequent sections.

~~703.5~~704.1 ~~Sidewalk~~Walkways and Circulation Paths

At transit stops, sidewalks and curb ramps should be provided ~~at a minimum~~along the roadway to the nearest intersection or connect to the nearest section of existing sidewalk. It may also be necessary to wrap ~~a~~ sidewalk around a corner to join an existing sidewalk on a side street. **~~If~~Where a transit route does not have complete sidewalks, provide a ~~suitable~~boarding and alighting area for waiting pedestrians and ~~a~~ an accessible connection path to the ~~boarding and alighting area~~. ~~Projects should be considered that provide sidewalks on transit routes, for continuous access to all stops.~~available shoulder or other circulation path to continue along the roadway.**

DRAFT

~~703.6~~704.2 Providing Accessibility

~~People with disabilities usually ride transit at a higher rate than people without disabilities because many people with disabilities cannot drive.~~ **Circulation**

It is ~~therefore~~ critical that all transit stops be fully accessible. ~~The two primary groups for whom this is an issue are individuals with mobility disabilities and individuals with vision disabilities. Both~~ Pedestrians require a continuous~~, level~~ passage, free of obstructions~~. *This passage should be*~~ to access the transit stop and amenities. ***Provide a pedestrian access route*** ***a minimum of 5 feet wide, with at least 7 feet of vertical clearance***~~.~~ ***to account for some construction margin.*** Transit amenity physical dimensions may change over time with maintenance, repairs, or reconfiguration. **A minimum allowable ~~passage of~~ pedestrian access route equal to 4 feet ~~wide~~ may be acceptable in physically constrained areas.** Ensure no protruding objects are within the pedestrian circulation areas of the transit stop and walkway by verifying both horizontal and vertical clearances. See Part 800 for pedestrian access route requirements.

~~At~~**Boarding and Alighting**

Boarding and alighting is the action of getting on or off the transit ~~stops,~~vehicle. **Design a minimum 8.5 foot (measured perpendicular to the curb, street, or highway edge) by 5.5 foot (measured parallel to the curb, street, or highway edge) ~~landing~~all weather surface pad ~~is required at~~ for all transit vehicle entrances and exits~~.~~ exclusive of the curb.** This is referred to as the boarding and alighting area(s) for the transit stop. **If a transit vehicle has more than one entrance or exit, each access point requires ~~*an 8 foot by 5 foot landing*~~a boarding and alighting area.** To avoid the choppy affect ~~*this creates at permanent transit stop locations*~~and to account for changing vehicle fleets in the future, it ~~*may be*~~is preferable to construct a continuous sidewalk the length of the transit stop, or at least to the front and rear vehicle doors (see Figure 700-19~~Figure 700-21~~). The continuous sidewalk should have a minimum width of 8.5 feet~~. An~~ excluding the curb if there are no other transit stop amenities. **A pedestrian accessible route from the ~~bus landing pad~~transit boarding and alighting area to the transit shelter area and amenities is ~~also~~ required.**

At transit stops in uncurbed areas, the roadway shoulder ~~**should be**~~ may serve as the boarding and alighting area for pedestrians while the transit vehicle stays in the travel lane. **When it does, provide a paved shoulder width at least 8.5 feet wide ~~to provide a landing~~for the all-weather surface pad and to provide a clear connection path to the street intersection and crosswalk**. ~~Transit agencies often~~Rural pavements typically have ~~approved bus stop specifications and plans for bus stops in urban and rural areas that may be more extensive~~a sloped or safety edge at the edge of pavement (see RD615) which encroaches on the width over time with ~~pedestrian amenities. The designer should contact the transit agency early in the design process~~maintenance overlays. **Design a 1.5% roadway cross slope on shoulder segments that overlaps with the boarding and alighting area which is perpendicular to the travel lane.** *For asphalt pavement shoulders, consider designing a cross slope of 1.0%* *to* ~~ensure appropriate bus stop design, location~~*account for the variability with asphalt construction.* Rolled

DRAFT

shoulders with steeper cross slopes are not permitted at a boarding and ~~infrastructure is constructed.~~alighting area. **The slope parallel to the roadway profile on the shoulder is permitted to match the roadway grade or be flatter.**

~~703.7~~704.3 Amenities for Waiting Passengers

Transit ridership is enhanced by the provision of safe, pleasant and comfortable places for waiting passengers. Protection from the elements, seating, and personal security are key to a pleasant waiting experience. The following amenities are recommended to be placed where feasible and cost effective. The list is not a complete compilation of amenities available. It is merely a starting point for possible inclusion. ~~The local transit agencies typically have guidelines for amenities and should be contacted to determine which amenities should be included in the project~~Transit agencies often have approved bus stop specifications and plans for bus stops in urban and rural areas that may be more extensive with pedestrian amenities. Contact the transit agency early in the design process to ensure appropriate bus stop design, location and infrastructure is constructed and coordinate with the Regional Transit Coordinator.

~~703.7.1 Bus Shelter~~

Refer to Part 800, Section 810 for additional design information related to pedestrian amenities and accessibility requirements.

704.3.1 Shelters

Type, size, and placement of a pedestrian shelter for a transit stop depends on land use characteristics, transit frequency, and transit capacity. A standard-size ~~bus~~pedestrian shelter requires at least a 6 foot x 10 foot pad. Orientation of the shelter should consider prevailing winter winds. Sidewalks separated from the roadway with a planter strip in the furniture zone offer a unique opportunity to provide a shelter out of the path of passing pedestrians along the walkway as shown in Figure 700-17~~Figure 700-19~~. ***Coordinate with the transit agency for type of shelter to be installed or planned for future installation.***

The nearest edge of the shelter is placed at least 2 feet from the back of curb when the pedestrian opening faces away from the street and at least 4.5 feet from back of curb when the opening faces towards the street. Many shelters are bolted to the surface encroaching into the available space for the pedestrian accessible route or circulation paths. **The adjacent sidewalk must ~~still~~ have a 5 foot clear passage for the pedestrian zone. A pedestrian access route is required to connect the shelter to the boarding and alighting area see Figure 700-18~~Orientation of the shelter should take into~~ below.**

DRAFT

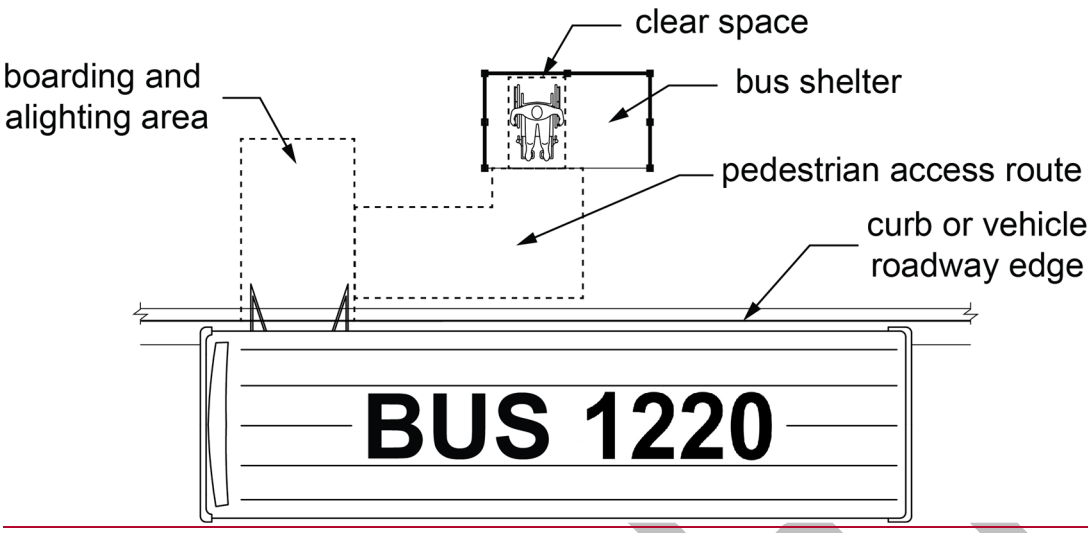
Provide at least one 2.5 feet by 4.0 feet (30 inches x 48 inches) clear area entirely within the shelter for a wheelchair user to be protected from the elements. The clear area is placed at one end of the fixed seating. The clear area for the wheelchair design vehicle is not to overlap the front 18 inches of the seating. Provide larger clear areas where it is feasible to account ~~prevailing winter winds. Sidewalks separated from the roadway with a planter strip offer a unique opportunity to provide a bus shelter out of the path of passing pedestrians.~~for construction margins/errors. Where feasible, the clear area should be level with a design cross slope of 1.5% in both directions (2.1% finished construction). The clear area for the wheelchair user in the shelter is preferred to be on the shortest accessible route, and to be placed to reduce conflicts with other passengers during egress movement for transit boarding. Utilize the wheelchair design vehicle to make assessments of the shelter. See Part 800 for additional ~~bus~~ shelter site design guidance. Refer to Part 800, Section 810 for additional design information related to pedestrian amenities and accessibility requirements.

Figure 700-17~~19~~: Bus Shelter Improves Transit Experience



DRAFT

Figure 700-18~~20~~: Connection to Boarding and Alighting Areas, source US Access Board.



~~703.7.2~~704.3.2 Signing

~~Appropriate pedestrian~~Pedestrian scale directional signing (way finding) can help people find major transit stops such as intercity bus stops, transit centers, and park-and-ride lots. **Place bus stop identification sign at least 2 feet from the curb zone~~.~~ meeting protruding object clearances and edge detection requirements.** Refer to the Sign Design Manual for additional details on the accessible pedestrian signing requirements.

~~703.7.3~~704.3.3 Seating

Benches can make waiting more pleasant for transit passengers. In particular, people with a disability may be unable to stand for long periods while waiting for the bus; seating may increase their ability to ~~used~~use fixed route transit service. ~~Evaluate~~**Provide clear space for ~~ADA~~ companion seating ~~and clear space requirements when~~next to either end of benches ~~are~~, and if there is no end (circular bench) the clear space shall either be integral to the bench or no more than 18 inches from the front. The minimum clear space for a wheelchair is 2.5 feet by 4.0 feet (30 inches x 48 inches). Provide clear areas for other types of seating provided~~.~~ at the transit stop.** *Provide larger clear areas where it is feasible to account for construction margins/errors. Where feasible, the clear area should be level with a design cross slope of 1.5% in both directions (2.1% finished construction).* **Benches and seating shall be accessible from connecting pedestrian circulation ~~area~~areas and placed on an accessible surface~~.~~ with a pedestrian access route to the boarding and alighting area. See** Section 704.3.1 Shelters on seating requirements within a transit shelter and Part 800, Section 810 for additional design information related to pedestrian amenities and accessibility requirements.

DRAFT

~~703.7.4~~704.3.4 Shade

The strategic placement of shelters, benches, and bus stops should also account for trees (existing, new) to provide shade for passengers. Deciduous shade trees which cast afternoon shade on the bus stop are generally most effective.

Shade trees can make waiting more pleasant for transit passengers and trees provide multiple other benefits in urban settings. Species should be thoughtfully selected and measures taken during installation to eliminate the risk of roots heaving pavement. Plant trees outside of clear zone and comply with Highway Directive DES 20-01 Ornamental Landscaping. See Section 406 Roadside and Median Trees for other considerations. Refer to Part 800, Section 810 for additional design information related to pedestrian amenities and accessibility requirements related to landscaping.

~~703.7.5~~704.3.5 Trash Receptacles and Other Amenities

These improvements can make waiting more pleasant, increasing the likelihood that people will use transit as a mode choice. ~~Ensure a~~ Trash cans and other advertisements permanently secured to the shelter need to be accessible. Place fixed trash cans so they do not infringe on the clear space, turning space and pedestrian access route. **A pedestrian access route is ~~available and~~provided, free of obstructions to all public amenities including the trash receptacle. Provide a clear area that is connected to a pedestrian access route to utilize the amenities from a mobility device. The clear area is 2.5 feet by 4.0 feet (30 inches x 48 inches) with final construction with the cross-slope perpendicular to the roadway street, curb or edge of road designed at 1.5%.** *Provide larger clear areas where it is feasible to account for construction margins/errors. Where feasible, the clear area should be level with a design cross slope of 1.5% in both directions (2.1% finished construction).* Refer to Part 800, Section 810 for additional design information related to pedestrian amenities and accessibility requirements.

~~703.7.6~~704.3.6 Bicycle Parking

Bike racks or storage lockers should be considered at bus stops in urban fringe areas and park-and-ride facilities. **Ensure the bicycle rack, parking locker or bicycle storage does not block or infringe on the pedestrian zone ~~or~~(including when bikes are loaded), pedestrian accessible route, boarding and alighting areas, or clear areas for pedestrian amenities.**

~~703.7.7~~704.3.7 Transit Arrival Information or Fare Station

Electronic transit arrival information in real time is a convenient addition to a transit stop. ***Coordinate with the transit agency to see if it will be included with the project.*** ~~At a minimum,~~

DRAFT

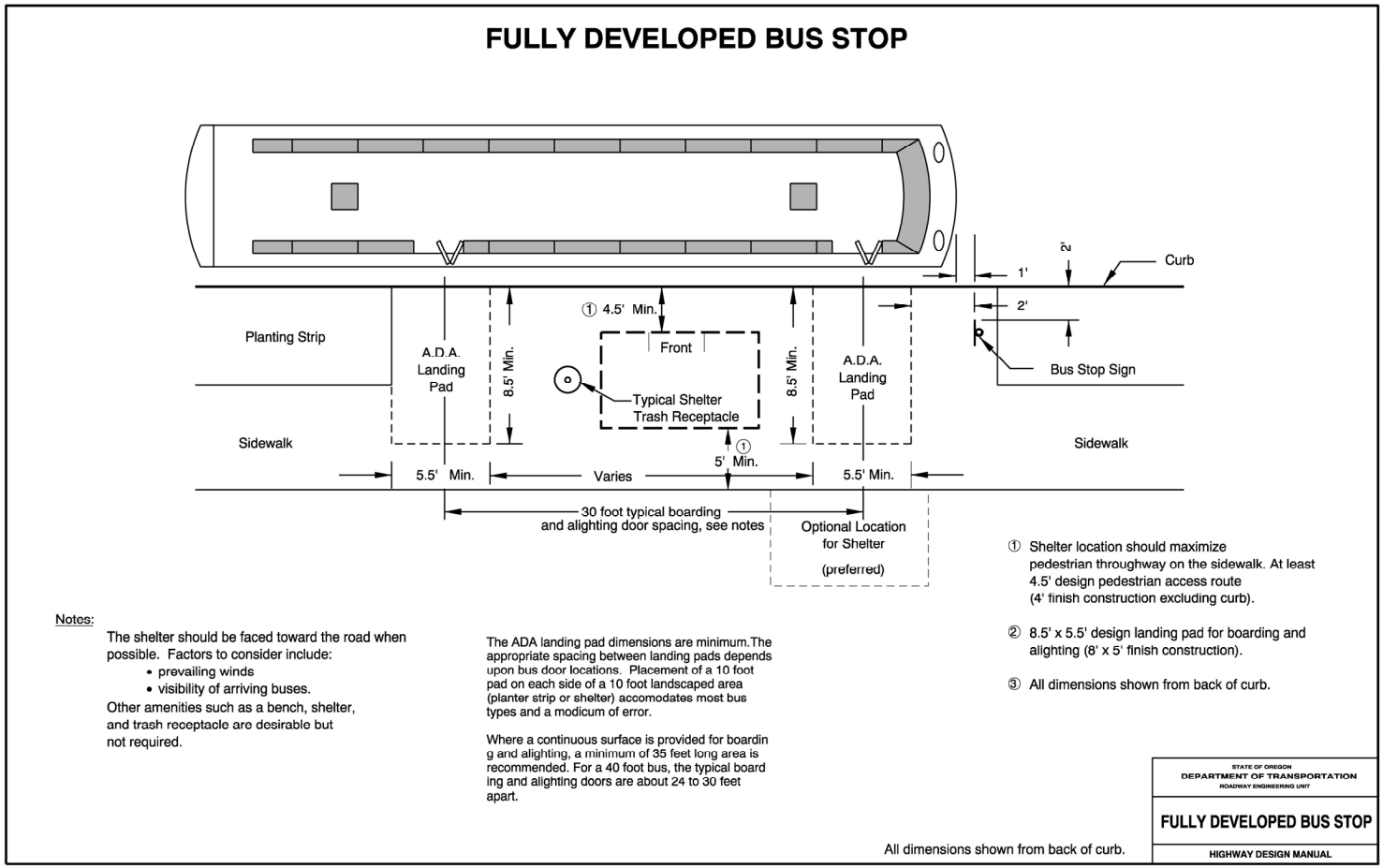
~~facilities should provide hard copy of pertinent transit schedules to be included with transit stops.~~ **Ensure the route information ~~is~~and fare stations are not blocked by other amenities and has a clear area that is accessible~~.~~ and connected to pedestrian access routes. The clear area shall be at least 2.5 feet by 4.0 feet (30 inches x 48 inches) with final construction with the cross-slope perpendicular to the roadway street, curb or edge of road designed at 1.5%.** *Provide larger clear areas where feasible to account for construction margins/errors. Where feasible, the clear area should be level with a design cross slope of 1.5% in both directions (2.1% finished construction).*

~~703.7.8~~704.3.8 Future Amenities

~~Work~~*Review transit master plans for future amenity items anticipated at a transit stop that should be coordinated with the local transit agency.* It may be beneficial to install conduit for electrical or communication networks (real time signage, lighting, and other infrastructure) as part of the current project, eliminating the need to remove portions of roadway and sidewalk in the future.

DRAFT

Figure 700-194: Fully-Developed Bus Stop



~~Section 704~~Section 705 Roadway and Intersection Design for Transit

The size and operating characteristics of all motorized vehicles regularly using the facility, including transit vehicles, are to be considered in the design of roadways and intersections. In addition to motorized vehicles, bicycles and pedestrian needs, movements and interactions must also be included in appropriate intersection design. To begin design, the designer ~~should contact~~contacts the local roadway jurisdiction and transit agency to determine the appropriate design vehicle for the intersection. Even when transit vehicles are not determined to be the controlling design vehicle, they must be considered in the overall interaction within the intersection. ***Roadway features such as intersection radii, curb type and height, lane width, and pavement thickness are to be designed to accommodate transit vehicles where necessary***. Properly designed intersection features will maximize all vehicle type operations, reduce transit travel times, reduce vehicle conflicts, minimize pedestrian crossing distances, and improve the overall driving/riding experience of the roadway users. When designing fully-developed transit stops alignments and layouts on state highway facilities, transit agencies need to work with ODOT to minimize impacts to future highway projects and future highway needs.

Buses have unique operational characteristics including relatively low power-to-weight ratios, high axle loads, short wheelbases, and long overhangs that may necessitate special treatments.

Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) routes have many of the same design criteria as for regular bus routes. However, the bus rapid transit route is usually in a dedicated pathway and may be located in the center of the roadway. Bus rapid transit vehicles are often articulated buses. Turning movements and turning radii at intersections can be challenging to fit with other lane configurations in an intersection.

Light Rail Transit (LRT) and streetcars both run on rails. This creates challenges for designers at intersections where these vehicles need to make turns. They may have very limited turning radii and require additional space. Track grades are important design criteria for light rail transit systems and streetcar systems. Often, where track sections cross each other, the crossing grade needs to be very close to zero percent to allow transition to the other track effectively. **Detectable warning surfaces are required at crosswalks and pedestrian rail crossings, see Part 800.**

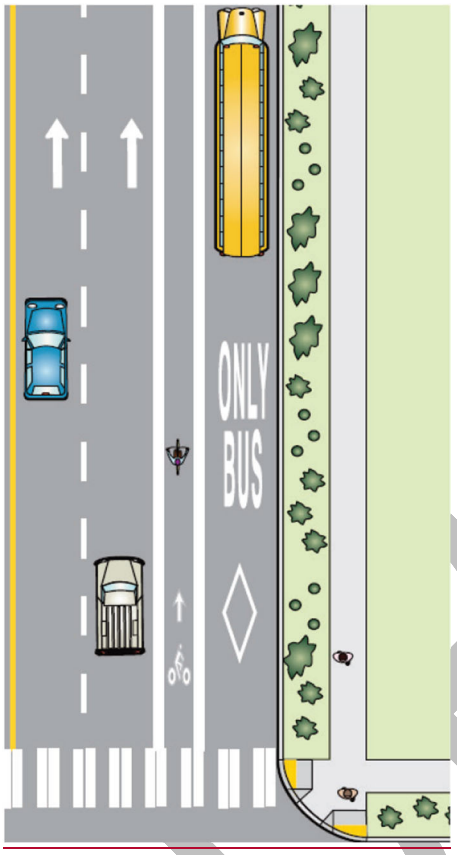
~~704.1~~705.1 ~~Roadway and Intersection~~ Design for Buses

In most instances, bicycles and buses can share the available road space. On routes heavily traveled by both bicyclists and buses, separation can reduce conflicts (stopped buses hinder bicycle movement and slower moving bicycles hinder buses). Separate bus lanes and bike lanes

DRAFT

should be considered to reduce conflicts between passengers and bicyclists, with the bus lane at the curb side. Buses will be passing bicyclists on the right, but the fewer merging and turning movements reduce overall conflicts. This design fully separates all modes of travel and is consistent with addressing accessibility concerns from the low vision community by not co-locating boarding and alighting areas for passengers with vehicles or cyclists.

Figure 700-20~~15~~: Bike Lane to the Left of the Bus Lane



DRAFT

Figure 700-21~~16~~: Bike Lane to Left of Bus Lane



While a roadway may be designed to accommodate large trucks, some design elements may be controlled by the unique needs of public transit. Some of these elements are:

Shoulder width

~~:~~ **On roadways without curbs and sidewalks, the improved shoulder width at the bus stop shall be at least 8 feet for accessibility to provide boarding and alighting areas.** *Design the shoulder to be 8.5 feet to account for future paving overlays and the safety edge treatment that will reduce the overall boarding and alighting area (See RD615 surface edge details).* **At least 4 feet of the improved shoulder surface is provided to connect the boarding and alighting areas to the shoulder, street intersection and crosswalks.**

Right of way

~~:~~ The ~~**wheelchair landing pad**~~boarding and alighting area at a bus stop must extend at least 8 feet beyond the curb line of a typical sidewalk**. Design the sidewalk to be at least 8.5 feet exclusive of the curb to account for construction margin of error where the boarding and alighting area is located**. Additional right of way may also be needed for a bus shelter (see Section 704) or other accessible pedestrian amenities.

~~Clearance:~~Clearances

Review Part 800 and Part 900 for minimum vertical clearance requirements for pedestrians and bicycles. ***Overhead obstructions should be a minimum of 12 feet above the street surface~~, obstructions should not be*** *to allow for pedestrian clearances and bicycles, and clearance of the bus vehicles.* Review Part 900 for cross section elements and clear zone requirements.

DRAFT

Obstructions in the Buffer Zone are ***located*** ~~***within***~~***at least*** ***2 feet*** ~~***of***~~***from*** ***the edge of the street to avoid being struck by a bus mirror.***

Intersections ~~***should be***~~***are*** ***designed for use by*** ~~***either***~~ ***a standard bus*** ~~***or***~~***and*** ***an articulated bus.*** The turning and off-tracking characteristics of the two bus types are slightly different and must be accounted for in the intersection design. ~~(~~The swept path of an articulated bus is about 1.5 feet wider than that for a standard bus for a right-angle turn~~).~~ The overhang (lean) of buses is considerable and will affect the design corner radii, bus stop location, and placement of bus stop amenities. Street lighting, signals, signs, and other intersection furnishings ~~should be~~are placed clear of the turning paths of buses.

Curb radii design should minimize pedestrian crossing distance, while accommodating the off-tracking characteristics of the bus. Consideration needs to be given not only to buses on the mainline route, but also for buses entering and exiting the mainline roadway from a crossroad. In designing the curb radii for a bus entering a multi-lane road from a signalized crossroad, the design may allow for the bus to initially turn into the inside lane next to the median before returning to the outside lane or entering a bus pullout/stop area. This design will allow for a tighter curb radius or curb extension to be included ~~(if appropriate)~~ which will reduce pedestrian crossing distance while maintaining bus operation. It may be desirable at unsignalized intersections to design the curb radius so that the bus may enter a multilane roadway without encroaching upon the inside lane. At no time ~~should~~is the design to encourage the vehicle to turn across opposing lanes. Appropriate curb radii in combination with usable shoulder width and number of cross street lanes are shown in

DRAFT

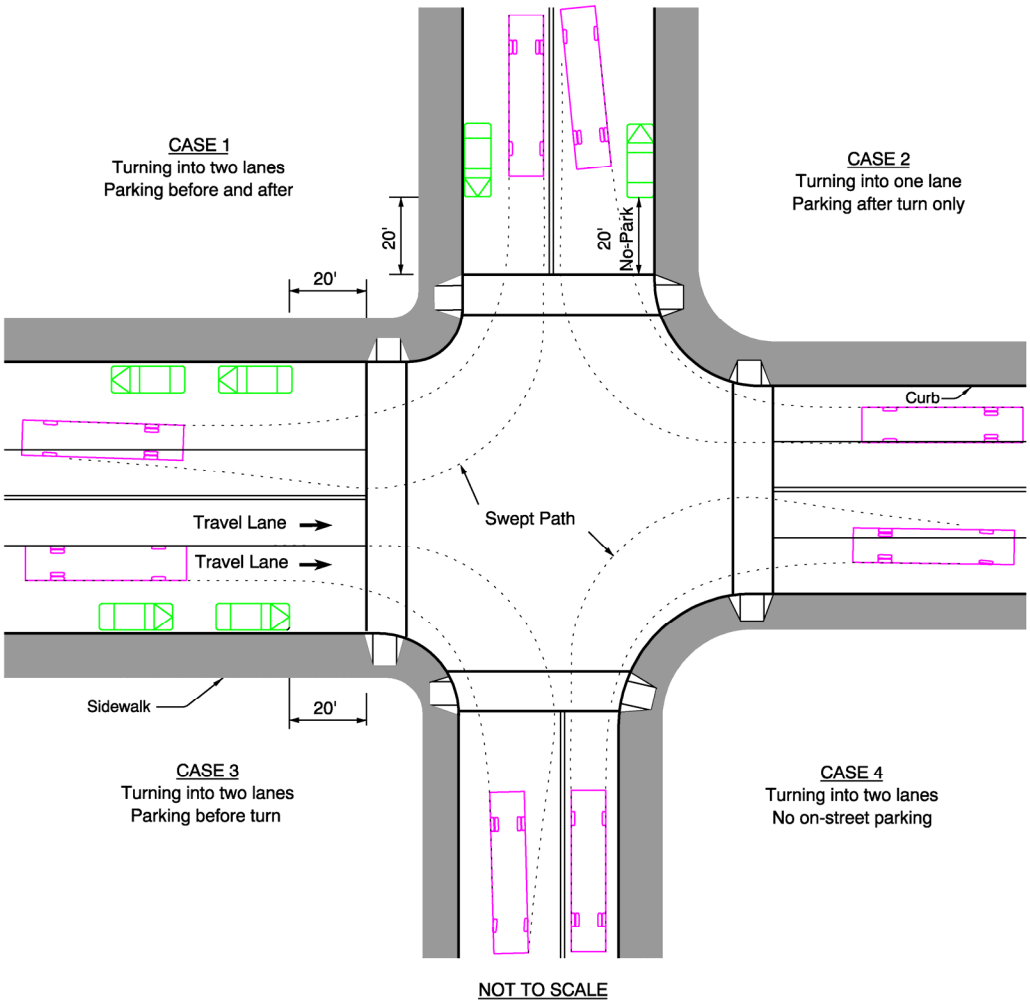
1

DRAFT

1 Figure 700-14: Typical Intersection Design for Buses

DRAFT

TYPICAL INTERSECTION DESIGN FOR BUSES



NOTES: * This figure is for illustrative purposes only. Curb radii and on-street parking should be checked for vehicle tracking. A gap study may show a need at unsignalized intersections to design the curb radius so that a bus may enter a multilane roadway without encroaching upon the inside lane.

When buses and on-street parking are present, minimum width from curb to centerline is recommended to be 22'. In this illustration, buses turn from and into 14 foot lanes.

All dimensions assume no encroachment into opposing lanes and a 2 foot clearance from curbs.

STATE OF OREGON
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
ROADWAY ENGINEERING UNIT

TYPICAL INTERSECTION DESIGN FOR BUSES

HIGHWAY DESIGN MANUAL

1

~~704.1.1~~705.1.1 Bus ~~Pads~~Pad Surfacing Design

Pavement designs are coordinated with ODOT Pavement Services and ODOT Maintenance. Also, the operating transit agency should be contacted to determine how to include any agency specific needs or requirements concerning bus pads. Some transit agencies have their own standards for construction of bus pullouts and bus pads.

Roadway pavements need to be of sufficient strength to accommodate repetitive bus axle loads of up to 25,000 lbs. Very concentrated wheel loading coupled with the dynamic nature of braking place high demands on the pavement at bus stops. Some curbside stop areas may require strengthened pavement sections. On high to moderate speed roadways, these bus pads are generally placed outside of the travel lane. ~~Roadway pavements need to be of sufficient strength to accommodate repetitive bus axle loads of up to 25,000 lbs.~~ Due to the highly concentrated nature of the vehicle paths, consideration should be given to constructing bus pads with reinforced concrete pavement (see Oregon Standard Detail DET1610 for PCC Pavement Details). ~~Pavement designs should be coordinated with ODOT Pavement Services and ODOT Maintenance.~~ The pavement section will depend on anticipated use and site-specific soil conditions~~. Also, the operating transit agency should be contacted to determine how to include any agency specific needs or requirements concerning bus pads. Some transit agencies have their own standards for construction of bus pullouts and bus pads~~.

~~704.2~~705.2 ~~Roadway and Intersection~~ Design for Bus Rapid Transit

Many of the design concerns for regular bus routes and facilities mentioned in the previous subsections apply to bus rapid transit routes as well. **Installation of Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) systems will ~~generally~~ trigger 4R standard design requirements where they interact with the state highway system.** Bus rapid transit systems are expected to be quick and efficient. Therefore, they have some specific requirements that regular bus routes do not.

1. Bus rapid transit systems often run in a dedicated pathway separate from the general lanes of traffic. As such, they are expected to run independent of other traffic. At intersections, however, the bus rapid transit system must interact with general traffic.
2. Bus rapid transit vehicles may get pre-emption at signalized intersections.
3. Bus rapid transit stops may need to be located in the center median, creating a need for ~~safe~~ pedestrian areas for waiting and boarding activities.
4. ~~The designer may need to provide additional~~Providing pedestrian crossing locations to accommodate the bus rapid transit stop locations.

DRAFT

5. ~~If~~A split-phase signal or other means of accommodation is designed when the ~~BRT~~ route ~~is~~ crosses adjacent travel lanes. For example, when a route in the median ~~and then~~ makes a right turn at ~~an~~the intersection ~~to another roadway, provision must be made for the movement across adjacent traffic lanes. This may require a split-phase signal or other means of accommodation.~~.
6. Bus rapid transit vehicles are often articulated ~~type~~ vehicles that may have specific turning radii that ~~could~~ impact intersection design and interaction with general traffic.
7. Bus rapid transit routes on dedicated pathways are more permanent than regular bus routes running with general traffic. Therefore, the bus rapid transit facility is less likely to change over time.

~~704.3~~705.3 ~~Roadway and Intersection~~ Design for Light Rail Transit and Streetcars

Many of the primary design considerations for roadways and intersections relating to bus routes and bus rapid transit routes also apply to Light Rail Transit (LRT) and streetcar routes. Since these vehicles run on rails, they have some unique characteristics that differentiate them from regular bus routes or bus rapid transit routes.

Coordination with the local transit agency is necessary to establish allowable design criteria specific to light rail transit and streetcar routes that minimize impacts to the state highway. Adding light rail transit or streetcar facilities to the state highway is constructing a new feature that did not exist previously in the roadway. Installation of light rail transit or streetcar facilities on the state highway system is a major, permanent impact to highway operations and is considered reconstruction of the highway. **Installation of these facilities will trigger a 4R design standard.**

The following list assumes the light rail transit or streetcar route runs on surface streets with general traffic and not on a separate alignment. Where light rail transit or streetcar routes run along separated alignments, many of these challenges do not pose as great a concern.

1. Vertical grades along the track line are critical to light rail transit and streetcar ~~routes.~~route operation. These vehicles require flatter grades than regular bus routes or bus rapid transit routes.
2. Track cross-slope grades are less forgiving than with other modes. ***Cross-slopes may need to be held at or near zero percent~~.~~ on the roadway.*** On heavily superelevated roadways, roadways with excessive cross-slope, or excessive crown sections, it can be challenging to establish adequate transition between roadway cross-slopes and track cross-slopes. ~~As a result, construction challenges can occur, and long term traffic operation can be affected.~~

DRAFT

3. Tracks crossing ~~roadway~~ grades perpendicular to the roadway can also create construction challenges and long-term operation issues for general traffic due to the introduction of short, steep vertical roadway grades to match required track cross-slope.
4. ~~Potential~~Evaluate drainage ~~issues~~ due to the change in cross-slope, vertical alignment or superelevation needed to fit track to roadway.
5. Lane balance may be affected on multi-lane roadways. Drivers ~~may~~ tend to avoid driving in the lane with the tracks.
6. Utility relocations and sloped paving patches to match rail installation can cause rough, uneven surfaces with undesirable cross-slopes for motor vehicles, pedestrians, and bicyclists. The final ~~paving~~pavement surface should be ~~a~~ completely ~~overlaid surface matching~~resurfaced to match acceptable cross-slope grades.
7. Light rail transit and streetcar rails are often installed in a concrete pathway. The wide swath of gray concrete in the black asphalt roadway can appear as a separate lane, confusing drivers when the light rail transit or streetcar facility deviates from a travel lane. Travel lane delineation and markings need to be easily understood by drivers to avoid ~~their~~ following the rail facility when it turns from the main line. This is of particular importance at mid-block, off-street stops or at transit terminal facilities.
8. Horizontal curvature ~~may be~~is more limited than other modes due to the light rail transit or streetcar vehicle's turning radius and side friction on rails. Wider turning arcs may require use of more than one lane.
9. Light rail transit and streetcar routes are fixed by the rail network and are more permanent than some other modes. Light rail transit and streetcar facilities are less likely to change over time.
10. Steel rails placed in the travel lane ~~may~~ create ~~potential hazards~~additional design considerations for bicycle traffic~~. Wet rails may become slippery~~ and ~~bicycle tires can get caught in the~~accessibility requirements. Review Part 800 for pedestrian rail ~~opening causing a rider to fall~~crossing design requirements.

Light rail transit vehicles and streetcars are usually designed for entrance and egress from either side allowing flexibility along the route. This creates challenges for roadway or intersection design.

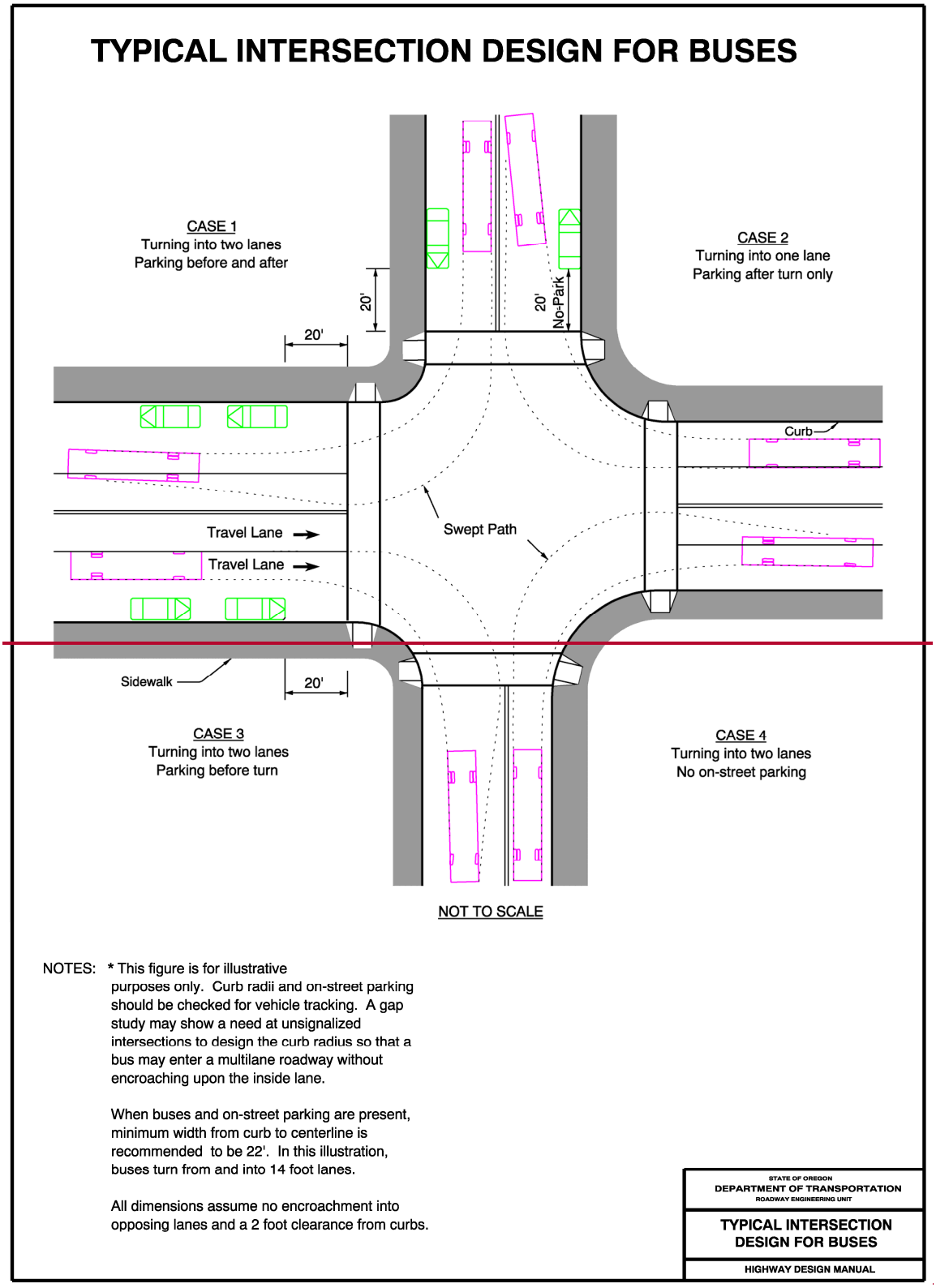
1. Stops may need to be located in medians or in the center of roadways.
2. On multi-lane roadways or one-way roadways, the stops may vary from side to side creating the need for the tracks to change from one lane to another resulting in conflicts between transit vehicles and general traffic.
3. Transitioning tracks from one lane to another and holding track grades constant can impact roadway grades and general traffic operations.
4. Transitioning tracks from one lane to another can impact bicycle riders forcing them to cross the track section more frequently ~~increasing the potential for mishap~~.

DRAFT

5. **Light rail transit boarding and alighting areas are required to be accessible and will require detectable warning surfaces, see Part 800.**

DRAFT

~~Figure -: Typical Intersection Design for Bus~~



Section 710 Park-and-Ride Facilities

Park-and-ride facilities provide parking for people who wish to transfer from their personal vehicle to public transportation or carpools/vanpools. These facilities are one of many Transportation Demand Management (TDM) tools designed to increase highway efficiency, reduce energy demands, increase highway safety by reducing highway congestion, and provide commute options. Park-and-rides are frequently located near freeway interchanges, at train or transitway stations, or on express bus routes.

Oregon Highway Plan, Policy 4E states that it is the Policy of the State of Oregon to encourage the efficient use of the existing transportation system and to seek cost-effective expansion of the highway system's passenger capacity through development and use of park-and-ride facilities at appropriate urban and rural locations adjacent to or within the highway right of way.

Many park-and-ride facilities are located within urban areas and are served by public transportation. Some smaller facilities may have only local transit service. Facilities placed in more rural areas may primarily serve carpools and vanpools. Park-and-ride facilities may be either shared use, such as at a church or shopping center, or exclusive use. Shared use facilities are generally designated and maintained through agreements reached between the local public transit agency or rideshare program operator and nearby businesses or churches. The possibility of meeting the needs of the community with a shared-use lot should be investigated before building an exclusive use park-and-ride lot.

The following guidelines are primarily intended for planning and design of the exclusive park-and-ride facility. If the facility is expected to be served by public transit, the project leader should involve the responsible local agency ~~in~~throughout the entire project, starting with the initial needs assessment and continuing through the planning and design phases of project development. In all cases, the local public transit agency and rideshare program operator should be involved. For areas served by public transit, projects without the support of the local public transit agency should be avoided.

Plans for new park-and-ride facilities should incorporate the design philosophies of this and other generally accepted sources such as AASHTO's Guide for the Design of Park and Ride Facilities. An inappropriately located or designed park-and-ride facility may be counter-productive in terms of visibility, image, and promotion of non-SOV (single occupant vehicle) travel.

710.1 Needs Assessment & Site Selection

The need for a park-and-ride facility may be identified in a region's transportation system plan (TSP), a transportation corridor plan, transit agency development plan or capital improvement plan. The expected demand for parking spaces at a proposed park-and-ride will be related to

DRAFT

the quality of public transportation service, the number of commuters traveling the corridor, accessibility of the facility, the cost and availability of parking at the travelers' destination, and a variety of economic factors and public attitudes. Local experience with park-and-ride facilities is often the most accurate gauge to sizing future facilities.

~~710.2 Site Selection~~

Present and future needs are the main considerations in determining the location of a park-and-ride facility. If served by public transit, local transit agency input is critical to ensure that transit service and ridership are optimized with the project. As the necessary size of a park-and-ride facility is difficult to predict, the facility should be sited to allow for a conservative first phase with space available for later expansion. ~~A number of~~Several site selection criteria ~~should be~~are considered in the site selection process, most notably:

- Input from local transit and rideshare program operators
- Local transit agency master plan
- Local or regional transportation plan
- Accessibility for transit and motorists
- Local public input
- Traffic impacts
- Commuter distance
- Local government zoning
- Environmental impacts
- Cost effectiveness
- Access by other modes of travel
- Visibility for passing motorist recognition
- Visibility for security
- Maintenance
- Existing right of way
- Shared use
- Future expansion flexibility.

Due to the substantial cost increase associated with buying or leasing property, government-owned right of way should receive prime consideration, assuming the other selection criteria are favorable. Sites with poor access for either transit vehicles or passing motorists should be avoided. It is likely that more users will be attracted by maximizing accessibility for inbound morning traffic than by improving the flow for exiting evening traffic. The selected site should

DRAFT

not jeopardize the present and future integrity of the state highway or local transportation facility.

The alternative of a shared lot with off-peak demand, such as a church, movie theater, or shopping center should be explored. Shared lots can save the expense of building a new parking lot and increase the utilization of existing spaces. The site selection should consider the criteria listed above. If a shared use arrangement is agreeable with the lot owners, good pedestrian connections to the boarding areas should be provided.

ODOT frequently sells excess property, known as surplus property, upon completion of a project. ***All surplus property parcels should be evaluated for future use as a park-and-ride facility or carpool facility before disposal.***

~~710.3~~710.2 Site Design

Most facilities outside the Portland metropolitan area will require fewer than 300 spaces, and facilities in rural areas will generally not exceed the need for more than 100 spaces. Lots should be appropriately sized and may be as small as only five spaces.

Some example layouts of park-and-ride facilities are shown in Figure 700-23. **Design features must be in compliance with applicable design standards, specifications, operating standards, and any other local requirements that may apply.** Design features such as the entrances and exits, internal circulation, shelter location, illumination, landscape preservation and development, and passenger amenities are generally site specific. Below are presented some design principles used to maximize the efficiency and usefulness of the facility. Transit stop considerations will include those discussed in previous sections of Part 700.

~~Transit stop considerations will include those discussed.~~

~~710.3.1~~710.2.1 Access

A variety of transportation modes are used to arrive at and depart from park-and-ride facilities: private automobile, carpool/vanpool, bus or other transit vehicle, walking, bicycle, and motorcycle. These modes should be ~~safely~~ accommodated.

Often the most efficient access to a park-and-ride facility will be from an intersecting collector or local street. If the intersection is already signalized, excellent access may be available. If the park-and-ride warrants a signal ~~at a later date~~in the future, the accesses should be located with signal spacing and operations in mind. ***Contact the Traffic Engineering Section if signalization is anticipated for traffic approvals***. Due to cost considerations, sites that do not require signalization may be preferred.

Access to a park-and-ride should not increase congestion on the facility it serves. For this reason, it is not desirable to provide direct freeway access for private automobiles. However,

DRAFT

direct access for transit vehicles may be desirable on freeway entrance ramps, provided that this access does not present safety and operational problems. Appropriate measures should be taken to avoid significant adverse impacts to adjacent neighborhoods and nearby streets. Ease of access, especially for the morning commuters, will encourage use of the facility. ***The appropriate ODOT access and spacing standards contained in the 1999 Oregon Highway Plan should be followed.***

When a facility has more than 300 parking spaces, multiple entrances and exits may be required. With facility sizes greater than 500 parking spaces, exits may warrant a traffic signal. Facilities having more than 1000 spaces may require access to two adjacent streets to avoid congestion.

The transit route from the freeway or arterial to a park-and-ride facility, internal circulation route, and return route should be designed to minimize transit travel time. Automobile traffic should not be in conflict with transit vehicles. It may be desirable to provide an exclusive entrance and exit for transit vehicles.

~~710.3.2~~710.2.2 Internal Circulation

Major circulation routes within a park-and-ride facility should be located along the outside edges of the parking area to minimize vehicle-pedestrian conflicts. The priority sequence for the design of the individual user modes should favor the high occupancy vehicles, namely the transit vehicles and carpool/vanpools. It is critical that facility layout and circulation patterns are coordinated with the local transit agency. Bus circulation routes should be designed to provide for easy movement, with efficient terminal operations and convenient passenger transfers. Personal vehicle traffic should be separated from bus traffic. Curb radii and driveway widths should be designed to accommodate the turning characteristic of the largest expected vehicle. The internal circulation should accommodate the needs of pedestrians and bicycles. Providing secure parking or storage facilities for bicycles in the park and ride layout can promote the combination of bicycle commuting with transit as a viable option for getting to and from work.

The passenger waiting areas should be easily accessed by transit riders. Aisles should be aligned to facilitate convenient pedestrian movement toward the bus ~~loading zone.~~boarding and alighting area. Large facilities may require a central location for the passenger waiting area with parking for the various user modes surrounding the waiting area. In shared-use type facilities, the passenger waiting area should be placed away from the other activity centers to minimize the impacts of pedestrian, automobile, and bus traffic. **Bicycle parking facilities should not conflict with passenger waiting areas.**

DRAFT

~~710.3.3~~710.2.3 Pavement, Drainage, and Landscaping

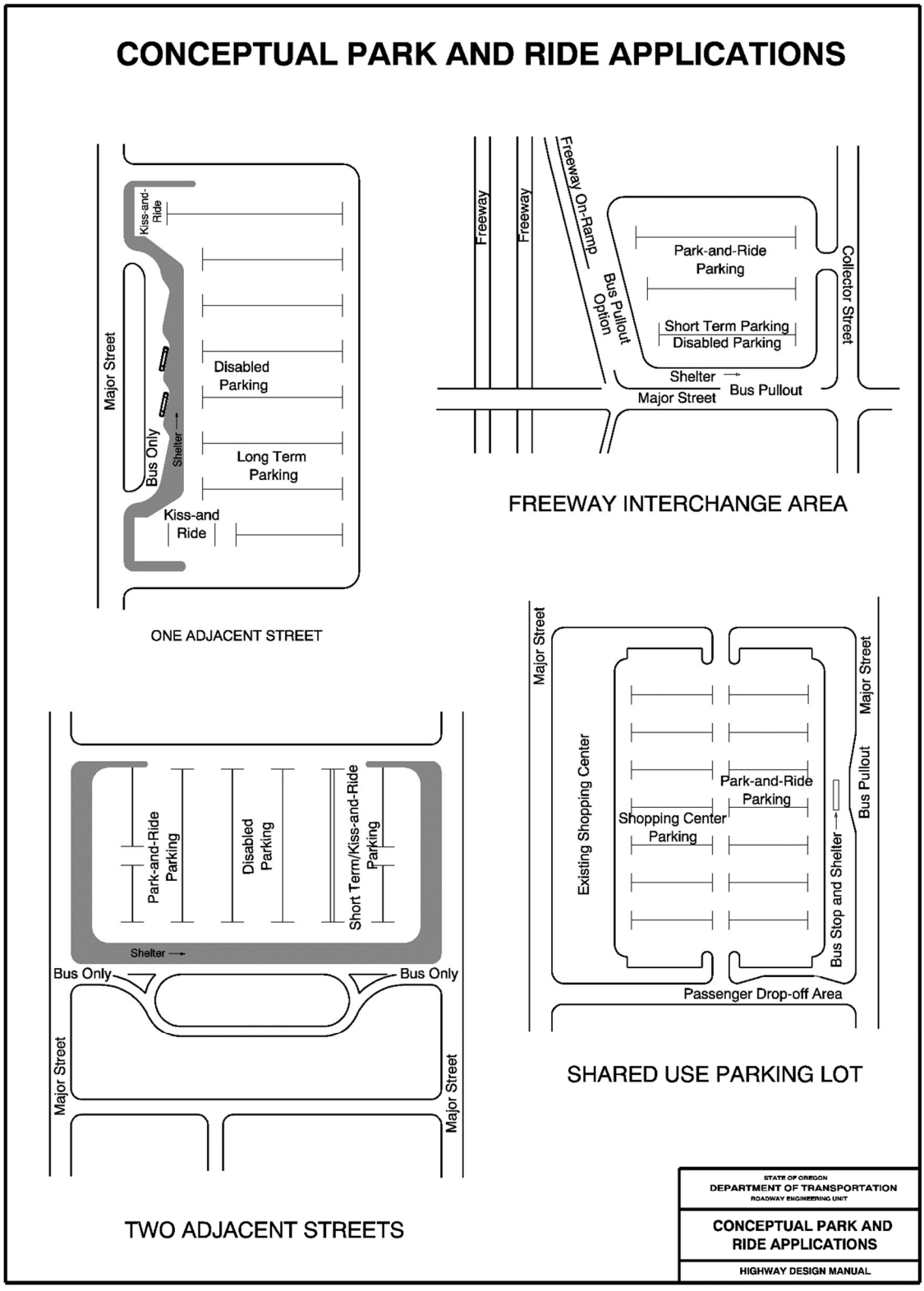
Pavement design shall conform to state design specifications for each of the functional areas of a facility. The surfacing type shall have the concurrence of the ODOT Pavement Services Unit. Asphalt concrete or portland cement concrete are the ideal surfacing options for all facilities officially designated for park-and-ride. ~~If a facility is to be unpaved, accessibility~~***Accessibility standards still apply if a facility is unpaved (refer to 710.2.8~~.~~).***

Adequate slope should be provided for surface drainage to prevent ponding of water. The recommended grade is 2 percent. Curb, gutter, and surface drains should be installed where needed.

A well-landscaped facility can enhance the appearance of a facility, improve public and neighborhood acceptance, add to the feeling of security, and provide runoff water quality mitigation. Landscaping should be compatible with the surrounding area, and should not interfere with sight distance, vehicle operations, or access for potential users. Selective preservation of existing vegetation is often a cost-effective means to reduce environmental impacts and provide a pleasant environment for facility users. Landscaping should be designed so that security patrols can see into the facility from adjacent streets without entering. Landscape design should keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Trees should generally be the dominant plant material as they provide shade and visual interest, reduce glare, and are less costly to maintain than shrubs and ground cover. Funding for landscaping and other park and ride amenities will vary and should be discussed early on in project development and the establishment of local agency agreements.

DRAFT

Figure 700-2~~3~~6: Conceptual Park and Ride Applications



~~710.3.4~~710.2.4 Amenities

Passenger amenities will vary depending upon the type of facility (e.g., exclusive or shared use), the anticipated patronage levels, local policies, adjacent land use and available funding. Amenities that are often found at park-and-rides include shelters, benches, trash receptacles, bus route information, vending machines, and sometimes heated waiting areas, telephones, restrooms, and small convenience stores.

~~710.3.5~~710.2.5 Lighting and Security

Adequate lighting is important from a safety standpoint and as a deterrent to criminal activity in both the parking area and the shelters. Illumination should be considered for all park-and-ride facilities. Special emphasis should be given to bus loading and unloading areas, passenger amenities and pedestrian/bike pathways within park and ride facilities. Future expansion plans and nearby development may influence the placement of the luminaire poles.

~~710.3.6~~710.2.6 Signs and Pavement Markings

Control of traffic movements can be greatly improved by proper pavement markings and signing. Reflectorized markings for center lines, lane lines, and lane arrows can guide or separate patron traffic and transit vehicles. Park-and-ride identification signs may be installed. Guide signs may be placed to direct vehicles to parking areas, passenger drop-off and pick-up points, and waiting areas. Signs may also be necessary to designate bus-only lanes, no parking areas, and accessible parking areas.

~~710.3.7~~710.2.7 Bicycle Parking

Almost all facilities will see some bicycle usage. At a minimum, bicycle racks should be provided. The provision of bicycle storage lockers will depend upon usage. Providing convenient and secure bicycle parking or storage is important to encourage the utilization of bicycles in combination with transit as a viable commute option. When a transit rider is comfortable knowing their bicycle is safe from theft during the time they are at work and they do not have to go through the hassle of loading the bike on the transit vehicle, they may be more willing to leave the car at home and ride the few miles to the park and ride. The bicycle parking area should be relatively close to the transit loading area, separated from motor vehicles by a curb or other barrier, and have a direct route from the adjacent streets. **The bicycle parking area should not conflict with passenger waiting and loading areas.** For additional information on bicycle facilities, see Part 900 and Chapter 3 of the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide.

DRAFT

~~710.3.8~~710.2.8 Accessible Parking on Sites

The number of accessible parking spaces and van accessible parking spaces required for government buildings and publicly maintained or operated parking facilities, are subject to requirements that include ORS 447.233. ~~See the ODOT Traffic Line Manual for detailed guidance on parking area design. Some general guidelines follow. **No ramp or obstacle may extend into the accessible parking space or the access aisle.**~~**On sites with multiple parking facilities, the minimum number of accessible spaces must be calculated separately for each parking facility instead of on the combined total of parking spaces provided on the site**. See the Oregon Transportation Commission Standards for Accessible Parking for accessibility parking standards, markings and guidance on parking sign design. The minimum national standard for accessible parking is set by the US Access Board. Local jurisdictions or states may have additional requirements for accessible parking that are more stringent. Review the Oregon Structural Specialty Code for additional requirements that may be applicable. Some design requirements follow:

1. Curb ramps are provided to connect to the pedestrian access route and access aisle when there is curbline exposure. **Curb ramps may not be situated in such a way that they could be blocked by a legally parked vehicle.** ***Evaluate whether detectable warning surfaces are necessary per the Oregon Standard Drawings RD 900 series.***

2. **No ramp or obstacle may extend into the accessible parking space or the access aisle. Curb ramps are located at either end of a parallel parking space so it will not reduce the required width or length of the parking space.** ***The center 50 percent of the length of the sidewalk, or other surface, adjacent to an accessible parallel parking space shall be free of obstructions, including parking identification signs, parking pay meters, and parking pay stations.***

~~1.~~3. **Accessible parking spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not to exceed 2 percent in all directions~~.~~ at final construction.** *Design slopes for drainage between zero and 1.5 percent.* **Access aisles shall extend the full length of the parking spaces they serve, not overlap the vehicular way, and shall beat the same level as the parking spaces they serve.**

4. Access aisles must connect to the pedestrian access route connecting to the other pedestrian amenities including accessible entrances, boarding and alighting areas, restrooms, kiosks, benches, etc. In parking facilities where the accessible route must cross vehicular traffic lanes, marked crossings enhance pedestrian safety, particularly for people using wheelchairs and other mobility aids. It is preferable that the accessible route not pass behind parked vehicles where feasible. It is recommended that accessible routes be configured so that they run in front of parking spaces.

DRAFT

5. **Parking spaces and access aisles must be marked and have firm, stable, and slip resistant surfaces as specified for accessible ground and floor surfaces in all parking facilities, including gravel or grass lots.**

6. **Provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches minimum for van parking spaces and access aisles and vehicular routes serving them.**

7. **Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that cars and vans, when parked, cannot obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes**.

For additional clarification of site design requirements and frequently asked questions about accessible parking refer to the online US Access Board ADA Guides.

~~710.3.9~~710.2.9 Environmental Considerations

The design of a park-and-ride facility should consider and address any environmental issues associated with the site. Possible environmental concerns may include stormwater runoff and water quality, wetlands, protected species, noise, visual, traffic impacts and land uses such as public parks and recreation areas. Landscaping and design treatments can help minimize these impacts.

Section 715 Passenger Loading Zones

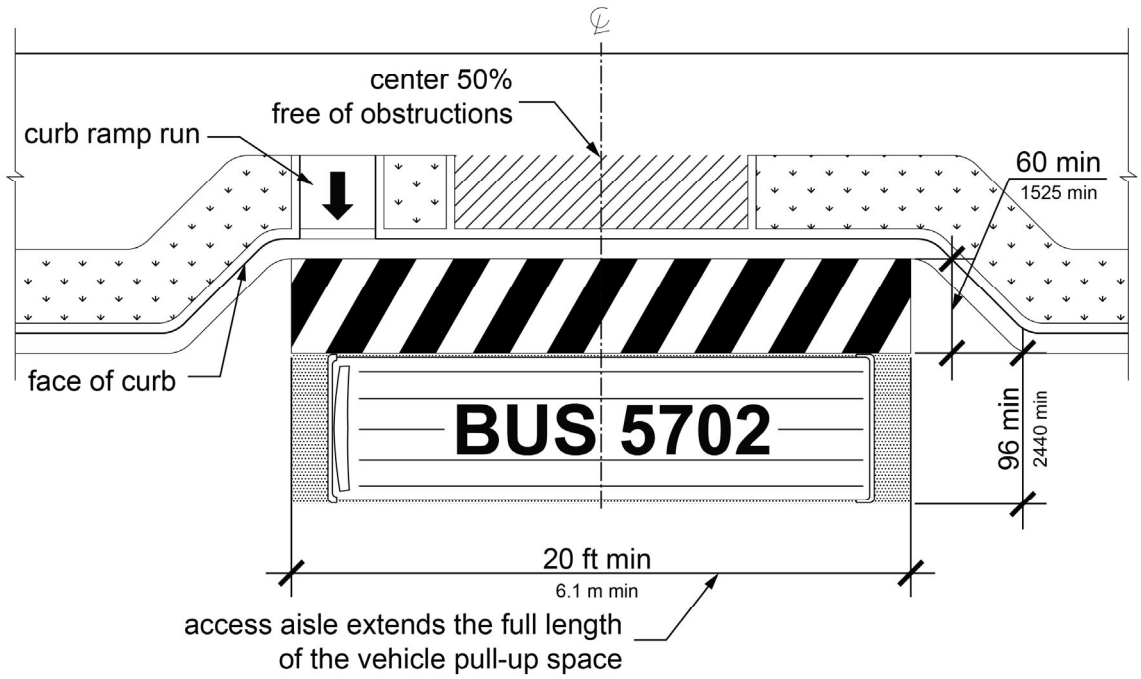
Passenger loading zones are typically denoted with signing or other markings separated from the roadway realm to discourage parking in them. Passenger loading zones may serve transit providers that are on-demand or are for paratransit service, and they are not on fixed or scheduled routes. A passenger loading zone is not a replacement or substitute for an accessible parking space required for on-street parking or parking facilities.

At least one accessible passenger loading zone shall be provided when a passenger loading zone is constructed. Where the passenger loading zone exceeds 100 continuous feet, one additional accessible passenger loading zone shall be provided for every 100 foot segment. Access aisle, accessible routes, and unobstructed walkways must be provided. See Figure 700-15: Passenger Loading Zone Requirements, Source US Access Board for design layout and minimum dimensions. *Detectable warning surfaces on curb ramps are not required when they serve the passenger loading zones exclusively connecting to the walkway or pedestrian access route.* **Access aisles shall be at the same level as the vehicle pull-up space they serve with final constructed slopes not to exceed 2.1%. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route and shall not overlap the vehicular way. Vehicle pull-up spaces, access aisles serving them, and a vehicular route**

DRAFT

from an entrance to the passenger loading zone, and from the passenger loading zone to a vehicular exit shall provide a vertical clearance of 114 inches minimum.

Figure 700-2426: Passenger Loading Zone, source US Access Board



DRAFT

Section 790 References

- Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability in State and Local Government Services, 28 CFR Part 35 (2010)
- Transportation Services for Individuals with Disabilities (ADA), 49 CFR Part 37 (Dec 18, 2024 Amended)
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Specifications for Transportation Vehicles, 49 CFR Part 38
- Department of Justice (2010). 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design.
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Building and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines, 36 CFR Part 1191, Appendix B and Appendix D.
- Supplemental Notice Proposed Rulemaking on Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines (2013)
- Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines (2023)
- Public Rights-of-Way Access Advisory Committee (PROWAAC) (2007). Special Report: Accessible Public Rights-of-Way Planning and Designing for Alterations.
- Oregon Transportation Commission. (2016) Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan.
- AASHTO Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities, 2021
- Guide for Geometric Design of Transit Facilities on Highway and Streets, July 2014
- https://www.access-board.gov/ada/guides/

DRAFT

Part 800 Pedestrian Design

DRAFT

Section 801 Introduction

The purpose of this section is to provide design standards for pedestrian facilities on state highways. Other sections in this manual address the design of the roadway realm and bicycle realm including geometric considerations for intersections, interchanges, urban design, and public transportation amenities. Information on pedestrian design considerations as it relates to those amenities are in other sections of this manual. Reference Part 900 for discussion on design principles in areas where pedestrians and bicyclist interactions occur.

A thorough guide for bicycle and pedestrian design is contained in Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide. Where there is a discrepancy between content in this Part 800 and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, Part 800 takes precedence. The Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide is for use by local agencies to develop their standard of practice for the bicycle and pedestrian realms. The Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide (Appendix L) contains design guidance that may only apply to city and county roads.

To reflect ODOT's commitment to provide facilities for pedestrians with varying abilities, the ODOT design standards for pedestrian facilities in this section may exceed the Americans with Disability Act minimum requirements. The Americans with Disability Act is a federal civil rights law that mandates both the private and public sectors to make their facilities accessible to people with disabilities.

The design standards in this section reflect ODOT's commitment to the US Department of Transportation policy statement, issued on March 11, 2010, recommending that states accommodate bicyclists and pedestrians while accommodating motorized vehicles. The design standards in this section are also reflective of ODOT's statewide initiatives and programs including social equity, climate change, reducing emission goals, reducing the carbon footprint, and making every mile count. Refer to the Oregon Transportation Planning Rule (OAR 660, Division 12) policy and requirements described in Section 109.7 of this manual where applicable climate friendly areas need additional pedestrian amenities, connectivity, and options for transportation.

DRAFT

801.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 800-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 800-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects, FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 801.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 801.2 and 801.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 801.3 and 801.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion,

commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

801.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb "provide" is typically used. The adjective "required" is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives "recommended" and "optional" are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 801.4).

801.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb "should" is typically used. The adjective "recommended" is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs "provide" and "may" are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives "required" and "optional" are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 801.4).

801.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

DRAFT

801.5 Definitions

The following are definitions of words and phrases used in the Highway Design Manual (HDM). Other definitions may be in the individual parts to which they apply. These definitions do not necessarily apply outside the context of the HDM. These definitions identify the ODOT applicable standards and practices for the design and construction on ODOT right of way. Construction of these facilities can be funded with various specialized funding programs with terms that are not synonymous with these definitions. Eligibility for funding is determined by the program definitions, program rules, and program manager.

Unless otherwise defined in this document, the terms used in the HDM are defined according to American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO) A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2018 7th edition) which ODOT has adopted and incorporated into the HDM. Oregon Administrative Rules (OAR) and Oregon Revised Statutes (ORS) have specific definitions for legal regulations that are specific to Oregon Law and may not be in alignment with the HDM definitions. Use collegiate dictionaries to determine the meaning of terms that are not defined in the HDM, AASHTO, and referenced MUTCD standards.

Accessible - Features that comply with the ADA and Code of Federal Regulation requirements. People are not discriminated in their ability to use and operate a feature or service, having equitable and comparable ability to use the feature and service independently.

ADA Ramp - See Section 102.

Americans with Disabilities Act - Americans with Disabilities Act is a Civil Rights law passed by Congress in the 1990s making it illegal to discriminate against people with disabilities in employment, services provided by state and local governments, public and private transportation, public accommodations and telecommunications.

Architectural Barriers Act - A federal law that passed in 1968 mandating facilities designed, built, altered, or leased with federal funds (grants or loans) are accessible in the built environment. This includes facilities such as mass transit systems, transit centers, and rest areas.

Audible Pedestrian Signal - A device that provides an audible tone to pedestrians that it is safe to cross at a signalized intersection.

Buffer Zone - The space or zone located between the vehicular travel way and the Pedestrian Zone.

DRAFT

Closed Crosswalk - (ORS 810.080) A crosswalk where a road authority places and maintains signs giving notice of closure. Pedestrians are prohibited from crossing a roadway at a closed crosswalk (ORS 810.080, ORS 814.020). See the Traffic Manual for more information on crosswalk closures.

Comment, Question, Concern, or Request - A process where individuals can inform ODOT about a comment, question, concern, or requests related to ADA. It provides an informal process, rather than a formal complaint, to address an ADA concern on or along the state highway system and a plan to track the responses.

Crossing - The place on public right of way where the pedestrian facility is interrupted by another mode of transportation and may cross the transportation facility to reach a destination. For example, a rail crossing is one type of crossing where the pedestrian crosses the facility at a planned improved area. See the Traffic Manual for definitions of pedestrian crossings.

Crosswalk - Portion of a roadway designated for pedestrian crossing, marked or unmarked. Unmarked crosswalks are the natural extension of the shoulder, curb line or sidewalk. See the Traffic Manual for more information on where crosswalks exist.

Curb Zone - The Curb Zone is the transition segment between a sidewalk and the travel way. It channelizes storm water and discourages vehicles from parking on the sidewalk.

Grade - The steepness of a roadway, bikeway, or walkway, expressed in the ratio of vertical rise per horizontal distance, usually in percent, e.g., a 5 percent grade equals 5 feet of rise over 100 feet of horizontal distance.

Frontage Zone - The portion of the Pedestrian Realm located between the Pedestrian Zone and the public right of way adjacent to the business or private property.

Furniture Zone - The furniture zone is synonymous with "buffer zone" or "furnishing zone".

Hardscape - Solid, hard elements in landscape design that stay the same for years. This includes things like walkways, retaining walls and decorative pavers.

Jurisdictional Transfer - An action whereby ODOT transfers a state highway section to another jurisdiction or vice versa.

DRAFT

Marked Crosswalk -	(ORS 801.220) Any portion of a roadway at an intersection or elsewhere that is distinctly indicated for pedestrian crossing by lines or other markings on the surface of the roadway that conform in design to the standards established for crosswalks under ORS 810.200. OAR 734-020-0005 adopts the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) as those standards. Decorative pavement treatments such as brick, concrete pavers, stamped asphalt, or coloring are not crosswalk markings (see the Traffic Manual for more information on textured and colored crosswalk treatments).
Micro Mobility -	Transportation over short distances provided by lightweight, usually single-person devices (such as bicycles and scooters).
Mode (Modal) -	A means of moving people or goods. Modes such as rail, transit, carpooling, walking, and bicycling that provide transportation alternatives to single occupancy automobiles are called "alternative modes".
Operable Part -	A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the element~~.~~, or to interact with the element. An example of an operable part is a pedestrian push button used to activate the signalized pedestrian crossing.
Other Power-Driven Mobility Device -	Other power-driven mobility device means any mobility device powered by batteries, fuel, or other engines that is used by individuals with mobility disabilities for the purpose of locomotion without defined pedestrian routes, but that is not a wheelchair.
Pedestrian -	A person on foot, using a personal assistive mobility device, or walking a bicycle.
Pedestrian Access Route -	A continuous and unobstructed path for pedestrians to navigate along the sidewalk, driveway, curb ramps, crossings, and pedestrian facilities that is fully accessible.
Pedestrian Circulation Area -	A prepared exterior or interior surface provided for pedestrian travel in the public right of way.
Pedestrian Friendly -	Design qualities that make walking attractive, enjoyable, and comfortable, including places people want to go and good facilities to get there.
Pedestrian Realm -	The portion of a street right of way dedicated to uses other than moving and parking vehicles. It includes primarily the

DRAFT

	sidewalk, plantings, and street furniture. The Pedestrian Realm consists of the Buffer Zone/Furniture Zone, the Pedestrian Zone, and the Frontage Zone of a sidewalk or walkway. ~~Curbing is a part of~~Depending on how or where a bicycle facility is included, the curb zone may be considered in either the Pedestrian Realm or the Transition Realm.
Pedestrian Zone -	The portion of a sidewalk or walkway available for pedestrians to traverse, free of obstructions and contains the pedestrian access route.
Planting Strip -	That portion of the sidewalk that accommodates street trees, shrubs, grass, or other organic materials.
Shared Use Path -	An all-weather prepared surface, typically designated by signs and/or markings for use by a pedestrian, bicycle, or a personal wheeled device enabling locomotion for recreation and transportation. A Shared use path is a facility or way that may either be located within a highway right-of-way, parallel to the traveled way (referred to as a side path), or outside the highway right-of-way on a separate alignment or right-of-way. Pedestrians and other wheeled path users utilize the shared space equally and can intermingle in opposing directions of movement. Shared use paths are typically separated physically from motor vehicle traffic by an open space or barrier. The terms "shared use" and "multi use" are interchangeable. Common names for shared use paths often use the terms "trail" or "greenway", although the definition of the term "trail" has other design implications, different from shared use paths.
Sidewalks -	The portion of a street between the curb line, or the lateral line of a roadway, and the adjacent property line or on easements of private property that is paved or improved with an all-weather hard surface and intended for use by pedestrians. Sidewalks are designed for preferential or exclusive use by pedestrians and meets ADA standards. This includes the Pedestrian Zone and the Frontage Zone of the Pedestrian Realm.
Softscape -	A material that, unlike hardscaping, does not have a long term or permanent quality and may be a living part of the landscape. Softscape consists of elements such as soil, loose rock, sand, bark, plants and shrubs, and turf.
State Highway System -	The state highway system encompasses all public roads and highways under ODOT ownership or jurisdiction. This

DRAFT

definition includes those frontage roads and other public roads that may not fall under the statutory definition or the Oregon Highway Plan definition of the state highway system. The state highway system may reside over another's right of way (e.g., United States Forest Land) and ODOT has a permanent easement to operate.

Streetscape - The combination of planters, planting strips, sidewalk, street trees, streetlights, and other pedestrian amenities.

Temporary Pedestrian Access Route Plan - A plan describing the details of how pedestrians can get through or around construction work zones.

Trails - A prepared firm surface for pedestrian, bicycle, or a personal wheeled device enabling locomotion for leisure and recreation activities including but not limited to bicycling, hiking, horseback riding, and walking. Trails can be designated for exclusive use by a mode of travel such as horseback riding.

Transition Plan - A United States Title II requirement for an agency with 50 employees or more that identifies the agency's outstanding accessibility issues and provides a schedule for eliminating those barriers, both physical and programmatic.

Universal Design - The practice of creating environments and structures that can be easily accessed, understood, and utilized by all people regardless of age, size, and disability. ~~Universal Design benefits all people.~~

Unmarked Crosswalk - A crosswalk that does not have markings on the surface of the roadway that conform in design to the standards established for crosswalks under ORS 810.200. Sometimes called a crossing in project development. See the Traffic Manual for more information on where crosswalk exists on or along state highways.

Walking - Use of human powered forms of transportation, including, but not limited to travel to a destination by foot or wheelchair.

Walkways - A transportation facility built for use by pedestrians, including persons walking or using a personal assistive mobility device. Walkways include sidewalks, pedestrian lanes, shared use path, and trails. The walkway may be divided into the Buffer Zone, Pedestrian Zone, and the Frontage Zone (see Part 300).

DRAFT

Walking Distance -	The distance covered walking at an easy pace. This is the distance that most people will walk rather than drive, providing the environment is pedestrian friendly.
Wheelchair -	A manually operated or power-driven device designed primarily for use by an individual with a mobility disability for the main purpose of indoor, or of both indoor and outdoor locomotion.

801.6 Acronyms

A list of acronyms specifically introduced in Part 800 is below. Acronyms defined in other Parts of the Highway Design Manual are not repeated in this section.

ABA	**Architectural Barriers Act**
ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act
APS	**Audible Pedestrian Signal**
CQCR	Comment, Question, Concern, or Request
FRA	Federal Rail Administration
OECR	Office of Equity and Civil Rights
PROWAG	Public Right of Way Accessibility Guidelines
TPARP	Temporary Pedestrian Access Route Plan
US DOT	United States Department of Transportation
US DOJ	United States Department of Justice

Section 802 Approval Processes

Deviations from a design standard, or which falls outside the standard range requires design exception approval by the State Roadway Engineer. When unsure whether a design exception is required, consult with the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. A design exception requires signature by both the Engineer of Record (EOR) and State Roadway Engineer. The design exception process is in Part 1000 of the HDM. Design exceptions may also require approval by the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA).

Design guidance has evolved over the years to be more context sensitive and to integrate flexibility. Additionally, design guidance now considers the various modal needs of a transportation system. This evolution reflects the shift from nominal safety (subjective) to

DRAFT

substantive safety (objective). Transportation professionals strive to use guidance and standards to support evolving needs and provide a safe and efficient network.

Determine the urban context and the roadway classification, and ODOT procedures for determining S.C.O.P.E. Appendix D discusses information on the Practical Design Strategy. When determining the cross section and standards to use for design, refer for Part 100 for discussion on how the Blueprint for Urban Design and Practical Design methods are applied given the roadway classification and urban context. For example, the scope of a project on a 45-mph state highway on the Urban Fringe includes construction of sidewalk where none existed. The standard is a 6-foot sidewalk behind a 4-foot Buffer Zone per Table 800-3, but only 9 feet of the required 10 feet of right of way are available. A Practical Design approach would be to construct the 6-foot sidewalk with a 3-foot Buffer Zone, which is better than a curb tight (curbside) sidewalk.

Under the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), conditions for exceptions to ADA requirements are stipulated in the federal register. When an ADA requirement is infeasible, the burden of proof resides with the agency that constructs the project. Documentation for these ADA exceptions are retained on file using the roadway design exception process discussed in Section 1000. Conditions where an ADA design exception may be considered include:

1. Terrain of the site when it is technically infeasible to comply with the technical requirements.
2. When a technical requirement causes a change to a protected natural or historic resource under federal or state law(s) which alters the function, purpose, or the setting of that facility.

To determine the maximum extent feasible in meeting accessibility requirements, designers should strive to meet design standards by considering as many design options as practicable before seeking ADA design exceptions. Construction of accessible facilities is required where new pedestrian features and facilities are provided, and scope of work cannot be used as a justification for ADA design exceptions to not meet accessibility requirements. Alterations of existing pedestrian facilities and features may be limited by the scope of the overall improvements and the built environment may be justification for ADA design exceptions.

802.1 Urban Design Concurrence Document

Use the Urban Design Concurrence Document to determine project context, define design criteria, and document design decisions. Authority for approval of the Urban Design Concurrence Document will reside in the Region Technical Center. ***The Region Technical Center Manager shall provide final approval of design concurrence with collaborative input from Region Planning, Traffic, Roadway, and Maintenance.*** Pedestrian Realm elements contained in the Urban Design Concurrence Document are to be designed in accordance with the standards

in Section 800. Refer to Part 300 for more discussion on the Urban Context and Urban Design Concurrence documentation.

802.2 ODOT ADA Curb Ramp Process Document (Appendix G)

This document is intended to give designers, developers and local agencies information and guidance on the ODOT pedestrian curb ramp design and construction acceptance process.

In addition to the civil rights requirements under the Federal Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Federal and State Law requires that all projects that receive Federal or State funding meet current Federal and State requirements. The document is intended to help guide local agencies or project teams through the process and expectations set by the Oregon Department of Transportation (ODOT) as an obligation to receive such funds. The document provides milestones, detailed instructions, and a checklist to assist you in meeting the requirements of your project.

The ODOT ADA Curb Ramp Process is based on the ODOT Statewide Transportation Investment Program (STIP) project delivery process. The Local Agency process may be different than ODOT's process presented in this document. The intention of this document is not to constrain an Agency to ODOT's format but for the Agency to incorporate Federal and State requirements and expectations into their process when receiving applicable funds or administering work on the State Highway system.

802.3 CQCR Process for ADA Requests

ODOT established the ADA Comments, Questions, Concerns and Requests (CQCR) program to track and respond to ADA inquiries from members of the public. Utilize the online ODOT ADA Accessibility Request Form to submit a request; this can be filled out by the individual or on behalf of an individual by an ODOT employee. The CQCR process facilitates the agency's efforts to address citizen reports of access barriers, ADA accommodation requests for ODOT programs or the state highway infrastructure, and other ADA based comments, questions, or concerns. The purpose of the CQCR process is to respond to an individual's need to an existing ADA barrier to the transportation system or service provided by ODOT. Requests may include physical amenities on the state highway and services provided by ODOT.

The CQCR program is coordinated by the Office of Equity and Civil Rights (OECR). ODOT staff from divisions and regional offices across ODOT participate as trained CQCR Coordinators, including regional active transportation liaisons. OECR and the CQCR coordinators strive to provide a customer an initial response within 5 days. Overall, ODOT must communicate the result of a CQCR investigation to the requester within 30 days of submission. If a complex

barrier case requires more than 30 days to resolve, the CQCR coordinator will provide updates to the customer as a remediation plan is developed.

Each CQCR inquiry is entered into a central database and a process is in place to evaluate, respond, and find a solution to the request of the individual. The CQCR process documents incremental improvements on the transportation system when full standards are not achieved with the constructed solution. ADA design exceptions are not required for incremental improvements on CQCR projects.

Some solutions may require additional planning, design, and funding to reach a final resolution for individual's accessibility barriers. Project teams need to be aware of locations that have CQCR issues within the project limits. Utilize the FACS-STIP tool to find locations with active CQCR issues. Evaluate CQCR locations and address in the project S.C.O.P.E. and business case development. The regional active transportation liaison is the best resource for additional information on CQCR locations during scoping efforts.

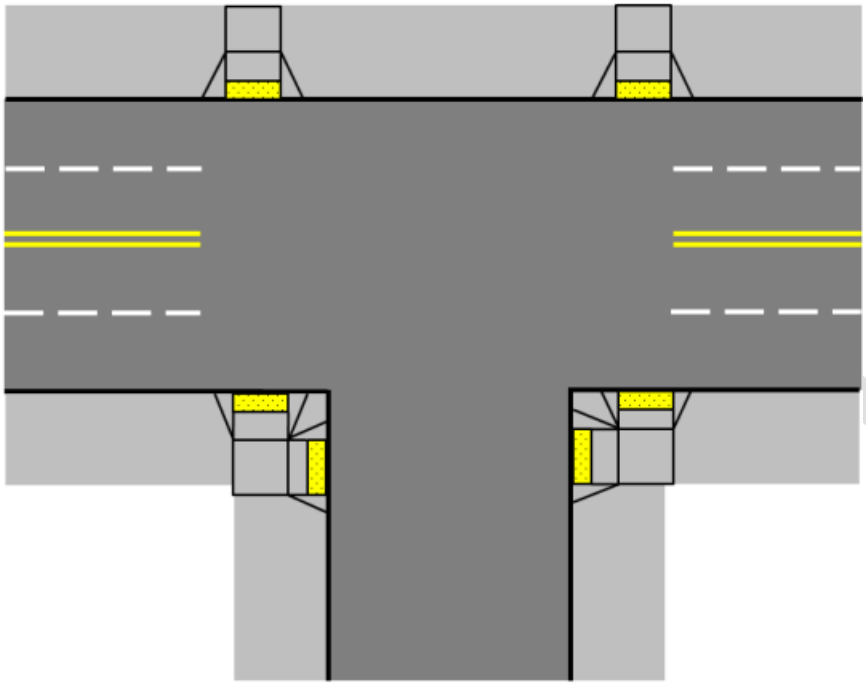
802.4 Crosswalk Location Determinations

When determining where crosswalks are located on the state highway (marked or unmarked), the definition of an intersection is based on the Oregon Revised Statues ORS 801.220 and ORS 801.320. Crosswalk locations at intersections are often unique with complex geometry. ***The Traffic Section assists in these circumstances to determine where crosswalks exist on the state highway.*** Refer to Traffic Manual Section 310.0, for the location of crosswalks on state highways. Crosswalks are pedestrian facilities that must be useable and designed for all pedestrians. Refer to the Traffic Manual for the procedures in crosswalk location determinations. Crosswalk determination letters (Form No. 734-5294) are retained on file, and it will update the asset inventory if applicable.

An intersection exists where two or more roadways join at any angle (ORS 801.320). This includes T-intersections (where two roadways join and one of the roadways ends). See Figure 800-1 for an example of a T-intersection with two unmarked crowalks and curb ramps.

DRAFT

Figure 800-1 - Example T-Intersection with Unmarked Crosswalks



Intersection is described in one of the following circumstances:

1. If the roadways have curbs, the intersection is the area embraced within the prolongation or connection of the lateral curb lines.
2. If the roadways do not have curbs, the intersection is the area embraced within the prolongation or connection of the lateral boundary lines of the roadways.
3. The junction of an alley (ORS 801.110) with a roadway does not constitute an intersection.
4. Where a highway (ORS 801.305) includes two roadways 30 feet or more apart, then every crossing of each roadway of the divided highway by an intersection highway is a separate intersection. In the event the intersection highway also includes two roadways 30 feet or more apart, then every crossing of two roadways of such highways is a separate intersection.

Crosswalks are located at intersections. See the Traffic Manual, Section 310.0 for more information.

802.5 Crosswalk Closures

Sidewalks provide mobility along the highway, but full pedestrian accommodation also requires frequent and convenient crossing opportunities. Wide highways carrying large traffic

volumes can be difficult for pedestrians to cross, making facilities on the other side difficult to access. Mid-block and unmarked crossings need to be considered, as people will take the shortest route to their destination. Prohibiting such movements is counter-productive to enhancing community and economic vitality where walking networks improve peoples' ability to access jobs, businesses, and other destinations. The Traffic Manual discusses the procedures to close a crosswalk on the state highway which must be approved by the State Traffic Engineer. ***A closed crosswalk must include notice to the public with signage per ORS 810.080 which indicates pedestrians are prohibited from crossing the roadway.*** Any deviation to this requirement is stipulated in the State Traffic Approval Letter and would be requested in the Crosswalk Closure Approval Request Form 734-5150 for consideration.

Convenient pedestrian crossings cannot be considered in isolation from the following issues, which should be addressed when seeking solutions to specific problems. Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide describes each of the following issues in detail. Refer to the Traffic Manual for additional design standards and crossing spacing requirements.

- Volume to Capacity (V/C) and Design Standards (Appendix L, ~~page 5-3~~L503.1)
- Land Use (Appendix L, ~~page 5-4~~L503.3)
- Transit Stops (Appendix L, ~~page 5-~~L503.4)
- Signal Spacing (Appendix L, ~~page-~~L503.5~~-4~~)
- Access Management (Appendix L, ~~page 5-5~~L503.6)
- Out-of-Direction Travel (Appendix L, ~~page 5-6~~L503.7)
- Midblock versus Intersection Crossings (Appendix L, ~~page 5-6~~L503.8)
- Maintenance (Appendix L, ~~page 5-7~~L503.8.1)

A decision to close a crosswalk affects ODOT's progress toward achieving goals in the adopted Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan. Closing a crosswalk removes a link from the surrounding pedestrian network by prohibiting pedestrians from crossing at that location.

802.5.1 Crosswalk Closure Treatments

The state traffic engineer's crosswalk closure approval may specify some attributes of the crosswalk closure treatments. The following guidance is to aid designers in closure treatment selections and recommendations when closing a crosswalk. **Closure treatments shall be installed at closed crosswalks according to the State Traffic Engineer's crosswalk closure approval.** Visual and detectable treatments communicate to pedestrians that a crosswalk is closed.

ORS 810.080 requires signs, such as a CROSSWALK CLOSED (OR22-7) sign, to close a crosswalk; this is the visual crosswalk closure treatment. Visual treatments are typically placed

DRAFT

so they are visible to a pedestrian as they face the closed crosswalk. The sign may be a separate installation from the detectable closure treatment, and it should be placed in a location, so it is not subject to vandalism or vehicular strikes. Deviations to a visual treatment is stipulated in the State Traffic Approval Letter and would be requested in the Crosswalk Closure Approval Request Form 734-5150 for consideration. ***Alternative treatments for consideration due to unique circumstances would be coordinated with appropriate subject matter experts for approval by the State Traffic Engineer.***

Provide at least one detectable treatment when a crosswalk is closed except in circumstances where a detectable treatment is not required per the State Traffic Engineer Approval document. For example, detectable treatments may be omitted on the same side of the closed crosswalk when the only available pedestrian facility for that same side is the highway shoulder. Detectable closure treatments are typically used at a closed crosswalk where there is a sidewalk and an intersecting pedestrian route. Detectable closure treatments include but are not limited to features such as softscape buffer strips, planted buffer strips, railings, ODOT's standard crosswalk closure support, ODOT's aluminum pedestrian fencing, or other approved treatments (see Oregon Standard Drawings). *More than one detectable treatment can be used to communicate a closed crosswalk at a given crosswalk, and it may be a different detectable treatment on each side of the closed crosswalk.*

Deviations to a detectable treatment is stipulated in the State Traffic Approval Letter and would be requested in the Crosswalk Closure Approval Request Form 734-5150 for consideration. ***Alternative treatments for consideration due to unique circumstances would be coordinated with appropriate subject matter experts for approval by the State Traffic Engineer.***

Closing a crosswalk might require removal or reorientation of curb ramps. For example, a curb ramp that only serves the closed crosswalk will need to be removed. Similarly, a curb ramp that serves another crosswalk (diagonal ramp) might need to be rebuilt and reoriented to only serve the remaining crosswalk.

Attributes of Detectable Closure Treatments

Choosing the detectable crosswalk closure treatment is site-specific and generally selected for each corner based on the attributes described below. ***Consult the Senior ADA Standards Engineer for new products or experimental treatments that are desired for use as the detectable treatment. Alternative treatments for consideration due to unique circumstances would be coordinated with appropriate subject matter experts for approval by the State Traffic Engineer.***

Detectable closure treatments generally:

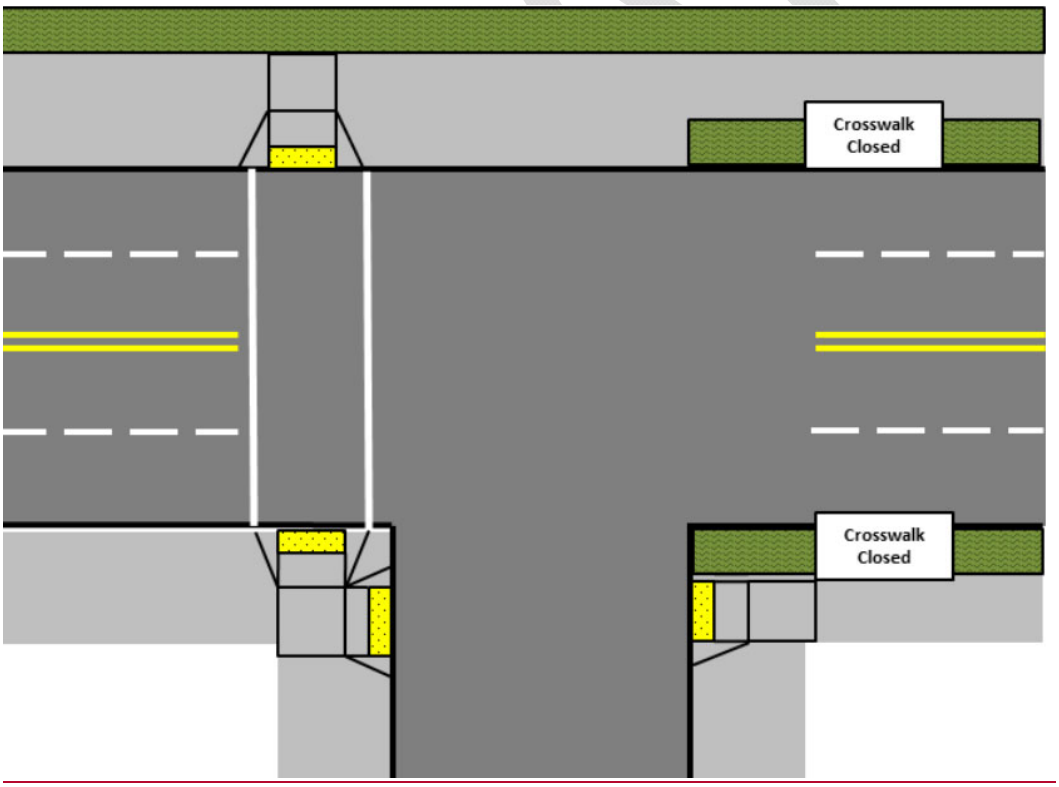
- Contrast visually with the sidewalk.
- Are detectable and distinguishable with a white cane used by people who have limited or no vision.

DRAFT

- Do not have protruding edges or corners that could result in an injury to passing pedestrians or bicyclists.
- Are placed to allow at least 4 feet of clear passage for the adjacent pedestrian routes.
- Are positioned so there is not an accessible route around the treatment to access the closed crosswalk.
- Are positioned or designed to minimize ~~the risk of~~ tripping or missteps.
- Are crashworthy.
- Are supported by the district for maintenance.

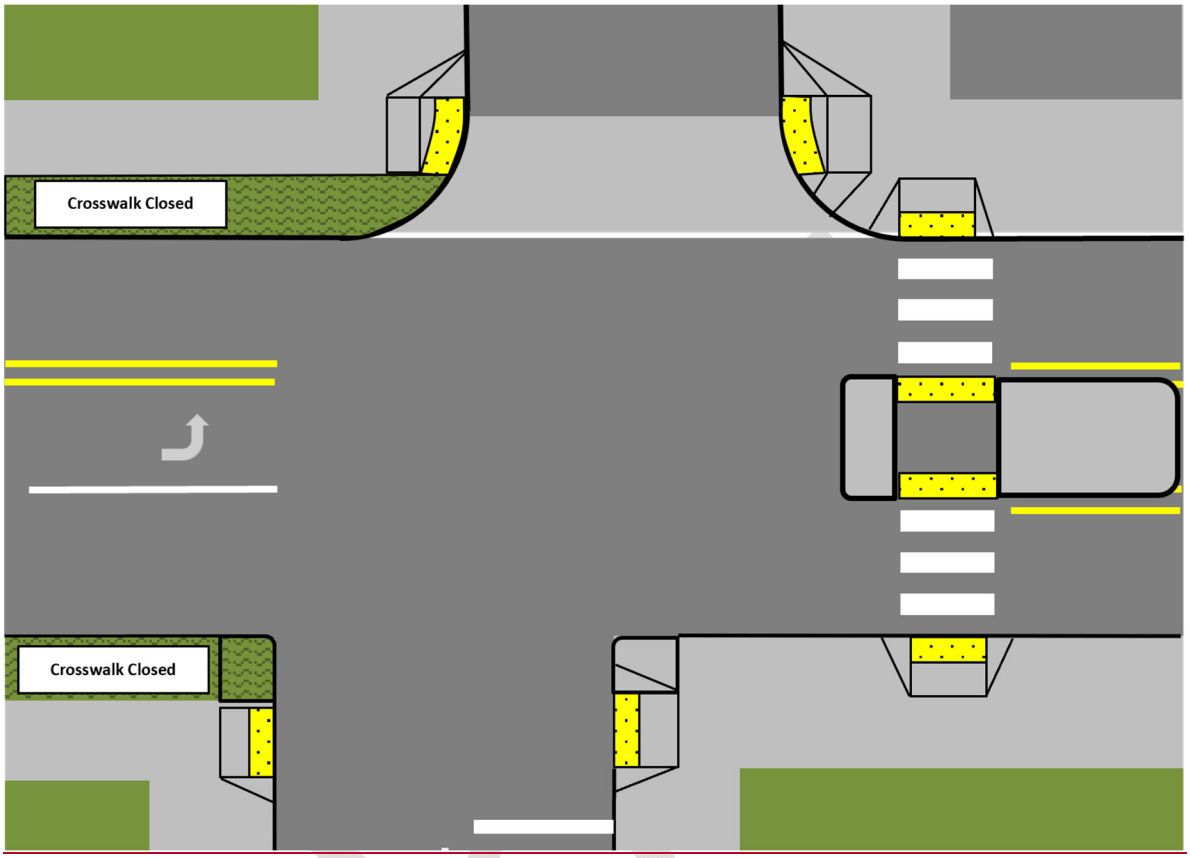
For example, non-traversable tactile surfaces that are two feet wide or wider, such as ~~landscaped~~softscaped buffer strips, are a form of detectable treatment. Approved softscaped treatments are shown in RD721 for separated sidewalks. Aluminum pedestrian fencing also provides a clearly distinguishable detectable treatment for pedestrians that is crashworthy~~.~~ (See RD780). Crosswalk closure supports are also a form of detectable treatment that are crash worthy~~.~~ (See TM240).

Figure 800-2: Closed Crosswalk at T-Intersection with Softscaping Buffer Zone



DRAFT

Figure 800-3: Closed Crosswalk at Offset Intersection with Enhanced Crosswalk and Softscaping



Crosswalk closure supports are generally limited to sidewalks and other paved pedestrian areas and are generally discouraged in vegetated and unpaved areas due to a greater likelihood of being struck by maintenance equipment, obscured by vegetation, or becoming a sight obstruction for road users. The visual closure sign treatment can be a separate post and sign support installation located at the back of the walkway when the crosswalk closure support is the detectable treatment. In some locations, crosswalk closure supports can be difficult to align so they are detectable with an intersecting pedestrian route. Multiple crosswalk closure supports in a line to block the intersecting pedestrian route is not prohibited. See the Sign Policy and Guidelines for additional guidance on sign OR22-7 and the Oregon Standard Drawings for details of the crosswalk closure support.

802.6 Curb Ramp Position Need Status

The asset inventory for curb ramps is updated every six months and includes the status of curb ramps on or along the state highway system. This data is available in FACS-STIP. Questions periodically arise regarding project requirements for construction of a curb ramp when assessing the status identified on the asset layer. ODOT Curb Ramp Position Need Status Form

No. 734-5390 is used for inventory status review of a curb ramp position at a specific location on or along the state highway system. Asset attribute designations for a curb ramp for a given position include In Place, Missing, Closed, or Not Needed. Older designations have been phased out. The designation for the curb ramp is based on the existing built environment and does not determine the need for a curb ramp based on construction improvements. Additions, alterations, and changes to the state highway infrastructure may change a status category for a curb ramp position after final construction.

Curb Ramp Attribute Definitions:

- In Place (IP): Ramps that have been built.
- Missing (MS): Ramp positions in which a curb ramp needs to be built or position closed by State Traffic Engineer approval.
- Closed (CL): Ramp position has been closed by official action as a part of a crosswalk closure. Ramp positions are never closed individually. Crosswalk closures require State Traffic Engineer approval.
- Not Needed (NN): No ramp is needed, based on lack of available pedestrian facilities, shoulders, or coincident crosswalks that are present.

This form is not to be used for crosswalk closure documentation. Refer to the Traffic Manual for the process on crosswalk closures.

802.7 Raised Crosswalks Approvals

Enhanced crosswalk treatments are a function of the ODOT Traffic Section. Refer to Section 310.3 of the ODOT Traffic Manual for enhanced crosswalk treatments. The roadway designer should work with the Region Traffic Unit and ETSB's Traffic Engineering Section concerning raised crosswalk treatments at an enhanced crosswalk. Raised crosswalks require State Traffic Engineer approval with State Roadway Engineer concurrence using Form 734-5350. Markings for approved raised crosswalks follow the Pavement Marking Manual which is modeled after the most current edition of the MUTCD.

Coordinate with the State Signal Engineer for multi-lane right turn lanes involving signalization and raised crosswalks. The State Traffic Engineer approves the type of traffic control for the intersection where multi-lane right turns are involved, see Section 830.5 Enhanced Crosswalks and Crossings.

Section 805 Pedestrian Needs

Pedestrians have different needs than vehicular traffic. Pedestrian movements and paths of travel are not as predictable as moving vehicles. Pedestrian travel is heavily dependent on

human behavior and social norms rather than the rules of the road. Culturally, you may find different behavior of pedestrians when traveling in different communities or countries. People operating a motor vehicle must follow the rules of the road when driving and are generally confined to spaces demarked by lines in the roadway realm. Pedestrians are not confined to rules of the road such as striping but generally follow the path of least resistance and the shortest, most direct route to their destination. Personal choices for safety and risk taking are also dependent on the individual's abilities when using the transportation system. Refer to Section 224 and Section 900 for accommodation of other modes in design.

The Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian plan is adopted by the Oregon Transportation Commission and is an overarching document about ODOT's vision. "In Oregon, people of all ages, incomes, and abilities can access destinations in urban and rural areas on comfortable, safe, well connected biking and walking routes. People can enjoy Oregon's scenic beauty by walking and biking on a transportation system that respects the needs of its users and their sense of safety. Bicycle and pedestrian networks are recognized as integral, interconnected elements of the Oregon transportation system that contribute to our diverse and vibrant communities and the health and quality of life enjoyed by Oregonians." [1] Refer to the Oregon Transportation Planning Rule (OAR 660, Division 12) policy and Section 109.7 of this manual which describes where additional pedestrian amenities, connectivity, and options for transportation are needed or required.

805.1 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)

The Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990 is a Federal Civil Rights Law that mandates both the private and public sectors to make their services and facilities accessible for people with various abilities. The ADA applies to the Public Sector (State and Local Government) under Title II and Public Sector under Title III. The ADA requires that transportation facilities accommodate the needs of people with disabilities. That means sidewalks, shared use paths, street crossings and connections to private properties are built so people with varying abilities (e.g., limited mobility or low vision) can easily use them.

Pedestrian improvements that improve accessibility result in a high-quality system for all users. Accessible infrastructure has been linked to increased business opportunities, social development, health benefits and increased independence among community members. Accessible design benefits all users of the facility and the community. People with disabilities live in both rural and urban communities and may be more reliant on pedestrian infrastructure for transportation. People with disabilities is the largest minority group in the nation, and anyone can become a member of this population at any time during their lifetime.

[1] Oregon Transportation Commission's 2016 Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan.

The Sections in Part 805 discuss the needs of the various populations when navigating walkways. The ADA identifies disabilities based on major life activities. Disabilities protected under the ADA can be either visually apparent or unseen in the average pedestrian encounter. Disabilities might be temporary or permanent for an individual and may fall on a spectrum of affect. For example, some blind people may have some functional vision while others may be entirely without sight. Some people may have multiple disabilities on various spectrums. Human sense is how the body perceives an external stimulus and processes information which include sight, smell, hearing, taste, and touch. When one of these senses is impaired, the pedestrian must rely on the other senses to navigate their surroundings. For example, deaf-blind travelers have more difficultly navigating their surroundings as two of their primary senses are compromised.

805.1.1 ODOT ADA Transition Plan

An Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) transition plan is a federal requirement for state transportation authorities, like ODOT, and for local governments with 50 or more employees. ODOT also requires local agencies approved in the Certified Local Agency Program [2] for delivery of projects with federal aid to maintain an ADA transition plan. The ODOT ADA Transition Plan is a requirement under the ADA Title II and by FHWA when receiving federal funds. The plan identifies the physical accessibility barriers that limit access to ODOT managed buildings, highways, walkways, and other facilities or services provided by ODOT. ODOT's plan describes the agency's approach to planning and prioritizing system improvements to accessibility of the state highway infrastructure. The ODOT ADA transition plan is publicly available and approved by the Oregon Transportation Commission for implementation.

Accessibility deficiencies are generally housed and identified in the ODOT FACS-STIP tool layers. Curb ramps, pushbutton activation, sidewalk accessibility, design exceptions, and CQCR's are just a few of the asset layers that can inform a team about needed accessibility improvements to include in projects. Project teams will need to review the ODOT FACS-STIP tool to determine which features will need to be incorporated in the project scope of work. ADA improvements are to occur when the next opportunity arises with construction improvements, alterations, or reconstruction. The level of detail in the asset layers will vary based on information and methodology used for data collection.

ODOT's FACS-STIP Tool is a useful source of available infrastructure and accessibility data. FACS-STIP is web-based, uses GIS functions and includes both a Map Tool and a data export function when using "Data to Go." There may be pertinent data in other categories, but "Projects and Needs for Scoping" and "Roadside" together include data that should be reviewed at a minimum during scoping efforts. ODOT staff should be sure to use the internal

[2] Refer to Federal Highway Administration Order 5020.2 (2014)

website version to see all available data spatially on the Map Tool, to view or export reports, or to export the required reports for the 1R/3R Record of Decisions process. This process and documentation is required by FHWA and includes infrastructure conditions, including the condition of ADA-related features. ODOT's ADA Transition Plan frames up important priorities that may further guide choices when critical destinations or features are located within potential project locations.

805.2 Architectural Barriers Act (ABA)

The Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) is a Federal Law established in 1968 that mandates facilities designed, built, altered, or leased with Federal Funds are accessible and useable to people with disabilities. This includes facilities constructed on federal land on behalf of the federal agency. That means federal buildings like post offices are required to be accessible. It also includes state schools, transit centers or park-n-rides, alternative fueling stations, parks and structures built with federal funds (grants or loans). These are built so people with varying abilities can use them. Examples of facilities that are required to be accessible on state right of way or on federal land include viewing areas, rest areas, picnic tables, beach access, and trails. The ABA Standard is different than the ADA Standard; however, the dimensions, slopes and requirements are very similar or identical in many cases.

805.3 Service Animals under the ADA

Service animals are either highly trained dogs (any breed) or can be a miniature horse under the ADA.[3] Miniature horses generally range in height from 24 inches to 34 inches measured to the shoulders and generally weigh between 70 and 100 pounds. Service animals perform tasks and activities that are essential to their owner's health and safety. The assistance of a trained service animal can enhance the independence, community participation and quality of life for a person with a disability. Service animals not only perform tasks related to a disability, but they are also permitted in all public places where animals are typically prohibited. Many people first think of a highly trained dog serving a blind owner as the typical service animal relationship, but many disabilities can be aided by a trained animal. A variety of dog breeds and even a miniature horse may work to support a person with a disability under the ADA. Service animals need space to walk side by side with their handler. Objects such as push buttons or levers should not be located too high so service animals can activate the mechanism when needed.

Service animals include training not only for obedience, but also public access training and specific task training. Emotional support animals (ESA) are not the same as service animals, and

[3] CFR Part 35 Section 35.136 Service Animals

can be a wide variety on animals including dogs, cats, rabbits, birds, etc. Public access training involves skills to function in public places and service animals are often recognized by their calm and unobtrusive behavior with their focus on their human handler. Service animals should never show disruptive or aggressive behavior. Service dogs are most commonly recognized by helping individuals with vision impairments (low vision or blind) and those who use a manual wheelchair; however not all disabilities are visible to someone passing by.

For those with vision impairments, service animals assist their handler to safely navigate their surroundings and avoid obstacles. Service animals perform tasks including but not limited to stopping for changes in elevations such as curbs, leading a person around an obstacle such as signs, and finding entrances or exits to buildings. For those who are hard of hearing, service animals alert them to everyday sounds and emergency sounds such as a fire alarm. A hearing dog may be trained to alert them to find an audible pedestrian signal tone for example. People with limited range of motion or using wheelchairs can benefit from service dogs as well. The service animal can provide additional power to propel up a steep slope, may use their paws or nose to activate a push button, automatic door pads, or open/close lever door handles and lights. Service animals may also brace a person who has balance issues and difficultly walking.

805.4 Blind and Low Vision Users

Design pedestrian facilities so people with vision impairments can track their way safely along the sidewalk or walkway, across driveway approaches and through intersections. Keeping the walkway clear of obstructions is important. Changes to the pedestrian environment can affect their ability to orient themselves.

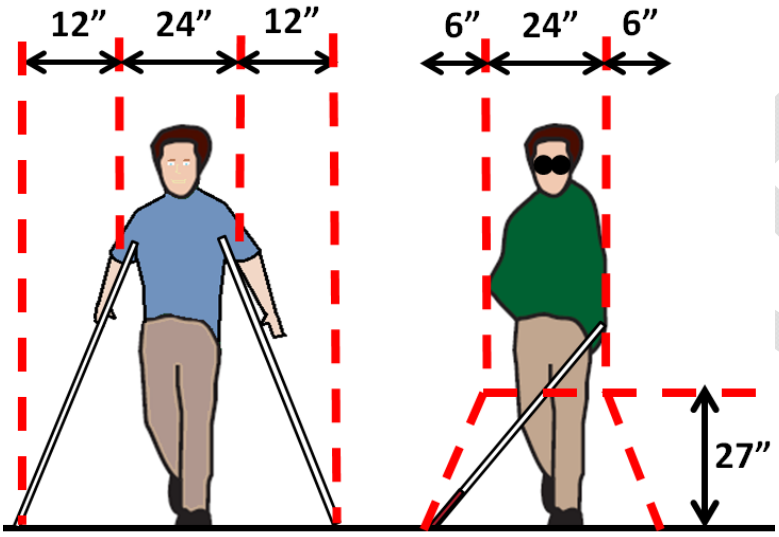
People with vision impairments may use a variety of aids to help them navigate their trip. They get information from sound, textures, and contrast. They benefit from audible and vibrotactile information, tactile indication of boundaries, clearly defined pathway, and high color contrasts. Some people have Orientation and Mobility instruction to familiarize themselves with frequent travel locations. People might have assistance from sighted guides including humans or animals, telescopes, or other low-vision aids. Service animals and caning techniques aids the low vision community while navigating their environment. Many people with low vision do not use any physical aids at all when walking relying on contrasting color with their remaining functional vision. Echolocation is used by people with vision impairments in varying degrees based on the person's abilities.

Service animals help people navigate their environment. Service animals don't know where to go without direction from their handler. Service animals are trained to have intelligent disobedience when performing tasks, and therefore might hold steadfast if the individual is about to enter a roadway and an oncoming vehicle is approaching. Service animals can also be trained to help the individual find a vacant seat on a bus service when using public transportation.

DRAFT

White canes are used by people who are blind or have low vison to provide them tactile and audible information when walking. Caning techniques detect objects typically by sweeping a cane ahead from side to side. Typically, a person sweeps a cane about 3 feet wide and paces forward about 2 feet during the cane sweep with each step. Objects lower to the ground allow for early detection with a cane and allow for greater perception and reaction time. A white cane is intended to detect objects up to 27 inches above ground. Objects above 27 inches that are not detected that protrude in the pedestrian circulation area can cause physical harm or bodily injury to a person's internal organs when their body strikes it. Objects below 80 inches that protrude in the pedestrian circulation area can also cause injury to the head and eyes if adequate vertical clearance or detectable delineation is not provided.

Figure 800-4: Width Requirement for Person with Crutches and for White Cane User



Installation of detectable treatments and tactile walking surface indicators (TWSI) provide useful cues for the low vision community to navigate their way along sidewalks and shared use paths. Detectable treatments include physical edged features such as curbing, landscape materials, fencing, concrete barrier, or similar features. Landscaping can be divided into both hard and soft features. Confusion can occur with a landscape feature that cannot be distinguished underfoot when that area is not intended to be walked on.

Tactile walking surface indicators provide information under foot that can be perceived wearing shoes but does not impede mobility devices from traversing over them. Tactile walking surface indicators are the equivalent to braille underfoot. There are different geometric shapes for TWSI with emerging use in the USA. Truncated dome warning surface panels are one style of TWSI used on pedestrian facilities in the public right of way. FHWA requires the installation of truncated dome detectable warning surfaces (DWS) on federally funded projects at curb ramps. Detectable warning surfaces are required at railroad pedestrian crossings, and at transit

service areas designating the boarding and alighting areas. For information on the installation location of DWS, refer to the latest Oregon Standard Drawings.

Provide "safety" yellow detectable warning surfaces at curb ramps, railroad crossings and at transit stops. When detectable warning surfaces are detected underfoot or by cane, the user should be alerted to stop. Detectable warning surfaces are intended to communicate a "stop" message of where the vertical curb line no longer exists (flush connection with the roadway). Detectable warning surfaces are not intended to provide orientation information about the path of travel in the Unites States with the truncated domes pattern. While stopped, the DWS is an attention pattern that informs the user to evaluate their surroundings. The user will decide when to proceed with the crossing, or to remain stopped and wait to board a transit service. Detectable warning surface colors that are in high contrast with the surrounding area identify the location of curb ramp openings for people who have some functional vision remaining (low vision).

Tactile information is helpful both underfoot and with hand placement on objects. Pushbuttons for signals provide a vibrotactile indicator when the hand rests on the push button and the indicator changes to a walk condition. The arrow symbol on the push button is also a raised symbol so someone feels which direction the arrow is pointing. These are strategies used for effective communication at signals as stipulated under the ADA.

805.5 Users of Mobility Aid Devices

Many people have physical impairments for a short time, while others live with physical limitations their whole lives. As a result, there is a wide range of operational ability between people. Many people with physical disabilities use assistive devices such as crutches, canes, walkers, scooters, and wheelchairs. Others have prosthetic limbs or healing injuries that impact their ability to walk. As a result, they have limited agility, speed, and endurance. Other people with heart disease or otherwise limited stamina prefer stairs to a longer route with a gentle slope. Lips, curbs, and stairs are barriers for many people, requiring sloped ramps as an alternative on the walkway.

People with physical impairments benefit from firm, level surfaces, adequate clear width, and limited cross slope. Adequate space is needed to use mobility aid devices on walkways. Pedestrians with mobility impairments are more sensitive to time limits that depend on walking speed. Walking speeds typically vary from 2.5 to 6.0 feet per second by foot, while powered devices can travel up to 10 mph. While people who are walking can stop quickly, people who use mobility devices require more time and distance to stop. People utilizing wheelchairs, particularly on downgrades, can require up to 20 feet to perceive, react, and stop. Walking is slower near intersections and when pedestrians are in groups rather than walking alone. Refer to the traffic signal manual for walking design speed in traffic operations.

There are many styles of wheelchairs including those requiring another person to push from behind, self-propelled manually, power assisted and motorized wheelchairs. Since they are sensitive to grades, some are equipped with safety wheels to help prevent tipping over backwards. Manually propelled devices may have aftermarket devices installed to provide power assistance when negotiating steep terrain periodically. Motorized wheelchairs and scooters are most impacted by space availability for turning maneuvers. Users are sensitive to imperfections in the ground surface that may vibrate when they roll. Clear space requirements for a common wheelchair are 48 inches in length and 30 inches wide. Many devices including power assisted scooter today are larger and occupy a physical space of 5 feet in length. Wheels on the device are typically 2 feet apart.

Service animals help those with mobility issues in performing tasks such as opening or closing a door, delivering or carrying an object, and providing power to physically move or brace the handler. Light duty service animal tasks include guiding or light pulling in a forward direction. Moderate duty service animal mobility tasks include acting as a counterbalance for walking in partnership with their handler or bearing weight for a person to stand or navigate stairs. Heavy-duty service animal mobility tasks include pulling a person seated in a wheelchair. Miniature horses are physically able to perform heavy duty pulling more frequently in comparison to a service dog (depending on breed).

Figure 800-5: Illustration of Variety of Wheelchairs



805.6 Deaf and Hard of Hearing

People who are deaf, or hard of hearing rely more on their vision but may also use tactile information. They benefit from good sight lines for assessing street crossing conditions and information in visual or vibrotactile format, and walkways that are free of obstacles. They may be more sensitive to the information provided by textures they walk over. The high contrast color of the detectable warning panel and texture underfoot of the truncated domes may also alert someone that is deaf or hard of hearing that they are about to enter a street crossing. Count down signal heads provide information for deaf and hard of hearing individuals visually so they can prepare to cross the street.

While most people think of service dogs being used for blind travelers, service dogs can also be trained to aid those who are deaf or hard of hearing, and alert them when certain sounds or words occur. Hearing service animals might be trained to assist the handler find the locator tone on the pushbutton, or alert them to an emergency alarm, or alert them when they drop an object such as keys. At signalized intersections a service animal may be trained on the verbal command to stay in place with the word "wait" until they are released by their handler's cue. Audible cues such as the repeated word "wait", or percussive tones when the pushbutton is activated could be heard by the service animal to inform their handler when "walk" time is available.

805.7 Cognitive Conditions

Disabilities involving cognition, learning and memory affect the ability for people to perceive and react to information in the surrounding pedestrian environment. Responding to a traffic control device, such as a walk signal requires a perception and reaction time, typically up to 3 seconds before proceeding. ~~People~~ While people who are walking can stop quickly, people who use mobility devices require more time and distance to stop. People utilizing wheelchairs particularly on downgrades can require up to 20 feet to perceive, react and stop ~~walking equating to a stopping sight distance need for vehicles.~~.

Features in the pedestrian environment that can affect the ability to travel include interpreting traffic signs, actuating a pedestrian signal, understanding the configuration of a street crossing, changing directions and predicting traffic movements. Individuals benefit from straightforward signs with easy to understand picture symbols, reliable wayfinding, consistency between the placement of curb ramps, pushbuttons and other features, direct and uncomplicated street crossing geometry, good sight distance at crossings and otherwise thoughtful design and operation.

DRAFT

Section 810 Walkways

Sidewalks are a portion of the public right of way located in the Pedestrian Realm used for the locomotion of pedestrians. The Pedestrian Realm is divided into the Buffer Zone, Pedestrian Zone, and the Frontage Zone. Recreational and transportation needs of pedestrians can be served by walkways. Walkways include sidewalk, pedestrian lanes, shared use path, and trails. Paved shoulders serve pedestrians using rural highways in the absence of sidewalk in the Travelway Realm. Street crossings or crosswalks serve pedestrians connecting sidewalks across the Travelway Realm by providing a pedestrian access route in the roadway.

810.1 Sidewalks

Provide sidewalks in all Urban Contexts on state highways. Per ORS 366.514, walkways and bikeways must be provided whenever a roadway is "constructed, reconstructed, or relocated." Refer to Section 900 for more discussion on the "Bike Bill". A sidewalk is a facility or service to provide people with transportation options. ***Limited access expressways should be evaluated for a possible exception, providing a shared use path or separated bikeway along a parallel route.*** If walkways are provided, then they are required to be accessible and usable by a person with a disability under the ADA. For people with disabilities, the public walkway may be their only option that they can use independently. Refer to Section 805 for pedestrian needs.

When walkways are constructed, they are required to meet ADA requirements. Provide an accessible sloped entrance and exit to transition from the walkway to the shoulder when the facility terminates. Entrance and exits are typically made with curb ramps that cut through a curb along the roadway, located most often at crosswalks which are extensions of the sidewalk. See Section 815 for the requirements of curb ramp design. Entrance and exits connecting the walkway to the paved surface of the shoulder or roadway can also be at grade (without curbing).

Pedestrian facilities with a Buffer Zone are the preferred facility for pedestrians. Walkways may be separated by a buffer which can include but is not limited to a ditch, landscaping area, rain garden, curb, guardrail, or other barrier. The buffer treatment makes a physical separation from vehicular use and the walkway surface constructed becomes exclusive for pedestrian use.

Sidewalks and shared use paths may be needed on state highways beyond city limits based on existing and planned land use within the urban growth boundary, or in unincorporated areas. **Projects are not permitted to degrade existing sidewalks per the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan Strategy 3.2F. Modifications and reconstruction of walkways shall not reduce accessibility under the ADA.** This means the final construction conditions cannot be made worse for pedestrians with any given modification to the walkway. Consult the Regional Planner for planning documents including but not limited to Transportation System Plans for

DRAFT

planned pedestrian network improvements in communities. New sidewalk construction or infill needs can also be determined through roadside inventory data via the FACS-STIP tool and from local planning documents. See Appendix F, FACS-STIP Tool Guide for instructions on how to access roadside inventory sidewalk need data through the FACS-STIP tools.

Sidewalks, shared use paths and pedestrian lanes located along roadways shall have a firm, stable, and slip resistance surface. Walkways can be constructed of many materials and meet the accessibility requirements (see Section 810.8 Walkway Surfaces) required by ADA. Sidewalks can also be used by bicyclists, but cities may ban bicycle riding on sidewalks with a local ordinance.

810.2 Shared Use Paths

Shared Use Paths (Multi-Use) are typically used by pedestrians, cyclists, skaters, joggers, and users of other micro mobility devices. It is not realistic to plan and design a pathway for exclusive use, as other modes will be attracted to the facility. Shared Use Paths may reside parallel with the highway or have a separate alignment that leaves the highway right of way connecting destinations and recreational areas within the community. **Shared Use Paths are required to be accessible for the full width of the facility meeting surface, cross slope and running slope requirements under ADA. Accessible sloped entrances and exits shall be provided where the shared use path ends, serves a crosswalk, or crosses a curb.** See Part 900 and Part 845 for additional shared use path design guidelines.

Figure 800-6: Sidewalks in Urban and Suburban Contexts

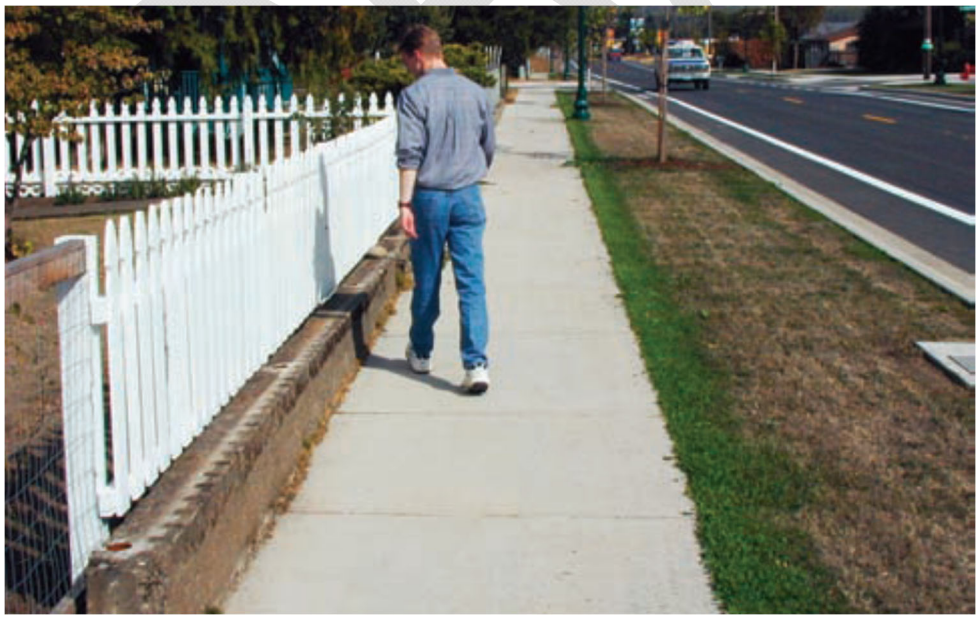


Figure 800-7: Shared Use Path on Separate Alignment from Travelway Realm



~~810.1~~810.3 Trails

A trail is defined as a pedestrian route developed primarily for outdoor recreational purposes. Pedestrian routes that are developed primarily to connect accessible elements, spaces, and buildings within a site are not a trail. **Trails are required to be constructed of a firm and stable surface material.** The surface must resist deformation by indentations, sustain normal wear and tear from the expected uses between planned maintenance activities, and not be permanently affected by expected weather conditions. Providing a higher level of accessibility in surface material construction or other pedestrian access route requirements is not prohibited on trail systems. *Signs at the trailhead indicating the trails accessibility features such as steepness and distance is encouraged to provide information for users about the trail facility.*

Trails may be unpaved (packed gravel) if they are graded and firm (resist indentation). An unpaved path may not be constructed in lieu of sidewalk. ADA requirements for trails are not intended to change the overall experience of the trail, but to provide useable access to the recreational feature and facility to people with disabilities. ADA requirements for trails are different from walkways that are used for transportation purposes (sidewalks, pedestrian lanes, and shared use paths). Trails may be designated for exclusive use by a mode of travel such as by horseback.

DRAFT

Figure 800-8: Trailhead and Trail in Recreational Context.



810.4 Shoulders

Shoulders serve pedestrians where a walking facility is not provided. The shoulder is shared for vehicle recovery area, bicyclist travel and pedestrian usage. Oregon law ORS 814.010 requires that pedestrians who walk along a shoulder face traffic, while sidewalks serve both directions of travel. Mobility devices, power assisted wheelchairs and scooters are permitted to utilize the shoulder rather than the sidewalk under Oregon law (ORS 814.500 and 814.510) and should be traveling with the flow of traffic. See shoulder width table in Part 300 for shoulder width guidelines.

Figure 800-9: End of Pedestrian Exclusive Facilities



When roadway shoulders include pavement markings or signs that indicate the shoulder is intended for pedestrian use only, the shoulder becomes an exclusive pedestrian facility requiring the accessible route standards to be met under ADA. See Section 810.7 for more discussion on pedestrian lanes.

~~810.2~~810.5 The Pedestrian Realm

A highway cross section is categorized into Realms as described in Part 300. The Pedestrian Realm is further divided into four zones. These include the Curb Zone, the Buffer Zone, the Pedestrian Zone, and the Frontage Zone. The Pedestrian Realm is adjacent to the Transition Realm. The best way to achieve the goal of a clear walking area is to design pedestrian facilities using the zone system. Each zone is a distinct area. Each zone has its function, and omitting a zone compromises the quality of the walking experience.

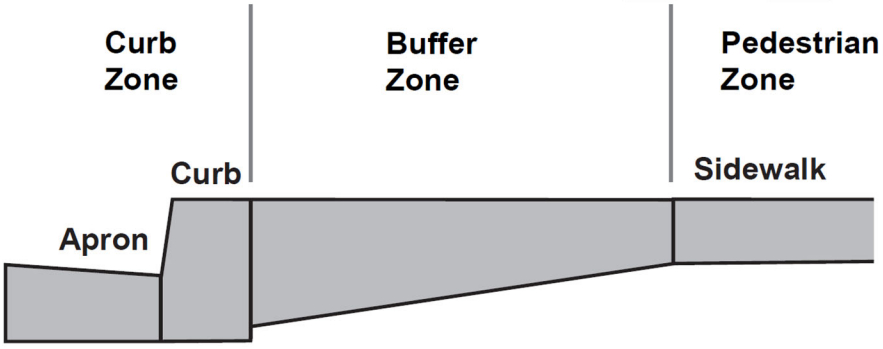
On highways with separated bike lanes, the Curb Zone and Buffer Zone may overlap zones within the Transition Realm. See Part 300 for design requirements in the Cross Section Realms. Roadway facilities should be designed and operated to enable safe access for all users, including pedestrians, bicyclists, motorists, and transit riders of all ages and abilities. The Pedestrian Realm serves pedestrians and provides access to the land uses. Understanding the pedestrian activity, access to land use, and buffers in this realm can help prioritize the design decisions in the pedestrian realm and support the need to balance the trade-offs amongst the various cross section constraints.

DRAFT

~~810.3~~810.6 Curb Zone

Most urban streets with sidewalks are typically curbed. A curb channelizes storm water to a storm water treatment facility and waterway, provides edge delineation from the vehicular or bikeway facilities, and discourages people from parking their cars on the sidewalk. Curbing also provides visual or tactile information to pedestrians. There are several styles of curb including those with a vertical edge, a sloped surface, or a rolled edge. Curbing may also include a concrete gutter pan (apron) to provide additional hydraulic capacity conveyance, control slope construction at a crosswalk, and provide a solid edge for pavement construction and inlays. The Curb Zone is also where a sidewalk transitions to the street at a crosswalk or intersection. Refer to Part 300, Section 317 Curbs for curb type selection and uses on state highways.

Figure 800-10: Curb Zone Transition from the Street to Sidewalk



Provide a Curb Zone within the range of 2.5 feet to 6 inches, see RD700's. **Curb Zones less than 6 inches are rare and do not follow ODOT's standards for construction per RD700.** Drainage curbs as shown in RD701 are generally not the preferred option for the Curb Zone when creating pedestrian walkways (see discussion on pedestrian lanes in Section 810.11). Where curb and gutter is used and on-street parking is provided, the gutter pan surface is included in the parking dimension. Where located next to a travel lane and directly adjacent to curb, the gutter pan surface is included in travel lane measurement. **Provide a smooth, flush transition from gutter pan to roadway surface.**

The Curb Zone introduces a physical barrier for pedestrians with some disabilities and can obstruct a person from entering or exiting the pedestrian facility or walkway. **A curb ramp is required to provide access (entrances and exits) to the pedestrian facility including sidewalk and shared use paths.** The curb is typically modified to be depressed and flush with the adjacent surfaces along the pedestrian access route on the walkway. Refer to Section 815 for curb ramp design and curb running slope requirements. Curb and gutter is a part of the curb ramp system. For splitter islands or other accessible route islands where the curbing (Curb Zone) is keyed into the pavement construction, curb and gutter is required as shown on RD710. The curb ramp standard drawing series RD900s have a basic assumption that the sidewalk is or

will be a curbed typical section. A snow curb return design may be used (see Section 815.4.11). When the adjacent surface material for a separated bike lane is constructed of Portland Cement Concrete for the full width at the crosswalk, a curb and gutter can be omitted in the separated bike lane (See RD702). Curb and gutter may be integrated into the bridge deck or PCC pavement cross section when needed.

Many rural locations do not have existing curb in place for the highway cross section and will remain rural in character with separation from the Travelway Realm (for example a grassy sloped surface or ditch buffer). The same basic requirements for slopes and grade apply to the sidewalk and connections to the crosswalk for the pedestrian access route in these circumstances. ***When sidewalks do not include curbing (Curb Zone), curb and gutter is not required for the pedestrian ramp (see section 815 for definition).*** **When there is no Curb Zone, the surfaces adjacent to each other must be flush and meet the slope requirements for the pedestrian access route at the pedestrian ramp.**

~~810.4~~810.7 Buffer Zone

The Buffer Zone is also known as the Furniture Zone or Furnishing Zone. On highways with separated bike lanes, zones within the Transition Realm may overlap zones in the Pedestrian Realm. All walkways should be designed so that a buffer distance separates the Pedestrian Zone from traffic, unless right of way or other constraints preclude this feature. Buffers may include a planted buffer strip, a shoulder barrier, a parking lane, or a bike lane. Refer to standard drawings RD700 series for additional construction details. See Part 300 for Cross Section Realm design guidance.

The buffer zone is located between the curb and pedestrian zones. The buffer zone can be hardscape or softscape materials. It's easier to meet accessibility sidewalk requirements with separated sidewalks. The buffer zone has many functions:

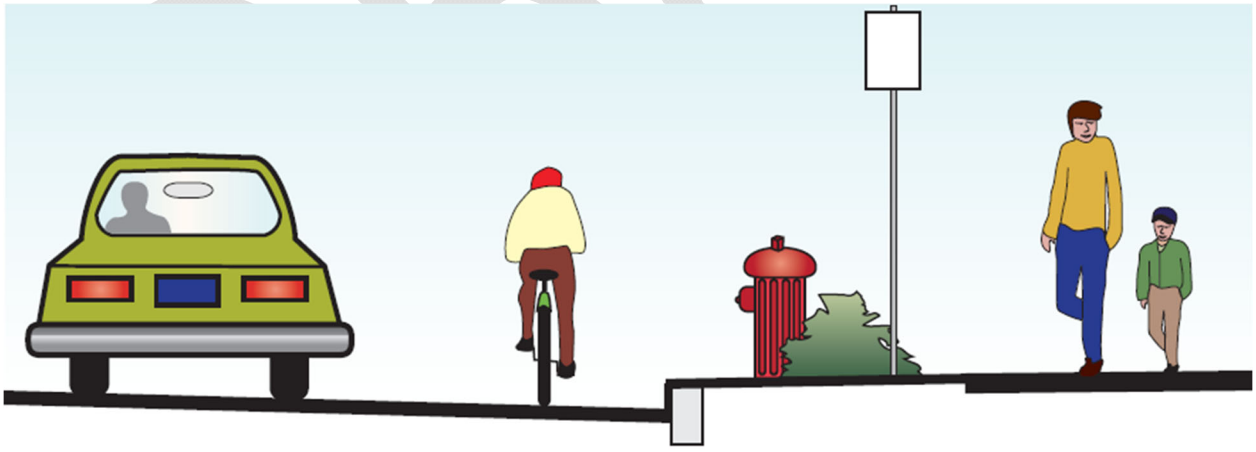
- Pedestrians are separated from traffic, increasing a walker's sense of security and comfort;
- Street furniture and obstructions (bicycle parking, poles, posts, mailboxes, parking meters, fire hydrants, etc.) can be placed out of the walking zone (these objects should not reduce visibility of pedestrians, bicyclists and signs);
- Room for street trees and other landscaping (plants should be selected that require little maintenance and watering; roots should not buckle sidewalks);
- The sidewalk can stay level across driveways;
- Curb ramps can be placed and aligned directionally with the crosswalk: sidewalks, curb cuts and crosswalks line up at intersections; and

- Improved drainage: decreased runoff water, decreasing overall drainage requirements; prevents water in puddles from splashing onto pedestrians; creates a place to store snow removal during the winter.

While ranges can vary for the Buffer Zone, start with the largest width feasible during design based on the Urban Context. Larger Buffer Zones are not prohibited. ***Provide a Buffer Zone within the range of 6 feet to zero feet in the Traditional Downtown/Central Business District, Urban Mix, Suburban Fringe and Residential Contexts. Provide a Buffer Zone within the range of 5 feet to zero feet in the Commercial Corridor and Rural Community contexts.***

Provide a continuous buffered sidewalk in Commercial, Residential, Suburban and Rural Community Contexts of at least 2 feet. **A minimum 3-foot buffer zone is required along the circulatory portions of a roundabout in any context (urban or rural), see RD170.** *Recommended set back widths should be 5 feet for roundabouts.* The Buffer Zone in roundabouts directs pedestrians to the crosswalk. See Section 509 for roundabout design requirements. Where constraints preclude the use of a buffer throughout a project, it can be interrupted and then resumed where the constraint ends with gradual transitions. The traveling speed of pedestrians and the mobility devices can vary up to 10 mph in the walkway (walking, running, or operating a mobility device) with average walking speeds of 3.0 mph. Transitions rates used for horizontal width changes takes into consideration the traveling speeds of pedestrians. *Transitions rates for horizontal width changes in the Pedestrian Zone or walkway is preferred to be 1:10. When space is constrained a transition rate of 1:5 is permitted.* **A transition rate of 1:3 is the minimum requirement for horizontal width changes.**

Figure 800-11: Buffer Zone Used for Signs, Utilities, and Decorative Plantings



A buffer strip should be at least 4 feet wide when planted landscaping is desired. Areas less than 12 square feet are difficult to support plant growth. Continuous planted buffers are not recommended in downtown areas with on-street parking because this precludes direct access to the sidewalk at the arrival point (parking space) and limits the use for people with disabilities. Plantings should be selected based on regional conditions. Select varieties of plant species that

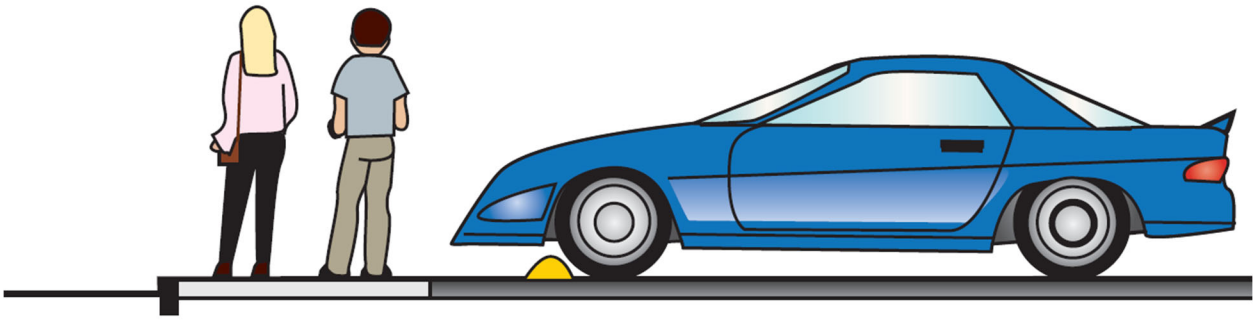
require little maintenance and watering, and their roots should not buckle walkways. **Ornamental plantings are not permitted per the DES 20-01 policy without an agreement for maintenance in place with the local agency.** See discussion on walkway surface selection in Section 810.~~8~~12.

Figure 800-12: Landscaping Providing Storm Water Treatment



Provide a Buffer Zone at least 2.0 feet adjacent to parking so cars do not reduce the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian access route. Parked cars encroach into the walkway because there is an overhang distance from the wheels or side mirrors from either perpendicular or parallel parking. ***A paved Buffer Zone adjacent to parallel on-street parking spaces increases usability by providing boarding and alighting areas for accessible van ramps and mobility devices to the walkway when there isn't room for an access aisle.*** *Provide anchored (pinned) wheel stops, curbing or other treatments to prevent narrowing of the Pedestrian Zone from vehicular overhang.* The amount of encroachment for head in parking in comparison to back in parking is significant (particularly trucks). Cars parked head in on a perpendicular or diagonal alignment encroach a smaller distance into the walkway. When angle parking is provided check the overhang distance based on AASHTO's parking lane configurations.

Figure 800-13: Wheel Stops Reduce Sidewalk Encroachment



DRAFT

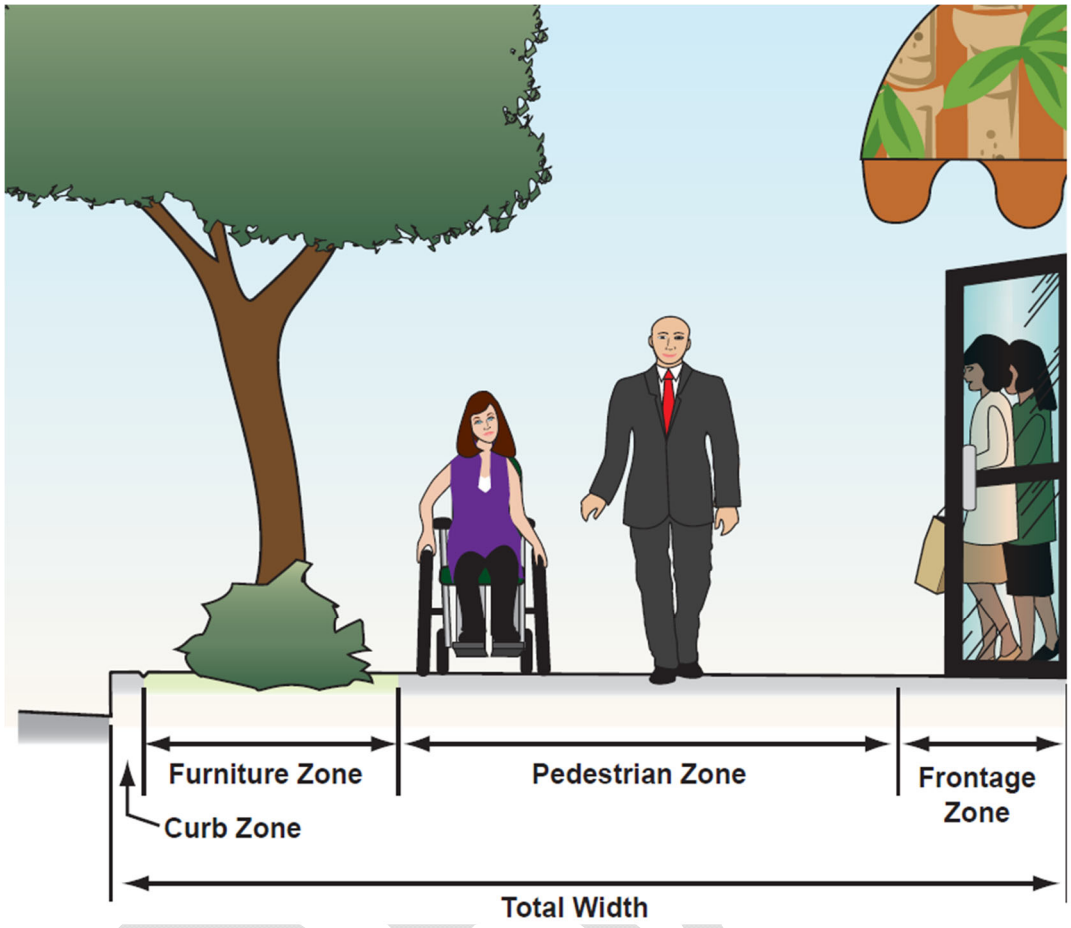
Pedestrian amenities are services provided to the public. **Provide a pedestrian access route in the Buffer Zone or furniture zone to pedestrian amenities so all people can access the services provided.** See discussion on pedestrian amenities in Section 810.13.10 and the pedestrian access route in Section 810.9. The Pedestrian Realm should be widened to create a Buffer Zone for street furniture and other amenities out of the Pedestrian Zone. Benefits of the furniture zone for pedestrians and other road users are discussed in Appendix L, Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, pages 4-2 to 4-3. Trees, street furniture and other objects should not reduce visibility of pedestrians, bicyclists, and traffic signs, especially at intersections.

~~810.5~~810.8 ~~80014~~Pedestrian Zone

The Pedestrian Zone is where people walk and is free of obstructions. All planning, design, and construction documents (including permits) should clearly state the Pedestrian Zone dimension is to be clear of all obstructions. The Pedestrian Zone overlaps the same space as the pedestrian access route. The zone system makes it easier to meet the basic ADA requirements for a continuous, smooth, level sidewalk free of obstructions. Provide room for permanent obstructions such as street furniture, lighting, signs and utilities in the Buffer Zone or Frontage Zone. When the Pedestrian Zone is separated from the roadway with a Buffer Zone (furniture zone), pedestrians are further from traffic, increasing comfort and security when walking.

DRAFT

Figure 800-14: The Pedestrian Realm Zone System in the Urban Context



The Pedestrian Zone can take on different configurations within the Pedestrian Realm and based on the six Urban Contexts. ODOT's Urban Contexts include Traditional Downtown/Central Business Districts, Urban Mix, Commercial Corridor, Residential Corridor, Suburban Fringe, and Rural Community. Refer to Part 200 for more discussion on the Urban Context and classification identification process. Roadway design has been rapidly changing toward greater flexibility along with inclusion of multimodal, context related design focusing on all road users. Modal considerations are given higher priorities depending on the Urban Context.

Pedestrian facilities can include sidewalks with or without curbs, behind a ditch or on a bridge to provide pedestrian transportation. Sidewalks are designed for preferential or exclusive use by pedestrians. Provide ample space for pedestrian activity in Traditional Downtown/Central Business Districts and Urban Mix areas including but not limited to outdoor dining and transit shelters. Select a walkway width with sufficient space to accommodate desired level of pedestrian activity.

Walkway widths are exclusive of curbing. The curb is a part of the Curb Zone. ***Provide a Pedestrian Zone with the width in the range listed in Table 800-2: Pedestrian Zone Design Range below, however larger widths are not prohibited.*** **A design exception is required for the Pedestrian Zone if the width falls below the smallest dimension in the range in Table 800-2: Pedestrian Zone Design Range. At least 5 feet of the Pedestrian Zone will be continuous meeting pedestrian accessible route requirements.** *Best practice is to keep the pedestrian zone straight and continuous, rather than meandering between fixed objects or zoned areas. Providing a fully accessible Pedestrian Zone is best practice to allow flexibility for future installation of pedestrian amenities.*

Figure 800-15: ~~:~~Sidewalk with ~~a Clear Pedestrian~~planted Furniture Zone



Figure 800-16: Sidewalk with a Clear Pedestrian Zone

DRAFT



Design the Pedestrian Zone with the greatest width feasible within the design range, starting with the largest width. The Pedestrian Zone is free of obstructions, utilizing the Buffer Zone for lighting, signs, and boarding and alighting areas. The Frontage Zone contains decorative planting boxes and other pedestrian amenities. **A 5-foot Pedestrian Zone requires a 1-foot paved Frontage Zone or a paved Buffer Zone, so the minimum "walkable" surface width is 6 feet.**

Table 800-2: Pedestrian Zone Design Range

Traditional Downtown/CBD	Urban Mix	Commercial Corridor	Residential Corridor	Suburban Fringe	Rural Community
10 ft to 8 ft	8 ft to 5 ft	8 ft to 5 ft	8 ft to 5 ft	8 ft to 5 ft	9 ft to 5 ft

A 6-foot wide Pedestrian Zone allows two people (including wheelchair users) to walk side by side, or to pass each other comfortably as pedestrians are permitted to walk in either direction on a sidewalk. Six-foot widths also allow two pedestrians to pass a third person without leaving the walkway. **Where it can be justified and deemed appropriate, the minimum width of a sidewalk may be 60 inches (5 feet).** Locations where it may be justified to provide minimal facilities include local streets or where there are physical constraints. A design exception is not required on a local road if 5 feet is the road authorities standard. Coordination with the local road authority is required as some local road authorities have a wider standard for sidewalks or identified in their Transportation System Plan. *When designing a 5-foot sidewalk, include a margin for error by stipulating an additional 2 inches in your design for construction to ensure the ADA passing requirement is met; ADA requires 60 inches minimum final construction passing width to be compliant with the regulations for the pedestrian access route.* Physical constraints might include a building foundation, a historic wall or building, or utility poles.

DRAFT

Figure 800-17: 5-Foot Sidewalk is Uncomfortably Narrow



~~810.6~~810.9 Pedestrian Access Routes

The fundamental ADA requirement is to create a contiguous link between site arrival and site destination points that is accessible by all people. This link is called the pedestrian access route and is a portion of a Pedestrian Zone that meets ADA requirements. Pedestrian access routes allow for access unassisted by others to a destination. Pedestrian access routes (PAR) lie within the Pedestrian Realm or pedestrian circulation areas. The Pedestrian Realm can be considered a pedestrian circulation area(s) while only a portion of that surface in the Pedestrian Realm may be the pedestrian access route.

Design at least a 60-inch pedestrian access route that is fully accessible meeting ADA requirements. *Both the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian circulation areas should be fully accessible; the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian access route should be of equal width.* Driveways are designed with a narrower pedestrian access route to allow vehicular entry into the private property when right of way is constrained.

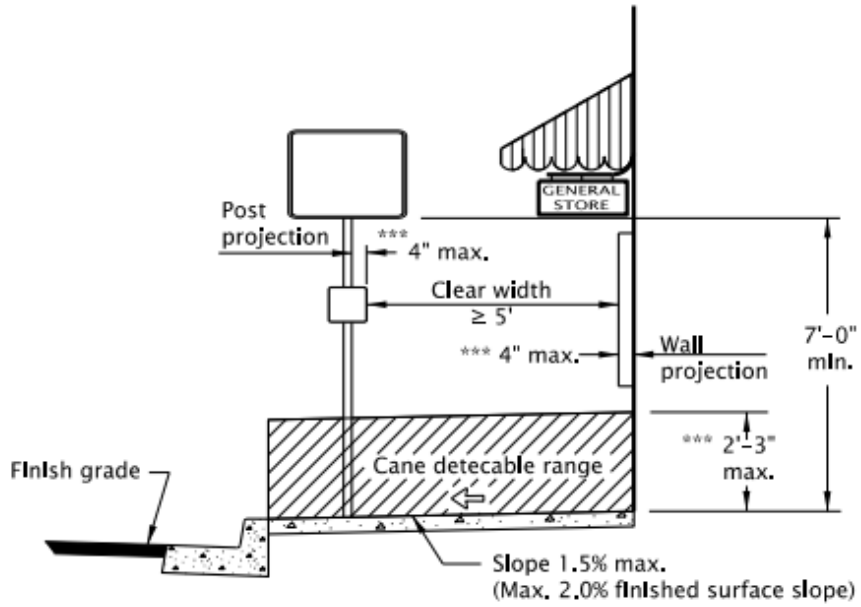
Pedestrian circulation areas include all hard surfaces that are walkable and contiguous with the Pedestrian Zone including the Buffer Zone (furnishing zone) and Frontage Zone. **Pedestrian circulation areas are constructed flush adjacent to the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian access route.** Softscaping elements included in the Buffer Zone such as planted beds, grass, loose rock, and bark mulch are not considered walkable for all people and define the boundaries of where the intended pedestrian facility resides. Softscaping provides cues with natural materials with sound, texture, and contrast that is different than the walkable surface. Softscaping provides a more pleasant pedestrian experience when walking and enhances the community character.

DRAFT

Able-bodied pedestrians might be able to traverse them, however softscaping materials are not accessible surfaces. Accessible surfaces must be firm, stable and slip resistant under the ADA year-round.

Fixed objects that reside in the Pedestrian Realm reduce the useable sidewalk width and effective Pedestrian Zone width. Temporary objects must not block the pedestrian access route. These items might include trash cans, advertising sandwich boards (A frame), feather flag signs, rental bikes, or rental scooters. Select Buffer Zones and Frontage Zones widths that can accommodate these types of amenities for intermittent periods of time without blocking the pedestrian access route.

Figure 800-18: Clear Circulation Path Requirements



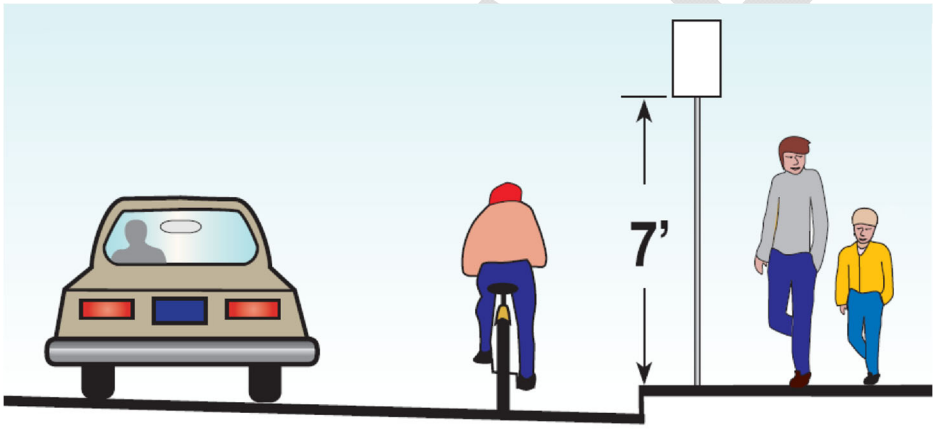
CLEAR CIRCULATION PATH

ADA requires wheelchair passing opportunities on pedestrian facilities; constructing a 60-inch (5 feet) pedestrian access route in the walkway free of all vertical obstructions ensures that standard is met without further analysis (See RD 720). *When designing a 5-foot sidewalk, include a margin for error by stipulating an additional 2 inches in your design for construction to ensure the ADA passing requirement is met; ADA requires 60-inch x 60-inch minimum passing space to be compliant for the pedestrian access route.* **At no point shall the Pedestrian Zone or pedestrian access route be less than 48 inches (4 feet) wide at pinch points; passing opportunities and distances will**

need to be analyzed. In very constrained areas, such as around obstacles that cannot be moved, a minimum passage of 48 inches (4 feet) for the pedestrian access route must be maintained for a maximum length of 200 feet.

The pedestrian access route shall have a smooth surface, free of vertical discontinues, free of large horizontal openings and be clear of utility poles, signs, signal poles, trees, and other obstructions. The cross slope of a pedestrian access route may not exceed 2.0 percent at finished construction. *The pedestrian access route is generally designed within the range of 0.5 percent to 1.5 percent cross slope to provide drainage.* The balance of the sidewalk width can be used to make up grade differences, if necessary, with cross slopes exceeding 1.5 percent to match into adjacent existing built constraints in either the Buffer Zone or Frontage Zone keeping vehicular Clear Zone in mind. See Section 400 for Clear Zone requirements. **Provide a vertical clearance at least 7 feet (84 inches) to vertical obstructions (e.g., bottom edges of signs, tree limbs, pedestrian signal heads, etc.) in all walkways and pedestrian circulation areas.**

Figure 800-19: Walkway Vertical Clearance



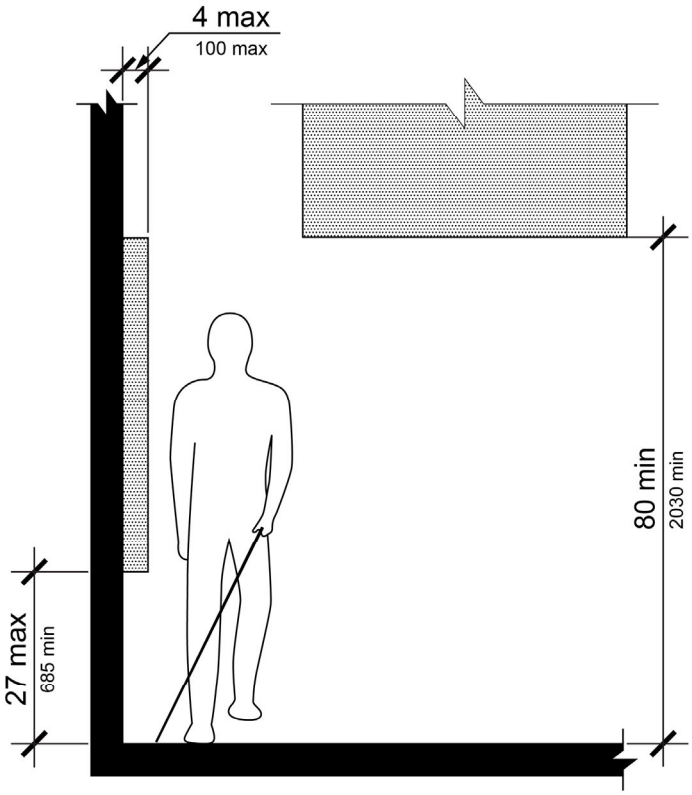
Crosswalks reside in the Travelway Realm and are extensions of the pedestrian access route connecting sidewalks. See Section 802 for Crosswalk Location Determinations and the Traffic Manual for where crosswalks exists on or along the State Highway. Pedestrian access route design width requirements vary at intersection corners with curb ramps or at midblock crosswalks. See Oregon Standard Drawings RD900 series for detailed curb ramp construction drawings, and Section 815 for curb ramp design information. Refer to Section 820 for discussion on accessible routes and building ramps to public entrances.

~~810.6.1~~810.9.1 Protruding Objects

ADA requires that objects protruding from walls (e.g., signs, fixtures, telephones, canopies, street art) are placed so their edge is not more than 4 inches from the wall or other cane detectable edge when the height of the object is between 27 inches and 80 inches above the finished walkway for any portion of the public walkway (See Error! Reference source not

found.~~RD 720).).~~ This requirement is applicable to moveable or temporary objects in the walkway. Routine maintenance is needed for tree canopies or vegetation that overlap the walkway as they are often overgrown and become a protruding object.

Figure 800-20: Protruding Object Height Ranges



Protruding objects present a hazard in the walkway to pedestrians, particularly the low vision and blind community. However, protruding objects are also a problem for a person sitting in a wheelchair. For example, when the object is at eye height and in the walkway or pedestrian circulation area, people with paralysis may not be able move their head out of the way of that object. Protruding objects restrict the available and useable walkway space for pedestrians to circulate or congregate. These type of objects, facilities, and services (e.g., water fountains, telephones, street art, trash cans, signs, decorative planter boxes, etc.), and amenities must be placed in the Buffer Zone or Frontage Zone and not in the Pedestrian Zone.

Mailboxes are a common protruding object in sidewalks along the state highway. When projects include a Buffer Zone that is constructed with plantings and softscape materials, this can provide natural edge detection around the mailbox installation for low vision or blind travelers. Drainage curbing can provide the detectable edging necessary for white cane detection around a mailbox, however it is not the best practice. Drainage curbing on sidewalks introduces added complexity and considerations for storm water runoff. Drainage curbs used as detectable edge

delineation around a mailbox impacts the Clear Zone functionality and thoughtful selection of end treatments such as a curb ending may be needed.

~~810.6.2~~810.9.2 Temporary Pedestrian Access Routes

The temporary pedestrian access route (TPAR) details how pedestrians will be directed through or around a construction work zone. The level of detail required for the TPAR depends on the complexity of the project and the volume of pedestrian traffic. Accessible route design criteria is similar to the permanent pedestrian access route, however, the guidance for TPAR design is provided in the Traffic Control Plans Design Manual. **TPAR design ensures the pedestrian has a facility that is at least equivalent or better than the pedestrian facility that was in place prior to construction starting.** Site destinations such as a business entrance access must be maintained from the TPAR. ***Refer to MG Activities 2 Highway Division Maintenance Operational Notice for temporary pedestrian access route plan requirements during maintenance work.***

~~810.6.3~~810.9.3 Walkways on Bridges

Coordination with the structural or bridge designer is required to ensure the walkway on a bridge is fully accessible. Details showing the walkway surface connection at the bridge rail and details of the expansion joints is typically required. ~~Ensure~~Provide **a slip resistance surfacing** ~~is installed~~ **on the walkway at the bridge joint or joint cover plate.** ***Transitions over the joint or plate should be designed flush as there cannot be a vertical change exceeding ¼ inch in the pedestrian access route.*** Grout railing pads, decorative lighting, guardrail posts, and bridge rail connections often reduce the clear width of the pedestrian access route and pedestrian zone. **A 1-foot pedestrian shy distance is needed from each concrete barrier and/or pedestrian railings on walkways constructed on bridges.**

~~810.7~~810.10 Frontage Zone

The Frontage Zone is located between the Pedestrian Zone and the private right of way. It is where sandwich boards, kiosks, bike racks and other street furniture can be placed. It is used by window shoppers and for outdoor dining when permitted by the road authority. ***Refer to Delivery and Operations Division Operation Notice MG14-04 for permit requirements on ODOT facilities where portions of the sidewalk are closed.*** The Frontage Zone is where people enter and exit buildings. Business frontage doors typically swing outward from the building to ensure Fire, Life and Safety egress can occur; the doorway may be recessed from the exterior building face. **Provide a pedestrian access route to site arrival points and destinations that are**

DRAFT

available to the public. These include pedestrian amenities but are not limited to doorways, kiosks, pay stations, water fountains, benches, parklets and transit shelters.

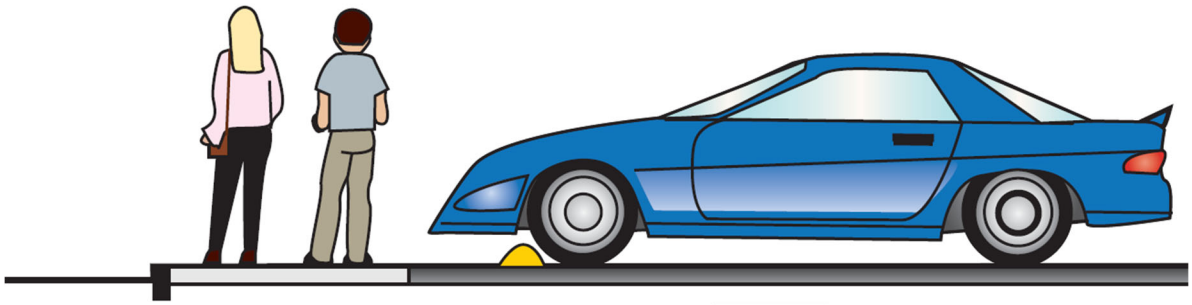
Provide a Frontage Zone that ranges from 4 feet to 2 feet in traditional downtown/central business districts. In Central Business Districts the Frontage Zone should be 4 feet or wider to provide space for merchandise, sidewalk cafés, and opening business doors, and adjacent parking lots. A 2-foot pedestrian shy distance is needed from vertical barriers such as buildings, sound walls, retaining walls and fences.

Figure 800-21: Generous Frontage Zone with Seating and Bus Shelter



Provide a Frontage Zone at least 2.0 feet adjacent to parking on private right of way so cars do not reduce the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian access route. Parked cars encroach into the walkway because there is an overhang distance from the wheels or side mirrors from either perpendicular or parallel parking. *Provide anchored (pinned) wheel stops, curbing or other treatments to prevent narrowing of the Pedestrian Zone from vehicular overhang.* The amount of encroachment for head in parking in comparison to back in parking is significant (particularly trucks). Cars parked head in on a perpendicular or diagonal alignment encroach a smaller distance into the walkway. When angle parking is provided check the overhang distance based on AASHTO's parking lane configurations.

Figure 800-22: Wheel Stops Reduce Sidewalk Encroachment



Provide a Frontage Zone that is at least 1 foot in all Urban Contexts. When the Pedestrian Zone is only 5 feet wide, the Frontage Zone will need to be a hard surface (paved or concrete), see discussion in the Section 804.4 Pedestrian Zone. The width of the Frontage Zone provides space so there is not encroachment onto public property with permanent objects such as fencing. The space provides maintenance personnel the room to make repairs to sidewalk.

~~810.8~~810.11 Walkway Configurations

The Pedestrian Realm width is the summation of the Buffer Zone, the Pedestrian Zone, and Frontage Zone. Configurations for sidewalks vary based on the Urban Context and may require greater widths. The Oregon Highway Plan is a statewide planning and policy document for Oregon with requirements for sidewalks related to highway designations defined in that statewide policy document.

The Oregon Highway Plan (OHP) is a modal element of the Oregon Transportation Plan (OTP). The OHP addresses efficient management of the system to increase safety, preserve the system, and extend its capacity; increased partnerships, particularly with local and regional governments; links between land use and transportation; access management; links with other transportation modes; and environmental and scenic resources. The OHP also establishes a variety of policies that are directly related to the Expressway Management Plan.

The state highway classification system divides state highways into five categories based on function: Interstate (NHS), Statewide (NHS), Regional, District, and Local Interest Roads. Under OHP Policy 1B.7, the highway segment is designated with community development characteristics. This includes Special Transportation Areas (STA), Commercial Centers, Urban Business Areas, and Urban designations. The designations are defined with characteristics for design outcomes for each segment of highway with modal priorities identified. See Part 200 for more discussion on highway classification and function. Refer to Appendix A, for the Oregon State Highway functional classification and Appendix B, for the Oregon Highway Plan classification designation on a state highway.

DRAFT

Special Transportation Areas (STA) - The objective is to provide local auto, pedestrian, bicycle and transit movements to the business district or community center and these modes are generally as important as the through movement of traffic. People who arrive by car or transit find it convenient to walk from place to place within the area. Provide sidewalks with ample width which are located adjacent to the highway and the buildings. STAs are not located on freeways or Expressways.

Commercial Centers (CC) - The objective is to accommodate pedestrian and bicycle access and circulation and, where appropriate, transit movements. Provide convenient circulation within the center, including pedestrian and bicycle access and circulation. Provisions for transit access in urban areas planned for fixed-route transit service are to be included.

Urban Business Areas - The objective is to balance vehicular accessibility with pedestrian, bicycle, and transit accessibility. Safe and regular street connections are encouraged. Transit pullout, sidewalks, and bicycle lanes are accommodated.

Urban - The objective of an urban segment designation is to efficiently move through traffic while also meeting the access needs of nearby properties. Although pedestrians are generally not accommodated on Expressways for safety reasons, analyze accommodation on a case-by-case basis. Curbside sidewalks should be avoided on expressways.

Several conditions within the Urban Contexts require greater sidewalk widths in the Pedestrian Realm:

1. **When signs, mailboxes, or other appurtenances in the sidewalk become numerous, provide a sidewalk of at least 8 feet.** The width of a curbside sidewalk should be 8 feet in locations where the target speed is 45 mph or greater.
2. **Provide a total sidewalk width in Central Business Districts (CBDs), STAs and traditional downtowns at least 10 feet wide where buildings are located at the back of the sidewalk.** The preferred sidewalk width in high use business areas is 14-16 feet.
3. **Curbside walkways on bridges shall be at least 7 feet wide, to account for pedestrian shy distance from the outside bridge rail.** Newly constructed or reconstructed bridge walkway widths should not be less than the approaching walkway width on the bridge end. Pedestrian Zone widths must be equal approaching the bridge, crossing the bridge, and leaving the bridge.
4. **Where a walkway is separated from traffic with a barrier at the curb line, the walkway shall be at least 7 feet wide to account for pedestrian shy distance.**

Design exceptions are required for the sidewalks that are less than the values shown in Table 800-3. See Section 810.3 for Buffer Zone distances requiring a design exception.

Table 800-3: 4R/New Construction Pedestrian Realm Width Minimums
(B = Buffer Zone, P=Pedestrian Zone, F= Frontage Zone)

~~Oregon~~ Highway ~~Plan Designation~~Characteristic [4]	Minimum Pedestrian Realm Width (B+P+F)	Buffer Zone or Frontage Zone Treatment
Special Transportation Area (STA), Central Business District (CBD) or Traditional Downtown	10 feet	1 foot paved Frontage Zone
Special Transportation Area (STA), Central Business District (CBD) or Traditional Downtown	12 feet	4 feet softscaped buffer strip
Urban Business Area (UBA), commercial centers and other developed areas	6 feet (5+1)	Curbside, 1 foot paved Frontage Zone
Urban Business Area (UBA), commercial centers and other developed areas	10 feet	4 feet softscaped buffer strip
Urban Fringe: 35-45 mph Target Speed	8 feet	Curbside, 1 foot paved Frontage Zone
Urban Fringe: 35-55 mph Target Speed	10 feet	4 feet softscaped buffer strip
Expressway: 45 mph Target Speed	8 feet	Curbside, 1 foot paved Frontage Zone[5]
Expressway: 45 mph Target Speed	14 feet	8 feet softscaped buffer strip
Expressway: 50-55 mph Target Speed	14 feet (8+5+1)	8 feet softscaped buffer strip
Bridge Sidewalk and Sidewalk separated by Traffic Barrier	7 feet (1+5+1)	Not applicable
Urban Roundabouts	14 feet (3+10+1)	3-foot detectable Buffer Zone

~~810.8.1~~810.11.1 Walkway without Curb or Behind Ditch

Most sidewalks are separated from the roadway with curbs, which channelize drainage and provide positive separation from traffic. Curb and gutter can substantially increase the construction cost of a project. Where sidewalks are needed, but the high cost of curb and storm sewer cannot be justified, or where curbs don't fit the character of the street, sidewalks may be constructed without curb for drainage. See discussion about Curb Zones in Section 810.2 for additional information.

[4] Appendix B, "OHP Appendix D: Highway Classification by Milepoint."

[5] Curbside walkways should be avoided on Expressways or when Target Speeds exceed 45mph.

Walkways may be located at roughly the same elevation of the traveled way. Walkways may also reside above or below the traveled way grade depending on the local terrain. The Buffer Zone is designed to accommodate storm water conveyance and infiltration. The ditch or earth slope (cut or fill section) are both barriers to access the walkway for all people. When a walkway begins or ends, slope entrances and exits to the walkway are required to be accessible. At grade pedestrian connections are made when the Pedestrian Realm doesn't have a Curb Zone, and these connections are referred to as "at grade" pedestrian connections or pedestrian ramps. See additional requirements in the curb ramp design Section 815.

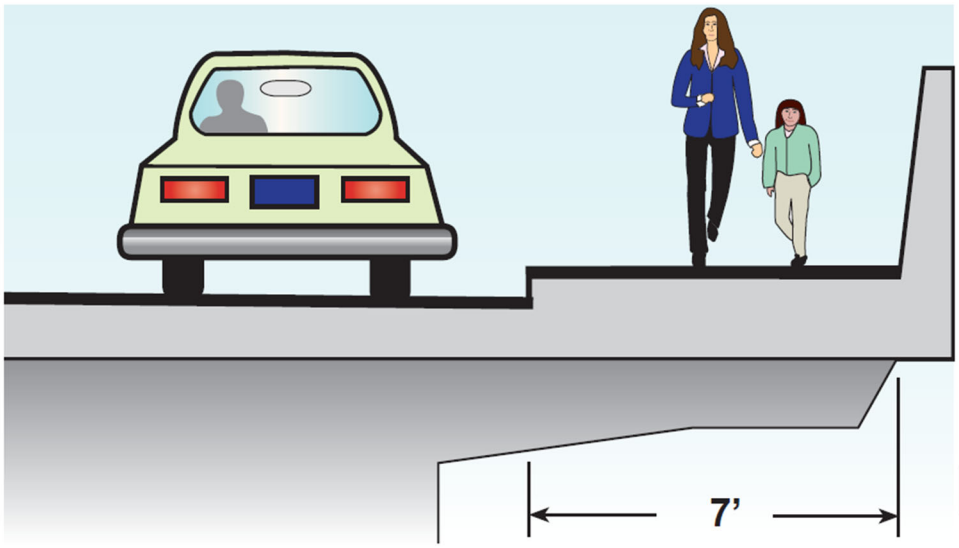
On roads with a rural character, where drainage is provided with an open ditch, and where there is sufficient room, walkways may be placed behind the ditch. **Pave driveways 15 feet back from the back of the Pedestrian Zone to avoid debris accumulation and maintain and accessible pedestrian path of travel.**

~~810.8.2~~810.11.2 Walkways on Bridges

Provide walkways on both sides of bridges where pedestrian use can be expected. When designing walkways for bridges, the design life of a structure is 75 years or more. The walkway width will be in place for generations to come and is difficult to adjust later due to the impacts on the substructure design. Walkways on bridges are often a destination for pedestrian viewing of waterway features including boating, wildlife, and recreational fishing. Wider walkways allow for both the transportation need and occasional or planned recreational usage. See discussion on Shared Use Path design in Section 845.

Provide a Pedestrian Zone at least 7 feet wide on bridges when the walkway is for transportation use only to account for shy distances. See Section 900 for shared use path design width requirements. The Pedestrian Zone is exclusive of any curb, railing or concrete barrier on the bridge. **A 1-foot pedestrian shy distance is needed from each concrete barrier and/or pedestrian railings constructed on bridge walkways.** This shy distance is both from moving traffic and from the outside bridge rail, as some people feel uncomfortable walking close to a high vertical drop. Consider wider sidewalks in urban settings with high pedestrian use based on the Urban Context. **The bridge sidewalk must not be narrower than the approaching sidewalk at the bridge ends, see Figure 800-70: Bridge Sidewalk Transition to Roadway Sidewalk and Clear Width~~Figure 800-71 Bridge Sidewalk Transition to Roadway Sidewalk and Clear Width~~. Walkways on bridges with design speeds greater than 40 MPH require a vehicle traffic barrier at the Curb Zone.**

Figure 800-23: Minimum Bridge Sidewalk Width



Walkways on bridges also have additional pedestrian access route concerns that need to be reviewed in coordination with the bridge designer. Clear widths for pedestrian access routes are measured from the nearest vertical surface exceeding ¼ inch in height or any object/feature that protrudes into the Pedestrian Zone and excludes the Curb Zone, see Figure 800-72 Bridge Clear Width Measurement~~Figure 800-73 Bridge Clear Width Measurement~~. Monolithic construction of the Curb Zone and walkway occurs frequently on bridges for various structural reasons. There is an implied curb and curb zone width (6 inches) which does not count towards the clear width requirement. Grout railing pads, decorative lighting, guardrail posts, and bridge rail connections often reduce the effective width of the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian access route. (See discussion on Pedestrian Railing in Section 810.13.) Walkways on bridges include bridge expansion joints that are required to meet the pedestrian access route surface requirements and should be flush (See discussion in 810.5 on pedestrian access routes).

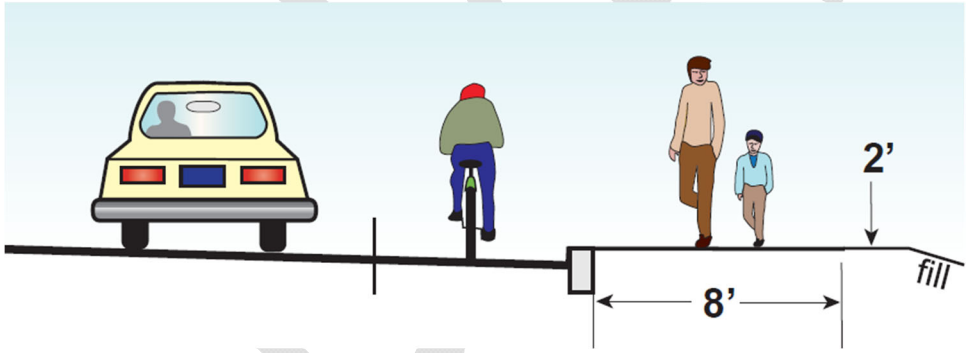
Vertical clearances over a bridge walkway are provided to ensure accessibility requirements are met. **A vertical clearance of 10 feet is required for shared use paths across a bridge to accommodate cyclist, see Section 845.2.6.** Horizontal clear widths measurements are reduced by objects that are less than 7 feet above the walking surface along the pedestrian accessible route. In some cases, greater than 10 feet vertical clearance is advisable when there is equestrian use, or emergency and maintenance vehicles are expected to traverse the walkway. When 10 feet of vertical clearance is not achieved, advance warning signs should be considered as a mitigation.

~~810.8.3~~810.11.3 Walkways with Curb

Walkways should not be placed directly adjacent to a high-speed travel lane (45 MPH and above); they should be buffered with a planting strip, a parking lane, or a bike lane via the Buffer Zone or Transition Realm. Curbside walkways should be avoided on expressways. **Where walkways are curbside in constrained areas, a 1 foot paved Frontage Zone is required.** *In the absence of any separation via Buffer Zone, curbside walkways next to high-speed roadways should be at least 8 feet wide, as the two feet adjacent to the curbing are used for poles, sign posts, etc.* See discussion on Buffer Zone and Transition Realm requirements. This results in an effective 6 feet wide Pedestrian Zone and provides 2 feet shy distance from high-speed motor vehicle traffic. Greater sidewalk widths are needed in high pedestrian use areas, such as Central Business Districts, where 10 feet is considered necessary, as the Pedestrian Realm is often also used for street furniture and other pedestrian amenities. Pedestrian Realms with widths 12 feet to 16 feet or greater are common in Central Business Districts.

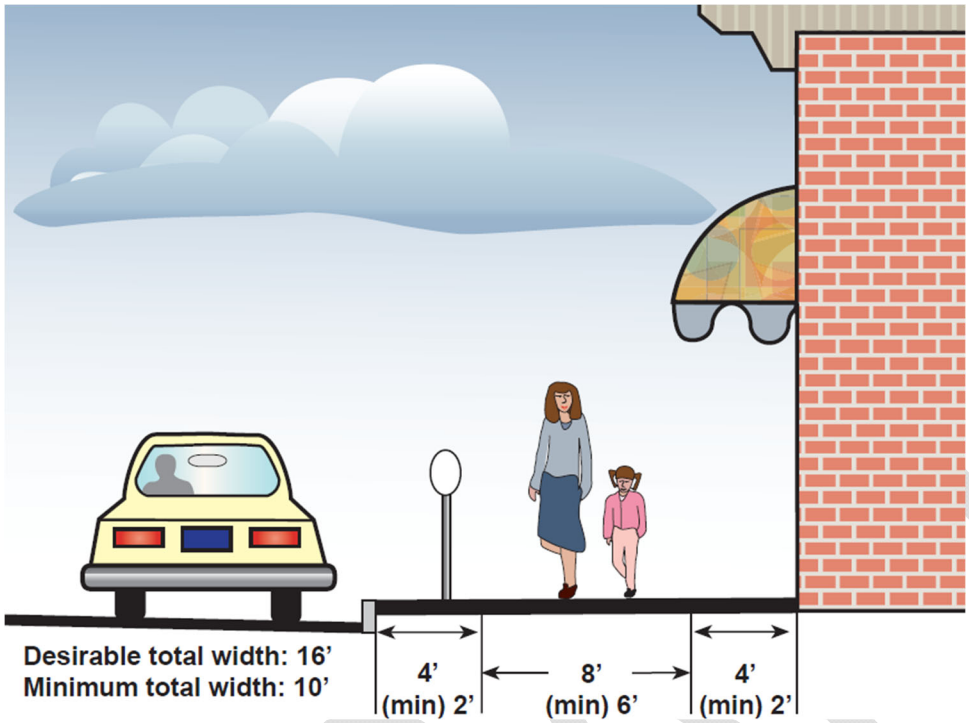
Restaurant seating and other private business use on state right of way is not consistent with the use of the Highway Trust Funds and is generally not permitted on state owned sidewalks. ***Review the Delivery and Operations Division Notice MG14-04 for current state policy.*** Many sidewalks along the highway are under local road authority and may require additional coordination or permits if the sidewalk is closed for private business use temporarily.

Figure 800-24: Recommended Curb Side Sidewalk Dimensions



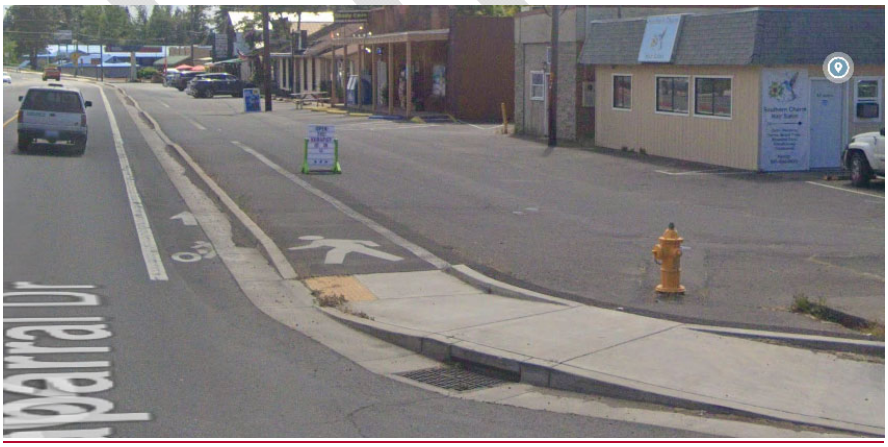
DRAFT

Figure 800-25: Recommended Central Business District Sidewalk Dimensions



Curb-tight sidewalks are not defined by the substrate material. The following photo is a marked asphalt curb tight walkway. The markings provide visual separation for motorists along the frontage zone. Pavement markings are used similar to a pedestrian lane because the surface material of the sidewalk is the same as the adjacent parking lot and there is no physical or visual distinction defining the boundary for pedestrians or motorists.

Figure 800-26: Marked curb-tight asphalt walkway



~~810.8.4~~810.11.4 Pedestrian Lanes

Pedestrian Lanes are a type of walkway that is at the same grade and is contiguous with the Travelway Realm. It often resembles a travel way shoulder, but it is reserved for pedestrian use. It is denoted for use by pedestrians only by the addition of pedestrian only pavement markings/icons, pedestrian only signing, a raised curb (typically a drainage curb as shown in the RD700 series), or concrete barrier that separates the pedestrian travel mode from vehicular use. Pedestrian lanes use markings and buffer striping to increase the distance between motorists and non-motorized users in some locations with low traffic volumes and speeds. When pedestrian lanes are provided, they must meet ADA pedestrian access route requirements including cross slope and running slopes.

Figure 800-27: Example Pedestrian Lane



DRAFT

Figure 800-28: Marked at grade pedestrian Lane



Pedestrian lanes are not the preferred walkway configuration. Pedestrians are permitted to use the shoulder under the ORS. Challenges with pedestrian lane design include:

- detectability by people with vision impairments
- undesired use by bicyclists
- ADA cross slope requirements
- maintenance strategies including sweeping and snow removal

Pedestrian lanes are an interim facility, and a full walkway improvement should be planned for future implementation. They are not intended to be an alternative to permanent sidewalk, but often fill short gaps between higher quality pedestrian facilities. ***Regional approval is required on the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Urban Contexts for pedestrian lanes.***

~~810.9~~810.12 Walkway Surfaces

Walkways must provide a surface for the intended pedestrian use considering the long-term costs, construction accuracy and maintenance requirements. **Sidewalks, pedestrian lanes, and shared use paths must be firm, stable and slip resistant to meet ADA requirements throughout all weather conditions year-round.** Firm means that the surface must resist deformation or indentation. Slip resistance is not defined by a coefficient friction value, rather agencies must determine what is best practice based on engineering principles and construction practices for slip resistance. Slip resistance is historically provided with a broomed surface finish on Portland cement concrete on walkways. **Trails must provide a stable and slip resistant walking surface to meet ADA requirements.**

Concrete is the preferred material for walkways on site improvements, sidewalks, shared use paths and the pedestrian access route. It provides a smooth, durable finish that is easier to grade, repair and meet ADA surface requirements. Concrete surfaces are finished to smooth and uniform texture by troweling, floating and cross brooming to provide slip resistance. Industry construction for concrete is more precise making it easier to achieve ADA slope requirements during finishing. Concrete's service life can easily span several decades requiring little to no maintenance of the surface. **Walkway surfaces comprised of Portland Cement concrete shall provide natural unpigmented Portland Cement concrete in the pedestrian zone.** The tone of the final construction is dependent on the source materials including but not limited to the limestone, aggregates, and sand. Attempts to mimic existing material coloring where alteration occurs are difficult to achieve.

Asphalt pavement is not the preferred material for sidewalks and shared use paths as slopes are more difficult to control and the life span of the material is shorter. Asphalt walkways are more susceptible to cracking and irregularities due to freeze thaw conditions, tree root growth, and poor compaction of the foundation material. Asphalt is typically a lower cost alternative that can meet the ADA surface requirements however compaction tools create greater variability in the finished slopes. Asphalt pavement surfaces are a more accessible surface for recreational outdoor trails and reduce maintenance needs compared to an unimproved trail.

Bricks and ornamental landscape pavers should not be used as the primary walking surface or in the pedestrian access route. They may be used for aesthetics or providing contrast in the buffer and frontage zones. Walkway embellishments in the buffer and frontage zones can also be achieved by treating concrete with colored dyes or with decorative scoring. Bricks and pavers installed with a great degree of smoothness can meet the ADA surface requirements when constructed flush with no horizontal gaps and with no beveled edges. Do not utilize bricks or landscape pavers that are beveled or "pillowed". Bricks and pavers will need to have a slip-resistant surface when installed; they are often manufactured with smooth finishes and when wet will become slippery. Long-term maintenance costs should be recognized when selecting bricks or pavers as the walkway surface. Bricks and pavers overtime are more likely to become displaced because of freeze and thaw conditions, or tree roots which create vertical discontinuities (lips) in the pedestrian access route and pedestrian circulation areas.

Bricks and pavers are a type of hardscaping that is considered walkable that maybe utilized in the buffer zone for aesthetics. **Bricks and pavers shall not be installed in the vicinity of curb ramps in lieu of flared sides without additional treatments.** See additional discussion in Section 815 for curb ramp design requirements. Low vision and blind travelers cannot distinguish the difference between bricks and Portland cement concrete underfoot and confuse these type of surfacing materials as something that is intended to be walked on in many situations in other environments. Bricks and pavers can be aggravating and painful for some people with spinal cord injuries and other conditions as vibrations occur when mobility device users traverse the surface joints. ASTM-E3028 is a standard for determining wheelchair pathway roughness index related to comfort, passibility, and whole-body vibrations.

DRAFT

An alternative to pavers is stamped and dyed concrete. This alternative provides much of the aesthetic value of bricks with the durability and smooth surface of concrete. Decorative treatments in the street or crosswalk which consist of concrete color or scored patterns are not a marked crossing. See the Traffic Manual for pavement markings at crosswalks. Colored concrete provides contrast which may assist with wayfinding for people with vision impairments when used on the edges of the pedestrian zone or pedestrian access route. **Do not use stamped concrete patterns that create rough surfaces in the pedestrian access route or pedestrian circulation areas. Treatments such as grouted durable rock require approval for installation.** ***Use of stamped concrete patterned areas in the vicinity of curb ramps will require concurrence from the Senior ADA Standards Engineer.***

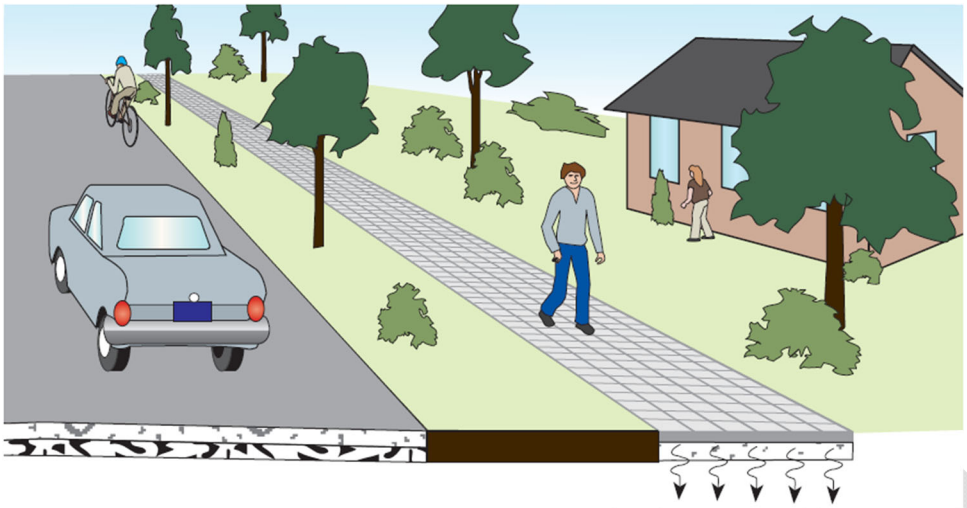
~~810.9.1~~810.12.1 Pervious Walkway Surfaces

The concern over adding more impervious surfaces has led to the creation of a variety of permeable surface materials: pervious concrete and asphalt, pavers, and other innovative designs. The pedestrian zone is usually separated from the roadway with a bio-swale in the buffer zone when a pervious walkway surface is installed. Walkways built out of conventional impervious materials (concrete) contribute little to runoff if they are separated from the roadway with a vegetated buffer zone as most of the precipitation that lands on the sidewalk can be absorbed by the native soil in the buffer zone. Concrete mix design is critical in pervious walkways to avoid a rough surface.

Pervious walkway surface technology is evolving, and long-term maintenance is a concern. The concrete mix design is of particular importance, to avoid large voids in the final surfacing. If used, pervious walkway surfaces must still meet accessibility standards: firm, stable, slip-resistant, without vertical discontinuities or horizontal openings. While meeting the minimum ADA criteria, pedestrians with spinal injuries can still experience vibration when rolling over pervious walkway surfaces. Pervious surfaces consisting of geo-grids filled in with aggregates or vegetation do not meet the accessibility requirements for the pedestrian access routes. Geo-grids can be considered for the other areas of the Pedestrian Realm or Buffer Zone; it is generally considered a hardscaping treatment unless vegetated growth is incorporated in the geo-grid.

DRAFT

Figure 800-29: Pervious Sidewalk



Consider the natural and local environment when a pervious sidewalk is constructed. Wet conditions can promote moss and mildew growth, and if not properly drained become slippery for all users therefore not meeting the ADA surface requirement for slip resistance. Pervious asphalt pavements in the walkway can trap water and freeze during winter events creating a slippery surface. Freeze thaw events degrade the life span of the asphalt pavement from surface cracking because of ice formations within the asphalt pavement. The walkway must be accessible all year.

Figure 800-30: Porous Pavement Installed Next to Concrete Walk Illustrating Mossy Growth



Figure 800-31: Porous Pavement Installed Next to Concrete Walk Illustrating Mossy Growth



~~810.9.2~~810.12.2 Surface Thickness

Walkways with foot traffic only are normally constructed with at least 4 inches of Portland cement concrete on top of a compacted base of crushed aggregate. When vehicular traffic is expected to occur over the walkway at driveways the thickness of Portland cement concrete is increased based on the design vehicle. ***Typical driveway construction consists of 6 inches of Portland cement concrete, while heavily used industrial driveways need to have a pavement loading analysis performed to determine the surface material thickness.*** Consult the Pavement Design Unit for additional guidance on industrial driveway design. Refer to the Oregon Standard Drawings RD700 series for surface construction detail requirements on sidewalks.

Depth of asphalt construction of a walkway is shown in the RD600 series for shared use path pavement details. Shared use paths occasionally need to allow access for maintenance vehicles which will increase the asphalt pavement foundation and final surfacing depths.

~~810.10~~810.13 Walkway Design

With new construction of pedestrian facilities where they did not previously exist, the desire is to create a sidewalk that is fully accessible when hard surfaces are constructed for the entire width. This ensures that over the life span of the walkway, pedestrian access routes requirements are met and have the most flexibility to ensure ADA access when pedestrian amenities and features are temporarily or permanently improved, or disturbed. A key principle is that between arrival and destination points, there is a fully accessible pedestrian access route year-round. A Universal Design approach is best practice when designing walkways.

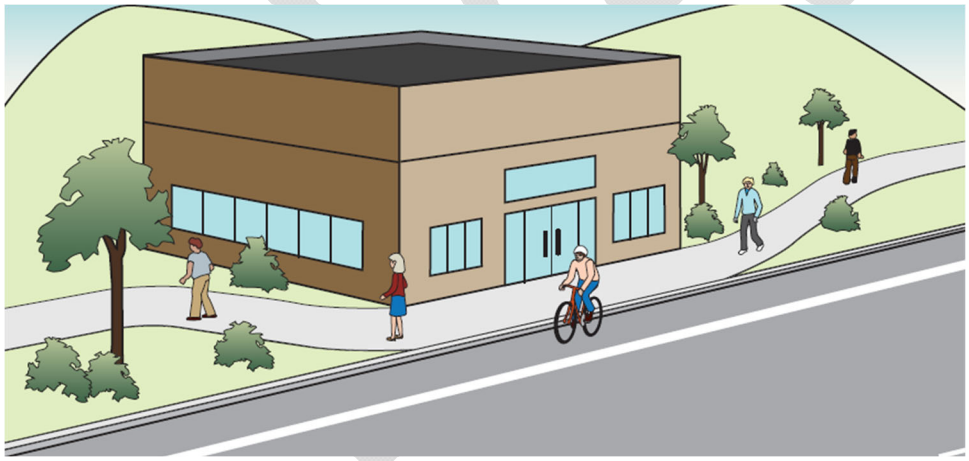
DRAFT

When a roadway has already been established in the built urban environment, roadway cross section reconfigurations may be altered to provide improved pedestrian experiences in the Pedestrian Realm. Particularly in the Traditional Downtown and Central Business Districts, the pedestrian access route and Pedestrian Zones are influenced by the existing elevation of building entrances. In this circumstance, walkways that have been disturbed or reconstructed are required to meet the pedestrian access route requirements with the improvement. A reduction is accessibility is prohibited with the alteration under the ADA. *The design should aim to provide a fully accessible walkway as best practice with any alteration of the walkway incorporating Universal Design.*

~~810.10.1~~810.13.1 Horizontal Alignment

The Pedestrian Zone should be straight, or parallel to the adjacent road when the road naturally curves. Attempts to create meandering Pedestrian Zone usually fail because they do not serve the needs of pedestrians, who want to walk in the most direct route possible. The only exceptions should be when a sidewalk is substantially separated from a roadway, and the natural contours of the pedestrian zone are different from the alignment of the roadway, or to avoid large obstacles such as mature trees, or other pinch points. Care must be taken to assure the Pedestrian Zone is free of obstructions.

Figure 800-32: The Buffer Zone May Be Eliminated or Reduced at Pinch Points



Meandering Pedestrian Zones may be used to wrap around large obstacles, such as a mature tree or power pole. Though it adds some aesthetic value and offers possibilities to add creative landscaping touches, the results are often quite different. Most pedestrians prefer to walk directly, in a straight line. Meandering Pedestrian Zones can cause increased stress and make navigating difficult for the low vison and blind traveler as they are continually having to reassess their direction of orientation for walking. Meandering Pedestrian Zones are often scrutinized by the public when the sidewalk doesn't serve users well. Considerations for designing meandering walkways include:

1. Constructability due to the need for special forms.
2. Reasonable transition rates for pedestrians to deviate from their walking path. 1:10 is the preferred taper rate as pedestrian speeds vary. 1:10 taper rate accommodates the casual bicyclists, motorized wheelchairs, and pedestrians on foot running or walking. Use a 1:5 taper rate when constraints are in the available right of way. **Provide a 1:3 taper as a minimum rate change for widths and alignment changes.**
3. **Grade breaks are required to be perpendicular to the path of travel in the Pedestrian Zone when the constructed running slope exceeds 5.0 percent.** Design perpendicular grade breaks for slopes over 4.0 percent. This corresponds to **Criteria T** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Checklist (Form 734-5184).
4. It is critical to maintain a straight pedestrian access route across driveways, curb ramps and road approaches (in crosswalks, marked or unmarked). The following techniques can be used to maintain cross slope requirements at driveways and prevent exaggerated warping and cross-slopes:
    a) Reduce the number of accesses, thereby reducing the need for alterations at every driveway;
    b) Separate the Pedestrian Zone from the curb with a buffer; this allows the pedestrian access route to remain at the same slope of the roadway, with the driveway apron slope elevation change occurring in the Buffer Zone;
    c) Where constraints don't allow a Buffer Zone, meandering the Pedestrian Zone to the back of the driveway has a similar effect;

DRAFT

Figure 800-33: Meandering Sidewalk



Critical areas for the low vision and blind communities are street crossing points that may not be readily apparent. Complex intersections with many turn lanes, skewed angles and slip lanes with free-flowing traffic are particularly confusing to the blind traveler and low vision community. Right turn channelization islands are particularly challenging for people with vision disabilities. Techniques that can help reduce confusion and simplify the navigation task are below:

1. Keep the radius as tight as possible and place the crosswalks in areas where they are expected; in a straight line with the approaching sidewalks, pedestrian zone and curb ramps. See Part 200, Section 222 and Part 500, Section 506.9 for discussion of intersection radii.
2. Provide a clear and straight path through raised islands, pointed straight at the crosswalks.
3. Keep intersections tight and square to limit long crosswalk distances and skewed crosswalks;
4. Place crosswalks in areas where they are expected; in line with receiving curb ramps and approaching sidewalk in the Pedestrian Zone;
5. Keep crosswalks parallel with the adjacent Travelway;
6. Provide accessible and audible pedestrian signals;

DRAFT

7. **Install detectable warning surfaces at curb ramps to identify the transition from the sidewalk to the street.**

~~810.10.2~~810.13.2 Vertical Alignment

Sidewalks are to be designed with the same profile slope of the roadway. A pedestrian with a disability might find that the roadway surface in the transition realm is the preferential path of travel when a sidewalk is visibly disjointed with multiple profile changes and is steeper than the roadway profile or has multiple sloped ramps when crossing driveways. Dipping the entire sidewalk or pedestrian access route along the Pedestrian Zone in a series to maintain the cross-slope on curbside sidewalks is not preferred or desirable as this creates a rollercoaster experience for the pedestrian.

Stairs are not permitted along the primary access route on sidewalks or walkways as this is a vertical change exceeding ½ inch. **Vertical changes exceeding ½ inch must be ramped with a sloped surface along the pedestrian access route.** Stairs can be utilized as an additional route for pedestrians when the primary access route is constructed and is fully accessible. Ramps are a required and critical design element to allow pedestrians to traverse to each point of service when there are vertical changes along the pedestrian access route. See discussion in Section 815 for curb ramps and Section 820 for building ramps design.

5. Elevation changes to elevate or depress a walkway must meet the ADA slope requirements. **When slopes are necessary to change elevation for driveways or to raise/lower the Pedestrian Zone, the slope surface is to be designed at 7.5 percent or less to allow for construction variances (finished constructed slope shall not exceed 8.3 percent).** See additional discussion on driveway design in Section 810.13. Grade breaks are required to be perpendicular to the path of travel in the Pedestrian Zone when there is a change in the profile (running slope). This corresponds to **Criteria T** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Checklist (Form 734-5184).

Sidewalks whose running slopes are both steeper than 5 percent and do not match the grade of the adjacent roadway require an exception. Refer to Section 1005.4 for information about ADA exceptions. *When the walkway profile is steeper than 5 percent, consider adding level resting opportunities in the available right of way every 200 feet in the Pedestrian Realm (See RD 721).* This additional level resting area can also serve as the passing opportunity for pedestrians using a mobility device which is a flat and stable surface while waiting rather than utilizing a sloped surface which often requires hand braking. The Buffer Zone and Frontage Zone are areas of opportunity to provide additional pedestrian amenities including the level resting area and benches.

Connections to site arrival points such as a building entrance/exit on the sidewalk, are required to meet the pedestrian access route surface requirements. **Building ramp profile elevation**

changes are designed with less than or equal to 7.5 percent surface slopes (finished constructed slope shall not exceed 8.3 percent). For building ramps, when a change in elevation exceed 30 inches (2.5 feet), a resting area (level landing) is required. For building ramps, a resting area (level landing) is required with any change in direction on the horizontal alignment. Changes in horizontal alignment are typically very prominent and are designed at angles in increments of 90 degrees to conserve space along the pedestrian access route for building ramps. Pedestrian handrails are required on building ramps in most circumstances, see additional discussion about pedestrian railings in the pedestrian rail section. See Section 820 on building ramps.

~~810.10.3~~810.13.3 Cross Slope

Cross slope of a walkway is the grade of a surface perpendicular to the running slope or traversed surface in the direction of pedestrian travel. T**he cross slope of a pedestrian access route may not exceed 2.0 percent at finished construction.** *Cross slopes are designed at a slope ranging from 0.5 percent to 1.5 percent to allow for normal finish surface variability during construction. Standard hydraulic practice typically requires 0.5 percent to properly convey storm water on a surface.*

When a roadway has already been established in the built urban environment, roadway cross section reconfigurations may be altered to provide improved pedestrian experiences in the Pedestrian Realm. Particularly in the Traditional Downtown and Central Business Districts which are very constrained, the pedestrian access route and pedestrian zones are influenced by the existing elevation of building entrances. *A level area should be provided at the building entrance to meet the pedestrian access route site requirements for ADA when working on an alteration.* Cross slopes in the Frontage Zone or Buffer (furniture) Zones may need to exceed the desired 1.5 percent design cross slope to meet the building entrance requirements.

Elevation changes in the cross section are easiest to handle in the buffer zone where signs and trees are most likely to be placed. *When choosing to alter the cross slope in the sidewalk review clear zone requirements and best practices in Part 400.* Cross slope changes in the Frontage Zone have added complexity due to the proximity to building foundations and basements. A common example where the cross slope of the sidewalk in the Pedestrian Realm has a steeper cross slope is in the driveway apron. Driveway apron slopes are designed for vehicular access to the property bridging the curb elevation change to the Pedestrian Zone, and the cross slope is greater than 1.5 percent. The driveway apron is useable for pedestrians to walk on if desired as part of the pedestrian circulation area, but it is outside the pedestrian access route and Pedestrian Zone. See Standard Drawings RD700 series for detailed driveway construction drawings.

Crosswalks reside in the traveled way, in the Travelway Realm and are extensions of the pedestrian access route. **Intersections controlled by stop signs or yield sign shall have a 2.0 percent maximum cross slope within the crosswalk.** The cross slope in crosswalks is permitted to equal the grade of the highway at midblock crosswalks. **When the crosswalk**

traffic operations is signalized or uncontrolled by a traffic control device, the maximum cross slope is 5.0 percent.

~~810.10.4~~810.13.4 Clear Width

The clear width of a walkway is the narrowest width found within the walkway that is fully accessible for pedestrians. Surfaces with cross slopes exceeding 2.0 percent, vertical obstructions or vertical discontinuities are not fully accessible and are not included in the pedestrian access route. The pedestrian accessible route and temporary pedestrian accessible routes are both defined terms in the Oregon Standard Specifications, which may vary slightly from the definition and use within the Highway Design Manual. Clear width is measured anywhere within the pedestrian circulation areas, along pedestrian accessible routes and the Pedestrian Zone. Clear width is also required for temporary pedestrian access routes and temporary curb ramps. The minimum clear width for acceptance varies based on the walkway configuration and Pedestrian Zone requirements.

Clear widths are reduced by objects that are less than 7 feet above the walking surface along the pedestrian accessible route. Objects such as pushbutton pedestals, signals, signs, utility poles, fire hydrants, etc. are frequently in the Buffer Zone and Frontage Zone. There may be a mailbox in the path or guywires above the sidewalk. These could be the controlling feature for the clear width measurement in addition to the cross slope. Guardrail is another common obstruction restricting the clear width of the pedestrian access route and Pedestrian Zone where the bridge connection to the bridge rail is installed. Review RD400s and RD500s for the width of the thrie beam and concrete barrier.

Refer to the RD100's and RD 700's for additional details on clear width when there are objects in the sidewalk. Mailboxes and the supports are placed in the Buffer Zone of the sidewalk and must meet United States Postal Services reach height and distance from the pavement surface. *The back sides of the mailbox receptacle is a protruding object in the walkway in many cases; best practice is to install in softscape buffer strip to address this ADA requirement.*

~~810.10.5~~810.13.5 Pedestrian Rail

Pedestrian rail is a safety device for pedestrians and bicyclists on walkways. Pedestrian rail may be required at locations other than bridges, including building ramps and at back-of-walk locations. Typical pedestrian rail consists of handrail and pedestrian fencing. Other features can also be installed which provide an equivalent function of pedestrian railing. Some types of barriers including bridge rails and concrete barrier on a walkway can be integrated in the structure providing pedestrian protection and separation from another travel mode. Chain link fencing (see RD800's) may also serve the same function of pedestrian rail in some locations. Remove the top rail where fencing can be struck by errant vehicles in the clear zone.

DRAFT

Handrail is used for navigating elevation changes in the pedestrian access route on a building ramp. ADA requires that building ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches include handrail. Handrail details provided in RD770 & RD771 is sufficient for these conditions meeting accessibility requirements. Handrails are not required on pedestrian circulation paths; however, where installed they must comply with the ADA requirements. Handrails can be a mitigation tool in steep terrain on walkways or curb ramps. Handrail in RD770 has not been crash tested for vehicle departures from the travel way and should be consider a fixed object when installed.

Pedestrian rail must be at least 42 inches and used for areas with significant elevation drops. Details are provided in RD 780's for aluminum pedestrian fencing which has been crash tested under MASH criteria (see discussion in Section 401 on roadside clear zones.). The need for a pedestrian rail at the back of the sidewalk depends on the combination of several factors, however a singular condition might warrant pedestrian rail. Consider any OSHA requirements for areas that maintenance employees may need to occupy to perform work. Consider the combined effects of the following when determining the need for pedestrian rail, but it is not limited to these conditions. Mitigating for one factor may remove the need for a rail.

1. **Height:** A vertical drop of 2.5 feet or more would normally require a pedestrian rail.
2. **Steepness of slope:** A slope steeper than 1:2 (V:H) would normally require a pedestrian rail particularly for very tall embankments.
3. **Material of slope:** Riprap or other hard and sharp materials stabilizing slopes may trigger a need for pedestrian rail.
4. **Shy distance:** A shy distance of 2 feet or greater at the same plane as the walkway may be sufficient to mitigate the need for a pedestrian rail.
5. **Object at bottom of slope:** Moving traffic, deep or fast-running water would normally require a pedestrian rail.
6. **Users:** A preponderance of elderly, disabled, or very young pedestrians would benefit from a pedestrian rail if there is a higher likelihood they would lose their balance if they wandered off the sidewalk.

For example, a walkway on a 10-foot-high fill, with a 1:1 side slope made up of riprap, at the edge of a deep river, pedestrian railing should be installed. However at a location with 10-foot high fill, with a grassy side-slope, at the edge of a field, could be mitigated by ensuring there is at least a 2-foot additional width of material constructed behind the walkway to create a shy distance beyond the Pedestrian Zone (see Figure 800-~~26~~34).

DRAFT

Figure 800-34: Pedestrian Rail at Back of Walkway

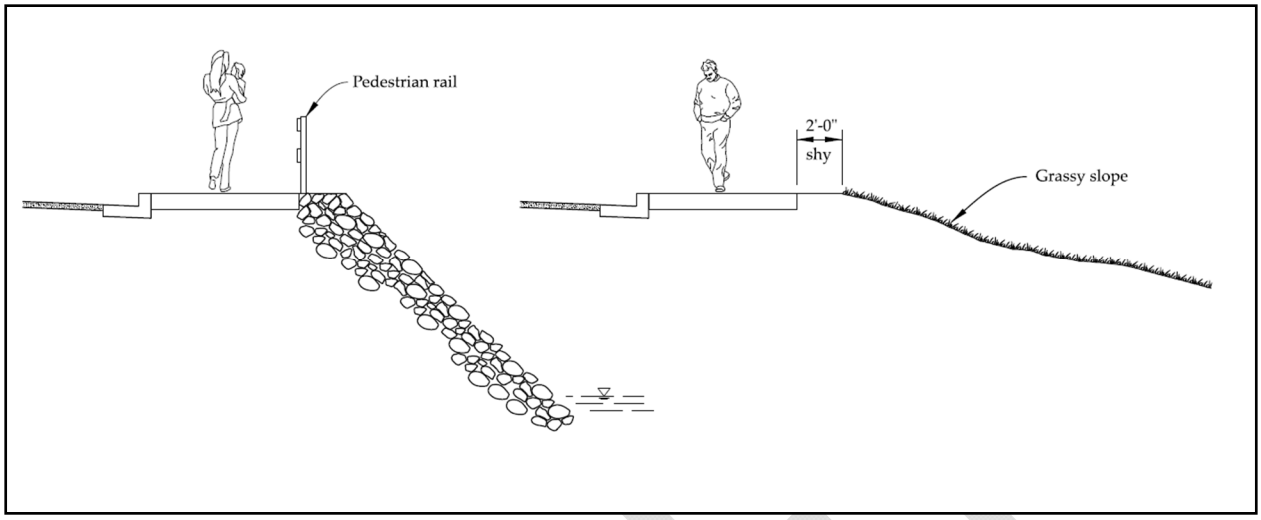
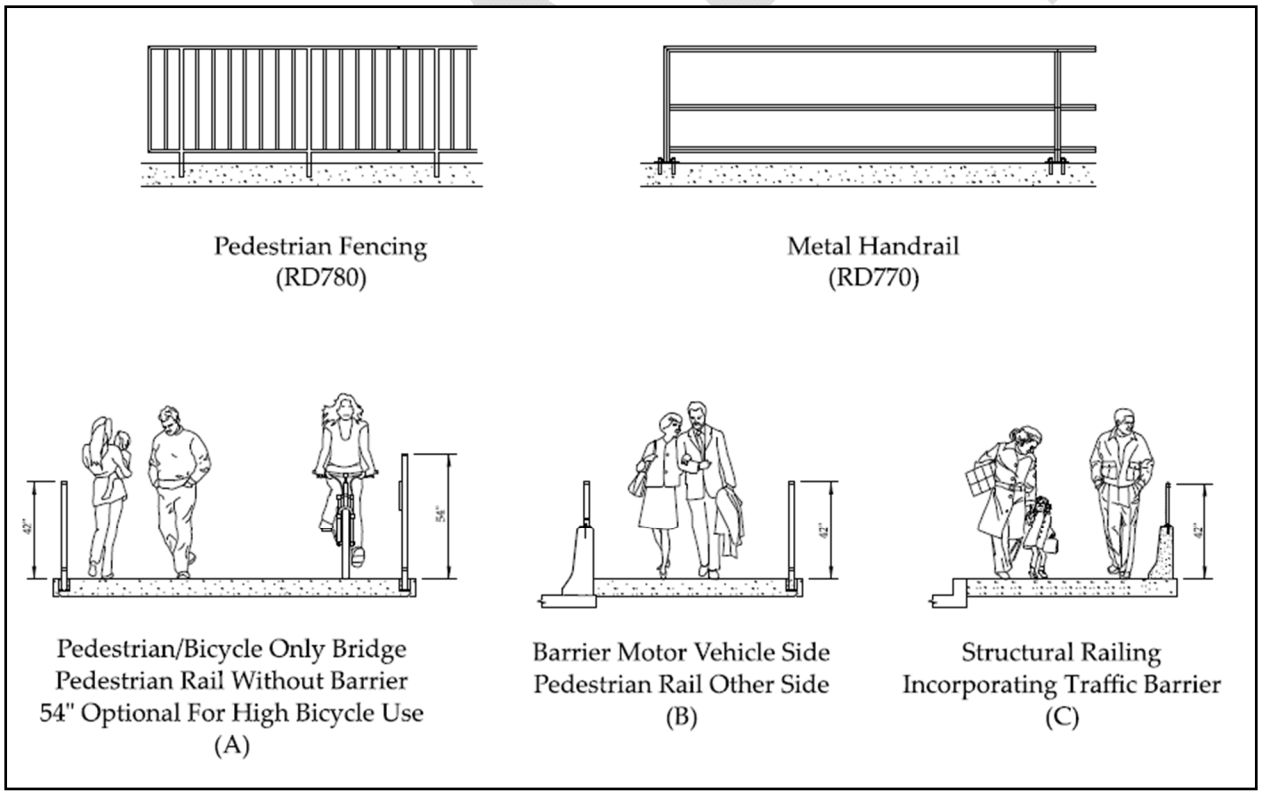


Figure 800-35: Pedestrian Rail at Bridges and Vertical Drops



Provide rail with a height between 48 and 54 inches when the walkway is a shared use path and high volumes of bicyclist traffic is expected. A 12-inch-wide concrete barrier is recommended from 30 inches to 42 inches. When a concrete barrier is installed, Case C, in Figure 800-35: Pedestrian Rail at Bridges and Vertical Drops~~Figure 800-35: Pedestrian Rail at~~

~~Bridges and Vertical Drops~~, the Pedestrian Zone width is measured from the outside edge of the barrier, as the space occupied by the barrier is not useable by pedestrians. Ensure the Pedestrian Zone and pedestrian access route clear width requirements are met. See discussion in the previous subsection.

~~810.10.6~~810.13.6 Driveways

Driveways provide vehicular access across the Pedestrian Realm to private property. The geometrics of driveway are illustrated in the RD700s series. Driveway design is based on studies including National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 659. A pedestrian access route must be provided when the walkway crosses/overlaps the driveway. Refer to Section 505 for additional driveway design considerations and styles.

Design at least a 50-inch pedestrian access route across a driveway approach along the walkway. **Finished construction must yield a 48 inch fully accessible pedestrian access route through a sidewalk driveway.** The best practice is to plan sidewalks with Buffer Zones with a width that allows the Pedestrian Zone to be a straight continuous alignment along the sidewalk across the driveway and equal to the desired Pedestrian Zone width selected for the Urban Context. This allows the pedestrian access route to be at the same elevation as the general walk and easily achieve the ADA requirements minimizing the roller coaster effect along the sidewalk. See RD 700s for driveway styles Option A, Option B, Option D, and Option E for design requirements on ODOT facilities as these are the preferred driveway configurations for the overall pedestrian experience and accessibility.

Consider reconfiguration of any radial style driveways that do not conform to the recommended dustpan style as outlined in Part 505, Table 500-2 in coordination with the access management strategy for the project. This improves the pedestrian access route, clarifies expectations of pedestrian priority over vehicular right of way, and removes curb ramps that may not be necessary from the ODOT ADA Ramp inventory. Fully lowered parallel driveways, Option G, are not the preferred choice for pedestrian accessibility as there are often insufficient cues for many low vision or blind travelers to detect the boundaries of the sidewalk from the Travelway Realm. Mobility device users and pedestrians experience a roller coaster effect when traversing a series of fully lowered driveways due to the multiple vertical alignment changes. **Notify the Roadway Statewide Asset Specialist when a curb ramp is removed from the ODOT ADA Ramp inventory due to driveway reconfiguration.**

A pedestrian access route must be provided in street and driveway approach connections with improved surfacing (See RD715). The pedestrian crosses the roadbed in this situation along the street grade (See RD 715) and accommodates future sidewalk improvements. In many circumstances the existing approach is not built in compliance with accessibility standards. **Provide a fully accessible pedestrian access route when the street or driveway approach is reconstructed.** The pedestrian access route must reside on public right of way or a permanent

DRAFT

easement to ensure a private property owner does not affect the accessibility improvements in the future.

~~810.10.7~~810.13.7 Hydraulics

Walkways should be free from debris and divert storm water captured from the impervious area to the storm water treatment facility. **ADA requires that pedestrian walkways prevent accumulation of water.** This means they should be free from debris and standing water. Typically, walkways are sloped toward the Curb Zone and travel way where storm sewers collect both the storm water from the travel way and walkway. Cross slope is designed at 1.5 percent in most circumstances. When the profile grade (running slope) of the walkway is steeper than the cross slope, the flow path of water changes directions and in some cases no cross slope is required at all. The storm water will runoff to the travel way adequately. *Best practice is to divert the storm water off the walkway as soon as practical with a cross slope of 1.0 percent to 1.5 percent depending on the surface material*.

Walkways may also have a reversed cross slope away from the Curb Zone in some configurations. Consider reversed cross slope walkway design on roundabouts where storm water can be collected in an open ditch rather than a closed storm sewer system. This reduces the size of the storm sewer system lines under the roadbed. Urban roundabouts should consider utilizing a steeper cross slope in the buffer zone to facilitate drainage conveyance particularly when constructed with a hard impervious surface. Refer to Section 509 for additional roundabout design considerations.

Inlets are not placed in the pedestrian access route in any new construction of a walkway. When an inlet must remain in the pedestrian access route on an existing walkway, the inlet grate shall not exceed the horizontal opening dimension of ½ inch which allows a ½ sphere to pass through in the direction of pedestrian travel. When the direction of pedestrian travel is not well defined, the ½ inch opening shall not be exceeded in any direction. Contact the Senior Standards Engineer and Senior ADA Standards Engineer when an accessible inlet grate is required for the project.

Inlets are generally installed upstream of a curb ramp for a crosswalk when there is a Curb Zone. Water conveyance must be addressed with another approved treatment if an inlet is not provided. **Addressing drainage and ponding is an ADA requirement.** Other measures to capture storm water can be provided when the walkway does not have a curb such as constructing a ditch channel in the buffer zone. Trench drains with an accessible grate can reduce ponding at the curb ramp opening in very flat locations to divert storm water; advantages of trench drains is that a subsurface trench can be designed with independent flow line slopes to connect to the trunk line. Refer to the Hydraulics Manual for determining the design storm, depth of water, and width of the spread at curb ramps and driveways. Ensure the design storm does not overtop the sidewalk or driveway onto private property per Oregon

DRAFT

Drainage Law. See Part 1200, Section 1211 Hydraulics and the Hydraulics Design Manual for additional information.

~~810.10.8~~810.13.8 Pedestrian and Wayfinding Signs

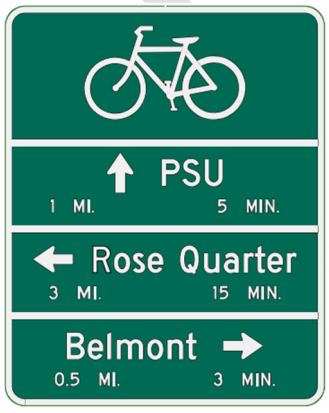
Walkways generally require little signing. **When a crosswalk is closed, it must be signed per the ORS.** Most regulatory and warning signs are directed at motor vehicle traffic. See sections on street crossings and intersections and the Sign Design Manual for signs required in those situations.

Signs intended primarily for motorists may not serve pedestrians well. For example, directional signs are typically large, mounted high, and indicate destinations relatively far away for vehicles. On one-way streets, street name signs are often mounted only in the direction facing motor vehicle traffic, while pedestrians' approach signing from all directions.

Consider adding lower-level signage facing both directions of traffic on larger and higher street signs used to inform driving vehicles. This helps pedestrians walking against the direction of traffic, so they can see the names of cross streets at the intersection. On two-way streets, signs mounted high on signal pole mast arms over the roadway should also be supplemented with conventional, smaller signs on the street corners.

Most walking trips are short, and the pedestrian's line of sight is different than a motor vehicle. Developing pedestrian scale wayfinding signs that lead to destinations within walking distance can improve the walkability of an area. Wayfinding signs can assist pedestrians new to the area, or residents who may not realize that the best route on foot is shorter or different than what they are used to driving. Examples of key destinations to include are libraries, schools, museums, recreation centers, shopping districts, city services, etc.

Figure 800-36: Sign Guidance for Wayfinding, ODOT Sign OBD1-3c



The objective of any wayfinding sign network is to efficiently guide users to their destinations, and to minimize back tracking. Signs should be unobtrusive, cohesive, visible, legible, intuitive, and aesthetic. Signs for the use of bicyclists and pedestrians may use distance in miles and/or

bicycle travel times. Pedestrian signing is required to be accessible by providing contrast, non-glare finishes, appropriate character size and fonts, and viewing height. Refer to the Sign Design Manual for additional information on accessible pedestrian signs.

810.13.9 Historic Preservation Considerations

Most developed areas include historically significant buildings, structures, parks, or other features in the built environment. Depending on the locale, historic features that could be encountered in the walkway include, but are not limited to, street names and construction dates stamped in sidewalks or curbs, hardware to secure animals at curbs (horse rings) or protect curb edges (felloe guards), memorial structures, commercial signs, elevated sidewalk structures (chair walls), basement stairwells, and basement windows in sidewalks (vault lights).

Developed areas may also include historic districts or other significant properties near the walkway. Historic areas that could be encountered around the walkway include, but are not limited to, commercial or residential neighborhoods, industrial parks or school campuses, and historic sections of highways, railroads, or trails. Historic districts are found in many communities wherever there is a significant concentration or continuity of intact historic features.

Several examples of historic resources are included in the following photos.

Figure 800-37: Historic horse ring in curb Astoria, Oregon



DRAFT

Figure 800-38: Street Name Stamp and Metal Curb Guard (Felloe Guard, Astoria, Oregon)



DRAFT

Figure 800-39: Stamped curb Sheridan, Oregon



Figure 800-40: Vault lights and Stone Foundation Under a Sidewalk (Pendleton, Oregon)



Figure 800-41: Elevated Walkway (Chairwall) Support (Astoria, Oregon)



Figure 800-42: Bridge walkway and a Railing (Vernonia, Oregon)



Figure 800-43: Corner Entrance and Steps (North Power, Oregon)



Figure 800-44: Corner Entrance and Steps (Gaston, Oregon)



Figure 800-45: Memorial (Amity, Oregon)



Federal and State laws require ODOT to identify historic features in the project area, look for opportunities to avoid and minimize impacts, and consult with the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO) and other interested parties such as local governments and historical societies. ODOT must consider direct impacts (such as demolition) and indirect impacts (such as visual changes). This consideration is necessary to fulfill Agency responsibilities under Section 106 of the 1966 National Historic Preservation Act (36 Code of Federal Regulations Part 800), Section 4f of the 1966 Department of Transportation Act, the 1970 National Environmental Policy Act, and Oregon Revised Statute 358.653 (Protection of Publicly Owned Historic Properties).

DRAFT

Figure 800-46: Historic Curb Ramps and Walks in Hood River, Oregon (ca 1920) [6]



Designers must evaluate solutions that potentially avoid, minimize, or mitigate direct impacts to historic features and indirect impacts to resources such as historic districts. There are common ways to protect historic features and meet accessibility requirements when ODOT alters a walkway or curb ramp. For example, direct impact solutions often include preserving and protecting a feature in place (such as a monument or retaining wall), salvaging and reinstalling the item (such as a horse ring), or replicating the item (such as a stamped street name). Solutions for indirect impacts often consider the colors and materials that are already present in each historic area. Designers commonly use non-standard detectable warnings (such as brick red or cast iron) and soft landscape materials (such as bark or rock mulch). Design solutions for these types of features will often require consultation with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section for concurrence on design details and specifications to ensure accessibility requirements are met in the walkway and surfaces.

[6] https://www.hoodriverhistorymuseum.org/room-for-one-more/

Figure 800-47: Detectable Warning Colors and Materials



See Figure 800-47 for examples of detectable warning colors and materials. Figure 800-47 shows brick red in the cities of Hood River and Athena, and natural patina cast iron in Prairie City and Joseph (source: ODOT 2025, 2024).

DRAFT

Figure 800-48: Examples of softscaping materials in buffer zone.



Figure 800-49: Example of grouted durable rock hardscaping.



Projects must consider historic preservation and still achieve accessibility design requirements to the maximum extent feasible. **Design exceptions are required when safety yellow**

detectable warnings are not installed on or along the state highway. Design exceptions may be required to document design solutions that protect historic resources; see Part 1000, for more information on design exceptions. Refer to Section 821 for tactile walking surface indicator design requirements. Local agencies often have established design standards for historic areas in their jurisdiction, which designers should consider and cite in design exceptions.

810.13.10 Emergency Egress Routes

Egress is how a person leaves an area, building, or tunnel. In case of emergency, the means of egress is an unobstructed pathway to leave buildings and structures. Exits include doors to the outside or exit stairways to get a person to the exterior of the building or structure. The pathway may include building ramps, exit stairs on the outside of a structure, walkways, and platform lifts with standby power. Accessible means of egress is a continuous and accessible route to the public way. **The pathway for accessible means of egress must be continuous and connect to a public way such as a street or alley**. Egress routes must be maintained. Stairways will require areas of refuge and assistance as it does not provide an independent and accessible exit.

Accessible means of egress includes the following components:

1. Accessible routes
2. Interior exit stairways, exit access stairways, and exterior exit stairways
3. Elevators and platform lifts
4. Horizontal exits (doors, doorways)
5. Building Ramps
6. Areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue

Design for self-evacuation with an accessible means of egress as much as possible; however, sometimes evacuation may need to be completed with assistance from emergency personnel. Planning is required to coordinate with emergency personnel for the area's evacuation plans, associated drills and updates per the International Fire Code. A plan will identify exits, routes, and areas of refuge to evacuate or relocate all people or occupants.

Do not degrade or sever existing site walkways, accessible routes, and circulation areas that connect to the public way. At least one accessible means of egress is required from a public building, and requirements are specified in the Oregon Building Code. Refer to the National Fire Life and Safety Standards and International Building Code for more details on emergency egress design requirements for various structure types and tunnels. The 2010 ADA standards reference both the International Building Code and National Fire Protection Association standards for accessible means of egress design requirements. See Section 820 for additional discussion on building ramps and exit geometric requirements.

DRAFT

Figure 800-50: Example of Severed Sidewalk Connection to Public Way



Figure 800-51: Example of Severed Sidewalk Connection to Public Way



Pedestrian Amenities

Many people use the public walkways for short destinations, exercise, and as alternative forms of transportation. For people with disabilities, the public walkway may be their only option that they can use independently. Pedestrians are exposed to the weather and use their own energy to move, and several low-cost improvements can be made to provide a better environment. In all cases these features must be located outside of the Pedestrian Zone, in either the Buffer Zone or the Frontage Zones. **Temporary objects must not block the pedestrian access route, either privately owned or publicly owned.** Items might include trash cans, advertising sandwich boards (A-frame), feather flag signs, rental bikes, or parked vehicles.

~~810.10.9~~810.13.11 Benches

People walking want to sit down and rest occasionally. In an urban setting, wide sidewalks, Buffer Zones, Frontage Zones, and curb extensions provide opportunities for placing benches out of the walking zone. ~~*Provide space for companion seating and accessible clear space for those with mobility devices.* **Provide a pedestrian access route to the front of the bench seating area.**~~ Benches with back rests and arm rests provide ~~a~~ stable support for those with mobility issues to lower/raise themselves to/from the bench seat, or to bear weight on when standing and resting. Where the bench seating serves a transit stop see Part 704 for additional accessibility requirements.

Provide area for companion seating and accessible clear space for those with mobility devices at benches. This applies to at least 50 percent, but no less than one, of benches at each group of benches. Provide a clear space of 2.5 feet by 4.0 feet (30 inches x 48 inches). The clear space is located next to either end of the bench, and if the bench has no end (such as a circular bench) the clear space is either integral to the bench or no more than 18 inches from the front of the bench. *Provide larger clear areas where it is feasible to account for construction margins/errors. Where feasible, the clear area should be level with a cross slope of 1.5% x 1.5% in both directions.* **Provide a pedestrian access route to the front of the bench seating area.**

Figure 800-52: Bench in Buffer Zone



~~810.10.10~~810.13.12 Awnings

Where buildings are close to the sidewalk, awnings protect pedestrians from the weather and can be a visual enhancement to a shopping district. ~~A~~ **Provide a vertical clear height of at least 80 inches** ~~**must be provided for**~~**in the Pedestrian Realm and in pedestrian circulation areas**

where awnings are installed. Building code requirements may be more stringent. Contact the local agency and building department for additional requirements.

Figure 800-53: Awning Shades Sidewalk Cafe



~~810.10.11~~810.13.13 Shelters

At ~~bus~~transit stops, transfer stations and other locations where pedestrians must wait, a shelter makes the wait more comfortable. People are more likely to ride a bus if they don't have to wait in the rain and have a place to rest. Providing shade at transit stops ~~improve~~improves the user experience during the wait for a transit connection. ~~**Provide a**~~ Locate transit shelters outside the pedestrian ~~**access route to the front of the bench seating area and a clear space**~~zone. See Section 704.3 for ~~**mobility devices to use the shelter. Companion seating, a clear space, and turning space for a mobility device is required when installing shelters with seating for the public. Trash cans and other advertisements permanently secured to the shelter need to be accessible and shall not infringe on the clear space, turning space and pedestrian access route.**~~geometric requirements of transit shelters. See Section 805.4 and Part 700 for additional considerations for boarding and alighting areas for transit services.

DRAFT

Figure 800-54: Bus Shelter in Buffer Zone



~~810.10.12~~810.13.14 Landscaping

Landscaping can greatly enhance the aesthetic experience for pedestrians, making the walk less stressful or tiring. Landscaping provides information to the vision impaired community where the intended walking route is. The contrast, textures, and sounds assist people with wayfinding along the walkway. The effective use of a planting strip can provide a buffer between travel lanes and sidewalks, as well as mask features such as sound walls. Choosing appropriate plants and ground preparation are important; seek guidance from ODOT's landscape architects. Refer to Section 406 for additional guidance on roadside tree placement. The following guidelines should be considered:

1. Plants should be adapted to the local climate and fit the context. Plantings should survive without protection or intensive irrigation, and should require minimal maintenance, to reduce long-term costs.
2. Plants must have growth patterns that do not obscure pedestrians from motor vehicles, especially at crossing locations, nor must they obscure signs.
3. Plants should not have roots that could buckle and break walkways (root barriers can prevent buckling); the soil should be loosened and treated with mulch deep enough so plants can spread their roots downward, rather than sideways into the walk area.
4. Plants should not have limbs that protrude into the Pedestrian Zone or pedestrian access route. **Vertical clearance under limbs must be maintained in the walkway to be fully accessible and prevent the vegetation from becoming a protruding object**.
5. Planting strips should be wide enough to accommodate plants grown to mature size.

DRAFT

~~810.10.13~~810.13.15 Drinking Water Fountains & Public Restrooms

Drinking water fountains and public restrooms make it easier for pedestrians to be outdoors for a long time and to walk long distances without worrying about where to find a business that will accommodate their needs. ~~Drinking~~When drinking **water foundations** are provided, they **need to** ~~the~~ **meet the ADA requirements for installation, operating heights and parts. A pedestrian access route must be provided to navigate to the fountain with a** ~~3~~2.5 **feet** by 4.0 feet (30 inches **x** ~~4 feet~~48 inches) **clear space to approach, activate, and use the water fountain.** ~~The~~*Provide larger clear space* ~~does not have~~*where it is feasible to account for construction margins/errors. Where feasible, the clear space should be level* ~~when located~~*with a cross slope of 1.5% x 1.5% in* ~~the public right of way sidewalk adjacent a roadway~~*both directions*. **The clear space must be free and clear of objects and free from any lips or vertical discontinuities.** A turning space may also be needed depending on the water fountain type and installation~~. *Best practice is to make the clear space level if feasible*~~ location.

~~810.10.14~~810.13.16 Parklet and Outdoor Dining

Outdoor dining is being used more in urban areas for a variety of reasons. ***See ODOT's maintenance and operation policy (MG 14-04) for the permitting process and considerations on state right of way*. Pedestrian access routes must be provided and maintained with outdoor dining whether it's seasonal or permanent.**

~~810.10.15~~810.13.17 Pedestrian Stairways

Stairways are not permitted in the Pedestrian Zone or along the primary pedestrian access route but may be provided as an alternative route to building entrances or other destinations. The requirements for the design of stairways is based on ADA requirements and the Oregon Building Codes. See RD100's for details. **Handrail shall meet the ADA gripping requirements and installation heights. Contrasting strips on the edge of the step provide information to pedestrians of the elevation change, particularly those with vision impairments or that have sight loss in one eye.** ~~"When both eyes see clearly and the brain processes a single image effectively, it is called stereopsis.~~ People who rely on vision primarily in one eye (~~called~~ monocular vision) may struggle with depth perception. The extension of the handrail provides a surface to bear weight when negotiating the first and last steps of the stairway~~ per the ADA~~.

Section 815 Curb Ramps

Curb ramps allow pedestrians with varying abilities to enter and exit the sidewalk or other similar pedestrian facilities and walkways. Curb ramps are built for use by pedestrians of all ages. They assist those experiencing permanent as well as temporary disabilities to access the sidewalk. Curb ramps systems are designed for pedestrians with diverse and varying abilities. A curb ramp is a system that typically provides a transition between the sidewalk and the street. It cuts through or is built up to the curb. Review the ODOT Curb Ramp Process in Section 802 and included in the Highway Design Manual, Appendix G, for additional discussion on how curb ramps are incorporated in the design development and construction contract process. Review the general intersection design principles in Section 506 when designing curb ramps.

There are multiple components that are constructed to build a curb ramp system. Curb ramp components include the curbing and gutter pan at the entrance/exit to the travel way, or other similar facilities in the Curb Zone. Components of the curb ramp system include areas that cross the Buffer Zone and tie into the Pedestrian Zone where pedestrians walk. Curb ramp design is based on the unique site constraints and features at each corner. No matter what the physical constraints are at a site, there are geometric requirements that curb ramps must meet.

The underlying design principles are the same for curb ramps and building ramps as they provide access to pedestrians with varying abilities. The ADA regulations however treat them differently resulting in some variations in design requirements. Under the ADA, private and public facilities must provide accessible routes to services from each site arrival and destination points. Points of service include but are not limited to parking lots, on street parking, transit stations, ~~bus~~transit stops, building entrances, kiosks, signal push buttons, the sidewalk, and street crossings where accessible routes are required. These points of service may overlap jurisdictions and cross private property.

Both curb ramps and building ramps are a required and critical design element to allow pedestrians to traverse to each point of service when there are vertical changes along the pedestrian access route. **Vertical changes exceeding 1/2 inch must be ramped with a sloped surface along the pedestrian access route.** Stairs may be utilized as an additional route for pedestrians when the primary access route is constructed and is fully accessible. See Section 810 on walkway design.

DRAFT

Figure 800-55: Curb Ramp System with a Curb Ramp for Each Street Crossing



815.1 Curb Ramp Definitions

ADA Ramp - See Section 102.

Building ramps - A system of geometric components which serve both private and public buildings developments to allow pedestrians to access the business entry and exit points, and both interior and exterior spaces. Building ramps must connect to the Pedestrian Access Route externally and internally for pedestrian facilities such as exterior sidewalk on the business site or a hallway inside.

Curb ramp - A system of geometric components that are built up to or through a curb to access the walkway or street crossing in the public right of way or on building sites. It may also be referred to a sidewalk ramp or curb cut in portions of this manual.

Clear Width - The narrowest width found within the curb ramp system or walkway that is fully accessible for pedestrians.

Cross Slope - The grade of a surface perpendicular to the running slope or traversed surface in the direction of pedestrian travel.

Directional Curb Ramp - Curb ramp system where the ramp run(s) entering the Travelway Realm have centerline(s) parallel with the intended crosswalk.

Gutter Flow Slope - The grade at the gutter flow line at the bottom of a Ramp Run position 1. It is immediately parallel to the curb or street edge where water is conveyed to a drainage system.

Ramp Run - A sloped surface within a curb ramp system designed to bridge vertical elevation changes in the pedestrian access route.

Ramp Run Number - The number assigned to the ramp run for the curb ramps system. This is an ODOT specific convention.

Curb Running Slope - The surface slope on the top of the curb that connects to the ramp run, directional curb, gutter pan, or travel way roadway surface.

Pedestrian Ramp - An accessible sloped connection along the walkway. This occurs most often at grade with the roadway serving the crosswalk along the pedestrian access route.

Pedestrian Pad - A level area that is constructed to provide accessible access to a pedestrian feature such as a pedestrian signal push button at a rural signalized intersection, or other pedestrian features in the walkway.

Lip - A vertical discontinuity along the pedestrian access route, walkway, or pedestrian circulation areas less than 4.0 inches.

815.2 Curb Ramp Triggers and Scoping

Refer to the Engineering for Accessibility webpage for resources about curb ramp triggers in the current Directives, Bulletins, Advisories, Operational Notices and ODOT's ADA Curb Ramp Process (Appendix G). Triggering activities occur when an alteration occurs that effects the usability of a pedestrian crosswalk, sidewalk or walkway, and therefore presents the opportunity to construct an accessible curb ramp. When the concrete material (surfacing), or curb and gutter pan of the curb ramp system is disrupted, the curb ramp has been altered and requires reconstruction to the standard.

Right of way shall be planned for projects with curb ramp improvements per TSB18-03(D). The ADA requires upgrading curb ramps in alteration projects. The US DOT and US DOJ issued a memorandum of joint technical assistance to define when resurfacing projects are considered an alteration, which triggers the need to upgrade curb ramps. As a result, all 1R projects need to

DRAFT

address curb ramps, except projects that only include chip seals (see Section 110.2 for ADA requirements for paving projects). See Maintenance and Operational Notice MG 100-107 in Appendix H for direction on what is considered a maintenance pavement activity. See Maintenance and Operational Notice MG 144-03 for direction on what is considered a signal maintenance activity for accessibility features on the pedestrian signal.

Curb ramps that do not comply with the ODOT standard shall be upgraded when triggered by a project activity. Contact the ODOT Roadway Engineering Section for assistance with determining curb ramp triggers. Consult the ODOT ADA Transition Plan for other ADA project needs that should be incorporated into the project scope to meet the transition plan goals and schedule, utilizing state funds as efficiency as practical. Consult with the Active Transportation Liaison for CQCR requests that are to be addressed with the project scope.

815.3 Curb Ramp Configurations

Curb ramps and blended transitions must be wholly contained within the pedestrian street crossings or marked crosswalk served; see **Criteria Q** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. **Curb ramps shall not be blocked by legally parked cars as the curb ramp serves as the entrance and exit point for pedestrians to use both the crosswalk and sidewalk, or walkway (Criteria Q).** Typically, two curb ramps must be provided at each street corner. **In alterations where existing physical constraints prevent two curb ramps from being installed at a street corner, a single diagonal curb ramp is permitted at the corner with a design exception; see Criteria A on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist**.

One of the greatest factors when determining the safety of a pedestrian crossing is visibility. *Every effort should be made to remove or relocate objects that could obscure the view of and by pedestrians*. These include signs, traffic control boxes, tall vegetation, kiosks, etc. When possible, efforts should also be made to ensure that objects located on private property, such as neon and other illuminated signs, that could be a distraction to drivers are not located close to a crosswalk or curb ramp. Review Section 400 for clear zone and roadside tree evaluations at intersections.

Provide a curb ramp for each crosswalk on or along the state highway with vertical curbing in the Curb Zone. This includes Tee intersections on the public streets. This corresponds to the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist **Criteria A**. Typically a roadway intersection will have two curb ramps per corner that connects directly to the Pedestrian Zone of the sidewalk. *If one crosswalk is officially closed at a corner, it is recommended to design the remaining curb ramp in such a way that it guides users to the open crosswalk and provides physical and visual cues that discourage pedestrians from using the closed crosswalk. Review any design stipulations in the crosswalk approval letter from the STE or road authority.* Curb ramps that align parallel with intended crosswalk are called "directional" curb ramps. A single diagonal style perpendicular curb ramp on an intersection corner direct users into the intersection and requires a turning maneuver in the roadway to utilize the crosswalk. **Ensure Criteria M is met, which provides a 4-foot x 4-foot**

clear space free from parallel vehicular travel when using the crosswalk. Vehicular travel includes dedicated marked bicycle lanes and bus lanes in addition to travel lanes designated for passenger cars. ***Stop bars when used are to fall within the range of 4 feet to 30 feet from the edge of traveled way and should be placed 2 to 3 feet from the back throat of the curb ramp opening on the side street (See the ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual).***

Providing curb ramps that have ramp run centerlines parallel to the intended street crossing is preferred (Directional Curb Ramp). A single diagonal curb ramp design is generally interpreted to serve both street crosswalks to low vision, blind, or deaf-blind travelers since they may not have cues or information to tell them otherwise. US national guidance for public right of way permits single diagonal curb ramps under alterations for street crossings; however, the use and application of single diagonal curb ramps is not uniform throughout the United States therefore it can mislead users. Where two curb ramps are not provided for the corner, a single curb ramp configuration that accommodates both crosswalks may be necessary to retain operations of both crosswalks for the pedestrian. A curb ramp that serves each street crosswalk provides a clearer and more uniform message to all individuals.

When a crosswalk is closed, it must be signed per the ORS. See the Traffic Manual for the crosswalk closure process and requirements and refer to Section 802.5 for more discussion. When a crosswalk is officially closed, the approval letter from the STE serves as the decision document in lieu of the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception, Criteria A and a design exception is not required for the corner. For local street systems, the approving authority for a crosswalk closure follows the local jurisdiction's process and documents. Curb ramp details are required to identify the crosswalk closure number in the contract. Review the details of the approval letter for other items specified which may need incorporation into the contract documents and may require coordination with other technical disciplines (typically traffic and sign designs).

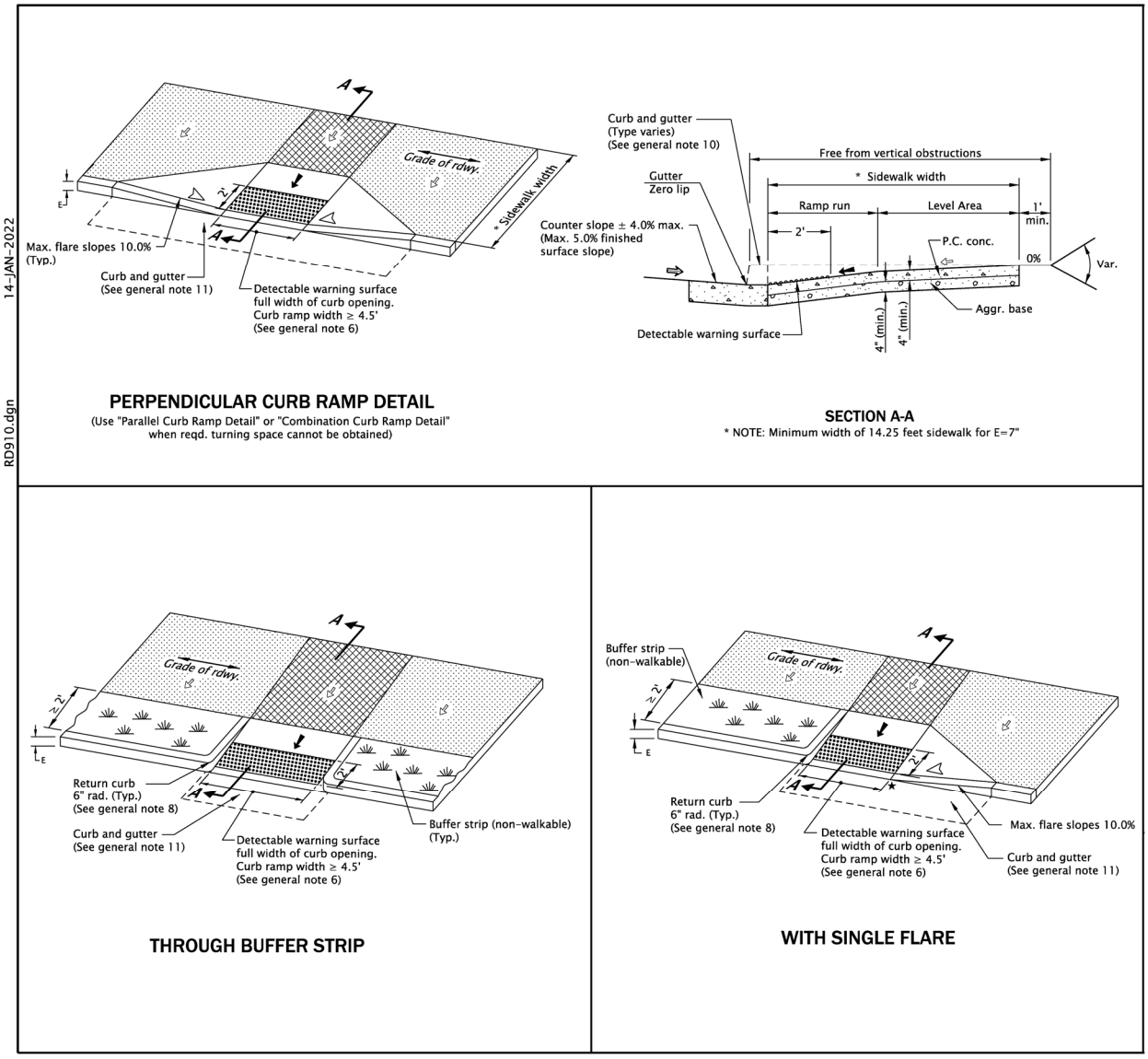
Crosswalk closures should be limited during design and are not in intended to avoid construction of a curb ramp. Curb ramps are to provide access for all pedestrians to enter and exit the sidewalk and connect to the crosswalk. Pursue a crosswalk location determination following the procedures in the Traffic Manual if the presence of a legal crosswalk is in doubt (See Section 802.5).

815.3.1 Perpendicular Curb Ramps

~~"Perpendicular curb ramps have~~PROWAG defines a perpendicular curb ramp as having a running slope that cuts through or is built up to the curb at right angles or meets the gutter grade break at right angles where the curb is curved.~~".~~ Perpendicular curb ramps typically result in the largest footprint to make up the elevation difference for the curb height. The change in elevation is stretched over one ramp run perpendicular with vehicular travel way with a level area and turn space at the top of the ramp run. Perpendicular ramp runs are where cross slope warping occurs to meet a given gutter flow slope requirement. Single ramps on a diagonal alignment at the corner requires pedestrians to turn and reorient in the travel way.

Clear space must be made available for mobility devices at the bottom of the single diagonal curb ramp and other non-directional curb ramps and is required to be free from the vehicular travel ways. (including marked bike and bus lanes). This corresponds to **Criteria M** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist.

Figure 800-56: Perpendicular Curb Ramp System

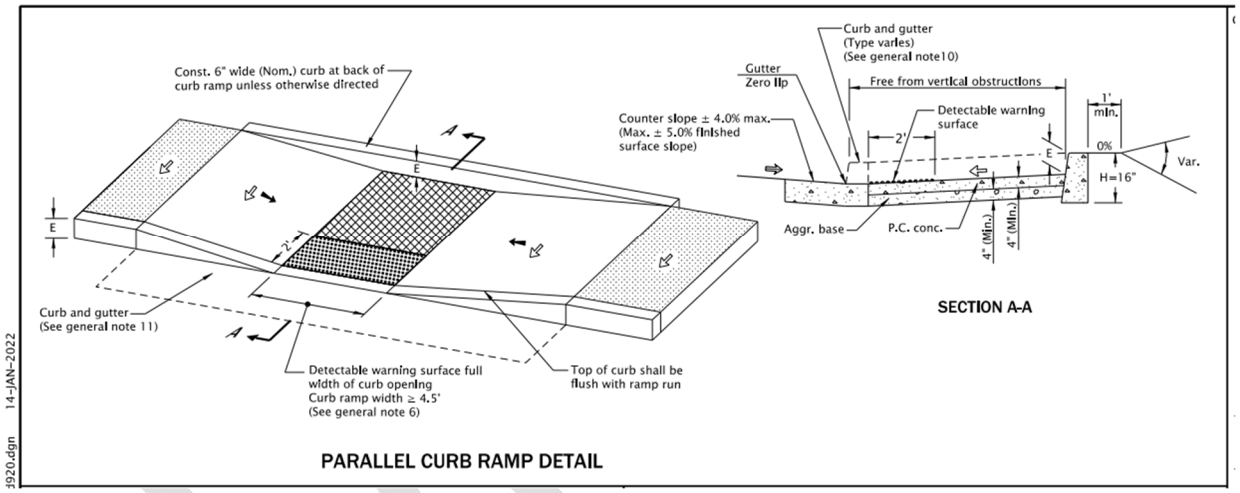


Review the RD900 series for additional layouts and construction requirements on perpendicular curb ramps systems. The Figure 800-~~33~~56 above is an example of a perpendicular curb ramp.

815.3.2 Parallel Curb Ramps

~~"Parallel~~PROWAG defines a parallel curb ~~ramps have~~ramp as having a running slope that is in-line with the direction of sidewalk travel and lower the sidewalk to a level turning space where a turn is made to enter the pedestrian street crossing~~."~~. Parallel curb ramps should be reserved for constrained public right of way in curb ramp alterations where there are building foundation conflicts, large existing retaining walls, or bridge rail constraints~~.~~ since they are prone to flooding and accumulation of sediment. The elevation difference for the curb height is stretched over one ramp run parallel with the vehicular travel way with a level area and turn space at the bottom of the ramp runs. This style of curb ramp tends to separate the curb ramp opening for each crosswalk distance significantly at an intersection. This results in poor alignment with the receiving curb ramps and orientation cues for low vision and blind travelers.

Figure 800-57: Parallel Curb Ramp System



Review the RD900 series for additional layouts and construction requirements on parallel curb ramps systems. The Figure 800-57 above is an example of a parallel curb ramp.

When determining whether or not to include curbing at the back of a sidewalk, several items need to be considered. Consider the following items, but note that the following list is not all inclusive and other factors may have an influence:

1. If the curb ramp is located adjacent to a steep slope, the curb may provide protection against a wheelchair or other wheeled device from unintentionally leaving the back of the ramp.
2. The curb may serve a drainage function to keep runoff from leaving the highway right of way and flowing onto adjacent properties particularly if no storm sewer is in place or nearby.

3. The curb may serve a drainage function to keep unwanted runoff or debris from entering at the curb ramp instead of following the intended drainage path.
4. The curb may not be warranted when the curb ramp is constructed such that it is abutting a building or retaining wall for example and might impact the foundations.
5. The curbing should be removed if installation impacts the redirecting capabilities of adjacent guardrail.

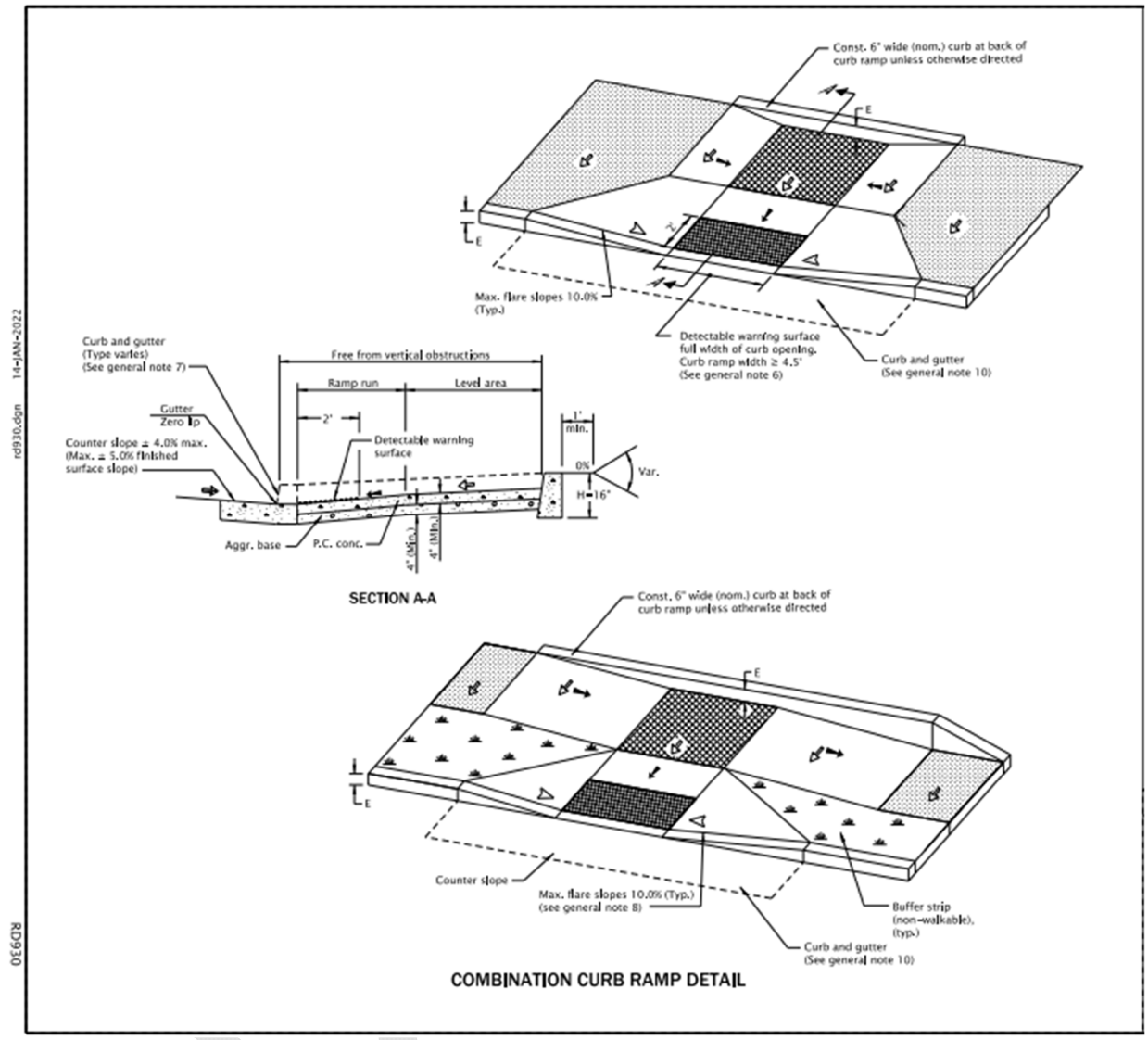
Where a parallel curb ramp style is utilized to also serve as an alternative bike route from the roadway to the sidewalk, the curb ramp opening is designed for approaching bicyclists entering the walkway. Design a wider curb ramp opening, at least 8 foot wide, to accommodate the approaching bicyclists. Parallel style curb ramps are often used in constrained locations to accommodate bike access to the sidewalk (See RD920).

815.3.3 Combination Curb Ramps

Combination curb ramps provide the most flexibility for design in meeting the ADA standards and reducing the footprint of the improvements. The elevation difference for the curb height is stretched over two separate ramp runs (one perpendicular and one parallel to the curb line) with a level area and turn space to change directions. This style of curb ramp can also facilitate larger or irregular shaped level areas to meet ADA requirements at signalized intersection with push buttons. This style of curb ramp is good for providing connections to the building entrances and adjoining walkways to private property/businesses. This style of curb ramp allows for directional curb ramps that align parallel with the intended crosswalk. Directional curb ramps are the preference for design.

DRAFT

Figure 800-58: Combination Curb Ramp System



Review the RD900 series for additional layouts and construction requirements on combination curb ramps systems. The Figure 800-58 above is an example of a combination curb ramp. When determining whether or not to include curbing at the back of a sidewalk, here are several items that need to be considered. Review discussion related to curb at the back of walk at parallel curb ramps in Section 815.3.2.

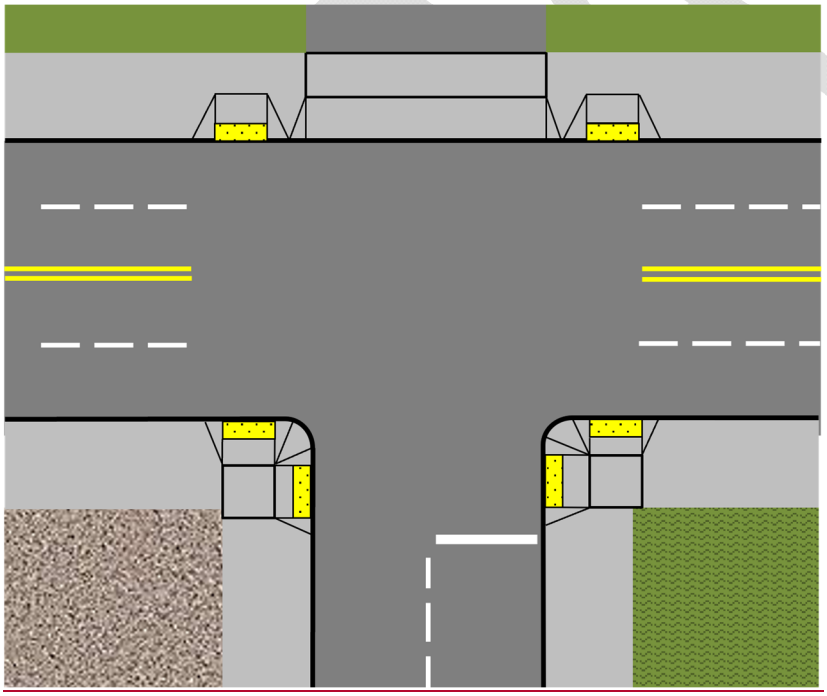
815.3.4 Curb Ramps Next to Driveways

Driveway Considerations

Crosswalks exist at all intersections of public roads including T-intersections. At some locations, driveways are within T-intersections making it a challenge to provide accessible pedestrian crosswalks. **Provide accessible curb ramps for each open crosswalk.** Driveways and curb ramps serve separate purposes. Driveways provide access for a vehicle to enter a site whereas curb ramps provide pedestrian access to a walkway. **Because they serve separate functions for separate users, they should not be combined.**

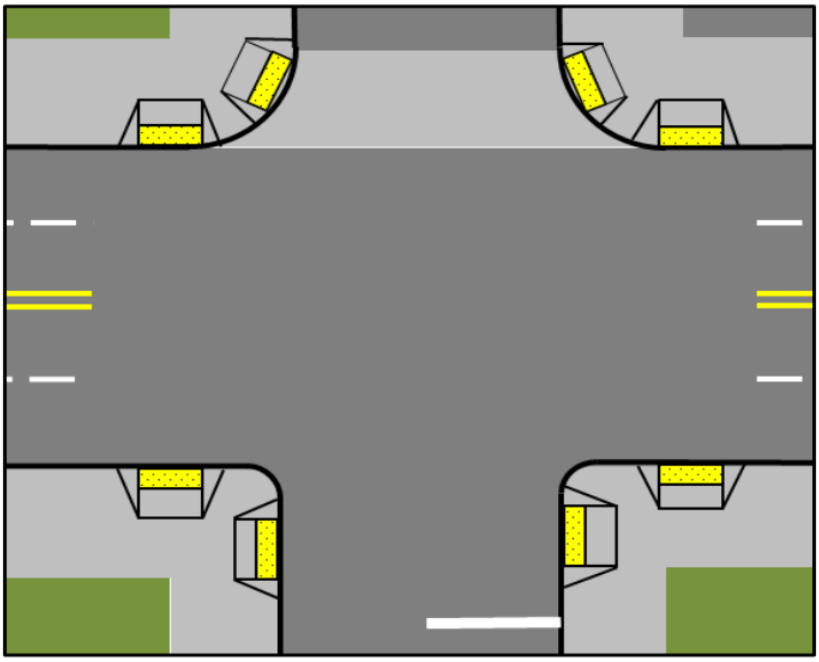
There are two main driveway designs including dustpan styles and a driveway approach. Geometric details are provided in Oregon Standard drawing RD700 series. Driveways and driveway approaches provide accessible routes through the driveway access. Where feasible, convert existing driveway approaches to dustpan driveway styles to remove additional complexity of designing and constructing curb ramps. Refer to Section 505 Driveway Design, and Table 500-2 for guidance on selecting the driveway style based on the traffic volumes for the site.

Figure 800-59: Dustpan Driveway Aligned with T-Intersection and Unmarked Crosswalks



DRAFT

Figure 800-60: Driveway Approach with Curb Radii and Unmarked Crosswalks



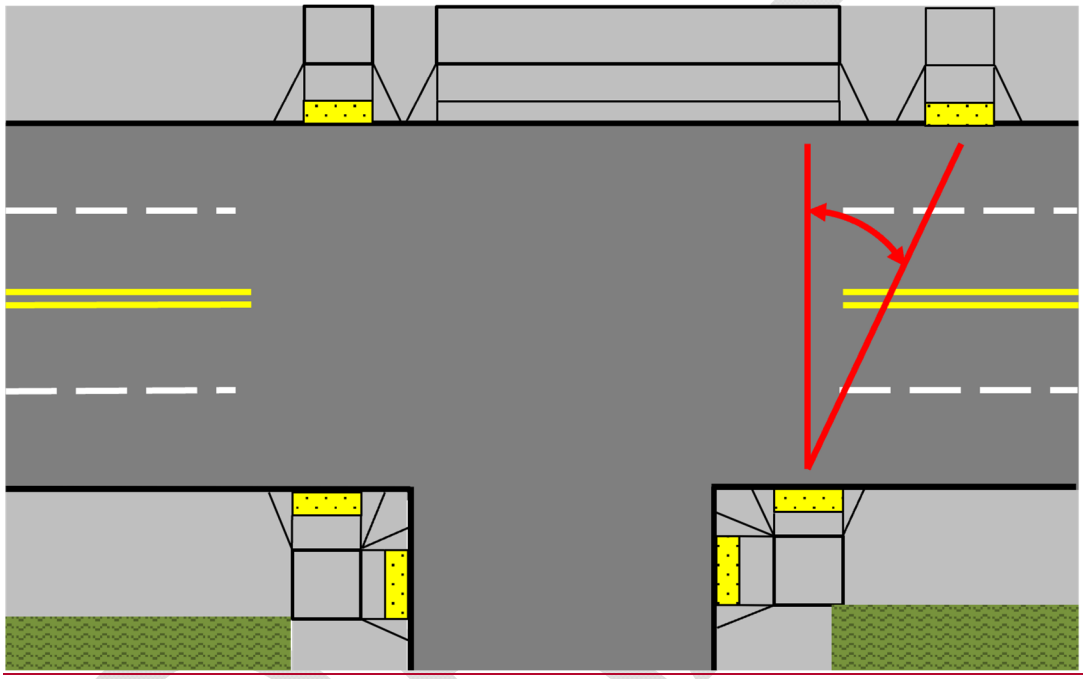
It is common for driveways to be located at T-intersections and offset from the cross street. The following are considerations to evaulate design options and to provide the most appropriate crosswalk solution. Before design, determine if there is any possibility of closing or moving the driveway to provide space for a curb ramp. Access modifications policy and procedures are described in the AM21-01(B) for determination of approach modification in a highway project.

When deciding how to design pedestrian facilities around driveways at T-intersections there are many factors to consider, for example:

- Traffic Volume: Does the driveway have low residential use or high commercial use?
- Style of driveway: Is it dustpan style driveway or a driveway with curb radii?
- Driveway use: Does the driveway serve a residential or commercial property?
- Signalization: Is the driveway signalized or not?
- Driveway offset: What is the driveway offset distance?
- Offset Crossing: Can the crosswalk curb ramp openings align within 10 feet of each other for a typical crosswalk pavement marking? Assess if the crossing can be provided within 15 degrees of the crosswalk perpendicular to the travel lanes?
- Separation of Facilities: Are there constriants to providing physical separation between vehicles and pedestrian entry to the roadway realm?

The design preference is to provide straight and direct crosswalks perpendicular to the roadway for orientation cues and to reduce pedestrian exposure using the crosswalk at T intersections. The wider the roadway realm is, increased angles of deflection create more offset and do not meet pedestrian expecations for crosswalk alignments. Pedestrians will typically travel the path with the shortest distance. In the case of a person with a mobility device, they must use the constructed curb ramps to complete the crossing.

Figure 800-61: Offset Crosswalk Alignment at Driveway

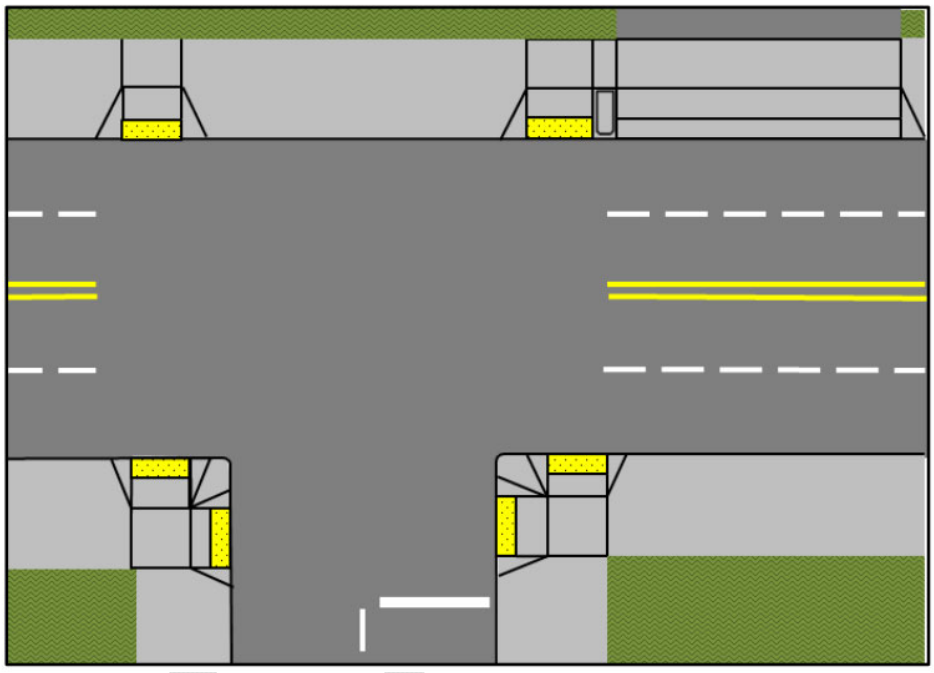


Geometric Controls

As discussed in the walkway design section (Section 810), curb ramps provide pedestrian access to the sidewalk or walkway. Providing positive separation between the vehicular access driveway throat and curb ramp opening is needed. Each site will need a design based on the existing site topography, property boundary, and access management considerations. Coordination with the Region Access Management Engineer is required when developing the project's Access Management Strategy or modifying a driveway. Identify the system limits of both the curb ramp system and driveway system on the plan set details to reduce confusion during contract administration on unique designs. *Consider deeper concrete surface thickness for ease of construction and conforming to the driveway performance needs.* **Older designs where the curb ramp and driveway are one facility shared by the pedestrian and vehicle providing access from the Travelway Realm are no longer permitted.** ~~In rare circumstances would that be considered a viable solution.~~

Details are shown for new driveway construction with horizontal separation distances for accessible routes which include 5 feet between successive ramp runs of the curb ramp system and the driveway system (see RD700s) when constructed. This is **Criteria P1** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. Driveway design includes a certain amount of off tracking by a vehicle identified as the "p" distance on the standard drawings for driveway construction. Off tracking simulation software should be used to evaluate the design of a curb ramp driveway combination configuration based on the design vehicle. The available lane widths and shoulder widths vary with each corridor and impact the space for vehicles off tracking and approach speeds of drivers while turning. Creativity is key in designing a curb ramp driveway combination that meets all accessible route requirements and functions for the design vehicle.

Figure 800-62: Driveway Separation from Curb Ramp and Crosswalk



Provide at least 5 feet of separation between the driveway throats and edge of the curb ramp throat (typically the turn space or level area) when constructed, Criteria P2. This situation typically occurs when the pedestrian access route of the driveway is at the same level as the curb ramp pedestrian access route. See Figure 800-63 and Figure 800-65 as some examples of design strategies to meet the separation requirement for the curb ramp and the driveway systems. Refer to the local jurisdiction driveway construction standard drawings, Options H thru Options N, when space is constrained between the driveway and curb ramp locations. The flared construction is much smaller and may be a design solution for meeting the separation requirement.

Figure 800-63: Driveway Separation Requirement Example 1, Criteria P2

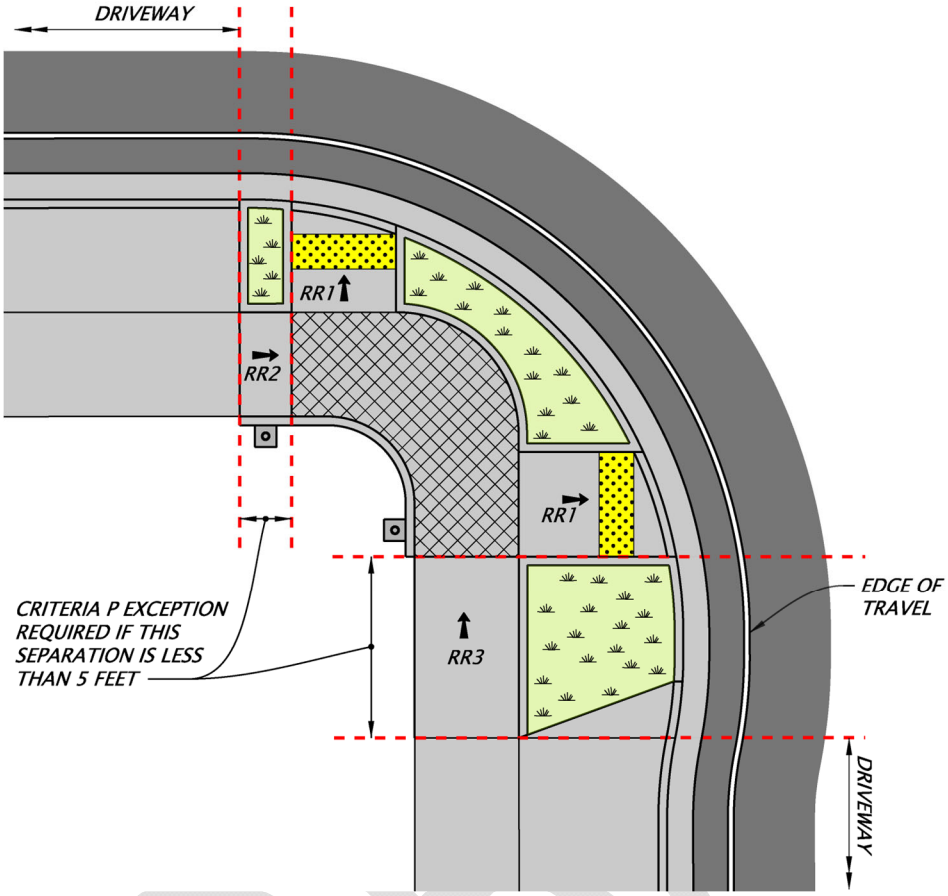


Figure 800-64: Driveway Separation Requirement Example Site, Criteria P2

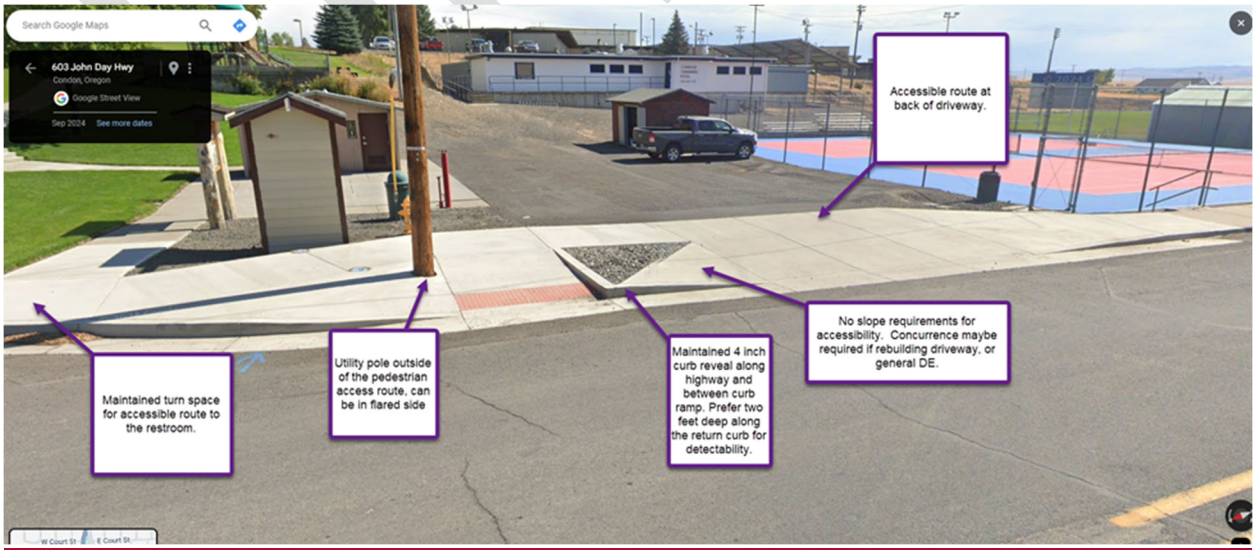


Figure 800-65: Driveway Separation Example 2, Criteria P2

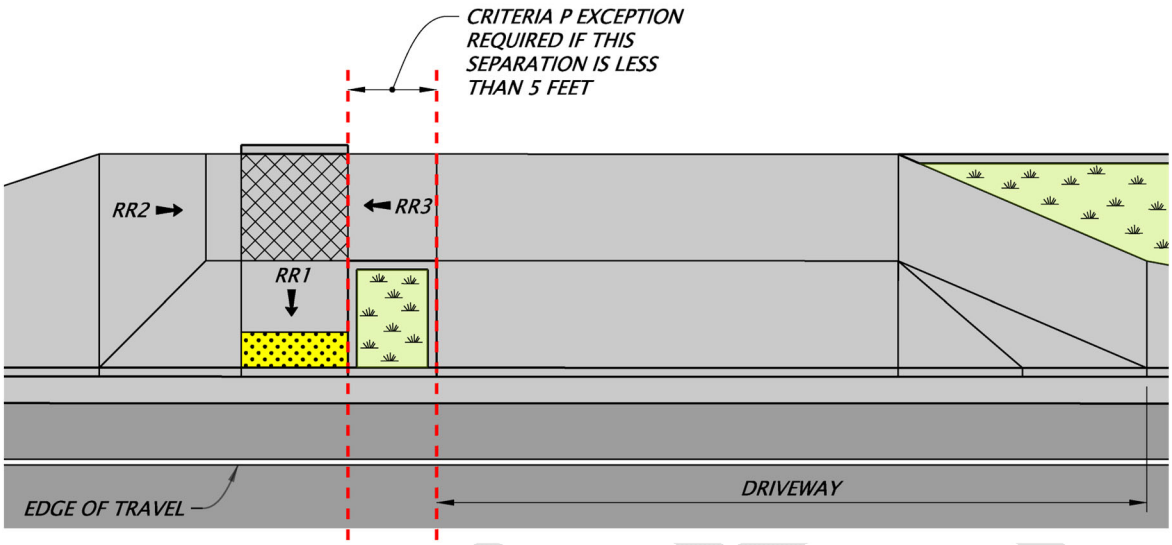


Figure 800-66: Driveway Separation Requirement Example Site 2, Criteria P2



Designs that utilize a raised curb section to physically separate the curb ramp opening and driveway throat are evolving, see Figure 800-65~~Figure 800-66~~. **Provide constant curb exposure height (denoted "E") between 4 inches to 6 inches in height on the curbing. Reduced curb exposure between ramp runs of a curb ramp and driveway system is limited to a distance**

that provides compliant ramp running slopes and a separation distance of 5 feet. Provide full exposure where the separation distance exceeds 5 feet. Curbs for vehicles have vertical differences of 4 inches or more (See Part 300, Section 318 for curb types). This would replace what would otherwise be a flared wing or flared side to ensure white cane detectability, conspicuity, and depth perception of the area. Softscape materials included in the interior of the small, raised island provides the best performance of all desired attributes for pedestrians: detectability, conspicuity, contrast, visual appeal, and space for vegetation. **A minimum area of 3 feet by 3 feet from face of curb to face of curb may be considered when horizontally constrained in either direction (see Section 800 on Buffer Zone requirements, RD721)**. To be effective, the size should be as large as practical. Smaller areas will require additional mitigation measures (i.e., white tubular markers) and will require approval as described in the ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual.

815.3.5 Pedestrian Ramps and Pedestrian Pads

Pedestrian Ramps are like curb ramps, except they do not cut through a curb along the pedestrian access route. They are accessible connections along the walkway, most often at grade with the roadway way serving the crosswalk in the pedestrian access route. Pedestrian Pads are level areas that are constructed to provide accessible access to a pedestrian feature such as a pedestrian push button at a rural signalized intersection. The same geometric requirements for curb ramps including but not limited to running slope, cross slope, counter slope, level areas, and installation of detectable warning surfaces are utilized for design of pedestrian ramps and pedestrian pads.

815.3.6 Unique Curb Ramps

Unique curb ramps styles are typically parallel style curb ramps that are missing ramp run components. This could include either Ramp Run position 2 or Ramp Run position 3, or both. A pedestrian pad is a unique curb ramp for inspection and inventory purposes as both Ramp Run 2 and Ramp Run 3 are missing.

When determining whether or not to include curbing at the back of a sidewalk, as show in RD960, there are several items that need to be considered. Review discussion for parallel curb ramp in Section 815.3.2 related to the curb at the back of walk. Evaluate whether the curbing will unintentionally preclude or obstruct pedestrian circulation onto the side street. Evaluate whether the surrounding material at the back of walk can be graded to provide for easier debris or snow removal instead of installing the curbing. The curbing adjacent to the turn space (landing) should be aligned parallel with the intended or marked crosswalk when installed to allow low vision and blind users to orient themselves to the crosswalk.

815.3.7 Blended Transitions

Blended transitions are surfaces or connections with running slope surfaces under 5.0 percent located at the street entrance for the crosswalk connecting to the pedestrian access route of the walkway. Note, that pedestrian crossings in the traveled way should not exceed 5.0 percent in the direction of pedestrian travel. Crosswalk surfaces should not have running slopes exceeding 5.0 percent along the pedestrian access route beginning at the Curb Zone and entering the travel way. This does not preclude running slopes less than 5.0 percent on ramp runs 2 and ramp run 3. **A design value not to exceed 4.0 percent for both the curb running slope and directional curb surface is recommended in most circumstances to meet the requirements for accessibility (Criteria B3 and Criteria B4).** The top of the curb when designed less than 4.0 percent is a blended transition surface as shown in DET1752. See RD900's for blended transition curb ramps styles.

Truck aprons are designed with a blended transition running slope in the pedestrian access route and are not a part of the curb ramp system. The pedestrian crosswalk stops at the curb ramp system and when the pedestrian crosses the truck apron, they are in the street crosswalk. **Design the truck apron with a running slope not to exceed 4.0 percent in the pedestrian access route connecting to the curb ramp system for the sidewalk.** This is illustrated in RD170.

Shared Use Paths are often designed with blended transitions to cross the curbing as shared use paths should not have profiles exceeding 5.0 percent along the centerline. Raised crosswalks at street crossings are a common form of blended transitions where the surface is flush with the concrete walk following the cross slope of the roadbed.

815.3.8 Bridge End Curb Ramps

Where a project includes a bridge with a pedestrian access route on a walkway, provide an accessible sloped connection for pedestrians to proceed from the bridge walkway to the roadway. Use the following guidance for designing accessible curb ramps for each of these facilities.

Bridge Sidewalk Transitions to a Shoulder

When a curb ramp is used to transition from a bridge sidewalk to the roadway shoulder, the curb ramp must meet accessibility requirements. Refer to the RD900 series drawings for curb ramp drawings and illustrations. Typically, RD950 or RD952 are used in design at bridge ends. Accessible connections are designed with the following criteria:

1. **A designed cross slope of less than or equal to 1.5%, Criteria C1**.
2. **A designed ramp run running slope of less than or equal to 7.5%, Criteria B1**.

DRAFT

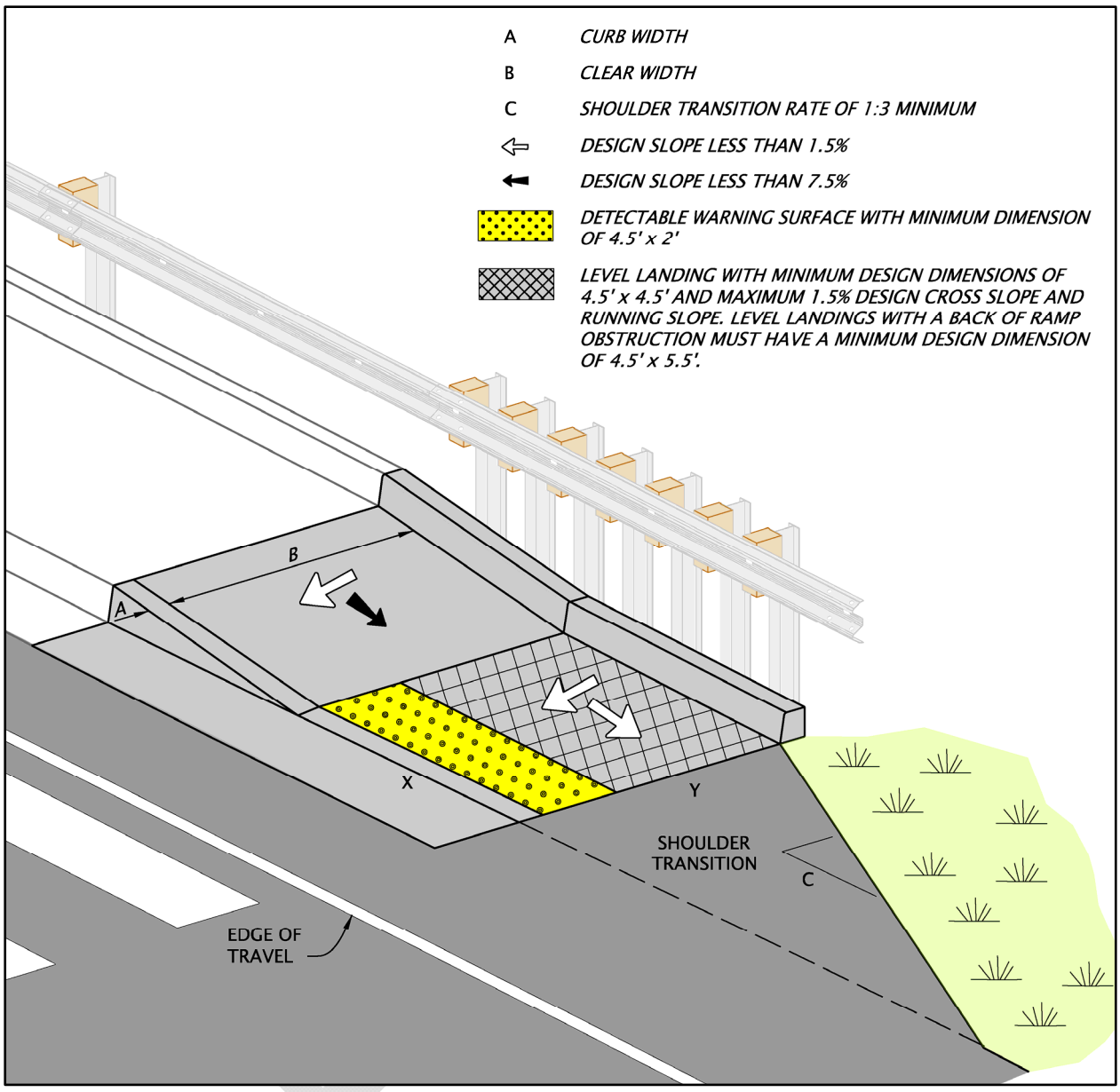
3. **A designed level landing or turning space with a cross slope of less than or equal to 1.5% in both perpendicular and parallel directions. Provide a landing or turn space with a minimum dimension of 4.5 feet x 4.5 feet (Criteria J1 and Criteria J2). Where there is a curb or other constraint at the back of walk, provide 5.5 feet in the direction of the crosswalk when the location is coincident with a crosswalk (Criteria J3).**

Where the existing bridge sidewalk has a cross slope that is greater than 2.0% and it is to remain in place unaltered, a transition panel is necessary. Transition the cross slope of the existing bridge sidewalk to provide a designed cross slope of less than 1.5%. Utilize the warp rate discussed in the geometric controls in Section 815.4.4 Cross Slope.

Where the landing coincides with a crosswalk at an intersection, a detectable warning surface will be installed. The detectable warning surface is placed on the level landing surface along the back of the curb when the bridge end is at the top of a T intersection. The detectable warning surface is placed at the bottom of the ramp run when it terminates at the intersection serving a side street intersection crosswalk. **The detectable warning surface is required to be a minimum of 2.0 feet deep in the direction of the crosswalk (Criteria R1).** Figure 800-67~~Figure 800-68~~ below shows the required elements of a bridge sidewalk to transition to a shoulder at a crosswalk at the top of a T intersection.

DRAFT

Figure 800-67: Bridge Curb Ramp at Crosswalk, T Intersection



A pedestrian access route on a bridge sidewalk aligned with the existing shoulder of a roadway may be partially or completely outside of the shoulder area or may be wide enough to encompass the bridge walkway. The following describes curb ramp treatments from bridge sidewalk to a shoulder.

Tapered shoulder curb ramp

When a bridge sidewalk is partially or completely outside of the shoulder area, provide a tapered shoulder to transition users to the existing shoulder with a level landing that acts as a

turning space at the bottom of the curb ramp as illustrated in Figure 800-68: Bridge Curb Ramp Tapered to Narrow Shoulder~~Figure 800-39 Bridge Curb Ramp Tapered to Narrow Shoulder~~.

Continuous wide shoulder curb ramp

When the bridge sidewalk is within the full width of the shoulder provide a curb ramp from the sidewalk to the shoulder as illustrated in Figure 800-69: Bridge Curb Ramp to Continuous Wide Shoulder~~Figure 800-70 Bridge Curb Ramp to Continuous Wide Shoulder~~.

Figure 800-68: Bridge Curb Ramp Tapered to Narrow Shoulder

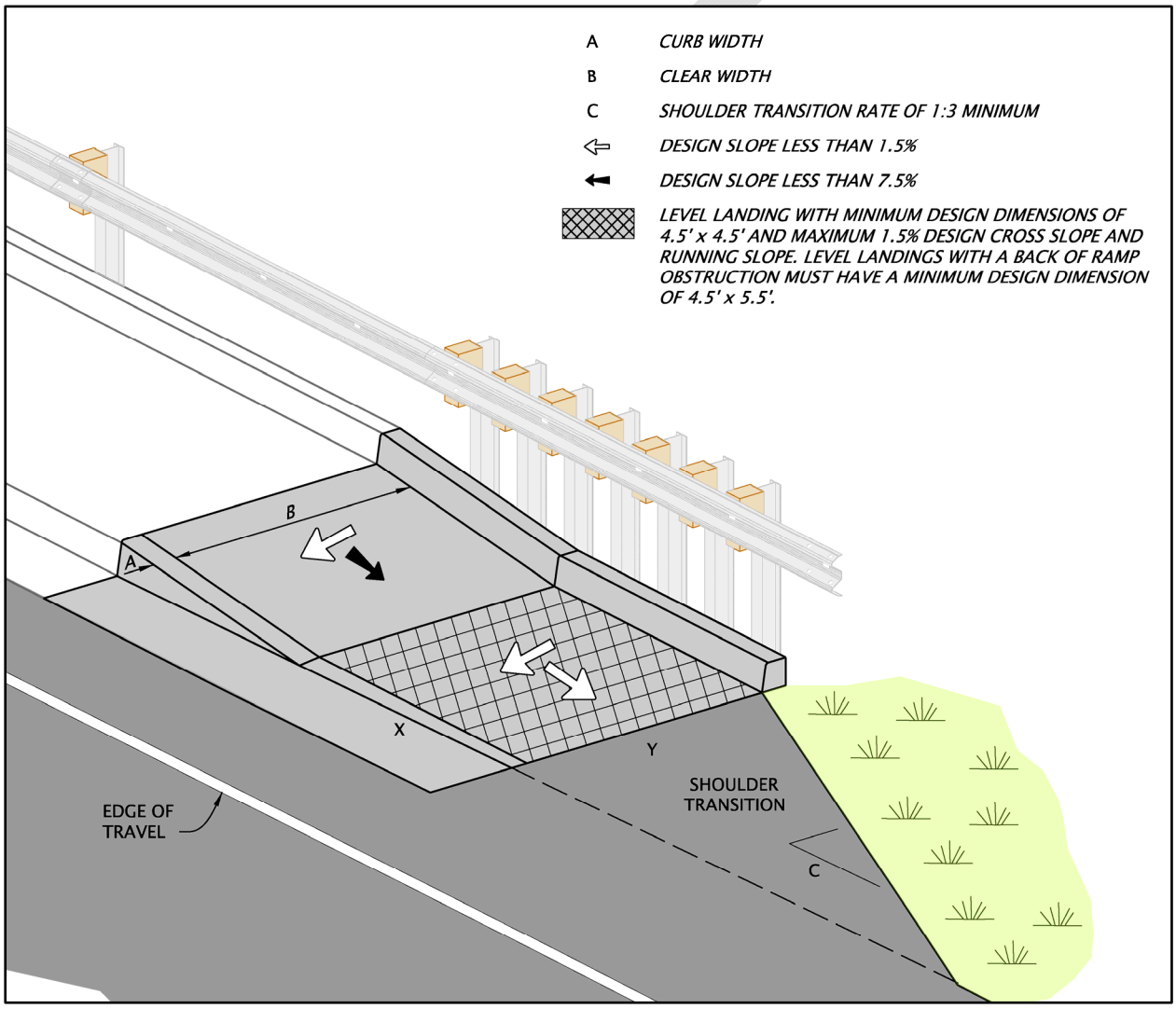
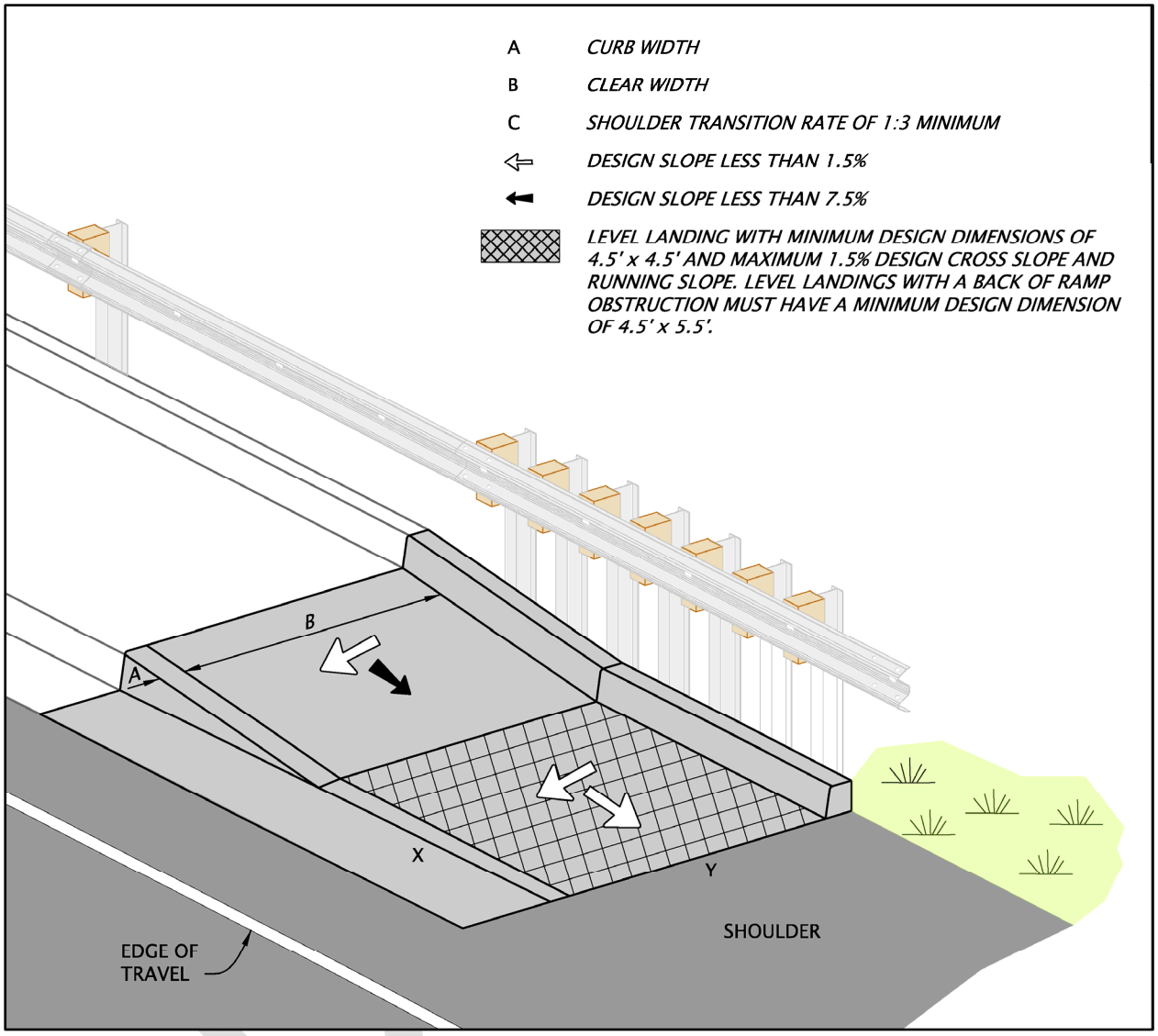


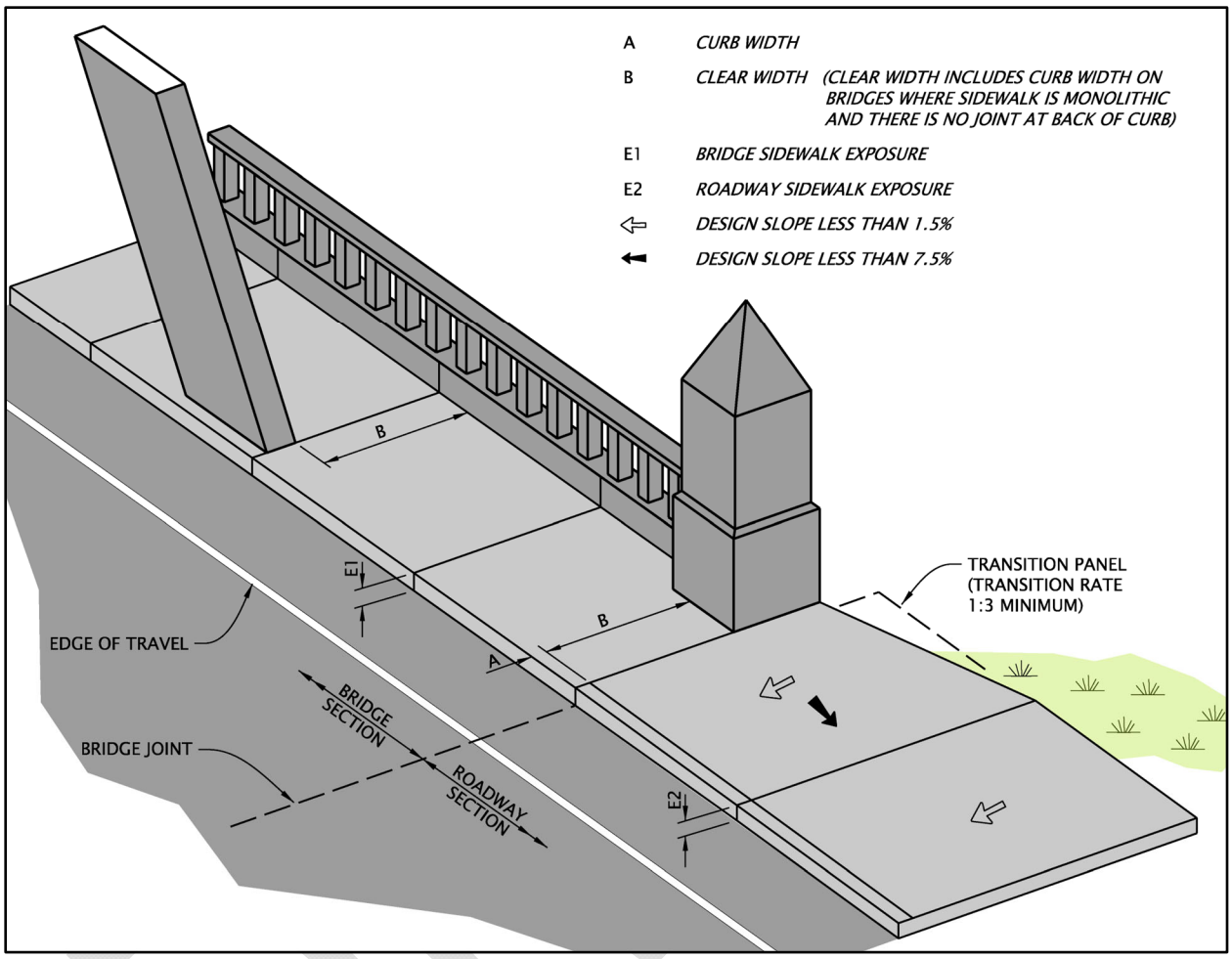
Figure 800-69: Bridge Curb Ramp to Continuous Wide Shoulder



Bridge Sidewalk to an Approach Sidewalk

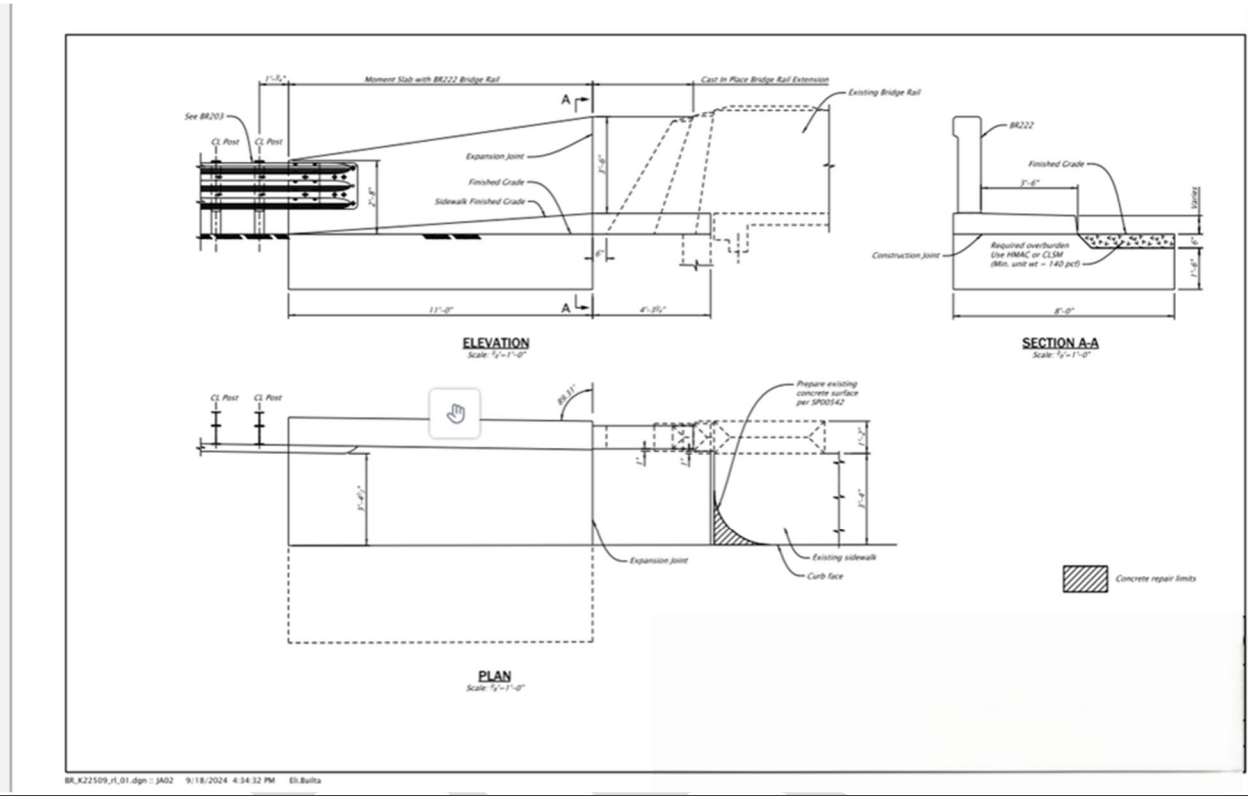
Existing bridge sidewalks are often narrower and have a larger curb exposure height compared to a standard sidewalk. When connecting a bridge sidewalk to a standard sidewalk, it may be necessary to provide a transition panel between the existing roadway sidewalk and the bridge sidewalk. This transition panel can also be used to warp the cross slope from the bridge sidewalk to meet the cross slope of the roadway sidewalk. Figure 800-70~~Figure 800-71~~ illustrates the use of transition panel to match the width and exposure height of the roadway sidewalk.

Figure 800-70: Bridge Sidewalk Transition to Roadway Sidewalk and Clear Width



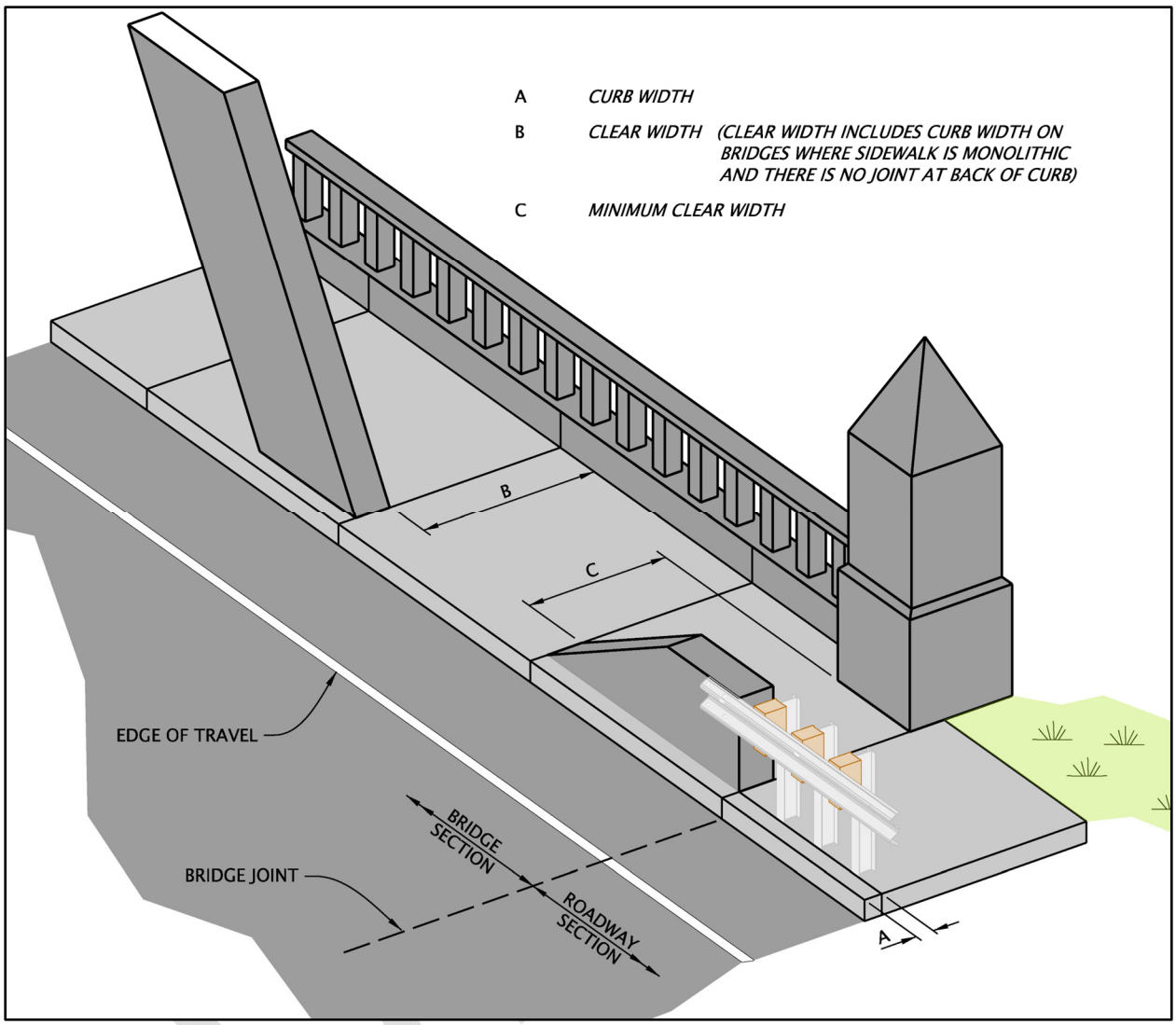
Clear width for pedestrian access routes is measured perpendicular to the direction of pedestrian travel from the back of the curb to the nearest vertical surface that exceeds 1/4 inch in height or any object that protrudes into the pedestrian access route. Where the curb and sidewalk on a bridge is constructed monolithically and there is no joint at the back of curb, clear width measurement may include the curb. Figure 800-70~~Figure 800-71~~ also illustrates potential clear width obstructions in the walkway on a bridge structure. Bridge sidewalks may have structural or historical objects that may reduce the clear width along the pedestrian access route. Figure 800-72~~Figure 800-42~~ shows an example of how to determine the clear width when encountering these objects.

Figure 800-71: Example of Bridge Rail Modification Preserving Historic End Detail & Clear Width



Refer to Section 810.11.2 when designing walkways on bridges. Vertical clearances over a bridge walkway are provided to ensure accessibility requirements are met. **A vertical clearance of 10 feet is required for shared use paths across a bridge to accommodate ~~cyclist~~cyclists, see Section 845.2.6**. Clear widths measurements are reduced by objects that are less than 7 feet above the walking surface along the pedestrian accessible route, see Section 810.~~9~~13.4.

Figure 800-72 Bridge Clear Width Measurement



815.3.9 Curb Ramps with Signalization or Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacon (RRFB)

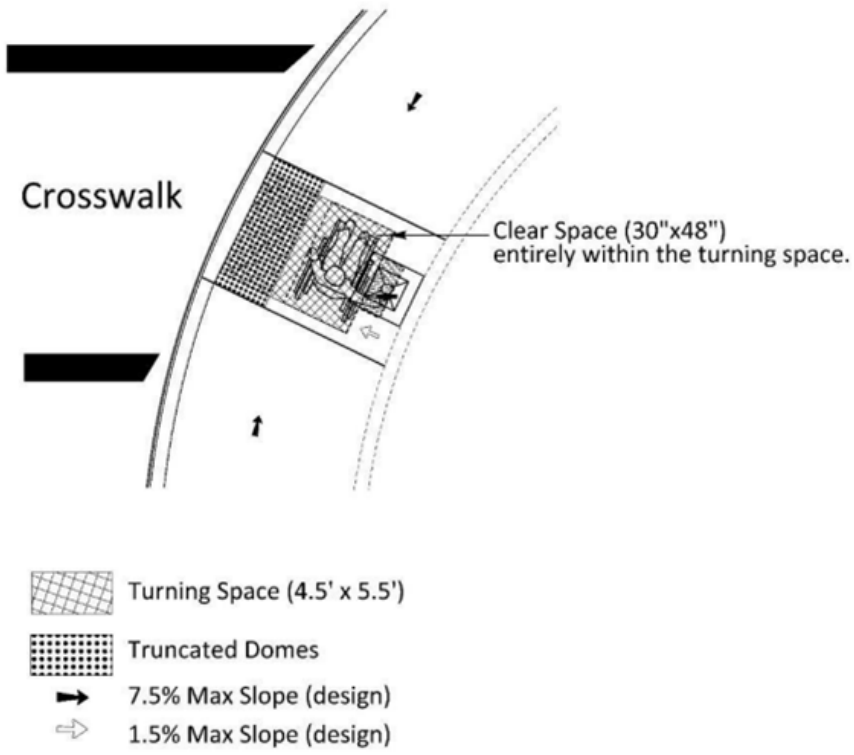
For any curb ramp work at a traffic signal or RRFB installation, follow the Traffic Signal Design Manual for accessible pushbutton placement with specific attention to the following curb ramp related items:

1. Wheelchair clear space
2. Path of travel distance to pushbutton
3. Landing/Turn Space size

4. Maintenance access to service equipment.
5. Junction boxes
6. Foundation type

At rural signalized intersections without improved walkways provide pedestrian pads to provide access to the pushbutton. On rural highways, a fully-developed intersection with concrete curb returns and small sections of sidewalk wouldnot necessarily be consistent with the context of the highway. In urbanized intersections, fully -developed sidewalk and curb ramps are utilized to access pushbuttons. Landings and turn spaces may need to be enlarged to meet the reach and range requirements to activate the pushbutton. Utilize the wheelchair design vehicle within the ODOT workspace to verify design requirements. ***The wheelchair clear space at the pushbutton should fit entirely within the ramp level landing/turning space with limited exceptions.*** See figures below:

Figure 800-73: Wheelchair designed in turn space and landing.



The path of travel from the pushbutton to the depressed curb for the curb ramp it serves is 15 feet maximum. *Reducing the path of travel distance from edge of curb to 10 feet maximum is recommended and encouraged by using combination curb ramp systems. A combination curb ramp style with a minimal ramp run 1 length to achieve a shorter path of travel distance may be required. To achieve curb ramp running slope requirements, the remaining slope and elevation change is applied to the ramp run 2 and ramp run 3 positions where there is steeper terrain and a need to chase grade.* Design

ramp run 1 to meet accessible slope requirements. Pushbutton installations are more vulnerable to damage from errant and off-tracking vehicles, and the preference is to place the pushbutton outside of the Buffer Zone. The probability of vehicle strikes of the pushbutton are reduced when the placement is at least 5 feet from the curb line.

At signalized intersections, where pedestrian pushbuttons are necessary, they should be clearly visible and placed in the level landing at the top of curb ramps. *The pushbutton should be within 5 feet of the prolongation of the outer crosswalk line and mounted on a pole or pedestal adjacent to the crosswalk they control.* For additional push button design guidance and requirements, refer to the Signal Design Manual.

Figure 800-74: Pushbutton Placed and Sign Aligned for the Visually Impaired



Concurrence initials from the traffic signal designer will be required on curb ramp detail sheets that show any new, modified, or existing traffic signal or RRFB equipment. In addition, structural designer concurrence initials are also required for modified or existing signal pole foundations (mast arm pole and strain pole) and pedestal number 3 foundations (PP/3 for RRFB). Contact the traffic signal designer for assistance in design decisions and producing traffic signal plan sheet(s) when the curb ramp work affects the following traffic signal or RRFB equipment:

1. Traffic Signal Cabinets
2. Junction Boxes
3. Foundations

Traffic signal cabinets (service and controller) require a level maintenance pad for field personnel to stand on at each cabinet service door entry. The dimensions are prescribed in the Traffic Signal Drawings which will impact the grading of the pedestrian circulation area and pedestrian access routes. The connecting walkways to the traffic signal cabinets need to be reasonable for maintenance staff to use and are not required to meet ADA slope standards. In addition, older signal cabinets mounted on poles floating above the walkway that remain in

DRAFT

place require evaluation for protruding objects in the walkway and curb ramp systems. Review protruding object and clear circulation path requirements in Section 810 for walkways.

Treatments to alleviate the protruding object for a floating signal cabinet (Figure 800-75: Decorative Floating Signal Cabinet Mount~~80077~~) will typically require a detectable treatment at ground level such as a 4-inch drainage curb outlining the perimeter of the floating service cabinet. The edge treatment may require weep holes for drainage of the walkway or signal pole. ***The inset for a curb under the floating service cabinet or an extended arm pushbutton is designed for 3 inches maximum to the nearest outside edge.*** This inset distance can serve as a toe kick for maintenance personnel when servicing the equipment cabinet.

Figure 800-75: Decorative Floating Signal Cabinet Mount



Existing junction boxes within the curb ramp proximity are generally destroyed during demolition of the surrounding walkway and are assumed to need reconstruction with a new box, rather than salvaged or protected. Relocation of junction boxes may be limited as result of the existing installed wiring. Junction boxes and the surrounding concrete can be interpreted as a part of the normal walkway and separation requirements adjacent to curb ramps are provided in the traffic drawing for junction box installation (TM700 series).

Signal pole foundations (mast arm pole and strain pole) and pedestal foundation number 3 (PP/3 for RRFB) impacted by curb ramp work require analysis from the traffic signal designer and a structural engineer to determine it if can remain in place. Additional design complexities are created where an existing signal pole foundation remains in place in curb ramp alterations. Existing signal pole foundation remaining in place requires field investigation related to the signal equipment and hardware, and existing signal pole foundations. Refer to the historical

traffic signal drawings to evaluate the limits of possible grade changes surrounding the existing signal pole foundation in coordination with a structural analysis of the footing. Refer to the GEEGH24-01(B) for guidance pertaining to a select set of historical signal pole foundation drawings. Additional construction details will be required on curb ramp details sheets where existing signal pole foundations remain in place in proximity to curb ramps.

Pedestal foundations number 1 and number 2 (PP/1 and PP/2) for pedestrian signal pedestals and pushbutton pedestals impacted by curb ramp work should be removed and replaced. These types of foundations are small foundations that are easy to remove during excavation operations for retrofitting curb ramps (their maximum foundation depth is 3 feet). ***Provide new pedestal foundations (PP/1 or PP/2) at the correct placement and elevation to match the new curb ramp design.*** This is a low cost, high benefit solution for both the public and for maintenance crews.

815.3.10 Curb Ramps near Pedestrian Rail Crossings

[Reserved for future content.]

815.4 Geometric Controls for Curb Ramps

815.4.1 Curb Ramp Design Checklist

The ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (ODOT Form No. 734-5184) is a companion for curb ramp system design. This is an aid for designers in determining when design exceptions are needed on the design. This form is available on the Engineering for Accessibility webpage with the latest updates. Refer to the ADA Inspection Guide for Curb Ramps and Push Buttons as an additional resource. It will aid in your design of the curb ramp system.

When an ADA design exception is approved for a curb ramp system, a construction tolerance will be applied that is equal to the same margin for error that is used in the design of the curb ramp. See Table 800-4: Construction Allowance for Slopes below for the slope allowances on curb ramp systems with approved design exceptions.

DRAFT

Table 800-4: Construction Allowance for Slopes

From Roadway Tech Bulletin RD19-02B, 12/16/2020:

Curb Ramp Criteria		Approved Design Exception Value Exceeds	Construction Tolerance	**Example** Approved Design Exception Value	**Example** Allowed Inspection Value
Running Slope		7.5%	+0.8 %	7.7%	8.5% max
Curb Running Slope		7.5%	+0.8%	8.0%	8.8% max
Counter Slope		4.0%	+1.0%	4.8%	5.8% max
Cross Slope		1.5%	+0.5%	1.8%	2.3% max
Gutter Slope	Stop/Yield Controlled	1.5%	+0.5%	2.5%	3.0% max
Gutter Slope	Uncontrolled	4.5%	+0.5%	6.0%	6.5% max
Gutter Slope	Midblock	Roadway Profile Grade	+0.5%	5.5%	6.0% max
Flare Slope		10%	+0.8%	11.5%	12.3% max

Another fundamental concept in the enforcement of ADA by the US DOJ is that the standards have absolute minimums or maximum values, or sometimes ranges. Rules of rounding during inspection are applied differently than what is used in mathematical calculations. As an example, when the requirement is to provide a ramp run of at least 15.0 feet, a constructed measured length of 14.9 feet is not equivalent to 15.0 feet therefore failing the design requirement. To ensure the minimum ADA standard is meet, designers need to specify a value such as 15.5 feet that incorporates some margin of error during construction larger than 15.0 feet.

Table 800-5: Inspectors Rounding Guide for Curb Ramp Inspections

Rounding Guide:

Rounding to the nearest tenth	Round up	Round down
Ramp Runs	✓	
Turn Space/Push Button Clear Space		✓
Push Button Height (3.8 and up)	✓	
Push Button Height (under 3.8)		✓
Push Button Reach Range	No rounding, measure to hundredths	
FT Between Flares, Ramps, Driveways		✓

815.4.2 Clear Width

Clear width is a critical component of any pedestrian access route. The clear width of a curb ramp is the narrowest width found within the curb ramp system that is fully accessible for

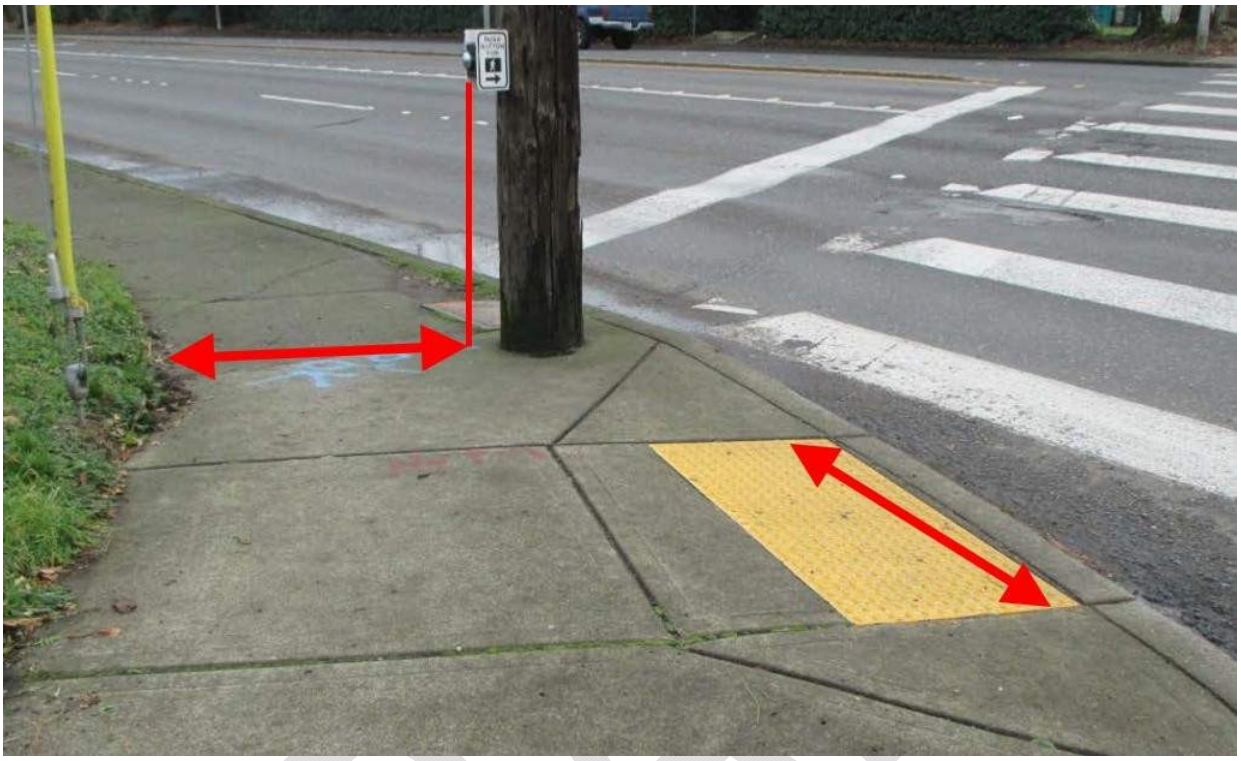
pedestrians. **Constructed surfaces with cross slopes exceeding 2.0 percent, vertical obstructions or vertical discontinuities are not fully accessible and are not included in the pedestrian access route clear width. Curb ramp flares, curbs and obstructions are not a part of the clear width.** Clear width is measured anywhere within the curb ramp system and determines the width of the pedestrian accessible route. Clear width is also required for temporary pedestrian access routes and temporary curb ramps. The minimum clear width for acceptance varies based on the curb ramp system type and configuration. The design criteria for clear width of the pedestrian access route is listed on each curb ramp style in the standard drawings RD900 series.

Provide at least a 4.5 ft clear width through the pedestrian access route (flares and curbs are excluded from pedestrian access route) on the entering ramp run of a curb ramp system. This corresponds to the **Criteria F1** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. When the back of the ramp is obstructed, additional space is required to complete the crossing at the level area and turn space. **The pedestrian access route and clear width connecting to the level area and turn space is required to be designed wider; at least 5.5 feet in the direction of the crosswalk with a vertical obstruction.** This corresponds to **Criteria J3** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. *Best practice is to design the pedestrian access route equal to the Pedestrian Zone from the sidewalk, with matching clear widths at the turn space and along the ramp run entering the street crosswalk with a constant clear width. This will simplify the curb ramp design and provide a higher quality pedestrian facility.*

Curb ramps located at intersections corners are places where utilities and objects are often competing for space. Objects such as pushbutton pedestals, signals, signs, utility poles, fire hydrants, etc. are frequently in the curb ramp system. There may be a mailbox in the path or guywires above the walkway. These could be the controlling feature for the clear width measurement in addition to the cross slope. **Clear widths are reduced by objects that are less than 7 feet above the walking surface along the pedestrian accessible route**. The picture below illustrates an example of where to measure the clear width to find the smallest value to be recorded on the curb ramp inspection form.

DRAFT

Figure 800-76: Pedestrian Access Route Clear Width



Provide a clear width through a cut-through island at least 5.5 feet. This ensures people in the crosswalk can pass each other when walking (e.g., walking in opposing direction). This corresponds to **Criteria F2** the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. Accessible route islands are often marked with crosswalk markings. **When the crosswalk is marked, the constructed curb ramp opening must be wholly contained within the crosswalk (Criteria Q).** *Curb ramp cut through in medians islands are therefore not to exceed 9 feet in width when it only serves pedestrians; the standard crosswalk marking is 9 feet when continental markings are used.* ***Coordinate with the striping designer, when the clear width exceeds 9 feet to ensure ADA compliance for any marked crosswalk as larger markings may be permitted.***

When pedestrian volumes are expected to be high for a particular cut through crosswalk, widths above 5.5 feet are recommended and provide for greater pedestrian capacity in the pedestrian access route. *The clear width for the accessible island should match the Pedestrian Zone width for the walkway it connects to.* ***Clear widths exceeding 9 feet at a cut through median needs to be evaluated with engineering judgement to ensure drivers don't abuse the opening to perform illegal traffic operations such as U-turns or misconstrue the space as a narrow roadway entrance to an adjacent property along the highway.*** Bollards are not recommended as a treatment to mitigate this concern.

Roundabout splitter islands typically introduce geometrics in the cut-through of the crosswalk alignment to discourage vehicles from entering it. Crosswalks at roundabouts must accommodate bicycle traffic through the splitter island and wider widths may be necessary

based on the design user. Consult the Bicycle & Pedestrian Design Engineer for additional guidance on selecting design bicycle vehicles and refer to Part 900. ***Where a parallel curb ramp style is utilized to also serve as an alternative bike route from the roadway to the sidewalk, the curb ramp opening is designed to be at least 8 feet wide to accommodate approaching bicyclists.*** Parallel style curb ramps are often used in constrained locations to accommodate bike access to the sidewalk (See RD920).

Curb ramps designed for shared use paths shall have a minimum width equal to the approaching share use path width. When the accessible route island is serving a shared use path, the curb ramp opening shall be equal to the shared use path it serves. This corresponds to **Criteria F3** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. The shared use path is fully accessible to both pedestrians and bicyclists, and efforts to segregate modes with painted striping is not effective communication for the low vision and blind populations. See Part 900 for more details on accessibility requirements for curb ramps abutting shared use paths.

815.4.3 Gutter Flow Slope and Inlets

The gutter flow slope is the grade at the gutter flow line at the bottom of a Ramp Run 1 where storm water is collected. It is immediately parallel to the curb or street edge where water is conveyed to a drainage system. **Water cannot pool in front of curb ramps**. **Install inlets or provide another approved drainage mitigation upstream of any new curb ramp constructed**. Refer to the hydraulics design manual for designing inlets, calculating the spread distance, and depth of water during a design storm event. *Best practice is to design a gutter flow slope of at least 0.5 percent to convey storm water; however, some circumstances including crests and high sides of super elevated roadways can utilize a gutter flow slope of 0.0 percent*. Refer to Section 810 on walkway design hydraulics for additional information.

DRAFT

Figure 800-77: Water Accumulation at Curb Ramp



The maximum design gutter flow slope is variable based on the intersection control type. The intersection control type is based on the traffic control for vehicles~~.~~ at the crosswalk served by the curb ramps. The intersection control type is determined during the design of the curb ramp system and determines the permissible measurement at the bottom of the curb ramp. ~~You will need this~~This information is needed to complete the design of the curb ramp.

The three intersection control conditions are stop/yield (SY), signalized/uncontrolled (SU) and midblock (MB). At many intersections, the minor street approach is controlled such that traffic is required to stop or yield (SY), while the main line approach is not required to stop (SU). Signalized intersections are treated like uncontrolled approaches because traffic does not stop when the indication is green (SU). A crosswalk may be located where there is not a condition requiring traffic to stop such as at a midblock crosswalk (MB).

Crosswalks are typically located on intersection approach legs at the same point where vehicle conflicts are managed with traffic control devices. Stop signs and Yield signs indicate where drivers are required to stop or yield. Crosswalks at roundabouts and channelized turn lanes are typically set back from the point where vehicles yield. The traffic control for vehicles at the

setback crosswalk on a channelized right turn lane is considered to be uncontrolled (SU). At a roundabout approach, the intersection control condition is midblock (MB).

If the profile slope of a channelized right turn lane is steeper than 4.5%, a design exception is required to document the condition and can be supported if the gutter flow slope does not exceed the grade of the roadway consistent with the midblock condition.

Use ODOT's Exhibit D in Figure 800-78~~Figure 800-79~~ and Figure 800-79~~Figure 800-80~~ to help determine common Intersection Control Types. Refer to Technical Bulletin RD21-01(A) for discussion on strategies to meet the gutter flow slope requirements on existing curb ramps that are altered and reconstructed.

The maximum design gutter flow slope for the three intersection control conditions are:

1. **1.5 percent at stop/yield intersections (SY)**
2. **4.5 percent at signalized/uncontrolled intersections (SU)**
3. **Profile slope of the roadway at mid-block crosswalks (MB)**

Design exceptions are required under Criteria D1, Criteria D2, and Criteria D3 on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist, when gutter flow slopes are not achieved at the curb ramp. Criteria D1 pertains to intersections in the Stop/Yield (SY) condition, Criteria D2 pertains to the Signalized/Uncontrolled (SU) condition, and Criteria D3 pertains to the Midblock (MB) condition. This closely correlates to **Criteria C1, Criteria C2, Criteria C3, and Criteria C4** for cross slope on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist.

The maximum allowable slope for curb ramps at the SU and MB conditions is higher than the maximum for the SY condition. Since the aim in designing a curb ramp is to make the pedestrian access route accessible to the maximum extent feasible and the gutter flow slope is typically the cross slope of the pedestrian access route where the curb ramp enters a crosswalk - the gutter flow slope should be minimized to the extent feasible when a design lower than the maximum allowable condition can be achieved.

DRAFT

Figure 800-78: ODOT Exhibit D for Design Gutter Flow Slope Conditions

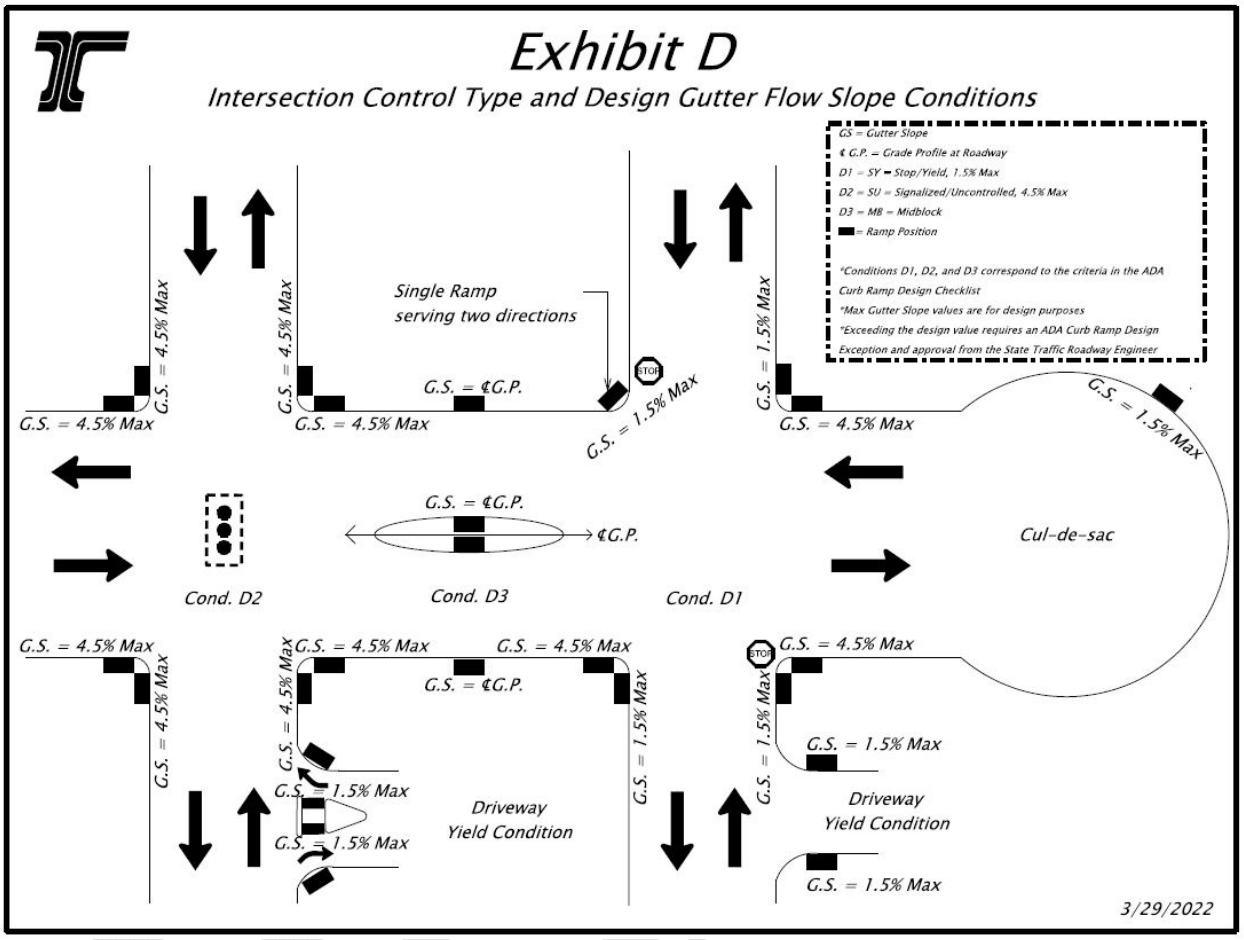
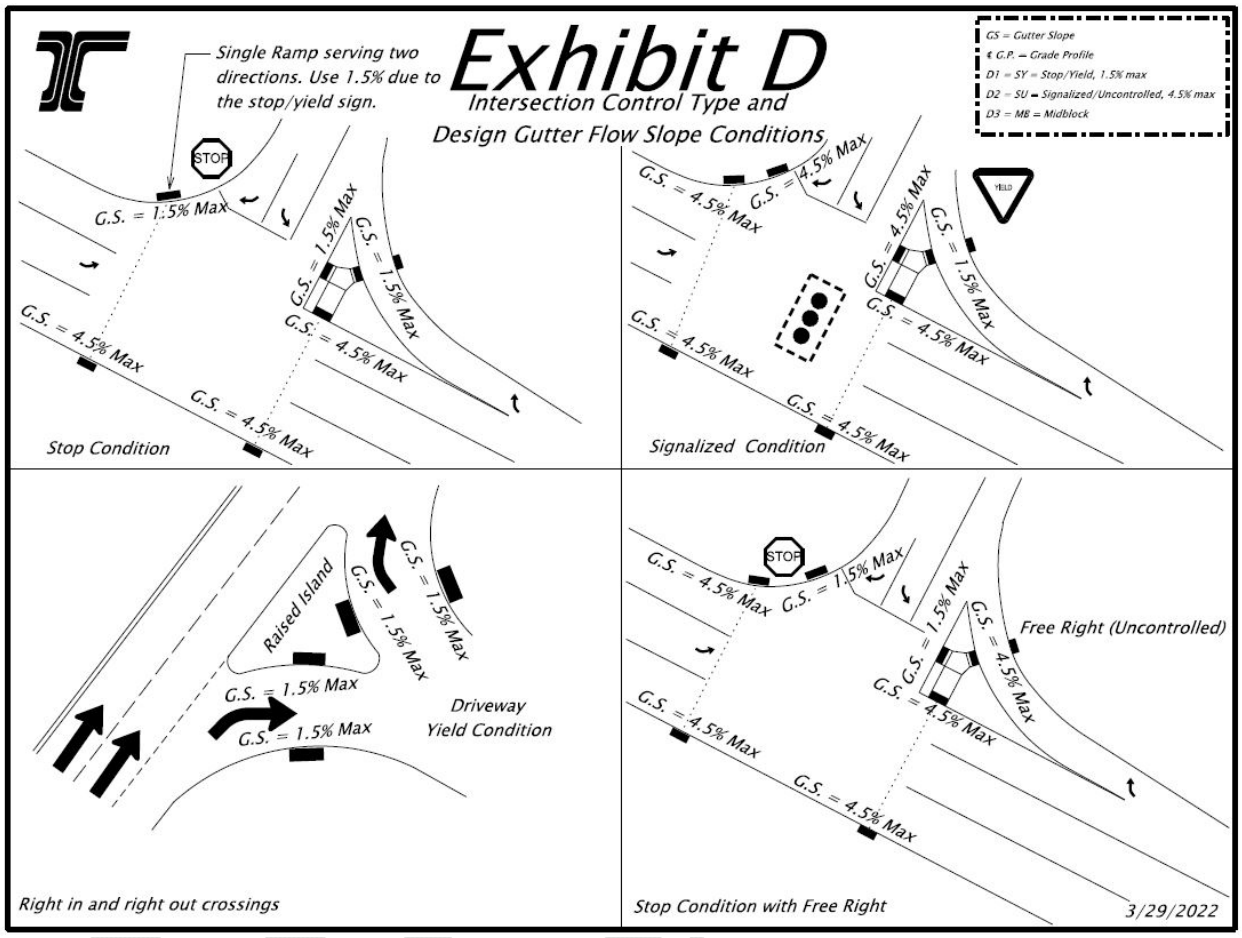


Figure 800-79: ODOT Exhibit D for Design Gutter Flow Slope Conditions for Right Turns



~~Provide~~*Where an inlet is provided, place it upstream of the curb ramp or other approved drainage mitigation.* **Inlets and drainage grates are not permitted in the pedestrian access route for new construction of intersections.** This corresponds to **Criteria H**. Alterations of existing roadways may be constrained on a rare occasion and an inlet may need to remain in the crosswalk. When an inlet cannot be relocated upstream of the curb ramp, installing an ADA accessible grate may be considered as mitigation.

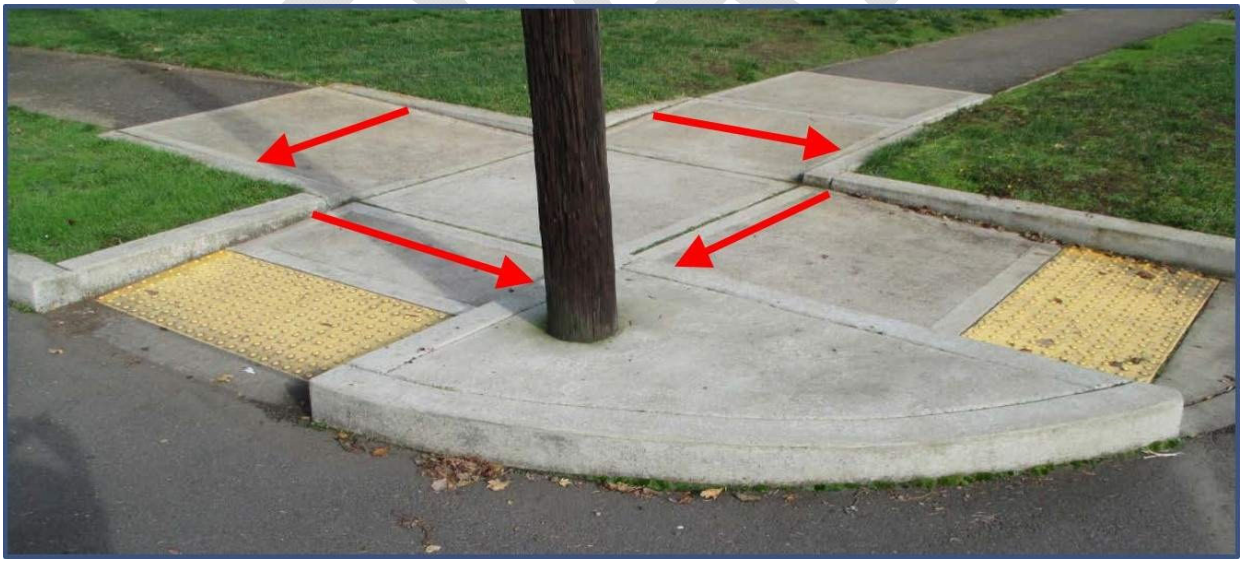
Pedestrian access routes or circulation areas are not permitted to have horizontal openings exceeding ½ inch, allowing a ½ sphere to pass through in the direction of pedestrian travel. When there is not a dominant direction of pedestrian travel, the ½ inch opening cannot be exceeded in any direction. Accessible drainage grates are available, but not a standardized in the Oregon Standard Drawings. Contact the Senior ADA Standards or Senior Standards Engineer in the Roadway Engineering Section for further guidance. Addressing water conveyance and ponding at curb ramps is an ADA requirement. Coordination with the hydraulics designer for storm water collection is required for curb ramp design.

815.4.4 Cross Slope

The cross slope is the grade of a surface perpendicular to the running slope of the traversed surface in the direction of pedestrian travel. Determine the intersection control type for the crosswalk location as described in Section 815.4.3. **Cross slopes on curb ramps built within a private building site development or compound~~, have the ability to control the grading of site and~~ should ~~be able to~~ achieve the pedestrian access route requirements of 1.5 percent ~~design requirement~~.** See Section 820 for design cross slope requirements of building ramps. The strategies below address the unique challenges of providing accessible routes on the public right of way at intersections and crosswalks. There are five design conditions for cross slope within or adjacent to the curb ramp system components at a public crosswalk:

1. Entry into the Travelway at Ramp Run 1 and directional curb
2. The turn space and ramp runs excluding Ramp Run 1
3. Within an accessible route island
4. Transition panel
5. Pedestrian circulation area adjacent the pedestrian access route

Figure 800-80: Arrows Showing How the Cross Slope is Oriented Perpendicular to the Ramp Run



Ramp Run 1 and Directional Curb Cross Slope

The cross slope of ramp run 1 and a directional curb is based on the intersection control type. When the design gutter flow slope is allowed to be greater than 1.5%, based on the intersection control type, the cross slope of ramp run 1 is allowed to transition along the ramp run. This transition typically occurs from the level area or turn space to the gutter flow line by warping the cross slope at a rate of 0.5% per foot in the ramp run and may include the directional curb

component. **The cross slope on the ramp run or directional curb is not to exceed the maximum allowable gutter flow slope for the curb ramp system.**

Intersection traffic operations determine the design gutter flow slope value permitted for the intersection control type. When the intersection control type is not a stop control with a stop sign or yield sign, the gutter flow slope is permitted to exceed 1.5 percent. When this condition occurs, the cross slope transitions from the level area or turn space to the gutter line in a gradual manner by warping the cross slope. **A directional curb may be constructed on curb ramp systems on a radius to ensure a perpendicular grade break, Criteria T, at the bottom of the ramp run 1.** See RD905 for examples of the directional curb component. **Where present, the maximum cross slope of the constructed directional curb surface is the gutter flow slope (Criteria C4) permitted by the intersection control condition.** Refer to Section 815.4.3 on gutter flow slope design at the intersection as the directional curb design is interdependent with **Criteria D1, Criteria D2 and Criteria D3**. In some cases, the directional curb may have a warped cross slope designed. When warping is required, use the same technique to warp the panel as described for perpendicular ramp runs.

Warping cross slope on ramp run 1 to meet the gutter flow slope design requirement is permitted in this circumstance for some styles of curb ramps. This warping occurs on the perpendicular ramp run at the curb ramp entrance/exit. ***The standard warp rate for cross slope changes is 0.5 percent per foot of length on the ramp run.*** ~~**Warp rates exceeding 0.5 percent per foot are not permitted when a new pedestrian facility or roadbed did not exist prior to construction of the curb ramp.**~~ *for new construction.* ***Warping rates exceeding 1.0 percent per foot are not desirable and require further justification and documentation.*** *Warp rates between 0.5 percent and 1.0 percent may be considered when site conditions are constrained with a curb ramp alteration on an existing roadbed.*

Design exceptions are required and often interdependent for cross slope and gutter flow slope. See the Table 800-6: Cross Slope 1 and Gutter Flow Slope Interdependencies for the criteria needing design exceptions listed on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist **Criteria C** and **Criteria D**. **Criteria C1**, **Criteria C2**, **Criteria C3, and Criteria C4** are interdependent with the gutter flow slope and intersection control type; see Table 800-6.

DRAFT

Table 800-6: Cross Slope 1 and Gutter Flow Slope Interdependencies

Gutter Flow Slope (Criteria D)	Ramp Run 1 Cross Slope (CriteriaC1)	Mitigation	ADA DE Needed & Criteria
D1 - Stop Yield (1.5%)	0-1.5%		No
	1.5% - 4.5%	Warping of Cross Slope Up to 4.5%	Need DE D1 and C1 >1.5%
	greater than 4.5%	Warping of Cross Slope > 4.5%	Need DE D1 and C1 >1.5%
D2 - Signalized & Uncontrolled (4.5%)	0-1.5%		No
	1.5% - 4.5%	Warping of Cross Slope Up to 4.5%	No
	greater than 4.5%	Warping of Cross Slope > 4.5%	Need DE D2 > 4.5% and C1 >4.5%
D3 - Midblock, Grade of Road 0% - 1.5%	0- 1.5%		No
	>1.5%		Need DE D3 and C1 >1.5%
D3- Midblock, Grade of Road 1.5% - 4.5%	0- 1.5%		No
	Exceeds 1.5% & Less Than Grade of Road	Warping of Cross Slope Up to 4.5%	No
	Exceeds 1.5% & Exceeds Grade of Road	Warping of Cross Slope > 4.5%	Need DE D3 > 4.5% and C1 >4.5%
D3 - Midblock, Grade of Road greater than 4.5%	0- 1.5%		No
	Exceeds 1.5% & Less Than Grade of Road	Warping of Cross Slope Up to 4.5%	No
	Exceeds 1.5% & Less Than Grade of Road	Warping of Cross Slope > 4.5%	Need DE C1 only > 4.5%
	Exceeds 1.5% & Exceeds Grade of Road	Warping of Cross Slope > 4.5%	Need DE D3 & C1 >4.5%

Turn Space, Ramp Run 2 and Ramp Run 3 Cross Slope

The constructed cross slope of a turn space and adjacent ramp run(s) 2 and 3 may not exceed 2.0%. Cross slope design values exceeding 1.5 percent require design exception approval. This corresponds to **Criteria C1** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist. *Design cross slopes for ramp runs in the curb ramp system between 0.0 percent and 1.5 percent for drainage conveyance*. See discussion in Section 810.9 for pedestrian access routes. Specified cross slopes shall be compliant anywhere along the ramp run surface.

Accessible Route Island Cross Slope

The cross slope within an accessible route island is dependent on the intersection control type. **At islands that are yield or stop controlled, the maximum constructed cross slope is 2.0 percent. Design the cross slope less than or equal to 1.5 percent for stop and yield conditions, this falls under Criteria C1.** At islands across an intersection crosswalk without yield or stop control, the maximum constructed cross slope is 5.0 percent. Design the cross slope less than or equal to 4.5 percent when the intersection is signalized or uncontrolled intersection conditions. This is Criteria C2 on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). These islands are typically used for right turn channelization shown in RD700s; refer to Figure 800-79: ODOT

Exhibit D for Design Gutter Flow Slope Conditions for Right Turns~~Figure 800-80: ODOT Exhibit D for Design Gutter Flow Slope Conditions for Right Turns~~ for other examples.

Where a midblock crosswalk is provided, the cross slope within the accessible route island is permitted to match the street or highway grade. **Where highway grades are greater than 1.5 percent, design exceptions are required when the design cross slope of the pedestrian access route for islands at mid-block locations exceeds the highway grade (roadway slope).** This correlates to **Criteria C3** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). Where the grade of the road is between 0% and 2%, the design cross slope is permitted to be up to 1.5 percent without a design exception. For example, if the road profile grade is 0.0 percent, the design cross slope of the pedestrian path can be up to 1.5% without a design exception.

Transition Panel Cross Slope

A transition panel is constructed to transition walkway segments from new construction to match existing conditions. Often cross slopes exceed 2.0 percent at the match point on existing non-conforming sidewalk or street crossings. **Utilize the warping standards to transition cross slope on transition panels when required for the curb ramp system design**. These are discussed in the preceding paragraphs and see RD722 for transition panel requirements. Transition segments of a walkway are not a component of the curb ramp system and should meet accessibility standards for new construction to the extent feasible. **Transition segments cannot make the overall pedestrian access route worse than pre-existing conditions under the ADA.** *Transition panels are typically at least 6 feet long to account for most construction conditions and irregularities in existing walkway cross slopes, and to keep the concrete panel square.* Square concrete panel are best practice to minimize cracking in concrete construction.

Pedestrian Circulation Area Adjacent to Pedestrian Access Route

The curb ramp system potentially includes portions of Pedestrian Circulation Area that are not part of the Pedestrian Access Route, such as the flares, hardscaped buffer zone and hardscaped frontage zone. The cross slope within these areas is not subject to 1.5 percent maximum design requirements. See Sections 810.3, 810.4 and 815.4.10.

815.4.5 Ramp Run

A ramp run is one of the ramp surfaces within a curb ramp system. A ramp run is a sloped surface within a curb ramp system designed to bridge vertical elevation changes in the pedestrian access route. Curb ramp systems can have more than one ramp run. Ramp runs can also occur on driveway surfaces and on building ramps. A ramp run may be parallel to the street, perpendicular to the street, or may be constructed at an angle on a street corner radius.

A ramp run is to be designed in a planar fashion; angle points and frequent grade changes are indicative of curvilinear construction. Ramp run surface construction is to be straight, free of humps or sags, or other irregularities in the final surface. Ramp run alignment should not be

curved as this creates compound slopes (both running and cross slope at the same time) like super elevation of a travel way. Curved ramp runs make it difficult to meet the cross slope requirements of an ADA pedestrian access route. **Design ramp runs with perpendicular grade breaks at both the top and bottom of the ramp run, free of lips or discontinuities.** This corresponds to the **Criteria T** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). The photo in Figure 800-83 shows an example ramp run which does not meet the perpendicular grade break requirements at both the top and bottom of the ramp run 1. A non-perpendicular grade break was constructed at the top of the ramp run 1 contiguous with the turn space (landing) and does not meet the standard.

When the slope of the walkway or ramp run is under 5.0 percent running slope perpendicular grade breaks are less critical for mobility devices. When perpendicular grade breaks are not constructed, mobility devices cannot maintain 4 points of wheel contact on the surface, resulting in instability when navigating the path of travel. Power assisted devices often have the power assisted wheels in the front (front wheel drive), so front wheel contact is necessary to move forward.

Figure 800-81: Non-Perpendicular Grade Break at Top of Ramp Run at Turn Space



The preferred alignment of a ramp run 1 is such that the centerline alignment of the panel is parallel with the intended crosswalk and markings. This is good for all users of the walkway and crosswalk, but particularly important for those with vision impairments. While navigating the walkway, changes in direction along the walkway requires people to reorient themselves to align with the adjacent traffic. While many low vision and blind travelers can use the sounds of traffic, deaf-blind pedestrians cannot rely on the same cues to orient themselves with the

crosswalk. Physical cues (i.e., curbing, edge delineation, tactical guide strips) that can be detected typically by white canes are needed for deaf-blind pedestrians. When the ramp run is not aligned parallel with the intended crosswalk:

- this adds complexity for pedestrians with disabilities
- it increases operational crossing distances/time for the pedestrian using the crosswalk
- **it requires an additional clear space for pedestrians to reorientate themselves in the roadway free from parallel vehicular traffic (including marked bike and bus lanes) in the shoulder (Criteria M)**

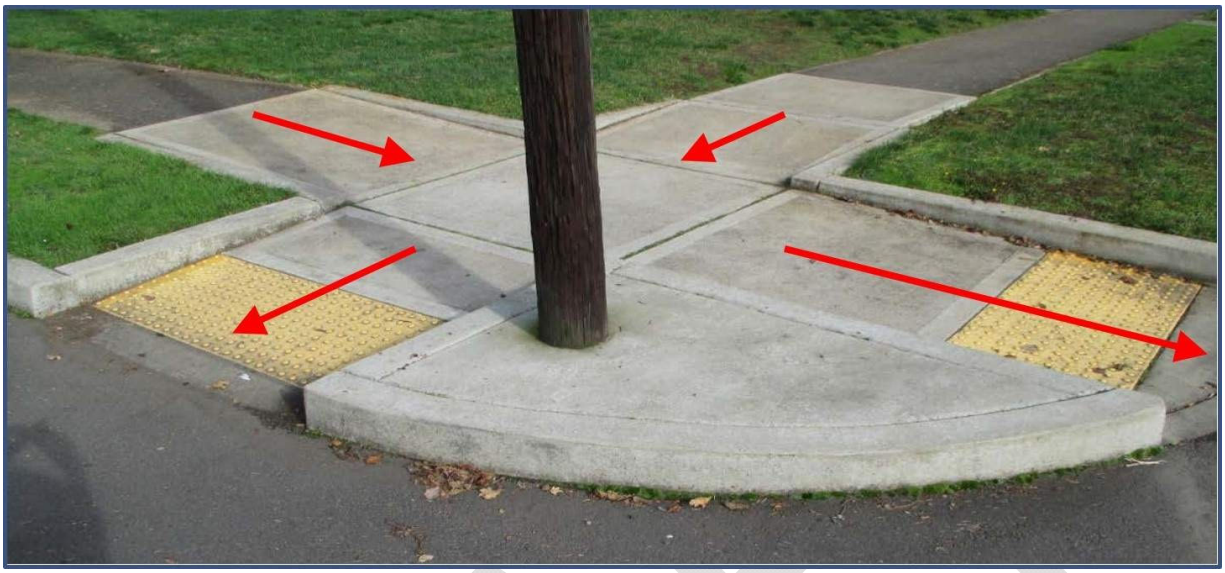
Each ramp run is assigned a position number for the curb ramps system. The entry or exiting ramp run to the curb ramp system is assigned the position number 1. The additional ramp runs in the curb ramp system are numbered counterclockwise from the turn space or level landing. The maximum number of ramp run positions for a curb ramp system is three based on ODOT's asset methodology.

Figure 800-82: Four Ramp Runs on One Curb Ramp System



The ramp running slope is the grade of a surface that is parallel to the direction of pedestrian travel on a curb ramp run. Figure 800-83~~Figure 800-84~~ below has four running slopes. *Ramp running slopes are designed between the slope range of 0.0 percent to 7.5 percent.* **A design exception is required for ramp running slope exceeding 7.5 percent. Ramp running slopes may not exceed 8.3 percent in final construction.** This corresponds to **Criteria B1** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). Running slopes can be positive or negative relative to a horizontal plane. Flatter slopes are generally more accessible in that it requires less work or energy by pedestrians to traverse the surface of the ramp run.

Figure 800-83: Running Slope Arrows on Ramp Runs



The ramp run length is the horizontal distance measured on the ramp run. Each ramp run is measured for length. The longest distance measured is recorded on the inspection form. During inspection, the ramp run length data field is used to capture the general length of the ramp runs (including the directional curb component when present). ***While ADA doesn't describe a minimum length for ramp runs, best practice is to construct a ramp run length of at least 3 feet to ensure mobility devices don't span multiple surface planes along the pedestrian access route****. The wheel point of contact distance is typically 24 inches in either direction, however it varies based on mobility device. Installation of the detectable warning surfaces also requires some nominal distance to install without bridging a grade break, so a distance of at least 2.5 feet is recommended for short ramp runs that meet the travel way (Ramp run position 1 for ODOT). Design the length of the ramp run so it matches an existing sidewalk joint nearby and provides square concrete panels when chasing grade to match into an existing walkway.* ***When the design running slope exceeds 7.5 percent, design a ramp run length of at least 15.2 feet to mitigate the steep slope first.*** This is often the mitigation for ramp runs requesting exceptions under the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184) **Criteria B1**. In some cases, it may not be feasible to achieve 15.2 feet and the physical constraints would be added to the justification for a design exception request. *Additionally, as a mitigating measure, consider a wider pedestrian access route so the user can weave down the ramp run back and forth at a more comfortable slope (this is more applicable to manual wheelchair users or walking cane users).*

Provide at least 5.0 feet between ramp runs and between parallel ramp runs along the constructed pedestrian access route (Criteria P1). Provide 5 feet of separation on reversing sloped surfaces to the extent practical and evaluate the resulting algebraic grade difference if no separation is provided. ***Designs should not exceed 11.5 percent algebraic grade difference****.* Deviations for the separation distance is requested under the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184) **Criteria P1.** Reversing sloped ramp runs create a peak in the

pedestrian access route which can become a physical barrier for passage by some types of mobility devices. Many power-assisted wheelchairs and scooters only have 1 inch of vertical clearance. Refer to the standard drawing(s) for driveway construction (See RD700s) where this circumstance is mostly likely to occur. The 5.0 feet of separation between the parallel ramp runs may also serve as the passing space required for pedestrian access routes, and when the space is level, it provides a resting opportunity for people using mobility devices. **Turn spaces (level areas) for curb ramps provide the same function however the design standard is to provide at least 4.5 feet between the ramp runs in most configurations.** See discussion in the Turn Space and Level Landing subsection in Section 815.4.12.

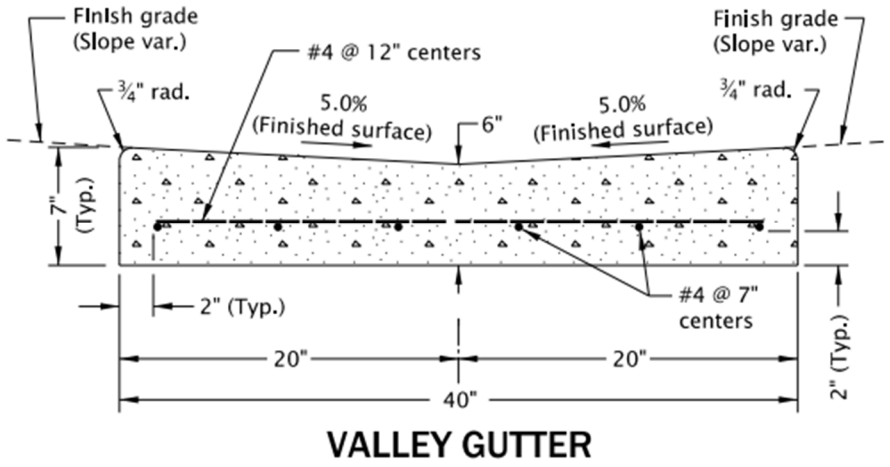
815.4.6 Directional Curbs

A directional curb may be present on curb ramps with a radius. It is typically triangular-shaped, and it is the area between the lower ramp run grade break and the back of curb before entering the travel way. The directional curb is an extension of the typical roadway curbing surface so that ramp runs can be configured to align parallel with the intended crosswalk and provide a perpendicular grade break for the ramp run. This allows for the preferred ramp run 1 alignment to be constructed (parallel with the intended crosswalk it serves) as discussed in the Ramp Run subsection in Section 815.4.5.

See RD905 for example illustrations of the directional curb. ODOT gave this area a specific name and this is new terminology to identify a component of the curb ramp system. **When present, the running slope of the directional curb is required to be less than or equal to 4.9 percent at final construction.** Running slope measurements are parallel to the ramp run. **Provide directional curbs with running slope between 1.5 percent to 4.0 percent to match the curb running slope of the depressed curb and gutter section, reduce the number of grade breaks along the pedestrian access route, to provide drainage conveyance and reduce sediment collection on the curb ramp (Criteria B4).** Directional curbs are generally constructed in a manner that resemble a shallow V-ditch or Valley Gutter as shown in RD700s; rebar is not needed. Designers must evaluate the geometrics to ensure ponding or accumulation of water does not occur locally on the directional curb.

DRAFT

Figure 800-84 Oregon Standard Drawing Valley Gutter



The length of the directional curb varies based on the geometrics of the intersection corner radius. The directional curb design provides a connection to the travel way and provides a perpendicular grade break at the bottom of the curb ramp run (Ramp run position 1). This grade break helps facilitate design cross slopes that keep the ramp run planar on the surface that is directly adjacent to it. Lengthen the directional curb in areas where pedestrians using mobility devices may need additional space to remain out of the travel way when there is no shoulder in the Travelway Realm. Lengthen directional curbs when ramp runs are steep due to terrain to provide a relatively flat area for ascent or descent. Avoid excessively long directional curb layouts for curb ramps.

Grade breaks are set behind the detectable warning surface panels when flares are constructed with a directional curb, see RD900s. Detectable warning surface product installation is not very constructible over grade breaks or over warped surface planes; determining the location of the grade break at the bottom of the ramp run 1 influences your design footprint. Directional curbs can be designed and constructed monolithically with the curb and gutter if a specific detail is provided in the contract plans, placing the cold joint at the bottom of the gutter pan.

The constructed directional curb cross slope cannot exceed the gutter flow slope requirement at the intersection, based on the intersection control type (Criteria C4). Remember, there are three possible intersection control types that determine the acceptable gutter flow slope. In some cases, the directional curb may have a warped cross slope designed. When warping is required, use the same technique to measure the warp panel as described for perpendicular ramp runs.

DRAFT

Figure 800-85: Curb Ramp System with a Directional Curb



815.4.7 Curb Running Slope

The curb running slope is the surface slope on the top of the curb that is cut through and typically depressed to connect to the ramp run, directional curb, gutter pan, or travel way roadway surface. The curb running slope is the slope of the surface perpendicular to the gutter flow line, excluding any gutter pan adjacent to the street. The curb running slope is the grade expressed as a positive or negative measurement with positive slopes toward the street gutter line.

Utilize DET1752 for designing curb running slopes on the curb ramp system. Curb running slopes provides the "V" section for drainage in most cases. ***Design the curb running slope with a slope of 4.0 percent for most curb ramp configurations to ensure water does not pond or collect debris at the curb ramp entrance/exit (Criteria B3).*** Curb running slopes that are designed with slopes of 0.0 -1.5 percent in most curb ramp configurations creates a trapezoidal channel section at the bottom of the entrance/exit of the curb ramp. This results in poor drainage conveyance and sediment collection at the curb ramp. ***Design the curb running slope with a slope of 1.5 percent when building a raised crosswalk or for super elevated crosswalks as ponding is not a concern; additional grade breaks are an inconvenience along the pedestrian access route (Criteria B3).*** When the curb ramp running slope is opposite of the ramp running slope (negative) and it creates a "v channel" at the back of the curbing, it will fail the curb ramp. Water will not drain, and it will pond. Reversing sloped designs should be rare and need to

incorporate other drainage mitigation measures to ensure the storm water does not enter the walkway or private property.

Figure 800-86: Water Accumulation at Curb Ramp on Landing/Turn Space



When a curb running slope over 4.0 percent is desired for the site, monolithic curbing and ramp run section is required. Situations when this may be appropriate include travel ways with profile slopes less than 0.5 percent. Curb running slope over 8.3 percent will result in a non-compliant curb ramp system. **Design exceptions for curb running slopes over 7.5 percent should be rare.** This corresponds to **Criteria B3** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184).

When monolithic curbing and ramp runs are designed for construction, the grade break is located at the gutter line in these circumstances. Constructing two design slopes on the ramp run and curb running slope is not practical in monolithic construction. When curb running slopes are designed over 4.0 percent, the ramp running slope must be equal and constructed monolithically ensuring there is not any inconsistency in the planar surface of the pedestrian access route. **The grade break must be perpendicular to ramp run 1; see Criteria T** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184).

815.4.8 Counter Slope

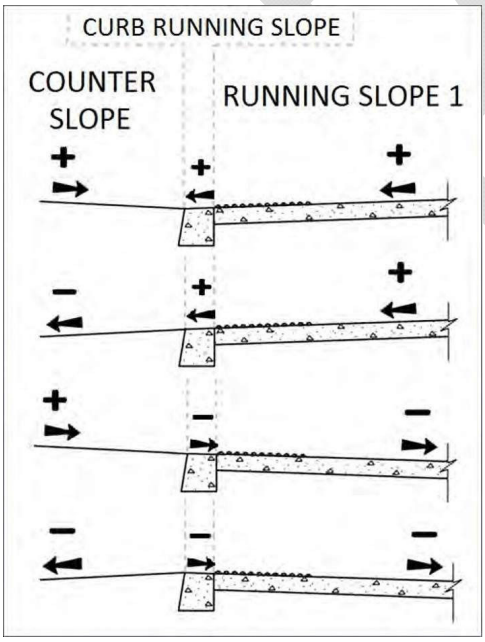
Curb and gutter is a part of the curb ramp system. Many rural locations do not have existing curb in place and will remain rural in character with separation from the travel way realm with for example a grassy sloped surface or ditch. The same basic requirements for counter slope apply to the connection to the crosswalk for the pedestrian access route. Where there is no Curb Zone, the surfaces adjacent to each other still must be flush and meet the counter slope requirements at the edge of roadway/gutter line.

DRAFT

Counter slope is the grade of the street or gutter pan perpendicular to the curb or street edge. Provide a counter slope less than or equal to 4.0 percent at the curb ramp opening, Criteria E. Where there is no concrete gutter, measure the counter slope within 2 feet of the curb. Where concrete gutter is present, measure the slope of the concrete gutter pan. Concrete gutter pans may vary in width depending on the Curb Zone and travel way needs. See discussion on the Curb Zone in Section 810.6. The measurement will be taken perpendicular to the curb for consistency as the pedestrian path of travel may vary based on the receiving curb ramp location. An unmarked crossing or offset curb ramps at the crosswalk will make it impossible to determine the exact path of travel of a pedestrian. In most cases, it is presumed mobility devices will approach the entrance perpendicular to the grade break at the curb.

On projects where construction only encompasses curb ramp retrofits and remediation, pavement reconstruction is limited to the surrounding area of the curb ramp, in most cases. In that circumstance, the adjacent surface slope for the pedestrian access route/street crossing cannot reduce existing accessibility performance. **The constructed roadway cross slope of the highway street crossing (counter slope adjacent to the gutter pan) is to be no steeper than 5.0 percent, except when existing conditions on the roadway already exceed that slope.** Note, that slope differential calculations may be relevant information when requesting a design exception for counter slope **Criteria E** on the curb ramp design exception to determine the functionality and usability of the pedestrian access route.

Figure 800-87: Curb Running Slope Convention



The positive slope convention is based on a typical curb ramp system that conveys storm water at the gutter line in a "V" section. A "V" section occurs when the counter slope, the curb running slope, and the ramp running slope are configured to collect water with the gutter line

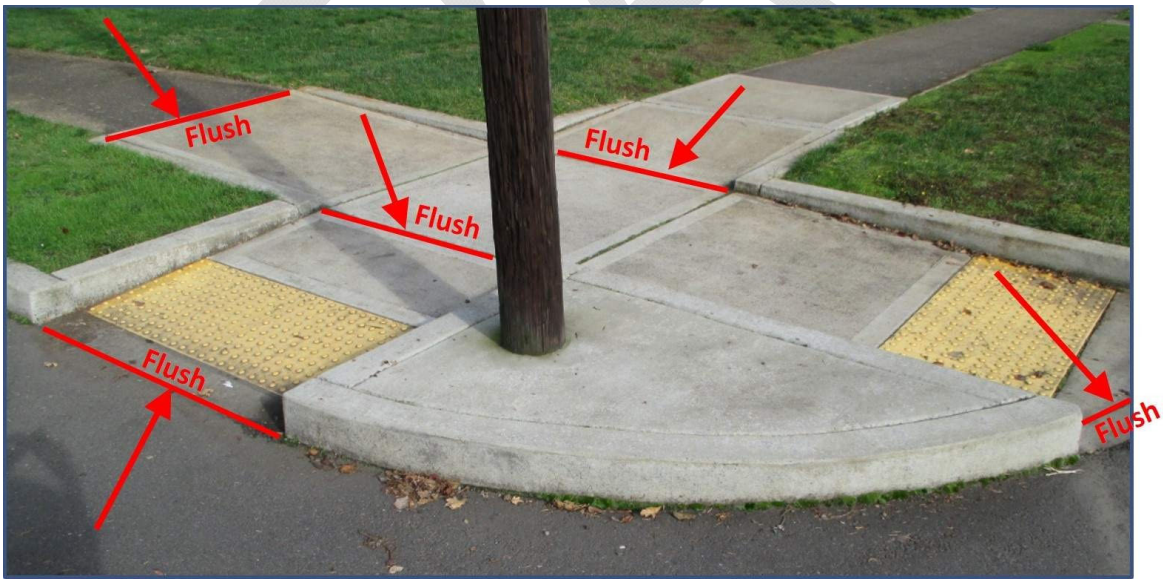
as the lowest elevation point. Slope conventions are determined from the gutter line. There is a positive or negative sign convention for slopes. Sloping towards (+) the gutter line is positive. Sloping away (-) from the gutter line is negative.

815.4.9 Lips

Flush connections are required at grade breaks along the pedestrian access route and pedestrian circulation areas. This corresponds to Criteria T on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Checklist (Form 734-5184). Note that at grade breaks, the surface is designed to be flush. Grade breaks occurs when there are two different slopes on two different planes that intersect each other.

Lip height is the vertical difference between two adjacent surfaces, measured within the curb ramp proximity limits. A "lip" is a vertical discontinuity along the pedestrian access route, walkway, or pedestrian circulation areas. The lip heights are recorded when the surface slopes that meet at a grade break are not flush. Lips can be anywhere within the curb ramp system proximity limits that includes ramp runs, level areas, turn spaces, and transition panels on the sidewalk. Lips can occur from many causes including differential settlement of the concrete panel, where two different surfaces meet, and with poor construction methods.

Figure 800-88: Locations Where Lips Might Occur



Curb returns typically have a varying height in the buffer zone adjacent to ramp runs when the buffer zone is not intended to be a part of the pedestrian circulation area. If not properly designed, the curbing would be considered an unexpected "drop off" in the pedestrian path of travel or circulation area.

815.4.10 Flares & Return Curbs

Flares are a hard walkable surface that transitions the sidewalk down to the curb ramp opening adjacent to the pedestrian access route. **Curb ramp flares are part of the pedestrian circulation area and shall not have vertical discontinuities or lips.** When present, flares provide a hard surface and increase the pedestrian circulation area for individuals to stand on when waiting to cross the street. Objects such as signs, poles, utility valves and fire hydrants may be installed on a traversable flare. These types of objects are permitted to reside within the flared surface. They do not prohibit a pedestrian from walking across the flare. Flares provide a transitional surface for snow plowing or street sweeping operations when the curbing is obscured. *Flares may be constructed adjacent to a curb ramp run next to the buffer zone when it consists of softscape materials.*

All flare slopes (both traversable and non-traversable) are measured and cannot exceed 10.0 percent grade when constructed. This corresponds to **Criteria G1** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). *Flares may be designed within the range of 0.0 to 9.5 percent.* **Provide at least 1 foot of constant height curb exposure (reveal) between adjacent flares on curb ramp systems**. This corresponds to **Criteria G3**. *Recommended design value is 15inches, to ensure 1 foot of separation is achieved during final construction.* **The minimum reveal height or exposure shall be at least 3 inches between the two curb ramps when constructed.** This corresponds to **Criteria N** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). The area between the curb ramps provides multiple functions at the intersection including:

1. hydraulic drainage conveyance
2. pedestrian detectability with a white cane
3. visual and detectable distinction between the curb ramps
4. edge delineation for vehicles turning at the intersection.

ODOT construction practices do not typically call out monolithic construction of curb ramps with the curbing, so top of curbs and flare panels are inspected because they are typically two separate concrete pours. They should be flush at finish construction.

Traversable surfaces are hard surfaces that a pedestrian can walk on and could be constructed as accessible routes. Non-traversable surfaces are not suitable for mobility devices to travel over. Refer to the definition of hardscaping and softscaping to describe the adjacent surface installed or constructed next to a curb return or flare in the curb ramp system. Softscape surface types that might be constructed adjacent to a flare could include but are not limited to loose round durable rock, grass or native seed, lava rock, or planted areas with bark dust. Hardscape surfaces include but are not limited to colorized PCC, stamped patterning, tooled patterning, brick or unit pavers.

~~**Curb returns**~~Return curbs may be used in lieu of a flare if designed appropriately to convey to all users that the area adjacent is not a walkable surface or is physically obstructed. When a ~~***curb***~~ return curb is ~~***designed***~~utilized, the best practice is to ~~***utilize***~~install softscape landscape

treatments~~.~~ adjacent to the curb return so the curb return is sufficiently isolated from the pedestrian access route for sight-impaired users. This corresponds to **Criteria G2** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). Non~~-walkable~~-traversable materials such as bark, wood chips, loose round durable rock, sod and planted areas provide information to the pedestrian that this is not their area to walk on and is a part of the Buffer Zone. Return curbs are most appropriate adjacent to landscaped buffer strips and physical obstructions. Use of return curbs to create small pie-shaped areas between curb ramps is discouraged unless a physical obstruction is present. Instead, best practice is to use flares with reduced curb exposure. Where return curbs are appropriate due to fixed objects, consider using snow return curbs when there are acute angles in the curb face at the curb return.

Fixed objects are not desirable in the curb ramp system as these are within the clear zone for errant vehicles. Remove fixed objects to the extent practical to improve sight lines and pedestrian visibility. ***Engineering judgement must be used to determine what fixed objects are utilized in lieu of ~~softscape~~non-traversable materials to keep pedestrians walking along the designed, planned, or intended path of travel or pedestrian access route.*** Fixed street furniture including fencing, railings, and clusters of vertical objects such as fire hydrants, signs, and utility poles may be sufficient to deter pedestrian travel over the curb return. Gaps between vertical objects exceeding 24-30 inches can be perceived as a clear opening to continue along their path and may lead low vision and blind travelers to a sudden unexpected drop at the ~~curb~~ return~~. The top of~~ curb. When return curbs are used and result in a drop between the ramp ~~runs when a~~ run and adjacent traversable surface, the return curb ~~return is planned needs to~~must be delineated~~ as this is where the lip and drop begins in the pedestrian circulation area~~.

815.4.11 Snow ~~Curb~~ Return Curb

In locations where the curb ramp has raised curb returns frequently exposed to snow removal equipment, a snow ~~curb~~ return curb design may be used. During snow removal and maintenance operations on streets with frequent snowfall events, curb returns with vertical and abrupt edges are frequently damaged. Damage may occur to both the maintenance equipment and the walkway. A snow return curb may prevent damage to the curb return and curb ramp system by providing a sloped surface for plow blades to transition up and over the curb. Effective snow removal is required to maintain pedestrian functionality of the street and crosswalk during the winter months.

Snowfall accumulation is predominant in the mountain ranges December through April at elevations above 4500 feet in Oregon. See Figure 800-89~~Figure 800-90~~ for snow ~~curb~~ return curb design details. Standard curb ramp flared sides can serve the same purpose of preventing damage to the curb ramp system during snow removal. The snow ~~curb~~ return curb was developed for use by ODOT in 2020 for locations where a flared side design is not provided. See Section 810.2 for curb and curb zone design requirements.

Many of the curb ramps constructed are a combination style curb ramp where the following standards will be met as described in other sections of the manual with the modification to install a snow curb return.

1. Buffer zone cross section width (depths) of at least 2 feet will be provided consistent with the standards (2 feet per RD721) or as required by Urban Design Concurrence if applicable.

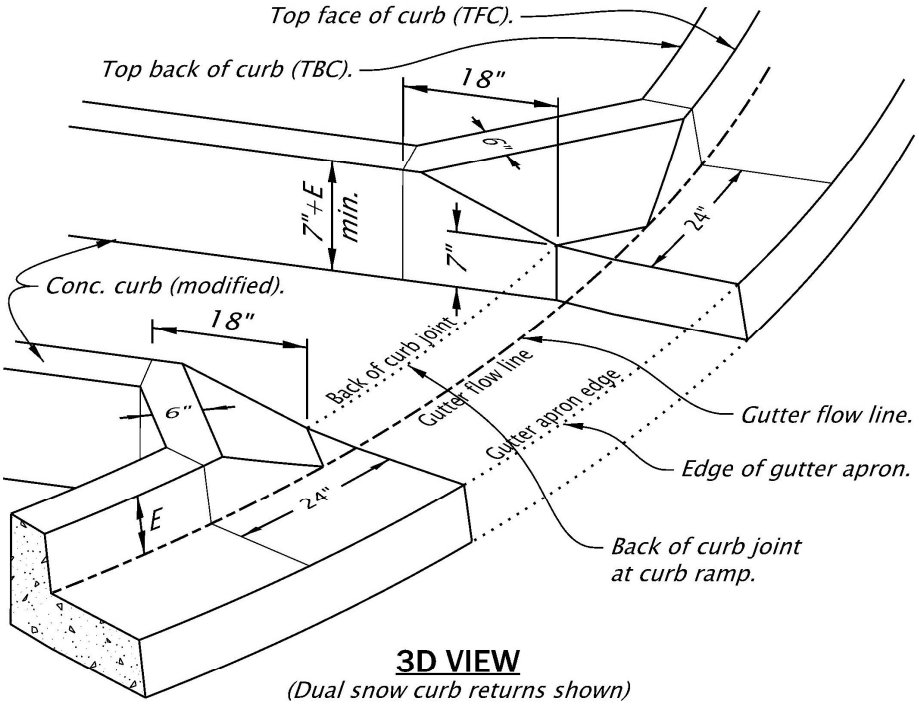
2. At least 12 inches of constructed full curb reveal between adjacent snow ~~curb returns~~return curbs will be provided between two curb ramps (Criteria G3 on the curb ramp design checklist (Form 734-5184)).

3. A minimum curb reveal constructed at the gutter line of 3 inches will be provided for drainage conveyance and physical detection by white canes (Criteria N on the curb ramp design checklist (Form 734-5184)).

4. Five feet of constructed physical separation will be maintained between curb ramps as shown in RD936 Option CC- 3 for curb ramps.

DRAFT

Figure 800-89: Snow ~~Curb~~ Return Curb



3D VIEW
(Dual snow curb returns shown)

SNOW CURB RETURN NOTES:
1. *Details show potential oreintations of curb/gutter & curb ramps. See curb ramp detail sheets for specifics.*
2. *Between adjacent snow curb returns, allow 12" min. of curb length with E=6" nom. (E=3" min.) unless otherwsie shown.*
3. *For curb details not shown, see dwg. no. RD700 and plans.*

SNOW CURB RETURN
(As directed by Engineer.)

815.4.12 Turn Spaces and Level Landings

Turn Space is an area to allow mobility devices to change direction along the curb ramp or in the pedestrian access route, which are designed to be level. Level landings offer a place to rest without the fear of rolling. **Both features are designed with cross slopes 1.5 percent perpendicular to each other in both directions of pedestrian travel.** This corresponds to **Criteria J1**. **Turn Spaces/Landings are required to access public building entrances.** Section 820 discusses building ramp design.

Design a turn space and level landing at least 4.5 feet wide and 5.5 feet deep full width in the crosswalk direction in curb ramp design (Criteria J3) when there is a vertical obstruction at the back of the turn space. An obstruction may be but is not limited to a vertical object such as a curb at the back of sidewalk, signal equipment foundation that is not flush, sign, building, or

pedestrian railing. **Design at least 4.5 ft. wide by 4.5 ft. deep full width of the curb ramp when a turn space and level landing is not obstructed but has an adjacent flush surface constructed.** The flush surface is typically embankment material and at least 1 foot deep, see RD700s. This corresponds to **Criteria J2** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184).

Wheel contact points for a typical power assisted wheelchair comprises of at least a 48 inch circle on a zero turn device (meaning the device pivots about a single point when turning). A turn space cannot be too large for mobility devices, as larger areas provide easier operation and accommodate a wider range of mobility devices. Designs with irregularly shaped enlarged turn spaces and level area can aid in the design of curb ramps and facilitate two separate curb ramps at a corner when the space is shared by each curb ramp. See RD900s. *Turn spaces and level area should be free of obstructions when it serves multiple functions and is enlarged to provide access to the pedestrian push button.*

Figure 800-90: Wheelchair Maneuvering for Turns

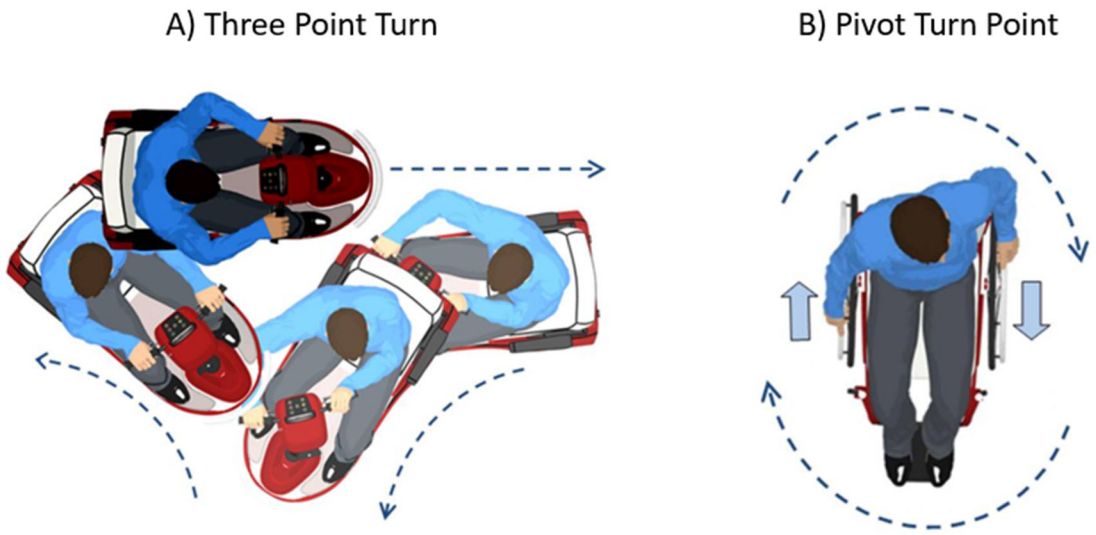


Figure Source: US Access Board Guide to the ADA Accessibility Standards

Level landings must be coordinated with the pedestrian push button range height. **The vertical range height for the pedestrian activated push button is between 42 and 48 inches from the center of the face of pedestrian push button**. This corresponds to **Criteria K2** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). Coordination with the signal designer is required to ensure both disciplines are meeting the design requirements for push buttons and the curb ramp. ***Curb ramp details involving a signal require review from the State Traffic Signal Engineer.*** Refer to the Traffic Signal Manual as needed, as there are instances when a lower range height is appropriate and requires documentation. This might include a CQCR request or a signal in an area serving a high population of children, such as a school crossing or rectangular rapid flashing beacons. The reach-range height for children is lower when seated in

a wheelchair in comparison to typical adult. ADA provisions and recommendations when designing for accessible features for children are slightly different. Consult the Senior ADA Standards Engineer when designing specifically for children.

815.4.13 Clear Space

Provide a 4-foot by 4-foot clear space at the grade break at each end of a ramp run to ensure the turning maneuver can be accommodated along the pedestrian access route. *Clear space for the pedestrian access route is not required to be level, although as level as practical is desired.* **Provide a 4-foot by 4 foot clear space at the bottom of the curb ramp that is outside the parallel vehicular path of travel (including marked bike lanes and bus lanes) and within the crosswalk.** This corresponds to **Criteria M** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). When the curb ramp is designed to be directional, ensure the clear space is available within the marked crossing lines. Single diagonal ramps or other non-directional curb ramps must also provide a clear space free from vehicular traffic. The marked shoulder ~~or bike lane~~ may be used to provide the clear space. When there is no roadway shoulder, the radius of the intersection corner must be designed so that the mobility device can turn in the clear space outside of the traveled way of both streets and vehicular lanes including marked bicycle lanes and bus lanes.

Clear space for activating a pedestrian push button should be on a level landing and may overlap the level turning space. See **Criteria L2** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). Reach and range height criteria originate from nearest prepared surface. These may include turning space, sidewalk, or paved shoulder.

Design the clear space utilizing the wheelchair design vehicle in coordination with the pushbutton. **The horizontal reach distance is not to exceed 10 inches from the center of the pushbutton face where installed, along the 4-foot edge of the wheelchair design vehicle clear space.** This corresponds to **Criteria K1** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184). The level clear space size varies based on the design for accessing the pedestrian push button as follows:

- **Criteria L1: Where a wheelchair back-in/head-in maneuver is required, provide at least 3 feet by 4 feet clear space of prepared surface. Where a wheelchair back-in/head-in maneuver is NOT required, provide at least 2.5 feet x 4 feet clear space of prepared surface.**
- **Criteria L2:** Do not exceed ***1.5 percent maximum design slope for the clear space in both directions on the prepared surface.***

Where **the push button is in an alcove condition, the width of the clear space for the parallel approach shall be at least 5.0 feet at finished construction.** Alcove conditions occur when the space is confined on three sides partially, or completely and the depth is 15 inches or larger. ***Minimum design dimension of a pedestrian pad to access a pushbutton in a rural setting should***

be 5.2 feet x 5.2 feet to account for entry, exiting, turning and activation of the pushbutton on the pedestrian pad as this is an alcove condition.

815.5 Curb Ramp Details in Contracts

Refer to current ~~Technical Bulletin RD17-02(B) and/or the~~ ODOT Roadway CAD Manual, Part 600. Review DET1720 and DET1721 for Curb Ramp Detail requirements and instructions.

815.6 Curb Ramp Inventory and Inspection

Refer to the ODOT ADA Curb Ramp and Push Button Field Guide and the ODOT certification training materials for curb ramp inspection. The certification course is three parts and available online for designers and inspectors located at the ADA Asset and Inspection webpage.

Section 820 Building Ramps

"Public entrances" include all entrances except those that are restricted or that are used exclusively as service entrances under the ADA. **Public entrances are required to be accessible.** Building ramps serve as the connection to the walkway when there is an elevation difference with the public entrance. **Directional signs with the international symbol of accessibility are required to be posted to direct users to the location of the accessible entrance at each inaccessible public entrance**. Refer to the illustrations below for general building ramp requirements and applicable regulation sections.

DRAFT

Figure 800-91: ADA Building Ramps Accessible Routes Illustration, source US Access Board

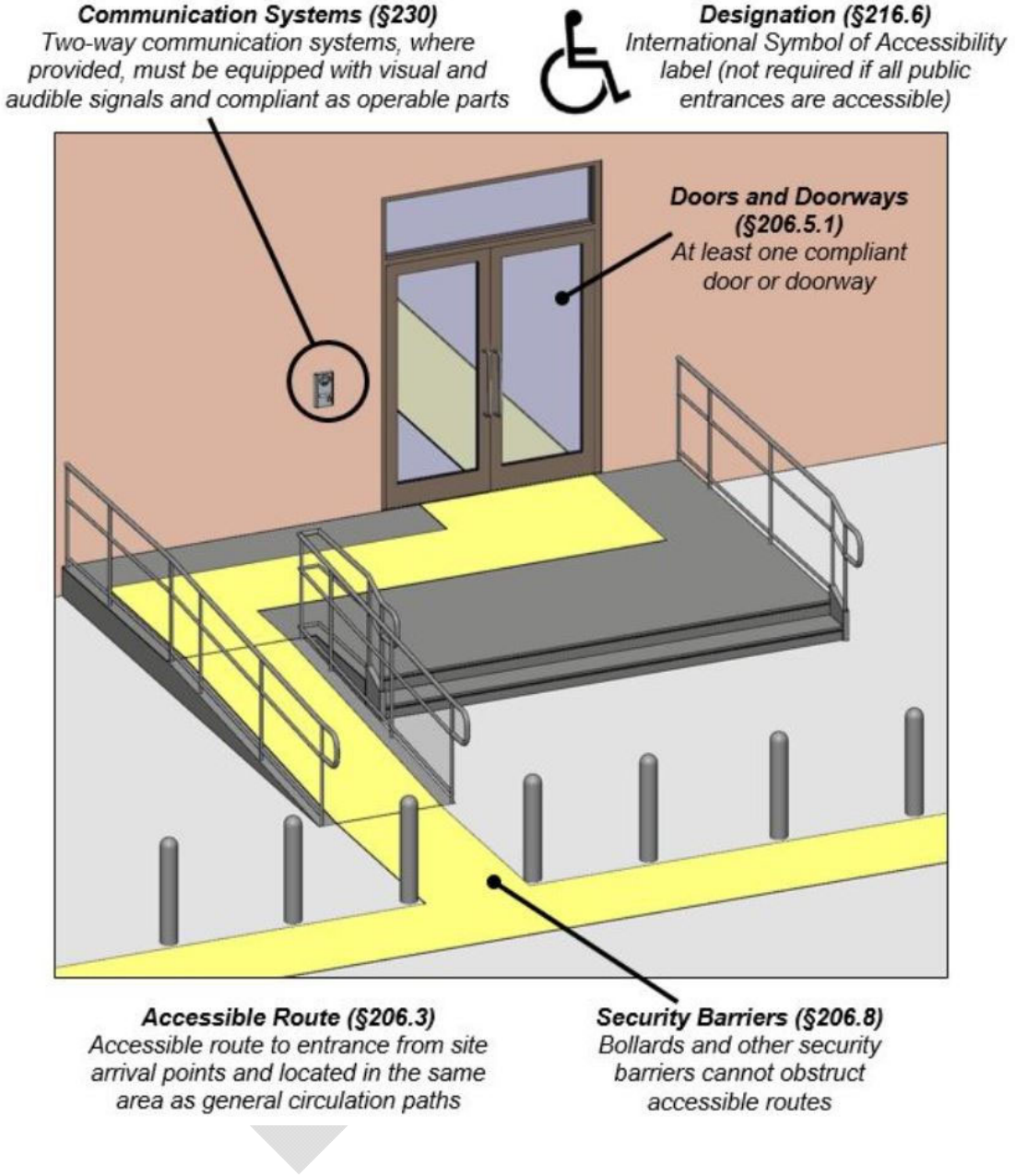
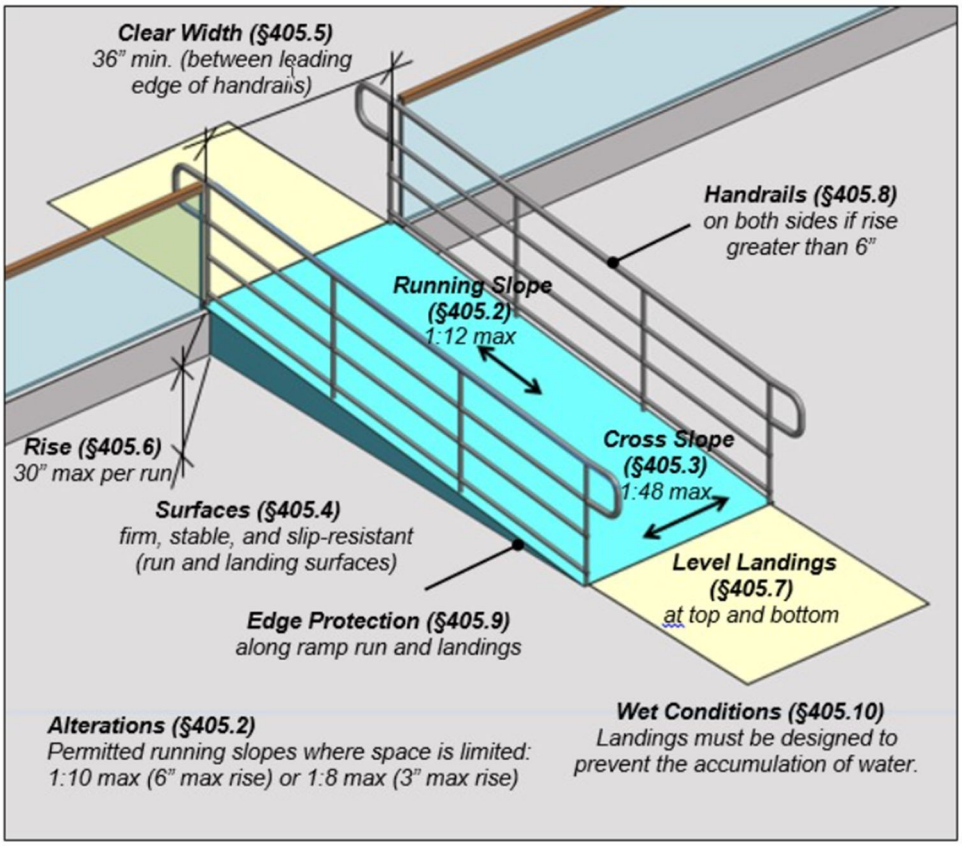


Figure 800-92: ADA Building Ramps Illustration, Source US Access Board and CFR



Building ramps have similar requirements as a curb ramp system. **The cross slope and running slope requirements are the same as curb ramps.** See discussion in Section 815**. Flush connections are required at grade breaks, and grade breaks are to be perpendicular the ramp run.** This corresponds to Criteria T on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Checklist (Form 734-5184). **Level turning areas and landings are required at the top of building ramps or when any change in direction occurs.**

Turning and landing areas are designed at least 62 inches square to accommodate a variety of door opening operations and maneuvering clearance, in addition to the space needed to change directions with the handrail obstruction. When space is constrained, consult the local building code division for applicable state and local ordinances and seek advisement from the Senior ADA Standards Engineer. Documentation for design exceptions on building ramps is captured on the general design exception form.

Handrail is used for pedestrian access along a pedestrian access route to navigate elevation changes on a building ramp. **ADA requires that building ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches include handrail.** Details are provided in RD770 & RD771 for handrails. RD770 handrail is sufficient for these conditions.

Do not sever or degrade to the maximum extent feasible connections to existing site walkways, accessible routes, and circulation areas that connect to the public way. At least one accessible means of egress is required from a public building, and requirements are specified in the Oregon Building Code, see Emergency Egress Routes in Section 810.13.10.

Figure 800-93: Example of severed sidewalk connection to public way.



DRAFT

Figure 800-94: Transition segment to building walkway.



Section 821 Tactile Walking Surface Indicators

Tactile walking surface indicators are a means of providing effective communication and have been developed primarily to aid individuals who have low vision or are blind, while other pedestrians may also benefit from them. Tactile walking surface indicators have two primary functions. One function is to alert pedestrians and draw attention to where moving vehicles, transit services, or rail cars are operating. The second function is to guide pedestrians to a point of interest, to follow a path of travel, or to delineate edges. All tactile walking surface indicators are meant to be walked on, are designed to be distinguishable underfoot, provide contrast from other walking surfaces, and to not impede mobility devices from crossing them. This strikes a balance of needs for various users to provide the intended function. Tactile walking surface indicators are somewhat equivalent to braille underfoot, therefore careful, and consistent use is important to provide effective communication.

Tactile walking surface indicators are available in a variety of colors and shapes to meet the needs of the walking environment in both indoor and outdoor applications. Using tactile walking surface indicators in colors that contrast with the surrounding environment and are used in a consistent manner serves people who have some functional vision.

The various shapes, textures and materials provide different vibrations and auditory cues to those using a white cane for detection and differentiation compared to the adjacent walking surface materials. As an example, rolling or tapping a white cane over carpet, tile, or concrete will make a different acoustic sound and vibration that are distinct, thus differentiating them from each other. Tactile surface patterning and placement should be placed in a way to communicate a clear and consistent message. Tactile walking surfaces indicators must be slip resistant for pedestrians and can't impede proper drainage of walkways.

The United States Access Board provides and sets standards for the use of tactile walking surface indicators to meet the accessibility requirements of pedestrian facilities. Detectable warning surfaces with a raised truncated dome pattern (dots) is used for the warning and attention pattern. The detectable guide strip is used to guide an individual to a point of interest, follow a path of travel or use as edge delineation. The requirements for the installation of the detectable warning surfaces have undergone significant research and development for use; however, detectable guide strip requirements are still evolving. Review Section 821.2 for considerations when designing for various abilities.

821.1 Detectable Warning Surface

The detectable warning surface standard consists of a raised truncated dome pattern set at a prescribed height and center to center spacing along with other stipulations as prescribed by the United States Access Board. It is a requirement on all federal funded projects to install detectable warning surfaces as stipulated in the regulations. The Oregon Structural Specialty Code specifies requirements for detectable warning surface installation on private site development which at least meets minimum requirements under the ADA and may exceed requirements and incorporate national best practices. The Oregon Structural Specialty Code is updated more frequently, typically every few years.

Provide detectable warning surfaces on curb ramps to indicate to persons with varying abilities when they are approaching an area with operating vehicles, rail cars, or transit services. **Detectable warning surfaces are generally placed at the bottom of curb ramps near the curb line at crosswalks including shared use paths, accessible route islands, and medians (See Criteria R1, Criteria R2, and Criteria R3).** The detectable warning surface is a standard component of curb ramps but is also applied to other pedestrian walkways and surfaces at crosswalks such as pedestrian pads to access a pedestrian push button on rural roadways. The detectable warning surface replaces the other detectable feature of a raised curb, that has been replaced with a curb ramp to allow wheeled devices to continue along the walkway. The

DRAFT

detectable warning surface provides information about the locations of the flush connection of the pedestrian access route and where attention is needed before proceeding.

Detectable warning surfaces are omitted from curb ramps that do not provide access to a crosswalk when the walkway ends (for example RD950 end of walk curb ramps). They are generally not provided across driveways (RD725 through RD750) in the walkway unless it's signalized. **Where curbed radius driveway approaches are constructed, a curb ramp is provided to continue the pedestrian accessible route through the private drive and a detectable warning surface is required.**

Detectable warning surfaces are installed at transit areas to indicate bus and train service boarding and alighting areas. Provide detectable warning surfaces at all pedestrian railroad crossings and refer to Section 840 for additional railroad requirements (Criteria R3).

821.1.1 Temporary Pedestrian Access Routes

Temporary Pedestrian Access Routes are required in all construction work zones on or along the State Highway System, all federally funded projects, and all projects delivered by or contracted through ODOT. Temporary Pedestrian Access Routes are to be accessible and useable to pedestrians. Detectable warning surface placement is largely the same principle as permanent walkways. The color, material selection, installation and placement will be of limited duration so the product longevity is less critical however it must conform to the same standards. ***Temporary curb ramps as shown in DET 4780 provide a detectable warning surface when the temporary curb ramp serves a crosswalk. A detectable warning surface treatment at the edge of the travel way at the temporary crosswalk may be required depending on the pre-existing site conditions***. Temporary pedestrian access routes may resemble protected pedestrian lanes. Other means of transport through the work zone may be used in place of temporary pedestrian access routes.

821.1.2 General Design Considerations

The United States Access Board provides standards for detectable warning surface dimensions and placement of truncated domes. ODOT has specific standards for applications of a detectable warning surface on or along the state highway system. Other Oregon road authorities or jurisdictions may have their own standards that deviate from ODOT practice.

Color

Detectable warning surface color selection should be a high contrasting color to the adjacent surfaces that it is installed on. High contrasting colors are more easily detected by persons with vision impairments and other pedestrians who are distracted and perform better in low light and wet conditions.

Provide a safety yellow detectable warning surface on or along the state highway. Alternative colors must be approved with a Design Exception that is signed by the State Roadway Engineer when installed on or along the state highway, or that is included with any ODOT contract even when the curb ramp is on a local road or property. ***Alternative colors are sometimes necessary to meet the location and unique characteristics of the installation and consultation with the Senior ADA Standards Engineer is required.*** The most common alternative colors used for detectable warning surfaces are safety red, brick red, white and natural patina cast iron in historic areas.

Context and location of the construction improvements is necessary when considering alternative colors to the standard for detectable warning surfaces. Safety yellow's bright color is good at attracting the attention of the human eye and provides strong contrast with surrounding surfaces such as asphalt, concrete, and red brick. Safety yellow is also a color that signifies caution and is consistent with pedestrian safety signing and labeling standards.

Figure 800-95: Curb markings lack contrast with the detectable warning surface color



When evaluating alternative colors, the surrounding environment is assessed to ensure that the detectable warning surface color contrasts with adjacent features such as painted curbs and colored pavers, colored crosswalks, or walkways. ***Limit curb markings when provided to the fully exposed curb line. Flares and the depressed curb are unmarked per the Pavement Line Manual.*** Yellow markings are reserved for centerline features per MUTCD. ***Multi-agency coordination of detectable warning surface color selection is required where there are historic or potentially eligible historic designations on properties, specific features, and corridors. This coordination requires evaluation of visual impacts to those resources with the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO).***

Alternative detectable warning surface color considerations:

- Safety ~~red~~Red is an alternative that performs well with asphalt and concrete and may be requested when safety yellow is not desired for aesthetic or other contextual reasons. Red is typically ~~signifies~~associated with "stop" or "danger" when it comes to safety.

- Brick Red is softer in color saturation and is often requested in historic areas to reduce visual impact to protected historical buildings and features compared to safety yellow. Special attention and design mitigations must be taken when using brick red so that it contrasts with the sidewalk and road surfaces particularly in shaded, dark, or unlit areas, and near areas installed with hardscaping such as inlaid brick pavers or dark bark mulch.
- Safety Blue is sometimes used to identify accessible areas, and to provide information to pedestrians consistent with MUTCD recommendations for pavement markings and signing. **Safety Blue is the ODOT standard for detectable guide strips.**
- White may be considered for detectable warning surfaces placed on or near roads or paths made of dark-colored asphalt as high contrast, or in coordination with green bicycle lane markings or boxes. White may also be the best contrast choice when the walkway is comprised of red unit pavers or similar concrete coloring.
- Cast iron detectable warning surface may be used in locations with extreme temperatures and where snowplows are used to maintain the walkway or roadway. Colored coating can be specified but is easily damaged by snowplow equipment and abrasion. Natural patina cast iron will change to a rusty, orange-brown color over time.
- Black is discouraged as many people with low vision interpret darkness as holes in the surface or water ponding.

Detectable warning surfaces that are exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light may lose their color contrast over time and will require replacement because of sun fading. Replacement criteria for low conspicuity has not been determined at this time.

Material and Application

Detectable warning surface materials can be made of various materials and are not limited to polymers and cast iron. The most common is a rigid or semi-pliable plastic tile that is usually installed while the concrete is curing (wet set) and is bonded to the concrete with underlying webbing and/or anchors in the concrete. Edges are installed flush with the final grade of the walkway. Some products have replaceable tiles that can be removed and reinstalled when they become faded. Applications requiring adhesive or are bonded to the material to secure to the walkway are considered surface applied. All types of products for detectable warning surfaces need to ensure no lips are created in the walkway when installed. The tiles may be cut for installation to follow a radius and must conform to the US Access Board's spacing requirements for adjacent truncated domes when they abut each other (see Figure 800-96~~Figure 800-59~~).

Designers will need to specify the type of application for a given location. Considerations for product selection are important for longevity of the curb ramp system. Various products provide options including installation of a detectable warning surface on temporary pedestrian access routes, maintenance or upgrade of existing facilities, and new construction. There are

different methods for securing detectable warning surfaces to the walkway depending on the material and manufacturer's design.

Wet Set (WS):

Wet set detectable warning surfaces have anchors attached to the bottom of the panel. The panel is then placed into wet concrete such that when it cures, the detectable warning surface is affixed to the concrete surface. These types of applications have a long service life and are generally maintenance free.

Wet Set Replaceable (WS Repl.):

Wet set replaceable products are installed similarly to a standard wet set product, but in this case the top truncated dome tiles can be unscrewed from the rest of the detectable warning surface anchoring plate. This allows for the detectable warning surface to be replaced when damaged or faded without disturbing the concrete. The replacement tile can be a different color than the original anchoring plate.

Wet Set Snow Zone (WS SZ):

The wet set snow zone category is used to capture items that are designed for snow zones exposed to plowing blades and wire brushes, or in areas of high elevation with frequent snow fall events, typically above 3000 feet. In most cases these detectable warning surface products are constructed from cast iron. These can have colored or clear coats or are untreated, so it leaves a natural patina over time as it weathers. Sizes of cast iron tiles are limited and may not fit a curved radius application that meets ODOT's installation requirements. Review the current ODOT qualified products list for approved tile sizes and configurations when designing; there may be some limitations that constrain your design layout in a snow zone.

DRAFT

Figure 800-96: Wet Set Polymer Detectable Warning Surface Tile Dome Spacing is Maintained



Surface Applied (SA):

The surface applied detectable warning surface tiles or mats utilize an adhesive to secure the product to the walkway. The walkway will need to be thoroughly cleaned to ensure a solid connection. Use manufacturer recommended adhesives and preparations. Caulking is typically required to prevent water from infiltrating underneath the tiles. These types of installations are more temperature sensitive both during and after construction. Surface applied applications are useful when a detectable warning surface needs to be installed on aged and cured concrete, or for temporary pedestrian access routes (TPAR) with curb ramps. Special care needs to be taken to avoid lips at the edges of the detectable warning surface.

Liquid Applied (Liquid Appld.):

This is a liquid product that is applied to a cured surface. A liquid applied detectable warning surface is made from a liquid resin mixture that can be applied to the walkway surface with paint rollers and a dome mat mold. This application method requires a certified installer. The walkway surface needs to be thoroughly cleaned and be free of debris to ensure a solid bond. This product is not typically intended to be subjected to vehicular traffic. It can be applied to asphalt, concrete, unit pavers and metal (such as vault lids, manhole covers, etc.). This type of installation is more temperature sensitive during construction, however, it can be used in a wide variety of locations to improve accessibility without disturbing the existing walkway. It is the only application presently ODOT approved for installation on asphalt walkway surfaces.

DRAFT

Installation and Placement

There are various geometric configurations for curb ramps. The placement of the detectable warning surface, with a few exceptions, is at the back of the curb line at the curb ramp opening. The purpose of the detectable warning surface is to inform and communicate to pedestrians when they are about to enter or exit the space where vehicles are operating (the Transition and Travelway Realm). As a pedestrian continues through the crosswalk, the detectable warning surface with high contrast informs people where the flush connection is to the walkway. While this aids primarily those with low vision, it benefits all pedestrians including those using wheeled mobility devices. Detectable warning surfaces are not required to be installed in a set of pairs at each end of the crosswalk. For example, there may only be a detectable warning surface installed on the curb ramp for a walkway on one side of the roadway where the other end of the crosswalk is an open shoulder with no detectable warning.

In pedestrian refuge islands the detectable warning surface provides the same function, and effectively communicates where vehicles are operating. **Provide at least 2 feet of separation between the detectable warning surfaces along the path of travel (curb ramp design exception Criteria R2) for accessible route islands.** When the length of the refuge is not at least 6 feet long from back of curb to back of curb, the detectable warning surfaces are omitted.

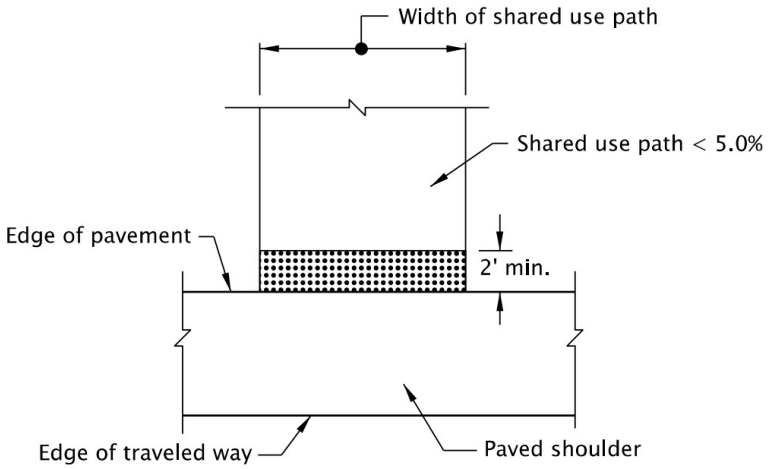
Install the detectable warning surface full width of the curb ramp opening, refer to Criteria R1. Provide a continuous section of detectable warning surface that is at least 2 feet deep in the direction of the pedestrian travel (curb ramp design exception (Criteria R1). The minimum depth is based on the average pedestrian stride length to ensure there is foot contact when walking. Lesser depths have a high probability that a pedestrian will step over them and miss the warning device. ***Depths of detectable warning surface that exceed 3 feet are discouraged.***

The placement location of the detectable warning surface is dependent on the curb ramp style and/or on the distance between the grade break to the back of curb (see applicable ODOT standard drawings in the RD900 series). The dome spacing orientation is not required to follow a pedestrian path of travel. It can be helpful if aligned with pedestrian travel, however, they do not provide any orientation cues for people using them in the United States. The truncated domes are an attention pattern.

Detectable warning surfaces are to be flush and have no lips between the edge of the tile and the surface it is applied to (curb ramp design exception Criteria T) when installed. Where there is no curb zone at the installation, the detectable warning surface is placed at the edge of the roadway before a pedestrian enters the marked or unmarked shoulder. A common example is an accessible route on a cut through island where the detectable warning surface is placed on the existing pavement and there is no curb. This also occurs at most shared use path connections to a roadway (Figure 800-97). The detectable warning surface is placed flush with the improved edge of the roadway or edge of the raised island in that circumstance.

DRAFT

Figure 800-97: Detectable warning surface with No Curb Zone (Source: Standard Dwg. RD904)



SHARED-USE PATH CONNECTION

For **Criteria R1, Criteria R2, and Criteria R3** detectable warning surface design exceptions, ensure placements are consistent with the standard drawings for detectable warning surfaces. This includes the maximum gap space on the outside edges of the tiles, on each side and along the back of curb. **The gap space cannot exceed two inches on all outer edges of the detectable warning surface at curb ramps (Criteria R1 or Criteria R3) at final construction.** Refer to Figure 800-98 and Figure 800-99 below. The maximum gap space allowed with monolithic curb and gutter is the same; it is typically 8 inches in total from face of curb with a standard curb top. Roundabouts use a different curb, typically a low-profile mountable curb, to define the edge of roadway. The monolithic construction distance and gap will be larger because the curb itself is 12 inches wide in that scenario. **Provide detectable warning surface installations at the back of curb when there is a curb zone. Refer to Detail "A" in the figure below and the Oregon Standard Drawings.** There are a few exceptions that are described in this section.

ODOT has various manufactured products on the Qualified Products List (QPL). Some supply radial dome sections and the detectable warning surface can be ordered with radius pieces that are customized for the site condition. Some products tiles will need to be cut and modified for installation to meet the requirements of detail "A". The 2-inch gap space will be verified during curb ramp inspections.

Figure 800-98: Detectable warning surface at Curb Ramp

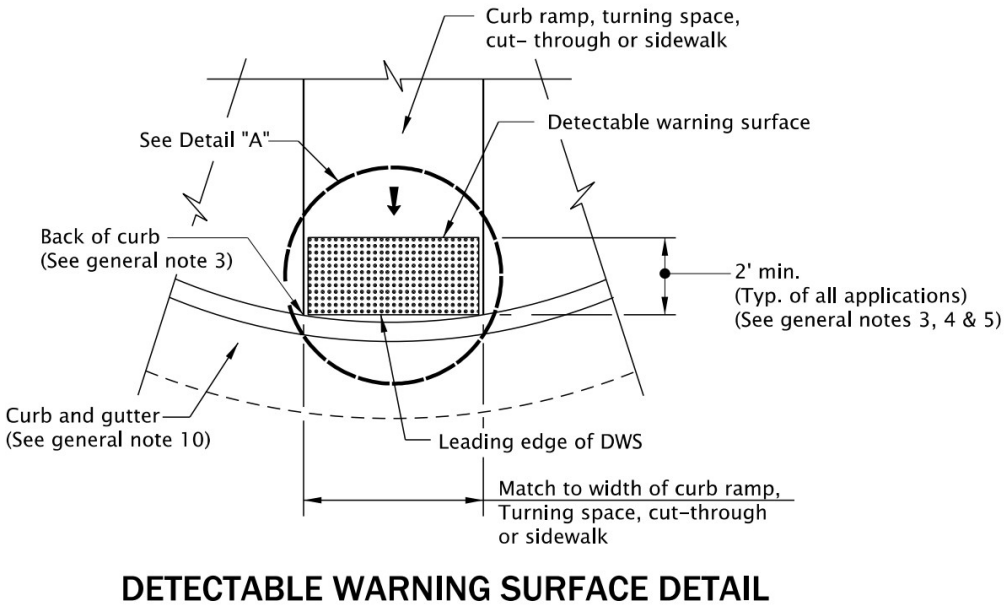
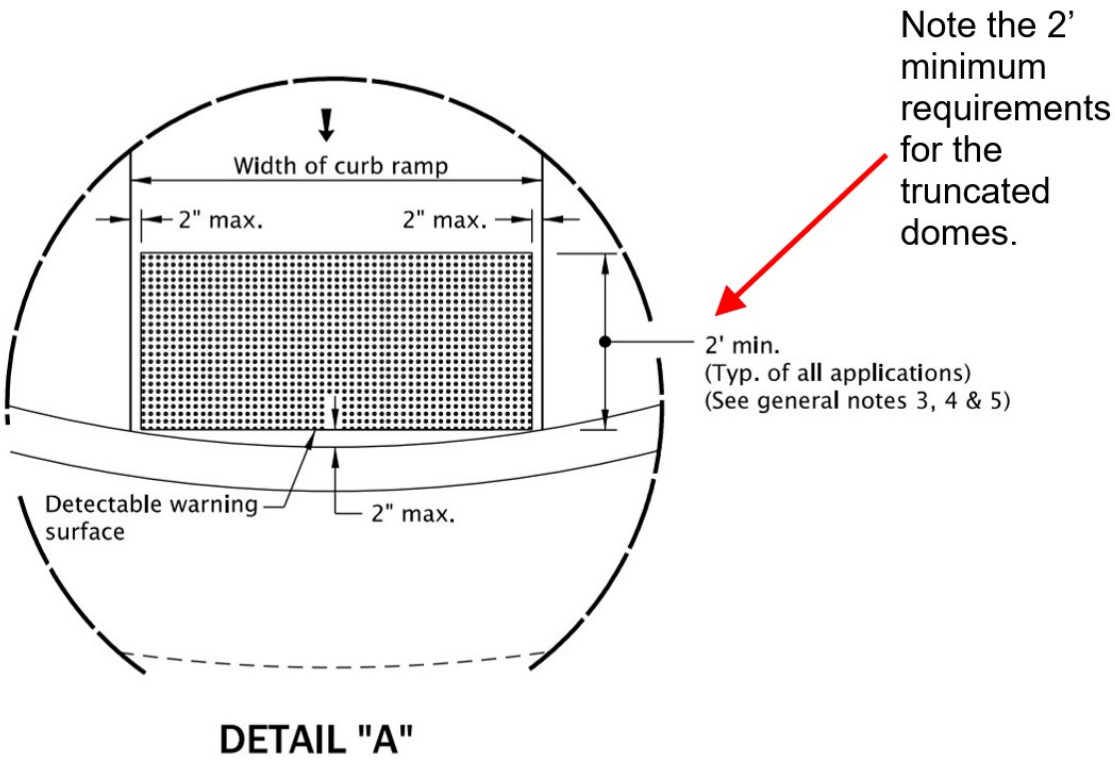


Figure 800-99: Detectable Warning Surface Maximum Gap Space Detail



Detail "A" calculations should be performed to check to see if it is physically impossible to meet the requirement for a 2 inch or less gap. A graphical check can be done in your CAD application, or it can be computed mathematically using the following formulas:

$$g=r\pm\sqrt{r^2-w^2}$$

Where:
w = ½ width of the curb ramp
r = radius of the curb
g = the gap between the detectable warning surface and the back of the curb

This formula will yield two answers, a longer length, and a shorter length. The shorter length is the gap. The sum of the two answers is the diameter of the circle or 2r.

$r=\sqrt{g^2-w^2}/2g$ to find the radius with a specific gap and curb ramp width.

$w=\sqrt{2gr-g^2}$ to find the width with a specific gap and radius.

ODOT standard radius is 20 feet on minor road approaches. Local street conditions are more likely to encounter small radius curbs.

The detectable warning surface is typically placed at the back of curb for a minimum depth of 2 feet. **The two feet must be completely filled with the truncated domes and maintain the required dome spacing dimensions.** Gaps in between abutting tiles are not permitted to exceed ¼ inch. Dome spacing can be maintained with some creative cutting of the tiles which minimizes the amount of product waste. In some cases, the individual truncated dome is ground to a flush surface on the edges to ensure a lip is not created in the walkway. Refer to Figure 800-100 and Figure 800-101 where detectable warning surface tiles are cut to fit a radius at the curb ramp where all spacing requirements for installation are met. Designers do not need to layout tile placement in contract plans in most scenarios unless a specific need arises.

DRAFT

Figure 800-100: Example 1, Detectable Warning Surface Rectangular Tile Cutting to Fit Radius



Figure 800-101: Example 2, Detectable Warning Surface Rectangular Tile Cutting to Fit Radius

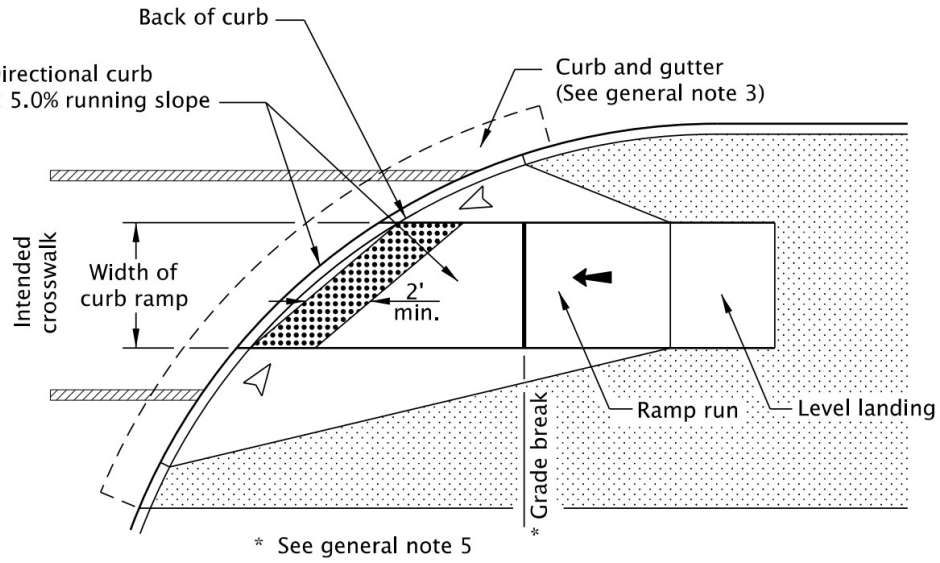


821.1.3 Directional Curb Ramp Installation

To ensure that the ramp run(s) on the curb ramp system are perpendicular at the top and bottom of the ramp run (Criteria T), a directional curb may be required along the radius of the corner. The placement of the detectable warning surface is determined by the length of the directional curb from the lower grade break of the ramp run and whether the area is traversable by pedestrians.

When flares are constructed with a directional curb, the detectable warning surface is set at the back of the curb. The directional curb forces the lowest grade break position of the ramp run to be indented at least 2 feet to install wet set detectable warning products. The tiles are rigid and installing tiles over a grade break is difficult to achieve while maintaining all requirements of the accessible route. The category of product that can be installed over a grade break is liquid applied detectable warning surface.

Figure 800-102: Directional Curb with Flared Construction



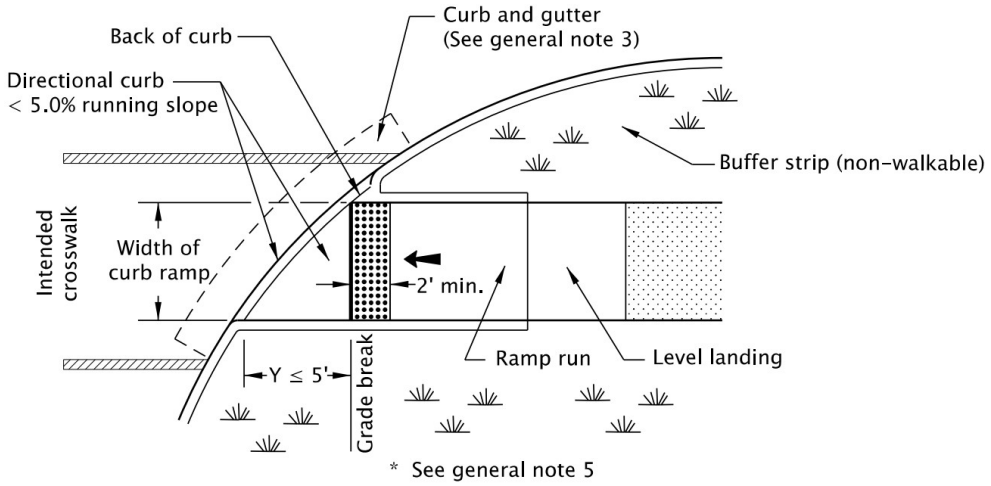
CURB RAMP CROSSING

DIRECTIONAL CURB WITH FLARED CONSTRUCTION

(Source: Standard Dwg. RD905)

When there is a buffer zone treatment that has a curb return constructed with a non-traversable surface, determine the longest length of the directional curb parallel to the running slope. When the longest length is less than or equal to 5.0 feet (verify both ends of the directional curb), the tiles are installed above the grade break on the bottom of ramp run. Pedestrians stopped at the detectable warning surface are generally understood to be signaling intent to use the crosswalk. Refer to the Figure 800-103~~Figure 800-66~~ below.

Figure 800-103: Directional Curb with Grade Break Less than 5 Feet and No Flare

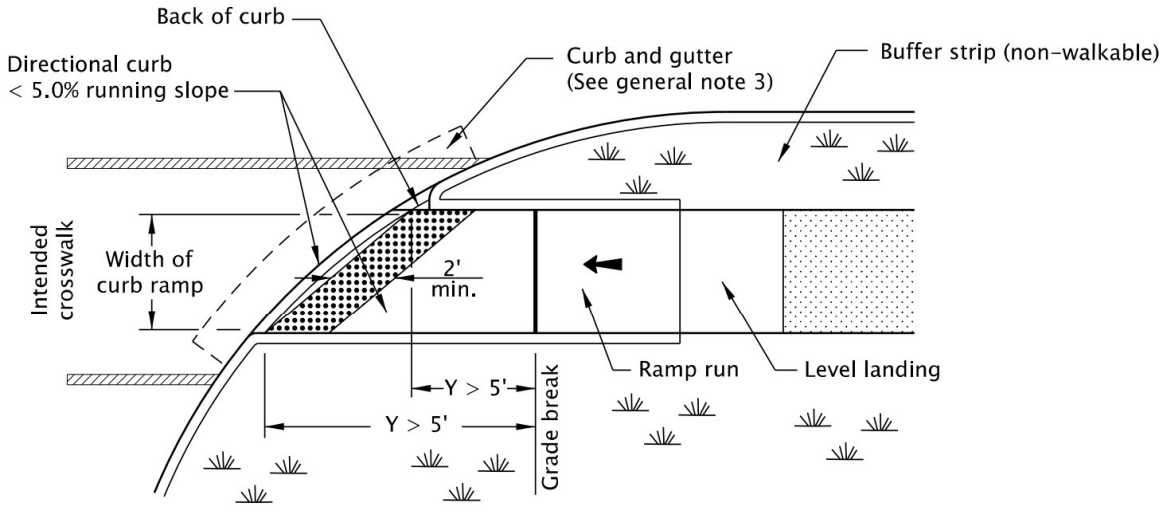


CURB RAMP CROSSING
GRADE BREAK ≤ 5 FT. FROM BACK OF CURB

(Source: Standard Dwg. RD905)

When one of side of a directional curb (verify both ends) is larger than 5.0 feet, detectable warning surfaces are placed along the back of curb where a pedestrian is more likely to be recognized and showing intent to use the crosswalk. See Figure 800-104~~Figure 800-67~~ below.

Figure 800-104: Directional Curb with Grade Break Larger than 5 Feet and No Flare



CURB RAMP CROSSING
GRADE BREAK > 5 FT. FROM BACK OF CURB

(Source: Standard Drawing RD905)

Figure 800-105: Directional Curb with Grade Break Less than 5 feet and No Flare Photo



821.1.4 Driveway Installations

Private driveways located between public street intersections are not required to provide pedestrian crossings across the highway. However, if the private driveway has a walkway on either side, then it must have an ADA accessible path across the driveway. There are three general types of driveways in urbanized areas: dustpan, lowered dustpan, and driveways with curb radii. Refer to Figure 800-106 through Figure 800-109~~Figure 800-72~~ for detectable warning surface installation requirements at driveways.

For unsignalized driveways with curbed radii at the approach, install detectable warning surfaces at the approach with a curb ramp (see Figure 800-107), Criteria R3. Review Part 500, Section 505 to determine which driveway design treatment is appropriate for the approach volume. **When a private driveway is signalized, treat it as a public intersection with a crosswalk and provide detectable warning surfaces as required (see Figure 800-107 through Figure 800-109).** Signalization allows vehicles to operate free flow across the driveway on a green indicator, and pedestrians are to be warned they are entering the roadway realm. Signalized protected bike lanes, need to be reviewed for pedestrian right of way and operation to determine if detectable warning surfaces are needed for that live lane of traffic. ***Consultation with the Senior ADA Standards Engineer and State Bicycle & Pedestrian Design Engineer is required.***

Figure 800-106: No Detectable Warning at Dustpan and Lowered Driveways

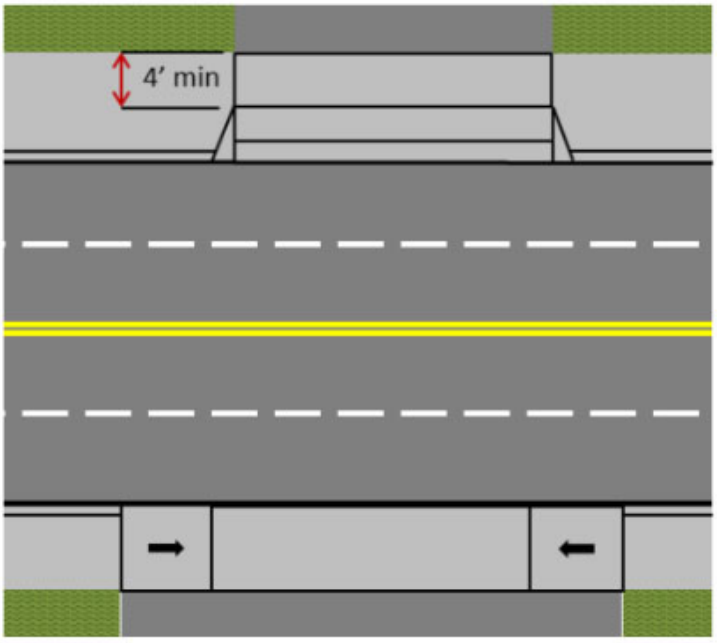


Figure 800-107: Detectable Warning Surface at Curb Radii Driveway

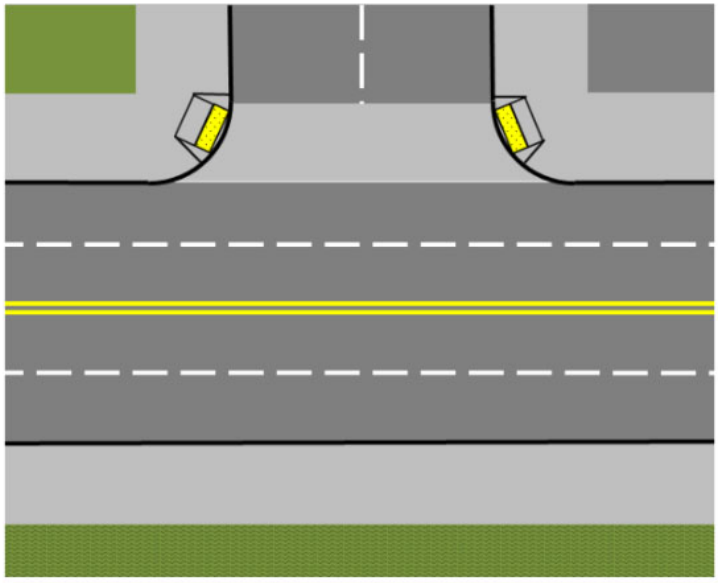


Figure 800-108: Signalized Driveway Example 1

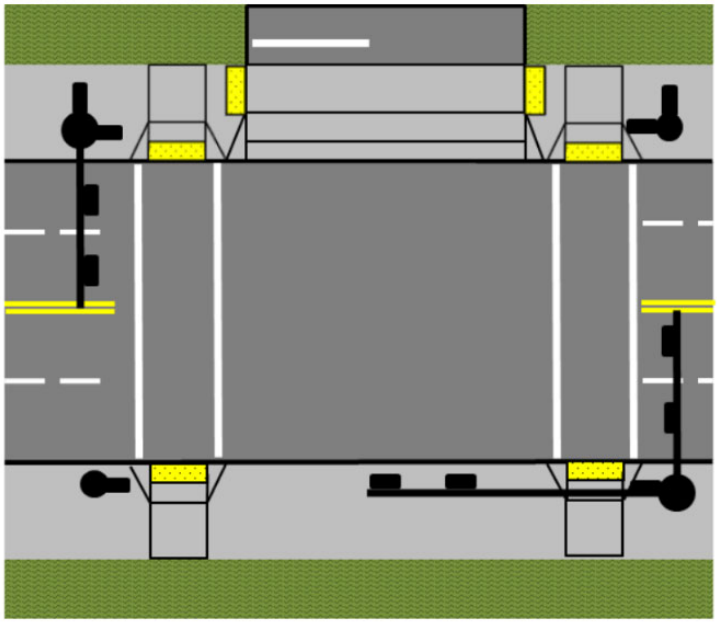
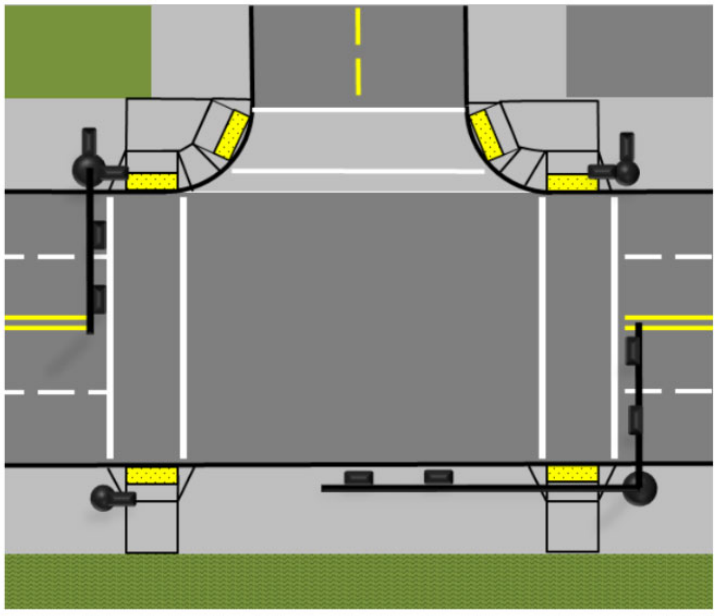


Figure 800-109: Signalized Driveway Example 2



821.1.5 Raised Crosswalks, Truck Aprons, Protected Bike Lanes, Pedestrian Lanes, and Pedestrian Pads

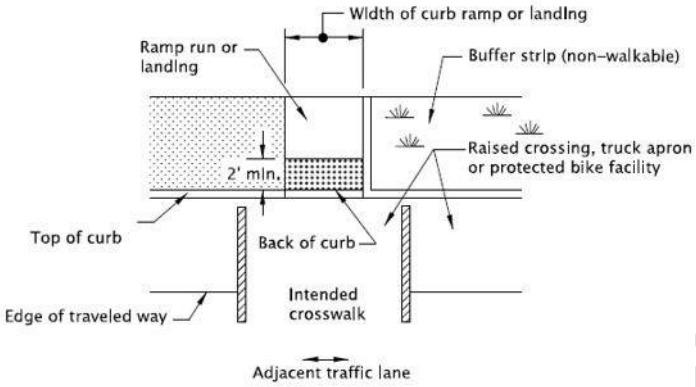
Detectable warning surfaces are to be placed where the pedestrian encounters the boundary of the vehicular way (Criteria R3) for raised crosswalks, truck aprons, protected bike lane, pedestrian lanes, and pedestrian pads. Pedestrian waiting areas are established outside the truck swept path. ***Consultation with the Senior ADA Standards Engineer is required for scenarios that are not illustrated in the Oregon Standard Drawings for the appropriate detectable warning surface design.***

Review the Oregon drawings in the RD 900s for additional details on detectable warning surface placement. Refer to Section 810.7.4 for pedestrian lane placement example in the figure, where vehicle off tracking analysis should be performed to determine the best location for installation of the detectable warning surface. Pedestrian pads are another area typically designed for accessible pedestrian push button access. When the pedestrian pad lies outside of the normal roadway shoulder, detectable warning surfaces are installed to denote the boundary of the operating roadway.

Detectable warning placement for separated bike lanes is illustrated on RD1140 when there is a pedestrian refuge area/ buffer strip provided. When bike lane facilities are designed at the same elevation of the pedestrian access route walkway, there is not a clear means of providing mode separation. A bike curb is one alternative to create a small grade separation between the two travel modes to discourage intermingling of bicyclists and pedestrians as shown on RD1140, refer to Section 900 for more guidance on protected bike lane design. ***Consultation in these scenarios with both the Senior ADA Standards Engineer and State Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Engineer is required as best practices are still evolving to ensure the system is useable for all pedestrians with various disabilities.***

DRAFT

Figure 800-110: Raised Crossing, Truck Apron or Protected Bike Facility



RAISED CROSSING, TRUCK APRON
OR PROTECTED BIKE FACILITY

Source: Standard Drawing RD904

821.1.6 Transit Installations

[Reserved for future content]

821.1.7 Rail Crossing Installations

Detectable warning surfaces are placed in advance of the sidewalk and rail track interface to alert pedestrians with vision impairments of the presence of the rail crossing. Criteria R3, on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184) discusses detectable warning placement based on the type of rail operation service. Refer to Section 840 for detectable warning placement at rail crossings that follow Oregon drawing RD908. ***Rail crossing designs will require coordination for approval of the Rail Crossing Order reviewed by the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division, which will depict the detectable warning surface location for installation along with other pedestrian treatments. When the railway is very close to the highway travel way or may involve signalized pedestrian crossing of the railway, early coordination with the Senior ADA Standards Engineer is required to discuss appropriate treatments of detectable warning surfaces and design exceptions.***

821.2 Detectable Guide Strips

Detectable guide strip placement is based on emerging best practices in the United States for tactile walking surface indicators used primarily for low vision and blind traveling pedestrians.

Placing the detectable guide strip with the correct orientation of the bars or lines of the linear feature is important as this pattern provides different information from the attention pattern of the truncated dome. **Ensure the system is accessible and useable at roundabouts by installing a blue detectable guide strip near the bike ramp to effectively locate the pedestrian crosswalk and to guide pedestrians along the intended walkway.**

Truncated dome detectable warning surfaces are not to be installed in lieu of the detectable guide strip. Existing truncated dome detectable warning surfaces may remain in place at bike ramps at a roundabout if it is designed like a bike lane drop; ***however, the detectable guide strip should be added when a construction or maintenance project is in the vicinity of the intersection of the roundabout.*** Detectable warning surfaces consisting of truncated dome panels located at the bottom of the curb ramp in addition to the detectable guide strip is not prohibited, therefore it does not need to be removed if already in place.

The truncated dome panel at a bike lane drop provides a secondary message to pedestrians if the detectable guide strip is not initially understood or missed. Truncated dome detectable warning surfaces installed in the parallel or angled ramp approach will need to be removed and replaced with a detectable guide strip. In these cases, it is not intended to be a crosswalk entrance or exit curb ramp and the detectable warning surface give a mixed and unintended message. **Review Oregon drawing RD909 for placement location of the detectable guide strip when the ramp serves only bicyclists.** Refer to Section 845 for shared use paths at roundabouts. **When the constructed curb ramp serves both pedestrians and bicyclists, refer to Oregon Standard Drawing RD902 and install the truncated dome detectable warning surface.**

Section 830 Crosswalks and Crossings

Sidewalks provide mobility along the highway for transportation, but full pedestrian accommodation also requires frequent and convenient crossing opportunities. Wide highways carrying large traffic volumes can be barriers to pedestrians, making facilities on the other side difficult to access. Crossing opportunities are not limited to marked crosswalks and signals; many other design elements can enhance the pedestrian's ability to cross a highway.

Most pedestrian crashes occur when a pedestrian crosses a road, often at locations other than controlled intersections. Mid-block and uncontrolled intersection crossings need to be considered, as people will take the shortest route to their destination. Prohibiting such movements is counter-productive if pedestrians cross the road with no protection. ~~It is better to design highways~~Consider designs on the highway that ~~enable~~improve the pedestrians ability to cross ~~safely~~such as enhanced crosswalks.

Developed, urban state highways should provide convenient pedestrian crossing opportunities. The range of Target Spacing for pedestrian crossings ranges from 250 feet to 1500 feet based on the Urban Context. Target Spacing of pedestrian crossings is in Section 310 of the Traffic

Manual. Crossing improvements should be no closer than 300 feet from the nearest signalized crosswalk. Planning documents may also help identify potential locations for crossings. Note that crossing locations must consider property access and circulation. A full discussion on how the spacing targets were developed is available in Volume 2 of ODOT's Blueprint for Urban Design.

Safe and convenient pedestrian crossings cannot be considered in isolation from the following issues, which should be addressed when seeking solutions to specific problems. Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide describes each of the following issues in detail.

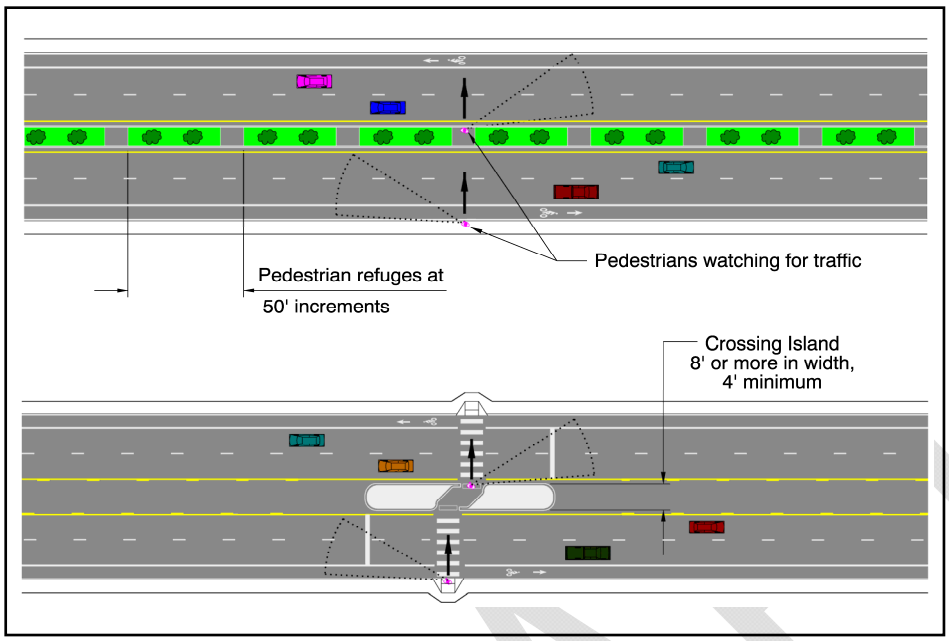
- Volume to Capacity (V/C) and Design Standards (Appendix L, page 5-3)
- Land Use (Appendix L, page 5-4)
- Transit Stops (Appendix L, page 5-4)
- Signal Spacing (Appendix L, page 5-4)
- Access Management (Appendix L, page 5-5)
- Out-of-Direction Travel (Appendix L, page 5-6)
- Midblock versus Intersection Crossings (Appendix L, page 5-6)
- Maintenance (Appendix L, page 5-7)

No one solution is applicable in all situations as the issues will vary on any given section of highway. In most cases, it is best to combine measures to improve pedestrian crossing opportunities and safety. Note that some crossing treatments and curb extensions can trigger freight mobility concerns described in Freight Mobility Policy, Appendix C, in relation to ORS 366.215 regarding a reduction in vehicle carrying capacity.

830.1 Raised Median Design and Crossing Islands

Raised medians are a solution in locations where pedestrian crossings are not isolated to a single location and crosswalks are not marked. Raised medians benefit pedestrians on two-way, multi-lane streets, as they allow pedestrians to cross only one direction of uncontrolled traffic at a time. Raised medians should be constructed so they provide a pedestrian refuge by ensuring that they have a smooth level accessible surface and pedestrian access routes through them. On landscaped medians, plants should be low height, so they do not obstruct visibility, and are spaced far enough apart to allow passage by pedestrians. Flat, paved areas can be provided approximately every 50 feet to provide a place to stand and wait.

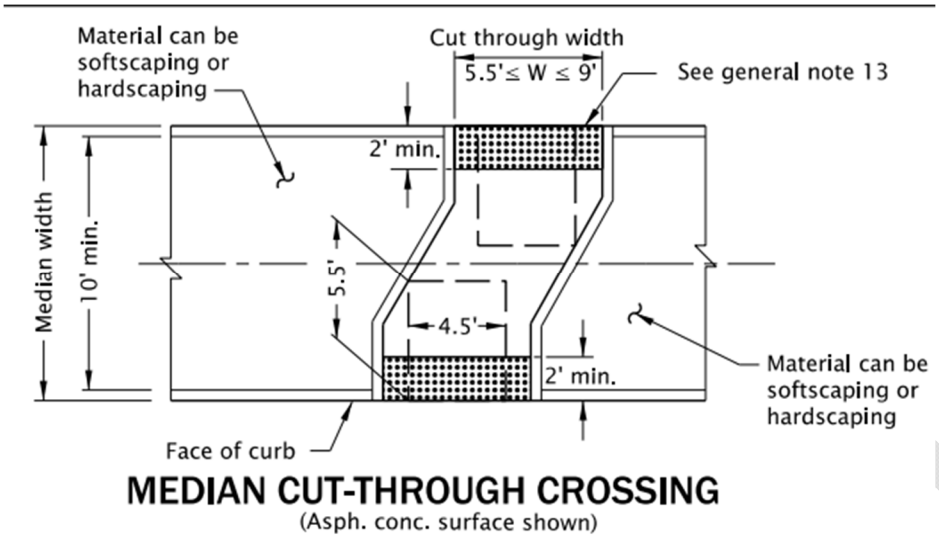
Figure 800-111: Continuous Raised Median versus Cut-Through Crossing Island



Where it is not possible to provide a continuous raised median, crossing islands can be created between controlled intersections. These should be located across from high pedestrian generators such as schools, park entrances, senior and disabled residential facilities, libraries, parking lots, etc. An island can also be provided in the middle of an intersection. An island should be at least 4.0 feet wide, preferably more, especially if bicycles are accommodated and to be considered useable by pedestrians. See Section 831 for bicycle crossing accommodation. **Install truncated domes in the cut through if the cut through length can provide at least 2 feet of separation between detectable warning surface panels consisting of truncated domes, this corresponds to Criteria R2 on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist** (Form 734-5184)**.** *The cut-through area may be angled up to 45 degrees to position pedestrians to face oncoming traffic for a portion of the crossing.* ***The curb line is aligned parallel with the intended crosswalk at the entry and exit points to provide orientation cues for low vision and blind pedestrians, and this treatment removes potential tripping concerns.***

DRAFT

Figure 800-112: Angled Median Cut-Through Crossing



The length of an island should be at least 6-feet parallel to the traveled way. *It is preferable to extend 30 feet to the advance stop bar*. Islands must be large enough to provide refuge for several pedestrians waiting at once. For wheelchair accessibility, it is preferable to provide at-grade connections rather than perpendicular curb ramps. Poles should be mounted away from curb ramps and out of the pedestrian path.

Two stage crossings must be designed wide enough so that users are out of the traveled way. It must accommodate mobility devices which can be up to 60 inches long and provide detectable warning surfaces (DWS) for low vision users (See RD700's). ***A fully accessible two stage crossing pedestrian refuge with curbing is typically at least 7.5 feet wide including the curb and construction margins for DWS panel construction.*** Narrower widths of 6.5 feet can meet the ADA needs if the island design is surface mounted into the roadway (allowing 3 inches for construction errors on each side of the DWS). See DET 1771 for typical midblock RRFB construction requirements and configuration.

At wide intersections, there is often a triangular area between the through lanes and right turn lane that is not used by motor vehicle traffic. Placing a raised island in this area benefits pedestrians by:

- Allowing pedestrians to cross fewer lanes at a time, and to judge conflicts separately;
- Providing a refuge so that slower pedestrians can wait for a break in the traffic stream;
- Reduces the crossing distances (which provides signal timing benefits) providing an opportunity to place easily accessible pedestrian push-buttons.
- Simplifying signalization where the right turn lane can be left un-signalized.

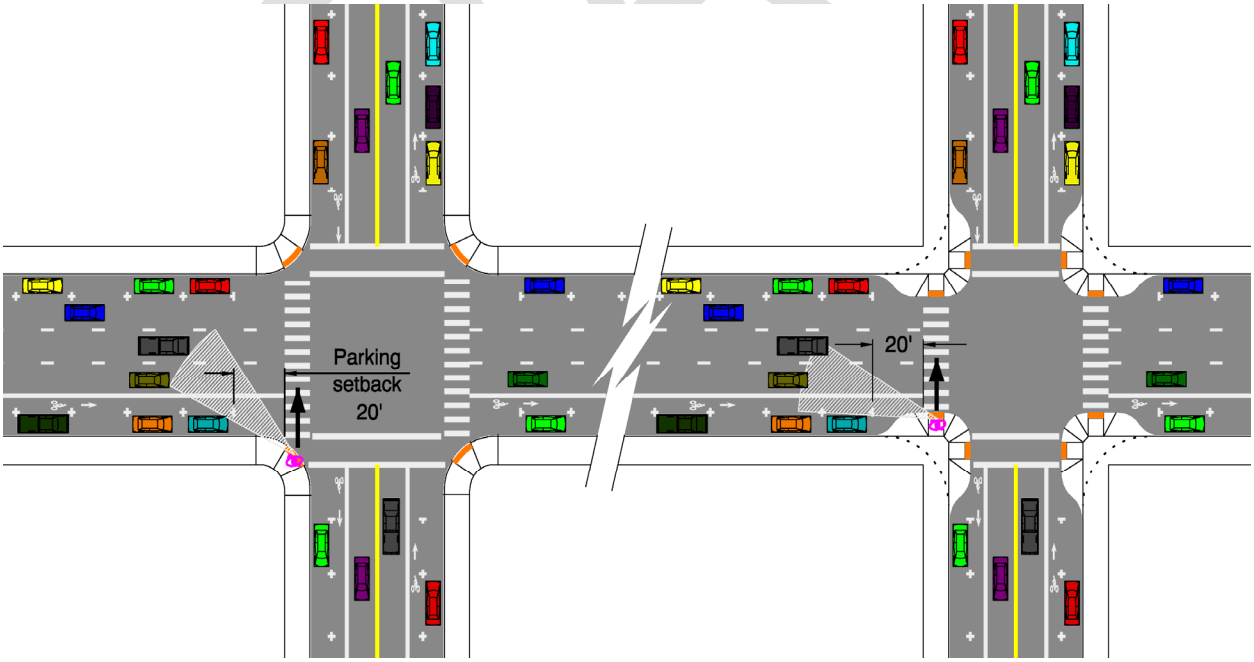
DRAFT

830.2 Curb Extensions

Curb extensions are used in conjunction with on-street parking or wide shoulders. Mid-block curb extensions may be considered where pedestrians frequently cross between midblock generators on both sides of the road. Where parking is not marked in the shoulder, curb extensions enforce the ORS 811.550(17) restrictions which prohibit parked vehicles 20 feet from the crosswalk line.

Curb extensions provide many benefits to the pedestrian and use of the public right of way. Curb extensions can also provide a traffic calming effect, enhance the visual character of the community, and provide increased pedestrian circulation area at the crosswalk. Specific design considerations for the curb extension include street sweeping operations, snow removal operations, large truck off tracking and capturing storm water with drainage design. Curb extensions reduce the pedestrian exposed crossing distance by extending the walkway into the Transition Realm. Curb extensions improve the visibility of pedestrians for motorists. They provide a place for pedestrians to congregate while waiting to cross the street when the pedestrian volumes are large. Curb extensions increase the space available to provide a curb ramp and meet the ADA geometric requirements. Refer to Section 815 and Section 506 for more guidance of curb extension design.

Figure 800-113: Sight Lines with Curb Extensions



When curb extensions aren't viable due to the need to accommodate larger semi-trucks, a truck apron has a similar effect for delineating passenger car travel paths. See Section 830.3 on truck apron design.

Curb extensions can improve signal head alignment and stop sign placement. Reducing pedestrian crossing distance improves signal timing if the pedestrian phase controls the minimum green time for the corresponding signal phase. The time saved is substantial when two corners can be treated with curb extensions. Non-signalized intersections also benefit from curb extensions by reducing the time pedestrians are in a crosswalk which improves pedestrian safety and vehicle movement.

830.3 Truck Aprons

Truck aprons are designed for occasional large semi-truck to traverse when negotiating an intersection corner. Right turns are typically where large vehicles off track when the radius is not sufficiently sized, see Section 502 on accommodations of truck turning. Truck aprons delineate the passenger car vehicular travel path most effectively when the truck apron has a slight slope, low profile mountable curbing and contrasting pavement markings to discourage use. The pedestrian access route slope requirements must be maintained for the crosswalk including the truck apron (See RD100's). **Detectable warning surfaces are installed where the pedestrian enters the traveled way at the crosswalk at the edge of the sidewalk (See RD900s).** Truck aprons are not a place for pedestrians to wait to cross the street. See discussion in Section 800 on blended transition curb ramp configurations.

830.4 Marked Crosswalks

All legs of signalized intersections should have a marked crosswalk. Crosswalks may also be considered at other locations. Combined with curb extensions, illumination, and signage, marked crosswalks can improve the visibility of pedestrian crossings. Crosswalks send the message to motorists that they are encroaching on a pedestrian area. A traffic study will determine if a marked crosswalk enhances pedestrian safety. This is usually in locations that are likely to receive high use, based on adjacent land use. Refer to the ODOT Traffic Manual for further details on marking crosswalks and required approvals.

Marked crosswalks are typically 10 feet wide, or the width of the approaching walkway if it is greater. Consider high visibility crosswalks to increase their effectiveness. Textured crossings, using non-slip bricks or pavers, are generally not recommended. They give the initial impression that the visibility of the crosswalk is enhanced, but after time they fade and are barely distinguishable from the roadway surface. The inherent roughness also makes them difficult for wheelchair users, and often does not meet the pedestrian access route surface requirements.

DRAFT

830.5 Enhanced Crosswalks and Crossings

For a thorough and detailed discussion on intersection design, see Part 500. The following discussion will help the designer understand some of the key intersection design features that help enhance the safety and convenience of pedestrians and bicyclists. Most conflicts between roadway users occur at intersections, where one group of travelers crosses the path of others. Good intersection design clearly identifies right of way of operations between motorists, pedestrians, and bicyclists. Enhanced crosswalk treatments are a function of the ODOT Traffic Section. Refer to Section 310.3 of the ODOT Traffic Manual for enhanced crosswalk treatments.

At signalized intersections, pedestrian signal heads should be clearly visible - this requires that they not be placed too far from the ~~nearest safe refuge.~~crosswalk or curb ramp. Crossing islands and curb extensions should be used to decrease crossing distances. Bicycle lanes should not be placed to the right of a right-turn only lane or to the left of a left-turn only lane, unless conflicting movements are controlled by a traffic control signal. Other intersection design principles for pedestrians and bicyclists are discussed in detail in Part 200, Section 224.1 and in Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, pages 6-1 and 6-5.

Conflicts between motor vehicles, pedestrians and bicyclists often occur at interchange areas. Free-flow ramps should be avoided. Where they exist, "Turning Vehicles Yield to Peds" symbol sign may be considered for unprotected pedestrian crossings. Consider grade separation when there is either two-lane right or left turn lanes or where free flow ramps are utilized. Other interchange design principles for pedestrians and bicyclists are discussed in detail in Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, pages 6-20 to 6-25.

Crosswalks at multilane segments of roundabouts and multilane channelized turn lanes require additional enhanced crosswalk treatments that alert motorists to the presence of pedestrians or slow or stop traffic at those crosswalks. The enhanced crosswalk treatment may consist of one or more of the following enhanced treatments in this circumstance: a raised crosswalk, a rectangular rapid flashing beacon, a pedestrian hybrid beacon or traffic signal with a pedestrian signal head.

Roundabouts

Refer to Section 509 on design of roundabout for additional design considerations at roundabouts. ***Where a pedestrian must cross more than one active vehicular lane without a raised pedestrian refuge island area between each lane, an enhanced crosswalk treatment is required.***

Multi-Lane Channelized Turn Lane

Multi-Lane channelized turn lanes may occur with various intersection layouts. ***Dual right turns and dual left turns that are channelized require enhanced crosswalk treatments for accessibility.*** It is common to see channelized multi-lane right turns at intersections, however, more unique intersection solutions including diverging

DRAFT

diamonds interchanges or continuous flow intersections may also warrant an enhanced crosswalk treatment.

830.5.1 Illumination

Providing adequate illumination is essential to increase nighttime safety, especially at mid-block or uncontrolled crossings which are often not expected by motorists. Guidance for illumination at pedestrian crossings is given in Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide (pages 5-12 to 5-13), the ODOT Traffic Manual (Section 310.3), the ODOT Traffic Lighting Design Manual, the IESNA Lighting Handbook (Tables 2 and 3), and the Federal Highway Administration report FHWA-HRT-08-053.

830.5.2 Signing

Review the Traffic Manual and MUTCD for advance warning recommendations. Signs might include advance warning signs, pedestrian crossing signs at the crossing itself, or regulatory signs at intersections to reinforce the message that motorists must yield to pedestrians. Excessive signage leads to signs being missed or ignored by drivers. These signs should only be placed at warranted locations.

830.5.3 Pedestrian Signals, Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons, and Hybrid Beacons

A pedestrian activated signal may be warranted where a significant number of people are expected to cross a roadway at a particular location. Anticipated use must be high enough for motorists to get used to stopping frequently for a red light (a light that is rarely activated may be ignored when in use). Additionally, sight-distance must be adequate to ensure that motorists will see the light in time to stop. Warning signs should be installed on the approaching roadway.

Refer to the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) for pedestrian signal warrants. Pedestrian signals may be combined with curb extensions, raised medians and refuges.

Crosswalks alone do not reliably warn drivers to stop for pedestrians on high speed or high volume multilane highways. Pedestrian-activated flashing beacons warn drivers that pedestrians are intending to cross. Examples of pedestrian activated crosswalk beacons include Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons, Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons and circular amber flashing beacons. Pedestrian activated crosswalk beacons may be combined with curb extensions, raised medians and refuges. Refer to the ODOT Traffic Manual, Section 310.3 for further details.

DRAFT

Pedestrian activation of a pedestrian traffic control device is required to be accessible to all pedestrians. Pedestrian pushbuttons are a service that activates the traffic control device for pedestrian use. The space to activate the push button is required to be clear and free of obstructions, level, free of lips, and of adequate size to approach the push button. The hardware installation of the push button must also meet the operable parts requirements under the ADA. Refer to the Traffic Signal Design Manual and the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (ODOT Form No. 734-5184).

Section 831 Raised Crosswalks

Raised crosswalks are an enhancement to the crosswalk geometry in the roadway which provides an elevated section perpendicular to the moving vehicle and bike traffic. ODOT Traffic Section evaluates potential treatments at crosswalks as part of enhanced crosswalk studies (see Form 734-5350). The roadway designer works with the Region Traffic Unit at locations that may involve raised crosswalk treatments. Refer to Part 200 and Part 500 for other geometric design considerations for intersection design.

Decades of research recommends considering several treatments to improve safety at enhanced crosswalks because one treatment alone, especially on high-volume roadways, does not necessarily result in positive safety outcomes. Therefore, ODOT focuses on enhancing crosswalks using a variety of treatments – including raised crosswalks – tailored to the context of the crosswalk to improve safety and network connectivity for people walking.

Research continues to explore the safety benefits to a pedestrian when a raised crosswalk is constructed. Raised crosswalks geometrics are designed to perform the following functions:

- Improve driver yielding to pedestrians crossing by reducing vehicle speed prior to crosswalk.
- Facilitate audible cues for blind and low vision pedestrians that vehicles are decelerating or preparing to stop. It may also provide tactile edges (limits) of the crosswalk which aid in navigation under foot.
- Increase conspicuity of the crosswalk and pedestrian.

Raised crosswalks in its entirety, or a portion of crosswalk may be considered as an option as discussed in the Traffic Manual. For example, locations that might include raised crosswalks include:

- a portion of the crosswalk at a channelized turn lane
- crosswalks at roundabout intersections
- a midblock crosswalk
- a raised intersection

DRAFT

- a portion of the crosswalk at transit stops where bicyclist share space with pedestrians
- a portion of the crosswalk in protected bike lanes

Consult with the ETSB Roadway for current geometric guidance for approved raised crosswalk installations. Refer to Part 900 for geometric requirements when a portion of the crosswalk is raised in the protected bike lane. **The cross slope of the pedestrian access route of the raised crosswalk is required to meet the accessible cross slope requirements identified in Section 815.4.4.** Pavement markings for the raised crosswalk are specified in the Pavement Marking Manual.

Section 835 Bicycle Crossings

Drivers are required to stop for pedestrians in crosswalks but are not necessarily required to stop for bicyclists. Bicyclists can use crosswalks to cross the street at pedestrian speed. However, most bicyclists ride within crosswalks. Where bicycles are prevalent, such as bicycle boulevards, crossing islands can be designed to serve bicyclists and pedestrians separately at the crosswalk. *If the crossing island acts as a diverter to through motor vehicle traffic, include a separate opening in the crossing island 6 feet to 8 feet clear width for the bicycle movements to match the bicycle lane dimension.* Or consider two openings, each with 5.5 feet clear width for each direction of travel or mode of travel. The cut-through area may be angled up to 45 degrees to position bicyclists to face oncoming traffic. The desirable island clear width is 10 feet or greater to accommodate bicycles with trailers or groups of bicycles, or for shared use paths. The minimum length to accommodate a single bicycle is 6-feet.

See additional discussion for bicycle design in Part 900. Protected bike lanes add complexity to both the pedestrian design of the crosswalk and bicycle facility to ensure both modes use the facility as intended.

Section 840 Pedestrian Rail Crossings

The Federal Rail Administration categorizes pedestrian crossings as either a “pathway” or “station”. Practitioners should refer to the MUTCD for pedestrian railroad crossing treatments and provisions in the FHWA Highway-Rail Crossing Handbook, 3rd Edition for further guidance. Review the Federal Railroad Administrations “Engineering Design for Pedestrian Safety at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings “published report July 2016. ***All rail crossing improvements or alterations are reviewed by the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division for approval of a Rail Crossing Order.*** Coordination is required with the Traffic Section for signalized rail crossings. Review the Railroad Diagnostic Meeting site notes for improvements and actions required for the project.

Railroad crossings include conventional rail cars used for transporting goods and freight. Operating speeds may vary from 40 mph to 80 mph. Light rail vehicles are commonly known as light rail, streetcars, or trolleys and travel at low speeds, 25 mph to 35 mph typically. Streetcars operate in the travel lane used by vehicles in the travel way realm. High-Speed or Rapid Rail trains generally reach traveling speeds of 150 mph to 220 mph.

840.1 Geometric Controls

840.1.1 ~~Walkways crossing a rail track are not typically controlled by the automated warning gates/arms.~~ Horizontal Alignment and Clearances

Provide a walkway width across the rail tracks at least as wide as the approaching walkway but not be less than 5 feet. ***Pedestrian movements should be designed so pedestrians do not wait between a set of tracks where multiple set of rail tracks are installed at a pedestrian railroad crossing.*** **At rail crossings equipped with automatic protective devices, the traffic control device support shall be at least 5 feet from the nearest walkway edge to the centerline of the rail signal mast.** This separation ensures the counter ballast is not in the pedestrian path of travel obstructing the walkway and prevents rail equipment from becoming a protruding object in the walkway. The rail signal mast (vehicular gate arm) and pedestrian gate arms are typically installed in unimproved surfacing material consisting of aggregate between the curb line and the pedestrian walkway. This provides detectable edging either underfoot or with white cane for pedestrian navigation around the rail equipment. The curb type and exposure in proximity to the rail track will vary to facilitate maintenance access at the rail track crossing.

Provide a walkway horizontal alignment that ~~*is as close*~~*allows for users* ***to*** ~~*a right angle or 90 degrees*~~*orient themselves perpendicular* ***to the*** *rail tracks or to the maximum* ***extent practical*** ~~*at the pedestrian rail crossing*~~. When a walkway crosses rail tracks at a skew, people in wheelchairs are usually able to align themselves at a right angle within the width of a 6-foot sidewalk. Some people prefer to cross at a slight angle, so both caster wheels don't hit the tracks at the same time. ~~Curving the entire sidewalk as shown below to cross tracks at 90º is usually unnecessary.~~*The construction or modification of driveways within 100 feet of any railroad track at existing grade crossings requires a rail order. The concrete rail track apron shall extend a minimum of 3 feet beyond the outer edge of the walkway.*

Figure 800-114: Skewed Walkway and Rail Track Crossing



840.1.2 Vertical Alignment and Clearances

The vertical ~~clearance~~alignments and clearances of ~~a traffic control device over the~~ walkway ~~shall be~~surfaces at ~~least 8 feet above~~rail grade crossings are to be in the same plane as the ~~finished surface~~top of the ~~walkway. When the rail crossing is a shared use path, the vertical clearance shall~~rails and be ~~at least 10 feet~~constructed and maintained in a reasonably smooth condition. ***The vertical profile of the pedestrian rail crossing should remain a constant grade for at least 12 feet beyond the outer most rail of the pedestrian rail crossing.*** *The same vertical grade should extend to include the detectable warning surface or stop line when provided.* **Flange way gaps in rail at-grade crossings may not exceed 2-1/2 -inches wide in the direction of pedestrian travel on light rail vehicle tracks (non-freight) and may not exceed 3-inches wide in the direction of pedestrian travel on railroad tracks (freight) for accessibility.**

The vertical clearance of a traffic control device over the walkway shall be at least 8 feet above the finished surface of the walkway. When the rail crossing is a shared use path, the vertical clearance shall be at least 10 feet.

See Section 1205 for further information regarding Rail requirements.

840.1.3 Tactile Walking Surface Indicators

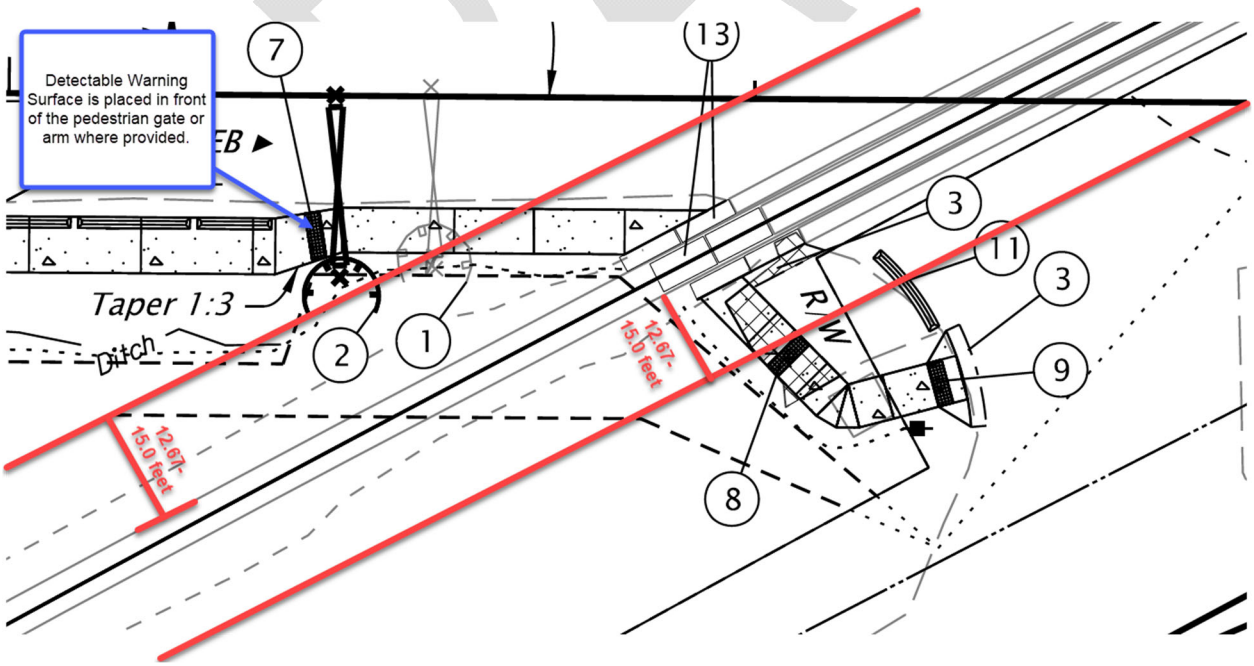
Detectable warning surfaces are placed in advance of the sidewalk and rail track interface to alert pedestrians with vision impairments of the presence of the rail crossing. Walkways crossing a rail track are not typically controlled by the automated warning gates/arms. **Criteria R3,** on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (Form 734-5184) discusses detectable warning placement based on the type of rail operation service. **Place detectable warning surfaces at rail crossings either:**

1. ~~In between the range of~~From no less than 12 ~~-~~feet ~~plus~~ 8 ~~-~~inches up to 15 feet from the nearest rail track for heavy (freight) rail, or~~.~~;
2. At least 6 ~~-~~feet from the nearest rail track for light rail.

Detectable warning surfaces should be placed immediately in advance of the marked walkway stop line if present. Where the distance between the centerline of two tracks exceeds 38 feet, additional detectable warning surfaces, designating the limits of a pedestrian refuge in between the set of tracks should be installed. **Provide detectable warning on curb ramps near the pedestrian rail crossing as described in Section 821. Provide a minimum separation of 2 feet between the curb ramp detectable warning surface and the nearest rail crossing detectable warning surface, see RD908.**

Detectable warning surfaces are installed full width of the walkway~~. Refer~~ **and prior to a pedestrian gate or arm where present.** This placement communicates to the low vision or blind user where to stop and evaluate the crossing. This also provides communication of the protruding object (the railroad gate or arm) prior to encountering the equipment when activated. See the example shown in Figure 800-115 and refer to the RD900's for additional details. Striped markings may be used to delineate the dynamic envelope of railway at pedestrian crosswalks. Consult the Senior ADA Standards Engineer and Traffic Section for approval when the project is looking to incorporate marked indicators at rail crossings.

Figure 800-115: Example of Detectable Warning Placement at Rail Crossing



840.1.4 Rail Crossing Enhancements

Active rail devices should be considered at pedestrian rail crossings with:

- high pedestrian volumes,
- high speed trains,
- extremely wide pedestrian walkways,
- complex highway-rail crossing geometry,
- locations in school zones,
- inadequate sight distance of the pedestrian at the rail crossing,
- multiple set of rail tracks that need to be crossed.

When provided, an automatic pedestrian gate shall be a placed between 2.5 feet and 4 feet maximum above the walkway surface. However, the height will remain the same as prescribed for the cars when the vehicle crossing arm also crosses the walkway. The width of the automatic pedestrian gate shall provide coverage for the full width of the walkway. *When automatic pedestrian gates are installed across a walkway for a rail crossing, an emergency egress route should be designed to leave the rail track area.*

Pedestrian rail crossing should be channelized with detectable pedestrian railing to designated pedestrian rail crossing locations that have been engineered at commuter rail and transit areas. Pedestrian fencing should not exceed 3.5 feet in height when used for pedestrian channelization to retain sight lines and not obscure a pedestrian. Pedestrian barriers/fencing in a maze type configuration may improve pedestrian safety by forcing pedestrians to look at rail traffic before proceeding to cross the rail tracks.

Section 845 Shared Use Paths

Shared use paths serve two purposes; one is providing a basic transportation need to get to destinations and the second is providing a place for recreational activity. When the pathway serves both pedestrians and bicyclists together, it is a shared use path. When pedestrians and bicyclists share a sidewalk, appropriate shared path guidelines are employed for the design. Shared use paths are designed to be fully accessible for all users for the entire width of the pathway. Combinations of the words “shared use” and “multi use,” are used interchangeably. Refer to Part 900 for additional design guidance on Shared Use Paths.

DRAFT

Figure 800-116: Shared Use Path



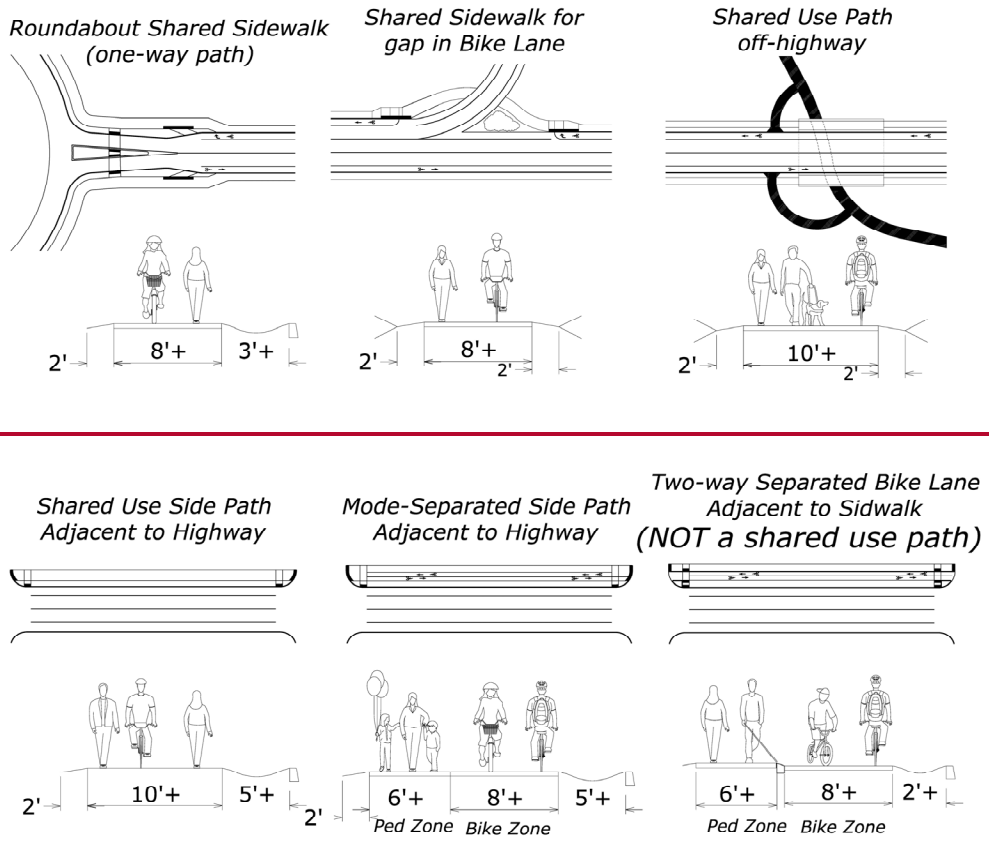
Paths accommodate many users

845.1 Shared Use Path Configurations

Shared use paths can parallel the state highway or may diverge on a separate alignment from the mainline onto other public right of way. Multi-use trails may include accommodation of additional users, such as equestrians. Sections ~~961 through 968~~960through 972 have design information that apply to all types of shared use paths. Shared use paths may be constructed on ODOT facilities that are separated from the roadway. See ~~below~~Figure 900-93 for typical examples of shared use paths that may be constructed along a highway or roadway.

DRAFT

Figure -: Types of Shared Use Paths



One type of shared use path includes facilities within the highway right of way where pedestrians and bicyclists are physically separated from the travel way realm. **A buffer zone with a physical separation of at least 5 feet from the travel realm is required for a shared use path.** Where a path is parallel and adjacent to a roadway, see Section 970. Where a bicycle lane joins a sidewalk, see Sections 971 and 981.

Well planned and designed shared use paths can provide access and mobility to pedestrians and bicyclists in areas where the roads do not serve their needs. A shared use path may have an independent alignment on or off the public right of way. Shared use paths can have their own alignment along streams, canals, utility corridors, abandoned or active railroads, and greenways. Many shared use paths serve as linear parks for people. Shared use paths can serve both utilitarian and recreational cyclists. See also Section 960.

845.1.1 Shared Use Path Operations

See ~~Chapter 7 of Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide~~Part 900 for additional information about path width, typical pavement sections, drainage, vegetation, rail requirements, illumination, and structures, preventing motor-vehicle access, use of bollards and

geometric design. In addition to design requirements in this manual, consider guidance in the AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities for path design.

~~845.1.1 Shared Use Path Operations~~

~~**Provide a clear width between the range of 10 feet – 12 feet on shared use paths.** *10 feet is the standard width for a two-way shared-use path; they should be 12 feet wide or more in areas with high use.* **Provide 8 feet of clear width on connection paths.** When pinch points occur or where long-term usage is expected to be low, 8 feet is the minimum clear width for two-way shared use paths through a design exception~~

~~When mode separation is desired between pedestrians and bicyclist, additional width is required. **Provide at least 16 feet of clear width comprising of two 5-foot bike lanes and a 6-foot walking area (Pedestrian Zone).** *Provide a clear width between 16 feet and 20 feet for mode separated facilities. Provide 18 or 20 feet in areas of very high use.* While mode separation is provided typically with striping, low vision and blind pedestrians will need additional tactile cues or TWSI installed to guide them to the intended area along the path. Consult the Senior ADA Standards Engineer for these types of treatments along with Traffic Unit for pavement markings to ensure a consistent message is designed. The entire width of the facility must still meet ADA cross slope and running slope (grade) requirements. Expect pedestrians to cross over and meander over the entire are; mode separation is best achieved with some grade separation via curb (Refer to Section 900s).~~

At roundabouts, the sidewalk becomes mixed use with bicyclists. Bicyclists typically operate in one-way flow and two-way flow for pedestrians. Widen the sidewalk width to at least 10 feet where bicyclists enter the sidewalk. **Provide at least 8 feet of clear width on a bike ramp to allow bicyclists to merge from the bike lane onto the sidewalk, 165 feet in advance of the yield line to the circulatory roadway of a roundabout**~~. See Section 8.6 and Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, Figure 1-40.~~.. Refer to the RD900s and RD1100s for placement of detectable features at bike ramps.

845.1.2 Parallel Systems to the Highway

Combining pedestrians and bicyclists together along one side of a highway on a shared use path is discouraged on highways without access control but is a preferred facility option for limited access expressways and urban freeways. Crash potential increases when bicycle traffic rides against the normal flow (reverse flow) of motor vehicle traffic on highways with frequent driveway or street access. Since expressways are designed for access restriction to motorists, many of the conflicts are mitigated. Crosswalk entry and exit points to the shared use facility need to be planned in coordination with motor vehicle restrictions on the highway. A separated bicycle facility may not be needed when a well-connected network of bicycle facilities parallel to

the freeway or expressway provides the same access that bicycle accommodation on the expressway would provide. The wide shoulder would accommodate occasional bicycles as necessary. Guidelines for providing bikeways on parallel routes are given in Section ~~946~~948.

845.1.3 Roundabouts

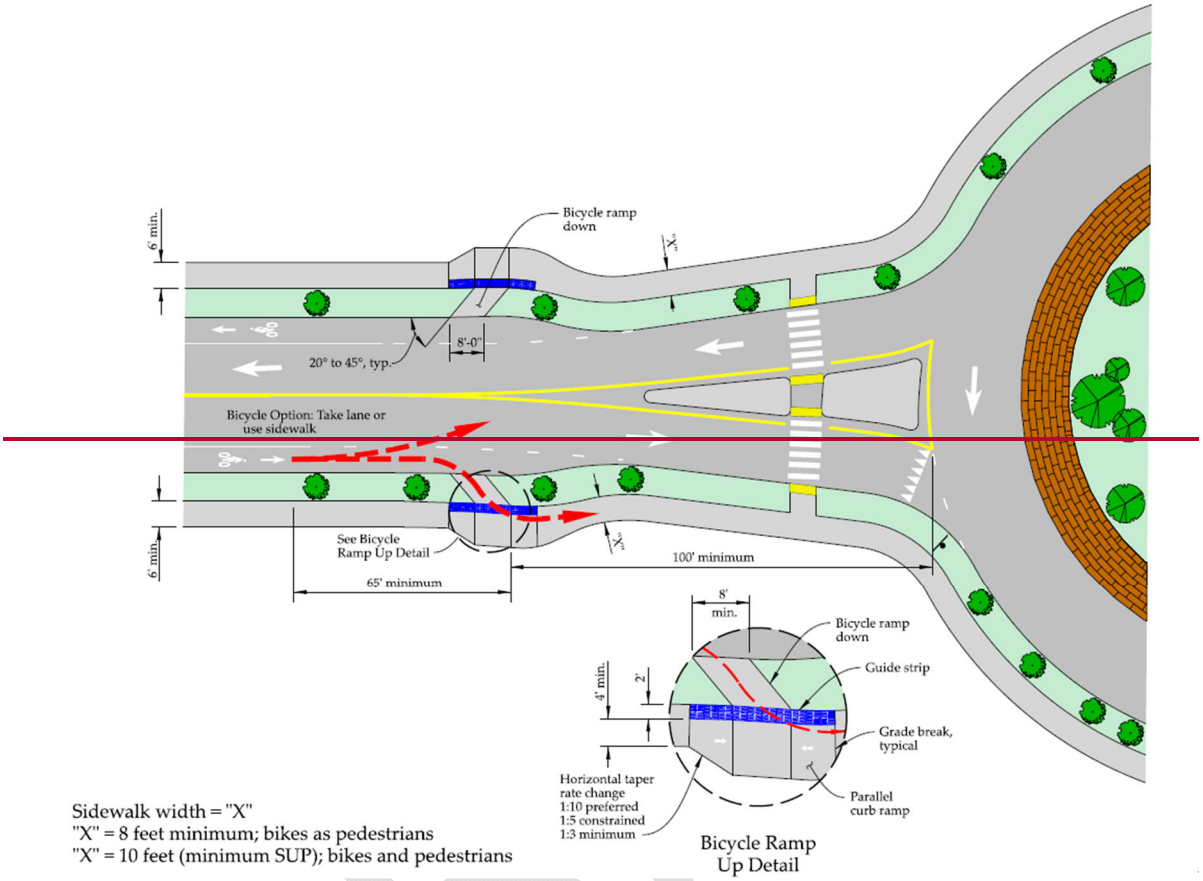
In general, bicyclists will be given a choice to enter a roundabout as a vehicle and occupy a lane until exiting the roundabout, or to use the sidewalks and crosswalks as pedestrians. For these bicyclists, a bike ramp (see below) is provided to exit the bike lane on approach to the roundabout and use the sidewalk and crosswalks in the manner of a pedestrian. This walkway results in a shared use path for a small segment along the central circle. The bike ramp is not required to be fully accessible however many of the geometrics are similar as power assisted mobility devices may travel in the shoulder under the ORS and could enter the shared use path with these sloped ramps. (See Part 900) Bike ramps are not intended for pedestrian use and requires additional treatments to communicate to the low vision and blind community it's intended use and function. Bike ramps can be confused with pedestrian curb ramps by vision impaired pedestrians. See Section 821.2 for more information on detectable guide strips.

~~Bicycle ramps serve bicycle traffic. If there is no sidewalk on the approach road to a roundabout, the entrance ramp to the sidewalk serving the roundabout functions for both bicyclists and pedestrians. Use a pedestrian curb ramp style rather than a bicycle ramp in that case.~~ ~~**An entrance and exit to the sidewalk must be provided where the sidewalk terminates to transition a pedestrian to the shoulder.**~~ ~~Refer to the RD900s for detectable warning treatments at bike ramps. An important function of bicycle ramps that merge onto the sidewalk is the interface between people walking and biking. To mitigate the potential for sight impaired pedestrians to inadvertently walk onto a bike ramp, tactile edge detection is needed along the border of the walk. One option for a detectable boundary is to use detectable guide strips.~~ ~~**A tactical walking surface indicator shall be included adjacent to bicycle ramps (see Section .)**~~ ~~***Detectable warning surfaces consisting of truncated dome panels located at the bottom of the curb ramp in addition to the detectable guide strip is not prohibited, therefore it does not need to be removed if already in place.***~~

See Section 980 through 983 for more design of bicycle ramps.

DRAFT

~~Figure -: Bike Ramp Connection to Sidewalk on Roundabout Approach Street~~



845.2 Shared Use Path Design

Sections ~~961~~960 through ~~968~~972 describe geometric design standards for sight-distance, horizontal and vertical curves. Additionally, the AASHTO Bike guide should be consulted for geometric design guidelines. Standards applicable to ODOT are summarized in this section. Though shared-use paths are intended for many users, the bicycle is the appropriate design vehicle because of its higher travel speeds. See Section 924 for design speeds for pathway segments. If design curve length or sight distance does not meet the value shown in Sections 964 and 965, based on the chosen design speed, consult with ODOT roadway unit in the Region Technical Center or the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section to discuss whether a design exception is needed.

Design Exceptions are required for path widths less than 10-feet, clear zones less than 2 feet and shy distances less than 1 foot from vertical element such as railings, walls, and fences. ~~See Chapter 7 of Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide~~See Part 900 for additional information about typical pavement sections, drainage, vegetation, rail requirements, illumination, and structures, preventing motor-vehicle access, use of bollards and geometric

design. For multiple tread trails that accommodate horses, consult the Equestrian Design Guidebook for Trails, Trailheads and Campgrounds.

845.2.1 Horizontal Alignment

A buffer zone with a physical separation of at least 5 feet from the travel realm is required for a shared use path. Sharp curves should be banked with the high side on the outside of the curve to help bicyclists maintain their balance. **The design cross-slope is 1.5 percent (2.0 percent finished surface) to provide drainage, in a crown section or shed section.** See also Section 965.

845.2.2 Vertical Alignment

When the shared use path is parallel with the mainline alignment and contiguous with the Curb Zone, the walkway shall not exceed the roadway grade under the ADA. An ADA design exception is required where a vertical profile grade is steeper than 4.5 percent (5.0 percent finished surface) on shared use paths that are not on the same highway alignment with an adjacent roadway. To meet ADA requirements, the vertical profile grade of separated shared use path shall not exceed 5.0 percent at finished construction. See Section 966 for more information.

845.2.3 Surfacing

The surface material should be hard enough to be usable by wheelchairs, strollers, and children on bicycles (the roadway should be designed to accommodate more experienced bicyclists). Recycled pavement grindings provide a suitable material. **The surface material must be meet ADA surface requirements for the full width of the shared use path.** Refer to the walkway surface and pedestrian access route requirements in Section 810. Depth of asphalt construction is shown in the RD600 series for Shared use path pavement details. Shared use paths occasionally need to allow access for maintenance vehicles which will increase the asphalt pavement foundation and final surfacing depths.

845.2.4 Clear Width

The entire width of a shared use path ~~**shall**~~is recommended to be clear of obstructions. Occasional signs may be installed to aid in wayfinding as well as bollards to deter vehicle entry. Provide as much clear width as feasible in this circumstance. **Design at least 4.5 feet clear width between vertical obstructions in the shared use path for accessibility.** Additionally, sidewalks that include bicycle traffic mixed with pedestrian traffic should have 8 feet of clear

width to allow for a minimum width multi-use pathway condition. In locations where bicycle riding on the sidewalk is prohibited by statute, appropriate signage is necessary to inform bicyclists.

845.2.5 Clear Zone

A 2-foot clear zone distance on both sides of a shared-use path is required. *It is desirable to have 3 feet or more.* The clear zone area should be graded level, flush to the path and free of obstructions to allow recovery by errant bicyclists. This applies to cut-sections, where falling debris can accumulate, stimulating weed growth, further restricting the available width.

845.2.6 Vertical Clearance

Provide a vertical clearance above the finished surface of the shared use path at least 10 feet for the full width of the pathway. The standard clearance to overhead obstructions is 10 feet to ensure adequate clearance of a person upright on a mobility device, riding a bicycle, and for occasional maintenance vehicle or equipment. Where fixed objects or natural terrain prohibit the 10 feet of vertical clearance, 8 feet is the minimum vertical clearance.

Section 850 Pedestrian Trail Design

Many recreational trails cross the state highway system and are available for pedestrian use. Users may use these trail systems as transportation links, and use is not prohibited except when signed for a specific mode. Multi-use trails may include accommodation of additional users, such as equestrians. Highways that cross these pathways should have access to the trail systems. If a highway has a separate grade crossing with a pathway, provide a short path connection from the pedestrian and bicycle facilities along the highway to the pathway. See Section 845 and Section 900 for at-grade path crossings. See Appendix L, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, pages 7-13 through 7-16 for design guidance on under-crossings and over-crossings.

A trail is defined as a pedestrian route developed primarily for outdoor recreational purposes. For designing recreational trails in more rural settings, refer to US Access Boards "Accessibility Standards for Federal Outdoor Developed Areas" published May 2014. For multiple tread trails that accommodate horses, consult the Equestrian Design Guidebook for Trails, Trailheads and Campgrounds.

DRAFT

~~Section 855 Emergency Egress Routes~~

~~Section Reserved.~~

Section 890 References

- Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability in State and Local Government Services, 28 CFR Part 35 (2010).
- Department of Justice (2010). 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design.
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Building and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines, 36 CFR Part 1191, Appendix B and Appendix D.
- Hack, Jennifer (2020). Service Dog Training Guide. Rockridge Press.
- ~~Proposed Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines (2011).~~
- Supplemental Notice Proposed Rulemaking on Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines (2013).
- Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines (2023).
- David Kent Ballast Architectural Research Consulting (2011). Dimensional Tolerance in Construction and for Surface Accessibility Research Report for the US Access Board.
- Public Rights-of-Way Access Advisory Committee (PROWAAC) (2007). Special Report: Accessible Public Rights-of-Way Planning and Designing for Alterations.
- Oregon Transportation Commission. (2016) Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan.
- https://highways.dot.gov/sites/fhwa.dot.gov/files/2024-10/Guide_for_Maintaining_Active_Transportation_FHWA-SA-23-005_0.pdf
- AASHTO Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities, 2021
- Oregon Structural Specialty Code
- Oregon Revised Statue, ORS 447.310 Standards for Curbing
- Oregon Transportation Planning Rule, OAR 660 Division 12

DRAFT

Part 900 Bikeway Design

DRAFT

Section 901 Introduction

The purpose of this part is to provide design standards for bicycle facilities on State Highways. Other parts address the design of pedestrian facilities, intersections, interchanges, urban design, and public transportation and provide additional and/or similar information on bicycle and pedestrian design considerations. A thorough guide for bicycle and pedestrian design is contained in Appendix L the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide. Where there is a discrepancy between content in this part and the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide, this part takes precedence. This chapter also stipulates where to refer to portions of Appendix L for additional content since Appendix L also contains design guidance that may only apply to city and county roads.

901.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 900-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 900-1: Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects, FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 901.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision

documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 901.2 and 901.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 901.3 and 901.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

901.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb “provide” is typically used. The adjective “required” is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs “should” and “may” are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives “recommended” and “optional” are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 901.4).

901.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb “should” is typically used. The adjective “recommended” is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs “provide” and “may” are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives “required” and “optional” are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 901.4).

DRAFT

901.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

901.5 Definitions & Acronyms

A list of definitions and acronyms introduced in Part 900 is listed below. Acronyms that are defined in other Parts of the Highway Design Manual are not repeated in this part.

In addition to the terminology used in other parts of the HDM, the following terms are used primarily or exclusively in this chapter. Terms described in this chapter are listed below.

Bikeway Tier -	A three level distinction to characterize how much separation is between a bikeway and motor vehicle travel. The three levels are Tier 1 (separated bike lane or shared use path), Tier 2 (bike lane in a shoulder) and Tier 3 (shared lane), discussed in Section 940
Bike Bill -	Oregon Statute ORS 366.514, discussed in Section 912.1.
Bike Lane -	That part of the highway adjacent to the roadway that is designated for bicycle travel, delineated from the adjacent travel lane by a single stripe. Synonyms not used in the HDM: shoulder bikeway, shoulder bike lane.
Bike Ramp -	See Section 980.
Bikeway -	Any lane or way designated for use as a bicycle route. Synonyms not used in the HDM: Bicycle trail.
Bicycle Level of Traffic Stress -	(BLTS) See Chapter 14 in the ODOT Analysis Procedures Manual and discussed in 922.1
Buffered Bike Lane -	That part of the highway adjacent to the roadway that is designated for bicycle travel, delineated from the adjacent travel lane by two stripes that delineate a buffer zone. See Section 945.1.

DRAFT

E-Bike (electric-assist bicycle) - A bicycle that is equipped with an electric motor to assist rider in locomotion with maximum travel speeds between 20 – 28 mph (ORS 801.258)

Essential Transportation Link - See Section 930.

Floating Bus Stop - See Section 984.

Highly Confident Bicyclist - See Section 922.

Interested, but Concerned Bicyclist - See Section 922.

Multiway Boulevard - See Section ~~949~~948.

Separated Bike Lane - That part of the highway adjacent to the roadway that is designated for bicycle travel, separated by a street buffer that contains a vertical element (e.g., curb, parking). Synonyms not used in the HDM: cycle track, protected bike lane, separated bike path.

Shared Use Path - See Section 801.2.

Shoulder - That part of the highway adjacent to the roadway, delineated from the adjacent travel lane by a stripe, that may be used for bicycle travel as well as other functions such as parking.

Side Path - See Section 972, Section 960 and Section 970 - A ~~facility designated for shared use by bicyclists and pedestrians~~type of Shared Use Path that is located within the highway right-of-way and runs parallel to a street or highway. Side paths may use striping to indicate preferred areas for bicycle and pedestrian travel, but do not provide vertical/detectable delineation between modes.

Sidewalk - See Section 801.2.

Somewhat Confident Bicyclist - See Section 922

Trail- Defined in Section 801.2.

901.6 Comparison to Other Bikeway Guides

The organization of this chapter corresponds with the chapter outline in the AASHTO Bike Guide, 5th edition. Where information is in conflict, the information in the Highway Design Manual takes precedence.

DRAFT

Table 900-2 Comparison between outline of HDM and AASHTO Bike Guide

HDM Section	HDM Appendix L Bike/Ped Design Guide	AASHTO Bike Guide
910's Design and Regulatory Considerations	Chapter i (introduction)	Chapter 1 - Intro & Regulatory Considerations
920's Design Users, Vehicles	Chapter i (introduction)	Chapter 2 - Design Users, Vehicles
930's Bikeway Networks	Chapter i (introduction)	Chapter 3 - Bikeway Networks
940's Transition Realm and Zones Bikeway Selection Process	Chapter 1 (Bikeway Types) Chapter 2 (Road Diets)	Chapter 4 - Selection Process Chapter 7 - Bike Lane Zones
950's Intersection Design Bikeway Crossing Design	Chapters 5 & 6	Chapter 5, 7, 9, 10, 11 - Intersection Design, Bikeway Crossings
960's Shared Use Paths	Chapter 7 (Separated Paths)	Chapter 6 - Shared Use Paths
970's Side Paths and Two-way Separated Bike Lanes	Chapter 7 (Separated Paths)	Chapter 7 - Side Paths and Separated Bike Lanes
980's Bicycle Ramp Design Bikes at Transit Stops	Chapter 1	Chapter 5 - Bike Ramps Chapter 7 - Transit Stops
990's Parking and Trip End Facilities	Chapter 3	Chapter 16 - Parking and Trip End Facilities

Section 910 Design and Regulatory Considerations

There are state and federal statutes, regulations, laws, rules or other high level requirements that must be considered, regardless of project type or funding. These include federal rules and policy, as well as Oregon statutes and planning policy. The federal requirements include code of federal regulations (CFRs) including civil rights laws, policy statements and memoranda from the USDOT, and the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD). Oregon statutory requirements includes ORS 366.514, commonly known as “the Oregon Bicycle Bill”. Oregon Administrative Rules include the Oregon Transportation Planning Rule. Planning policy requirements include the Oregon Highway Plan, the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan and the Oregon Transportation Safety Action Plan.

Improvements for walking and bicycling can be done under a variety of conditions or project scenarios. Most commonly, improvements are made as part of a construction project. Projects can be administered through ODOT, local public agencies or by private parties, such as a developer. Minor improvements to walking and biking facilities can also be made outside of project scenarios during routine maintenance operations. The requirements for a project are different, based on factors such as funding, which road authority is contracting the project and

whether or not any part of the project is located on state owned right-of-way. For each of the different scenarios, ODOT's role may differ slightly, while state and federal requirements are the same. ODOT's process for ensuring ADA compliance is outlined in Chapter 800.

Section 911 Federal Requirements

911.1 Civil Rights Laws

The Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), the Architectural Barriers Act and the Rehabilitation Act are federal Civil Rights laws. The combination of these laws mandates both the private and public sectors to make their programs, services and facilities accessible. For ODOT, that means that all provided services must be built so people with mobility, visual or cognitive limitations have access to use them. Facilities for bicycle travel that share the space with pedestrians (i.e., shared use paths) are required to meet pedestrian accessibility standards. Where pedestrian travel is provided apart from bicycle travel, these ADA requirements for pedestrian facilities (e.g., slopes) do not apply to the bicycle facility. However, the ADA still requires consideration to be provided for the needs of all people who use the bicycle facility. Many people with disabilities ride bicycles, adaptive bicycles and adult tricycles. General ADA requirements for pedestrian accessibility are described in Part 800. The ADA regulation (28 CFR 35-36) also requires that some projects include pedestrian accessibility improvements in addition to the baseline scope of work. See Part 800 for these requirements.

911.2 Federal Funding Regulation

Federal law regarding the administration of federal aid for highways is established in US Public Law 117-58 (the Infrastructure Investment and Jobs Act). It authorizes federal funds for pedestrian walkways, bicycle transportation and shared micro mobility transportation facilities via 23 USC, Section 217. Regarding planning and design, it says :

> "Bicyclists and pedestrians shall be given due consideration in the comprehensive transportation plans developed by each metropolitan planning organization and State in accordance with sections 134 and 135, respectively. Bicycle transportation facilities and pedestrian walkways shall be considered, where appropriate, in conjunction with all new construction and reconstruction of transportation facilities, except where bicycle and pedestrian use are not permitted.
>
> Transportation plans and projects shall provide due consideration for safety and contiguous routes for bicyclists and pedestrians. Safety considerations shall include the

installation, where appropriate, and maintenance of audible traffic signals and audible signs at street crossings."

In 2010, the United States Department of Transportation issued a policy statement declaring support for going beyond minimum requirements to provide improved pedestrian and bicycle facilities. Their 2010 policy statement said that:

> "every transportation agency… has the responsibility to improve conditions and opportunities for…bicycling and to integrate…bicycling into their transportation systems. Because of the numerous individual and community benefits that…bicycling provide - including health, safety, environmental, transportation, and quality of life - transportation agencies are encouraged to go beyond minimum standards to provide safe and convenient facilities for these modes."

This memorandum encouraged road authorities to go beyond accommodation to improving the conditions for people walking and riding bicycles.

The FHWA issued a related memorandum in 2013 suggesting that current design references should be supplemented with various innovative guides and resources "…to help fulfill the aims… to go beyond the minimum requirements, and proactively provide convenient, safe, and context-sensitive facilities that foster increased use by bicyclists…of all ages and abilities." This memorandum affirmed support for design flexibility through the utilization of innovative designs that build upon the flexibility provided by current design standards in order to achieve improved conditions for bicycling.

In 2015, ODOT issued a letter of support that encourages engineers, planners and designers to reference the growing library of resources that help fulfill ODOT's mission "…to provide a safe, efficient transportation system that supports economic opportunity and livable communities for Oregonians…" and "…to be at the forefront of the integration of sustainable intermodal transportation…to help form sustainable solutions to today's ever-increasing intermodal transportation challenges…" A growing list of resources is available from AASHTO, FHWA, NACTO, and ITE.

911.3 Federal Standards

Federal law 23 CFR 655 Subpart F requires that all traffic control devices on public highways be in substantial conformance with the national standard established by the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD). Oregon Administrative Rule OAR 734-020-0005 establishes an Oregon Supplement to the MUTCD that contains approved deviations from the federal manual in order to be in conformance with Oregon laws or other approved reasoning. Other deviations from MUTCD standards are permitted when following FHWA experimentation procedures or interim approvals. Some bikeway facility types are not likely to function effectively unless accompanied with appropriate traffic control measures.

DRAFT

The design standards in Part 900 reflect ODOT's adherence to national and statewide policy and applicable laws that require accommodating bicycle travel and supports going beyond minimum requirements to provide improved facilities.

Section 912 Oregon Statutory Requirements

912.1 "The Bike Bill"

ORS 366.514, known as "The Bike Bill" imposes requirements on projects that include any portion of modernization work. It requires that ODOT, cities and counties provide walkways and bikeways wherever a highway, road or street is being constructed, reconstructed, or relocated.

The terms: New Construction, Reconstruction and Relocation are defined in Section 102. "Being constructed, reconstructed or relocated" usually means that the project is categorized as 4R. However, as ODOT implements performance-based practical design, the purpose and need for a project may target specific modernization improvements without bringing the whole project into the 4R category. Isolated modernization improvements may include any work that constructs, reconstructs or relocates a portion of a highway. For example, a portion of a project can trigger the statutory requirement to provide walking and biking facilities if the improvements include adding a turn lane, through lane, widening a shoulder, or replacing a bridge deck. Significant intersection improvements and realignments such as a roundabout or construction of a new or replaced traffic signal also require pedestrian and biking facilities to be considered and evaluated.

Accommodating context-appropriate walkways and bikeways is required. The burden is on the governing jurisdiction to show the lack of need to provide facilities; the need is legislatively presumed but can be rebutted. The three statutory exemptions are listed below; improvements are not required if:

1. Scarcity of population or other factors indicate an absence of any need;
2. Costs are excessively disproportionate to need or probable use; or
3. Where public safety is compromised.

Providing walkways and bikeways means that the project's scope is required to ensure that people are able to walk and bike on that highway segment. First, determine whether the highway segments in the project currently have complete, context-appropriate pedestrian and bicycle facilities and curb ramps. If so, the statutory requirement is met. If not, provide improvements to the project scope unless one of the statutory exemptions applies. The level of improvement required to be included with a project is related to the project's scope. For example, a project that fully reconstructs a traffic signal might be located where the approach

DRAFT

streets do not have walking and biking facilities. The project would be required to ensure that pedestrians and bicyclists are accommodated at the intersection and any approaches within the project limits. It would not be required to address the disconnected biking and walking network up to the intersection, that are outside the project limits.

Appropriate walking facilities are generally considered to be present when sidewalk exists on both sides of a highway for urban areas, shoulders in rural areas, paths or a connected network of low-stress local streets parallel to freeways and expressways. Appropriate biking facilities is discussed in Section 901.

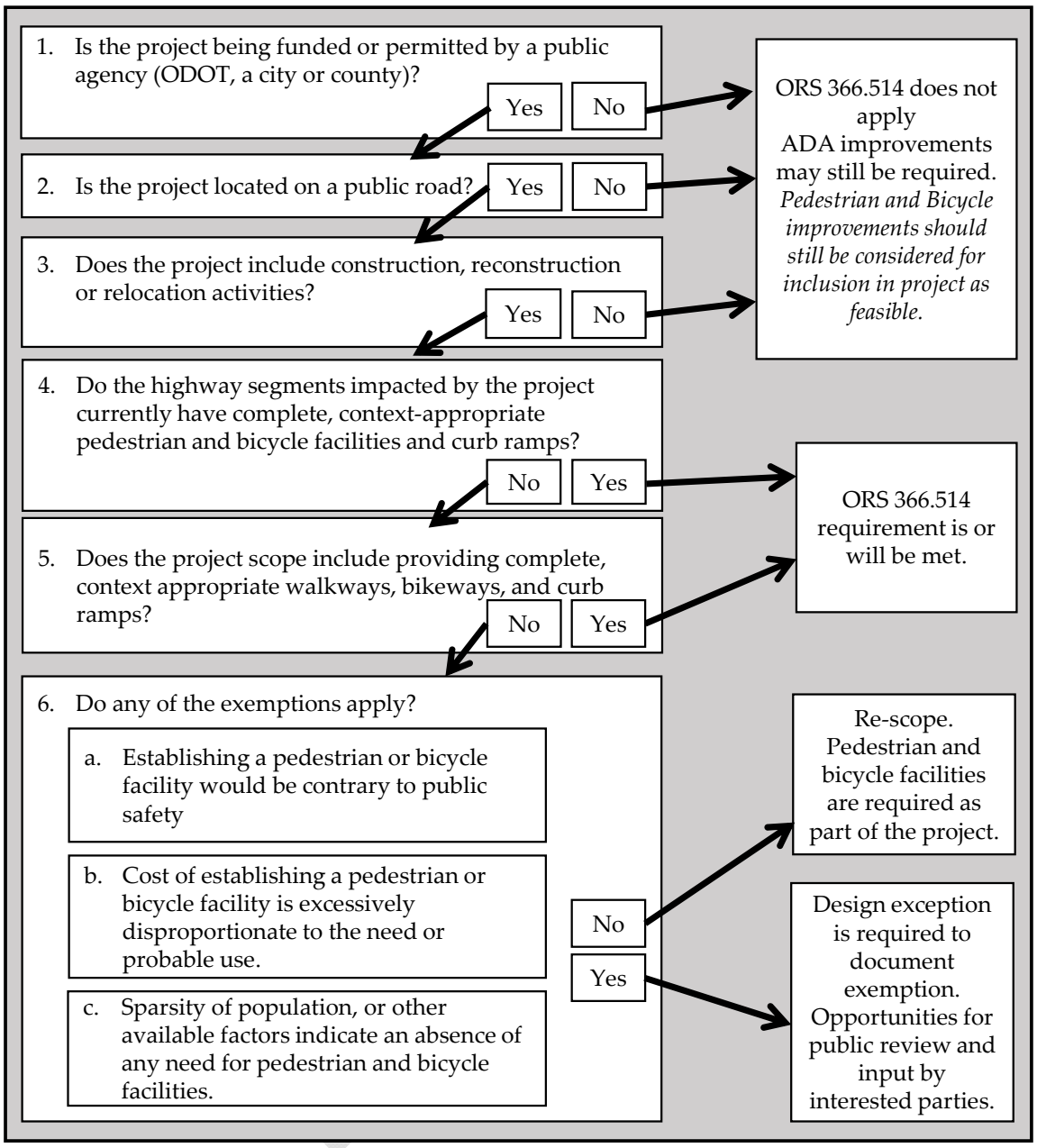
Seek an exemption only where it is obvious that one of the three statutory exceptions applies. Also reference planning documents to see if prior efforts have already established that walkways or bikeways are needed. The determination that one or more exemption is met requires documentation through a design exception. As support for the design exception, documentation is required to ensure that the exemption allowed opportunities for public review and input by interested parties. The documentation provided by the project team consists of a summary of public involvement activities, input received and ODOT responses, including whether and/or how input was incorporated into the project. Where public involvement activities were not included in a project, documentation may include a letter from an organization that represents bicycle and pedestrian needs for the local agency or from the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Advisory Committee (OBPAC) and ODOT responses to the letter. OBPAC is a governor appointed committee, which advises ODOT on the regulation of bicycle and pedestrian traffic, the establishment of bikeways and walkways and other statewide bicycle and pedestrian issues. Review time is needed in order for the bicycle and pedestrian organization to review any proposed exemption.

The statute addresses the source of funds for bicycle and pedestrian improvements. “Out of the funds received…reasonable amounts shall be expended as necessary to provide [walkways and bikeways] as part of the project.” The lack of funding from a leveraged funding category does not negate the requirement to include improvements for walking and biking if the project triggers the requirement under the statute.

Figure 900-1 provides a flowchart to help determine when a project requires walking and biking improvements to be included. The ODOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Program Webpage includes additional resources including another, more thorough version of this flowchart with guidance on each step of the process, including legal interpretations for the three exemptions and a section-by-section legal interpretation of the statute.

DRAFT

Figure 900-1: ORS 366.514 Screening Flow Chart



912.2 Transportation Planning Rule

In Oregon, transportation planning is governed by Oregon Administrative Rule 660, Division 12. This is also known as the Transportation Planning Rule (TPR) as described in Section 109.7. See the local jurisdiction's Transportation System Plan for policies and requirements applicable to the bicycle system network. These may include requirements for:

- bicycle access to key destinations,
- mitigation or provision of street crossings,
- transitions between bicycle facilities,
- higher levels of separation or protection along streets that have higher volumes or speeds of traffic,
- separated or protected bikeways on streets in climate-friendly areas, Metro Region 2040 centers, and other places with a concentration of destinations, and
- bicycle facilities to result in a safe, low stress, and comfortable experience for people of all ages and abilities.

Section 913 Statewide Policy

913.1 ODOT Mission Statement

ODOT's mission statement is that "We provide a safe and reliable multimodal transportation system that connects people and helps Oregon's communities and economy thrive". Many ODOT highways operate as the "Main Street" in a community. Business districts with the most comfortable and pleasurable pedestrian walking environments have shown to be the most successful. These include places where people work, shop and live in close proximity so they can walk to destinations. Therefore, comprehensive pedestrian design, rather than basic accommodation should be considered in these contexts. See urban context discussion in Part 200. Bicycle tourism is a significant industry in Oregon that also impacts Oregon's livability and economic prosperity. Rather than basic accommodation, comprehensive bicycle facility design should be considered along designated bicycle routes. Research has also shown that pedestrian and bicycle safety improvements result in improved safety outcomes for all highway users.

913.2 Performance Based Design

ODOT adopted a policy of context sensitive design to establish project scopes that meet specific needs that may omit unrelated improvements in order to systematically prioritize improvements that optimize the transportation system. Practical Design, Context Sensitive Design and Performance-Based Design have application where ideal conditions do not exist, thus permitting non-standard roadway sections that meet the intent of the design to the maximum extent feasible, often through a design exception.

In order to achieve a transportation system that functions for people to use bicycles for transportation, it is important to provide context-appropriate facilities. When the purpose and

need for a project does not include an upgrade to the bicycle facility, an incremental improvement to the bikeway can be considered. The design standards in this chapter reflect ODOT's commitment to the US Department of Transportation policy statements, issued on March 11, 2010 and August 10, 2013. These statements recommended that states accommodate bicyclists and pedestrians while accommodating motorized vehicles and declared support for going beyond minimum requirements to provide improved pedestrian and bicycle facilities. The statements also affirmed support for design flexibility through utilization of innovative designs that build upon the flexibility provided by current design standards in order to achieve improved conditions for walking and bicycling. See discussion in Section 810 and Section 920 for Accommodation and Design for Pedestrians and Bicyclists.

Section 914 Statewide Planning

914.1 Oregon Bicycle & Pedestrian Plan

The Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan has nine goals, a number of policies within those goals, and a number of planning strategies identified for achieving each of those policies. Many of those policies and strategies pertain to bicycle facility design. The role of strategies in the statewide Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan is intended to be comparable to a should-statement in the MUTCD. Designers should aim to achieve the strategies in the plan or document if it is not attained.

Within Goal 1 (safety), Policy 1.1 has 14 strategies to "provide safe and well-designed streets and highways". The first strategy (1.1A) contains directions for updating the Highway Design Manual: "Continue to update the ODOT Design Guidelines and Highway Design Manual to identify appropriate pedestrian and bicycle design features (e.g., type of separation, buffers, or crossing designs) suitable for different contexts, including consideration of: vehicle speed, roadway characteristics and constraints, planned land uses, users and uses, areas of pedestrian and cyclist priority, and latent demand." Additional strategies include: 1.1B (selecting the roadway cross-section and type of separation), 1.1C (improved illumination), 1.1F (intersection design considerations) and 1.1H (design treatments to control speed). Policy 1.4 is to improve bicycle users' perceived safety.

Within Goal 2 (connectivity), Policy 2.1, Strategy 2.1B says: "When local planning processes have, in consultation with ODOT, identified a local parallel bike route, and a bikeway on the state highway is determined to be contrary to public safety, is disproportionate in cost to the project cost or need, or is not needed as shown by relevant factors and therefore justified to be exempt from ORS 366.514 based on one of those statutory exemptions, ODOT will work with the jurisdictions to support the development of the parallel route and assure reasonable access to destinations along the state highway. ODOT and the local jurisdiction may enter into an

agreement in which ODOT helps to fund, in negotiation and partnership with the local jurisdiction, construction of the bikeway in the vicinity of the state highway project that serves as an alternative or parallel route to the highway project." Policy 2.5 says: "Support off roadway…bikeways that help to connect communities, provide alternatives to motorized travel, or promote and support…biking tourism."

Within Goal 3 (mobility and efficiency), Policy 3.3, Strategy 3.3A says: "Research best practices and integrate into design guidelines innovative design treatments that both safely accommodate bicyclists and pedestrians and maintain appropriate freight carrying capacity. Promote opportunities for separation that does not constrain the mobility/accessibility of either mode." Strategy 3.2F says "When an existing roadway is realigned, restriped, or a cross-section modified, pedestrian and bicycle capacity should not be degraded; the width of bike lanes or sidewalks will not measure any smaller than the original width of such facility prior to roadway realigning, restriping, or cross-section modification. Develop an exception and appeal process."

Within Goal 8 (strategic investment), Policy 8.2, Strategy 8.2A gives priorities for identifying investments in bicycle projects. Among the priorities, it says: *"Elaborate the system through increased network connectivity, such as … more costly user comfort features." Strategy 8.2B says: "Be opportunistic in acquiring right-of-way for future potential…bicycle facilities…"* Part of the policy is to strategically improve the statewide bicycle network by addressing those locations where the existing bikeway type underserves the need or is not sufficiently comfortable for potential users to choose to ride under existing conditions. Elaborating the system would be to improve the bikeway type to something appropriate for its context. In many cases, the appropriate facility requires right-of-way and/or extra cost.

In order to achieve the goals stated within the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan, an Implementation Work Plan is in place that contains near-term actions in order to put the policies into action. One of the key initiatives identified is "Defining the network" which is summarized: *"Establish design and function expectations. Provide clarity on appropriate infrastructure, design, and treatments given unique contexts. Identify needs."*

914.2 Oregon Highway Plan

The provision of bicycle facilities is addressed in a statewide perspective in statewide planning documents, including the Oregon Highway Plan and the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan.

The Oregon Highway Plan has two actions related to bicycle facilities: Action 1B.10 "Continue to develop and implement design guidelines for highways that describe a range of automobile, pedestrian, bicycle or transit travel alternatives" and Action 2F.3 "In identifying solutions to traffic safety problems, consider solutions including, but not limited to: Constructing appropriate bicycle and pedestrian facilities including safe and convenient crossings."

DRAFT

914.3 Oregon Transportation Safety Action Plan

The Oregon Transportation Safety Action Plan (TSAP) is a statewide strategic highway safety plan that provides a framework to accomplish a vision to eliminate fatalities and serious injuries by 2035. To achieve that vision, it has six goals and a number of policies and strategies within those goals. A couple of these policies can relate to the selection of bikeway facilities.

Within Goal 2 (infrastructure), Policy 2.3 says: "Plan, design, construct, operate, and maintain the transportation system to achieve healthy and livable communities and eliminate fatalities and serious injuries for all modes." Strategy 2.3.4 says: "Educate transportation planning and design professionals on how to incorporate safer context-sensitive designs into community projects." Since different bicycle facilities may be appropriate in different contexts, this strategy and policy direct the consideration of context-sensitivity in bikeway selection.

Within Goal 3 (Livable Communities), Policy 3.4 says: "Invest in transportation system enhancements that improve safety and perceptions of security for people while traveling in Oregon." Strategy 3.4.1 says: "Enhance perceptions of bicycling, walking, and transit safety and security by identifying and implementing appropriate facility design, lighting, and other changes to the built environment to improve personal security for pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit riders." Thus, the selection of bikeways influences users' perception of safety, and facilities that promote the perception of safety should be selected.

914.4 Transportation System Plan Guidelines

An interactive website helps guide transportation system plans toward needs determination, including a specific application for bicycles. The application has descriptions for actions that shall, should and could be included.

Shall: At a minimum, the assessment of the bicycle infrastructure shall include:

- Identification of the local, regional, and state standards for adequacy
- Evaluation of deficiencies in the bicycle network, including gaps/missing bike lanes, narrow bike lanes, poor surface conditions, roadway hazards, etc.

Should: In addition to the items listed above, the assessment of the bicycle infrastructure should include the following elements when locally appropriate and when funding allows:

- Analysis of bicycle connectivity along key study corridors using one of two methodologies:
    - Conduct a Qualitative Multimodal Assessment of the bicycle network (see ODOT's Analysis and Procedures Manual for technical guidance)

DRAFT

- Conduct a bicycle level-of-traffic stress analysis of the bicycle network (see ODOT's Analysis and Procedures Manual for technical guidance)

- Evaluation of gaps in bicycle access to destinations including transit stops, schools, shopping, medical, civic, recreational uses, and trails
- Analysis of bicycle crash data and risk-based safety issues (see ODOT's Bicycle Safety Implementation Plan for additional information)
- Evaluation of high bicycle fatality and serious injury crash locations

Could: Although not typically required or critical to the development of most TSPs, the assessment of the bicycle infrastructure could include the following elements when locally appropriate and when funding allows:

- Evaluation of bicycle design standards (e.g., Central Business District, residential standards, etc.)

The TSP Guidelines also have an application for developing solutions. The guidance also details shall, should, and could, and includes many specific bicycle solutions.

Section 920 Design Principles for Bikeways

Bicycle accommodation is required on all highways, except where riding is prohibited by administrative rule described in OAR 734-020-0045. Rules of the road govern how people may use bicycle facilities. See also the Oregon Bicyclist Manual. The following principles discuss how the rules of the road are interrelated to the design of bikeways.

920.1 Right to the Road (ORS 814.400)

People have the right to bike on the road as a vehicle. By statute (ORS 814.400), bicycles are vehicles and can use the roadway. This includes electric-assisted bicycles. Bicycles are vehicles and should be accommodated as roadway users where possible. Safe on-street bicycle accommodation includes bicycle-safe drainage grates and adjusting manhole covers to street grade. People riding bicycles are subject to obeying traffic control devices (ORS 811.260, 811.265, 811.360).

Bike accommodation should normally be continuous on both sides of the roadway.

ORS 814.400 requires bicyclists to follow the rules of the road for vehicles. These statutes applicable to bicycling presume that bicycles operate in the same direction with motor vehicle traffic. The lateral position of bicyclists should normally be on the right side of a roadway.

There may be instances where a bicycle facility may be considered on the left side of the road or a two-way facility on one side. Transitions to the beginning and end of the left-side bike facility are critical to safe operation. If the transitions are not done properly, bicyclists are unlikely to cross to the other side of a road to use a path, bike lane or sidewalk, particularly if the length of the left-side bike facility is short. Many users are likely to use a lane on the roadway a short distance rather than cross twice. Additionally, some users will continue to ride on the "wrong side" of the road for long distance beyond the end of the left-side bicycle facility.

920.2 Shared Lane – (ORS 814.430, 811.065)

Oregon Statute ORS 814.430 affects shared lane conditions. It requires people riding in a shared travel lane to ride as close as practicable to the curb or edge of roadway if they cannot ride at the normal speed of traffic. The statute provides reasonable exemptions for passing, turning, and avoiding hazards. Since the ability for a person on a bike to travel at the normal speed of traffic is affected by the road geometry – this should influence decision on the appropriateness of a shared lane condition.

Notwithstanding the legal right to operate in the road, bicycles cannot operate the same as motor vehicles. Bicyclists are affected by steep grades more than motorists are. Understanding how bicycle riding is affected by grades gives insight as to why people choose to ride how they do. Depending on the grade of a roadway, many bicycles can reach downhill speeds in excess of 30 mph, while uphill speeds can sometimes be comparable to walking speeds. A person riding a bicycle typically uses the momentum gained going downhill to help climb uphill. Thus, it is undesirable to create a stop condition at the bottom of a hill. Ensuring a bicycle's momentum is an important design principle particularly at street crossings. The center of gravity for a person riding a bicycle is often above the bicycle. When going fast, a sudden stop can cause a bicycle rider to lose control and fall over the handlebars. People are more vulnerable in a crash on a bicycle than in a motor vehicle.

Where motor vehicles and bicycles share a lane, there are two ways that road users can share the road. Some bicycle riders move into the center of the travel lane in line with motor vehicles and try to ride at a speed close to that of traffic. Others ride as far as practicable to the right, allowing motor vehicles to pass by keeping left. The way that bicyclists ride in the travel lane affects how motor vehicles pass. Motor vehicles either change lanes to pass or keep to the left side of the lane to slowly pass bicyclists while bicyclists ride as far as practicable to the right. ORS 811.065 requires drivers who pass bicyclists to drive to the left of the bicycle at a distance sufficient to prevent contact with the person operating the bicycle if the person were to fall into the driver's lane of traffic. The actual distance prescribed in the statute has not been identified. The statute applies when sharing the same travel lane at speeds above 35 mph. The distance is not applicable if the vehicle and bicycle are not in the same lane.

DRAFT

When allocating space in the cross section of a road to travel lanes, a wide outside travel lane may affect the way that motor vehicles pass bicyclists. In order for motorists to safely pass bicyclists in accordance with this statute, drivers must reduce speed to 35 mph or less or move to another lane. Wide outside lanes are discouraged on higher speed roads; providing a striped bike lane is generally preferable.

920.3 Other Users of Bike Lanes (ORS 814.500, 510)

Per ORS 814.500 and ORS 814.510, people with wheelchairs, scooters and other mobility devices may legally use bike lanes. Additionally, the bike lane can be used for a wide range of micro mobility users including segways, scooters, skateboards and roller blades.

Designs should also accommodate bicyclists of all ages and abilities. Many individuals prefer to ride away from motor vehicles. Individuals vary in how well they are able to handle their bicycle, their agility, their confidence and comfort with traffic, their decision-making ability in traffic situations, their physical attributes, their familiarity with laws, location, infrastructure and behavior of other road users.

Many individuals with disabilities use adaptive bicycles, tandem bicycles, or adult tricycles to meet their transportation needs and stay active. These types of bicycles have longer and/or wider wheel bases than typical diamond frame bicycles, resulting in different turning radius, cross slope, and queuing space needs. These needs should inform design of refuge island widths and queueing spaces at path crossings and island cut throughs where people on bicycles may need to make turns.

920.4 Use of Pedestrian Facilities (ORS 814.410)

People on bicycles are legally allowed to ride on sidewalks in Oregon, unless prohibited by local ordinance~~; however, only~~. People riding e-bikes may ride in bicycle lanes and on paths, but not on sidewalks. Only in rare cases should bicyclists be required to proceed through intersections as pedestrians. When bicycle users are directed to use a sidewalk – there are safety and operational disadvantages. Oregon law (ORS 814.410) requires bicyclists to yield to all pedestrians on the sidewalk and to ride at the speed of a pedestrian when approaching or entering crosswalks, driveways and curb ramps when a motor vehicle is approaching.

Another disadvantage of sidewalk riding is the traffic control at an intersection. For example, if through motor traffic can go straight on a green light, while bikes and pedestrians must push a button and wait for a walk indication – the delay may result in bicyclists crossing against the pedestrian don't-walk signal since they could proceed with vehicles if using the road.

Many individuals choose to ride on sidewalks, rather than the roadway in order to be further apart from motor vehicle traffic as a sense of safety and comfort. Separated bike lanes can provide the advantages of sidewalk separation, while allowing users to proceed through intersections as vehicles.

When designing bicycle facilities apart from the roadway that are not shared with pedestrians, designate the facility as a separated 'bicycle lane' rather than 'path' in order to ensure that bicyclists are not subject to the operational disadvantages described above.

920.5 Continuity of Bicycle Lanes (ORS 801.155)

Bicycle lanes are defined in ORS 801.155. In addition to the bicycle lane along a street, a bicycle lane also exists in an intersection if the bicycle lane is marked on the opposite sides of the intersection in the same direction of travel. This means that turning vehicles must still yield to people riding bicycles through an intersection even when no bike lane striping is present.

The path for bicyclists should be direct, logical and close to the path of motor vehicle traffic, making bicyclist movements visible and predictable to motorists.

Many bicyclists do not limit trips to places within a completed bicycle network. In an incomplete network, where a bicycle facility ends, bicyclists continue the trip in a variety of ways. Where a bicycle facility is not provided, it can be difficult for people driving to know where people on bikes will be. These include riding against traffic on a street, riding on a sidewalk, traveling through property lots and crossing streets at random locations to reach better riding conditions. Connecting gaps in a bikeway network improves the likelihood that people will ride where motorists can expect them and reduces the overall number of conflict points.

When designing for motor vehicles, it can be desirable to maintain a uniform roadway cross section by minimizing changes to the driving environment. Although maintaining a uniform cross section is generally desirable for bikeways, people riding bikes are able to transition between different types of bikeway facilities as long as the connections are direct and intuitive. For example, a bike lane may ramp up to a shared use path or separated bike lane then ramp back down to a shared lane as conditions change along a corridor.

920.6 Bike Lane, Bike Path or Bike Trail (ORS 801.160)

While Oregon law has statutory definitions for Bicycle Path (ORS 801.160), Bicycle Lane (ORS 801.155), Bicycle Trail (ORS 366.514(5)) and Sidewalk (ORS 801.485), these statutory definitions do not align with how these terms are commonly used. The Highway Design Manual does not use these terms in the same way as the statutory definitions. This section summarizes the

differences in how these terms are used in order to discuss how laws affect people riding bicycles on these facilities.

The statutory definition of a Bicycle Trail is a general term synonymous with the term 'Bikeway' – that means any lane or way designated for use as a bicycle route. The statutory definitions for a Bicycle Path, Bicycle Lane and Sidewalk all define the facility by relating it to the location within or outside of a highway. According to the statutory definition of a Bicycle Path, it is a public way that is not part of a highway. The statute defines a Bicycle Lane as that part of the highway, adjacent to the roadway that is designated for bicycle travel, while a Sidewalk is that portion of a highway between the outside lateral line of the shoulder and the adjacent property line capable of being used by a pedestrian.

Shared Use Paths are not defined in statute. Multi-Use Path and Multi-Use Trail are common synonyms. It is common for shared use paths to exist outside of a highway as well as paths along a highway. A shared use path that is outside of a highway right-of-way is similar to a Bicycle Path, but a shared use path along a highway (Side Path) is similar to a Sidewalk. As noted in Section 920.4, there may be disadvantages to bicycle travel along a sidewalk.

While Separated Bike Lanes are also not specifically mentioned in statute, they meet the same definition as Bicycle Lanes even if they are adjacent to the roadway with a street buffer in between. The terms 'Cycle Track', 'Protected Bike Lane' and Separated Bike Path' are commonly used synonyms with Separated Bike Lanes. When referring to this type of facility, use the term Separated Bike Lane in order to minimize confusion about whether a bicyclist is required to follow statutes for riding in a Bike Lane versus riding on a Sidewalk.

920.7 Requiring Bike Lane or Path (ORS 814.420)

Oregon law (ORS 814.420) requires bicyclists to use a bike path or bike lane, rather than the roadway travel lanes, if a bike path or bike lane is provided. The statute allows a person to move out of the bike lane or path for a variety of reasons.

As noted in Section 920.4, there may be disadvantages to using a separated facility if traffic operations require users to proceed as pedestrians. When designing a separated facility, ensure that bicyclists have access to move into the road where needed to make turns, avoid debris, or pass other users as necessary.

920.8 Stop as Yield (ORS 814.414)

Per ORS 814.414, 814.416, 811.260 (11, 15) and 811.265, a person riding a bicycle is allowed to slow to a safe speed, check for cross traffic and proceed without stopping at stop signs and at flashing red lights. Thus, the traffic operation for a bicyclist is the same as would be for a yield

sign. When evaluating intersection operations with stop signs or flashing red lights, use the design assumption that bicycle traffic operates with yield control.

Section 921 Design for Bicyclist Safety

Highways should be designed to reduce or eliminate the potential for crashes. Appropriate roadway design can reduce crashes that occur between motor vehicles and bicycles, bicycles and pedestrians, or bicycles and fixed objects.

~~[Placeholder for additional content – refer to Highway Safety Manual, ODOT process for ARTS projects, Safe System Approach etc.]~~

~~This section will also discuss using the Pedestrian & Bicycle Safety Implementation Plan.~~

921.1 Crashes with Motor Vehicles

[Placeholder for future content~~section~~]

~~This section will discuss design considerations~~

~~Portion of bike crashes that involve motor vehicles~~

- ~~The most prevalent types of bike crashes~~
- ~~Design strategies to reduce crashes between bicyclists and motorists~~
- ~~Risk factors~~

921.2 Non-Vehicle Crashes

According to the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) Safety Research Report, 80 percent of bicyclists who were treated at a hospital for injuries from bicycling from 2014 to 2017 were not involved in a crash with a motor vehicle. Among those incidents, 27 percent were head injuries and were typically the most severe. While the cause of each non vehicle-related injury can vary, each incident was likely to have involved falling off a bicycle or colliding into a fixed object. This means that ODOT crash data likely amounts to less than 1 in 5 serious injury crashes involving a bicyclist. Serious injury crashes may be occurring due to deficient infrastructure, human factors or other causes. As a result, bicycle safety and crash risk factors should be considered in project design, even if there is no documented crash history in a project area. The following ~~are~~ design ~~factors~~features should be evaluated to mitigate the probability of fixed object crashes and individuals falling off bicycles~~.~~:

~~921.2.1 Restricting Motor Vehicles on a Bikeway (~~Bollards~~)~~

~~Bollards may be used to limit vehicle traffic on paths. However, bollards are often hard to see, cyclists may not expect them, and injuries result when cyclists hit them. Overuse of bollards is a serious hazard to bicyclists and may prevent path use by trailers, wheelchairs~~ and other ~~legitimate path users. In a group of riders, the riders in front block the visibility of those behind, setting up cyclists in the back of the pack for a crash.~~

- ~~Bollards should only be used when absolutely necessary.~~ ~~**When used, space bollards apart a minimum of 5 feet.**~~ ~~This provides for easy passage by cyclists, bicycle trailers and adult tricycles as well as wheelchair users. A single bollard is preferred, as two may channelize bicyclists to the middle opening, with a potential for collisions. They should not be placed right at the intersection, but set back 20 feet or more, so users can concentrate on motor vehicle traffic conflicts rather than on avoiding the bollard. Bollards should also not be placed near curves in pathways due to limited sight lines and tendency of bicyclists to travel in the middle of a path on curves. They should be painted with bright, light colors for visibility, illuminated and/or retro-reflectorized. A striped envelope around the bollard will direct path users away from the~~ fixed ~~object hazard.~~objects: See ~~ODOT Traffic Line Manual Figure 440-B for object hazard striping detail. Bollard design should consider emergency services and maintenance access needs along a path. Flexible delineators, that collapse when struck by a bicyclist, should be considered~~Section 962.5 for considerations on restricting motor vehicles on a bikeway.

~~Placing railing or other barrier part way across a trail makes it possible for intended users to accesses the trail; maintenance vehicle operators are provided with keys to unlock the fences when they need access. The fences, like bollards, can be hazards to bicyclists and can restrict certain trail users from gaining access to the trail. They should be coated with retroreflective material and well-lit.~~

- Uneven pavements: See Section 943.2 and Section 967 for bikeway surfacing.

~~921.2.2~~ Drainage ~~Grates~~

- ~~Care must be taken to ensure that~~ grates: See Section 943.3 for considerations on drainage grates ~~are bicycle safe, as required by ORS 810.150. If not, a bicycle wheel may fall into the slots of the grate causing the cyclist to fall. Replacing existing grates (A, B, preferred methods) or welding thin metal straps across the grate, perpendicular to the direction of travel (C, alternate method) is required. These should be checked periodically to ensure that the straps remain in place. Uneven grates may be marked as an obstacle until they can be repaired. See ODOT Traffic Line Manual for marking details.~~ on bikeways.

DRAFT

~~Grates with bars perpendicular to the roadway must not be placed at the bottom of curb ramps, as wheelchairs could get caught in the slot.~~

~~If a street surface grate is required for drainage (ODOT types G-1, G-2, CG-1 and CG-2), care must be taken to ensure that the grate is flush with the road surface. Inlets should be raised after a pavement overlay to within 1/4 inch of the new surface. If this is not possible or practical, the pavement must taper into drainage inlets, so they do not cause an abrupt edge at the inlet.~~

~~The gap between the grate and the inlet should be kept tight, no more than ¾ inch, to prevent bicycle wheels from getting trapped. The most effective way to avoid drainage grate problems is to eliminate them entirely with the use of inlets in the curb face (type CG-3). The cross-slope of the outer 3 feet or so of the bike lane should stay constant, with no exaggerated warping towards the opening. This may require more grates per mile to handle bypass flow; but this is the most bicycle-friendly design.~~

~~921.2.3 Bikeway~~ Railroad ~~Crossings~~

~~Special care must be taken wherever a bikeway intersects railroad~~ tracks~~. The most important concerns for bicyclists are smoothness, angle of crossing and flange opening.~~

~~The combination of smoothness, angle and flange opening create conditions that affect cyclists. By improving smoothness and flange opening, the angle becomes less critical. A common mistake is to overcorrect for the angle, as the resulting sharp reversing curves needed to create a right angle crossing can be more difficult for cyclists to negotiate than the crossing itself. Sometimes all that is needed is a slight widening of the shoulders to allow cyclists to align themselves better at the track crossing.~~

~~By statute, all public highway, bikeway, shared use paths, and sidewalk~~ : See Section 943.4 for bikeway design at railroad crossings~~ of a railroad in Oregon are regulated by the Department of Transportation. The Commerce and Compliance Division must approve, by issuance of an Order, the construction of new crossings or alterations to existing crossings, to include the approaches to these crossings. Crossing Orders specify construction details, installation of traffic control devices, and assign maintenance responsibilities to the road authority and the railroad, who are parties to the application.~~

~~The four most commonly used crossing surface materials, in descending order of preference, are:~~

- ~~Concrete: Concrete performs best under wet conditions and, when laid with precision, provides a smooth ride.~~
- ~~Rubber: Rubber provides a ridable crossing when new, but they are slippery when wet and degrade over time.~~

DRAFT

- Asphalt: asphalt pavement must be maintained in order to prevent a ridge buildup next to the rails.
- Timber: Timbers wear down rapidly and are slippery when wet.

The risk of a fall is kept to a minimum where the roadway (or bikeway portion of the roadway) crosses the tracks at 90°. If the skew angle is less than 45°, special attention should be given to the bikeway alignment to improve the angle of approach, preferably to 60° or greater, so cyclists can avoid catching their wheels in the flange and losing their balance. OAR 741-115-0070 specifies regulations for bicycle lanes and multi-use paths that cross railroad tracks at the same grade. Under OAR 741-115-0070 (3), an engineering study is required whenever bicycle lanes or multi-use paths are proposed to cross railroad tracks at 59 degrees or less.

Efforts to create a right-angle crossing at a severe skew can have unintended consequences: the reversing curves required for a right-angle approach can create other problems for cyclists. It is often best to widen the roadway, shoulder or bike lane to allow cyclists to choose the path that suits their needs the best. On extremely skewed crossings (30° or less), it may be impracticable to widen the shoulders enough to allow for 90° crossing; widening to allow 60° crossing or better is often sufficient.

Creating a separated path to angle the bikeway at 90° degrees is feasible, but special care should be taken to maintain the path regularly.

The open flange area between the rail and the roadway surface can cause problems for cyclists, since it can catch a bicycle wheel, causing the rider to fall. Flange width must be kept to a minimum.

921.2.4 Pavement on Bikeways

- Poor pavement quality and pavement seams can create a crash hazard for bicyclists because bicycle tires can easily become hung up in large potholes or uneven joints. Crash hazards are reduced when pavement cuts are located on or near the bike lane stripe and at least 4' of clear ridable width is provided without pavement seams. Longitudinal cuts parallel to the direction of bicycle travel (e.g., utility trenches) should be avoided in bike lanes and other areas used by bicycles to minimize crash risk from uneven seams that develop as patched pavements settle. If trenching is required in the bike lane, it is preferable to repave the entire bike lane width. See ODOT Pavement Design Guide Section 6.1.4 for joint locations for paving.

DRAFT

921.3 Using Bicycle Crash Data

[Placeholder for future content~~section. This section will discuss how to use crash bicycle data for design exceptions and other project related scenarios to inform design decisions.~~]

Section 922 Design Users

There are three primary purposes in selecting a design user profile. The design user profile informs a project team whether the target comfort level of the bicycle facilities will suit those who are expected to ride in a project corridor. It also determines whether to design queuing areas for individuals or groups of bicyclists riding together. After a bikeway project is completed, the design of the facility affects how cohesive the highway segment fits into the bicycle network for users within that design user profile.

ODOT design standards are based on the most restrictive design control, which is not always the same design user profile. When deviating from a standard, the effects on the design user profile should be noted.

The following is a list of design user profiles for a bicycle facility.

- Individual highly confident adult bicyclist
- Individual somewhat confident adult bicyclist
- Individual interested but concerned adult bicyclist
- Individual school-age child bicyclist
- Adult group bicycling
- Family group bicycling

922.1 Bicyclist Typologies

The six design user categories are derived from four levels of bicycle user comfort and skill that are recognized in transportation research. Bicycle users are categorized in three categories as 'highly confident', 'somewhat confident', or 'interested but concerned'. A fourth category describes people who either cannot or choose not to use a bicycle as transportation, which is not a design user category. In addition to design user categories that are based on a bicyclist typology, three additional categories are based on conditions. The school-age child bicyclist is a more specific design user than the interested but concerned category in places where a route is intended for school children. Bicycle facilities that are often used for groups of bicyclists may be designed for the capacity of many users riding together. Bicycling can be a social mode of

DRAFT

transportation, so side-by-side riding may be expected on any bicycle facility and accommodated when possible. Side-by-side riding should be designed for when the design user category is a group.

The FHWA Bikeway Selection Guide elaborates on the four typologies and explains how the usability of each type of bikeway is influenced by users' riding skills, stress tolerance and trip purpose. Users' decisions also vary by the type of bicycle they use, its performance criteria and required operating space.

Accommodating bicycle transportation is required on all highways, while designing for the expected bicycle user typology is a context sensitive consideration. Chapter 14 in the ODOT Analysis Procedures Manual describes the 'Bicycle Level of Traffic Stress' (BLTS) methodology, which is a qualitative assessment of how traffic conditions effect bicycle riders. BLTS levels can be used to assess the bicyclist typology provided for on an existing or planned bikeway. BLTS 1 is suitable for all ages and abilities. BLTS 2 is less suitable for young children but is suitable for teens and adults with adequate bicycle handling skills. BLTS 3 is suitable for most observant adult bicyclists. BLTS 4 is suitable for only experienced and skilled cyclists.

The type of bikeway accommodation and its BLTS affects people of different bicyclist typologies in their decision whether to ride. The potential for use by each of the three typologies of bicycle riders depends on individuals' perception of comfort and safety and the amount of land use attractions. 'Interested but concerned' bicycle riders are likely to choose a different mode of travel if they perceive a bikeway to be stressful or if the trip distance is long. A 'highly confident' bicyclist is less likely to be dissuaded from choosing to ride based on traffic and can ride longer distances. A facility designed for interested but concerned users (BLTS 1) will typically provide a transportation option for all potential bicycle riders, whereas a facility designed only for highly confident riders (BLTS 4) is unlikely to attract many new potential bicycle riders or provide a realistic alternative to driving for many users.

The six urban contexts generally correspond with land use patterns that result in shorter or longer distances between destinations. The level of demand for 'interested but concerned' bicycle riders is greatest in a Downtown and Urban Mix settings where close destinations result in shorter trips. Where land use density is lower, and the average trip length is longer – there are still some short trips that attract 'interested but concerned' bicycle riders. Each of the urban contexts has a different mix of user typology demand because of the land use and distance between destinations. Thus, the urban context is used as the indicator to decide the type of bikeway that is appropriate – rather than surveying the typology of users along that highway.

A greater portion of bicyclists who ride on rural highways tend to be highly confident riders. However, individuals without other transportation options also ride on rural highways. There may also be latent demand for bicycle trips that are not taken because of traffic conditions. Rural bikeways that are part of a designated bike route attract a wider variety of users.

DRAFT

Table 900-3: Level of Traffic Stress and Design User Profiles

Level of Traffic Stress	Likelihood that Design User Profile Will Ride					
	Highly Confident Individual	Somewhat Confident Individual	Interested, but Concerned Individual	School-aged Individual Child	Adult Bicycle Group	Family Group
BLTS 1	Likely	Likely	Likely	Likely	Likely	Likely
BLTS 2	Likely	Likely	Sometimes	Sometimes	Likely	Sometimes
BLTS 3	Likely	Sometimes	No	No	Likely	No
BLTS 4	Likely	No	No	No	Sometimes	No

922.2 Selecting the Design Users

[Placeholder for future content]

922.3 Design Controls Based on Design User

[Placeholder for future content]

Section 923 Design Vehicles

[Placeholder for future content]

923.1 Design Vehicle Descriptions

[Placeholder for future content]

923.2 Selecting the Design Vehicle

[Placeholder for future content]

DRAFT

923.3 Design Controls Based on Design Vehicle

[Placeholder for future content]

Section 924 Design Speed

Several design requirements are based on a selected design speed. Normally, a design speed is only selected for shared use path projects. Aside from shared use paths, it is generally not necessary to designate a design speed for bicycle lanes. However, there are scenarios where a design speed is necessary. A bikeway should have a design speed designated separate from the roadway design speed in the following facilities:

- All shared use paths;
- Alignment of a separated bike lane if not parallel to the road;
- Passing areas within a bike lane;
- Sight distance calculations;
- Islands at protected intersections;
- Bicycle signals;

924.1 Selecting an Appropriate Design Speed

The ODOT Region Roadway Manager shall assign bikeway design speeds for a project. The AASHTO guide contains factors to consider but does not dictate design speed. More than one design speed may be selected as it is sometimes advisable to have different design speeds in different segments. Design speeds vary from 8 mph to 30 mph and are given in 2 mph increments.

- The typical recommended shared-use path design speed is 18 to 20 mph for rural paths where there are less pedestrians.
- The typical recommended shared-use path design speed is 14 to 16 mph for urban paths where there are more pedestrians.
- The typical recommended design speed at intersection approaches is 10 to 12 mph.
- The typical recommended design speed at street crossings is 8 mph.

Each of the above design speeds may be adjusted based on whether a path is on level terrain, rolling terrain or on a consistent grade or based on the expected mix of design users.

The typical average cruising speed of a human-powered bicycle on level terrain is 10 mph. Many individuals are capable of riding a road bicycle at a sustained average speed of 15 to 25

DRAFT

mph on level terrain. For every 1 percent increase in downhill grade, individual adult bicyclists on road bicycles increase speed by 0.53 mph on average. For every 1 percent increase in uphill grade, the same bicyclists decrease speed by 0.90 mph on average. Bicyclists can reach speeds of 30 mph on sustained downhill grades of 5 percent or greater. Electric-assist bicycles are capable of riding 20-28 mph and typically ride close to 20 mph. Segways and electric scooters can ride 15 mph.

The design speed need not vary with the grade of a path where the grade remains below 4 percent. Where rolling terrain frequently surpasses 4 percent uphill and downhill – the speed of bicyclists will frequently vary between fast and slow. As it becomes more difficult to maintain momentum uphill, bicyclists may increase downhill speeds to compensate for an uphill climb ahead. Design speeds in rolling terrain or on a consistent grade can either be increased based on the downhill grade – or design speeds can vary based on uphill versus downhill direction.

Regardless of the path design speed, approaches to street crossings should be designed at a slower speed than the rest of a path because bicyclists are preparing to come to a stop.

924.2 Design Controls Based on Design Speed

Shared use path design speed affects the following design elements along a shared use path:

- Intersection sight distance
- Stopping sight distance
- Sight triangles
- Horizontal curves
- Vertical curves
- Dashed centerline striping
- Length of a passing zone
- Signal timing

Section 930 Bikeway Networks

[Note that the ODOT Strategic Action Plan has a goal to define a multimodal network. The content below is intended to help in the Bicycle Facility Selection Process to characterize the functional role of the highway in the bikeway network. This section is in development.]

Different people can travel on a bicycle in a wide mix of environments. People can ride bicycles on all highways and streets, except where specifically prohibited by administrative rule OAR 734-020-0045 and indicated with traffic signs. People can also ride bicycles on sidewalks, except where prohibited by a city ordinance. People can also ride bicycles on a variety of facilities apart

from highways including paved and unpaved shared use paths and trails, mountain biking trails, skate park facilities, as well as through unimproved land on uneven earth terrain.

Where riding a bicycle is not allowed, people can switch to another mode of transportation by walking the bicycle or taking the bicycle with them on a motor vehicle, train or other transit vehicle.

Notwithstanding the variety of facilities where some specific individuals can ride bicycles, most of these facilities are not usable options by all people who may ride a bicycle. The bicycle facilities that can be used by people of all ages and abilities include only those paved facilities that are specifically designed for bicycle travel and are located where they are perceived to be safe from traffic conflict.

The overall bikeway network within a city or other geographic boundary typically consists of all public streets and paved off-street paths. Each street or path may function as a link for a bicycle trip to destinations within that bikeway network. Wherever an ODOT highway is located within the geographic boundary, it may function to serve bicycle trips. The ODOT highway may function in any of the following roles in the overall bicycle network.

- Essential transportation link
- Destination Route
- Limited Access Route
- Destination Route Alternative
- Limited Access Route Alternative
- Designated Tourism Route
- Recreation Route
- School Route
- Off-chute

930.1 Essential Transportation Link

If a highway is the only route between two points, it is an essential transportation link.

930.2 Destination Route

Where the land use along a highway includes access to businesses, residences, or other services that are potential origin or destination points for a person riding a bicycle – this is a Destination Route.

DRAFT

930.3 Limited Access Route

Where a highway is access controlled and does not include access to businesses, residences or other services, it does not serve as an origin or destination point for bicycle trips. This is a Limited Access Route. Providing a low-stress parallel bicycle route may be an option for this type of facility.

930.4 Destination Route Alternative

This network role is any combination of bikeway facilities (typically detouring from the highway) that enables travel between two points along a destination route on the highway. Since the destination route includes origin and destination points, a parallel route must have frequent connections to a destination route and the destination route itself should include some bikeway accommodation.

930.5 Limited Access Route Alternative

This network role is any combination of bikeway facilities that enables travel between two points along a limited access route. Typically, this route may be in lieu of bikeway facilities on a freeway or expressway when following the procedure in Section ~~949~~948.

930.6 Designated Tourism Route

This includes any route that is designated with a route name or number. Examples are all Scenic Bikeways, the Oregon Coast Bike Route, the Historic Columbia River Highway, National Bike Routes etc.

930.7 Recreation Route

Any other recreational path or route that is not designated with an official route name or number.

DRAFT

930.8 School Route

Any route that is used by school children is a School Route. This network role may overlap categories above.

930.9 Off-Chute

Any route that is a dead-end to a destination is an off-chute (e.g., route from a trail head, park and ride lot, transit station, etc.)

930.10 Selecting the Bikeway Network Role(s)

[Placeholder for future content]

930.11 Design Controls Based on Bikeway Network Role

Consideration should include the following factors, which will be added as future content. Considerations include network development, trip length, connectivity, continuous versus interrupted flow.

Figure 900-2: A bicycle lane on an urban street



DRAFT

Section 940 Bikeways on All Roads

Bicycles are legally classified as vehicles and are ridden on most public roads in Oregon. All roads are open to bicycle traffic except where prohibited by administrative rule. (The only roads in Oregon where bicyclists are prohibited are specific segments of freeway in the metropolitan areas of Portland and Medford).

Roadways must be designed to allow bicyclists to ride in a manner consistent with the vehicle code.

~~930.12~~940.1 Bikeway Tiers

A bikeway exists on any road that has the appropriate design treatment to accommodate bicyclists, based on motor vehicle traffic volumes and speed. Bicycle travel can be accommodated in three ways or tiers, varying by the level of separation with motor vehicles.

Tier 1 Bikeways

It can be accommodated (Tier 1) in a space physically separated from motor vehicle traffic. This may be either a separated bicycle lane or a ~~shared use~~ side path. A separated bicycle lane is a designated lane that is apart from the roadway and has either curb or vertical objects between the bicycle lane and motor vehicle traffic. A ~~shared use~~ side path is separated from motor vehicle traffic in a similar way, but the space for bicycle travel is shared with pedestrians.

Tier 2 Bikeways

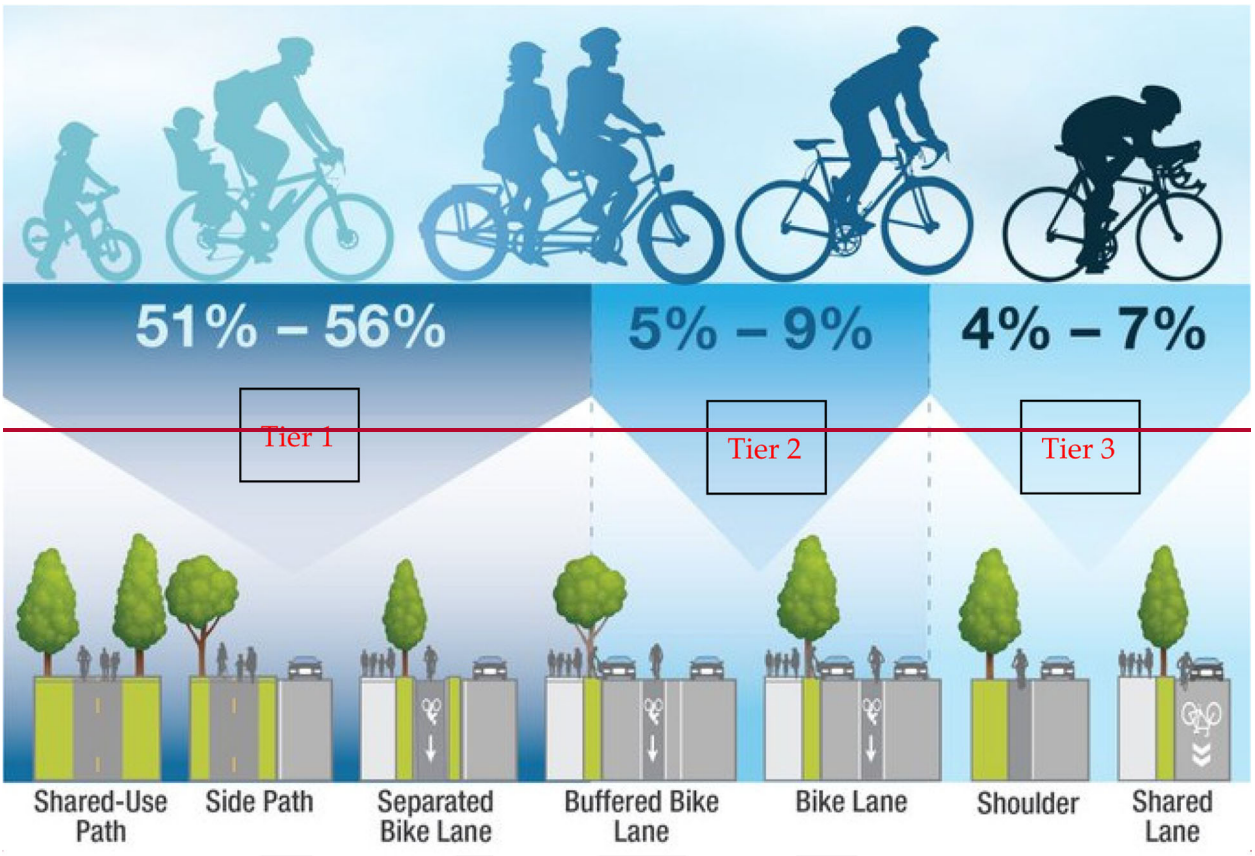
The second way bicycle travel can be accommodated (Tier 2) is where pavement markings delineate space on the road for bicycle travel apart from motor vehicle lanes. A paved shoulder delineated with a longitudinal stripe can serve bicycle travel but is not reserved exclusively for bicycle travel. A Bicycle Lane is reserved exclusively for bicycle travel. A buffered bicycle lane is a bicycle lane within a wider shoulder where an additional striped portion of the shoulder is marked to provide a horizontal space between bicycle travel and motor vehicles. This horizontal space functions as a safety buffer that may occasionally be used by oversized vehicles or by bicyclists to pass one another.

Tier 3 Bikeways

The third way (Tier 3) is by having bicycle traffic share the same travel lane on the roadway with motor vehicles. A narrow shoulder may also function as a Tier 3 facility if the shoulder width is insufficient for bicycle travel without encroaching into the travel lane.

~~9004~~

DRAFT


51% – 56%
5% – 9%
4% – 7%
Tier 1
Tier 2
Tier 3
Shared-Use Path
Side Path
Separated Bike Lane
Buffered Bike Lane
Bike Lane
Shoulder
Shared Lane

DRAFT

Figure 900-03: Types of Tier 1 Bikeways

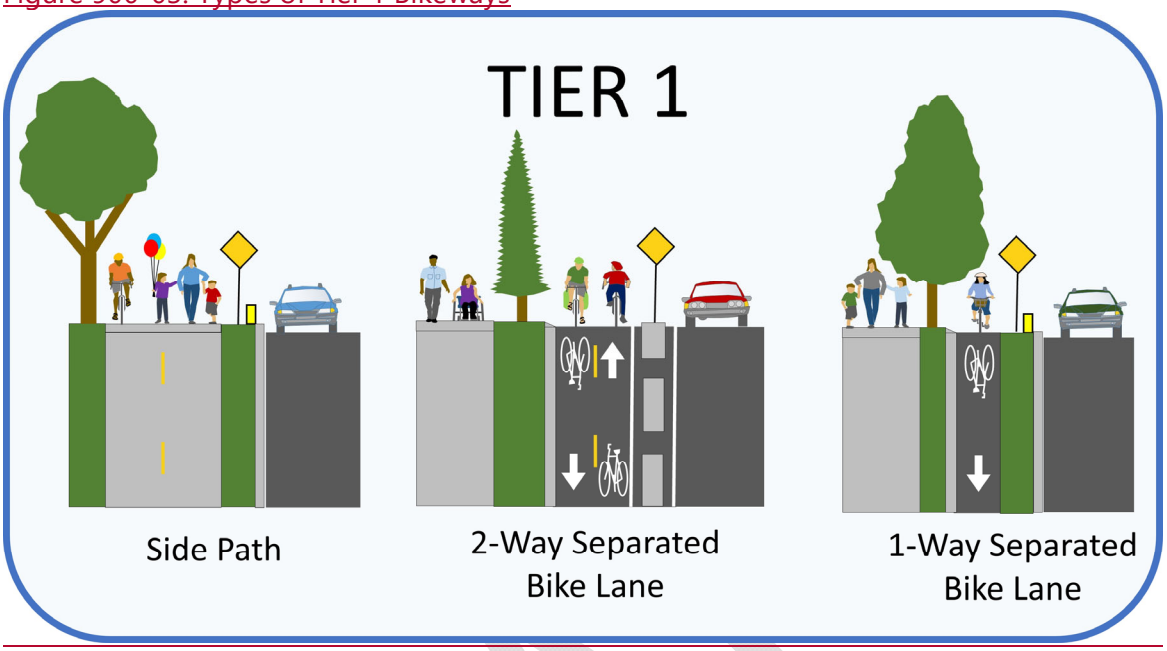
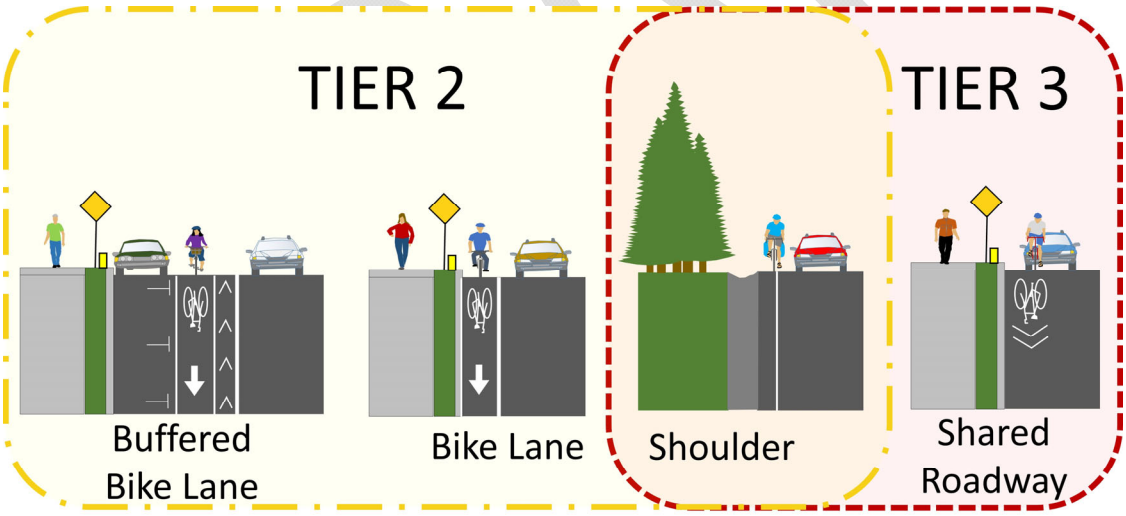


Figure 900-04: Types of Tier 2 and Tier 3 Bikeways



940.2 Types of Bikeways

The basic design treatments used for bicycle travel are listed in order of the level of separation from motor vehicle traffic):

Shared Roadway (Tier 3)

Bicyclists and motorists ride in the same travel lanes. There are no specific dimensions for shared roadways. They are usually narrow, so a motorist has to cross over into the adjacent travel lane to pass a cyclist. Shared roadways are common on neighborhood residential streets, on rural roads and low-volume highways.

Bicycle Boulevard (Tier 3)

The operation of a local street is modified to function as a through street for bicyclists while maintaining local access for automobiles. Traffic calming devices control traffic speeds and discourage through trips by automobiles. Traffic controls limit conflicts between automobiles and bicyclists and give priority to through bicycle movement.

Shoulder Bikeway (Tier 2 or Tier 3)

A Tier 2 shoulder bikeway is a paved shoulder that provides a suitable area for bicycling, reducing conflicts with faster moving motor vehicle traffic. A Tier 3 shoulder is a narrower paved shoulder where bicyclists may need to encroach into the adjacent travel lane. Most bicycle travel on the rural state highway system, and on many county roads, is accommodated on shoulder bikeways.

Bike Lane (Tier 2)

A portion of the roadway designated for preferential use by bicyclists. Bike lanes are marked to call attention to their preferential use by bicyclists.

Buffered Bike Lane (Tier 2)

A bicycle lane within a wider shoulder where an additional striped portion of the shoulder is marked to provide a horizontal space alongside the bicycle lane. Where the buffer marking is between bicycle travel and motor vehicles, this horizontal space functions as a safety buffer that may occasionally be used by oversized vehicles or by bicyclists to pass one another. Where the buffer marking is between bicycle travel and parked cars, it functions as shy space to ride away from opening car doors.

Separated Bike Lane (Tier 1)

A designated bicycle lane that is apart from the roadway and has either curb or vertical objects between the bicycle lane and motor vehicle traffic. A separated bike lane is designated for preferential use by bicyclists, separated from both motor vehicle traffic and separate from a sidewalk. Other terms commonly used for separated bike lanes include: cycle tracks, segregated bikeways and protected bikeways

Shared-Use Path (Tier 1)

A facility separated from motor vehicle traffic by an open space or barrier, either within the roadway right-of-way or within an independent right-of-way. The space for bicycle travel is shared with other users, typically including pedestrians, joggers, skaters and scooters. Shared-use paths are appropriate in corridors not well served by the street system, to create short cuts

DRAFT

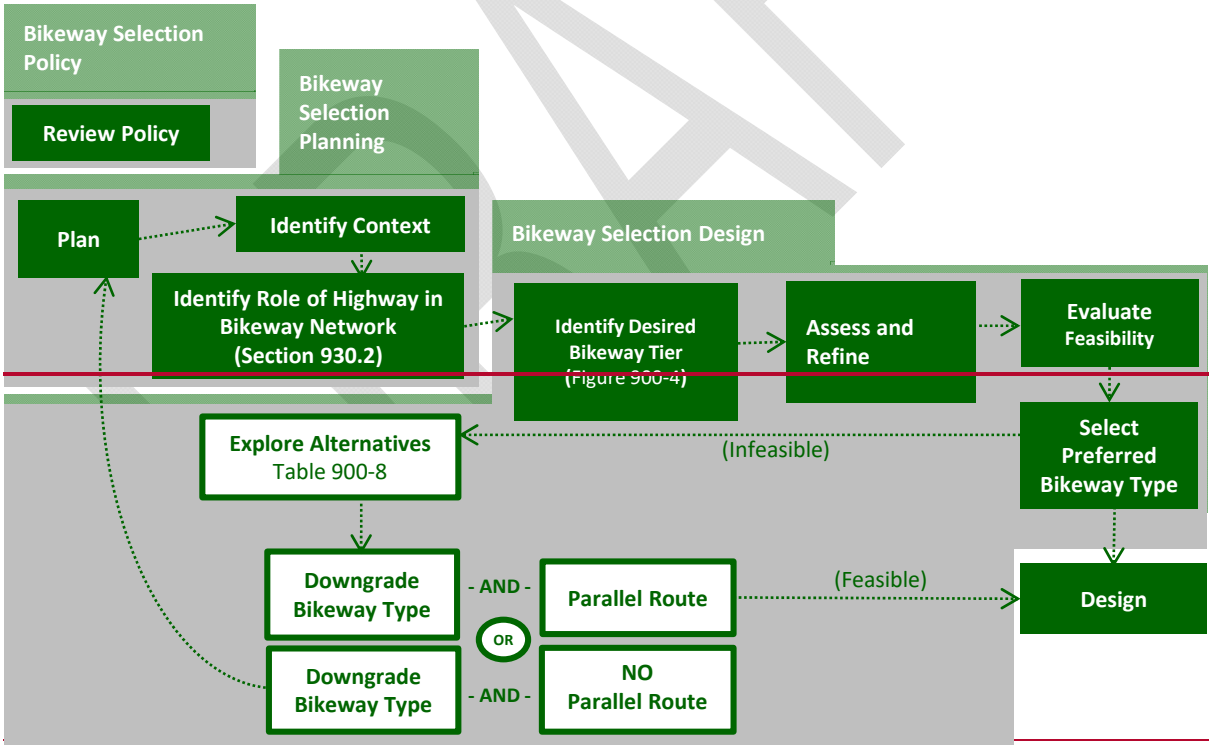
that link origin and destination points, and as elements of a community trail plan. See Chapter 7 for design standards.

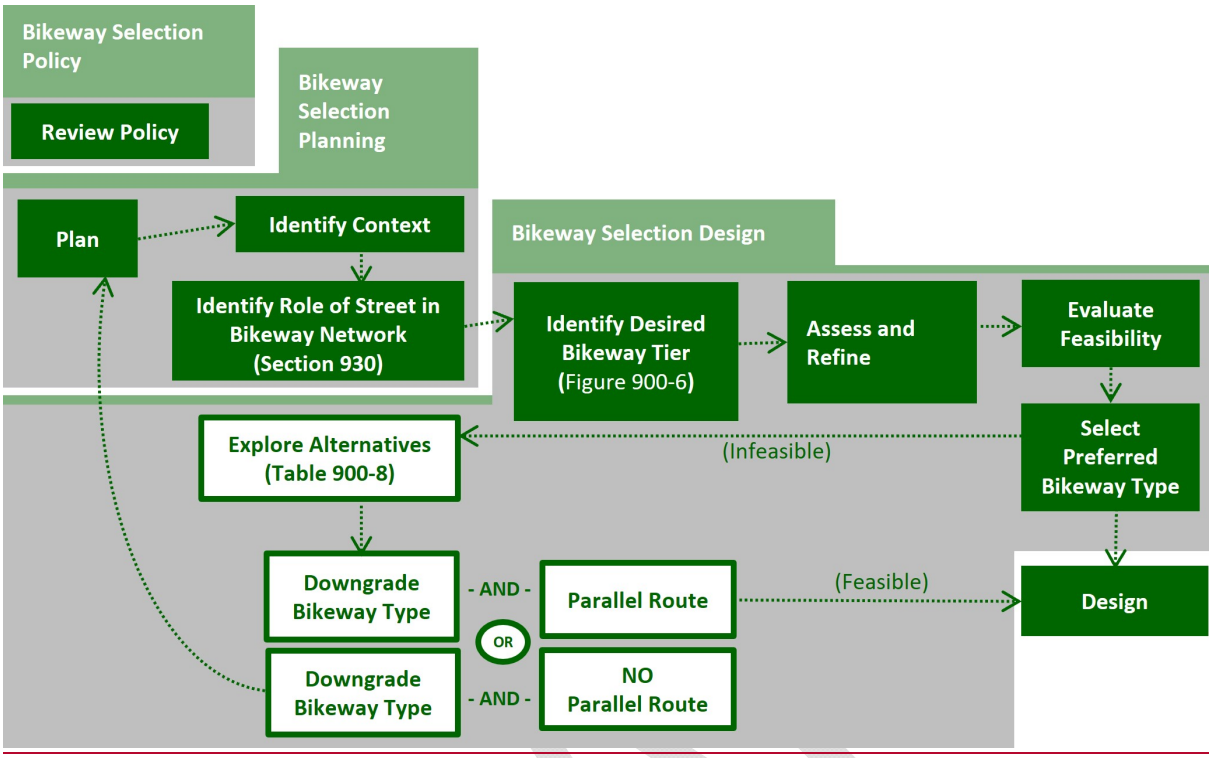
~~Section 931~~Section 941 Urban Bikeway Selection Process

The appropriate tier to accommodate bicycle travel varies by many factors including road context and traffic condition. Within each bikeway tier, there is a range of potential design cross sections. ~~Determining~~ The design standard applicable for the ~~space to be allotted in the cross section of the bike lane zones~~bikeway is described in ~~detail in~~ Section ~~947~~943.

Figure 900-~~Figure 900-~~5 is a flowchart that outlines the steps necessary to select the appropriate bicycle facility.

Figure 900-5: Bicycle Facility Selection Process





The flowchart is divided into three parts: policy, planning and design.

~~931.1~~941.1 Review Policy

The first part is to review the applicable policies in effect in the location where the bicycle facility will be. Some bikeway selection policy is already established in the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan. Section 910 through Section 914 discuss those policies and plans which are applicable statewide. There may also be local policies for an individual road jurisdiction such as mode share targets, which should be considered in choosing the bicycle facility.

~~931.2~~941.2 Bikeway Selection Planning

The second part of the flowchart is to review planning documents. Two goals in reviewing the planning documents are to determine the highway context and the role of the highway in the overall bikeway network. Bikeway selection planning includes efforts to identify and designate connected bicycle networks of “low-stress” bicycle facilities at the transportation system plan level. These networks represent the community’s vision for how to provide comfortable and safe access to key destinations for people riding bicycles. Planning efforts should identify ODOT highway contexts as well as the role of the ODOT highway in the bikeway network. If

the planning documents do not specify this information, these should be determined for an individual project.

When the highway context and role in the bikeway network are known, these are parameters for determining the cross section alternatives. More information on determining highway context is provided in Part 300. The highway context determines the design users, design vehicles, and required design controls as discussed in Section 922 and Section 923.

The role of the highway in the overall bikeway network affects how much an improvement to the bike facility might affect bicycle ridership. When the highway is the only route for bicyclists to a destination, it is more critical that the bikeway is context appropriate. When the highway is inside of a comprehensive bike network, such as a street grid, there may be alternative routes to a destination, aside from the bike accommodations on the highway.

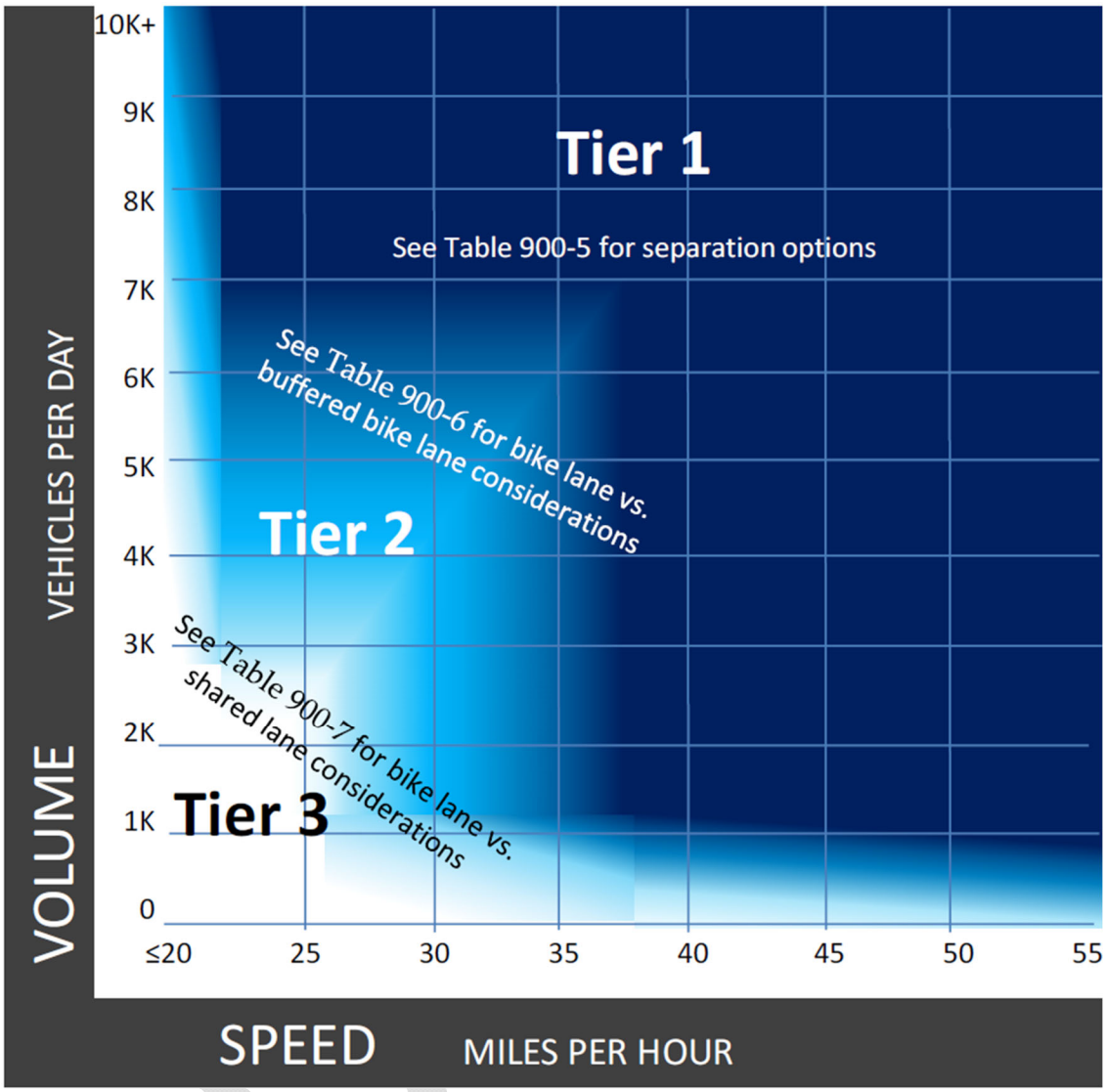
The role of the highway segment in the bike network also determines whether the standard bikeway may be downgraded due to its relative importance within the larger network and the availability of alternative routes.

~~931.3~~941.3 Identify Desired Bikeway Tier

The third part of the flowchart has several steps. The first step is to identify the target bikeway tier using Figure 900-~~Figure 900-6~~.

The need for bike facility separation from traffic increases as motor vehicle traffic volumes increase. The bikeway tier can be used to determine what level of separation is needed. This is a nomograph that uses posted speed and traffic volume to indicate which bikeway tier is appropriate for a given highway segment. The colors in the nomograph gradually blend, which reinforces the point that the determination of the appropriate bikeway type should consider more than speed and traffic volume. When speed and volume intersect in between the solid colors, use key planning level information identified in the referenced Table 900-6 and Table 900-7~~After the Tier is identified, each tier refers to a Table for key planning level information to refine the bicycle facility~~ to guide decision making: assess as many of the indicators in the tables as possible. If they overwhelmingly point to an increased or decreased need for separation, the decision is made easier. In scenarios that are not as clear, many other factors should be considered and weighed with good judgment. After the Tier is identified, planning level information is used to refine the specific bicycle facility recommended for a given location.

Figure 900-6: Bikeway Tier Identification Nomograph



~~931.~~4941.4 Assess and Refine Desired Bikeway

Within each bikeway tier, there is a range of potential bikeway types. After identifying the bikeway tier, the next step is to determine the options within that bikeway tier and then to refine the list by determining which of the recommended options is viable.

The standard range in widths for each zone in a bikeway is in Table 900-4. When reviewing the tables, the higher end of the dimension range should be the starting point, as shown first in the tables. Widths within the standard range should be refined to fit the conditions for the highway

segment. Zones wider than the standard range do not require a design exception. Where the lower number in the standard width range is not attainable, see Section 941.6.

Table 900-4 Standard Width Range for Desired Bikeway

Urban Context	Tier 1				Tier 2			Tier 3
	Sidewalk Buffer Zone	Bike Lane Zone	Street Buffer Zone	Right Side Shoulder *	Sidewalk Buffer Zone	Bike Lane Zone	Street Buffer Zone	Bike Lane Zone
Downtown	6′-0′	8′-7′	3′-2′	2′-0′	6′-0′	6′-5′	3′-0′	Included in travel lane width
Urban Mix	6′-0′	8′-7′	4′-2′	2′-0′	6′-0′	6′-5′	4′-0′	
Commercial Corridor	5′-0′	8′-7′	5′-2′	4′-0′	5′-0′	6′-5′	5′-0′	
Residential Corridor	6′-0′	8′-7′	5′-2′	4′-0′	6′-0′	6′-5′	4′-0′	
Suburban Fringe	6′-0′	8′-7′	5′-2′	6′-0′	6′-0′	6′	5′-0′	
Rural Community	5′-0′	8′-7′	4′-2′	6′-0′	5′-0′	6′-5′	4′-0′	
Rural	See Section 946							

* The minimum right-side shoulder width adjacent to the travel lane may be reduced to zero where a street has a Tier 1 bikeway, which is located outside of the shoulder. If the travel lane is directly adjacent to the curb, the overall shoulder width depends on other section elements. Elimination of shoulder width/lateral offset should only be considered in constrained locations and needs to be balanced with all cross-section and drainage needs. If the travel lane is next to a curb with a gutter (e.g., a 2-foot curb zone), the gutter typically serves as the right-side shoulder. A wider shoulder may be needed to accommodate drainage based on hydrological analysis or other specific needs.
On Reduction Review Routes, comply with ODOT Freight Mobility Policies, ORS 366.215 and OAR 731-012. Element dimensions may need to be modified.

~~931.4.1~~941.4.1 Tier 1 Separated Bike Lanes and Side Paths

When the traffic volume and speed result in a Tier 1 bicycle facility, a bikeway should be provided that includes a Street Buffer Zone. Table 900-5 identifies which options may be used within the Street Buffer Zone based on the context of a highway. 'X' indicates that the delineation option may be used in the urban context. Blank indicates that the delineation option is not allowed in the context. **A design exception is required to use a buffer option that does not have an X in the corresponding urban context.** A striping buffer is not included in this table because it results in a Tier 2 bicycle facility.

Table 900-5 Tier 1 Options in the Street Buffer Zone for Separated Bike Lanes and Side Paths

Delineation Options in the Street Buffer Zone	On-Street Parking*	Raised Island	Landscaping	Delineator Posts	Traffic Separator Curb	Planter Boxes	Concrete Barrier or Guardrail	Drainage Swale	Bio-swale
Downtown	X	X	X	X	X	X			X
Urban Mix	X	X	X	X	X	X			X
Commercial Corridor		X	X	X			X	X	X
Residential Corridor		X	X	X			X	X	X
Suburban Fringe		X	X	X			X	X	X
Rural Community	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	
Rural			X				X	X	

*On-street parking may be used as a street buffer only where on-street parking exists or is appropriate in the highway context.

Refer to the design requirements for each option considered to determine the required cross section width and any other design considerations. See 944.2 for the Street Buffer Zone standards of each delineation option. Additionally, refer to Bike Lane Zone and Sidewalk Buffer Zone requirements.

~~931.4.2~~941.4.2 Tier 2 – Buffered Bike Lanes and Bike Lanes

When the traffic volume and speed result in a Tier 2 bicycle facility, a Bike Lane should be provided. A striped separation from traffic in the Street Buffer Zone is generally preferred. Refer to Table 900-6 for considerations whether to provide additional buffer width for a bicycle lane. Additional details are given on page 24 of the FHWA Bikeway Selection Guide.

Table 900-6 Tier 2 Considerations – Need for Separation (Buffered Bike Lane versus Bike Lane)

Consideration	Buffered Bike Lane	Bike Lane
Traffic Volume	Above 10% of ADT at peak hour	Evenly distributed
Vehicle Mix	High percentage of heavy vehicles	Low heavy vehicle percentage
Curbside activity	Conflicts with parked cars or other activity requires frequent merging	Low curbside activity
Driveway frequency	Driveways are spaced further apart	Frequent driveways
Schools	Used as a school route	Not used as a school route
Continuity	Connects to separated facility	Doesn't connect to separated facility
Transit Considerations	Frequent transit stops	Infrequent transit stops

~~931.4.3~~941.4.3 Tier 3 - Shared Lanes

When the traffic volume and speed result in a Tier 3 bicycle facility, bike lanes are not always required. Bicyclists can ride in the travel lane with motor vehicles where speeds and traffic volumes are low (within the white zone in Figure 900-~~Figure 900-6~~). The painted stripe can be omitted from the required minimum shoulder width to result in a shared lane, wider than a typical travel lane. However, not all bicyclists are comfortable in traffic, especially children. Consider improved bicycle accommodation where riding is prohibited on sidewalks.

There are instances where a shared lane can be appropriate on a high-volume highway. Where a highway has dedicated lanes for transit or a combination of business access and transit (BAT lanes), and bicycle travel is shared with the dedicated lane, this type of bikeway is considered a shared lane condition. For the purpose of assessing the traffic volume for the Bikeway Tier Identification Nomograph in Figure 900-~~Figure 900-6~~, only the volume of transit vehicles and other allowed users is used to assess whether a Tier 3 facility is appropriate.

Where motor vehicles and bicycles share a lane, there are two ways that road users can share the road. Some bicycle riders move into the center of the travel lane in line with motor vehicles and try to ride at a speed close to that of traffic. Others ride as far as practicable to the right, allowing motor vehicles to pass by keeping left. Where approaches have shoulder or bike lane that drops, many riders may have difficulty transitioning from the shoulder into the travel lane.

See ODOT ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual for standards regarding the use of shared lane markings. Where used, shared lane markings alert drivers that bicyclists may be in the travel lane and also indicate the position in the shared travel lane where bicyclists are likely to ride. This helps enable bicyclists to transition to the shared lane from a shoulder or bike lane that drops. The positioning of the shared lane marking also encourages bicyclists to position themselves toward the center of the travel lane where they are more visible to drivers and drivers are encouraged to pass by changing lanes as they would for another motor vehicle, rather than by passing closely in the same lane. Shared lane markings on wider outside travel lanes of 14′ to 15′ may also help increase driver awareness of bicyclists who choose to keep right and help facilitate vehicles safely passing bicycles at a low speed.

Table 900-7 Need for Separation (Bike Lane versus Shared Lane)

Consideration	Bike Lane	Shared Lane
Proximity to urban center	Further away, suburban areas	Urban center
Building set back	Parking lots front street	Buildings at back of walk
On-street parking	High turnover	Low turnover
Block length	Long block length	Short block length
Traffic signal coordination	Timed above posted speed	Timed below posted speed
Traffic Volume	Above 10% of ADT at peak hour	Evenly distributed
Number of Travel Lanes	More than two	Two or less
Grade	Uphill	Downhill
Schools	Used as a school route	Not used as a school route
Continuity	Connects to bike lanes	No bike lanes on approach
Other high-use indicators	Indications of high use	No indicators

Narrow bridges, tunnels, and other locations that reduce the width of a highway may require bicyclists to ride in the travel lane with motor vehicles. Often, these conditions occur on high-speed roads. Full width shoulders should be provided. However, when structural widening is beyond the scope of a project, high speed shared lanes can be treated with traffic control such as advance signing and active warning beacons. See Section 309.1 in the ODOT Traffic Manual[9~~12~~].

941.4.4 Trade Offs

Tables 900-6 and 900-7 indicate factors to consider for deciding which bikeway facility type is most appropriate.

Land Use

Land use influences traffic patterns and the comfort and confidence of bicyclists. Urban centers, with narrower travel lanes, buildings at the back of walk and on-street parking give cues to motorists to pay more attention to their environment and to slow down. Wide suburban streets without such cues for driver attention in turn increase motor vehicle speeds and decrease driver vigilance.

Buildings Setbacks

The distance that a building is setback from the street has an impact on the way that road users experience the public space. Buildings at the back of walk reduce motor vehicle speeds and provide direct access to destinations; under these conditions, bike lanes are less needed. Buildings set back from the roadway, with parking in front, create conditions (lowered driver vigilance, speeding) whereby bike lanes should be provided.

On-Street Parking

On-street parking benefits bicyclists and pedestrians by reducing motor vehicle speeds. The benefit is lower if on-street parking is underutilized, due to ample off-street parking.

- Note: building setbacks and on-street parking interrelate: buildings at the back of walk and on-street parking go hand-in-hand.

Block Length

Bike lanes are more necessary where blocks are long, as riders need to travel further on the thoroughfare to access destinations. Bike lanes are less critical where blocks are short, such as urban centers.

Prevailing Speed

Prevailing Speed is related to posted speed, but drivers will drive faster if the roadway cues allow them to. Speed studies are often not practical for planning purposes; therefore the chart relies on posted speed. However, if the travel speed is known to be higher or lower than the posted speed, that information should be used to determine if bike lanes are needed.

Signal Coordination

Signals timed at 25 MPH or less allow bicyclists to share the travel lane with motor vehicles; signals timed at greater than 30 MPH make sharing more difficult.

Peak Hourly Traffic Volume

If a roadway with moderate traffic volumes experiences an intense peak for a sustained period of time, bike lanes are needed to provide room during this period.

DRAFT

Roadway Width/ Number of Travel Lanes

Roadway width and number of travel lanes influence the behavior of drivers and the comfort and confidence of bicyclists. Wide travel lanes and multi-lane roads increase the likelihood of speeding by drivers, decreasing the desirability of lane sharing by bicyclists.

Steep Grade

Bicyclists travel uphill slowly and tend to meander. If constraints allow only one bike lane, it should be placed in the uphill direction.

Bicycle Demand

Bicycle demand is always a good reason to provide bike lanes, but lack of adequate bicycling facilities may mask a potential demand. School route, parks or community centers are reasons to favor providing a bike lane. Route continuity can be used to justify short segments of bike lanes that connect other bike lanes or a discontinuous trail.

Passing Stress

Motor vehicles follow bicycles for a duration in shared lanes at lower speeds. As the length of the shared lane increases, drivers seek opportunity to pass bikes. As traffic volume and speed increase, nearly all motor vehicle traffic passes bicycles. Figure 900-~~Figure 900-7~~ approximates the average number of seconds someone can ride before a vehicle passes, based on the equation.

Equation 900-1

$$Seconds\ between\ passing\ events = \frac{3600 \times V_a}{ADT \times PH \times D \times (V_a - V_b)}$$

Where:

V_a = Motor vehicle speed in mph

V_b = Speed of bicycle being passed (12 mph is used in Figure 900-~~Figure 900-7~~)

ADT = average daily motor vehicle traffic volume

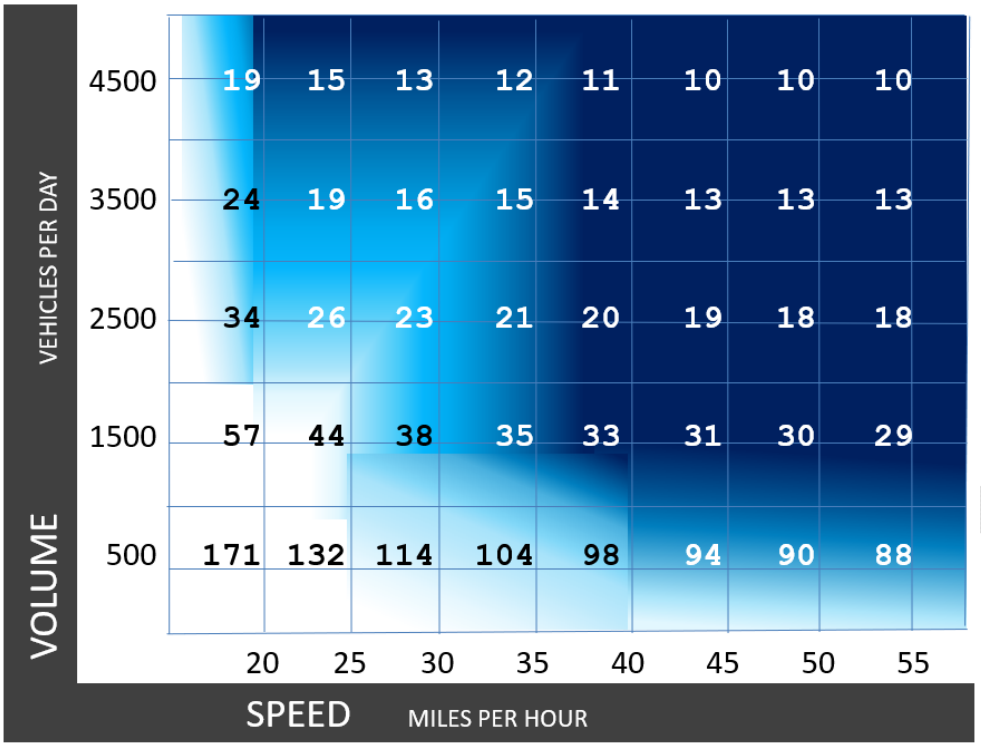
PH = portion of ADT during the peak hour (0.15 is used in Figure 900-~~Figure 900-7~~)

D = directional flow (0.70 is used in Figure 900-~~Figure 900-7~~)

As the time between passing events decreases, bicyclists are less comfortable to share the road.

DRAFT

Figure 900-7: Seconds between passing vehicles during peak-hour



Likewise, in a bike lane, as the passing events increase, bicyclists are less comfortable to ride adjacent to moving traffic and are more likely to ride on sidewalks if buffered or separated bike lanes are not provided.

Where Bicycle Lanes are Infeasible

If the tables indicate a need for bike lanes and there is simply no room for bike lanes, or the trade-offs are too burdensome, one option is to modify the conditions so that a shared roadway is more acceptable. For example, when there is a tradeoff between on-street parking and bike lanes, bike lanes may be omitted if motor vehicle speeds can be reduced to less than 25 MPH, and if on-street parking is sufficiently utilized. For long segments (10 blocks or more) where constraints don't allow for bike lanes, another option is to provide a parallel route; the alternate route should be improved to favor bicycle travel (e.g. a bike boulevard). Where bike lanes are required in the scope of a project, a design exception is required to omit bike lanes and may require a public process. See Section 912.1.

~~931.5~~941.5 Evaluate Feasibility

Reviewing various options using a decision-making framework can help prioritize trade-offs, refine decisions, and lead to a solution that supports the project needs.

When considering decisions about bicycle facility selection, keep in mind the maintenance needs with each facility type. Determine what maintenance issues there will be and how to mitigate them with the design. If a bicycle facility is being added to an existing cross-section by simply restriping the existing design elements, care must be taken to ensure removal of the existing striping does not leave "ghost" lines that may confuse both drivers and bicyclists. The final striping layout must be clear and understandable to roadway users. Discussion will be needed to determine the best method to remove or obliterate the striping (e.g., hydro blasting) to not leave behind ghosting of the original striping. Consider adjustments to lane configurations when scoping and designing pavement preservation projects.

When determining appropriate elements for the street buffer zone, the ability for maintaining the facility shall be considered. Consult ODOT maintenance staff for input when determining the following:

- Sweeping and maintaining constrained bicycle facilities.
- Restriping and maintaining markings for buffered bicycle lanes.
- Maintaining vertical elements like tubular markers used for delineation and separation of the bicycle facility and the travel lane.

Consider intergovernmental agreements with the local jurisdiction for maintenance of the transition zone and elements within it. This may include the pedestrian realm as well

In many cases, implementation of bicycle facilities on ODOT streets in urban areas is completed through a retrofit project, in which additional space for bicycle facilities require weighing trade-offs compared to other uses for the space.

~~931.6~~941.6 Explore Alternative Bikeway Designs

In some cases, upon evaluating alternatives, it is possible that none of the preferred alternatives are viable. In that case, additional alternatives should be explored that are the next best option to the recommended bikeway type. When a bikeway is provided on a highway that is a lower tier than what is recommended, the potential usage is reduced because some of the users will not be comfortable using that bicycle facility.

Sometimes, the role of the highway in the overall bikeway network is such that the recommended bikeway tier is not necessary due to a parallel bicycle route that functions for most of the bicycle demand. Identify whether parallel bicycle routes serve the bicycle demand. If so, basic bicycle accommodation is still required; refer to Table 900-8~~Table 900-8~~.

Design Concurrence Documentation is required to approve using an alternative bikeway design from Table 900-8 as the selected bikeway type. **A design exception is required to justify the width of a bikeway that is less than a design option in Table 900-8.**

In order for one of these designs to be approved by concurrence or a lesser design via design exception, the documentation must document how the preferred bikeway type was not viable – or that the bikeway network supports a parallel bike route.

Table 900-8: Alternative Bicycle Facility Design– With Identified Lower Stress Parallel Route

Highway Characteristics	Bikeway Type	Min. Width
Traditional Downtown	Bike Lanes with on-street parking	6′
	Bike Lanes with no on-street parking	5′
	Shared travel lane (20 - 25 mph)	Included in travel lane width
Urban Mix, Commercial Corridor, or Residential Corridor	Shoulder Bike Lanes	5′
	Shared travel lane (25 mph)	Included in travel lane width
Suburban Fringe: 35-45 mph	Shoulder	4′
	Bike Lanes	5′
Suburban Fringe: 50-55 mph or Expressway: 45 mph	Shoulder	8′
	Bike Lane or Buffered Bike Lane	8′
Expressway: 50-55 mph	Shoulder	8′
Freeway	Shoulder	10′

~~Section 932~~Section 942 Transition Realm and Zones

The cross section of a roadway has different functions as it serves bicyclists, pedestrians, motor vehicles, parking and land use access. Cross Section Realms are used to describe the parts of a highway's cross section. The portion of the highway between the Travelway Realm and the Pedestrian Realm is the Transition Realm. Not every highway includes a space between the Pedestrian Realm and the Travelway Realm. Assume that a Transition Realm always exists and can have a width of zero where the typical components of the Transition Realm are not included. The components that can make up a Transition Realm are~~ a bike lane, on-street parking and a buffer strip.~~:

- Bicycle lane
- Bicycle/Street Buffer

- Right Side Shoulder
- On-street parking

As described in Section 940, bicycle traffic can be accommodated in three ways. Tier 3 bicycle facilities (shared lanes) exist where bicycle traffic is in the Travelway Realm. Tier 1 and Tier 2 bicycle facilities lie within the Transition Realm.

Some design elements commonly in the Pedestrian Realm may be placed in the Transition Realm. These are:

- Sidewalk Buffer Zone
- Curb/Gutter

Figure 900-~~9~~8: Cross section divided into Realms

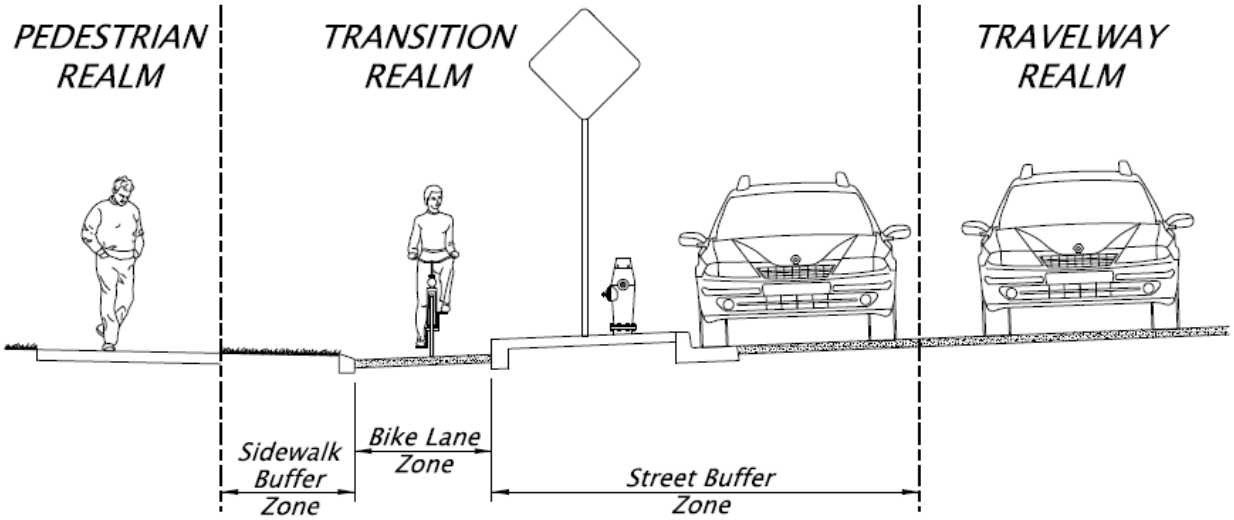


942.1 The Bike Lane Zone System

The Transition Realm is subdivided into three zones~~: The~~. Each zone is a distinct area; the three zones are the:

- Sidewalk buffer zone
- Bike ~~Lane Zone, the~~ lane zone
- Street buffer zone

Figure 900-~~89Buffer Zone~~: Transition Realm and Bike Lane Zones

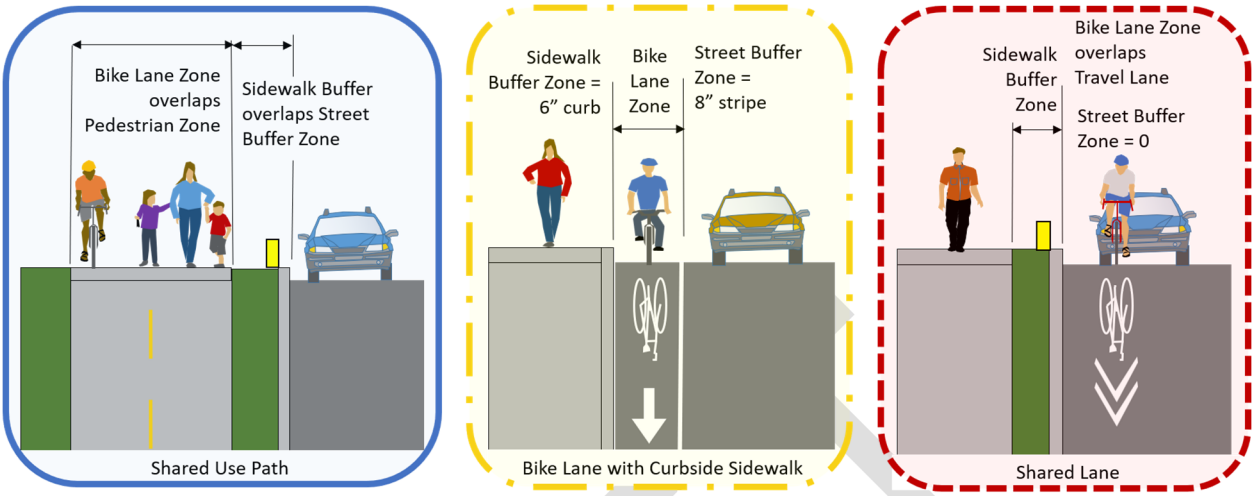


The best way to achieve the ~~Sidewalk Buffer Zone~~goal of a clear bikeway system is to design bikeways using the zone system. Every type of bikeway can be described in terms of these ~~three zones~~zones. Only separated bike lanes and buffered bike lanes have all three zones. Sometimes the width of a zone is zero or overlapping.

- Shared use paths have no separation between the space where pedestrians and bicyclists operate, the sidewalk buffer zone overlaps the pedestrian zone.
- A bike lane without buffer markings is separated from traffic with only a lane stripe, so the street buffer zone width is zero.
- In a shared roadway, the bike lane zone overlaps the motor vehicle lane and there is no street buffer.

Figure 900-~~910: Transition Realm and Bike Lane~~: Applying the Three Zones for Different Bikeway Types

DRAFT



~~Section 933~~Section 943 The Bike Lane Zone Design Standards

943.1 Bike Lane Zone Width Standards

The ODOT standard for widths of the bikeway elements of the Transition Realm are given in this section. Recommended widths for elements in the Pedestrian Realm, Transition Realm, and Travelway Realm vary by urban context and are shown together for the entire highway cross section in Tables 300-8 through 300-12. The tables do not include all bikeway types. Since one-way separated bicycle lanes are the recommended facility type of Tier 1 bikeway, information on other Tier 1 bikeways is not included. Tier 1 facilities also include two-way separated bicycle lanes and side paths. This section includes standards for all one-way bikeway types. See Section 971 and Section 961 for side paths and two-way separated bike lanes. The tables in Part 300 include recommended widths for the following features:

- Tier 1 One-way Separated Bicycle Lane Width (Curb Constrained Facility)
- Tier 2 On-Street Bicycle Lane Width (not including buffer)
- Tier 1 Bicycle/Street Buffer
- Tier 2 Bicycle/Street Buffer
- Tier 1 Right Side Shoulder.

A Tier 1 one-way separated bicycle lane is described as a curb-constrained facility. See discussion in 943.1.3 regarding how the presence of a curb affects the zone width.

DRAFT

The width of a bicycle lane is measured between the following points: the center of an edge line, the face of a curb that rises up from the bikeway, the back of a curb whose top is level with the bikeway, the face of guardrail or barrier, or the edge of pavement.

Table 900-0910: Standard Widths for Bike Lane Zones

Bikeway Tier	Bikeway Type	Bike Lane Zone	Street Buffer Zone	Right Side Shoulder	Minimum Width[2]
Tier 1	One-way Separated Bicycle Lane	8′-7′	Varies 5′-2′ See Table[1]	6′-0′ See Table	Table 900-10
	Two-way Separated Bicycle Lane	12′-8′	Varies 5′-2′ See Table[1]	6′-0′ See Table	Table 900-10
	Side Path	10′	5′	2′ See Table	Table 900-10
Tier 2	Buffered Bicycle Lane	6′-5′	5′-0′ See Table[1]	Included in bicycle lane	Table 900-10
	Bicycle Lane	6′	NA	Included in bicycle lane	Table 900-10
Tier 3	Shared Roadway	Included in travel lane	NA	Included in travel lane	Table 900-10

[1] See width guidance by urban context in Tables 300-8 through 300-13

[2] Design exception required where condition in Table 900-10 is not met.

943.1.1 Minimum Bikeway Width

Refer to the bicycle facility selection process in Section 941 to determine the appropriate bicycle facility tier. Where an existing highway cross section is configured with a bikeway accommodation that is less than the recommended bikeway tier, the scope of the project will determine whether to improve the bikeway conditions. See Part 100 for project requirements. Urban Design Concurrence documentation is required to approve the bikeway configuration for a given project after finalizing the desired bikeway design.

Provide a bikeway configuration no less than the recommended widths in Table 900-10~~Table 900-11~~. Where the bikeway configuration does not at least meet the applicable minimum ODOT design standard in Table 900-10~~Table 900-11~~, a design exception is required. The applicable minimum ODOT design standard is:

Table 900-1011: ODOT Minimum design standard for bikeway

Bikeway Tier	Condition	Minimum bike lane zone width
Tier 3	If the bicycle facility selection process identifies the recommended bikeway tier as Tier 3	Shared travel lane
All Tiers	A parallel route is identified	Per Table 900-8.
Tier 2	Where a parallel route is not available	6-foot bicycle lane
Tier 2	Along right-turn channelization	5-foot bicycle lane
Tier 1	One-way shared use path	8-foot
Tier 1	Two-way shared-use path	10-foot

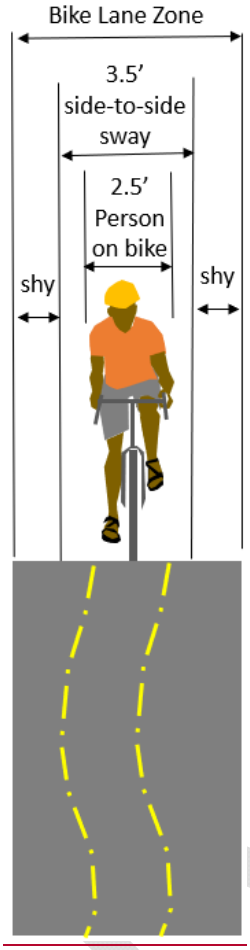
943.1.2 Bikeway Operating Space and Recommended Widths

The portion of the road cross section designated exclusively for bicycle travel is the Bike Lane Zone. Where bicycle lanes are provided on the shoulder of a road, the entire bike lane is equivalent to the Bike Lane Zone. Where buffered bike lanes or separated bike lanes are provided, the Bike Lane Zone includes only the portion of the bike lane designated for bicycle travel. In a shared use path, the Bike Lane Zone overlaps the Pedestrian Zone within the Pedestrian Realm.

The Bike Lane Zone includes the operating width for a bicyclist and shy space on each side. The typical width of a person on a bicycle is 2.5 feet. The minimum operating width of a person riding a bicycle is 3.5 feet to account for a person leaning slightly and for side-to-side deviation from riding in a straight line. Leaning is increased around curves. Bicyclists shy away from curbs, signs, posts, fences, railings, and moving traffic.

DRAFT

Figure 900-~~10~~11~~The surface of the bike lane zone shall be paved.~~: Bike Lane Zone Based on Operating Space for a Bicyclist



The standard width for the Bike Lane Zone varies by Bikeway Tier. Tier 1 and Tier 2 bikeways are described below. Since Tier 3 bicycle facilities are shared with motor vehicles, bike lane zone requirements do not apply. *A concrete gutter pan may be included as part of the bike lane zone if there is 4 feet of pavement beyond the longitudinal joint in the gutter pan.*

~~933.1.1~~943.1.3 Bike Lane Zone for Tier 1

The bike lane zone is the portion of a separated bike lane intended for bicycle travel. Shared use paths combine the widths of the Bike Lane Zone and the Pedestrian Zone. Refer to Section 960 for Shared Use Path widths.

Typically, in a shoulder bike lane, a bicyclist who wishes to pass another bike will use part of the adjacent vehicle lane to do so. However, when bike lanes are constrained between curbs or

other objects, passing may be restricted if the bike lane is not wide enough. Therefore, the bike lane zone must consider the ability for a bike to be passed or for two bikes to travel side-by-side.

Figure 900-~~11~~12: Space for One Bicycle to Pass Another

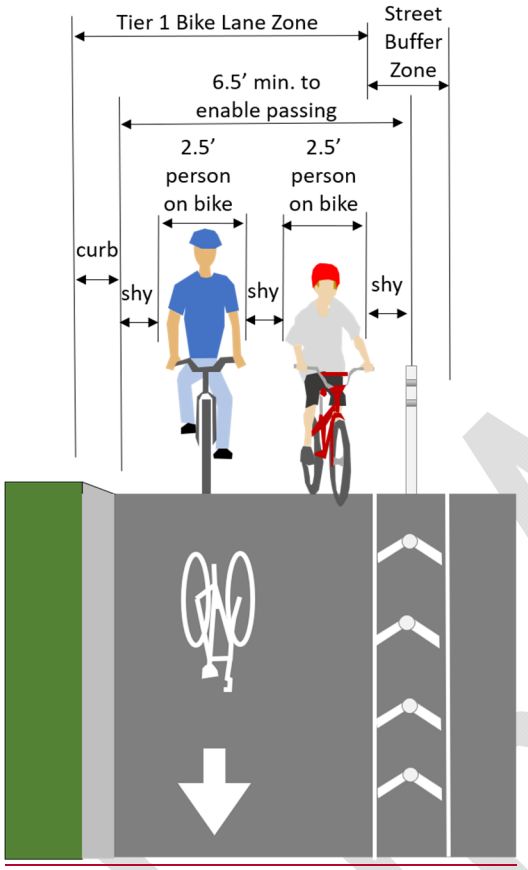
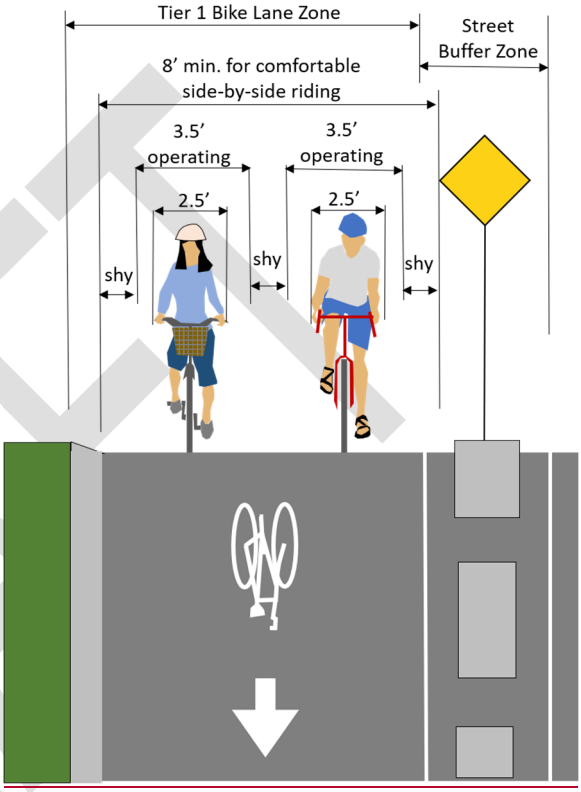


Figure 900-13~~12~~: Side-By-Side Riding Within The Same Lane



The ability for two bikes to travel alongside each other is also influenced by whether curbs are sloped or straight. The minimum dimension for a bike to pass another bike is 6.5-feet. The range in width for a bike lane zone depends on whether the street buffer is traversable. Figure 900-12 illustrates a separated bicycle lane cross section with the minimum amount of space available for bicycle passing. Note that part of the street buffer zone is used as shy distance. If necessary, the 6.5 foot space may encroach in a striped street buffer zone up to an object, such as a delineator post. Figure 900-13~~Figure 900-12~~ illustrates a separated bicycle lane with sufficient space for two people to ride side-by-side.

The width of the bike lane zone is also affected by maintenance. If a separated bike lane will be swept using a maintenance vehicle, the width of that vehicle may control the width of the bike lane zone. Where the bike lane zone is adjacent to a pedestrian zone, a maintenance vehicle may be able to sweep both together when the boundary between zones is a bike lane curb or if they are at the same level.

DRAFT

The standard range in width for a separated bike lane zone between standard curbs shall be 8 to 7 feet wide, exclusive of curbs. Where a separated bike lane has a sloped bike lane curb on either or both sides, the bike lane zone width includes the width of the 0.5-foot sloped curb(s). Where a separated bike lane has softscape on either or both sides that is flush with the bike lane, the bike lane zone width shall be 8 to 6.5 feet wide. *Where the surface adjacent to the bike lane zone is flush pavement with intermittent objects in the street buffer, ~~it is consistent with a Tier 2 bikeway (Buffered Bike Lane). Refer~~refer to the standard width for a ~~shoulder~~Tier 2 bike lane rather than a Tier 1 separated bike lane ~~when the surface adjacent to either side~~.* **A design exception is required if a segment of ~~the~~a bike lane zone is ~~flush pavement~~narrower than 5 feet.** Where available width is constrained, the bike lane zone may be narrower than the standard width range for a short ~~segments up to 200 feet. Where~~segment. For example, where the bike lane zone is adjacent to an ~~accessible~~ on-street parking access aisle ~~(less than 200 feet in length),~~ the bike lane zone may be reduced to 4-feet ~~without~~with a design exception. ~~**Otherwise, a design exception is required if a segment of a bike lane zone is narrower than 5 feet.**~~ In constrained areas, bicycles may not be able to pass each other. Ensure that passing opportunity is provided on each side of ~~the~~a constrained space.

A raised bike lane is a type of Tier 1 bikeway that generally does not include a horizontal street buffer from the motorized vehicle lanes. Raised bike lanes may be curbed on both sides. The curb adjacent to traffic is generally 2-6 inches in height. Since a bike lane edge stripe is typically placed on the road below the curb, the total width of a raised bike lane includes the curb together with the bike lane zone. Since 1-foot on each side of the curb functions as shy distance, the bike lane zone width is the same for a raised bike lane as for a separated bike lane. Separated and raised bike lanes have the potential to attract more riders than ~~do~~ shoulder bike lanes. Where the expected volume of bicyclists is 150 to 750 per hour, the bike lane zone width should be at least 8-feet. Where the expected volume of riders is less than 150 in the peak hour, the 6.5-foot width is acceptable. Where higher volumes are expected (over 750 bicyclists per hour) or to provide more comfortable side-by-side riding, a bike lane zone of 8 to 10 feet is preferred.

~~933.1.2~~943.1.4 Bike Lane Zone for Tier 2

The bike lane zone is equivalent to the bike lane width for a shoulder or bike lane. The bike lane zone is the bike lane portion of a buffered bike lane.

Shoulders are usually striped as bike lanes in urban areas; this designates the shoulder as an area for preferential travel by bicyclists. Low potential bicycle use is not a reason to not provide a shoulder bikeway. The decision to designate shoulders as bike lanes is made by the Region Traffic Manager/Engineer and should be based on anticipated bike use, local transportation plans and/or bicycle plans, posted speed, inventory data of bikeway need and other factors. See Appendix F for instructions on how to access roadside inventory bikeway need data through the FACS-STIP tool.

DRAFT

When a bike lane is located immediately adjacent to a motor vehicle through travel lane, the standard width for the bike lane is 6 feet. ***In constrained areas, ~~narrower~~ lanes as narrow as 5-feet may be acceptable through a design concurrence documentation.*** **A design exception is required to justify a bike lane zone that is less than 5 feet.**

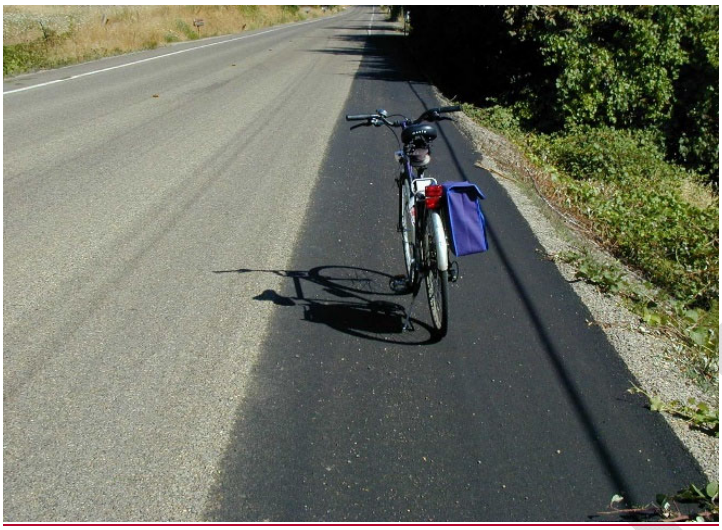
Bike lanes may also be wider than the standard 6 feet in areas of high use or on high-speed facilities. However, a wider lane could be mistaken for a motor vehicle lane or parking area. In areas with additional roadway width, a painted buffer stripe can be used to clarify that the space is intended for bicycle use.

943.2 Bike Lane Surfacing

The surface of the bike lane zone shall be paved. Pavement condition is important to cyclists, as they ride on lightweight two-wheeled vehicles with narrow, high-pressure tires (necessary for the bicycle's inherent efficiency). Rough surfaces and imperfections such as joints can cause a rider to lose control and fall. Debris such as gravel and glass can be addressed through maintenance. Adequate drainage is critical to cyclists, as they ride in the area where water ponds when drains get clogged, or surface irregularities prevent water from entering drain grates. Poor pavement quality and pavement seams can cause bicycle tires to become hung up in large potholes or uneven joints. Crash potential is reduced when pavement cuts are located on or near the bike lane stripe and at least 4' of clear ridable width is provided without pavement seams. Longitudinal cuts parallel to the direction of bicycle travel (e.g., utility trenches) should be avoided in bike lanes and other areas used by bicycles to minimize uneven seams that develop as patched pavements settle. If trenching is required in the bike lane, it is preferable to repave the entire bike lane width. See ODOT Pavement Design Guide Section 6.1.4 for guidance on joint locations.

DRAFT

Figure 900-~~13~~14: Chip Seal Ends at Motor Vehicle Travel Lane



Chip-sealed surfaces are rough to ride on and should be avoided in bike lanes when possible. Where used, chip seals should be limited to the travel lanes on roads and highways with paved shoulders: the shoulders should not be chip-sealed. On roads with no shoulders (where cyclists ride in the travel lanes), chip seals should use a fine mix and be covered with a fog or slurry seal.

943.2.1 Surface Types

The preferred roadway surfacing for bicycling is a finely-graded asphaltic concrete. Rough open-graded mixes are very uncomfortable for cyclists, as they cause vibrations and increased rolling resistance, contributing to greater cyclist fatigue. See ODOT Pavement Design Guide.

943.2.2 Colored Bike Lanes

[Placeholder for future content.]

943.2.3 Bike Lane Standard Slopes

Most users of bicycle lanes use devices with two wheels in-line and are consequently impacted little by the cross slope of the roadway. Wheelchair users may use bicycle lanes where a sidewalk is obstructed. Likewise, bicycles with training wheels, bicycle trailers, skateboards and other devices benefit from a cross slope that is as close to level as practicable.

DRAFT

Running slopes in the bicycle lane generally match the grade of the roadway. See Section 966 for vertical profiles of shared use paths.

Steeper running slopes or cross slopes may be used at bicycle ramps and raised crosswalks. See Section 980 through Section 983 for design information on these features.

943.3 Drainage Grates in Bike Lanes

Care must be taken to ensure that drainage grates are bicycle-safe, as required by ORS 810.150. If not, a bicycle wheel may fall into the slots of the grate causing the cyclist to fall. Replacing existing grates (A, B, preferred methods) or welding thin metal straps across the grate, perpendicular to the direction of travel (C, alternate method) is required. These should be checked periodically to ensure that the straps remain in place. Uneven grates may be marked as an obstacle until they can be repaired. See ODOT Pavement Markings Manual for marking details.

Grates with bars perpendicular to the roadway must not be placed at the bottom of curb ramps, as wheelchairs could get caught in the slot.

If a street-surface grate is required for drainage (ODOT types G-1, G-2, CG-1 and CG-2), care must be taken to ensure that the grate is flush with the road surface. Inlets should be raised after a pavement overlay to within 1/4 inch of the new surface. If this is not possible or practical, the pavement must taper into drainage inlets, so they do not cause an abrupt edge at the inlet.

The gap between the grate and the inlet should be kept tight, no more than ¾ inch, to prevent bicycle wheels from getting trapped. The most effective way to avoid drainage-grate problems is to eliminate them entirely with the use of inlets in the curb face (type CG-3). The cross-slope of the outer 3 feet or so of the bike lane should stay constant, with no exaggerated warping towards the opening. This may require more grates per mile to handle bypass flow; but this is the most bicycle-friendly design. Another bicycle-friendly option is to ensure the inlet grate is entirely contained in the gutter pan

DRAFT

Figure 900-~~17~~15: Bicycle Safe Drainage Grates

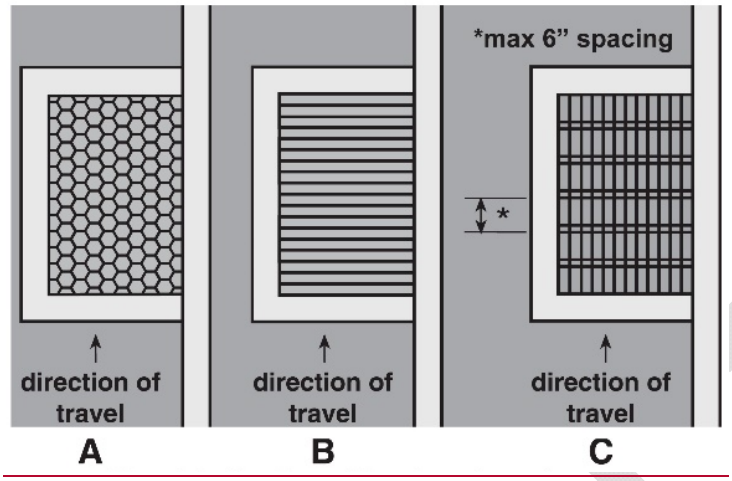
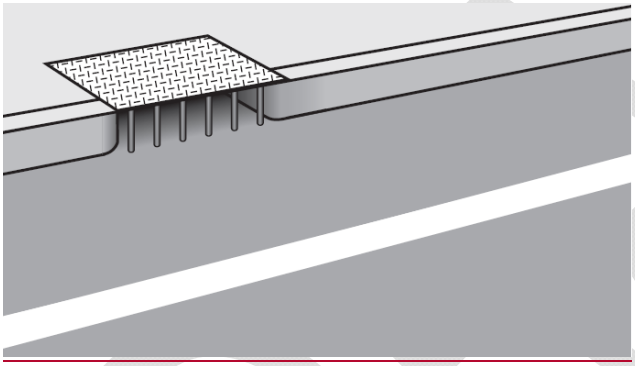


Figure 900-~~18~~16: Curb Inlet Drainage Grate



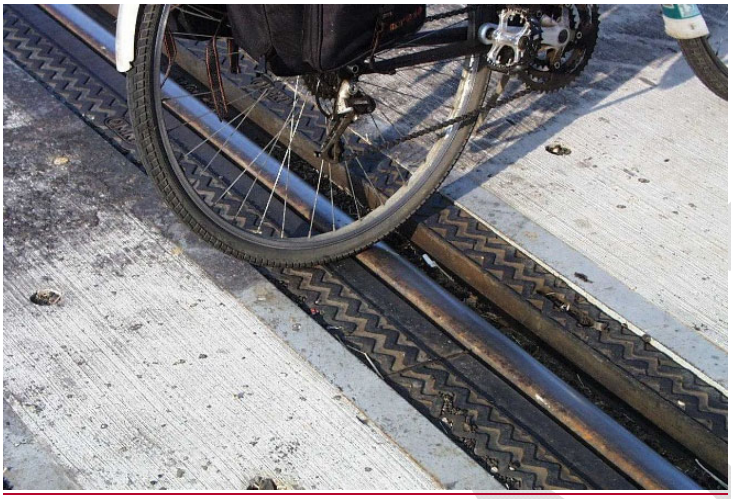
943.4 Bicycle Lanes at Railroad Crossings

Special care must be taken wherever a bikeway intersects railroad tracks. The combination of smoothness, angle and flange opening create conditions that affect cyclists. By improving smoothness and flange opening, the angle becomes less critical. A common mistake is to overcorrect for the angle, as the resulting sharp reversing curves needed to create a right angle crossing can be more difficult for cyclists to negotiate than the crossing itself. Sometimes all that is needed is a slight widening of the shoulders to allow cyclists to align themselves better at the track crossing.

By statute, all public highway, bikeway, shared use paths, and sidewalk crossings of a railroad in Oregon are regulated by the Department of Transportation. The Commerce and Compliance Division must approve, by issuance of an Order, the construction of new crossings or alterations to existing crossings, to include the approaches to these crossings. Crossing Orders specify

construction details, installation of traffic control devices, and assign maintenance responsibilities to the road authority and the railroad, who are parties to the application.

Figure 900-~~19~~17: Concrete Railroad Crossing with Rubber Flanges



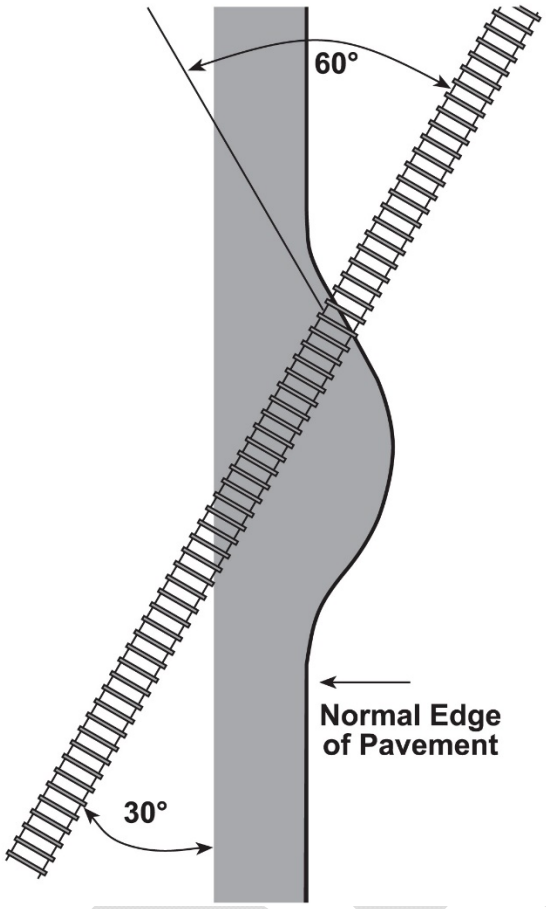
The four most commonly used crossing surface materials, in descending order of preference, are:

- Concrete: concrete performs best under wet conditions and, when laid with precision, provides a smooth ride.
- Rubber: rubber provides a ridable crossing when new, but they are slippery when wet and degrade over time.
- Asphalt: asphalt pavement must be maintained in order to prevent a ridge buildup next to the rails.
- Timber: timbers wear down rapidly and are slippery when wet.

The optimum riding condition is where the roadway (or bikeway portion of the roadway) crosses the tracks at 90°. If the skew angle is less than 45°, special attention should be given to the bikeway alignment to improve the angle of approach, preferably to 60° or greater, so cyclists can avoid catching their wheels in the flange and losing their balance. OAR 741-115-0070 specifies regulations for bicycle lanes and multi-use paths that cross railroad tracks at the same grade. Under OAR 741-115-0070 (3), an engineering study is required whenever bicycle lanes or multi-use paths are proposed to cross railroad tracks at 59 degrees or less.

DRAFT

Figure 900-18~~20~~: Example Railroad Crossing with Bulged Pavement Edge



Efforts to create a right-angle crossing at a severe skew can have unintended consequences: the reversing curves required for a right-angle approach can create other problems for cyclists. It is often best to widen the roadway, shoulder or bike lane to allow cyclists to choose the path that suits their needs the best. On extremely skewed crossings (30° or less), it may be impracticable to widen the shoulders enough to allow for 90° crossing; widening to allow 60° crossing or better is often sufficient.

Creating a separated path to angle the bikeway at 90° degrees is feasible, but special care should be taken to maintain the path regularly.

DRAFT

Figure 900-1921: Railroad Crossing S-Curve



Figure 900-2022: Wooden Surfacing on Railroad Crossing



Section 934Section 944 The Sidewalk Buffer Zone

The Sidewalk Buffer Zone is the space between the sidewalk and the Bike Lane Zone. It may be the same as the Buffer Zone or Curb Zone within the Pedestrian Realm. The intent of the Sidewalk Buffer Zone is to minimize encroachment of pedestrians in the bike lane and bicycles in the sidewalk. Separating modes improves each user's sense of comfort and safety. The primary design objective is to address potential conflicts between pedestrians with vision disabilities and bicyclists.

If a bike lane is at the same elevation as a sidewalk, the sidewalk buffer zone is a critical consideration that affects usability between pedestrians and bicyclists. If the separation between

modes is ineffective, pedestrians with vision disabilities can inadvertently walk from the sidewalk to the bike lane and continue into the street. This may occur where a separated bike lane continues as a shoulder bike lane.

A fundamental design decision needs to be made as to how bicycles and pedestrians travel on a corridor. The decision whether to separate or mix pedestrian and bicycle traffic should be consistent for as long on a corridor as feasible. ***At a minimum, the design separation method should extend from one intersection or major driveway crossing to another.*** The two separation methods between bicycle lanes and pedestrians are:

- Bikes and pedestrians are allowed to mix; or
- Bikes and pedestrians are not intended to mix.

~~934.1.1~~944.1.1 Pedestrians and Bicycles Allowed to Mix

Where the width of the Sidewalk Buffer Zone is zero, pedestrians and bicycles should be expected to mix. There are three scenarios where bicycle traffic mixes with pedestrians.

- A shoulder or bike lane on a street that does not have a sidewalk.
- A shared use path that does not separate modes.
- A sidewalk-level separated bike lane or mode-separated shared use path.

Where sidewalks have not been provided on a street, pedestrians may use the shoulder or bike lane. No additional signing, marking or tactile indication is required to distinguish a bike lane or shoulder as a pedestrian facility.

Shared use paths shall be designed to serve pedestrians by meeting pedestrian accessibility requirements and including detectable warning surfaces at all street crossings. See Section 960 for more information. Most shared use paths do not separate pedestrians from bicyclists within the path. The expectation is that path users yield one to another within the path surface.

DRAFT

Figure 900-21~~23~~: Sign Indicating Path Mode Use



Figure 900-22~~24~~: Pavement markings indicate path user expectations



Some shared use paths may be designed with separate lanes for bicyclists from pedestrians. Sidewalk-level separated bike lanes can be equivalent to the mode-separated shared use path. Mode-separated paths can exist either where modes are allowed to mix, or where modes are not intended to mix. Where there is no physical separation between modes, the bike lane zone and adjacent pedestrian zone establish preferred places for users, while the expectation is that users

may use the entire space and yield one to another, the same as the scenario of the shared use path without mode separation. These mode-separated paths are required to meet pedestrian accessibility requirements within the Pedestrian Zone. **Detectable warning surfaces are required at all street crossings for both the Pedestrian Zone and the Bike Lane Zone of Mode-Separated Paths where the Sidewalk Buffer Zone is zero.**

Figure 900-21~~Figure 900-23~~ is an example of a side path where a sign indicates which side of the path users are expected to use. Besides the sign, no physical or visual delineation is present on the path surface. This is a scenario where users are allowed to mix, while users are expected to keep to one side to the extent practicable. Figure 900-22~~Figure 900-24~~ and Figure 900-23~~Figure 900-25~~ have pavement markings that visually distinguish the boundary between the pedestrian zone and the bike lane zone. Path users with vision disabilities require a tactile edge to distinguish this boundary.

Figure 900-23~~25~~: Detectable warnings across pedestrian and bicycle zones

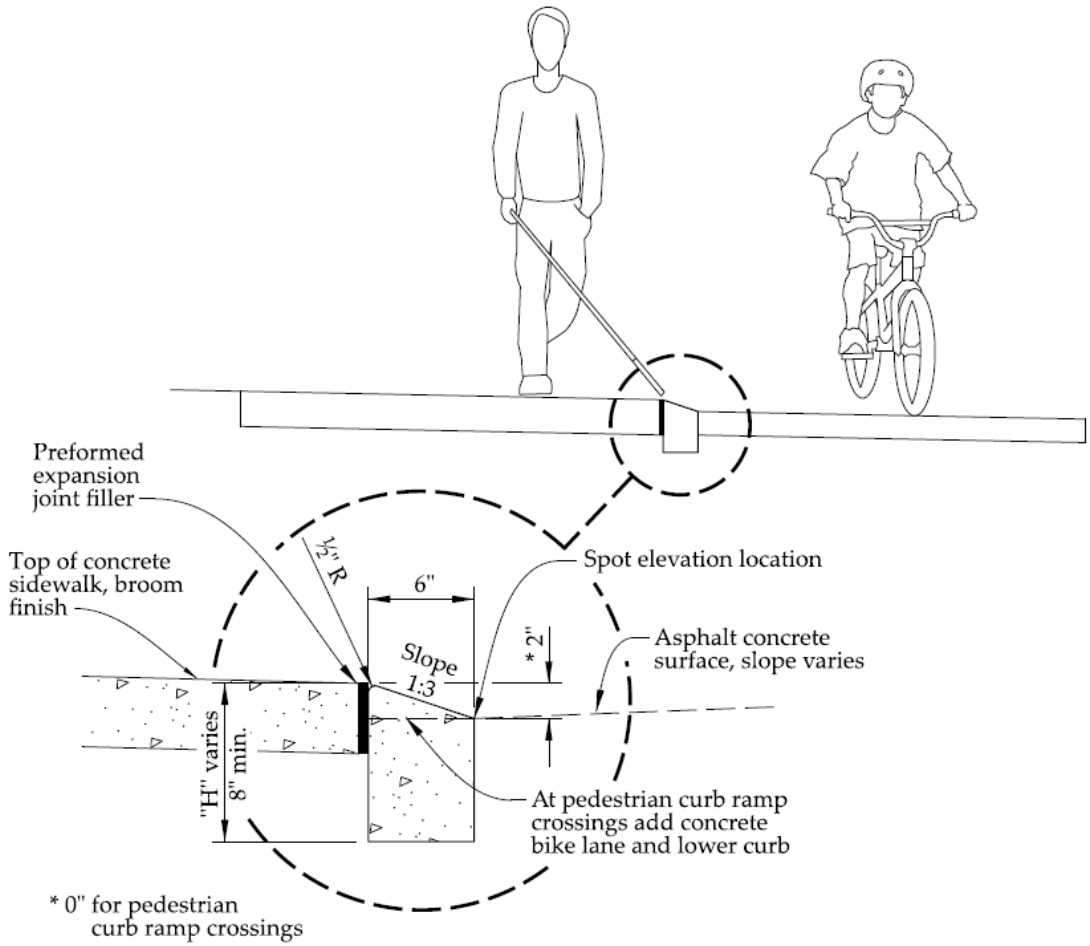


~~934.1.2~~944.1.2 Pedestrians and Bicycles Not Intended to Mix

Design the Sidewalk Buffer Zone so that the sidewalk and bike lane are distinct from one another. This is best accomplished when it is at a different elevation from the sidewalk. Normally, a curb separates the Pedestrian Zone from the Bike Lane Zone. In lieu of a curb, a horizontal buffer strip may be used to separate modes.

Where curb is used to separate modes, provide at least a 2-inch elevation difference between the pedestrian zone and the bike lane zone. Figure 900-24~~Figure 900-26~~ illustrates a sloped curb that divides the two zones. See Standard Drawing RD702 for bike lane curbs. Figure 900-25~~Figure 900-27~~ illustrates a vertical curb that divides the two zones.

Figure 900-24~~26~~: Bike Lane Curb



Ideally, a buffer of softscaping should separate sidewalks from the bike lane. A buffer zone of street furniture can be effective if the treatment makes cross travel unlikely. Where a driveway crosses the sidewalk and sidewalk-level bike lane, there is a possibility for pedestrians to veer from the sidewalk to the bike lane if the separation between them is too narrow. **Where a buffer zone is used to separate modes (without curb), provided a minimum 2-foot landscape strip of softscaping or street furniture.** ***At driveways, the width of the buffer zone should be at least 6-feet wide if no tactile edge is provided.***

Figure 900-2527: Curb between bicycle lane and sidewalk



Where the bike lane and sidewalk are side-by-side and there is no curb or buffer zone with physical separation between them, path users can be expected to intermix within that space. Since the design intent is to prevent inadvertent intermixing, a detectable edge treatment is necessary. **Work with ODOT's ADA staff to ensure that edge treatments are detectable for persons with vision disabilities.**

Table 900-1112: Design differences based on mode mixing

Consideration	Pedestrians and Bicycles Not Intended to Mix	Pedestrians and Bicycles Allowed to Mix
Facility Type	Separated Bike Lanes next to Sidewalks	Mode-separated shared use path
Edge delineation between Bicycles and Pedestrians	Landscaping, curb or other tactile device	Pavement stripe and/or sign Keep Left/Right
Detectable Warning Surface at street crossing	Extends across pedestrian zone, not in bicycle zone	Extends across both pedestrian and bicycle zone
Yielding behavior	Bicycles stop for pedestrians at crosswalks; pedestrians yield to bikes crossing bike lane	Bikes always yield to pedestrians

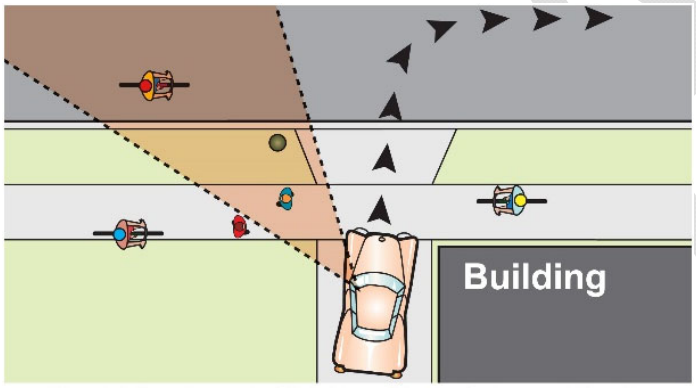
944.2 Bikeways at sidewalk level

Some early bikeway plans designated sidewalks for bicyclist use. While in rare instances this may be necessary (such as on narrow bridges), or acceptable for use by children, in most cases it should be avoided. Most cities ban bicyclists from sidewalks in business districts.

Sidewalks are not well suited for cycling for several reasons:

- Cyclists face conflicts with pedestrians;
- There are often utility poles, sign posts, benches, etc. placed in sidewalks;
- Bicyclists face conflicts with motor vehicles at driveways, alleys and intersections: a cyclist on a sidewalk is generally not visible to motorists and emerges unexpectedly.
- This is especially true of cyclists who ride against the flow of adjacent motor vehicle traffic: drivers do not expect cyclists coming from this direction; and
- Bicyclists are put into awkward situations at intersections where they cannot safely act like a vehicle operator but are not in the pedestrian flow either, creating confusion for other road users.

Figure 900-2628: Conflicts with Sidewalk Riding



Where width constraints do not leave room for bikeways, solutions should be sought to accommodate both modes (e.g. narrowing travel lanes). In some urban situations, preference may be given to accommodating pedestrians. Sidewalks should not be signed for bicycle use - the choice should be left to the users.

There are circumstances where it may be advisable to allow bicyclists to ride on a sidewalk: on long narrow bridges with high traffic volumes. This can help cyclists if the bridge sidewalks are wide enough for bicycle use (minimum 5 ft). Bicycle ramps should be built to provide cyclists access to the bridge sidewalks; signs should be placed advising cyclists to walk their bikes on the sidewalk if it's too narrow for riding. See Part 900Section 980~~Section 980~~ for information about bicycle ramps.

DRAFT

~~Section 935~~Section 945 The Street Buffer Zone

The street buffer is comprised of the space that separates the bike lane zone from the travelway. Tier 1 bicycle facilities and some Tier 2 bicycle facilities have a Street Buffer Zone. Other Tier 2 and all Tier 3 facilities do not. The role of the street buffer is to place a physical ~~obstacle~~object between moving traffic and bicycle riders. The ~~obstacle is not to create a roadside hazard, but~~object is a visible barrier that separates bicycle and motor vehicle travel. The presence of ~~an obstacle~~a physical buffer between traffic modes improves the sense of comfort and safety for bicycle riders while maintaining visibility and reducing traffic noise. The ideal width of the street buffer should be at least 6-feet in most urban settings regardless of the type used. ***The width of the Street Buffer Zone can be reduced to as little as 2-feet wide in constrained areas with Design Concurrence Documentation.*** If the street buffer is eliminated altogether, a Bikeway Tier is typically reduced from a Tier 1 facility to a Tier 2 facility.

Wider street buffers improve bicyclists' sense of comfort and safety, reduce noise and at night reduce headlight glare.

When determining appropriate elements within the street buffer zone, the ability for maintaining the facility shall be considered. Refer to Section 941.5 for maintenance considerations.

Since some objects in the street buffer zone may affect how oversized freight can use the roadway, this needs to be accounted for when considering which treatment is appropriate for the street buffer zone.

DRAFT

Table 900-1213: Minimum Street Buffer Widths

Delineation Options in the Street Buffer Zone	Striping	On-Street Parking*	Raised Island	Landscaping	Other
Downtown	0′	8′	2′	3′	2'
Urban Mix	0′	8′	2′	4′	2'
Commercial Corridor	0′	NA	2′	5′	2'
Residential Corridor	0′	NA	2′	5′	2'
Suburban Fringe	0′	NA	5′	5′	2'
Rural Community	0′	8′	2′	4′	2'
Rural	0′	NA	5′	5′	2'

* On-street parking may be used as a street buffer only where on-street parking exists or is appropriate in the highway context.

Separated bike lanes include a buffer space with curb or vertical objects between the bicycle lane and motor vehicle traffic. Features that are typically located in a sidewalk buffer, such as mailboxes and hydrants, which are necessary to be accessed from the travel lanes, should be placed in the street buffer.

Figure 900-2729: Separated bike lane with space for recycling cans in street buffer



Where pedestrian crosswalks cross a separated bike lane, the street buffer acts as a median island. In order to provide two sets of detectable warning surfaces, the minimum width of a street buffer island is 6-feet. If the street buffer is less than 6-feet wide, it cannot be used as a pedestrian refuge and street crossings should include the bike lane with the rest of the street crossing.

There are eleven types of separation that can be used in a street buffer. The width of the street buffer varies by the type of separation.

~~935.1~~945.1 Striping Buffer

A Buffered Bike Lane is a facility where traffic striping alone is used to separate the Bike Lane Zone from the travelway to create a safety buffer. Bicyclists' use of the marked buffer area depends on how it is marked. ODOT's standard markings use a solid 8-inch white line on each side of the buffer zone. Accordingly, bicyclists are not intended to ride within the buffer zone. If the street buffer zone is marked so that bicycles are not precluded from operating within the street buffer zone, the increased width can enable side-by-side riding.

4 feet is the minimum width recommended for the street buffer zone in a buffered bike lane to provide a meaningful impact to bicyclist comfort when striping alone is used in the street buffer zone to separate bicyclists from moving traffic. However, buffer markings may be used where the street buffer zone is as narrow as 2-feet. Buffer markings are recommended where the sum total width for a Street Buffer Zone and Bike Lane Zone is 8 feet or greater. Where the width is 7-feet wide, configuring a bicycle lane to become a 5-foot bike lane with a 2-foot buffer zone reduces the bike lane such that side-by-side riding is not possible within the same lane. There is a tradeoff between the need to provide a visual separation from traffic and the need to provide sufficient width for bicycles to ride two abreast.

The painted buffer can separate bikes from high-speed vehicles to the left, or it can be used to separate bikes from parked cars on the right. Figure 900-28~~Figure 900-30~~ shows an example of a buffered bicycle lane where buffer markings are provided on both sides: a buffer from parked cars as well as a buffer from moving traffic.

Figure 900-28~~30~~: A striping buffer ~~can be~~ on ~~the right or left~~both sides of the bike lane~~.~~



Buffered bike lanes are Tier 2 bicycle facilities. When physical objects are added to the street buffer, they become Tier 1 bicycle facilities. See Section 945.5, Section 945.6 and Section 945.7.

DRAFT

~~935.2~~945.2 Parking Lane

Typically, a bike lane is placed between motor vehicle lanes and a parking lane. Alternatively, the parking lane may be located between the bike lane and motor vehicle lane.

Figure 900-29~~31~~: Parallel Parking Lane as Street Buffer



A parking lane street buffer is appropriate only in locations where high-use on-street parking exists or is appropriate in the street context. The context categories for an ODOT highway that may permit a parking lane street buffer are Downtowns/Central Business Districts and some areas in the Urban Mix context and Rural Community context. This configuration has the potential to provide a high level of bicyclist comfort.

A parking lane street buffer could be implemented with either diagonal street parking or parallel parking. Parallel parking is the most common.

Bike lanes that are located between a parallel parking lane and curb need to account for opening car doors and space for passengers to stand, unlock and open car doors and load or unload without encroaching into bicycle traffic. A buffer area should be marked adjacent to the parking stall. The recommended demarcated space is 4-feet, 2-feet minimum. Since the width varies for parking spaces (typically 7 feet to 9 feet), the sum of the parking space and demarcated door zone should be approximately 11 feet. If the buffer area is next to an ADA parking space, it shall meet requirements for an Access Aisle, minimum 5-feet in width.

Since it is not commonplace for drivers to park away from a curb, unfamiliar drivers might park in the bike lane zone, particularly if there are few other parked cars to align with. ~~To remediate that risk, the~~ The following design ~~considerations~~options are best practices to keep parked cars out of the bicycle lane:

- Mark individual parking stalls;
- Place vertical elements (e.g., posts) in the buffer area between parking spaces;

DRAFT

Where parking occupancy is below a threshold, place vertical elements (e.g., raised island) to reduce the number of stalls.

~~935.3~~945.3 Raised Island Buffer

A bike lane may be separated from motor vehicle traffic with a raised concrete island.

Providing a raised island left of a bike lane can facilitate access to amenities that are normally accessible from a vehicle lane, such as mailboxes, fire hydrants, recycling containers, and transit boarding platforms. The width of a raised island can vary to match the space available. The minimum practical width is 2-feet. Where the street buffer island is at a street crossing, detectable warnings should be provided at each side of the island when the island is at least 6-feet wide. See Standard Drawing RD1140.

Figure 900-30~~32~~: Island Buffer Cross Section with Drainage Gap



A raised concrete island may be cast in place or precast. The height of a raised island is typically the same as a median island which can have standard curb or a sloped curb, such as bike lane curb. A sloped or low height curb may be considered where emergency vehicle access is necessary.

Additional shoulder width may be necessary on the vehicle side of a raised concrete island to account for shy distance to a curb. On ODOT highways, at least 1’ of shy distance along the right side of travel lanes is required at 35 mph and above. The distance that bicyclists shy away from a vertical curb is 0.5 to 1-foot and negligible shy distance for a sloped curb.

There are two ways to establish a drainage flow line with an island street buffer. The flow line may be located either between the bike lane and sidewalk – or along the side of the island with motor vehicle traffic. In both conditions, periodic gaps in the island may be provided.

DRAFT

~~935.4~~945.4 Landscape Buffer

A bike lane may be separated from motor vehicle traffic with a landscaping planter strip.

The elevation of the landscaping area may be flush with the elevation of the bike lane, or it may be separated with a retaining curb to keep sediment from spilling into the bike lane. If a curb is used to separate the bike lane from the planter strip, shy distance is needed to account for people riding away from the curb. If the landscape material is flush with the bike lane (such as bark dust or gravel), additional shy distance is not necessary.

The landscaping may have gaps to provide access to amenities in the buffer area that are normally accessible from a vehicle lane, such as mailboxes, fire hydrants and empty space to place recycling containers. The width of a landscape strip can vary to match the space available. The minimum practical width is 2-feet. At a street crossing, detectable warnings should be provided at each side of the landscape buffer zone if it is at least 6-feet wide. See Standard Drawing RD1140. For transit islands, see ~~Section L104.5 in the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide~~Part 700.

Figure 900-31~~33~~: Landscape Buffer Cross Section at Street Crossing



Typically, the landscape strip is constructed similar to a sidewalk, where the curb to the left of the landscape buffer is the drainage flow line and bike lanes are raised to a level above the street. Where the landscape does not include a curb, it may function as a water quality swale.

DRAFT

~~935.5~~945.5 Delineator Post Buffer

Bike lanes may be separated from motor vehicle traffic with raised posts.

Figure 900-32~~34~~: Tubular markers as street buffer



The distance that most bicyclists shy away from a raised vertical post is 2’ to 3’. While shy distance is normally required within the bike lane zone, part or all of this shy distance is located within the street buffer zone. This is the preferred distance that a post should be offset from the edge of the bike lane line.

The types of posts range from tubular markers to bollards, flexible or rigid. Posts are a traffic control device and need to meet applicable requirements and approvals for the use of the traffic control device. Posts may be mounted directly on the pavement or may be installed on top of a base support.

The posts shall be crashworthy. Damaged posts need to be removed and replaced in order to ~~avoid being a hazard in~~keep the bicycle lane clear. Consult with those who must maintain the features in the street buffer zone in the future to determine that there is a commitment to keep up with the maintenance needs for delineator posts. A commitment to maintain delineator posts is critical for this street buffer option to achieve the objective to provide a comfortable riding experience. The longitudinal spacing of posts along a roadway depends on the speed of traffic, maintenance considerations and traffic characteristics. Where traffic characteristics are generally favorable, a single post on each end of a short city block, supplemented with buffer striping may be enough to provide a relatively high level of bicyclist comfort. Where traffic characteristics call for greater separation, more frequent posts are preferred; the recommended spacing is 10 to 40 feet.

DRAFT

~~935.6~~945.6 Traffic Separator Curb Buffer

There are various styles of curb that may be used in a street buffer for traffic separation. A standard 2-foot wide concrete traffic separator curb is similar to a raised concrete island street buffer.

However, extruded standard curbs, dowelled parking stops and other narrow plastic traffic curbs have additional operational considerations. These narrower curbs are characterized as 0.5 to 1.0 foot wide with a height of approximately 0.5 foot. As such, they are less conspicuous at night where illumination is not provided.

Two undesirable conditions may exist if the curb is placed immediately adjacent to the bike lane or immediately adjacent to a motor vehicle lane to separate motor vehicles from cyclists. First, cyclists may hit the curb, lose control and fall onto the roadway. At night, the curbs cast shadows on the lane, reducing the bicyclist's visibility of the surface. Second, when extruded curbs are hit by motor vehicles, it causes them to break and scatter loose pieces onto the surface. They make bikeways difficult to maintain as debris accumulates. Mitigations for these conditions are:

- Place curbs in the street buffer zone a safe distance from the bike lane edge stripe. (3-feet preferred, 1-foot minimum);
- Place curbs in the street buffer zone a safe distance from motor vehicles. (3-feet preferred, 1-foot minimum);
- Add delineator posts on top of curbs at the beginning of each block.
- Use plastic curbs with rounded edges.

DRAFT

~~935.7~~945.7 Planter Box Buffer

A series of planter boxes may be placed intermittently in the street buffer zone.

Figure 900-~~33~~35: Planter boxes in street buffer



The distance that most bicyclists shy away from a raised planter box is 2′ to 3′. This distance is measured from the edge of the bicyclist's operating space to the nearest vertical edge.

A planter box street buffer is appropriate only in locations where there is little to no history of fixed object crashes and other traffic calming measures are in place such that the presence of planter boxes is consistent with the surrounding environment. ~~The risk for fixed~~Fixed object crashes ~~is~~are not solely dependent on low traffic speeds. Consider other low-speed crashes such as parking maneuvers, lane changes and turning maneuvers. Planter boxes should not be anchored to the pavement. In the event of a crash, planter boxes should be designed to slide rather than crumble.

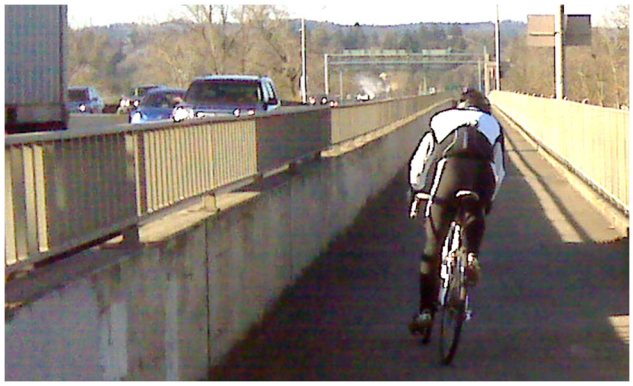
The ODOT highway contexts that may permit a planter box street buffer are Downtowns/Central Business Districts and some areas in the Urban Mix context and Rural Community context. This configuration has the potential to provide a high level of bicyclist comfort.

~~935.8~~945.8 Concrete Barrier Buffer

A concrete barrier may be used as a street buffer where it is necessary to separate high speed traffic from bicycles. The typical application of concrete barriers as a street buffer is for shared use paths alongside high-speed highways or on bridges.

DRAFT

Figure 900-~~34~~36: Concrete Barrier as Street Buffer



The distance that most bicyclists shy away from a concrete barrier is 2′ to 3′. This shy distance is measured from the edge of the bicyclist's operating space to the nearest vertical edge.

~~935.9~~945.9 Guardrail Buffer

A guardrail may be used as a street buffer where it is necessary to separate high speed traffic from bicycles. The typical application of guardrail as a street buffer is for shared use paths alongside high-speed highways or on bridges.

The distance that most bicyclists shy away from a guardrail is 2′ to 3′. This distance is measured from the edge of the bicyclist's operating space to the nearest vertical edge.

Figure 900-~~35~~37: Guardrail in Street Buffer



~~935.10~~945.10 Drainage Swale Buffer

Where drainage is not provided with a piped storm system, roadside drainage is typically captured in a roadside ditch. This is a common street buffer for a rural location.

Figure 900-3638: Roadside Ditch as Street Buffer



See Section 963 for requirements for path shoulder requirements. A minimum 2-foot shoulder is needed alongside a path to function as a clear zone. The shy distance from a bicyclist to the side slope of a roadside ditch depends on the side slope and the depth of the ditch. If the side slope of the swale is 1:6 or less, there is little to no added impact to the shy distance within the bike lane zone. If the slope of the swale is steeper than 1:2, the distance that most bicyclists shy away from the beginning of the steep slope is 2' to 3'. Providing 2-feet of shy space is needed from the edge of the bike lane or path away from the ditch.

935.11945.11 Bio-swale Buffer

A water quality bio-swale may be used in the street buffer.

Figure 900-3739: Bio-Swale as Street Buffer



Bio swales tend to have a vertical drop off. The preferred shy distance from a bicyclist to a vertical drop off is 2 feet. This distance is measured from the edge of the bicyclist's operating space.

DRAFT

~~Section 936~~Section 946 Rural Bicycle Accommodation

In the majority of rural highway projects, the paved shoulder widths are sufficient to accommodate occasional bicycle travel. The occasional pedestrian using a rural highway is also served by paved shoulders.

Where bicycle use is higher, consideration should be given to increase the shoulder width to a minimum width of 4 feet on open shoulder and an additional foot when in-between lanes of traffic or for each side that is next to curb, guardrail or parking. When evaluating usable shoulder width, do not include the portion of shoulder occupied by rumble strips, if present.

~~936.1~~946.1 Shoulders

Besides giving an area for cyclists to ride, paved shoulders are provided on rural highways for a variety of safety, operational and maintenance reasons such as:

- Motorists can stop out of traffic in case of emergency, or escape potential crashes;
- Storm water can be discharged farther from the motor vehicle travel lanes, helping to preserve the pavement.

In general, the shoulder widths recommended for rural highways in the ODOT Highway Design Manual serve bicyclists well; HDM Table 300-32 should be used when determining shoulder widths:

Shoulders provide for safety, capacity and maintenance area along highways. Standard shoulder widths in 4R projects are listed in Table 900-13~~Table 900-14~~ and minimum shoulder widths in 3R projects are listed in Table 900-14~~Table 900-11~~.

Table 900-13~~14~~: 4R Shoulder Widths

Highway Characteristics	Min. Width
Collector <400 ADT	2′
Arterial <400 ADT	4′
Collector 400 -1500 ADT	5′
Arterial 400-1500 ADT	6′
1500-2000 ADT	6′
>2000 ADT	8′
Mountainous 4-lane Expressway	8′

Other expressways	10′

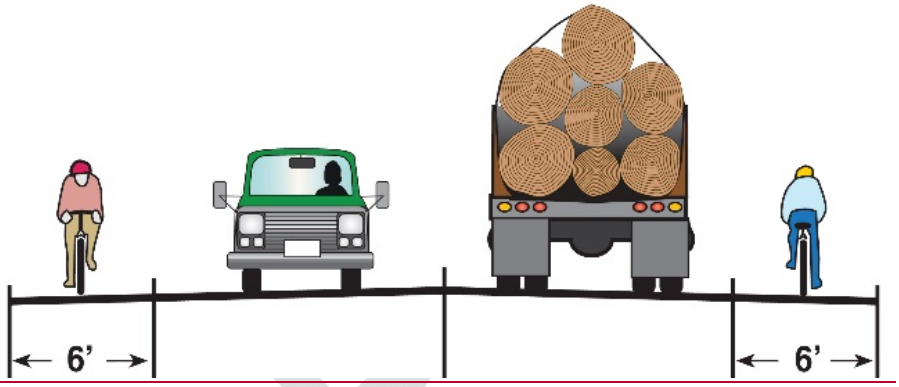
Table 900-1415: 3R Shoulder Widths (Based on AASHTO Minimums)

Average Running Speed	Design Year Volume (ADT)		
	<750	750 – 2000	>2000
50 mph or over	2′	3′	4′
Under 50 mph	2′	2′	4′

When providing shoulders for bicycle use, a width of 6 feet is recommended. This allows a cyclist to ride far enough from the edge of pavement to avoid debris, yet far enough from passing vehicles to avoid conflicts. If there are physical width limitations, a 4 foot shoulder provides the minimal amount of space for bicycle operation without encroaching into the travel lane.

Shoulders adjacent to a curb face, guardrail or other roadside barriers should be at least 5 feet wide to avoid encroachment into the adjacent travel lane, as cyclists will "shy" away from a vertical face. Shoulders adjacent to a curb should have 4 feet of pavement from the longitudinal joint at the gutter pan. Curbed sections usually indicate urban conditions, where shoulders should be striped as bike lanes.

Figure 900-3840: Bicycles on Shoulders



On steep uphill grades, it is desirable to maintain a 6-ft (min. 5-ft) shoulder, as cyclists need more space for maneuvering.

Note: many rural roads are 28 feet wide, with fog lines striped at 11 feet from centerline. The remaining 3 feet should not be considered a shoulder bikeway (min. 4 ft); these are shared roadways, as most cyclists will ride on or near the fog line. But they provide an enjoyable riding experience where traffic volumes are low to moderate.

Pavement Design and Construction

Many existing gravel shoulders have sufficient width and base to support shoulder bikeways. Minor excavation and the addition of 3-4" of asphaltic concrete is often enough to provide shoulder bikeways. Pavement overlays provide the best opportunity to widen shoulders for several reasons:

- The base lift of asphalt adds structural strength;
- The final, full width lift is smooth, with no joint; and
- The unit costs are less, as greater quantities of materials will be purchased.

When shoulders are provided as part of new road construction, the pavement structural design should be the same as that of the roadway.

On shoulder-widening projects, there may be some opportunities to reduce costs by building a thinner pavement section than the traveled way if approved by Pavement Services.

Figure 900-3941 Higher Volume Rural Road with Shoulders

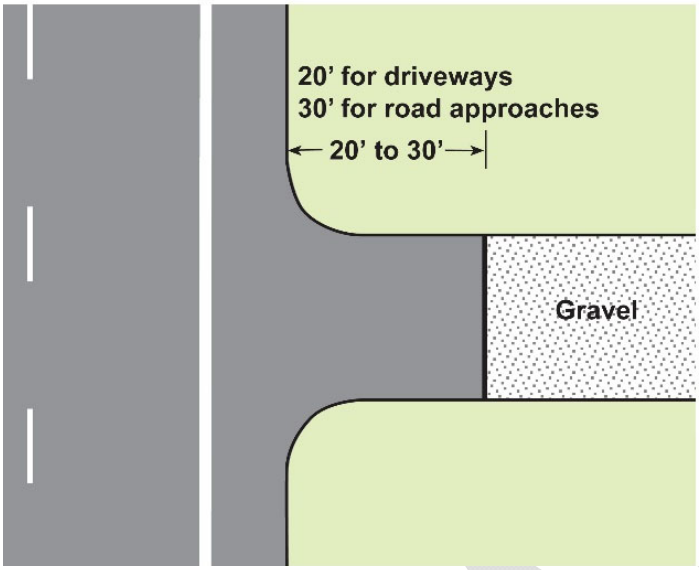


Gravel Driveways and Approaches

Wherever a highway is constructed, widened or overlaid, all gravel driveways and approaches should be paved back to prevent loose gravel from spilling onto the shoulders. ODOT standards are 20′ for driveways, 30′ for public road approaches.

DRAFT

Figure 900-4045: Gravel Driveway Paved to Limit Gravel on Shoulders



Where possible, the paved section of the approach to the highway should be sloped downward away from the highway to reduce the loose material tracked on the shoulder.

Figure 900-4146: Paved Driveway Apron Keeps Gravel Off Shoulder



~~936.2~~946.2 Designated Tourism Route Bikeways in Rural Areas

Rural (or urban) highways designated as Scenic Bikeways, National Bike Routes or other recognized bikeways should have greater attention to bicycle accommodation. Designated tourism route bikeways attract a wide range of users who vary in age, experience and ability. As noted in Section 922, three levels of bicycle user comfort and skill are recognized to affect users' decision whether to ride. It is important to provide bikeways that serve the 'interested but concerned' users along designated tourism route bikeways. Section 940 has a thorough discussion about bikeway types and a process to recommend the type of bikeway appropriate for the design user profile based on traffic conditions.

Usually, rumble strips should not be included on sections of highway that are designated tourism route bikeways but may be included where their impact on cyclists is sufficiently mitigated. See the ODOT Traffic Manual. Ongoing maintenance to keep shoulders clear should be a priority on these routes. Construction activity on shoulders of designated tourism route bikeways should make provisions to accommodate cyclists during construction or consider signed detours that may be different from motor vehicle detour routes.

Bicycle tourism is a significant industry in Oregon. Cyclists from across the nation and many other nations come to Oregon to ride on designated bikeways for recreation. Information and maps for promoted recreational bikeways are provided in Appendix E. A list of mile points, corresponding to currently designated bikeways can be found in Appendix E.

946.2.1 Rumble Strips

Rumble strips are provided to alert motorists that they are wandering off the roadway. They are most common on long sections of straight freeways in rural settings, but are also used on some two-lane undivided highways. Rumble strips should not extend across the entire width of the shoulder, because they create an unrideable surface for bicyclists. Rumble strips should not be used if they leave less than 4 feet of rideable space.

Adjust the placement and width of the rumble strips and provide gaps for bicyclists to leave the shoulder to make a left turn or to avoid debris. A minimum of 4-feet of ridable shoulder is required and 12-foot gaps on 40 to 60 foot intervals is recommended. On narrower shoulders rumble strips can also be cut directly at the fog line, leaving the entire shoulder available for cycling. Rumble strips must be dropped before pinch points.

DRAFT

Figure 900-4247: Rumble Strip Accommodation for Bicycles

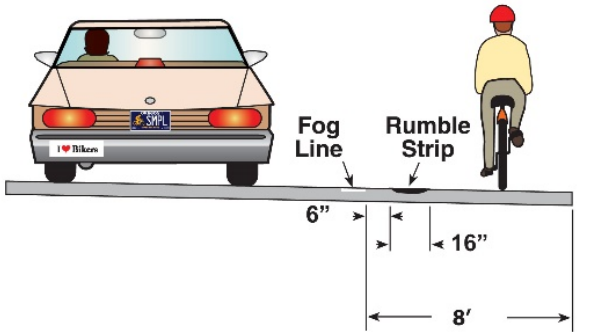


Figure 900-4348: Well-Placed Rumble Strips Leaving Room for Bicyclists



Another alternative is the use of profiled fog lines. They are highly retro-reflective, alert drivers when they've strayed from the travel way, and leave the entire width of the shoulder available for bicycling. Should a bicyclist need to cross the fog line occasionally, the bumps are not too severe. They should not be used on narrow shoulders (under 4 feet) as they will be located in the area where cyclists prefer to ride.

For the most up-to-date information on rumble strip placement, design and alternatives, refer to the ODOT Traffic Manual and standard drawings.

DRAFT

~~Section 937 Figure~~ 900-3 ~~Configuring Cross Section Space~~

Figure 900-44: Profiled Edge Stripe



Section 947 Restriping to Include Bike Lanes

The configuration of travel lanes on a highway may be modified to provide bike lanes within a highway cross-section that did not previously include them. This can be done by reducing the number of travel lanes, eliminating on-street parking or changing the median treatment. Reconfigured roadways from 4-lanes to 3-lanes with center turn lane and bike lanes show a significant crash reduction. Any reconfiguration of travel lanes requires Region Traffic Engineer/Manager approval and a freight mobility review as described in Appendix C. ~~See Chapter 2 of Appendix L for specific examples of road lane reconfigurations.~~

DRAFT

Bike lanes generally serve bicyclists and motorists well on busy roadways in urban areas, but many urban roadways were built without bike lanes and often act as deterrents to bicycle travel. Bike lanes can be retrofitted onto existing urban roadways by:

1. Marking and signing existing shoulders as bike lanes;
2. Widening the roadway to add bike lanes; and
3. Restriping the existing roadway to add bike lanes.

In many cases, altering the existing curb-to-curb width is costly or impractical. Restriping the roadway to add bike lanes is a practical approach. and has benefits for all users, not just cyclists.

Restriping for bike lanes should be implemented without negatively affecting the safety and operation of the roadway. Travel lane widths must meet ODOT & AASHTO minimums.

Collaborate with Region Traffic to ensure that capacity and safety are not compromised. ORS 366.215 prohibits reducing capacity on certain freight routes. Exceptions to this statute are allowed if safety or access considerations require the reduction. An exception may also be granted by the Oregon Transportation Commission if it is in the best interest of the state and freight movement is not unreasonably impeded.

The examples provided in the following subsections are not the only acceptable way to restripe a roadway. It is not always necessary to use dimensions in whole feet increments. For example, with 34 feet available, 11.5-foot travel lanes with 5.5-foot bike lanes may work better in some cases than 12-foot travel lanes with 5-foot bike lanes, or 11-foot travel lanes with 6-foot bike lanes

947.1.2 Reduce Lane Widths

Narrow Travel Lanes:

Commonly used lane widths are: 14 feet center turn lanes, 12 feet travel lanes, 6 feet bike lanes and 8 feet parking lanes; under many conditions these can be narrowed to:

- 25 MPH or less: 11 feet.
- 30 to 40 MPH: 11 feet travel lanes and 12 feet center turn lanes are acceptable, even desirable.
- 45 MPH or greater: 12 feet outside travel lane and a 14 feet center turn lane if there are high truck volumes.

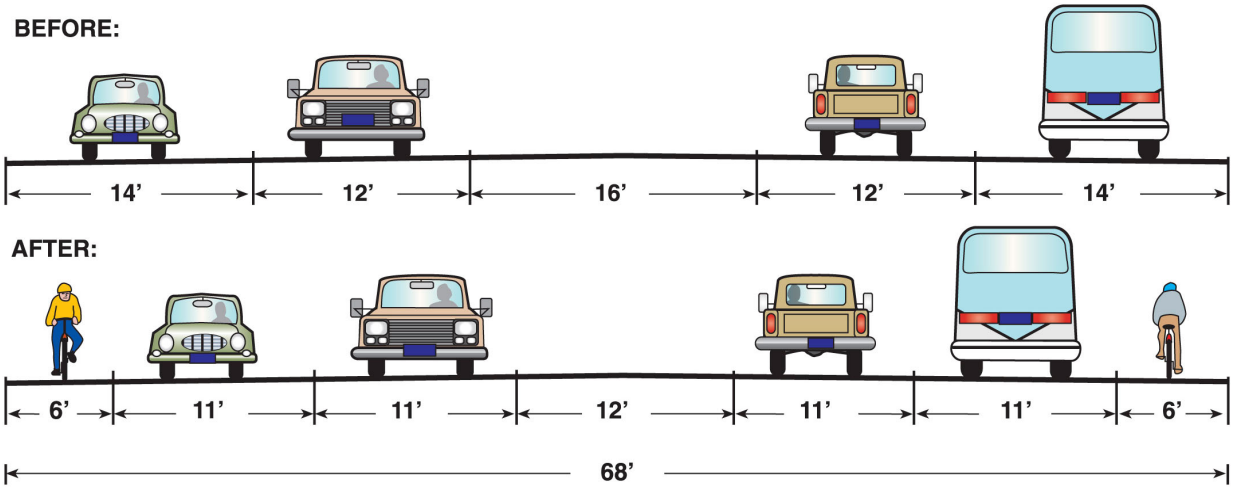
Dimensions should take into account the combination of speeds, volumes, trucks, context, and desired outcome.

DRAFT

Figure 900-4550: Bike lanes added by narrowing lanes



Figure 900-4651: Example cross section to provide bike lanes by narrowing lanes



947.1.3 Modify Parking

Reduce on-street parking:

On-street parking is usually beneficial to businesses and pedestrians. On-street parking helps keep traditional street-oriented businesses viable, provides a buffer for pedestrians, and helps keep traffic speeds down. Removing parking for bike lanes requires careful negotiation with the affected businesses and residents. Before making a proposal, a parking study should be conducted that includes:

- Counting the number of businesses/ residences and the availability of both onstreet and off-street parking;
- Estimating use and occupancy characteristics;

- Selecting which side would be less affected by removal (usually the side with fewer residences or businesses);
- Replacing on-street parking with parking bays for residents or businesses with no other options;
- Proposing parking management strategies that increase the supply of parking when and where it's most needed, such as:
    - Allowing parking for church or school activities on adjacent lots during services or special events;
    - Shared use by businesses and institutions, or
    - Prohibiting on-street parking by employees;
- Evaluating crossing conditions for pedestrians.

The fear of losing potential customers is an important reason to retain on-street parking. Many cities have ordinances prohibiting employees from parking on the street. This increases the number of available parking spaces for customers, even if the total number of parking spaces is reduced. One parking place occupied by an employee for eight hours is the equivalent of 16 customers parking for half an hour, or 32 customers parking for 15 minutes, etc.

Remove Parking on One Side:

On most streets with parking on both sides, removal of all on-street parking is not necessary: removing parking from one side creates enough space for two bike lanes, with some additional lane narrowing. Parking may be needed on only one side to accommodate residences and/or businesses with no off-street parking.

Notes:

1. It is not always necessary to retain parking on the same side of the road through an entire corridor.

2. Education and enforcement may be needed for a period of time after parking has been removed in the space dedicated to a bike lane, to prevent motorists from parking in the new bike lanes

DRAFT

Figure 900-4752: Example cross section removing parking on one side to add bike lanes

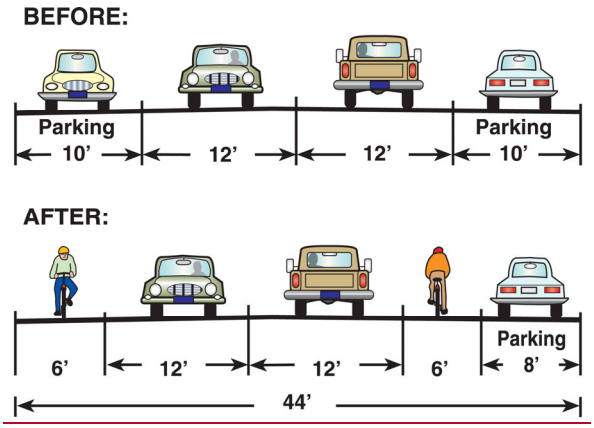


Figure 900-4853: Parking removed from one side to add bike lanes

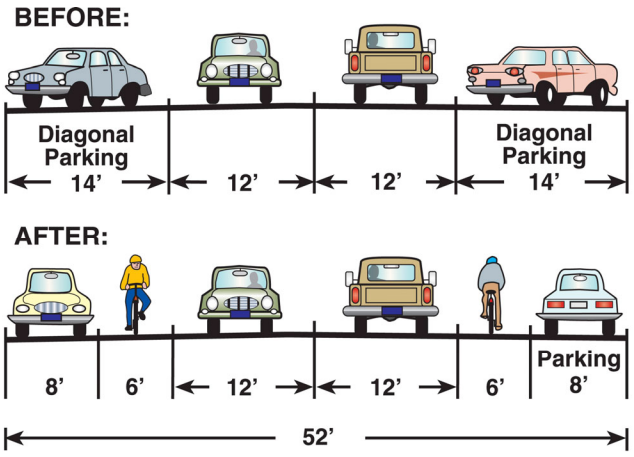


Change From Diagonal to Parallel Parking:

Changing to parallel parking on one side only is usually sufficient; this reduces total parking availability of a street segment by less than one-fourth.

DRAFT

Figure 900-4954: Convert diagonal to parallel parking to add bike lanes



Narrow Parking Lanes

Parking can be narrowed to 7 feet, particularly in areas with low truck parking volumes. On a one-way street, only one bike lane needs to be provided, so narrowing both parking lanes a little bit creates enough room for one bike lane.

Figure 900-5055: Example cross section adding bike lane by narrowing parking

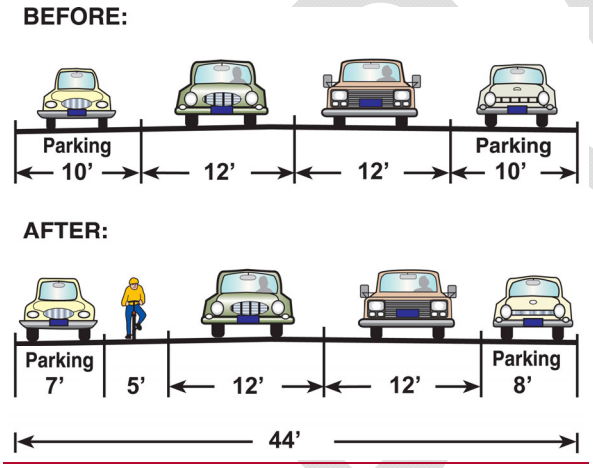
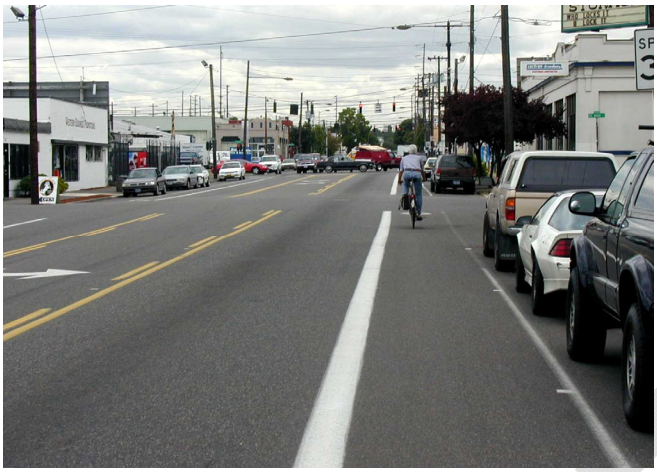


Figure 900-5156: Bike lanes added by narrowing parking lanes



Replacing Lost Parking

Where all of the above possibilities have been pursued, and residential or business parking losses cannot be sustained, innovative ideas should be considered to provide parking, such as:

- Increasing parking supply on side streets; or
- Creating parking bays by using a portion of a planting strip, where available.

Figure 900-5257 Bike lane added by creating a parking bay in buffer zone

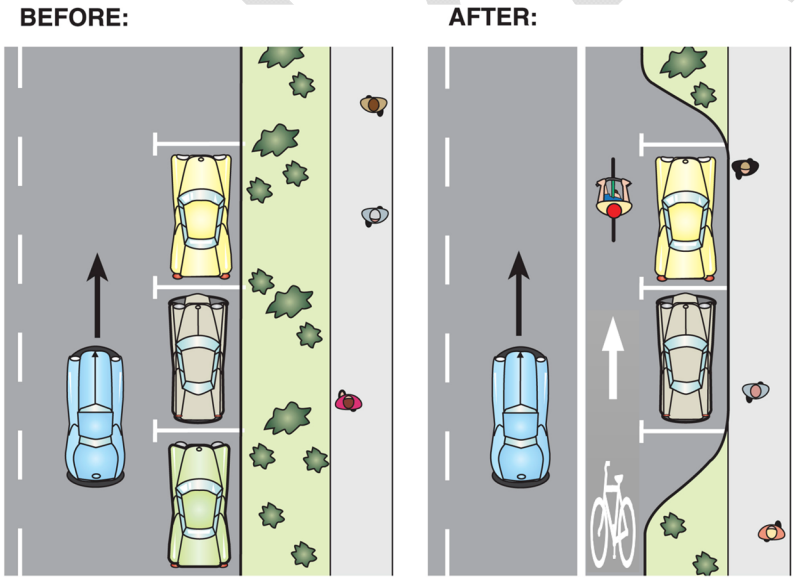


Figure 900-5358 Bike lane next to parking bay



947.1.4 Reduced Number of Travel Lanes ("Road Diet")

Many roads were built wider than needed to accommodate existing or projected traffic volumes, or traffic conditions have changed since the road was built, and the number of travel lanes can be reduced. This concept is generally referred to as a "road diet." In most cases the road diet results in enough space to stripe bike lanes. This chapter focuses on road diets and bike lanes, but road diets have safety, operational and livability benefits for motorists and pedestrians. In all cases a traffic study must be conducted to ensure the resulting roadway will carry the traffic at an acceptable level of service. In many cases the road carries as much traffic with fewer lanes, and performs better when one considers issues that concern residents, business owners, bicyclists, pedestrians and others who use the roadway for a variety or reasons.

The most common road diet takes a 4-lane undivided highway and redistributes the roadway to one travel lane in each direction, a center turn lane and two bike lanes. The safety benefits of the 4 to 3 lane road diet include:

- Fewer rear-end crashes: motorists wait to make a left turn in a dedicated turn lane, not in a through lane;
- Fewer sideswipe crashes: motorists no longer swerve around a vehicle waiting to turn left in a through lane;
- Fewer left turn crashes: turning motorists face only one lane of oncoming traffic;
- Reduced speeds;
- Easier and safer pedestrian crossings, especially with a median island in the center turn lane: pedestrians cross only one lane at a time instead of all 4 lanes at once; and
- Elimination of multiple threat crash.

DRAFT

Operational benefits of the 4 to 3 lane road diet include:

- Fewer delays from traffic stacked behind a car waiting to turn left;
- Easier to negotiate right turns, as the curb lane is offset from the curb; and
- Higher carrying capacity where many left turns obstruct the inside lane on a 4-lane section.

Figure 900-5459: Example where lanes become three with bike lanes

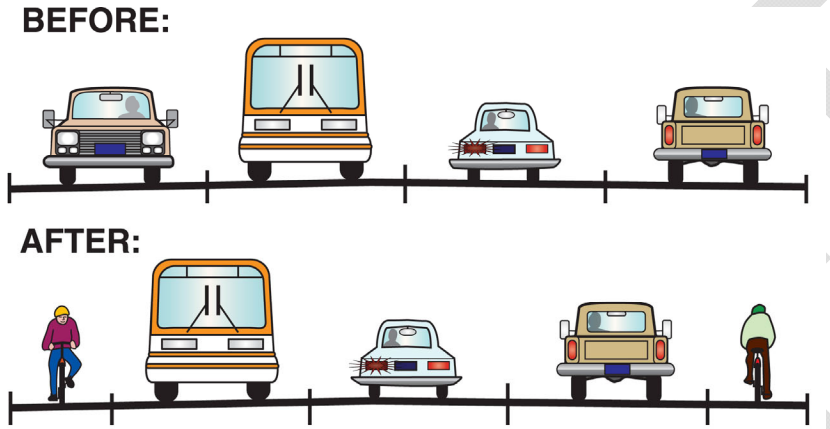


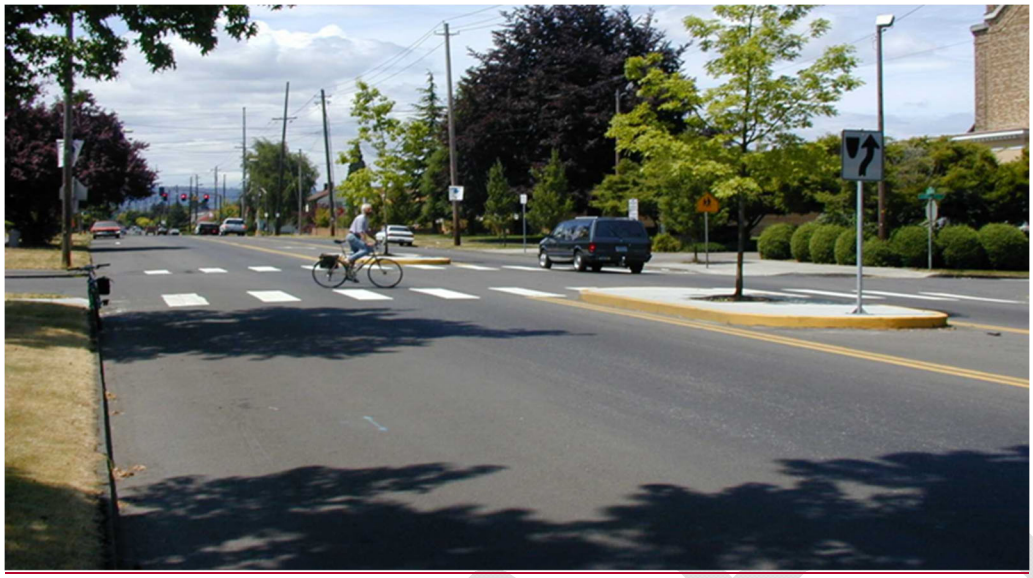
Figure 900-5560: Four lane undivided road restriped with center turn lane



The livability benefits of a road diet include:

- Greater separation from moving traffic for pedestrians;
- Room for street furniture and landscaping; and
- More people using bicycles for transportation

Figure 900-5661: Restriping frees up space for median refuge islands



One-way Couplets

One-way couplets are good lane-reduction candidates if they have more travel lanes in one direction than necessary for the traffic volumes. For example, a 4-lane one-way street can be reduced to 3 lanes and a bike lane. Since only one bike lane is needed on a oneway street, removing a travel lane can free up enough room for other features such as onstreet parking or wider sidewalks. Both legs of a couplet must be treated equally, so there is a bike lane in each direction.

DRAFT

Figure 900-57~~62~~: Example one-way cross section - four to three lanes with bike lane

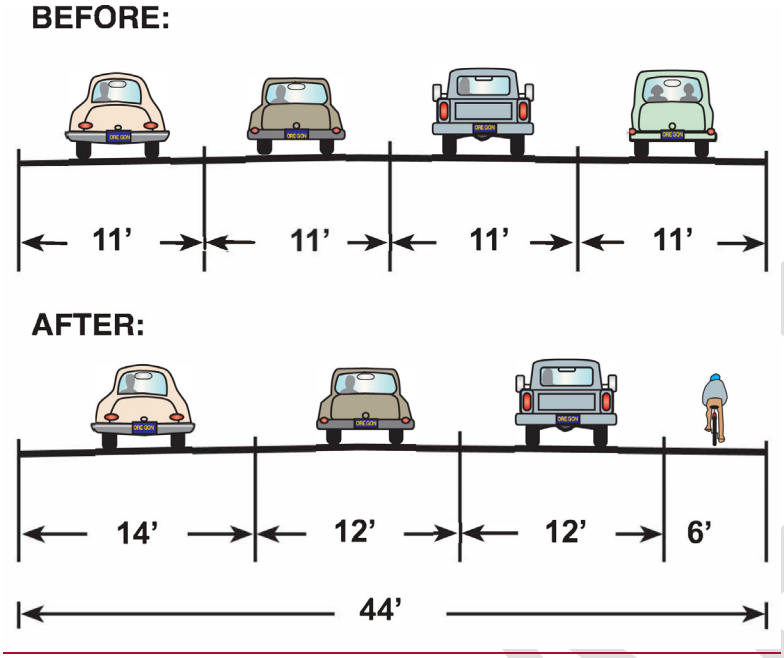


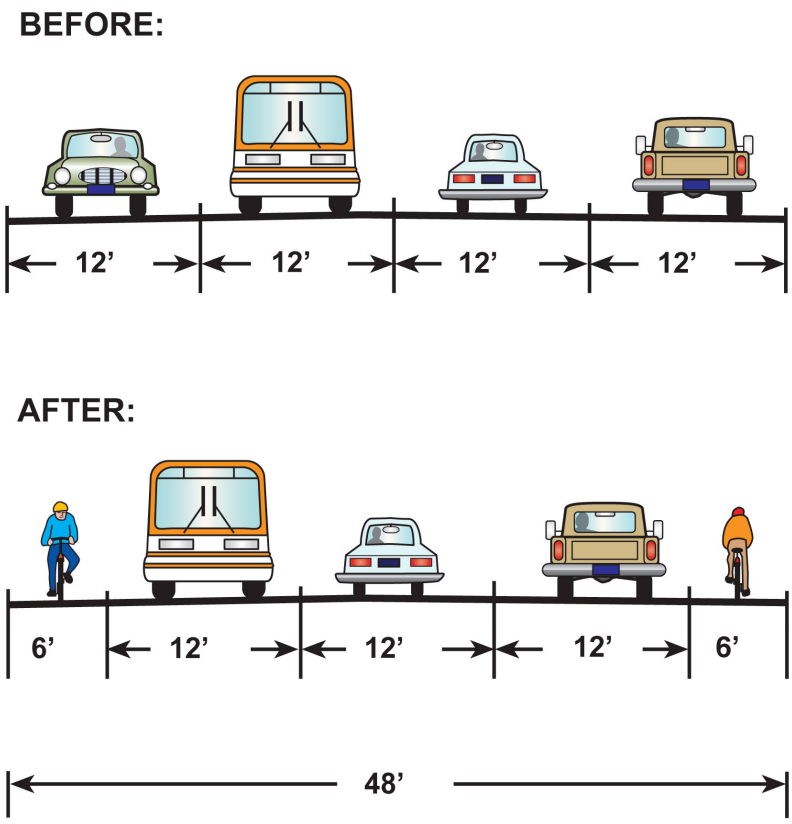
Figure 900-58~~63~~: Bike lane, curb extension and parking in place of removed lane



Unbalanced Flow

On streets with higher traffic volumes in one direction than the other, one direction of travel can have one less travel lane than the other side. For example, a 4-lane undivided roadway can be restriped with 2 lanes in one direction, one lane in the other, and 2 bike lanes.

Figure 900-5964: Two lanes in one direction, One lane in the other to add bike lanes



Pavement Conditions

Restriping a roadway with bike lanes will encourage more people to ride their bikes there; the expectation of a good riding experience must be met, and part of that experience is a good riding surface. If this expectation is not met, frustration can lead to opposition to more bike lanes. Improvements at the outer edge of the roadway should be made prior to bike lane restriping, including:

- Ensuring the surface is smooth and in good condition;
- Raising existing drainage grates, manhole and utility covers flush to the pavement; and
- Removing or relocating obstructions away from the edge of roadway to gain some useable width. Obstructions can include guardrail, utility poles and sign posts.

The best time to restripe a roadway is after a pavement overlay project, for two reasons:

- The new pavement offers a blank template; and
- Obliterating existing striping by grinding lane lines leaves grooves. The old stripes can show up on rainy days or at night when cars have their headlights on.

Figure 900-6065: Bike lanes striped on new pavement



Width Constraints

Not all existing roadways allow bike lanes to be retrofitted for an entire corridor. Unique and creative solutions will have to be found to ensure bikeway continuity in constrained areas:

- Width restrictions may only allow for a wide curb lane to accommodate bicycles and motor vehicles.
- Where no possible extra width is obtainable, another technique is to slow traffi c speeds so shared roadway conditions are acceptable.
- If the constraint is more than a few blocks, an alternate route may have to be improved for cycling; the alternate route must provide access to the destinations served by the thoroughfare considered for restriping.

Bike lanes must resume where the restriction ends. It is important that every effort be made to ensure bike lane continuity. Practices such as directing bicyclists onto sidewalks or other unsuitable streets should be avoided.

Additional Benefits

Restriping roadways for bike lanes has benefits over and beyond those for bicyclists. Drivers and pedestrians also benefi t when motor vehicle travel lanes are moved away from the curb: Benefits for motorists include:

- Extended pavement life, as traffic is no longer driving in the same well-worn ruts.
- Safety, as travel lanes are offset from curbs, and lanes are better defi ned, which can improve sight distance and increase the effective turning radius at intersections and driveways. See discussion on road diets for safety benefi ts of reducing the number of motor vehicle travel lanes.

DRAFT

Figure 900-6166: Bike lane offsets travel lane to increase effective turn radius

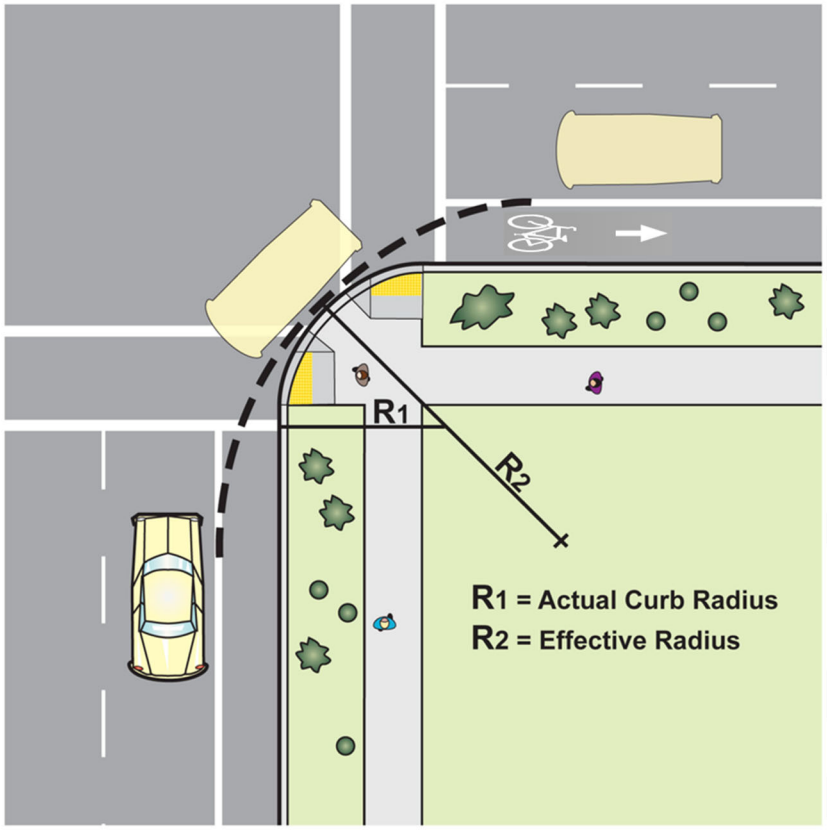
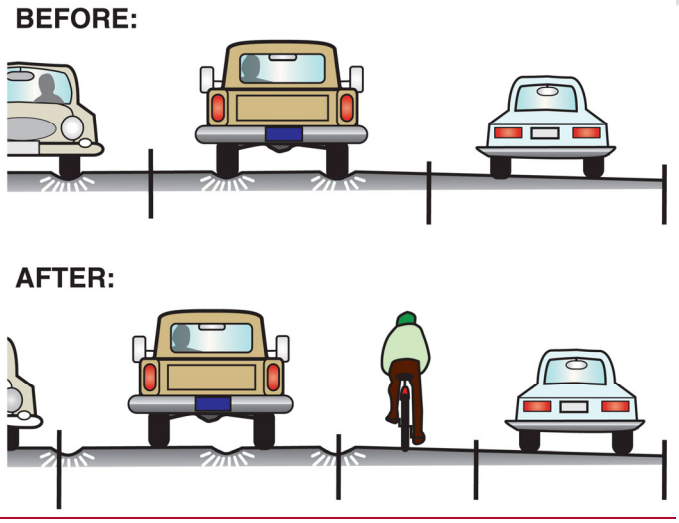


Figure 900-6267: Restriping offsets lanes, reduces wear and tear



Benefits for pedestrians include:

- Greater separation from traffic in the absence of on-street parking or a planter strip, increasing comfort and safety. This is important to young children walking, playing or riding their bikes on curbside sidewalks.
- An area for people in wheelchairs to travel where there are no sidewalks, or where sidewalks are in poor repair or do not meet ADA standards.
- Reduced splash from vehicles driving through puddles; in dry climates, less dust raised by passing vehicles, as they drive further from unpaved surfaces.
- The possibility of planting street trees, as the roots are not immediately under travel lanes.

Bike Lane Widths

The standard width for a bike lane is 6 feet. While it is important to maintain standards for bicycle facilities, there may be circumstances where restrictions don't allow full standards. See Section 943.1 for bike lane standards and minimum bike lane widths.

Figure 900-639006890069[Placeholder for more content:
Evaluating Design Alternatives and Trade-offs to select a Bikeway & Hierarchy for Selecting the Next Best Alternative]

937.1 Prioritizing Widths Between Zones

[Placeholder for future content]

937.1.1 Variability in Zone Widths

[Placeholder for future content.

This section will address:

- Passing spaces
- On-Street Parking
- Intersections]

Section 938 Two-way and Contra-Flow Bikeways

Bicycle traffic is typically accommodated in both directions of travel by providing a bike lane on each side of a road. Bike lanes on one-way streets are typically only in the direction of motor

vehicle traffic. In areas of high bicycle demand, the left shoulder may be marked as a contra-flow bicycle lane when approved by the Region Traffic Manager/Engineer. Striping for contra-flow bicycle lanes are given in the ODOT Traffic Line Manual, Section 412.

Three types of bikeways serve two-way bicycle travel. The first type is a shared use path that does not run parallel to a roadway. The second is a shared use path that does run along one side of a road and usually replaces the need for bike lanes on that road. This type of shared use path is referred to as a Side Path. The third type of facility is a two-way separated bike lane. A side path and a two-way separated bike lane operate similarly. The distinction is that side paths are designed to serve pedestrians, while two-way separated bike lanes are bikeways apart from pedestrian walkways.

In lieu of providing bike lanes on each side of a road, a two-way bicycle facility may be provided on one side of a road. To determine if a two-way bikeway is appropriate, evaluate if a bi-directional facility is appropriate for the location (see Section). Shared use paths that are not along a road do not need to be evaluated for one-way versus two-way operation.

Two-way shared use side paths are a preferred bicycle facility for limited access expressways or urban freeways and may be discouraged in other areas. Side paths are discussed in .

Although one-way separated paths may be intended for one direction of bicycle travel, they will often be used as two-way facilities. Caution must be used in selecting this type of facility. If needed, they should be designed and signed to promote one-way operation by bicyclists.

938.1 Evaluating One-way versus Two-Way Operation

Evaluate the following design considerations to determine whether bi-directional bicycle traffic is appropriate on one side of a roadway.

938.1.1 Driveways and Intersections Along Route

Two-way bicycle lanes and side paths are affected by each driveway and cross street approach along the route.

When bicycle traffic rides against the normal, predicted flow of motor vehicle traffic, conflicts can occur at driveways and cross streets. Crash risk is higher where cyclists ride facing traffic.

Bicyclists expect to proceed along a route without stopping at each driveway or minor side street. When bicyclists are required to stop or yield at cross streets and driveways, stopping disrupts their momentum. Bicyclist's perception of safety on a protected facility may result in unexpected higher bicycle speeds when crossing intersections and driveways and in turn may increase the likelihood for crashes, especially where sight distance is limited.

DRAFT

~~Since the speed of bicyclists is faster than pedestrians, many drivers misjudge reaction time and proceed prematurely. Consequently, motor vehicles approaching side streets and driveways may proceed without noticing bicyclists.~~

~~Each vehicle approach may cause four potential conflict scenarios.~~

1. ~~Approaching motor vehicles may stop on the cross-street or driveway and block the path.~~
2. ~~A driver turning right from a side street or driveway may not expect to see a cyclist coming from the right.~~
3. ~~A driver turning left onto a side street or driveway may not expect see a cyclist coming in the opposite direction.~~
4. ~~A driver turning right onto a side street or driveway may not expect see a cyclist coming from the opposite direction.~~

~~Each conflict scenario is affected by the speed of bicycle travel along the route and whether motorists are able to notice and react.~~

~~Drivers often focus on oncoming traffic from the left without glancing to the right since motor vehicle traffic on the right is on the opposite side of the street. Thus, motorists crossing the path do not notice bicyclists coming from the direction opposite to prevailing traffic.~~

~~A bi-directional bikeway may therefore be discouraged in areas with frequent driveway or street access.~~

~~938.1.2 Transition at the Ends of Bi-directional Route~~

~~Transitions to the beginning and end of the left-side bike facility are critical to safe operation. Provide signs, markings and other traffic control as appropriate to clarify to the users that the two-way bikeway is shifting to become a one-way bikeway on each side of the street and to encourage users to cross at the designated place. If the transitions are not done properly, bicyclists are unlikely to cross to the other side of a road to use a path, bike lane or sidewalk, particularly if the length of the left-side bike facility is short. Many users are likely to use a lane on the roadway a short distance rather than cross twice. Additionally, when a two-way bicycle lane or side path begins or ends, some bicyclists riding against traffic could continue to travel on the wrong side of the street for a long distance beyond the end of the left-side bicycle facility. Wrong-way travel by bicyclists is a major cause of bicyclist-to-automobile crashes. A two-way bicycle lane or side path should not be implemented unless considerable care is taken to address safety issues posed by entering and exiting the two-way facility.~~

~~To provide safe transitions to and from two-way bicycle lanes and side paths, entrances and exits from the path will require careful consideration and integration into the design. Depending on the context and origin/destinations to and from the two-way facility on one side~~

DRAFT

of the road, additional crossings may be needed, resulting in additional conflict zones to be mitigated. Paradoxically, the side path and its planned crossings could reduce the number of conflicts for a cyclist. Trip generation and conflict analysis is recommended.

Figure -: Transition from bike lanes to side path across street uses corner to position bicycles at crosswalk.



938.1.3 Position and Sight distance

The term 'position' refers to the location of the bi-directional bike lane or side path and its user in relation to the driver on the roadway. Sight distance is critical at intersections and crossings with side paths. This is also discussed in the two previous sections. A cyclist on a two-way bicycle lane or side path, even when going in the same direction of traffic, are not within the normal scanning area of turning drivers. In addition, a cyclist riding contra to the flow does not see the signage and signals posted for roadway users that a driver and a cyclist going in the same direction see, missing valuable cues for safety. In some cases, the proximity of a side path to the roadway creates a condition where barriers or railings are needed to separate traffic. These barriers can obstruct sight distance and make it challenging for maintenance. Evaluating visual barriers at crossings is recommended.

938.1.4 Space Available

A side path should use the same design criteria as a shared use path. It is recommended to have at least a 5 foot buffer between the edge of asphalt of the roadway and the path. This may require additional right of way. Side paths can also be constrained by fixed objects, such as

buildings, utilities, furniture and waterways. It is recommended to evaluate the available right of way to accommodate a side path.

938.1.5 User Compliance

Some bicyclists may choose to ride in the roadway rather than the side path because of some of the issues with conflicts discussed in this section. Bicyclists choosing to ride in the street instead of using the side path may be hassled by other road users.

938.1.6 Turns

Turning movements for cyclists on a side path are the same as for pedestrians. Generally, left turns involve yielding to cross traffic twice instead of only once and thus inducing unnecessary delay.

938.1.7 Continuity

[Placeholder for future content]

938.1.8 Conditions for a Successful Side Path

- Bicycle and pedestrian use is anticipated to be high;
- The traffic conditions (high-speed, high-volumes) on the adjacent roadway are such that on-road bikeways and sidewalks may be undesirable;
- The path can be kept separate from motor vehicle traffic, with few roadway or driveway crossings;
- There are no reasonable alternatives for bikeways and sidewalks on nearby parallel streets;
- There is a commitment to provide path continuity throughout the corridor;
- The path can be terminated at each end onto streets with good bicycle and pedestrian accommodation, or onto another safe, well-designed path;
- There is adequate access to local cross-streets and other facilities along the route;
- Any needed grade separation structures do not add substantial out-of-direction travel;

DRAFT

- ~~The total cost of providing the path is proportionate to the need. This evaluation should consider the costs of grading, paving, drainage, fences, retaining walls, sound walls, crossings, signs and other necessary design features;~~
- ~~Grade-separated structures needed to eliminate at-grade crossings;~~

~~At night, headlight glare is a concern.~~

~~As a result of discouraged use, few two-way separated bike lanes exist. However, in the last decade, there has been an increase in the installation of two-way separated bike lanes.~~

~~Some preliminary crash data suggests that while crash rates for two-way separated bike lanes are worse than one-way separated bike lanes, they are still lower than a shared travel lane condition.~~ ~~Survey results indicate that separated bike lanes are preferred over shared lanes or on-street bike lanes by both cyclists and motorists~~~~Another research report concludes that two-way separated bike lanes are preferable on one-way streets on the right side, rather than the left.~~

Figure 900-63: Bike lane provides buffer for pedestrians



~~Section 939~~Section 948 Parallel Routes

As described in Section 912.1, by Oregon statute, bicycle facilities are required to be included wherever a public agency constructs, reconstructs or relocates a highway unless one of three exemptions is applicable. One of the exemptions is when other available factors indicate the absence of any need for bicycle facilities. **Where triggered by the scope of work, a design**

exception is required to omit a bicycle facility altogether from a highway segment cross section in favor of routing bicycle traffic onto a parallel route. If criteria in this section are met, the exception can be supported. Supporting information must include documentation of public acceptance affirming that bicycle travel is not needed along the highway corridor and that a parallel route is suitable to be used instead. When approved, ODOT can invest in improving the parallel route in lieu of improvements on the mainline highway.

If a parallel route is chosen as a solution, minimal pedestrian and bike facilities should still be provided along highways, if feasible, even when there are parallel routes. Such facilities provide access and refuge in the case of a vehicle breakdown or other emergency. It may also be needed for connections to destinations and transit stops along the highway, as well as trips by individuals who may not be familiar with the local network and the availability of the parallel route. Except in highly constrained areas, parallel routes should generally be an "alternative" additive element to the bicycle network rather than the only route option provided.

Normally, bicycle travel is accommodated with motor vehicle travel on the same highway roadbed. Where bicycle travel is accommodated on a parallel route apart from motor vehicles, this can be within the highway right-of-way or on a separate street's right-of-way. A design exception is not required where the parallel route is within the highway right-of-way.

One example is a Multiway Boulevard, which is a highway facility where medians are used to separate through travel lanes from local access lanes. The local access lane is a separate frontage road with a different speed that provides the pedestrian and bicycle facilities, and may include access to businesses, transit, or on-street parking. Bicycle lanes are not required to be duplicated on both the through facility as well as the access lane.

A Shared Use Path may function as a bicycling route that is generally parallel to a highway for transportation purposes even when it includes portions that are not in the highway right-of-way. Typical examples are paths that run along riparian corridors or parallel to an expressway. If portions of path within ODOT right-of-way are intermittent because the continuation of the path is outside of ODOT right-of-way, and the connected path as a whole functions to serve the transportation needs, a redundant bicycle facility within ODOT right-of-way is not required. See further information in Section 970.

There are two main conditions where parallel routes may be considered on another street right-of-way. First, where the role in the highway is that of a limited access route, typically, bicycle travel is better served on a route parallel to expressways and freeways than on the shoulder and the limited access route does not serve the mobility and access needs of bicyclists. Second, there are occasions when it is infeasible or impractical to provide bike lanes on a busy thoroughfare.

In both these cases, bicyclists should not be precluded from the state highway or signed onto other local routes because of constraints. However, in some locations bicyclists may prefer to travel on alternate routes. Tier 2 bikeways without buffers and Tier 3 bikeways are not ideal on roads with travel speeds greater than 45 mph. If a well-connected parallel on-street bike network is provided, the highway shoulder may be sufficient to accommodate the occasional

DRAFT

cyclist, without requiring a separate bicycle facility. A shoulder is still required to facilitate bicyclists to access businesses. A well-connected parallel on-street bike network can serve the bicycle trips if access to the highway is provided.

The following are conditions to determine if it is appropriate to provide facilities on a parallel local street in lieu of the mainline:

- A bicycle facility on the state highway falls into one of three categories:
  1) Conditions exist such that it is not economically or environmentally feasible to provide adequate bike lanes on the mainline; OR
  2) Mainline does not provide adequate access to destinations; OR
  3) Bike travel on mainline would not be considered safe.
- Parallel route must provide continuity and convenient access to facilities served by the mainline;
- Costs to improve parallel route should be no greater than costs to improve the mainline; and
- Proposed facilities on parallel route must meet state standards for bike facilities.
- Adequate facilities on proposed parallel route must exist before a Bike Bill design exception based on 'other available ways' can be approved. Planned future improvements to bring a parallel route up to state standards are not acceptable.

The above criteria should be satisfied and considered along with other factors when considering parallel routes for the provision of bike access and mobility.

If a parallel route is determined to be the best alternative, determine whether a parallel route already exists or whether improvements would be necessary to meet the needs for bikeway access and bicycle network connectivity. Determine whether providing bike lanes on the parallel route requires acquiring right-of-way.

Strategy 2.1B in the statewide Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan allows ODOT to invest in infrastructure in lieu of improving bicycle facilities on a state highway under certain circumstances. It says:

When local planning processes have, in consultation with ODOT, identified a local parallel bike route, and a bikeway on the state highway is determined to be contrary to public safety, is disproportionate in cost to the project cost or need, or is not needed as shown by relevant factors and therefore justified to be exempt from ORS 366.514 based on one of those statutory exemptions, ODOT will work with the jurisdictions to support the development of the parallel route and assure reasonable access to destinations along the state highway. ODOT and the local jurisdiction may enter into an agreement in which ODOT helps to fund, in negotiation and partnership with the local jurisdiction, construction of the bikeway in the vicinity of the state highway project that serves as an alternative or parallel route to the highway project.

DRAFT

~~939.1~~948.1 Parallel Route Design

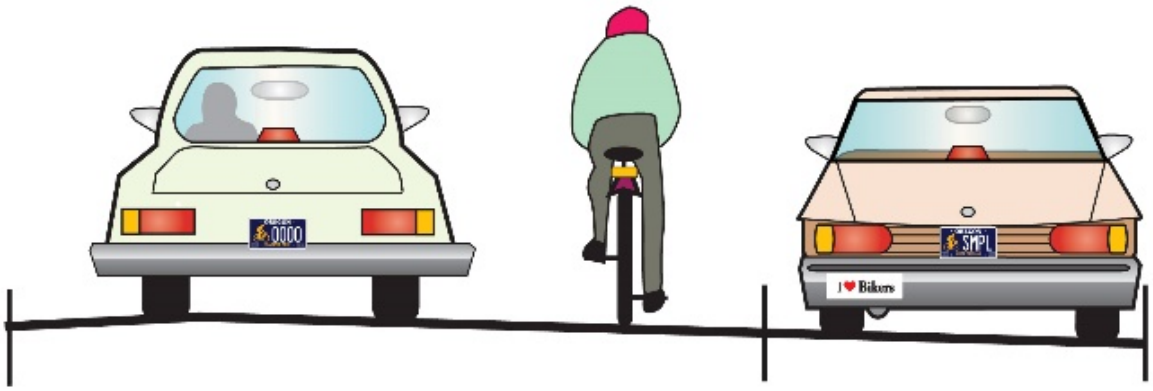
~~[Placeholder for section]~~

~~This section will include~~When design treatments are to be provided onto parallel city streets (off-highway) to ensure that the bikeway meets the connectivity and access needs to replace the transportation function of the mainline.

948.1.1 ~~The content may~~ Shared Roadways on Low Traffic Local Streets

Shared roadways are the most common bikeway type. There are no specific bicycle standards for most shared roadways. Most are fairly narrow; they are simply ~~reference~~ the roads as constructed.

Figure 900-64~~70~~: Shared roadway



Shared roadways are suitable in urban areas on streets with low motor vehicle speeds or traffic volumes, and on low-volume rural roads and highways. The suitability of a shared roadway decreases as motor vehicle traffic speeds and volumes increase, especially on rural roads with poor sight distance. See Bike Lane Matrix for suitability of shared roadways based on motor vehicle speeds, volumes and context.

Figure 900-6571: Low volume street suitable for shared roadway



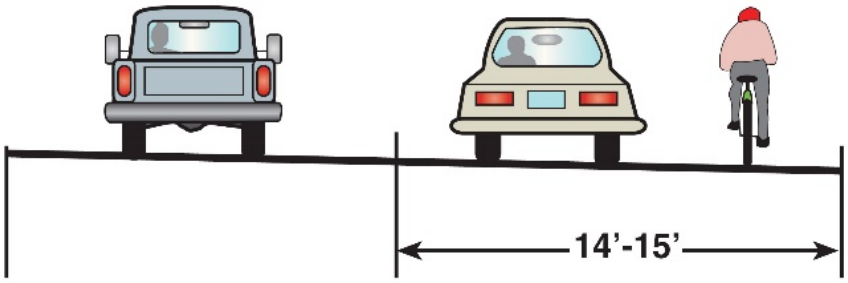
On rural roads with high bicycle use or demand, roads should include shoulders where motor vehicle speeds and volumes are high.

Figure 900-6672: Street too busy for a shared roadway



Many urban local streets carry excessive traffic volumes at speeds higher than they were designed to carry. These can function better as shared roadways if traffic speeds and volumes are reduced. There are many traffic-calming techniques that can make these streets more amenable to bicycling on the road.

Figure 900-6773& Ped Design Guide for Bike : Wide outside lane



On major streets where a bike lane would be more appropriate, but with insufficient width for bike lanes, wide curb lanes may be provided. This may occur on retrofit projects where there are physical constraints, and all other options have been pursued, such as removing parking or narrowing travel lanes. Wide curb lanes are not particularly attractive to most cyclists; they simply allow a passenger vehicle to pass cyclists within a travel lane, if cyclists are riding far enough to the right. Wide curb lanes may also encourage higher motor vehicle speeds, which is contrary to the expressed desires of many residents; wide lanes should never be used on local residential streets. A wide lane should be 14 to 15 feet wide to allow a passenger car to pass a cyclist in the same lane. Widths 16 feet or greater encourage the undesirable operation of two motor vehicles in one lane. In this situation, a bike lane should be striped.

948.1.2 Bicycle Boulevards

The bicycle boulevard is a refinement of the shared roadway concept; the operation of a local street is modified to function as a through street for bicyclists while maintaining local access for automobiles:

- Traffic-calming devices reduce motor vehicle speeds and through trips;
- Traffic controls limit conflicts between motorists and bicyclists and give priority to through bicyclist movement.

Advantages of Bicycle Boulevards

1. Opportunity: traditional street grids offer local streets that can be converted to bicycle boulevards;
2. Bicycle travel on local streets is compatible with local land uses;
3. Bicycle boulevards may attract cyclists who do not feel comfortable on busy streets and prefer to ride on lower traffic streets;
4. Traffic calming techniques are favored by residents who want slower traffic on neighborhood streets;
5. Bicycle boulevards can improve conditions for pedestrians, with reduced traffic and improved crossings.

DRAFT

Successful bicycle boulevard implementation requires careful planning with residents and businesses to ensure acceptance

Elements of a Bicycle Boulevard

A successful bike boulevard project requires:

1. Selecting a direct and continuous street, rather than a circuitous route that winds through neighborhoods. Bike boulevards work best on a street grid system;
2. Placing motor vehicle traffic diverters at key intersections to reduce through motor vehicle traffic (diverters are designed to allow through bicyclist movement);
3. Turning stop signs towards intersecting streets, so bicyclists can ride with few interruptions;
4. Placing traffic-calming devices on streets to lower motor vehicle traffic speeds;
5. Placing directional signs or markings to route cyclists to key destinations, to guide cyclists through difficult situations, and to alert motorists of the presence of bicyclists; and
6. Providing crossing improvements where the boulevard crosses high-speed/high-volume streets such as:
   - Signals, where a traffic study has shown that a signal will be safe and effective. To ensure that bicyclists can activate the signal, loop detection should be installed where bicyclists ride and/or a push button that won't require dismounting; or
   - Median refuges, wide enough to provide a refuge (8 feet min) and with an opening wide enough to allow bicyclists to pass through (6 ft). The design should allow bicyclists to see the travel lanes they must cross.

Figure 900-6874: Elements of a bicycle boulevard

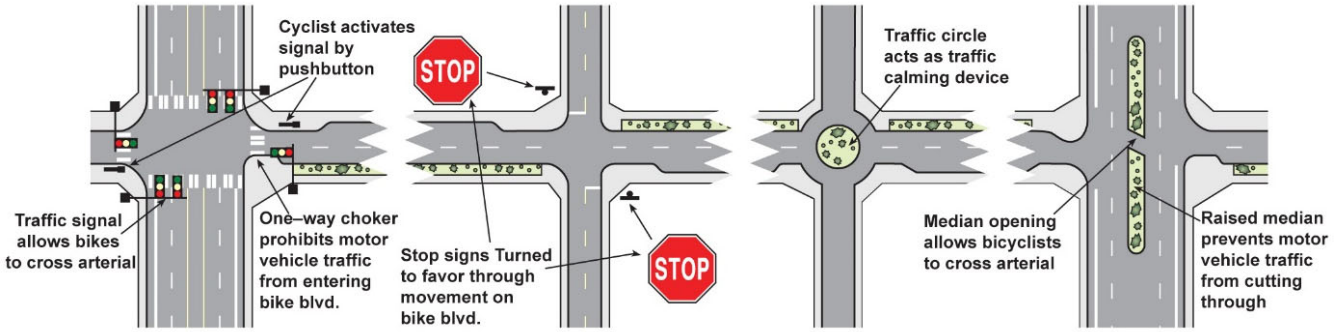


Figure 900-6975: Traffic diverter



Figure 900-7076: Refuge island for bicyclist



Figure 900-7177: Traffic circle



Potential bicycle boulevard implementation challenges

Challenges can arise under these conditions:

1. If they're discontinuous and/or located on streets that do not provide direct access to commerce and other destinations, cyclists will have to negotiate a more hostile street environment to complete portions of their trip. Bike boulevards must be continuous and close to corridors that serve many destinations; short connections may have to be built to provide continuity and access.
2. They can cause motor vehicle traffic diversion onto other streets. Neighborhood concerns must be properly addressed.
~~1.~~3. Without crossing enhancements at busy streets, crossing opportunities may be difficult for bicyclists. The planning phase must develop realistic and fundable strategies for crossings of busy streets.

Section 950 Intersection Design

For a thorough and detailed discussion on intersection design, see Part 500. The following discussion will help the designer understand some of the key intersection design features that help enhance the safety and convenience of bicyclists. Other intersection design principles for pedestrians and bicyclists are discussed in detail in sections 224.1, 830.5 and Section 920 and in Appendix L, pages 6-1 and 6-5.

~~Section 951 Interaction Between Modes~~

The following basic principles apply to bicyclists:

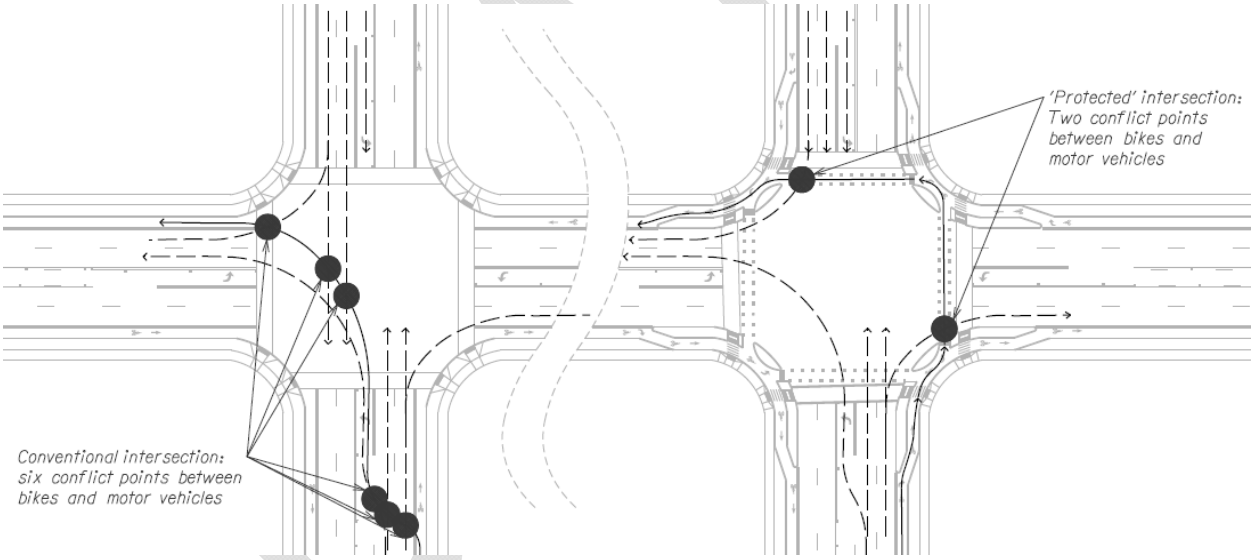
- Good design creates a path for bicyclists that is direct, logical and close to the path of motor vehicle traffic; only in rare cases should they proceed through intersections as pedestrians.
- Bicyclists should be visible and their movements should be predictable.
- Bike lanes should be striped to a marked crosswalk or a point where turning vehicles would normally cross them. The lanes should resume at the other side of the intersection. The bike lane stripe may be dashed prior to the crosswalk to indicate a potential conflict point to both bicyclists and drivers.
- Unusual and unexpected conflicts should be avoided.
- Good intersection designs are compact.
- Simple right angle intersections are best for bicycle and pedestrian movement. The problems are more complex at skewed and multi-legged intersections.
- Free-flowing movements should be avoided.

- Access management practices should be used to remove additional conflict points near the intersection.
- Signal timing should not hinder bicycle (or foot) traffic with overly long waits or insufficient crossing times.

Section 951 Design for Turning Movements

Most conflicts between roadway users occur at intersections, where one group of travelers crosses the path of others. Good intersection design minimizes and mitigates conflict points and clearly identifies right of way between motorists, pedestrians and bicyclists. The way that bicyclists execute a left turn affects the number of conflict points at an intersection. Intersections can be designed per Section 953 to accommodate bicycles in a distinctly separate track from motor vehicles to reduce conflicts and enable space for two-stage left turns.

Figure 900-7278: Conflict Points at Conventional versus Protected Intersection



The complexity of an intersection also affects the ability for vision-impaired pedestrians to orient themselves using traffic sounds. Where possible, it is best for intersection legs to connect at as close to 90-degrees and with a radius as small as feasible. The radius should safely accommodate turning movements for a design vehicle that is expected regularly at the intersection. Truck aprons can be used where larger vehicles may be expected. Where channelized right turn lanes are used, it often creates an unprotected crossing, and the skew angle can reduce driver yielding to pedestrians that can be difficult for vision-impaired pedestrians.

951.1.1 Right Turn Lanes

Right-turn lanes should be used only where warranted by a traffic study, as they present these problems for cyclists:

- Right-turning cars and through bicyclists cross paths; and
- Right-turns are made easier, which may cause inattentive drivers to not notice bicyclists on their right

The design shown above makes through bicyclists and right-turning motor vehicles cross prior to the intersection, with these advantages:

- This conflict occurs away from other conflicts at the intersection;
- The difference in speeds enables a motor vehicle driver to pass a bicyclist rather than ride side-by-side; and
- Bicyclists follow the rules of the road: through bicyclists proceed to the left of right-turning vehicles.

This design should also be used where there are currently no bike lanes approaching or beyond the intersection, for these reasons:

- This design enables bicyclists and drivers to position themselves correctly; and
- When the roadway is striped with bike lanes in the future, the intersections are already designed correctly

Other Right Turn Lane Designs

Not all intersections have an exclusive right turn lane. A bike lane to the left of right turning cars should still be provided if right turn movements are heavy.

Note: This is a difficult movement for bicyclists as they must merge left and find a gap in the traffic stream. On bike lane retrofit projects, where there is insufficient room to mark a minimum (4-foot) bike lane to the left of the right-turn lane, a right-turn lane may be marked and signed as a shared-use lane, to encourage through cyclists to occupy the left portion of the turn lane. This is most successful on slow-speed streets.

Section 952 Intersection Sight Distance

[Placeholder for future content]

DRAFT

Section 953 Protected Intersections

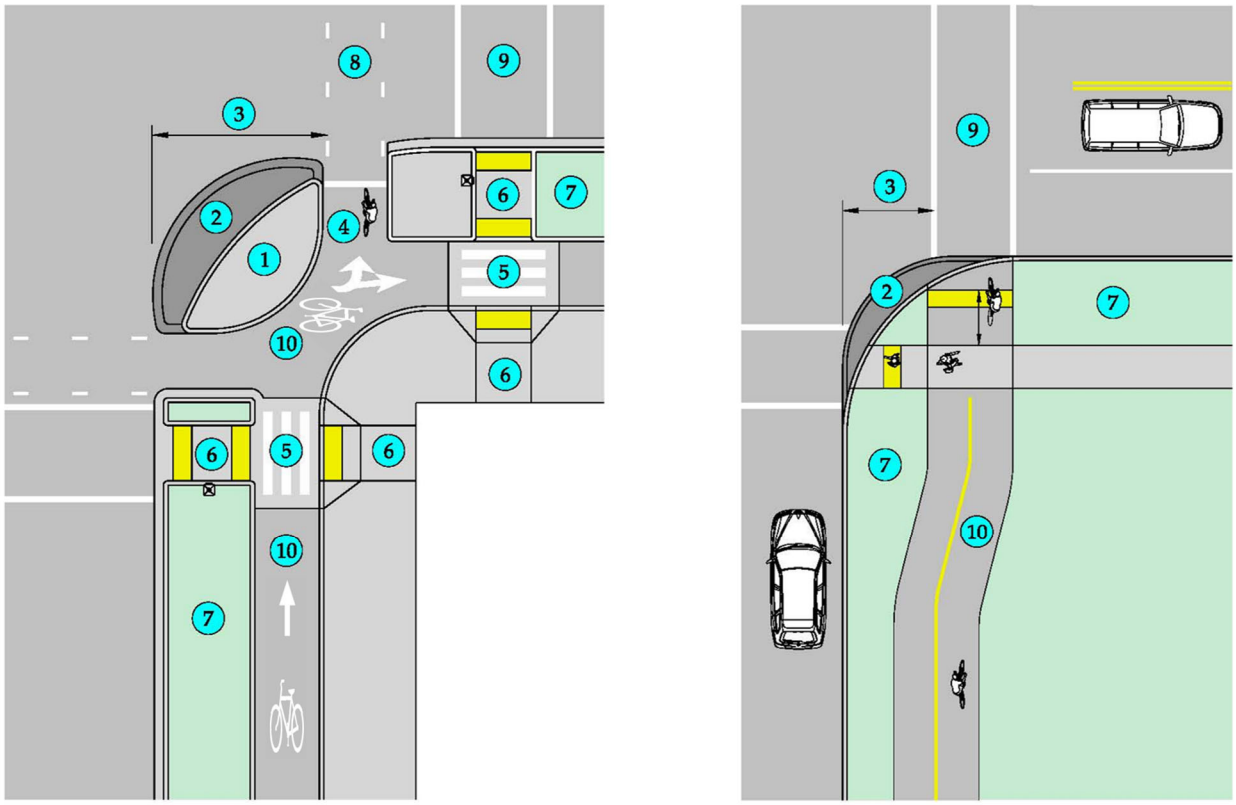
A 'protected' intersection uses traffic islands between bicycle and motor vehicle lanes to reduce and segregate conflicts and facilitate two-stage left turns where bicyclists would not be comfortable entering the left turn lane. It clearly designates the right-of-way between modes and improves predictability. Bicyclists travel parallel to pedestrians in bicycle lanes that are separate from the pedestrian crosswalk and separate from the motor vehicle lane. 'Protected' intersections are the preferred intersection configuration where approaching bike lanes are separated or buffered from motor vehicle traffic. Where approaching bike lanes are not separated or buffered, a transition at the intersection can enable this configuration. When an intersection includes the elements that define a 'protected' intersection, the number of potential conflicts and the area of the potential conflict zone between bicycles and motor vehicles is reduced. These defining elements are shown in Figure 900-73~~Figure 900-78~~. Where a street has a shared use paths rather than bike lanes, some of the design elements can be included in the intersection design.

There are two main purposes for a 'protected intersection'.

- Mitigating unprotected conflicts between through bikes and right or left turning vehicles;
- Facilitating two-stage left turns for bikes in a protected space.

DRAFT

Figure 900-7379: Protected Intersection Design for Separated Bike Lanes and Side Paths



953.1 Design Elements of a Protected Intersection

Ten design elements are shown in Figure 900-73Figure 900-78. These include:

1. Corner Island
2. Truck Apron
3. Motorist Yield Zone
4. Advance Bicycle Stop Line with Queuing Area
5. Crosswalk in Bike Lane
6. Detectable Warnings on each side of the Bike Lane
7. Refuge Across Street Buffer
8. Extension of Bike Lane in Street Crossing
9. Crosswalk
10. Bicycle Path Alignment Geometry

953.1.1 Corner Island, Truck Apron and Motorist Yield Zone

The corner island has three functions. First, it positions bicyclists to create an advance stop line. Second, it shifts the crossing away from the intersection corner to create a Motorist Yield Zone. Third, it establishes the curb line for vehicle turns in lieu of the corner radius. The radius of the corner island should allow the design vehicle to turn without encroaching onto the island. Since the curb radius can affect vehicle turning speed, a truck apron may supplement the corner island to control turning speeds for vehicles other than the design vehicle. When vehicles turn, the size of the corner island should enable a vehicle to stop and wait for bicycles without blocking traffic. The optimal motorist yield zone distance is 6-feet to 16.5 feet. The corner island should maintain sight lines between turning vehicles and bicyclists.

953.1.2 Advance Bicycle Stop Line with Queuing Area

The advance bicycle stop line has two functions. First, it positions bicycles to be clearly visible to drivers who are stopped at the stop bar and who are turning. The positioning also helps approaching bicyclists. Second, it functions similar to a left turn bike box for side-street traffic to wait with stopped mainline bicycle traffic, while being outside of the path of cross street bicycle through traffic. The minimum length of the queuing area is 6-feet, measured from the corner island to the bike lane. If the available space for a queuing area is less than 6-feet, bicycles may block through side street bicycle traffic.

953.1.3 Pedestrian-Bicycle Conflict Area Features

Several design elements are necessary to separate bicycles from pedestrians to ensure pedestrian accessibility and manage conflicts between pedestrians and bicyclists. As described in Section 944, pedestrian features depend on whether or not bicyclists and pedestrians are intended to mix. If the modes are intended to remain separated, provide a crosswalk in the bike lane with curb ramps on each side of the bike lane and increase the width of the street buffer to function as a refuge island with pedestrian signal pushbuttons in the island area. If bicyclists and pedestrians are intended to mix, as in a shared use path, the curb ramps shall be equal in width to the approaching shared use path and must comply with ODOT ADA criteria for curb ramps. In both cases, the street buffer should be of sufficient length and width to accommodate bicycles stopped without encroaching into the side street bike lane or sidewalk.

Where bicycles and pedestrians are kept separate, provide space for an extension of the bike lane in street crossing parallel to the crosswalk. Where the modes are mixed, a crosswalk is sufficient for both.

DRAFT

953.1.4 Bicycle Path Alignment Geometry

The design speed for the alignment of the bicycle path through the Protected Intersection area should be reduced since bicyclists must slow down to cross conflict areas. Where the width of the street buffer is increased to create a 7-foot wide refuge island, the alignment of the bike lane shall include horizontal curves. The widening of the street buffer zone, which thereby shifts bicycle traffic further from the travel lanes is called "bend-out deflection." The beginning of the bend-out deflection is determined by the length necessary to create a 7-foot refuge island.

953.2 Retrofitting with Protected features

Protected intersections should be considered when upgrading intersections, even if the approaches don't currently have separated or buffered bike lanes because the segments can be upgraded later in coordination with pavement preservation or other efforts.

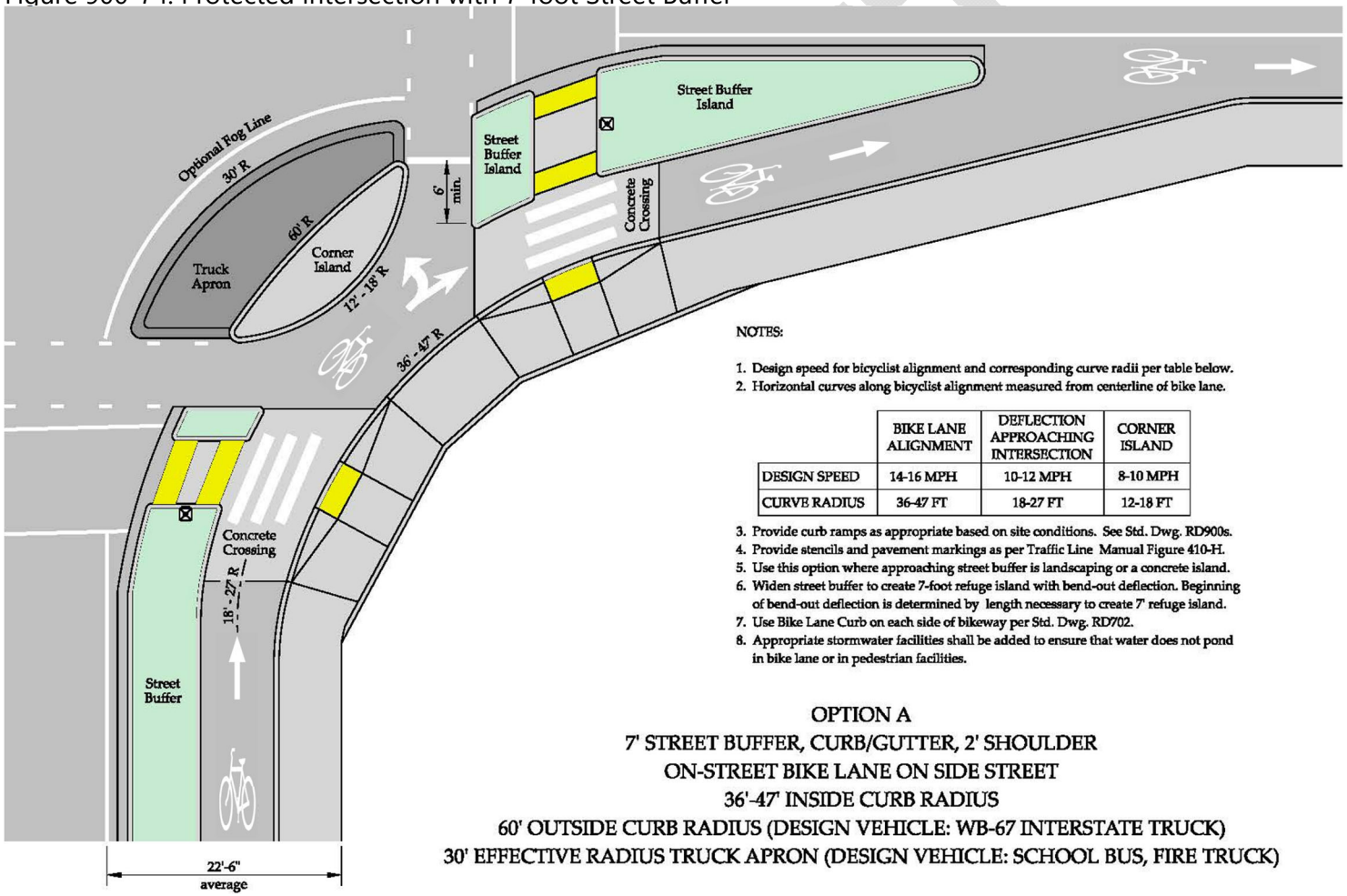
953.3 Protected Intersection Layouts

The following example designs illustrate how the design features of a protected intersection may be applied at an intersection. These examples are not comprehensive.

DRAFT

953.3.1 Protected Intersection Layout with Wide Buffer

Figure 900-74: Protected Intersection with 7-foot Street Buffer



NOTES:

1. Design speed for bicyclist alignment and corresponding curve radii per table below.
2. Horizontal curves along bicyclist alignment measured from centerline of bike lane.

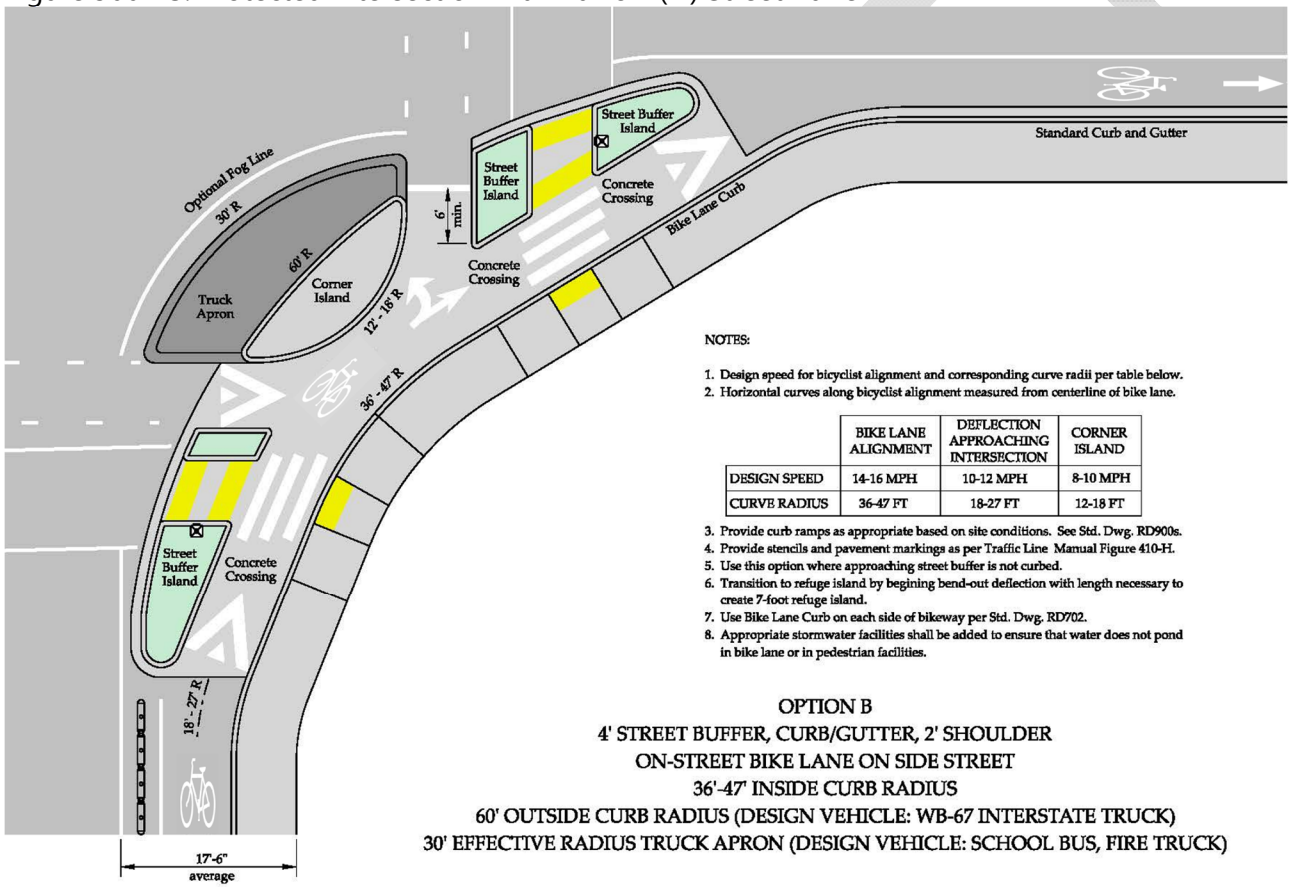
	BIKE LANE ALIGNMENT	DEFLECTION APPROACHING INTERSECTION	CORNER ISLAND
DESIGN SPEED	14-16 MPH	10-12 MPH	8-10 MPH
CURVE RADIUS	36-47 FT	18-27 FT	12-18 FT

3. Provide curb ramps as appropriate based on site conditions. See Std. Dwg. RD900s.
4. Provide stencils and pavement markings as per Traffic Line Manual Figure 410-H.
5. Use this option where approaching street buffer is landscaping or a concrete island.
6. Widen street buffer to create 7-foot refuge island with bend-out deflection. Beginning of bend-out deflection is determined by length necessary to create 7' refuge island.
7. Use Bike Lane Curb on each side of bikeway per Std. Dwg. RD702.
8. Appropriate stormwater facilities shall be added to ensure that water does not pond in bike lane or in pedestrian facilities.

OPTION A
7' STREET BUFFER, CURB/GUTTER, 2' SHOULDER
ON-STREET BIKE LANE ON SIDE STREET
36'-47' INSIDE CURB RADIUS
60' OUTSIDE CURB RADIUS (DESIGN VEHICLE: WB-67 INTERSTATE TRUCK)
30' EFFECTIVE RADIUS TRUCK APRON (DESIGN VEHICLE: SCHOOL BUS, FIRE TRUCK)

953.3.2 Protected Intersection Layout with Narrow Buffer

Figure 900-75: Protected Intersection with Narrow (2') Street Buffer



NOTES:

1. Design speed for bicyclist alignment and corresponding curve radii per table below.
2. Horizontal curves along bicyclist alignment measured from centerline of bike lane.

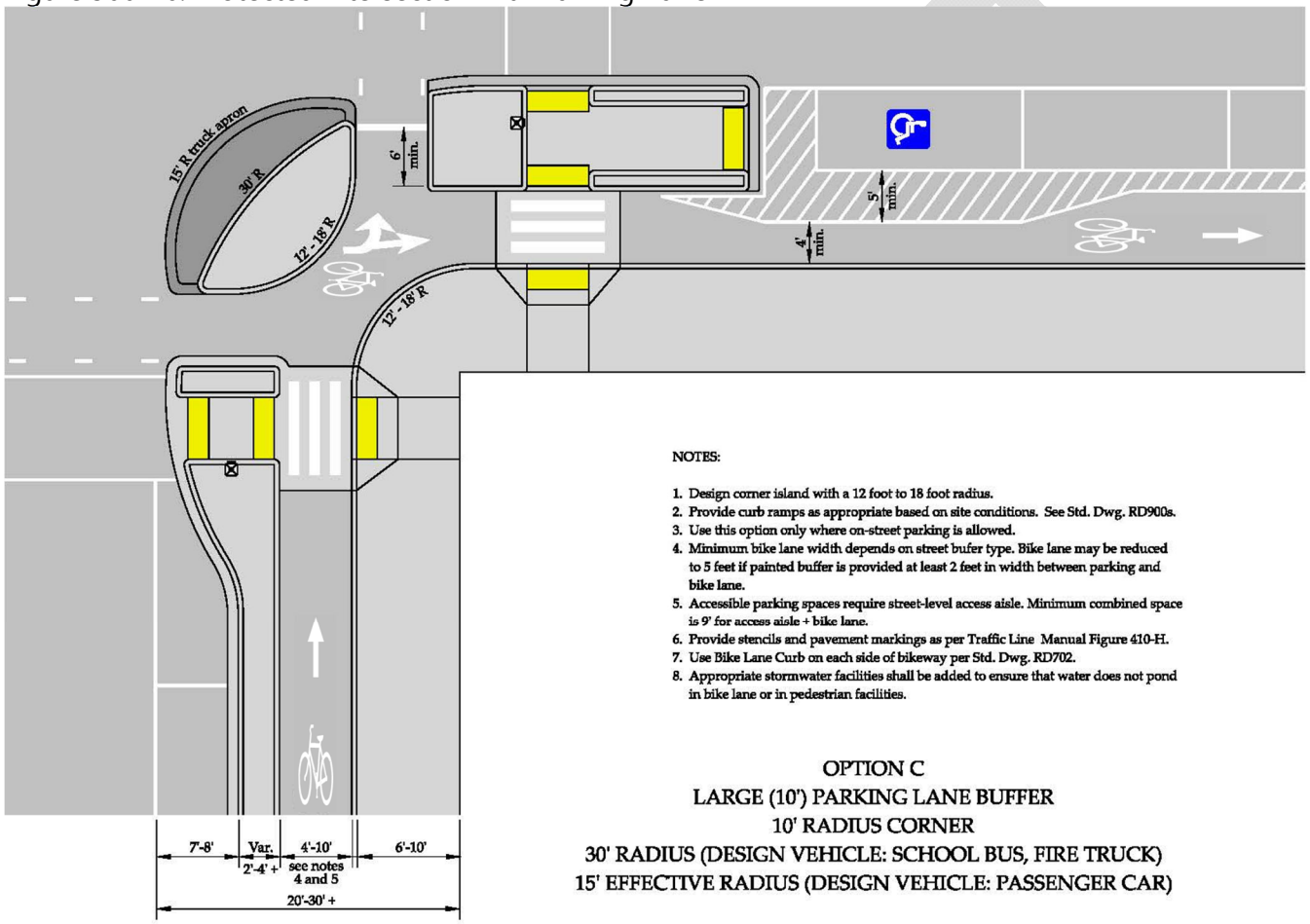
	BIKE LANE ALIGNMENT	DEFLECTION APPROACHING INTERSECTION	CORNER ISLAND
DESIGN SPEED	14-16 MPH	10-12 MPH	8-10 MPH
CURVE RADIUS	36-47 FT	18-27 FT	12-18 FT

3. Provide curb ramps as appropriate based on site conditions. See Std. Dwg. RD900s.
4. Provide stencils and pavement markings as per Traffic Line Manual Figure 410-H.
5. Use this option where approaching street buffer is not curbed.
6. Transition to refuge island by begining bend-out deflection with length necessary to create 7-foot refuge island.
7. Use Bike Lane Curb on each side of bikeway per Std. Dwg. RD702.
8. Appropriate stormwater facilities shall be added to ensure that water does not pond in bike lane or in pedestrian facilities.

OPTION B
4' STREET BUFFER, CURB/GUTTER, 2' SHOULDER
ON-STREET BIKE LANE ON SIDE STREET
36'-47' INSIDE CURB RADIUS
60' OUTSIDE CURB RADIUS (DESIGN VEHICLE: WB-67 INTERSTATE TRUCK)
30' EFFECTIVE RADIUS TRUCK APRON (DESIGN VEHICLE: SCHOOL BUS, FIRE TRUCK)

953.3.3 Protected Intersection Layout with On-Street Parking

Figure 900-76: Protected Intersection with Parking Buffer



NOTES:

1. Design corner island with a 12 foot to 18 foot radius.
2. Provide curb ramps as appropriate based on site conditions. See Std. Dwg. RD900s.
3. Use this option only where on-street parking is allowed.
4. Minimum bike lane width depends on street bufer type. Bike lane may be reduced to 5 feet if painted buffer is provided at least 2 feet in width between parking and bike lane.
5. Accessible parking spaces require street-level access aisle. Minimum combined space is 9' for access aisle + bike lane.
6. Provide stencils and pavement markings as per Traffic Line Manual Figure 410-H.
7. Use Bike Lane Curb on each side of bikeway per Std. Dwg. RD702.
8. Appropriate stormwater facilities shall be added to ensure that water does not pond in bike lane or in pedestrian facilities.

OPTION C
LARGE (10') PARKING LANE BUFFER
10' RADIUS CORNER
30' RADIUS (DESIGN VEHICLE: SCHOOL BUS, FIRE TRUCK)
15' EFFECTIVE RADIUS (DESIGN VEHICLE: PASSENGER CAR)

Section 954 Conflicts at Turn Lanes

Bicycle lanes shall not be placed to the right of a right-turn only lane or to the left of a left-turn only lane, unless conflicting movements are mitigated. Mitigations include traffic signal control, geometric alignment, or grade-separation. Solutions with geometric alignment are discussed in Section 954.1.

954.1 Freeway-style Ramp Crossings

Conflicts between motor vehicles, pedestrians and bicyclists often occur at interchange areas due to the high volume of vehicle turns. To mitigate potential conflicts, the design of intersections serving freeway entrance and exit ramps should keep turning speeds slow and maximize visibility between bicyclists and motorists. Turning speeds are slowest at right-angle intersections and where the corner radius is minimized. The route of the bicyclist should be visible to the motorist. Skewed approaches also increase the crossing distance. Free-flow ramps should be avoided. Where they exist, physical features should be used to enhance sight lines and encourage slowing and yielding behaviors. Physical features may include minimized corner radius or truck aprons. Signs may be considered to further enforce the yield condition for unprotected pedestrian and bicycle crossings. Consider grade separation or signalization when there is either two-lane right or left turn lanes or where free flow ramps are utilized. ~~Other interchange design principles for pedestrians and bicyclists are discussed in detail in Appendix L, pages 6-20 to 6-25.~~

Pedestrian and bicycle traffic must be accommodated through interchange areas to avoid freeways creating gaps and barriers in the local walking/biking network.

While bike lanes and sidewalks are not appropriate on limited access freeways, they are common on urban parkways, which often have freeway-style designs such as merging lanes and exit ramps rather than simple intersections. Traffic entering or exiting a roadway at high speeds creates difficulties for bicyclists and pedestrians. The following designs help alleviate these difficulties.

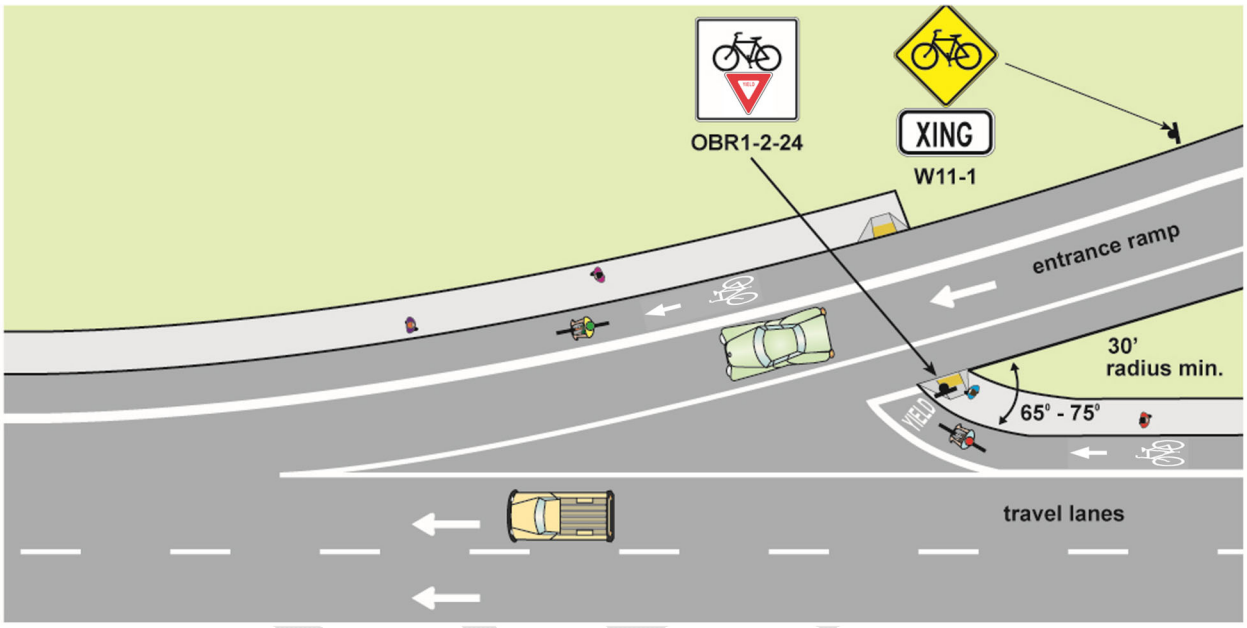
954.1.1 Right Lane Merge

It is difficult for cyclists and pedestrians to traverse the undefined area created by right-lane merge movements, because the acute angle of approach reduces visibility, motor vehicles are accelerating to merge into traffic and the speed differential between cyclists and motorists is high.

DRAFT

The design should guide cyclists and pedestrians in a manner that provides: a short distance across the ramp at close to a right angle; improved sight distance in an area where traffic speeds are slower than further downstream; and a crossing in an area where drivers' attention is not entirely focused on merging with traffic.

Figure 900-77~~24~~: Bicycle Lane across Merge Area

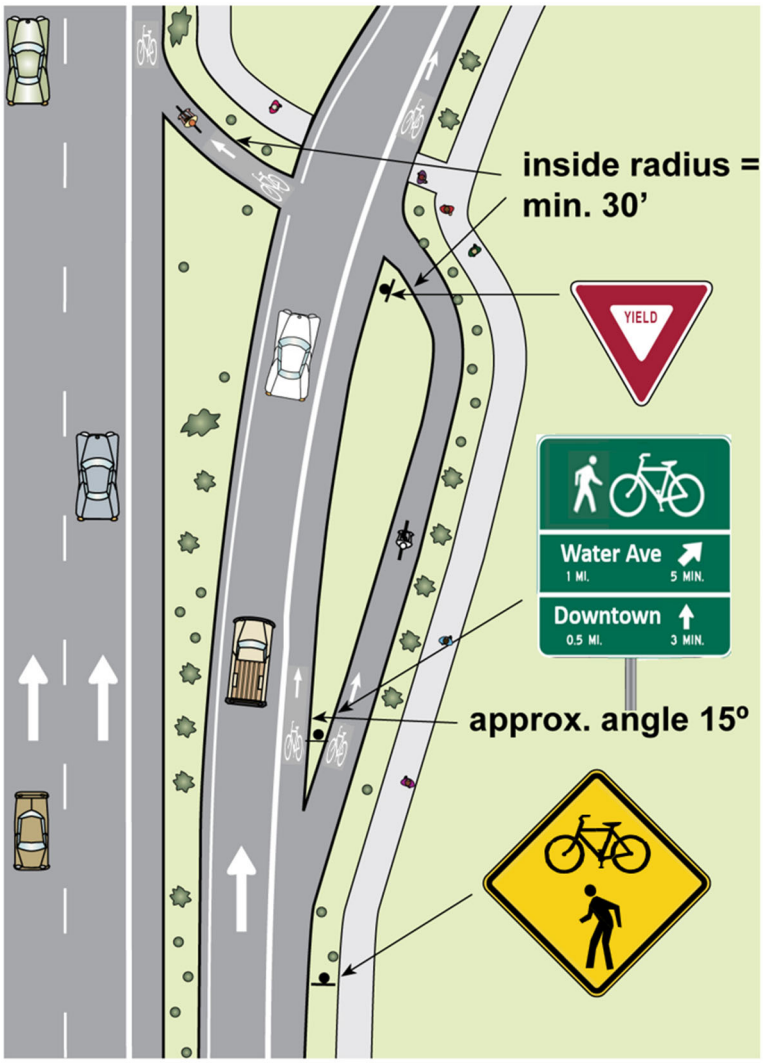


954.1.2 Exit Ramps

Exit ramps present difficulties for bicyclists and pedestrians because motor vehicles exit at fairly high speeds, the acute angle reduces visibility; and exiting drivers who don't use their turn signal confuse pedestrians and cyclists seeking a gap in traffic.

The design should guide cyclists and pedestrians in a manner that provides: a short distance across the ramp, at close to a right angle, improved sight distance in an area where traffic speeds are slower than further upstream; and a crossing in an area where the driver's attention is not distracted by other motor vehicles.

Figure 900-78~~25~~: Bicycle Lane across Exiting Lane



Section 955 Bikeway Street Crossings

[Placeholder for future content]

955.1 Side-street Bike Route Crossings

[Placeholder for future content]

955.2 Shared Use Paths Crossing Minor Streets

In most cases, at-grade crossings of minor streets are acceptable. As traffic volumes on the cross-street increase, so does the need for special treatments, such as a median island or a signal.

The assignment of right of way must be consistent with accepted traffic engineering principles: if the number of anticipated path users is greater than the traffic on the cross-street, the latter should be required to yield or stop to path users. Only when the path crosses a street with higher traffic volumes should path users be required to yield to or stop for traffic on the cross-street. Path users should never be required to yield or stop to traffic in driveways.

Figure 900-79: Path Crossing a Minor Street with Priority to Vehicles



Requiring path users to stop or yield to traffic on minor streets and driveways creates a potential for conflicts and collisions, for the following reasons:

Wheeled path users (cyclists, skaters etc.) who want to maintain their momentum, will quickly learn to ignore stop or yield signs at minor street or driveway intersections with little cross traffic. Then when a stop or yield sign is placed appropriately at a more important street crossing (with more traffic), cyclists, skaters etc. often ignore it too, and proceed into traffic without stopping or yielding.

This behavior carries over onto other streets, where cyclists have learned to ignore stop signs. Those who do stop at every driveway or minor street intersection cannot take advantage of the momentum naturally generated by cycling or skating.

~~955.2~~955.3 Off-Highway ~~Trail~~Path Network Crossings

Many recreational shared use paths cross the state highway system as part of a trail network. Bicyclists often use these shared use paths as transportation links. Highways that cross these

pathways should have access to the trail network. If a highway has a separate grade crossing with a pathway, provide a short path connection from the pedestrian and bicycle facilities along the highway to the pathway. ~~See Appendix L, pages 7-13 through 7-16 for at-grade path crossings. See Appendix L, pages 7-13 through 7-16 for design guidance on under crossings and over crossings.~~

Rails-to-Trails Crossings

Unlike trails built on a new alignment, rails-to-trail conversions follow the alignment of the old railbed. This can result in many midblock crossings, or crossings too close to intersections. Since the alignment cannot be changed, extra care and attention must be given to ensure drivers and path users are aware of the conflicts, and to provide the best-designed crossing possible.

Figure 900-80: Path fully separated with undercrossing

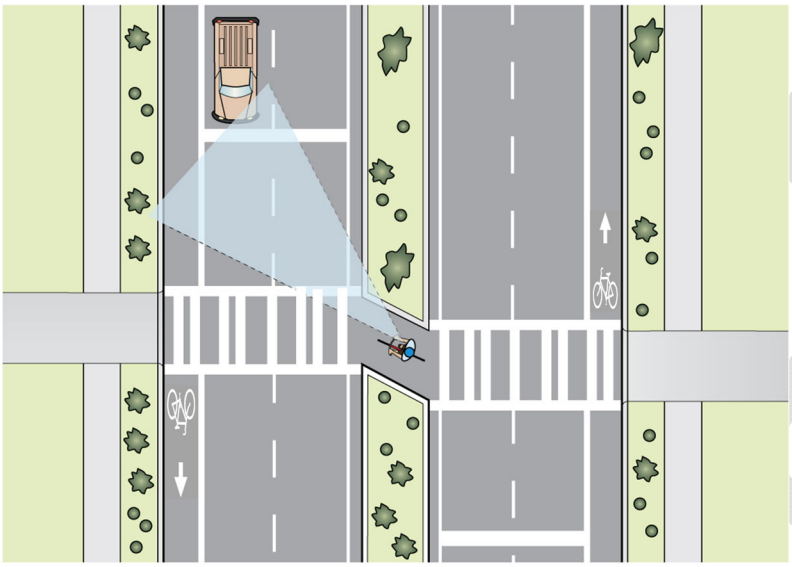


955.4 Shared Use Paths Crossing Major Streets

At crossings of busy roads, grade separation should be considered as most path users expect continued separation from traffic. Where grade separation structures cannot be justified, signalization or other measures should be considered to reduce conflicts. Good sight lines must

be provided so vehicle drivers can see approaching path users. Most techniques for pedestrian crossings are applicable to path crossings also. For example, a traffic signal, a median island, advance stop lines on multi-lane roadways, etc.

Figure 900-81: Midblock Crossing of Shared Use Path Across Thoroughfare

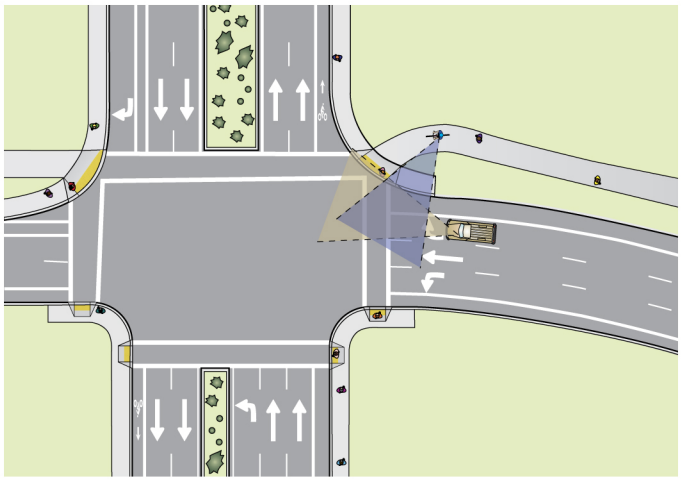


Where a path crosses a roadway at an intersection, improvements to the alignment should be made to increase the visibility of approaching path users. One method is to curve the path, so that it is not parallel to the adjacent roadway and the approach is a closer to a right angle. This improves visibility and forces cyclists to slow down.

The greatest conflicts occur where paths cross freeway ramps. Motorists using these ramps are typically not expecting bicyclists and pedestrians at these locations.

DRAFT

Figure 900-82: Shared Use Path Approaching Intersection at an Angle



At all path/roadway intersections, illumination should be provided so path users and vehicle drivers can see each other as they approach the conflict area. This is especially critical on paths that are otherwise unlit.

When traffic volumes are too high for path users to find acceptable gaps, even with a median island, signalization should be considered. The techniques in Chapter 5 can be used for path crossings.

~~955.3~~955.5 Grade-Separated Crossings

Though grade-separation appears to offer greater safety, the excessive added travel distance and grade change often discourages pedestrians who want to take a more direct route. A grade separated crossing must offer obvious advantages over an at-grade crossing to ensure that they will be used and justify the significant additional cost.

A structure that is unused because it is inconvenient or feels insecure creates a situation whereby pedestrians ~~are at greater risk when they~~may attempt to cross the road at-grade; drivers don't expect pedestrians to be crossing the street if they see an overcrossing.

The additional distance is substantial: 17.5 feet of clearance is required over some highways; the added depth of the structure results in a 20-foot high bridge. ADA requires ramps to not exceed a 5 percent grade. Twenty feet of rise at 5 percent requires a 400-foot ramp in level terrain, for a total additional distance of 800 feet for both sides, approximately equal to two city blocks of out-of-direction travel. Higher clearance may be required over railroad tracks. This can be mitigated with stairs with a bike channel, or a series of ramps and landing with a level landing for every 2.5 feet in rise. Overcrossings are more successful where the roadway to be crossed is sunken.

Under crossings introduce two other issues that must be addressed: security and drainage. Security can be addressed by ensuring generous dimensions, good visibility and lighting. Drainage often requires a sump pump to ensure year-round operation. Under crossings are more successful where the roadway to be crossed is elevated. In both cases the pedestrian crossing is level. Undercrossing should be at least 10 feet high and 14 feet wide.

When the decision has been made to separate a path from the roadway with a structure, the two choices are over and undercrossings. In some instances, natural terrain makes the choice obvious:

If the roadway is lower than the path, an overcrossing is the obvious choice;

If the roadway is higher than the path, the solution is an undercrossing.

When they are both at the same level, the decision is based on weighing a variety of factors. There are advantages and disadvantages to both overcrossings and undercrossings.

955.5.1 Undercrossings

Advantages: They provide an opportunity to reduce approach grades, as the required 10 feet clearance is less than the clearance required for crossing over a roadway. They are often less expensive to build. Sometimes slightly elevating the roadway (3-4 feet) is enough to make an undercrossing attractive.

DRAFT

Figure 900-83: Undercrossing with Good Sight Lines

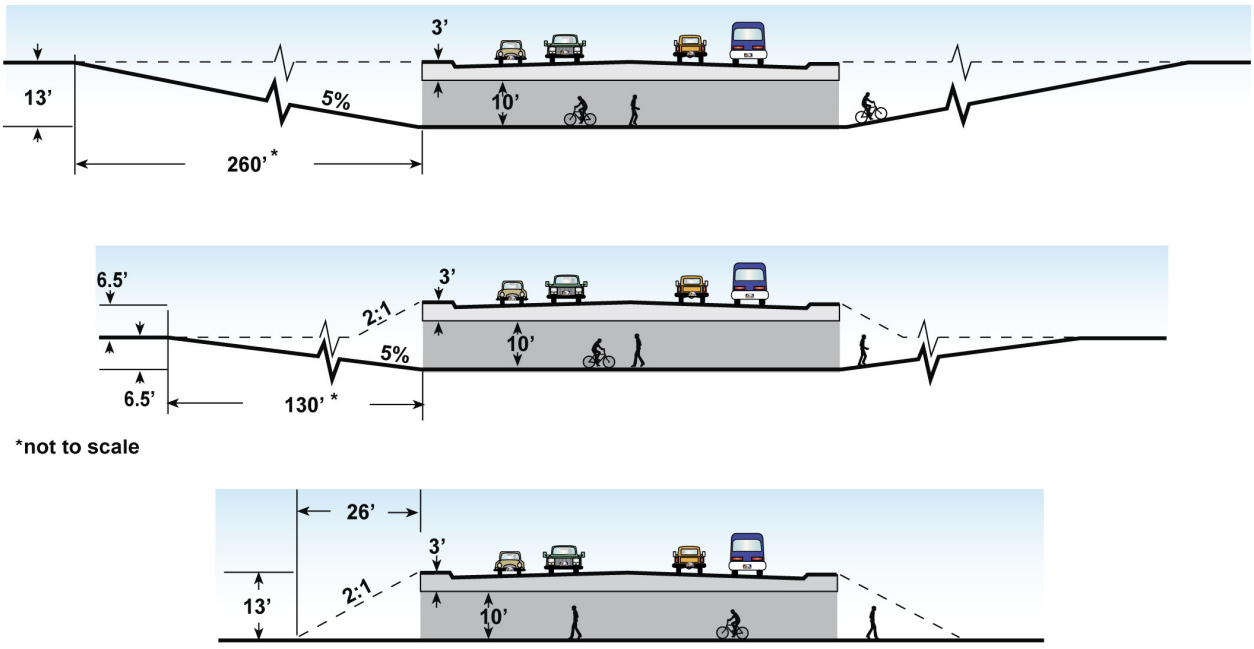


Disadvantages: They present security problems, due to reduced visibility. An open, well-lighted structure can cost as much as an overcrossing.

They may require drainage if the sag point is lower than the water table.

Undercrossings should be 14 feet wide or more. The standard overhead clearance of under-crossings is 10 feet; an 8-foot minimum may be allowable with good horizontal and vertical clearance, so users approaching the structure can see through to the other end. Undercrossings should be visually open for users' personal security and comfort. Illumination is needed in areas of poor visibility, when the undercrossing is long and for nighttime comfort.

Figure 900-84: Undercrossing Configurations



955.5.2 Overcrossings

Advantages: They are more open and present fewer security problems.

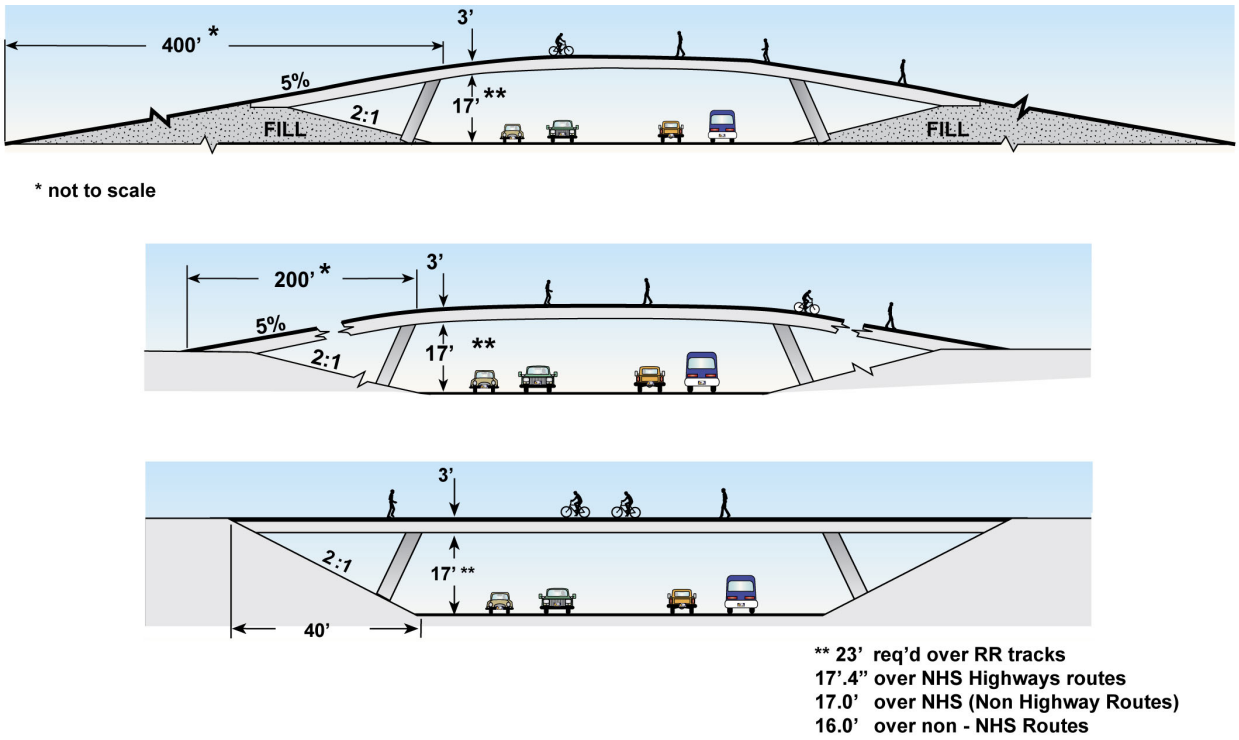
Disadvantages: They require longer approaches to achieve the required clearance over roadways. The total rise can be 20 feet with an additional structural depth of 3 feet. At 5%, this requires a 400-foot approach ramp at each end, for a total of 800 feet. This can be lessened if the road is built in a cut section.

~~955.4 90091Crossbikes~~

~~[Placeholder for future content]~~

DRAFT

Figure 900-85: Overcrossing Configurations



955.5.3 Stairways

Where a connection is needed to a destination or another path at a different elevation, a stairway can be used where the terrain is too steep for a path. A grooved trough can be provided so bicyclists can easily push their bicycles up or down.

Note that stairways are usually provided as a shortcut and do not provide the level of accessibility needed for persons with disabilities. In addition to the stairs, destinations need to be accessible along a flatter route, even if it is longer and more circuitous. The presence of a longer route should not be used as a reason to not provide stairs with bicycle access where beneficial and practicable.

Section 960 Shared Use Path Design

~~Shared~~Originally called "bike paths," then "multi-use paths," shared use paths are facilities for people to walk, jog, run, stroll, skate, bike, and use any of various mobility devices while being physically separated from a roadway. When a pathway is intended to serve bicycle travel together with pedestrian travel, it is a shared use path. The terms "shared-use" and "multi-use"

are interchangeable. The terms "trail", "path", and "greenway" are often used interchangeably to refer to shared use paths, notwithstanding the term "trail" having other design connotations, which are different from shared use paths. See Section 850 for trail design. Shared-use path planning and design must take into account the various skills and characteristics of these different users. Many people who are inexperienced at riding a bicycle or other wheeled device don't want to ride in traffic and may not ride on streets until they gain experience and confidence. A separated path provides a learning ground for bicyclists and users of other wheeled devices and can attract people who prefer a more aesthetic experience.

Shared use paths serve two purposes; one is ~~providing~~fulfilling a basic transportation need to get to destinations and the second is providing a place for recreational activity. Some shared use paths may include accommodation of additional users, such as equestrians. (See Section 855).

Figure 900-86: Paths Accommodate Many Users



Well planned and designed paths can provide access and mobility to pedestrians and bicyclists in areas where the roads don't serve their needs. They can have their own alignment along streams, canals, utility corridors, abandoned or active railroads, and greenways. Many serve as linear parks. Paths can serve both utilitarian and recreational cyclists.

The key components to successful paths include:

- Continuous separation from traffic, by locating paths along a river or a greenbelt such as a rail-to-trail conversion, with few street or driveway crossings; however, this must be balanced with:
- Frequent connections to land-uses, such as residential areas, shopping, schools and other destinations.

- Security: proximity to housing and businesses increases visibility (despite fears of some property owners, paths do not attract crime into adjacent neighborhoods); illumination helps provide a sense of security at night.
- Scenic qualities, offering an aesthetic experience that attracts cyclists and pedestrians;
- Well-designed street crossings, with measures such as signals or median refuge islands (paths directly adjacent to roadways are not recommended, as they tend to have many conflict points);
- Shorter trip lengths than the road network, with connections between dead-end streets or cul-de-sacs, or as short-cuts through open spaces;
- Good geometric design, by providing adequate width and grades, and avoiding problems such as poor drainage, blind corners and steep slopes;
- Good pavement design, including subgrade and base preparation, to ensure path longevity, good surface conditions and to reduce maintenance cost; and
- Proper maintenance: regular sweeping and repairs can prevent paths from falling into disrepair, with the subsequent increased liability and decreased use.

A shared use path is not a sidewalk. In some locations, a shared use path exists while a sidewalk or bike lane also exists. However, it is more common that the shared use path takes the place for both the pedestrian facility and the bicycle facility. When pedestrians and bicyclists share a sidewalk, appropriate multi-use or shared path guidelines are employed for the design. Shared use paths are designed to be fully accessible for all users for the entire width of the walkway.

Attributes of shared use paths:

- Are physically separated from motor vehicle traffic by an open space or barrier.
- Typically, do not physically separate the different user modes with a detectable edge.
- May include signs or markings to indicate which side of the path is for pedestrians versus bicyclists.
- Have the entire space equally available to all users.
- Are typically designed for two-way travel. Users can intermingle in opposing directions of movement.
- Have all-weather prepared surfaces to meet pedestrian accessibility route requirements.

960.1 Shared Use Path Configurations

Figure 900-87~~Figure 900-92~~ illustrates various shared use path configurations as well as a similar configuration that is a separated bike lane, rather than a shared use path.

The top left and top middle illustrations are wide sidewalks that are shared with bicycle traffic. Where a bicycle lane joins a sidewalk, see Section 981.

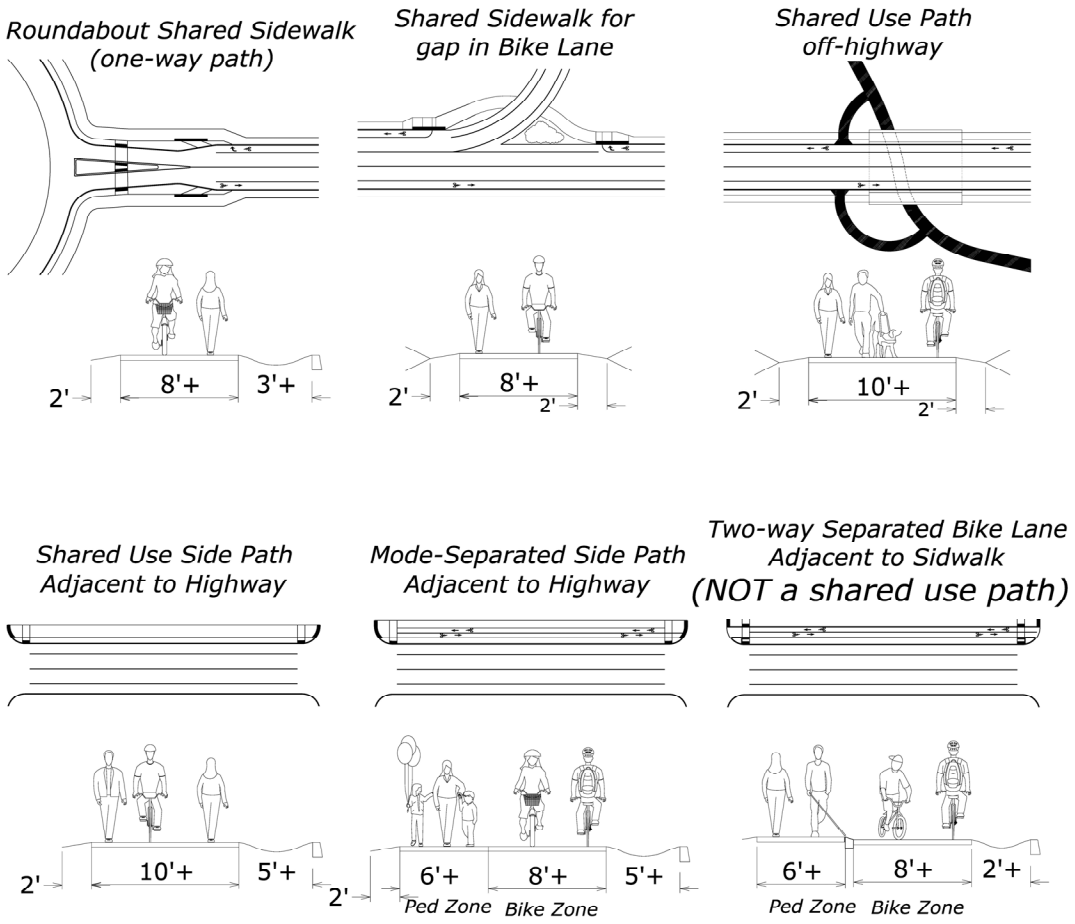
The bottom row illustrates three scenarios with facilities within the highway right-of-way where pedestrians and bicyclists are physically separated from the travel way realm. Side paths are shared use paths that are parallel and adjacent to a road. Side path design is described in Section 970. Mode-separated side paths are described in Section 971. Two-way separated bike lanes adjacent to sidewalks are not shared use paths, though the operations are similar. They are also described in Section 971. Considerations for two-way bicycle facilities (side paths and separated bike lanes) are given in Section ~~948~~972.

The top right illustration is a shared use path that is apart from a highway. It may include connections to a highway, or it may be entirely on an independent alignment. Where a shared use path is on an independent alignment that may or may not be on public right-of-way, well planned and designed shared use paths can provide access and mobility to pedestrians and bicyclists in areas where the roads don't serve their needs. They can have their own alignment along streams, canals, utility corridors, abandoned or active railroads, and greenways. Many serve as linear parks. Shared use paths can serve both utilitarian and recreational cyclists.

Sections 961 through 968 have design information that apply to shared use paths on independent alignments as well as side paths. Section 921.2 has design information for restricting motor vehicle encroachment on a path with bollards and design at rail crossings. ~~See Chapter 7 of Appendix L for additional information. In addition to design requirements in this manual, consider guidance in~~See the AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities~~.~~ for additional information.

DRAFT

Figure 900-87: Types of Shared Use Path

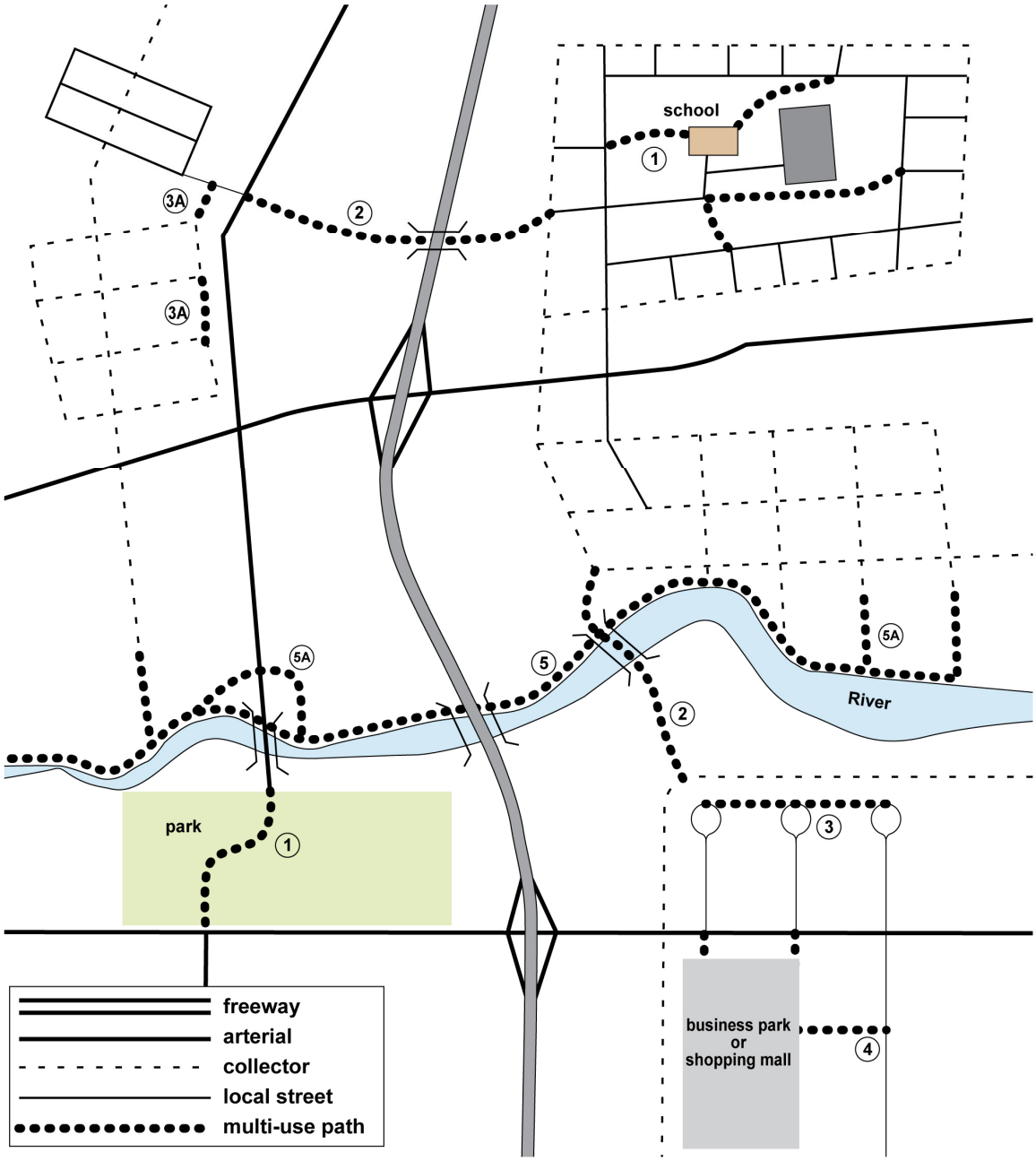


960.2 Shared Use Path Siting Considerations

Figure 900-88~~Figure 900-93~~ illustrates examples of five types of locations where shared use paths are appropriate in urban settings:

1. As a short cut though from the street network to a park or school
2. To bridge a connection where the bicycle and pedestrian network is otherwise disconnected, such as rivers or freeways
3. To connect cul-de-sacs or other discontinued streets
4. To provide access to large commercial land uses from back roads
5. Along rivers, and other corridors not served by streets, with (5A) frequent connections to the street system.

Figure 900-88: Shared Use Path Siting Considerations



To ensure success, the following considerations must be addressed at the planning, design, construction and maintenances phases of path projects:

Crossings

The number of at-grade crossings with streets or driveways should be limited; street crossings are one of the most important path design elements. At grade street crossings should be visible

to drivers, with proper traffic control for path users and motorists. Where good quality street crossings cannot be obtained, crossings should be grade separated.

Path Access

Limiting crossings must be balanced with providing access. To serve users well, a path must have frequent and convenient access to the street network. Access points that are spaced too far apart will require users to travel out of direction to access or leave the path. The path should terminate where it is easily accessible to and from the street system, e.g. at a controlled intersection or at the end of a dead-end street. Terminating a path midblock on a busy thoroughfare, or at a busy intersection, is generally not recommended; if there is no alternative, a well-designed connection and crossing must be provided. Guide signs should be used to direct users to and from the path and to provide orientation and destination information on the path.

Security

Shared-use paths in secluded areas should ensure personal security. Illumination and clear sight lines improve visibility and comfort. Location markers, mileage posts and directional signing help users know where they are. Frequent accesses improve response time by emergency providers.

Maintenance

Shared-use paths require special trips for inspection, sweeping and repairs. They must be built to a standard high enough that allows heavy maintenance equipment to use the path without deterioration. Building to a high standard also decreases long-term maintenance needs and improves user comfort and safety.

Design Life

Paths should be built to a standard that accommodates all users, from commuters to recreationists, with minimal conflicts. Building a narrow path to save money can lead to problems if the path is popular. If usage is expected to be low, reconsider the need for a path. Pavement design is another important standard: even though paths do not get driven on by heavy motor vehicles, they do experience deterioration due to weather and aging. A path should last as many years as a residential street before needing maintenance or repaving.

Section 961 Path Width

Shared use paths outside a highway are not divided into zones as are sidewalks and bikeways. For paths along a highway, the path width substitutes for the sum of the pedestrian zone and the bike lane zone. The footprint of a path includes shoulder/shy distance as discussed in Section 963. The standard path width is the paved portion of the path, and typically does not include the shoulder/shy distance. ~~10 feet is the minimum standard width for a shared-use~~

~~**path**; *they should be at least 12 feet wide or more in areas with high use.* gives recommended shared use path widths based on anticipated volume of users. The minimum width for a path, through a design exception, is 8 feet; only to be used at pinch points or where long-term usage is expected to be low.~~

10 feet is the minimum standard width for a shared-use path; *they should be at least 12 feet wide or more in areas with high use*. Faster-moving bicyclists require greater width than pedestrians; optimum width should be based on the relative use by these two modes. 12-feet also allows for greater passing opportunities. High use by skaters may also require greater width. Table 900-15~~Table 900-16~~ gives recommended shared use path widths based on anticipated volume of users.

Table 900-15~~16Table -~~: Recommended Shared Use Path Widths

Shared Use Path Peak Hour Volume	Recommended Width (feet)
Less than 50	8*
50 to 150	8 to 10*
150 to 300	10 to 12
300 to 500	12 to 15
500 to 600	16 to 20
Over 600	Over 20

~~*Design Exception required where width is less than 10 feet.~~

*Design Exceptions are required for path widths less than 10-feet or shoulder/shy distance less than 2 feet~~. An ADA Exception is required where a path grade is steeper than 5 percent for paths that are not on~~..

961.1 Path Clear Width

Keep the ~~same alignments with an adjacent roadway.~~

~~The~~ entire width of a shared use path ~~shall be~~ clear of obstructions to the extent feasible. Additionally, sidewalks that include bicycle traffic mixed with pedestrian traffic should have the sidewalk clear width to allow for a minimum width ~~multi-use pathway condition. Clear widths less than 6 feet require a design exception. In locations where bicycle riding on the sidewalk is prohibited by statute, appropriate signage is necessary to inform bicyclists.~~shared-use pathway condition..

Provide a minimum clear width ~~in the range between 10~~of 4.5 feet ~~– 12 feet~~ at pinch points on shared use paths. *10 feet is the standard width for a two-way shared-use path; they should be 12 feet wide or more in areas with high use.* Where bollards, signal pushbuttons, or other objects are

provided – the clear width may be reduced at individual points as long as the clear width is at least 4.5 feet, and the entire path width is clear on either side of the pinch point.

961.2 Narrow Segments of Shared Use Path

Although one-way paths may be intended for one direction of bicycle travel, they will often be used as two-way facilities. All paths operate as two-way facilities by pedestrians. When selecting a shared use path for one-way bicycle travel, they should be at least 8 feet wide and designed and signed to ensure one-way operation by bicyclists. One-way paths are primarily used for short connections to a roadway. **Provide 8 feet of ~~clear~~ width on ~~shared sidewalk~~ connection paths~~.~~ intended for one-way bicycle travel shared with pedestrians.** Examples of paths that are intended to operate as one-way facilities for bicycles include roundabouts and other shared sidewalk connections.

When the available width is constrained over a distance beyond individual pinch points ~~occur~~ or where long term usage is expected to be low, 8 feet is the minimum ~~clear~~ width for two-way shared use paths and requires a design exception.

At roundabout approaches, bike lanes should ramp up to the sidewalk. Typically, shared sidewalk paths around roundabouts shall be at least 8-feet wide. The shared sidewalks operate as shared use paths, though bicycle travel is typically intended to be one-way while travel for pedestrians is intended to be two-way. In some cases, the shared sidewalk path shall be at least 10 feet wide. Where any of the roundabout crosswalks is closed, the pathway does not serve one-way bicycle operation because cyclists who use the path must travel clockwise to bypass the closed crosswalk. Where the circulatory roadway connects to another shared use path, the width of the roundabout path should be consistent with the shared use path being tied into. Where bike lanes connect into a roundabout path, provide a bike ramp to allow bicyclists to merge from the bike lane onto the shared use path 165 feet in advance of the yield line to the circulatory roadway of a roundabout. See Section 981 for bike ramp design.

961.3 High Volume Paths

When mode separation is desired between pedestrians and bicyclists, additional width is required. ***Provide a ~~clear~~ width between 14 feet and 20 feet for mode separated shared use paths.*** *It is preferable to provide at least 16 feet of clear width comprising of two 5-foot bike lanes and a 6-foot walking area (pedestrian zone). Provide 18 or 20 feet in areas of very high use.*

While mode separation is provided typically with striping, low vision and blind pedestrians will need additional tactile cues or TWSI installed to guide them to the intended area along the path. ~~The~~Consult the Senior ADA Standards Engineer for these types of treatments along with the Traffic Unit for pavement markings to ensure a consistent message is designed. Where the

DRAFT

path is not physically divided between mores, the entire width of the facility must still meet ADA cross slope and running slope (grade) requirements. Expect pedestrians to cross over and meander over the entire area, mode separation is best achieved with some grade separation via curb (refer to Section 944).

With very high use by both pedestrians and bicyclists, the two modes can be separated with striping, to provide two one-way bike lanes next to a single walking area. For separation to work, adequate width for each mode must be provided. The minimum total width is 16 feet: two 5-foot bike lanes and a 6-foot walking area. 18 or 20 feet are needed in areas of very high use; the areas dedicated to walking and bicycling can vary based on their respective anticipated use. The pedestrian portion of the path should be closer to the vistas, such as next to a river, as pedestrians are more likely to linger, stop and admire views.

With exceptionally high use by both pedestrians and bicyclists, totally separate facilities should be considered: a path for cyclists and another path for pedestrians, with signing and tactile cues to indicate proper use.

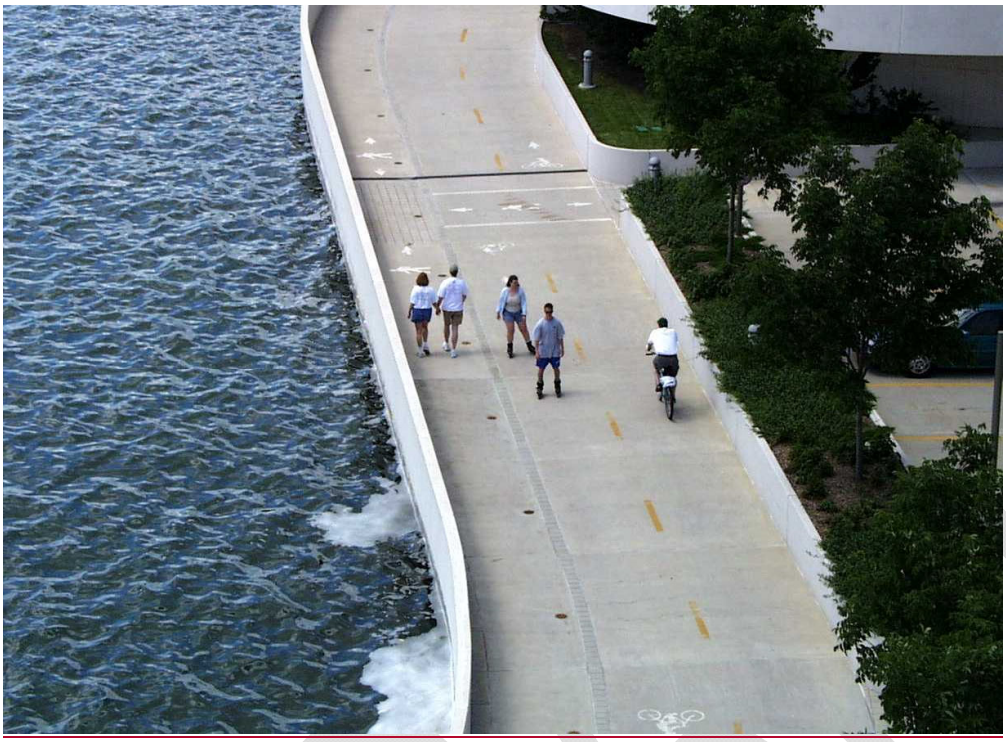
~~90095At roundabout approaches, bike lanes should ramp up to the sidewalk. The shared sidewalks operate as shared use paths, though bicycle travel is intended to be one-way while travel for pedestrians is intended to be two-way. Widen the sidewalk to 10 feet, minimum 8 feet. **Provide a bike ramp to allow bicyclists to merge from the bike lane onto the shared use path 165 feet in advance of the yield line to the circulatory roadway of a roundabout.** See for bike ramp design.~~

Figure 900-89: Wide Path Striped to Separate Modes



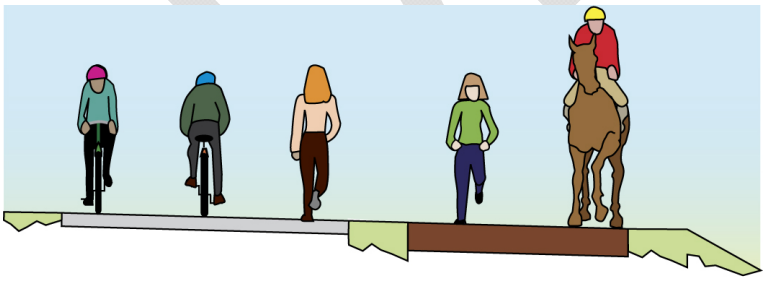
DRAFT

Figure 900-90: Path Striped to Separate Users



A well-planned and designed path, connecting land uses conveniently, will attract many users; if this can be anticipated, the path should be 12 feet or greater. A separate soft-surface jogger or equestrian path may be constructed with bark mulch adjacent to the paved path. A stable gravel shoulder is still required along the path edge to keep the surface from breaking up. Placing soft-surface jogger or equestrian path adjacent to the path also results in bark mulch encroaching onto the paved portion of the path.

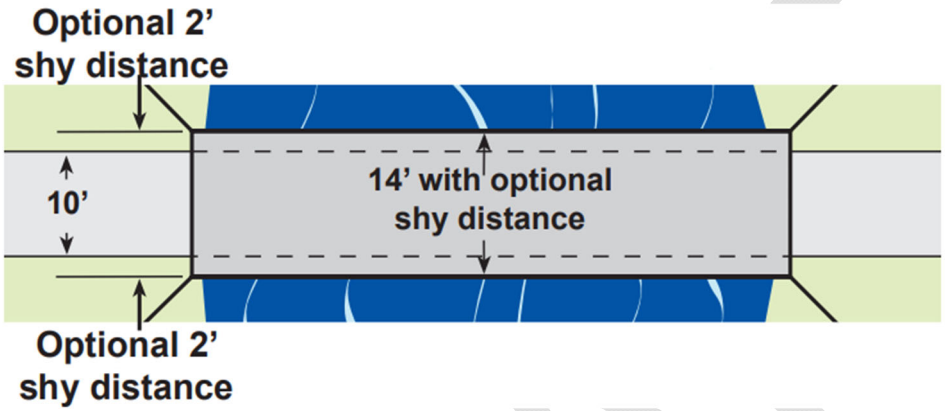
Figure 900-91: Paved Path with Separate Soft Surface Jogging and Equestrian Trail



961.4 Structures

The width of a shared-use path bridge is normally the same as the approach paved path. Where feasible, a 2-foot shy distance on both sides may be added for additional comfort. For example, a 14-foot wide structure for a 10-foot wide path.

Figure 900-92: 14-foot wide bridge serves 10-foot wide path



If the costs of a wider bridge are prohibitive, yet extra width is needed because it is anticipated that pedestrians will want to stop and linger to admire the view, viewpoints can be added by widening the bridge at scenic view points.

Figure 900-93: Bridge widened at viewpoint

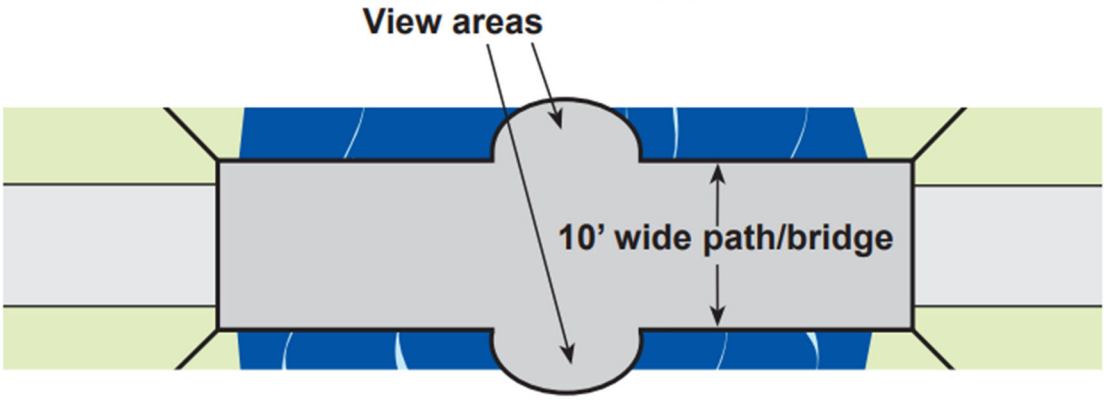
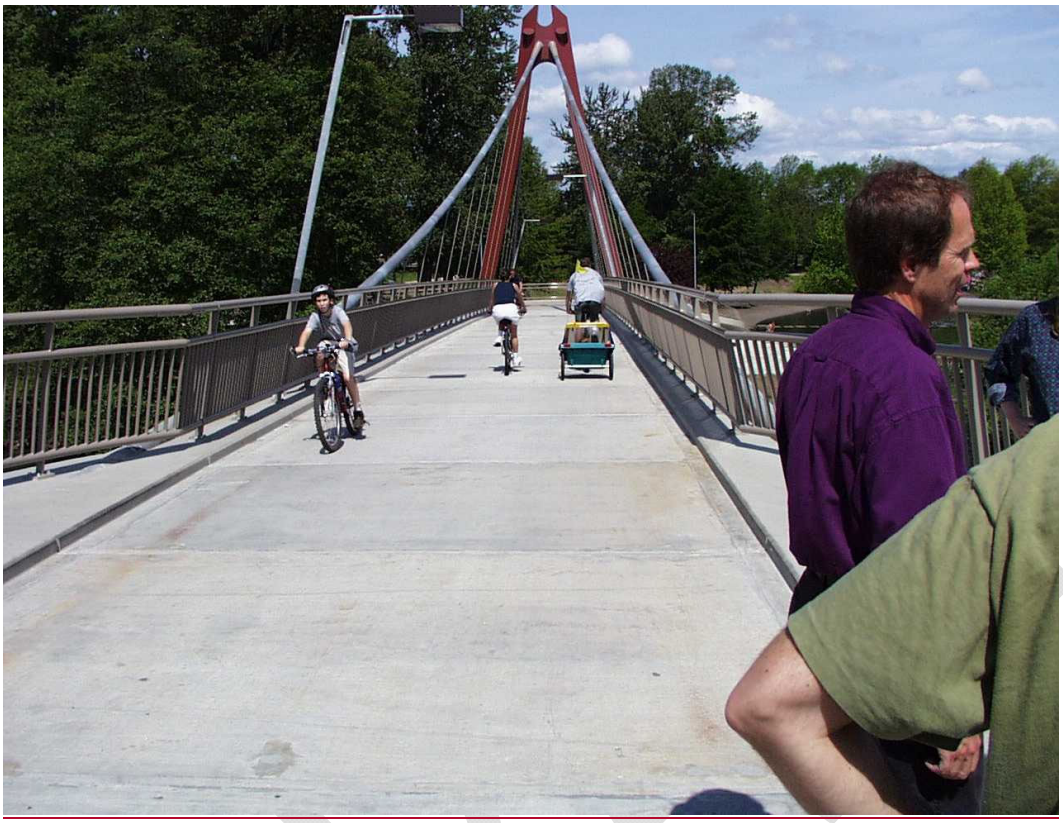


Figure 900-94: View point enables viewing without impeding traffic



Section 962 Path Users and Operation

~~Though~~Design controls are based on different path users since shared-use paths are intended for many users.

For sight distance and horizontal alignment, the bicycle is the appropriate design vehicle because of its higher travel speeds. The design speed for pathway segments shall be assigned by the ODOT Region Roadway Manager. See Section 924.1. Design speeds for shared use paths impact ~~other~~ design elements including sight distance and horizontal and vertical curves.

Pedestrians with physical disabilities are the critical design users for path grade (vertical alignment), curb ramps and other elements at street crossings.

For trails that accommodate horses, consult the Equestrian Design Guidebook for Trails, Trailheads and Campgrounds.

Figure 900-95: Paths are Used by Many Non-Motorized Modes



962.1 Curb Ramps on Shared Use Paths

Provide curb ramps or other sloped connections where the path interfaces a public street or vehicle way that is built like a street. A detectable warning surface is required wherever a path intersects a public street with vehicular travel (See RD904). A detectable guide strip is installed as shown on RD909 where an on-road bike lane merges with an off-street path. See Section 980 for bike ramps geometrics serving only bicycle travel. Where a curb ramp serves both pedestrians and bicyclists, curb ramp geometrics are provided in Section 815.

The following accessibility requirements apply to curb ramps and sloped connections for shared use paths. Figure 900-96~~Figure 900-99~~ illustrates how these requirements apply to four specific scenarios:

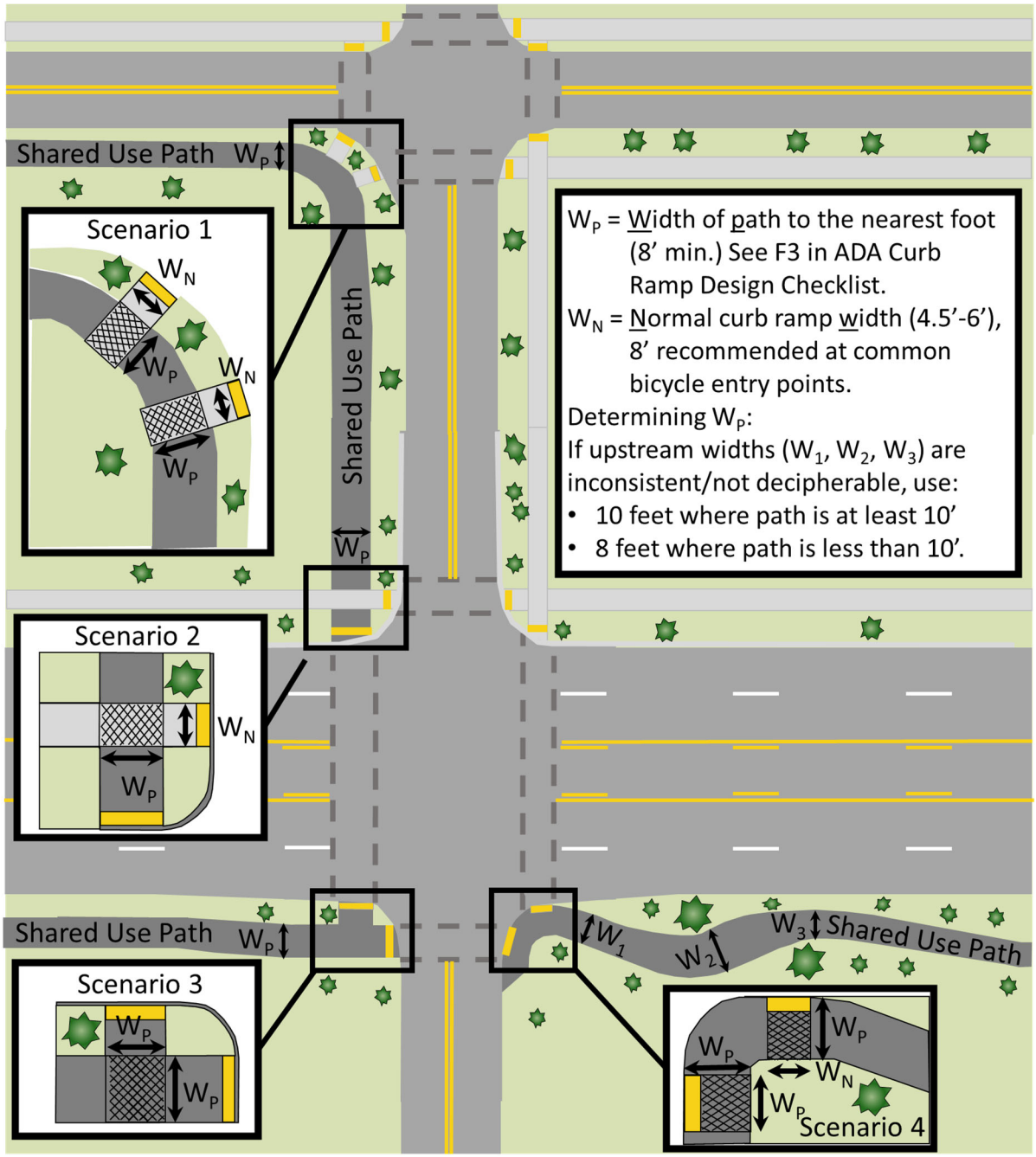
- Provide a separate curb ramp or sloped connection for each crosswalk. See Criteria A in the Curb Ramp Checklist.
- Design the width of the curb ramp serving the continuation of the shared use path equal in width to the shared use path (W_P) approaching the crosswalk. Use the nominal width

for design to the nearest foot. Design 8-feet as the minimum width where the existing shared use path is less than 8-feet wide. See Criteria F3 on the Curb Ramp Checklist

- Design the width of a curb ramp consistent with a normal sidewalk (W_N) where the curb ramp serves a connecting sidewalk that is not in the direction of the shared use path. Typical curb ramp widths are 4.5 to 6.0 feet. Where bicycles are expected to enter the path from the crosswalk, a path width of 8-feet is recommended.
- Where a shared use path continues around a corner and does not cross at an intersection, design the turn spaces/level areas consistent with the path width (W_P) in the direction where the path continues and consistent with a normal curb ramp (W_N) in the direction serving the street crossings. See scenario 1 in Figure 900-96~~Figure 900-99~~.
- Where a shared use path continues straight, design the turn space/level area so that the width in the direction where the path continues is equal to that of the approaching shared use path (W_P). Design the turn space/level area so that the width in the direction perpendicular to the direction where the path continues is consistent with the normal sidewalk width (W_N). See scenario 2 in Figure 900-96~~Figure 900-99~~.
- Where two shared use paths intersect with a shared turn space, design both directions of the turn space consistent with the path width (W_P). See scenario 3 in Figure 900-96~~Figure 900-99~~.
- Where path users are required to turn 90-degrees to continue in the direction of the shared use path, design both directions of the turn space consistent with the path width (W_P). See scenario 4 in Figure 900-96~~Figure 900-99~~.
- Where the width of the path (W_P) is inconsistent or not decipherable, use 10-feet as the assumed width if the path is at least 10-feet wide. Use 8-feet as the assumed width if the path is a variable width less than 10-feet wide.

DRAFT

Figure 900-96 Curb Ramp Scenarios along Shared Use Paths



962.2 Separating Modes on a Path

When mode separation is desired between pedestrians and bicyclists, additional width is required. See Section 961.3 for required width and Section 944 for delineation between zones.

962.3 Illumination

The need to illuminate paths depends on many factors:

- Location: is it isolated, or adjacent to a well-lit roadway?
- Purpose – is safety or security a concern? Security may require continuous illumination;

Safety may require illumination only at street crossings and access points, especially where bollards and other objects are placed to prevent motor vehicle access.

Light pollution concerns: many jurisdictions have adopted dark sky ordinances; low-level lighting aimed down at the path surface helps reduce light pollution, and illuminate the path surface.

Engineering judgment should be used to determine the need, quantity and type of path illumination. One solution to satisfy these often competing needs is to illuminate a path only in the evening, with a sign telling users when the lighting will be turned off.

Transitions to the beginning and end of the left-side bike facility are critical to safe operation. See discussion in Section 972.2.2.

962.4 Path Wayfinding

Wherever a shared-use path interfaces with a street, driveway, alley, another path, sidewalk, shoulder, or private accessway, there is an opportunity for pedestrians to enter or exit the path. At all path connections, consider whether the continuity of the path is obvious, or if path users may need cues to stay on the path. See Section 810.13.8 for pedestrian way finding. Chapter 14 in the AASHTO Bike Guide has guidance on wayfinding signs. Oregon-specific signs for wayfinding are described in the ODOT Sign Policy and Guidelines. Additional guidance on deciding what types of destinations to use for path wayfinding signs is available in the City of Eugene's Bicycle Wayfinding Sign Guide. In the event of a conflict between guidelines, ODOT guidelines supersede those from other sources.

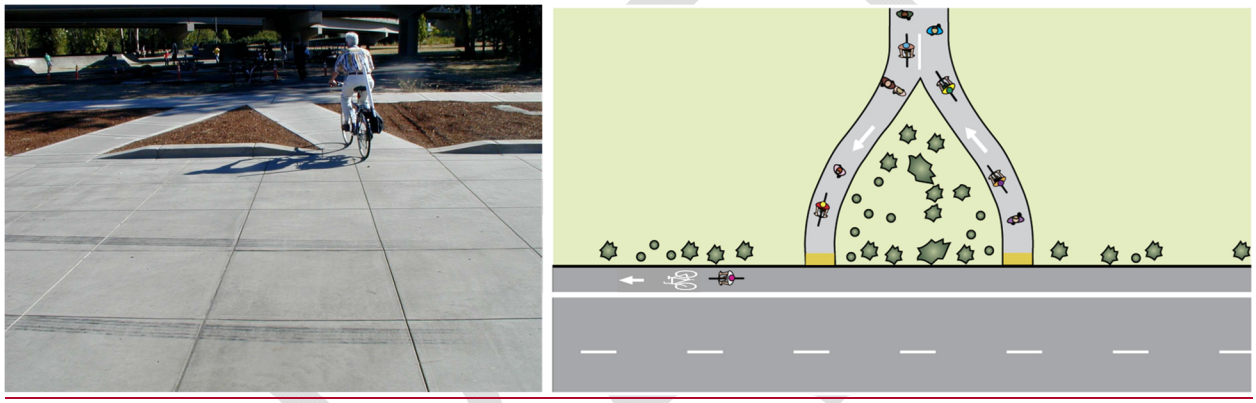
DRAFT

962.5 Restricting Motor Vehicle Access to Paths

The most effective way to discourage motor vehicle access to paths is to make it physically difficult to do so. A preferred method is to create very tight curb returns to make it difficult for motorists to enter a path from the roadway.

Another preferred method branches the path into two narrower one-way paths just before it reaches the roadway, making it difficult for a motor vehicle to gain access to the path.

Figure 900-97: Split Path to Prevent Motor Vehicle Access

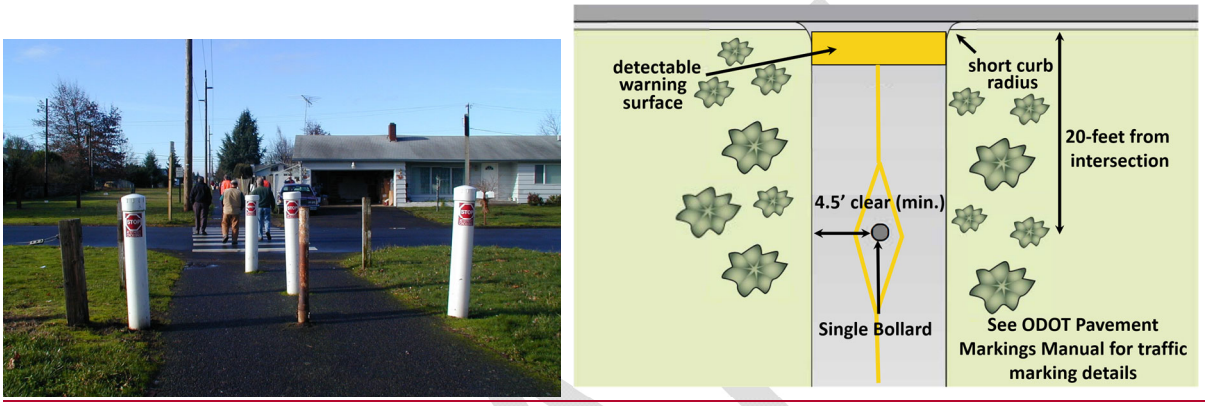


Bollards may be used to limit vehicle traffic on paths. However, bollards are often hard to see, cyclists may not expect them, and injuries result when cyclists hit them. Overuse of bollards impedes bikeway operation and may prevent path use by trailers, wheelchairs and other legitimate path users. In a group of riders, the riders in front block the visibility of those behind, setting up cyclists in the back of the pack for a crash. See Section 921.2 for cautions regarding non-vehicle bicycle crashes involving objects in a bikeway.

Bollards should only be used when absolutely necessary. **When used, space bollards apart a minimum of 5 feet.** This provides for easy passage by cyclists, bicycle trailers and adult tricycles as well as wheelchair users. A single bollard is preferred, as two may channelize bicyclists to the middle opening, with a potential for collisions. They should not be placed right at the intersection, but set back 20 feet or more, so users can concentrate on motor vehicle traffic conflicts rather than on avoiding the bollard. Bollards should also not be placed near curves in pathways due to limited sight lines and tendency of bicyclists to travel in the middle of a path on curves. They should be painted with bright, light colors for visibility, illuminated and/or retro-reflectorized. A striped envelope around the bollard will direct path users away from the fixed object. See ODOT Pavement Markings Manual Figure 440-B for striping detail for obstruction within path. Bollard design should consider emergency services and maintenance access needs along a path. Flexible delineators, that collapse when struck by a bicyclist, should be considered.

Placing railing or other barrier part way across a trail makes it possible for intended users to accesses the trail; maintenance vehicle operators are provided with keys to unlock the fences when they need access. The fences, like bollards, can be fixed objects in the path of bicyclists and can restrict certain trail users from gaining access to the trail. They should be coated with retroreflective material and well-lit.

Figure 900-98: Bollards at the entry Point of a Shared Use Path

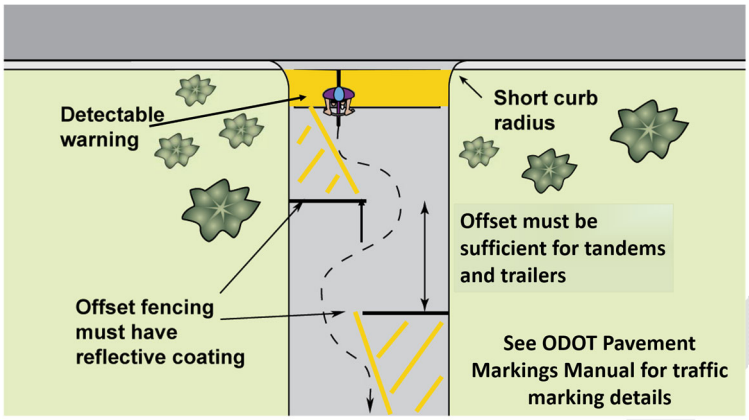


Placing railing or other barrier part way across a trail makes it possible for intended users to accesses the trail; maintenance vehicle operators are provided with keys to unlock the fences when they need access. The fences, like bollards, can be obstacles to bicyclists and can restrict certain trail users from gaining access to the trail. They should be coated with retroreflective material and well-lit.

Figure 900-99: Offset Fencing



Figure 900-100: Offset Fencing Details



Section 963 Path Clear Zone, Lateral Clearance, and Shy Space

The space on each side of a paved path surface affects how much of the path people use. Where steep side slopes, or objects are placed alongside the path, users tend to shy away from using the entire path width. Additionally, where obstructions such as signs or poles exist alongside a path, the shoulder functions similar to the clear zone that is necessary for a road to enable vehicles to recover without crashing into an object.

The purpose of a path's clear zone is to preserve the functionality of the entire path width and to minimize the likelihood of injury if users run off the path. The clear zone consists of the path shoulder and the side slope and regulates how close objects may be placed on the sides of the path. The space abutting the paved path should enable path users to ride or step on it without ankle twisting or losing balance and that does not result in loose gravel or other material being tracked onto the path. The space alongside a path that is clear of obstruction functions as shy distance. Where shy space alongside a path is not clear of obstruction, the useable width intended for path users and their level of comfort is reduced.

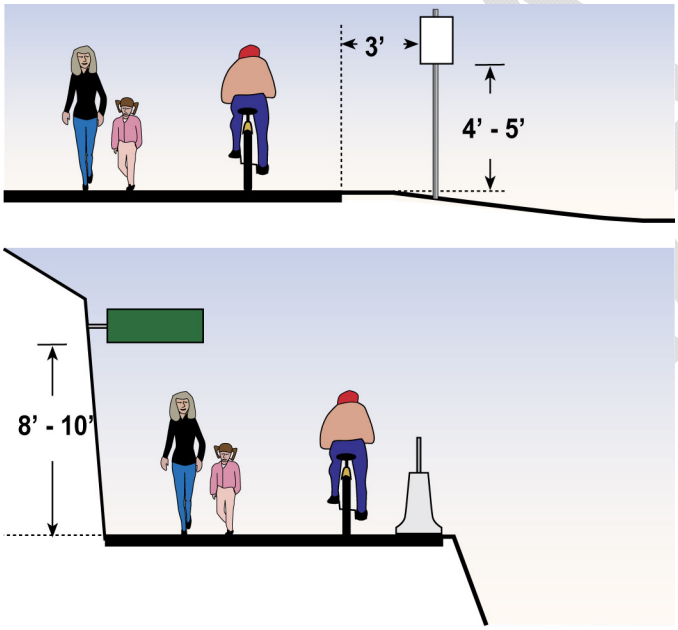
A 2 foot shy distance on both sides of a shared-use path should be assumed as the minimum physical space requirement to achieve the required lateral clearance when scoping a path project. *It is necessary to have 3 feet or more at locations where signs or other objects are planned alongside the path*.

The first 3-feet beyond the pavement on each side of a paved path function as shy distance for the path. However, it is not necessary that the entire 3-foot space be included within right-of-way so long as the space does not hinder the clear shy space with objects such as bushes, trees, or other vertical obstructions. The shy distance on both sides of a shared-use path is necessary for safe operation. The path should be abutted with graded and compacted material, such as

DRAFT

gravel, flush to the path. At least the first 1-foot shall be graded at 1:6 or flatter. The entire shy space should be as level as practical and free of obstructions to allow recovery by errant path users. **The maximum side slope in the first 3-feet of the path's shoulder shall be 1:2**. This applies to cut-sections, where falling debris can accumulate, stimulating weed growth, further restricting the available width. **Poles or sign posts shall be placed a minimum distance of 2-feet away from the paved path edge**. Preferred lateral clearance to a sign is at least 3-feet. Because of cyclists' and pedestrians' lower line of sight, the bottom of signs should be about 5 ft above the path. If a secondary sign is mounted below another sign, it should be a minimum of 4 feet above the path. Signs placed over a path should have a minimum vertical clearance of 8 feet. Objects, other than protective barrier, placed less than 2 feet from the path edge may be acceptable through a design exception. **Protective barriers, such as bicycle railings or fences shall be placed at least 1-foot from the path edge.** *In constrained conditions, in lieu of a gravel shoulder, the pavement may extend up to the constraint with a portion of the paved path marked with a white edge line to delineate some lateral clearance on that side.*

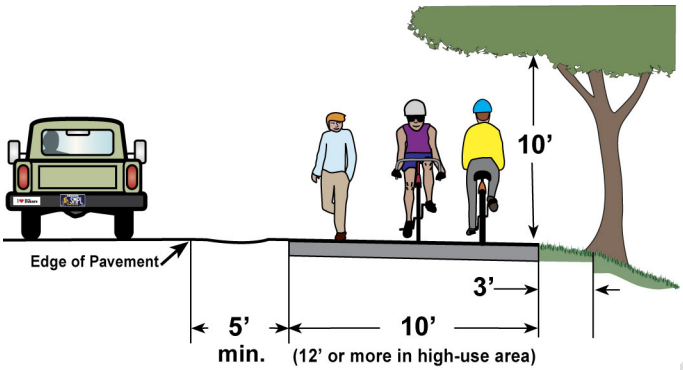
Figure 900-101: Illustration of Path Lateral and Overhead Clearance



The standard clearance to overhead obstructions is 10 feet, **min. 8 feet** where fixed objects or natural terrain prohibit the full 10-ft clearance.

Where a path is parallel and adjacent to a roadway, there ~~should~~shall be a 5-foot or greater width separating the path from the edge of roadway, or a physical barrier of sufficient height should be installed.

Figure 900-102: Illustration of Path Lateral and Overhead Clearance



963.1 Fences, Railings and Barriers

Fences or railings along paths may be needed to prevent access to high-speed roadways, or to provide protection along steep side slopes and waterways. Fences should only be used where they are needed for safety reasons. They should be placed as far away from the path as possible; minimum offset should be 2 feet. Many of these principles apply to cut-sections of paths where retaining walls are required: minimum 2’ offset, with a rub-rail where feasible.

42” height fence is recommended. Where concrete barriers are used, tubular railing may be added to achieve the required height. Openings in the railing must not exceed 6” in width. Where a cyclist's handlebar may come into contact with a fence or barrier, a smooth, 12” wide rub-rail should be installed at a height of 3 feet.

DRAFT

Figure 900-103: Railing Added to Concrete Barrier

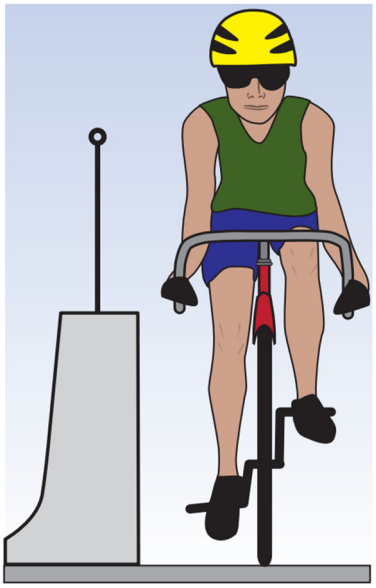
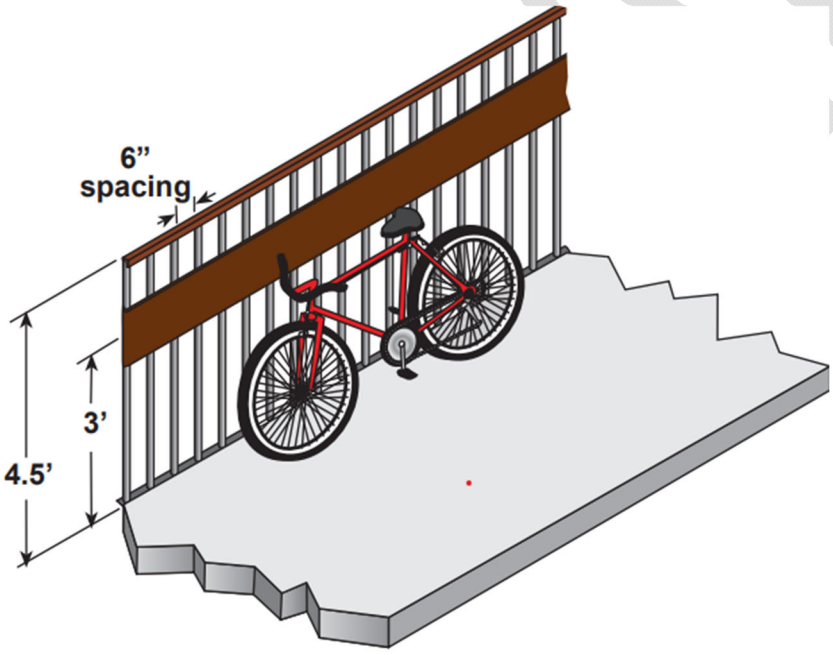


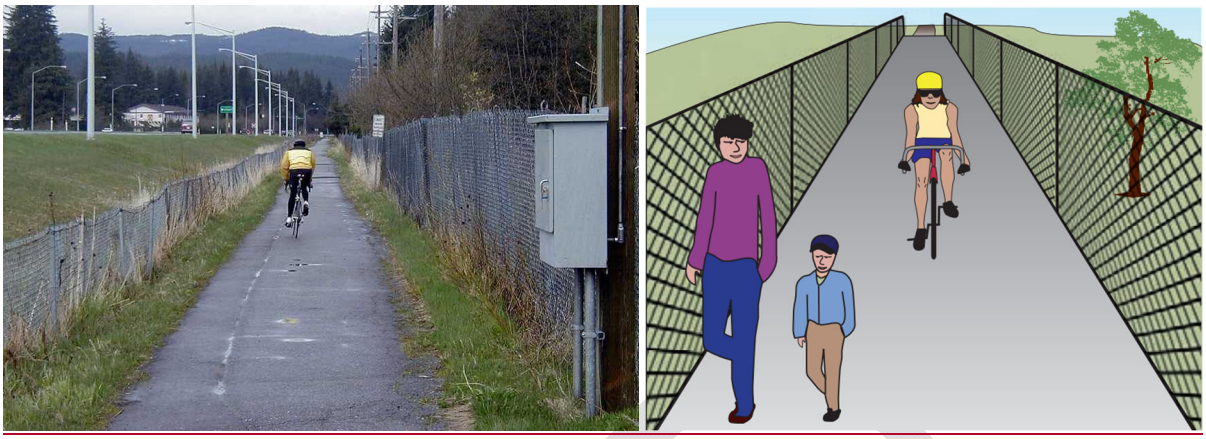
Figure 900-104: Rub Rail Added to Railing



Double fencing should be avoided, e.g. a fence at the right-of-way and a fence to keep pedestrians off freeways. A high chain-link fence on each side of a path creates an undesirable cattle-chute effect, making users feel trapped.

DRAFT

Figure 900-105 Double Fencing on a Shared Use Path



The need to include a railing next to a path is dictated by a combination of factors, few of which can be isolated or quantified. See Section 810.13.5 for a list of factors to evaluate.

Clear zone (also called recovery zone): A 2-foot wide (1 foot min) level area should be provided at the outer edges of the paved area so users can recover their balance if they leave the pavement. Shrubbery planted at the edge of the slope (2 feet from the path edge) can help users shy away from the edge.

Figure 900-106: Railing Needed on Left, Not Needed on Right

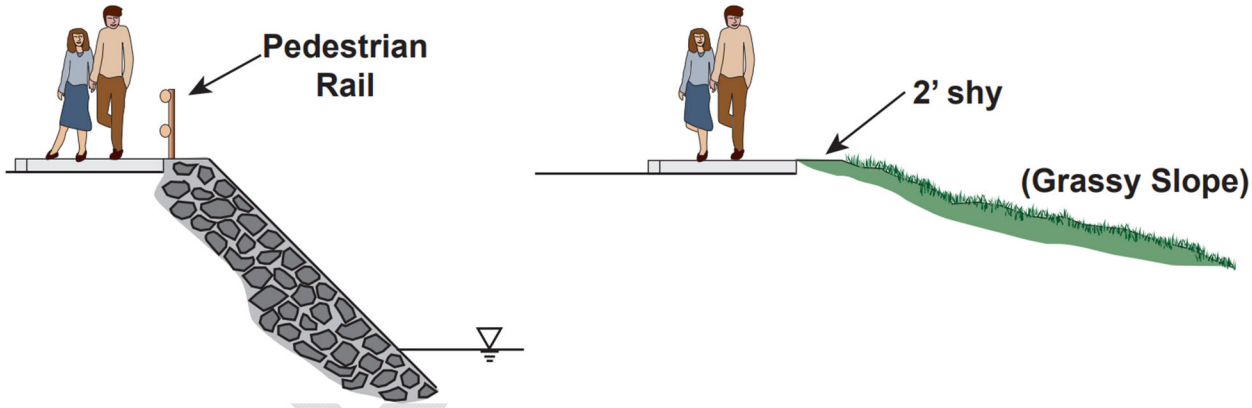


Figure 900-107: Moving Path Away from the Slope Reduces the Need for Railing

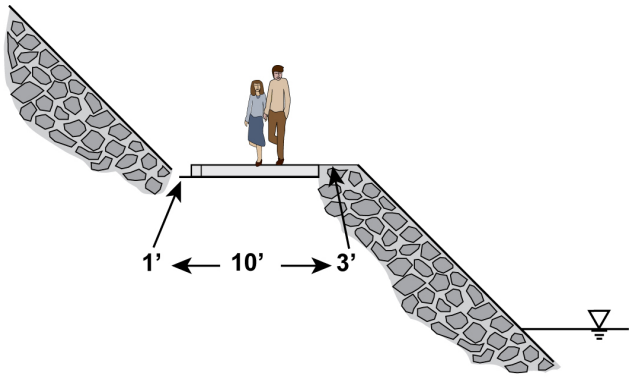


Figure 900-108 Gentle Slope Along Path Reduces the Need for Railing



Height: The need for railing increases with the height of the path above the adjacent roadway, waterway or other features unless there are other mitigating factors. For most applications a rail height of 42 inches is adequate and preserves views. In locations where bicyclists should be protected, a minimum bicycle railing height of 48 inches is recommended. The maximum rail height of 54 inches should be used where bicyclists could vault over the railing – such as on a curved section at the bottom of a steep incline.

Cross-slope: 2:1 or flatter is generally considered adequate, unless side-slope material is potentially harmful. Cyclists are more comfortable with 3:1 or 4:1 slope. Maintenance staff prefer a flatter slope for mowing.

Side-slope material: while a grassy berm or soft shrubbery would not harm a person falling, prickly vegetation, rip-rap, gabion baskets or other hard or jagged objects would not adequately protect a user from injury.

Object at bottom of slope: a freeway, deep river or torrent is more significant than a field of hay.

Users: small children or seniors may need greater protection than other users.

DRAFT

These factors should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis, and a decision made based on engineering judgment. The best decision is to flatten the slope to avoid the need for a barrier. Another option is to shift the path closer to the upslope, offering more shoulder at the down slope side.

Section 964 Stopping Sight Distance

Stopping sight distance for bicyclists is the distance necessary for a bike to come to a full stop. Most objects along a shared use path segment do not encompass the entire width of the path and would not require complete stopping. The most common reason that stopping sight distance is necessary along a path is when groups of bicyclists ride together side-by-side. They can move into single file to avoid a ~~hazard~~roadside object when they are able, but when the limited space is occupied by opposing path users, someone may have to come to a full stop to avoid collision.

Determination of stopping sight distance is based on a bike coming to a stop on wet pavement from the design riding speed and having taken 2.5 seconds to react prior to applying the brakes. The distance to stop is less when people travel at lower speeds, are on dry pavement, or react quicker than 2.5 seconds. Since the risk of injury is related to bicyclist speed, it should be noted that the need for a bicyclist to come to a full stop rather than travel around an obstruction is disparate from the likelihood that the bicyclist would be traveling at a faster design speed. An adult cyclist riding alone typically rides faster than an adult riding with children or a group of adults riding together, while the need for stopping is most common with group riding since an individual might weave around an object within the available width of the path.

Design exceptions are required to justify stopping sight distance around horizontal and vertical curves.

Equation 900-2: Bicycle Stopping Sight Distance

$$S = 3.67V + \frac{V^2}{30(f + G)}$$

Where:

S = stopping sight distance (ft)

V = bicycle design speed (mph)

f = friction factor (assume 0.16 for a typical bicycle)

G = grade in (ft/ft)

DRAFT

Section 965 Horizontal Alignment

Proper horizontal and vertical alignment is critical to ensure good sight distances.

Typically, simple horizontal curves shall be used on shared use paths. Curve radii are measured from the center of the shared use path. There are two ways to calculate the minimum radius of curvature along a shared use path. One way is to calculate based on the lean angle. The other way is to calculate based on superelevation rate.

Bicyclists lean to prevent falling outward due to forces associated with turning movements. Two-wheeled bicycles are typically the fastest users on a shared use path. Twenty degrees is the typical maximum lean angle for most riders of two-wheeled bicycles. The deflection angle (Δ) is another factor affecting the safe travel of bicycles on a horizontal curve. Deflection angles greater than 90 degrees require additional caution as inertial forces begin to act in the opposite direction from the beginning of the curve. Bicyclists entering these curves at higher speeds could ~~risk running~~run into opposing path traffic, ~~riding~~ride off the outside edge of the path or ~~falling~~fall over from turning forces.

Some bicycles (cargo bicycles, tricycles and bikes with trailers) have three or four wheels and are not able to lean. Users of these types of bicycles tend to be slower. In order to check that these users are accommodated, the superelevation method should be used at a speed 2 to 4 mph slower than the design speed.

Superelevation rate is equivalent to the cross slope of the path. Because a shared use path is also a pedestrian facility, paths must not exceed 2 percent cross slope in order to meet accessibility requirements. **The maximum superelevation rate (design cross slope) on a shared use path (shared with pedestrians) is 1.5 percent.** If a shared use path is physically separated with different tracts for pedestrians and bicyclists, the superelevation allowed for the bicycle-portion of the path may be increased up to 8 percent. **The maximum superelevation rate (design cross slope) for a bicycle-only path is 8.0 percent.**

Equation 900-3 - Radius of Curvature Based on Lean Angle

$$R = \frac{0.067V^2}{\tan\theta}$$

R = radius of curvature.

V = design speed. See Section 924 for selecting the appropriate design speed;

θ = the lean angle, typically 20 degrees.

Equation 900-4 –Radius of Curvature Based on Superelevation Rate

$$R = \frac{V^2}{15 \times (e + f)}$$

DRAFT

R = radius of curvature.

V = design speed. See Section 924 for selecting the appropriate design speed;

e = cross slope, expressed as decimal (e.g., 1.5% = 0.015)

f = coefficient of friction

Where the deflection angle of the horizontal curve is 90-degrees or less, the ODOT design standard for minimum radius of curvature is based on a lean angle. Where the deflection angle of the curve is greater than 90 degrees, the ODOT design standard for minimum radius of curvature is based on the superelevation rate using the design cross slope. The minimum radius recommended for shared use paths is provided in Table 900-16~~Table 900-17~~. A design exception is required to justify where the minimum radius of curvature is not achieved.

Table 900-16~~17~~: Minimum Radius of Curvature for Horizontal Curves

Design Speed (mph)	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28	30
Minimum Curve Radius (feet) at 20° Lean Angle	12	18	27	36	47	60	74	89	106	124	144	166
Minimum Curve Radius (feet) at 1.5% superelevation	12	20	30	42	57	74	96	122	151	184	222	267
Minimum Curve Radius (feet) at 5.0% superelevation*	11	18	27	37	50	65	86	108	132	161	194	231
Minimum Curve Radius (feet) at 8.0% superelevation*	10	17	25	34	46	60	78	98	120	145	174	207
Friction factor (f)	0.33	0.32	0.31	0.30	0.29	0.28	0.26	0.25	0.24	0.23	0.22	0.21

* Superelevation above 1.5% only to be used on paths not shared with pedestrians.

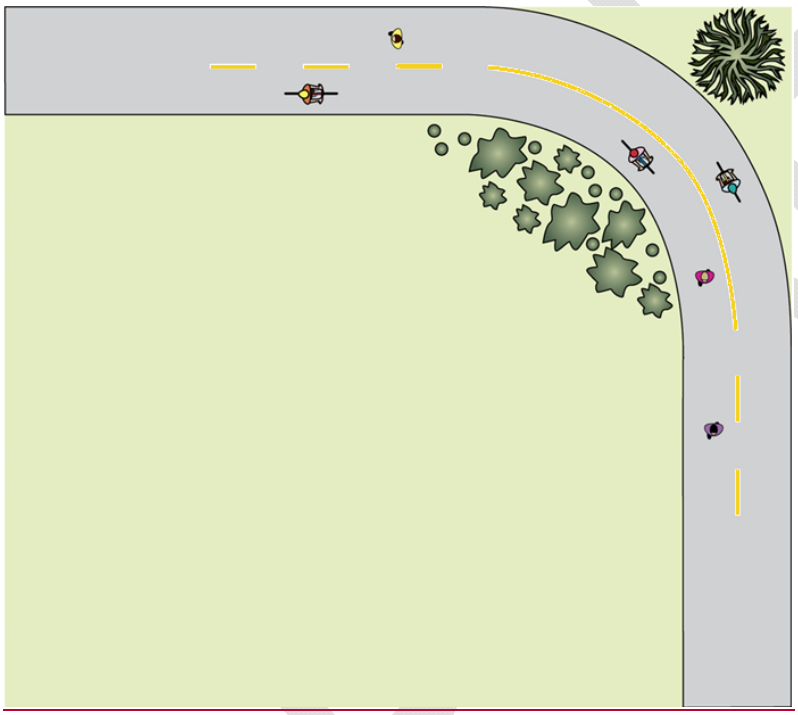
If design curve radius does not meet the design standard, based on the chosen design speed, consult the ODOT roadway unit in the Region tech center or the Technical Services Roadway Engineering Unit to discuss whether a design exception is needed.

If the minimum radius of curvature is not achieved using the standard method, the alternative method may be checked and used as support for a design exception. The lean angle method typically yields a smaller radius, except when the superelevation is above 5 percent. Back-

calculating the speed for which bicyclists may safely traverse a curve is another way to support a design exception when the radius is not achievable. Another strategy to mitigate sharp horizontal curves is to straighten the horizontal alignment by adding tangent sections between curves so that deflection angles are under 90-degrees. Sharp horizontal curves can be mitigated by adequately informing path users to be cautious and slow around the curves. Typical mitigations include a centerline stripe and warning signs.

A centerline stripe is generally not used on shared-use paths unless they are wider and/or mode-separated. On a standard 10-foot path, users typically like to walk or ride side-by-side; a centerline stripe can make users feel confined to one side only, which is rarely possible. A solid centerline stripe may be used through curves and areas where sight distance is limited; the approach to this area may be striped with dashes.

Figure 900-109: Mitigating a Sharp Horizontal Curve with Centerline Striping



965.1 Horizontal Sightline Offset

People bicycling need a clear line of sight around obstructions that may reduce the sight line in a horizontal curve. **Evaluate stopping sight distance throughout the alignment of a horizontal curve.** The lateral clearance to an object alongside a path is a Horizontal Sightline Offset (HSO). The equations below check whether an object impedes the sight distance of a horizontal curve and indicates the minimum clearance for horizontal curve line-of-sight obstructions based on curve radius and stopping sight distance. If keeping this line of sight clear is not practical,

consider widening the path through the curve, installing a centerline stripe, installing warning signs or a combination of these alternatives.

Equation 900-5 Horizontal Sightline Offset (HSO) for Horizontal Curve

$$HSO = R\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{28.65 \times S}{R_i}\right)\right]$$

Equation 900-6 Back-Calculation of Stopping Sight Distance from Horizontal Sightline Offset

$$S = \frac{R}{28.65}\left[\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{R - HSO}{R_i}\right)\right]$$

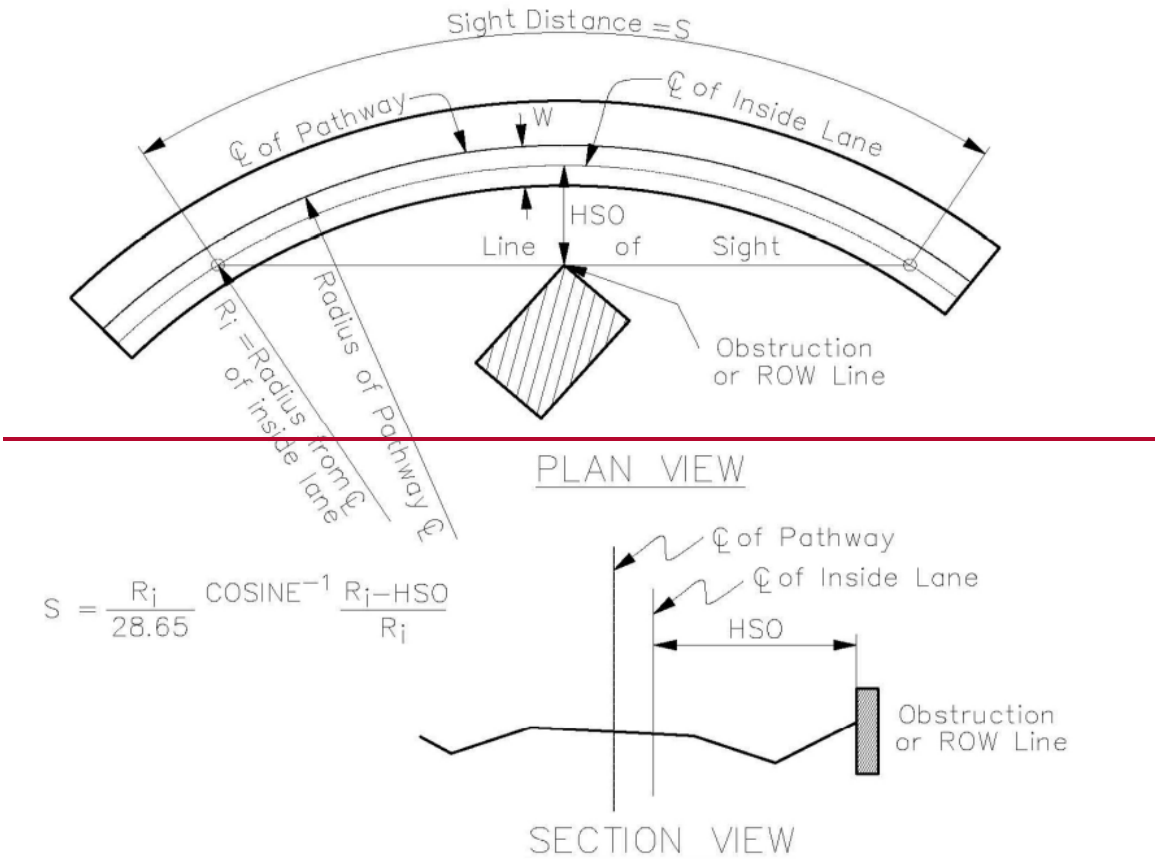
Where:

HSO = Horizontal sight line offset, distance from centerline of lane in path to obstruction (feet)

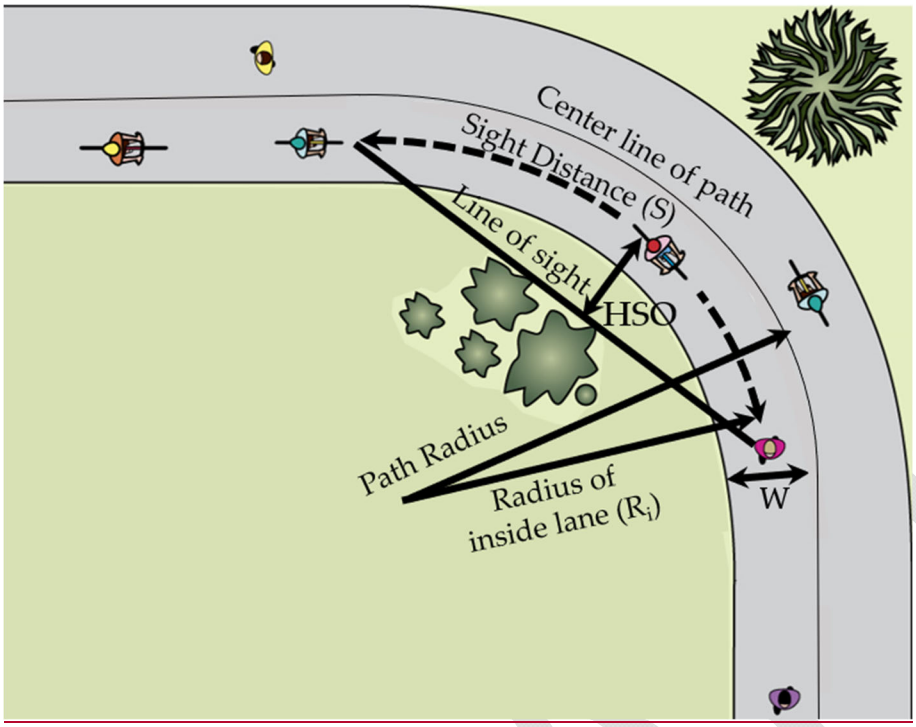
S = sight distance (feet)

R_i = Radius of curve, from centerline of inside lane in path (feet)

Figure 900-110: Horizontal Sightline Offset



~~(*Figure taken from Colorado Roadway Design Manual, Figure 14-32)~~



Section 966 Vertical Alignment

The minimum length of a crest vertical curve is based on the distance needed to provide minimum stopping sight distance. Below are the formulas to calculate the curve length needed based on stopping sight distance on crest vertical curves. This formula typically uses a person's eye height of 4.5 feet on a standard bicycle. A recumbent bicycle may be used as an alternative design vehicle for vertical curves because the 3.8-foot eye height of a person using a recumbent bicycle is lowest among bicycle types, which in turn limits the sight distance over crest vertical curves.

DRAFT

Equation 900-7 Length of Vertical Curve to Provide Stopping Sight Distance

$$L = \frac{A \times S^2}{100\left(\sqrt{2 \times h_1} + \sqrt{2 \times h_2}\right)^2} \quad when\ S\ is\ less\ than\ L,$$

$$OR$$

$$L = 2 \times S - \frac{200\left(\sqrt{h_1} + \sqrt{h_2}\right)^2}{A} \quad when\ S\ is\ greater\ than\ L.$$

Where:

S = stopping sight distance for flat grade (feet)

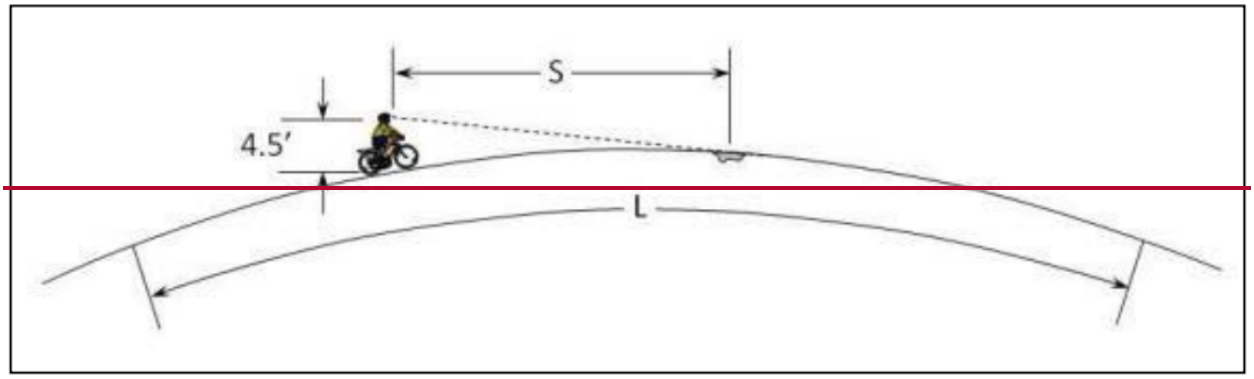
L = length of crest vertical curve (feet)

A = algebraic difference in grades (%)

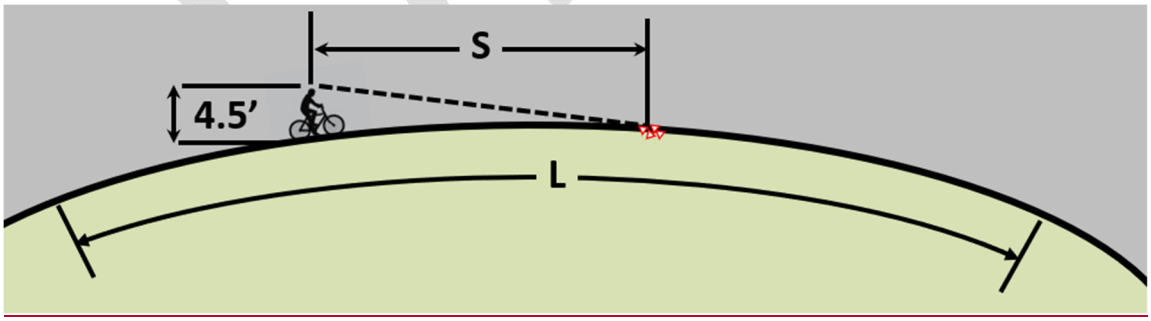
h_1 = eye height of a bicyclist. 4.5 feet for standard bicycle

h_2 = height of object above roadway surface, 0 ft

Figure 900-111: Sight Distance on Crest Vertical Curve



~~(*Figure taken from Colorado Roadway Design Manual, Figure 14-33)~~



966.1 Path Grade

The grade of a shared use paths shall be 5.0 percent or less, except at ramps or along a road. The best practice is to design the alignment of a path lower than 5.0 percent in order to minimize the chance that it will exceed 5.0 percent when constructed. Concrete paths may be designed at 4.5 percent and asphalt paths may be designed at 4.0 percent in order to provide construction tolerance.

Shared use paths located along roadways above 5 percent grade may follow the grade of the road. **When the shared use path is parallel with the mainline highway alignment, the walkway shall not exceed the roadway grade.**

~~An ADA~~A design exception for ADA standards is required where a vertical grade is designed to be steeper than 4.5 percent (5.0 percent finished surface) on shared use paths that are not on the same alignments with an adjacent roadway. To meet ADA requirements, the grade of separated shared use path shall not exceed 5.0 percent.

Where right-of-way and geometric constraints make the provision of a continuous grade less than 5 percent impractical, grades should be minimized and require a design exception for justification. Where potential grades exceed 5 percent, intermittent level resting intervals should be considered. Where provided, resting intervals shall be full width of the shared use path and 60 inches long. Alternatively, a 36-inch wide resting interval may be located adjacent to the shared use path. Recommended maximum distance between resting areas is 200 feet.

Where sustained grades exceeding 4 percent in excess of 300 feet in length are required, an increased design speed should be used. Additionally, consider providing mitigating measures including hill warning signs, wider clear recovery areas adjacent to the shared use path; and additional width to allow some users to dismount and walk their bicycles. Alternatively, consider installing a series of switchbacks to reduce the longitudinal grade. Transitions between grades with more than 2 percent algebraic difference can be made with vertical curves. The minimum length for a vertical curve on a shared use path is 3 feet.

Section 967 Path Surface

The surface material should be packed hard enough to be usable by wheelchairs, strollers, and children on bicycles (the roadway should be designed to accommodate more experienced bicyclists). Recycled pavement grindings provide a suitable material. The surface material must meet ADA surface requirements for the full width of the shared use path.

Refer to section 810.8 on Walkway Surfacing. Depth of asphalt construction of a walkway is shown in the RD600 series for shared use path pavement details. Shared use paths occasionally

DRAFT

need to allow access for maintenance vehicles which will increase the asphalt pavement foundation and final surfacing depths.

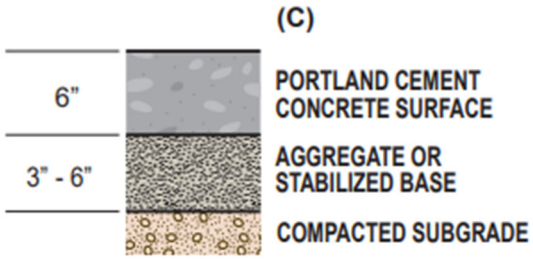
967.1 Typical Pavement Section

Shared-use paths should be designed with sufficient structural depth for the subgrade soil type and to support maintenance and emergency vehicles. A good rule of thumb is to use the typical pavement section recommended for local streets in a given environment. Some recommended pavement structures are provided in Standard Drawing RD602. Each path must be individually designed to meet the local geological and meteorological conditions.

The use of concrete surfacing for paths is advisable for long-term use. Concrete provides a smooth ride when placed with a slip-form paver. The surface must be cross-broomed. The crack-control joints should be saw-cut, not trowelled, to avoid a bumpy ride. Concrete paths cost more to build than asphalt paths, but long-term maintenance costs are lower, since concrete doesn't become brittle, cracked and rough with age, or deformed by roots and weeds, as does asphalt.

If the path is constructed over a very poor subgrade (wet and/or poor material), treatment of the subgrade with lime, cement or geotextile fabric (placed between the subgrade and the base rock) should be considered. Where paths are built in environmentally sensitive areas, the additional runoff must be accounted for. Pervious pavement materials should be considered in these circumstances, though care should be taken with pervious concrete – as many pervious concrete mix designs result in a rice crispy like surface.

Figure 900-112: Sample Pavement Cross Sections for a Concrete Shared Use Path



Drainage

Design shared-use paths with adequate drainage to avoid washouts and flooding, and to prevent silt from intruding onto the path due to standing water.

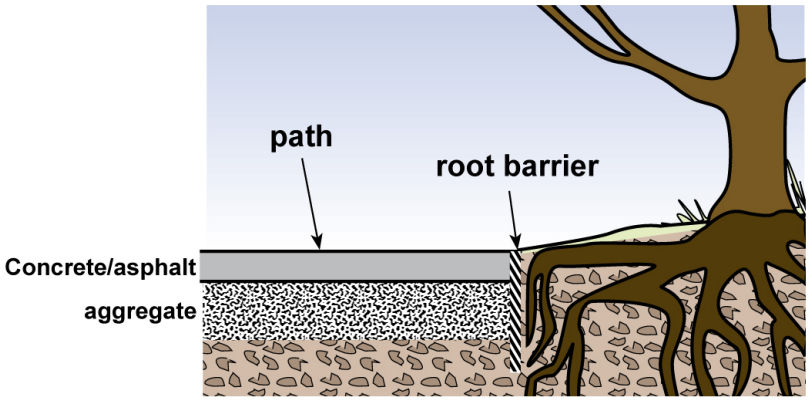
Vegetation

All vegetation, including roots, must be removed in the preparation of the subgrade. New growth should be controlled with a soil sterilant or lime treatment of the subgrade. Plants that

can cause other problems should be controlled; for example, plants with thorns can puncture bicycle tires.

Paths built in wooded areas require consideration of tree roots. The roots of shrubs and trees can pierce through the surface and cause it to heave and break apart. Preventive methods include removal of vegetation, realignment of the path away from trees, and placement of root barriers along the edge of the path. A 12″ deep shield creates an effective barrier; greater depth is required for some trees such as cottonwoods.

Figure 900-113: Root barrier prevents roots from upheaving path



Section 968 Path Cross Slope and Superelevation

Sharp curves should be banked with the high side on the outside of the curve to help bicyclists maintain their balance. The standard design cross-slope is **1.5 percent (2.0 percent finished surface)** to provide drainage, **in a crown section or shed section**.

Section 969 Path Transitions

Transitions to the beginning and end of the left-side bike facility are critical to safe operation. See discussion in Section ~~948.1~~972.2.2.

Section 970 Side Path Design

When designing shared use paths that run alongside a highway, there are design and operational challenges. See Section 972.2 for a list of considerations for side paths and two-way separated bike lanes. The design of a side path must consider each conflict point along the path.

Aside from conflict point mitigation, side paths shall meet most design requirements for shared use paths. Rather than shoulder/shy distance on both sides of the path, one side of the path is adjacent to the road. Section 945 discusses the Street Buffer Zone. The required width of a street buffer zone applies to separated bike lanes. However, if a shared use path is provided in lieu of a separated bike lane, there is a minimum street buffer width of 5-feet. **Where a path is parallel and adjacent to a roadway, there should be a 5-foot or greater width separating the path from the edge of roadway, or a physical barrier of sufficient height should be installed**. The purpose of the 5-foot separation distance is to reinforce that the shared use path is an independent facility, to prevent unintended movements between the path and roadway, to offset headlight glare for people facing traffic and to increase path user comfort. Where the adjacent roadway is a low-speed, low volume road, the need for path users to shy away from moving traffic is lessened. On high-speed roadways, a street buffer distance greater than 5 feet may be considered. Where errant vehicles are a consideration, provide a separation distance such that the path is outside of the clear zone.

~~[Placeholder for future content; specific side path design, incorporate Michigan side path guide[27]]~~

Section 971 Mode-Separated Side Paths and Two-way Separated Bike Lanes

The minimum total width required for a mode-separated path is described in Section 961. The typical 16-foot section is comprised of two 5-foot bike lanes and a 6-foot walking area. 18 or 20 feet are needed in areas of very high use.

A mode-separated side path is equivalent to a two-way separated bike lane alongside a sidewalk. This type of facility is sometimes referred to as a cycle track. They are used extensively in Europe on major arterials and are characterized by a physical separation from both motor vehicle traffic and pedestrian traffic. Both vertical and horizontal elements are used to separate modes. Sidewalk must be present in order for the separated bike lane to serve bicyclists only. Two-way separated bike lanes require special attention to traffic operations at intersections such as bicycle signals and two-stage left turn devices.

Section 944 discusses two alternatives, how to design a facility where bicycle and pedestrian traffic are side-by-side. The design is dependent on the fundamental decision whether pedestrians and bicycles are allowed to mix, or pedestrians and bicycles are not intended to mix. A two-way separated bicycle lane is a mode separated side path.

Section 972.2 discusses considerations for one-way versus two-way bicycle travel on one side of a road.

Section 961 through Section 968 include design standards for shared use paths.

Section 972 Two-way and Contra-Flow Bikeways

Bicycle traffic is typically accommodated in both directions of travel by providing a bike lane on each side of a road. Bike lanes on one-way streets are typically only in the direction of motor vehicle traffic. In areas of high bicycle demand, the left shoulder may be marked as a contra-flow bicycle lane when approved by the Region Traffic Manager/Engineer. Striping for contra-flow bicycle lanes are given in the ODOT Pavement Markings Manual, Section 412.

Three types of bikeways serve two-way bicycle travel. The first type is a shared use path that does not run parallel to a roadway. The second is a shared use path that does run along one side of a road and usually replaces the need for bike lanes on that road. This type of shared use path is referred to as a Side Path. The third type of facility is a two-way separated bike lane. A side path and a two-way separated bike lane operate similarly. The distinction is that side paths are designed to serve pedestrians, while two-way separated bike lanes are bikeways apart from pedestrian walkways.

In lieu of providing bike lanes on each side of a road, a two-way bicycle facility may be provided on one side of a road. To determine if a two-way bikeway is appropriate, evaluate if a bi-directional facility is appropriate for the location (see Section 972.2). Shared use paths that are not along a road do not need to be evaluated for one-way versus two-way operation.

Two-way shared use side paths are a preferred bicycle facility for limited access expressways or urban freeways and may be discouraged in other areas. Side paths are discussed in Section 970.

Although one-way separated paths may be intended for one direction of bicycle travel, they will often be used as two-way facilities. Caution must be used in selecting this type of facility. If needed, they should be designed and signed to promote one-way operation by bicyclists.

972.1 Bi-directional Bikeway Scenarios

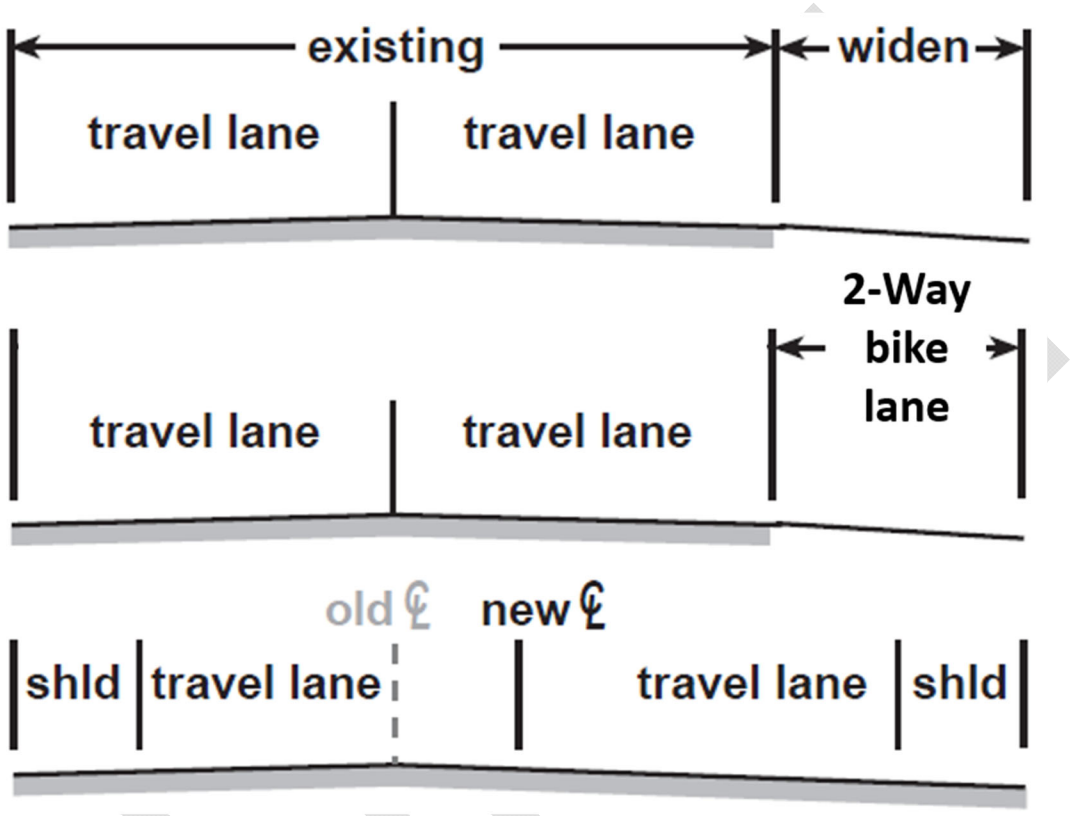
There are instances where a bidirectional bicycle facility may be considered on one side of a road. Some of the scenarios are:

- An on-street link along a bicycle route that connects to a bi-directional bikeway such as a shared use path;
- Where popular origins and destinations of bicycle trips are on the same side of the street;
- Where a bike lane across the street would not be accessible from an origin or destination point due to a lack of street crossing opportunities.
- Along a minor street approach to an enhanced street crossing serving only one leg of an intersection;

DRAFT

Additionally, two-way bike lanes on one side of a road are sometimes proposed in areas where there is insufficient room for two minimum width bike lanes on each side of a road. This should not be used as a sole reason to provide a bi-directional bikeway. If constraints allow widening on only one side of the road, the centerline stripe may be shifted to allow for adequate travel lanes and bike lanes on both sides.

Figure 900-114: Space for bike lanes by widening on one side



By combining two bike lanes on the same side of the street, the minimum combined width is 8-feet. An 8-foot bikeway with a street buffer may provide a higher level of comfort for bicyclists compared with non-buffered bike lanes on each side. Evaluate advantages and disadvantages of a two-way bicycle facility on one side of a road as well as operational considerations in the next sections.

Advantages of a bi-directional bike lane:

- Direct connection to a shared use path;
- Only one street buffer is needed to separate bicycles from traffic;
- An 8-foot bikeway allows bicyclists to pass or operate side-by-side when there is no oncoming bicycle traffic;

Disadvantages of a bi-directional bike lane:

- Limits access to destinations on the other side of the street;
- At intersections and driveways, "wrong way" riders approach from a direction where they are not visible to motorists;
- It encourages riding against traffic:
- Bicyclists closest to the motor vehicle lane have opposing motor vehicle traffic on one side and opposing bicycle traffic on the other; and
- Bicyclists are put into awkward positions when transitioning back to standard bikeways.

972.2 Evaluating One-way versus Two-Way Operation

Where shared-use paths and bi-directional bike lanes are placed alongside roadways, all bicycle traffic in one of the directions will ride against the normal flow of motor vehicle traffic. Evaluate the following design considerations to determine whether bi-directional bicycle traffic is appropriate on one side of a roadway.

972.2.1 Driveways and Intersections Along Route

Two-way bicycle lanes and side paths are affected by each driveway and cross street approach along the route.

When bicycle traffic rides against the normal, predicted flow of motor vehicle traffic, conflicts can occur at driveways and cross streets.

Bicyclists expect to proceed along a route without stopping at each driveway or minor side street. When bicyclists are required to stop or yield at cross-streets and driveways, stopping disrupts their momentum. Bicyclist's perception of safety on a protected facility may result in unexpected higher bicycle speeds when crossing intersections and driveways and in turn may increase the likelihood for crashes, especially where sight distance is limited.

Since the speed of bicyclists is faster than pedestrians, many drivers misjudge reaction time and proceed prematurely. Consequently, motor vehicles approaching side streets and driveways may proceed without noticing bicyclists.

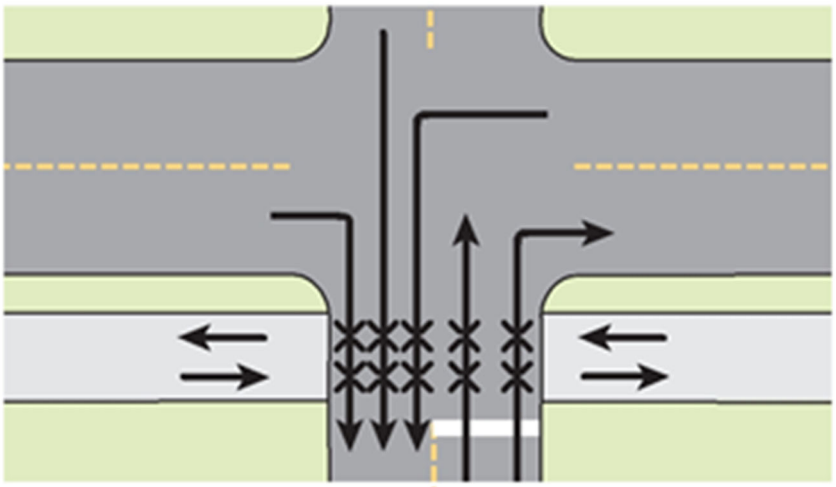
Each vehicle approach may cause four potential conflict scenarios.

1. Approaching motor vehicles may stop on the cross-street or driveway and block the path.

DRAFT

2. A driver turning right from a side street or driveway may not expect to see a cyclist coming from the right.
3. A driver turning left onto a side street or driveway may not expect see a cyclist coming in the opposite direction.
4. A driver turning right onto a side street or driveway may not expect see a cyclist coming from the opposite direction.

Figure 900-115: Side Path Conflict Scenarios at Side Streets and Driveways

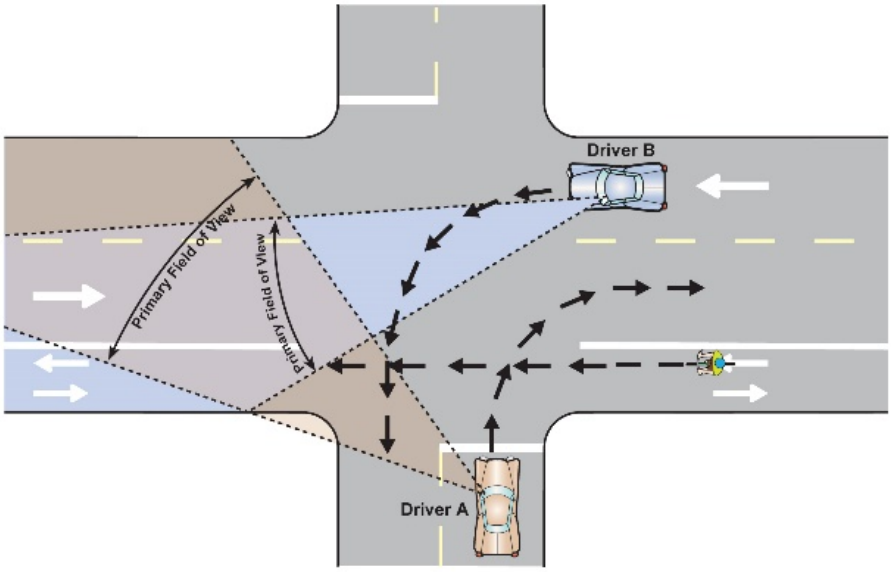


Each conflict scenario is affected by the speed of bicycle travel along the route and whether motorists are able to notice and react.

Drivers often focus on oncoming traffic from the left without glancing to the right since motor vehicle traffic on the right is on the opposite side of the street. Thus, motorists crossing the path do not notice bicyclists coming from the direction opposite to prevailing traffic.

DRAFT

Figure 900-116: Scenario Requiring Case T Sight Distance Evaluation



For each side street or driveway where left turns are permitted across a two-way bike lane or side path, evaluate sight distance, case T (see AASHTO Bike Guide, Chapter 5).

Where the sight distance evaluation reveals that the necessary approach clear space is not achievable, consider traffic control measures control conflict points at the specific intersection or driveway. If bicyclists on the path are required to stop or yield at cross-streets and driveways frequently, stopping disrupts wheeled users' momentum; consequently, many people end up not stopping. In these circumstances, a bi-directional bikeway may therefore be discouraged in areas with frequent driveway or street access.

Where sight distance is adequate, a strategy for mitigating potential conflicts at driveways is to provide pavement markings at the conflict point across the driveway as shown in Figure 900-116~~Figure 900-121~~.

DRAFT

Figure 900-117: Driveway along bi-directional bike lane



972.2.2 Transition at the Ends of a Bi-directional Route

When the path ends, some bicyclists riding against traffic continue to travel on the wrong side of the street, as do bicyclists getting to a path. Wrong-way travel by bicyclists is a major cause of bicyclist-to-automobile crashes and should never be a design element, unless considerable care is taken to address the safety issues.

Because of the proximity of motor vehicle traffic to opposing bicycle traffic, barriers are often necessary to separate the path from the roadway. These barriers are obstructions, complicate maintenance of the facility and use available right-of-way.

Transitions to the beginning and end of the left-side bike facility are critical to safe operation. Provide signs, markings and other traffic control as appropriate to clarify to the users that the two-way bikeway is shifting to become a one-way bikeway on each side of the street and to encourage users to cross at the designated place. If the transitions are not done properly, bicyclists are unlikely to cross to the other side of a road to use a path, bike lane or sidewalk, particularly if the length of the left-side bike facility is short. Many users are likely to use a lane on the roadway a short distance rather than cross twice. Additionally, when a two-way bicycle lane or side path begins or ends, some bicyclists riding against traffic could continue to travel on the wrong side of the street for a long distance beyond the end of the left-side bicycle facility. Wrong-way travel by bicyclists is a major cause of bicyclist-to-automobile crashes. A two-way bicycle lane or side path should not be implemented unless considerable care is taken to address safety issues posed by entering and exiting the two-way facility.

To provide safe transitions to and from two-way bicycle lanes and side paths, entrances and exits from the path will require careful consideration and integration into the design.

DRAFT

Depending on the context and origin/destinations to and from the two way facility on one side of the road, additional crossings may be needed, resulting in additional conflict zones to be mitigated. Paradoxically, the side path and its planned crossings could reduce the number of conflicts for a cyclist. Trip generation and conflict analysis is recommended.

An example of an effective transition from on-street bicycle lanes to a two-way shared use path on one side of the street is shown in Figure 900-118~~Figure 900-122~~. On the side of the road where the bicycle lane ends, it is brought to a protected space at the intersection corner, aligning bicyclists to cross at a crosswalk where the two-way shared use path resumes on the other side of the street.

Figure 900-118: Transition from bike lanes to side path



972.2.3 Position and Sight distance

The term 'position' refers to the location of the bi-directional bike lane or side path and its user in relation to the driver on the roadway. Sight distance is critical at intersections and crossings with side paths. This is also discussed in the two previous sections. A cyclist on a two-way bicycle lane or side path, even when going in the same direction of traffic, are not within the normal scanning area of turning drivers. In addition, a cyclist riding contra to the flow does not see the signage and signals posted for roadway users that a driver and a cyclist going in the same direction see, missing valuable cues for safety. In some cases, the proximity of a side path to the roadway creates a condition where barriers or railings are needed to separate traffic. These barriers can obstruct sight distance and make it challenging for maintenance. Evaluating visual barriers at crossings is recommended.

972.2.4 Space Available

A side path should use the same design criteria as a shared use path. It is recommended to have at least a 5 foot buffer between the edge of asphalt of the roadway and the path. This may require additional right of way. Side paths can also be constrained by fixed objects, such as buildings, utilities, furniture and waterways. It is recommended to evaluate the available right of way to accommodate a side path.

972.2.5 Bikes on Roadway on Roads with Side Paths

Some bicyclists may choose to ride in the roadway rather than the side path because of some of the issues with conflicts discussed in this section. Bicyclists choosing to ride in the street instead of using the side path may be hassled by other road users. Notwithstanding the reasons for bicyclists to ride on the road, it is not consistent with the expectation of motorists who expect all cyclists to use the path. The presence of a path should not exclude the possibility to also provide shoulders or bike lanes on roads, where appropriate, or sidewalks for pedestrians in urban areas.

972.2.6 Turns

Turning movements for cyclists on a side path are the same as for pedestrians. Generally, left turns involve yielding to cross traffic twice instead of only once and thus inducing unnecessary delay.

972.2.7 Conditions for a Successful Side Path

- Bicycle and pedestrian use is anticipated to be high;
- The traffic conditions (high-speed, high-volumes) on the adjacent roadway are such that on-road bikeways and sidewalks may be undesirable;
- The path can be kept separate from motor vehicle traffic, with few roadway or driveway crossings;
- There are no reasonable alternatives for bikeways and sidewalks on nearby parallel streets;
- There is a commitment to provide path continuity throughout the corridor;
- The path can be terminated at each end onto streets with good bicycle and pedestrian accommodation, or onto another safe, well designed path;

DRAFT

- There is adequate access to local cross-streets and other facilities along the route;
- Any needed grade-separation structures do not add substantial out-of-direction travel;
- The total cost of providing the path is proportionate to the need. This evaluation should consider the costs of grading, paving, drainage, fences, retaining walls, sound walls, crossings, signs and other necessary design features;
- Grade-separated structures needed to eliminate at-grade crossings; Headlight glare at night is mitigated.

As a result of discouraged use, few two-way separated bike lanes exist. However, in the last decade, there has been an increase in the installation of two-way separated bike lanes.

Some preliminary crash data suggests that while crash rates for two-way separated bike lanes are worse than one-way separated bike lanes, they are still lower than a shared travel lane condition. Survey results indicate that separated bike lanes are preferred over shared lanes or on-street bike lanes by both cyclists and motorists. Another research report concludes that two-way separated bike lanes are preferable on one-way streets on the right side, rather than the left.

972.3 Contra-Flow Bike Lanes

Bike lanes on one-way streets should be on the right side of the roadway and should always be provided on both legs of a one-way couplet. The bike lane may be placed on the left of a one-way street if it decreases the number of conflicts, e.g., those caused by heavy bus traffic or dual right-turn lanes, and if cyclists can safely and conveniently transition in and out of the bike lane on the left. (See Chapter 6 in Appendix L: the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide for detailed information on bike lane configurations at intersections.)

Though riding against traffic on a one-way street is illegal, many cyclists do this if it avoids circuitous out-of-direction travel; in other instances cyclists are observed riding on the sidewalk against the flow of traffic. Rather than condone or try to prohibit these movements, contra-flow bike lanes on a one-way street should be considered under the following circumstances:

- The contra-flow bike lane provides a substantial savings in out-of-direction travel and/or direct access to high-use destinations.
- Safety is improved because of reduced conflicts compared to the longer route.
- There are few intersecting driveways, alleys or streets on the side of the contra-flow lane.
- Bicyclists can safely and conveniently transition in and out of the bike lane at either end of the block.
- The street is wide enough for a bike lane.

DRAFT

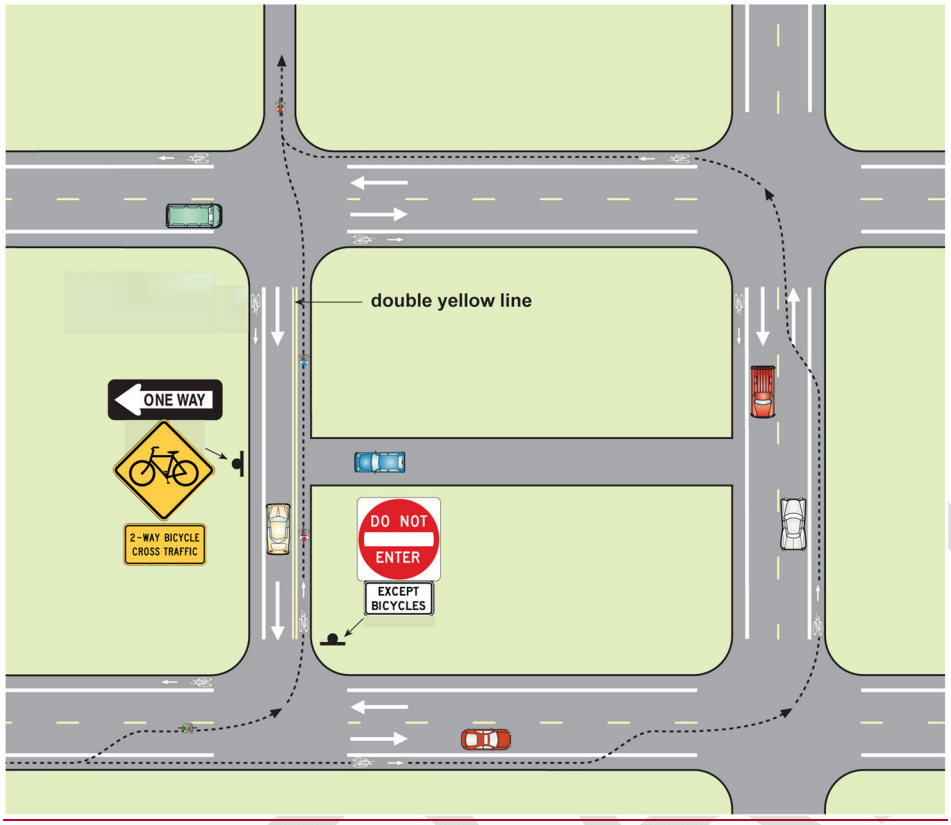
A contra-flow bike lane may also be appropriate on one-way residential streets; this allows cyclists to access the street in both directions.

For a contra-flow bike lane to function well, these features should be incorporated into the design:

- The contra-flow bike lane must be placed on the right-hand side of the street (to motorists' left), separated from on-coming traffic by a double yellow line. This establishes two-way operation for bicyclists, who are riding on the street legally, in a dedicated travel lane.

Figure 900-119: Out-of-direction travel reduced by contra-flow bike lane

DRAFT



- Bike lane stencils and arrows must be used to clearly indicate direction of travel, to discourage cyclists from using the bike lane against the normal traffic flow.
- Intersecting alleys, major driveways and streets must have signs indicating to motorists that they should expect two-way bicycle traffic.

Figure 900-120: Contra-flow bicycle lane



Existing traffic signals should be fitted with special signal heads for bicyclists; this can be activated with either loop detectors or push-buttons (these should be easily reached by bicyclists without having to dismount).

Notes:

1. Where there is insufficient room to provide a bike lane in each direction, it is not necessary to provide a bike lane in the direction of prevailing traffic; bicyclists and motorists can share the road.

2. A contra-flow bike lane should not be installed on a two-way street, even where the travel lanes are separated with a raised median.

Section 980 Bicycle Ramp Design

This section includes information about the detectability features, width, slopes and orientation angles of bicycle ramps.

Sections 981, 982, 983 discuss where to use Bicycle Ramps, and their configurations.

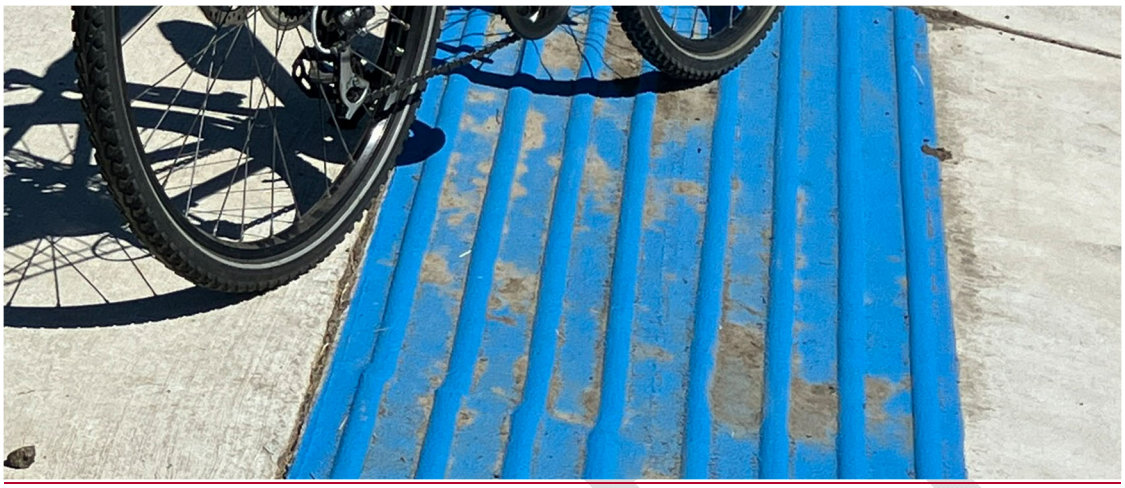
980.1 Detectability features:

Bicycle ramps are provided where a bicycle lane transitions to a sidewalk, shared use path, raised crosswalk or other surface that is elevated from the level of the bicycle lane surface. Bicycle ramps are not intended to be used by pedestrians afoot. However, some pedestrians may use bicycle ramps intentionally or unintentionally. Where bicycle ramps connect to a pedestrian facility, the design of bicycle ramps includes tactile features in order to minimize the accidental use by pedestrians with vision disabilities as well as visible cues to communicate to pedestrians that the ramp is intended for bicycles. Where bicycle ramps do not connect to a pedestrian facility, they do not include tactile features.

An important function of bicycle ramps that merge with shared use paths is the interface between people walking and biking. In order to mitigate the potential for sight-impaired pedestrians to inadvertently walk into a bike ramp, a tactile edge detection is needed along the border of the sidewalk or shared use path. Use detectable guide strips. See Standard Drawing RD909. A tactile walking surface indicator shall be included adjacent to bicycle ramps (See section 825.2).

DRAFT

Figure 900-121 Bicycle Crossing Detectable Guide Strips



980.2 Bicycle Ramp Width:

Where a bike ramp is in line with the approaching bike lane, the bike ramp may be equal in width to the approaching bike lane. Where the bicycle ramp is at a different angle, bicyclists may not ride in the same direction as the orientation of the bicycle ramp. The width of the bicycle ramp should be calculated based on the lateral shift that takes place across the bicycle ramp. Calculate the lateral shift per Equation 900-8. The minimum width for a lateral shift is 8-feet.

~~[Placeholder for future section discussing slopes, etc.]~~

Equation 900-8: Width for Lateral Shift at a Bicycle Ramp

$$WS^2/60$$

Where:

W = width of the horizontal shift of the bike lane into the shared sidewalk or path

S = design speed for the bicycle lane transition (mph), typically 8 mph.

980.3 Bicycle Ramp Slopes

Since bicycle ramps are not intended to be used by pedestrians afoot, they are not considered ADA ramps and the slopes are not controlled by standards for pedestrian accessibility.

Provide a bicycle ramp cross slope as level as feasible. While two-wheeled bicycles are substantially unaffected by cross slope, bicycles with trailers, utility bikes, tricycles, bikes with

DRAFT

training wheels, and other devices with parallel wheels are affected by the cross slope. Bicycle ramps connect to bicycle lanes where the cross slope of the roadway may be significantly steeper than the typical cross slope of a walkway. Where a bicycle lane crosses a crosswalk, the maximum cross slope is 4.9%. Many bicycle ramps are oriented such that bicycles are intended to enter at an angle. ***The cross slope of the bike ramp should be designed in the direction perpendicular to the path of the bicyclist.*** Since the path of a bicyclist may vary from one user to another, an assumption should be made that represents a probable path based on horizontal curvature for a typical bicyclist at a chosen design speed.

The running slope for bicycle ramps should be designed in the direction of the path of the bicyclist. As with cross slope, an assumption should be made that represents a probable path based on horizontal curvature for a typical bicyclist at a chosen design speed. The running slope should be targeted to be 8.3% maximum, in the direction of the path of the bicyclist and designed at 7.5%. The running slope perpendicular and parallel to the grade breaks may be greater or less than this value. Grade breaks may be oriented perpendicular to the direction of the assumed path of the bicyclist to the extent practicable.

980.4 Orientation Angle

Where ramps are oriented at a diagonal angle that is neither perpendicular, nor parallel with a sidewalk, it can be a cue to pedestrians that the ramps are intended for bicycle travel rather than a pedestrian street crossing. Thus, diagonally oriented bicycle ramps have been recommended at roundabouts to aide in distinguishing them as bicycle ramps. However, in order for bicyclists to use a bicycle ramp that is oriented at any angle that is not directly ahead, some bicyclists have to move left into the vehicle lane to orient themselves to enter the ramp at a better angle. Therefore, bicycle ramps that are oriented in line with the bicycle lane are commonly preferable to bicyclists. Bicycle ramps that are oriented diagonally enable bikes to enter with some change to their trajectory and may require speed reduction. Bicycle ramps that are perpendicular to the curb are more likely to require bicyclists to enter from left of the bicycle lane. Thus, bicycle ramps that are perpendicular to a curb may function at locations where bicyclists come to a stop.

The orientation angle is related to the slope, width, and detectability features. The steeper the bicycle ramp, the more likely that bicyclists will enter at a trajectory that is closer to perpendicular with a grade break. Where the bicycle ramp slope is minimal, such as a parallel style ramp, the bicycle ramp may function as a lateral shift.

DRAFT

Section 981 Bike Lane to Shared Use Path

A bike lane may separate from motor vehicle lanes onto a separate alignment to bypass obstacles such as merging lanes, transit stops, a parking lane or the circulatory roadway of a roundabout but rejoin as an on-road bikeway. Bike lanes may also be separated from the roadway as speed, volume and heavy vehicle percentages increase, in order to partially mitigate the speed differential between modes. Means of path separation include horizontal and/or vertical elements. A bike lane may also diverge from the travel way beyond the edge of pavement and join the sidewalk. It serves bicyclists in one-direction, but it serves pedestrians in both directions. In each of these scenarios, a ~~bicycle~~ ramp is required to transition bikes into a pedestrian area. Sometimes a ramp solely for bicycles is not needed. Bicyclists have the option to merge onto a sidewalk at a dustpan style driveway or at a pedestrian curb ramp if its size is sufficient. Where these features do not exist, a bicycle ramp should be provided.

981.1 Bike Ramp Layouts

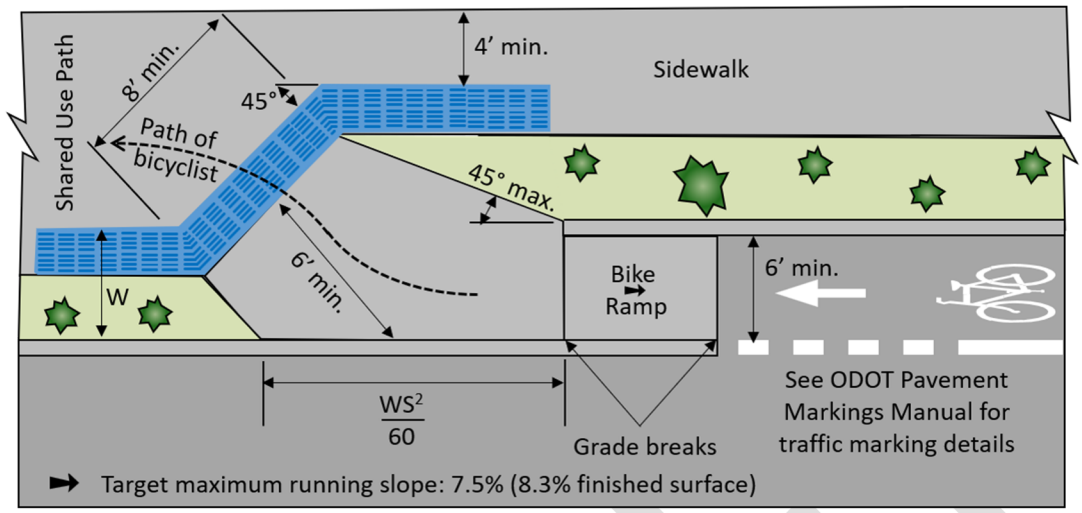
There are several options for joining a bike lane onto a shared sidewalk or shared use path.

In-line bicycle ramp

The in-line bicycle ramp is often the preferred option for bicyclists since bicyclists do not have to change their trajectory in order to enter the bicycle ramp. This is advantageous in areas where there is a strong preference for bicycles to exit the roadway rather than giving bicyclists a choice whether to enter the sidewalk or ride in a lane shared with motor vehicles. The bicycle ramp is the same width as the approaching bicycle lane. The target maximum running slope is 7.5% (8.3% finished surface). This layout enables a space to be provided in between the bicycle ramp and the point where the bikeway is shared with pedestrians. Provide guide strips at a 45-degree angle so that bicycles can cross them at an angle that is closer to perpendicular. The length of the space between the bike ramp and the detectable guide strip boundary can be calculated using Equation 900-8:

DRAFT

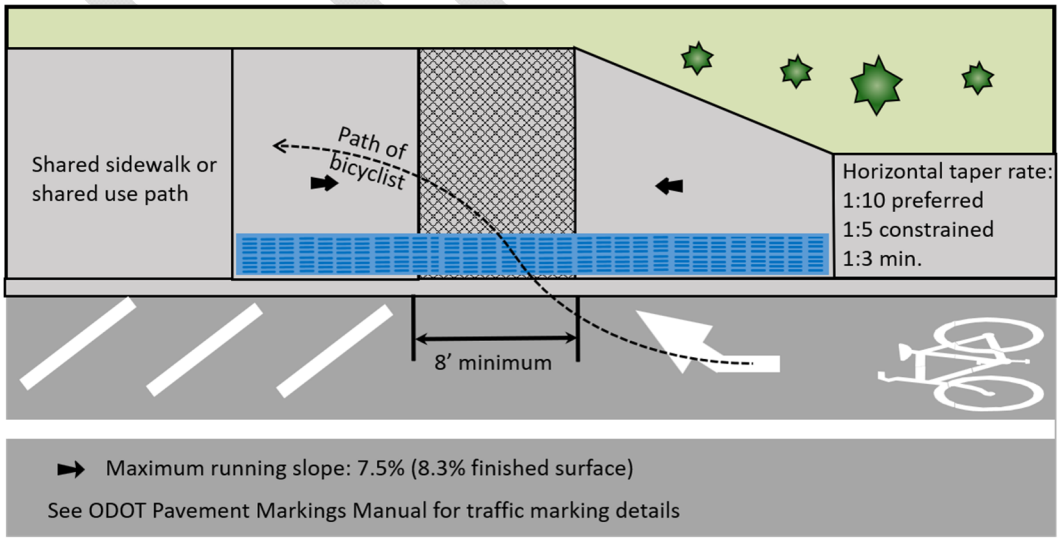
Figure 900-122: Bicycle ramp to Shared Use Path (Bike Lane Drops)



Parallel style bicycle ramp

Another option for providing access for bicycles onto a shared sidewalk is a parallel style curb ramp, designed the same as a pedestrian curb ramp, except there is no detectable warning surface and the throat of the ramp is at least 8-feet wide. The width of the ramp is determined using Equation 900-8. **Provide a minimum 8' wide ramp from the bike lane to the path.** Parallel style curb ramps are similar to dustpan style driveways in that there may not be a false cue for pedestrians with vision disabilities. Thus, detectable guide strips are sometimes not needed. Consult ODOT ADA standards for individual site characteristics to determine whether detectable guide strips may be excluded.

Figure 900-123: Parallel-Style Curb Ramp for Bicyclists



Angled entry bicycle ramp

An angled entry bicycle ramp may be an option in locations where there is a wide buffer zone and bicyclists must travel some distance between the bicycle lane and the shared sidewalk or path such that an in-line bicycle ramp is not practical. The combination of the entry angle and the width of the ramp should be designed to enable bicycles to enter the ramp without having to move left into the adjacent travel lane to orient themselves. Using Equation 900-8, the width of the bicycle ramp increases with the width of the buffer zone. . The minimum width for the ramp is 8-feet.

Figure 900-124: Angled Entry Bicycle Ramp

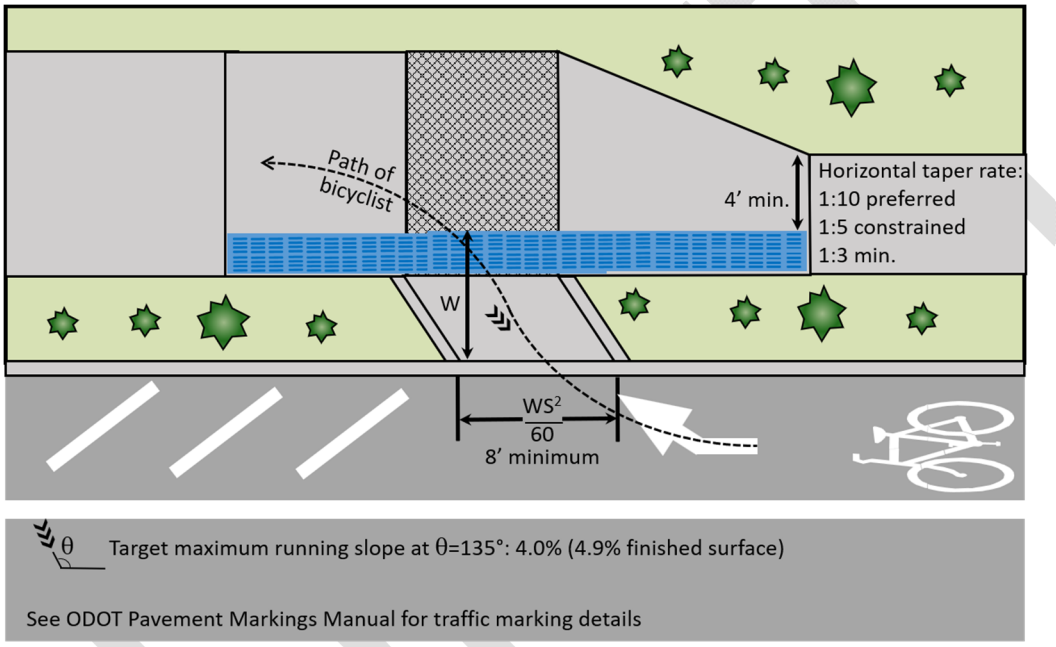


Figure 900-125: Extra Wide Angled Entry Bicycle Ramp



Bicycle ramp at a pedestrian curb ramp

Where a pedestrian curb ramp is provided near the place where bicyclists transition from a bicycle lane onto a shared sidewalk or path, the pedestrian curb ramp can be designed to serve the bicycle movement in addition to the accessibility requirements for pedestrian curb ramps.

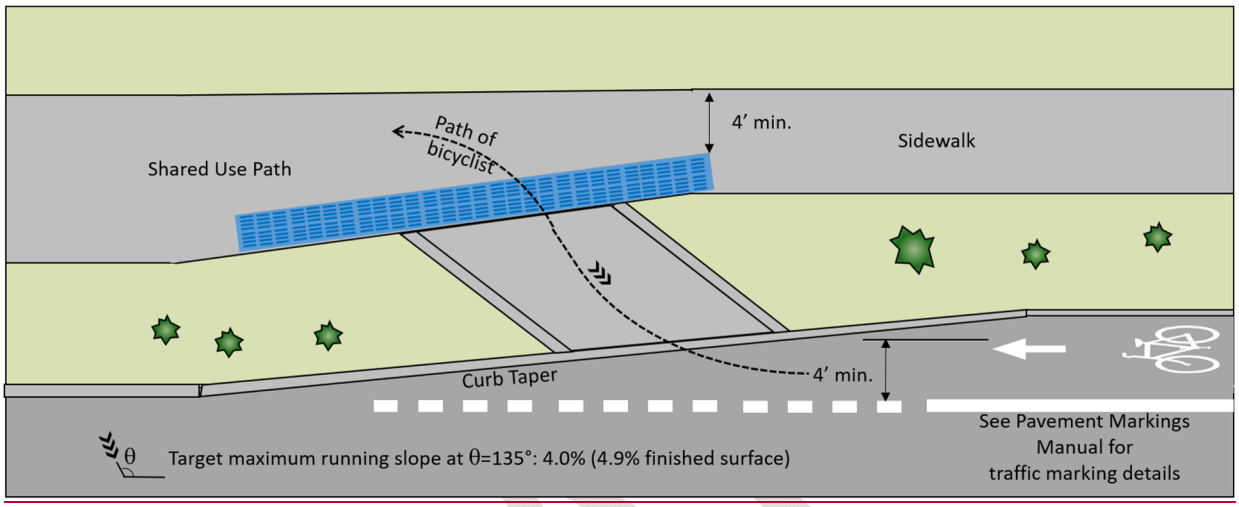
Design a curb ramp to meet ODOT accessibility requirements. See Part 800. Additionally, determine the slope in the assumed direction of the path of a bicyclist. Since bicycles enter at an angle, ramps that are perpendicular to the curb may require bicyclists to move left to enter the ramp. Designing a gentle slope in the direction of bicycle travel minimizes the need to reorient a bicycle to enter the ramp. The running slope of the curb ramp at the angle in the direction of bicycle travel should be targeted to be 4.0% or less (4.9% finished surface). The corresponding running slope and cross slope may need to be reduced in order to serve bicycle travel. Where bicyclists are likely to enter from a stopped position, the need to orient the slope diagonally is reduced.

Bicycle ramp where shoulder tapers away

At locations where the roadway is narrowed with a shoulder taper, such as a roundabout, a bicycle ramp is provided at a position where the width of the shoulder is less than a full bike lane width. Provide a bicycle ramp where there is sufficient shoulder remaining for bicyclists to enter the bicycle ramp without entering the travel lane, with at least 4-feet of shoulder remaining. The tapered curb provides the ability to provide a bicycle ramp design that is a

combination between an angled entry ramp and an entry that is in-line in the direction of bicycle travel. Use Equation 900-8 for the width at the ramp entry. Provide a triangular section on each side of the ramp run with slopes that are relatively flat so that bikes can shift over.

Figure 900-126: Bicycle Ramp Where Shoulder Tapers Away



981.2 Roundabout Bike Ramps

In general, bicyclists will be given a choice to enter a roundabout as a vehicle and occupy a lane until exiting the roundabout, or to use the sidewalks and crosswalks with pedestrians. For these bicyclists, a bike ramp is provided through the curb zone to exit the bike lane on approach to the roundabout and use the walkway and crosswalks in the manner of a pedestrian. This walkway results in a shared use path for a small segment along the central circle. The bike ramp is not required to be fully accessible to pedestrians; however many of the geometrics are similar as power assisted mobility devices may travel in the shoulder under the ORS and could enter the shared use path with these sloped ramps. Bike ramps are not intended for ~~pedestrians~~pedestrian use and ~~requires~~require additional treatments to communicate to the low vision and blind community it's intended use and function. Bike ramps can be confused with pedestrian curb ramps by vision impaired pedestrians. See Section 821.2 for more information on detectable guide strips.

Refer to the RD900s for detectable warning treatments at bike ramps. An important function of bicycle ramps that merge onto the sidewalk is the interface between people walking and biking. To mitigate the potential for sight-impaired pedestrians to inadvertently walk onto a bike ramp, tactile edge detection is needed along the border of the walk. One option for a detectable boundary is to use detectable guide strips.

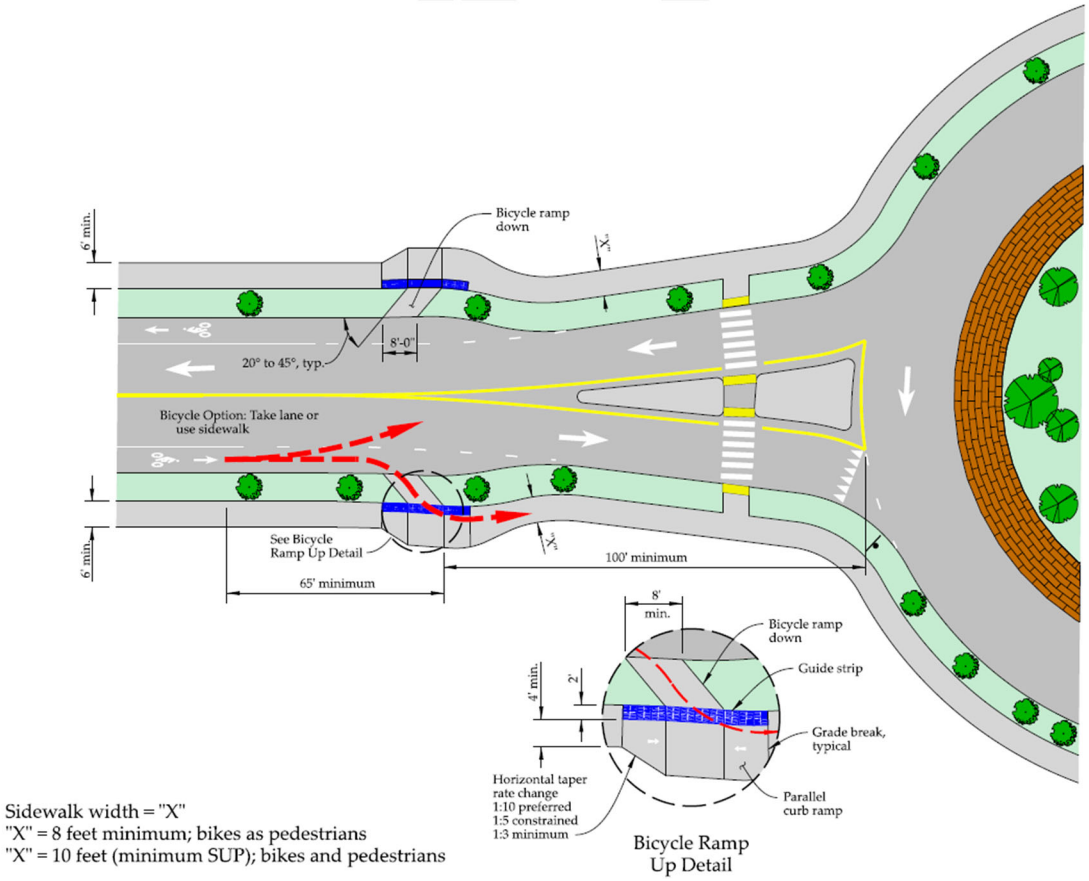
A tactile walking surface indicator shall be included adjacent to bicycle ramps (see Section 821.2). At roundabouts, add a bike ramp to merge from the bike lane onto the shared use path

165 feet in advance of the yield line to the circulatory roadway of a roundabout. See Part 500, Section 509~~ and Appendix L, Figure 1-40~~.

Bicycle ramps only serve bicycle traffic. If there is no sidewalk on the approach to a roundabout, the entrance ramp to the sidewalk or a path serving the roundabout functions for both bicyclists and pedestrians. Use a pedestrian curb ramp rather than a bicycle ramp in that case. **An** ~~important function of bicycle ramps that merge with shared use paths is the interface between people walking and biking. In order to mitigate the potential for sight impaired pedestrians to inadvertently walk into a bike ramp, a tactile edge detection is needed along the border of the sidewalk or shared use path. One option for a detectable boundary is to use detectable guide strips. See Standard Drawing RD909. A tactile walking surface indicator shall be included adjacent to bicycle ramps (See section 825.2).~~**entrance and exit to the sidewalk must be provided where the sidewalk terminates to transition a pedestrian to the shoulder.**

~~900134Where a bike ramp is in line with the approaching bike lane, the bike ramp may be equal in width to the approaching bike lane. See .~~

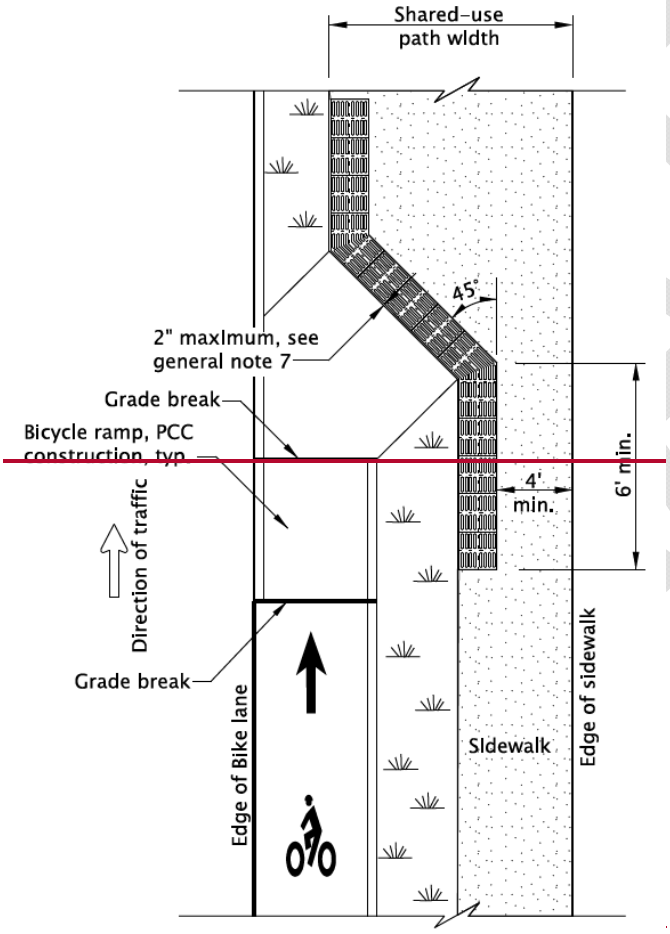
Figure 900-127: Bike Ramp Connection to Sidewalk on Roundabout Approach Street



Section 982 Bike Lanes raised at curb ramps transition areas

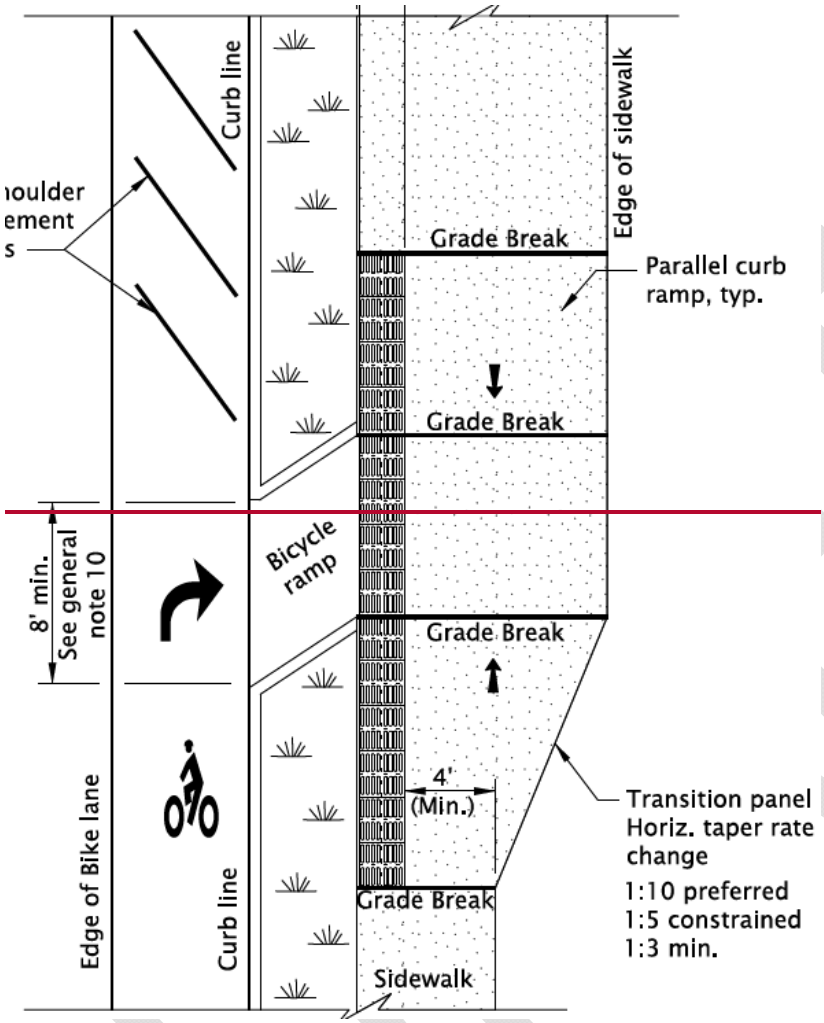
In areas where the slope of pavement around a curb ramp is modified to improve pedestrian accessibility, such as improving counter slope and gutter flow slope, the slopes within the bicycle lane may be modified with greater flexibility than the slopes within vehicle travel lanes.

Figure 900-128: Raised surface in Bicycle ~~ramp to Shared Use Path (Bike~~ Lane ~~Drops)~~to Improve Counter Slope at Crosswalk



~~Where a bike ramp requires bicycles to move parallel to the bike lane, **provide a minimum 8' wide ramp from the bike lane to the path.**~~

Figure - Bike Ramp Parallel to Path



Section 982 Bike Lane to Raised Bike Lane

[Placeholder for future content] See Standard Drawing RD1140.



Section 983 Bike Lane at Raised Crossings

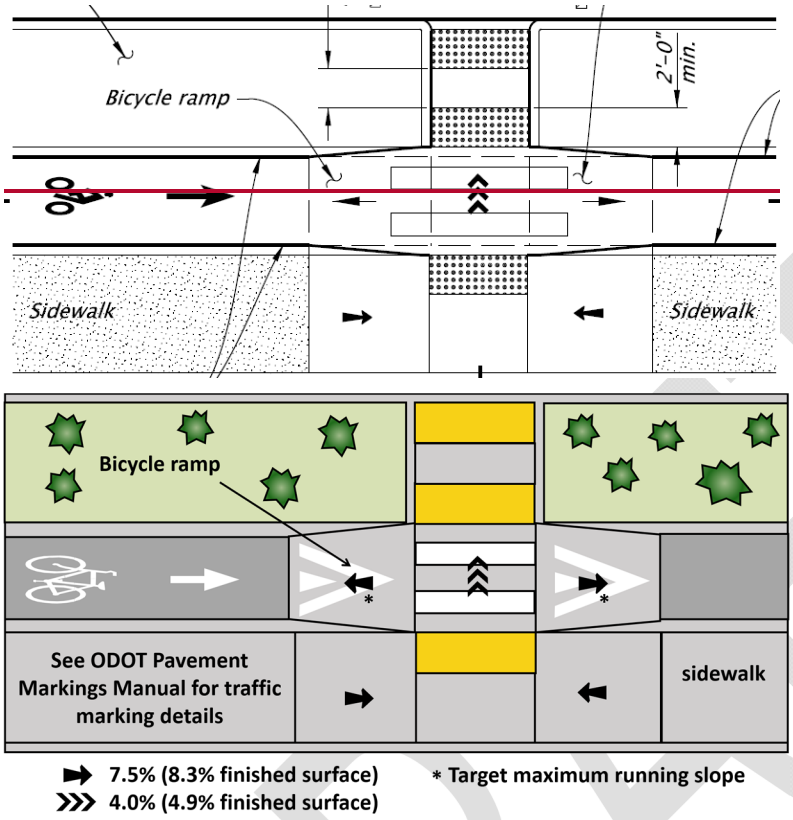
~~[Placeholder for future content]~~

Where bicycle lanes are raised to the elevation of a raised crosswalk, the cross slope of the raised table between bicycle ramps is part of a pedestrian access route for a crosswalk where the slope shall not exceed 4.9%. **Design the bike lane cross slope at 4.0% or less on the raised table**. The cross slope of the bicycle ramps can transition between the cross slope of the shoulder to 4.0% along the length of the bicycle ramp. The recommended running slope for the bicycle ramps is 7.5% or less.

The raised table (between bike ramps) shall be at least as wide as the crosswalk marking.

See Standard Drawing RD1140 Raised crosswalks and raised intersections.

Figure 900-129 Bicycle Ramp to a Raised Crosswalk



Section 984 Bike Lanes at Transit Stops

~~Transit trips begin and end with a walk or bike ride. Pedestrian and bicycle facilities in transit corridors make transit systems more effective. Therefore, high priority should be given to providing sidewalks and bikeways on transit routes and on local streets feeding these routes. Bus stops should provide a pleasant environment for waiting passengers, with shelters, landscaping, adequate buffering from the road and lighting and may also include bike parking. Bus stop design should minimize conflicts with other non-motorized users, such as bicyclists on bike lanes or pedestrians walking past passengers waiting to board.~~

~~Where transit runs along streets with bike lanes, there are four ways that transit stops interact with a bike lane:~~

- ~~Transit vehicle stops in bicycle lane;~~
- ~~Transit vehicle crosses bicycle lane to enter a pull-out;~~
- ~~Transit boarding area is a boarding island and pedestrians cross bicycle lane to enter boarding area;~~
- ~~Bicycle lane exits onto sidewalk in a shared space.~~

~~Due to the dwell time at transit stops, the average running speed of a transit vehicle can be very similar to the average speed of a bicycle rider. As a result, people on bikes often experience a leapfrog effect, where they pass a transit vehicle while it is stopped, are passed by the transit vehicle shortly afterward, and then pass it again having caught up to its next stop. This cycle can continue as long as they continue along the same corridor. Even if a bicyclist stops and waits for the boarding and alighting, the bicyclist will typically catch up to the transit vehicle at the next stop to have the same dilemma repeat itself.~~

~~A typical conflict along such a transit corridor occurs when a bus stops in the bike lane. While the bike lane is blocked, bicyclists can either stop behind the bus and wait or attempt to pass on the left. On high speed or high traffic facilities, passing opportunities might be stressful and risky. When the bus re-enters traffic, a bike could be in the bus driver's blind spot. Since bicyclists are vulnerable users, there's more risk of personal injury at stake with a sideswipe crash than there is between two motor vehicles.~~

~~There are two transit stop configurations that minimize the leapfrog effect. Either a transit vehicle crosses the bike lane to enter a pull out or the transit boarding area is in a separate island such that pedestrians cross the bicycle lane to enter the boarding area. This is referred to as a 'floating bus stop'.~~

~~See Section L107 in Appendix L, the Bicycle and Pedestrian Design Guide for Floating Bus Stop Design.~~

Design for bikeways at transit stops is discussed in Part 700. This includes general information, transit design considerations, the configuration of bicycle lanes at transit stops, requirements at transit stop alterations, transit stop layout design, providing accessibility and amenities, roadway and intersection design, park and ride facilities, and passenger loading zones.

Section 990 Parking

All modes of transportation, except walking, utilize a transportation vehicle that can be used insofar that the vehicle can continue traveling or be left alone at the user's destination. Once the vehicle is parked, the user becomes a pedestrian and requires accommodation to serve pedestrians.

Section 991 Bikeways Next to Vehicle Parking

On-street parking is part of the Transition Realm. Where on-street parking is permitted, the bike lane may be placed between parking and the travel lane or between the parking lane and sidewalk. Separated bike lanes with on-street parking as a buffer are described in Section 945.2.

DRAFT

Motorists are prohibited from using bike lanes for driving and parking but may use them for emergency avoidance maneuvers or breakdowns.

Diagonal parking can cause conflicts with bicyclists: drivers backing out have poor visibility of oncoming cyclists and parked cars obscure other vehicles backing out.

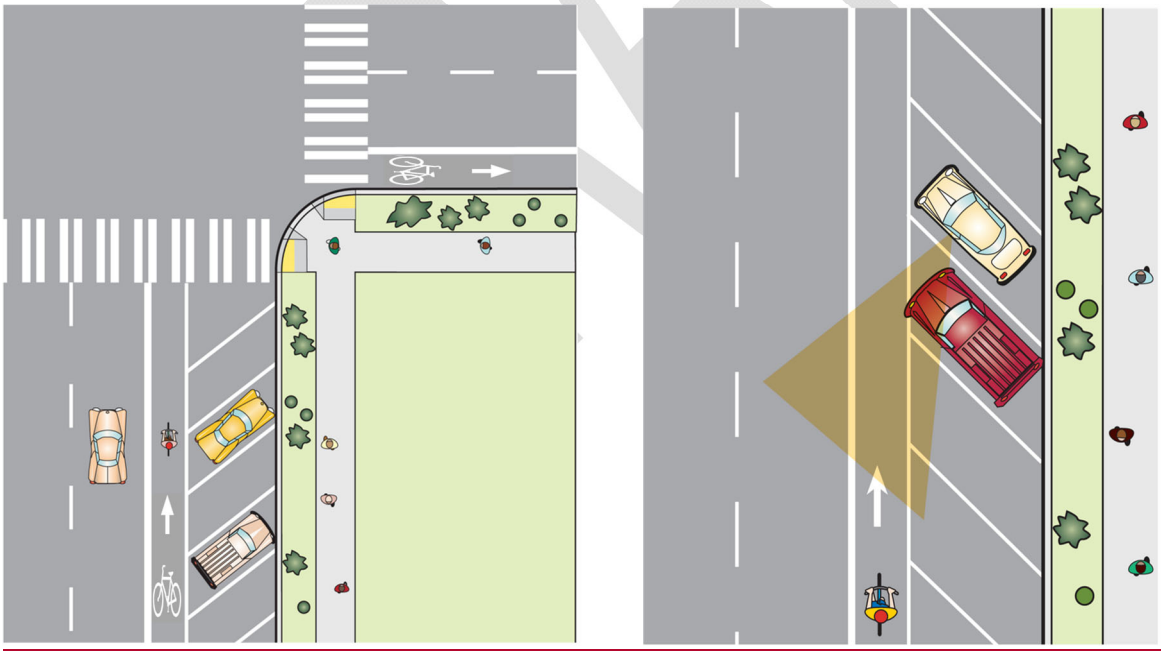
This is mitigated by the slower traffic speeds found on streets with diagonal parking, and cyclists ride close to the center of the adjacent travel lane. Bike lanes may be placed next to diagonal parking if the following recommendations are implemented:

- The parking bays are long enough to accommodate most vehicles, or long vehicles are prohibited;
- A 4 inch stripe separates the bike lane from parking; and
- Enforcement actively cites or removes vehicles encroaching into the bike lane.

Consider back-in diagonal parking: Back-in diagonal parking creates conditions advantageous to all traffic, including bicyclists: drivers can pull into the traffic stream with a good view of oncoming traffic, including bicyclists.

Note: approval from the State Roadway Engineer is required for diagonal parking.

Figure 900-130: Diagonal parking next to a bicycle lane



Section 992 Bicycle Parking

Bicycle parking is necessary for people on bicycles to access destinations. Peoples' decision whether to bicycle can be greatly influenced by the presence of secure bicycle parking. While most bicycle parking may be outside of the highway right-of-way, bicycle parking within the public right-of-way is often desirable in areas with land use destinations. Bicycle parking should either be in clear sight from the bikeway or directional signage should be used so that people park in the designated bike parking rather than tied to appurtenances in the sidewalk buffer zone. Some bicycle racks may be placed with greater spacing to accommodate cargo and adaptive bicycles, which are larger. Many bicyclists use a series of transportation modes. Consider installation of bicycle parking at park and ride lots and transit stops.

Bicycle racks must be designed so that they:

- Don't bend wheels or damage other bicycle parts;
- Accommodate high security U-shaped bike locks;
- Allow users to secure the frame and both wheels;
- Support the frame at two locations;
- Don't obstruct pedestrians (especially when bikes are parked);
- Are covered where users will leave their bikes for a long time; and
- Are easily accessed from the street and protected from motor vehicles.

The simplest, easiest to install and most effective bike rack is the "inverted U" or "staple." Both fulfill all of the above design requirements. To establish a theme or motif, "art racks" are often created to add whimsical and artistic touches to otherwise perfunctory bike racks. In many cases they function well for bike parking, and don't interfere with pedestrian travel. But some racks have features that make it difficult to lock a bicycle securely or protrude too far into the pedestrian's path of travel. The best art racks are variations of the commonly accepted inverted U or staple designs.

When providing bicycle racks for Elementary School sites, use a child bicycle or BMX bicycle as a design vehicle. Ensure that the front and rear wheel of these smaller bicycles are close enough to the two bars of the bicycle rack to properly secure both wheels and frame to the rack. Ensure that some adult-sized bicycles can be secured as well.

Bicycle parking areas within a site may include signs that teach users best practices how to securely park their bicycle.

Curb extensions create good opportunities to provide bicycle parking out of the pedestrian zone, especially in areas where sidewalks are narrow. They also benefit from the proximity of a

DRAFT

curb ramp at the corners. The parking should be placed where it will not obscure visibility of pedestrians crossing the street, or motorists waiting to enter a street.

Where there is insufficient room on the sidewalks to provide sufficient bicycle parking without cluttering the pedestrian zone, bicycle parking can be provided in the street. One parallel car parking spot can provide parking for up to 12 bicycles. It must be buffered by bollards, curb extensions or other forms of positive protection.

For additional bicycle parking design criteria, see Chapter 3 of Appendix L.

Section 993 Parking Other Micro Mobility Devices

People who travel using segways, skateboards, longboards, scooters and other small devices may bring them into their destinations. However, some businesses do not allow them inside and providing parking may enable people to use these other modes of transportation. Conventional bike parking may not function well for other devices. Where a known demand exists for another mode of transportation, parking may be considered in the right-of-way to serve that transportation mode.

[Placeholder for future details for design criteria to provide parking for each device]

Section 994 Bike and Scooter Share Stations

Bike share and scooter share services are characterized as systems where people generally rent a bicycle or a scooter from a docking station or hub and ride to another hub near their destination. Dockless systems allow users to stow the self-locking shared transportation device anywhere the user decides. This relies on the plentiful provision of adequate unused space on sidewalks to be used as potential bike share or scooter share parking. These systems can make trips on mass transit more viable when transit stops are not located as close to destinations as users prefer. A preferred location for bike share and scooter share stations is in proximity to transit stops where feasible.

Where docking share systems exist, a docking station or hub can be designed similar to bicycle parking. In addition to the siting criteria for bike parking, a docking station may also require electrical power and may include information kiosks and pay stations. Pay stations need to meet ADA requirements for operable parts: they require a clear space a minimum of 2.5′ x 4′ with a maximum 2 percent cross slope and controls within a 10-inch horizontal reach from a height between 15″ and 48″ above the ground. Docking stations may be located in an on-street parking space or within the sidewalk buffer zone. A minimum 6-foot clear space outside of traffic is needed for people to pull a bicycle out of a docking station.

DRAFT

Section 995 Trailhead Design

Trailheads are locations where recreational bicycle trips begin but may have initiated with a motor vehicle. Design features include design for automobile parking, bicycle parking and amenities for bicycle travel such as restrooms, repair stands, water fountains, information kiosks, etc.

Section 996 References

- Oregon Department of Transportation, Analysis Procedures Manual, Salem, OR, ~~2020~~2025 https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Pages/APM.aspx
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Interpretation of ORS 366.514, Salem, OR, https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Programs/TDD%20Documents/Interpretation-of-ORS-366.514.pdf
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Mission Statement, Salem, OR https://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/About/Pages/Mission.aspx
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan, Salem, OR, 2016 https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Documents/OBPP.pdf
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Bicyclist Manual, Salem, OR, 2021, https://www.oregon.gov/odot/programs/tdd documents/oregon-bicyclist-manual.pdf
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Highway Plan, Salem, OR, 1999 https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Pages/Plans.aspx
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Transportation Safety Action Plan, Salem, OR, 2021 https://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/Safety/Pages/TSAP.aspx
- Oregon Department of Transportation, ORS 366.514 Screening Flowchart, Salem, OR, https://www.oregon.gov/odot/RPTD/RPTD%20Document%20Library/Bike-Bill-Screening-Flow-Chart.pdf
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Strategic Action Plan, Salem, OR, ~~2021~~2025, https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Pages/SAP.aspx
- Oregon Department of Transportation, Transportation System Plan Guidelines, Salem, OR, 2020 https://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/Planning/TSP-Guidelines/Pages/default.aspx
- Oregon Department of Transportation, ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual, Salem, OR, ~~2022~~2025, https://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/Engineering/Documents_TrafficStandards/Traffic-Line-Manual.pdf

DRAFT

- Oregon Department of Transportation, Traffic Manual, Salem, OR, ~~2023~~2024, https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Engineering/Docs_TrafficEng/Traffic-Manual-~~2023~~2024.pdf
- Oregon Department of Transportation, ODOT NEPA Manual, Section 426.17, Salem, OR, ~~2021~~2024, https://www.oregon.gov/odot/GeoEnvironmental/Docs_NEPA_Manual/426.NEPA_Manual.pdf
- Oregon Department of Transportation, ODOT Pavement Design Guide, Salem, OR, 2019 https://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/Construction/Documents/pavement_design_guide.pdf - page=42
- American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, ~~4th~~5th Edition, Washington, DC, ~~2012~~2024.
- Colorado Department of Transportation, Roadway Design Guide – Chapter ~~14~~13 Bicycle and Pedestrian Facilities, Denver, CO, ~~2015~~ 2023 https://www.codot.gov/business/designsupport/bulletins_manuals/2023-cdot-roadway-design-guide/chapter_13_bicycle_and_pedestrian_facilities.pdf
- Federal Highway Administration, Achieving Multimodal Networks: Applying Design Flexibility and Reducing Conflicts FHWA-HEP-16-055, Washington, DC, 2016 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/multimodal_networks/
- Federal Highway Administration, Bicycle Network Planning & Facility Design Approaches in the Netherlands and in the United States FHWA-PL-16-019, Washington, DC, 20 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/network_planning_design/
- Federal Highway Administration, Bike Network Mapping Idea Book FHWA-HEP-16-054, Washington, DC, 2016 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/bikemap_book/
- Federal Highway Administration, Bikeway Selection Guide, Washington, DC, 2019 https://highways.dot.gov/sites/fhwa.dot.gov/files/2022-07/fhwasa18077.pdf
- Federal Highway Administration, Case Studies in Delivering Safe, Comfortable and Connected Pedestrian and Bicycle Networks FHWA-HEP-16-009, Washington, DC, https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/network_report/

DRAFT

- Federal Highway Administration, City of Richmond: Bicycle and Pedestrian Network Improvement Study FHWA-HEP-17-074, Washington, DC, 2017 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/richmond_nis/
- Federal Highway Administration, Measuring Multimodal Connectivity Pilot Grant Program Final Report FHWA-HEP-21-024, Washington, DC, 2021 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/measuring_multimodal/
- Federal Highway Administration, Small Town and Rural Multimodal Networks, Washington, DC, 2016 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/small_towns/
- Federal Highway Administration, Separated Bike Lane Planning and Design Guide, Washington, DC, 2015 https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/publications/separated_bikelane_pdg/page00.cfm
- Massachusetts Department of Transportation Separated Bike Lane Planning & Design Guide, Boston, MA, 2015, https://www.mass.gov/lists/separated-bike-lane-planning-design-guide ~~https://www.mass.gov/lists/separated-bike-lane-planning-design-guide~~
- Michigan Department of Transportation Sidepath Intersection and Crossing Treatment Guide, Lansing, MI, 2018, https://www.michigan.gov/-/media/Project/Websites/MDOT/Travel/Safety/Road-User/Bicycling/Research/Sidepath-Intersection-Crossing-Treatment-Guide.pdf?rev=0e176c86dac34470ab7baa688cbce943
- Minnesota Department of Transportation, Bicycle Facility Design Manual, St. Paul, MN, ~~2020~~2024, https://www.dot.state.mn.us/bike/bicycle-facility-design-manual.html
- National Transportation Safety Board, Safety Research Report - Bicyclist Safety on US Roadways: Crash Risks and Countermeasures, Washington DC, 2019 https://www.ntsb.gov/news/events/Pages/2019-DCA18SS002-BMG.aspx
- Pennsylvania Department of Transportation Design Manual Part 2 Contextual Roadway Design – Chapter 14 Bicycle Facilities, Harrisburg, PA, 2024 https://www.dot.state.pa.us/public/pubsforms/Publications/PUB%2013/March%202024%20Change%20No.%205.pdf
- Portland Bureau of Transportation, Portland Protected Bicycle Lane Planning and Design Guide, Portland, OR, 2021 https://www.portland.gov/sites/default/files/2022/portland-protected-bicycle-lane-design-guide-v2021-050521-small.pdf
- Washington State Department of Transportation Design Manual - Chapter 1520 Roadway Bicycle Facilities, Olympia, WA 2024 https://wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/M22-01/1520.pdf

DRAFT

- Lusk, A.C., Furth, P.G., Morency, P., Miranda-Moreno, L.F., Willett, W.C. and Dennerlein, J.T.: Risk of injury for bicycling on cycle tracks versus in the street, Injury Prevention, 2011 Apr; 17(2): 131-135. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3064866/
- Monsere, C., Dill, J., McNeil, N., Clifton, K.J., and Foster, N.: Lessons from the Green Lanes: Evaluating Protected Bike Lanes in the U.S. National Institute for Transportation and Communities, NITC-RR-583, June 2014. https://pdxscholar.library.pdx.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1143&context=cengin_fac
- Zangenehpour, Sohail et al: Are signalized intersections with cycle tracks safer? A case-control study based on automated surrogate safety analysis using video data, Accident Analysis and Prevention, 21 Sept 2015, http://cyclist.ie/wp-content/uploads/2016/09/Safety-of-signalized-intersections-with-cycle-tracks.pdf
- US Forest Service and Federal Highway Administration, Equestrian Design Guidebook for Trails, Trailheads and Campgrounds, December 2007, https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/recreational_trails/publications/fs_publications/07232816/page06.cfm

DRAFT

Part 1000 Design Exceptions

DRAFT

Section 1001 Introduction

The information in this section describes the design exception process for planning studies and project development. In addition, this section details the design elements and features that require design exceptions as well as the information needed to justify approvals of design exceptions. The design standards are generally described in Part 100 and further defined for particular highway classifications and environments throughout the HDM.

Section 1002 Definitions

ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception (Form 734-5112) –

An engineering report documenting the request for an exception from a standard of practice for curb ramp design that requires State Roadway Engineer approval or Federal Highway Administration documentation. ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception form requires a professional engineering seal from both the Engineer of Record (EOR) and the State Roadway Engineer.

Certified Local Public Agency –

A local agency that has achieved or maintains certification per the processes in Section B of the ODOT Local Agency Guidelines for Certified Local Public Agencies. https://www.oregon.gov/odot/LocalGov/Pages/LAG-Manual.aspx

General Design Exception (Form 734-5336) –

An engineering report documenting the request for an exception from a standard of practice for roadway design that requires State Roadway Engineer approval or Federal Highway Administration documentation. The roadway General Design Exception Request Form requires a professional engineering seal from both the Engineer of Record (EOR) and the State Roadway Engineer.

Technical Concurrence Memo –

A written communication, which may be via email, between the Engineer of Record and technical subject matter experts documenting consultation regarding a specific design element incorporated in a design that is retained within the project records. Concurrence may be from the State Traffic Engineer, State Roadway Engineer, or technical resource subject matter expert that has been delegated authority.

DRAFT

Section 1003 General

It is the designer's responsibility to design from the best practices perspective to incorporate design elements that optimize the operation and safety of the system but stay within constrained funding limits. This is the intent of Practical Design, getting the most out of limited funds for the benefit of the entire system not just the project. In the context of the project, if the proposed impacts from the design are deemed too great, then, with proper justification, a design exception can be entertained. The S.C.O.P.E. elements as outlined in Part 100 provide context for conflicting parameters to coexist.

It is important to keep project and corridor context in mind. While any one solution may be appropriate in a rural setting, this does not automatically mean that the solution is to be used statewide in complex urban contexts. A right of way impact in one context may mean a purchase of property and in a different context a design exception is used to avoid any right of way impacts. Consultation with the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff will assist the design engineer in evaluating the specific context of the project and when a design exception is required. Consultant designers should also consult with Region Roadway staff prior to discussion or in coordination with ETSB.

Design exceptions typically originate during the project development process through Project Teams, or in some instances, during the planning process. Design exceptions should originate as early as practical in the project development process. The intent of design exceptions is to determine and justify that good engineering decisions are made involving design standards in constrained areas. Design exceptions in high-density urban areas can be more common due to the constraints in an urban setting, such as right of way impacts and construction costs.

Although most design exceptions are requested when the design does not meet minimum standards, a design exception may also be requested when applying new design concepts or tools that are not governed within existing standards. For experimental treatments, the design exception process will document decisions and be a formal method for seeking FHWA approval when required. The design exception is also used as documentation when ODOT is evaluating the efficacy of roadway treatments.

1003.1 Approval Authority

The Chief Engineer has delegated authority for determination of design standards on State and Federal-Aid projects.

The State Roadway Engineer, through delegations from the Chief Engineer, has authority to approve exceptions to design standards for ODOT projects.

Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) may review and approve design exceptions on projects that involve the National Highway System (NHS). FHWA limits review to design

DRAFT

exceptions for the 10 controlling criteria shown in Table 1000-2. If the design exception does not include any of the 10 criteria, FHWA does not need to approve the exception. See Section 1003.5 for approval processes on local agency projects.

1003.2 Planning Design Exceptions

Design exceptions formally obtained in writing during the Planning, Environmental or Survey phases need not be requested again unless significant changes have been made to the design. A review of the approved design exception needs to be made prior to the Design Acceptance Package (DAP) to ensure that the exception is still valid for the project. A list of the design standards that must be considered in the exception process, depending on the type of project, can be found in Figure 1000-3.

1003.3 Planning Projects

Planning studies may require design exceptions to standards. Transportation System Plans, Refinement Plans, Facility Plans, Transportation Growth Management studies, Access Management Plans, or Corridor Plans should not be adopted with non-standard highway features unless the State Roadway Engineer has approved a design exception or has indicated in writing that a design exception would likely be approved. Typically, corridor studies are not developed with a level of detail that involves an exception for design standards. Transportation Growth Management (TGM) funded projects and refinement plans may have enough detail and information that would support design exception requests. As with normal project development projects, the appropriate background information and justification must be obtained or be available to initiate the design exception process.

For a project that may be constructed within five years, the planner or project leader in charge of the planning project should contact the Region Roadway Manager to assist in putting together the design exception request. The design exception request should be processed in the same manner as a project development design exception, which is listed in Section 1004.

For projects that may be constructed within five to ten years, the design exceptions should be identified, and the State Roadway Engineer should give a written indication that a design exception is warranted and would probably be approved.

For projects anticipated beyond 10 years to construction, consultation with the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff about non-standard items should be made, but no formal action is required on these types of projects. Non-standard design items should not be shown on plans or maps when the project is more than ten years to construction. A change of context can occur such that proposed justification would no longer be valid at the time of construction.

DRAFT

1003.4 Project Development

Exceptions to design standards should be first discussed at project scoping, project team meetings, or during reconnaissance studies. When enough data is available, agreement on standards, and from which standards to request exceptions, should be reached at these meetings. Requests for design exception require justification. Some considerations which may cause a request for an exception to the design standards are listed below:

- Excessive construction cost or cost/benefit
- Compatibility with adjacent sections
- No plans for improvement of adjacent sections in the foreseeable future
- Proposed improvements or changes in standards for the highway corridor
- Preservation of historic property or scenic value
- Additional right of way requirements
- Environmental impacts
- Low crash history and/or crash potential
- Low traffic volumes

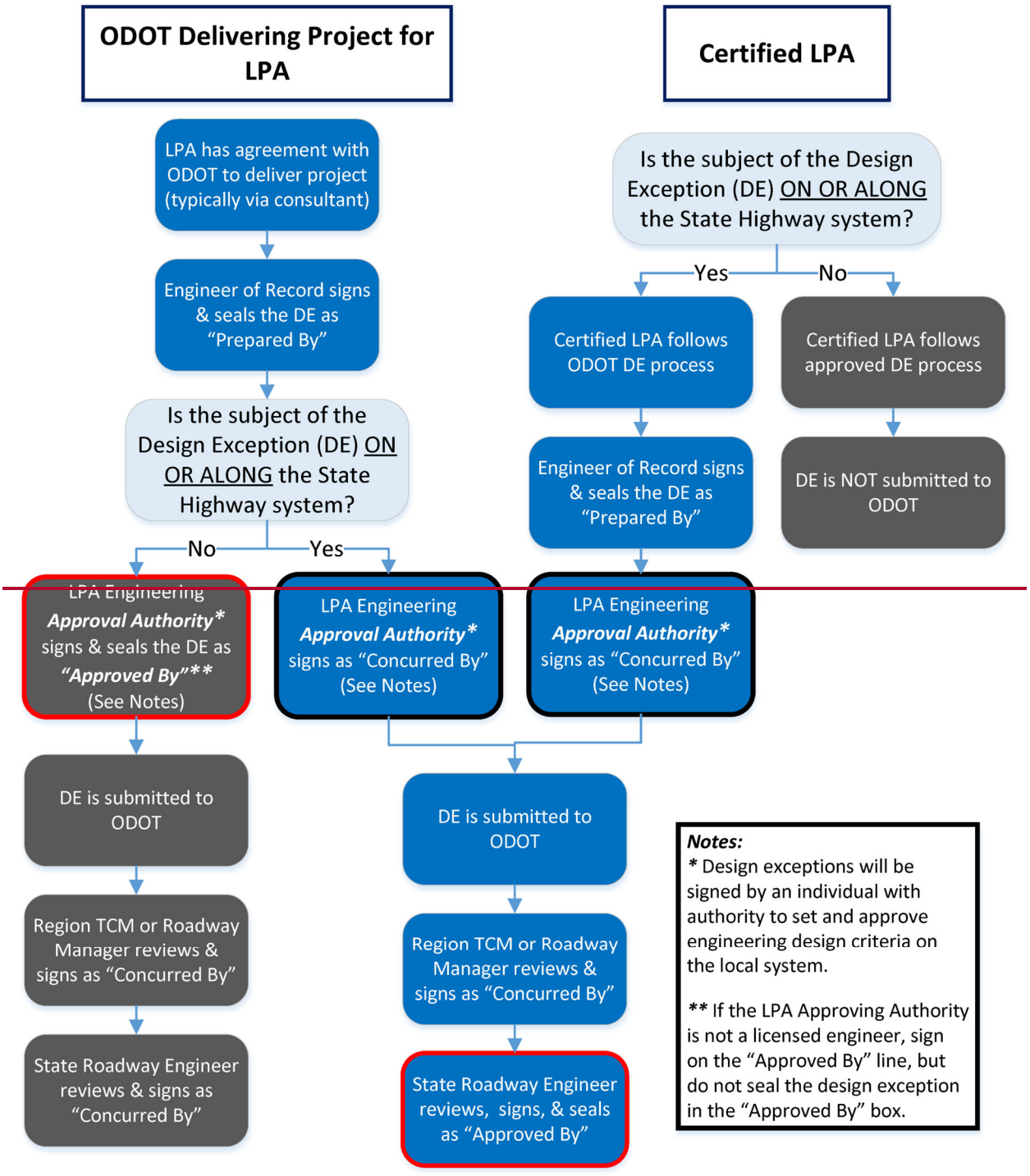
Simply making a request for a design exception is not assurance that the request will be granted. Therefore, early submittal of the request is paramount to a smooth design process. Unless an exception from the requirements of Project Delivery Operational Notice PD-02 has been acquired, design exceptions shall be submitted and approved prior to or at the Design Acceptance Package (DAP) milestone.

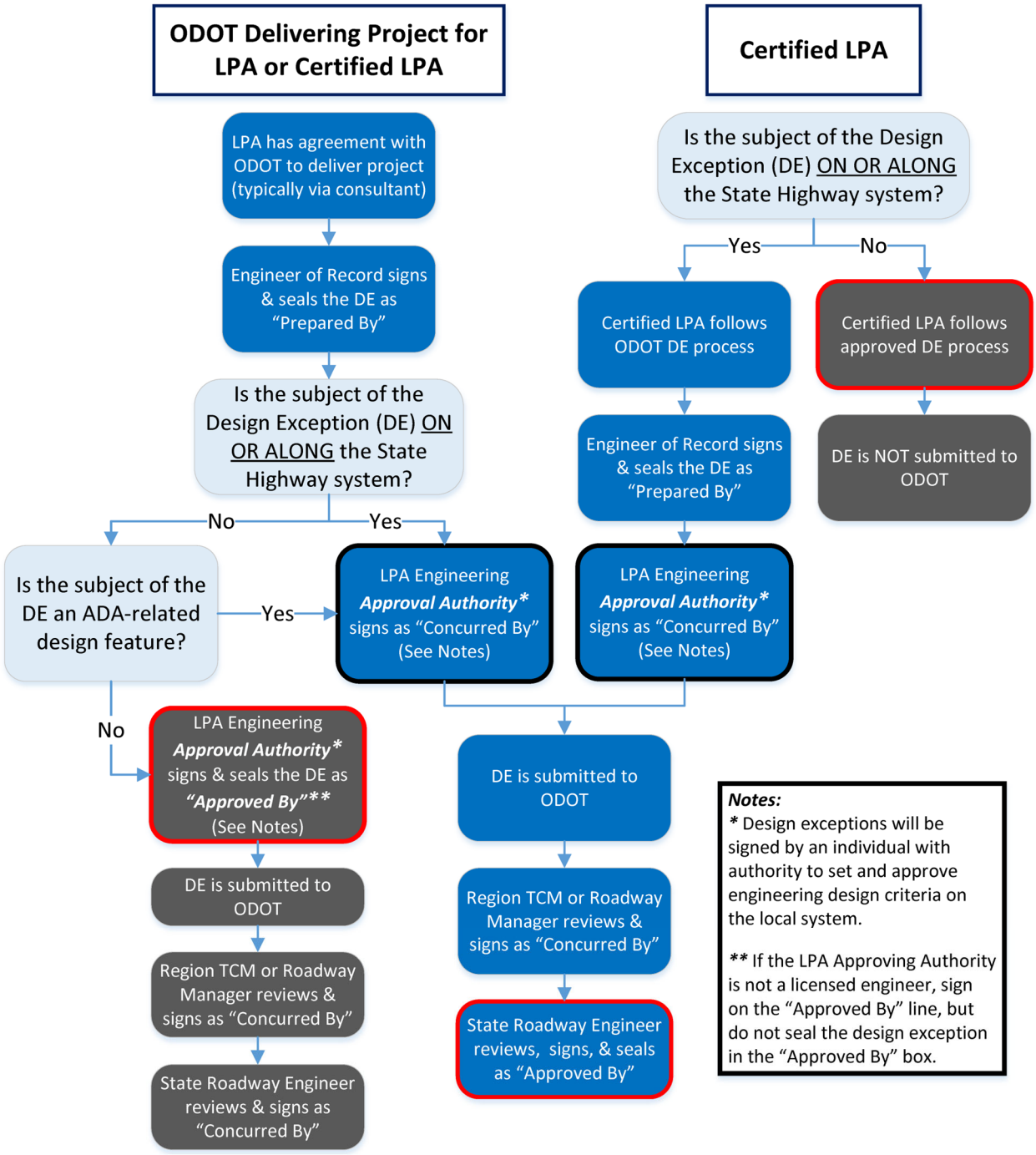
1003.5 Local Agency Projects

For all projects on State Highways or NHS roads, any design element that does not meet HDM or AASHTO standards, respectively, must be justified and documented by means of a design exception. If ODOT is delivering a local agency project, regardless of whether the project is on State Highway or NHS roads, any design element that does not meet HDM or AASHTO standards, as applicable, must be justified and documented by means of a design exception. Generally, ODOT is the agency with authority to approve design exceptions, but FHWA may also needs to review and approve design exceptions for some projects. However, the local public agencies (LPA) may process and approve design exceptions according to Figure 1000-1.

DRAFT

Figure 1000-1: Local Public Agency (LPA) Project General Design Exception Approval Process





1003.5.1 Non-Certified LPA Projects Delivered by ODOT

When a non-certified LPA has an agreement with ODOT for delivery of a project, contract plans and design exceptions are processed through the ODOT Regional Local Agency Liaison who

then reviews with the Region Tech Center to ensure consistent design quality. For non-certified LPA projects being delivered by ODOT, submit design exception requests on ODOT's design exception request form (form number 734-5336).

Figure 1000-1 and the following provide the design exception review process for non-certified LPA projects being delivered by ODOT:

- If the subject of the design exception is on or along the State Highway:
  - Use the ODOT design exception request form
  - Engineer of record seals and signs as "Prepared By"
  - LPA engineering approval authority signs as "Concurred By". The LPA engineering approval authority is the individual with authority to set and approve design criteria on the local system.
  - Design exception is submitted to ODOT for approval
  - Region Technical Center Manager or Region Roadway Manager reviews and signs the design exception as "Concurred By"
  - State Roadway Engineer reviews, seals, and signs the design exception as "Approved By". The State Roadway Engineer's signature should be the last signature applied to the form.
- If the subject of the design exception is NOT on or along the State Highway:
  - Use the ODOT design exception request form
  - Engineer of record seals and signs as "Prepared By"
  - LPA engineering approval authority seals and signs as "Approved By". The LPA engineering approval authority is the individual with authority to set and approve design criteria on the local system. If the LPA engineering approval authority is not a licensed engineer, the box designated for the approver's seal will be left blank.
  - Design exception is submitted to ODOT for concurrence
  - Region Technical Center Manager or Region Roadway Manager reviews and signs the design exception as "Concurred By"
  - State Roadway Engineer reviews and signs the design exception as "Concurred By". The State Roadway Engineer's signature should be the last signature applied to the form.

For curb ramps on or along the state highway, ADA curb ramp design exceptions are approved with ODOT's processes and forms described in Section 1006. Designers involved in local agency contracts should contact the project manager or contract administrator named as the agency point of contact in the contract.

DRAFT

1003.5.2 Certified LPA Projects

Certified local agencies approve design exceptions on federally funded projects, except those on bridges and state highways. The Local Agency Certification Program uses an established compliance review process to ensure certified local agencies follow their established design exception approval procedures.

Figure 1000-1 and the following provide the design exception review process for Certified LPA projects:

- If the subject of the design exception is on or along the State Highway:
    - Certified LPA follows the ODOT design exception process and uses the ODOT design exception request form (form number 734-5336)
    - Engineer of record seals and signs as "Prepared By"
    - LPA engineering approval authority signs as "Concurred By". The LPA engineering approval authority is the individual with authority to set and approve design criteria on the local system.
    - Design exception is submitted to ODOT for approval
    - Region Technical Center Manager or Region Roadway Manager reviews and signs the design exception as "Concurred By"
    - State Roadway Engineer reviews, seals, and signs the design exception as "Approved By". The State Roadway Engineer's signature should be the last signature applied to the form.
- If the subject of the design exception is NOT on or along the State Highway, the Certified LPA follows their design exception process that was approved during the certification process and does NOT submit the design exception to ODOT for approval. However, if ODOT is delivering the project for the Certified LPA, design exceptions are processed through ODOT.

For curb ramps on or along the state highway, ADA curb ramp design exceptions are approved with ODOT's processes and forms described in Section 1006. Designers involved in local agency contracts should contact the project manager or contract administrator named as the agency point of contact in the contract.

1003.5.3 Non-Federally Funded Projects on NHS Local Agency Jurisdiction Roads

For non-federally funded projects on local agency jurisdiction NHS roads, certified and non-certified local agencies may process and approve design exceptions, and ODOT ensures design quality by means of an audit process. The contract plans and design exceptions for all non-

DRAFT

federally funded projects on local agency jurisdiction NHS roads are provided to the ODOT ETSB Roadway Engineering Section either on a project-by-project or annual basis. In addition, a list of all projects is to be submitted on an annual basis. Some of these projects are then selected for review. ODOT works with FHWA and local governments to correct any issues as needed. See MAP 21 NHS Roles and Responsibilities, Appendix Q, for information on roles and responsibilities and lane width requirements.

Section 1004 Design Exception Request Process

In order to obtain timely State Roadway Engineer and FHWA approvals, design exception requests should be recommended by the Region Roadway Manager and Area Manager (or equivalent) and forwarded to the State Roadway Engineer as soon as the need is identified. Unless an exception from the requirements of Project Delivery Operational Notice PD-02 has been acquired, design exceptions shall be submitted and approved prior to or at the Design Acceptance Package (DAP) milestone. For design exceptions critical to the project design, approval should be obtained as early as possible. Requests for design exceptions must be accompanied by justification, documentation and should include mitigation in the design. Processing of exceptions to design standards will be undertaken as soon as agreement is reached in the Region. Figure 1000-3 shows the General Design Exception request form (form number 734-5336).

Local Public Agency (LPA) project design exceptions follow a slightly different process (see Figure 1000-1).

Requests for exceptions to design standards with justification and mitigation shall be submitted to the State Roadway Engineer and approved prior to or at the DAP milestone and prior to final incorporation of design features into project plans and/or other documents. Allow a minimum of 2 weeks for proposed general design exceptions to be reviewed and approved by the State Roadway Engineer. However, review may take longer than 2 weeks if revisions are needed to address review comments. Submitting a draft design exception for review before submitting a final proposed design exception can help shorten the time needed for review and approval of the final design exception (see 1004.1).

1004.1 Draft Design Exception Reviews

The ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff review design exceptions and provide the State Roadway Engineer with a formal recommendation for approval or rejection. Early informal consultation with Roadway Engineering staff is encouraged through submission and review of draft design exceptions. When submitting final design exceptions, please include the names of Roadway Engineering Section staff that were involved in preliminary discussions or draft reviews. This will assist in having the same reviewer throughout the process.

DRAFT

For general design exceptions, the ODOT General Design Exception Request form (form number 734-5366) may be used to create a draft document to review.

A best practice for ADA curb ramp design exceptions is to develop a draft design exception as a Word document. ETSB Roadway Engineering Section provides a Word template on the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception webpage. Draft reviews should not be done in the automated ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception form for a variety of reasons, including potential to corrupt the file, lack of track changes, and limited text editing functionality. Only after the design exception request is ready for final submission should the information be moved to the automated ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception form.

Place the draft in the ProjectWise folder for the project and notify the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff by email to the ODOT Design Exception inbox at ODOTDesignExceptions@odot.oregon.gov. The draft document should contain the information for the request and be named using ODOT's ProjectWise naming conventions. By submitting drafts to the ODOT Design Exception inbox, the Design Exception Administrator can record receipt of the draft design exception in the Design Exception tracking documents. The ETSB Roadway Engineering Section tracks the status of active design exceptions to ensure all are either approved or closed prior to PS&E. If the draft design exception is no longer needed for the project due to design changes, please notify the Design Exception Administrator via email to ODOTDesignExceptions@odot.oregon.gov to avoid project delays.

1004.2 Design Exception Procedures

The following steps define the design exception procedure for ODOT projects:

Step 1 Project teams determine justification for design exception(s) at scoping, design phases, or planning process.

Step 2 For general design exceptions, request a design exception control number using the online form at https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Engineering/Pages/DENumber.aspx (if not already requested during the review of the draft design exception).

Step 3 Roadway designer prepares design exception with supporting justification, with review from Region Roadway Manager. The data should include the information shown in Table 1000-1 and described in Section 1005.1. If the Designer is the Engineer of Record, the Designer digitally signs and seals the design exception request and digitally signs the "Prepared By" line, otherwise the Engineer of Record digitally seals and signs the exception request. (See Technical Directive TSB21-01(D) for ODOT digital seal and digital signature requirements.) Consultation with the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff is encouraged during the preparation of the request and prior to signing by the Engineer of Record. If the design exception is related to a bridge structure ~~or~~, barrier protecting a bridge column, or bridge rail,

consult with the ODOT Bridge Section during preparation of the request and prior to signing by the Engineer of Record.

Step 4 The program manager is the ODOT Area Manager, District Manager, or State Bridge Engineer (for exceptions relating to a bridge structure, barrier protecting a bridge column, or bridge rail), ~~or Urban Mobility Office (UMO) Manager~~. The program manager reviews request and consults with Engineer of Record to assure that the request accurately describes the conditions that warrant a design exception. The Program Manager then digitally signs the design exception request on the "Concurred by" line and forwards to the ODOT Region Technical Center Manager or the Region Roadway Manager.

Step 5 The ODOT Region Technical Center Manager or the Region Roadway Manager reviews the request and consults with the engineer of record and other applicable groups in Region, such as Traffic or Safety. The Region Technical Center Manager or the Region Roadway Manager digitally signs the design exception if they concur with the request.

NOTE: Design exceptions formally obtained in writing during the Planning, Environmental or Survey phases need not be requested again. A list of the design standards that must be considered in the exception process, depending on the type of project, can be found in Figure 1000-3.

Step 6 The design exception, or ProjectWise link to the design exception, is submitted by email to the ODOT Design Exception inbox at ODOTDesignExceptions@odot.oregon.gov. The design exception will then be forwarded to the State Roadway Engineer in the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section. Depending on the design exception, the State Roadway Engineer may submit the request letter to FHWA for review and approval. The Design Exception is assigned to a member of the Design Exception Review team for review and a formal recommendation is prepared by the member. This team meets regularly to review exceptions and discuss the merits of all Design Exceptions. Informal reviews are completed as required based upon the complexity of the project.

Step 7 The State Roadway Engineer reviews the design exception request and recommendation from the Design Exception Review team. The State Roadway Engineer digitally signs and seals the request if sufficiently justified.

Step 8 The State Roadway Engineer receives FHWA approval (if necessary) for design exceptions and forwards copy to the signers of the Design Exception. ETSB Roadway Engineering Section stores electronic copies of all design exceptions approved by the State Roadway Engineer.

Step 9 Where agreement between the Region Technical Center Manager and the State Roadway Engineer cannot be reached, the State Roadway Engineer forwards the

DRAFT

request to the Chief Engineer. The Chief Engineer makes the final decision on approval or denial of the design exception request.

1004.3 Clear Zone Approval Authority

1004.3.1 4R Standard or New Construction

For 4R projects, when an unmitigated ~~hazard~~object will remain within the project clear zone distance required, as prescribed in Part 400 in Table 400-2: Clear Zone Distance and Table 400-3: Horizontal Curve Adjustment, a design exception will be processed. The clear zone design exception will follow the same procedure as all other design exceptions with approval being granted by the State Roadway Engineer and when appropriate, FHWA. This will be shown on the General Design Exception Request form (form number 734-5336) where "Clear Zone" is specifically listed next to the check box.

1004.3.2 3R Standard

For 3R projects, clear zone design exceptions are the responsibility of the Region Technical Center. Specifically, approval is granted by the Region Roadway Manager using the standard General Design Exception Request form (form number 734-5336). Contact the Region Roadway Manager for region-specific design exception request procedures. When an unmitigated ~~hazard~~object will remain within the project clear zone distance required, as prescribed in Part 400 in Table 400-2: Clear Zone Distance and Table 400-3: Horizontal Curve Adjustment, a design exception will be processed. The State Roadway Engineer and FHWA will not be formally involved with clear zone design on 3R projects. Clear zone must be evaluated and improved as appropriate. The Region Roadway Manager will keep all 3R clear zone design exceptions on file that they approve. The process for these specific regional exceptions closely follows the standard method, with only the approval and filing being modified.

1004.4 ADA Exceptions

There are two conditions that will be considered for design exceptions on ADA features; technical infeasibility, and undue financial and administrative burdens. Both of these types of exceptions should occur infrequently.

DRAFT

1004.4.1 Technical Infeasibility

Technical infeasibility is when the physical constraints do not allow for a solution, or there are conflicting interests, such as federal regulations or state laws, that do not allow for a solution. Accessible requirements are to be incorporated to the maximum extent feasible, if a standard cannot be achieved. While it might be technically infeasible to meet full ADA standards, a design exception does not give relief to addressing ADA concerns where some improvements can still be made. When a feature is technically infeasible, the design exception is processed with no changes to the process outlined in this part of the HDM.

Structural infeasibility might occur on existing bridges when modified or altered with a construction project. Structural infeasibility is extremely rare on new construction of a structure or bridge as ADA requirements can be planned for in advance during the design. Documentation of any unique characteristics of terrain limitations impacting ADA requirements are processed on the general design exception form. Accessibility is required to the maximum extent feasible, requiring coordination and creativity with other technical disciplines.

Sometimes the designer is unable to place the geometric requirements for the feature without adverse impacts to historic properties or archeological artifacts. "Historic properties" are defined as those properties that are listed or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places or properties designated as historic under State or local law.[1]

Early coordination and consultation with SHPO is necessary to ensure the needs of the disability community and historic preservation are met. Solutions often require creativity, a deviation from standard engineering practice, and consideration of evolving best practices from technical disciplines to achieve ADA requirements to the maximum extent feasible. The goal of consultation with State Historic Preservation Offices (SHPO) is to identify historic properties potentially affected by construction improvements, assess its effects and seek ways to avoid, minimize or mitigate any adverse effects on historic properties as stipulated in 36 CFR Part 800 – Protection of Historic Properties. 36 CFR, 800.5 (1) states "An adverse effect is found when an undertaking may alter, directly or indirectly, any of the characteristics of a historic property that qualify the property for inclusion in the National Register in a manner that would diminish the integrity of the property's location, design, setting, materials, workmanship, feeling, or association." Examples of adverse effects are also described in 36 CFR, 800.5 (2)(v) which states "Introduction of visual, atmospheric or audible elements that diminish the integrity of the property's significant historic features" would be considered an adverse effect.

[1] 28 CFR Part 35, 35.104 Definitions

DRAFT

1004.4.2 Undue Financial and Administrative Burden

Undue financial and administrative burden is when the cost of proceeding with the ADA solution will put such a burden on the agency that it cannot meet its obligation to perform its duties. This is when the ADA solution will take most of the agency's total financial resource, beyond just the funding for the project. This type of a design exception is extremely rare and should be discussed with the Roadway Engineering Unit staff when consideration is given to its use.

An undue financial and administrative burden exception to ADA will follow the process outlined in this chapter and in addition must be agreed to in writing by the head of the public entity or their designee. For ODOT, the designee is the Delivery and Operations Division Administrator. The memorandum for the head of the public entity's signature will include the design exception that gives justification for the decision that the ADA feature is an undue burden financially for that public entity. Use the following memorandum for ODOT projects, and use the same test as appropriate for local agency projects.

DRAFT

1 Figure 1000-2: Declaration of Financial and Administrative Burden for ADA Non-Compliance



Department of Transportation
Roadway Engineering Services
4040 Fairview Industrial Dr, MS #5
Salem, Oregon 97302-1142
Phone: (503) 986-3568

To:

Delivery & Operations Division Administrator

From:

State Roadway Engineer

Project Key Number:

Section Name:

Highway Name:

County Name:

Declaration of Financial and Administrative Burden

For ADA Non-compliance

In accordance with the Code of Federal Regulation 28 CRF §35.150 it is determined that the agency can not include the specific ADA feature(s) with this project because of the financial and administrative burden that inclusion would cause to this public entity.

The specific ADA feature(s) not included in the project: <insert the specific feature that will not be constructed here.>

The documentation for the justification of this declaration is included in the design exception for this project and attached to this memorandum.

I concur with this declaration.

_____ Date: _____

Delivery & Operations Division Administrator

2 Oregon Department of Transportation

1004.4.3 CQCR ADA Improvement Projects

The public can use the ODOT Office of Civil Rights Concern, Question, Comment or Request (CQCR) Form to provide feedback or make requests for ODOT to address accessibility issues on the state transportation system. CQCRs are incremental improvement projects on the transportation system to address a specific concern or barrier for an individual along a specific route traveled. The purpose of the CQCR process is to respond to an individual's need to an existing ADA barrier to the transportation system or service provided by ODOT. Documentation related to the design and construction of the solution for the customer is retained in the Office of Civil Rights database. ADA design exceptions are not produced for construction features in these specific cases when the standard cannot be achieved, however, some roadway geometrics may still require review and approval on the General Design Exception Request Form (form number 734-5336). For example, a driveway adjacent to the CQCR work may require a design exception. Consult the technical resource for the item that may not be achieving other engineering discipline standards.

Section 1005 General Design Exception Requests

1005.1 Informational Needs

Prior to submitting a request for a design exception, a sufficient amount of information gathering and design work is required to justify the design exception. The purpose of design exceptions is to determine that a professional engineering decision has been justified and documented involving engineering standards and practices in constrained locations.

The information required to justify an exception includes the following items:

- Roadside Inventory
- Local Plan Coordination
- Traffic and Crash Analysis
- Impacts and Right of Way
- Cost
- Incremental Improvements
- Proposed Mitigation
- Conflicts with other Federal, State, or Local Laws

DRAFT

1005.1.1 Roadside Inventory

A roadside inventory is typically completed as part of project information gathering. The roadside inventory provides valuable information on existing roadside features and can be used to help justify design exceptions. Identification of roadside appurtenances, both man-made and natural, that are not crash worthy is important to the overall safety of the facility. While the item may not be removed with the current project, the man-made items are placed into the database and scheduled for upgrade. Roadside Inventory information is outlined in Part 400.

1005.1.2 Local Plan Coordination

Due to the constrained environment of urban areas, design exceptions are frequently required on downtown urban projects. In these urban environments, there may be transportation system plan elements or goals that relate to the roadway design. The design exception justification process should take into consideration local planning efforts. For example, local plans for projects such as Transportation System Plans (TSP) may provide a context for the future highway corridor that can be used in looking at non-standard roadway elements. The local plan vision should be in alignment with the vision of the statewide transportation system. As projects are developed, these assumptions must be reevaluated in light of the current context of the developed highway and can be used in the design exception process if appropriate.

1005.1.3 Traffic and Crash Analysis

A traffic analysis is required. The level of information and analysis will need to be sufficient to assure that the proposed design exception will not significantly affect safety. Generally, the traffic analysis required for the specific project type will be sufficient to evaluate the merits of proposed design exceptions. However, in some situations, additional analysis and detail may be required, such as:

- Long term (20 year) volume/capacity and operational analysis
- Vehicle classifications
- Peak hour and daily turning movements
- Detailed operational analysis (i.e., intersection, interchange, weaving, etc.)
- Other analyses as deemed necessary for the particular action

Proper designs on all projects should always consider the crash potential and history, and its relationship to the improvements proposed. Generally, the crash analysis required for the specific project type is sufficient to evaluate the potential ramifications of a particular design exception. However, in some situations, more detailed analysis is required. This could include a

more detailed review of crash history over a longer timeframe, greater research into cause and effect, and even discussing existing safety deficiencies with local emergency provider agencies such as state police, local police, county sheriff and local fire officials. The proposed design exception needs to be evaluated to document the potential impacts to the safety of the highway users. Various predictive models are available to assist the designer in analyzing multiple combinations of cross-sectional elements. Making an incremental increase in safety predictions can be included in the justification for a design exception.

Crash data should include:

- Number, type, and severity of crashes
- Crash rate and comparison to the average rate for that type of facility
- The Safety Priority Index System (SPIS) sites and their ranking

1005.1.4 Impacts and Right of Way

The design should be completed to a sufficient degree to determine with reasonable certainty what the potential impacts are if the proposed exception is not approved. These impacts could include residential displacement, commercial displacement, and environmental impacts to wetlands, streams, historic properties, 4f and 6f resources, threatened and endangered habitat, etc. Other impacts could require additional right of way. Community goals and livability impacts should also be determined where applicable as well as impacts from planning and policy documents such as the Oregon Highway Plan.

Generally, to determine these levels of impacts, the design should be developed to concept level plans. This generally is sufficient to determine approximate right of way footprints for the specific project.

1005.1.5 Costs

The design should be completed to sufficient detail to estimate project costs with and without the proposed design exception(s) being approved. The cost information can also be used to calculate approximate cost/benefit ratios related to the proposed design exception. Cost is not the only justification for approving design exceptions. Other items include compatibility with other sections, environmental impacts, additional right of way and other items listed in Section 1003. Costs to improve the deficiency while not meeting full design standards should be considered and evaluated, if appropriate.

DRAFT

1005.1.6 Incremental Improvements

While not meeting full standards, the design engineer can use a lower cost solution as an incremental step to address legitimate safety concerns. Multiple alternatives should be assessed using various techniques including the use of prediction models. Lower cost treatments such as rumble strips or signs have a proven record of offering a reduced level of crashes when implemented at strategic locations. Incremental improvements are to be recited in the design exception request as either justification or mitigation as an improvement-based outcome for inclusion in the project.

1005.1.7 Proposed Mitigation

The project team should evaluate potential mitigation measures that could be implemented as part of the project that could offset the potential safety reductions of the proposed design exception. Mitigation actions can range from very small and inexpensive to large scale options. Each design team will need to evaluate if cost effective mitigation strategies are to be included as part of the design exception request. Each project team should use the creative abilities of the team members to strategize the range of potential mitigation measures. Identifying standard practice mitigation items (replaced striping, replacing signs, etc.) in the design exception under the category of proposed mitigation needs to be separated from the enhanced mitigation items that are included in the project (upgraded striping, new signs, new rumble strips, etc.).

1005.2 General Design Exception Request Form

The General Design Exception Request Form (form number 734-5336) is used to document and justify the design exception. See Table 1000-1 for a list of data needed for exception justification.

DRAFT

Table 1000-1: Data Needs for Exception Justification

Design Exception Data for Justification
1. Summary of the proposed exception
2. Project description and/or purpose/need statement from the project charter
3. Impact on other standards
4. Cost to build to standard
5. Crash history and potential (specifically as it applies to the requested exception)
6. Reasons (low cost/benefit, relocations, environmental impacts, etc.) for not attaining standard
7. Compatibility with adjacent sections (route continuity)
8. Probable time before reconstruction of the section due to traffic increases or changed conditions
9. Mitigation measures to be used. These can include low cost measures such as lane departure detectable warning devices (rumble strips or profiled pavement markings) or additional signs. Mitigation needs to be appropriate to the site conditions and installed correctly to be effective in reducing crashes.
10. Plans, Cross Sections, Alignment Sheets, Plan Details and other supporting documents.

NOTE: Any data omitted from the submittal package can cause a delay in the processing the request.

See Figure 1000-3 through Figure 1000-5 for the General Design Exception Request Form (form number 734-5336). Select fields within the form have been numbered, with additional information provided below the figures.

DRAFT

Figure 1000-3: General Design Exception Request Form (Form No. 734-~~5336~~5366) Page 1 of 3

OREGON DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
GENERAL DESIGN EXCEPTION REQUEST

For Roadway Section Office use only	
Control No:	

Section Name:						**Route No.:**	
Highway Name:						**Highway No.:**	1
County Name:		**Region:**		**Key No.:**	2	**EA No.:**	3
Begin MP:		**RDWY ID:** 4	1 ☐ 2 ☐		**Mileage Type:** 5	0 ☐ Z ☐	
End MP:		**Mileage Overlap Code:** 6	0 ☐ 1 ☐ 2 ☐				

PROJECT DATA

Bid Date:		**Functional Classification:** 7			
Current ADT (Year):		**Design ADT (Year):**		**% Trucks:**	
Vertical Clearance Route: 8	☐ Yes ☐ No			**Posted Speed:**	
Funding:				**Design Speed:** 9	
Current Estimate:				**Target Speed:**	
Additional Cost to Meet Standard:		**Path Design Speed (if applicable):**			
Design Category:	3R ☐ 1R ☐ 4R ☐ SF ☐	**NHS:** ☐ **Non-NHS:** ☐		**Top 10% SPIS Site:** 10	Yes ☐ No ☐
Is design feature within a historic district or adjacent to an eligible resource?	Yes ☐ No ☐	**Limits of district or location of eligible resource:**		**MP:**	to
Context:	☐ Rural ☐ Urban; (List Context)				
Urban Design Concurrence Document (UDC):	Yes ☐ No ☐ (If "Yes", attach to form)				

Design Exceptions		
☐ ADA Standards 11	☐ Grade[2]	☐ Sidewalk or Walkway Width
☐ Bike Lane/Shared Use Path Width 12	☐ Horizontal Alignment[2]	☐ Spiral Length
☐ Bridge Rail 11	☐ Interchange Spacing	☐ Stopping Sight Distance[2]
☐ Bridge Width	☐ Median Width	☐ Structural Capacity[1]
☐ Clear Zone (Region DE for 3R)	☐ Parking Width	☐ Superelevation[2]
☐ Design Life and V/C Ratio	☐ Pavement Cross Slope[2]	☐ Superelevation Runoff
☐ Design Speed[1] 11	☐ Pavement Design Life	☐ Vertical Alignment
☐ Diagonal Parking	☐ Pilot Design Treatment	☐ Vertical Clearance[2]
☐ Lane Width[2]	☐ Shoulder Width/Shy Distance[2]	
☐ (Other)		

[1] FHWA Controlling Criteria for all NHS Facilities.
[2] FHWA Controlling Criteria for "High-Speed" NHS Roadways. ("High-Speed" NHS roadways, defined as Interstate highways, other freeways, and roadways with a design speed greater than or equal to 50 mph.)

1 **State Highway Number:** The ODOT, 3-digit number given to each state highway for identification purposes. Generally, this is not the same as the route number. If the project is off the State Highway System, use “Local” for the highway number.

2 **Key Number:** The ODOT unique 5-digit number given to each project. For projects that have not been assigned a key number (such as development projects), mark this field as "N/A".

3 **EA Number and Sub-Job:** The ODOT internal account number for the project including the sub-job number. For projects that have not been assigned an EA number, (such as development projects), mark this field as "N/A".

4 **Roadway ID:** In ODOT’s FACS-STIP tool, the roadway identifier code determines the alignment when there is a separated highway alignment such as a freeway. Code 1 is for the primary alignment that increases with the mile point. Code 2 is for the alignment with the decreasing mile points. Note: state highway 001 (I-5) is opposite to this rule.

5 **Mileage Type:** In ODOT’s GIS, the mileage type code is for when there are unique mile points along a highway. The Z code indicates an overlap in the mile points. During realignment that lengthens the highway, an overlap in the mile points will result. The Z code indicates the repeated mile points.

6 **Mileage Overlap Code:** In ODOT’s GIS, the mileage overlap code is used when the “Z” code is used to indicate each unique occurrence of duplicate mile points. A code of 1 is use for the first occurrence, a code of 2 for the second occurrence, etc.

7 **Functional Classification:** The functional classification for State Highways can be found in ODOT’s Highway Design Manual (HDM) in Appendix A.

8 **Vertical Clearance Route:** These specific routes designated for high loads are listed in ODOT’s Highway Design Manual (HDM) in Appendix C.

9 **Design Speed:** The design speed is a critical design component that defines multiple design standards. It is not necessarily the same as posted speed. Part 200 of the HDM and AASHTO’s "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" in the chapter titled Design Controls and Criteria, discuss the design speed at great length. The selection of design speed is made by the Regional Roadway Manager with consultation given by ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

10 **SPIS Site:** The Safety Priority Indexing System (SPIS) rates specific location of crashes. Safety funding may be available to correct locations that are in the top 10%. This information is available from the ODOT Traffic Management Section.

11 **Design Speed, ADA Standards, and Bridge Rail:** These are items that are the most difficult to justify. These will only be considered in extreme situations with mitigation measures included.

DRAFT

Design Speed effects many other design standards that can have unintended reductions in inappropriate locations.

Project scope needs to include construction improvements to meet the ADA requirements, and project-specific decisions must be documented for these sensitive designs. Physical inability to comply with prescribed design standards requires a design exception. Fiscal constraints for not complying with standards require an additional letter signed by the agency head or designee and is extremely rare. Exceptions are generally limited to technical infeasibility and conflicts with historic preservation. Design must demonstrate accessibility is obtained to the maximum extent feasible.

The Bridge Rail exception refers to the NCHRP Report 350 crash test level requirement or the AASHTO MASH test level requirements. Variations from the Bridge Standard Drawings are considered Deviations granted by the State Bridge Engineer.

12 **Bike Lane/Shared Use Path Width or Sidewalk Width:** When a project contains new construction, reconstruction, or relocation, the statutory requirement to provide bike facilities and walking facilities is required. If the statutory requirements are triggered, and the project does not provide the facilities at all, this type of design exception is held to a higher standard. As support for the design exception, a letter is required to ensure that the exemption allowed opportunities for public review and input by interested parties. The letter may come from an organization that represents bicycle and pedestrian needs for the local agency or from the Oregon Bicycle and Pedestrian Advisory Committee (OBPAC).

The letter is not required for design exceptions when a Bike Lane/Shared Use Path or Sidewalk does not meet standard widths.

DRAFT

Figure 1000-4: General Design Exception Request Form (Form No. 734-5336) Page 2 of 3

OREGON DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
GENERAL DESIGN EXCEPTION REQUEST

Description of Exception: 13
(Identify each exception, and concisely describe the difference between the standard and the design element requiring an exception. If multiple exceptions are included on a single form, number each exception and maintain order throughout the form.)

Description of Project: *(From Project Charter)*

Location of Design Feature: *(If multiple exceptions are listed, use bullets, numbering, or a table.)*

Crash History & Potential: 14
(Include analysis of data from previous 5 years and/or other relevant crash data & information. Specifically provide crash history that relates to requested exception and provide a discussion of how the exception may affect crash potential.)

Reasons for Not Attaining Standard:
(Explain in detail why the design standard cannot be met. List the constraints, such as cost/ benefit, crash history, environmental, etc. Include alternatives explored & benefits of not attaining standards, if applicable.)

Effect on Other Standards: 15
(Identify other standards or best practices affected by not meeting (or meeting) the standard.)

Compatibility with Adjacent Sections:
(Describe how the design feature compares to the same, or similar, features in the vicinity of the project.)

Probable Time before Reconstruction of Section:

Mitigation for Exception Included in Design: 16
(Identify mitigations to the effects of not meeting the standard. What considerations were made? If meeting full standard is not possible or practical within project scope, can an incremental improvement be achieved?)

Supporting Documentation: 17
(Attached electronic documents to form. Include the appropriate Plan Section, Cross Section, Alignments Sheets, Plan Details, UDC Document, photos, etc.):

13 **Description of Exception:** When multiple exceptions are being requested, related exceptions or the same type of exception in multiple locations may be grouped on a single form. Examples of related exceptions may be horizontal alignment, vertical alignment, and superelevation, which share closely related issues. In general, Limit the number of exceptions to 3 types per form. When design exceptions are not related, the use of multiple forms helps to segregate the issues.

For LPA projects, do not group items that are on or along the State Highway with items that are not.

When multiple exceptions are contained in one form, number the exceptions in this section and keep consistent numbering throughout the remaining sections in the document. Provide a clear description of each exception, including the proposed design, the standard requiring an exception, and existing conditions if applicable.

14 **Crash History & Potential:** Evaluation of the Safety Priority Index System (SPIS) for specific locations within the project limits that are in the top 10% of the index. SPIS sites include funding from the Safety Investment Program. This information is available from the Traffic Engineering Services Unit. Compare crash rates to average crash rates for similar highways in this section. Discuss the potential for increase or decrease in crash rates. Include the number, types, and severity of crashes and the relationship to the design exception. Avoid using language that diminishes the significance of historical crashes (e.g., "Just one crash…" "Only two crashes…"). See 1005.1.3 for additional information.

15 **Effect on Other Standards:** Does compliance with a requirement conflict with federal state, or local laws? Regulatory conflicts may include preserving threatened or endangered species, the environment, archeological or cultural or natural features, historic preservation. Are there trade-offs with other engineering standards, best practices or other conflicting interests which are impacted due to achieving a requirement? Describe any feature that would be affected because of compliance with the requirement. Are other design exceptions or deviations requested and approved that relate to the request from other technical disciplines or roadway?

16 **Mitigation:** Include the items that are included in the project to mitigate the specific effects of the proposed design exception. There are suggested items to use in the HDM in Part 200.

17 **Supporting Documentation:** The Design Exception submittal must include appropriate plan section, cross section, alignment sheet and plan details. Digital pictures may also be included.

DRAFT

Figure 1000-5: General Design Exception Request Form (Form No. 734-5336) Page 3 of 3

OREGON DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
GENERAL DESIGN EXCEPTION REQUEST

Signatures

Prepared By: _____ **Date:** _____
(Engineer of Record)

Print Name:		**Phone:**			
Company Name:					
Company Address:					
City:		**ST:**		**Zip:**	
Email Address:					

Concurred By: _____ **Date:** _____
ODOT Program Manager: Area Manager, District Manager, State Bridge Engineer (when related to bridge structure or rail), Private Public Partnerships, Local Government (State Roadway Engineer for LPA projects off State Highway) **18**

_____
Print Name

Concurred By: _____ **Date:** _____
ODOT Region Tech Center Manager or Region Roadway Manager

_____
Print Name

Approved By: _____ **Date:** _____
State Roadway Engineer
(LPA Approval Authority for LPA projects off State Highway) **19**

_____
(Print Name)

PREPARED BY:

Engineer of Record
Professional Engineer Seal

APPROVED BY:

State Roadway Engineer
Professional Engineer Seal
(LPA Approval Authority for LPA Projects off State Highway) **19**

Concurred By: When a non-certified LPA has an agreement with ODOT for delivery of a project, and the subject of the design exception is not on or along the State Highway, the State Roadway Engineer signs on the "Concurred By" line instead of the "Approved By" line. In these cases, the LPA engineering approving authority approves the design exception. See Figure 1000-1.

Approved By: When a non-certified LPA has an agreement with ODOT for delivery of a project, and the subject of the design exception is not on or along the State Highway, the State Roadway Engineer signs on the "Concurred By" line instead of the "Approved By" line. In these cases, the LPA engineering approving authority approves the design exception. See Figure 1000-1.

Note: On all projects, exceptions are required when the geometric design elements in Table 1000-2 do not meet or exceed the minimums given in the ODOT Highway Design Manual for the type of project.

DRAFT

Table 1000-2: Design Exception List

Design Elements / Features	FHWA Controlling Criteria		Requires ODOT Approval[2] for All Projects
	May Require FHWA approval for all NHS Facilities	May Require FHWA Approval "High-Speed" NHS Roadways[1]	
Design Speed	√	√	√
Structural Capacity	√	√	√
Lane Width		√	√
Shoulder Width/Shy Distance		√	√
Horizontal Alignment		√	√
Grade		√	√
Stopping Sight Distance		√	√
Pavement Cross Slope		√	√
Superelevation		√	√
Vertical Clearance		√	√
Clear Zone[3]			√
ADA Standards			√
Bike Lane/Shared Use Path Width			√
Bridge Rail			√
Bridge Width			√
Design Life and V/C Ratio			√
Diagonal Parking			√
Interchange Spacing			√
Median Width			√
Parking Width			√
Pavement Design Life			√
Pilot Design Treatment			√
Sidewalk or Walkway Width			√
Spiral Length (curves 1 degree or sharper)			√
Superelevation Runoff (match spiral length)			√
Vertical Alignment			√
Other[4]			√

[1] "High-Speed" NHS roadway defined as Interstate highways, other freeways, and roadways with a design speed greater than or equal to 50 mph.

[2] For non-certified Local Public Agency projects, ODOT concurs with design exceptions for items not on or along the State Highway. The local agency approval authority approves the design exception.

[3] Design exceptions are required for 4R projects. For 3R projects clear zone design will be the responsibility of the Region Technical Center. Contact the Region Roadway Manager for exact procedures to be followed. FHWA approval of clear zone design on 3R projects is not required.

[4] Items that are in the Highway Design Manual that require approval of the State Roadway Engineer but not specifically listed above. These include existing guard rail upgrade, livestock under passes, barrier placement, acceleration lanes from at-grade intersections, right turn lanes, and interchange design.

Section 1006 ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Requests (Form 734-5112)

The design exception process is intended to ensure that sound engineering decisions are made when design options are limited. Exceptions to design standards should be discussed early in the design process when project limits are first determined. All design exception requests must show justification. Refer to Section 1003 and Section 1004. Applying for an exception does not guarantee approval. The design exception webpage outlines the basic steps and has the latest forms posted for download.

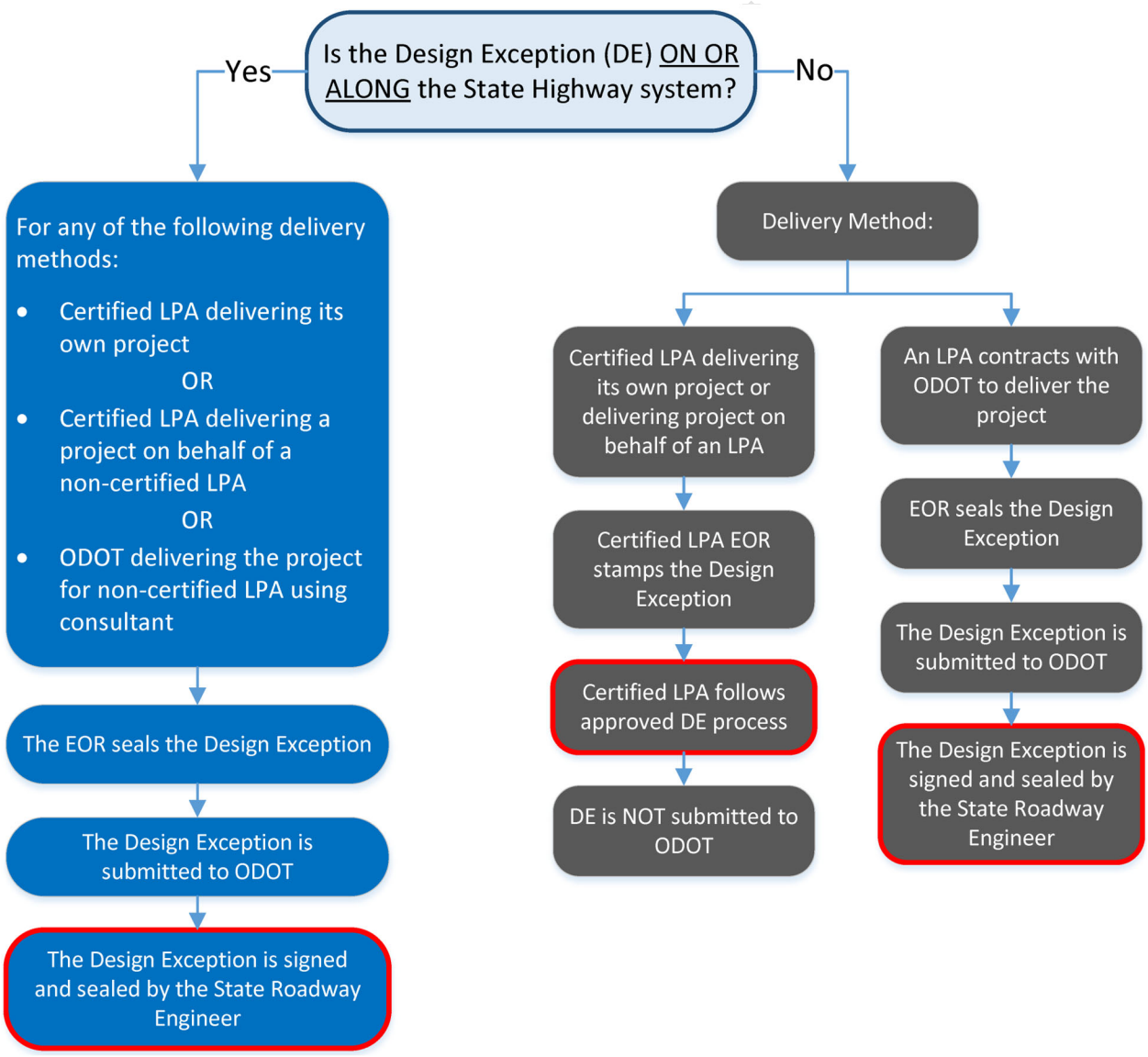
Although the current ODOT General Design Exception Request Form lists ADA Standards as one of design elements that requires a design exception for not meeting current guidance, that form does not have the detail that is needed in the justification of design exceptions for non-compliant curb ramps. The ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request and additional curb ramp guidance documents will allow the Department to document, justify, and identify the location of those curb ramps that have been determined not to be able to comply with current ODOT standards.

1006.1 Local Agency Projects

This process applies to all work on or along the State Highway System. In addition, all local agencies (certified and non-certified) receiving project funds through ODOT (except fund-exchange state funds) shall use the ODOT ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request form and submit curb ramp design exceptions to ODOT for approval through their ODOT Local

Agency Liaison, Transportation Project Manager, or Project Leader as appropriate. Certified agencies must use ODOT's form and process for all curb ramps on or along the State Highway System. For curb ramps that are not on or along the State Highway System, certified agencies must use this form and process until ODOT/FHWA have reviewed and approved the certified agency's written curb ramp design exception and inspection processes.

Figure 1000-6: Local Public Agency Project ADA Design Exception Approval Process



1006.2 Informational Needs

Design exception requests require a sufficient amount of information and design work to justify the exception. ADA design requirements are codified into federal law and the justification to

not provide the standard is limited. Unlike general roadway design exceptions, ADA exceptions are limited to technical infeasibility in most cases as ODOT's overall operating budget is rather large (see Section 1004.4). The ODOT design standard includes a margin for error in construction and reducing that margin (slope or dimensions) can result in a curb ramp system that does not meet the federal regulation requirements.

The purpose of a design exception for curb ramps is to document when standards are technically infeasible based on the scale of the project improvements. Projects are required to be scoped such that standards for curb ramp design can be met to maximum extent feasible (TSB 18-03(B)). The professional engineering decision and analysis, and documentation is reviewed for engineering standards and practices in constrained locations. Design exceptions for curb ramps are rare when the highway is newly constructed or on a new horizontal alignment.

The information required in the request includes the following items:

1. Location of the curb ramp based on ODOT's Linear Reference Method and mile point.
2. Project construction information and funding.
3. A diagram of the intersection with curb ramp corner number information.
4. Description of the curb ramp criteria with the specified values planned for design.
5. Description of the project purpose and need from the project business case, and triggering construction work for the curb ramp.
6. Reason for not attaining the standard for each criterion that cannot be met and a description of alternatives explored.
7. Effects on other standards related to roadway design or relevant laws.
8. Mitigation incorporated in the design to offset the impact of not obtaining the standard.
9. Supporting documents and exhibits to show the design analysis and design details.

NOTE: Any data omitted from the submittal package can cause a delay in processing the request. A draft review and consultation with the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff is recommended as described in Section 1004.1 prior to submission of the request.

Many of the data fields in the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request form correspond to information that is defined in Section 1004, and will aid the designer when preparing the form.

1006.2.1 Location Information

ODOT has an extensive inventory database of every curb ramp on or along the state highway, with a methodology that is unique to ODOT. Every curb ramp has unique ID associated with it that is permanent throughout the curb ramp life cycle. The location information is based on the

Linear Reference Method and mile point. Individual curb ramp assets are described using corner position and ramp number. Exhibit "A" Curb Ramp Location and Numbering, and Exhibit "B" Curb Ramp Types are located on the web at:

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/About/pages/assetandinspection.aspx

The ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request form populates the overall ODOT database field and attributes; therefore, the information must be accurate.

Refer to the FACS-STIP user guide, in the Appendix for instructions on how to access the detailed information on a given curb ramp and corner. Consult the Statewide Asset Specialist for any clarification on curb ramp location information and methodology. Refer to the RD900 series of the standard drawings and Exhibit "A" for the linear reference syntax, corner number, and ramp number conventions diagram. The ODOT Inspector Guide for Curb Ramp and Push Buttons is an additional reference document.

State Highway Number: The ODOT, 3-digit number given to each state highway for identification purposes. Generally, this is not the same as the route number. If the project is off the State Highway System, use the street name of the mainline.

Suffix Code: In ODOT's FACS-STIP tool, the suffix code is a two digit highway suffix that differentiates mainline roads from connections and frontage roads with the same highway number. The mainline suffix is the numerical value 00. Connections and frontage roads each have a unique combination of two letters (AA to ZZ).

Roadway ID: In ODOT's GIS, the roadway identifier code determines the alignment when there is a separated highway alignment such as a freeway. Code I (Increasing) is for the primary alignment that increases with the mile point. Code D (Decreasing) is for the alignment with the decreasing milepoints.

Mileage Type: In ODOT's GIS, the mileage type code is when there are unique milepoints along a highway. The O Code indicated regular mileage. The Z code indicates an overlap in the milepoints. During realignment that lengthens the highway, an overlap in the mile points will result. The Z code indicates the repeated milepoints.

Mileage Overlap Code: In ODOT's GIS, the mileage overlap code is used when the "Z" code is used to indicate each unique occurrence of duplicate mile points. A code of 1 is use for the first occurrence, a code of 2 for the second occurrence, etc.

Intersection MP: If a state highway, list the appropriate milepoint of the intersection. If the project is off the State Highway System use the local agency milepoint if available, cross street name, or general location (i.e., midblock crossing between 25th and 26th). A new design exception request form is required for each individual intersection, entrance, midblock crossing, etc. Multiple curb ramp design exceptions for each milepoint location can be included in the Design Exception Request form if identified appropriately

DRAFT

Corner Position(s) and Ramp Position Number(s): In addition to the intersection milepoint, list the appropriate corner and ramp position number (i.e., 1-1., 2-1, 2A- 1, 2A-2, 4-2, etc.) as demonstrated in Exhibit "A" attached. Every curb ramp design exception must have a corner position and ramp position number assigned for documentation purposes. Multiple corner positions and ramp position numbers (one milepost location) should be shown on a single design exception request form.

1006.2.2 Project Information

This section provides information about the project, including when it is planned for construction, what type of funding will be used to construct the project, and if there is an associated crosswalk closure at the intersection. This helps the agency retrieve information about the contract at a later date including what the applicable standards were at the time of construction.

A concise yet descriptive narrative of the proposed project improvements is required to determine the scale of the overall project improvements. For example, is the project new construction (4R), restoration (3R), preservation (1R), or triggered by something else. A lack of information will cause a delay as the reviewer is not as familiar with the details of the project as the designer engineer. Include information if the project is addressing a formal ADA complaint(s) or a CQCR(s).

Key Number: The ODOT unique 5-digit number given to each project.

EA Number and Sub-Job: The ODOT internal account number for the project including the sub-job number.

Description of Project: The scope of work indicates which ADA requirements are triggered by the project. Describe the project's scope of work with special detail to the following features:

1. why is a project occurring, use information from the business case and project charters
2. whether there are multiple standards or scopes of work on the project (e.g., new signal at intersection but paving only several miles outside of that).
3. whether pavement surfacing is included;
4. what surface treatment is used and what is the length or limits of pavement surfacing work;
5. whether sidewalk is constructed and where;
6. whether traffic signals will replace pushbuttons, pedestrian signals or controllers
7. whether bridge work is maintenance focused or rehabilitation of decking or sidewalk, or includes guardrail replacement.

DRAFT

1006.2.3 Intersection Diagrams

Intersection diagrams help the reviewer orient themselves to the intersection configuration with graphics that can be produced by a variety of methods. This might be a clipping from your CAD design plan or aerial image that is clear and legible. The important information is the street names, mile point, corner number and ramp number; labeling the curb ramp(s) you are requesting a deviation from standard.

Sketch or insert graphic file for entire intersection. Indicate which ramps are addressed or not addressed in the project scope. See Exhibit "A" for corner and ramp numbering convention.

1006.2.4 Description of the Exception

For each location identified in the table, describe the difference between the requirement and the level of accessibility achieved by the design (e.g., what slope is attained?)

1006.2.5 Reasons for Not Attaining Standard

ADA requirements allow deviation from a requirement only when meeting that requirement is technically infeasible or infeasible within the scope of work. Explain in detail why the geometric requirement cannot be achieved for each curb ramp criteria requested. Describe the site-specific constraints for each curb ramp where an exception is sought. Physical constraints may include underlying terrain, underground structures adjacent developed facilities, right-of-way availability, drainage, or the presence of notable natural or historic feature. Explain why the constraint precludes achieving the ADA requirement. If achieving a compliant solution is possible, but outside the scope of work, describe why it would not be possible to add this to the scope of work. Explain the decision process to work around the loss in accessibility and describe alternatives explored during design.

1006.2.6 Effects on Other Standards

Describe how the design compliance cannot be achieved because of conflict with federal state, or local laws. Regulatory conflicts may include preserving threatened or endangered species, the environment, archeological or cultural or natural features, or historic preservation. Describe design decisions balancing the trade-offs with other engineering standards, best practices or other conflicting interests which are impacted due to achieving an ADA requirement including other technical disciplines (e.g., hydraulics, typical section, bridge rail safety). Describe any feature that would be affected because of compliance with the ADA requirement.

DRAFT

1006.2.7 Mitigation Incorporated

Curb ramp design is required to be accessible and usable by people with disabilities to the maximum extent feasible or practicable. Since at least one standard is not being met in the request, explain what site-specific mitigations are employed to ensure that people with disabilities can access and use the curb ramp. Clearly link the mitigation to the design criteria that is substandard and how accessibility is improved at the location with the given design to the maximum extent feasible. For example, a hand railing might be used to offset steep terrain and slopes on the walkway.

1006.2.8 Supporting Documents

Include the appropriate Plan Section, Cross Section, Alignment Sheets & Plan Details. Include a detail sheet showing elevations and slopes for each curb ramp where an exception is sought. See template in ODOT Standard Detail DET1720 & DET1721. Indicate the signal pole, pedestrian pole and pushbutton location if applicable. Include curb line alignment profile if design exception pertains to the gutter flow slope. Include proposed curb ramp details, general construction plans, existing condition site photos, alternative designs considered, and crosswalk closure approvals or determination letters.

When the Crosswalk Closure box is checked for the intersection, include the crosswalk closure approval letter with the submittal in the supporting documents. When a crosswalk is officially closed, an engineering study has been conducted and an approval letter is signed by the State Traffic Engineer. The crosswalk closure approval letter has a unique filing code that resides in the Traffic Section and serves as the decision document in lieu of an ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request Form for a single ramp construction.

1006.3 Design Exception Checklist

The ODOT ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist (form 734-5184) is a design aid for determining when design exceptions are required for the curb ramp design. The design exception checklist will aid you in design of the curb ramp system to ensure you do not miss a key requirement for ODOT standards. Download ODOT's ADA Curb Ramp Design Checklist during your project scoping or design at:

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Forms/Pages/default.aspx

Discussion on each of the design criteria is included in Part 800, Part 900 and the Signal Design Manual. Retain the checklist in the project documentation folder once completed utilizing the most current version. Exhibit "A"- Curb Ramp Location and Numbering guidance; and the

Exhibit "B"- Curb Ramp Types are available to assist designers when submitting a request and linked within the checklist for reference.

1006.4 ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Form and User Guide Procedure

The ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Form is a smart pdf file that has automated features used in processing the exception request and transferring information into ODOT's asset database and inventory for curb ramps. Review the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request Form 734-5112 User Guide to complete the request. Adobe Reader is a free software and is used when filling out and submitting the form. Use of software other than Adobe Reader may result in corruption of the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request Form. The user guide provides step-by-step instructions for all user roles, for filling in, signing, submitting, reviewing and processing ODOT form 734-5112; the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request form.

The fillable ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request form and the ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request Form 734-5112 User Guide are located on the web at:

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Engineering/Pages/Design-Exceptions.aspx

Save a finalized copy to your files with the naming convention for the document. Signatures are obtained by forwarding the document via an automated email generated by the "Submit" button on the form. Carbon copy appropriate members of your region or design team so they can track the progress of the submission. Similar to the roadway general design exception form, the basics steps for ADA curb ramp design exception request approvals are outlined below:

Step 1 Project teams determine justification for design exception(s) at scoping, design phases, or planning process.

Step 2 Roadway designer prepares design exception with supporting justification with review from Region Roadway Manager. The engineer of record digitally seals and signs the exception request. Consultation with ETSB Roadway Engineering Section staff is encouraged during the preparation of the request and prior to signing by the Engineer of Record (see Section 1003).

Step 3 The program manager is the ODOT Area Manager or, District Manager~~, or Urban Mobility Office (UMO) Manager~~. The program manager reviews request and consults with Engineer of Record to assure that the request accurately describes the conditions that warrant a design exception. The program manager then digitally signs the design exception request on the "Concurred by" line and forwards to the ODOT Region Technical Center Manager or the Region Roadway Manager.

Step 4 The ODOT Region Technical Center Manager or the Region Roadway Manager reviews the request and consults with the engineer of record and other applicable

groups in region, such as Traffic or Safety. The Region Technical Center Manager or the Region Roadway Manager digitally signs the design exception if they concur with the request.

Step 5 The design exception is submitted by email to the ODOT Design Exception Inbox at ODOTDesignExceptions@odot.oregon.gov. The design exception is assigned to a member of the design exception review team for review and a formal recommendation is prepared by the member. This team meets weekly to review exceptions and discuss the merits of all ADA design exceptions. Informal reviews are completed as required based upon the complexity of the project.

Step 6 The State Roadway Engineer reviews the design exception request and recommendation from the design exception review team.

Step 7 The State Roadway Engineer digitally seals and signs the request if sufficiently justified.

Step 8 Where agreement between the Region Technical Center Manager and the State Roadway Engineer cannot be reached, the State Roadway Engineer forwards the request to the Chief Engineer. The Chief Engineer makes the final decision on approval or denial of the design exception request.

1006.5 ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Database

Each design exception is assigned a control number that is used for permanent storage and filing. The control number is assigned once the design exception request has been formalized with signatures for the ADA curb ramp design exception request and received by the Design Exception Administer for the roadway unit. The ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request Form auto populates information into the asset database and inventory systems and therefore paper submissions are not permitted. Approved requests can be searched on the database which is publicly available at https://ecmnet.odot.state.or.us/DesignExceptions/Search.

1006.5.1 FACS-STIP Layer

The ADA Curb Ramp Design Exception Request Form auto populates information into the asset database and inventory systems, and information is available on the curb ramp layer. Refer to the FACS-STIP User Guide.

DRAFT

Section 1007 Digital Seal Requirements

General and ADA Design Exception Request Forms require digital professional engineering seals and signature from the professional of record and the State Roadway Engineer. Digital seals and signatures must meet the ODOT requirements and the requirements of the Oregon State Board of Examiners for Engineering and Land Surveyors. Digital seal and signature requirements are provided in Part 100 of the HDM and in ODOT Engineering and Technical Services Branch Directive TSB21-01(D).

Section 1008 References

1008.1 Code of Federal Regulations - 28 CFR Part 35

For all states in the US, ADA features constructed after 1992 are required to be readily accessible by individuals with disabilities if the construction commenced after January 26, 1992. The burden of proving technical infeasibility lies with the state or local government that constructs the ADA feature. Conditions for exceptions to the regulation requirements for ADA stipulated in the code of federal regulation as it pertains to Title II entities. Title II entities include all local and state government agencies.

DRAFT

Part 1100 3D Design

DRAFT

Section 1101 Introduction

The final quality review for any project occurs in the field. Mistakes and unresolved issues must be worked out under the time and cost constraints imposed by the construction contract. Hurried efforts to resolve issues frequently result in delays, added cost, and less than optimal solutions. Discovery and resolution of these issues during design helps to keep a project on time and within budget. By modeling a project in 3D, the designer "builds" a virtual project before it is constructed physically. The 3D design process and the resultant 3D engineered model reveals many of the design issues prior to construction when they can be managed more effectively.

A 3D engineered model~~, created by the designer,~~ is a virtual representation of a real-world project. In its simplest form, it consists of the geometry of the roadway: the points, lines and shapes that define the alignments and surfaces. The ultimate model includes not only the geometry of the roadway but also the associated features (drainage, structures, signing, signals, illumination, etc.) and related metadata.

In order to realize the greatest value from the model it must be designed to a higher level of detail than is required for 2D drawings and plans. The model should incorporate all of the grading details such as widening for guardrail or mailboxes and transitions between different cut and fill slope designs. Abutting surfaces need to match – not just the top surface but subgrade as well. These details allow for the use of automated machine guidance. Drainage facilities and foundations should be placed to identify conflicts between the various assets.

Because the 3D model captures the physical relationships between the various construction elements, the model conveys the intent of the project more effectively than 2D drawings and plans. The 3D model offers many advantages over 2D drawings:

- Visualizations and simulations help stakeholders more easily understand the scope and impacts of a project
- Design analysis can be done graphically
- Design gaps and clashes are more easily detected
- Quantities can be measured directly from the model
- Constructability issues can be identified and resolved early
- Design of construction sequencing and staging is simplified
- Grading is done directly from the design when using automated machine guidance (AMG)

3D model creation may require a considerable amount of time and resources. While this could increase design costs, it rarely increases the overall cost of a project. The engineering issues that have typically surfaced during construction are, in the 3D design workflow, resolved prior to the start of work.

DRAFT

Section 1102 3D Engineered Models for Construction

The use of AMG by ODOT's contractors has been steadily increasing since it first appeared in the late 1980s. A prerequisite for the use of AMG is a 3D model of the work. Historically, these models have been created by the contractors, or third-party consultants, based on the contract plans and cross sections or grades provided by ODOT. Recognizing the value of AMG to ODOT, in 2013, the agency started to require that its 3D design models be made available to contractors for use in bid preparation and, separately, for construction. ODOT's intent is to encourage and support the use of AMG. There is currently no plan, however, to prohibit the use of traditional survey and construction practices. The required contents of the data handoff packages have been selected to provide support for contractors using all types of survey and construction methods.

1102.1 Digital Design Handoff Packages

Digital design data is compiled into two separate digital design packages:

- The Bid Reference Handoff package (also known as the eBIDS Handoff Package):

  The contents of this data package are standardized in order to provide a "level playing field" for all bidders. Note that this handoff package is an estimating aid only; it is meant to convey design intent, not necessarily all construction details. Do not leave information out of the contract plans expecting bidders to find the information in the handoff package. The data included in the Bid Reference Handoff package is not intended for use in project construction.
  The Bid Reference Handoff data is submitted to the ODOT Resident Engineer-Consultant Projects (RE-CP) or ODOT Transportation Project Manager (TPM) no later than 1 week prior to the Project Advertisement milestone. The ODOT RE-CP or TMP uploads this data to eBIDS as a reference document at the time of Project Advertisement to assist contractors in the bidding process.

- The Construction Survey Handoff package:

  The provided data communicates the design information needed for the administration of the construction contract. This handoff package is tailored to the needs of both the Resident Engineer and the contractor. The designer must coordinate with the Resident Engineer to establish its content. The Construction Survey Handoff package supersedes the data in the Bid Reference Handoff package.
  The Construction Survey Handoff data is due to the Resident Engineer 30 days after Bid Opening, which generally coincides with Notice to Proceed for the contractor.

DRAFT

The delay between the Bid Reference Handoff package and the Construction Survey Handoff package serves two purposes. It allows the designer time to refine and complete all details of the 3D model and it provides time for the designer to assemble the Construction Survey Handoff package requested by the Resident Engineer.

1102.2 Projects Requiring 3D Digital Design Packages

The Bid Reference Handoff package and Construction Survey Handoff package are required on all state and federal aid STIP roadway projects designed to 3R or 4R standards, but should also be included in any other project that includes designed grading. The handoff packages are only required for projects that are accepted by the ODOT Project Controls Office (PCO).

Preparation of the digital design data package may not be appropriate for some projects due to various constraints such as schedule, scope, and/or budget. The responsible Region Roadway Manager (RRM) may approve an exception to the requirement for the Bid Reference Handoff package upon written request prior to the Advance Plans milestone.

1102.3 Required Content for Handoff Packages

1102.3.1 General

The contents of a digital design package will vary with the complexity of the project. Shoulder widening projects usually require some horizontal and cross section control and would merit a minimal package. An interchange or urban modernization project requires an extensive package that includes many alignments and surfaces defining the project. Regardless of project complexity, some guidelines must be followed to reduce the possibility of errors (and claims) during construction:

- Include only the information incorporated in the final design. Multiple versions or design iterations will create confusion during construction.
- Follow a consistent naming convention. Using ODOT's ProjectWise file naming standards will help to achieve that consistency.
- Organize the package logically and consistently. Construction office staff are usually under tight time constraints; they need to find the desired files quickly.

DRAFT

1102.3.2 Index

The index is mandatory for all handoff packages. Include the project data (name, highway, key number, etc.), directory structure, file names and file descriptions. Index the multiple models within design files as though they are files. An index template file is available at https://www.oregon.gov/odot/ETA/Docs_3DDesign/AppM-eBIDS_Index.xls. See Figure 1100-1 for a sample computer file index for the eBIDS handoff.

DRAFT

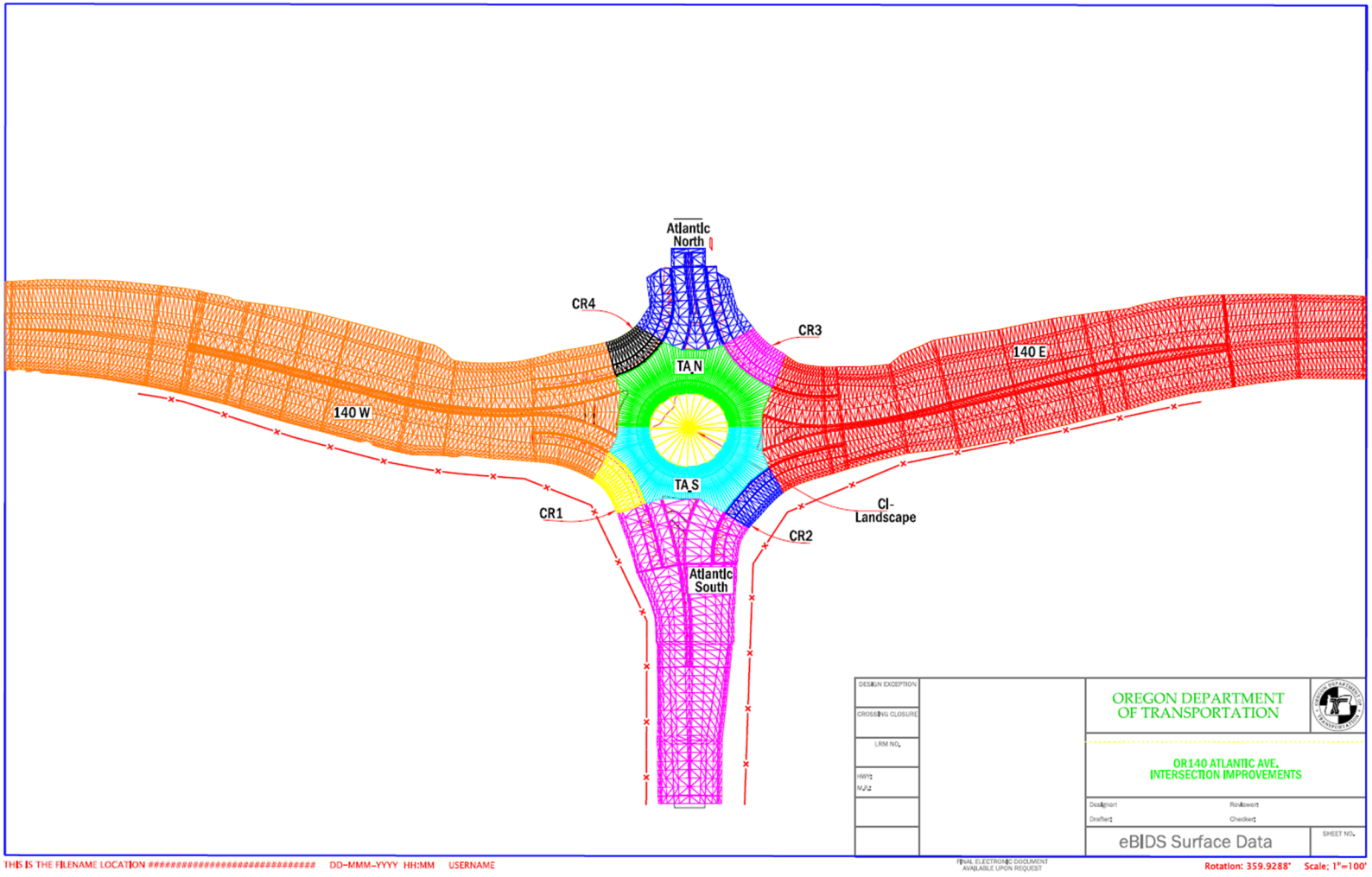
Figure 1100-1: Sample Computer File Index for eBIDS Handoff

COMPUTER FILE INDEX - eBIDS Handoff			
PROJECT	Old Hwy 99N: Oakland Bridge and Melrose Rd: Conn Ford Bridge	KEY #	21591
HIGHWAY	Oakland Shady Highway & Melrose Road	MILEPOINTS	0.55-0.84 (Oakland); 0.70-0.92 (Melrose)
COUNTY	Douglas County	DESIGNER	Jakki R. Carter, P.E.
CONTRACT # (Optional)	C15318	DATE	September 18, 2021
COORDINATE SYSTEM	OCRS Cottage Grove - Canonville Zone	VERTICAL DATUM	NAVD88, GPS DERIVED (GEOID 12A)

FOLDER NAME	FILENAME	DESCRIPTION
	Alignment Data in XML format	
Melrose XML	*L-ALG.xml*	Melrose Road mainline centerline alignment with existing right of way stationing.
Oakland XML	*AP2-ALG.xml*	AP2 centerline alignment.
	AP3-ALG.xml	AP3 centerline alignment.
	G-ALG.xml	Green Valley Road re-alignment construction centerline alignment.
	MA-ALG.xml	Maintenance Access centerline alignment.
	O-ALG.xml	Oakland Bridge re-alignment construction centerline alignment.
	Surface Data in XML format	
Melrose XML	*L-FG.xml*	Melrose Road finish grade surface.
	Melrose_Extg.xml	Melrose Road existing ground surface.
Oakland XML	*AP2-FG.xml*	AP2 finish grade surface.
	AP3-FG.xml	AP3 finish grade surface.
	Bent1-FG.xml	Bent 1 abutment fill finish grade surface.
	Bent4-FG.xml	Bent 4 excavation finish grade surface.
	G-FG.xml	Green Valley Road finish grade surface.
	MA-FG.xml	Maintenance access finish grade surface.
	Maintenance_Pad-FG.xml	Maintenance pad finish grade surface.
	Oakland_East_Merged.xml	Oakland Bridge merged surface 1/2; East end (includes G-FG, O-FG east of proposed bridge, Bent1-FG)
	Oakland_West_Merged.xml	Oakland Bridge merged surface 2/2; West end (includes O-FG west of Bent 1.)
	Oakland_EG.xml	Oakland Bridge existing ground surface.
	O-FG.xml	Oakland Bridge finish grade surface.
	Cross Sections in pdf format	
Cross-Sections	*G-Line.pdf*	Contains cross sections of G-FG surface along G-ALG at 10' intervals.
	L-Line.pdf	Contains cross sections of L-FG surface along L-ALG at 25' intervals.
	O-Line.pdf	Contains cross sections of O-FG surface along O-ALG at 25' intervals and at points of interest (i.e. guardrail flares, taper points, etc.)
	Computer File Index - Excel	
	R_K21591_eBidCFI.xls	Excel version of computer file index.

On large projects a graphical index helps to locate the various alignments within the project limits.

Figure 1100-2: Sample Graphical Index for eBIDS Handoff



1102.3.3 Project Identification

Include the project name and the names of any alignments included in reports or on sheets. Do not include the "V-number" shown on the plans; this number is to be used only on the contract plans.

1102.3.4 Original Ground Survey

Survey provides the original (existing) ground surface data, which is the basis for design and quantity calculations with both the Bid Reference Handoff package and the Construction Survey Handoff package. The surface shall be in LandXML format and shall include all features and triangle definitions. The designer includes the LandXML file(s) in the design package.

1102.4 Bid Reference Handoff Package

All files in the Bid Reference Handoff package must be in non-proprietary format: standard Microsoft Office file types (.docx, .xlsx), PDF, text, LandXML or html. Do not include CAD graphics files in the Bid Reference Handoff package. Provide any necessary graphic information – e.g., cross sections – in the PDF file format. Include a completed copy of the handoff checklist (ODOT Form No. 734-5019) with the data package.

Figure 1100-3: eBIDS Handoff Checklist

Oregon Department of Transportation

QUALITY CONTROL OF ROADWAY DIGITAL DESIGN
eBIDS Handoff Checklist*

PROJECT NAME	DESIGNER	MILE POINTS (FROM / TO)	COUNTY

HIGHWAY	REGION	KEY NUMBER	DATE OF PROJECT ADVERTISEMENT

Item	Description**	Required?	Provided?
Notice of eBIDS Roadway Digital Design Data Letter	Include Notice of eBIDS Roadway Digital Design Data Letter using template provided	Yes	☐
Computer File Index* **	List of computer file names with a brief description for all provided files	Yes	☐
Alignment Data	Primary alignments in LandXML Format	Yes	☐
	Secondary Alignments in LandXML Format	Not currently required	☐
	Design Finish Surface in LandXML Format	Yes	☐
		Not currently	

~~1102.4.1 Notification Letter~~

~~Submit a notification letter (ODOT Form No. 734-5037), separate from the data package, with the Bid Reference Handoff package. The letter notifies contractors that 3D design information is available and updated information will be provided for construction. Print the filled form; do not just save. The document remains fillable if only saved. Attach copies of the handoff package checklist and file index to the letter.~~

~~Figure -: Sample Notice of eBIDS Roadway Digital Design Data~~

Oregon
Tina Kotek, Governor

Department of Transportation
Statewide Project Delivery Branch
Project Development Section
Project Controls Office
4040 Fairview Industrial Drive SE, MS 1
Salem, Oregon 97302

Date:

To: **PLAN HOLDERS**

Notice of eBIDS Roadway Digital Design Data

Subject: Key Number
Project Name
Highway Name
County
Type of Project (grading, paving, etc.)
Bids to be opened and read

ODOT design staff and/or Consultant partners have prepared an “eBIDS Handoff Package” that contains roadway digital design data. The digital data includes alignment data and three-dimensional surfaces provided in LandXML format, as described in the attached eBIDS Handoff Checklist and Computer File Index.

The “eBIDS Handoff Package” roadway digital design data provided on the eBIDS reference documents site is for bidding purposes only. As with all documents on the eBIDS reference documents site, use of this data for any other purpose is at the Bidder's own risk.

In addition to the “eBIDS Handoff Package”, a “Construction Survey Handoff Package” may be provided to the awarded Contractor at the pre-survey meeting. Additional information regarding the content of the Construction Survey Handoff Package is provided in Appendix M of ODOT's Highway Design Manual. The roadway digital design data provided to the awarded Contractor may be used to aid in the use of automated machine control equipment, such as GPS grade control, for earthwork construction. Three dimensional representations of physical project component “solids” (pipes, footings, structures, poles, etc.) will not be provided.

~~1102.4.2~~1102.4.1 Geometry

Include alignment data for all alignments shown on the general construction plan sheets. Alignment names are to match the names shown on the plans. Where applicable, include the corresponding vertical alignments~~.~~ used for construction. Provide the alignments in ~~both the~~ LandXML ~~format and a text report. See and for examples of alignment reports in text~~ format.

~~Figure -: Sample Horizontal Alignment Report~~

HzAlgReport.txt - Notepad

File Edit Format View Help

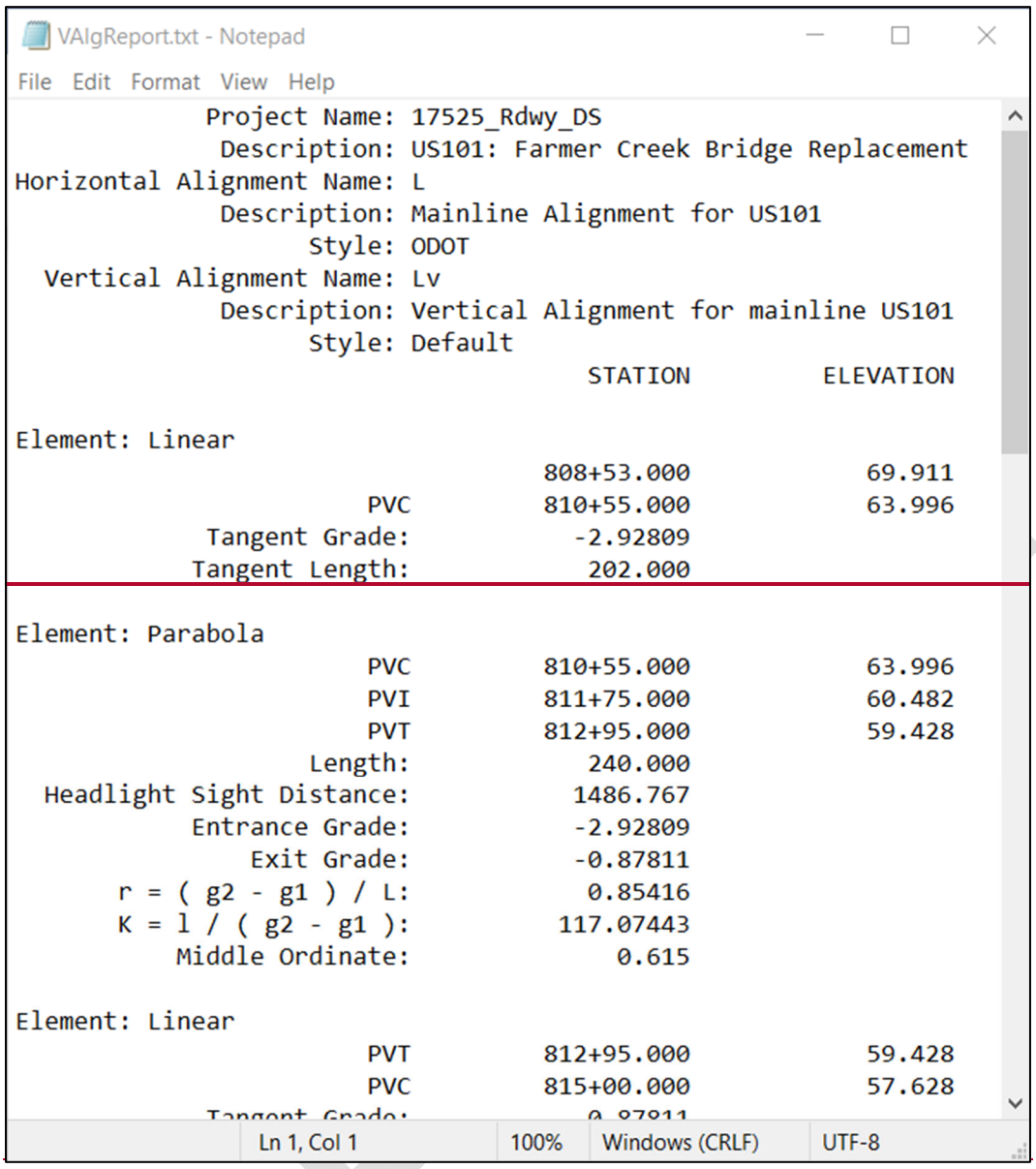
```
            Project Name: 17525_Rdwy_DS
             Description: US101: Farmer Creek Bridge Replacement
Horizontal Alignment Name: L
             Description: Mainline Alignment for US101
                   Style: ODOT
                                        STATION      NORTHING
 EASTING

Element: Linear
                (        )          808+00.000   1395109.359
494038.938
           P.C. (        )          809+48.761   1394960.624
494036.190
         Tangent Direction:      S  1^03'30" W
            Tangent Length:            148.761

Element: Circular
           P.C. (        )          809+48.761   1394960.624
494036.190
           P.I. (        )          812+22.759   1394686.672
494031.129
         Rad. Pt (        )                       1394845.169
500285.574
           P.T. (        )          814+96.407   1394413.329
494050.060
                    Radius:            6250.450
         Design Speed(mph):              55.000
            Superelevation:                 NC
                     Delta:            5^01'12" Left
Degree of Curvature(Chord):            0^55'00"
                    Length:             547.645
                   Tangent:             273.998
```

Ln 1, Col 1 | 100% | Windows (CRLF) | UTF-8

~~Figure -: Sample Vertical Alignment Report~~



~~1102.4.3~~1102.4.2 Surfaces

Provide LandXML files for ~~all top~~ surfaces. Include both the features (breaklines, random points, and boundaries) and the triangle definitions. Separate files (one for features and one for triangle definitions) are recommended for large surfaces. No file should have more than one surface. Non-triangulated features and surfaces~~,~~ other than the top~~,~~ are ~~helpful but~~ not required.

~~1102.4.4~~1102.4.3 Cross Sections

Include PDF sheets of cross sections for all modeled alignments. Space the cross sections no more than 25′ apart. Include cross sections at the following key points along alignments:

- Typical section changes
- Alignment cardinal points
- Drainage facilities
- Taper start and stop locations
- Guardrail and barrier limits
- Centerline of approaches
- Curb or pavement return points
- Luminaire and signal pole locations

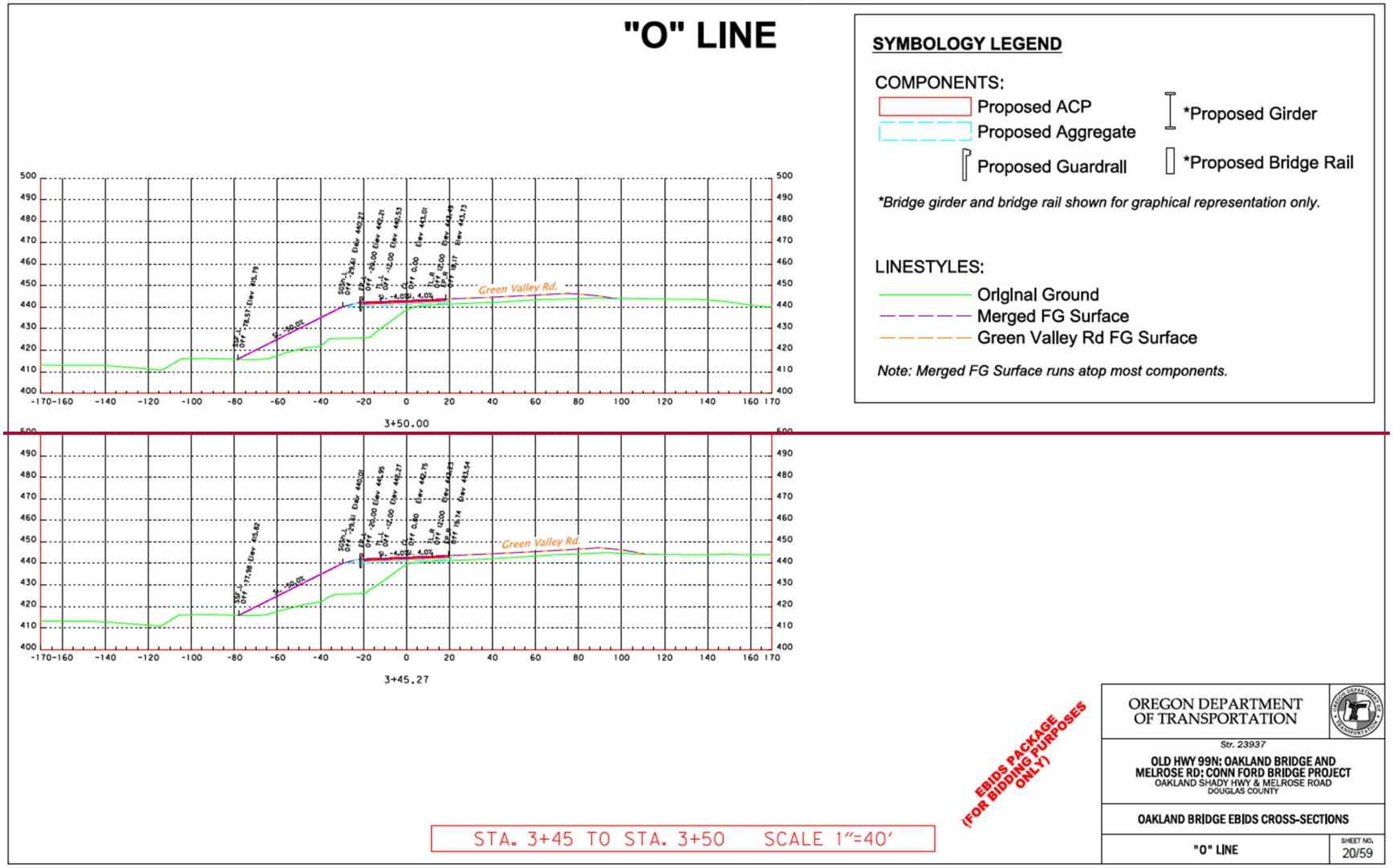
There may be other features unique to a project that will require special sections.

Include all surfaces and components that fall within the range of the cross section set. Annotate the features in the cross sections with name, offset and elevation. Identify all surfaces and components by either labeling directly or with a legend at least once on each sheet. Be sure to print to PDF in a vector (not rasterized) format with lightweight lines.

On each sheet, include the disclaimer that the cross sections are informational only and are not to be used for construction. See the EAST PDF List

DRAFT

~~Figure -: Sample eBIDS Cross-Section~~



for current workflow information.

DRAFT

1102.5 Construction Survey Handoff Package

The Construction Survey Handoff package includes the data to be used for construction. The contents are tailored to meet the needs of the Resident Engineer to administer the contract and the needs of the contractor to construct the project. Typically, the model is not complete at the time of bidding – there may be several, usually small, details requiring attention before it can be used for construction. After a project is advertised, the designer has six to seven weeks to finalize the model and assemble this handoff package. The contents of the package are dictated by the needs of the project participants: the Resident Engineer and the contractor. The designer must collaborate with the Resident Engineer to define what information is needed and in what format it should be provided.

These are some general expectations and some of the common file types:

- **Geometry** - Include all alignment data for the project, the horizontal and vertical alignments used to control the model as well as alignments identified in the plans. ~~These might be in CAD~~Provide geometry files~~,~~ in LandXML ~~files, text reports, or other formats~~format.
- **Surfaces** - ~~All surfaces~~Surfaces that define construction materials or pay quantities~~.~~, provided in LandXML ~~and 3D CAD files of the model will probably be the most useful~~format.
- **Cross Sections** - Updated surfaces and components ~~will~~may necessitate new cross sections. ~~Different~~When requested by the Contractor, different or additional cross sections may be required at this handoff. CAD and PDF are common file formats.
- **Reports** ~~– Grade –~~ When requested by the Contractor, grade and staking reports ~~will probably be~~are required. These are usually spreadsheets, text files, or PDF files.
- **Additional Information**:
    - Drainage facility information can frequently be delivered as 3D alignments and COGO points, surface features or in 3D CAD files.
    - Microstation design base files for elements not contained in LandXML files. May include, but not be limited to:
        - Preservation work without 3D modeling
        - Sign ~~and other~~layout
        - Striping layout
        - Other traffic-related locations~~.~~
    - Earthwork around structures.

DRAFT

- Files describing many of the boundaries – R/W, no-work areas, clearing limits, etc. – may be required.

Coordination with other disciplines may be required and source information should be obtained from the discipline performing the work.

The Resident Engineer is the Agency's contact with the contractor. Route all communication with the contractor through the Resident Engineer's office.

Section 1103 Digital Design Elements

1103.1 Software

ODOT roadway designers use Bentley OpenRoads Designer to provide digital design packages for construction projects. Subject to their respective contracts, ODOT's consultant partners may use other software to execute their design, but the deliverables shall be in file formats compatible with ODOT's design software.

1103.2 Possible Digital File Formats

These are the various file types and formats that may be used in the digital handoff packages:

- **CAD (graphics)** – MicroStation design file (.dgn). Do not include CAD files in the Bid Reference Handoff package.
- **Horizontal control coordinates** – ASCII/text (.txt).
- **Elevations** – ASCII/text (.txt).
- **Horizontal and vertical alignments** – Text file (.txt); Geometry report (.xml or .html); LandXML (.xml) alignment; MicroStation design file (.dgn).
- **Superelevation** – superelevation diagram in MicroStation design file (.dgn); HTML (.html) report; text (.txt), spreadsheet (.csv).
- ~~**Existing ground surface** – LandXML surface (.xml); MicroStation design file (.dgn).~~
- ~~**Proposed surfaces**~~**Surfaces** – LandXML surface (.xml); MicroStation design file (.dgn).
- **Cross section data** – MicroStation design file (.dgn); PDF; cross section report (.xml, .html and .txt); spreadsheet (.xlsx).
- **Quantities**:

DRAFT

- **Volume** – volume report (.xml or .html); MicroStation design file (.dgn); text (.txt); spreadsheet (.xlsx).
- **Area** –surface area report (.txt); MicroStation design file (.dgn); text (.txt); spreadsheet (.xlsx).
- **Linear** – MicroStation design file (.dgn); text (.txt); spreadsheet (.xlsx).

Section 1104 3D Design Quality Control

Review of the 3D model is a part of the region quality control process. While the 3D model may be used for design analysis or as an aid to design review, the 3D model review should not be considered a design or a plan review. The purpose of the 3D model review is to ensure the integrity of the model and to verify that it agrees with other project documents. Review digital design data handoff packages prior to submission. Review at other design milestones may also be beneficial. Ideally, reviewers of the handoff packages have direct knowledge of construction methods and contract administration practices.

Provide the following information to the reviewer:

- Engineering files defining the 3D model:
  - Alignments
  - Original (existing) ground surface(s)
  - Design surfaces
  - Cross sections
  - 3D models from other disciplines if available
  - Pertinent information from other disciplines
- Latest set of plan sheets (DAP, Preliminary, Advance, Final, ~~Mylar~~PS&E).
- Quantity summary.

Reviews at design milestones have a different objective from reviews of the handoff packages. Milestone reviews focus on how well the model represents the designer's intent. The degree to which the model matches the designer's intent depends on the design stage and increases as the project progresses.

Handoff package reviews focus on the suitability of the digital data package for estimating or construction, respectively. Since an accurate representation of the design is essential to estimating and construction, the review focuses on the finer details of the model and composition of the digital design data package itself. There should be very few discrepancies or

DRAFT

errors in the model when the Bid Reference Handoff package is due, which is at the time of contract advertisement.

Handoff package reviewers must check the following items:

- Alignments
  - Alignments match plans
  - Stationing matches plans
  - Alignment integrity is suitable
  - Alignment names match the names on plans
  - Only alignments used for final model included; no alternative or early versions
- Surfaces
  - Accurate triangulation
  - Suitable triangle density
  - Abutting finish grade surfaces match
  - Abutting subgrade surfaces match, if applicable
  - Design model surfaces and features tie into original ground
  - Features match plan
  - Component depths match typical section thicknesses
  - Constructability
  - Reasonable transitions between differing slope rates
  - Separate file for each surface
  - No gaps or overlaps
  - Constructible transitions at typical section changes and surface connections
  - Feature and component names consistent with naming convention
  - Components match typical sections
- Quantities measured from model match quantity summary
- Package Documentation
  - ~~Notification letter (printed to pdf so fields are no longer fillable) with checklist and index attached~~
  - Handoff checklist
  - Computer file index

DRAFT

        - All project data is provided, including project geographic coordinate system
        - All files listed are included in package
        - All files included are listed in index
        - Files are sorted by data type
        - All files have descriptions
    - Corridor map index for complicated projects
- Cross Section Data
    - Project identified on all sheets
    - Alignment identified on all sheets
    - All components shown on each sheet and identified by legend or annotation
    - Key point labeled with name, offset and elevation
    - All surfaces falling within the cross section extent are shown
    - Cross sections spaced no more than 25 feet apart
    - Cross sections included at key stations (typical section changes, alignment cardinal points, drainage facilities, taper start and stop locations, guardrail or barrier ends, centerline of approaches, curb/pavement return points, and luminaire and signal pole locations)
    - Disclaimer on bid reference cross sections
- Drainage
    - Locations and inverts of drainage pipes and structures are shown
    - Earthwork adapted to accommodate drainage features – e.g., ditch deepened to match pipe invert

DRAFT

Part 1200 Other Technical Disciplines

DRAFT

Section 1201 Introduction

This section contains processes and guidance for roadway design as it relates to other technical disciplines. Consult the other technical disciplines for specific design guidance and to ensure an appropriate level of coordination between roadway and other disciplines.

1201.1 Documentation and Approval Font Key

Text within this part is presented in specific fonts that show the required documentation and/or approval if the design does not meet the requirements shown. Table 1200-1 shows the four text fonts used, along with their descriptions. The text in figures, tables, exhibits, equations, footnotes, endnotes, and captions typically does not utilize the font key.

Table 1200-1: Documentation and Approval Font Key

Font	Documentation	Approver
Bold text	Design Exceptions	State Roadway Engineer (SRE) and for some projects FHWA
Bold Italics text	Design Decisions Document	Region with Tech Expert input or other approver as described
Italics Text	Document decisions	Engineer of Record (EOR)
General Text (Not bold or italics)	N/A	N/A

Bold Text - Some standards appear in a bold font style. A design exception is required to justify and document not meeting a standard that appears in bold. The State Roadway Engineer (SRE) gives formal approval, and FHWA approves as required. See 1201.2 for a description of design standards. In the case of 3R clear zone approvals and local agency projects off the state highway system, design exceptions can be approved by someone other than the State Roadway Engineer (see sections 402 and 1003.5).

Bold Italics Text - Both standards and guidelines may appear in a bold italics font style. While a formal design exception is not required when not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, document and justify the decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. When not meeting a standard or guideline that appears in bold italics, region approval with input from Technical Experts, or other approval as described in the HDM, is required. For urban projects, formally record decisions via the Urban

Design Concurrence Document in the Design Decision portion. The Urban Design Concurrence document is located on the Highway Design Manual website. See 1201.2 and 1201.3 for descriptions of design standards and guidelines.

Italics Text - Design decisions that require documentation appear in italic font style in design parameters sections. While a formal design exception is not required, document the design decisions made by the Engineer of Record in decision documents or other engineering reports. See 1201.3 and 1201.4.

General Text - Any informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. The remaining text in the manual is general text and may include supporting information, background discussion, commentary, explanations, information about design process or procedures, description of methods, or potential considerations and all other general discussion. General text statements do not include any special text formatting. General text may be used to inform and support design exception requests, particularly where narrative explanations show best practices or methods of design that support the requested design exception.

1201.2 Standards

A standard is a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a roadway geometric feature or appurtenance. The verb “provide” is typically used. The adjective “required” is typically used in figures to illustrate Standard statements. The verbs “should” and “may” are not used in Standard statements. The adjectives “recommended” and “optional” are only used in Standard statements to describe recommended or optional design features as they relate to required design features. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 1201.4).

1201.3 Guidelines

A guideline is a statement of recommended practice in typical situations. The verb “should” is typically used. The adjective “recommended” is typically used in figures to illustrate Guideline statements. The verbs “provide” and “may” are not used in Guideline statements. The adjectives “required” and “optional” are only used in Guideline statements to describe required or optional design features as they relate to recommended design features. Guideline statements are sometimes modified by Best Practices (see 1201.4).

DRAFT

1201.4 Best Practices

A Best Practice is a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Best Practice statements sometimes contain allowable ranges within a Standard or Guideline statement. The verb "may" is typically used. The adjective "optional" is typically used in figures to illustrate Best Practice statements. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Best Practice statements. The adjectives "required" and "recommended" are only used in Best Practice statements to describe required or recommended design features as they relate to optional design features.

Section 1202 Bridge

1202.1 General

It is important to contact the Bridge Engineering Section when a project involves some type of structural element, whether it is a retaining wall, culvert, bridge, cantilever sign support, etc. The designer should stay in contact with the bridge designer as a project develops to ensure that the roadway and bridge elements of a project fit together.

1202.2 Bridge Definition

A bridge is defined as a structure spanning and providing passage over a river, chasm, road, or the like, having a length of 20 feet or more from face to face of abutments or end bents, measured along the roadway centerline.

1202.3 Structure Types

Structure types include culverts, slabs, box beams, and various types of deck girders, box girders, arches, and trusses. The selection of structure type is determined by the site, economic, environmental (in-water work windows, etc.) and esthetic considerations.

For small streams, a culvert might be used instead of a bridge. However, for locations with low deck-to-streambed clearances, a culvert may not be proposed because it could not provide enough waterway area. Fish passage issues may also influence the type of structure selected.

Concrete structures may either be pre-cast or cast-in-place. Pre-cast members offer the advantage of off-site fabrication (especially important in remote locations), speed of construction and minimal falsework. Precast members can play a key role in accelerated bridge construction, where it is important to minimize the impact of a construction zone on road users

DRAFT

and interested parties. However, it may be difficult to accommodate horizontal curves, and changes in grade lines or superelevation with precast members. Cast-in-place structures can more easily accommodate the geometrics but require falsework, which ~~can create a~~requires consideration for traffic ~~hazard~~safety at grade crossings and can potentially cause ~~problems~~issues at stream crossings.

The roadway designer needs to be aware that there are many types of structures with features that can complement the specific site conditions. It is very important that the roadway designer and the structure designer communicate all of the site conditions to facilitate appropriate structure type selection.

1202.4 Structure Lengths

1202.4.1 Roadway Crossings

For bridges on county roads and less traveled highways, provide the required roadway horizontal clearance plus 1:1.5 end slopes. For all other highways use 1:2 end slopes. When using end slopes steeper than 1:2 a geotechnical review shall be completed to ensure stability.

1202.4.2 Stream Crossings

Provide the required waterway opening to pass the specified design flood. The hydraulics report will provide a required waterway area, the stream bed elevation and the design flood high water elevation. Normally, a minimum bottom-of-beam clearance of 12 inches is provided above the design flood high water elevation. If drift or debris is a concern, the bottom of beam clearance will be increased.

Normally, overtopping is not desirable, but may be required to accommodate regulated hydraulic considerations.

Provide the required waterway opening to meet fish passage requirements.

See also Section 1212 Hydraulics.

1202.5 Structure Clearances

See Part 300 for additional information on all clearances.

DRAFT

1202.5.1 Vertical Clearance for Highway Traffic

Proposed new construction that reduces vertical clearance shall require consultation with the Statewide Mobility Program to ensure understanding of the impact of the proposed decrease to the user. All other projects, which result in final vertical clearances at or above the minimum vertical clearance, require notification of MCTD to ensure all vertical clearance inventories are current and updated for the appropriate routing of permit vehicles.

For projects other than new construction, no reduction of the existing vertical clearance below the minimum vertical clearance is allowed.

1. All High Routes the Vertical Clearance Standard is 17 feet-4 inches.
2. All non-High Routes on the NHS the Vertical Clearance " Standard is 17 feet.
3. All non-High Routes and non-NHS the Vertical Clearance Standard is 16 feet
4. Vertical clearances during construction below the minimums requires consultation with the ODOT Statewide Mobility Program.

More information, standards, and guidance on vertical clearance is available in Highway Directive TRA 07-15 and Tech Bulletin RD17-02(B).

1202.5.2 Horizontal Clearances for Highway Traffic

Normally the bridge roadway width will equal the approach roadway width plus 4 feet for bridge rail shy distance.

1202.5.3 Vertical Clearances for Railroad Traffic

Coordinate with the Railroad Liaison to determine required vertical clearances for railroad traffic. In general, the following minimum vertical clearances apply, however, the Railroad Liaison may determine that project-specific clearances are required.

1. All new structures are to be designed with a minimum of 23 feet 6 inches vertical clearance.
2. A minimum vertical clearance of 21 feet (UPRR) or 21 feet-6 inches (BNSF) is required during construction.

DRAFT

1202.5.4 Horizontal Clearances for Railroad Traffic

Coordinate with the Railroad Liaison to determine required horizontal clearances for railroad traffic. In general, the following minimum horizontal clearances apply, however, the Railroad Liaison may determine that project-specific clearances are required.

1. The minimum clear distance from the center line of the track to a column face is 25 feet. This distance can be reduced to 18 feet if crash walls are installed.
2. A minimum horizontal clearance of 12 feet (UPRR) or 15 feet (BNSF) is required during construction.

1202.5.5 Horizontal Clearance during Construction

Coordinate with the Statewide Mobility Program to determine required horizontal clearances during construction. In general, the following minimum horizontal clearances apply, however, the Mobility Services Team may determine that project-specific clearances are required.

1. On Interstate Freeways the minimum width of 19 feet between face of rail for one-way/one lane traffic, plus additional clearance to falsework behind rails. Above 8 feet vertical on each side an additional 2 feet horizontal is required.
2. On non-Interstate highways the minimum width of 16 feet between face of rail for one-way traffic, plus additional clearance to falsework behind rails.
3. Minimum width of 28 feet between face of rail for two-way traffic, plus additional clearance to falsework behind rails.

1202.6 Curbs and Sidewalks

For a particular crash tested bridge rail, the curb or sidewalk height should be used as shown on the appropriate standard drawing.

1202.7 Deck Drains

Some form of drainage system is normally needed on or off structures that have curb or concrete parapet rails. The Roadway Plans drainage details should be carefully reviewed. If drains are required, the project hydraulics engineer will do the design and determine the size and spacing. Bridge length, deck grades, cross slope, typical section, and deck surface type will be needed to determine the deck drain layout. See also Section 1212.

DRAFT

1202.8 Structure Superelevations

The structure superelevation should match the roadway superelevation criteria. Structures are more susceptible to surface icing therefore superelevation rates may need to be limited to 8 percent or less in areas beyond the traditional snow/ice limits of the roadway superelevation criteria.

1202.9 Traffic Control during Construction

There are four basic methods of handling traffic for replacing a bridge:

1. Close the highway while removing and rebuilding the bridge.
2. Use the existing roadway and bridge while constructing a parallel bridge on new alignment.
3. Construct a temporary detour bridge around the existing bridge and replace the bridge on the existing alignment.
4. Use stage construction with existing or new lanes carrying traffic while other portions of the existing bridge are being removed and rebuilt.

In addition, accommodations need to be made for pedestrians (including the disabled) and bicycles passing through the work site, especially in urban areas.

1202.10 Bridge Rail End and Barrier Treatments

The proper type of bridge rail end and barrier treatment is dependent upon the location of treatment. Below is a listing of ways of treating bridge ends and barriers. Engineering judgment is still required when areas of treatment are nonstandard.

1. Rural conditions, bridge rail end treatment: Use standard approach guardrail to bridge rail transitions. Apply at all rail ends inside the clear zone.
2. Urban conditions, bridge rail end treatment: Normally no approach rail is used when the design speed is 40 mph and below. In these cases, the end of the bridge rail will be protected by a tapered down concrete transition, even if the rail is at the back of a raised sidewalk and is outside the clear zone.
3. Ditch rider roads, bridge rail end treatments: When ditch rider roads are closer to the end of the bridge than standard transitions will allow, a crash-tested treatment shall be used. There is a minimum distance from transition to ditch rider road that allows this system to work, so judgment shall be used in those situations.

DRAFT

1202.11 Bridge Design Deviations

The bridge discipline uses a design deviation process to document design details that do not meet ODOT Bridge design standards. The ODOT Bridge Design Manual (BDM) provides guidance for when a Bridge Design Deviation is required and the process to complete one.

Section 1203 Geotechnical Design

1203.1 General

Two of the many questions faced by the roadway designer include:

1. What are geotechnical project elements; and
2. How should they be dealt with?

Geotechnical project elements include all issues of design and construction involving soil and rock. How to deal with geotechnical project elements is a more complicated question. Since almost every highway project uses either earth or rock as a construction material and relies on earth support, subsurface information and geotechnical data is essential for project planning, design, and construction. Any geologic feature or material that affects the design and construction phase of a project or has a bearing on site or corridor selection in terms of hazards or economics must be investigated and analyzed. Of equal importance is the clear and accurate portrayal of these conditions in a format that is accessible and understandable by all users.

The purpose of this section is to make the roadway designer aware of the broad range of geotechnical issues that may need to be addressed, and their potential effects on any project regardless of size or apparent complexity. There are common project elements that typically require site-specific geotechnical investigation and design such as bridge foundations and landslide mitigations. Some project elements, depending on the site history and underlying geology, may or may not need a site-specific geotechnical investigation and design, or may require different levels of effort. The geotechnical designers will be able to determine the level of effort based on their own or other's knowledge and experience of the site to make these judgments. Because of the underlying site conditions, elements that generally don't warrant geotechnical design for most sites may require it at others. Conversely, investigation and design efforts may be scaled back or eliminated at other sites due to known favorable conditions, and the significance of the project feature. It is the geotechnical designer's responsibility to make these decisions.

The guidance provided in this section is not exhaustive as every project is unique. The ODOT Geotechnical Design Manual (GDM) must be consulted for all geotechnical design elements.

DRAFT

1203.2 Common Geotechnical Design Issues

Due to the variability of soil and rock, the design and construction of embankments and cut slopes require investigation, laboratory testing, and geotechnical analyses. The following is a short list of common geotechnical issues encountered during project delivery. Since every project is unique, the list is not exhaustive, and the GDM must be consulted for all geotechnical design elements.

1203.2.1 Selecting and Designing Stable Slopes for Cuts and Embankments

This far ranging issue must consider the materials available or required for construction, the space available to make the slopes, erosion from the slope, picking slopes to minimize maintenance, how the slopes will be constructed, surface drainage over the slope, and quality control to ensure good performance. The subject also includes designing steeper than usual slopes to accommodate right of way limitations, avoid environmental features, or simply save money. Many options can be used to build steep slopes ranging from specially placed select materials to geosynthetic reinforcement.

1203.2.2 Designing Inclinations for Cut Slopes and Embankments

Inclinations for cut slopes and embankments under 10 feet in height can be designed by the roadway engineer with an inclination no steeper than 1V:2H. Inclinations outside of this criteria may be recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer. Many projects are space constrained (right-of-way, environmental avoidance, etc.) which require steeper, and/or higher slopes. Early identification and communication of these locations with the geotechnical staff is critical so subsurface investigations, laboratory testing, and analyses can be performed, and recommendations can be made for the project design.

1203.2.3 Unstable Slopes

This deals with the broad subject of building on or around landslides or not creating landslides with earthwork construction. Both cuts and fills may be involved. The subject also includes the possibility of destabilizing an existing fill by making changes to it including widening or slope steepening. Special design is usually necessary to recognize and deal with this issue.

DRAFT

1203.2.4 Embankments over Soft Foundations

An embankment on soft ground often settles dramatically and may slide, slump, or sink during construction if not designed properly. It is important to know how much settlement will occur and how long it will take to finish. Often, measures must be taken to accelerate settlement or improve foundation strength. Options include flat slopes, berms, stage construction, surcharging, wick drainage, foundation reinforcement, ground improvement and lightweight embankment materials.

1203.2.5 Materials for Construction

On-site soils must generally be used for economy, but they may be poorly suited for embankment construction. Soil type and excess moisture are often problems. Wet soils and strategies for dealing with them must be recognized. Finding suitable sources for borrow can be important. Also under this heading are design strategies for getting embankment built over wet, soft subgrade, or building embankment in wet weather. Other issues may include the presence of boulders, rock, or other obstructions in excavation and the proper placement and compaction of soil, soil rock mixtures, and rock fills. Special density testing and compaction requirements will often be required for special cases including embankments with steep slopes, high embankments, or fills in critical locations.

Materials used for embankment construction must be available in the required quantity, suitable for the time period when construction is anticipated, and suitable for placement and compaction at the design inclination. Use of on-site "selected" soil varies across the state and not all materials are suitable for winter construction. ODOT material sources should be explored for use, through coordination with the project Engineering Geologist or the ODOT Materials Source Manager.

Stone embankment is frequently used as an "all-weather" material, but it is significantly more expensive than other materials. Consider that if embankment construction work is scheduled to occurs between November and May, the plan details may need to account for use of stone embankment and the project should anticipate higher costs for the materials.

1203.2.6 Roadway Widening

Projects involving widening must be carefully considered to assure that cuts and fills will perform well and can actually be constructed. Sliver cuts and fills can be and often are severe construction problems. There are also issues around the type of fill used in a widening and whether certain material may actually destabilize an existing embankment by causing water to backup in the old fill.

DRAFT

For roadway widening projects requiring fill, use DET2101 Sliver Fill Benching Detail, with benching dimension recommended by the geotechnical engineer. The sliver fill is the engineered prism, and any additional soil placed on top of the sliver fill, such as landscaping, must not reduce or change the slope inclination or dimensions. The geotechnical engineer should specify materials for use as fill in widening projects.

1203.2.7 Earthwork Balance Analysis

On moderate to large projects, estimating the volume shrinkage or swell of earth and rock material from borrow to embankment can be a major source of error in balancing the earthwork. A careful consideration of the volumes of material along with evaluation of the earth density can be used to refine shrink/swell estimates.

1203.2.8 Surface and Groundwater Control

Water control is necessary for stable slopes.

1203.2.9 Seismic Site Response and Mitigation Design

Consideration will be increasingly given to the seismic stability of embankments and slopes. Coordinate with the geotechnical engineer to determine if seismic analysis is needed on the project.

1203.2.10 Rock Slopes

In designing new alignments or widening in rock, the issue is the appropriate slope and its configuration to minimize rockfall. Some projects may require improvements in existing rock slopes to minimize the impacts of rockfall. Design guidance is provided later in this document.

1203.2.11 Pavement Subgrade

The Pavement Unit deals with this issue to determine if wet soils will make pavement construction difficult. When significant quantities of subgrade stabilization are proposed for a project, the roadway designer should coordinate discussions between the Pavement Unit and the geotechnical engineer. The geotechnical engineer may need time to investigate and work with Pavements Unit to establish limits the of stabilization.

DRAFT

1203.3 Geotechnical Design Deviations

All State of Oregon projects are required to meet ODOT design standards. Design deviation requests must be submitted for all STIP projects that do not meet standards. A request for a deviation from design standards is appropriate when the request benefits the project and is supported by rational engineering principles. Deviations to design standards should be discussed early in the design process with the assigned technical resource. The ODOT Geotechnical Design Manual provides the process for completing a Geotechnical Design Deviation.

Section 1204 Environmental Studies

1204.1 Project Classification

Per FHWA regulations, ODOT is required to document National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) compliance for federal proposed actions with an FHWA connection (funding or approval). The NEPA document serves a federal purpose and therefore focuses primarily on compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and policies. FHWA also requires compliance with state and local laws as applicable, and state policies require that transportation projects are compatible with state and local transportation plans and policies.

When a project is identified in the Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP), the responsible Region initiates scoping and project development. For NEPA classification and approval documentation, the Region Environmental Coordinator (REC) prepares an Environmental Prospectus to document scoping and to recommend a preliminary NEPA classification to cover the project's proposed actions.

The Environmental Prospectus is required as an attachment for further required NEPA documentation as follows depending on the applicable NEPA classification. For PS&E submittal, only the final NEPA document is required (not the Environmental Prospectus or any other environmental attachment). For NEPA Class 2: Programmatic Categorical Exclusions (PCE) - the PCE Approval (signed by ODOT); for NEPA Class 2: CEs - the CE[1] Closeout (signed

[1] Categorical Exclusion (CE) for Class 2 projects

by FHWA); for NEPA Class 3: EAs - the Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI)[2] (signed by FHWA); and for NEPA Class 1: EISs - the Record of Decision (ROD)[3] (signed by FHWA).

Most projects are Class 2 projects, which do not require an Environmental Assessment or Environmental Impact Statement but may require specific environmental reports and/or mitigation and do require specific permits, approval and/or clearance documents which are attached to the PCE Approval (signed by ODOT) or CE Closeout (signed by FHWA). Class 1 projects will have a significant impact on the natural or human environment and require a draft and final Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS/FEIS) and the issuance of a Record of Decision (ROD). Class 3 projects that may have significant impacts to the natural or human environment require an Environmental Assessment/Revised Environmental Assessment (EA/REA) and a Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI).

Approving the PCE Approval, CE Closeout, FONSI, or ROD by FHWA prior to PS&E allows the project to advance to the final design phase and to undertake right of way acquisition.

1204.2 Environmental Studies

PCE and CE (NEPA Class 2) projects must be evaluated for several of the same elements as NEPA Class 1 and 2 projects are, depending on the type and severity of impact. All impacts, including if there are no or minor impacts, are summarized in the specified locations of the PCE Approval and CE Closeout. Public involvement and community/EJ/equity engagement, environmental commitments, and Tribal consultation summaries are also included in all PCEs and CEs. Projects that are classified as Categorical Exclusions are evaluated to determine that there are minimal impacts, if any, and documented in the Environmental Prospectus. The required level of detail, supporting environmental studies, and documentation are driven by the nature of the impacts, not necessarily the NEPA class of the project.

The purpose of the environmental evaluation is to give information to the project team, the public, and the regulating agencies so that project decisions can be made by decision makers who are informed of all the consequences of the decisions they are making. It is hoped that this

[2] Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) for Class 3 projects. A FONSI is attached to the Environmental Assessment or the Revised Environmental Assessment if revisions are called for.

[3] Record of Decision (ROD) for Class 1 projects. The ROD is the final NEPA approval document for a project that has significant impacts and is therefore required to be analyzed in an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS)—consisting of a Draft EIS (DEIS), a Final EIS (FEIS), and a ROD which captures the decision made and the rationale for making the decision. FHWA is the decision-maker for all NEPA documents.

will lead to the solution that best balances transportation needs, safety, economics, and minimizes harm to the greatest extent feasible, to the natural habitat and human environment.

Environmental Policy requires avoidance, minimization, and compensatory mitigation, in that order. All ODOT and LPA sponsored transportation projects require a standard list of regulatory approvals, clearances, and/or permits as applicable to the project's environmental impacts. The ODOT NEPA Program website contains all the FHWA-approved NEPA forms, templates, and procedures for complying with CEs, EAs, and EISs. Individual ODOT environmental discipline program websites contain forms, templates, and procedures for those disciplines – including any specific qualifications required for the preparation and/or completion of any environmental documents that support the NEPA decisions for CEs, EAs, and EISs. Further, ODOT's NEPA Manual can be found at the external website:

https://www.oregon.gov/odot/GeoEnvironmental/Pages/NEPA-Manual.aspx

If federally-protected Parks or Recreation Areas are impacted, those clearances and/or approvals would be required as well, and there can be several other environmental clearances, approvals, and/or permits that are also required either before NEPA is approved or after—during final design and prior to bid let.

Designers should work very closely and as early in the project as possible with the Region Environmental Coordinator (REC) or EPM (Environmental Project Manager) for any questions or issues they may have with a particular design especially if the project is a federal-aid highway program (FHWA-funded) or other federalized modernization, bridge, culvert, or safety project. These types of projects can be much more complex in addressing all the various aspects of environmental constraints and requirements if impacts cannot be entirely avoided. The REC or EPM coordinates with the region or ETSB Environmental Section and is responsible to carry any messages related to design scope, schedule, or budget changes from environmental requirements to the TPM / RE-CP and Project Development Team (PDT) for further discussion if needed.

ODOT has certain time-saving programmatic permits and agreements with various state and federal regulatory agencies that are intended to satisfy regulatory compliance for projects that fall under certain criteria without needing an individual permit or approval directly from the regulatory agency. It is crucial to coordinate with the Region REC or EPM along with the other environmental specialists on the PDT to ensure the correct 'environmental performance standard' or 'best management practice' is being applied to the design in order to meet the relevant environmental standards as well as all the terms and conditions contained within individual permits if those are required. Environmental performance standards include specific design guidance that should be applied to projects that fit a certain category and criteria.

ODOT environmental staff capture environmental commitments made before, during, and after the NEPA process. Some commitments are captured in the various NEPA documents (i.e., CEs, EAs, and EISs) and some are captured in environmental permit terms and conditions.

DRAFT

Remaining environmental commitments are captured via the use of ODOT standard environmental specifications and "specials" as well as other relevant project documentation.

1204.3 Specific Impacts

Project impacts that affect the environment can be either direct or indirect as well as cumulative; occurring over time in addition to other similar impacts within a certain established area such as a watershed or ecosystem region. An example of a direct impact would be the removal of habitat by realigning the roadway prism. Indirect impacts often occur from changes in access. For example, providing an interchange where only an overcrossing existed may induce land use changes which, in turn, impact habitat. Other indirect impacts can occur from increasing development that can result from improvements made (i.e., the projects) to the transportation system. These are more difficult to predict with certainty but are often the more profound impacts. Either type of impact can influence the facility design as the project team attempts to avoid, minimize, or offset/mitigate the impacts. Some of the typical impact areas are:

1204.3.1 Noise

Noise barriers may be used to mitigate traffic noise on a project. The preliminary design (location, height, length) for these barriers is done by the noise analyst (consultant) conducting the technical work for the noise study. After the barrier has been determined to be feasible and reasonable, the affected residents and property owners must vote their approval before the wall can be built. The public involvement process may also be used to help determine the type and the surface features (if any) of the wall and desirability of a noise barrier.

The final decision as to the type of noise barrier to be constructed will be made during the final design process. The project structural designer will do the final design of the structural element of a noise wall often working with the noise analyst who did the preliminary design to ensure effectiveness of the final wall location and dimensions. The project roadway designer will do the final design of an earth berm.

It is essential to realize that additional right of way may be necessary to construct the footings for a wall. In addition, conflicts can arise between a noise barrier's location and utilities, signing or drainage facilities. Coordination during the final design process involving all the affected groups will help in avoiding conflicts with wall placement.

1204.3.2 Historic

Environmental laws that require that all buildings, objects, sites, structures (i.e., bridges/tunnels) or districts (i.e., historic roads, railroads) listed in or eligible for listing in the

DRAFT

National Register of Historic Places, and publicly owned parks, recreation areas, and wildlife or waterfowl refuges, be avoided, or if part of the transportation system, are minimally affected.

1204.3.3 Archaeology

Archaeological sites are frequently identified on our projects and can influence engineering and design. The archaeological site type, depth, and location may require special protections and sometimes even warrant preservation in place. For example, archaeological sites are frequently found at stream crossings and confluences; they can be deeply buried or relatively shallow. Such sites may require special re-designs to avoid the locations. In addition, some Tribes continue to use certain site locations for ceremonial practices; in those cases, a project may require special engineering/design for access points. Designating no-work zone areas is also typical. Successful design alternatives can be reached by working closely with the project RECs and ODOT Archaeologists and through consultation with the Tribes. For some projects, an archaeological monitor might be required to be present during portions of construction. Always coordinate with the REC, EPM, and ODOT Archaeologist to determine if or when an archaeological monitor will need to be present on a project during construction. Archaeological monitoring requirements for any project will be contained in the project specifications (00290.51) and contract.

1204.3.4 Wetlands

All NEPA classes of projects frequently impact wetlands. It is critical to determine if there are alternatives that avoid the impact, and if not, how the impact can be minimized or mitigated, in that order, for all wetland areas. Different alignments, steeper slopes, retaining walls, and other techniques must be used to avoid or reduce impacts, if these techniques are feasible in the impact area.

1204.3.5 Water Quality

Designs that can avoid disturbance of water quality, including changes to an area's hydrology, are important to consider. Stormwater management for water quality is required for projects that:

1. Increase impervious surface area,
2. Change highway alignment and/or modify the storm drainage system including adding curbing to current uncurbed sections of roadway,
3. Replace or widen stream crossing structures (bridges, culverts, etc.), or
4. Do extensive reconstruction of the roadway by removing and replacing the pavement.

DRAFT

Water quality treatment is to be designed to treat all the runoff from the project's contributing impervious area (CIA) resulting from the water quality design storm[4]. Treatment techniques that incorporate infiltration, media filtration and filtration through vegetation are highly effective at removing highway pollutants thereby maintaining and/or improving water quality. Information on triggers for treatment of stormwater, the water quality design storm, and treatment techniques is available in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual.

Flow control is required for projects that increase discharges to a surface water by more than 0.5 cubic feet per second (cfs) from the 10-year 24-hour storm, and do not discharge into a large water body (river, lake, reservoir, estuary, ocean). The intent is to prevent adverse changes to stream stability and form by matching the post-project to the pre-project hydrology for the range of flows most responsible for stream channel processes and erosion. Detailed information on the range of flows is found in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual.

1204.3.6 Threatened and Endangered (T&E) Species

Many projects have the potential to impact wildlife in general, specifically T&E plant and animal species. In this case, design changes to avoid impacts are required. Conservation measures are often required as part of the construction contract to avoid impacts to protected species. Since these vary widely with the various species, it is important to work closely with the Region biologist and REC, and/or Local Agency consultant biologist, when designing the facility and work conditions near endangered and threatened species, particularly near fish bearing streams and wildlife groups.

Seasonal in-water work periods are designated for most Oregon waterways; stream classification and fisheries activity can also influence the design of most bridge and culvert replacements and larger transportation improvement projects. Due to the presence and/or likelihood of T&E species and/or critical habitat in many areas of the state, water quality requirements to protect species and in-water work timing prompt critical project discussions between designers and environmental specialists. Designs that can avoid in-water work or disturbance of water quality, including changes to an area's hydrology, are important to consider.

1204.3.7 Migratory Bird Treaty Act

Many projects have potential to violate the Migratory Bird Treaty Act and should be reviewed by the REC or EMP assigned to the project. Activities which are most likely to impact and result

4 The Water Quality Design Storm is 50% of the 2 year 24 hour storm for climate zones 1, 2, 3, 6, 7 and 8, 67% of the 2 year 24 hour storm for climate zones 4 and 9, and 75% of the 2 year 24 hour storm for climate zone 5.

in "take" (e.g., harm, harassment, or death) of migratory birds on highway projects include but are not limited to; clearing or grubbing of roadside and project area vegetation used by migratory birds for nesting habitat during the nesting season when eggs or young are likely to be present, bridge cleaning, painting, demolition, or reconstruction where bird nests are present.

Proper coordination with Region biologists, RECs, or EPMs will help prevent projects from being halted or delayed due to bird issues.

1204.3.8 Air Quality

Transportation plans, programs and projects within Oregon's air quality non-attainment and maintenance areas must conform with the intent of the State Implementation Plan (SIP) for air quality. Major projects in these areas requiring DEIS/FEIS or EA/REA environmental documentation must demonstrate conformity before FHWA can issue a ROD or FONSI. CE and PCE projects involving signalization, channelization, changes in vertical or horizontal alignment or bus terminals may also require a conformity determination. Coordinate with the Region Environmental Coordinator (REC) or an air quality specialist when questions arise regarding specific conformity requirements.

1204.3.9 Hazardous Materials

All projects need to be reviewed for potential impacts to hazardous material sites~~. There are many risks that can be created or aggravated,~~ even when working completely on ODOT right of way. When excavating or working along ditches the designer must be careful of disturbing contamination or causing lateral transport of that contamination, and the design must manage contaminated material, transport, and surface drainage.

All projects require a Pollution Control Plan. The plan will address the contractor's response in the event of an unforeseen spill, leak, or discovery.

New federal policies stress that the State needs to consider future land uses when deciding the location of facilities. It is not necessary to try to avoid all contamination. The contaminated site could be used for transportation, which could bring the site into greater productivity.

1204.3.10 Public Parks and Recreation Areas

Public parks, recreation areas, trails, scenic corridors, and other recreation resources could have received funding from state and/or federal grant programs that require that land to stay in recreation use "in perpetuity". If a transportation project needs to acquire any amount of property (including temporary and permanent easements or rights-of-entry) from those

protected recreational properties, formal consultation with and approvals from state and federal parks agencies, FHWA, and the local park or recreation area "official with jurisdiction" may be needed to allow a use other than recreation to occur. Region RECs and EPMs will assist designers and project teams in determining those needs and will also lead the consultation and approval process along with the region ROW agents. In some cases, project re-design may be needed to avoid impacts to these state and/or federally protected recreation properties.

1204.3.11 Other Areas

Project impacts to floodplains, scenic resources, emergency services, neighborhoods, social and cultural interactions, businesses and other environmental subject areas can be of sufficient importance to influence the design. Land use and planning, particularly compatibility with comprehensive plans, Department of Land Conservation and Development Statewide Planning Goals, and requirements of the Transportation Planning Rule, are critical elements in determining the design of the facility.

Using an equitable approach for ensuring environmental justice compliance is critical in determining the location and type of transportation projects by considering previous impacts, as well as the new project's impacts, to historically underserved or excluded communities in the area. Both ODOT and FHWA have several requirements that must be met during the preparation of a draft STIP and during preliminary engineering of STIP projects.

1204.3.12 Permits

Many of the above areas will require individual environmental permits (see Section 1214), if the project cannot meet the available programmatic permit requirements that ODOT currently has in place with several regulatory agencies. The Region REC or EPM is the best source for designers to determine if and when individual environmental permits and other individual approvals are needed.

1204.4 Design Specifications

A summary of mitigation and conservation measures, known as 'environmental commitments', is included in the PCE Approval, CE Closeout, REA, or FEIS for the specific project. These environmental commitments are incorporated into the plans and specifications for the project. Although there are some standard conservation measures listed in the *"Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction"*, project specific items are identified in the PCE Approval, CE Closeout, REA, or FEIS.

As stated previously, the Region REC or EPM for a specific project should be consulted early in the project's design on questions regarding all environmental commitments.

DRAFT

1204.5 Plans, Specifications and Estimate (PS&E)

Approximately 7 weeks prior to bid letting, the PS&E package - which includes the required NEPA approval document and all environmental clearances, approvals, and permits - is delivered to the Project Controls Office (PCO) for final processing. All NEPA approvals and other environmental permitting work must be completed at this point.

Section 1205 Rail

1205.1 General

As with airports, rail crossings in the vicinity of projects cause the influence areas of the respective modes to overlap. Projects near railroads, light rail, and other rail system crossings need to be reviewed for potential impacts. Rail crossings may be at-grade or grade separated depending on elements such as type of facilities, conflict points, and safety requirements. It is desirable to avoid or reduce at-grade rail crossings. The project team should hold discussions with the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division to determine the need to grade separate the crossing or leave it as an at-grade crossing.

Roadway projects in the vicinity of railroads need to accommodate the type of cargo and goods that are exchanged between rail and other transportation modes such as truck freight. Turning radii, travel lanes, or additional dedicated turn lanes need to be considered in the accommodation of vehicles moving such cargo and goods between roadway freight and rail lines. Review the existing Transportation System Plans to determine any related rail transportation needs.

ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division's jurisdiction for the regulation of the railroad-highway at grade crossings extends a distance equal to the stopping sight distance (SSD), for the posted or statutory speed, measured back from the location of the stop clearance line at the railroad crossing (OAR 741-100-0005).

Because ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division has jurisdiction within the SSD from the stop clearance line, it is important to include them in the scoping phase of project development so that there is enough time to obtain a Rail Crossing Order if needed. It is also important to include the State Railroad Liaison in the scoping as they will be developing an agreement with the Railroad Company. (See Right of Way Manual, Chapter 10.)

Failure to coordinate with ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division and the State Railroad Liaison will result in excessive delays to your project schedule.

DRAFT

1205.2 Field Diagnostic Review

The field Diagnostic Review is part of the requirements found in 23 CFR Part 646 – Railroads, Part 646.214 – Design. This will occur early in the design process, at project scoping or prior to DAP plans, and is coordinated by the State Railroad Liaison and the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division. The review typically includes the following members:

- The State Railroad Liaison
- Road Authority
- Project Team Leader
- ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division representative
- Railroad Company representative
- Construction representative
- Designers (Signal, Roadway, and others as needed)

The field diagnostic review team will meet on-site to determine the required safety upgrades to the railroad crossing. The findings from the field diagnostic review will be the starting point for:

- Identifying design constraints and work to be completed;
- Completing the Railroad-Highway Public Safety Application (which is required to obtain the Rail Crossing Order for ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division; and
- Obtaining any necessary design exceptions.

1205.3 Rail Crossing Orders

The rail crossing order process involves strict procedures and timelines to ensure proper coordination with the affected railroad company and all other interested parties. Obtaining a rail crossing order typically takes 6 to 18 months, depending on the complexity of the proposed work.

Each public railroad crossing is required to have a Rail Crossing Order. Rail Crossing Orders are issued by the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division and authorize the alterations to crossings, both at-grade and grade separated crossing types. Private crossings are not regulated by the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division and therefore do not require a Rail Crossing Order. Most projects involving railroad crossings will require an Order to alter the subject crossing. New at-grade crossings are rarely approved by ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division because state law directs ODOT to eliminate at-grade railroad crossings wherever possible.

DRAFT

Rail Crossing Orders contain specific requirements related to the roadway geometry and roadway features. To obtain a Rail Crossing Order, complete and submit a Railroad-Highway Public Crossing Safety Application (Form 735-9202) to ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division early in the design phase. This application is typically submitted by the project team leader or designer, with assistance from the State Railroad Liaison. See OAR 741-200-0050 for information that must be included in the application. Contact ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division for questions related to the form.

1205.4 Railroad Roadway Plan Sheet

ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division requires a separate, sealed railroad roadway plan sheet(s) to be included with the Railroad-Highway Public Crossing Safety Application. This plan sheet will be completed early in the project (DAP or preliminary plans) and prior to completion of the other roadway plan sheets for the project. This is due to the design phase and the Rail Crossing Order process running concurrently, with the requirement that the Rail Crossing Order is complete prior to bid letting.

This plan sheet(s) must contain the roadway design features that will be shown in the final roadway contract plans, including:

- A plan view of the railroad crossing
- Vertical grade
- Length of roadway surface, gates and lights, gate arms type
- Location of guardrail, gates by station and offset
- Curb exposure
- Pedestrian and bicycle facility features (See Part 800 Part 900 for addition guidance.)

For detailed information regarding plan sheet requirements, refer to the Railroad Final Drawings Manual. Send the final signed and stamped railroad roadway plan sheet(s) to the ETSB Roadway Engineering Section, who will then submit a copy to the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division and the State Railroad Liaison and file the plan sheet(s) with the project plans in ProjectWise.

While the railroad plan sheet(s) is not part of the contract plan set, it is an important and required part of the Railroad-Highway Public Crossing Safety Application. (See also Part 800, Section 840 and Part 900, Section 921 for pedestrian and bicycle accommodation at rail crossings.)

DRAFT

1205.5 Design Elements

The intersection angle between the roadway and railroad should be as close to 90 degrees as possible. Right angle crossings maximize the driver's view of the rail crossing, location of tracks, and view of on-coming trains. A right-angle crossing is also preferred for bicyclists and pedestrians. Besides the same visual problems of such a crossing, angled crossings coupled with flange openings create problems for the thin tires of a bicycle. The flange opening width should be kept to a minimum through the entire rail crossing section.

Sight distance is a critical consideration at railroad crossings. **Sufficient sight distance must be available to the driver to recognize the crossing, see and perceive the crossing device and the trains themselves, and come to a stop condition if necessary.**

Horizontal and vertical alignments are very important at rail crossings. The vertical profile between the roadway and the rail crossing should be as level and consistent as possible for smooth transition between surface types, sight distance and visibility of the crossing, and ability to react to the specific situation. Per OAR 741-120-0020, "The surface of the roadway shall be in the same plane as the top of rails for a distance of at least two feet outside the rails, and not more than three inches higher nor three inches lower than the top of the nearest rail at a point thirty feet from the rail, measured at right angles..." Rail crossings along horizontal curves are not preferred as they impact the visibility of the crossing and cause the driver to focus on the curvature of the roadway instead of looking for a train.

Some additional design elements involved with rail crossings include location of driveways, other accesses, and signals located at rail crossings. Vehicular storage queues in the vicinity of rail crossing intersections must be carefully reviewed and measures taken to prevent trapping vehicles on the rail crossing. Sign locations need to be thought out to maintain proper clearance between the roadway and the railroad tracks.

The minimum horizontal and vertical railroad clearance to be provided on crossings shall conform to ODOT regulations shown in Figure 300-25 Railroad Clearances in Part 300. Additional clearance may be required and should be determined individually for each crossing. Information regarding these clearances shall be obtained from the ODOT State Utility and Rail Liaison. Contact the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division when rail crossings are involved in a project.

1205.6 Crossing Types

The crossing type (signals, signals and gates, stop sign) is generally determined on a case-by-case situation, but typically the crossing will have both crossing gates and signal lights. The designer needs to consider the lead time needed for interaction with other divisions such as

Rail when a crossing is involved. Contact the ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division to determine the appropriate crossing type and other rail requirements.

1205.7 Stopping Lanes at Railroad Crossings

Additional stopping lanes at railroad at-grade crossings were formerly added routinely. In some cases, stopping lanes are not justified. The ODOT Traffic Manual outlines the procedure for determining the need for additional stopping lanes at railroad at-grade crossings. Additional design guidance for railroad grade crossings can be found on Oregon Standard Drawings RD400 series, for use when stopping lanes have been justified.

1205.8 Curb Exposure

Curb exposure at railroad crossings is very important. Standard curb (barrier) is to be used. **The roadway curb exposure at railroad protective devices shall be a minimum 7 inches for new construction and 6 inches for existing installations and for maintenance after initial installation.** In overlay situations, the construction of a new curb should not be ruled out. Each situation should be looked at individually to determine the correct solution.

Section 1206 Utilities and Utility Relocation

[Placeholder for future section]

Section 1207 Transportation Analysis

1207.1 General

The Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) and Region Traffic Sections, with assistance from region staff, cities, counties, and other state agencies, are responsible for providing highway design hour volumes, traffic analysis and performance measures such as volume/capacity ratios for projects and studies.

TPAU typically performs this work for large or complex systems and/or the Environmental Assessments (EA) and Environmental Impact Studies (EIS). Region Traffic staff typically does the analysis for operational, preservation, bridge and other small improvement projects as well as scoping and review of developer-submitted Traffic Impact Analysis (TIA).

DRAFT

ODOT traffic analysts' scope and review consultant analysis work. The analyst should work iteratively with design staff in the development of alternatives. The ODOT Analysis Procedures Manual (APM) available at https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Planning/Pages/APM.aspx guides the analysis process from scoping through the analysis and documentation for projects and studies. Any traffic analysis performed involving state highways must conform to the APM or be explicitly agreed to by ODOT.

1207.2 Projects

In project development, the traffic analyst should be involved beginning in the scoping phase and continuing throughout the life of the project. The transportation analysis for modernization projects includes developing air, noise, and energy traffic data for environmental studies. The analyst may also furnish volumes and vehicles classifications for pavement design.

The analyst will furnish traffic information for base and (appropriate) future year(s), such as hourly and daily volumes along with truck percentages as detailed in the APM. The analysis should report performance information including lane configurations, volume/capacity ratio (v/c) and any other operational performance measures, 95th percentile queues/storage lengths, signal progression, and preliminary signal warrants. The analysis process and results must be documented in either technical memoranda or a narrative report.

1207.3 Design Guidelines

Table 1200-2 shows the acceptable v/c ratios for project development/design. Table 1200-2 applies to all modernization projects and should be applied within other project categories as applicable except for private development review, which is typically only required to meet design life standards at the day of opening unless there is a change in land use which triggers a greater design life standard. A design exception is required if the volume/capacity ratios in Table 1200-2 cannot be met. for the applicable design year requirements. If it is known early in the planning or project development process that the v/c measures cannot be met, the design exception should be sought at that time instead of later in the project design phase.

The volume/capacity ratios shown in Table 1200-2 are generally different than those shown in the Oregon Highway Plan (OHP). The v/c ratio values in the OHP are used to assist in the planning phase identifying future system deficiencies. The OHP v/c ratio values also allow flexibility for land use applications and Transportation System Plans by having at-capacity v/c ratios in urban areas. The HDM v/c ratio values are different as the expectation is to provide a mobility solution that corrects those previously identified deficiencies and provide the best investment for the State in establishing a 20-year design life solution. The Table 1200-2 values, although v/c oriented, are based upon the *AASHTO's "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets"*.

DRAFT

Issues may arise when a large difference occurs between the design and planning v/c ratios particularly when alternative mobility standards have been adopted. The issues occur due to different interpretations of which measure applies. **Regardless of what v/c ratios were used in the planning process, any projects in design shall utilize the v/c ratios shown in Table 1200-2.** ETSB Roadway Engineering Section should be contacted if agreement between Region Planning and Design staff cannot be reached on the use of the design-life requirement.

Although traffic data is needed in the design of all highway improvements, preservation type projects are primarily focused on extending the service life of the pavement while looking at cost-effective safety enhancements. Traffic forecasts can assist in making decisions regarding needed safety improvements as part of a 3R project (lane reconfigurations, adding turn lanes, new signals, signal phasing changes) or as a future standalone project. Table 1200-2 v/c ratios should be used as guidance in making cost effective safety improvement decisions for 3R preservation projects.

Region Traffic Unit and Region Roadway Design Unit need to determine when a design-life design exception request is required for a new or modified traffic signal. Document the analysis and recommendation with a technical memo. Consensus on the proposed improvements needs to be reached prior to submitting design exception requests for design life to ETSB Roadway Engineering Section.

Design Life exceptions are not required on the following project types:

1. Private approaches
2. Unsignalized public approaches that do not modify their capacity
3. ~~Development~~Privately-funded development review projects that don't trigger design life standards due to land use changes
4. Operation STIP projects (3R)
5. Maintenance projects not in the STIP (does not include Permit projects)
6. Transportation System Plans
7. Traffic Growth Management (TGM) projects that do not have design details and would not be considered a 4R project in the design phase, however, any future build scenarios for TGM projects are to use the v/c ratios in Table 1200-2.
8. Roundabouts that meet the v/c ratio requirements of Section 509.

DRAFT

Table 1200-2: 20 Year Design-Mobility Standards (Volume/Capacity [V/C]) Ratio

Highway Category	Land Use Type/Speed Limits					
	Inside Urban Growth Boundary				Outside Urban Growth Boundary	
	STAs	MPO	Non-MPO outside of STAs where non-freeway speed limit <45 mph	Non-MPO where non-freeway speed limit >= 45 mph	Unincorporated Communities	Rural Lands
Interstate Highways and Statewide (NHS) Expressways	N/A	0.75	0.70	0.65	0.60	0.60
Statewide (NHS) Freight Routes	0.85	0.75	0.70	0.70	0.60	0.60
Statewide (NHS) Non-Freight Routes and Regional or District Expressways	0.90	0.80	0.75	0.70	0.60	0.60
Regional Highways	0.95	0.85	0.75	0.75	0.70	0.65
District/Local Interest Roads	0.95	0.85	0.80	0.75	0.75	0.70

Notes:

- Interstates and Expressways shall not be identified as Special Transportation Areas (STAs).
- The peak hour is the 30th highest annual hour. This approximates weekday peak hour traffic in larger urban areas.
- MPO category includes areas within the planning boundaries of the Bend, Corvallis, Eugene/Springfield, Medford, Portland (METRO) and Salem/Keizer Metropolitan Planning Organizations, and any other MPO areas that are designated after the completion of this manual.
- For interchange ramp terminals the more restrictive V/C ratio applies, this will generally be the applicable V/C ratio for the freeway or expressway.
- Roundabout traffic behaves differently than typical intersections and special considerations need to be made when considering the construction of a multi-lane roundabout for 20 year design life. See section 509 regarding V/C requirements for roundabouts. Design exceptions are not required for roundabouts when meeting the V/C ratio requirements in section 509.

1207.3.1 Estimating Capacity for Highways

Since there are many variables that could affect the capacity of a highway, use the following process as a general guideline only. This process enables designers to estimate allowable daily traffic volumes. These volumes can be used to determine that the correct number of lanes on a state highway has been identified in a prospectus. The allowable daily traffic volumes are not intended for detailed design purposes. The assigned traffic analyst will provide design level traffic data. If there is a discrepancy between the prospectus and the results from this analysis, a designer should contact the TPAU for a more detailed evaluation.

1207.3.2 Capacity Estimation Process Outline

1. Determine the "Highway Category" and "Land Use Type/Speed" for the facility that you are working with.
2. Determine the acceptable Volume/Capacity Ratio
3. Determine the average daily capacity
4. Determine the allowable average daily traffic volume (ADT)
5. Compare the allowable ADT to the 20-year future ADT projected for the facility.

Note: This estimation process uses two of the most critical adjustments when determining the capacity of a roadway (signals and truck traffic impacts). There are several other factors used by a traffic analyst when determining the actual capacity of a facility.

1. Determine Highway Category and Land Use Area Type:

   Refer to Appendix D of the Oregon Highway Plan.

2. Determine Highway acceptable Volume/Capacity Ratio:

   The maximum allowable volume/capacity ratios for state highways can be found in Table 1200-8.

3. Determine the Average Daily Capacity:

   This process will allow you to estimate the average daily capacity for the highway under study/investigation. Note that this is only an estimation of the capacity, the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit should be contacted to determine the capacity of a roadway for design purposes.

Average Daily Capacity = Ideal Daily Capacity x FS x FT

- **Ideal Daily Capacity** – unadjusted capacity of a roadway (Table 1200-3).
- **FS** – a factor to account for the presence of signals (Table 1200-4).

DRAFT

- **FT** – a factor to account for the presence of truck traffic and the type of terrain (Table 1200-5).

Table 1200-3: Ideal Daily Capacity

Highway Category	Land Use Type/Speed Limits				
	Inside Urban Growth Boundary			Outside Urban Growth Boundary	
	MPO	Non-MPO outside of STAs where non-freeway speed limit <45 mph	Non-MPO where non-freeway speed limit >= 45 mph	Unincorporated Communities	Rural Lands
Interstate/ Expressways					
4 Lanes*	74,500	NA	68,000	63,000	63,000
6 Lanes	117,500	NA	107,500	94,500	99,500
Statewide					
2 Lane Undivided**	31,500	30,000	30,000	26,000	21,000
2 Lane Divided	39,000	37,500	37,500	32,500	26,000
4 Lane Undivided	51,000	48,000	48,000	45,000	42,000
4 Lane Divided	68,000	64,000	64,000	60,000	56,000
6 Lane Divided	102,000	96,000	96,000	90,000	84,000
Regional Highways					
2 Lane Undivided	30,500	29,500	29,500	25,500	20,500
2 Lane Divided	38,000	37,000	37,000	31,500	25,500
4 Lane Undivided	49,500	47,000	47,000	45,000	41,500
4 Lane Divided	66,000	63,000	63,000	59,500	55,500
6 Lane Divided	99,500	94,500	94,500	89,500	83,500
District/Local Interest Roads					
2 Lane Undivided	28,000	28,500	28,500	25,000	20,000
2 Lane Divided	35,000	35,500	35,500	31,000	25,000
4 Lane Undivided	48,500	46,000	46,000	44,500	41,000
4 Lane Divided	64,500	61,500	61,500	59,000	55,000
6 Lane Divided	96,500	92,000	92,000	88,500	82,500

* The number of lanes refers to the total number of through lanes on the facility.

** For the purpose of this computation, a divided roadway has a raised median to prevent mid-block left turns or it allows mid-block left turning vehicles to exit from the through traffic lanes.

If the facility is in an urban area that has signalized intersections, the signalized intersection adjustment factor (FS) needs to be applied to the ideal capacity. FS is the same for all the land use types/speed limits.

Table 1200-4: Signalized Intersection Adjustment Factor (FS)
(applied to ideal daily capacity if there are signalized intersections)

Highway Category	FS
Interstate	NA
Statewide	0.51
Regional	0.46
District	0.45

If the facility has truck traffic, the slower moving trucks will take up more capacity than a passenger vehicle, especially if they are traveling on grades. Table 1200-5 shows the adjustment factors (FT) for truck traffic on Level (1-2%), Rolling (3-4%), and Mountainous (5% or greater) terrain that are one-quarter mile or longer.

Table 1200-5: Reduction Factor for Presence of Trucks (FT)

Number of Lanes	Percent Trucks											
	0-5%			6-10%			11-15%			>15%		
	L*	R**	M***	L	R	M	L	R	M	L	R	M
2	.97	.91	.80	.95	.83	.67	.93	.77	.60	.91	.71	.50
4-6	.95	.85	.69	.90	.73	.53	.86	.65	.43	.82	.58	.36

* L - level terrain, which has a grade of 1-2%

** R - rolling Terrain, which has a grade of 3-4%

*** M - mountainous terrain, which has a grade of 5% or more

4. Determine the Approximate Allowable Average Daily Traffic:

To determine the allowable average daily capacity for a facility, carry out the following computation:

Allowable Average Daily Traffic = Average Daily Capacity x (v/c from Table 1200-2)

5. Compare the Approximate Allowable ADT to the 20-year future ADT projected for the facility:

   If the forecasted ADT, found on the prospectus, is greater than the calculated allowable ADT, contact the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit for clarification.

Section 1208 Traffic Engineering

1208.1 General

The design of a project will include traffic management elements such as the location and function of traffic control devices (signals, signing, pavement marking, etc.). ETSB Traffic Engineering Section provides traffic support during all phases of project development and construction. ETSB Traffic Engineering Section provides standards for preparing project plans, specifications and estimates for traffic signals, ramp meters, variable message signs, permanent signing, and illumination. In addition, the Traffic Section provides statewide policies and guidelines for all traffic control devices, administers ODOT's Project Safety Management System and provides technical assistance for traffic operation improvements on state highways. ETSB Traffic Engineering Section also manages traffic signal approvals, manages speed zone designations for all public roads, monitors traffic speeds, tests electrical equipment, and coordinates development of design standards. The designer should be aware of these traffic functions and the support which is available from ETSB Traffic Engineering Section during the design phase of projects. The designer should provide adequate notification to ETSB Traffic Engineering Section staff through the assigned traffic designer or designated representative to ensure timely input consistent with the project schedule. In addition to the traffic design aspects of projects, the designer should consider future maintenance access and right of way need for electronic traffic equipment.

For further discussion of the roles and responsibilities of ETSB Traffic Engineering Section, as well as information regarding the use of traffic control devices, see the ODOT Traffic Manual. This manual contains information regarding policies, procedures, warrants, and design considerations for traffic related items.

1208.2 Authorities of the State Traffic Engineer

The designer should be aware that State Traffic Engineer approval is required for the installation or modification of traffic signals as well as other traffic control devices and applications. Other examples of applications requiring the approval of the State Traffic Engineer include: provision of multiple turn lanes, emergency vehicle preemption capability, U-turns at signalized intersections, turn prohibitions, flashing beacons, marked crosswalks at uncontrolled

DRAFT

intersections or mid-block locations, crosswalk closures, designation of one-way operation, speed zones, parking prohibitions, restriction of lane use by type of vehicle, variable message signs (and other ITS devices), and the approval of roundabout locations. (See the ODOT Traffic Manual for more detail.) Many of these authorities are designated by Oregon Administrative Rule or come through a letter of authority from the Chief Engineer.

Typically, all requests for approval of traffic control changes or applications come from Region Traffic. Region traffic staff are familiar with the requirements for documentation and investigation of traffic control applications. The Region Traffic Manager or Engineer should concur with all requests before forwarding them to the State Traffic Engineer.

Early participation of traffic representatives in project scoping and identification can identify items requiring approval of the State Traffic Engineer as well as related traffic concerns with safety, operation, and application of traffic control devices.

1208.3 Signals

When a project involves signals the roadway designer should contact the region technical center signal designer. Information that the signal design will require includes: roadway features such as elevation profiles; guardrail requirements; truck turning radius requirements; curb ramp designs; utility locations (particularly poles, above ground wires and possible underground conflicts with infrastructure such as fiber optic lines); storm drain locations; lane use width; curb ramp locations; proposed curb and corner radii alignments; or other features that will have a bearing on the placement of traffic signal equipment. It is very important that items such as signal cabinets, power service cabinets and signal poles be located where they are not obstructions to pedestrians, bicyclists, or vehicles. Overhead utility lines such as power and communications should be reviewed to determine any conflicts with signal poles and signal heads. Typically, this field information is in electronic file format.

The signal designer will provide the projected layout of signal equipment (poles and controller cabinet) and cost estimates. The signal designer will also provide technical expertise regarding the signal equipment such as signal pole foundation size, ramp metering, lane usage, and vehicle detection type and locations. In the case of retrofit projects, the signal designer can provide information on existing signal equipment locations, lane configuration, vehicle detection replacement, and signal phasing. Crosswalk locations are normally determined through communication between the roadway and signal designers.

One of the most essential items the signal designer can provide the roadway designer is locations where the purchase of right of way or easements is needed. This item is sometimes overlooked but is critical in keeping the right of way purchase process on track. It is essential that the roadway designer notify the signal designer in advance so that proper right of way needs are determined and submitted, enabling the purchase of all right of way to occur in one phase of the project.

DRAFT

In some projects, multiple signals are involved and are part of an interconnected traffic signal system. Safe and efficient traffic signal timing along state highways depends on optimal intersection spacing. It is difficult to predetermine where such locations should exist, although one-half mile intersection spacing for Statewide and Regional highways is often desirable. Items that are involved in interconnect systems include highway capacity, lane balance, cycle lengths, vehicle storage and progression speed. When a project involves multiple signals, the roadway designer should contact the region technical center traffic operations staff to determine the need for a signal interconnect system.

Temporary signals may be needed for traffic staging or in temporary locations during project construction. As with permanent signals, the designer should contact and communicate with the Region Technical Center Signal Designer in the early project stages to ensure that adequate time is allowed for temporary signal design.

1208.4 Signs

The designer should contact the Region Technical Center Sign Designer when a project involves signing. Typical information that the sign design will require includes a detailed sign inventory with dated photographs and accompanying highway milepost or station. Typically, a roadside inventory or detail map (electronic version) is provided that identifies sign locations. The sign designer should be provided with project limits and the scope of work. Projects that involve sign bridges or cantilevered signs will require communication between the sign designer, roadway designer and structure designer.

As with traffic signals, right of way or easement needs are critical for sign designs. Accurate right of way or easement acquisitions will lead to proper location of signs. The road designer should contact the Region Technical Center Sign Designer early on in project development to determine if signing will or should be included in the project. When notified early in the process the sign designer will be able to provide signing plans, special provisions, and right of way needs in an efficient manner.

1208.5 Signal and Sign Supports in Islands

Designers need to carefully weigh the benefits of constructing islands for the accommodation of sign and signal support. It may be preferred to look at other alternatives such as location of the supports on the other side of the roadway. If installation cannot be avoided and a raised island is considered necessary, consider the following priorities:

1. Clear islands with mountable curb are most desirable.
2. Where pedestrian or other small devices are necessary, they will be on breakaway supports.

DRAFT

3. Where a fixed object cannot be avoided, a brief, written justification should be attached to the preliminary plan review transmittal letter.

Standard barrier curb on islands will be considered inappropriate for use on any arterial or rural facility unless supported in the justification document noted in the list above.

1208.6 Illumination

Prior to illumination design for a project, it must first be determined if illumination is warranted for the project. Region Traffic identifies locations for illumination and forwards the information to the ETSB Traffic Engineering Section for determination of policy agreements and statewide consistency before proceeding with project illumination design. If there are agreements between ODOT and local governments, the designer, Transportation Project Manager (TPM), or Resident Engineer – Consultant Projects (RE-CP) should forward them to the illumination designer.

When it has been determined that illumination will be part of the project, the roadway designer will need to provide the illumination designer with final roadway alignment and detailed project information relating to illumination needs. Typically, 30 percent roadway plans that include centerline profiles, cross sections, existing roadside features, roadway alignment, and right of way line information will be sufficient for the illumination designer. Communication between roadway designer, the illumination designer, bridge designer, and traffic signal designer is critical in providing proper illumination designs for a project.

1208.7 Striping

ETSB Traffic Engineering Section is responsible for the policies and guidelines regarding striping and pavement marking. The striping guidelines provide statewide consistency. The responsibility for completion of the striping plans on state highway designs rests with the Roadway Designer. Striping should conform to the ~~Traffic Line~~Pavement Markings Manual, Pavement Marking Design Guidelines, and the MUTCD.

1208.8 Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS)

Intelligent transportation systems goal is to improve safety and reduce congestion on the roadway infrastructure through the use of technology. Some of the ITS applications include ice sensors (road and weather information systems); speed monitoring sites, variable message signs, traffic cameras, communication lines, and ramp meters. ITS projects can be stand-alone, but it is important for the designer to consider ITS improvements as part of highway modernization/reconstruction project work.

DRAFT

As with other types of traffic projects, early identification of right of way needs is important. Items such as variable message signs, speed monitoring cabinets, and traffic cameras may require additional right of way or need to be protected by guardrail or barrier. Traffic cameras may require special right of way locations to allow proper orientation and field of view.

1208.9 Crash Analysis

There are several tools available to the designer to assist with the crash analyses. The Motor Vehicle Traffic Crash Database, compiled and maintained by the Crash Data Unit, covers state, county, and city road systems. The SPIS (Safety Priority Index System) Reports and the Crash Summary Database is compiled and maintained by Traffic Section. Other tools such as the crash graphing tools help identify patterns of crashes and are available via the intranet. Contact the region Traffic investigator for more information.

These reports and others allow the designer to summarize data by different characteristics, such as weather conditions, types of crashes and types of vehicles. Preparing collision diagrams to identify patterns is helpful. Familiarization with the volumes, speeds, physical features and geometry also assists in the process. Crash and fatality rates should be compared to the statewide average for similar facilities. After analyzing the specific site or segment the designer can better determine the appropriate actions for correction. Region Traffic personnel routinely perform crash analyses and can help with specific sites or trends and have the latest investigation on SPIS top 10 percent sites. Contact Region Traffic for assistance.

1208.10 Project Safety Management System

Traffic Section, in cooperation with other ODOT sections, has developed and is maintaining ODOT's Project Safety Management System (PSMS). The PSMS consists of the Highway Safety Program and the Safety Priority Index System (SPIS). In addition, the Traffic Engineering Unit has developed plans around specific Safety Emphasis Areas (i.e., Roadway Departure and Intersections). See Traffic Section's Highway Safety Website for more information.

These elements consist of evaluation tools, plans and funding options. These tools will assist TPMs / RE-CPs and designers to evaluate and improve safety on Oregon highways.

1208.10.1 Highway Safety Program

The Traffic Section administers the Highway Safety Program to encourage engineering improvements that address identified safety needs (i.e., SPIS locations). The funds are primarily federal funds from the Highway Safety Improvement Program (HSIP). The mission of the Safety Program at ODOT is to carry out safety improvement projects to achieve a significant reduction in traffic fatalities and serious injuries.

DRAFT

In addition, the department receives 164 penalty funds from Transportation Safety Division Grants. These funds are allocated towards Safety Emphasis Areas (i.e., Roadway Departure).

For up-to-date information on the Highway Safety Program see the Traffic Section Highway Safety web site. Also contact region traffic staff for more information.

1208.10.2 Safety Priority Index System (SPIS)

SPIS is a methodology developed by ODOT to identify potential safety problems on state highways. Essentially, SPIS is a tool for comparing and prioritizing crash histories of state highway locations. Each year regional reports of the top ten percent ranked SPIS sites are generated for review by Region Traffic. Region Traffic evaluates these sites for correctable safety problems and possible solutions. If a correctable problem is identified, a cost/benefit analysis may be performed. If viable options are identified, funding may be pursued.

1208.10.3 Safety Emphasis Areas

Data analysis of crash data is combined with cost effective strategies to identify locations for the most effective uses of funds to achieve a 20 percent reduction in targeted fatal and serious injuries. This approach involves deploying large numbers of cost effective countermeasures on targeted segments of roadways with a history of specific crashes.

1208.11 Work Zone Analysis and Constructability

Work Zone Traffic Analysis is used to determine lane closure restrictions and delay estimates for highway construction projects. Lane closure restrictions are used to determine times when road work is less likely to adversely impact traffic. Lane closures restrictions are determined by comparing actual or forecasted traffic volumes to a free flow threshold. Delay estimates are used to manage mobility throughout the highway system. An estimate of delay is the average additional travel time a construction project will add to a segment of highway.

The Region work zone traffic analysts determine both the lane closure restrictions and delay estimates for projects. The work zone traffic analyst should coordinate with the Region traffic control plan designer when developing the lane closure restrictions and delay estimates. The traffic analyst should send a formalized report recommending lane closure restrictions and delay estimates to the TPM/RE-CP and Region mobility liaison.

Several tools are available to determine lane closure restrictions and delay estimates. For segment analysis, the ODOT work zone traffic analysis methodology should be used. For work zones that are near convenient alternate routes or contain various types of traffic control (i.e., signals), the Highway Capacity Manual and recognized traffic simulation software should be

DRAFT

used. For more complicated analyses, the Transportation Planning Analysis Unit (TPAU) is available to help determine both lane closure restrictions and delay estimates.

The Traffic Control Plan can change based upon the lane closure restrictions and delay estimates. Determine both the lane closure restrictions and delay estimates early in the project development process and refine as the project progresses to PS&E. Document the lane closure restrictions and delay estimates and any supporting information in the project Transportation Management Plan (TMP).

For further information regarding ODOT's Work Zone Traffic Analysis, refer to the ODOT Work Zone Traffic Analysis Manual and the ODOT Traffic Control Plan Design Manual.

Section 1209 General Survey Procedures

Location surveys are performed to provide the designer with information about the project site. The products generated by the location survey depend on the type and scope of the project. These products may include geodetic control monuments, horizontal control network, vertical control network, planimetric map, digital terrain model (DTM), property monument recovery map, existing right of way centerline and boundary resolution map, and a variety of other specific purpose maps, such as utility, airport permit, railroad encroachment, etc.

For detailed ODOT survey procedures contact the ODOT Geometronics Unit.

1209.1 Land Survey Law

It is ODOT policy that licensed land surveyors, in appropriate positions, are responsible for land surveying practiced under their supervision including conformance to all state statutes pertaining to survey and land laws. This includes but is not limited to the following statutes:

- ORS 92 Subdivisions and Partitions
- ORS 93 Conveyancing and Recording
- ORS 209 County Surveyors
- ORS 672 Professional Engineers, Land Surveyors, Geologists

In addition to the requirements of state law, the Chief Engineer has directed that:

1. The Project Manager, Region Survey Manager, or Region Technical Center Manager shall contact the appropriate County Surveyor upon commencement of any field location surveys. This will keep the County Surveyor informed of work within their jurisdiction. For government monuments in danger of being destroyed by construction activities, arrangements should be made with the appropriate County Surveyor for

monument referencing or replacement. (Use "*Project Notification to County Surveyors*" form # 734-2298)

2. Copies of field notes with references to found and/or set monuments will be furnished to County Surveyors upon request.

1209.2 Survey Types

1209.2.1 Geodetic Control Survey

Geodetic Control Surveys cover a large area and take into account the curvature of the earth. They are executed to specified accuracies and standards and may be used to provide primary control for projects. These surveys provide monuments that are connected to the Oregon High Accuracy Network (HARN). Project Horizontal and Vertical Control Networks may be based on Geodetic control in the vicinity.

Information concerning the HARN is available from the ODOT Geometronics Unit. The Geometronics field crew will, upon request, establish geodetic control points where none exist in the vicinity of the job.

1209.2.2 Cadastral Survey

Acquisition of land for highway right of way requires a Cadastral Survey to establish existing property lines and to establish and monument new boundaries. This work must be done in compliance with the laws of the State of Oregon and within the *"Rules of Professional Conduct"* for practicing land surveyors as defined by the State Board of Examiners for Engineers and Land Surveyors. (See OAR 820-020-0005.)

1209.2.3 Topographic Survey

Topographic Surveys are made to determine the relative position of points on or near the surface of the earth so that maps showing a plan view of an area can be made. Topographic maps show natural and synthetic features and are used in the planning and design of highways, subdivisions, parks, etc. It is common practice to collect topographic data with an electronic theodolite and data collector. The survey crew records code information along with the measurements to instruct the computer in processing the data. The data is downloaded and processed into a 3D digital map. This digital map is stored in real world coordinates (1:1 scale) and can be plotted at any scale required.

The topographic map should generally include the following:

DRAFT

1. Fences: measurements to the fences should be taken at frequent intervals. All intersecting fences should be tied.
2. Approach Roads: Note the grade, type of surfacing, width, name, private approach or public, controlling agency, direction and distance to nearby towns.
3. Utilities: Locate all utility lines both above ground and underground, even though it may not be necessary to move them. Note the name of the owners, pole numbers, number of wires, pipe sizes, depths, and flow lines. Frequently the local utility company will assist in the location of their facilities. The right of way liaison agent may be of help in determining a property owner's independent source of water, underground pipes, septic tank, drain field and other important features which must also be shown on the map.
4. Improvements: Locate buildings, orchards, improved lands, etc., adjacent to the project. Field tie all buildings on properties that may have a R/W taking or potential for flooding.
5. Irrigation Facilities: Note irrigation ditches and show the direction of flow, the grade, typical section, size of structure, centerline station and angle of the crossing.
6. Bridges: Show stationing at both ends, width of roadway, type of bridge, type of rail, dimensions of walks, etc.
7. Railroads: Show centerline stationing of both highway and the railroad at their intersection and the angle of crossing. Tie in head blocks, switches, culverts, bridges, etc. Where the highway runs adjacent to a railroad, frequent ties should be made to the facility.
8. Terrain: Designate whether the area is cultivated, forested (note if recently logged), marsh, or rangeland. Also note the character of the ground such as clay, rocky, etc. Locate any significant grade breaks or changes in vegetation.
9. Hydraulics: Show the names and location of all streams in the area. Determine the high and low water stages. Note if the land is ever flooded by backwater. If there are other bridges in the vicinity, make a note of the location of the structure and the size of its opening.
10. Permanent Monuments: A diligent search should be made for all recorded survey monuments. All found evidence, both recorded and unrecorded, will be shown on the map
11. DTM: A DTM is a representation of the surface of the earth utilizing a triangulated network of points. The DTM models the surface with a series of triangular planes. Each of the vertices of an individual triangle is a field-measured 3D coordinate point. DTMs are created by measuring data points that define breaklines and random spot elevations. Cross sections, profiles, contours, and slope vectors can be developed from a DTM.

DRAFT

1209.3 Stationing

Stationing will run from north to south and from west to east, corresponding with the highway route number (odd is north-south and even is west-east). If the existing stationing does not follow this rule, the existing stationing direction will be followed. Contact the Senior Standards Engineer to determine if a deviation to following the existing stationing direction is acceptable.

Stationing will be in 100 foot increments with control points measured to 0.01 foot accuracy, i.e., 10+00.00.

When the existing alignment is in SI units (Metric), the beginning of that Metric alignment will be equated to an earlier alignment that used US customary units (English). Stationing will be recalculated from that point using English units. The radius of the Metric curve will be converted to English units to the nearest 0.01 foot and the radius will be used to define the curve.

There are different types of projects that affect how the features will be located on the construction plans. These can be shown on the construction plans as either stations or milepoints as outlined below. In all cases, the construction plans will identify the right of way map number(s) used in establishing a link to the record data.

For projects that require a change in the right of way and a retracement survey has been completed, the construction alignment and stationing will be based on the retracement survey information. Further the retracement survey will be based on the alignment and stationing of the latest published right of way map in the Map Center in FileNet. It is a best practice for the construction alignment and the right of way alignment to be the same.

For projects where the construction alignment deviates from the right of way alignment, the construction alignment will begin and end the deviation on the same tangent bearing as the right of way alignment. An offset to the right of way alignment must be 2 foot or greater to avoid confusion of the two alignments. If the deviation occurs on an arc section of a curve, the local tangent of the two alignments will be the same bearing at that point. No deviation will occur on the spiral portion of the curve. The deviation will be shown on the construction plans as an equation at both ends of the construction alignment. The stationing used on the construction alignment will be significantly different from the right of way alignment stationing. In no case will the construction alignment create an angle point with the right of way alignment without prior approval from the State Roadway Engineer.

For projects that do not require a right of way centerline retracement survey, the stations will be derived from the current published right of way center line. A disclaimer will be placed on the project plans stating that the center line is for construction purposes only and should not be used for determining existing right of way.

For very simple projects, such as resurfacing projects, milepoints can be used in lieu of engineer stations to define the construction limits. The milepoint must be taken from an existing data

DRAFT

source. ODOT TransGIS is an appropriate source for current milepoint data. The photo log milepoints are not recognized as existing data sources for determining accurate milepoints for a project. The point that is used to determine an accurate project milepoint will be equated to the engineer station from the current right of way map and shown on the construction plans. Typical locations used to equate stations and milepoints are bridges, intersections, box culverts, and in very rural areas a milepoint marker. Two equation points need to be shown on the plans. If the construction sheets are a part of the project special provisions, the milepoint and right of way station equation will be shown with the typical sections.

Projects that use milepoints in lieu of engineer stations are less accurate than a surveyed retracement of the alignment for calculating a station for any given feature but are generally close enough to cross check with existing data. In these cases, the record station would be considered the accurate station and not a calculated station from a milepoint.

Stationing should be continuous. Station equations are required at intersections of lines, bearing equations, and where new lines tie into previously established lines. Secondary alignments will be differentiated from the main centerline through labeling or naming the line (i.e., "SW" 10+00.00). Stationing will not begin below 10+00.00 for any alignment.

1209.4 Project Survey

1209.4.1 General

This section provides general guidance in determining the appropriate level of survey data required for project development projects. The guidelines are broken down by the following project types: maintenance projects, 1R projects, preservation projects (3R), and modernization projects (4R Reconstruction, New Construction). The project scoping team will determine the amount of survey work that will be required for individual projects.

1209.4.2 Maintenance and 1R Projects

The amount of survey work for maintenance and 1R projects can vary depending on the project. Generally, maintenance projects are small and typically require only roadside inventory type of field data collection. Roadside safety hardware requirements for 1R Projects are discussed in Part 100.

1209.4.3 Preservation Projects

Preservation projects that don't include work outside the existing typical section generally only need roadside inventory information collected prior to project design. During the design work

DRAFT

phase, it may be necessary to obtain additional data such as superelevation information on curves in need of correction, or additional widening required for new guardrail flares. The amount of additional survey data will vary and is project dependent.

Preservation projects that include major shoulder widening, curve correction, intersection channelization, or other reconstruction type work, will require more initial survey work. This work will most likely include a DTM of the area.

1209.4.4 Modernization Projects

Modernization projects will almost always require a DTM, which could require a combination of extensive survey work and/or alternative mapping methodologies such as photogrammetry, LiDAR, and laser scanning. Survey work would include gathering topographic information on breaklines (edge of pavement, ditches, shoulders) and features (guardrail, barrier, poles, signs, utilities, etc.). One of the best ways to determine the limits of the survey work is for the designer to conduct a site visit with the survey crew chief.

Section 1210 Right of Way

1210.1 General

The Right of Way Section of the Engineering and Technical Services Branch is responsible for the following project development functions:

1. Estimates of right of way costs and impacts for development of the project prospectus.
2. Estimates of right of way costs and impacts for different alternatives because of environmental assessments.
3. Collaboration with the Regions in developing project access lists.
4. Cost estimates for justification of proposed land service design features.
5. Acquisition of additional real property and real property rights needed to support the project design. This includes the relocation of all people and personal property displaced by the project.

1210.2 Acquisition Process

Of particular importance for project location and design staff is an awareness of the time requirements necessary for the acquisition of real property and real property rights. The right of way phase in project development begins after applicable environmental document clearance

with the preparation of the right of way drawings and legal descriptions of the proposed right of way takings by the Region Survey Group. When the Region Right of Way office receives the completed right of way drawings and legal descriptions, the right of way acquisition process can begin. This process includes the appraisal of property values, offers to property owners, relocation of tenants, and demolition of property improvements. The right of way acquisition phase ends when the Region Right of Way office has acquired all the right of way, and it is certified for the project bid letting.

Design decisions that are delayed until after the start of the right of way acquisition process result in revisions to legal descriptions and right of way drawings. This may result in negotiations with property owners being restarted; appraisals being redone; and/or relocation work being significantly changed. This also occurs when design parameters change after starting the right of way acquisition process.

1210.3 Time Allowances

The time required for the Region Survey Group to complete the right of way drawings and legal descriptions varies due to the complexity and number of properties involved. It can be as little as one week for a simple, one-file project with an exhibit map showing a temporary easement to several months for large, urban projects with dozens of multi-parcel files. The acquisition of the right of way and the relocation of displaced people and property are governed by state and federal laws. These laws guarantee all property owners certain time periods during the acquisition phase. Property owners have a minimum of about four months, from the start of the right of way acquisition process for their own property, before the State can demand possession of the right of way. Additional time is normally required for completing property appraisals and doing any required relocation studies. Because of the statutory allowances for time, as well as the complexities surrounding many properties, typical right of way acquisition projects require eight months to several years for completion. Projects cannot be constructed until the State has legal possession of the right of way and the right of way has been certified.

Design changes with minor right of way impacts will delay completion of an ongoing right of way acquisition process from one to four months. Design changes with major right of way impacts will delay the right of way acquisition process from four to seven months (or more). Contract letting dates can and do slip because of these delays. All project design decisions and work in areas having potential right of way impacts must be addressed as early as possible. Design changes after the start of the right of way acquisition process must consider the impact to the scheduled contract letting date.

DRAFT

1210.4 Property Rights

The State secures the property right to enter upon land to construct and maintain facilities by acquiring either fee title or various types of easements. The following describes these different property rights.

1210.5 Fee Title

This covers all property rights with full title being conveyed to the State. The property owner retains no rights to the property being acquired. The State can acquire the entire property or just a portion of the property. The minimum widths for freeways, expressways, and major streets in urban areas are based on sound engineering judgment and local government policies. The standard margin for rural locations is 10 feet to 15 feet outside the average cut (including slope rounding, see Part 300, Section 322) or fill slope to provide an adequate area to construct the project, maintain drainage facilities, locate utilities, etc. Fee title for city streets or urban highways is normally 1 foot outside the sidewalk but may be at the outside edge of the sidewalk if it greatly reduces property expenses or impacts to buildings. The project team makes these decisions.

1210.6 Easements

An easement is the right to use an exact piece of property for a specified need for a certain period of time. It may be necessary to acquire easements for slopes, drainage facilities, utilities, detours, irrigation facilities, riprap, road approaches, illumination facilities, signs, wetland mitigation, work areas, etc. All the different uses must be specified and cited in the conveyance document. The State's future use of the easement area will be limited to only those uses declared in the deed. The underlying fee title to the easement area remains with the property owner. The property owner's use of the easement area is limited to only those activities that do not interfere with or affect any of the State's easement rights. Easements are never within a fee title acquisition. Easements usually adjoin property acquired as fee title. Easements not adjoining the right of way need to include a designated path for ingress and egress.

By state and federal law, fee title and easements must be valued and negotiated in exactly the same manner. The time allowances for the property owner are the same. The TPM/RE-CP and all staff working on the project should not be misled into thinking that projects requiring mostly easements rather than fee title are simpler or can be done more quickly. The exact same considerations must be observed so that sufficient time is provided for any property acquisition. The necessary location data and technical design information needs to be delivered to the Region Survey Group in a timely manner.

DRAFT

The following outline provides information about two categories of easements that may be needed:

1210.6.1 Permanent Easements

This provides the permanent right to use a certain piece of property for a specified need. The deed or conveyance document will be recorded in the public records of the County and thus the easement will show as an encumbrance on a title report for the property. There are two categories of permanent easements:

1. To accommodate the transportation facility. Examples would include permanent easements for slopes, drainage facilities, riprap, illumination facilities, signs, wetland mitigation, etc.
2. To accommodate utility companies, irrigation districts, government agencies, and other commercial or private facilities. Occasionally, utility easements are purchased in the name of the appropriate utility company. The Region Utility Specialist provides information about what, when, and where utility easements are necessary.

1210.6.2 Temporary Easements

This provides the right to use an exact piece of property for a specified need for a limited period of time. For the State, this is almost always for an activity that is necessary only during the time of project construction. The time period for a temporary easement is either the estimated time for project construction or the actual duration of project construction, whichever is sooner. If the project is completed ahead of the estimated schedule, then the temporary easement expires at that time. If project construction exceeds the estimated schedule, then the State will need to re-negotiate with the property owner for a new temporary easement. Examples would include temporary easements for detours, work areas, road approaches, etc. If the State is acquiring only a temporary easement from a property owner, then the deed or conveyance document will not be recorded in the public records of the County.

1210.7 Conditional Entry onto Private Property

1210.7.1 Right of Entry

A Right of Entry gives the State temporary permission to enter certain private property to perform a specific task. During project development, a Right of Entry can be used to evaluate properties for potential transportation needs by performing geological tests, archeological studies, environmental studies, land surveys, etc. During project construction, a Right of Entry

DRAFT

can be used to perform a presumed benefit to the property such as rebuilding road approaches, slopes, drainage operations, etc. It is not intended or expected that a Right of Entry will be followed by a formal right of way acquisition.

A Right of Entry is not a deed. The format may be as simple as a hand-written document with a sketch map attached. A written property description is not required; the map alone defines the area where permission is being granted. The map need not be an official survey; it can be very simple and basic. The Right of Entry only needs to clearly explain when and exactly where the State will be performing a certain task. The property owner usually receives no compensation and can revoke a Right of Entry at any time.

1210.7.2 Permit of Entry

A Permit of Entry gives the State temporary permission to enter certain private property to perform a specific task. During project construction, a Permit of Entry is used in emergency situations where access to private property is necessary. This type of permit is to be used sparingly; it is not to be used to circumvent the standard right of way acquisition process. The Permit of Entry should clearly explain when and exactly where the State will be performing a certain task. The permit should also declare the State's intention to soon enter into negotiations with the property owner. It is expected that a Permit of Entry will be followed by a formal right of way acquisition. The property owner can revoke a Permit of Entry at any time.

1210.8 Property Conveyance Documents

The Region Survey Group develops the legal descriptions for right of way acquisition which are forwarded to the Right of Way Section in Salem to be used in the conveyance documents. The preparation of legal descriptions by the Region Survey Group and conveyance documents by the Right of Way Section ensures the proper transfer of real property and property rights. Property needed for right of way cannot be appraised and purchased until the legal descriptions are written and the right of way drawings are completed. The proposed right of way design relies on the project design and delays in receiving this information or subsequent changes to this information result in delaying the right of way acquisition process. TPMs / RE-CPs must ensure that the Region Survey Group receive the necessary design information in a timely manner, as agreed to in the project schedule.

1210.8.1 Special Rights of Way

Separate legal descriptions and right of way drawings must be developed for parcels of land that are not part of the regular right of way, such as: stockpile sites, quarry sites, scale sites, etc.

The data required for acquisition of such parcels is the same as that needed for regular right of way. All stockpile sites are to be purchased, not leased.

1210.8.2 Railroad Encroachments

A specific drawing is developed and submitted with the legal description when the State's construction needs encroach upon a railroad right of way. The explicit relationship between the centerline of the railroad track (not the centerline of railroad right of way) and the highway centerline must be shown. Due to the additional time required to develop railroad encroachment drawings, the TPM/RE-CP should work closely with the Region Survey Group to assure that the project is kept on schedule.

1210.9 Access Rights

Access is a complex issue that requires careful deliberation and decisions by the project team. OAR 734 Division 51 forms the basis for access decisions during project development. Information to be considered includes the designation of the highway, ODOT policies and rules regarding access, design standards, safety of the travelling public, and a list of the existing road approach permits and/or access control measures. There are very specific policies and regulations regarding access, which include state and federal laws, Oregon Highway Plan, and agency access management manuals. The project team will use this information to determine the access control measures needed on a project. The TPM/RE-CP may decide to form a sub-team to consider access management issues to be addressed as part of the project. (See Project Delivery Leadership Team Operational Notice PD-03 for more information about these sub-teams). Detailed guidance and structure for those required to make and carry out appropriate access management decisions in the development of highway projects can be found in the Access Management Manual.

The status of highway access rights for a certain property can be as follows:

1. Access completely restricted. The State has acquired all rights of access between the highway and an abutting property. No highway access is allowed. This can cover the property's entire frontage or just a portion of the frontage. The deed or conveyance document is recorded in the public records of the County and thus the access restrictions show as an encumbrance on a title report for the property.
2. Access controlled to reserved locations. The State has acquired all rights of access between the highway and an abutting property but provided the property owner a "reservation" of access rights at a specified location. Highway access is allowed only at the specified location. This can cover the property's entire frontage or just a portion of the frontage. The deed or conveyance document identifies the access location (reservation) by Engineer's Station and is recorded in the public records of the County.

The access restrictions show as an encumbrance on a title report for the property. Prior to construction of an approach, the property owner must obtain from the State both a Permit to Construct a State Highway Approach and then a Permit to Operate, Maintain and Use a State Highway Approach.

3. Access not controlled. The State has acquired no rights of access between the highway and an abutting property. Only the State's permitting process controls the location of a highway approach. Prior to construction of an approach, the property owner must obtain from the State both a Permit to Construct a State Highway Approach and then a Permit to Operate, Maintain and Use a State Highway Approach. If an approach connects to a local street system, then the property owner must also obtain a permit from the County or City.

Access rights are property rights. Where access rights are to be restricted or controlled, the Right of Way Section will use the standard acquisition process. Whether access control is acquired or not, the district maintenance office is responsible for all approach permits. If the State is acquiring property for the project, the region right of way office can obtain needed signatures from the property owners for the permits.

A grant of access is required to provide new or additional access rights for property that has its access rights controlled with reservations or for property that has no access rights to the highway. A grant is also required to remove a use restriction for a farm crossing or farm access on an access reservation. A grant of access is very difficult to justify, but if it is approved, the property owner must pay the market value for the access right. The Right of Way Section will order a property appraisal, prepare the conveyance document, and record the fully executed document in the public records of the county.

An Indenture of Access is required to change the location, width, or use of an existing access reservation. (Except the removal of a farm crossing or farm access restriction, which requires a grant). Any changes must comply with current laws and policies regarding access management. The Right of Way Section will prepare the conveyance document and record the fully executed document in the public records of the County.

Some projects require the acquisition of additional access rights or changes to the existing access rights. This is usually done to eliminate or modify existing reservations of access. This can be accomplished through the standard right of way acquisition process.

Oregon law automatically restricts access rights in certain circumstances. ORS 374.405 prescribes that there is no abutter's right of access along a completely new highway alignment constructed after May 12, 1951, unless the State identifies such access rights at the time of right of way acquisition. If highway approaches are to be allowed to a new alignment, it is important to coordinate this with the Right of Way Section. The right of access will need to be declared in the conveyance document. Providing new or additional access rights to a highway alignment established after 1951 may require a Grant of Access. Consult with the Right of Way Section in such circumstances.

DRAFT

1210.9.1 Location of Highway Approaches

On projects where highway approaches will be provided, the Access Management sub-team will establish the Official Access List. This list identifies existing approaches that will remain unchanged, existing approaches that will be rebuilt, new approaches that will be constructed as a part of the project, and existing approaches that will be removed. The list will identify the location (by Engineer's Station) and width of all highway approaches that will be allowed after completion of the project. This information may be declared in the conveyance documents for right of way acquisition. The Official Access List must be approved by the Area Manager. Any changes to the list must be approved by the Access Management Sub-Team core members and the Area Manager.

Access reservations are identified in the deed or conveyance document from the property owner. All decisions must be finalized regarding the allowable location of access reservations prior to the start of the right of way acquisition process. These decisions should be based upon the State's current Access Management policies as well as any unique project conditions or needs.

If any existing legally permitted driveways are to be closed as part of the project, the Access Management Sub-team, and subsequently the Area Manager, will make that decision based on the access management strategy for the project. Oregon Administrative Rules provide for certain remedies that may be administered by the Right of Way Section. Such remedies may consider the financial cost associated with restoring access to the property, if necessary. If the closure of an approach is at an access reservation or grant of access location, it is elevated to the taking of a property right. In both situations, the Right of Way Section will set up a file and work with the property owner accordingly.

Often the right to enter upon private land to construct or reconnect a highway approach is handled during negotiations with the property owner and generally becomes part of the State's obligations. In such cases, a temporary easement for constructing an approach is not needed. However, if the approach involves major construction such as a fill section, a temporary easement may be needed. The Right of Way Section should be consulted to determine what is necessary.

1210.10 Miscellaneous Right of Way Issues

1210.10.1 Right of Way Estimates

An accurate right of way estimate is needed to establish a workable right of way budget and to apply for Federal Highway approval to use allocated funds. The right of way estimate is based

DRAFT

upon the market value of the real property that is needed. This involves researching the highest and best use of each property, zoning, existing use of the property, available utilities, etc.

1210.10.2 Encumbrances and Liens

All encumbrances on real property that is needed for right of way need to be discovered. Encumbrances can be easements or permits to others for roadways, waterlines, power lines, etc.

Liens, such as mortgages, trust deeds and contracts, which encumber the necessary right of way must also be discovered. Such liens may need to be cleared which could delay the State's taking possession of the property.

1210.10.3 Utilities

The TPM/RE-CP, with the aid of the Region Utility Specialist, shall determine the location and ownership of all existing utilities. Careful attention needs to be paid to the difference between "Utility facilities" and "Private lines." The Region Utility Specialist handles utility facility relocations while private line relocations are generally handled as a part of the right of way negotiations. Utility relocation often affects the amount of right of way needed. It is critical to identify utility needs early in the project development.

1210.10.4 Railroads

The Right of Way Section's Project Administration Unit should be contacted. Whether or not the State is obligated to reimburse for railroad moves needs to be established. The ODOT State Utility and Rail Liaison works directly with the railroad companies regarding their concerns and completes the needed paperwork.

1210.10.5 Land Services Justifications

The Right of Way Section may be asked to provide cost estimates to justify land service design options such as frontage roads, cattle or equipment passes, major installations for irrigation or for restoration of water supplies, etc. The estimated costs are a necessary component of the design option decision process when:

1. The amount of right of way plus potential damages varies greatly between design options. The cost of building a facility plus the required right of way impact for that facility should be compared to the cost of the right of way impact if the facility were not part of the design. The latter may result in larger takings and increased damages to the adjacent properties.

DRAFT

2. When the facility is at least partially for the public's benefit. Examples include situations when the facility would provide highway safety, access to recreation areas, fire protection, preservation or enhancement of the area economy or equitable treatment of property owners.

1210.10.6 Livestock and Equipment Underpasses

Livestock and equipment underpasses may be provided when:

1. The full cost of the underpass structure is less than the additional right of way costs for eliminating such access.
2. The underpass structure is partially for the State's benefit by eliminating any at-grade crossings. Investigation must show a continuing benefit. This must have the approval of the State Roadway Engineer.

1210.10.7 Sound Walls

Sound walls usually prevent direct physical access to the highway right of way. Normally the right of way is delineated so that the entire sound wall (including its footing) is within the State's fee title right of way. However, the fee title line may be at the back face of the wall with a permanent easement covering any portion of the footing lying beyond that.

Section 1211 Aeronautics

1211.1 General

Transportation modes often link to each other enabling goods and services to be transferred from one mode to another. The influence areas of the individual modes often overlap each other. Airports that are near a project must be reviewed for impacts to the project and the airport.

1211.2 Design Elements

Projects within the vicinity of an airport must be carefully examined to determine any potential conflict between the two transportation modes. Airport master plans should be reviewed to determine potential impacts to projects. When a project requires an airport clearance study for structures and other potential obstructions to air navigation, comply with Federal Aviation Regulations – Part 77, *"Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace,"* and Oregon Administrative Rules,

Chapter 738, Division 70. The Regional Technical Centers are responsible for completing airport clearance studies when required.

Projects that are near airports should be reviewed for obstructions or elements that may impact the air space. Roadway elements such as bridges, signals, illumination poles, or equipment that is used on these types of roadway projects may have an impact on air space. Even a proposed roadway with only the height of the vehicles as the only vertical impact may penetrate the imaginary flight surfaces. Location of drainage ditches and retention ponds can have an impact on airports by potentially attracting waterfowl to the area. The type and pattern of illumination located near an airport should be reviewed for lighting conflict between the project and the airport. Glare shields may be needed to prevent signal light glare to the pilot.

Roadway projects in the vicinity of airports need to accommodate the type of cargo and goods that travel through airports. Turning radii, travel lanes, or additional dedicated turn lanes need to be considered in the accommodation of vehicles moving such cargo and goods. Appropriate signing for airports must be addressed in project design. Projects that add lanes should consider adding the lane away from the airport for clearance purposes. Potential for rail, light rail, bicycle and pedestrian, and transit needs should be examined for projects near airports, providing the necessary links between the different transportation modes. Coordinate with the Regional Transit Coordinator and review the existing Transportation System Plans to determine any related airport transportation needs.

1211.3 Contacts

The Oregon Department of Aviation should be contacted for assistance when any proposed project is within 20,000 feet horizontally of an airport; to assist in determining compliance needs with federal regulations; and to ensure proper coordination between the two divisions.

Section 1212 Hydraulics

1212.1 General

Various types of drainage facilities are required to convey both subsurface and surface water under, along, or away from the highway. These facilities must be economical and efficient, and they must convey the discharge without damaging the highway or endangering the public.

This section of the Highway Design Manual (HDM) provides guidance on hydraulic procedures for most situations encountered in highway design (with references indicating where details can be obtained). Users should always keep in mind the legal and ethical obligations of the facility owner concerning hydraulic issues.

DRAFT

A hydraulic engineer ~~in the~~assigned to the Region Technical Center should be contacted for assistance about project-specific drainage issues. The State Hydraulic Engineer and senior hydraulic engineering staff are resources available to assist assigned Region Technical Center hydraulic engineering staff. Refer to the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for more detail on policy and design guidance.

1212.2 Hydraulic Engineering Design ~~Risks~~Considerations

One of the first steps in project delivery is the identification and characterization of project elements and the associated disciplines required to evaluate and design the project. When hydraulic engineering is necessary on a project, there are a variety of hydraulic engineering tasks and associated ~~risks~~elements that should be evaluated. These ~~risks~~elements can be easily mitigated by assigning professionals with the appropriate level of expertise to deliver the hydraulic engineering tasks, eliminating the need to identify these ~~risks~~complexities in the project risk register.

The following factors must be considered when evaluating the appropriate level of ~~risk~~complexity associated with project-specific hydraulic engineering features and tasks.

1212.2.1 Primary ~~Risk~~Design Factors:

1. Safety to travelling public
2. Infrastructure replacement and life cycle cost
3. Environmental and regulatory requirements
4. Potential property damage and other liabilities
5. Design complexity

Site conditions and geography may also be considered. Consulting with a senior hydraulic engineer is recommended to determine the applicable project-specific ~~risk~~ factors.

After the level of ~~risk~~complexity has been evaluated, ~~the~~risk is then mitigated by assigning professionals with the appropriate level of expertise to deliver the hydraulic engineering tasks. The five primary ~~risk~~design factors listed above were used to develop the contents of the matrix provided in Table 1200-6. This table should be used as a tool to quickly evaluate the appropriate level of expertise necessary to complete hydraulic engineering project tasks.

This approach replaces the past practice of using pipe diameter ~~to determine the risk~~as a threshold for design complexity.

DRAFT

Table 1200-6: Hydraulic Design Level of ~~Risk~~Complexity

Hydraulic Engineering Task	~~Low Risk~~Complexity		
	Low	Medium	High
CHANNELS			
Channel - Roadside or Median drainage and Slope 5% or flatter	X		
Channel - Roadside or Median drainage and Slope steeper than 5%		X	
Channel – Stream Conveyance (All locations)			X
Channel - All Others			X
CULVERTS[5]			
Culvert, Non-Cross (public approach crossings, access roads, side drains, etc.)	X		
Culvert, Cross (State Highway) - Roadside or Median drainage only	X		
Culvert, Stream Conveyance (All locations)			X
Culvert extensions		X	
Culvert, Cross (State Highway) – All Others			X
STORMWATER[5]			
Inlet Capacity, Spacing, and Location	X		
Pavement / Pedestrian Facility Drainage	X		
New storm drain systems with 5 or less catch basins/manholes that converge into a single trunk line and do not discharge into a treatment or flow control facility	X		
New storm drain systems with 6 to 10 catch basins/manholes that converge into a single trunk line and do not discharge into a treatment or flow control facility		X	
New storm drain systems with more than 10 catch basins/manholes that converge into a single trunk line and do not discharge into a treatment or flow control facility			X

[5] Pipe materials and outlet protection are considered an element of the primary Hydraulic Engineering Task.

Hydraulic Engineering Task	~~Low Risk~~Complexity		
	Low	Medium	High
Modification of existing inlets or storm drain piping system without collecting additional contributing area	X		
Modification of existing inlets or storm drain piping system that collects additional contributing area		X	
Storm drain systems with stream conveyance			X
Storm drain systems that discharge into a treatment or flow control facility		X	

Table 1200-6: ~~(Continued)~~ Hydraulic Design Level of ~~Risk~~Complexity (Continued)

Hydraulic Engineering Task	~~Low Risk~~Complexity		
	Low	Medium	High
STORMWATER (Cont'd)			
Modification or removal of any existing treatment or flow control facility		X	
Offsite Drainage Contribution		X	
Combined flows from multiple jurisdictions			X
Flow control and associated features (detention, gates, valves, weirs, etc.)			X
Stormwater Treatment			X
Infiltration Facilities			X
Underground Injection Control Systems (UICs)			X
Stormwater Temporary Water Management		X	
OTHER			
Bank Protection (Rivers, Natural Channels)			X
Bridge Hydraulics / Scour Analysis /Abutment Protection			X
Scour Mitigation Plan of Action		X	
Downstream impacts and hydraulic connectivity zones			X
Facility Markers	X		
Fish Passage (All Locations)			X
Floodplains / Floodways			X

Hydraulic Engineering Task	~~Low~~ RiskComplexity		
	Low	Medium	High
Minor structures (headwalls, wingwalls, vaults, special manholes, cutoff walls, etc.)			X[6]
Pump Station			X
Siphon			X
Temporary Water Management			X
Tide Gates			X
Trenchless Pipe Rehabilitation			X
Trenchless Pipe Replacement			X[7]
Waterway Enhancement			X
Anything not in the Hydraulic Design Manual			X

Table 1200-7: Professional Expertise Requirements

~~Risk~~Complexity Level	Design	Quality Control
Low	Professional Engineer	Professional Engineer
Medium	Professional Engineer	Hydraulic Engineer
High	Hydraulic Engineer[8]	Hydraulic Engineer

Professional Engineer: a licensed engineer as described in ORS 672 and OAR 820 and regulated by the Oregon State Board of Examiners for Engineers and Land Surveyors.

ODOT Hydraulic Engineer: a professional engineer who specializes in the hydraulic components related to the repair and replacement of bridges, culverts, and roadway embankments. These projects occur in the river environment and adjacent to other large bodies of water such as lakes and coastal environments. These professionals also work with stormwater and help design projects that are related to the movement, control, and treatment of water. Hydraulic engineers must have a strong understanding of hydrology and fluid mechanics relating to the design and protection of the transportation system.

ODOT Hydraulic engineers also assist with water resources, flood control planning, and adhere to federal, state, and local environmental regulations and standards. They must have a strong

[6] Collaboration with a structural engineer may be required

[7] Collaboration with a geotechnical engineer is required

[8] Consult with the ODOT State Hydraulic Engineer for exceptions to hydraulic designer qualification requirements.

understanding of how Oregon drainage law has been established by case history. They also create designs for flood control and waterway enhancement and communicate with governing bodies to address their concerns about stormwater, stream stability, and scour. Hydraulic Engineering falls under the broader career category of the Civil Engineering branch of Professional Engineering. Several indications that a Civil Engineer may have expertise in hydraulic engineering include:

- Work environment (team members primarily design hydraulic features or conduct hydraulic studies)
- Mentorship received from a senior hydraulic engineer
- Number and complexity of hydraulic engineering designs completed
- Number and quality of hydraulic engineering training classes completed
- Working Title (ODOT Only) of "Hydraulic Designer/Engineer"

1212.3 Policy

General policies pertaining to hydraulic and drainage design are governed by several factors discussed in this section. The ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual is the primary document that provides the guidelines and state-specific policies and procedures for the design of highway hydraulic facilities within ODOT right-of-way. The ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual must be used to design highway drainage features to convey both subsurface and surface water under, along, or away from the highway. These facilities must be economical and efficient, and they must convey the discharge without damaging the highway or endangering the public. All engineering designs must comply with the Oregon Drainage Law, Federal Clean Water Act, Endangered Species Act, applicable state and local jurisdiction regulations, and other applicable environmental regulations.

A hydraulic and/or a stormwater report is also required to document engineering of "Medium" and "High ~~risk~~" complexity hydraulic and stormwater features as outlined in Table 1200-6. These reports are prepared by the project professional of record. See Section 1212.4 and the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual documentation chapter for documentation guidelines.

1212.3.1 Oregon Drainage Law

Oregon drainage law, which originates from common law or court-made law, has developed without legislative action, and it is embodied in the decisions of the courts. Therefore, there are no Oregon Revised Statues to cite pertaining to Oregon drainage law.

Oregon has adopted the civil law doctrine of drainage. Under this doctrine, adjoining landowners are entitled to have the normal course of natural drainage maintained. The lower owner must accept water that naturally comes to his land from above, but he is entitled not to

have the normal drainage changed or substantially increased. The lower landowner may not obstruct the runoff from the upper land if the upper landowner is properly discharging the water.

For a landowner to drain water onto lands of another in the State of Oregon, one of two conditions must be satisfied initially:

1. The lands must contain a natural drainage course; or
2. The landowner must have acquired the right of drainage supported by consideration (i.e., a purchased drainage easement).

In addition, because Oregon has adopted the civil law doctrine of drainage, the following three basic elements must be followed:

1. A landowner may not divert water onto adjoining land that would not otherwise have flowed there. "Divert water" includes, but is not necessarily limited, to:
    a. Water diverted from one drainage area to another; and
    b. Water collected and discharged which normally would infiltrate into the ground, pond, and/or evaporate.
2. The upper landowner may not change the place where the water flows onto the lower owner's land. Most of the diversions not in compliance with this element result from grading and paving work and/or improvements to water collection systems.
3. The upper landowner may not accumulate a large quantity of water, then release it, greatly accelerating the flow onto the lower owner's land. This does not mean that the upper landowner cannot accelerate the flow of water at all. Experience has found the drainage to be improper only when the acceleration and concentration of water were substantially increased.

Subsurface waters which percolate to the surface can be intercepted and diverted for the protection of the highway without regard for the loss of these waters to the adjacent landowners. In those cases where wells and springs are involved, the right-of-way agent should contact the affected owner(s) to prevent any misunderstanding over damage that could be claimed. Drainage designs should satisfy Oregon drainage law to avoid claims or litigation resulting from improper drainage design. When it is apparent that the drainage design will not satisfy the law, then drainage easements should be obtained from the affected property owners. Legal staff should be consulted in those situations that appear to be unique and could result in litigation.

Where certain drainage patterns have been established over long periods of time (i.e., in excess of at least 10 years), that are not the original natural drainage, there may be legal rights acquired which allow the continuance of the altered drainage pattern. Again, legal staff should be consulted in such situations.

DRAFT

1212.3.2 Design Deviations

Deviations from standards in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual require justification and approval by the State Hydraulic Engineer. Requests for a hydraulic design deviation are prepared by the project professional of record and submitted to the Region Technical Center for initial review.

If a proposed hydraulic design cannot meet requirements as defined in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual, then a design deviation will be required. A few common items that would require a design deviation include:

1. Design Flood Interval Period (ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Policy Chapter)
2. Design Spread (ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Storm Drainage Chapter)
3. Culvert Allowable Headwater (ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Culverts Chapter)

See ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual, Policy Chapter for the hydraulic design deviation process and Appendix A for the deviation request form.

1212.3.3 Cooperative Projects

Participation in cooperative projects for flood control, flood protection mitigation, or stormwater control facilities must be approved by the Regional Technical Center with the extent of participation being restricted to the amount of benefit accruing to ODOT. No commitments should be made prior to approval by the Regional Technical Center and the amount of participation shall be documented by formal agreement. Actual work performed by ODOT under such agreements will be limited to highway right-of-way, unless otherwise approved in advance by the Regional Technical Center. Projects should consider opportunities for regional stormwater management facilities as appropriate in conjunction with local agency projects.

1212.4 Documentation

Hydraulic and Stormwater reports are essential to document engineering recommendations for projects and to provide information required for planning, environmental, the subsequent design phase, and quality control. These reports are intended to serve as a complete documented record containing the engineering justification for all drainage and stormwater installations and modifications that occur as a result of the project. See the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual and the Hydraulic Engineering Quality Control/Quality Assurance Work Plan for more guidance on documentation.

DRAFT

1212.4.1 Hydraulic Report

Design of channels, culverts, and other hydraulic elements that are considered ~~a high risk~~"High" complexity must be documented in a hydraulic report. These types of projects include complex hydraulic design, potential of property damage, and regulatory requirements such as FEMA floodplain permits or required fish passage conditions.

The hydraulic report is prepared by the project hydraulic engineer. This is the final report that provides detailed information for many tasks, such as structure design, roadway design, environmental documents, and permit applications. A hydraulic report is required for ~~risk~~complexity levels of ~~medium~~"Medium" and ~~high~~"High" for the Other, Culvert, and Channel sections in Table 1200-6. For more detailed information on the hydraulic report or additional reports, see the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual documentation chapter.

1212.4.2 Stormwater Report

The ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual documentation chapter provides guidance for standard stormwater designs. Standard stormwater designs include roadway inlets, small storm drains, and small channels or ditches. This information is part of the drainage design provided to the roadway designer who incorporates the drainage features into the roadway design. The design information also may be part of the work done by the roadway designer if the drainage and roadway designs are done concurrently.

A drainage plan with design calculations and documentation is part of the design data that must be prepared on all projects. The drainage plan must address the location, size, and alignment of inlets, storm drains, small culverts, utilities, pipe materials, outlet protection for pipes, roadside ditches, and cutoff ditches. The drainage plan must be reviewed by another professional engineer, or the project hydraulic engineer as outlined in Table 1200-6 and Table 1200-7, prior to finalizing the drainage plan.

A stormwater report is required to document "High ~~risk~~" complexity storm drain, water quality and flow control facilities as detailed in Table 1200-6. The documentation for these projects is greater than the standard stormwater design documentation. These reports are prepared by the project professional of record. See the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual documentation chapter for documentation guidelines. The facility design(s) incorporated in the final plans should comply with the information in the stormwater report.

1212.4.3 Stormwater Operational & Maintenance Manuals

ODOT requires preparing an Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manual for every stormwater control facility during the project development stage. An O&M manual describes the type of facility and how it operates, includes the drainage facility identification number (DFI number),

outlines an inspection schedule, and summarizes maintenance actions for the facility. The purpose of O&M manuals is to support maintenance, protect water quality, and ensure compliance with permit requirements. Refer to Technical Bulletins GE16-01(B), GE16-02(B), and the documentation chapter of the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for guidance on the O&M manual process.

1212.5 Design Features

1212.5.1 Drainage Facility Identification

ODOT owns, operates, and maintains stormwater control facilities, underground injection control systems, and culverts across the state of Oregon. Assigning a DFI number and placing field markers assists in the accurate identification of facilities and supports data collection for asset management purposes. DFI numbers are asset numbers used to uniquely identify culverts and stormwater control facilities within ODOT's highway system. DFIs and field markers are required for all culverts and stormwater control facilities. For more information on DFIs, guidelines on field markers, and the DFI number request process, refer to the field marker chapter in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual.

1212.5.2 Floodplains

The National Flood Insurance Program has established floodways and floodplains on many rivers and streams in Oregon. A floodway is the regulated portion of the stream channel plus portions of the adjacent floodplain where encroachment is prohibited or limited. The remaining portion of the floodplain that is not included within the floodway boundaries, known as the floodway fringe, is often suitable for encroachment. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) regulations require the areas within the regulated floodway to be kept free of encroachment for the 100-year flood to be carried without substantial increases in flood stage or elevation. Minimum standards of FEMA limit such increases in flood stage within the floodway to no more than 1 foot, provided hazardous velocities do not result. In several jurisdictions in Oregon, community officials have adopted a floodway or floodplain that allows less than a one foot rise or, in some instances, a no rise of water elevations.

Highways adjacent to or crossing floodplains should be designed to maintain the existing water elevations and velocities for the 100-year flood event, if practicable. Floodplain boundaries can be determined by consulting the appropriate Flood Insurance Study or the project hydraulic engineer. The project hydraulic engineer should be contacted for assistance as soon as it has been determined that a floodplain or floodway exists within the project limits, and before any work in the floodway or floodplain is considered.

DRAFT

In some cases, constructing a project without modifying the existing floodway boundary may not be practicable. A floodway boundary revision request or other documentation must then be submitted to and approved by FEMA. This process may require up to 12 months to complete. FEMA approval of requests for floodway revisions are normally obtained by the local jurisdiction, either the City or County. In other cases, temporary construction (such as work bridges, cofferdams, etc.) is needed to construct the project within the floodway. The project hydraulic engineer provides the engineering analysis necessary for projects to conform to the local floodplain regulations. Additional information on the National Flood Insurance Program and floodways can be found in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Legal Aspects and Bridges Chapters.

1212.5.3 Bridge Hydraulics

Design elements, including the roadway horizontal and vertical alignment relative to the water crossing (skew of the bridge), floodplain, channel geometry, aggradation and degradation, channel migration, and sediment and debris transport, are some of the important considerations in bridge hydraulic design. The project hydraulic engineer provides the hydraulic engineering analysis for bridge replacements over waterways. Information and design guidance on bridge hydraulics can be found in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Bridges Chapter.

1212.5.4 Scour Protection

Scour can occur around bridges and along roadway embankments in the river environment, coastal areas, adjacent to large bodies of water, such as lakes, and can lead to catastrophic failure of structures, embankments, and roadbeds. When scour becomes critical, designing mitigation measures becomes necessary to correct the eroded areas and provide protection from future scour. The project hydraulic engineer prepares and/or reviews all proposed solutions for scour mitigation. Information on scour and bank protection can be found in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Bridges Chapter and Bank Protection Chapter.

1212.5.5 Channels

Roadside Ditches

Roadside ditches should be provided to convey roadway runoff where storm drain systems are not appropriate. Roadside ditches should also be designed to prevent saturation of the roadway base material. This can be accomplished by designing the water surface elevation in the ditch to not exceed the elevation of the bottom of the base material. A typical roadside ditch should be sized for capacity and stability. Project teams should also evaluate and consider existing ditches

DRAFT

within the project limits during scoping for opportunities to modify or retrofit ditches to provide water quality benefits to nearby surface water bodies.

The peak discharge, longitudinal slope, and ground cover affect the ditch capacity. Ditches on steep slopes, as outlined in Table 1200-6, are of higher ~~risk~~complexity due to increased shear stresses on the ditch bottom and should be evaluated to assure the ditch does not erode. The discharge contributing to ditches from areas within the right-of-way is often small compared to runoff from outside the right-of-way. Evaluate each ditch for significant flows from off-site contributing areas. The standard 6-inch deep ditch should be used on all projects unless the calculated peak flows indicate insufficient capacity or instability.

Shear stresses may be less in ditches not flowing full. The information on stability for cohesive and non-cohesive soils include a range of values because soil properties such as plasticity and gradation vary considerably and can significantly affect how the soils react to shear stresses in the bottom of the ditch. For more information, refer to the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Channels Chapter.

Cut-off Ditches

Cut-off ditches should be provided above high erodible cuts to convey drainage of surface water away from the face of the cut. They should be set back about 10 feet from the point where the slope rounding meets original ground slope (see Section 323 Rounding Cutbanks).

1212.5.6 Roadway Drainage

Roadway drainage systems typically include curbs, gutters, inlets, manholes, ditches, and a network of storm drain pipes that convey surface runoff collected by the system to an outlet location. The system should adequately drain the roadway runoff to the discharge point without surcharging inlets and minimize the potential for surface flooding and erosion of properties adjacent to the right-of-way.

Inlets

Storm drain inlets are used to collect surface runoff and discharge the flow to an underground storm drainage system. Inlets are typically located in gutter sections, paved medians, roadside ditches, and median channels. Each inlet should be checked for efficiency, flow capacity, and spacing (on continuous grades and at sag locations). Inlets used for the drainage of highway surfaces can be divided into six classes:

1. Grate inlets
2. Curb-opening inlets
3. Slotted drain inlets
4. Combination inlets

DRAFT

5. Trench drain inlets
6. Bridge deck drains

Inlet design considerations include, but are not limited to, the location of the inlet (on-grade vs. sag), selecting the storm event, limiting the allowable spread (extent of water on the road surface), inlet and grate type, inlet clogging factors (to account for debris), and compatibility with pedestrian/ADA/bicycle facilities. For bridge deck drain applications, the design is complicated by the structural and architectural requirements of bridges and coordination with the bridge designer is critical. Information on inlet selection and design is provided in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Storm Drainage Chapter.

Storm Drains

Storm drain pipes are used to convey water from inlets to a desired outlet location such as a channel, waterbody, or other pipe system. Storm drain systems should be designed to protect the highway from flooding at the appropriate recurrence interval (design event). Each storm drain pipe should be evaluated for structural integrity, capacity, and outlet protection. Design of inlets and storm drain pipes included in the drainage plan is usually prepared by the project professional of record. For more complex storm drain systems, the design is performed by the project hydraulic engineer. The drainage plan must be reviewed by another roadway designer or the project hydraulic engineer prior to finalizing. The professional expertise requirements and levels of ~~risks~~complexity associated with storm drain system designs are outlined in Table 1200-6 and Table 1200-7. Storm drain design guidance and documentation requirements are provided in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Storm Drainage Chapter and Documentation Chapter.

1212.5.7 Culverts

All culverts should be evaluated for capacity, allowable headwater, outlet velocities, and protection. An existing culvert should not be extended, replaced, or undergo rehabilitation without first conducting a thorough evaluation of the pipe's existing capacity and structural integrity. Whenever possible, culvert extensions shall be designed using the same pipe material and size and match the existing slope. Pipe rehabilitation or replacement may be required if the culvert has exceeded the service life.

The project hydraulic engineer provides the engineering analysis for all culvert design with a "High" level of ~~risk of High~~complexity as outlined in Table 1200-6. FHWA's HY-8 software is the approved application for performing hydraulic culvert analysis. For all hand calculations, refer to HDS-5 for calculation forms, charts, and nomographs for culvert design.

Refer to the culvert and pipe rehabilitation chapters in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for design policy and procedures.

1212.5.8 Fish and Wildlife Passage

Check with the ODOT Region Environmental Coordinator to determine if fish or wildlife passage will be required at all proposed highway-stream crossing projects, regardless of stream or drainage size. If fish or wildlife passage is required, the project hydraulic engineer will provide the engineering analysis as outlined in Table 1200-6.

1212.5.9 Pipe Materials

Concrete, metal, and thermoplastic pipe are available for use on projects. The site conditions and design criteria will determine which materials are viable options. Selecting the appropriate type of pipe material for a project is dependent on several factors including: size and strength, fill height, service life, corrosion and abrasion potential, and debris. Alternate materials must satisfy the requirements in the preceding list. The use of metal and concrete pipes is an excellent structural and longevity choice if care is taken regarding the pipe bedding and pipe zone backfill material. In situ soil, pipe zone backfill, and water samples must be taken at each site to measure soil and water pH and resistivity. Lack of design consideration in the determination of gauge size and/or coating of metal pipe can ultimately result in failure of the roadway. Refer to the Pipe Material chapter in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for design policy and procedures to extend pipe service life, and Chapter 3 of the Geotechnical Design Manual, Section 3.5.5.5, for guidance on sampling.

Thermoplastic pipe is an ~~excellent~~ economical alternate material. However, its use should be limited to locations with lower potential for wildfire damage. Corrugated High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) is ideal for median drains, roadway approach culverts, and systems adjacent to the highway. Corrugated HDPE is not recommended for cross culverts under the highway system due to a thin wall profile, lack of strength, and the propensity to have misalignment of joints. Solid-wall HDPE has a thicker wall profile and ~~is~~can be a ~~great option~~good option for cross culverts under the highway. ~~The solid~~ Solid-wall HDPE pipe is joined by a fusion process which eliminates joint issues. However, care must be taken during pipe bedding and compaction to eliminate pipe sag.

Care must be given to the end treatment(s) used in culvert applications. Sloped ends of all HDPE pipe require additional end treatments to prevent the folding up of end sections during normal and high storm events. Removing the top section of the pipe to make the sloped end reduces the strength of the material to resist the upward buoyancy force. Solutions to this problem are to use a paved end slope for smaller pipes or a reinforced concrete collar for larger pipes. Refer to the Culvert Chapter in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for more information on end treatments.

DRAFT

1212.5.10 Stormwater Control Facilities

Water Quality Treatment

Projects that trigger stormwater management mitigation for water quality are required to provide treatment of the stormwater runoff from the project's contributing impervious area (CIA). Stormwater water quality triggers (including exemption activities) and the CIA definition are detailed in the Water Quality Chapter of the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual. The delineation of the CIA may be done by the project hydraulic engineer or water quality specialist. This information is used to determine the extent of the treatment area, to design/size treatment facilities, and support permitting and environmental documents. Various local jurisdictions have special requirements that must also be addressed.

Water Quality Best Management Practices (BMPs), including engineered treatment facilities and non-engineered techniques, can be used to provide water quality mitigation for the project. The stormwater designer should evaluate treatment approaches and techniques in the following order:

1. Use of the adjacent unaltered right-of-way as a treatment area
2. Modification of the right-of-way (slopes, soils and/or vegetation) to provide treatment
3. Use of small, distributed treatment facilities along the length of the project
4. Use of large, consolidated treatment facilities
5. Off-site project mitigation

All water quality facilities must be reviewed or designed by the project hydraulic engineer. Refer to PDLT Notice 05 (PD-05), the Water Resources Specialist Manual, and the Water Quality Chapter of the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for project requirements and design guidance.

Flow Control

Detention or flow control may be necessary to limit peak runoff if existing drainage facilities used for stormwater conveyance are not sized adequately for estimated peak flows, if the project increases peak flows to a quantity-limited waterway, or in accordance with an approved drainage master plan. ODOT's goal is to reduce runoff generated from transportation-related projects first before using engineered stormwater facilities to meet water quantity standards. All flow control facilities must be reviewed or designed by the project hydraulic engineer. Refer to the Storage Facilities Chapter of the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for project requirements, including actions that trigger the need for flow control mitigation, and design guidance.

Underground Injection Control Systems (UICs)

Underground injection control systems (UICs) are a stormwater management tool that can be installed and used within the limits prescribed by ODOT's UIC Permit. A UIC is a system, structure, or activity that is created to place fluid below the ground or subsurface. Dry wells

and systems that use perforated pipes to infiltrate stormwater into the subsurface are considered UICs. Other common stormwater UICs include, but are not limited to sumps, infiltration galleries (i.e., infiltration trenches with underdrain pipes), trench drains, and drill holes. Design of UICs requires determining the soil infiltration rates and ground water levels at the facility site. Techniques for establishing soil infiltration rates, including laboratory, field-testing, and groundwater monitoring methods, are provided in the Geotechnical Design Manual. Refer to Technical Bulletin HE24-01(B) and the Water Quality Chapter of the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual for guidance on UIC requirements.

Facility Maintenance Considerations

All stormwater control facility designs must include recommendations for appropriate preventative maintenance to ensure the facility operates properly. Project stormwater control facility designs must include features that will minimize and facilitate maintenance operations. Stormwater control facilities that require extensive or specialized maintenance activities or equipment are discouraged. The responsible Maintenance District should be consulted early and throughout the design process to obtain maintenance review and concurrence. Include documentation from maintenance in the project stormwater report.

Cost Considerations

The construction and maintenance costs for different stormwater mitigation options vary. The project hydraulic engineer must ensure maintenance is a consideration in design and in determination of long-term operation and maintenance costs. The goal is to select a stormwater control facility that minimizes lifecycle costs while achieving regulatory stormwater requirements, overcoming site constraints, and ensuring public safety. Cost-effective stormwater control facilities should be selected based on lowest overall costs, including maintenance, construction costs, and right-of-way costs for the life of the facility.

Geotechnical Investigation for Stormwater Facility Design

Stormwater control facility design includes understanding the soils, geology, geologic hazards, and groundwater conditions at the project site. This typically involves conducting a geotechnical investigation to evaluate the site's suitability for infiltration, to establish the infiltration rate for design, to evaluate slope stability, and obtain other geotechnical design information needed to design and assess the constructability of the facility. Project engineering geology staff should be consulted as early as possible in the scoping phase to identify the adequacy and available geotechnical data/information in support of stormwater and drainage facilities. Project engineering geology staff will need to include stormwater facility investigation in their project SOW when existing data is insufficient. Guidance on geotechnical investigation can be found in the Geotechnical Design Manual and in the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual Water Quality Chapter and Storage Facilities Chapter.

DRAFT

1212.5.11 Outlet Protection

Protection should be provided at pipe outlets to minimize local scour caused by concentrated flows and high flow velocities. Typical outlet protection utilizes a riprap pad sized sufficiently to dissipate the energy from the end of the pipe into sheet flow. Environmentally sensitive locations may require larger transition areas and planting. The outlet protection should be designed by the appropriate level of expertise as outlined in Table 1200-6 and in accordance with the ODOT Hydraulics Design Manual.

Section 1213 Pavement

1213.1 General

The pavement design for each project will be determined by the Pavement Design Group. Because the depth of surfacing is a major factor in the project design and cost, the pavement design is needed early in the project development process. If the Pavement Design Group is to complete their design work on time, keeping them informed of any changes in the project scope and schedule is very important. For preservation projects, contact pavement services so that they can schedule testing, complete testing, and complete Preliminary Design work prior to formal project kick off.

The primary function of the Pavement Design Group is to provide the most practical and cost-effective pavement/base/subgrade design for the conditions and criteria for a specific project. Development of the design is accomplished through a combination of field investigation, data analysis, and application of appropriate design procedures. Pavement design procedures and ODOT Policies are outlined in the ODOT Pavement Design Guide. The surfacing type selection, such as PCC versus AC, will be the responsibility of the Pavement Design Group and will not be left to the competitive bidding process.

1213.2 Project Scope

Before the pavement design process can be started, the project scope must be established. Once the project scope is established, the Pavement Designer can begin the field investigation. Because of the limited availability of the Pavement Design Field Crew and other factors, scheduling fieldwork several months prior to the date when a complete design is necessary is important. For pavement preservation projects, the Pavement Designer needs to validate final scope through testing and analysis prior to formal project kick off. Any changes in the project scope could require additional fieldwork and should be brought to the attention of the Pavement Designer as soon as possible.

DRAFT

Field work for most projects will involve deflection testing of the existing road surface. This work cannot be performed when the existing pavement or subgrade is frozen. For this reason, field work for projects in frost susceptible areas needs to be completed during the summer prior to the time a design is required. This may in some instances (particularly for regions 4 and 5 and projects at the higher elevations in the Cascades) require the scope and project schedule to be finalized eight to nine months in advance of the time a pavement design is required. Typically, if a pavement design for a project in the above areas is needed prior to July of a given year, a work request needs to be provided by August of the previous year.

1213.3 Design Considerations

Additional information important in the selection of the most appropriate pavement design for a particular project is listed below.

1. The availability of materials
2. Source of embankment materials
3. Traffic staging details*
4. Amount of grade change required or tolerated (curbs, cross-slope, R/W, stream or cut encroachment, etc.)*
5. Location and extent of widening
6. Location and extent of alignment changes*
7. Extent of current or future planned projects on the same section of highway
8. Unusual traffic patterns on a project*
9. Areas where soft subgrade may be encountered
10. Age, condition and upgrade plans for utilities under the pavement*
11. Type of drainage facilities in place or to be placed*
12. Actual type of curb present*
13. Change in traffic pattern use on existing pavement*
14. Extent and frequency of chain usage
15. Extent and frequency of snow plow damage
16. Grade constraints at bridges

* Important for urban area projects

DRAFT

1213.4 Urban Pavement Rehabilitation Projects (in town, curbed sections)

This type of project requires a very detailed review of several of the items listed above before field work should be conducted for development of the pavement design. The items are designated with an asterisk above. Many of these sections have very little curb exposure left or have unacceptable cross-slopes and/or other geometric features. This type of information is very important in determining the options available and the type of fieldwork necessary to develop the design. For more information regarding field work and pavement design for urban projects refer to the ODOT Pavement Design Guide.

1213.5 Pavement Preservation Minimum Design Life

All pavement designs must meet the minimum design life requirements outlined in the ODOT Pavement Design Guide (see Section 7.1 of the ODOT Pavement Design Guide). A design exception may be requested through the process described in Part 1000. Typical acceptable reasons for getting a design exception are as follows:

1. A life cycle cost analysis shows that the proposed maintenance/rehabilitation strategy is more cost effective than what would be required to meet the minimum design life.
2. The proposed short term fix keeps the road passable until a project can be put in the STIP to provide a long term solution. A commitment should be made at the time of the agreement of the exception to get the project into the next STIP.

1213.6 Project Scoping and Design Estimates

The Pavement Design Group is also available to assist in the project scoping process. In most cases the Pavement Design Group can develop a preliminary design estimate that will be fairly close to the requirements of the final design. By using the Pavement Design Groups' expertise in the early stages of a project, the risk of significant cost overruns due to changes in the pavement design may be minimized.

For projects with liquid asphaltic quantities in excess of 150 tons, the designer should include a separate bid item for the liquid asphalt. Any request to not have a separate bid item should obtain the approval of the pavement designer. In addition, the standard liquid asphalt quantity is equal to 6.0 percent of the mix for 1/2-inch ACP and 6.3 percent of the mix for 3/8-inch ACP. Any deviation to the standard liquid asphalt quantity requires the approval of the pavement designer.

DRAFT

Section 1214 Roadside Development

1214.1 General

Roadside development is work occurring on a transportation facility right of way that doesn't fall into other categories such as illumination, utilities, or access control. The purpose of roadside development is to help integrate the transportation facility into the surrounding environment, which includes the larger transportation corridor. The purpose may be environmental, cultural, aesthetic, functional, or combination of these. The work may be mitigation (avoidance or minimizing impacts), compensation (replacing functions that are impacted), or enhancement (creating or improving something desirable in the landscape). Roadside land outside the operational right of way can be used to provide a range of environmental services, including providing pollinator habitat, sequestering carbon, providing shade that can reduce urban heat islands, or providing cool aquatic habitats. Also included in this category of work is comment and advice for the modification of the work of other technical specialties that is related to the effect on the natural or cultural landscape of the transportation facility. Roadside development work is most often a part of road projects, but it can be the sole purpose of a contracted project.

Because roadside development usually deals with multiple overlapping large and small systems, it is not easy to precisely describe the term, just as there is no exact definition of the term “landscape.” The normal ODOT practice is to have specialists participate in scoping roadside development work on significant projects.

For the reasons cited above, specific roadside development requirements can have a variety of origins. One critical source is the environmental document whose legal purpose is to determine project impacts and state the actions intended to deal with those impacts. Other typical sources of requirements are various kinds of permits, agreements with county or city governments, the operating policies of various authorities such as the U.S. Forest Service, and ODOT’s mission concerning the environment or quality of life for residents and visitors to Oregon. Some needs of a project are discovered as the project evolves because they relate to project impacts that come to light or are finalized during later stages of development. Final roadbed slope lines are one example.

It is important to note that the roadside development work done for projects is almost always required, rather than optional. For questions about the sources of requirements that are not referred to in this section, contact the Roadside Development Program Coordinator in the Environmental Section in Engineering and Technical Services Branch. One primary source of actions on federal participation projects is the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA). For Roadside Development on complex projects, it is often necessary to conduct an inventory and analysis of visual resources along the project, determine the level of impact and identify measures to ameliorate or mitigate those impacts.

DRAFT

1214.2 Project Development Phases

1214.2.1 Planning

The ODOT Transportation Planning Unit usually looks at the "big picture" to develop initiatives like the corridor program and develop policies which integrate local land use policies with statewide transportation systems. Many of these policies condition what actions are to be taken later on in projects and in these cases, Transportation Planning Unit or region planners as well as published documents such as the Oregon Transportation Plan or Transportation Corridor Plans can be important resources.

Local government or transportation-related planning also must be considered for a comprehensive project. Some sources of information or requirements include local and regional Transportation System Plans (TSPs), local comprehensive plans, transit plans, and impacts to or from other planned projects in local capital improvement programs. Also included in the planning phase is consideration of other known major factors such as proximity to parks, funding options, access management, or other critical features.

1214.3 Programming and Scoping

Timely anticipation of the need for roadside development work will help establish a realistic design schedule and budget. Any project may have roadside development, but the rule of thumb is that the greater the disturbance to the natural or built landscape, the greater will be the need for work. Key flags are sensitive environments or populated urban areas where extensive work is being proposed. A brief review of the sources of work in the first section may help in scoping, but specific development of needs with the appropriate specialists may be required. In spite of best efforts, there will be times that the total work is not determined until late in the project design phase.

1214.4 Design

Field data collection that enables design work to begin is important to the success of roadside development. Data needs vary for the kind of work anticipated and ideally will be determined during project scoping. Data must be requested as the need becomes clear in the design process. Examples of data are a survey of existing trees, analysis of native plant communities, existing and proposed topography, soil types and depths where planting is proposed, existing wetlands or other water features, available potable water supply information, existing noxious weed populations, or similar data. Also falling into the category of field information are government regulations, policies, or initiatives external to ODOT. Examples of these could be master plans

DRAFT

for local improvement districts, zoning or development requirements, scenic waterway or byway requirements, and other similar kinds of information that must be known for the design to be completed. Primary resources to research this kind of information are the Region Permit Specialist, Local Government Coordinator, or Region Environmental Coordinator. Often, agencies with jurisdiction will have to be surveyed for relevant requirements, and project needs are sometimes determined through such forums as meetings with neighborhood groups or other interested parties.

Roadside development design in ODOT often focuses on the proposed contract document or design products as one way to scope the design process. The following is a list of the most familiar contract document and design products:

1. Roadside development conceptual mapping
2. Sketches or renderings to illustrate concepts.
3. Planting, Irrigation, and Contour Grading Plans
4. Various environmental mitigation plans - whether specifically identified by name, such as Wetland Mitigation, or not
5. Site Development Plan
6. Typical or unique project details
7. Cost Estimate with Bid Items
8. Specification Special Provisions
9. Special advice for project construction
10. Post-construction Maintenance Plan

1214.4.1 Construction

Design work of any type must be “biddable and buildable,” and also anticipate potential construction problems. This is critical for roadside development work because it usually deals with living systems that are subject to natural elements such as weather, and business elements such as supply of plant materials in a timely fashion. A few considerations are waterway high and low periods, planting seasons versus contract periods, problems caused by erodible soils, restrictions on work such as in-stream periods, the ability to water new plants where no irrigation system exists, length of the plant establishment period, and many other such issues. Good communication between the various parties involved in the origination and design of the work is required for successful construction, especially because "adjustment" of all types of project elements as construction progresses is the rule, rather than the exception.

DRAFT

1214.4.2 Post-Construction

A critical concept in roadside development is, that in meeting legal and other requirements, ODOT is responsible for establishing permanent functions. Some examples of functions include modifying topography or establishing vegetation for specific purposes such as habitat mitigation, water quality enhancement, creation of new wetlands, neighborhood screening, sound wall mitigation, or existing planting replacement. If state or federal permits are involved, then the permit often requires monitoring after completion. For example, regulatory agencies require ODOT to monitor wetlands for five years to correct problems. Some cities require the replanting of newer street trees that fail to thrive after the plant establishment period ends. Federal funding participation brings with it the need to protect the federal investment. In the post-construction period, roadside maintenance is the most critical element in maintaining the designed function. However, there are other activities that affect roadside functions such as utility work, permit activities like plant collection, or other causes of disturbance.

ODOT regions are responsible for post-construction activities, and the system works best if the maintenance needs of new work are understood as the project is being developed. Transportation facilities such as roads are designed and built according to established needs, and then appropriate maintenance is programmed to keep the facility safe and functioning. In the same way, the best practice in planning for roadside maintenance is a clear understanding of the functions to be maintained and then working to ensure the ongoing maintenance capability.

1214.5 Roadside Development Responsibilities

Roadside Development is currently housed within the Environmental Section in each Region, although not every Region has a Landscape Architect on staff. The role of the Region Landscape Architect is to develop projects and provide design and contract document development support to other environmental disciplines as needed. The Statewide Roadside Development Coordinator is based in Salem in the Environmental Section of Engineering and Technical Services Branch. The Statewide Coordinator is responsible for related program and policy development, and also provides project support to Regions as needed and requested. Several other units have major responsibilities including the Environmental Section, Project Design Teams, and Region Environmental Specialists, among others. Private consultant landscape architects and environmental specialists may also have important design roles on projects.

Project teams are now responsible for overseeing the development of projects. Ownership of roadside development work generally follows the same path as other kinds of work; the specialists are responsible for their work, but the project team determines how the work is conducted and coordinated on a given project. Whenever there are roadside design contract

DRAFT

documents, the individual responsible for the design needs to be identified on the plan sheet. The Professional of Record will be a Registered Landscape Architect.

Roadside development offers a focal point to assess the whole project site at any point in development, and assess, mitigate, and compensate for project impacts. Every design specialty can participate in how their project work affects the quality of the roadside as well as how roadside environments impact the quality of the project. One example of this is how traffic signing designers now routinely call for painting the backs of signs on certain highways to reduce their visual contrast in scenic areas.

Projects are transferred to maintenance after construction, so they assume the ongoing responsibility. It is important for Maintenance to understand and support roadside development designs, which allows the designer's intent to mature as intended. Their participation in project design and construction is critical for long term success. Roadside maintenance is one of the legs to the "three-legged stool" of planning, design/construction, and maintenance. The ability to provide long-term care for constructed designs allows ODOT to be able to continue to practice partnership with regulatory agencies such as FHWA, the Army Corps of Engineers, and many others. The advantage of this regulatory partnering to ODOT's ability to conduct project development cannot be overstated.

1214.6 Roadside Development Tools and References

Some references for roadside development projects have already been mentioned, such as the project environmental document, permits, agreements, relevant policies or regulations of various agencies and governments, and project documents such as the Prospectus and Narrative. Some useful internal references are the Roadside Development Manual, Right of Way Development and Control part of the Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction; and the Integrated Vegetation Management Guidelines. External references include A Guide for Transportation Landscape and Environmental Design by the American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO) and the American Standard for Nursery Stock from the American Association of Nurserymen (AAN).

Roadside Development requires the development of Specifications. It is important that landscape architects are familiar with the Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction, and with the process of editing special provisions. The ODOT Specifications Manual provides guidance on special provisions, the function and organization of the Standard Specifications, and general clarity in written communication.

Another important tool is the terrain modeling capability of Bentley InRoads and OpenRoads Designer software. The use of terrain modeling for contour grading design will become a standard on road projects as it applies to landscape, wetland, and riparian restoration or enhancement. This allows accurate cross sections to be developed for testing alternate design concepts and for use during project construction. Project terrain modeling works best when

DRAFT

anticipated in project scoping and scheduling. Other tools in use and expected to see greater use are photo image editing and three-dimensional rendering of site designs using Microstation.

1214.7 Specific Project Considerations

It should be noted that every project which disturbs ground will need at least a minimal roadside development consideration, such as temporary and permanent seeding for site stabilization.

Conservation and protection of existing resources should be considered wherever possible and practical. This includes retention of existing vegetation or other habitat features, and salvaging project topsoil, stockpiling, and re-using on finished slopes wherever practical.

As we meet the basic design and construction needs of roadways and structures, existing native plant communities must be saved and protected wherever practicable. They can never be re-created exactly as they were before disturbance and attempts to re-create native plantings still meet with mixed success. Additionally, existing vegetation provides significant site stabilization, reducing the requirement for erosion control in those areas.

Roadside development requirements need to be identified during the location survey to assure that enough right of way is available for compliance. Sufficient right of way should be included to provide smooth finish grade transitions between existing landforms and the facility. Flattening steep slopes, slope rounding at the top and bottom of cuts and fills, and parabolic ditch sections are methods for developing a more compatible transition.

Additional right of way may be appropriate where issues exist such as endangered species or habitat preservation, wildlife corridors required to be protected, water quality facility locations, or transportation corridor visual quality. Roadside Development coordination with terrestrial biologists or Fish & Wildlife Service can identify locations where grade separated wildlife crossings can be developed to reduce animal/vehicle conflicts and increase safety.

High visibility areas and urban roadside areas almost always require some degree of ongoing maintenance. Slopes 1:3 or steeper cannot be maintained by normal roadside mowing, so reducing slopes to less than 1:3 can reduce future maintenance efforts where mowing is acceptable. Planted shrubs and trees are an alternative to mowing on steep slopes and they have many other kinds of benefits. Even these planted areas, however, are not maintenance free and must receive maintenance, supporting roadside development design, as needed.

Interchanges, except in special circumstances, require roadside development. The degree of treatment is determined by the amount of landform change, urban/rural nature of the site, local interests and participation, local ordinances, and other factors. A basic level of roadside development, such as permanent seeding for site stabilization, is expected for all projects which disturb the ground surface. Since interchange areas are highly visible to many travelers every day, they often receive a higher level of treatment than other areas.

DRAFT

Sound berm designs should allow sufficient area (10 – 12 feet) between the toe of berm and the Right of Way for maintenance access.

Sound walls should be set back from the edge of curb a minimum of 1.5 times the height of the wall. This achieves a better visual balance between the vertical mass of the wall and the horizontal plane of the roadway. It also helps address clear zone issues. Sound wall ends should be stepped down or wrapped around corners where streets intersect the highway. Sound walls are a large vertical element on the land and treatment of their surface is important, as is the issue of graffiti on walls. The Roadside Development specialist should be involved when considering treatments (color, texture, or vegetative cover) for sound wall designs. Climbing vines can deter graffiti vandalism, and vegetative screening or foundation planting can soften the gray concrete corridor and poor aesthetics created by sound walls.

Areas that require landscape screening, such as residential areas or undesirable views visible from the highway, need sufficient Right of Way for plantings while maintaining clear zone requirements and access to the areas.

Utility pole location signage placements and street tree plantings needs to be coordinated during design. This is often difficult because utility companies may not determine pole locations until very late in the design process.

Any area that is planted in any way must be able to be safely accessed for maintenance.

On federal participation projects, law requires that an amount equal to 1/4 of 1 percent (.0025) of the roadside development estimated cost must be used to plant native wildflowers. Maintenance treatment of these areas must accommodate the requirements of native wildflowers to support the federal regulation. (Erosion control and some other costs are excluded.)

1214.8 Roadside Development Initial Project Checklist

1. **ODOT Information** - Include or check roadside development items in project prospectus, scoping, environmental documents, schedule, City-State Agreement, key contacts list, special needs such as riparian revegetation, state commitments, Scenic Byways or Scenic Rivers, and other critical policies or programs such as Transportation Corridors or Forest Highways.
2. **External Information** - Relevant city and county permit requirements, external review authorities, key contacts list, critical laws and policies of local, state or federal agencies, working partners, initial project objectives, water supplier, et cetera.
3. **Design and Construction** – Includes performing or coordinating roadside development scoping and preliminary budget, participation on project development team, research, preliminary concepts, designs, contract document preparation, plan sheet drafting,

consultant oversight, expert plan review, construction observation, and consultation on change orders. A variety of professionals perform these functions.

4. **Roadside Maintenance** - Name of maintenance authority (ODOT or other), name of responsible contact, inclusion of maintenance in project development review, inspections, maintenance standards, maintenance agreement or contract, maintenance plan for designed areas, approximate resources needed, maintenance ability to meet needs added by project

Section 1215 Temporary and Permanent Erosion and Sediment Control

The ODOT Erosion Control Manual is the basis for design of Erosion and Sediment Control Plans (ESCP) and is used to assist the practitioner to prepare both temporary and permanent Erosion and Sediment Controls (ESC) on all ODOT projects. The Environmental section should be consulted about problems involving ESC design.

The purpose of erosion and sediment control measures are to prevent erosion, to limit the transport of sediment-laden water from construction sites and prevent discharge of sediment into receiving waters. Erosion and sediment control is environmental stewardship, good Project "housekeeping" and a cornerstone of the Federal Aid Highway Programmatic which ties federal funding to the protection of the Endangered Chinook and Coho salmon.

Erosion and Sediment and Sediment Control Plans (ESCP) are both one of the construction document series included in contract plans and a Permit document, submitted to the regulatory agency (Oregon Department of Environmental Quality) prior to beginning of construction, on all projects that disturb 1 acre or more of soil. Engineers provide the areas of soil disturbance to erosion control Professionals of Record. Staging areas, even contractor provided staging areas not on Agency land, must be included in the area-of-disturbance calculation. The ESCP is a living/dynamic document that needs to be modified during construction when site conditions change, when erosion and sediment control measures change, and to comply with regulatory requirements. The ESCP contains Best Management Practices (BMP) to minimize erosion and control sediment movement on the construction project. The BMP will have to be modified or upgraded (if necessary) to reflect the site conditions from project inception to completion.

The Oregon Department of Environmental Quality (DEQ), acting under Section 402 of the EPA's Clean Water Act, requires that all construction activity disturbing 1 acre or more, of soil have an ESCP developed to comply with the 1200-CA permit. Each region has a 1200-CA permit to cover work done within that region. Contact a Region Environmental Coordinator for a copy of the permit. Small projects that do not require 1200-CA coverage must still provide appropriate erosion and sediment control and comply with the 00280 and 00290 Sections of the Specifications.

DRAFT

The Federal Highway Administration is required by Section 1057 of the Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991 (ISTEA) to develop erosion and sediment control guidelines for states to follow when constructing highways using federal funds. In order to fulfill this requirement, on July 26, 1994, FHWA adopted the guidelines presented in Volume III of AASHTO Highway Drainage Guidelines.

As part of The Oregon Plan for Salmon and Watersheds, the Oregon Department of Transportation now assures erosion control plans are provided on all projects that disturb soil and use federal funding. Local jurisdictions may also have soil erosion and stormwater quality control requirements, and these should be considered on a location-by-location basis.

Temporary and permanent ESC measures need to be considered during the project planning. The topography, drainage patterns, hydrology, and developed condition in the vicinity of the project site must be researched and used during the development of ESCP. The ESCPs consist of drawings, details, and specifications that are included in the contract documents and in the designer's narrative. An Environmental Management Plan (as described in 1200-CA, Appendix A) must be included in the ESCP on projects where pollutants or contamination are known or discovered during the course of construction. The ESCP must contain all of the necessary elements to accomplish the goals and meet the limitations of permits. Contract documents include specifications in Sections 00280 and Section 170 to address contractors' compliance with this permit.

Section 1216 Permits & Documents

1216.1 Permit Responsibilities

A number of permits and/or documents may be required from various agencies during the advance of a project from design to construction. Table 1200-8 is a list of permits and the units responsible for obtaining them.

Table 1200-8: List of Permits and the Units Responsible

Permit	Issuing Agency	Responsible Party
Airport Clearance	Federal Aviation Administration (FAA)	Region Tech Center / Engineering Services / through Aviation Department
Railroad Crossing (New and Alteration)	ODOT	ODOT Commerce and Compliance Division
Section 401 of Clean Water Act (Water Quality Certification)	Department of Environmental Quality (DEQ)	Environmental Permits Coordinator

Permit	Issuing Agency	Responsible Party
Land Use Plan (Conditional Use; Flood Department Plain, etc.)	County/City Planning Department	Region Office
Building Permit	County/City	Region (Project Mgr.)
Other Local Permits	Irrigation/Diking Districts, etc.	Region Office

Table 1200 8 (Continued): List of Permits and the Units Responsible

Permit	Issuing Agency	Responsible Party
Right of Entry/Use Permits (through USFS/BLM Lands)	U.S. Forest Service/Bureau of Land Management (BLM)	Region Office / R/W
Material Site	Oregon Department of Geology & Mineral Industries (DOGAMI)	Region Geologist Resources*
Coastal Zone Management	Oregon Dept. of Land Conservation & Development (DLCD)	Environmental Permits Coordinator
Water Use (Water Impoundment)	Water Resources Division	Watermaster
Fill/Removal Permit	Oregon Division of State Lands	Environmental Permits Coordinator
Section 10 of Rivers and Harbors Act	U. S. Army Corps of Engineers	Environmental Permits Coordinator
Scenic Waterway Permit	Oregon State Parks & Recreation and/or Bureau of Land Management	Environmental Permits Coordinator
Waterway Permits	U.S. Coast Guard	Environmental Permits Coordinator
Section 404 of Clean- Water Act Permits	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers	Environmental Permits Coordinator
Water Well	Oregon Water Resources Department	Operations (Building Manager)
Construction Permit	Property Owner	Right of Way
Environmental Documents		Environmental Services
Wetlands Report	See Note	See Note
Cultural Resources Report	See Note	See Note

Permit	Issuing Agency	Responsible Party
DEQ Indirect Source Permit	See Note	See Note
Noise Study Report	See Note	See Note

* For Commercial and other Contractor Option sites, the permit is obtained by the Contractor, Site Operator, or Landowner.

Note: 1200-CA permits are issued to Regions and are effective for 5 years.

The Project Prospectus (Part 2 and Part 3) will, in most cases, identify those permits and documents required for each project, and who is responsible for obtaining them.

Permits for some local agency and off-system projects are to be obtained by the agency or the consulting engineer as stipulated in the Oregon Department of Transportation/Agency agreement for the project.

An Air Quality report is required for all projects that increase capacity in Portland, Salem, Eugene, Medford, Grants Pass, and Klamath Falls, La Grande, Oakridge, Lakeview.

FHWA also requires a Hazardous Materials report or other documentation.

1216.2 Permit Types

1216.2.1 Airports

In compliance with Federal Aviation Regulations (PART 77), "Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace," highway projects within 20,000 feet of an airport will be carefully examined by Project Support and/or Roadway Engineering prior to the public hearing stage to determine if there is a possibility of conflict.

When it is determined that a notice is required, the Engineering Services Unit will complete FAA Form 7460-1 and submit it to the Federal Aviation Administrator as prescribed in FAA Reg. 77.17 via the Oregon Department of Aviation at least two months before construction begins. If during the preliminary design phase an obstruction conflict becomes apparent, immediate contact with FAA should be made.

1216.2.2 Diking and Irrigation District

When a proposed highway project is expected to impact an existing development that involved Federal funds in its construction (such as dikes, irrigation projects, revetments, dams, etc.) an investigation shall be made by the Project Manager or a designated representative of the Region Manager, to determine the need for notification, approval or permits of another agency. In most

cases, approval will be required from the Federal authority originally involved, as well as the local agency.

The Project Manager should establish communications with these Districts to alert them that some work is proposed that will affect their facility and to ascertain what special considerations are needed in the project plans & specifications.

1216.2.3 Use Permits and Agreements

Right of way over government land is acquired through right of entry on Bureau of Land Management property and through an easement from the U.S. Forest Service. Applications for these are made through the Right of Way Section in Salem. The government classification and proposed right of way lines are to be shown on the detail map in the usual manner. The Memorandum of Understanding between the U.S. Forest Service and the Oregon Department of Transportation details the process by which right of way through National Forest land is obtained. Obtaining right of way over government land is a very detailed and time consuming process. There are other permits and authorizations required from the U.S. Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management, and other Federal Agencies.

1216.2.4 Department of Geology and Mineral Industries

A permit is required from the Department of Geology and Mineral Industries (DOGAMI) for all work in all aggregate sources or borrow sources, whether publicly owned, privately owned and commercially operated, or other private sources (e.g., a farmer). These permits control the development and assure the reclamation of the sites as required by state law (ORS 517.750 - 517.955).

After the need for borrow/aggregate has been determined, the Region Geologist will determine whether ODOT will offer its own prospective source or rely on the contractor to obtain his own material source.

When the source is ODOT owned or controlled (ODOT has a lease with the landowner), the Region Geologist will determine the source and prepare the necessary documentation for the permit. The application and supporting documentation and fee is then submitted directly to DOGAMI.

The Region Geologist will forward a copy of the development plan and reclamation specifications directly to the designer for incorporation into the plans and specifications.

When the contractor provides the source, the contractor will obtain the permit. The Construction Project Manager has the ultimate responsibility to verify that the material site has a valid DOGAMI permit.

DRAFT

1216.2.5 U. S. Coast Guard Permit

Some of the larger rivers as well as bays and estuaries in Oregon are navigable. The Coast Guard and the Corps of Engineers operate according to a list of officially designated navigable waters. Commercial navigation may no longer be practical in some of the waterways listed as being navigable and projects over those waters may be exempt from the need for a permit. Since it is easier to define when a permit is not needed that will be the starting point.

For projects involving the construction of bridges or the major reconstruction of bridges over navigable waters a Coast Guard permit may not be required if the bridge is over waters:

1. Which are not being used or are not susceptible to use in their natural condition or by reasonable improvement as a means to transport interstate or foreign commerce; and
2. Which are (a) not tidal, or (b) if tidal, used only by recreational boating, fishing, and other small vessels less than 21 feet in length. (Federal Aid Highway Manual, Vol. 6, Chapter 7, Sec. 1, Par. 1)

The Permit Coordinator requests that the Federal Highway Administration makes the determination that a Coast Guard permit is not required under these criteria.

If the waters in question do not meet Criteria 1 and 2 above, a Coast Guard Permit will be required.

The application for the permit is made by letter to the 13th Coast Guard District (Seattle). This application should be made one year in advance of the project construction date.

The Coast Guard should be contacted, and their comments requested about provisions for navigation when a project involves a navigable waterway, whether or not a Coast Guard permit is required. Their stipulations concerning such items as navigation clearances, lighting, etc., will then be included in the project plans and specifications.

1216.2.6 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers/Division of State Lands Permit

The US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) regulates discharge of dredged or fill material into waters of the United States, including wetlands, pursuant to Section 404 of the Clean Water Act (33. S.C. 1344). A permit will generally be required when filling into waters of the U.S.

The Oregon Division of State Lands, as the state regulating agency, will generally require that a permit be obtained for fill or removal in the beds or banks of streams or wetlands. A joint permit application form is used for both of these agencies. However, two or more permits may be issued.

DRAFT

The joint permit application is reviewed by State and Federal Resource Agencies (Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, DEQ, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Services, Environmental Protection Agency, National Marine Fisheries Services, etc.) for compliance with statutes, such as the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and good resource management practices. Their comments and conditions will be incorporated into the permits.

It is extremely helpful during the field survey for the Project Manager to contact the local District Fish Biologist of the Oregon Department of Fish & Wildlife to discuss the project and learn in advance the conditions under which work will be allowed in any streams. The Permits Coordinator obtains the permit. Application is made when the following information is available for the impact site:

1. Vicinity map which shows the location of the project.
2. Plan, elevation and typical section drawings which show the existing and proposed structures.
3. Any environmental documents required for the project such as a Wetland Delineation, Impact Assessment and Mitigation Report.
4. The Biological Assessment for the project impacts to the threatened and endangered species can be sent when it is completed.

This information should be submitted as early in the design process as possible. This will ensure any conditions or stipulations contained in the permits can be incorporated into the project plans and specifications. These conditions may be as minor as time limits for in-stream work or as major as extensive wetland mitigation plans.

Any special conditions or stipulations regarding work in the stream are then included in the final project plans and specifications. (For Corps of Engineers Permit Rules see Code of Federal Regulations (CFR 33, Ch. 11, part 323)

1216.2.7 Construction Permit

The construction permit applies to land service facilities to be built for individuals on their land. It gives the State or its contractor a right to enter upon the property of an individual to perform construction work for the benefit of the owner. This might include road approaches or access roads which cannot be accommodated in their entirety within the highway right of way; irrigation facilities which serve only the individual involved; or any other facility constructed for the sole use and benefit of the owner involved, the later removal of which would not be detrimental to the highway. No time limits are placed on construction permits.

DRAFT

Part 1300 Deliverables

DRAFT

Section 1301 Introduction

Throughout the Project Development process, the primary milestone used for reference is the project's PS&E submittal date. If planned deliverables and milestones are not met, this can cause the project's PS&E submittal date to slip, usually in increments of one month. This can cause serious repercussions to the constructability of the project due to time sensitive windows such as paving seasons, permit dates for in-water-work requirements, budgeting, etc.

For additional information about the project delivery process, see the ODOT Project Delivery website and consult ODOT's project delivery guidance, operational notices, bulletins, and directives.

Section 1302 Plans, Specifications, and Estimates

1302.1 Plan Procedure

Each of the Regional Technical Centers has their own unique process for developing and reviewing their plans, specifications, and estimate. The specific Region process will determine the milestones and type of review required for the project.

For additional information about the project delivery process, consult ODOT's project delivery guidance.

1302.2 Plan Preparation

Plan preparation is a team effort and communication between all team members is paramount. This requires direct communication between different disciplines as well as regular communication between the design engineer and the ~~drafter.~~CAD technician. The design engineer and the ~~drafter~~CAD technician need to work well with each other and clearly understand each other's unique role in the plan preparation process. The design engineer is responsible for the content of the design and for the constructability of that design. The ~~drafter~~CAD technician is responsible for the presentation of those ideas on the plans in a format that is consistent statewide. Plan consistency is important for contractors bidding work from different geographical locations. There are standardized methods for showing the construction items in the ODOT CAD Manual (OCM). Following the methods shown will assist both ~~drafters~~CAD technicians and designers in keeping a more consistent look and feel to the ODOT plans. The OCM is used to manage consistency for ODOT.

All the final drawings in the plan set that convey technical information require the professional in charge of the data to place their professional seal on each specific drawing (Oregon Revised Statutes 671 and 672). No professional seal is required on the title sheet or on the sheet containing the index of drawings, as these sheets convey only general project information and are not technical in nature.

1302.3 Title Sheet & Index Sheets

The title sheet includes several items of information relative to the project and/or plans. It has additional sheets for the index of plan sheets which identify all plan sheets in a specific order as outlined in the OCM. It has a title block which lists the major work items, name of the project, highway, county, and letting date. A vicinity map shows the project location, beginning and end of the project, and the Federal-Aid project number.

Other items to be found on the title sheet or on the index sheets are a listing of standard drawings, listing of Right of Way maps used on the project, length of the project, a small-scale map with the general project location indicated by an arrow and a block for the Chief Engineer's signature.

1302.4 Typical Sections & Details

Typical sections represent the final cross sections of the roadbed and show the following items: lane, shoulder, and median widths; surfacing materials and thickness; roadbed slopes; profile grade locations; and curbs and walks. The limits of each typical section, including tapers, are indicated by stationing and shown below the typical section. Equations are shown in the typical sections only when the difference between the 'ahead' station and the 'back' station is greater than 50 feet. Differences in stations of an equation that are less than 50 feet do not affect the quantities enough to be considered significant. Typical sections normally begin on Sheet BA01.

Special details for design features are prepared when required information is not available in the Oregon Standard Drawing. These details are located immediately after the typical sections.

1302.5 Traffic Control Plans

Specifics to the Traffic Control Plans can be found in the ODOT Traffic Control Plan Design Manual. The Traffic Control Plan offer a method to direct vehicular, bicycle, and pedestrian traffic through the project site during construction. An element of the Traffic Control Plan is the Temporary Pedestrian Access Route (TPAR), which defines the methods by which pedestrians will navigate through or around the work area. The plans also suggest a method for staging the

DRAFT

project to protect work areas and keep traffic moving through the site. Typically, the contractor will propose another method for temporary traffic control, but a temporary traffic control method must be provided by either plan sheets and specifications or specifications alone.

For additional information about Traffic Control Plans, consult the ODOT Traffic Control Plans Design Manual.

1302.6 Erosion and Sediment Control Plans

The roadway designer gives a copy of the design files to the erosion control designer after all roadway profiles are defined and creation of finished grade surfaces, establishing cut and fill limits, are completed. The information necessary for developing a base map for erosion control should include, but not be limited to, right of way and easements, all drainage features, cut and fill lines and expected slopes, and contour lines of existing ground.

Erosion and Sediment Control Plans are required for each stage of construction. Traffic Control Plans should be submitted to the erosion control designer so erosion control design can be prepared for each stage.

A complete set of plans, details, specifications, bid items, quantities and unit costs must be prepared for inclusion in the construction contract. A complete discussion on plan preparation for erosion and sediment control plans is included in Chapter 6 of the ODOT Erosion Control Manual.

1302.7 Material Source, Stockpile, and Disposal Site Plans

These sheets include a small scale map showing the location and layout of the sites with typical cross sections and other details necessary to delineate placement or removal of materials. Information required for developing these sheets is included with the field data. Site locations are indicated on the title sheet. If the site is mandatory, a letter of public interest must be prepared and approved for the mandatory site prior to submitting the final PS&E package. Lower costs and environmental considerations are generally good reasons to use a mandatory site.

1302.8 Pipe Data Sheet

A Pipe Data Sheet is required when more than a few runs of pipe are included in the project. Care should be taken to ensure information on the Pipe Data Sheet agrees with the Construction

Plans. ~~Alternate pipe materials are required by Federal Regulation on federally funded projects.~~ To consider metal pipe as an alternate pipe material, the designer should request soil tests for pH and resistivity at specific locations early in the design process, if this information was not included in the field data. Pipe Data Sheets which include pipes and/or drainage structures that are also detailed on bridge drawings should be reviewed and initialed by the appropriate Bridge Designer.

1302.9 Plans, Construction Notes, and Profiles

1302.9.1 Plan Scales

Base plan sheets showing existing roadway, drainage, utilities, and other topography are prepared by the designer and ~~drafter.~~CAD technician. The scale ratio shall be 1″ = 100′ horizontal and 1″ = 10′ vertical; or 1″ = 50′ horizontal and 1″ = 5′ vertical. On smaller projects in cities, 1″ = 20′ horizontal and 1″ = 2′ vertical scale may be used. Deviations to the plan scales listed are approved by the Senior Standards Engineer.

1302.9.2 Construction Notes

The construction note is listed on the plan sheet and generally includes both a contractor instruction and the quantity of material for that construction item. Using a unique number to identify each specific construction note, the same number is used indicating the location of the work in plan view. Notes are usually shown in the right margin of the corresponding plan sheet or on a separate sheet if space is not available. The construction note numbers are specific to each unique plan sheet.

Round quantities of surfacing, earthwork, and watering materials to the nearest whole unit. Quantities shown in the plans should match the quantities in the estimate.

Pipe lengths are to be measured center of structure to center of structure along the slope, for each pipe length. Each length listed in the construction note is to be rounded up to the next whole foot.

Guardrail lengths are to be divisible by 12.5 ft.

Typically called out in the construction notes are removal of guardrail, fences, pipes, and other removal items that are not removed as a part of the work shown in the typical sections. Those items will include the quantity in the construction note. Usually this is a lump sum bid item for the contractor.

DRAFT

The format of the construction notes is important. The standard format for the notes is listed in the OCM. The format was developed over several years by ODOT staff and by working with the contracting community. As much as possible the standard note format is to be used. The format is tied to the Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction, with the standardization reducing construction disputes. For example, fence quantity lengths used to be shown on each plan sheet until it resulted in multiple contractor disputes over the total bid item length and the itemized lengths in each construction note. Standard practice now is to not show the sheet by sheet length for fence but only the total quantity shown in the bid list. It might appear to be a simple change to the construction note format, in this example by adding fence length to the note on the sheet, but a "simple" note format change can result in a contract dispute during the construction phase. It is both the ~~drafter's role~~designer's and the CAD technician's responsibility to keep the format of the construction notes as close as possible to the standard format shown in the OCM.

1302.9.3 Profiles

Profiles of the proposed alignments, when required by the project, will be shown on the same scale and normally on the bottom of the plan sheet. If no space remains on the plan sheet, profiles are shown on separate sheets.

The Profile Sheet shows existing ground lines, proposed vertical alignments and grades, proposed and pertinent existing sewer profiles with appropriate grades and elevations, earthwork brackets and other special information. Drainage and water quality information may be shown on separate profile sheets.

1302.9.4 Striping

The ODOT Pavement Markings Manual details permanent striping. Striping plans will be included in the plan set when agreed to by the project team. Striping plans are developed by either the roadway designer with input from the Region Traffic Engineer or by the traffic designer.

1302.9.5 Wetland Mitigation

Working with the Region Environmental personnel, the designer normally prepares plans for wetland mitigation when required. These plans show locations of wetlands and methods of mitigation by use of sketch maps, typical cross sections, and special details.

DRAFT

1302.9.6 Roadside Development

The Environmental ~~Unit in each~~Section staff assigned to the Region Technical Center is responsible for the plans, special provisions, and estimate for irrigation and landscaping needs along roadside and parking areas. See Part 1200, Section 1213 for more information about Roadside Development.

1302.9.7 Temporary Erosion Control

Erosion and Sediment Control Plans are required for both permanent and temporary soil disturbance (see Part 1200, Section 1214). Plans for erosion control for areas of soil disturbance in ODOT right of way and for required offsite material sources/stockpiles/disposal sites are prepared for the project by working with the Geo/Hydro staff ~~in~~assigned to the Region Technical Center. Those plans can be prepared by either the roadway design or the geo/hydro designer based on the project complexity and the specific Region Technical Center. The plans show locations of temporary erosion control best management practices facilities by the use of details and any combination of separate plan sheets, additional information on roadway plan sheets, and/or table of locations.

1302.9.8 Standard and Informational Drawings

Oregon Standard Drawings called for within the contract plans and special provisions are listed on the index sheet of the title sheet. The Oregon Standard Drawings called out on the title sheet are inserted during final assembly of the contract plans for printing. Informational drawings are normally plans of existing facilities, usually structures, which are included to assist the contractor in the bidding, staging, and construction. They are stamped "Informational Only" and are listed on the title sheet as such.

When work for other agencies is included in contract plans bid through ODOT, any standard drawings or details for those agencies are incorporated into the contract plans as details in the location per the OCM and applicable discipline-specific CAD manuals. Since other agencies are not a party to the ODOT construction contract, all references to specifications and approvals by anyone other than the ODOT Engineer must be removed. Local agency standard drawings are not included in the standard drawing list.

DRAFT

1302.9.9 Other Plans

Bridge Engineering, Traffic Engineering and Geo/Environmental Engineering provide plans, special provisions, and estimate for structures, sound walls, traffic signals, permanent signing, striping, and illumination for inclusion in the contract. These plans are reviewed by the roadway designer for concurrence with the roadway plans. The bridge designer initials all roadway plan sheets that reference structure work. This is to assist with the coordination of the details between the roadway plans and the structures shown.

1302.10 Specifications

1302.10.1 General

Specifications are detailed and exact statements prescribing scope, materials, workmanship, acceptance criteria, and method of measurement and payment for something to be built, installed, or manufactured.

The sequence of events for a specifications writer to produce the Special Provisions and bid booklet for a project is contained in the ODOT Specifications Manual.

1302.10.2 Standard Specifications

The Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction is a document that is the base construction contract for public work projects. This document was developed with partners from Oregon APWA members to be used on state, county and city projects. This document encompasses all the standard specifications approved for use on ODOT projects by the ODOT Chief Engineer, FHWA, and the Oregon Department of Justice. Part 00100 of the Standard Specifications covers the General Conditions. Part 00200 through Part 03000 contain the Technical Specifications and may require modifications specific to the unique project.

The construction of buildings is an element of work not covered in the "Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction." Specifications from the Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) are typically used for the construction of buildings.

1302.10.3 Project Special Provisions

Every project has unique circumstances, so the ODOT Specifications Unit provides boilerplate special provisions (boilerplates), which are template documents for creating project-specific

special provisions. The project specification writer, or other project staff, modifies the applicable boilerplates documents to create the project special provisions. When unique project circumstances require modifications not allowed by the instructions in the boilerplates, those modifications must receive concurrence from the Technical Resource for the specification section and concurrence from the State Specifications Engineer. All specification concurrences are required prior to PS&E. See the ODOT Specifications Manual for additional information.

1302.10.4 Guidelines, Procedures, and Required Forms

The procedures followed by each specification writer are delineated in the ODOT Specifications Manual.

Additional information and forms can be found on the Specifications web page at https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Business/Pages/Standard_Specifications.aspx.

1302.11 Estimates

1302.11.1 General

The programming estimate shows the designated funds set aside in the Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP). This estimate is subject to refinement in the course of the project's preparation.

Each technical discipline prepares an estimate for the bid item quantities and estimated unit price for the work to be performed. Each discipline's estimate is compiled into a merged project construction cost estimate at each project development milestone starting at draft DAP using AASHTOWare Project Estimation system. Additional information on cost estimating can be found in estimating manuals on the Project Controls Office web page at https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Business/Pages/Project-Letting.aspx. The Project Controls Office will use the final construction cost estimate to produce the bid schedule used in project letting.

1302.11.2 Anticipated Items

Anticipated Items are used to provide a funding mechanism only for non-biddable elements of work that may be needed to complete a project. Anticipated Items are identified prior to completion of PS&E. The use of anticipated items is acceptable when there is a high likelihood that non-biddable costs will be incurred. Examples of common anticipated items include statistical asphalt bonus, asphalt smoothness bonus, railroad flagging, asphalt and/or fuel escalation, steel escalation, public information and relations, and migratory bird monitoring.

ODOT has received guidance from FHWA on this matter. FHWA believes that anticipated items should not be created for items of work that can be competitively bid. ODOT's and FHWA's policy discourages the use of anticipated items for unfinished, incomplete design work. Using anticipated items in this manner will result in ODOT negotiating with a contractor for the work and most likely, paying a higher price than had it bid competitively.

Requests for anticipated items must be approved in writing by the Area Manager and the PCO Manager for all anticipated items on all projects, including anticipated items added after PS&E and/or bid opening. FHWA must also approve anticipated items on full federal oversight projects.

1302.12 Project Submittal

The Project Controls Office formally receives the projects ready for bid letting. The information about the requirements for submittal can be found in the Phase Gate Delivery Manual. Other important information can be found on the Project Controls Office website https://www.oregon.gov/odot/Business/Pages/Project-Letting.aspx.

DRAFT